Hebraic Roots Bible

with Study notes

3rd Edition

Congregation of YHWH, Jerusalem
Po Box 832
Carteret NJ 07008

Hebraic Roots Bible

Hebraic Roots Bible

Introduction

Since I started my international humanitarian mission work over 16 years ago, it became apparent to me that many bible translations are flawed at best, or absolutely corrupted at worst. As African Brethren would read to me the scriptures that were written in their native tongue, I found it difficult to believe biblical scholars could be so deficient when translating the written word into the vernacular of these peoples.

I will say upfront that I am neither a Hebrew or Aramaic scholar, and don't claim to be one. I have lived in the land of Israel for at least half of the year over the last 15 years, and have been a true covenant believer in Yahshua Messiah for over 32 years and also have been a Pastor and teacher of the word for more than 20 years. I will also publicly state that I am firmly convinced that it was the Holy Spirit's inspiration and not the intellectual knowledge of myself that has put this Hebraic Roots Bible together. I have fervently prayed and asked our Heavenly Father for guidance throughout the five years that I have been working on this project. I can also tell you that many times while doing this work I felt the spirit of YAHWEH directing and guiding me to the finished work of this translation. This work is to the glory of YAHWEH for the end time remnant to have the closest manuscript possible to the original scriptures that were inspired for the Congregations of YAHWEH.

Eventually, I conceded that it was not in ignorance that most bible translations have many flaws. Since the invention of the printing press and the Protestant Reformation when the Holy Scriptures were translated from the original Hebrew and Aramaic languages respectively, translators in almost every case have used an anti-Torah and anti-Hebrew premise during the production of their particular translations.

I have studied and perceived that some translations are third and forth generations away from the original language. Each translation strays farther from the original text and becomes watered down and more distant from the truth. An example is you could start with the word couch and then, translate it into sofa, and from there to love-seat, then to chair, bench, plank etc. So you can see if you are not using the original language and meaning you can stray from the truth very quickly. It is very clear from the historical, archeological and biblical evidence in the world today that the original Tanach, known to many as the Old Testament was indeed first written in the ancient Paleo Hebrew language.

It is also proven beyond a shadow of a doubt that the New Testament was not originally written in Greek, but was written in Aramaic (the everyday spoken language of our Savior Yahshua) and later translated into Greek. It is not the purpose of this manuscript to try to prove this fact with countless details and examples to the skeptic, but to simply put the original Hebrew and Aramaic manuscripts together for the true body of Messiah. (This is another prophetic point of "*all things being restored"* in the last days.) The following are a few examples:

Hebraic Roots Bible

The New Testament is filled with Aramaic words such as "*Talithaqumi"* in Mark 5:41, and "*Corban*" in Mark 7:11, or "*Ephatha"* in Mark 7:34 as well as many other places. What is most interesting is that in the Greek manuscripts where these Aramaic words are, it states directly after the Aramaic phrase the words "*which is being translated as*". What is quite striking is you never see these words in the original Peshitta Aramaic New Testament manuscripts. So which came first, the Greek or the Aramaic? The answer is self evident by the manuscript that is clearly identifying itself as the translation.

Also, there are several instances in the translated Greek manuscript where the translator transliterated an Aramaic phrase into the Greek copy, with a transliterated word that does not exist in the Greek language. One such example is in Mark 3:17 where Yahshua has nicknamed two of His apostles as *"B'nai Ragshee*", which in English means "S*ons of thunder",* but this phrase is transliterated into the Greek as "*Boanerges*", which is not a word or phrase in Greek. The fact that an Aramaic phrase is transliterated into Greek with no identical translation clearly proves that the original was the Aramaic. So very distinctly, when you do a scientific primacy test, as scholars have done, in every case the Aramaic Peshitta manuscript comes out as the original over the Greek and other Aramaic manuscripts.

This is not to say that the Greek Textus Receptus manuscript on which the King Good News Bible is translated is a flawed or ingenuous translation. On the contrary, I believe that the Greek Textus Receptus is generally a very good translation from the original Aramaic Peshitta, but as in any translated work, there are mistakes and things that were missed in the translation from one language to another.

When putting together this Hebraic Roots Bible, I took the Peshitta text for the New Testament and its translation by several predominant scholars, such as George Lamsa, Murdock, Paul Yonan, Janet M. Magiera, and compared passages from both the Khabouris Codex, and from Gabriel Roth's Ruach Qadim book. In checking with these various Aramaic translations of the Peshitta text, I also closely compared them to the Greek translation and prayerfully tried to give a literal translation of what the original intent was of each books writer from the original language and circumstances. I do believe that the Greek translation helped much in this regard.

You will be much surprised to find that contrary to the translations of most Greek manuscripts today, the original Aramaic manuscripts do **NOT** have an anti-Torah (law) bias, and clearly shows that not only did our Savior Yahshua uphold the Torah perfectly, but that the Torah was also a prerequisite for His disciples that followed after Him. You will also notice something most striking in this translation that has never been done before. Close to 100 times in the Tanach (Old Testament) you find the personal name of our Savior Yahshua personified in the Holy Scriptures and yet because most translators do not recognize the true

Hebrew name of our Savior Yahshua, they do not translate these references about our Messiah into the English language.

In Hebrew every word goes back to a two or three letter root word, and originally Hebrew was actually 22 pictures or characters and not letters to which it later developed. The root letters in Hebrew of our Saviors name, Yahshua, is **Yod**, **Shin**, **Ayin**. In the Hebrew language according to whether a word is a verb or noun or adjective, it reflects in the grammatical structure of the root word with the proper prefix or suffix added to show what form the word is in the sentence.

I find it most amazing though that whether the root word **Yod**, **Shin**, **Ayin**, is in the noun form or verb form, adjective form, or even at times as the personal pronoun "**He**", it still always means the same as our savior's name Yahshua, which is "**salvation**'. So I have translated the root word **Yod**, **Shin**, **Ayin**, as I believe it was intended, in the personal name of our Savior Yahshua. Since I know that some others may differ, I have marked each one of these references with an asterisk * so as to let the reader know each time one of these occurrences appears. The fact that these references in the Tanach are clearly inspired by the Holy Spirit and are indeed references about Yahshua Messiah can easily be seen by the following scripture comparison.

Is 49:6 And He said, It is too little that You should be My servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved ones of Israel; I will also give You, **my Yahshua* (salvation)**, to be for a light of the nations, to the end of the earth.

Luk 2: 26 And it happened to him, having been divinely instructed by the Holy
Spirit, he was not to see death before he would see the Messiah of YAHWEH. **27**
And by the Spirit he came into the sanctuary. And as the parents were bringing in
the child Yahshua for them to do according to the custom of the Torah
concerning Him, **28** even Simeon received Him into his arms. And he blessed
YAHWEH and said, **29** "Now dismiss your servant in peace, Adonai, according
to your word. **30** because my eyes saw **Your Salvation (Yahshua)**,

Luk 3: 5 All the valleys will be filled and all the mountains and heights will be
leveled. And the rough will become smooth, and the difficult land a plain **6** " and
all flesh shall see **the salvation of YAHWEH**." (Isaiah 40:3-5)

Now can anyone deny that "*the salvation*" that was seen by Simeon in verse 30 of Luke the second chapter and Luke 3:5 is indeed referring directly to Yahshua? And if that is the case than I believe I can just as strongly argue that the somewhat 100 references to Yahshua in the Old Testament also do indeed most certainly personally infer to Him, even when the grammatical form may be a verb or adjective, as Yahshua is all living and created all things and is all things. Also, our Savior clearly calls himself the Aleph and the Tav (Alpha and Omega in the Greek text) in Rev 1:8, and also Rev 22:13. The Aleph and the Tav are the first and last letter in the Hebrew alphabet. Interesting enough is the fact that in the Hebrew language an aleph and tav are inserted in certain places to show

possession, however it is not translatable. Since some of the places could not be coincidental, as they are extremely important messianic scriptures, such as Zechariah 12:10, I have left the pertinent aleph/ tavs in place for the reader to see, even though they don't translate into English.

I would also like to say that although I do believe the Hebrew Masoretic text of the Tanach or Old Covenant is indeed the oldest and overall most reliable source of scripture that we have, I also want to caution that the lying pen of the scribes has not kept the Masoretic text without fault. There has been several areas where the translators of the Masoretic text purposely changed scripture to fit their own theology. So what I did was to check and reference each discrepancy with the Masoretic text with at least two other witnesses of written ancient scriptures, which in most cases would have been the Septuagint Greek translation from the second century B.C., or the Brit Hadashah (New Testament writings)and also the Dead Sea Scrolls, written between the 1st and 2nd century B.C. I will list some of the scribal errors of the Masoretic text below.

1) The personal name of YAHWEH was changed 113 times to Adonai in the Masoretic Text from the original Hebrew manuscripts.

2) The Masoretic text takes the word for pierced in Psalm 22:16 (a clear crucifixion Psalm) **kaaru** and changes the last letter from a vav to a yud. The change of letter changes the meaning from pierced my hands, and feet, to lion, as in as a lion they are at my hands and feet. The Septuagint has pierced from the original Hebrew karu not kaari. According to the Dead Sea Scrolls dated about 100 BCE, the Hebrew Word in verse 16 is kaaru pierced and not lion. Not only that but the Aramaic Peshitta also agrees with the Septuagint.

3) In Isaiah 53 the Masoretic is missing a key word in verse 11. After the word "see", there should be another word "**light**" qualifying what the Suffering Servant sees. But the missing word LIGHT is found in the Septuagint, and the Dead Sea Scrolls.

4) In the Masoretic text Exodus 1:5 and Gen 46:27 states that 70 souls came to Egypt from Canaan. But the Septuagint and Dead Sea Scroll say 75 souls.

5) In Genesis 10:24 the Masoretic text is missing generations. The New Testament in Luke 3:36 inserts Canaan as does the Septuagint and the Dead Sea Scrolls, leaving 3 biblical witnesses.

6) In Deuteronomy 32:8 the Masoretic text uses the term "*children of Israel*." The Septuagint uses the term "*Cherubs Of Elohim*" as do the Dead Sea Scrolls.

7) In Isaiah 61:1 the Masoretic does not contain the phrase "*recovery of sight to the blind."* Yet Luke 4:18 does as does the Septuagint.

8) In Psalm 40:6 the Masoretic text has purposely changed the phrase *"a **BODY** you have prepared for me*", as properly quoted again in Hebrews 10:5,

and verified by the Septuagint and also the Dead Sea Scrolls to the phrase *"you have opened up my ears."*

The original names of our Creator, YAHWEH, and his Son, our Savior Yahshua, are also used throughout. The name YAHWEH or 𐤉𐤄𐤅𐤄 is in the original Paleo Hebrew manuscripts 6,823 times. Almost every translation on earth, including the King James, takes out the Creator's personal name and replaces it with the name "*Lord*", a generic title that means '*Baal or Master*'. Also, our Savior's true given Hebrew name, Yahshua, which means "*Yah is salvation*" is changed to a Greek hybrid of Jesus, which is a poor transliteration from the Greek IE-Zeus. The English transliteration of Yahshua would be the equivalent to Yahoshua. There was no letter "*J*" in any language until the 16th century. So the Greek name "*Jesus*" would not be the name of our Savior.

The third commandment strictly forbids taking the name (of) YAHWEH in vain. In vain literally means to '*change, falsify, or make common*'. Taking the name YAHWEH or Yahshua and changing it to '*Lord or Jesus*' is definitely going against the clear instruction of the third commandment. So we will use the original, true Hebrew names of the Father YAHWEH and the Son Yahshua throughout this bible translation.

We will also use the original Hebrew word, Elohim, instead of the incorrectly translated "*god*". God is the personal name of the Babylonian deity of fortune. Please see the note on Is 65:11. We will keep all Hebrew titles for our Heavenly Father such as El Shaddai, Adonai, El Elyon, etc exactly as they appear in the original manuscripts. Also, the Catholic Church changed the original Hebrew book order, so we have arranged the book order back into its original place. In the 1st covenant we have the Torah, the prophets and the writings, which make up the Tanach, and in the New Testament we have the 4 Good News messages and Acts, and then, the 7 epistles by the early congregational leaders, and then, the Apostle Paul's epistles ending with John's Revelation. This was the original book order. The epistle of Jacob, which was changed to James by the King has been restored to the original name. The book order of scripture is extremely important as if you were reading a book you would not read chapter 8 before chapter 5.

I pray that this work, which has been blessed by YAHWEH Almighty will be as much of a blessing to each one reading it, as it was to me putting it together. You can download this bible for free at **www.coyhwh.com** .

B'Shem Yahshua,

Don Esposito

Senior Elder, Congregation of YHWH Jerusalem

Book of Genesis (B'rasheet)

Chapter 1

1 In the beginning Elohim created the heavens and the earth;[1]

2 and the earth being without form and empty, and darkness on the face of the deep, and the Spirit of Elohim moving gently on the face of the waters,

3 then Elohim said, Let light be! And there was light.[2]

4 And Elohim saw the light, that *it was* good, and Elohim separated between the light and darkness. *(Joh 1:4)*

5 And Elohim called the light, Day. And He called the darkness, Night. And there was evening, and there was morning, day one.[3]

6 And Elohim said, Let an expanse be in the midst of the waters, and let it be dividing between the waters *and* the waters.

7 And Elohim made the expanse, and He separated between the waters which *were* under the expanse and the waters which *were* above the expanse. And it was so.

8 And Elohim called the expanse, Heavens. And there was evening, and there was morning, day two.

9 And Elohim said, Let the waters under the heavens be collected to one place, and let the dry land appear. And it was so.

10 And Elohim called the dry land, Earth. And He called the collection of the waters, Seas. And Elohim saw that it was good.

11 And Elohim said, Let the earth sprout tender sprouts, the herb seeding seed, the fruit tree producing fruit according to its kind, whichever seed *is* in it on the earth. And it was so.

12 And the earth bore tender sprouts, the herb seeding seed according to its kind, and the fruit tree producing fruit according to its kind, whichever seed *is* in it. And Elohim saw that it was good.

13 And there was evening, and there was morning, day three.

14 And Elohim said, Let light sources be in the expanse of the heavens, to divide between the day and the night. And let them be for signs and for seasons[4], and for days and years.

15 And let them be for light sources in the expanse of the heavens, to give light on the earth. And it was so.

16 And Elohim made the two great light sources the great light to rule the day, and the small light and the stars to rule the night.

17 And Elohim set them in the expanse of the heavens, to give light on the earth,

18 and to rule over the day and over the night; and to divide between the light and the darkness. And Elohim saw that *it was* good.

19 And there was evening, and there was morning, day four.

20 And Elohim said, Let the waters

---

1 *"In the beginning"* The first words of scripture and also the Hebrew name for Genesis called *"B'rasheet*". Elohim, a generic term used for deity in scripture roughly 2,500 times. The word in Hebrew is plural and shows the duality of the Yahweh family at creation, Gen 1:26.

2 Due to YHWH's great and awesome power all He needs to do is to speak and creation occurred, Joh 1:1-3, Mk 4:39-41.

3 In scripture evening precedes morning and the new day begins and the old one ends at sunset, Lev 23:32, Deut 21:23.

4 The Hebrew word here *"moed"* literally means the Holy Days of YHWH. The sun rules the day and the day begins at sunset, and the moon rules the month and the month begins at the conjunction of the moon. In both cases there is nothing to watch or visually site not to entice Israel later to worship as the pagans did, Deut 4:19. For information on the full biblical calendar please see lesson 11 at www.coyhwh.com in the study section.

swarm *with* swarmers having a living soul; and let the birds fly around, over the earth, on the face of the expanse of the heavens.

21 And Elohim created the great crocodiles, and all that creeps, having a living soul, which swarmed the waters, according to its kind; and every bird with wing according to its kind. And Elohim saw that *it was* good.

22 And Elohim blessed them, saying, Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the waters in the seas; and let the birds multiply in the earth.

23 And there was evening, and there was morning, the fifth day.

24 And Elohim said, Let the earth bring forth the soul of life according to its kind cattle, and creepers, and its beasts of the earth, according to its kind. And it was so.

25 And Elohim made the beasts of the earth according to its kind, and cattle according to its kind, and all creepers of the ground according to its kind. And Elohim saw that it was good.

26 And Elohim said, let Us make mankind in Our image, according to Our likeness; [1]and let them rule over the fish of the sea, and over the birds of the heavens, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over all the creepers creeping on the earth. *(Gen 9:6)*

27 And Elohim created the man in His own image; in the image of Elohim He created him. He created them male and female.

28 And Elohim blessed them; and Elohim said to them, Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the land, and subdue it, and rule over the fish of the seas, and over birds of the heavens, and over all beasts creeping on the earth.[2]

29 And Elohim said, Behold, I have given you every plant seeding seed which *is* on the face of all the earth, and every tree in which *is* the fruit of a tree seeding seed; it shall be food[3] for you.

30 And to every beast of the earth, and to all birds of the heavens, and to every creeper on the earth which *has* in it a living soul, every green plant *is* for food. And it was so.

31 And Elohim saw everything that He had made and behold, it was very good. And there was evening, and there was morning, the sixth day.

Chapter 2

1 And the heavens and the earth were finished, and all their host.

2 And on the seventh day Elohim completed His work which He had made. And He rested on the seventh day from all His work which He had made.[4]

3 And Elohim blessed the seventh day and sanctified it, because He rested

---

[1] Man was made in the image of Yahweh as he has 2 hands and feet and 2 eyes etc. However, to be made in His likeness, denotes to have the character that He has and that does not come by instantaneous fiat but by a life-long commitment to conquer ones fallen human nature, to build patience and self-control and to 100% fully submit to the spirit of YHWH and His Torah on how to love and worship Him and how to love our neighbor as ourselves.

[2] Yahweh promised man "*rulership*" not ownership over the earth. Nowhere in scripture is heaven ever promised as the reward of the saved, but always dominion over the earth, Ps 115:16, Is 66:1. Also, we see from the very beginning that the command given by Elohim was for man to "*be fruitful and multiple*". Adam was to teach the Torah of YHWH to others but failed. Yahshua who was the second Adam gave the same command in the New Covenant, Joh 15:1-8.

[3] The Hebrew root for the word food can also mean destruction and shows that if you allow the physical things to control your life it could destroy you.

from all His work on it, which Elohim had created to make.

4 These are the generations of the heavens and of the earth when they were created in the day of the making of YAHWEH Elohim's earth and heavens.

5 And every shrub of the field was not yet on the earth, and every plant of the field had not yet sprung up; for YAHWEH Elohim had not sent rain on the earth, and *there was* no man to till the ground.[1]

6 And mist went up from the earth and watered the whole face of the ground.

7 And YAHWEH Elohim formed the man from the dust of the ground, and blew into his nostrils the breath of life; and the man became a living soul.[2]

8 And YAHWEH Elohim planted a garden in Eden to the east; and He put the man whom He had formed there.

9 And out of the ground YAHWEH Elohim made to spring up every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food. The Tree of Life *was* also in the middle of the garden; also the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil.

10 And a river went out of Eden to water the garden, and from there it *was* divided and became four heads.

11 The name of the first was Pishon; it is the one surrounding all the land of Havilah where gold *is*;

12 the gold of that land *is* good; there *is* bdellium gum resin, and the onyx stone.

13 And the name of the second river *is* Gihon. It *is* the one surrounding all the land of Cush.

14 And the name of the third river *is* Hiddakel; it *is* the one going east of Assyria. And the fourth river *is* Euphrates.

15 And YAHWEH Elohim took the man and put him into the Garden of Eden, to work it and to keep it.[3]

16 And YAHWEH Elohim commanded the man, saying, Eating you may eat of every tree in the garden;

17 but of the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil you may not eat, for in the day that you eat of it, surely you shall die.[4]

18 And YAHWEH Elohim said, *It is* not good, the man being alone. I will make a helper suited to him.

19 And YAHWEH Elohim formed every animal of the field, and every bird of the heavens out of the ground. And He brought *them* to the man, to see what he would call it. And all which the man might call it, each living soul that *was* its name.

20 And the man called names to all the cattle, and to the birds of the heavens, and to every animal of the field. But for a man, no helper suited to him *was* found.

21 And YAHWEH Elohim caused a deep sleep to fall on the man, and he slept. And He took one of his ribs, and closed up the flesh underneath.

22 And YAHWEH Elohim formed the rib which He had taken from the

---

4 Clearly, the setting apart of the Sabbath day as holy time goes back to creation week and was there from the very beginning. The Hebrew word for "*rested*" is "*Shabbat*".

1 It is interesting to note that Adam was not in the garden yet.

2 Man "*became*" a living soul, he does not "*possess*" a soul. A soul can die and is not immortal as the soul that sins it will die, Eze 18:4, Ro 6:23. Please see lesson 17 on the immortal soul in the bible on line course at www.coyhwh.com in the study section.

3 "*Keep it*"- the Hebrew literally means to guard and protect it.

4 The tree of life signifies 100% faith and trust in YHWH unconditionally, as where the tree of the knowledge of good and evil represents man's free choice to make his own decision apart from the word of YHWH.

man into a woman, and brought her to the man.

23 And the man said, This now at last *is* bone from my bones, and flesh from my flesh; For this shall be called Woman, because out of man this has been taken.

24 Therefore, a man shall leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave to his wife and they shall become one (*echad, unified*) flesh.[1]

25 And they were both naked, the man and his wife, and they were not ashamed.

Chapter 3

1 And the serpent was cunning[2] above every beast of the field which YAHWEH Elohim had made. And he said to the woman, *Is it* so that Elohim has said, You shall not eat from any tree of the garden?

2 And the woman said to the serpent, of the fruit of the trees of the garden, We may eat,

3 but of the fruit of the tree in the middle of the garden, Elohim has said, You shall not eat of it, nor shall you touch it, lest you die.

4 And the serpent said to the woman, surely, you shall not die,

5 for Elohim knows that in the day you eat of it, even your eyes shall be opened, and you shall be as Elohim, knowing good and evil.

6 And the woman saw that the tree *was* good for food, and that it *was* pleasant to the eyes, and the tree *was* desirable to make *one* wise. And she took of its fruit and ate; and she also gave to her husband with her, and he ate.

7 And the eyes of both of them were opened, and they knew that they *were* naked. And they sewed leaves of the fig tree, and made girdles for themselves.

8 And they heard the sound of YAHWEH Elohim walking up and down in the garden at the breeze of the day. And the man and his wife hid themselves from the face of YAHWEH Elohim in the middle of the trees of the garden.

9 And YAHWEH Elohim called to the man and said to him, Where *are* you?

10 And he said, I have heard Your sound in the garden, and I was afraid, for I *am* naked, and I hid myself.

11 And He said, Who told you that you *were* naked? Have you eaten of the tree of which I commanded you not to eat?

12 And the man said, The woman whom You gave *to be* with me, she has given to me of the tree, and I ate.

13 And YAHWEH Elohim said to the woman, What *is* this you have done? And the woman said, The serpent deceived me, and I ate.

14 And YAHWEH Elohim said to the serpent, Because you have done this, you *are* cursed above all beasts, and above every animal of the field. You shall go on your belly, and you shall eat dust all the days of your life.

15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her Seed; He will bruise your head, and you shall bruise His heel.[3]

16 He said to the woman, I will

---

[1] The word "*echad*" is a Hebrew word that although could denote the number one can also denote (as in this case) a unified state between 2 things or people.

[2] The word for "*naked*" in verse 25 and the word for "*cunning*" are derived from the same root word in Hebrew.

[3] This is the very first messianic scripture promising redemption directly after the sin of the man and woman. It is interesting that the prophecy is for a redeemer to come from the seed of a woman when most times in scripture legal genealogies come through a man. This is a hint to the virgin birth, Is 7:14.

greatly increase your sorrow and your
conception; you shall bear sons in
sorrow, and your desire shall be toward
your husband; and he shall rule over
you.[1]
17 And He said to the man, Because
you have listened to the voice of your
wife, and have eaten of the tree about
which I commanded you, saying, You
shall not eat *from* it, the ground *shall
be* cursed because of you; you shall eat
of it in sorrow all the days of your life.
18 And it shall bring forth thorns and
thistles for you, and you shall eat the
plant of the field. *(Mk 4:18-19, Is 5:6)*
19 By the sweat of your face you shall
eat bread until your return to the
ground. For you have been taken out of
it; for you *are* dust, and to dust you
shall return.[2] *(Job 7:21, Ps 146:4)*
20 And the man called the name of
his wife, Eve; because she became the
mother of all living[3].
21 And YAHWEH Elohim made
coats of skin for the man and his wife,
and clothed them[4].
22 And YAHWEH Elohim said,
Behold! The man has become as one of
Us, to know good and evil. And now,
lest he put forth his hand and also take
from the Tree of Life, and eat, and live
forever,
23 YAHWEH Elohim sent him out of
the Garden of Eden to till the ground
out of which he was taken.
24 And He drove the man out. And
He lodged the cherubs at the east of the
Garden of Eden, and the flaming sword
whirling around to guard the way of the
Tree of Life.

Chapter 4

1 And the man knew his wife Eve. And
she conceived and bore Cain, and said,
I have gotten[5] a man, YAHWEH.
2 And she continued to bear his
brother, Abel. And Abel became a
shepherd of flocks. And Cain became a
tiller of the ground.
3 And it was in the end of days, it
happened that Cain brought an offering
to YAHWEH from the fruit of the
ground.
4 And Abel brought, he also, from the
firstlings of his flocks, even from their
fat. And YAHWEH looked to Abel and
to his offering.
5 And He did not look to Cain and to
his offering. And Cain glowed greatly
with anger, and his face fell.[6]

---

1 A very clear scripture showing in Yahweh's judicial order the wife's desire should be toward her husband as a helpmate and not toward her own independent private goals. Due to the rejection of Yahweh's judicial order today divorce is at an all time high.

2 This scripture is very clear that man is mortal and will die, (Heb 9:27, Eccl 9:5). After this there will be a first and second resurrection for all those who ever lived (Rev 20:4-15) and those who have done good will receive eternal life and those who have done evil will go to the lake of Fire and cease to exist.

3 When Eve was created she was simply called eshah or woman, but now since it was prophesied that the messiah would be born from her lineage in verse 15, she has become the mother of all living through the coming messiah.

4 Here, Yahweh Yahshua the High priest of the Melchizedek order does the first sacrifice and since death came through man, we see that also restoration of life would also come through man, and the seed of Adam Ro 5:12-16.

5 This Hebrew word for gotten "*Kanati*" also means to purchase and the root can mean to fix, repair or restore. Understandably, Adam and Eve thought that Cain was the prophesied messiah of Gen 3:15, and he would repair the covenant that they had broken.

6 In chapter 3:21 YHWH already set the precedent that sin brings the shedding of innocent blood. Here, Cain was trying to bring a bloodless sacrifice without a true heart for YHWH.

6 And YAHWEH said to Cain, Why have you angrily glowed, and why has your face fallen?

7 If you do well, is there not exaltation? And if you do not do well, sin is crouching at the door; and its desire *is* toward you; but you should rule over it.

8 And Cain talked with his brother Abel and said let us go out into the field; And it happened as they were in the field, Cain rose up against his brother Abel, and killed him.

9 And YAHWEH said to Cain, Where *is* your brother Abel? And he said, I do not know. Am I my brother's keeper?

10 And He said, What have you done? The voice of the blood of your brother cries to Me from the ground.

11 And now you are cursed more than the ground which opened its mouth to receive your brother's blood from your hand.

12 When you till the ground, it will not again give its strength to you. You shall be a vagabond and a fugitive on the earth.

13 And Cain said to YAHWEH, My punishment *is* greater than I can bear.

14 Behold! You have driven me out from the face of the land today. And I shall be hidden from Your face. And I shall be a vagabond and a fugitive on the earth. And it will be *that* anyone who finds me shall kill me.

15 And YAHWEH said to him, If anyone kills Cain, he shall be avenged sevenfold. And YAHWEH set a mark on Cain, so that anyone who found him should not kill him.

16 And Cain went out from the presence of YAHWEH. And he settled and married in the land of Nod, east of Eden[1].

17 And Cain knew his wife, and she conceived and bore Enoch. And he built a city, and he called the name of the city according to the name of his son, Enoch.

18 And Irad was born to Enoch; and Irad fathered Mehujael And Mehujael fathered Methusael; and Methusael fathered Lamech.

19 And Lamech took two wives to himself the name of the first *was* Adah; and the name of the second *was* Zillah.

20 And Adah bore Jabal; he *was* the father of those living in tents, and raising livestock.

21 And the name of his brother *was* Jubal; he was the father of all those playing the harp and the organ.

22 And Zillah also bore Tubalcain, *the* hammerer of every engraving tool of copper and iron. And the sister of Tubalcain *was* Naamah.

23 And Lamech said to his wives, Adah and Zillah, Hear my voice, you wives of Lamech; listen to my words; for I have killed a man because of my wound, and a young man because of my hurt.

24 For Cain is avenged sevenfold, and Lamech seventy seven.

25 And Adam knew his wife again, and she bore a son. And she called his name, Seth, for Elohim has appointed to me another seed in place of Abel because Cain killed him.

26 And a son was also born to Seth, and he called his name, Enos. Then it

1 It is widely assumed that Cain married his sister but that is nowhere ever mentioned in scripture and is clearly against the Torah (Lev 18:9) and abominable in the eyes of Yahweh. Incestuous marriages was a Canaanite practice (Lev 18:3,24) and clearly not ordained by YHWH. From this verse and also verse 14, we can see that there were other human beings on the earth.

was begun to call on[1] the name of YAHWEH.

Chapter 5

1 This *is* the book of the generations of Adam in the day that Elohim created mankind, He made him in the likeness of Elohim.
2 He created them male and female, and blessed them, and called their name "Adawm[2]" in the day when they were created.
3 And Adam lived one hundred and thirty years and fathered *a son* in his own likeness, according to his image, and called his name Seth.
4 And the days of Adam after he fathered Seth were eight hundred years. And he fathered sons and daughters.
5 And all the days that Adam lived were nine hundred and thirty years. And he died.
6 And Seth lived one hundred and five years, and fathered Enos.
7 And after he fathered Enos, Seth lived eight hundred and seven years. And he fathered sons and daughters.
8 And all the days of Seth were nine hundred and twelve years. And he died.
9 And Enosh lived ninety years and fathered Cainan.
10 After he fathered Cainan, Enosh lived eight hundred and fifteen years, and he fathered sons and daughters.
11 And all the days of Enosh were nine hundred and five years. And he died.
12 And Cainan lived seventy years and fathered Mahalaleel.
13 And after he fathered Mahalaleel, Cainan lived eight hundred and forty years. And he fathered sons and daughters.
14 And all the days of Cainan were nine hundred and ten years. And he died.
15 And Mahalaleel lived sixty five years and fathered Jared.
16 And after he fathered Jared, Mahalaleel lived eight hundred and thirty years. And he fathered sons and daughters.
17 And all the days of Mahalaleel were eight hundred and ninety five years. And he died.
18 And Jared lived one hundred and sixty two years and fathered Enoch.
19 And after he fathered Enoch, Jared lived eight hundred years. And he fathered sons and daughters.
20 And all the days of Jared were nine hundred and sixty two years. And he died.
21 And Enoch lived sixty five years and fathered Methuselah.
22 And Enoch walked with Elohim three hundred years after he fathered Methuselah. And he fathered sons and daughters.
23 And all the days of Enoch were three hundred and sixty five years.
24 And Enoch walked with Elohim. Then he *was* not, for Elohim took him.
25 And Methuselah lived one hundred and eighty seven years and fathered Lamech.
26 And after he fathered Lamech, Methuselah lived seven hundred and eighty two years. And he fathered sons and daughters.
27 And all the days of Methuselah were nine hundred and sixty nine years; and he died.
28 And Lamech lived one hundred and eighty two years and fathered a son.
29 And he called his name Noah, saying, This one shall comfort us concerning our work and the toil of our

[1] This word can also mean to curse

[2] Although, also, the personal name of the first human being, here "*Adawm*" means mankind.

hands because of the ground which YAHWEH has cursed.

30 And after he fathered Noah, Lamech lived five hundred and ninety five years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

31 And all the days of Lamech were seven hundred and seventy seven years. And he died.

32 And Noah was five hundred years old. And Noah fathered Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

Chapter 6

1 And it came about that men began to multiply on the face of the earth, and daughters were born to them.

2 The sons of the Elohim saw the daughters of the men, that they were good, and they took wives for themselves from all those whom they chose.

3 And YAHWEH said, My Spirit shall not always strive with mankind; in their going astray he is flesh. And his days shall be a hundred and twenty years[1] (*times).*

4 The nephilim[2] were in the earth in those days, and even afterwards when the sons of the Elohim came in to the daughters of the men, and they gave birth to them; they were the heroes who *existed* from ancient time, men of renown.

5 And YAHWEH saw that the evil of man *was* great on the earth, and every imagination of the thoughts of his heart *was* only evil all the day long.

6 And YAHWEH sighed with sorrow that He had made man on the earth, and He *was* grieved to His heart.

7 And YAHWEH said, I will wipe off man whom I have created from the face of the earth, from man to beast, to the creeping thing and to the birds of the heavens; for I repent that I made them.[3]

8 And Noah found grace in the eyes of YAHWEH.

9 These *are* the generations of Noah. Noah, a righteous man, had been without blemish in his generations. Noah walked with Elohim.

10 And Noah fathered three sons, Shem, Ham, and Japheth.

11 And the earth was corrupt before the Elohim, and the earth was filled with violence[4].

12 And Elohim looked on the earth, and behold, it was corrupted. For all flesh had corrupted its way on the earth.

13 And Elohim said to Noah, The end of all flesh has come before Me, for the earth is filled with violence through them. And behold, I will destroy them along with the earth.

14 Make an ark of cypress timbers for yourself. You shall make rooms in the ark; and you shall cover it with asphalt inside and out.

15 And you shall make it this way; The length of the ark shall be three hundred cubits, its breadth fifty cubits, and its height thirty cubits.

16 You shall make a window in the ark, and you shall finish it above to a cubit. And you shall set the door of the ark in its side. You shall make it with lower, second, and third stories.

17 And behold, I, even I, am bringing a flood of waters on the earth in order to destroy all flesh in which *is* the breath of life from under the heavens.

---

1 The Hebrew word for years can also mean "*times*" and may be referring to 120 jubilees or 120 x 50= 6,000 yrs allotted to man until YHWH would bring His kingdom, 2 Pe 3:8.

2 The Hebrew root for Nephilim is to fall down, so they were fallen ones.

3 Truly a sobering scripture for all humans to see the fallen nature of man and the sadness of the Creator in making him, Ro 3:10-23.

4 The Hebrew word used for violence here is "H*amas*", the same as the terror group today.

Everything which *is* on the earth shall die.

18 And I will establish My covenant with you. And you shall come into the ark, you and your sons and your wife and your sons' wives with you.

19 And you shall bring into the ark two of every kind, of every living thing of all flesh, to keep alive with you; they shall be male and female;

20 from the birds according to its kind, and from the cattle according to its kind, from every creeping thing of the ground according to its kind. Two from each shall come in to you to keep alive.

21 And take for yourself all food that is eaten, and gather to yourself. And let it be for you and for them for food.

22 And Noah did so, according to all that Elohim appointed him to do, so he did.

Chapter 7

1 And YAHWEH said to Noah, You and all your house come into the ark, for I have seen you righteous before Me in this generation.

2 You shall take to yourself from every clean animal by sevens, male and female, and from the animal that *is* not clean by two, male and female.

3 And take of the fowl of the heavens by sevens, male and female, to keep alive seed on the face of the earth.

4 For after seven more days I will cause it to rain on the earth forty days and forty nights and will wipe away every living substance that I have made from off the face of the earth.

5 And Noah did as to all that YAHWEH commanded him.

6 Noah *was* a son of six hundred years, and the flood of waters was on the earth.

7 And Noah went in, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him into the ark, because of the water of the flood.

8 And they went in to Noah into the ark, male and female of clean animals, and of animals that *are* not clean, and of fowl, and of everything that creeps on the earth,[1] *(Lev 11:1-47, Gen 8:20)*

9 two by two, as Elohim had commanded Noah, they went into the ark, male and female.

10 And it was after the seven days, the waters of the flood came into being on the earth.

11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, in the seventeenth day of the month, in this day all the fountains of the great deep were risen, and the windows of the heavens were opened up. *(Gen 5:32)*

12 And the rain was on the earth forty days and forty nights.[2]

13 In this same day Noah and Shem and Ham and Japheth, the sons of Noah, and Noah's wife, and the three wives of his sons with them, went into the ark;

14 they, and every animal according to its kind, and every beast according to its kind, and every creeping thing that creeps on the earth according to its kind; and every fowl according to its kind, every bird of every wing.

15 And they went in to Noah into the ark, two and two of all flesh, in which *is* the breath of life.

16 And those going in went in male and female of all flesh, as Elohim had commanded him. And YAHWEH shut *the door* behind him.

17 And the flood was on the earth forty days. And the waters increased,

---

1 The fact that Noah distinguished between clean and unclean animals undoubtedly shows that the clean and unclean laws of Leviticus 11 existed from creation.

2 Forty is the number of trial but also of overcoming.

and bore up the ark, and it was lifted up above the earth.

18 And the waters prevailed, and were greatly increased on the earth. And the ark floated on the face of the waters.

19 And the waters prevailed, exceedingly violent on the earth, and all the high mountains under the heavens were covered.

20 The waters prevailed, fifteen cubits upward, and the mountains were covered.

21 And all flesh that moved on the earth died the fowl, and cattle, and beast, and every swarming thing that swarms on the earth, and all mankind.

22 All died in whose nostrils *was* the breath of life, of all that *was* in the dry land.

23 And every living thing which *was* on the face of the earth was wiped away, from man to cattle, and to the creeping things, and the fowl of the heavens. And they were wiped off from the earth, and only Noah was left, and those who were with him in the ark.

24 And mighty were the waters over the earth a hundred and fifty days.

Chapter 8

1 And Elohim remembered Noah and every living thing, and all the cattle which were with him in the ark. And Elohim made a wind to pass over the earth, and the waters subsided.

2 And the fountains of the deep and the windows of the heavens were stopped, and the rain from the heavens was restrained.

3 And the waters retreated from the earth, going and retreating. And the waters diminished at the end of a hundred and fifty days.

4 And in the seventh month, on the seventeenth day of the month, the ark rested on the mountains of Ararat.

5 And the waters were going and falling until the tenth month. In the tenth month, on the first of the month, the tops of the mountains were seen.

6 And it happened, at the end of forty days, even Noah opened the window of the ark which he had made.

7 And he sent out a raven, and it went out, going out and returning until the waters were dried up from off the earth.

8 He also sent out from him the dove, to see if the waters had receded from off the face of the earth.

9 But the dove found no rest for the sole of her foot, and she returned to him into the ark, for the waters were on the face of all the earth. And he put out his hand and took her, and pulled her in to him into the ark.

10 And he waited yet another seven days, and again he sent forth the dove out of the ark.

11 And the dove came in to him in the evening. And, behold! In her mouth *was* a newly plucked olive leaf. So Noah knew that the waters receded down from off the earth.

12 And he waited another seven days and sent forth the dove. And she did not return again to him any more.

13 And it happened in the six hundred and first year, at the beginning, on the first of the month, the waters were dried up from off the earth. And Noah removed the covering of the ark and looked. And, behold! The face of the earth was dried.

14 And in the second month, on the twenty seventh day of the month, the earth was dry.

15 And Elohim spoke to Noah, saying,

16 Go out of the ark, you and your wife, and your sons and your sons' wives with you.

17 Bring out from you every living thing that *is* with you, of all flesh, of fowl, of cattle, and of every creeping thing that creeps on the earth; and let

them swarm on the earth, and bear, and multiply on the earth.
18 And Noah went out, and his sons, and his wife, and his sons' wives with him;
19 every animal, every creeping thing, and every fowl; all which creeps on the earth. They went forth out of the ark according to their families.
20 And Noah built an altar to YAHWEH, and took of every clean animal, and of every clean bird, and offered burnt offerings on the altar.
21 And YAHWEH smelled the soothing fragrance, and YAHWEH said in His heart, I will never again curse the ground for the sake of man, because the imagination of the heart of man *is* evil from his youth. Yea, I will not again smite every living thing as I have done.
22 While the earth remains, seed-time and harvest, cold and heat, summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.[1]

Chapter 9

1 And Elohim blessed Noah and his sons. And He said to them, Be fruitful and multiply, and fill the earth[2].
2 And your fear and your dread shall be on all the animals of the earth, and on every bird of the heavens, on all that moves on the earth, and on all the fish of the sea. They are given into your hands.
3 Every creeping thing which *is* alive shall be food for you. I have given you all things, even as the green plant.[3]
4 But you shall not eat flesh in its life, its blood.
5 And surely the blood of your lives I will demand. At the hand of every animal I will demand it, and at the hand of man. I will demand the life of man at the hand of every man's brother.
6 Whoever sheds man's blood, his blood shall be shed by man; For He made the man in the image of Elohim. *(Gen 1:26-27)*
7 And you, be fruitful and multiply. Swarm over the earth and multiply in it.
8 And Elohim spoke to Noah, and to his sons with him, saying,
9 Behold! I, even I, am establishing My covenant with you, and with your seed after you,
10 and with every living creature which *is* with you, among fowl, among cattle, and among every animal of the earth with you, from all that go out from the ark, to every animal of the earth.
11 And I have established My covenant with you, and all flesh shall not be cut off again by the waters of a flood; nor shall there ever again be a flood to destroy the earth.
12 And Elohim said, This *is* the sign of the covenant which I am about to make between Me and you, and every living soul which *is* with you, for everlasting generations.
13 I have set My bow in the cloud, and it shall be a sign of a covenant between Me and the earth.
14 And it will be when I gather the clouds on the earth, then the bow shall be seen in the clouds.
15 And I will remember My covenant which is between Me and you, and every living soul in all flesh. And the waters shall not again become a flood to destroy all flesh.

---

[1] In Israel there are only 2 seasons, winter and summer. The sun makes its revolution around the earth and when it passes the equator at the spring equinox, (called "*tekufah*" in Hebrew) the next new moon is the first month of the new year.

[2] The same command given in Gen 1:28.

[3] Of course this is with the already given instructions on clean and unclean animals, Gen 7:2, Gen 8:20

16 And the bow shall be in the clouds, and I shall see it, to remember the everlasting covenant between Elohim and every living soul, in all flesh on the earth.

17 And Elohim said to Noah, This *is* the sign of the covenant which I have established between Me and all flesh that *is* on the earth.

18 And the sons of Noah that went out of the ark were Shem, Ham, and Japheth. And Ham *is* the father of Canaan.

19 These *are* the three sons of Noah, and the whole earth was overspread from them.

20 And Noah, a man of the ground, began and planted a vineyard.

21 And he drank from the wine, and was drunk[1]. And he uncovered himself inside his tent.

22 And Ham, the father of Canaan, saw the nakedness of his father. And he told his two brothers outside.

23 And Shem and Japheth took a garment and put it on both their shoulders. And they went backward and covered the nakedness of their father, their faces backward. And they did not see the nakedness of their father.

24 And Noah awoke from his wine. And he came to know what his younger son had done to him.[2]

25 And he said, Cursed *be* Canaan. He shall be a slave of slaves to his brothers.

26 And he said, Blessed *be* YAHWEH, the Elohim of Shem; and may Canaan be his slave.

27 Elohim shall enlarge Japheth, and he shall live in the tents of Shem, and Canaan shall be their slave.

28 And Noah lived three hundred and fifty years after the flood.

29 And all the days of Noah were nine hundred and fifty years. And he died.

Chapter 10

1 And these *are* the generations of the sons of Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth. And sons were born to them after the flood.

2 The sons of Japheth: Gomer, and Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras.

3 And Gomer's sons were Ashkenaz, and Riphath, and Togarmah.

4 And Javan's sons were Elishah, and Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.

5 By these the coasts of the nations were divided in their lands each by his tongue[3], by their families, in their nations.

6 And Ham's sons were Cush, and Mizraim, and Put, and Canaan.

7 And the sons of Cush were Seba and Havilah, and Sabtah, and Raamah, and Sabtecha. And Raamah's sons were Sheba and Dedan.

8 And Cush fathered Nimrod[4]; he began to be a mighty hero in the land.

9 He was a great hunter before YAHWEH; so it is said, Even as Nimrod
the mighty hunter before YAHWEH.

10 And the beginning of his kingdom was Babel, and Erech, and Accad, and Calneh, in the land of Shinar.

11 From that land he went forth to Assyria and built Nineveh, and Rehoboth the city, and Calah,

12 and Resen between Nineveh and Calah, which *is* a great city.

13 And Mizraim fathered Ludim, and

---

[1] Due to the change in atmospheric pressure after the flood, a grape could now turn into wine. This was not possible before the flood. The grape juice stored had turned to wine unbeknown to Noah.

[2] Noah knew he had been violated.

[3] This word can also mean dialect.

[4] Nimrod means rebellion.

Anamim, and Lehabim, and Naphtuhim,
14 and Pathrusim, and Casluhim, from whom came the Philistines and Caphtorim[1].
15 And Canaan fathered his first-born Sidon, and Heth,
16 and the Jebusite, and the Amorite, and the Girgashite,
17 and the Hivite, and the Arkite, and the Sinite,
18 and the Arvadite and the Zemarite, and the Hamathite. And afterward the families of the Canaanites were dispersed.
19 And the border of the Canaanites was from Sidon, as you come to Gerar, as far as Gaza, as you go in towards Sodom and Gomorrah, and Admah, and Zeboim, even to Lasha.
20 These *were* the sons of Ham, according to their families, according to their tongues, in their countries, in their nations.
21 And to Shem was born, even to him, the father of all the sons of Eber, the brother of Japheth the elder.
22 The sons of Shem were Elam, and Asshur, and Arpachshad, and Lud, and Aram.
23 And Aram's sons were Uz, and Hul, and Gether, and Mash.
24 And Arpachshad fathered Cainan and Cainan fathered Salah; and Salah fathered Eber.
25 And two sons were born to Eber; the name of the one *was* Peleg, for in his days the earth was divided; and his brother's name *was* Joktan.
26 And Joktan fathered Almodad, and Sheleph, and Hazarmaveth, and Jerah,
27 and Hadoram, and Uzal, and Diklah,
28 and Obal, and Abimael, and Sheba,
29 and Ophir, and Havilah, and Jobab. These all were the sons of Joktan.
30 And their dwelling was from Mesha, as you go to Sephar, an eastern mountain.
31 These *were* the sons of Shem, according to their families, according to their tongues, in their lands, according to their nations.
32 These *were* the families of the sons of Noah, by their generations, in their nations. And from these the nations were divided in the earth after the flood.

Chapter 11

1 And the whole earth was of one lip and of one speech[2].
2 And it happened, as they traveled from the east, they found a level valley in the land of Shinar. And they lived there.
3 And each one said to his neighbor, Come, let us make brick, and burn them thoroughly. And they had brick for stone, and they had asphalt for mortar.
4 And they said, Come, let us build a city and a tower with its top the heavens, and make a name for ourselves, that we not be scattered on the face of all the earth.
5 And YAHWEH came down to see the city and the tower which the sons of man had built.
6 And YAHWEH said, Behold, the people *is* one, and the lip one to all of them, and this they are beginning to do,

1 Caphtorim- Crete, which was anciently known as Caphtor was the home to several Philistine groups (Jer 47:4, Amos 9:7). The Philistines were an Indo-European maritime people who invaded Egypt in the 12th century B.C. And were driven out and went to southwest Canaan, and other parts of the land.

2 This can mean they were united in language, speech or purpose.

and now all which they have determined to do will not be restrained from them.

7 Come, let Us go down and mix up their language so that they cannot understand man's evil speech.[1]

8 And YAHWEH scattered them from there, over the face of all the earth. And they ceased from building the city.

9 On account of this its name is called Babel[2], because YAHWEH mixed up the speech of all the earth there. And YAHWEH scattered them abroad from there on the face of all the earth.

10 These *are* the generations of Shem: Shem *was* a son of a hundred years and fathered Arpachshad two years after the flood.

11 And after he fathered Arpachshad, Shem lived five hundred years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

12 And Arpachshad lived thirty five years and fathered Salah.

13 And after he fathered Salah, Arpachshad lived four hundred and three years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

14 And Salah lived thirty years and fathered Eber.

15 And after he fathered Eber, Salah lived four hundred and three years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

16 And Eber lived thirty four years and fathered Peleg.

17 And after he fathered Peleg, Eber lived four hundred and thirty years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

18 And Peleg lived thirty years and fathered Reu.

19 And after he fathered Reu, Peleg lived two hundred and nine years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

20 And Reu lived thirty two years and fathered Serug.

21 And after he fathered Serug, Reu lived two hundred and seven years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

22 And Serug lived thirty years and fathered Nahor.

23 And after he fathered Nahor, Serug lived two hundred years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

24 And Nahor lived twenty nine years and fathered Terah.

25 And after he fathered Terah, Nahor lived a hundred and nineteen years. And he fathered sons and daughters.

26 And Terah lived seventy years and fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran.

27 And these *are* the generations of Terah: Terah fathered Abram, Nahor, and Haran. And Haran fathered Lot.

28 And Haran died before his father Terah in the land of his birth, in Ur of the Chaldeans.

29 And Abram and Nahor took wives for themselves. The name of Abram's wife *was* Sarai. And the name of Nahor's wife *was* Milcah, the daughter of Haran, the father of Milcah, and the father of Iscah.

30 And Sarai was barren; there was no child to her.

31 And Terah took his son Abram, and Lot, Haran's son, his grandson and his daughter-in-law Sarai, his son Abram's wife.[3] And he went forth with them from Ur of the Chaldeans to go into the land of Canaan. And they came to Haran and lived there.

32 And the days of Terah were two hundred and five years; and Terah died in Haran.

Chapter 12

1 And YAHWEH had said to Abram,

---

1 Again the plurality in the YHWH family is distinctly stated here as in the creation account, Gen 1:26, Gen 3:22.

2 Babel means confusion

3 Sarah was also the granddaughter of Terah and relative to Abraham, Gen 20:12.

Go out from your land and from your
kindred, and from your father's house,
to the land which I will show you.
2 And I will make of you a great
nation. And I will bless you and make
your name great; and you will be a
blessing.
3 And I will bless those who bless you,
and curse the one despising you. And in
you all families of the earth shall be
blessed[1].
4 And Abram went out, even as
YAHWEH had spoken to him. And Lot
went with him. And Abram *was* a son
of seventy five years when he departed
from Haran.
5 And Abram took his wife Sarai, and
his brother's son, Lot, and all their
substance that they had gained, and the
persons they had gotten in Haran. And
they went out to go into the land of
Canaan. And they came into the land of
Canaan.
6 And Abram passed through the land
as far as the place of Shechem, to the
Oak of Alon-Moreh. And the Canaanite
was then in the land.
7 And YAHWEH appeared to Abram
and said, I will give this set apart land
to your seed. And he built an altar there
to YAHWEH, who appeared to him.
8 And he moved from there to a
mountain on the east of Bethel, and
stretched his tent *with* Bethel toward
the sea, and Ai on the east. And he built
an altar there to YAHWEH, and called
on the name of YAHWEH.[2]
9 And Abram setting forth and going
on toward the Negev.
10 And a famine was in the land, so
Abram went down into Egypt to stay
there. For the famine *was* severe in the
land.
11 And it happened when he had
drawn near to come to Egypt, he said to
his wife Sarai, Behold, please, I know
that you *are* a beautiful woman to look
upon.
12 And it will be, when the Egyptians
see you, then they will say, This *is* his
wife, and they will kill me, and they will
save you alive.
13 Please say that you *are* my sister,
so that it may be well with me for your
sake, and my soul shall live because of
you.
14 And it happened, when Abram had
come into Egypt, the Egyptians saw the
woman, that she *was* very beautiful.
15 And Pharaoh's princes saw her,
and they praised her before Pharaoh.
And the woman was taken into
Pharaoh's house.
16 And he did good to Abram because
of her. And he had sheep, and oxen, he-
donkeys, and male slaves, and slave-
girls, and she-donkeys, and camels.
17 And YAHWEH touched Pharaoh
and his house with great plagues
because of Sarai, Abram's wife. (Deut
11:25)
18 And Pharaoh called for Abram and
said, What *is* this you have done to me?
Why did you not tell me she *is* your
wife?
19 Why did you say, She *is* my sister?
And so I took her for my wife. And now,
behold your wife. Take her and go.
(Gen 20:12)
20 And as Pharaoh ordered *his* men
as to him, they sent away him and his
wife and all that he had.

Chapter 13

1 And Abram went up out of Egypt, he
and his wife and all that he had, and
Lot being with him into the Negev.

1 Yahweh's first promise of covenant blessing to Abraham and a prophecy for all time that all nations should support Israel if they want to be blessed.

2 Bethel is 20 miles south of Shechem and Abraham built an altar here and called on YAHWEH.

2 And Abram *was* very rich in livestock, in silver and in gold.

3 And he went on his journeys from the south, even to Bethel, to the place where his tent had been there at the beginning, between Bethel and Ai,

4 to the place of the altar which he had made there at the first. And Abram called there on the name of YAHWEH.

5 And Lot, who went with Abram, also had flocks and herds and tents.

6 And the land was not able to bear them, for dwelling together, for their substance was great, so that they could not dwell together.

7 And there was strife between the herdsmen of Abram's livestock and the herdsmen of Lot's livestock. And the Canaanite and the Perizzite lived then in the land.

8 And Abram said to Lot, Please let there be no strife between me and you, and between my herdsmen and your herdsmen, for we *are* men, brothers.

9 *Is* not all the land before you? Please separate from me. If *you go* to the left, then I will go to the right. Or if *you go* to the right, then I will go to the left.

10 And Lot lifted up his eyes and saw all the circuit of the Jordan, that it *was* well-watered before YAHWEH destroyed Sodom and Gomorrah, even as the garden of YAHWEH, like the land of Egypt as you come to Zoar.

11 Then Lot chose all the circuit of the Jordan for himself. And Lot set forth eastward. And they were separated, each one from his brother.

12 And Abram lived in the land of Canaan, and Lot lived in the cities of the circuit, and tented as far as Sodom.

13 And the men of Sodom were evil and sinners before YAHWEH, exceedingly so.

14 And after Lot had separated from him, YAHWEH said to Abram, Now lift up your eyes and look from the place where you are there, *look* northward and southward and eastward and westward.

15 For all the land which you see I will give to you, and to your seed always.

16 And I will make your seed as the dust of the earth, so that if a man can count the dust of the earth, then your seed also will be counted.

17 Rise up! Walk through the land, in its length and in its breadth, for I will give it to you.[1]

18 Then Abram moved *his* tent and came and lived among the oaks of Mamre, which were in Hebron; and he built an altar to YAHWEH there.

Chapter 14

1 And it happened in the days of Amraphel king of Shinar, Arioch king of Ellasar, Chedorlaomer, king of Elam, and Tidal king of the nations;

2 they made war with Bera king of Sodom, and with Birsha[2] king of Gomorrah, Shinab king of Admah, and Shemeber king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which *is* Zoar.

3 All these were joined together to the valley of Siddim, which *is* the Salt Sea.

4 They served Chedorlaomer for twelve years, and the thirteenth year they rebelled.

5 And in the fourteenth year Chedor-Laomer and the kings that were with him came and struck the giants in Ashteroth Karnaim, and the Zuzims in Ham, and the Emim in Shaveh Kiria-Thaim,

6 and the Horites in the hills of Seir, as far as the oak of Paran, which *is* by the wilderness.

---

1 Verses 14-17- YHWH gives His confirmation to Abraham to give the Promised Land to him and his descendants forever, 1 Chron 16:15-18, Gen 17:8.

2 Ra from Bera means evil and rasha from Birsha is a perpetrator of evil.

7 And they turned back and came to Enmishpat which *is* Kadesh, and struck all the country of the Amalekites, and also the Amorites who lived in Hazazon Thamar.

8 And the king of Sodom went out, and the king of Gomorrah, and the king of Admah, and the king of Zeboiim, and the king of Bela, which *is* Zoar. And they set the battle with them in the valley of Siddim,

9 with Chedorlaomer the king of Elam, and with Tidal the king of the nations, and Amraphel the king of Shinar, and Arioch the king of Ellasar; four kings with the five.

10 And the valley of Siddim was pitted with asphalt pits, and the kings of Sodom and Gomorrah fled, and fell there. And they that remained fled to the mountain.

11 And they took all the goods of Sodom and Gomorrah, and all their food, and went away.

12 And they took Lot, the son of Abram's brother, and his goods, and left; and he *was* living in Sodom.

13 And one who had escaped came and told Abram the Hebrew; for he *was* living among the oaks of Mamre the Amorite, the brother of Eshcol and Aner. And these *were* possessor of a covenant with Abram.

14 And when Abram heard that his brother was captured, even then he led out his trained men, born of his household, three hundred and eighteen. And they pursued as far as Dan.

15 And he divided against them by night, he and his slaves, and he struck them, and pursued them as far as Hobah, which *is* on the left of Damascus.

16 And he brought back all the goods, and also brought back his brother, and also the women and the people.

17 And the king of Sodom went out to meet him, after he returned from smiting Chedorlaomer and the kings which were with him, to the valley of Shaveh, it being the valley of the king.

18 And Melchizedek, king of Salem, brought out bread and wine; and he *was* the priest of the most High El[1].

19 And he blessed him and said, Blessed *be* Abram of the most high El, possessor of Heaven and earth;

20 and blessed *be* the most high El, who has delivered your enemies into your hand. And he gave him a tithe of all.[2]

21 And the king of Sodom said to Abram, Give me the persons and take the goods for yourself.

22 And Abram said to the king of Sodom, I have lifted up my hand to YAHWEH, the most high El, the possessor of Heaven and earth,

23 that I will *not* take from all that *is* yours, from a thread to a shoe latchet, and that you may not say, I have made Abram rich.

24 Nothing for me; only what the young men have eaten, and the portion of the men who went with me: Aner, Eshcol, and Mamre; let them take their portion.

Chapter 15

1 After these things the Word of YAHWEH came to Abram in a vision, saying, Do not fear, Abram; I am a shield to you, your reward will increase greatly.

2 And Abram said, Adonai YAHWEH, what will You give to me? I am going childless and the son of the

1 Melchizedek is a title for Yahshua Messiah who is the king of peace and king of Jerusalem (Heb 7:1-2). Most High El- In Hebrew is "*El Elyone*".

2 Abraham tithed to Melchizedek knowing that He was Yahshua, Heb 7:1-10.

inheritance of my house *is* Eleazar of Damascus?

3 And Abram said, Behold! You have given no seed to me; and lo, the son of my house is inheriting of me!

4 And behold! The Word of YAHWEH *came* to him saying, This one shall not be your heir. But he that shall come forth out of your own bowels shall be your heir.

5 And He brought him outside and said, Look now at the heavens and count the stars, if you are able to count them. And He said to him, So shall your seed be. *(Luk 16:22)*

6 And he believed in YAHWEH. And He counted it to him for righteousness.[1] *(Ro 4:3, Gal 3:6, Jac 2:23)*

7 And He said to him, I *am* YAHWEH who caused you to come out of Ur of the Chaldeans, to give you this land to inherit it.

8 And he said, Adonai YAHWEH, by what shall I know that I shall inherit it?

9 And He said to him, Take for Me a heifer three years old, and a she-goat three years old, and a ram three years old, and a turtledove, even a nestling.

10 And he took all these for Him, and he divided them in the middle; and he laid each piece opposite its neighbor, but he did not divide the bird.

11 And the birds of prey came down on the carcasses, and Abram drove them away.

12 And it happened, as the sun was setting, and a deep sleep fell on Abram. And behold, a terror of great darkness *was* falling on him!

13 And He said to Abram, surely you must know that your seed shall be an alien in a land not theirs; and they shall serve them. And they shall afflict them four hundred years;

14 and I also will judge the nation whom they shall serve; and afterward they shall come out with great substance.

15 And you shall come to your fathers in peace. You shall be buried in good old age.

16 And in the fourth generation they shall come here again; for the iniquity of the Amorites *is* not yet full until now.

17 And it happened, the sun had gone down, and it was dark. Behold! A smoking furnace and a torch of fire that passed over between those pieces!

18 In that day YAHWEH cut a covenant with Abram, saying, I have given this land to your seed, from the river of Egypt to the great river, the river Euphrates,

19 the Kenite, and the Kenizzite, and the Kadmonite,

20 and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Rephaim,

21 and the Amorite and the Canaanite, and the Girgashite, and the Jebusite.

Chapter 16

1 And Sarai, Abram's wife, did not bear to him; and to her belonged a female slave, an Egyptian, and her name *was* Hagar.

2 And Sarai said to Abram, See, now, YAHWEH has kept me from bearing; go in now to my maid-servant; perhaps I may be built up[2] from her. And Abram listened to the voice of Sarai.

3 And Sarai, Abram's wife, took her slave-girl, Hagar, the Egyptian, and gave her to her husband Abram to be

---

[1] *"He believed YHWH*" the Hebrew word for "*believe"* comes from the verb "*aman"* which is literally to confirm, and where the word "*amen*" comes from at the end of a prayer, confirming what was prayed for in faith.

[2] The Hebrew word here is Baneh and is where the word ben or son comes from, so Sarai is saying she will be completed by the son from her handmaid, the reality was just the opposite.

his wife, after Abram had lived ten years in the land of Canaan.

4 And he went in to Hagar and she conceived; and she saw that she had conceived, and her mistress was despised in her eyes.

5 And Sarai said to Abram, My injury *be* upon you; I gave my slave-girl into your bosom, and she saw that she had conceived, and I was despised in her eyes. Let YAHWEH judge between me and you.

6 But Abram said to Sarai, See, your slave girl *is* in your hand. Do to her what is good in your eyes. And Sarai dealt harshly with her, and she fled from her face.

7 And the Messenger of YAHWEH found her by a well of water in the wilderness; by the well in the way of Shur.

8 And He said, Hagar, Sarai's slave-girl, where did you come from? And where do you go? And she said, I am fleeing from the face of my mistress, Sarai.

9 And the Messenger of YAHWEH said to her, Return to your mistress and submit yourself under her hand.

10 And the Messenger of YAHWEH said to her, I will exceedingly multiply your seed, so that it shall not be numbered for multitude.

11 And the Messenger of YAHWEH said to her, Behold! You *are* with child and shall bear a son; and you shall call his name Ishmael, because YAHWEH has listened to your affliction.

12 And he shall be a wild donkey of a man, his hand against all, and the hand of everyone against him; and he shall live before all his brothers.

13 And she called the name of YAHWEH, the One speaking to her, You, a El of vision! For she said, Even here have I looked after the One seeing me?

14 On account of this, the well was called, The Well of the Living One Seeing Me. Behold, *it is* between Kadesh and Bered.

15 And Hagar bore a son to Abram, and Abram called the name of his son whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.

16 And Abram *was* eighty six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram.

Chapter 17

1 And when Abram was ninety nine years old, YAHWEH appeared to Abram and said to him, I *am* El Shaddai! Walk before me and be perfect;

2 and I will make My covenant between Me and you, and will increase you very greatly. *(Gen 12:2-3, 15:18)*

3 And Abram fell on his face. And Elohim spoke with him, saying,

4 As for Me, behold, My covenant *is* with you, and you shall be a father of many nations.

5 And your name no longer shall be called Abram, but your name shall be Abraham. For I have made you a father of many nations.[1]

6 And I will make you very fruitful, exceedingly. And I will give you *for* nations. And kings shall come out of you.

7 And I will establish My covenant between Me and you, and your seed after you in their generations, for an everlasting covenant, to be a Elohim to you and to your seed after you.

8 And I will give to you and to your seed after you the land of your sojourning, all the land of Canaan, for an ever-lasting possession and I will be their Elohim.

9 And Elohim said to Abraham, You

1 Abram means "*exulted Father*", referencing Elohim, but Abraham means "*father of many*" and gives great significance to Abraham's new name from Yahweh.

shall keep My covenant, you and your seed after you in their generations.

10 This *is* My covenant which you shall keep, between Me and you and your seed after you: Every male child among you shall be circumcised.

11 And you shall circumcise the flesh of your foreskin. And it shall be a token of the covenant between Me and you.[1]

12 And a son of eight days shall be circumcised among you, every male in your generation, he that is born in the house, or bought with silver from any son of a foreigner who *is* not of your seed.

13 The child of your house and the purchase of your money circumcising must be circumcised. And My covenant shall be in your flesh for a perpetual covenant.

14 And an uncircumcised male who is not circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin, his soul shall be cut off from his people; he has broken My covenant.

15 And Elohim said to Abraham, You shall not call your wife Sarai *by* her name Sarai, for Sarah *shall be* her name[2];

16 and I have blessed her and have also given to you a son from her. Yea, I have blessed her and she shall become nations; kings of people shall be from her.

17 And Abraham fell on his face and laughed. And he said in his heart, Shall *one* be born to a son of a hundred years? And shall Sarah bear a daughter of ninety years?

18 And Abraham said to Elohim, Oh that Ishmael might live before You!

19 And Elohim said, Your wife Sarah truly shall bear you a son, and you shall call his name Isaac. And I have established My covenant with him for a perpetual covenant with his seed after him.

20 And as to Ishmael, I have heard you. Behold, I have blessed him and will make him fruitful and will multiply him exceedingly. He shall father twelve princes, and I will make him a great nation.

21 And I will establish My covenant with Isaac, whom Sarah shall bear to you at this set apart time next year.

22 And He finished talking with him. And Elohim ascended up from Abraham.

23 And Abraham took his son Ishmael, and all the ones born of his house, and all that were bought with his silver, every male among the men of the house of Abraham. And he circumcised the flesh of their foreskins in that same day, even as Elohim spoke to him.

24 And Abraham *was* a son of ninety nine years when being circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

25 And his son Ishmael *was* a son of thirteen years *when* being circumcised in the flesh of his foreskin.

26 In the same day that Abraham was circumcised, Ishmael his son also *was*.

27 And all the men of his house, born in the house or bought with silver from a son of a foreigner, were circumcised with him.

Chapter 18

1 And YAHWEH visually appeared to him by the oaks of Mamre. And he *was* sitting at the door of the tent in the heat of the day.

2 And *he* lifted up his eyes and looked; and, behold, three men were standing by him. And he saw, and *he* ran to meet them from the entrance of the tent. And he bowed to the ground.

3 And *he* said, YAHWEH, if now I have found favor in Your sight, I beg

1 Circumcision was not the covenant itself but a sign of the covenant with YHWH.

2 Both names means princess, but the later name shows she will be a mother of nations and kings.

You, do not leave from near Your servant.[1]

4 Please allow a little water to be taken and You wash Your feet, and rest under the tree.

5 And I will bring a bite of bread and will sustain Your heart. Then You may pass on, for this is why You have passed over to Your servant. And they said, Do so, as you have said.

6 And Abraham ran into the tent to Sarah and said, Hurry, *prepare* three measures of fine meal, knead it and make cakes.

7 And Abraham ran to the herd and brought a son of the herd, tender and good, and gave *it* to a youth. And he hurried to prepare *it*.

8 And he took curds and milk and the son of the herd which he had prepared, and he set before them[2]. And he stood by them under the tree. And they ate.

9 And they said to him, Where *is* your wife Sarah? And he said, See, in the tent.

10 And He said, Certainly I will return to you at the time of life; and, Behold! A son *shall be* to your wife Sarah. And Sarah *was* listening at the entrance to the tent, and it *was* behind Him.

11 And Abraham and Sarah *were* aged, going on in days. The custom as to women had ceased to be to Sarah.

12 And Sarah laughed within herself, saying, After my being old[3], shall there be pleasure to me; my master also being old?

13 And YAHWEH said to Abraham, Why has Sarah laughed at this, saying, Indeed, truly shall I bear, even I who am old?

14 Is anything too difficult for YAHWEH? At the appointed set apart time I will return to you, at the time of life, and *there will be* a son to Sarah.[4]

15 And Sarah denied, saying, I did not laugh; for she was afraid. And He said, No, but you did laugh.

16 And the men rose up from there and looked on the face of Sodom. And Abraham *was* going with them, to send them away.

17 And YAHWEH said, Shall I hide from Abraham that which I am doing?

18 And Abraham shall surely become a great and powerful nation, and all the nations of the earth shall be blessed in him?

19 For I have known him, so that whatever he may command his sons and his house after him, even they may keep the way of YAHWEH, to do righteousness and justice; to the intent that YAHWEH may bring on Abraham that which He has spoken of him.

20 And YAHWEH said, The cry of Sodom and Gomorrah is great, and their sin is exceedingly heavy.

21 I will go down and see if they have at all done according to the cry coming to Me. And if not, I will know.

22 And the men faced around from there and went toward Sodom. And Abraham *was* still standing before YAHWEH.

23 And Abraham drew near and said, Is it so? Will You cut off the righteous with the wicked?

---

1 This is quite an interesting story as first we see Yahweh appear as a man with two cherubs (Gen 19:10) who also appeared as men. Then, we see that Abraham recognized Yahweh, as he met Him in Gen 14:18 using the title of Melchizedek.

2 Abraham prepared meat and milk together for Yahweh and the two messengers, so clearly they can be eaten together.

3 "*Old*" to be withered, or past nursing age

4 This is Aviv and passover time, that is why verses 5-6 state about passing over and also about quickly making bread without yeast. Gen 19:3 confirms that this is the time of Passover and the time prophesied when Isaac would be born, who was a type of Messiah, Gen 22:1-17.

24 Perhaps there are fifty righteous within the city; is it so You will cut off and will not spare the place for the sake of the fifty righteous ones that *are* within it?

25 Far be it from You to act in this way, to put to death the righteous with the wicked. Far be it from You. The Judge of all the earth, shall He not do right?

26 And YAHWEH said, If I find fifty righteous within the city, in Sodom, then I will spare all the place because of them.

27 And Abraham answered and said, Behold, I pray, I have undertaken to speak to YAHWEH, and I am dust and ash.

28 Perhaps there will be lacking five *from* the fifty righteous, will You destroy all the city for the five? And He said, If I find forty five there, I will not destroy.

29 And he continued still to speak to Him and said, Perhaps forty will be found there. And He said, I will not do *it* because of the forty.

30 And he said, Please YAHWEH do not be angry, that I may speak; perhaps thirty will be found there. And He said, I will not do *it* if I find thirty there.

31 And he said, Behold, I pray, I have undertaken to speak to Adonai; perhaps twenty will be found there. And He said, I will not destroy because of the twenty.

32 And he said, I pray, let not YAHWEH be angry that I may speak only this time; perhaps ten will be found there. And He said, I will not destroy because of the ten.[1]

33 And when YAHWEH had finished speaking to Abraham, He left. And Abraham returned to his place.

[1] This is where the idea came from that to have a minion to start a synagogue you must have at least 10 able men.

Chapter 19

1 And the two cherubs came into Sodom at evening. And Lot *was* sitting at the gate of Sodom. And Lot saw, and *he* rose up to meet them and bowed his face to the earth.

2 And he said, Behold, now, my masters, please turn in to your servant's house and lodge, and wash your feet; and rise early and go to your way. And they said, No, for we will lodge in the street.

3 And he much urged them, and they turned in to him and came into his house. And he made a feast for them. And he baked unleavened matzos, and they ate.

4 Before they had laid down, even the men of the city, the men of Sodom, circled the house; from the young to the aged, all the people from its limits.

5 And they called to Lot and said to him, Where *are* the men who came to you tonight? Bring them out to us, that we may have sex with them.[2]

6 And Lot went out to them, to the door, and he closed the door behind him.

7 And he said, My brothers, please do not act evilly.

8 Behold, now, I have two daughters who have not known a man; please let me bring them out to you and do to them as you see fit; only do not do a thing to these[3] men, on account of this they came into the shade of my roof.

9 And they said, Stand back! And they said, This one came in to visit, and must he always judge? Now we will do evil to you rather than to them. And they pressed on the man, upon Lot

[2] Sodom and Gomorrah had become a most depraved place and full of idolatry and homosexuals and violence.

[3] The Hebrew word here can either be *'these men'* or *'the men of the El'*.

violently, and drew near to break the door.

10 But the men put out their hands and brought Lot in to them, into the house, and shut the door.

11 And they struck the men at the door of the house with blindness, from the small to the great; and they struggled to find the door.

12 And the men said to Lot, Who still *is* here to you? Bring out of this place your sons and your sons-in-law and your daughters, and whoever *belongs* to you in the city.

13 For we are about to destroy this place, for the cry of them is great before YAHWEH, and YAHWEH has sent us to destroy it.

14 And Lot went out to speak to his sons-in-law, those taking his daughters. And he said, Rise up, go out from this place, for YAHWEH is about to destroy the city. And he seemed as one joking to his sons-in-law.

15 And when the dawn rose, then the cherubs urged Lot, saying, Rise up, take your wife and your two daughters who *are* found, lest you be consumed in the perversity of the city.

16 And he lingered. And the men lay hold of his hand and his wife's hand, and on the hand of his two daughters, YAHWEH having mercy on him. And they caused him to go out, and they put him down outside the city.[1]

17 And it happened as they led them outside, he said, Escape for your life! Do not look behind you, and do not stay in all the plain. Escape to the mountain, lest you be swept away.

18 And Lot said to them, Please, no, my master!

19 Behold, now, Your servant has found grace in Your sight, and You have magnified Your mercy which You have done to me in saving my life. And I am not able to escape to the mountain lest some evil overtake me and I die.

20 Please, now, this city *is* near, to flee there, and it is a little one. Please let me escape there! Is it not a little thing, that my soul may live?

21 And He said to him, See, I have lifted up your face also as to this thing, without overthrowing the city for which you have spoken.

22 Hurry, escape there, for I am not able to do anything until you have come there. So the name of the city was called Zoar.

23 The sun had gone forth on the earth, and Lot came into Zoar [2].

24 And YAHWEH (*on earth*) rained fire and brimstone on Sodom and Gomorrah, from YAHWEH out of the heavens[3].

25 And He overthrew those cities, and all the plain, and all those living in the cities, and the produce of the ground.

26 And his wife looked back with pleasure from behind him, and she became a pillar of salt.

27 And Abraham started up early in the morning, going to the place where he had stood there before YAHWEH.

28 And he looked toward the face of Sodom and Gomorrah, and toward all the land of the plain. And he saw. And, behold, the smoke of the country went up like the smoke of a furnace.

29 And it happened when Elohim destroyed the cities of the plain, Elohim remembered Abraham; and He sent Lot out from the overthrow when overturning the cities in which Lot lived.

30 And Lot went up out of Zoar and

1 A great lesson that when YHWH is bringing judgment you don't want to linger.

2 Zoar means little

3 No man has ever seen Yahweh the Father (Joh 1:18, 1 Joh 4:12) so this is Yahweh the Son and this scripture shows that Yahweh is a family name consisting of two Yahweh beings, Is 44:6, Ps 110:1-2, Jer 23:6.

lived in the mount. And his two daughters were with him. For he feared to live in Zoar. And he lived in a cave, he and his two daughters.

31 And the first-born said to the younger, Our father *is* old, and there is no man in the land to come in to us as is the way of all the earth.

32 Come, let us make our father drink wine, and let us lie with him, that we may keep alive seed of our father.

33 And they caused their father to drink wine that night. And the first-born went in and lay with her father. And he did not know when she lay down nor when she rose up.

34 And on the next day it happened, the first-born said to the younger, Behold, I lay with my father last night. Let us cause him to drink wine tonight also. And you go in and lie with him, so that we may keep alive seed of our father.

35 And they caused their father to drink wine that night also. And the younger rose up and lay with him. And he did not know when she lay down, nor when she rose up.

36 And both the daughters of Lot were with child by their father.

37 And the first-born bore a son and called his name Moab; he *is* the father of Moab to this day.

38 And the younger also bore a son and called his name Ben-Ammi; he *is* the father of the Ammonites to this day.

Chapter 20

1 And Abraham pulled up stakes from there to the land of the Negev, and lived between Kadesh and Shur, and stayed in Gerar.

2 And Abraham said with regards to his wife Sarah, She *is* my sister. And Abimelech the king of Gerar sent and took Sarah.

3 But Elohim came to Abimelech in a dream by night and said to him, Behold, you are about to die because of the woman you have taken, she being married to a husband.

4 And Abimelech had not come near to her. And he said, YAHWEH, will You slay even a righteous nation?

5 And did he not say to me, She *is* my sister? And she, even herself said, He *is* my brother. In the honor of my heart and the purity of my hands I have done this.

6 And Elohim said to him in a dream, Yes, I know that you did this in the honor of your heart, and I also withheld you from sinning against Me. On account of this I did not allow you to touch her.

7 And now return the wife of the man, for he *is* a prophet, and he will pray for you, and you shall live. And if you do not restore her, know that surely, you shall die, you and all that are yours.

8 And Abimelech rose up early in the morning and called for all his servants. And he spoke all these words in their ears. And the men were greatly afraid.

9 And Abimelech called Abraham and said to him, What have you done to us? And in what have I offended you that you have brought on me and on my kingdom a great sin? You have done things to me that ought not to be done.

10 And Abimelech said to Abraham, What did you see that you have done this thing?

11 And Abraham said, Because I thought, Surely the fear of Elohim *is* not in this place, and they will kill me for my wife's sake.

12 And yet she really *is* my relative, daughter from my father; only not daughter from my mother. And she became my wife. *(Gen 11:31, 12:11-20)*

13 And it happened when Elohim made me wander from my father's house, even I said to her, This *is* your kindness which you do to me: at every

place where we come there, say of me, He *is* my brother.

14 Abimelech took sheep and oxen, and male slaves, and slave-girls, and gave to Abraham. And he returned his wife Sarah to him.

15 Abimelech said, Behold, my land *is* before you. Live where it pleases you.

16 And he said to Sarah, I, behold, I have given a thousand of silver to your brother. Behold, it *is* for you a covering of the eyes to all who *are* with you. And with all this you are reproved.

17 And Abraham prayed to Elohim, and Elohim healed Abimelech and his wife and his concubines, and they gave birth.

18 For YAHWEH had completely closed up every womb of the house of Abimelech because of Sarah, the wife of Abraham.

Chapter 21

1 And YAHWEH visited Sarah as He had said. And YAHWEH did to Sarah as He had promised.

2 And Sarah conceived and bore a son to Abraham in his old age, at the appointed time, that which Elohim had spoken with him.

3 And Abraham called the name of the son who was born to him, whom Sarah had borne to him, Isaac.

4 And Abraham circumcised his son Isaac, a son of eight days, as Elohim had commanded him.

5 And Abraham *was* a son of a hundred years when his son Isaac was born to him.

6 And Sarah said, Elohim has made laughter for me; all who hear will laugh with me.

7 And she said, Who would have said to Abraham, Will Sarah suckle sons? For I have borne a son to his old age.

8 And the child grew and was weaned. And Abraham made a great feast on the day Isaac was weaned.

9 And Sarah saw the son of Hagar the Egyptian, whom she had borne to Abraham, mocking.

10 And she said to Abraham, Drive away this slave-girl and her son, for the son of this slave-girl shall not inherit with my son, with Isaac. *(Gal 4:22-26)*

11 And the thing was very evil in the eyes of Abraham, on account of his son.

12 And Elohim said to Abraham, Let it not be evil in your eyes because of the boy, and on account of your slave-girl. All that Sarah says to you, listen to her voice, for in Isaac your Seed shall be called.

13 And also I will make a nation of the son of the slave-girl, for he *is* your seed.

14 And Abraham started up early in the morning and took bread and a skin of water and gave them to Hagar, putting them on her shoulder, and the child, and sent her away. And she left and wandered in the wilderness of Beer-Sheva.

15 And the water from the skin was finished, and she put the boy under one of the shrubs.

16 And she went and sat down opposite him, about a bow shot away. For she said, Let me not see the death of the boy. And she sat opposite and raised her voice and wept.

17 And Elohim heard the voice of the young boy. And the Messenger of Elohim called to Hagar out of the heavens. And He said to her, What ails you, Hagar? Do not fear, for Elohim has heard the voice of the boy, there where he is.

18 Rise up, lift up the boy and make your hand strong on him, for I will make of him a great nation.

19 And Elohim opened her eyes, and she saw a well of water. And she went

and filled the skin with water, and gave
drink to the young boy.
20 And Elohim was with the boy. And
he grew up. And he lived in the
wilderness and became a great archer.
21 And he lived in the wilderness of
Paran. And his mother took a wife for
him out of the land of Egypt.
22 And it happened at that time
Abimelech and Phicol, the general of
his army, spoke to Abraham, saying,
Elohim is with you in all that you do.
23 And now swear to me here by
Elohim, that you will not lie to me, and
to my son, and to my heir, according to
the kindness which I have sworn to
you. Do to me and to the land in which
you have lived in.
24 And Abraham said, I will swear.
25 And Abraham reproved Abimelech
on account of a well of water which the
slaves of Abimelech had seized.
26 And Abimelech said, I do not
know who has done this thing; and also
you have not told me; even I have not
heard, except today.
27 And Abraham took sheep and oxen
and gave to Abimelech, and both of
them cut a covenant.
28 And Abraham set seven ewe lambs
of the flock by themselves.
29 And Abimelech said to Abraham,
What *are* these seven ewe lambs which
you have set by themselves?
30 And he said, You shall take the
seven ewe lambs from my hand so that
it may become *for* me a witness that I
dug this well.
31 On account of this that place is
called Beer[1] Sheva, because the two of
them swore there.
32 And they cut a covenant in Beer-
Sheva. And Abimelech and Phicol, the
general of his army, rose up; and they
returned to the land of the Philistines.
33 And Abraham planted a tamarisk
tree in Beer-Sheva, and there he called
on the name of YAHWEH El Olam
(*Everlasting)*.
34 And Abraham lived in the land of
the Philistines many days.

Chapter 22

1 And it happened after these things,
The Elohim, testing[2] Abraham said to
him, Abraham! And he said, Behold I
am here.
2 And He said, Now take your son,
Isaac, your only one whom you love,
and go into the land of Moriyah. And
there offer him for a burnt offering on
one of the mountains which I will say to
you.[3] *(2 Chron 3:1)*
3 And Abraham rose up early in the
morning and saddled his donkey, and
he took two *of* his youths with him, and
his son Isaac. And he split wood for a
burnt offering, and rose up and went to
the place which Elohim had said to
him.
4 And on the third day Abraham lifted
up his eyes and saw the place from a
distance.
5 And Abraham said to his young
men, You stay here with the donkey. I
and the boy will go over there that we
may worship and may return to you.[4]

---

1 The Well of the oath, and also means seven; Hebraic wordplay

2 The Hebrew root word here means to lift up, and was a test for others to see. The same root is used in Num 21:8 when Moses was commanded to make a Seraph on a pole to lift up the sin of Israel.

3 What a test to try Abraham but what faith he shows in obedience to YHWH. The Hebrew word for "*only*" son, is "*yachid*" and can only mean "*one"*, whereas the word "*echad*" is a unity word denoting plurality, Gen 2:24, Deut 6:4. Also, YHWH states to Abraham to take his only son, when he also had Ismael as a son, but this shows that Isaac was the son of promise (Gal 3:16).

4 Even though Abraham was fully intent on sacrificing Isaac, he also believed that Yahweh would raise him up, Heb 11:17-19.

6 And Abraham took the wood of the burnt offering and laid it on Isaac, his son; and he took the fire and the knife in his hand. And the two went together.[1]

7 And Isaac spoke to his father Abraham and said, My father. And he said, Behold I am here. And he said, see, the fire and the wood! But where *is* the lamb for a burnt offering?

8 And Abraham said, My son, Elohim will see for Himself, the lamb for a burnt offering. And the two of them went together.

9 And they came to the place which Elohim had said to him. And Abraham built there the altar, and arranged the wood. And he bound his son Isaac and laid him on the altar[2], on the wood.

10 And Abraham stretched out his hand and took the knife to slay his son.

11 And the Messenger of YAHWEH called to him from the heavens and said, Abraham! Abraham! And he said, I am here.

12 And He said, Do not lay your hand on the boy, nor do anything to him. For now I know that you fear Elohim and you have not withheld your son, your only one, from Me.

13 And Abraham lifted up his eyes and looked. And behold! A ram behind him was entangled in a thicket by its horns. And Abraham went and took the ram and offered it for a burnt offering instead of his son.

14 And Abraham called the name of that place YAHWEH Yireh [3]*;* so that it is said until this day, In the mount of YAHWEH it will be seen.

15 And the Messenger of YAHWEH called to Abraham out of the heavens a second time.

16 And He said, I have sworn by Myself, declares YAHWEH, that on account of this thing you have done, and have not withheld your son, your only son,

17 that blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply your seed as the stars of the heavens, and as the sand which *is* on the lip of the sea. And your Seed shall possess the gate of His enemies. *(Ex 32:13, Gen 26:5)*

18 And in your Seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed, because you have listened to My voice. *(Gen 12:2-3)*

19 And Abraham returned to his young men, and they rose up and went together to Beer-Sheva. And Abraham lived at Beer-Sheva.

20 And it happened after these things it was told to Abraham, saying, Behold! Milcah, she also has borne sons to your brother Nahor:

21 Uz, his first-born, Buz, and his brother Kemuel, the father of Aram,

22 and Chesed, and Hazo, and Pildash, and Jidlaph, and Bethuel.

23 And Bethuel fathered Rebekah. Milcah bore these eight to Nahor, the brother of Abraham.

24 And his concubine, whose name was Reumah, she also bore Tebah, and Gaham, and Thahash, and Maachah.

Chapter 23

1 And the life of Sarah *was* a hundred and twenty seven years, the years of the life of Sarah.

2 And Sarah died in Kirjath Arba, it is

[1] Abraham laid the wood on Isaac, and the two went together. This is clearly showing the unity with both the father Abraham and the son Isaac in this sacrifice. It parallels beautifully the Son of Yahweh, Yahshua who also took the wood (cross beam) on His back (Joh 19:16-17) as He also willingly went to the tree of crucifixion to die for the penalty of the sins of the people.

[2] Isaac's age indicates that he had to be willing to be a sacrifice, as he easily could have fought against Abraham in his old age if he desired.

[3] Yahweh Yireh means Yahweh *'Will'* provide.

Hebron, in the land of Canaan. And Abraham went in to mourn for Sarah and to weep for her.

3 And Abraham rose up from before his dead and spoke to the sons of Heth[1], saying,

4 I am an alien and a visitor with you. Give to me a possession among you, so that I may bury my dead from before the eyes.

5 And the sons of Heth answered Abraham, saying to him,

6 Hear us, my master. You are a prince of Elohim among us. Bury your dead in the best of our burying places. Not a man of us will withhold his burying place from you, from burying your dead.

7 And Abraham rose up and bowed himself to the people of the land, to the sons of Heth.

8 And he spoke with them, saying, If it is your desire to bury my dead out of my sight, hear me. Ask for me of Ephron the son of Zohar,

9 that he may give to me the cave of Machpelah which he has, which *is* in the edge of his field. In full silver let him give it to me among you, for a possession of a burying place.

10 And Ephron was sitting among the sons of Heth. And Ephron the Hittite replied to Abraham in the ears of the sons of Heth, to all those entering the gate of his city, saying,

11 No, my master, hear me. I have given the field to you; also the cave that *is* in it. I have given it to you. Before the eyes of the sons of my people I have given it to you. Bury your dead.

12 And Abraham bowed before the people of the land,

13 and spoke to Ephron in the ears of the people of the land, saying, Only if you would hear me. I have given the silver for the field; take *it* from me, that I may bury my dead there.

14 And Ephron answered Abraham, saying to him,

15 My master, hear me; the land is worth four hundred shekels of silver; what *is* that between me and you? And bury your dead.

16 And Abraham listened to Ephron, and Abraham weighed to Ephron the silver of which he had spoken in the ears of the sons of Heth, four hundred silver shekels which passes with the merchant.

17 And was certified the field of Ephron in Machpelah, which was before Mamre, the cave and the field in it, and all the trees in the field, which were in all its borders around it,

18 to Abraham for a purchase before the sons of Heth, with all entering the gate of his city.

19 And after this Abraham buried his wife Sarah at the cave of the field of Machpelah before Mamre; it is Hebron, in the land of Canaan.[2]

20 And the field was certified, and the cave in it, to Abraham for a burial possession from the sons of Heth.

Chapter 24

1 And Abraham was old, going on in days, and YAHWEH had blessed Abraham in all things.

2 And Abraham said to his slave, the oldest in his house, the one who ruled in all that was to him[3], Please put your hand under my thigh.[4]

3 And I will cause you to swear by

[1] The sons of Heth were Hittites (Gen 23:10) and descendents of Ham and Canaan (Gen 10:15).

[2] This cave located in Hebron is still there today with the bones of Abraham and Sarah, Rebecca and Isaac and also Leah and Jacob.

[3] This was Eleazar, (Gen 15:2)

[4] In ancient times this represented the reproductive organ and the symbolism was that any unborn children would avenge the oath if violated.

YAHWEH, Elohim of the heavens and
Elohim of the earth, that you will not
take a wife for my son from the
daughters of the Canaanite, among
whom I dwell.
4 But you shall go to my country and
to my kindred and take a wife for my
son, for Isaac.
5 And the slave said to him, Perhaps
the woman will not be willing to go
after me to this land; shall I indeed
bring back your son into the land from
out of which you came?
6 And Abraham said to him, Take
heed for yourself that you not take my
son back there.
7 YAHWEH, Elohim of the Heavens,
who took me from the house of my
father and from the land of my birth,
and who spoke to me, and who swore to
me, saying, I will give this land to your
Seed; He shall send His Messenger
before you, and you shall take a wife
from there for my son.
8 And if the woman will not be willing
to go after you, then you shall be clear
from this oath of mine; only do not take
my son back there.
9 And the slave put his hand under
the thigh of his master Abraham and
swore to him concerning this thing.
10 And the slave took ten camels from
his master's camels and left. And all his
master's goods were in his hand. And
he rose up and went to Mesopotamia,
to the city of Nahor.
11 And he made the camels kneel
outside the city, by a well of water at
the time of the evening, the time that
women go out to draw.
12 And he said, YAHWEH, Elohim of
my master Abraham, I pray, cause her
to meet before me this day, and show
kindness to my master Abraham.
13 Behold! I *am* standing by the well
of water, and the daughters of *the* men
of the city are coming out to draw
water.
14 And let the girl to whom I shall
speak *this*: Please let down your pitcher
that I may drink; and she will say,
Drink and also I will water your camels;
let it be her You have approved for Your
servant, for Isaac. And by this I shall
know that You have shown kindness to
my master.
15 And it happened before he had
finished speaking. Behold! Rebekah
came out, *she* who was born to Bethuel
the son of Milcah, the wife of Nahor,
the brother of Abraham, *with* her
pitcher on her shoulder.
16 And the girl *was* very good of
form[1], a virgin, a man not having
known her. And she went down to the
well and filled her pitcher and came up.
17 And the slave ran to meet her and
said, Please let me sip a little water
from your pitcher.
18 And she said, Drink, my master.
And she hurried and let down her
pitcher on her hand and gave him *a*
drink.
19 And she finished giving drink to
him. And she said, I also will draw for
your camels until they have finished
drinking.
20 And she hurried and emptied her
pitcher into the trough. And she again
ran to the well to draw, and drew for all
his camels.[2]
21 And watching her, the man kept
silent in order to know if YAHWEH
had prospered his way, or not.
22 And it happened when the camels
had finished drinking, the man took a

---

1 This was not signifying beauty but that she was a functional hard worker.

2 A camel can hold up to about 150 liters of water. There were 10 camels and the traditional bucket would have held 5 liters with each pull from the well. This means that Rebecca pulled the bucket of water from the well about 30 times for each camel or 300 times total. This was why Eleazar had such a test to see how much of a functional hard worker Rebecca truly would have been.

golden ring, its weighing a half shekel, and two bracelets for her hands, ten of gold their weighing.[1]

23 And he said, Whose daughter *are* you? Please tell me, is there room for us to stay in your father's house?

24 And she said to him, I *am* the daughter of Bethuel, the son of Milcah, whom she bore to Nahor.

25 And she said to him, Both straw and fodder *are* plentiful with us, also a room to pass the night.

26 And the man bowed and worshiped YAHWEH.

27 And he said, Blessed *be* YAHWEH, Elohim of my master Abraham, who has not left off His kindness and His truth with my master, I *being* in the way, YAHWEH guided me to the house of the brother of my master.

28 And the girl ran and told these things to the house of her mother.

29 And Rebekah *had* a brother, his name *being* Laban. And Laban ran out to the man, to the fountain.

30 And it happened when he saw the ring, and the bracelets on his sister's hands, and when he heard his sister's words, Rebekah, saying, So the man spoke to me, then he came to the man and saw him standing by the camels at the fountain.

31 And he said, Come in, blessed of YAHWEH! Why are you standing outside? I have prepared the house and a place for the camels.

32 And the man came into the house. And he unloaded the camels and gave straw and fodder to the camels, and water to wash his feet and the feet of the men who were with him.

33 And *food* was set before him to eat, but he said, I will not eat until I have spoken my message. And he said, Speak.

34 And he said, I *am* the slave of Abraham.

35 And YAHWEH has blessed my master much, and he is great. And He has given to him flocks and herds, and silver and gold, and male slaves and slave-girls, and camels and donkeys.

36 And my master's wife bore a son to my master when she was old, and he has given to him all that *is* his.

37 And my master caused me to swear, saying, You shall not take a wife for my son from the daughters of the Canaanite, in whose land I live.

38 But you shall go to the house of my father and to my family and you shall take a wife for my son.

39 And I said to my master, Perhaps the woman will not go after me.

40 And he said to me, YAHWEH, before whom I walk, will send His Messenger with you and prosper your way. And you shall take a wife for my son from my family, from my father's house.

41 Then you shall be released from my oath, when you have come to my family, and if they do not give *one* to you; then you shall be released from my oath.

42 And today I came to the well. And I said, YAHWEH, Elohim of my master Abraham, I pray, if You will, prosper the way in which I am about to go.

43 Behold! I stand at the well of water, and when the virgin comes out to draw water, and I say to her, Please let me drink a little water from your pitcher,

44 and she says to me, Both you drink and also I will draw for your camels, may she be the woman whom YAHWEH has approved for my master's son.

45 Before I had finished speaking within my heart, even behold, Rebekah was coming out, her pitcher on her shoulder. And she went down to the

[1] Clearly, she passed the test.

well and drew. And I said to her, Please let me drink.

46 And she hurried and let down her pitcher from her and said, Drink, and I also will water your camels. And I drank, and also she watered the camels.

47 And I asked her and I said, Whose daughter *are* you? And she said, The *daughter* of Bethuel the son of Nahor, whom Milcah bore to him. And I put the ring on her nose[1], and the bracelets on her hands.

48 And I bowed and worshiped YAHWEH, and I blessed YAHWEH, Elohim of my master Abraham, who had guided me in the true way, to take for his son the daughter of the brother of my master.

49 And now, if you are going to do kindness and truth with my master, tell me. And if not, tell me so that I may turn to the right or to the left.

50 And Laban and Bethuel answered and said, The thing has come from YAHWEH; we are not able to speak to you good or evil.

51 Behold! Rebekah *is* before you, take *her* and go. And let her become the wife of the son of your master, as YAHWEH has spoken.

52 And it happened when the slave of Abraham heard their words, he bowed himself to the earth to YAHWEH.

53 And the slave brought out vessels of silver and vessels of gold and garments, and he gave to Rebekah. And he gave precious things to her brother and to her mother.

54 And they ate and drank, he and the men who were with him; and they stayed the night. And they rose up in the morning, and he said, Send me away to my master.

55 And her brother and her mother said, Let the girl stay with us, perhaps ten days. Afterwards she may go.

56 And he said to them, Do not delay me, for YAHWEH has prospered my way. Send me away that I may go to my master.

57 And they said, we will call the girl and inquire of her mouth.

58 And they called Rebekah and said to her, Will you go with this man? And she said, I will go.

59 And they sent away their sister Rebekah, and her nurse, and Abraham's slave and his men.

60 And they blessed Rebekah, and said to her, Our sister, may you become myriads of thousands, and may your seed possess the gate of the *ones* hating them.

61 And Rebekah and her maidens rose up, and they rode on the camels and went after the man. And the slave took Rebekah and went.

62 And Isaac had come from the gate Lahai-Roi [2]. And he was dwelling in the land of the Negev.

63 And Isaac had gone out to meditate in the field as *it* turned evening. And he raised his eyes and looked. And behold, camels were coming.

64 And Rebekah lifted her eyes and she saw Isaac. And she dismounted from the camel.

65 And she said to the slave, Who *is* this man walking in the field to meet us? And the slave said, It *is* my master. And she took the veil and covered herself.

66 And the slave told Isaac all the things that he had done.

67 And Isaac brought her into the tent of his mother Sarah. And he took Rebekah, and she became his wife; and he loved her. And Isaac was comforted after his mother.

---

1 In ancient days a ring on the nose was a sign of possession, but they were also used as amulets for witchcraft.

2 The Well of the Living One, My Seer

Chapter 25

1 And Abraham added and took a wife, and her name *was* Keturah.

2 And she bore to him Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah.

3 And Jokshan fathered Sheba and Dedan. And the sons of Dedan were Asshurim, and Letushim and Leummim.

4 And the sons of Midian: Ephah, and Epher, and Hanoch, and Abida, and Eldaah. All these *were* the sons of Keturah.

5 And Abraham gave all that was his to Isaac.

6 And to the sons of the concubines who were to Abraham, Abraham gave gifts, and sent them away eastward, from his son Isaac, while he was still alive to an eastern land.

7 And these *are* the days of the years of the life of Abraham, which he lived, one hundred seventy five years.

8 And Abraham breathed out and died in a good old age, aged and satisfied, and was gathered to his people.

9 And his sons Isaac and Ishmael buried him at the cave of Machpelah, at the field of Ephron the son of Zohar the Hittite which *is* before Mamre,

10 the field which Abraham bought from the sons of Heth. Abraham and his wife Sarah were buried there.

11 And it happened after the death of Abraham, Elohim blessed his son Isaac. And Isaac lived by The Well of the Living One, My Seer.

12 And these *are* the generations of Ishmael, the son of Abraham, whom Hagar the Egyptian, the slave-girl of Sarah, bore to Abraham.

13 And these *are* the names of the sons of Ishmael, by their names, according to their generations: the first-born of Ishmael *was* Nebajoth; then Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam,

14 and Mishma, and Dumah, and Massa,

15 Hadad, and Tema, and Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah.

16 These *were* the sons of Ishmael, and these their names in their settlements and in their camps, twelve chiefs according to their nations.

17 And these *were* the years of the life of Ishmael, a hundred thirty seven years. And he breathed out and died, and was gathered to his people.

18 And they lived from Havilah to Shur, which *is* facing Egypt *as* you come toward Assyria; he settled facing all his brothers.

19 And these *were* the generations of Isaac, the son of Abraham: Abraham fathered Isaac.

20 And Isaac was a son of forty years when he took Rebekah, the daughter of Bethuel the Aramean from Padan-Aram, the sister of Laban the Aramean, to him for a wife.

21 And Isaac prayed to YAHWEH on behalf of his wife for she *was* barren. And YAHWEH was entreated for him, and his wife Rebekah conceived.

22 And the sons struggled together within her. And she said, If *this is* right, why am I this way? And she went to inquire of YAHWEH.

23 And YAHWEH said to her, Two nations *are* in your womb; even two peoples shall break from your body. And one people shall be stronger than the other people; and the elder shall serve the younger.

24 And her days were fulfilled to bear. And behold! Twins *were* in her womb.

25 And the first came out, all of him red like a hairy robe; and they called his name Esau.

26 And afterward his brother came out, and his hand *was* holding to the

heel of Esau; and his name *was* called Jacob. And Isaac *was* a son of sixty years when she bore them.[1]
27 And the boys grew up. And Esau became a man knowing hunting, a man of the field. And Jacob *was* a simple man, living in tents.
28 And Isaac loved Esau, for game was in his mouth. And Rebekah loved Jacob.
29 And Jacob boiled soup. And Esau came from the field, and he *was* faint.
30 And Esau said to Jacob, Please let me eat of the red, this red *soup*, for I am faint. On account of this his name is called Edom.[2]
31 And Jacob said, Sell me your birthright today[3]. *(Deut 21:17)*
32 And Esau said, Behold, I *am* going to die, and what *good is* this, a birthright to me?
33 And Jacob said, Swear to me today. And he swore to him and sold his birthright to Jacob.
34 And Jacob gave bread and soup of lentils to Esau. And he ate and drank, and rose up and left. And Esau despised the birthright[4]. *(Heb 12:16, Mal 1:2-3)*

Chapter 26

1 And a famine was in the land besides the famine in the days of Abraham. And Isaac went to Abimelech king of the Philistines, to Gerar.
2 And YAHWEH appeared to him and said, Do not go down into Egypt; but dwell in the land which I shall say to you.
3 Stay in this land, and I will be with you and bless you, for to you and to your seed I will give all these lands. And I will cause to rise My oath which I swore to your father Abraham.
4 And I will increase your seed like the stars of the heavens, and I will give to your seed all these lands. And all the nations of the earth shall bless themselves in your Seed,
5 because Abraham listened to My voice and heeded My charge, My commandments, My statutes, and My Torah.[5]
6 And Isaac lived in Gerar.
7 And the men of the place asked about his wife. And he said, She *is* my sister, for he was afraid to say, My wife, lest the men of the place kill me on account of Rebekah, for she *was* beautiful of form.
8 And it happened when his days were many to him there, Abimelech king of the Philistines looked through the window and saw; and, behold, Isaac *was* sporting with his wife Rebekah.
9 And Abimelech called Isaac and said, See, surely she *is* your wife, and how have you said, She *is* my sister? And Isaac said to him, Because I said, lest I die on account of her.
10 And Abimelech said, What *is* this you have done to us? One of the people had in a little lain with your wife, and you would have brought on us guilt.
11 And Abimelech commanded all the

1 Isaac was 40 when he married Rebecca (verse 20) and sixty when Jacob was born).

2 Edom comes from the word "*adom*" which means red after Adam who came from the red earth.

3 Jacob realized the great blessing of the birthright promise.

4 Esau despised the birthright because it rightfully belonged to his brother Jacob and he wanted the blessing from it, not because he had true remorse or repentance for the grave sin he committed by selling it.

5 The reason stated here why Abraham was blessed to be the heir of the everlasting covenant was that in faith he kept the Torah and commandments of YAHWEH. This proves that the Torah was present here at the beginning of the covenant and was not added at Mount Sinai 430 yrs after the covenant was made with Abraham. Only the Levitical priesthood was added later, see note on Gal 3:17, 19.

people, saying, Anyone touching this man and his wife surely shall die.

12 And Isaac sowed in that land. And a hundredfold *was* found in that year, and YAHWEH blessed him.

13 And the man grew great, and he went on, going on to be great, until he became exceedingly great.

14 And possessions of flocks and possessions of herds, and many slaves were his. And the Philistines envied him.

15 And all the wells which the slaves of his father dug in the days of his father Abraham, the Philistines had stopped them and filled them with dirt.

16 And Abimelech said to Isaac, Go from us, for you are stronger than we.

17 And Isaac went from there and camped in Gerar Valley, and lived there.

18 And Isaac returned and dug the wells of water which they dug in the days of his father Abraham; and the Philistines had stopped them after the death of Abraham. And he called names to them like the names which his father had called them.

19 And Isaac's slaves dug in the torrent bed, and they found there a well of flowing water.

20 And the shepherds of Gerar[1] fought with the shepherds of Isaac, saying, The water *is* ours; and he called the name of the well, Contention, for they had contended with him.

21 And they dug another well, and *they* also fought over it; and he called its name, Opposition.

22 And he moved from there and dug another well, and they did not fight over it; and he called its name, Broad Places. And he said, For now YAHWEH has broadened for us and we shall be fruitful in the land.

23 And he went from there to Beer-Sheba.

24 And YAHWEH appeared to him in the same night, and said, I *am* the Elohim of your father Abraham; do not fear, for I *am* with you; and I will bless you and increase your seed, because of My servant Abraham.

25 And he built an altar there and called on the name of YAHWEH. And he pitched his tent there. And the slaves of Isaac dug a well there.

26 And Abimelech went to him from Gerar, and his aide Ahuzzath, and Phicol the general of his army.

27 And Isaac said to them, Why have you come to me, since you hate me and sent me away from you?

28 And they said, Since we plainly have seen that YAHWEH has been with you, and we have said, let there be an oath now between us, between us and you, and let us cut a covenant with you,

29 whether you will do with us evil, as we did not touch you, and as we did only good with you, and we sent you away in peace you now *being* blessed of YAHWEH.

30 And he made a feast for them, and they ate and drank.

31 And they started up early at dawn, and each swore to his brother. And Isaac sent them away, and they left him in peace.

32 And it happened on that day Isaac's slaves came and told him about the well which they had dug, and said to him, We found water.

33 And he called it Sheba; so the name of the city *is* The Well of Sheba until this day.

34 And Esau was a son of forty years. And he took a wife, Judith, the daughter of Beeri the Hittite; also Basemath the daughter of Elon the Hittite.

1 Garar is located about 10 miles south of Gaza.

35 And they were a grief of spirit to Isaac and to Rebecca.

Chapter 27

1 And it happened when Isaac *was* old and his eyes were dim for seeing, he called his elder son Esau and said to him, My son! And he said to him, I am here.

2 And he said, Behold! Now, I am old; I do not know the day of my death.

3 And now please lift up your weapons, your quiver and your bow, and go to the field and hunt game for me.

4 And make for me savory meat, such as I love, and bring to me, and I will eat; so that my soul may bless you before I die.

5 And Rebekah heard when Isaac spoke to his son Esau. And Esau went to the field to hunt game, to bring *it* in.

6 And Rebekah spoke to her son Jacob, saying, Behold, I heard your father speaking to your brother Esau saying,

7 Bring game to me and make delicious meat that I may eat, that I may bless you before YAHWEH before my death.

8 And now my son hear my voice, that which I command you.

9 Go now to the flock and bring me from there two good kids of the goats. And I will make them into delicious things for your father which he loves;

10 and you shall bring it to your father and let him eat, so that he may bless you before his death.

11 And Jacob said to his mother Rebekah, Behold, my brother Esau *is* a hairy man, and I a smooth man.

12 Perhaps my father will feel me, and I shall be like a deceiver in his eyes, and I shall bring a curse on me, and not blessing.

13 And his mother said to him, Your curse *be* on me, my son; only listen to my voice and go, take for me.

14 And he went and took and came to his mother. And his mother made savory meat, such as his father loved.

15 And Rebekah took the clothing of her elder son Esau, the costly ones which were with her in the house. And she dressed her younger son Jacob;

16 and she put the skins of the kids of the goats on his hands, and on the smoothness of his neck.

17 And she put the savory meat and the bread which she had made in the hand of her son Jacob.

18 And he went in to his father and said, My father. And he said, I am here. Who *are* you, my son?

19 And Jacob said to his father, I *am* your first-born[1], Esau. I have done as you said to me. Rise up now, sit and eat of my game, so that your soul may bless me.

20 And Isaac said to his son, How then have you so *quickly* found *it*, my son? And he said, Because YAHWEH your Elohim made it come to me.

21 And Isaac said to Jacob, Come near now and let me feel you, whether then you *are* my son Esau, or not.

22 And Jacob came near to his father Isaac. And he felt him, and he said, The voice *is* the voice of Jacob and the hands *are* Esau's hands.

23 And he did not know him, because his hands were like the hairy hands of his brother Esau. And he blessed him.

24 And he said, *Are* you then my son Esau? And he said, I *am*.

25 And he said, Bring to me and let me eat of my son's game, so that my soul may bless you. And he came near to him; and he took and he ate. And he came to him, and he drank wine.

---

[1] Although Jacob lied about being Esau, he did not lie about being the firstborn as he rightfully bought the right from Esau earlier.

26 And his father Isaac said to him,
Now come and kiss me, my son.
27 And he came near and kissed him.
And he smelled the smell of his clothes.
And *he* blessed him, and said, See, the
smell of my son *is* as the smell of a field
which YAHWEH has blessed.
28 And may Elohim give you of the
dew of the heavens, and of the fatness
of the earth, and much grain and wine.
29 May the nations serve you and
peoples bow to you; be a ruler to your
brothers, and may your mother's sons
bow to you, and cursed *be* those who
curse you, and blessed *be* those who
bless you.
30 And it happened that when Isaac
had made an end of blessing Jacob,
then it came about that Jacob had
hardly left his father Isaac, and his
brother Esau came in from his hunting.
31 And he also made savory meat and
came to his father. And he said to his
father, Let my father rise and eat from
the game of his son, so that your soul
may bless me.
32 And his father Isaac said to him,
Who *are* you? And he said, I *am* your
son, your first-born, Esau.
33 And Isaac was terrified with a very
great anxiety. And he said, Who then
was the one who hunted game and
came to me; and I ate from *it* all before
you came; and I blessed him? Yea, he
shall be blessed.
34 When Esau heard the words of his
father he cried out a great and very
bitter cry. And he said to his father,
Bless me, me also, my father.
35 And he said, Your brother came
with deceit and took your blessing.
36 And he said, *It is* because his name
is called Jacob, and this twice he took
me by the heel and defrauded me; he
took my birthright and, behold, now he
has taken my blessing. And he said,
Have you not reserved a blessing for
me?
37 And Isaac answered and said to
Esau, Behold, I have set him over you
as a ruler, and I have given him all his
brothers for servants; I have girded him
with grain and wine. And what then can
I do for you, my son?
38 And Esau said to his father, Is one
blessing *left* to you, my father? Bless
me also, my father. And Esau lifted up
his voice and wept.
39 And his father Isaac answered and
said to him, Behold, your dwelling shall
be from the fat of the earth and from
the dew of the heavens above;
40 and you shall live by your sword,
and you shall serve your brother; and
when it shall be that you have the
dominion, you shall break his yoke
from your neck.
41 And Esau hated Jacob because of
the blessing with which his father had
blessed him. And Esau said in his heart,
The days of mourning *for* my father are
near; then I will kill my brother Jacob.
42 And the words of her older son
Esau were told to Rebekah. And she
sent and called her younger son Jacob.
And she said to him, Behold! Your
brother Esau is going to ease himself on
you, to kill you.
43 And now, my son, listen to my
voice, and rise, flee for yourself to my
brother Laban, to Haran.
44 And stay with him some days until
your brother's fury turns away,
45 until your brother's anger turns
back from you, and he forgets what you
have done to him. And I will send and
take you from there. Why should I also
be bereaved of two of you *in* one day?
46 And Rebekah said to Isaac, I am
weary of my life from the daughters of
Heth. If Jacob takes a wife from the
daughters of Heth, like these from the
daughters of the land, what is *my* life to
me?

Chapter 28

1 And Isaac called Jacob. And he blessed him and commanded him, and said to him, You shall not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan.

2 Go up, go to Padan-Aram, to the house of Bethuel your mother's father. And take a wife for yourself from there, from the daughters of Laban the brother of your mother.

3 And may El Shaddai bless you and make you fruitful, and multiple you; and may you become an assembly of people.

4 And may He give to you the blessing of Abraham, to you and to your seed with you, for you to possess the land of your travels, which Elohim gave to Abraham.

5 And Isaac sent away Jacob. And he went to Padan-Aram, to Laban, the son of Bethuel the Aramean, brother of Rebekah, the mother of Jacob and Esau.

6 And Esau saw that Isaac had blessed Jacob, and had sent him away to Padan-Aram to take a wife for himself from there. In his blessing he had commanded him, saying, You shall not take a wife from the daughters of Canaan;

7 and that Jacob listened to his father and his mother, and went to Padan-Aram.

8 And when Esau saw that the daughters of Canaan were evil in the eyes of his father Isaac,

9 then Esau went to Ishmael and took Mahalath the daughter of Ishmael, the son of Abraham, Nebajoth's sister. To his wives he *added her* for his wife.[1]

10 And Jacob went out from Beer-Sheba and went toward Haran.

11 And he came on a place and stayed the night there, for the sun had gone. And he took stones of the place and placed *them* at his head; and he lay down in that place.

12 And he dreamed. And, behold, a staircase was placed on the earth, its top reaching to the heavens.[2] And, behold, the messengers of Elohim *were* going up and going down on it!

13 And, behold, YAHWEH stood above it and said, I *am* YAHWEH the Elohim of your father Abraham, and the Elohim of Isaac; the land on which you are lying, I will give it to you and to your seed.

14 And your seed shall be as the dust of the earth, and you shall spread to the west and to the east and to the north and to the south; and all the families of the earth shall be blessed in you and in your Seed. *(Gen 12:3, Ro 4:13)*

15 And, behold, I *will be* with you and will guard you in every *place* in which you may go, and will bring you back to this land; for I will not forsake you until I have surely done that which I have spoken to you.

16 And Jacob awakened from his sleep, and said, Surely YAHWEH is in this place, and I did not know.

17 And he was afraid, and said, How fearful *is* this place! This *is* nothing except the house of Elohim, and this *is* the door to Heaven.

18 And Jacob started up early in the morning and took the stone which he had placed at his head, and *he* placed it *as* a pillar; and he poured oil on the top of it.

19 And he called the name of that place, Beit-El [3]. And yet the name of the city *was* at first Luz.

20 And Jacob vowed a vow, saying, If Elohim is with me and keeps me in this

---

1 Esau now compounds the sin of selling his birthright by intermarrying with the seed of Ismael, who was born from the handmaid Hagar, and was not the seed of promise.

2 Amos 9:6

3 Bethel means "*The House of Elohim*".

way which I *am* going, and gives to me
bread to eat and clothing to wear,
21 and I return in peace to the house
of my father, then YAHWEH shall be
my Elohim,
22 and this sandstone which I have
placed as a *memorial* pillar shall
become the house of Elohim; and all
which You shall give to me, I will tithe
the tenth to You[1]. *(Pr 3:9, Mal 3:8-10)*

Chapter 29

1 And Jacob lifted his feet and went to
the land of the sons of the east.
2 And he looked, and, behold, a well
in the field. And, behold, three flocks of
sheep *were* lying by it; for from that
well they watered the flocks, and the
stone on the mouth of the well *was*
great.
3 And all the flocks were usually
gathered there, and they rolled the
stone off the mouth of the well and
watered the sheep, and replaced the
stone on the mouth of the well, to its
place.
4 And Jacob said to them, My
brothers, from where *are* you? And
they said, We *are* from Haran.
5 And he said to them, Do you know
Laban the son of Nahor? And they said,
We know *him*.
6 And he said to them, Well-being to
him? And they said, Well-being. And,
behold, his daughter Rachel is coming
with the sheep.
7 And he said, Behold, the day *is* still
high; *it is* not time to gather the
livestock. Water the sheep and go feed
them.
8 And they said, We are not able until
all the flocks are gathered and they roll
the stone from the mouth of the well;
then we water the sheep.
9 He still *was* speaking with them,
and Rachel came with the sheep which
were her father's; for she *was* feeding
them.
10 And it happened when Jacob saw
Rachel the daughter of Laban, brother
to his mother, and the sheep of Laban,
his mother's brother, Jacob came near
and rolled the stone from the mouth of
the well and watered the sheep of
Laban, his mother's brother.
11 And Jacob kissed Rachel and lifted
up his voice and wept.
12 And Jacob told Rachel that he *was*
her father's brother, and that he *was*
the son of Rebekah. And she ran and
told her father.
13 And it happened when Laban
heard the report of Jacob, his sister's
son, he ran to meet him and embraced
him and kissed him. And he took him
to his house. And he told Laban all
these things.
14 And Laban said to him, Truly you
are my bone and my flesh. And he lived
with him a month of days.
15 And Laban said to Jacob, *are* you
not my brother? And should you serve
me for nothing? Tell me, what *shall be*
your wages?
16 And Laban *had* two daughters, the
name of the older, Leah, and the name
of the younger, Rachel.
17 And the eyes of Leah were weak,
and Rachel was beautiful of form and
beautiful of appearance.
18 And Jacob loved Rachel, and said,
I will serve you seven years for Rachel,
your younger daughter.
19 And Laban said, *It is* better for me
to give her to you *than* to give her to
another man; live with me.
20 And Jacob served seven years for
Rachel; and they were in his eyes like a
few days, in his love for her.
21 And Jacob said to Laban, Give my
wife, for my days are completed. And
let me go in to her.

[1] The vow of tithing came long before the Torah was given to Moses on Mount Sinai.

22 And Laban gathered all the men of
the place and made a feast.
23 And it happened in the evening, he
took his daughter Leah and brought her
to him; and he went in to her.
24 And Laban gave to her Zilpah, his
slave-girl, to his daughter Leah as a
slave.
25 And it happened in the morning;
behold! She *was* Leah. And he said to
Laban, What have you done to me? *Did*
I not serve with you for Rachel? And
why have you tricked me?
26 And Laban said, It is not done this
way in our place, to give the younger
before the first-born.
27 Fulfill the week of this one and we
will also give you this *other* one, for the
service which you will serve with me,
yet another seven years.
28 And Jacob did so, and he fulfilled
the week of this one, and he gave to him
his daughter Rachel, to him for a wife.
29 And Laban gave his slave-girl
Bilhah to his daughter Rachel, to her
for a slave-girl.
30 And he also went in to Rachel, and
he also loved Rachel more than Leah.
And he served with him yet another
seven years.
31 And YAHWEH saw that Leah *was*
hated. And He opened her womb, but
Rachel *was* barren.
32 And Leah conceived and bore a
son. And she called his name Reuben;
for she said, Surely YAHWEH has
looked on my affliction, for now my
husband will love me.
33 And she conceived again and bore
a son, and said, Surely YAHWEH has
heard that I am hated and has given
this one to me also. And she called his
name Simeon.
34 And she conceived again and bore
a son. And she said, Now, this time my
husband will be joined to me, because I
have borne to him three sons. So his
name was called Levi.
35 And she conceived again and bore
a son. And she said, This time I will
praise YAHWEH. So she called his
name Judah. And she ceased from
bearing.

Chapter 30

1 And Rachel saw that she did not
bear to Jacob, and Rachel was jealous
of her sister. And she said to Jacob,
Give me sons; and if there *is* none, I
shall die.
2 And Jacob's anger glowed against
Rachel, and he said, Am I in Elohim's
place, who has kept you from the fruit
of the womb?
3 And she said, Behold my servant
Bilhah! Go in to her and let her bear on
my knees; yea, let me be built up from
her, me also.
4 And she gave her slave-girl Bilhah
to him for a wife. And Jacob went in to
her.
5 And Bilhah conceived and bore a
son to Jacob.
6 And Rachel said, Elohim has judged
and has also heard my voice, and has
given me a son. So she called his name
Dan.
7 And Bilhah, Rachel's slave-girl,
conceived again, and bore a second son
to Jacob.
8 And Rachel said, With struggles of
Elohim I have struggled with my sister;
yea, I have prevailed. And she called his
name Naphtali.
9 And Leah saw that she had ceased
from bearing. And she took Zilpah, her
slave-girl, and gave her to Jacob for a
wife.
10 And Leah's slave-girl Zilpah bore a
son to Jacob.
11 And Leah said, With fortune. And
she called his name Gad.
12 And Zilpah, Leah's slave-girl, bore
a second son to Jacob.
13 And Leah said, In my happiness;

for the daughters shall call me happy.
And she called his name Asher.
14 And in the days of wheat harvest
Reuben went out and found mandrakes
in the field. And he brought them to his
mother Leah. And Rachel said to Leah,
Please give to me from the mandrakes
of your son.
15 And she said to her, *is* your taking
my husband a little *thing*? Will you also
take my son's love-apples? And Rachel
said, So he shall be with you tonight,
for your son's mandrakes.
16 And Jacob came in from the field
at evening. And Leah went out to meet
him. And she said, You must come in to
me, for surely I have hired you with my
son's mandrakes. And he lay with her
during that night.
17 And Elohim listened to Leah, and
she conceived and bore a fifth son to
Jacob.
18 And Leah said, Elohim has given
my hire; I gave my slave-girl to my
husband. And she called his name
Issachar.
19 And Leah conceived again and
bore a sixth son to Jacob.
20 And Leah said, Elohim has given
me a good present. This time my
husband will live with me, because I
have borne six sons to him. And she
called his name Zebulun.
21 And afterwards she bore a
daughter and called her name Dinah.
22 And Elohim remembered Rachel;
and Elohim listened to her and opened
her womb.
23 And she conceived and bore a son.
And she said, Elohim has taken away
my reproach.
24 And she called his name Joseph,
saying, May YAHWEH add to me
another son.
25 And it happened when Rachel had
borne Joseph, Jacob said to Laban,
Send me away so I may go to my own
place and to my land.
26 Give my wives and my children,
for whom I have served you, and let me
go. For you know my service with
which I have served you.
27 And Laban said to him, Please, if I
have found favor in your eyes, stay. I
have seen omens, also YAHWEH has
blessed me because of you.
28 And he said, Set your wages on me
and I will give.
29 And he said to him, You know how
I have served you and what your
livestock has become with me.
30 For little *was* yours before my
presence, and it has spread out into a
host. And YAHWEH has blessed you at
my foot. And now when shall I work for
my house, I also?
31 And he said, What shall I give you?
And Jacob said, You shall not give me
anything. If you will do this thing for
me, I will remain. I will feed your flock
and keep it.
32 I will pass among all your flock
today, taking from there every speckled
and spotted sheep, and every black
sheep among the lambs, also the
spotted and speckled goats; these shall
be my wages.
33 And my righteousness shall testify
for me in the day to come. When you
come in about my wages, before your
face everyone that *is* not speckled and
spotted among the goats, and black
among the lambs, it is stolen with me.
34 And Laban said, Yes, if it be so let
it be as you speak.
35 And he turned out in that day all
the striped and spotted lambs, and all
the speckled and spotted goats, every
one which had white, and every black
one among the lambs. And he gave
them into the hands of his sons.
36 And he put three days journey
between himself and Jacob. And Jacob
was feeding the remaining flocks of
Laban.
37 And Jacob took for himself rods of

a fresh white popular tree, and the almond and plane tree. And he peeled white stripes in them, laying bare the white on the rods.

38 And he set the rods which he had peeled by the troughs, by the water troughs where the flocks came to drink, across from the flocks. And they were in heat when they came to drink.

39 And the flocks were in heat before the rods and bore striped, speckled and spotted *offspring*.

40 And Jacob separated the lambs, and he set the faces of the flock toward the striped, and every black one in the flocks of Laban. And he put his own droves by themselves, and did not put them with the flock of Laban.

41 And it happened that whenever the strong flocks conceived, Jacob placed the rods before the eyes of the flocks, before the troughs, that they might conceive by the rods.

42 And the flocks being feeble, he did not set *them*. And usually it happened that the weak *were* for Laban, and the strong for Jacob.

43 And the man increased very much, and many flocks *were* his, and slave-girls, and male slaves, and camels and donkeys.

Chapter 31

1 And he heard the words of the sons of Laban, saying, Jacob has taken away all that *was* to our father, and from that which *was* to our father he has gotten all this wealth.

2 And Jacob saw the face of Laban, and, behold, it was not toward him as before.

3 And YAHWEH said to Jacob, Go back to the land of your fathers and to your kindred. And I will be with you.

4 And Jacob sent and called for Rachel and for Leah to come to the field, to his flocks.

5 And he said to them, I see your father's face, that it *is* not toward me as before. But the Elohim of my father has been with me.

6 And you know that with all my power I have served your father.

7 And your father has cheated me and has changed my wages ten times. And Elohim has not let him do evil to me.

8 And if he said this: The speckled shall be your wages, then all the flocks bore speckled. And if he said this, The striped shall be your wages, then all the flocks bore striped.

9 And Elohim has taken away the livestock of your father and has given to me.

10 And it happened at the time the flock was in heat, I lifted up my eyes and saw in a dream: And behold! The rams leaping on the flock were striped, speckled, and spotted.

11 And the Messenger of Elohim spoke to me in a dream, Jacob! And I said, I am here.

12 And He said, Lift up your eyes and see all the rams leaping on the flock; *they are* striped, speckled and spotted. For I have seen all that Laban is doing to you.

13 I *am* the El of Bethel, there where you anointed the pillar, where you vowed a vow to Me. Now rise up; go out of this land and go back to the land of your kindred.

14 And Rachel and Leah answered and said to him, *Is there* yet to us a portion and an inheritance in the house of our father?

15 Are we not counted strangers by him. For he has sold us, and selling he has sold *us* for silver.

16 For all the wealth which Elohim has taken from our father, it *is* for us and for our sons. And now all that which Elohim has said to you, do.

17 And Jacob arose and set his sons and his wives on camels.

18 And he drove all the livestock, and *he took* all his goods which he had gotten, livestock of his property which he had gotten in Padan-Aram, to come to his father Isaac, to the land of Canaan.

19 And Laban went to shear his sheep. And Rachel stole the terafeen [1] idols which were her father's.

20 And Jacob deceived the heart of Laban the Syrian, for he did not tell him that he *was* about to flee.

21 And he and all that *was* to him fled. And he rose up and crossed the River and set his face to Mount Gilead.

22 And on the third day Laban was told that Jacob had fled.

23 And he took his brothers with him and pursued him, seven days journey. And he overtook him in the Mountain of Gilead.

24 And Elohim came to Laban the Syrian in a dream of the night, and said to him, Watch out for yourself, that you not speak with Jacob from good to evil.

25 And Laban overtook Jacob. And Jacob had pitched his tent at the Mount. And Laban with his brothers had pitched at Mount Gilead.

26 And Laban said to Jacob, What have you done? And you have deceived my heart and have taken my daughters like captives of the sword.

27 Why did you hide so as to flee, and have deceived me and have not told me. And I would have sent you away with rejoicing and with music, with tabret and with harp.

28 And you have not let me kiss my sons and my daughters. Now you have been foolish to do *this*.

29 It is in the power of my hand to do you harm. But the Elohim of your fathers spoke to me last night, saying, Watch out for yourself that you do not speak with Jacob from good to evil.

30 And now surely you have gone because you have longed after your father's house. Why have you stolen my gods?

31 And Jacob answered and said to Laban, Because I *was* afraid. For I said, Lest by force you take your daughters from me.

32 With whomever you find your gods, he shall not live before our brothers here.[2] See for yourself what *is* with me, and take *it* to you. For Jacob did not know that Rachel had stolen them.

33 And Laban went into Jacob's tent and into Leah's tent, and into the tent of the two slave-girls; and he did not find. And he went out of Leah's tent and came into Rachel's tent.

34 And Rachel had taken the household idols and put them into the camel's saddle; and she sat on them. And Laban felt around all the tent, but did not find.

35 And she said to her father, Let no anger be in the eyes of my master, for I am not able to rise before your face, for the way of women is to me. And he searched for and did not find the household idols.

36 And Jacob was angry, and he argued with Laban. And Jacob answered and said to Laban, What *is* my transgression; what is my sin that you have hotly pursued me?

37 For you have felt around all my articles; what have you found from all the articles of your house? Set it here before my brothers and your brothers and let them decide between the two of us.

38 Now I *was* with you twenty years. Your ewes and your she-goats have not failed to bear, and I have not eaten the rams of your flock.

39 I did not bring to you the mangled; I replaced it. From my hand

---

[1] A terafeen was a household idol

[2] Rachel who stole the idol (vs 19) died later in chapter 35:18-19 according to this word.

you exacted it, that stolen *by* day and that stolen by night.

40 I was there; by day the heat consumed me, and the cold by night. And my sleep fled from my eyes.

41 Now I have been twenty years in your house; I served you fourteen years for your two daughters and six years for your flock. And you have changed my wages ten times.

42 Except the Elohim of my father, the Elohim of Abraham and the Fear of Isaac, had been for me, truly now you would have sent me away empty. Elohim has seen my affliction and the toil of my palm, and last night He judged.

43 And Laban answered and said to Jacob, The daughters *are* my daughters and the sons my sons. And the flocks *are* my flocks; yea, all which you see, it *is* mine and my daughters'. What can I do to these today, or to their sons whom they have borne?

44 And now come, let us cut a covenant, you and me; and let it be a witness between you and me.

45 And Jacob took a stone and set it up as a memorial.

46 And Jacob said to his brothers, Gather stones. And they took stones and they made a heap and they ate there upon the heap.

47 And Laban called it, Heap of the Testimony. And Jacob called it in Hebrew, Galeed [1].

48 And Laban said, This heap *is* a witness between you and between me today; so he called its name Galeed (*Heap of Testimony*);

49 also, Mitzpah [2]; for he said, May YAHWEH watch between you and me, for we are hidden, when we are out of sight, each from his neighbor.

50 If you will *not* afflict my daughters, and if you will *not* take wives above my daughters, no man *is* with us. Behold! Elohim *is* a witness between you and me.

51 And Laban said to Jacob, Behold this heap, and behold the pillar which I have set between you and me.

52 This heap *is* a witness, and the pillar *is* a testimony. As for me, I will not pass over this heap to you; and as for you, you will not pass over this heap and this pillar for evil to me.

53 The Elohim of Abraham, the Elohim of Nahor, the Elohim of their father, let judge between us. And Jacob swore by the Fear of his father Isaac.

54 And Jacob sacrificed a sacrifice on the mountain, and called his brothers to eat bread. And they ate bread and lodged on the mountain.

55 And Laban rose up early in the morning and kissed his sons and his daughters and blessed them. And Laban went away and returned to his own place.

Chapter 32

1 And Jacob went on his way, and the cherubs of Elohim met him.

2 And when he saw them, Jacob said, This *is* the camp of Elohim. And he called the name of that place, Mahanaim [3].

3 And Jacob sent messengers before his face to his brother Esau, to the land of Seir, the field of Edom.

4 And he commanded them, saying, You shall say to my master, to Esau: Your servant Jacob says this: I have sojourned with Laban and remained until now.

5 And it is mine *to have* oxen, and donkeys, flocks, and slaves and slave-girls. And I have sent to tell my master, to find favor in your eyes.

6 And the messengers came back to Jacob, saying, We came to your brother

[1] Galeed means Heap of Testimony
[2] Mitzpah means Watchtower
[3] Mahanaim means Two Camps

Esau, and also he *is* coming to meet you, and four hundred men *are* with him.

7 And Jacob was afraid, and he was very distressed. And he divided the people with him, and the flocks, and the herds, and the camels, into two camps.

8 And he said, If Esau comes to the one company and strikes it, then it will be, the company that is left shall escape.

9 And Jacob said, Oh Elohim of my father Abraham and Elohim of my father Isaac, YAHWEH, who said to me, Go back to your land and to your kindred and I will deal well with you.

10 I am not worthy of all the mercies and all the truth which You have done for Your servant, for I passed over this Jordan with my staff, and now I have become two companies.

11 Deliver me, I pray, from the hand of my brother, from the hand of Esau; for I fear him, lest he come and strike me, mother to sons.

12 And You said, dealing I will deal well with you, and I will make your seed like the sand of the sea, which cannot be numbered for multitude. *(Gen 22:17)*

13 And he remained there that night. And he took a present from what came into his hand, for his brother Esau:

14 two hundred she-goats, twenty he-goats, two hundred rams,

15 thirty nursing camels with their thirty colts, forty cows and ten bulls, twenty she-donkeys and ten young donkeys.

16 And he gave into the hand of his slaves every drove by itself. And he said to his slaves, Pass over before my face and put a space between drove and drove.

17 And he commanded the first ones, saying, When my brother Esau meets you and asks, saying, Whose *are* you, and where do you go, and whose *are* these before your face?

18 Then you will say, Your servant Jacob's. It *is* a present sent to my master, to Esau; and, behold, also he *is* behind us.

19 And he also commanded the second, also the third, even all the ones going after the droves, saying, You shall speak this word to Esau when you find him.

20 And you shall also say, Behold, your servant Jacob *is* behind us. For he said, I will cover his face by the present, the one going before my face, and afterward I will see his face; perhaps he will lift up my face.

21 And the present passed before his face, and he remained in the camp that night.

22 And he rose up that night and took his two wives, and his two slave-girls, and his eleven children. And he passed over the ford Jabbok.

23 And he took them and sent them over the stream, and sent over that which *was* his.

24 And Jacob was left alone. And a Man wrestled with him until the rising of the dawn.

25 And He saw that He had not prevailed against him. And He touched on his hip socket, and Jacob's hip socket was unhinged as he wrestled with Him.

26 And He said, Send Me away, for the dawn has ascended. And he said, I will not let You go unless You bless me.

27 And He said to him, What *is* your name? And he said, Jacob.

28 And He said, Your name shall no longer be called Jacob, but Israel, because you have struggled with Elohim and with men, and have prevailed.

29 And Jacob asked and said, Please reveal Your name. And He said, Why is

it that you ask about My name? And He
blessed him there. *(Hos 12:4-5)*
30 And Jacob called the name of the
place Peni'El [1], because I saw Elohim
face to face, and my life is delivered.
31 And the sun rose on him as he
passed over Peniel, and he was limping
on his thigh.
32 On account of this the sons of
Israel do not eat the sinew of the thigh
that *is* on the hip socket until this day,
because He struck on Jacob's hip
socket, *on* the sinew of the thigh.

Chapter 33

1 And Jacob lifted up his eyes and
looked. And, behold, Esau was coming,
and four hundred men with him. And
he divided the children to Leah, and to
Rachel, and to the two slave-girls.
2 And he put the slave-girls and their
children first; and Leah and her
children behind: and Rachel and
Joseph last.
3 And he passed over in front of them
and bowed himself to the ground seven
times until he came even to his brother.
4 And Esau ran to meet him, and
embraced him, and fell on his neck and
kissed him. And they wept.
5 And he lifted up his eyes and saw
the women and the children. And he
said, Who *are* these *with* you? And he
said, The children *with* whom Elohim
has favored your servant.
6 And the slave-girls came near, they
and their children; and they bowed.
7 And Leah and her children also
came near and bowed. And afterward
Rachel and Joseph came near and
bowed.
8 And he said, Whose *is* all this camp
which I met? And he said, To find favor
in the eyes of my master.
9 And Esau said, I have much, my
brother. Let what you have be to
yourself.
10 And Jacob said, No, please, if I
now have found favor in your eyes, take
my present from my hands. For I have
seen your face, like seeing the face of
Elohim; and you are pleased with me.
11 Please take my blessing which has
been brought to you, because Elohim
has favored me, and because I have all
things. And he urged him; and he
accepted.
12 And he said, Let us depart and go,
and I will go with you.
13 And he said to him, My master
knows that the children *are* tender, and
the flocks and the herds with me *are*
suckling. And *if* they overdrive them
one day, all the flocks will die.
14 Please let my master go before the
face of his servant, and I will move on
by stages at my ease, according to the
feet of the livestock which *are* before
me, and according to the pace of the
boys, until I come into my master to
Seir.
15 And Esau said, Please let me place
with you *some* of the people who *are*
with me. And he said, Why, then? Let
me find favor in the eyes of my master.
16 And Esau returned on his way
toward Seir that day.
17 And Jacob traveled to Succoth.
And he built himself a house, and made
booths for his livestock. For this reason
he called the name of the place Succoth.
18 And Jacob came in peace to the
city of Shechem, which *is* in the land of
Canaan, as he came from Padan-Aram.
And he camped in front of the city.
19 And he bought that part of the
field where he had pitched his tent,
from the hand of the sons of Hamor,
the father of Shechem, for a hundred
pieces of money.
20 And he set up an altar there. And
he called it, El, the Elohe of Israel.

[1] Means Face of El, it was Elohim the Son who Jacob wrestled, Hos 12:3-6.

Chapter 34

1 And Dinah, the daughter of Leah, whom she bore to Jacob, went out to see the daughters of the land.

2 And Shechem the son of Hamor the Hivite, the prince of the land, saw her, and took her, and lay with her, and humbled her.[1]

3 And his soul clung to Dinah, the daughter of Jacob. And he loved the girl, and spoke to the heart of the girl.

4 And Shechem spoke to his father Hamor, saying, Take this girl for me for a wife.

5 And Jacob heard that he had defiled his daughter Dinah. And his sons were with his livestock in the field. And Jacob kept silent until they had come.

6 And Hamor the father of Shechem went out to Jacob to speak with him.

7 And the sons of Jacob came out of the field when they heard, and the men were furious, and they were very angry, because he had done folly in Israel, to lie with the daughter of Jacob, and it should not be done in this way.

8 And Hamor spoke with them, saying, My son Shechem's soul has longed to your daughter. Please give her to him for a wife.

9 And you intermarry with us; give your daughters to us, and take our daughters for yourselves.

10 And live with us, and the land is before you; live and trade *in* it, and get property in it.

11 And Shechem said to her father, and to her brothers, Let me find favor in your eyes, and what you say to me I will give.

12 Heap on me ever so much bride-price and gift, and I will give as you say to me; but give me the girl for a wife.

13 And the sons of Jacob answered Shechem and his father Hamor, speaking with deceit because he had defiled their sister Dinah.

14 And they said to them, We are not able to do this thing, to give our sister to a man who is uncircumcised. For it *is* a reproach to us.

15 Only on this *condition* will we consent to you; If you will become like us, to have every male of yours circumcised.

16 Then we will give our daughters to you, and we will take your daughters to us; and we will live with you and will become a united (*echad*) people.

17 And if you do not listen to us, to be circumcised, then we will take our daughter, and we will go.

18 And their words were good in the eyes of Hamor and the son of Hamor, Shechem.

19 And the young man did not hesitate to do the thing, for he delighted in Jacob's daughter. And he *was* more honorable than all the house of his father.

20 And Hamor and his son Shechem came to the gate of their city. And they spoke with the men of their city, saying,

21 These men *are* peaceable with us; and, Let them live in the land and trade in it. And, behold, the land *is* wide *on* both hands before them. Let us take their daughters for ourselves for wives, and let us give our daughters to them.

22 Only in this *way* will the men consent to us to live with us, to become a united people: that every male of us be circumcised as they *are* circumcised.

23 Shall not their livestock, and their property, and all their beasts of burden be ours? Only let us consent to them, and let them live with us.

24 And all those going out of the gate of the city listened to Hamor, and to his son Shechem. And every male was circumcised, all those going out of the gate of the city.

25 And it happened on the third day,

[1] Verses 1-2 show the dangers that happen when a woman goes out without a covering.

they being pained, that the two sons of Jacob, Simeon and Levi, Dinah's brothers, each took his sword. And they came on the city in *its* security, and killed every male.

26 And they killed Hamor and his son Shechem by the edge of the sword. And they took Dinah from the house of Shechem, and went out.

27 The sons of Jacob came on the slain and looted the city, because they had defiled their sister.

28 They took their flocks and their herds and their donkeys, and whatever *was* in the city, and whatever *was* in the field.

29 And they took all their wealth, and all their little ones, and their wives, and looted all that *was* in the house.

30 And Jacob said to Simeon and to Levi, You have troubled me, to make me stink among those living in the land, among the Canaanites, and among the Perizzites. And I *being* few in number, and they gathering against me, they will strike me, and I and my house shall be wasted.

31 And they said, Should he treat our sister like a harlot?

Chapter 35

1 And Elohim said to Jacob, Rise up, go to Bethel and live there. And make an altar there to El, who appeared to you when you fled before your brother Esau.

2 And Jacob said to his house, and to all those with him, Put away the strange Elohim in your midst, and purify yourselves, and change your clothing.

3 And let us rise up and go up to Bethel. And I will make an altar there to El, who answered me in the day of my distress. And He was with me *in* the way in which I went.

4 And they gave all the strange Elohim in their hand to Jacob, and the earrings which *were* in their ears. And Jacob hid them under the oak which *was* near Shechem.[1]

5 And they pulled up, and there was the terror of Elohim on the cities all around them, and they did not pursue the sons of Jacob.

6 And Jacob came to Luz, which *is* in the land of Canaan; it *is* Bethel, he and all the people with him came.

7 And he built an altar there and called the place El Bethel; because there the Elohim revealed Themselves[2] to him when he fled from the face of his brother.

8 And Deborah died, the nurse of Rebekah, and *she* was buried below Bethel, under the oak. And he called its name, Oak of Weeping.

9 And Elohim appeared to Jacob again when he came out of Padan-Aram, and *He* blessed him.

10 And Elohim said to him, Your name *is* Jacob; your name will not anymore be called Jacob, but Israel will be your name. And He called his name Israel.

11 And Elohim said to him, I *am* El Shaddai [3]; be fruitful and multiply. A nation and a company of nations shall be from you. And kings shall go forth from your loins.

12 And the land which I gave to Abraham and to Isaac, I will give it to you; and after you I will give the land to your seed. *(Gen 13:15, Gen 17:7-8)*

13 And Elohim went up from him, in

[1] Verses 2-4- In showing commitment to YHWH for the covenant he was entering, Jacob wanted to sanctify himself and his family from any idolatry that they possessed. Earrings were used as amulets in pagan worship, Hos 2:13.

[2] Here, it is distinctly indicated showing more than one El and another indication of Yahweh the Father and Yahweh the Son, Yahweh being a family name.

[3] Means El *Almighty*

the place where He had spoken with him.

14 And Jacob set up a pillar in the place where He had spoken with him, a pillar of stone. And he poured out a drink offering on it; and he poured oil on it.

15 And Jacob called the name of the place, there where Elohim had spoken with him, Bethel.

16 And they pulled up *stakes* from Bethel. And there was yet a length of land to come to Ephrath. And Rachel bore; and she had hard labor in her bearing.

17 And it happened, when she had hard labor in her bearing, even the midwife said to her, Do not fear, for this also *is* a son for you.

18 And it happened, when her soul was going forth (for she died) even she called his name Ben-Oni (*son of my sorrow*). But his father called him Ben-Yamin[1] (*son of my strength*).

19 And Rachel died and was buried on the way to Ephrath, that is Bethlehem.

20 And Jacob set up a pillar on her grave; it *is* the pillar of Rachel's grave until today.

21 And Israel pulled up and pitched his tent beyond the Tower of the Flocks.

22 And it happened after Israel lived in that land, that Reuben went and lay with Bilhah, his father's concubine. And Israel heard. And the sons of Jacob were twelve.

23 The sons of Leah: Reuben, Jacob's first-born; and Simeon, and Levi, and Judah, and Issachar, and Zebulun.

24 The sons of Rachel: Joseph and Benjamin.

25 And the sons of Bilhah, Rachel's slave-girl: Dan and Naphtali.

26 And the sons of Zilpah, Leah's slave-girl: Gad and Asher. These were Jacob's sons who were born in Padan-Aram.

27 And Jacob came to his father Isaac, to Mamre, to the City of Harba; it *is* Hebron where Abraham and Isaac resided.

28 And the days of Isaac were a hundred and eighty years.

29 And Isaac gave up the breathe and died and was gathered to his people, old and satisfied of days. And his sons Esau and Jacob buried him.

Chapter 36

1 And these *are* the generations of Esau; that *is* Edom.

2 Esau took his wives from the daughters of Canaan: Adah, the daughter of Elon the Hittite; and Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah, the daughter of Zibeon the Hivite;

3 and Basemath, the daughter of Ishmael, sister of Nebajoth.

4 And Adah bore Eliphaz to Esau. And Basemath bore Reuel.

5 And Oholibamah bore Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah. These *were* the sons of Esau who were born to him in the land of Canaan.

6 And Esau took his wives, and his sons, and his daughters, and all the souls of his house, and his livestock, and all the beasts of burden, and all his property which he had gained in Canaan, and he went to a land away from his brother Jacob.

7 For their possessions had become too great *for* them to dwell together. And the land was not able to bear their travels, in the presence of their livestock.

8 And Esau dwelt on Mount Seir. Esau *is* Edom.

9 And these were the generations of Esau, the father of Edom on Mount Seir;

[1] *"Ben-Oni"* means "*son of my sorrow"* and Jacob switched it to "*Ben-yamin*" *"son of my strength"*, or literally, son of my right (hand).

10 these the names of Esau's sons: Eliphaz, the son of Adah, Esau's wife; Reuel, the son of Basemath, Esau's wife.

11 And the sons of Eliphaz: Teman, Omar, Zepho, and Gatam, and Kenaz.

12 And Timna was a concubine to Esau's son, Eliphaz, and she bore Amalek to Eliphaz. These *were* the sons of Esau's wife Adah.

13 And the sons of Reuel: Nahath, and Zerah, Shammah, and Mizzah. These *were* the sons of Basemath, the wife of Esau.

14 And these were the sons of Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah, the daughter of Zibeon, the wife of Esau; even she bore Jeush to Esau, and Jaalam, and Korah.

15 These were the chieftains of the sons of Esau: the sons of Eliphaz, the first-born of Esau: Chief Teman, Chief Omar, Chief Zepho, Chief Kenaz,

16 Chieftain Korah, Chieftain Gatam, Chieftain Amalek. These were the chieftains of Eliphaz in the land of Edom. These were the sons of Adah.

17 And these *were* the sons of Reuel, Esau's son: Chieftain Nahath, Chieftain Zerah, Chieftain Shammah, Chieftain Mizzah. These were the chieftains of Reuel in the land of Edom. These were the sons of Basemath, Esau's wife.

18 And the sons of Oholibamah, Esau's wife: Chieftain Jeush, Chieftain Jaalam, Chieftain Korah. These were the chieftains of Oholibamah, the daughter of Anah, Esau's wife.

19 These *were* the sons of Esau, and these their chieftains; he *is* Edom.

20 These *were* the sons of Seir the Horite living in the land: Lotan, and Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah,

21 and Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan. These *were* the chieftains of the Horites, the sons of Seir, in the land of Edom.

22 And the sons of Lotan: Hori and Heman; and Lotan's sister, Timna.

23 And these *were* the sons of Shobal: Alvan, and Manahath, and Ebal, Shepho, and Onam.

24 And these *were* the sons of Zibeon, even Aiah and Anah; he is *the* Anah who found the hot springs in the desert as he fed the donkeys for his father Zibeon.

25 And these *were* the sons of Anah: Dishon; and Oholibamah *was* the daughter of Anah.

26 And these *were* the sons of Dishan: Hemdan, and Eshban, and Ithran, and Cheran.

27 These *were* the sons of Ezer: Bilhan, and Zaavan, and Akan.

28 These *were* the sons of Dishan: Uz, and Aran.

29 These *were* the chieftains of the Horites: Chieftain Lotan, Chieftain Shobal, Chieftain Zibeon, Chieftain Anah,

30 Chieftain Dishon, Chieftain Ezer, Chieftain Dishan. These *were* the chieftains of the Horites, according to their chieftains in the land of Seir.

31 And these *were* the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before the reigning of a king over the sons of Israel.

32 And Bela the son of Beor reigned in Edom, and the name of his city, Dinhabah.

33 And Bela died, and Jobab the son of Zerah, from Bozrah, reigned in his place.

34 And Jobab died, and Husham from the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.

35 And Husham died, and Hadad the son of Bedad, who smote Midian in the field of Moab, reigned in his place; and the name of his city, Avith.

36 And Hadad died, and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place.

37 And Samlah died, and Shaul from

Rehoboth *by* the River reigned in his place.

38 And Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan the son of Achbor reigned in his place.

39 And Baal-Hanan the son of Achbor died, and Hadar reigned in his place. And the name of his city *was* Pau; and his wife's name, Mehetabel, the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab.

40 And these *were* the names of the chieftains of Esau, according to their families, according to their places, by their names: Chieftain Timnah, Chieftain Alvah, Chieftain Jetheth,

41 Chieftain Oholibamah, Chieftain Elah, Chieftain Pinon,

42 Chieftain Kenaz, Chieftain Teman, Chieftain Mibzar,

43 Chief Magdiel, Chief Iram. These *were* the chiefs of Edom, according to their dwellings, in the land of their possession; he *is* Esau, the father of Edom.

Chapter 37

1 And Jacob lived in the land of his father's travels, in the land of Canaan.

2 These *are* the generations of Jacob: Joseph, a son of seventeen years[1], was feeding the flock with his brothers, with Bilhah's sons and with Zilpah's sons, his father's wives. And he was a youth. And Joseph brought an evil report of them to their father.

3 And Israel loved Joseph more than all his sons, because he *was* a son of old age to him. And he made a coat of many colors reaching to the feet.[2]

4 And his brothers saw that their father loved him more than all his brothers, and they hated him. And they were not able to speak to him for peace.

5 And Joseph dreamed a dream, and told *it* to his brothers. And they increased to hate him still more.

6 And he said to them, Now hear this dream which I have dreamed:

7 And, behold! We *were* binding sheaves in the middle of the field. And, behold, my sheaf rose up and also stood up. And, behold, your sheaves came around and bowed themselves to my sheaf. *(Gen 42:6, 43:26)*

8 And his brothers said to him, Shall you indeed reign over us, or shall you really rule over us? And they hated him still more because of his dreams, and because of his words.

9 And he dreamed still another dream, and told it to his brothers. And he said, Behold, I have dreamed another dream: And, behold, the sun and the moon and the eleven stars were bowing themselves to me. *(Rev 12:1)*

10 And he told *it* to his father, and to his brothers. And his father rebuked him, and said to him, What *is* this dream which you have dreamed? Shall we indeed come to bow ourselves to the earth to you, I, your mother, and your brothers? *(Gen 27:29)*

11 And his brothers envied him. But his father was attentive to the word.

12 And his brothers went to feed the flock of their father in Shechem.

13 And Israel said to Joseph, *Are* not your brothers feeding *the flock* in Shechem? Come, and I will send you to them. And he said to him, I am here.

14 And he said to him, Now go, see the welfare of your brothers, and the welfare of the flock, and bring word

---

[1] Joseph is named first because he retrieved the right of the first-born as he was the first born of Rachel, the rightful covenant wife of Jacob, 1 Chron 5:1-2.

[2] The Hebrew here is a rare archaic word "*pas*" which indicates a long robe. Also, the root of this word means the palm of the hand indicating the coat was made of many small palm like patches that could have been different colors. In any case the coat was beautiful and rare and is indicative of a royal garment, Ex 28:4, Luk 15:22, Joh 19:23-24.

back *to* me. And he sent him out of the
valley of Hebron. And he came to
Shechem.
15 And a man found him. And,
behold, *he was* wandering in the field.
And the man asked him, saying, What
do you seek?
16 And he said, I *am* looking for my
brothers. Please tell me where they *are*
feeding *the flock*.
17 And the man said, They have left
here, for I heard *them* say, Let us go
towards Dothan. And Joseph went after
his brothers and found them in
Dothan[1].
18 And they saw him from a distance.
And before he came near to them, they
plotted against him, to kill him.
19 And they said, each to his brother,
Behold, this master of dreams is
coming.
20 And, Come now, and let us kill
him, and throw him into one of the pits.
And let us say, An evil beast has eaten
him. And let us see what will become of
his dreams.
21 And Reuben heard, and *he*
delivered him from their hands, and
said, Let us not strike his soul.
22 And Reuben said to them, Do not
shed blood. Throw him into this pit in
the desert, but do not lay a hand on
him; so that he might deliver him from
their hands, to return him to his father.
23 And it happened when Joseph
came to his brothers, they stripped his
robe which *was* on him, from Joseph,
the long robe reaching to the feet.
24 And they took him and threw him
into the pit, the pit being empty, no
water in it.
25 And they sat down to eat bread.
And they lifted up their eyes and
looked. And, behold, a caravan of
Ishmaelites coming from Gilead! And
their camels were bearing spices, and
balsam gum, and sticky gum, going
down to take them to Egypt.
26 And Judah said to his brothers,
What gain *is it* that we kill our brother
and conceal his blood?
27 Come, let us sell him to the
Ishmaelites, and do not let our hand be
on him. For he *is* our brother, our flesh.
And his brothers listened.
28 And men, Midianites, traders,
passed. And they drew up and took
Joseph out of the pit, and they sold
Joseph to the Ishmaelites for twenty
pieces of silver. And they brought
Joseph into Egypt. *(Acts 7:9)*
29 And Reuben came back to the pit.
And, behold, Joseph *was* not in the pit;
and he tore his clothes.
30 And he returned to his brothers
and said, The child, he *is* not. And I,
where shall I go?
31 And they took Joseph's long robe,
and killed a ram of the goats, and
dipped the robe in the blood.(Rev
19:13)
32 And *they* sent the long robe
reaching to the feet, and they took it to
their father, and said, We have found
this. Now look, is it not your son's
robe?
33 And he knew it, and said, My son's
robe! An evil beast has eaten him.
Surely Joseph is torn to pieces.
34 And Jacob tore his clothing and
put sackcloth on his loins. And he
mourned many days for his son.
35 And all his sons and all his
daughters rose up to comfort him. And
he refused to be comforted, and said, I
will go down to Sheol mourning for my
son. And his father wept for him.
36 And the Midianites sold him into
Egypt, to Potiphar, a eunuch of
Pharaoh, the chief of the executioners.

Chapter 38

1 And it happened at that time that

[1] Dothan is about 20 miles north of Shechem.

Judah went down, away from his
brothers, and turned aside to a man of
Adullam named Hirah.
2 And Judah saw there a daughter of
a Canaanite man named Shuah. And he
took her, and went in to her.
3 And she conceived and bore a son.
And he called his name Er.
4 And she conceived again and bore a
son and called his name Onan.
5 And she continued still and bore a
son. And she called his name Shelah.
And he was at Chezib when she bore
him.
6 And Judah took a wife for his
firstborn, Er, and *her* name, Tamar.
7 And Er, Judah's first-born, was evil
in the eyes of YAHWEH. And
YAHWEH killed him.
8 And Judah said to Onan, Go in to
your brother's wife and marry *her*, and
raise up seed to your brother.
9 And Onan knew that the seed would
not be his. And it happened when he
went in to his brother's wife, he wasted
his semen to the ground, not giving
seed to his brother. *(Deut 25:5-10)*
10 And what he did was evil in the
eyes of YAHWEH, and He also killed
him.
11 And Judah said to his daughter-in-
law Tamar, Live *as* a widow in your
father's house until my son Shelah is
grown. For he said, Lest he also die like
his brothers. And Tamar went and lived
in her father's house.
12 And the days were many, and the
wife of Judah, the daughter of Shuah,
died. And Judah was comforted, and *he*
went up to the shearers of his flocks, he
and his friend Hirah of Adullam, to
Timnah.
13 And Tamar was told, saying,
Behold, your father-in-law *is* going up
to Timnah to shear his flocks.
14 And she took off her widow's robes
from her, and veiled herself with a veil,
and disguised herself. And *she* sat at
the entrance of Enaim, which *is* on the
way to Timnah. For she saw that Shelah
had grown up and she had not been
given to him for a wife.
15 And Judah saw her. And he
thought her *to be* a harlot, because she
had veiled her face.[1]
16 And he turned aside to her by the
roadway, and said, Come now, let me
come in to you. For he did not know
that she *was* his daughter-in-law. And
she said, What will you give me that
you may come in to me?
17 And he said, I will send a kid of the
goats from the flock. And she said, Will
you give me a pledge until you send *it*?
18 And he said, What pledge shall I
give to you? And she said, Your signet
ring, and your bracelet and your staff in
your hand. And he gave to her, and
came in to her.[2] And she conceived by
him.
19 And she rose up and left, and took
off her veil from her face. And *she* put
on her widow's robes.
20 And Judah sent the kid of the
goats by the hand of his friend, the
Adullamite, to receive the pledge from
the woman's hand. And he did not find
her.
21 And he asked the men of her place,
saying, Where *is* the harlot that *was* at
Enaim, by the roadway? And they said,
There *was* no harlot here.
22 And he returned to Judah and
said, I have not found her. And also the
men of the place said, There *was* no
harlot here.
23 And Judah said, Let her take *them*

---

[1] In ancient times harlots wore veils and used them to cover their faces not to be recognized. The practice of wearing a veil still prevails today in Islamic countries.

[2] The signet ring, the bracelet and the staff were all signs of Judah holding the right of the scepter and it was a serious mistake to use such an important blessing as collateral for such an immoral act.

for herself, that we not become a laughing stock. See, I sent this kid, and you did not find her.

24 And after three months, it happened. It was told to Judah, saying, Your daughter-in-law Tamar has committed adultery, and also, behold, *she* is pregnant by whoredom. And Judah said, Bring her out and let her be burned.

25 She was being brought out, and she sent to her father-in-law, saying, I am pregnant by a man to whom these *belong*. And she said, Note now whose *are* these, the signet ring, the bracelet, and the staff?

26 And Judah knew and said, She is more righteous than I, because I did not give her to my son Shelah. And he never knew her again.

27 And in the time of her bearing, behold, it happened! Twins *were* in her womb.

28 And in her bearing, it happened that one put forth a hand, and the midwife took it and tied crimson on his hand, saying, This one came out first.

29 And it happened as he withdrew his hand, behold, his brother came out. And she said, How have you broken a break for yourself? And one called his name Pharez [1].

30 And then his brother came out, on whose hand *was* the crimson. And one called his name Zarah.

Chapter 39

1 And Joseph was carried down to Egypt. And Potiphar, a eunuch of Pharaoh, the chief of the executioners, an Egyptian man, bought him from the hand of the Ishmaelites who had carried him down there.

2 And YAHWEH was with Joseph, and he was a prosperous man. And he was in the house of the Egyptian, his master.

3 And his master saw that YAHWEH *was* with him, and Joseph was prospering in his hand everything which he did.

4 And Joseph found favor in his sight, and served him. And he appointed him over his house, and he gave all he owned into his hand.

5 And it came about that from the time he appointed him over his house and over all he owned, YAHWEH blessed the Egyptian's house for Joseph's sake. And the blessing of YAHWEH *was* on all that he had, in the house and in the field.

6 And he left all he owned in Joseph's hand. And he did not know anything that he had, except the bread which he *was* eating. And Joseph was beautiful in form and beautiful of appearance.

7 And after these things, it happened that his master's wife lifted up her eyes to Joseph, and said, Lie with me.

8 And he refused, and said to his master's wife, Behold, my master does not know what *is* in the house with me, and all that he owns he has given into my hand.

9 No one in this house *is* greater than I, and he has not withheld anything from me except you, because you *are* his wife. And how should I do this great evil and sin against Elohim?

10 And it happened, as she spoke to Joseph day *after* day, he did not listen to her, to lie beside her, to be with her.

11 And it happened on this day, that he went into the house to do his work. And none of the men of the house *were* there in the house.

12 And she caught him by his robe, saying, Lie with me! And he left his robe in her hand and fled, and went outside.

13 And it happened, when she saw

[1] Pharez Means "*divider*"

that he had left his robe in her hand, and had fled outside,

14 she called to the men of her house and spoke to them, saying, Behold! He has brought to us a Hebrew man in to mock at us. He came in to me to lie with me, and I cried with a loud voice.

15 And it happened when he heard that I raised my voice and cried, he left his robe by me and fled, and went outside.

16 And she kept his robe beside her until the coming of his master to his house.

17 And she spoke these same words to him, saying, The Hebrew slave whom you brought in to us came in to mock at me.

18 And it happened at my raising my voice and crying out, he left his robe beside me and fled outside.

19 And it happened, when his master heard his wife's words which she spoke to him, saying, According to these words your slave did to me, his anger glowed.

20 And Joseph's master took him and put him into the prison house, the place where the king's prisoners *were* bound. And he was there in the prison house.

21 And YAHWEH was with Joseph, and extended kindness to him. And He gave him favor in the eyes of the warden of the prison house.

22 And the warden of the prison house gave all the prisoners in the prison house into Joseph's hand. And all which they did there, he was doing.

23 There was no looking of the warden of the prison house to anything in his hand, in that YAHWEH was with him, and YAHWEH was prospering what he *was* doing.

Chapter 40

1 And after these things, it happened, the cupbearer and the baker of the king of Egypt sinned against their master, against the king of Egypt.[1]

2 And Pharaoh was angry against his two eunuchs, against the chief of the cupbearers and against the chief of the bakers.

3 And he gave them into custody, in the house of the chief of the executioners, into the prison house, the place where Joseph *was* bound.

4 And the chief of the executioners appointed Joseph *to be* with them, and he served them. And they were in custody *many* days.

5 And they dreamed a dream, both of them, each his dream in one night, each according to the interpretation of his dream, the cupbearer and the baker who *belonged* to the king of Egypt, who were bound in the prison house.

6 And Joseph came in to them in the morning. And he looked at them, and, behold, they *were* sad.

7 And he asked the officers of Pharaoh who were with him in custody, in the house of his master, saying, Why *are* your faces sad today?

8 And they said to him, We have dreamed a dream, and there *is* not one to open it. And Joseph said to them, Do not interpretations *belong* to Elohim? Now tell it to me.

9 And the chief of the cupbearers told his dream to Joseph, and said to him, In my dream, behold, a vine *was* before me.

10 And in the vine *were* three branches. And at its budding, it went up into blossom, its clusters ripened into grapes.

11 And Pharaoh's cup *was* in my hand, and I took the grapes and press-

[1] This story is very symbolic as Joseph is a type of Messiah and suffering servant and here the cupbearer tasted the wine for the king and the baker made bread signifying the bread and wine of the last Passover.

ed them into the cup of Pharaoh; and I gave the cup into the hand of Pharaoh.

12 And Joseph said to him, This *is* the interpretation: the three branches, they *are* three days.

13 Yet within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head and will return you to your place. And you will give the cup of Pharaoh into his hand according to the former custom when you were his cupbearer.

14 But make mention of me along with yourself, when it is well with you; and please do kindness with me and mention me to Pharaoh, and bring me out of this house.

15 For truly I was stolen from the land of the Hebrews; and here also I have not done anything that they should have put me into the dungeon.

16 And the chief of the bakers saw that the interpretation was good. And he said to Joseph, I also in my dream saw three baskets of white bread on my head.

17 And in the top basket some from all the food of Pharaoh, the work of a baker. And the birds were eating them from the basket off my head.

18 And Joseph answered and said, This *is* its interpretation: the three baskets *are* three days.

19 Yet within three days Pharaoh will lift up your head from you and hang you on a tree, and the birds will eat your flesh off you.

20 And it happened, on the third day, the day of Pharaoh's birth, he made a feast for all his servants. And he lifted up the head of the chief of the cupbearers and the head of the chief of the bakers in the midst of his servants.

21 And he restored the chief of the cupbearers to his cupbearer office; and he gave the cup into Pharaoh's hand.

22 And he hanged the chief of the bakers, as Joseph interpreted to them.[1]

23 And the chief of the cupbearers did not mention Joseph, but forgot him.

Chapter 41

1 And it happened at the end of two years of days, Pharaoh was dreaming. And, lo, he was standing by the River.

2 And, behold! Seven cows *were* going up from the River, beautiful of appearance and fat of flesh; and they were eating in the reeds.

3 And, behold, seven other cows *were* going up after them from the River, evil of appearance and lean of flesh. And they were standing beside the cows on the lip of the River.

4 And the evil-appearing and lean-fleshed cows were eating the seven cows of beautiful and fat appearance. And Pharaoh awoke.

5 And he slept and dreamed a second time. And, behold, seven ears of grain were coming up on one stalk, fat and good.

6 And, behold, seven ears of grain, *being* lean and blasted *by* the east wind, sprouting forth after them.

7 And the seven lean ears were swallowing the seven fat and full ears. And Pharaoh awakened; and, behold, *it was* a dream.

8 And it happened in the morning, his spirit was troubled. And he sent and called for all the magicians of Egypt,

[1] Three being the number of the resurrection for those who believe in it (Math 12:38-40). The cupbearer was restored after 3 days and the baker hung on a tree. This typifies the 2 thieves who died with Yahshua, one came to faith on the tree of crucifixion and one did not. Also, you can equate this parable with the two goats on Yom Kippur, one went alive into the wilderness and one was killed, Lev 16:8-10.

and all its wise men. And Pharaoh told
them his dream, and *there was* no
interpreter of them to Pharaoh.
9 And the chief of the cupbearers
spoke with Pharaoh, saying, I mention
my sin today.
10 Pharaoh was angry against his
servants, and gave me into custody in
the house of the chief of the
executioners, me and the chief of the
bakers.
11 And we dreamed a dream in one
night, he and I; we each dreamed
according to the interpretation of his
dream.
12 And a Hebrew youth *was* with us,
a slave to the chief of the executioners.
And we told him, and he interpreted
our dreams to us; he interpreted to
each according to his dream.
13 And it happened, as he had
interpreted to us, so it was; he returned
me to my position, and he hanged him.
14 And Pharaoh sent and called
Joseph; and they rushed him from the
dungeon. And he shaved and changed
his clothing and came in to Pharaoh.
15 And Pharaoh said to Joseph, I have
dreamed a dream, and there is no one
to interpret it; and I have heard about
you, saying, you hear a dream to
interpret it.
16 And Joseph replied to Pharaoh,
saying, Not I! Elohim will answer the
peace of Pharaoh.
17 And Pharaoh said to Joseph, In my
dream, lo, I was standing on the lip of
the River.
18 And, behold, seven cows were
going up from the River, fat of flesh and
beautiful of form, and were feeding in
the reeds.
19 And, behold, seven other cows
were going up after them, poor and
very evil of form, and lean of flesh; I
have not seen *any* like them in all the
land of Egypt for badness.
20 And the cows, the lean and the
evil, ate the first seven fat cows.
21 And they went into their stomachs,
and it could not be seen that they had
gone into their stomachs; and their
appearance *was* as evil as at the
beginning. And I awakened.
22 And I looked in my dream. And,
behold, seven ears of grain were
coming up on one stalk, full and good.
23 And, behold, seven ears, withered,
lean, blasted *by* the east *wind*,
sprouting forth after them.
24 And the lean ears were swallowing
the seven good ears. And I spoke to the
magicians, but not one *is* making
known *the meaning* to me.
25 And Joseph said to Pharaoh, The
dream of Pharaoh *is* one. Elohim has
shown Pharaoh what He *is* about to do.
26 The seven good cows, they *are*
seven years and the seven good ears,
they *are* seven years; the dream is one
(*echad).*
27 And the seven thin and evil-
appearing cows going up after them,
they *are* seven years; and the seven
empty ears blasted *by* the east *wind*
will be seven years of famine.
28 This *is* the word that I spoke to
Pharaoh: what Elohim *is* about to do,
He has made Pharaoh see.
29 Behold! Seven years of great
plenty *are* coming in all the land of
Egypt.
30 And seven years of famine will
arise after them and all the plenty of
the land of Egypt will be forgotten; and
the famine will consume the land.
31 And the plenty in the land will not
be remembered *because of* that famine
afterwards; for it *will be* very severe.
32 And as to the dream being
repeated to Pharaoh twice, the thing *is*
settled because it *is* from Elohim, and
Elohim is hastening to do it.
33 And now let Pharaoh look for a

man who *is* intelligent and wise, and set him over the land of Egypt.

34 Let Pharaoh act and let him appoint rulers over the land and take a fifth of the land of Egypt in the seven years of plenty.

35 And let them gather all the food of these coming good years. And let them heap up grain under Pharaoh's hand as food in the cities, and let them keep *it*.

36 And let the food be for a store for the land, for the seven years of famine which will be in the land of Egypt and let not the land be cut off by famine.

37 And the word was good in Pharaoh's eyes, and in the eyes of all his servants.

38 And Pharaoh said to his servants, Can we find any man like this, *in* whom the Spirit of Elohim is in?

39 And Pharaoh said to Joseph, Since Elohim has taught you all this, there *is* no one wise and intelligent like you.

40 You shall be over my house, and at your mouth shall be ordered all my people. Only in respect to the throne will I be greater than you.

41 And Pharaoh said to Joseph, Behold, I have set you over all the land of Egypt.

42 And Pharaoh took off his ring from his hand and put it on the hand of Joseph; and he clothed him with fine linen robes, and put a golden chain on his neck.

43 And he caused him to ride in a chariot which *was* the second to him. And they cried before him, Bow the knee! And he put him over all the land of Egypt.[1]

44 And Pharaoh said to Joseph, I *am* Pharaoh, and without *a word* from you not a man shall lift his hand or his foot in all the land of Egypt.

45 And Pharaoh called Joseph by the name of Tzaphnath-Paaneah. And He gave him Asenath the daughter of Potipherah, priest of On, for a wife. And Joseph went out over the land of Egypt.

46 And Joseph *was* a son of thirty years as he stood before Pharaoh king of Egypt. And Joseph went out from the face of Pharaoh and passed over in all the land of Egypt.

47 And the land produced by handfuls in the seven years of plenty.

48 And he gathered all the food of the seven years which *were* in the land of Egypt, and he put food in the cities, the food of the field which is around *each* city he put in among it.

49 And Joseph heaped up grain like the sand of the sea, exceedingly much, until he ceased to count it, because it was without number.

50 And two sons were born to Joseph before the year of the famine came in, whom Asenath the daughter of Potipherah, priest of On, bore to him.

51 And Joseph called the name of the first-born Manasseh; for Elohim has made me forget all my toil, and all the house of my father.

52 And the name of the second he called Ephraim; for Elohim has made me fruitful in the land of my affliction.

53 And the seven years of plenty which were in the land of Egypt were ended.

54 And the seven years of famine began to come, according as Joseph had said. And the famine was in all lands, but in all the land of Egypt there was bread.

55 And all the land of Egypt hungered and the people cried to Pharaoh for bread. And Pharaoh said to all Egypt, Go to Joseph; what he says to you, do.

56 And the famine was on the face of all the land. And Joseph opened all which *was* in them, and sold to the

---

1 This is typifying the relationship with Yahweh and Yahshua and Yahshua being second in command of the universe, Phil 2:9-11.

Egyptians. And the famine was strong in the land of Egypt.

57 And all the earth came to Egypt to buy, to Joseph. For the famine was strong in all the earth.

Chapter 42

1 And Jacob saw that grain was in Egypt. And Jacob said to his sons, Why do you look at each other?

2 And he said, Behold! I have heard grain is in Egypt. Go down there and buy for us from there, that we may live and not die.

3 And Joseph's ten brothers went down to buy grain from Egypt.

4 And Jacob did not send Benjamin, Joseph's brother, with his brothers, for he said, Lest harm happen to him.

5 And among those coming, the sons of Israel came to buy. For the famine was in the land of Canaan.

6 And Joseph *was* the governor over the land, the *one* selling to all the people of the earth. And Joseph's brothers came in and bowed to him, face down to the earth.

7 And Joseph saw his brothers and recognized them; but *he* remained a stranger to them and spoke harsh things to them, and said to them, From where have you come? And they said, From the land of Canaan to buy food.

8 And Joseph recognized his brothers, but they did not recognize him.

9 And Joseph remembered the dreams which he had dreamed about them. And he said to them, You *are* spies! You have come in to see the bareness of the land.

10 And they said to him, No, my master, but your servants have come to buy food.

11 We *are* all of us sons of one man; we *are* honest; your servants are not spies.

12 And he said to them, No, but you have come to see the bareness of the land.

13 And they said, Your servants *are* twelve brothers; we *are* sons of one man in the land of Canaan; and, lo, the youngest *is* with our father today; and one *is* not.

14 And Joseph said to them, This *is* that which I have spoken to you, saying, You *are* spies!

15 By this you shall be tested. *As* Pharaoh lives you shall not go out from here except your younger brother comes in here.

16 Send one of you and let him bring your brother; and you be bound, and let your words be proven, whether truth *is* with you. And if not, *as* Pharaoh lives, surely you are spies.

17 And he gathered them into custody three days.

18 And on the third day Joseph said to them, Do *this* and live. I fear Elohim.

19 If you *are* honest, let one of your brothers be bound in your prison house, and you go bring grain *for* the famine of your houses.

20 And you bring your youngest brother to me, and let your words be true, and you shall not die. And so they did.

21 And they said each to his brother, We *are* truly guilty because of our brother whom we saw *in* distress of his soul, when he begged us, and we did not hear. So this distress has come to us.

22 And Reuben replied to them, saying, Did I not speak to you, saying, Do not sin against the youth, and you did not listen? And, behold, his blood is also required.

23 And they did not know that Joseph heard, for the interpreter *was* between them.

24 And he turned away from them and wept, and returned to them and

spoke to them. And he took Simeon from them and bound him before their eyes.

25 And Joseph commanded, and they filled their vessels *with* grain and returned their silver, each into his sack, and gave to them food for the way; and he did so to them.

26 And they lifted their grain on their donkeys and walked from there.

27 And one opened his sack to give fodder to his donkey in the camp, and he saw his silver. And, behold! It *was* in the mouth of his sack!

28 And he said to his brothers, My silver has been put back, and also look in my sack. And their hearts went out, and they were each terrified, saying to his brother, What *is* this Elohim has done to us?

29 And they came to their father Jacob to the land of Canaan. And *they* told him all that met them, saying,

30 The man, the master of the land, spoke harsh things to us and considered us as spies in the land.

31 And we said to him, We *are* honest; we *are* not spies.

32 We *are* twelve brothers, sons of our father; the one *is* not, and the youngest *is* with our father today in the land of Canaan.

33 And the man, the lord of the land, said to us, By this I shall know that you *are* honest; leave your one brother with me, and take and go for the famine of your houses.

34 And bring your youngest brother to me, and I may know that you *are* not spies, but you *are* honest. I will give your brother to you and you may trade in the land.

35 And it happened. They were emptying their sacks, and, behold, each one's bundle of silver *was* in his sack; and they saw the bundles of their silver, and they were afraid.

36 And their father Jacob said to them, You have bereaved me. Joseph *is* not, and Simeon *is* not, and will you take Benjamin? All of these are against me.

37 And Reuben spoke to his father, saying, You may kill my two sons if I do not bring him to you. Give him into my hand, and I will return him to you.

38 And he said, My son shall not go down with you; for his brother is dead, and he alone is left. And *if* harm should happen to him in the way in which you go, you would bring down my gray hair in sorrow to the grave.

Chapter 43

1 And the famine *was* severe in the land.

2 And it happened, when they had finished eating the grain which they had brought from Egypt, their father said to them, Go back; buy a little food for us.

3 And Judah spoke to him, saying, The man fiercely repeated and gave warning, saying to us, You shall not see my face unless your brother *is* with you.

4 And if you are sending our brother with us, we will go down and buy food for you.

5 And if you are not sending, we will not go; for the man said to us, You shall not see my face unless your brother *is* with you.

6 And Israel said, Why did you do evil to me to tell the man you still *had* a brother?

7 And they said, The man keenly asked about us and about our kindred, saying, *Is* your father still alive? Is there a brother to you? And we said to him on the mouth of these words. Could we know certainly that he would say, Bring down your brother?

8 And Judah said to his father Israel, Send the youth with me, and let us rise

up and go, and we may live and not die, both we, and you, and our little ones.
9 I will be surety for him; you may require him from my hand. If I do not bring him to you and set him before you, I shall be a sinner against you all the days.
10 If we had not delayed, truly now we would have returned this twice.
11 And their father Israel said to them, If *it be* so, then do this: take from the produce of the land in your vessels and bring down a present to the man, a little balm, and a little honey, spices, and myrrh, nuts and almonds.
12 And take double silver in your hand, and the silver they put back in the mouth of your sacks, take back in your hand; perhaps it *was* an oversight.
13 And take your brother and rise up; return to the man.
14 And may Elohim Almighty give mercy to you before the man; and may he send your other brother to you, and Benjamin. And if I am bereaved, I am bereaved.
15 And the men took this present, and they took double silver in their hand, and Benjamin. And they rose up and went down to Egypt and stood before Joseph.
16 And Joseph saw Benjamin with them. And he said to the one over his house, Bring the men into the house and slaughter and prepare an animal; for the men shall eat with me at noon.
17 And the man did as Joseph said. And the man brought the men into Joseph's house.
18 And the men were afraid because they were brought into Joseph's house. And they said, Because of the silver that was returned in our sacks before, we are being brought in, to throw himself on us and to fall on us, and to take us and our donkeys for slaves.
19 And they came near to the man who *was* over Joseph's house and spoke to him at the door of the house.
20 And they said, Oh my master, surely we came before to buy food.
21 And it happened, when we came to the camp and opened our sacks, behold, the silver of each one *was* in the mouth of his sack; our silver in its weight. And we bring it back in our hand.
22 And we have brought other silver in our hand to buy food. We do not know who put our silver in our sacks.
23 And he said, Peace to you; do not fear; your Elohim and the Elohe of your father has given a treasure to you in your sacks; your silver came to me. And he brought Simeon out to them.
24 And the man led out the men to Joseph's house. And he gave water, and they washed their feet. And he gave fodder for their donkeys.
25 And they prepared the present for the coming of Joseph at noon. For they had heard that they would eat bread there.
26 And Joseph came into the house. And they brought the present in their hand to him, into the house. And they bowed to him, to the earth.
27 And he asked them of their welfare, and said, *Is* there peace to your father, the old man of whom you spoke? *Is* he still alive?
28 And they said, Peace *is* to your servant, to our father; he still lives. And they fell down and bowed.
29 And he raised his eyes and saw his brother Benjamin, the son of his mother. And he said, *Is* this your youngest brother of whom you spoke to me? And he said, May Elohim favor you, my son.
30 And Joseph hurried, for his emotions were deeply moved toward his brother. And he sought a *place* to weep; and he came into the inner room and wept there.

31 And he washed his face and controlled himself, and went out and said, Set out bread.

32 And they set out for him by himself, and for them by themselves, and for the Egyptians eating with him by themselves. For the Egyptians cannot eat bread with the Hebrews; for it *is* an abomination in Egypt.

33 And they sat before him, the firstborn according to his birthright, and the younger according to his youth. And the men were astonished, each to his neighbor.

34 And one carried portions from before him to them, and Benjamin's portion was greater than the portions of all of them, five times as much. And they drank and were drunken with him.

Chapter 44

1 And he commanded the one over his house, saying, Fill the sacks of the men *with* food, as much as they are able to carry; and put the silver of each one in the mouth of his sack.

2 And put my cup, the cup of silver, in the mouth of the sack of the youngest, and the silver for his grain. And he did according to Joseph's word, that which he spoke.

3 At the morning light, the men were sent away, they and their donkeys.

4 They had gone out from the city, not having gone far, and Joseph said to the one over his house, Rise up, pursue the men and overtake them, and say to them, Why have you repaid evil for good?

5 *Is* this not *that* in which my master usually drinks in, and surely he divines by it? You have done evil in what you have done.

6 And he overtook them and spoke these words to them.

7 And they said to him, Why should my master speak according to these words? Far be it from your servants to do according to this word.

8 See the silver which we found in the mouth of our sacks, we returned to you from the land of Canaan. And how should we steal silver or gold from the house of your master?

9 *With* whomever it may be found, with him of your servants, he shall die; and we also will become slaves to my lord.

10 And he said, Now also *let* it *be* according to your words; with whomever it *is* found with him, he shall become a slave to me, and you shall be innocent.

11 And they hurried, and each one brought down his sack to the earth. And each one opened his sack.

12 And he searched, with the oldest first, and with the youngest last, and the cup was found in the sack of Benjamin.

13 And they tore their clothes; and they each one loaded his donkey and returned to the city.

14 And Judah and his brothers came to Joseph's house, and he *was* still there. And they fell before him to the earth.

15 And Joseph said to them, What *is* this deed which you have done? Did you not know that a man like me would practice divination?

16 And Judah said, What can we say to my master? What can we speak, and in what can we justify ourselves? Elohim has found out the iniquity of your servants; behold, we *are* slaves to my master, both we and he in whose hand the cup was found.

17 And he said, Far be it from me to do this. The man in whose hand the cup was found, he shall become a slave to me; and you go up in peace to your father.

18 And Judah came near to him and said, O my master, please let your

servant speak a word in the ears of my
master, and let not your anger glow *on*
our servant, for you *are* like Pharaoh.
19 My master asked his servants,
saying, *Is there* a brother or a father to
you?
20 And we said to my master, An
aged father *is* to us, and a young child
of *his* old age; and his brother is dead;
and he alone is left of his mother; and
his father loves him.
21 And you said to your servants,
Bring him down to me, and let me see
him.
22 And we said to my master, The
youth is not able to leave his father; and
if he should leave *his father*, he will die.
23 And you said to your servants, If
your youngest brother does not come
down with you, you shall not see my
face any more.
24 And it happened, when we had
gone up to your servant, my father, we
told him the words of my master.
25 And our father said, Go back, buy
a little food for us.
26 And we said, We cannot go down.
If our youngest brother is with us, we
will go down. For we cannot see the
face of the man *if* our youngest brother
is not with us.
27 And your servant, my father, said
to us, You know that my wife bore two
to me.
28 And one went out from me. And I
said, Indeed, surely, he is torn in
pieces; and I have not seen him until
now.
29 And *if* you take this one also from
my face, and harm happens to him, you
will bring down my gray hair to the
grave in sorrow.
30 And now when I come to your
servant, my father, and the youth *is* not
with us and his soul being bound to his
soul,
31 it will be when he sees that the
youth *is* not, he will die. And your
servants will bring down the gray hair
of your servant our father to the grave
in sorrow.
32 For your servant was surety for the
youth *with* my father, saying, If I do not
bring him to you, I shall be a sinner
against my father all the days.
33 And now please let your servant
remain as a slave to my master instead
of the youth; and let the youth go up
with his brothers.
34 For how can I go to my father, and
the youth not *be* with me, lest I look on
the evil which will find my father?

Chapter 45

1 And Joseph was not able to control
himself in regard to those standing
beside him. And he called out, Cause
every man to go out from me. And no
man stood before him *as* Joseph *was*
making himself known to his brothers.
2 And he wept aloud; and the
Egyptians and the house of Pharaoh
heard.
3 And Joseph said to his brothers, I
am Joseph. *Is* my father still alive? And
his brothers were not able to answer
him, for they trembled before him.
4 And Joseph said to his brothers,
Now come near to me. And they came
near. And he said, I *am* your brother
Joseph, whom you sold into Egypt.
5 And now do not be grieved, and let
no anger be in your eyes because you
sold me here, for Elohim sent me
before you to save life.
6 For the famine *has been* in the
midst of the land for two years. And
there are still five years in which no
plowing and harvest *will be*.
7 And Elohim sent me before you to
put a remnant in the land for you, and
to keep alive for you a great
deliverance.
8 And now you did not send me here,
but Elohim. And He has placed me for a

father to Pharaoh, and for a master in all his house, and a ruler in all the land of Egypt.

9 Hurry and go up to my father, and say to him, So says your son Joseph, Elohim has placed me as a master to all Egypt. Come down to me, do not delay.

10 And you shall live in the land of Goshen, and you shall be near to me, you and your sons and sons of your sons, and your flocks, and your herds, and all you have.

11 And I will nourish you there, for *there are* still five years of famine; lest you be made poor, you and your house and all which abides with you.

12 And behold, your eyes and the eyes of my brother Benjamin see that my mouth *is* speaking to you.

13 And you tell my father of all my honor in Egypt, and all that you have seen. And hurry and bring down my father here.

14 And he fell on the neck of his brother Benjamin and wept, and Benjamin wept on his neck.

15 And he kissed all his brothers, and wept on them. And afterwards his brothers spoke with him.

16 And the report was heard in Pharaoh's house, saying, The brothers of Joseph have come. And it *was* good in the eyes of Pharaoh and in the eyes of his servants.

17 Pharaoh said to Joseph, Say to your brothers, Do this; load your animals and depart; go to the land of Canaan.

18 And take your father, and your houses, and come to me. And I will give to you the good of the land of Egypt; and you shall eat the fat of the land.

19 And you are commanded; you do this: Take for yourselves wagons from the land of Egypt, for your little ones, and for your wives. And take your father and come.

20 And your eye, let it have no regard for your vessels, for the good of all the land of Egypt *is* yours.

21 And the sons of Israel did so. And Joseph gave wagons to them according to the mouth of Pharaoh, and he gave provisions to them for the way.

22 He gave to all of them, to each one, changes of clothing. And he gave to Benjamin three hundred *pieces* of silver, and five changes of clothing.

23 And to his father he sent this: ten donkeys bearing the good things of Egypt, and ten she-donkeys bearing grain, and bread, and food for his father for the way.

24 And he sent his brothers away; and they went. And he said to them, Do not quarrel along the way.

25 And they went up from Egypt and came *into* the land of Canaan, to their father Jacob.

26 And they told him, saying, Joseph *is* still alive, and he *is* ruler in all the land of Egypt. And his heart froze up, for he did not believe them.

27 And they spoke to him all Joseph's words which he had spoken to them. And he saw the wagons that Joseph had sent to carry him; and the spirit of their father Jacob revived.

28 And Israel said, *It is* enough! My son Joseph *is* alive; I will go and see him before I die.

Chapter 46

1 And Israel and all which *were* to him departed, and he came to Beer-Sheba. And he sacrificed sacrifices to the Elohe of his father Isaac.

2 And Elohim said to Israel in visions of the night, and He spoke, Jacob! Jacob! And he answered, I am here.

3 And He said, I *am* Elohe, The El of your fathers. Do not fear to go down into Egypt, for I will make of you a great nation there.

4 I will go down with you into Egypt,

and I will also surely return you. And Joseph shall put his hand on your eyes.

5 And Jacob rose up from Beer-Sheba; and the sons of Israel carried their father Jacob, and their little ones, and their wives in the wagons which Pharaoh had sent to carry him.

6 And they took their livestock and their property which they had acquired in the land of Canaan. And they came into Egypt, Jacob and all his seed with him.

7 His sons and the sons of his sons *were* with him, his daughters and his sons' daughters, and all his seed he brought with him into Egypt.

8 And these *were* the names of the sons of Israel, those coming into Egypt, Jacob and his sons: the first-born of Jacob *was* Reuben.

9 And the sons of Reuben: Hanoch, and Phallu, and Hezron, and Carmi.

10 And the sons of Simeon: Jemuel, and Jamin, and Ohad, and Jachin, and Zohar, and Shaul, the son of a Canaanitess.

11 And the sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.

12 And the sons of Judah: Er, and Onan, and Shelah, and Pharez, and Zerah. And Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan. And the sons of Pharez: Hezron, and Hamul.

13 And the sons of Issachar: Tola, and Phuvah, and Job, and Shimron.

14 And the sons of Zebulun: Sered, and Elon, and Jahleel.

15 These *were* the sons of Leah, whom she bore to Jacob in Padan-Aram, and his daughter Dinah. All the souls of his sons and his daughters *were* thirty three.

16 And the sons of Gad: Ziphion, and Haggi, Shuni, and Ezbon, Eri, and Arodi, and Areli.

17 And the sons of Asher: Jimnah, and Ishuah, and Ishvi, and Beriah, and their sister Serah. And the sons of Beriah: Heber and Malchiel.

18 These *were* the sons of Zilpah, whom Laban gave to his daughter Leah; and she bore these to Jacob, sixteen souls.

19 The sons of Rachel the wife of Jacob: Joseph and Benjamin.

20 And Manasseh and Ephraim were born to Joseph in the land of Egypt, whom Asenath the daughter of Potipherah, priest of On, bore to him.

21 And the sons of Benjamin: Belah, and Becher, and Ashbel, Gera, and Naaman, Ehi, and Rosh, and Muppim, and Huppim, and Ard.

22 These *were* the sons of Rachel which were born to Jacob; all the souls *were* fourteen.

23 And the son of Dan *was* Hushim.

24 And the sons of Naphtali: Jahzeel, and Guni, and Jezer, and Shillem.

25 These were the sons of Bilhah whom Laban gave to his daughter Rachel; and she bore these to Jacob, all the souls *were* seven.

26 All the souls belonging to Jacob coming into Egypt, those springing from his loins, besides the wives of the sons of Jacob, all the souls were sixty six.

27 And the sons of Joseph which were born to him in Egypt, two souls. All the souls belonging to the house of Jacob coming into Egypt were seventy-five.

28 And he sent Judah before him to Joseph, to give directions before him to Goshen; and they came into the land of Goshen.

29 And Joseph prepared his chariot and went up to meet his father Israel to Goshen. And he appeared to him, and fell on his neck and wept on his neck a long time.

30 And Israel said to Joseph, This time let me die after seeing your face, because you *are* still alive.

31 And Joseph said to his brothers,

and to the house of his father, I will go up and report to Pharaoh. And I will say to him, my brothers and the house of my father, who *were* in the land of Canaan, have come in to me.

32 And the men *are* shepherds of flocks for they have been men of cattle. And their flocks and their herds, and all which belongs to them they have brought in.

33 And it shall be, when Pharaoh calls to you and says, What *is* your occupation?

34 You shall say, Your servants have been men of livestock from our youth even until now, both we and our fathers. *This is* so that you may live in the land of Goshen. For the abomination of Egypt *is* every shepherd of flocks.

Chapter 47

1 And Joseph came in and made known to Pharaoh, and said, My father and my brothers, and their flocks and their herds, and all which is theirs, have come in from the land of Canaan.

2 And, behold, they *are* in the land of Goshen. And he took five men from among his brothers and set them before Pharaoh.

3 And Pharaoh said to his brothers, What *is* your occupation? And they said to Pharaoh, Your servants *are* shepherds of flocks, both we and our fathers.

4 And they said to Pharaoh, We have come in to stay in the land, because there is no pasture for the flocks which belong to your servants, for the famine is heavy in the land of Canaan. And now please let your servants live in the land of Goshen.

5 And Pharaoh spoke to Joseph, saying, Your father and your brothers have come in to you.

6 The land of Egypt *is* before you; cause your father and your brothers to live in the best of the land; let them live in the land of Goshen. And if you know men of ability among them, make them chiefs of livestock over what *is* mine.

7 And Joseph brought in his father Jacob and placed him before Pharaoh. And Jacob blessed Pharaoh.

8 And Pharaoh said to Jacob, How many *are* the days of the years of your life?

9 And Jacob said to Pharaoh, The days of the years of my camps *are* a hundred and thirty years. Few and evil have been the days of the years of my life and they have not reached the days of the years of the life of my fathers, in the days of their camps.

10 And Jacob blessed Pharaoh, and went out from before Pharaoh.

11 And Joseph caused his father and his brothers to live, and gave them a place in the land of Egypt, in the best of the land, in the land of Ramses, as Pharaoh commanded.

12 And Joseph nourished his father and his brothers, and all his father's house *with* bread for the mouth of the little ones.

13 And no bread *was* in the land, because the famine *was* exceedingly severe. And the land of Egypt and the land of Canaan were completely burned up from the famine.

14 And Joseph gathered up all the silver found in the land of Egypt and in the land of Canaan in return for the grain they were buying. And Joseph brought in the silver to the house of Pharaoh.

15 And the silver failed from the land of Egypt, and from the land of Canaan. And all Egypt came in to Joseph, saying, Give us bread; and, Why should we die before you? For the silver has failed.

16 And Joseph said, Give your live-

stock, and I will give to you for your livestock, if silver has failed.
17 And they brought in their livestock to Joseph. And Joseph gave bread to them for the horses, and for the livestock of the flocks, for the livestock of the herds, and for the donkeys. And he satisfied them with bread in that year for all their livestock.
18 And that year ended, and they came in to him in the second year and said to him, We cannot hide from my master *that* the silver and the livestock of the animals have failed, *going* to my master. Nothing is left before my master except our bodies and our lands.
19 Why should we die before your eyes, both we and our land? Buy us and our land for bread; and let us, we and our land, become slaves to Pharaoh. And give seed so that we may live and not die, and the land not be desolate.
20 And Joseph bought all the land of Egypt for Pharaoh, because each one in Egypt sold his field, because this famine was severe on them; and the land became Pharaoh's.
21 And *as for* the people, he caused them to pass over into the cities, and from the end of the border of Egypt to its *other* end.
22 Only he did not buy the land of the priests; for Pharaoh had appointed a portion for the priests, and they usually ate their appointed portion which Pharaoh gave to them. For this reason they did not sell their land.
23 And Joseph said to the people, Behold, I have bought you and your land today. Behold! *Here is* seed for you; and you sow the land.
24 And it shall be, as you gather you shall give a fifth part to Pharaoh; and four parts shall be yours, for the seed of the field and for your food, and for those in your houses, and for food for your little ones.
25 And they said, You have saved our lives; let us find favor in the eyes of my master, and we will become slaves to Pharaoh.
26 And Joseph made it a law until this day on the land of Egypt, the fifth *part is* for Pharaoh; only the land of the priests *being* excepted; it did not become Pharaoh's.
27 And Israel lived in the land of Egypt, in the land of Goshen. And they owned in it, and were fruitful, and multiplied exceedingly.
28 And Jacob lived in the land of Egypt seventeen years. And the days of Jacob, the years of his life were a hundred and forty seven years.
29 And the days of Israel to die drew near. And he called to his son Joseph and said to him, Now if I have found favor in your eyes, please put your hand under my thigh, and do kindness and truth with me. Please do not bury me in Egypt;
30 but let me lie with my fathers, and carry me from Egypt, and bury me in their burying place. And he said, I will do according to your words.
31 And he said, Swear to me. And he swore to him. And Israel bowed on the head of the bed.

Chapter 48

1 And after these things it happened, one said to Joseph, Behold, your father *is* sick. And he took his two sons with him, Manasseh and Ephraim.
2 And *one* spoke to Jacob and said, Behold, your son Joseph has come to you. And Israel took strength and sat on the bed.
3 And Jacob said to Joseph, El Shaddai [1] appeared to me in Luz in the land of Canaan and blessed me,
4 and said to me, Behold, I will make you fruitful and will multiply you, and

[1] El Shaddai means El *Almighty*

will give you a multitude of peoples. And I will give this land to your seed after you *as* a continual possession.

5 And now your two sons, those born to you in the land of Egypt before my coming to you in Egypt, *are* mine, Ephraim and Manasseh, like Reuben and Simeon, even they shall be mine.

6 And your offspring which you father after them, they shall be yours. According to the name of their brothers they shall be called in their inheritance.[1]

7 And I, when I came from Padan, Rachel died on me in the land of Canaan in the way, with only a little way to come to Ephrath. And I buried her there in the way to Ephrath, it *being* Bethlehem.

8 And Israel saw the sons of Joseph, and he said, Who *are* these?

9 And Joseph said to his father, They *are* my sons, whom Elohim has given to me here. And he said, Now bring them to me and I will bless them.

10 And the eyes of Israel were heavy from age, he not being able to see. And he brought them near to him. And he kissed them and embraced them.

11 And Israel said to Joseph, I did not think to see your face, and, behold, Elohim also causes me to see your seed.

12 And Joseph brought them out from his knees; and he bowed his face to the earth.

13 And Joseph took both of them, Ephraim in his right hand, to the left of Israel; and Manasseh in his left hand, to the right of Israel. And he brought them to him.

14 And Israel sent forth his right hand and put *it* on the head of Ephraim; and he *was* the younger. And *he put* his left hand on the head of Manasseh, crossing his hands; for Manasseh *was* the first-born.

15 And he blessed Joseph and said, The Elohim *before* whom my fathers Abraham and Isaac walked, the Elohim who has fed me since I was born until today;

16 The Messenger that redeemed me from every evil, may He bless the youths; and may my name be called on them, and the name of my fathers Abraham and Isaac, and may they like fishes grow into a multitude in the midst of the earth.

17 And Joseph saw that his father was putting his right hand on the head of Ephraim; and it was evil in his eyes. And he took hold of his father's hand to turn it from Ephraim's head to the head of Manasseh.

18 And Joseph said to his father, Not so, my father! For this one *is* the firstborn; put your right hand on his head.

19 And his father refused and said, I know, my son, I know. He also shall be a people, and he shall become great. But his younger brother shall become greater than he, and his seed shall become the fullness of the nations.[2]

20 And he blessed them in that day, saying, In you shall Israel bless, saying, May Elohim make you like Ephraim and like Manasseh.

21 And Israel said to Joseph, See, I am dying; and Elohim will be with you, and will return you to the land of your fathers.

22 And I will give to you one spur of land beyond your brothers, which I took from the hand of the Amorite with my sword and with my bow.

---

[1] Ephraim and Manasseh were literally adopted by Jacob and became Joseph's double portion for his birthright now having 2 tribes out of 13.

[2] Ephraim would go into captivity and lose his identity and his calling back into covenant relationship from his Diaspora in the last days would be the fullness of the nations. See Ro 11:25-26.

Chapter 49

1 And Jacob called his sons and said, Gather yourselves and I will tell you what will happen to you in the latter days.
2 Gather yourselves and hear, sons of Jacob; yea, listen to your father Israel:
3 Reuben, you *are* my first-born, my strength and the first-fruit of my power; excellence of dignity and excellence of might.
4 Like boiling water you shall not excel, for you went up to the bed of your father; then you defiled it; he went up to my couch.
5 Simeon and Levi, brothers; their weapons *are* instruments of violence.
6 Let not my soul come into their counsel; let not my spirit be joined to their company. For in their anger they killed a man; and in self-will they lamed an ox.
7 Cursed be their anger, for it was fierce; and their wrath, for *it was* cruel. I will divide them in Jacob, and I will scatter them in Israel.[1]
8 Judah, may your brothers praise you, your hand *be* on the neck of your enemies. May the sons of your father bow themselves to you.[2] *(Zech 12:6)*
9 Judah *is* a lion's whelp. My son, you have risen up from the prey; he stoops, he crouches like a lion; and like a lioness, who can rouse him? *(Rev 5:5)*
10 The scepter shall not depart from Judah, nor the lawmaker from between his feet, until He comes to whom it belongs (*Shiloh)*, and the obedience of the people to him.[3]
11 Binding his foal to the vine, and his donkey 's colt to the choice vine, he washes his clothing in wine, and his covering in the blood of grapes.
12 His eyes *shall be* dark from wine and his teeth white from milk.[4]
13 Zebulun shall live at the seashore, and he *shall be* a haven of ships, even his border beside Sidon.
14 Issachar *is* a strong donkey, crouching between the sheepfolds.
15 And he saw a resting place that *it was* good, and that the land was pleasant. And he bowed his neck to bear, and became a tribute slave.
16 Dan shall judge *his* people, as one of the tribes of Israel.[5]
17 Let Dan be a serpent on the way, a horned snake on the path that bites the horses' heels, and its rider falls backward. *(Amos 9:3)*
18 I have waited for your Y'shua*(salvation), O YAHWEH.
19 Gad, an army shall attack him, and he shall overcome on *their* heel.[6]
20 Out of Asher his bread shall be fat, and he shall give a king's delicacies.
21 Naphtali *is* a deer let loose giving one beautiful answers.[7]
22 Joseph *is* a fruitful son, a fruitful

---

1 Simeon wound up getting a portion from the land of Judah that was mostly desert and later mostly assimilated into the other tribal regions.

2 The kingship in Israel came from Judah fulfilling this verse.

3 Verses 9-10 show that the kingly line was promised to come through Judah and so the Lion of Judah (Yahshua) would be born from this tribe and have universal rule, Ps 2:8, Dan 7:13-14, is 42:1-4, Rev 5:5,9.

4 Verses 11-12- show the bountifulness of blessing promised to Judah. Wine is a rare commodity used for feasts and special times of celebration but Judah will wash clothes in good wine showing the continual blessing that would be afforded to them.

5 Samson came from the tribe of Dan, Ju 13:2 The tribe of Dan also officially brought idol worship into Israel, Jud 18:30-31.

6 Because Gad was located on the eastern side of the Jordan, they were vulnerable to attack by the Moabites to the south of them.

7 Naphtali like a swift deer was known for his eloquence in speech, Jud 4:6, 15, 5:1-31.

son by a spring; *his* daughters run over
a wall.[1]
23 And the masters of arrows harass
him, and shoot, and an archer lurks for
him.
24 His bow abides in strength, and
the hands of his arms are made agile by
the hands of the Mighty One of Jacob,
from the Shepherd, the Rock of Israel.
25 From the El of your father, may
He help you. And may the Almighty
bless you with blessings of Heaven
from above, blessings of the deep that
lies beneath, blessings of the breasts
and womb.
26 The blessings of your father are
above the blessings of my offspring, to
the limit of everlasting hills; may they
be for the head of Joseph and for the
crown of the one separated [2]of his
brothers.
27 Benjamin *is* a wolf that tears. In
the morning he devours the prey, and
at evening he divides the spoil.[3]
28 All these *were* the tribes of Israel,
two and ten. And this *is* what their
father spoke to them. And he blessed
them, each one with what was
according to his blessing, he blessed
them.
29 And he commanded them, and
said to them, I am about to be gathered
to my people. Bury me beside my
fathers, at the cave in the field of
Ephron the Hittite,
30 in the cave in the field of
Machpelah, which *is* before Mamre, in
the land of Canaan, the field which
Abraham bought from Ephron the
Hittite for a burying place.
31 They buried Abraham and his wife
Sarah there, and they buried Isaac and
his wife Rebekah; and I buried Leah
there;
32 the purchase of the field and the
cave in it, from the sons of Heth.
33 And Jacob finished commanding
his sons, and he gathered his feet into
the bed. And he expired, and was
gathered to his people.

Chapter 50

1 And Joseph fell on the face of his
father and wept on him, and kissed
him.
2 And Joseph commanded the
physicians, his servants, to embalm his
father; and the physicians embalmed
Israel.
3 And forty days were fulfilled, for so
are fulfilled the days of those
embalmed. And Egypt wept for him
seventy days.
4 And the days of his weeping passed
by, and Joseph spoke to the house of
Pharaoh, saying, Now if I have found
favor in your eyes, please speak in the
ears of Pharaoh, saying,
5 My father made me swear, saying,
Lo, I am dying; you shall bury me there
in the grave which I have dug for myself
in the land of Canaan. And now please
let me go up and bury my father, and
return.
6 And Pharaoh said, Go up and bury
your father, as he made you swear.
7 And Joseph went up to bury his
father; and all the servants of Pharaoh
went up with him, the elders of his
house, even all the elders of the land of
Egypt,
8 and all the house of Joseph and his
brothers, and the house of his father.
Only, they left their little ones and their
flocks and their herds in the land of
Goshen.
9 And both horsemen and chariots

[1] Joseph had the double blessing of the birthright and his son 's name Ephraim means fruitfulness.

[2] The word separated here is the Hebrew word "*nazeer*" which is a form from Nazerene.

[3] Benjamin is compared to a ravenous wolf, who is mighty in battle but also cruel, Jud 20, Jud 3:12-20, 1 Sam 9:1-2.

went up with him; and the company was very great.

10 And they came as far as the threshing floor of thorns, which is on the other side of the Jordan. And they mourned there with a great and very heavy mourning. And he made a heavy wailing for his father seven days.

11 And those living in the land, the Canaanites, saw the wailing in the grain floor of thorns. And they said, This *is* a very great wailing to Egypt; for this reason its name was called *Abel Mizraim* [1]*,* which *is* on the other side of Jordan.

12 And his sons did to him as he had commanded them.

13 And his sons carried him to the land of Canaan, and buried him in the cave of the field of Machpelah; the field which Abraham bought for a burying place from Ephron the Hittite, before Mamre.

14 And after he buried his father, Joseph returned to Egypt, he and his brothers, and all those going up with him to bury his father.

15 And Joseph's brothers saw that their father was dead. And they said, What if Joseph should bear a grudge against us and surely should repay us all the evil which we did to him?

16 And they sent a message to Joseph, saying,

17 Your father commanded before his death, saying, So you shall say to Joseph, Please lift up now the rebellion of your brothers, and their sin; for they did evil to you. And now please lift up the rebellion of the servants of the Elohim of your father. And Joseph wept when they spoke to him.

18 His brothers also went and fell down before his face. And they said, Behold, we *are* your servants.

19 And Joseph said to them, Do not fear. For *am* I in the place of Elohim?

20 And you, you intended evil against me, *but* Elohim meant it for good, in order to make it as it is this day, to keep a great many people alive.

21 And now do not fear; I will nourish you and your little ones. And he comforted them, and spoke to their hearts.

22 And Joseph lived in Egypt, he and the house of his father. And Joseph lived a hundred and ten years.

23 And Joseph saw the sons of Ephraim to the third generation. Also the sons of Machir the son of Manasseh were born on Joseph's knees.

24 And Joseph said to his brothers, I am dying, and Elohim visiting will visit you and bring you up from this land to the land which He swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

25 And Joseph made the sons of Israel swear, saying, Elohim surely will visit you, and you will bring up my bones from here.

26 And Joseph died, a son of a hundred and ten years. And they embalmed him, and put him in a coffin in Egypt.

---

[1] Mizraim means The Meadow of Egypt

The Book of Exodus (Shemoth)

Chapter 1

1 And these *were* the names of the sons of Israel who came into Egypt with Jacob; they each one came in with his house:
2 Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah,
3 Issachar, Zebulun, and Benjamin,
4 Dan, Naphtali, Gad, and Asher.
5 And all the souls that came out of the loins of Jacob were seventy-five souls, Joseph being in Egypt.
6 And Joseph died, and all his brothers and all that generation.
7 And the sons of Israel were fruitful and increased very much, and multiplied, and became very strong; and the land was filled *with* them.
8 And a new king arose over Egypt, who had not known Joseph.
9 And he said to his people, Behold, the people of the sons of Israel *are* many and stronger than we.
10 Come, let us deal craftily towards them, lest they multiply and it shall be that when war occurs they will also add to our enemies, and will fight against us and go up from the land.
11 And they put over them slavemasters in order to afflict them with their burdens. And he built store cities for Pharaoh: Pithon and Raamses.
12 And as much as they afflicted them, so much they multiplied and so much they spread. And they were afraid before the sons of Israel.
13 And Egypt made the sons of Israel to serve with harshness.
14 And they made their lives bitter by hard service, in clay, and in bricks, and in all work in the field; all their work which they made them do with harshness.
15 And the king of Egypt said to the midwives of the Hebrews, of whom the name of one *was* Shiphrah, and the name of the second, Puah;
16 and he said, When you midwife the Hebrew women, and look on the birth-stools, if it *is* a son, you will kill him; and if it *is* a daughter, it shall live.
17 And the midwives feared Elohim, and they did not do as the king of Egypt said to them. And they kept the male children alive.
18 And the king of Egypt called to the midwives and said to them, Why do you do this thing and keep alive the male children?
19 And the midwives said to Pharaoh, Because the Hebrew women *are* not like the Egyptian women, for they *are* vigorous. Before the midwives come to them they bear.
20 And Elohim dealt well with the midwives; and the people multiplied and became exceedingly strong.
21 And it was, because the midwives feared Elohim, He made houses for them.
22 And Pharaoh commanded all his people, saying, Every son that *is* born, you shall cast him into the river. And you shall keep alive every daughter.

Chapter 2

1 And a man went from the house of Levi and took a daughter of Levi.
2 And the woman conceived and bore a son; and she saw him, that he was beautiful. And she concealed him three months.
3 And she was not able to hide him any longer, and she took a basket[1] *for* him *made of* papyrus, and she daubed it with bitumen and with pitch. And she put the child in it, and placed it in the reeds by the lip of the Nile.
4 And his sister took her stand from

[1] The Hebrew word used here is "*tebah*" and was used in Gen 6:14 for the word for ark. The mother used bitumen and pitch as Noah did to make his ark. (Gen 6:14)

a distance, to know what would be done to him.

5 And the daughter of Pharaoh went down to bathe at the Nile. And her slave women were walking on the side of the Nile. And she saw the basket in the midst of the reeds, and sent her slave-girl and took it.

6 And she opened *it* and saw the child, and, behold, a boy crying! And she had pity on him and said, This *one is* of the children of the Hebrews.

7 And his sister said to Pharaoh's daughter, Shall I go and call a woman for you, a nurse of the Hebrew women, that she may nurse the child for you?

8 And Pharaoh's daughter said to her, Go. And the girl went and called *the* child's mother.

9 And Pharaoh's daughter said to her, Take this child away and nurse him for me, and I will give your wages. And the woman took the child and nursed him.

10 And the child grew, and she brought him to the daughter of Pharaoh. And he became a son to her, and she called his name Moses, and said, Because I drew him out of the water.

11 And it happened in those days, when Moses was grown, and he went out to his brothers and looked upon their burdens. And he saw an Egyptian man strike a Hebrew man of his brothers.

12 And he turned here and there and saw that no man was there. And he struck the Egyptian and hid him in the sand.

13 And he went out on the second day, and, behold, two men, Hebrews, were fighting. And he said to the guilty one, Why should you strike your neighbor?

14 And he said, Who appointed you as a man, a ruler and a judge over us? *Are* you saying to kill me, as you killed the Egyptian? And Moses feared, and said, Surely the thing is known.

15 And Pharaoh heard this word, and he sought to kill Moses. And Moses fled from before Pharaoh, and lived in the land of Midian. And *he* sat down by the well.

16 And the priest of Midian *had* seven daughters. And they came and drew and filled the troughs to water their father's flocks.

17 And the shepherds came and drove them away; and Moses rose up and saved them, and watered their flocks.

18 And they came to their father Reuel; and he said, Why have you hurried to come today?

19 And they said, An Egyptian man rescued us from the hand of the shepherds, and he even drew for us and watered the flock.

20 And he said to *his* daughters, And where *is* he? Why then have you left the man? Call him, and let him eat bread.

21 And Moses consented to live with the man; and he gave his daughter Zipporah to Moses.

22 And she bore a son, and he called his name Gershom; for he said, I have become an alien in a foreign land.

23 And it happened after many days that the king of Egypt died, and the sons of Israel groaned from the slavery. And they cried, and their cry went up to Elohim from the slavery.

24 And Elohim heard their groaning, and Elohim remembered His covenant with Abraham, with Isaac, and with Jacob.

25 And Elohim saw the sons of Israel, and Elohim understood *them*.

Chapter 3

1 And Moses was tending the flock of his father-in-law Jethro, the priest of

Midian. And he led the flock behind
the wilderness and came to the
mountain of the Elohim, to Horeb.
2 And the Messenger of YAHWEH[1]
appeared to him in a flame of fire from
the middle of a thorn bush. And he
looked, and behold, the thorn bush
was burning with fire, and the thorn
bush *was* not burned up! *(Acts 7:35)*
3 And Moses said, I will turn aside
now and see this great sight, why the
thorn bush is not burned up.
4 And YAHWEH saw that he turned
aside to see, and Elohim called to him
from the midst of the thorn bush, and
said, Moses! Moses! And he said, I am
here.
5 And He said, Do not come near
here. Pull off your sandals from your
feet, for the place on which you *are*
standing *is* holy ground.
6 And He said, I *am* the Elohim of
your fathers, the Elohim of Abraham,
the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of
Jacob. And Moses hid his face, for he
feared to look upon the Elohim.
7 And YAHWEH said, Surely, I have
seen the affliction of My people who
are in Egypt, and I have heard their
cry from before their taskmasters; for I
know their sorrows.
8 And I have come down to deliver
them from the hand of the Egyptians,
and to bring them up from that land to
a good and broad land, to a land
flowing *with* milk and honey[2]; to the
place of the Canaanite, and the Hittite,
and the Amorite, and the Perizzite and
the Hivite and the Jebusite.
9 And now, behold, the cry of the
sons of Israel has come to Me, and I
also have seen the oppression *with*
which the Egyptians are oppressing
them.
10 And now, come, and I will send
you to Pharaoh, and you bring My
people out, the sons of Israel out of
Egypt.
11 And Moses said to the Elohim,
Who *am* I that I should go to Pharaoh,
and that I should bring out the sons of
Israel from Egypt?
12 And He said, I will be with you,
and this *shall be* the sign for you that I
have sent you, when you bring out the
people from Egypt: You shall serve
Elohim on this mountain.
13 And Moses said to the Elohim,
Behold, I *shall* come to the sons of
Israel and say to them, the Elohe of
your fathers has sent me to you; and
they will say to me, What *is* His name?
What shall I say to them?
14 And Elohim said to Moses,
EHYAH ASHER EHYAH *(I AM THAT
I AM)*; and He said, You shall say this
to the sons of Israel, EHYAH *(I AM)*
has sent me to you.[3]
15 And Elohim said to Moses again[4],
You shall say this to the sons of Israel,
YAHWEH, the Elohe of your fathers,
the Elohe of Abraham, the Elohe of
Isaac, and the Elohe of Jacob, has sent
me to you. This is My name forever,
and this is how I should be
remembered from generation to
generation[5]. *(Deut 6:13, Ex 20:7)*
16 Go, and gather the elders of Israel
and say to them, YAHWEH, the Elohe

[1] As we know from the Brit Hadashah (New Testament) no man has ever seen Yahweh the Father and clearly the Messenger of YHWH is Yahshua His Son.

[2] Israel went as shepherds in Egypt to farmers in Israel. Here, showing a land of "*milk and honey*" is showing the abundance of food and drink for both them and their animals, a shepherds dream.

[3] Literally, I will be what I will be. This verse used the past, present and future verb tense, showing who was, who is and who is to come, the Eternal Yahweh.

[4] The fact that in Hebrew it mentions Elohim speaking again indicates that possibly 2 different people are speaking. Elohim the Father and Elohim the Son.

of your fathers has appeared to me, the Elohe of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, saying, visiting I have visited you and *have seen what* is done to you in Egypt.

17 And I have said, I will bring you up from the affliction of Egypt to the land of the Canaanite, the Hittite, and the Amorite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite; to a land flowing with milk and honey.

18 And they shall listen to your voice; and you shall come in, you and the elders of Israel to the king of Egypt. And you shall say to him, YAHWEH, the Elohe of the Hebrews has met us; and now, please let us go for a journey of three days into the wilderness, and let us sacrifice to YAHWEH our Elohim.

19 And I know that the king of Egypt will not permit you to go, not even by a strong hand.

20 And I will stretch out My hand and strike Egypt with all My wonders, which I will do in its midst, and afterward he will send you away.

21 And I will give this people favor in the eyes of Egypt; and it shall be, when you go, you will not go empty.

22 And each woman shall ask of her neighbor, and from the stranger in her house, articles of silver, and articles of gold, and garments; and you shall put *these* on your sons and on your daughters. And you shall plunder Egypt.

Chapter 4

1 And Moses answered and said, And, behold, they will not believe me and will not listen to my voice. For they will say, YAHWEH has not appeared to you.

2 And YAHWEH said to him, What *is* this in your hand? And he said, A staff.

3 And He said, Throw it to the ground. And he threw it to the ground, and it became a hissing creature. And Moses fled from its face.

4 And YAHWEH said to Moses, reach out your hand and take it by the tail. And he sent out his hand and caught it, and it became a staff in his palm;

5 so that they may believe that YAHWEH the Elohe of their fathers has appeared to you, the Elohe of Abraham, the Elohe of Isaac, and the Elohe of Jacob.

6 And YAHWEH said to him again, Now put your hand into your bosom. And he put his hand into his bosom, and he brought it out, and, behold, his hand *was* leprous like snow.

7 And He said, Put your hand back into your bosom. And he put his hand back into his bosom, and he brought it out from his bosom; and, behold, it had returned like his flesh!

8 And it shall be, if they will not believe you and will not listen to the voice of the first sign, that they will believe the latter sign.

9 And it shall be, if they will not believe these two signs also, and will not listen to your voice, you shall take of the water of the Nile and pour *it on* the dry land. And the water which you take from the Nile shall become blood on the dry land.

10 And Moses said to YAHWEH, O YAHWEH, I *am* not a man of words, either from yesterday or the third day,

5 The Heavenly Father reveals His name to be YHWH pronounced as **YAHWEH.** This name is listed almost 7,000 times in the Tanach (Old Testament) alone and yet almost every bible translation on earth exchanges the sacred name of Yahweh for generic titles and even pagan names such as god and lord. Deut 28:58, 32:3, Is 12:4, Is 25:1, 42:8, 51:15, 59:19, Jer 10:6, 33:2, 2 Chron 6:32, Ps 102:15,21, 124:8.

nor since You have been speaking to Your bondslave. For I *am* heavy of mouth and heavy of tongue.[1] *(Ex 6:10)*

11 And YAHWEH said to him, Who has made man's mouth? Or who makes the dumb, or the deaf, or the seeing, or the blind? *Is* it not I, YAHWEH? *(Joh 9:1-3, Ps 94:9)*

12 And now go, and I will be with your mouth, and will teach you what you shall speak.

13 And he said, O YAHWEH, please send by the hand *of him whom* You will send.

14 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed against Moses. And He said, Do I not know your brother, Aaron the Levite, that he can speak well? And, behold, he also is coming out to meet you, and he will see you and be glad in his heart.

15 And you shall speak to him, and you shall put the words in his mouth. And I will be with your mouth, and with his mouth, and I will teach you what you shall do.

16 And he shall speak for you to the people. And it shall be, he shall be a mouth for you, and you shall be a Mighty One[2] for him.

17 And you shall take this staff in your hand *by* which you do the signs.

18 And Moses went and returned to his father-in-law Jethro, and said to him, Please let me go and return to my brothers who *are* in Egypt, and see whether they *are* still alive. And Jethro said to Moses, Go in peace.

19 And YAHWEH said to Moses in Midian, Go! Return to Egypt. For all the men are dead, those seeking your life.

20 And Moses took his wife and his sons and made them ride on a donkey.[3] And he returned to the land of Egypt. And Moses took the staff of the Elohim in his hand.

21 And YAHWEH said to Moses, As you go to return to Egypt, see all the wonders which I have put in your hand, and do them before Pharaoh. And I will harden his heart, and he will not send the people away.

22 And you shall speak to Pharaoh, So says YAHWEH, My son, My first-born *is* Israel.

23 And I said to you, Send My son away, and let him serve Me; and you refused to send him. Behold, I *am* about to kill your son, your first-born![4]

24 And it happened on the way, in the lodging place, YAHWEH met him and sought to kill him.

25 And Zipporah took a stone and cut off her son's foreskin, and caused *it* to touch his feet. And she said, You *are* a bridegroom of blood to me.

26 And He pulled back from him. Then she said, A bridegroom of blood, for the circumcision.[5]

27 And YAHWEH said to Aaron, Go to the wilderness to meet Moses. And he went and met him in the mountain of The Elohim; and he kissed him.

28 And Moses told Aaron all the words of YAHWEH with which He

---

1 Moses stuttered.

2 The Hebrew word used here is "*Elohim*" a generic title for deity and this title is used for YHWH around 2,500 times in scripture and with YHWH's great power behind Moses he would look as if he were an Elohim to Aaron.

3 The donkey is a sign of humility, Zech 9:9, Math 21:1-9.

4 It was decided back with Noah and Abraham that salvation (Yahshua) would come out of the seed of Israel, who is the firstborn to YHWH, Amos 3:2.

5 Verses 24-26 Yahweh's judicial order was that Moses' son should have been circumcised. Elohim had mercy to spare the boy, however Zipporah did not understand the covenant being a Midianite.

had sent him, and all the signs which He had commanded him.

29 And Moses and Aaron went on and gathered all the elders of the sons of Israel.

30 And Aaron spoke all the words which YAHWEH had spoken to Moses. And he did the signs before the people.

31 And the people believed. And they heard that YAHWEH had visited the sons of Israel, and that He had seen their affliction. And they bowed and worshiped.

Chapter 5

1 And afterward Moses and Aaron came in and said to Pharaoh, So says YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, Send away My people, and they shall feast to Me in the wilderness.

2 And Pharaoh said, Who *is* YAHWEH that I should listen to His voice to send away Israel? I do not know YAHWEH, and I also will not send Israel away.

3 And they said, The Elohim of the Hebrews has met with us. Now let us go a journey of three days into the wilderness and sacrifice to YAHWEH our Elohim, lest He fall on us with plague or with sword.

4 And the king of Egypt said to them, Moses and Aaron, why do you loose the people from their work? You go to your burdens.

5 And Pharaoh said, Behold, the people of the land *are* many now, and you make them cease from their burdens.

6 And Pharaoh commanded the taskmasters of the people, and their overseers, that day, saying,

7 You shall not go on giving straw to the people to make bricks, as yesterday and the third day. They shall go and pick up straw for themselves.

8 And the fixed number of bricks which they *were* making yesterday and the third day you shall put on them. You shall not diminish from it. For they *are* idle; so they *are* crying, saying, Let us go, let us sacrifice to our Elohim.

9 Let the bondage be heavy on the men, that they may work in it, and may not trust in the lying words.

10 And the taskmasters of the people, and their overseers went out and spoke to the people, saying, Pharaoh has said this, I will not give you straw.

11 You go take straw for yourselves from wherever you may find it. For not a thing will be reduced from your work.

12 And the people scattered in all the land of Egypt to pick up stubble for straw.

13 And the taskmasters *were* demanding, saying, Finish your work, the matter of a day in its day, as when there was straw.

14 And the overseers of the sons of Israel were beaten, those whom the taskmasters of Pharaoh had put over them, saying, Why have you not finished your appointed task, to make bricks as a day ago *and* the day before, both yesterday and today?

15 And the overseers of the sons of Israel came in and cried to Pharaoh, saying, Why do you do this way to your slaves?

16 No straw is given to your slaves, and they are saying to us, Make bricks. And, behold, your slaves are beaten, but your people *are* at fault.

17 And he said, You *are* lazy *and* idle. So you *are* saying, Let us go, let us sacrifice to YAHWEH.

18 Therefore, go now *and* work. And straw will not be given to you; and a certain number of bricks you shall deliver.

19 And the overseers of the sons of Israel saw themselves in affliction, saying, You shall not diminish from your bricks, the matter of a day in its day.

20 And they met Moses and Aaron standing to meet them when they came from Pharaoh.

21 And they said to them, May YAHWEH look on you and judge, you who have made our odor to stink in Pharaoh's eyes and in the eyes of his servants, to give a sword in their hands to kill us.

22 And Moses returned to YAHWEH and said, YAHWEH, why have You done evil to this people? Why then have You sent me?

23 And since I came in to Pharaoh to speak in Your name, he has done evil to this people. And You did not certainly deliver your people.

Chapter 6

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Now you will see what I will do to Pharaoh. For he will send them away with a strong hand, yea, he will drive them out from his land with a strong hand.

2 And Elohim spoke to Moses and said to him, I am YAHWEH.

3 And I appeared to Abraham, to Isaac and to Jacob *as* El Shaddai, and *by* My name YAHWEH have I not been known to them[1].

4 And I also established My covenant with them to give to them the land of Canaan, the land of their travels, in which they traveled in it.

5 And I also have heard the groaning of the sons of Israel, whom the Egyptians are enslaving. And I have remembered My covenant.

6 Therefore, say to the sons of Israel, I *am* YAHWEH, and I will bring you out from under the burdens of Egypt, and will deliver you from their slavery. And I will redeem you with an outstretched arm and with great judgments.

7 And I will take you for Myself for a people, and I will be for you a Elohim. And you shall know that I *am* YAHWEH your Elohim, the One bringing you out from under the burdens of Egypt.

8 And I will bring you into the land which I raised My hand to give to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob. And I will give it to you for a possession. I *am* YAHWEH! *(Gen 15:18, 17:7-8)*

9 And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel. And they did not listen to Moses, from anguish of spirit and from harsh bondage.

10 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

11 Go, speak to Pharaoh king of Egypt, that he may send away the sons of Israel from his land.

12 And Moses spoke before YAHWEH, saying, Behold the sons of Israel have not listened to me. And how should Pharaoh hear me, I *being* of uncircumcised lips? *(Ex 4:10)*

13 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron and He directed them as to the sons of Israel, and as to Pharaoh king of Egypt, to bring out the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt.

14 These *were* the heads of the houses of their fathers: The sons of Reuben the first-born of Israel: Hanoch, Pallu, Hezron and Carmi; these *were* the families of Reuben.

15 And the sons of Simeon: Jemuel, Jamin, Ohad, Jachin, Zohar and

---

1 The thought in the Hebrew is not that Abraham never heard the name of Yahweh, but that Yahweh revealed Himself to Abraham as El Shaddai (El Almighty), however, now He was revealing Himself by His family name of Yahweh, the all existent one.

Shaul, the son of a Canaanitess; these *were* the families of Simeon.
16 And these *were* the names of the sons of Levi by their generations: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari. And the years of the life of Levi *were* a hundred and thirty seven years.
17 The sons of Gershon: Libni and Shimei, by their families.
18 And the sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, Hebron and Uzziel. And the years of the life of Kohath *were* a hundred and thirty three years.
19 And the sons of Merari: Mahli, and Mushi. These *were* the families of Levi according to their generations.
20 And Amram took his aunt Jochebed to him for a wife. And she bore to him Aaron and Moses. And the years of the life of Amram *were* a hundred and thirty seven years.
21 And the sons of Izhar: Korah, Nepheg and Zichri.
22 And the sons of Uzziel: Mishael, Elzaphan and Zithri.
23 And Aaron took Elisheba the daughter of Amminadab, the sister of Nahshon, to him for a wife. And she bore to him Nadab, Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar.
24 And the sons of Korah: Assir, Elkanah and Abiasaph. These *were* the families of the Korahites.
25 And Aaron's son Eleazar took of the daughters of Putiel for his wife. And she bore to him Phinehas. These *were* the heads of the fathers of the Levites by their families.
26 That *is the* Aaron and Moses *to* whom YAHWEH said, Bring out the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt, according to their armies.
27 Those *were* the ones speaking to Pharaoh king of Egypt to bring out the sons of Israel from Egypt; it *was* Moses and Aaron.
28 And it happened on the day YAHWEH spoke to Moses in the land of Egypt:
29 YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying, I *am* YAHWEH! Speak to Pharaoh king of Egypt all which I am about to speak to you.
30 And Moses said before YAHWEH, Behold, I *am* of uncircumcised lips. How *could* Pharaoh listen to me? *(Ex 6:12)*

Chapter 7

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, See, I have made you a Elohim to Pharaoh; and your brother Aaron shall be your prophet.
2 You shall speak all that I command you, and your brother Aaron shall speak to Pharaoh. And he will send away the sons of Israel from his land.
3 And I will harden the heart of Pharaoh. And I will multiply My signs and My wonders in the land of Egypt.
4 And Pharaoh will not listen to you. And I will put My hand on Egypt, and will bring My armies, My people, the sons of Israel, from the land of Egypt with great judgments.
5 And the Egyptians shall know that I *am* YAHWEH when I send forth My hand on Egypt and bring out the sons of Israel from their midst.
6 And Moses and Aaron did as YAHWEH commanded them, so they did.
7 And Moses *was* a son of eighty years, and Aaron *was* a son of eighty three years when they spoke to Pharaoh.
8 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,
9 When Pharaoh speaks to you, saying, Give a miracle for yourselves, you shall say to Aaron, Take your staff and throw it before Pharaoh; and let it become a crocodile.
10 And Moses and Aaron came to

Pharaoh, and they did so, as YAHWEH had commanded. And Aaron threw his staff before Pharaoh and before his servants. And it became a crocodile[1].

11 And Pharaoh also called wise men and the sorcerers. And they, the priests of Egypt, also performed by their secret arts.

12 And they each one threw down his staff, and they became crocodiles. But Aaron's staff swallowed their staffs.

13 And the heart of Pharaoh *was* hardened, and he did not listen to them, as YAHWEH had said.

14 And YAHWEH said to Moses, The heart of Pharaoh *is* heavy; he refuses to send away the people.

15 Go to Pharaoh in the morning. Behold, he is about to go out to the water. And you stand to meet him on the lip of the river. And you shall take in your hand the staff that was turned into a hissing creature.

16 And you shall say to him, YAHWEH the Elohim of the Hebrews has sent me to you, saying, Send away My people, so that they may serve Me in the wilderness. And, behold, you have not listened until now.

17 So says YAHWEH, By this you shall know that I *am* YAHWEH: Behold, I *am* about to strike the water in the river with the staff in My hand, and it shall be turned to blood.

18 And the fish in the river will die, and the river will stink, and the Egyptians will become weary *of* drinking water from the river.

19 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Say to Aaron, Take your staff, and stretch out your hand over the waters of Egypt, over the rivers, over their canals, and over their pools, and over every body of their waters, so that they may become blood. And blood shall be in all the land of Egypt, both in wooden and in stone vessels.

20 And Moses and Aaron did so, as YAHWEH had commanded. And he lifted up the staff and struck the water which *was* in the river before Pharaoh's eyes, and before his servants' eyes. And all the water in the river turned to blood.

21 And the fish in the river died, and the river stunk. And the Egyptians were not able to drink water from the Nile. And the blood was in all the land of Egypt.

22 And the magicians of Egypt did so by their secret arts. And Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he did not listen to them, as YAHWEH had said.

23 And Pharaoh turned and went into his house. And he did not set his heart to this also.

24 And all the Egyptians dug around the river to drink water, for they were not able to drink from the water of the river.

25 And seven days were fulfilled after YAHWEH struck the river.

Chapter 8

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Go to Pharaoh, and say to him, So says YAHWEH, Send away My people that they may serve Me.

2 And if you refuse to send *them* away, behold, I *am* about to smite all your territory *with* frogs.

3 And the river will swarm with frogs. And they shall go up and enter into your house, and into your bedroom, and on your couch, and into your servants' house, and on your people, and into your ovens and into your kneading troughs.

4 And the frogs will come up on you, and on your people, and on all your servants.

[1] The Hebrew word "*taneen*" literally means crocodile and not snake. Crocodiles were worshiped in ancient Egypt.

5 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Say
to Aaron, Stretch out your hand with
your staff over the rivers, over the
canals, and over the pools. And bring
up frogs on the land of Egypt.
6 And Aaron stretched out his hand
over the waters of Egypt, and the frogs
came up and covered the land of
Egypt.
7 And the priests did so with their
secret arts. And they brought up the
frogs on the land of Egypt.
8 And Pharaoh called Moses and
Aaron, and said, Pray to YAHWEH
that He may remove the frogs from me
and from my people. And I will send
away the people that they may
sacrifice to YAHWEH.
9 And Moses said to Pharaoh, Glory
over me. For when shall I pray for you
and for your servants and for your
people, to cut off the frogs from you,
and from your house, *that* they may be
left only in the river?
10 And he said, For tomorrow. And
he said, According to your word, so
that you may know that none *is* like
YAHWEH our Elohim.
11 And the frogs will depart from
you, and from your houses, and from
your servants, and from your people.
They will only be in the river.
12 And Moses and Aaron went out
from Pharaoh. And Moses cried to
YAHWEH concerning the frogs which
He had set on Pharaoh.
13 And YAHWEH did according to
the word of Moses. And the frogs died
from the houses, from the courts, and
from the fields.
14 And they gathered them *in* heaps
and heaps; and the land stunk.
15 And Pharaoh saw that *there* was
relief. And he made his heart heavy,
and he did not listen to them, as
YAHWEH had said.
16 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Say to Aaron, Stretch out your staff
and strike the dust of the earth, and let
it become lice in all the land of Egypt.
17 And they did so, and Aaron
stretched out his hand with his staff
and struck the dust of the earth. And
the lice were on man and on beast. All
the dust of the earth became lice in the
land of Egypt.
18 And the priests performed with
their secret arts to bring forth lice, and
they could not. And the lice were on
man and on beast.
19 And the priests said to Pharaoh, It
is the finger of Elohim. And Pharaoh's
heart was hardened, and he did not
listen to them, as YAHWEH had said.
20 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Get up early in the morning, and stand
before Pharaoh. Behold, he *is* about to
go out to the water. And say to him, So
says YAHWEH, Send away My people
that they may serve Me.
21 And if you do not send away My
people, behold, I *am* about to send
swarms *of flies* on you, and on your
servants, and on your people, and on
your house. And the houses of the
Egyptians will be full of swarms of
flies, and also the ground on which
they are.
22 And in that day I will separate the
land of Goshen with My people resting
on it, that there be no swarms of flies,
so that you may know that I am
YAHWEH in the midst of the earth.
23 And I will put a distinction
between My people and your people.
This miracle shall be for tomorrow.
24 And YAHWEH did so. And
teeming swarms of flies came into
Pharaoh's house, and the house of his
servants, and into all the land of
Egypt. And the land was destroyed
before the swarms of flies.
25 And Pharaoh called for Moses
and for Aaron, and said, Go! Sacrifice
to your Elohim in the land.
26 And Moses said, It is not right to

do so, for we sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians to YAHWEH our Elohim. Behold! If we sacrifice the abomination of the Egyptians before their eyes, will they not stone us?

27 We will go into the wilderness, a journey of three days, and sacrifice to YAHWEH our Elohim, as He may say to us.

28 And Pharaoh said, I will send you away, and you may sacrifice to YAHWEH your Elohim in the wilderness; only do not go very far off. And pray for me.

29 And Moses said, Behold, I am about to go out from you, and to pray to YAHWEH. And the swarms *of flies* will depart from Pharaoh, and from his servants, and from his people tomorrow. But do not let Pharaoh continue to deceive, not to send the people to sacrifice to YAHWEH.

30 And Moses went out from Pharaoh. And he prayed to YAHWEH.

31 And YAHWEH did according to the word of Moses, and the swarms *of flies* departed from Pharaoh, from his servants, and from his people; and not one was left.

32 And Pharaoh made heavy his heart this time also, and he did not send away the people.

Chapter 9

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Go in to Pharaoh and say to him, So says YAHWEH the Elohim of the Hebrews, Send away My people that they may serve Me.

2 And if you refuse to send away, and you still hold onto them,

3 behold the hand of YAHWEH is going to be on your livestock in the field, on the horses, on the donkeys, on the camels, on the herds[1], and on the flocks, a very heavy pestilence.

4 And YAHWEH will make a distinction between Israel's livestock and Egypt's livestock. Also of all *that belongs* to the sons of Israel, not a thing will die.

5 And YAHWEH set a time, saying, Tomorrow YAHWEH will do this thing in the land.

6 And YAHWEH did this thing on the next day, and all the livestock of Egypt died. And from the livestock of the sons of Israel, not one died.

7 And Pharaoh sent, and behold, not even one was dead from Israel's livestock! And Pharaoh's heart was hardened, and he did not send away the people.

8 And YAHWEH said to Moses and to Aaron, Take for yourselves the fullness of your hands of soot from the furnace, and let Moses sprinkle it toward the heaven before Pharaoh's eyes.

9 And let it become dust on all the land of Egypt, and let it become boils breaking out into sores on man and on livestock in all the land of Egypt.

10 And they took soot of the furnace and stood before Pharaoh. And Moses sprinkled it toward the heavens, and it became a boil breaking out into sores on man and on livestock.

11 And the priests were not able to stand before Moses, because of the boils. For the boils were on the priests and on all the Egyptians.

12 And YAHWEH made heavy Pharaoh's heart, and he did not listen to them, as YAHWEH had said to Moses.

13 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Get up early in the morning and stand before Pharaoh, and say to him, So

[1] The Egyptians worshiped bull gods such as Apis and Hathor.

says YAHWEH the Elohim of the
Hebrews, Send away My people that
they may serve Me.
14 For at this time I *am* going to
send all My plagues to your heart, and
on your servants, and on your people,
so that you may know that none *is* like
Me in all the land.
15 For now I have sent forth My
hand and have stricken you and your
people with pestilence, and you have
been destroyed from the earth.
16 And for this reason I have made
you stand, in order to cause you to see
My power, and in order to declare My
name in all the land.
17 You still are exalting yourself
against My people, *so as* not to send
them away. *(Rev 16:11)*
18 Behold! I will rain very heavy hail
about this time tomorrow, *such as* has
never been in Egypt from the day of *its*
foundation until now.
19 And now send out, bring your
livestock to safety, and all belonging to
you in the field. All men and livestock
found in the field, and not brought to
the house, the hail will come on them,
and they will die.
20 Of the servants of Pharaoh, the
one who feared the Word of
YAHWEH made his slaves and his
livestock flee to the houses.
21 And the one who did not set his
heart on the Word of YAHWEH left
his slaves and his livestock in the field.
22 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Stretch out your hand to the heavens,
so that hail may be in all the land of
Egypt, on man, and on livestock, and
on every plant of the field in the land
of Egypt.
23 And Moses stretched out his staff
to the heavens. And YAHWEH gave
sounds and hail. And fire came down
to the earth, and YAHWEH rained
hail on the land of Egypt. *(Rev 16:21)*
24 And *there* was hail, and fire
flashing in the midst of the hail, very
heavy, which never had been in all the
land of Egypt since it became a nation.
25 And the hail struck in all the land
of Egypt, all that *was* in the field, from
men and to livestock. And the hail
struck every plant of the field, and it
broke in pieces every tree of the field.
26 Only in the land of Goshen,
where the sons of Israel *lived*, there
was no hail.
27 And Pharaoh sent and called
Moses and Aaron, and said to them, I
have sinned *this* time. YAHWEH *is*
the righteous One, and I and my
people the wicked ones.
28 Pray to YAHWEH and *let it be*
enough of the thunders and hail of
Elohim. And I will send you away and
you shall not continue any longer.
29 And Moses said to him, As I go
out of the city I will spread out my
hands to YAHWEH. The thunder will
cease, and the hail will not still be, so
that you may know that the earth
belongs to YAHWEH. *(Ps 24:1-2)*
30 And *as for* you and your servants,
I know that you do not yet fear before
YAHWEH Elohim.
31 And the flax and the barley were
stricken. For the barley *was in* head,
and the flax in bud[1].
32 And the wheat and the spelt were
not stricken, for they *were* late.
33 And Moses went out from
Pharaoh, *from* the city, and *he* spread
out his hands to YAHWEH. And the
thunder and the hail ceased. And rain
was not poured out toward the earth.
34 And Pharaoh saw that the rain
and the hail and the thunder had
ceased, and he continued to sin. And
he made his heart heavy, he and his
servants.

---

[1] Northern Egypt which gets virtually no rain barley is sown in August and reaped in February. There is a different growing season in Israel.

35 And Pharaoh's heart was made strong, and he did not send away the sons of Israel, as YAHWEH had said by the hand of Moses.

Chapter 10

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Go in to Pharaoh, for I have made his heart heavy and the heart of his servants, so that I may set these signs of Mine in their midst;

2 and so that you may recount in the ears of your son and the son of your son what I exerted Myself to do against Egypt, and My signs which I have done among them, and you may know that I *am* YAHWEH.

3 And Moses and Aaron went in to Pharaoh and said to him, So says YAHWEH Elohe of the Hebrews, Until when will you refuse to humble yourself before Me? Send away My people so that they may serve Me.

4 For if you refuse to send away My people, behold, I am going to bring locusts into your territory tomorrow.

5 And they will cover the eye of the land, and no one will be able to see the land. And they will eat the rest of that which escaped, that which is left to you from the hail. And they will eat every tree that sprouts to you from the field.

6 And your houses will be full, and the houses of all your servants, and the houses of the Egyptians, which neither your fathers nor the fathers of your fathers have seen; from the day of their being on the earth until this day. And he turned and went out from Pharaoh.

7 And Pharaoh's servants said to him, How long shall this one be a snare to us? Send away the men that they may serve YAHWEH their Elohim. Do you not yet know that Egypt is perishing?

8 And Moses and Aaron were brought back to Pharaoh. And he said to them, Go, serve YAHWEH your Elohim. Who and who *are* the ones going?

9 And Moses said, We will go with our young and with our old, with our sons and with our daughters. We will go with our flocks and with our herds. For *it is* a feast of YAHWEH to us.

10 And he said to them, May YAHWEH be so with you, as I send you away, and your little ones. Watch! For evil *is* before your face!

11 Not so! You and the men go now and serve YAHWEH; for you *were* seeking it. And he drove them out from the face of Pharaoh.

12 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Stretch out your hand for the locusts over the land of Egypt, so that they may go up on the land of Egypt and may eat every plant of the land, all that the hail left.

13 And Moses stretched out his staff over the land of Egypt. And YAHWEH brought an east wind on the land all that day and all that night. *And at* morning the east wind lifted up the locusts.

14 And the locusts went up over all the land of Egypt, and rested on all the territory of Egypt, exceedingly many. Never were there locusts like them before, and afterward none will be like them.

15 And they covered the eye of the earth, and the land became dark. And they ate every plant of the land, and all the fruit of the trees that the hail had left. And no greenness was left in the trees and in the plants of the field in all the land of Egypt.

16 And Pharaoh hurried to call Moses and Aaron. And he said, I have sinned against YAHWEH your Elohim and against you.

17 And now pray forgive my sins only

this time, and pray *to* YAHWEH your
Elohim that He may take away from
me this death only.
18 And he went out from Pharaoh,
and he prayed *to* YAHWEH.
19 And YAHWEH changed *to* a west
wind, very strong. And it carried the
locusts and threw them into the Sea of
Reeds. Not one locust was left in all
the territory of Egypt.
20 And YAHWEH made strong the
heart of Pharaoh, and he did not send
away the sons of Israel.
21 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Stretch out your hand to the heavens
so that darkness may be on the land of
Egypt, and one may feel darkness.
22 And Moses stretched out his hand
to the heavens, and darkness of gloom
was in all the land of Egypt three days.
23 They did not see each one his
brother, and they did not rise up, each
one from his place *for* three days. Yet
to all the sons of Israel there was light
in their dwellings.
24 And Pharaoh called to Moses and
said, Go, serve YAHWEH. Only leave
your flocks and your herds behind.
Your little ones may go with you.
25 And Moses said, You must also
give into our hands sacrifices and
burnt offerings so that we may prepare
for YAHWEH our Elohim.
26 And also our livestock shall go
with us. Not a hoof shall be left. For we
shall take from them to serve
YAHWEH our Elohim. And we do not
know *with* what we shall serve
YAHWEH until we come there.
27 And YAHWEH made strong the
heart of Pharaoh, and he was not
willing to send them away.
28 And Pharaoh said to him, Go
away from me. Be careful for yourself.
Do not see my face again, for in the
day you see my face you shall die.
29 And Moses said, You have spoken
rightly. I will not see your face again.

Chapter 11

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, I
will bring yet one more plague on
Pharaoh and on Egypt. Afterward he
will send you from here. When he
sends you away completely, surely He
will drive you out from here.
2 Now speak in the ears of the
people, and let them ask, each man
from his neighbor, articles of silver
and articles of gold.
3 And YAHWEH gave favor in the
eyes of the Egyptians *toward* the
people. And the man Moses *was* very
great in the land of Egypt, in the eyes
of the servants of Pharaoh, and in the
eyes of the people.
4 And Moses said, So says
YAHWEH, About the middle of the
night I will go out in the midst of
Egypt.
5 And every first-born in the land of
Egypt shall die, from the first-born of
Pharaoh, the one sitting on his throne,
to the first-born of the slave-girl who
is behind the mill; and every first born
of animals.
6 And a great cry shall be in all the
land of Egypt, such as never has been,
and nothing like it shall be again.
7 And a dog shall not sharpen his
tongue against all the sons of Israel,
toward man and toward livestock, so
that you may know that YAHWEH
distinguishes *between* Egypt and
Israel.
8 And all these servants of yours will
come down to me, and bow to me,
saying, Go out, you and all the people
at your feet. And afterward I will go
out. And he went out from Pharaoh in
the heat of anger.
9 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Pharaoh will not listen to you, so that
My miracles may multiply in the land
of Egypt.

10 And Moses and Aaron did all
these miracles before Pharaoh. And
YAHWEH hardened the heart of
Pharaoh, and he did not send away the
sons of Israel from his land.

Chapter 12

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses and
to Aaron in the land of Egypt, saying,
2 This month *shall be* the head of
months for you. It *shall be* the first of
the months of the year for you.[1]
3 Speak to all the congregation of
Israel, saying, On the tenth of this
month, they shall each take for
themselves an animal of the flock for a
father's house, a flock animal for a
house.
4 And if the house is too small for a
flock animal, he and his neighbor next
to his house shall take according to the
number of souls, each one according
to the mouth of his eating, you shall
count concerning the flock animal.
5 A flock animal, a male without
blemish, a yearling, shall be to you.
You shall take from the sheep or from
the goats.
6 And it shall be for you to keep until
the fourteenth day of this month. And
all the assembly of the congregation of
Israel shall kill it between the
evenings.[2]
7 And they shall take from the blood,
and put *it* on the two side doorposts
and on the upper doorpost, on the
houses *in* which they eat it. *(Joh 10:9)*
8 And they shall eat the flesh in this
night, roasted with fire, and they shall
eat it with unleavened *bread* and
bitter herbs.[3] *(Num 9:1-5, Lev 23:5-6)*
9 Do not eat it raw, or at all boiled in
water, but roasted with fire; its head
with its legs and with its inward parts.
10 And you shall not leave any of it
until morning. And you shall burn
with fire that left from it until
morning.
11 And you shall eat it this way: *with*
your loins girded, your sandals on
your feet, and your staff in your hand.
And you shall eat it in awe. It *is the*
Passover to YAHWEH.[4]
12 And I will pass through in the
land of Egypt in this night. And I will
strike every first-born in the land of
Egypt, from man even to livestock.
And I will execute judgments on all the
Elohe of Egypt. I *am* YAHWEH!
13 And the blood shall be a sign to
you, on the houses where you *are*. And
I will see the blood, and I will pass
over you. And the plague shall not be
on you to destroy, when I strike in the
land of Egypt.
14 And the day shall be a memorial
for you. And you shall celebrate it *as* a
feast to YAHWEH, for your
generations. You shall celebrate it *as* a
law forever.[5]
15 You shall eat unleavened *bread*
seven days. Indeed, on the first day
you shall cause leaven to cease from
your houses. For anyone eating any
leaven, that soul shall be cut off from

1 This month- "*Aviv*", Ex 13:4

2 The Passover is kept until the beginning of the 14th day and killed between the evenings of the ending of the 13th and beginning of the 14th.

3 If the passover was being eaten on the 15th day all the leaven would have already been removed from the homes and this statement would be redundant and unnecessary. The passover was eaten on the evening portion of the 14th day of Aviv.

4 This command was only given for the first Passover meal as the Israelites would be preparing for leaving at the break of dawn the next morning.

5 The day of Passover shall be celebrated forever. However, YHWH has the prerogative to change the symbols of the Passover as He did in the New Covenant using bread and wine to symbolize the slain blood of the Lamb of Yah.

Israel, from the first day until the seventh day.
16 And on the first day *shall be* a holy assembly[1], and in the seventh day a holy assembly[2], shall be to you. Not any work may be done on them. Only what must be eaten by each soul that alone may be done by you.
17 And you shall observe the unleavened *bread* for on this very day I brought out your armies from the land of Egypt. And you shall observe this day for your generations, a statute forever.
18 In the first *month*, on the fourteenth day of the month, at evening[3] you shall eat unleavened *bread*, until the twenty-first day of the month, at evening. *(Lev 23:5-8)*
19 *For* seven days no leaven shall be found in your houses. For anyone eating *any* leaven, that soul shall be cut off from the congregation of Israel, among the foreigners, and among the natives of the land.
20 You shall not eat anything leaven. You shall eat unleavened *bread* in all your dwellings.
21 And Moses called to all the elders of Israel and said to them, Draw out and take of the flock for you *and* for your families, and kill the passover.
22 And take a bunch of hyssop and dip in the blood in the basin. And touch some of the blood in the basin to the lintel and on the two doorposts. And you shall not go out, anyone from the door of his house until morning.[4]
23 And YAHWEH will pass through to strike Egypt. And He will see the blood on the lintel and on the two doorposts, and YAHWEH will pass over the door. And He will not allow the destroyer to come into your houses to strike you.
24 And you shall observe this Word for an ordinance for you, and for your sons forever.
25 And it shall be, when you come into the land which YAHWEH shall give to you, as He has spoken, you shall observe this service.
26 And it shall be, when your sons say to you, What *is* this service to you?
27 Then you shall say, A sacrifice of a passover of YAHWEH, who passed over the houses of the sons of Israel in Egypt when He struck Egypt. And He delivered our houses. And the people bowed and worshiped.
28 And the sons of Israel went out and did as YAHWEH commanded Moses and Aaron. So they did.
29 And it happened at midnight[5]. YAHWEH struck every first-born in the land of Egypt, from the first-born of Pharaoh, the one sitting on the throne, to the first-born of the captive who *was* in the prison house, and every first-born of animals.
30 And Pharaoh arose by night, he and all his servants, and all the Egyptians. And *there was* a great cry in Egypt, for *there was* not a house where there was not a one who had died.

---

1 The Hebrew word for Holy Assembly is "*mikraw"* and can also mean " *a rehearsal*". The Holy Days tell the plan of salvation through redemption in the blood of Yahshua and each time the true believer celebrates these commanded days, each yearly cycle, they are rehearsing for the soon coming kingdom of YHWH.

2 Although this is holy time, the first and last days of unleavened are not called Sabbaths, so not to confuse the count to Shavuot and the day of the firstfruit omer which is the day after the weekly Sabbath during the days of unleaven (Lev 23:15).

3 Whereas in Ex 12:6 the word for between the evenings in Hebrew is "*Bin Ha arbayim,"* which connotates the start of a day, here the word used is "*ereb"* which simply means evening.

4 No Israelite was to leave their home before the break of day if they wanted protection.

31 And he sent a proclamation to
Moses and Aaron by night[1], and it
read, Arise, go out from the midst of
my people, both you and the sons of
Israel. And go serve YAHWEH
according to your word.
32 Take both your flocks and your
herds, as you said, and go. And bless
me also.
33 And the Egyptians were strong on
the people, to hasten to send them
away from the land. For they said, All
of us will be dead.
34 And the people took up their
dough before it was leavened, their
kneading troughs being bound up in
their clothing on their shoulders.
35 And the sons of Israel did
according to the word of Moses. And
they asked from the Egyptians articles
of silver and articles of gold, and
clothing.
36 And YAHWEH gave favor to the
people in the eyes of the Egyptians.
And they granted their requests. And
they plundered Egypt.
37 And the sons of Israel traveled
from Rameses[2] to Succoth, the men
being about six hundred thousand on
foot, apart from little ones.
38 And also a mixed multitude went
up with them, and flocks, and herds,
very many livestock.
39 And they baked the dough which
they brought out from Egypt into
unleavened cakes. For it was not
leavened, because they were driven
out from Egypt, and they were not able
to delay. And also they had not
prepared food for a journey for
themselves.
40 And the time of the dwelling of
the sons of Israel, which they dwelt in
Egypt, *was* four hundred and thirty
years[3].
41 And it happened, from the end of
four hundred and thirty years, it
happened on this day, all the armies of
YAHWEH went out from the land of
Egypt.
42 It *is* a night of celebration to
YAHWEH, for bringing them out
from the land of Egypt. This night *is* a
celebration for all the sons of Israel to
their generations[4]. *(Ex 16:1)*
43 And YAHWEH said to Moses
and Aaron, This *is* the ordinance of the
Passover. No heathen may eat of it.
44 And every man's slave, a
purchase of silver, you shall circumcise
him, then he may eat of it[5].
45 A foreigner and a hired servant
may not eat of it.
46 It shall be eaten in one house.

5 Although there may be confusion to the timing of Passover due to there being two evenings in a day, a beginning and ending evening, there is only one "*midnight"* and if Passover is named for the "*passing-over*" of the death angel, and scriptures states the 14th day of the month is passover, (Lev 23:5), then the death angel passed over on the 14th of Aviv at midnight, showing the meal had to be eaten early in the beginning of the 14th and not late in the day at the beginning of the 15th as some wrongly do today. The custom of celebrating the Passover on the 15th day of Aviv came from modern Judaism but is not supported by scripture.

1 Ex 10:29 Pharaoh sent a declaration to Moses by messenger, but they did not see each other, Ex 10:28-29.

2 They left from Goshen where they lived and first traveled to Ramses, which was about 6 miles from Goshen and would have taken the better part of the daylight portion of the 14th of Aviv to travel.

3 If you add up the years this scripture is stating from the time of Abraham it was 430 years till the leaving of Egypt.

4 This night to be remembered is not Passover when the death angel passed, but the next night and beginning of the 15th of Aviv when Israel actually left Egypt (Ex 16:1).

5 You must be in the covenant to partake of the Passover.

You shall not carry any of the flesh outside from the house. And you shall not break a bone in it.
47 All the congregation of Israel shall prepare it.
48 And when a visitor shall stay with you, and will do the Passover to YAHWEH, let every male to him be cir-cumcised, *(in covenant relationship)* and then he may come near to prepare it. And he shall be like a native of the land. But any uncircumcised *(non-covenant person)* may not eat of it.[1]
49 One law shall be to the native, and to the visitor, the one staying in your midst. *(Num 15:15)*
50 And all the sons of Israel did as YAHWEH commanded Moses and Aaron; so they did.
51 And it happened on this day, YAHWEH brought out the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt by their armies.

Chapter 13

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Set apart to Me every first-born, the one opening the womb among the sons of Israel, among men and among livestock; they *shall be* Mine. *(Num 8:5-19, Ex 19:3-6)*
3 And Moses said to the people, Remember this day *in* which you went out from Egypt, from the house of slaves. For by the might of *His* hand YAHWEH brought you out from here. And no leaven shall be eaten.
4 Today, in the month of the Aviv, you are going out.
5 And it shall be when YAHWEH brings you into the land of the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Amorite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite, which He swore to your fathers to give to you, a land flowing *with* milk and honey, you shall do this service in this month.
6 Seven days you shall eat unleavened *bread*, and on the seventh day *keep* a feast to YAHWEH.
7 Unleavened *bread* shall be eaten the seven days. And leavened *bread* for you shall not be seen; yea, no leaven shall be seen among you in all your boundaries.
8 And you shall tell your son in that day, saying, *It is* because of what YAHWEH did for me when I came out from Egypt.
9 And it shall be for a sign to you on your hand, and a memorial between your eyes[2], so that the Torah of YAHWEH may be in your mouth. For with a strong hand YAHWEH brought you out from Egypt.*(Pr 7:3, Deu 11:18)*
10 And you shall keep this ordinance

[1] Circumcision is not the issue here in this verse but rather that anyone who eats of the Passover must be *"in covenant relationship.*" Since Circumcision is the sign of the 1st covenant it stands to reason one would have had to be circumcised before partaking of the meal. However, since baptism is the sign of the New Covenant and not circumcision one would not have to be circumcised to partake of the Passover symbols of the bread and wine in the New Covenant, but they would have to be baptized into the covenant by an elder of YHWH.

[2] The mark of the anti-messiah (Rev 13:16) is also in the right hand and fore-head and this is symbolic of "*you think with your mind and do with your hands*". Also, the right hand in the Hebrew thought is the hand of strength. The word for right is "*Yamin"* in Hebrew and that is why when Rachel died Jacob changed the name of the child from Ben-omi "*son of my sorrow*" to Ben-yamin "*son of my strength"*.

at its appointed time, from year to
year.[1]
11 And it shall be when YAHWEH
brings you into the land of the
Canaanite, as He swore to you and to
your fathers, and gives it to you,
12 you shall set apart to YAHWEH
every one opening the womb, and
every firstling, the offspring of animals
which are yours; the males *belong to*
YAHWEH.
13 And every firstling of a donkey
you shall redeem with a flock animal.
And if you do not redeem, you shall
break its neck. And every first-born of
men among your sons you shall
redeem.[2]
14 And it shall be when your son
asks you in the future, saying, What *is*
this? You shall say to him, YAHWEH
brought us out from Egypt by the
might of *His* hand, from the house of
slaves.
15 And it happened when Pharaoh
hardened himself against sending us
away, YAHWEH killed every first-
born one in the land of Egypt, from the
first-born of men even to the first-born
of animals. On account of this I
sacrifice to YAHWEH every one *of* the
males opening the womb, and I
redeem every first-born of my sons.
16 And it shall be for a sign on your
hand, and frontlets between your eyes.
For YAHWEH brought us out from
Egypt by the might of *His* hand. *(Pr*
3:3, Pr 6:20-21, Deut 6:8, 11:18)
17 And it happened, in Pharaoh's
sending away the people, Elohim did
not lead them *by* the way of the land of
the Philistines, though it *was* near. For
Elohim said, Lest the people repent[3]
when they see war, and return to
Egypt.
18 But Elohim made the people turn
toward the way of the wilderness, to
the Sea of Reeds. And the sons of
Israel went up armed from the land of
Egypt.
19 And Moses took the bones of
Joseph with him. For he had made the
sons of Israel certainly swear, saying,
surely Elohim will visit you, and you
shall cause my bones to go from here
with you.[4] *(Gen 50:24-25)*
20 And they pulled up *stakes* from
Succoth, and they camped at Etham,
in the edge of the wilderness.
21 And YAHWEH was going before
them by day in a pillar of cloud, to lead
them in the way; and by night in a
pillar of fire, to give light to them, to
go by day and by night. *(Gen 15:17)*
22 The pillar of cloud did not cease
by day, and the pillar of fire by night,
before the people.[5] *(Ex 14:19, 33:9-11)*

---

1 The appointed time to keep the Passover is on the 14th day of the first month Aviv, according to the biblical calendar. There is no biblical precedent for taking the Passover symbols of the bread and wine weekly, or monthly, that came into practice by Catholicism almost a hundred yrs after the resurrection of Yahshua by a Catholic bishop, but the instruction by Yahshua was to celebrate His death once a yr on the 14 of Aviv, 1 Cor 11:23-26, Luk 22:19-20.

2 Every first-born to YHWH had to be redeemed for 5 shekels. This wondrously shows YHWH's grace as the person was not enslaved or sacrificed but redeemed and YHWH provided the means of redemption of the first-born, which belonged to Him. This is expounded in the New Covenant as all true covenant believers are firstborn (Rev 14:4) and the redemption was provided by YHWH through the blood of Yahshua.

3 This word means to turn back, and in the Hebrew mind set, when one repents, he turns back from his old way and does a 180 degree turn to a new way of life.

4 This shows that Joseph believed in a resurrection and wanted his bones to be with his family in Israel at the time it would happen.

Chapter 14

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Speak to the sons of Israel, and let them turn and camp before Pihahiroth, between Migdol and the sea, before Baal-Zephon. You shall camp opposite *it*, by the sea.*(Ex 23:31)*

3 And Pharaoh will say as to the sons of Israel, they are wandering and the land has shut them in the wilderness,

4 And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and he will pursue you. And I will be honored through Pharaoh, and through all his armies. And the Egyptians shall know that I *am* YAHWEH. And they did so.

5 And it was told to the king of Egypt that the people had fled; and the heart of Pharaoh and his servants was turned as to the people. And they said, what *is* this we have done? For we have sent away Israel from serving us.

6 And he prepared his chariots. And he took his people with him.

7 And he took six hundred chosen chariots, and all the chariots of Egypt, and officers over all of them.

8 And YAHWEH hardened Pharaoh, king of Egypt's heart. And he pursued the sons of Israel. And the sons of Israel *were* going out with a high hand.

9 And the Egyptians pursued them. And they overtook them camping by the sea, all the horses *and* the chariots of Pharaoh, and his horsemen, and his army, by Pihahiroth, before Baal-Zephon.

10 And Pharaoh came near, and the sons of Israel raised their eyes, and, behold! The Egyptians were pulling up after them! And they were greatly afraid. And the sons of Israel cried to YAHWEH.

11 And they said to Moses, *Were* there no graves in Egypt, that you have taken us away to die in the wilderness? What *is* this you have done to us, to bring us out from Egypt?

12 *Is* this not the word which we spoke to you in Egypt, saying, Go away from us, and let us serve the Egyptians. For *it is* good for us to serve the Egyptians, than to die in the wilderness.

13 And Moses said to the people, Do not be afraid. Take your stand and see the salvation (*Y'shua**) of YAHWEH, which He will prepare for you today. For as you see the Egyptians today, you shall not continue to see them again forever.

14 YAHWEH will fight for you, and you be silent.[1]

15 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Why do you cry to Me? Speak to the sons of Israel, and let them pull up *stakes*.

16 And you, raise your staff, and stretch out your hand over the sea, and divide it so that the sons of Israel may go in the midst of the sea on dry ground.

17 And behold! I *am* making strong the heart of the Egyptians. And they will go after them. And I will be honored through Pharaoh and through his armies, through his chariots, and through his horsemen.

18 And the Egyptians shall know that I *am* YAHWEH, in My being

---

[5] This shows the continual presence of both YHWH and Yahshua during this time period in the wilderness, 1 Cor 10:1-4.

[1] A great many believers fail to see YHWH intervene in their trials simply because they are continually fighting their battles themselves. If one could learn this valuable lesson to simply stand back in faith and allow YHWH to intervene and handle things, there would be many more miracles to report.

honored through Pharaoh, through his chariots, and through his horsemen.

19 And the Messenger of Elohim withdrew, the One going before the camp of Israel. And He went behind them. And the pillar of cloud withdrew from before them, and it stood behind them.

20 And it came between the camp of Egypt and the camp of Israel. And it was cloudy and dark. And it lit up the night; and this one did not come near to that one all night.

21 And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and YAHWEH caused the sea to go back by a strong east wind all night. And He made the sea dry land, and the waters divided.

22 And the sons of Israel came into the middle of the sea on dry ground, the waters *being* a wall to them from their right and from their left.

23 And the Egyptians pursued, and all the horses of Pharaoh came after them, his chariots and his horsemen, into the middle of the sea.

24 And it happened in the morning watch: YAHWEH looked on the camp of the Egyptians in the pillar of fire and cloud. And He confused the camp of the Egyptians.

25 And He took off the wheels of their chariots, and made them drive with difficulty. And the Egyptians said, I will flee from the face of Israel, for YAHWEH *is* fighting for them against the Egyptians.

26 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Stretch out your hand over the sea, and let the waters return on the Egyptians, on their chariots, and on their horsemen.

27 And Moses stretched out his hand over the sea, and the sea returned to its usual flow, at the turning of the morning, and the Egyptians *were* fleeing to meet it. And YAHWEH shook off the Egyptians into the middle of the sea.

28 And the waters returned and covered the chariots and the horsemen, together with all the army of Pharaoh, those going after them, into the sea. And not even one was left among them.

29 And the sons of Israel walked on dry ground in the middle of the sea, the waters *being* a wall for them, from their right and from their left.

30 And YAHWEH saved Israel in that day from the hand of Egypt. And Israel saw the Egyptians dead on the seashore.

31 And Israel saw the great hand with which YAHWEH worked against Egypt. And the people feared YAHWEH, and they believed in YAHWEH and in His servant Moses.

Chapter 15

1 Then Moses and the sons of Israel sang this song to YAHWEH, and spoke, saying, I will sing to YAHWEH, for He is highly exalted. He has thrown *the* horse and his rider into the sea. *(Ps 106:12)*

2 My strength and song *is* Yah, and He was to me salvation; this *is* my Eli and I will glorify Him; the Elohe of my father, and I will exalt Him.

3 YAHWEH *is* a Man of war; YAHWEH *is* His name. *(Ex 3:15)*

4 He has cast Pharaoh's chariots and his army in the sea; and the choice ones of his officers are drowned in the Sea of Reeds,

5 the depths cover them; they have dropped into the depths like a stone.

6 Your right *hand*, O YAHWEH, *is* glorious in power; O YAHWEH, Your right *hand* dashes the enemy to pieces.

7 And in Your majesty's greatness You pull down those rising up against

You; You send forth Your wrath; it consumes them like stubble.
8 And by the spirit of Your anger waters were heaped up; the running waters stood like a wall; the depths congealed in the heart of the sea.
9 The enemy said, I will pursue, I will overtake, I will divide the spoil; my soul shall be filled *with* them; I will draw my sword; my hand will destroy them.
10 You blew with Your wind, the sea covered them; they sank like lead in mighty waters.
11 Who *is* like You among the Elohim, O YAHWEH? Who *is* like You, glorified in holiness, fearful *in* praises, O Worker of wonders?
12 You stretched Your right *hand*; the earth swallowed them.
13 In Your mercy You led the people whom You redeemed; You guided in Your strength to Your holy dwelling.
14 Peoples heard; they tremble; trembling seized the dwellers of Philistia.
15 Then the chiefs of Edom *were* terrified; the leaders of Moab *were* seized by trembling; all the dwellers of Canaan were melted.
16 Terrors and dread fell on them; by the greatness of Your arm; they are silent as a stone, until Your people pass through, O YAHWEH, until pass through the people *whom* You have bought.
17 You shall bring them in and plant them in the mountain of Your inheritance, the place You have made for Your dwelling place, O YAHWEH; the sanctuary which Your hands have prepared, O YAHWEH.
18 YAHWEH reigns forever and ever!
19 For the horses of Pharaoh went in with his chariots and his horsemen into the sea, and YAHWEH brought back the waters of the sea on them; and the sons of Israel walked on dry land in the midst of the sea.
20 And the sister of Aaron, Miriam the prophetess, took the timbrel in her hand, and all the women went out after her with timbrels and with dances.
21 And Miriam answered to them, Sing to YAHWEH, for triumphing He has triumphed gloriously; He has thrown the horse and its rider into the sea.
22 And Moses made Israel to pull out from the Sea of Reeds. And they went out into the wilderness of Shur. And they went into the wilderness three days, and did not find water.
23 And they came to Marah. And they were not able to drink water from Marah, for it *was* bitter. Therefore, one called its name Marah.
24 And the people murmured against Moses, saying, What shall we drink?
25 And he cried to YAHWEH, and YAHWEH showed him a tree. And he threw it into the water, and the water became sweet. He made a statute and an ordinance for them there, and He tested them there.
26 And He said, If you carefully listen to the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim, and do *what is* right in His eyes, and you give ear to His commandments, and keep all His statutes, I will not put on you all the diseases which I have put on Egypt; for I *am* YAHWEH Rapha[1].
27 And they came to Elim. And there *were* twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees. And they camped by the waters.

Chapter 16

1 And they pulled up *stakes* from

1 Yahweh "*Rapha*" means Yahweh your healer

Elim. And all the congregation of the sons of Israel came into the Wilderness of Sin, which *is* between Elim and Sinai, on the fifteenth day of the second month *after* their going out from the land of Egypt.

2 And all the congregation of the sons of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron in the wilderness.

3 And the sons of Israel said to them, Would that we had died by the hand of YAHWEH in the land of Egypt, in our sitting by the fleshpots[1], in our eating bread to satisfaction. For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill all this assembly with hunger.

4 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Behold, I *AM* will rain bread from the heavens for you. And the people shall go out and gather the matter of a day in its day, so that I may test them, whether they will walk in My Torah or not.

5 And it shall be on the sixth day they shall prepare what they bring in. And it shall be double what they gather day by day.

6 And Moses and Aaron said to all the sons of Israel, At evening you shall know that YAHWEH has brought you from the land of Egypt;

7 and in the morning you shall see the glory of YAHWEH, in His hearing your murmurings against YAHWEH; and we, what *are* we that you murmur against us?

8 And Moses said, When YAHWEH gives you flesh to eat in the evening, and bread in the morning, to satisfaction; when YAHWEH hears your murmurings which you *are* murmuring against Him, you will see. And what *are* we? Your murmurings *are* not against us, but against YAHWEH.[2] *(Joh 12:44, 49-50)*

9 And Moses spoke to Aaron, Say to all the congregation of the sons of Israel, Come near before YAHWEH; for He has heard your murmurings.

10 And it happened, as Aaron was speaking to all the congregation of the sons of Israel, they turned toward the wilderness. And, behold! The glory of YAHWEH appeared in the cloud!

11 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

12 I have heard the murmurings of the sons of Israel. Speak to them, saying, Between the evenings you shall eat flesh; and in the morning you shall be satisfied *with* bread; and you shall know that I *am* YAHWEH your Elohim.

13 And it happened in the evening: the quail[3] came up and covered the camp. And in the morning a layer of dew was around the camp.

14 And the layer of dew went up, and, behold, *something* small *was* on the face of the wilderness, scale-like, small like the hoarfrost on the earth.

15 And the sons of Israel looked. And they said, each one to his brother, What *is* that?[4] For they did not know what it *was*. And Moses said to them, That *is* the bread which YAHWEH has given to you for food.

16 This *is* the thing which YAHWEH commanded. Gather from it, each one according to the mouth of his eating; an omer for a head. *By* the number of your souls you shall take for each man who *is* in your tent.

---

1 Fleshpots were large pots used for cooking meat. One was found in Shiloh in 2012 that went to the days of the judges.

2 It is YHWH who sets up a leader in his position and when one rejects the leader chosen and set up by YHWH they reject YHWH and are outside His judicial order.

3 In the Hula valley in Israel millions of birds including quail stop there each year in their migration traveling in spring and fall.

4 The Hebrew for *"what is it"* is manna.

17 And so the sons of Israel did. And
they gathered; the one gathering much
and the one gathering little.
18 And they measured with an
omer[1]. And the one gathering much
did not have too much. And the one
gathering little did not have any need.
Each one gathered according to the
mouth of his eating. *(Acts 2:43-47)*
19 And Moses said to them, Do not
let anyone leave from it until
morning.[2]
20 And they did not listen to Moses.
And some left from it until morning;
and it became rotten *with* maggots,
and stunk. And Moses was angry
against them.
21 And they gathered it in the
morning, each one in the morning
according to the mouth of his eating.
And it melted *in* the heat of the sun.
22 And it came about on the sixth
day, they gathered double bread, two
omers for one. And all the leaders of
the congregation came and reported to
Moses.
23 And he said to them, That *is* what
YAHWEH said, Tomorrow *is* a rest, a
holy Sabbath to YAHWEH. What you
will bake, bake. And boil what you will
boil. And lay up for yourselves all that
is left over, to keep it until the
morning.[3]
24 And they laid it up until the
morning, as Moses commanded. And
it did not stink and no maggot was in
it.
25 And Moses said, Eat it today, for
today *is* a Sabbath to YAHWEH.
Today you will not find it in the field.
26 You shall gather it six days, and
on the seventh day *is* a sabbath; in it
none shall be found.[4]
27 And it happened on the seventh
day, *some* of the people went out to
gather, and did not find *any*.
28 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Until when do you refuse to keep My
commandments and My laws?[5]
29 Behold! Because YAHWEH has
given the sabbath to you, therefore He
is giving to you two days of bread on
the sixth day. Each one of you remain
in his place. Do not let anyone go out
from his place on the seventh day.[6]
30 And the people rested on the
seventh day.
31 And the house of Israel called its
name, Manna. And it *was* like the seed
of coriander, white; and its taste like
cakes with honey.
32 And Moses said, This *is* the thing
which YAHWEH has commanded,
Fill an omer from it, to keep for your

---

1 An omer is a measurement that is about 2 quarts or liters.

2 As with the Passover sacrifice none was to be left till morning showing that Yahweh sustains our daily needs (Ex 12:10).

3 There should be no cooking, boiling or baking of food on the Sabbath day. All cooking should be done on day six, which is the preparation day.

4 The Sabbath day is based on a 7 day cycle that started at creation (Gen 2:1-3). In the original Hebrew it has the perfect article, which makes it one specific day and not a rotating cycle. The Sabbath day is from sunset to sunset, starting on Friday and ending at sunset on Saturday according to the Roman calendar. Everywhere it is mentioned in scripture it is always associated with a 7 day weekly cycle that does not change. Some have wrongly concluded the Sabbath rotates with the moon cycle but we find absolutely zero evidence for any such false theory in scripture.

5 This is only one month after leaving Egypt and disobedience and rebellion is more of a character trait to Israel than simply an action and will prove to be their downfall.

6 They were given instruction not to go out and work and gather food. However, they were allowed and commanded to assemble together on the Sabbath day, Lev 23:2-3.

generations, so that they may see the bread which I caused you to eat in the wilderness, as I brought you out from the land of Egypt.

33 And Moses said to Aaron, Take one pitcher, and put there the fullness of an omer of manna, and deposit it before YAHWEH, to keep for your generations.

34 Even as YAHWEH commanded Moses, Aaron laid it up before the Testimony, to keep *it*.

35 And the sons of Israel ate the manna forty years, until their coming into an inhabited land. They ate the manna until their coming to the border of the land of Canaan.

36 And the omer *was* the tenth of an ephah.

Chapter 17

1 And all the congregation of the sons of Israel pulled up *stakes* from the Wilderness of Sin, according to their journeys, by the mouth of YAHWEH. And they camped in Rephidim. And *there was* no water for the drinking of the people.

2 And the people fought with Moses, and said, Give us water that we may drink. And Moses said to them, Why do you fight with me? Why do you tempt YAHWEH[1]?

3 And the people thirsted there for water, and the people murmured against Moses, and said, Why, then, have you caused us to go up from Egypt, to kill me and my sons and my livestock with thirst?

4 And Moses cried to YAHWEH, saying, What shall I do to this people? Yet a little and they will stone me.

5 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Pass on in front of the people, and take with you some of the elders of Israel. And take in your hand your staff with which you smote the Nile, and go.

6 Behold, I will stand before you there on the rock in Horeb. And you shall smite the rock, and water will come out of it; and the people will drink. And Moses did so before the eyes of the elders of Israel.

7 And one called the name of the place, Massah, and Meribah, because of the contention of the sons of Israel, and because of their testing of YAHWEH, saying, Is YAHWEH in our midst or not?

8 And Amalek came and fought against Israel in Rephidim.

9 And Moses said to Yahoshua, Choose men for us, and go fight against Amalek. Tomorrow I will stand on the top of the hill, with the staff of Elohim in my hand.

10 And Yahoshua did as Moses had said to him, to fight against Amalek. And Moses, Aaron and Hur went up to the top of the hill.

11 And so it was that when Moses lifted his hand, Israel prevailed. And when he rested his hand, Amalek prevailed.

12 And the hands of Moses *became* heavy. And they took a stone and put *it* under him. And he sat on it. And Aaron and Hur held up his hands, one from this and one from that *side*. And his hands were steady until the going of the sun.

13 And Yahoshua defeated Amalek and his people by the mouth of the sword.

14 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Write this, a memorial in a book, and set *it* in the ears of Yahoshua, that I will utterly wipe away the remembrance of Amalek under the heavens.

---

[1] By contending against Yahweh's appointed leadership, they were actually contending with Yahweh.

15 And Moses built an altar. And he called its name, YAHWEH Nisee [2].

16 And he said, A hand *is* on the throne of Yah; war *is* to YAHWEH with Amalek from generation to generation.

Chapter 18

1 And Jethro the priest of Midian, the father-in-law of Moses, heard all that which Elohim had done for Moses and for His people Israel, that YAHWEH had caused Israel to go out from Egypt.

2 And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, took Zipporah, Moses' wife, (after Moses had sent her away),

3 and her two sons, one's name *was* Gershom (for he said, I have become an alien in a foreign land;)

4 and one's name *was* Eliezer (for the Elohe of my father *was* my Help, and delivered me from the sword of Pharaoh).

5 And Jethro, Moses' father-in-law, and his sons and his wife came to Moses, to the wilderness where he camped, at the mount of Elohim.

6 And he said to Moses, I, your father-in-law Jethro, and your wife, and your two sons with her have come to you.

7 And Moses went out to meet his father-in-law, and bowed, and kissed him. And they asked each to his neighbor, as to *their* welfare. And they entered the tent.

8 And Moses told his father-in-law all that YAHWEH had done to Pharaoh and to Egypt on account of Israel, all the trouble which they had found in the way, and YAHWEH had delivered them.

9 And Jethro rejoiced regarding all the good which YAHWEH had done to Israel whom He had delivered from the hand of Egypt.

10 And Jethro said, Blessed *be* YAHWEH who has delivered you from the hand of Egypt, and from the hand of Pharaoh; *He* who delivered the people from under the hand of Egypt.

11 Now I know that YAHWEH *is* greater than all the Elohims; truly, in the way in which *He* acted proudly against them.

12 And Jethro, the father-in-law of Moses, took a burnt offering and sacrifices to Elohim. And Aaron and all the elders of Israel came to eat bread before Elohim with Moses' father-in-law.

13 And it happened on the next day that Moses sat to judge the people. And the people stood beside Moses from the morning until the evening.

14 And Moses' father-in-law saw all which he *was* doing to the people. And he said, What *is* this thing which you *are* doing to the people? Why are you sitting by yourself, and all the people standing beside you from morning until evening?

15 And Moses said to his father-in-law, Because the people come to me to seek Elohim.

16 When they have a matter, they come to me, and I judge between a man and his neighbor. And I make known the statutes of Elohim, and the laws from His Torah.

17 And the father-in-law of Moses said to him, The thing which you do *is* not good.

18 Surely you will wear out, both you and this people with you. For the thing

---

[2] The Hebrew means "*My Banner",* which indicates Yahweh representing them. After the split of Israel into Judah and Ephraim, the thought in scripture of a banner is most times associated with the return of the Messiah to unite Israel again as each tribe had their own banner.

is heavy for you. You are not able to do it by yourself.

19 Now listen to my voice. I will advise you, and may Elohim be with you. You be for this people before Elohim, and you bring the matters to Elohim.

20 And you warn them *as to* the statutes and the laws of the Torah, and make known to them the way in which they should walk, and the work which they should do.

21 And you, you shall look out men of ability out of all the people, who fear Elohim, men of truth, hating unjust gain. And you place *these* over them as rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens.

22 And let them judge the people at all times. And it shall be that every great matter they shall bring to you, and every small matter they shall judge. And you make it easy on yourself, and let them bear with you.

23 If you do this thing, and Elohim command you, you will be able to stand; and also this people will go in peace to their place.

24 And Moses listened to the voice of his father-in-law, and he did all that he had said.

25 And Moses chose men of ability from all Israel and made them heads over the people; rulers of thousands, rulers of hundreds, rulers of fifties, and rulers of tens.

26 And they judged the people at all times; the hard matters they brought to Moses, and every small matter they judged themselves.[1]

27 And Moses let depart his father-in-law, and he went to his own land.

Chapter 19

1 In the third month of the going out of the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt, on this day they came *to* the wilderness of Sinai.

2 And they pulled up *stakes* from Rephidim and came *to* the wilderness of Sinai. And they camped in the wilderness. And Israel camped there before the mountain.

3 And Moses went up to Elohim. And YAHWEH called to him from the mountain, saying, You shall say this to the house of Jacob, and tell *it* to the sons of Israel.

4 You have seen what I did to Egypt; and I bore you on eagles wings and brought you to Me.

5 And now if listening you will listen to My voice, and will keep My covenant, you shall become a special treasure to Me above all the nations, for all the earth *is* Mine.

6 And you shall become a kingdom of priests for Me, a holy nation. These *are* the words which you shall speak to the sons of Israel.

7 And Moses came and called the elders of the people. And he put all these words before them which YAHWEH commanded him.

8 And all the people answered together and said, All which YAHWEH has spoken we will do. And Moses brought back the words of the people to YAHWEH.

9 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Behold, I come to you in a darkness of clouds, so that the people may hear My speaking with you, and in you they may believe forever. And Moses told the words of the people to YAHWEH.

10 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Go to the people and sanctify them today

---

[1] Verses 14-26- Jethro taught Moses the power of synergy in delegation of power. One person can only do so much and if someone else can do the task 80% as good as you can, then it is better to delegate it and focus on the things that only your spiritual gifts can achieve.

and tomorrow. And let them wash
their clothes.
11 And be ready for the third day.
For on the third day YAHWEH will go
down before the eyes of all the people
on the mountain of Sinai[1].
12 And you shall set limits to the
people all around, saying, Be careful
for yourselves, not going up into the
mountain and touching its border;
everyone touching the mountain
surely shall die.
13 Not a hand shall touch him, but
stoning he shall be stoned, or piercing
he shall be shot through. He shall not
live, whether animal or man. At the
long sounding of the horn, they shall
go up into the mountain.
14 And Moses went from the
mountain to the people. And he
sanctified the people, and they washed
their clothes.
15 And he said to the people, Be
ready for the third day. Do not
approach a woman.
16 And on the third day, it being
morning, it happened: There *were*
thunders and lightnings, and a heavy
cloud on the mountain, and the sound
of a ram's horn, very strong! And all
the people in the camp trembled.
17 And Moses caused the people to
go up from the camp to meet The
Elohim. And they took their stand at
the lower part of the mountain.
18 And the mountain of Sinai was
smoking, all of it, because YAHWEH
came down on it in fire. And its smoke
went up like the smoke of a furnace;
and the mountain quaked exceedingly.
19 And it happened while the sound
of the ram's horn was sounding, and
becoming very strong, Moses spoke.
And The Elohim answered him by a
voice.
20 And YAHWEH came down on
the mountain of Sinai, to the top of the
mountain; and YAHWEH called
Moses to the top of the mountain, and
Moses went up.
21 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Go
down, warn the people lest they break
through to see YAHWEH, and many
of them fall.[2]
22 And also the priests, those
approaching YAHWEH, let them
sanctify themselves that YAHWEH
not burst forth among them.
23 And Moses said to YAHWEH,
The people are not able to come up to
the mountain of Sinai. For You warned
us, saying, Set limits to the mountain
and sanctify it.
24 And YAHWEH said to him,
Come, go down. And you come up, and
Aaron with you. And let not the priests
and the people break through to come
up to YAHWEH, lest He burst forth
among them.
25 And Moses went down to the
people and spoke to them.

Chapter 20

1 And Elohim spoke all these words,
saying,
2 I *am* YAHWEH your Elohim, who
has brought you out from the land of
Egypt, from the house of bondage.
3 You shall not have any other
Elohim before My face.
4 You shall not make a graven image
for yourself, or any likeness in the
heavens above, or in the earth
beneath, or in the waters under the
earth;
5 you shall not bow to them, and you
shall not serve them; for I *am*

---

[1] Law (Torah) was given on the third day, the same day as the resurrection, showing how both give life.

[2] Verses 17-21- See Heb 12:25-29- If the fear of YHWH is not present with someone then pride will rule their soul and be their downfall.

YAHWEH your Elohim, a jealous El,
visiting the iniquity of fathers on sons,
on the third and on the fourth
generation, to those that hate Me;
6 and doing kindness to thousands,
to those loving Me, and to those
keeping My commandments.
7 You shall not take the name of
YAHWEH your Elohim in vain; for
YAHWEH will not leave unpunished
the *one* who takes His name in vain.[1]
8 Remember the Sabbath day, to
keep it holy[2];
9 six days you shall labor and do all
your work;
10 and the seventh day *is* a Sabbath
to YAHWEH your Elohim; you shall
not do any work, you, and your son,
and your daughter, your male slave
and your slave-girl, and your livestock,
and your stranger who *is* in your gates.
11 For *in* six days YAHWEH made
the heavens and the earth, the sea, and
all which *is* in them, and He rested on
the seventh day; on account of this
YAHWEH blessed the Sabbath day
and sanctified it.[3]
12 Honor your father and your
mother, so that your days may be long
on the land which YAHWEH your
Elohim *is* giving to you.
13 You shall not murder.
14 You shall not commit adultery.
15 You shall not steal.
16 You shall not testify a witness of
falsehood against your neighbor.
17 You shall not covet your
neighbor's house; you shall not covet
your neighbor's wife, or his male slave,
or his slave-girl, or his ox, or his
donkey, or anything which *belongs* to
your neighbor.[4]
18 And all the people saw the
thunders, and the lightnings, and the
sound of the ram's horn, and the
smoking mountain. And the people
looked, and they trembled, and they
stood from a distance.
19 And they said to Moses, You
speak with us, and we will hear. And
let us not speak with Elohim that we
not die.
20 And Moses said to the people, Do
not be afraid, for Elohim has come in
order to test you, and so that His fear
may be on your faces, that you may
not sin.
21 And the people stood from a
distance, and Moses went near the
thick darkness where Elohim *was*.
22 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
You shall say this to the sons of Israel,
You have seen that I have spoken with
you from the heavens.
23 You shall not make Elohims of
silver along with Me, and you shall not
make Elohims of gold for yourselves.
24 You shall make an altar of earth
for Me, and you shall sacrifice your
burnt offerings and your peace
offerings on it, your sheep and your
cattle. In every place *in* which I bring

1 The Hebrew word "*in vain*" is "*shav*" and literally means to "*change, falsify or to make common*". Taking the Creator's eternal set apart name YAHWEH (Ex 3:15) and changing it to '*god*', the name of the Babylonian deity is a clear violation of the third commandment, see note on Is 65:11.

2 The Hebrew word "*kadosh*" literally means "*set apart*", meaning to keep the Sabbath set apart from the work of the other 6 days. Also, the fact that they are told to "*remember*" or bring back into memory this day clearly shows that the Sabbath day goes back to creation (Gen 2:1-3) and was not just implemented on Mount Sinai.

3 YHWH here reverts the creation of the Sabbath day to Genesis, and shows that the Sabbath is part of creation and therefore cannot change anymore than the moon can become the sun, Heb 4:4-9.

4 The last commandment ties them all together by not only telling us what to do, but that even our thoughts can defile us and sin starts in the mind, (Math 5:17-19, 21-22, 27-28).

to memory My name, and I will come to you and I will bless you.

25 And if you make an altar of stone for Me, you shall not build them of cut stones. When you swing your tool on it, you defile it.

26 And you shall not go up by steps to My altar, that your nakedness may not be uncovered on it. (*Rev 1:13)*

Chapter 21

1 And these *are* the judgments which you shall put before them:[1]

2 When you buy a Hebrew slave, he shall serve six years and in the seventh he shall go out free for nothing.

3 If he comes in with his body, he shall go out with his body. If he *was* the husband of a wife, his wife shall go out with him.

4 If his master gives him a wife, and she bears sons or daughters to him, the wife and her children shall belong to her master; and he shall go out with his body.

5 And if the slave truly says, I love my master, my wife and my children; I do not desire to go out free,

6 his master shall bring him to Elohim, and one shall bring him to the door, or to the doorpost; and his master shall pierce his ear with an awl, and he shall serve him forever.[2] *(Deut 15:12-18)*

7 And when a man sells his daughter for a slave-girl, she shall not go out as the male slaves go out.

8 If she *is* bad in the eyes of her master who has appointed her for himself, he shall allow her redemption. He shall not have power to sell her to a foreign people, in his deceiving her.

9 And if he chooses her for his son, he shall do to her as *is* the custom of daughters.

10 If he takes another for himself, her flesh, her clothing, and her conjugal right shall not be diminished.

11 And if he does not do these three for her, she shall go out for nothing, without silver.

12 He that strikes a man so that he dies, surely he shall die.

13 But he who does not lie in wait, and Elohim lets fall into his hand, I will appoint a place for you where he may flee. *(Num 35:9-28)*

14 And when a man seethes insolently against his neighbor, to kill him by deceit, you shall take him from My altar to die.

15 And he who strikes his father or his mother dying shall die.

16 And he that steals a man and sells him, or if he is found in his hand, dying he shall die.

17 And he who curses his father or his mother, dying he shall die.

18 And when men quarrel, and one strikes his neighbor with a stone, or with a fist, and he does not die, but falls on his bed,

19 if he rises and walks about in the street on his staff, the one who struck *him* shall be innocent; only he shall pay *his* sitting; paying he shall pay for his healing.

20 And if a man strikes his male slave or his slave-girl with a rod, and he dies under his hand, avenging he shall be avenged.

21 But if he continues a day or two, he shall not be avenged, for he *is* his silver.

---

[1] This will show the personal responsibility involved with the covenant person.

[2] Verses 2-6- This is a perfect example of one's servitude toward YHWH in covenant relationship. If we truly love YHWH with all our hearts and minds, then we will want to serve Him forever. However, if we decide to leave the covenant and turn back, we don't take other covenant believers with us, even if they are family members.

22 And when men fight, and they strike a pregnant woman, and her child goes forth, and there is no injury, being fined he shall be fined. As much *as* the husband of the woman shall put on him, even he shall give through the judges.

23 But if injury occurs, you shall give life for life[1],

24 eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot,

25 branding for branding, wound for wound, stripe for stripe.

26 And when a man strikes the eye of his male slave, or the eye of his slave-girl and destroys it, he shall send him away free for his eye.

27 And if he causes the tooth of his male slave, or the tooth of his slave-girl, to fall out, he shall send him away free for his tooth.

28 And when an ox gores a man so that he dies, the ox stoning shall be stoned, and its flesh shall not be eaten, and the owner of the ox *is* innocent.

29 And if he *was* an ox apt to gore from yesterday and the third day, and its owner is given warning, and he does not watch him, and he kills a man or a woman, the ox shall be stoned, and its owner also shall be killed.

30 If a ransom is put on him, he shall give the redemption of his life, according to all which is put on him.

31 Whether he gores a son or he gores a daughter, according to this judgment it shall be done to him.

32 If the ox gores a male slave or a slave-girl, he shall give thirty silver shekels to his master, and the ox shall be stoned[2]. *(Math 26:14-15)*

33 And when a man opens a pit, or when a man digs a pit, and does not cover it, and an ox or a donkey falls into it,

34 the owner of the pit shall pay; he shall give silver to its owner, and the dead shall be his.

35 And when a man's ox strikes against the ox of his neighbor, and it dies, they shall sell the living ox, and they shall divide the silver; and they shall also divide the dead.

36 Or if it *was* known that he *was* an ox apt to gore from yesterday and the third day, and his owner does not watch him, he shall pay ox for ox, and the dead shall be his.

Chapter 22

1 When a man steals an ox or a sheep, and kills it, or sells it, he shall pay five oxen for the ox, and four sheep for the sheep. *(2Sam 12:6)*

2 If the thief is found breaking in, and is stricken and dies, no blood *shall be* shed for him.

3 If the sun has risen on him, blood *is* due for him; repaying he shall repay. If he has nothing, then he should be sold for his theft.

4 If the stolen thing finding is found in his hand alive, from ox to donkey to flock animal, he shall pay double.

5 When a man consumes a field or a vineyard, and he lets his beast loose and it consumes another's field, he shall repay the best of his field and the best of his vineyard.

6 When fire breaks out and finds thorns, and shocked grain, or standing grain, or the field is burned up, repaying the one kindling the fire shall repay.

7 When a man gives silver or vessels to his neighbor to keep, and it is stolen from the man's house, if the thief is

1 Clearly the unborn child is considered a life and life starts at conception.

2 Thirty silver pieces was the worth of a slave, which was considered the cheapest form of life. Messiah was sold for 30 pieces of silver to show that He came to die for everyone from the least to the greatest.

found, he shall repay double. *(Lev 6:1-7)*

8 If the thief is not found, the master of the house shall be brought to Elohim, *to see* whether or not he put out his hand to his neighbor's goods.

9 In every matter of trespass, for ox, for donkey, for sheep, for clothing, for anything lost of which it *is* said that it is his, the case of both of them shall come to Elohim. Whom Elohim declares guilty, he shall repay double to his neighbor.

10 When a man gives a donkey or an ox to his neighbor; or a sheep, or any animal to keep, and it dies, or is injured, or is captured, no one seeing it,

11 an oath of YAHWEH shall be between them both, that he has not put his hand to his neighbor's goods. And its owner shall take it, and he shall not repay.

12 And if it is indeed stolen from him, he shall repay to its master.

13 If it is completely torn in pieces, he shall bring it as a witness; he shall not repay that which was torn.

14 And when a man borrows from his neighbor, and it is hurt, or dies, its owner not being with it, paying he shall repay.

15 If its owner is with it, he shall not repay. If it *is* hired, it comes for its hire.

16 And when a man lures a virgin who is not betrothed, and lies with her, paying he shall pay her dowry for a wife to himself. *(Deut 22:28-29)*

17 If her father absolutely refuses to give her to him, he shall weigh money according to the dowry of virgins.

18 You shall not allow a sorceress to live. *(Lev 20:27, Deut 18:10, Jer 27:9)*

19 Anyone lying with an animal, surely he shall be executed.*(Lev 18:23)*

20 One sacrificing to a god shall be destroyed, unless *it is* only to YAHWEH[1]. *(Ex 23:13, Is 42:8)*

21 You shall not be violent toward an alien. You shall not oppress him, for you were aliens in the land of Egypt.

22 You shall not afflict an orphan or a widow.

23 If you afflict him, if he at all cries to Me, hearing I will hear his cry,

24 and My anger shall glow, and I will kill you with the sword; and your wives shall become widows, and your sons orphans.[2]

25 If you lend money to My people, the poor with you, you shall not be as a money-lender to him; you shall not put interest on him.

26 If you indeed take the clothing of your neighbor as a pledge, you shall return it to him by the going of the sun,

27 for that is his only covering, that *is* his covering for his skin. In what shall he lie down? And it shall be, when he cries to Me, I will hear, for I *am* compassionate.

28 You shall not revile Elohim, and you shall not curse a ruler among your people. *(Heb 13:7, 17, Ro 13:1)*

29 You shall not delay giving the fullness of your crops and the juices of your vintage. You shall give to Me the first-born of your sons. *(Ex 13:2)*

30 So you shall do to your oxen, to your sheep: it shall be seven days with its mother; on the eighth day you shall give it to Me.

31 And you shall be holy men to Me. And you shall not eat flesh torn in

[1] If you sacrifice to any other deity but Yahweh it is an abomination, yet most Christians will pray daily to a deity called *"god*", which is the personal name of the Babylonian deity. See note on Is 65:11.

[2] Verses 22-24- YHWH has many laws to protect the weak, Deut 14:29, 16:11,14, Deut 24:19-21, 26:12-13.

pieces; you shall throw it to the dogs. *(Ex 19:6, Lev 11:44, Heb 12:14)*

Chapter 23

1 You shall not raise a false report; You shall not put your hand with the wicked, to become a violent witness.[1]

2 You shall not *run* after many to *gain* evil things. And you shall not testify as to a lawsuit, to turn aside after many in order to pervert *justice*.

3 And you shall not favor the lowly in his lawsuit.[2]

4 When you happen on the ox of your enemy, or his wandering donkey, returning you shall return it to him.

5 When you see the donkey of one who hates you crouching under its burden, you shall refrain from leaving *the matter* to him; loosing you shall loose *it* from him.[3]

6 You shall not pervert the judgment of your needy one in his lawsuit.

7 You shall keep far away from a false matter. And do not kill the innocent and the righteous; for I will not justify the wicked.

8 And you shall not take a bribe, for the bribe blinds the seeing one, and *it* perverts the words of the righteous.[4]

9 And you shall not oppress an alien; and you know the life of an alien, since you were aliens in the land of Egypt.[5]

10 And you shall sow your land six years, and you shall gather its produce.

11 And the seventh year you shall let it rest and let it lie fallow, and the needy of your people shall eat. And what they leave, the animals of the field shall eat. So you shall do to your vineyard, to your olive-yard.[6]

12 You shall do your work six days, and on the seventh day you shall rest, so that your ox and your donkey may rest, and the son of your slave-girl and your alien may be refreshed.

13 And be watchful in all that I have said to you. And you shall not call upon another Elohim by name[7]; it shall not be heard from your mouth.

14 Three times in the year you shall make a feast[8] to Me.

15 You shall keep the Feast of Unleavened *Bread*. Seven days you shall eat unleavened *things*, as I have commanded you, at the set time of the month of Aviv. For in it you came out from Egypt, and they shall not appear before Me empty.

16 Also the Feast of Harvest, the first fruits of your labor, *of* what you sow in the field. Also the Feast of Ingathering[9], after the going out of the year, at your gathering your work from the field.

17 Three times in the year every one of your males shall appear before the Adon YAHWEH.

[1] Lev 19:16, Ex 20:16

[2] Lev 19:15, 1Tim 5:21

[3] Deut 22:1-3, Math 5:44

[4] Deut 16:19, 1 Sam 8:1-3, 1 Sam 12:3

[5] Ex 22:21

[6] Lev 25:1-7, 28-32

[7] This scripture does not mean that you can not vocalize the name of a pagan deity when you are reading scripture. The phrase in Hebrew " *to call upon*" clearly implies to pray to or make a vow to.

[8] This word for feast is "*chagag*" and means to move around in a procession in a circle, which was done at Gilgal, which was made with stones in the shape of a sandal with the heel being in a circular patten for the priest to walk around on during Holy Days.

[9] Also called Sukkot (booths) but here typifying the bringing in of the harvest crop for preparation of winter and then appearing before Elohim in Jerusalem to receive their blessing. The phrase "*end of the year*" is referring to the agricultural year, the normal, yearly cycle goes from equinox to equinox.

18 You shall not offer the blood of My sacrifice with leaven.[1] And the fat of My feast shall not pass the night until morning.

19 The first, the first-fruits of your ground you shall bring *to* the house of YAHWEH your Elohim. You shall not boil a kid in its mother's milk[2].

20 Behold, I am about to send a messenger before you, to guard you in the way, and to bring you to the place which I have prepared. (Ex 32:34)

21 Be on guard before Him, and listen to His voice. Do not be rebellious against Him, for He will not forgive your transgressions;[3] for My name *is* in Him[4].

22 For if you fully listen to His voice, and do all which I speak, I will be an enemy to your enemies, and will be a foe to your foes.

23 For My Messenger shall go before you and bring you in to the Amorite, and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the Canaanite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite; and I will destroy them.

24 You shall not bow down to their gods, and you shall not serve them. And you shall not do according to their works. But tearing you shall tear them down, and smashing you shall smash their standing pillars.

25 And you shall serve YAHWEH your Elohim, and He will bless your bread and your water. And I will remove sickness from your midst.

26 There shall not be one miscarrying, nor one barren in your land. I will fulfill the number of your days.

27 I will send My terror before you, and I will confound all the people among whom you come. And I will give the neck of your enemies to you.[5]

28 And I will send hornets before you which shall drive out the Hivite, the Canaanite, and the Hittite before you.

29 I will not drive them out from before you in one year, that the land not become a waste, and the beast of the field multiply on you.

30 I will drive them out before you little by little, until you are fruitful and possess the land.

31 And I will set your border from the Red Sea[6] as far as the Sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness as far as the River. For I will give the people of the land into your hand. And you shall drive them out before you.

32 You shall not cut a covenant for them and for their gods.

33 They shall not dwell in your land, lest they cause you to sin towards Me. If you serve their Elohims, it will be a snare to you.

---

1 It is clear that only unleavened bread could be used during the Passover ceremony as well as other sacrifices.

2 This was a pagan Canaanite practice and has nothing to do with not mixing milk and meat together in a meal, as we see that Abraham did so when he prepared a meal for Yahshua Yahweh and His two Cherubs in Gen 18:8.

3 Luk 5:20-24- Only by being Elohim and Yahweh the Son could Yahshua have the authority as the Messenger of Yahweh to forgive sin.

4 Clearly, this was Yahshua, the Son and Messenger of Yahweh (Ex 3:2). "*Yah-Shua*" means the salvation of Yahweh. Math 1:21, Joh 17:11, Phil 2:9, Acts 4:12

5 Jos 10:24

6 The Hebrew word used here for Red is soof, and its root indicates it means the furthest border, which would be the Gulf of Aqaba between the Sinai peninsula and Saudi Arabia where Mount Sinai was.

Chapter 24

1 And He said to Moses, Come up to YAHWEH, you and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy from the elders of Israel. And bow yourselves from a distance.

2 And let Moses approach by himself to YAHWEH, and they shall not approach. And the people shall not go up with him.

3 And Moses came and told all the words of YAHWEH to the people, and all the judgments. And all the people answered with one voice and said, We will do all the Words which YAHWEH has spoken.

4 And Moses wrote all the Words of YAHWEH[1]. And he rose early in the morning and built an altar below the mountain and twelve memorial pillars for the twelve tribes of Israel.

5 And he sent young men of the sons of Israel. And they offered up burnt offerings, and offered sacrifices of bulls, peace offerings to YAHWEH.

6 And Moses took half of the blood, and he put it in basins. And he sprinkled half of the blood on the altar.

7 And he took the book of the covenant, and read in the ears of the people. And they said, We will do all that YAHWEH has spoken, and we will hear.

8 And Moses took the blood and sprinkled on the people, and said, Behold, the blood of the covenant which YAHWEH has cut with you concerning these words. (Ex 34:27)

9 And Moses and Aaron went up *with* Nadab and Abihu, and seventy from the elders of Israel.

10 And they saw the Elohim of Israel. And under His feet *was* as the work of a pavement of sapphire, and as the heavens for clearness.

11 And He did not stretch out His hand to the nobles of the sons of Israel. And they saw Elohim, and they ate and drank.

12 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Come up to Me to the mountain, and be there. And I will give to you the tablets of stone, and the Torah, and the commandments which I have written, to teach them.[2]

13 And Moses rose up, and Yahoshua his attendant. And Moses went up to the mountain of Elohim.

14 And he said to the elders, Wait here for us until we return to you. And, behold, Aaron, who *is* a master of matters, and Hur, are with you; let him approach to them.

15 And Moses went up into the mountain. And a cloud covered the mountain.

16 And the glory of YAHWEH dwelt on the mountain of Sinai. And the cloud covered it six days. And He called to Moses on the seventh day from the midst of the cloud.

17 And the appearance of the glory of YAHWEH *was* like fire burning on the top of the mountain before the eyes of the sons of Israel.

18 And Moses came into the midst of the cloud, and he went up into the mountain. And Moses was in the mountain forty days and forty nights[3].

---

[1] Clearly, we see that Moses wrote all the words and there is no indication in the Torah of a hidden oral law that the Rabbis profess today. Jos 1:8, Jos 8:34-35, Jos 23:6

[2] Up to this point only hieroglyphic languages existed, but it would have violated the second commandment to write the the Torah in etched pictures of animals so Yahweh states here that He wrote the first alphabet. Dr. Miles Jones confirms this in his book the finger of God.

[3] Forty being in scripture the number of trial or overcoming.

Chapter 25

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel, and let
them take a heave offering for Me.
From every man whose heart impels
him, let them take My offering.
3 And this *is* the offering which you
shall take from them: gold, silver, and
copper;
4 and blue, and purple, and crimson,
and fine linen, and goats hair;
5 and rams' skin dyed red, and
tachash[1] skins, and acacia wood;
6 oil for the light, spices for the oil of
anointing, and for the incense of
perfumes;
7 onyx stones, and stones for setting,
for the ephod, and for the breast
pocket.
8 And let them make a sanctuary for
Me, that I may dwell in their midst.
9 According to all which I am going
to reveal to you, the plan of the
tabernacle, and the plan of all its
vessels, even so you shall do[2].
10 And they shall make an ark *of*
acacia wood, two and a half cubits
long, and a cubit and a half wide, and a
cubit and a half high.
11 And you shall overlay it *with* pure
gold; you shall overlay it inside and
outside. And you shall make a wreath
of gold all around on it.
12 And you shall cast four rings of
gold for it, and shall put *it* on its four
feet; two rings on its one side, and two
rings on the second side.
13 And you shall make poles *of*
acacia wood, and you shall overlay
them *with* gold.
14 And you shall put the poles into
the rings on the sides of the ark, to
carry the ark by them.
15 The poles shall be in the rings of
the ark; they shall not depart from it.
16 And you shall put the testimony
into the ark, which I shall give to you.
17 And you shall make a mercyseat
of pure gold, its length two and a half
cubits, and its width a cubit and a half.
18 And you shall make two cherubs
of gold; you shall make them of beaten
work from the two ends of the mercy-
seat.
19 And make one cherub from the
end here, and one cherub from the end
there. You shall make the cherubs
from the mercyseat, on its two ends.
20 And the cherubs shall be
spreading out wings above, covering
the mercyseat with their wings, and
their faces each toward its brother; the
faces of the cherubs shall be toward
the mercy-seat.
21 And you shall put the mercyseat
on the ark from above. And you shall
put the testimony into the ark, which I
shall give to you.
22 And I will meet you there, and
will speak with you, above the
mercyseat, from between the two
cherubs which *are* on the ark of
testimony, all which I shall command
you as to the sons of Israel.
23 And you shall make a table *of*
acacia wood, its length two cubits, and
its width a cubit, and its height a cubit
and a half.
24 And you shall overlay it *with* pure
gold, and you shall make *on* it a
wreath of gold all around.
25 And you shall make a border of a
hand's breadth for it all around. And

---

1 This Hebrew word is somewhat archaic, but the root can mean a blue color, and the verb form means to move quickly, such as an antelope, which brings the ambiguity of the meaning; see Ezek 16:10, and for the verb form Job 31:5.

2 Understandably, Yahweh has judicial order in everything that He has created and we must strive to keep and obey Yahweh's judicial order in every aspect of our life.

you shall make a wreath of gold all around on its border.

26 And you shall make four rings of gold for it, and you shall put the rings on the four corners which *are* to its four feet.

27 The rings shall be near the border for housings for the poles to carry the table.

28 And you shall make the poles *of* acacia wood, and you shall overlay them with gold. And the table shall be carried by them.

29 And you shall make its platters, and its bowls, and its pitchers, and its sacrificial cups with which to pour a libation. You shall make them *of* pure gold.

30 And you shall put on the table the showbread before Me continually.

31 And you shall make a Menorah *of* pure gold. The Menorah shall be made of beaten work; its base and its shaft, its calyxes, its knobs, and its blossoms shall be from it.

32 And six branches shall go out from its sides, three branches of the lamp from its one side and three branches of the Menorah from its second side;

33 three almond like calyxes on the one branch *with* knob and blossom; and three almond like calyxes on the one branch *with* knob and blossom, so for the six branches, those going out from the Menorah.

34 And on the Menorah *shall be* four almond like calyxes, *each with* its knobs and its blossoms;

35 and a knob under two branches of it; and a knob under two branches of it; and a knob under two branches of it, to the six branches, those going from the Menorah.

36 Their knobs and their branches *shall be* of it, all of it one beaten work of pure gold.

37 And you shall make its seven lamps, and one shall set up its lamps, and they shall give light before its face.

38 And its tongs, and its pans *shall be* of pure gold.

39 One shall make it *of* a talent of pure gold, with all these vessels.

40 And see *that they are* made by their patterns which you have been shown in the mountain.

Chapter 26

1 And you shall make the tabernacle *with* ten curtains. You shall make them *with* cherubs, the work of a skilled workman, *of* twined *linen*, and blue and purple and crimson.

2 The length of one curtain *shall be* twenty eight by the cubit; and the width four by the cubit, for the one curtain; one measure to all the curtains.

3 Five curtains shall be joined together, each to her sister. And five curtains *shall be* joined each to its sister-piece.

4 And you shall make loops of blue on the edge of one curtain, from the end at the juncture; and so you shall do at the edge of the last curtain, at the second juncture.

5 You shall make fifty loops on the one curtain; and you shall make fifty loops in the end of the curtain at the second juncture; the corresponding loops each to her sister.

6 And you shall make fifty hooks of gold. And you shall join the curtains, each to her sister, by the hooks. And it shall become one (*echad, united*) tabernacle.

7 And you shall make curtains *of* goats' hair for a tent over the tabernacle; you shall make eleven curtains.

8 The length of the one curtain *shall be* thirty by the cubit; and the width

four by the cubit for the one curtain; one measure to the eleven curtains.

9 And you shall join the five curtains separately, and the six curtains separately. And you shall double the six curtains before the front of the tabernacle.

10 And you shall make fifty loops on the edge of the one curtain, the last at the juncture; and fifty loops on the edge of the second curtain that joins.

11 And you shall make fifty hooks of copper. And you shall put the hooks in the loops and join the tent together. And it shall become one[1].

12 And the overlapping part of the rest of the curtains of the tabernacle, the half curtain that remains, shall hang on the back of the tabernacle.

13 And the cubit from this side, and the cubit from that side that remains in the length of the curtains of the tent shall be hung over the sides of the tabernacle from this and from that side, to cover it.

14 And you shall make a cover for the tent of rams' skins dyed red, and a covering of tachash[2] skins from above.

15 And you shall make the boards for the tabernacle of acacia wood standing up.

16 Ten cubits *shall be* the length of one board; and a cubit and a half the width of one board.

17 Two pins *shall be* in one board, each connected to her sister piece. So you shall do to all the boards of the tabernacle.

18 And you shall make the boards for the tabernacle; twenty boards on the south side, southward.

19 And you shall make forty sockets of silver *for* the twenty boards; two sockets under the one board for its two pins, and two sockets under the one board for its two *pins*.

20 And for the second side of the tabernacle, on the north side twenty boards;

21 and their forty silver sockets; two sockets under the one board, and two sockets under the one board.

22 And you shall make six boards for the sides of the tabernacle westward.

23 And you shall make two boards for the corners of the tabernacle, in the sides.

24 And they shall be double from beneath. And in like manner they shall be joined on the top, to the one ring. So it shall be to both of them; they shall be for the two corners.

25 And *there* shall be eight boards, and their silver sockets, sixteen sockets, two sockets under the one board, and two sockets under the one board.

26 And you shall make bars *of* acacia wood, five to the boards of the one side of the tabernacle;

27 and five bars to the boards of the second side of the tabernacle; and five bars to the boards of the side of the tabernacle for the rear, westward.

28 And *there shall be* a middle bar in the midst of the boards, going through from end to end.

29 And you shall overlay the boards *with* gold and you shall make their rings gold, housings for the bars. And you shall overlay the bars with gold.

30 And you shall set up the tabernacle according to the decree which you were shown in the mountain.

31 And you shall make a veil *of* blue and purple and crimson, and twined *linen*. One shall make it by the work of the skilled workman, *with* cherubs.

32 And you shall put it on four pillars of acacia wood overlaid *with*

---

1 The word for one here is "*echad*" and means that they were united in one, Gen 2:24.

2 See note on Ex 25:5

gold. Their hooks *shall be* gold, on four sockets of silver.

33 And you shall hang the veil under the hooks. And you shall bring the ark of the testimony there inside to the veil. And the veil shall divide for you between the sanctuary and the Holy of Holies.

34 And you shall put the mercy seat on the ark of the testimony, in the Holy of Holies.

35 And you shall set the table outside the veil, and the lamp across from the table on the side of the tabernacle southward. And you shall put the table on the north side.

36 And you shall make a screen for the door of the tent *of* blue, and of purple and crimson, and twined bleached *linen*, the work of an embroiderer.

37 And you shall make five pillars of acacia wood for the screen. And you shall overlay them *with* gold, their nails gold. And you shall cast for them five sockets of copper.

Chapter 27

1 And you shall make the altar of acacia timbers; five cubits long and five cubits wide. The altar shall be square, and its height three cubits.[1]

2 And you shall make its horns on its four corners. Its horns shall be *a part* of itself. And you shall overlay it *with* copper.[2]

3 And you shall make its pots to remove its ashes, and its shovels and its sacrificial bowls, and its flesh forks, and its pans. You shall make all its vessels to be copper.

4 And you shall make a grating for it, a network *of* copper. And you shall make four rings *of* copper on the four ends of the net.

5 And you shall put it under the ledge of the altar from beneath. And the net shall be as far as half of the altar.

6 And you shall make poles for the altar, poles *of* acacia timbers. And you shall overlay them with copper.

7 And its poles shall be brought into the rings. And the poles shall be on the two sides of the altar, for carrying it.

8 You shall make it hollow *with* boards; as He showed you in the mountain, so they shall make *it*.

9 And you shall make the court of the tabernacle; for the south side southward, hangings for the court of twined linen, a hundred by the cubit in length, for the one side.

10 And its pillars *shall be* twenty, and their sockets twenty in copper; the hooks of the pillars and their bands of silver.

11 And so for the north side in length, hangings a hundred *in* length; and its pillars twenty, and their sockets twenty *in* copper; the hooks of the pillars and their bands *of* silver.

12 And the width of the west side of the court *shall have* fifty cubits *of* hangings; their pillars ten, and their sockets ten.

13 And the width of the court for the east side eastward fifty cubits;

14 and the hangings to the side fifteen cubits; their pillars three, and their sockets three.

15 And to the hangings for the second side, fifteen; their pillars three, and their sockets three.

16 And for the gate of the court a screen of twenty cubits, blue and purple and crimson, and twined linen;

1 The same wood is used for the altar as the ark of the covenant being a hard wood, and the size of the altar is 7 ½ ft square, by 4 ½ feet high.

2 The horns represented the transferring of the blood from earth to heaven and also were used to bind the sacrifice.(Ps 118:27)

the work of an embroiderer; their pillars four and their sockets four.

17 All the pillars of the court round about *shall be* banded *with* silver, their hooks silver, and their sockets copper.

18 The length of the court *shall be* a hundred by the cubit, and the width fifty by fifty, and the height five cubits, twined linen; and their sockets copper.

19 As to all the vessels of the tabernacle, in all its service, and all its pins, and all the pins of the court, *they shall be* copper.

20 And you shall command the sons of Israel, and let them bring to you pure olive oil beaten[1] for the light, to set up lamps perpetually.

21 In the tabernacle of the congregation from outside the veil which *is* by the testimony, Aaron and his sons[2] shall arrange them from evening until morning before YAHWEH; a never ending statute for their generations, from the sons of Israel.

Chapter 28

1 And you shall take to yourself your brother Aaron, and his sons with him, from among the sons of Israel, for him to serve as priest to Me; Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar, the sons of Aaron.

2 And you shall make holy garments for your brother Aaron, for glory and for beauty.

3 And you shall speak to all the wise-hearted whom I have filled with a spirit of wisdom; and they shall make the garments of Aaron to sanctify him for his serving as priest to Me.

4 And these *are* the garments which they shall make: a *breast* pocket, and an ephod, and a robe, and a tunic of woven stuff, a miter, and a girdle. And they shall make holy garments for your brother Aaron and for his sons, even for him to serve as priest to Me.

5 And they shall take the gold, and the blue, and the purple, and the crimson, and the bleached *linen*.

6 And they shall make the ephod *of* gold, blue, and purple, crimson and bleached, twined *linen*, skilled work.

7 It shall have two shoulder pieces at its two ends; and it shall be joined together.

8 And the band of the ephod which *is* on it, like its work, shall be of it, gold, blue, and purple, and crimson, and bleached, twined *linen*.

9 And you shall take two onyx stones; and you shall engrave on them the names of the sons of Israel.

10 Six of their names *shall be* on the one stone, and six of the remaining names on the second stone, according to their birth.

11 You shall engrave the two stones, the work of a stone engraver, the engravings of a signet, according to the names of the sons of Israel; you shall make them set *in* plaited work of gold.

12 And you shall put the two stones on the shoulder pieces of the ephod, stones of remembrance for the sons of Israel. And Aaron shall bear their names before the face of YAHWEH, on his two shoulders for a remembrance.

13 And you shall make plaited work of gold:

14 and two chains *of* pure gold, you shall make them twisted, a work of cord; and you shall put chains of the cords on the plaited work.

15 And you shall make a *breast*

[1] The oil was beaten rather than crushed for finer quality oil, just as Messiah was beaten but not a bone of His was broken. Ex 12:46 Ps 18:28, Ps 34:20, Joh 19:36

[2] Although all Levite males could serve, only the sons of Aaron were able to be priests.

pocket of judgment, skilled work, like
the work of the ephod you shall make
it: gold, blue, and purple, and crimson,
and bleached, twined *linen* you shall
make it.
16 It shall be square, being doubled,
its length a span and its width a span.
17 And you shall fill in it settings of
stones, four rows of stones: a row of
ruby, topaz, and carbuncle shall be the
first row.
18 And the second row: emerald,
sapphire and diamond.
19 And the third row: jacinth, agate
and amethyst.
20 And the fourth row: chrysolite,
onyx and jasper. They shall be plaited
with gold in their settings.
21 And the stones shall be according
to the names of the sons of Israel,
twelve according to their names, the
engraving of a signet; they shall be
each according to his name for the
twelve tribes.
22 And you shall make chains of
woven work on the *breast* pocket, a
work of cords, in pure gold.
23 And you shall make two rings of
gold on the *breast* pocket. And you
shall put the two rings on the two ends
of the *breast* pocket.
24 And you shall put the two cords
of gold on the two rings, at the end of
the *breast* pocket.
25 And you shall put the two ends of
the two cords on the two plaitings.
And you shall put them on the
shoulder pieces of the ephod, to the
front of it.
26 And you shall make two rings of
gold, and you shall put them on the
two ends of the *breast* pocket, on its
edge, inward across from the ephod.
27 And you shall make two rings of
gold, and you shall put them on the
two shoulder pieces of the ephod, from
beneath, at its front, near its joining,
above the band of the ephod.
28 And they shall fasten the *breast*
pocket from its rings to the rings of the
ephod with a blue ribbon, to be above
the band; and the *breast* pocket may
not move itself from the ephod.
29 And Aaron shall bear the names
of the sons of Israel on the *breast*
pocket of judgment on his heart, in his
going into the holy place, for a
memorial before the face of
YAHWEH continually. (Heb 9:22-26,
Heb 10:14)
30 And you shall put the Urim and
the Thummim into the *breast* pocket
of judgment; and they shall be on the
heart of Aaron in his going before the
face of YAHWEH. And Aaron shall
bear the judgment of the sons of Israel
on his heart before the face of
YAHWEH continually.
31 And you shall make the robe of
the ephod all *of* blue.
32 And the mouth in its top shall be
in its middle; a binding shall be all
around its mouth, of woven work; it
shall be like the mouth of a corselet[1]; it
may not be torn.
33 And you shall make
pomegranates *of* blue and purple and
crimson on its hem, all around on its
hem; also bells of gold *shall be* among
them all around:
34 a bell of gold and a pomegranate;
a bell of gold and a pomegranate, on
the hem of the robe all around.
35 And it shall be on Aaron for
ministering; and its sound shall be
heard in his going into the sanctuary
before the face of YAHWEH, and in
his coming out, that he should not die.
36 And you shall make a plate *of*
pure gold. And you shall engrave on it
the engravings of a signet: HOLINESS
TO YAHWEH.
37 And you shall put a ribbon of blue
on it, and it shall be on the miter, to
the front of the miter it shall be.

[1] A piece of armor to cover the trunk

38 And it shall be on Aaron's forehead, and Aaron shall bear the iniquity of the holy things which will sanctify the sons of Israel to all their holy gifts. And it shall be on his forehead continually, for acceptance for them before the face of YAHWEH.

39 And you shall weave the tunic *of* bleached *linen*, and you shall make a miter of bleached *linen*, and you shall make a girdle, the work of an embroiderer.

40 And you shall make tunics for the sons of Aaron; and you shall make girdles for them; and you shall make turbans for them, for glory and for beauty.

41 And you shall clothe your brother Aaron *with* them, and his sons with him; and you shall anoint them, and you shall consecrate them, and you shall sanctify them. And they shall minister as priests to Me.

42 And make bleached *linen* breeches for them, to cover the naked flesh, from the loins as far as the thighs they shall be.

43 And they shall be on Aaron and on his sons in their going into the tabernacle of the congregation, or in their drawing near to the altar to minister in the sanctuary, and so that they shall not raise up iniquity and die. *It is* a never ending statute to him and to his seed after him.

Chapter 29

1 And this *is* the thing which you shall do to them, to sanctify them to minister as priests to Me: take one bull, the son of the herd, and two rams without blemish,

2 and unleavened *bread*, and unleavened cakes poured over with oil, and unleavened wafers anointed with oil; you shall make them *of* fine wheat flour.

3 And you shall put them into one basket and shall bring them near in the basket, and the bull and the two rams.

4 And you shall take Aaron and his sons to the door of the tabernacle of congregation. And you shall wash them in water.

5 And you shall take the garments, and you shall clothe Aaron with the tunic, and the robe of the ephod, and the ephod, and the breast plate. And you shall bind it to him with the band of the ephod.

6 And you shall put the miter on his head; and you shall put the holy crown on the miter.

7 And you shall take the oil of anointing and shall pour on his head, and shall anoint him.

8 And you shall take his sons and clothe them *with* tunics.

9 And you shall gird them *with* girdles, Aaron and his sons; and you shall bind on turbans for them; and *it* shall be a never ending statute for them *in* the priest's office. And you shall consecrate Aaron and his sons.

10 And you shall bring near the bull before the tabernacle of the congregation. And Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the bull.

11 And you shall slaughter the bull before the face of YAHWEH, at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

12 And you shall take of the bull's blood and shall put *it* on the horns of the altar with your finger. And you shall pour out all the blood at the base of the altar.

13 And you shall take all the fat that covers the inward parts, and the lobe on the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat on them, and you shall burn *them* on the altar.

14 And you shall burn the flesh of

the bull, and its skin, and its dung, with fire outside the camp; it *is* a sin offering.

15 And you shall take one ram, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the ram.

16 And you shall slaughter the ram, and you shall take its blood and shall sprinkle it on the altar all around.

17 And you shall cut the ram into pieces; and you shall wash its inward parts, and its legs, and shall place *them* on its pieces and on its head.

18 And you shall burn all the ram on the altar; it *is* a burnt offering to YAHWEH, a soothing fragrance; it *is* a fire offering to YAHWEH.

19 And you shall take the second ram, and Aaron and his sons shall lay their hands on the head of the ram.

20 And you shall slaughter the ram; and you shall take of its blood and shall put *it* on the tip of the right ear of Aaron, and on the tip of the right ear of his sons, and on the thumb of the right hand, and on the big toe of their right foot; and you shall sprinkle the blood on the altar all around.

21 And you shall take of the blood on the altar, and the oil of anointing, and you shall sprinkle on Aaron and on his garments, and on his sons, and on his sons' garments with him.

22 And you shall take the fat from the ram, and the fat tail, and the fat that covers the inward parts, and the lobe of the liver, and the two kidneys, and the fat on them, and the right leg; for it *is* a ram of consecration;

23 also one loaf of bread, and one cake of oil bread, and one wafer, from the basket of unleavened *bread* which *is* before the face of YAHWEH.

24 And you shall put all on the hands of Aaron and on the hands of his sons. And you shall wave them, a wave offering before the face of YAHWEH.

25 And you shall take them from their hands, and you shall burn the burnt offering on the altar for a soothing fragrance before the face of YAHWEH; it *is* a fire offering to YAHWEH.

26 And you shall take the breast from the ram of consecration which *is* on Aaron. And you shall wave it a wave offering before the face of YAHWEH; it shall be your portion.

27 And you shall sanctify the breast of the wave offering, and the shoulder of the heave offering, which is waved and which is lifted from the ram of consecration, from what *is* Aaron's, and from what is to his sons.

28 And it shall be for Aaron and for his sons for a never ending statute from the sons of Israel; it *is* for a heave offering, and it shall be a heave offering from the sons of Israel from the sacrifices of their peace offerings, their heave offering to YAHWEH.

29 And the holy garments which *are* Aaron's shall be his sons' after him, for anointing in them and for filling their hands in them.

30 The priest shall put them on seven days, the *one* from his sons taking his place; the *one* who comes into the tabernacle of the congregation to minister in the sanctuary.

31 And you shall take the ram of consecration, and you shall boil its flesh in a sanctuary.

32 And Aaron and his sons shall eat the flesh of the ram and the bread which *is* in the basket at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

33 And they shall eat those things by which atonement is made to consecrate them, to sanctify them; and a stranger shall not eat, for they *are* holy.

34 And if any is left of the flesh of consecration, and of the bread, until the morning, you shall burn what is

left with fire; it shall not be eaten, for it *is* holy.

35 And so you shall do to Aaron and to his sons, according to all which I have commanded you; you shall consecrate them seven days.

36 And you shall offer a bull of a sin offering daily for atonement; and you shall purify the altar in your making atonement for it; and you shall anoint it to sanctify it.

37 You shall make atonement seven days for the altar, and shall sanctify it; and the altar shall become most holy, all touching the altar becomes holy.

38 And this *is* what you shall offer on the altar: two lambs daily, sons of a year, continually.

39 The one lamb you shall offer in the morning, and the second lamb you shall offer between the evenings.[1]

40 And a tenth of fine flour anointed with beaten oil, a fourth of a hin; and a drink offering, a fourth of a hin *of* wine, for the one lamb.

41 And you shall offer the second lamb between the evenings; you shall do to it like the morning food offering and its drink offering, for a soothing fragrance, a fire offering to YAHWEH.

42 *This shall be* a continual burnt offering to your generations, at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation before the face of YAHWEH; there where I meet you to speak to you there.

43 And I will meet the sons of Israel here and it shall be sanctified by My glory.

44 And I will sanctify the tabernacle of the congregation and the altar. And I will sanctify Aaron and his sons to minister as priests to Me.

45 And I will dwell in the midst of the sons of Israel; and I will be Elohim to them.

46 And they shall know that I *am* YAHWEH their Elohim, who brought them out from the land of Egypt, that I may dwell in their midst. I *am* YAHWEH their Elohim.[2]

Chapter 30

1 And you shall make an altar, a place for burning incense; you shall make it *of* acacia wood.

2 It *shall be* a cubit in length and a cubit in width; it shall be square. And its height *shall be* two cubits, its horns are to be a part of itself.

3 And you shall overlay it *with* pure gold, its top, and its walls all around, and its horns. And you shall make a wreath of gold for it all around.

4 And you shall make two rings of gold for it under its wreath; you shall make its two corners on its two sides; and they shall be housings for poles, to lift them up by it.

5 And you shall make the poles *of* acacia wood; and you shall overlay them *with* gold.

6 And you shall put it before the veil which *is* beside the ark of the testimony; in front of the mercyseat which *is* over the testimony, there where I meet you.

7 And Aaron shall burn incense of perfume on it morning by morning; when he dresses the lamps he shall burn it.

8 And when Aaron sets up the lamps between the evenings he shall burn it, a perpetual incense before the face of YAHWEH for your generations.

[1] The actual times listed here are from sunrise for the morning sacrifice and sunset for the evening one. During temple times due to the amount of sacrifices being done they actually did them at 9:00am and 3:00pm, Num 28:4.

[2] VS 44-46- YHWH dwelt among the people through His set-apart priesthood of Aaron whom He consecrated.

9 You shall not offer up strange incense on it, and burnt offering and food offering; and you shall not pour out a drink offering, to go up on it.

10 And Aaron shall make atonement on its horns once in a year; from the blood of the sin offering of the atonement once in the year he shall make atonement on it for your generations; it *is* most holy to YAHWEH.

11 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

12 When you lift up the head of the sons of Israel, of those numbered, each one shall give the ransom of his soul to YAHWEH when numbering them; and there shall not be a plague among them when numbering them.

13 They shall give this, everyone passing over to those numbered: half a shekel, by the shekel of the sanctuary, twenty gerahs *being* a shekel; half a shekel as an offering to YAHWEH.

14 Every one passing over to those numbered, from a son of twenty years and upward, shall give the offering of YAHWEH.

15 The rich shall not give more, and the poor shall not give less than half a shekel, to give the offering of YAHWEH, to make atonement for your souls.

16 And you shall take the silver of atonement from the sons of Israel and you shall give it to the service of the tabernacle of the congregation; and it shall be for the sons of Israel for remembrance before the face of YAHWEH, to make atonement for your souls.

17 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

18 And you shall make a copper laver for washing, and its base copper. And you shall put it between the tabernacle of the congregation and the altar; and you shall put water there.

19 And Aaron and his sons shall wash from it, their hands and their feet;

20 as they go into the tabernacle of the congregation they shall wash *with* water, and shall not die; or as they draw near to the altar to minister, to burn a fire offering to YAHWEH.

21 And they shall wash their hands and their feet, and shall not die. And it shall be a never ending statute to them, to him and to his seed for their generations.

22 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

23 And you take spices for yourself, the best, five hundred of pure myrrh, and its half of spicy cinnamon, two hundred and fifty *shekels*, and two hundred and fifty of aromatic calamus;

24 and five hundred of cassia, by the shekel of the sanctuary; and a hin of olive oil.

25 And you shall make it an oil of holy anointing, ointment compound, the work of a perfumer, an oil of holy anointing it shall be.

26 And you shall anoint with it the tabernacle of the congregation and the ark of the testimony,

27 and the table and all its vessels and the altar of incense,

28 and the altar of burnt offering, and all its vessels, and the laver and its base.

29 And you shall sanctify them, and they shall become most holy; everything touching them shall become holy.

30 And you shall anoint Aaron and his sons, and you shall consecrate them to minister as priests to Me.

31 And you shall speak to the sons of Israel, saying, This shall be a holy anointing oil for Me for your generations.

32 It shall not be poured on the flesh

of man, and you shall not make *any*
like it in its proportion; it *is* holy. It
shall be holy to you.
33 If a man prepares *any* like it, or
who gives from it to a stranger, *he*
shall be cut off from his people.
34 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Take perfumes for yourself, spices,
stacte, and onycha, and galbanum,
spices, and pure frankincense, a part
shall be for a part.
35 And you shall make it incense, an
ointment, a work of a perfumer,
salted, pure *and* holy.
36 And you shall grind *some* of it
fine, and put *some* of it in front of the
testimony in the tabernacle of the
congregation, where I meet you. It
shall be most holy to you.
37 And the incense which you make,
in its proportion, you shall not make
for yourselves; it shall be holy to you
for YAHWEH.
38 If a man makes *any* like it, to
smell of it, he shall be cut off from his
people[1].

Chapter 31

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying:
2 Behold, I have called by name
Bezaleel, the son of Uri, the son of
Hur, to the tribe of Judah.
3 And I have filled him with the
spirit of Elohim in wisdom, and in
intelligence, and in knowledge, and in
all workmanship,
4 to devise designs, to work in gold
and in silver and in copper,
5 and in cutting of stones for
finishings, and in carving of wood, to
work in all workmanship.
6 And behold! I have given with him
Aholiab the son of Ahisamach of the
tribe of Dan; and in the heart of every
wise-hearted one I have given wisdom;
and they shall make all which I have
commanded you:
7 the tabernacle of the congregation,
and the ark of the testimony, and the
mercyseat which *is* going up over it,
and all the vessels of the tabernacle,
8 and the table and its vessels, and
the pure Menorah and all its vessels,
and the altar of incense;
9 and the altar of burnt offering and
all its vessels, and the laver and its
base;
10 and the woven garments, and the
holy garments for Aaron the priest,
and the garments of his sons, to
minister as priests;
11 and the oil of anointing, and the
incense of perfumes for the sanctuary;
according to all which I have
commanded you, they shall do.
12 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
13 And you speak to the sons of
Israel, charging them, only My
Sabbaths you shall keep[2]; for it *is* a
sign between Me and you for your
generation; to know that I *am*
YAHWEH your sanctifies.
14 And you shall keep the Sabbath,
for it *is* holy for you; the profaners of it
shall surely be executed; for everyone
doing work[3] in it, that soul shall be cut
off from the midst of his people.

[1] In scripture the things that are set apart to Yahweh are not to be copied, yet in our modern world today many commercialize anything from scripture and there are trinkets of almost anything you can imagine to purchase.

[2] Ex 31:12-19 clearly shows the eternal Sabbath covenant that Yahweh has made to His children for eternity which shows who He is as Creator and His blessing of rest to those that enter His family covenant.

[3] The word for doing means to expand and work is '*melaka*' which is a form of the Hebrew word for Kingdom, so we are not to expand our own Kingdom on Shabbat.

15 Work may be done six days, and on the seventh day *is* a Sabbath of rest, holy to YAHWEH; everyone doing work on the Sabbath day surely shall be put to death.
16 And the sons of Israel shall guard the Sabbath, to observe and do the Sabbath for their generations; *it is* a never ending covenant.
17 It *is* a sign forever between Me and the sons of Israel; for in six days YAHWEH made the heavens and the earth, and on the seventh day He rested and was refreshed.[1]
18 And when He finished speaking with him on Mount Sinai, He gave to Moses the two tablets of the testimony, tablets of stone, written by the finger of Elohim.[2]

Chapter 32

1 And the people saw that Moses delayed to come down from the mountain. And the people gathered to Aaron. And they said to him, Rise up, make for us gods who may go before our face. As for this Moses, the man who brought us up from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has become of him.
2 And Aaron said to them, Break off the rings of gold which *are* in the ears of your wives, your sons and your daughters; and bring them to me.
3 And all the people broke off the rings of gold in their ears, and they brought to Aaron.
4 And he took *them* from their hand and formed it with an engraving tool. And he made it a casted calf. And they said, These *are* your gods, O Israel, who brought you up from the land of Egypt.
5 And Aaron saw, and he built an altar before it. And Aaron called and said, A feast to YAHWEH tomorrow.
6 And they rose early on the morrow, and they offered burnt offerings and brought near peace offerings. And the people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to make merry.
7 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, Come, go down, for your people whom you caused to go up from Egypt are corrupted;
8 they have quickly turned off from the way which I commanded them; they have made for themselves a casted calf and have bowed to it, and have sacrificed to it. And *they* have said, These *are* your gods, O Israel, who brought you up from the land of Egypt.
9 And YAHWEH said to Moses, I have seen this people, and, behold, it *is* a stiff-necked people.
10 And now leave Me alone that My anger may glow against them, that I may consume them. And I will make you a great nation.
11 And Moses prayed before the face of YAHWEH his Elohim, and he said, Why, O YAHWEH, does Your anger glow against Your people whom You caused to go up from the land of Egypt with great power, and with a mighty hand?
12 Why should the Egyptians say, For evil He has caused them to go up, to kill them in the mountains, and to

---

1 Verses 16-17- The Sabbath is a most special and intimate covenant between YHWH and His children forever. It is a wonderful blessing He gives every 7th day for His set apart elect covenant people to be able to leave the world and enter a type of the millennial rest from sunset Friday to sunset Saturday every week. True believers are commanded here that they are to guard and protect this special blessing.

2 Mankind has written millions of books through the ages that people will follow and yet here, the 10 commandments, written by the very finger of YHWH and mankind will not obey nor adhere to them.

consume them on the face of the earth? Turn from Your fierce anger and be moved to pity as to the evil to Your people.

13 Remember Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, Your servants to whom You swore by Yourself, and You spoke to them, I will multiply your seed like the stars of the heavens, and all this land which I have said, I will give to your seed. And they shall possess it forever.

14 And YAHWEH was moved to pity concerning the evil which He had spoken to do to His people.

15 And Moses turned and went down from the mountain, the two tablets of the testimony in his hand, tablets written on their two sides, on this and on that *side* they *were* written.

16 And the tablets *were* the work of Elohim, and the writing *was* the writing of Elohim; it *was* engraved on the tablets.

17 And Yahoshua heard the voice of the people in their shouting. And he said to Moses, A sound of war in the camp!

18 And he said, *It is* not a sound of a cry of might, nor a sound of a cry of defeat; I *am* hearing the sound of singing.

19 And it happened, as he came near to the camp and saw the calf and dances, the anger of Moses glowed. And he threw the tablets from his hands, and he broke them below the mountain.

20 And he took the calf which they had made and burned *it* with fire and ground *it* until it *was* fine, then he scattered *it* on the face of the water. And he made the sons of Israel to drink *it*.

21 And Moses said to Aaron, What has this people done to you that you have made to come on them a great sin?

22 And Aaron said, Let not the anger of my lord glow. You know the people that it *is* in evil.

23 And they said to me, Make for us gods who may go before us; as for Moses, the man who caused us to go up from the land of Egypt, we do not know what has become of him.

24 And I said to them, Whoever has gold, let them break off. And they gave to me, and I cast it into the fire, and this calf came out.

25 And Moses saw the people, that they were naked[1], for Aaron had let them naked for scornful shaming among their enemies.

26 And Moses stood in the gate of the camp and said, Who *is* for YAHWEH? *Come* to me! And all the sons of Levi assembled to him.

27 And he said to them, So says YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, each one put his sword on his thigh; pass to and fro from gate to gate in the camp, and each one kill his brother, and each one his neighbor, and each one his kindred.

28 And the sons of Levi did according to the word of Moses. And about three thousand men of the people fell on that day.

29 And Moses said, Fill your hand today for YAHWEH, since each one *has been* against his son and against his brother, and in order to give you a blessing today.

30 And it happened on the morrow, Moses said to the people, You have sinned a great sin. And now I will go up to YAHWEH; perhaps I can make atonement for your sin.

31 And Moses went back to YAHWEH and said, Oh, this people has sinned a great sin, and they have made for themselves gods of gold.

32 And now if You will, lift up their

1 They were exposed and lost their covering as Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden. (Gen 3:7)

sin. And if not, I pray, blot me out from Your book which You have written.

33 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Whoever has sinned against Me, I will blot him from My book.

34 And now go, lead the people to *that* place which I have spoken to you. Behold, My Messenger shall go before your face. And in the day of My visitation I will visit their sin on them.

35 And YAHWEH plagued the people because they made the calf, which Aaron made.

Chapter 33

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, Come, go up from this *place*, you and the people whom you have caused to go up out from the land of Egypt, to the land which I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, I will give it to your seed.

2 And I will send a Messenger before your face[1], and I will drive out the Canaanite, the Amorite, and the Hittite and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite;

3 to a land flowing *with* milk and honey. For I will not go up among you, for you *are* a stiffnecked people, lest I consume you in the way.

4 And the people heard this evil word, and they mourned, and did not put any ornaments on themselves.

5 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Say to the sons of Israel, You *are* a stiff-necked people; in one instant I will go up among you and I will consume you. And now lay off from you your ornaments, that I may know what I shall do to you.

6 And the sons of Israel pulled off their ornaments, from Mount Horeb.

7 And Moses took the tent and pitched it outside the camp, far off from the camp. And he called it the tabernacle of the congregation. And it happened that everyone seeking YAHWEH went to the tabernacle of the congregation which *was* outside the camp.

8 And it happened as Moses went to the tabernacle, the people all rose and stood, each one *at* the door of his tent. And *they* looked after Moses until he had gone into the tabernacle.

9 And it happened as Moses went into the tabernacle, the pillar of cloud would come down and stand *at* the door of the tabernacle. And He spoke with Moses.

10 And all the people would see the pillar of the cloud standing *at* the door of the tabernacle. And all the people rose and bowed themselves, each one at the door of his tent.[2]

11 And YAHWEH would speak to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend. And he would return to the camp. And his attendant, Yahoshua the son of Nun, a young man did not leave the middle of the tabernacle.

12 And Moses said to YAHWEH, Behold, You *are* saying to me, Cause this people to go up. And You, You have not told me whom You will send with me. And yet You have said, I know you by name, and also you have found favor in My eyes.[3]

13 And now, if I have found favor in Your eyes, please make me see Your ways, and let me know You, so that I may find favor in Your eyes; and consider that this nation *is* Your people.

14 And He said, My presence[4] will go *with you*, and I will give you rest.

---

[1] Yahweh will send His Messenger, but He is not the messenger.

[2] Yahweh's presence brought a spirit of worship.

[3] Yahweh knew Moses by name, and Moses wanted to know the name of the messenger of Yahweh that would be going with them.

15 And they said to Him, If Your presence does not go, do not cause us to go up from here.

16 And now by what can it be known that I and Your people have found favor in Your eyes? *Is it* not in Your going with us? And we are distinguished, I and Your people, from all the nations which *are* on the face of the earth?

17 And YAHWEH said to Moses, This thing which you have spoken I will do. For you have found favor in My eyes, and I know you by name.

18 And he said, I pray, let me see Your glory. *(Luk 9:23-35)*

19 And He said, I will cause all My goodness to pass before your face. And I will call out the name of YAHWEH before your face. And I will be gracious to whom I will be gracious, and I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy.

20 And He said, You are not able to see My face; for no man can see Me and live.

21 And YAHWEH said, Behold, a place by Me! And you shall stand on a rock.

22 And as My glory is passing it will be that I will put you in a cleft of the rock; and I will cover My hand over you during My passing.

23 And I will remove My hand, and you shall see My back[1]; but My face cannot be seen.

Chapter 34

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Cut out for yourself two tablets of stone, like the former. And I will write on the tablets the words which were on the former tablet, which you broke.

2 And be prepared in the morning, and go up in the morning to Mount Sinai. And place yourself there by Me, on the top of the mountain.

3 And a man shall not go up with you. And also let no man be seen on all the mountain. Also do not allow the flocks and the herds to feed before that mountain.

4 And he cut out two tablets of stone like the former. And Moses rose early in the morning and went up into Mount Sinai, as YAHWEH had commanded him. And he took in his hand the two tablets of stone.

5 And YAHWEH came down in the cloud. And he placed himself there with Him, and he called on the name of YAHWEH.

6 And YAHWEH passed by before his face and called out: YAHWEH! YAHWEH Elohim! Merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and great in goodness and truth,

7 keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and not leaving entirely unpunished, visiting the iniquity of fathers on sons, and on sons of sons, to the third and to the fourth generation.

8 And Moses hurried and bowed to the earth and worshiped.

9 And he said, If now I have found favor in Your eyes, O YAHWEH, please let my Adonai go in our midst, for it *is* a stiffnecked people; and You forgive our iniquity and our sin, and take us as a possession.

10 And He said, Behold, I *am* cutting a covenant;[2] I will do wonderful things before all your people which not have

[4] Presence in Hebrew '*pene*' meaning my face, one with equal authority who had His name (Ex 23:20-21)

[1] This Hebrew word not not necessarily mean a physical back, but the after result, YHWH would allow Moses in vision to see that his request for His presence to be with the Israelites would be granted.

[2] This is written in the present tense showing the covenant hadn't been ratified before this.

been done in all the earth, and among
all nations. And all the people in
whose midst you *are* shall see the
work of YAHWEH, for that which I
am about to do *is* awesome.
11 Take heed for yourself what I *am*
commanding you today. Behold, I *am*
about to drive out from before your
face the Amorite, and the Canaanite,
and the Hittite, and the Perizzite, and
the Hivite, and the Jebusite.
12 Take heed to yourself, that you
not cut a covenant with the people of
the land to which you are going in,
that it not be a snare in your midst.
13 But you shall cut down their
altars, break their pillars, and you
shall cut off their Asherahs.
14 For you shall not bow to another
Elohim, for YAHWEH whose name *is*
Jealous[1], He *is* a jealous Elohim;
15 that you not cut a covenant with
the people of the land, and they
fornicate with their Elohims, and they
call to you, and you eat from his
sacrifice;
16 and you take from their daughters
for your sons, and their daughters
fornicate with their Elohims, and they
lead your sons to fornicate with their
Elohims.[2]
17 You shall not make for yourself
casted Elohims.
18 You shall keep the Feast of
Unleavened; seven days you shall eat
unleavened things, which I command-
ed you, at the time appointed, the
month of Abib; for in the month of
Abib you went out from Egypt.
19 Every one opening the womb *is*
Mine, and all your male livestock, a
firstling of ox or sheep,
20 and a firstling of a donkey, you
shall redeem with a lamb. And if you
do not redeem, you shall break its
neck. You shall redeem every firstborn
of your sons, and they shall not be
seen before My face empty.
21 You may work six days, and on
the seventh day you shall rest. In
plowing time and in harvest you shall
rest.
22 And you shall observe a Feast of
Weeks for yourself, the first-fruits of
the harvest of wheat; also the Feast of
Ingathering after the turn of the year[3].
23 Three times in the year every
male of yours shall be seen before the
face of Adonai YAHWEH, the Elohim
of Israel.
24 For I will expel nations from
before your face and will make broad
your territory; and no one shall covet
your land, as you go up to appear
before YAHWEH your Elohim three
times in the year.
25 You shall not slaughter the blood
of my sacrifice with leaven, nor shall
the sacrifice of the Passover Feast pass
the night until morning.
26 You shall bring the first of the
first-fruits of your ground to the house
of YAHWEH your Elohim. You shall
not boil a kid in the milk of its mother.
27 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Write these words for yourself, for on
the mouth of these words I will cut a
covenant with you and with Israel[4].
28 And he was there with YAHWEH
forty days and forty nights; he did not
eat bread and he did not drink water.

---

[1] This word in Hebrew '*kanna*' is only used for YHWH, meaning He will not put up with rivalry or unfaithfulness. He has the exclusive right to possess Israel in the covenant relationship. It is an act of love, as it shows exclusive devotion to the covenant partner. Sometimes this word is used as zeal.

[2] Deut 7:3-4, 1Kgs 11:1-6, 2Cor 6:14

[3] The word here is "*tekufah*" and means a full revolution of the sun, meaning after the equinox. The year can't begin until the day of the vernal equinox and Sukkot cannot come until the fall equinox. (Ex 23:16)

And He wrote on the tablets the words
of the covenant, the Ten Words.
29 And it happened as Moses was
going down from Mount Sinai, the two
tablets of the testimony being in
Moses' hand as he went down from the
mountain, Moses did not know that
the skin of his face had become shiny
through His speaking with him.
30 And Aaron and all the sons of
Israel saw Moses. And, behold! The
skin of his face shone. And they were
afraid to draw near to him.
31 And Moses called to them. And
Aaron and all the leaders among the
congregation turned back to him. And
Moses spoke to them.
32 And afterwards all the sons of
Israel drew near. And he commanded
them all *that* which YAHWEH had
spoken with him in Mount Sinai.
33 And Moses finished speaking
with them, and he put a veil on his
face.
34 And as Moses came in before
YAHWEH to speak with Him, he took
off the veil until he went out[1]. And he
would go out and speak to the sons of
Israel that which he was commanded.
35 And the sons of Israel would see
the face of Moses, that the skin of
Moses' face shone[2]. And Moses would
put back the veil on his face until he
went in to speak with Him.

Chapter 35

1 And Moses assembled all the
congregation of the sons of Israel and
said to them, These *are* the Words
which YAHWEH has commanded, to
do them:
2 Work may be done six days and on
the seventh day it shall be holy to you,
a Sabbath of rest to YAHWEH;
everyone doing work in it surely shall
die.
3 You shall not kindle a fire in all
your dwellings on the day of the
Sabbath.
4 And Moses said to all the
congregation of the sons of Israel,
saying, This *is* the thing which
YAHWEH commanded, saying,
5 Take from among you an offering
to YAHWEH. Everyone willing of
heart shall bring it, the offering of
YAHWEH: gold and silver and
copper,
6 and blue, and purple, and crimson,
and bleached *linen*, and goats' *hair*,
7 and rams' skins dyed red, and
Tachash skins, and acacia wood,
8 and oil for the light, and spices for
the oil of anointing, and for the
incense of perfumes;
9 and onyx stones, and stones of
settings, for the ephod and for the
breast pocket.
10 And every wise-hearted one
among you, let them come and make
all which YAHWEH has commanded;
11 the tabernacle, its tent, and its
cover, its hooks, its boards, its bars, its
pillars, and its sockets;
12 the ark, and its poles, the
mercyseat and the veil of the covering,

---

4 Up till now the covenant was still not ratified due to the golden calf incident. The betrothal was never consummated and Yahweh severed the marriage agreement with Israel at this point

1 It would have been disrespectful for Moses to have his head covered while speaking to Yahweh. (1Cor 11:4)

2 The Hebrew word '*keren*' means to radiate, as the sun radiates from heaven to earth. It also means horn, as the horn from the animal radiates up to heaven also; that is why the priests hold the horns of the animal before sacrifice as he is transferring the sins from the horn of the animal up to heaven and that is why a horn is blown on the Holy-Days as joy is being radiated from the horn up to the heavens.

13 the table and its poles, and all its vessels, and the Bread of the Presence;
14 and the Menorah of the light, and its vessels, and its lamps, and the oil of the light;
15 and the incense altar and its poles, and the oil of anointing, and the incense of perfumes, and the screen of the door, at the door of the tabernacle;
16 the altar of burnt offering, and its copper grating, its poles, and all its vessels, the laver and its base;
17 the screens of the court, its pillars, and its sockets, and the screen for the gate of the court;
18 the pins of the tabernacle, and the pins of the court, and their cords;
19 the woven garments to minister in the sanctuary, the holy garments for Aaron the priest, and the garments for his sons, to minister as priests.
20 And all the congregation of the sons of Israel went out from Moses.
21 And they came, every one whose heart was lifted up, and everyone whose spirit made him willing. They brought the offering of YAHWEH for the work of the tabernacle of the congregation, and for all its service, and for the holy garments.
22 And the men came in together with the women, everyone willing of heart. They brought in bracelets, and nose rings, and rings, and ornaments, every gold article, and every one who waved a wave offering of gold to YAHWEH.
23 And everyone *with* whom blue was found, and purple, and crimson, and bleached *linen*, and goats' *hair*, and rams' skins dyed red, and Tachash skins, they brought.
24 Everyone rising up with an offering of silver and copper, they brought the offering of YAHWEH; and everyone with whom was found acacia wood for any work of the service, they brought.
25 And every wise-hearted woman spun with her hands; and they brought spun yarn, blue, and purple, and crimson and bleached *linen*.
26 And all the women whose hearts *were* lifted up in wisdom spun the goats' *hair*.
27 And the leaders brought the onyx stones, and stones for the setting, for the ephod and for the *breast* pocket,
28 and the spice, and the oil for the light, and for the anointing oil, and for the incense of the perfumes.
29 And every man and woman whose hearts made them willing to bring for all the work which YAHWEH commanded to be done by the hand of Moses; the sons of Israel brought a willing offering to YAHWEH.
30 And Moses said to the sons of Israel, Behold! YAHWEH has called by name Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah.
31 And He has filled him with the spirit of Elohim, in wisdom, in intelligence, and in knowledge, and in all workmanship,
32 and to devise designs, to work in gold, and in silver, and in copper,
33 and in cuttings of stones for finishings, and in carving of wood, to work in all workmanship of design.
34 And He has put in his heart to teach, he and Aholiab the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan,
35 He has filled them with wisdom of heart, to do every work of a smith, and an artisan, and an embroiderer in blue, and in purple, and in crimson, and in bleached linen, and a weaver; doers of every work and devisers of designs.

Chapter 36

1 And Bezaleel and Aholiab shall work with everyone wise of heart to

whom YAHWEH has given wisdom and intelligence, to know how to do every work of the service of the sanctuary, concerning all which YAHWEH had commanded.

2 And Moses called to Bezaleel, and to Aholiab, and to everyone wise of heart, to whom YAHWEH had given a heart of wisdom, everyone whose heart had lifted him up to come near the work, to do it.

3 And they took every offering before Moses which the sons of Israel had brought for the work of the service *in* the holy place, to do it. And they brought to him still more willing offerings morning by morning.

4 And all the wise men came, those doing every kind of work *for* the sanctuary, each one from his work they *were* doing.

5 And they spoke to Moses, saying, The people are bringing more than enough *for* the service of the work that YAHWEH commanded, to do it.

6 And Moses commanded, and they caused it to be voiced in the camp, saying, Let neither man nor woman make any more offering for the sanctuary; and the people were held back from bringing.

7 And their property was sufficient for all the work, to do it, and *it was* too much.

8 And every wise-hearted one among the doers of the work of the tabernacle made ten curtains, twined, bleached *linen*, and blue, and purple, and crimson; he made them with cherubs, the work of an artisan.

9 The length of one curtain *was* twenty eight by the cubit; and the width *was* four by the cubit; the one curtain *was* the same measure for all the curtains.

10 And he joined five curtains one to another; and he joined five curtains one to another.

11 And he made loops of blue on the edge of the one curtain, from the end to the juncture; so he did at the edge of the last curtain at the second juncture.

12 He made fifty loops on one curtain; and he made fifty loops on the end of the curtain which *was* at the second juncture; the loops corresponded, one with another.

13 And he made fifty hooks of gold; and he joined the curtains by the hooks, one to another. And the tabernacle became one.

14 And he made curtains *of* goats' *hair* for a tent over the tabernacle; he made them eleven curtains.

15 The length of the one curtain *was* thirty by the cubit, and four cubits the width of the one curtain; one measure to the eleven curtains.

16 And he joined the five curtains separately, and the six curtains separately.

17 And he made fifty loops on the edge of the last curtain at the juncture; and he made fifty loops on the edge of the curtain that joined the second.

18 And he made fifty copper hooks to join the tent, to unite it in one *(echad)*.

19 And he made a cover for the tent of rams' skins dyed red; and a cover of Tachash skins from above.

20 And he made the boards for the tabernacle, standing planks *of* acacia wood.

21 The length of the board *was* ten cubits, and a cubit and a half *was* the width of the one board.

22 The one board *was* connected by two pins, one to another; so he did to all the boards of the tabernacle.

23 And he made the boards for the tabernacle: twenty boards for the south side southward.

24 And he made forty sockets of silver under the twenty boards; two

sockets under the one board for its two pins.
25 And for the second side of the tabernacle, to the north side, he made twenty boards,
26 and their forty silver sockets; two sockets under the one board, and two sockets under the other board.
27 And he made six boards for the sides of the tabernacle westward.
28 And he made two boards for the corners of the tabernacle, in the sides.
29 And they were double from below, and in like manner they were complete to its top, to the first ring. So he did to both of them, for the two corners.
30 And there were eight boards, and their silver sockets, sixteen sockets; two sockets *and* two sockets under the one board.
31 And he made bars *of* acacia wood; five to the boards of the second side of the tabernacle;
32 and five bars to the boards of the sides of the tabernacle westward.
33 And he made the middle bar to go through the middle of the boards, from end to end.
34 And he overlaid the boards *with* gold. And he made the rings gold, housing for the poles; and he overlaid the bars *with* gold.
35 And he made a veil *of* blue, and purple, and crimson, and twined, bleached *linen*. He made it the work of an artisan, with cherubs.
36 And he made four pillars *of* acacia for it. And he overlaid them *with* gold, their hooks gold; and he cast four sockets of silver for them.
37 And he made a screen for the door of the tabernacle, blue, and purple, and crimson, and twined, bleached *linen*, the work of an embroiderer;
38 and its five pillars, and their hooks; and they overlaid their tops and their bands *with* gold; and their five sockets copper.

Chapter 37

1 And Bezaleel made the ark *of* acacia wood; two cubits and a half long, and a cubit and a half wide, and a cubit and a half high.
2 And he overlaid it *with* pure gold, inside and outside. And he made for it a wreath of gold all around.
3 And he cast four rings of gold for it, on its four feet; two rings on its one side and two rings on its second side.
4 And he made poles *of* acacia wood; and he overlaid them *with* gold.
5 And he put the poles into the rings, on the sides of the ark, to carry the ark.
6 And he made a mercyseat of pure gold; two cubits and a half long, and a cubit and a half wide.
7 And he made two cherubs *of* gold; he made them of beaten work, from the two ends of the mercyseat;
8 one cherub here at one end, and one cherub here at the *other* end. He made the cherubs from the mercyseat, from its two ends.
9 And the cherubs were spreading out wings above, covering the mercy-seat *with* their wings, their faces each toward the other; the faces of the cherubs were toward the mercyseat.
10 And he made the table *of* planks *of* acacia; two cubits long, and a cubit wide, and a cubit and a half high.
11 And he overlaid it *with* pure gold; and he made for it a wreath of gold all around.
12 And he made for it a border of a hand's breadth all around. And he made a wreath of gold for its border all around.
13 And he cast for it four rings of gold; and he put the rings on the four corners, which *were* to its four feet.

14 The rings were near the border, the housings for the poles, to carry the table.

15 And he made the poles *of* acacia wood; and he overlaid them *with* gold, to lift up the table.

16 And he made the vessels which *were* on the table, its platters and its bowls, and its sacrificial cups, and its pitchers by which a drink offering *is* made, with pure gold.

17 And he made the Menorah *of* pure gold; he made the Menorah *of* beaten work, its side, and its branch, its calyxes, its knobs and its blossoms were from it.

18 And six branches went out from its sides; three branches of the Menorah from one side, and three branches of the Menorah from its second side.

19 Three almond-like bowls *were* on the one branch, with knob and blossom; and three almond-like bowls on the one branch, *with* knob and blossom; so for the six branches, those going out from the Menorah.

20 And on the Menorah *were* four almond-like bowls, its knobs and its blossoms.

21 And a knob *was* under two branches of it, to the six branches, those going out from it.

22 The knobs and the branches of it were one beaten work of pure gold.

23 And he made its seven lamps and its snuffers and its pans *of* pure gold.

24 He made it and all its vessels *from* a talent of pure gold.

25 And he made the altar of incense *of* acacia wood; its length a cubit, and its width a cubit, square. And its height *was* two cubits; its horns were of it.

26 And he overlaid it *with* pure gold, its top and its sides and its horns all around. And he made for it a wreath of gold all around.

27 And he made for it two rings of gold, from beneath its wreath, on its two corners, on its two sides, for housings for poles, to lift it.

28 And he made its poles *of* acacia wood; and he overlaid them *with* gold.

29 And he made the holy oil of anointing, and the pure incense of fragrant spices, the work of a perfumer.

Chapter 38

1 And he made the altar of the burnt offering *of* acacia wood; five cubits its length and five cubits its width, square; and its height *was* three cubits.

2 And he made its horns on its four corners; its horns were of it. And he overlaid it *with* copper.

3 And he made all the vessels of the altar, the pots and the shovels and the sacrificial bowls, the fleshhooks and the firepans. He made all its vessels *of* copper.

4 And he made a network of copper grating for the altar, from below under its ledge, as far as its middle.

5 And he cast four rings in its four ends to the copper grating, housings for the poles.

6 And he made the poles *of* acacia wood; and he overlaid them *with* copper.

7 And he put the poles into the rings on the sides of the altar, to lift it with them. He made it hollow *with* planks.

8 And he made the laver copper, and its base copper, from the mirrors of the serving women, those assembling, who served at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

9 And he made the court. To the side of the Negev, to the south, the curtains of the court *were* twined bleached *linen*, a hundred by the cubit.

10 Their pillars *were* twenty and

their sockets twenty, of copper. The hooks of the pillars and their bands *were* silver.

11 And for the north side, a hundred by the cubit, their pillars *were* twenty and their sockets twenty, *of* copper. The hooks of the pillars and their bands *were* silver.

12 And for the west side, curtains of fifty cubits; their pillars ten and their sockets ten; the hooks of the pillars and her bands *were* silver.

13 And for the east side eastward fifty cubits,

14 curtains of fifteen cubits to the side, their pillars three and their sockets three.

15 And for the second side on *this* side and on that side to the opening of the court, curtains of fifteen cubits, their pillars three and their sockets three.

16 All the curtains of the court all around *were* twined bleached *linen*.

17 And the sockets for the pillars *were* copper, the hooks of the pillars and their bands *of* silver. And the overlaying of their capitals *were* silver; and all the pillars of the court *were* banded with silver.

18 And the screen of the opening of the court *was* an embroiderer's work, blue and purple and crimson, and bleached twined *linen*, and twenty cubits long, and the height *was* five cubits in width; the curtains of the court joining.

19 And their pillars *were* four, and their sockets four, *of* copper; their hooks silver, and the overlaying of their capitals and their bands *were* silver.

20 And all the pins for the tabernacle and for the court all around *were* copper.

21 These *are* the numbered things of the tabernacle, the tabernacle of the testimony, which *were* numbered at Moses' command *for* the service of the Levites in the hand of Ithamar, the son of Aaron the priest.

22 And Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of Judah, made all that YAHWEH commanded Moses.

23 And with him Aholiab the son of Ahisamach, of the tribe of Dan, an engraver and a craftsman, and an embroiderer in blue and in purple and in crimson and in bleached *linen*.

24 All the gold used was for the work, in all the work of the sanctuary; and it *was* the gold of the wave offering, twenty nine talents and seven hundred and thirty shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary.

25 And the silver of the numbered ones of the assembly *was* a hundred talents, and a thousand seven hundred and seventy five shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary,

26 a bekah for a head, half a shekel, by the shekel of the holy place, for everyone passing over to those numbered, from a son of twenty years and upward, for six hundred and three thousand, five hundred and fifty *persons*.

27 And the hundred talents of the silver were for casting the sockets of the sanctuary, and for the sockets of the veil, a hundred sockets for a hundred talents, a talent for a socket.

28 And the thousand, seven hundred and seventy five *shekels* he made into hooks for the pillars; and he overlaid their capitals and joined them.

29 And the copper of the wave offering *was* seventy talents and two thousand and four hundred shekels.

30 And he made with it the sockets of the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and the copper altar and its copper grating, and all the vessels of the altar.

31 And the sockets of the court all

around, and the sockets of the opening of the court, and all the pins of the tabernacle, and all of the pins of the court all around *were copper*.

Chapter 39

1 And from the blue and the purple and the crimson they made woven garments for serving in the sanctuary. And they made the holy garments which *were* for Aaron, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

2 And he made the ephod *of* gold, blue, and purple, and crimson, and twined bleached *linen*.

3 And they beat out sheets of gold, and cut threads to work into the midst of the blue, and into the midst of the purple, and into the midst of the crimson, and into the midst of the bleached *linen*, the work of an artisan.

4 They made shoulderpieces for it, joined together; it *was* joined on its two ends.

5 And its fastening band *was* on it; it *was* of it, like its work, gold, blue, and purple, and crimson, and twined bleached *linen*, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

6 And they made stones of onyx set *in* plaited work of gold, engraved *with* engravings of a signet, according to the names of the sons of Israel.

7 And he put them on the shoulderpieces of the ephod, memorial stones for the sons of Israel, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

8 And he made the *breast* pocket, a work *of* an artisan, like the work of the ephod: gold, blue, purple, and crimson, and twined bleached *linen*;

9 it was square. They made the *breast* pocket double; its length a span and its width a span, doubled.

10 And they set it in four rows of stones: one row, the first row: a ruby, a topaz and a carbuncle.

11 The second row: a turquoise, a sapphire and a jasper.

12 And the third row: a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst.

13 And the fourth row: a chrysolite, an onyx, and a jasper; *these* set in their settings, plaited work of gold.

14 And the stones *were* according to the names of the sons of Israel; *they were* twelve according to their names, the engravings of a signet, each according to his name, for the twelve tribes.

15 And they made cords of chains on the *breast* pocket, a work of pure gold cords.

16 And they made two gold plaitings and two golden rings; and they put the two rings on the two ends of the *breast* pocket.

17 And they put the two golden cords on the two rings, on the ends of the *breast* pocket.

18 And they put the two ends of the two cords on the two plaitings. And they put them on the shoulderpieces of the ephod, on the front of its face.

19 And they made two rings of gold, and they put *them* on the two ends of the breast pocket, on its edge, on the inward side of the ephod.

20 And they made two rings of gold, and they put them on the two shoulderpieces of the ephod from beneath, on the front of its face, near its joining; from above to the band of the ephod.

21 And they fastened the *breast* pocket from its rings to the rings of the ephod with a blue ribbon, to be on the ephod band, that the *breast* pocket not move itself from the ephod, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

22 And he made the robe of the ephod, skilled work, all of blue.

23 And the mouth of the robe in its middle *was* like the mouth of a

corselet, the edge of its mouth all
around, that it might not be torn.
24 And they made on the hems of
the robe pomegranates of blue, and
purple, and crimson, bleached, twined
linen.
25 And they made bells *of* pure gold,
and they put the bells in the midst of
the pomegranates, all around on the
hem of the robe, all around, among the
pomegranates,
26 a bell and a pomegranate, a bell
and a pomegranate on the hem of the
robe all around for ministering, as
YAHWEH commanded Moses.
27 And they made the tunics *of*
bleached *linen*, skilled work, for Aaron
and for his sons;
28 also the miter *was of* bleached
linen, and the turban of the caps *of*
bleached *linen*, and the breeches *of*
bleached, twined *linen*.
29 And the girdle *was of* twined
bleached *linen*, and blue, and purple,
and crimson, the work of an
embroiderer, even as YAHWEH
commanded Moses.
30 And they made the plate of the
holy crown *of* pure gold, and they
wrote on it the writing of the
engravings of a signet: HOLINESS TO
YAHWEH.
31 And they put a blue ribbon on it,
to fasten *it* on the miter from above, as
YAHWEH commanded Moses.
32 And all the work of the tabernacle
of the congregation was finished. And
the sons of Israel did according to all
which YAHWEH commanded Moses;
so they did.
33 And they brought the tabernacle
to Moses, the tent and all its vessels,
its hooks, its boards, it bars, and its
pillars, and its sockets,
34 and the cover of rams' skins dyed
red, and the cover of Tachash skins,
and the veil of the covering,
35 the ark of the testimony, and its
poles, and the mercyseat,
36 the table and all its vessels, and
the Bread of the Presence;
37 the pure Menorah, its lamps the
lamps of arrangement and all its
vessels, and the oil of the light,
38 and the altar of gold, and the oil
of anointing, and the incense of
fragrant spices, and the screen of the
door of the tabernacle,
39 the copper altar and copper
grating which *was* to it, its poles and
all its vessels, the laver and its base,
40 the screen of the court, its pillars
and its sockets, and the screen for the
opening of the court, its cords and its
pins, and all the vessels of the service
of the tabernacle for the tabernacle of
the congregation,
41 the woven garments for serving in
the sanctuary, the holy garments for
Aaron the priest, and the garments of
his sons for serving as priests.
42 According to all which YAHWEH
commanded Moses, so did the sons of
Israel, all the work.
43 And Moses saw all the work. And,
behold, they had done it; as
YAHWEH commanded Moses, so
they had done. And Moses blessed
them.

Chapter 40

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
2 On the first day of the month, on
the first of the month, you shall raise
up the tent of the tabernacle of the
congregation.
3 And you shall put there the ark of
testimony. And you shall cover the ark
with the veil.
4 And you shall bring in the table
and set in order its arrangement. And
you shall bring in the Menorah and set
up its lamps.

5 And you shall put the altar of gold for incense before the ark of testimony. And you shall set up the screen of the door of the tabernacle.

6 And you shall set up the altar of burnt offerings before the door of the tent of the tabernacle of the congregation.

7 And you shall put the laver between the tabernacle of the congregation and the altar. And you shall put water there.

8 And you shall set up the court all around. And you shall place the screen of the opening of the court.

9 And you shall take the oil of anointing, and you shall anoint the tabernacle and all that *is* in it. And you shall sanctify it and all its vessels. And it shall become holy.[1]

10 And you shall anoint the altar of burnt offering and all its vessels. And you shall sanctify it and the altar shall become most holy.

11 And you shall anoint the laver and its base, and you shall sanctify it.

12 And you shall cause to draw near Aaron and his sons to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation. And you shall wash them with water.

13 And you shall clothe Aaron *with* the holy garments. And you shall anoint him and sanctify him. And he shall serve as priest to Me. [2]

14 And you shall cause his sons to draw near. And you shall clothe them *with* tunics.

15 And you shall anoint them as you anointed their father. And they shall serve as priests to Me. And their anointing shall be for an everlasting priesthood for their generations.

16 And Moses did so, according to all *that* YAHWEH commanded him; so he did.

17 And it happened in the first month, in the second year, on the first of the month, the tabernacle was raised up.[3]

18 And Moses raised up the tabernacle, and he gave its sockets, and he set up its boards, and he gave its bars, and he raised up its pillars.

19 And he spread out the tent over the tabernacle. And he put the cover of the tent over it from above, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

20 And he took and gave the testimony into the ark. And he put the poles on the ark. And he gave the mercyseat on the ark from above.

21 And he caused the ark to go in into the tabernacle. And he placed the veil of the covering, and he covered over the ark of testimony, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

22 And he gave the table into the tabernacle of the congregation, on the side of the tabernacle, northward outside the veil.

23 And he set the bread in order on it before the face of YAHWEH, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

24 And he put the Menorah in the tabernacle of the congregation, opposite the table, on the side of the tabernacle southward.

25 And he set up the lamps before YAHWEH, as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.

26 And he set up the altar of gold in the tabernacle of the congregation, before the veil.

27 And he burned on it incense of fragrant spices, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

28 And he set up the screen of the door to the tabernacle.

29 And he put the altar of burnt offering *at* the door of the tent of the

---

[1] The anointing oil is what sets it apart.

[2] Rev 19:7-8

[3] Before YHWH's presence could be with them there had to be judicial order. (Ex 19:1).

tabernacle of the congregation. And he offered up on it the burnt offering and the food offering, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

30 And he put the laver between the tabernacle of the congregation and the altar. And he gave there water for washing.

31 And from it Moses and Aaron and his sons washed their hands and their feet.

32 As they came into the tabernacle of the congregation, and as they drew near to the altar, they would wash, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

33 And he raised up the court all around the tabernacle and the altar. And he gave the screen of the opening of the court. And Moses finished the work.

34 And the cloud covered the tabernacle of the congregation; and the glory of YAHWEH filled the tabernacle.[1]

35 And Moses was not able to come into the tabernacle of the congregation because the cloud dwelt on it. And the glory of YAHWEH filled the tabernacle.[2]

36 And as the cloud went up from the tabernacle, the sons of Israel pulled up *stakes* in all their travels.

37 And if the cloud did not go up, then they did not pull up *stakes* until the day it went up. (Num 9:17-23)

38 For the cloud of YAHWEH *was* on the tabernacle by day, and fire was on it by night, before the eyes of all the house of Israel in all their pulling up *of stakes*.[3]

---

1 Ex 24:16-17, Ex 16:10

2 Ex 33:18, 22

3 Yahshua was the presence of YHWH in the Tabernacle. (Ex 13:21, Ex 33:2, Ex 32:34, Ex 23:20, Num 9:15-23, 1 Cor 10:1-4)

Book of Leviticus (Vayikra)

Chapter 1

1 And YAHWEH called[1] to Moses and spoke to him out of the tent of the congregation, saying,

2 Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, If any one of you brings an offering to YAHWEH, from livestock of the herd, or from the flock, you shall bring near your offering.

3 If his burnt offering is out of the herd, a male, without blemish, he shall bring it to the opening of the tent of meeting, at his pleasure, before the face of YAHWEH.[2]

4 And he shall lay his hand on the head of the burnt offering, and it is accepted for him to make atonement for him.[3]

5 And he shall kill the son of the herd before the face of YAHWEH. And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall bring near the blood and sprinkle the blood on the altar all around at the opening of the tent of the meeting place.

6 And he shall skin the burnt offering, and shall cut it into pieces.

7 And the sons of Aaron the priest shall put fire on the altar and arrange wood on the fire.

8 And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall arrange the pieces, with the head and the fat, on the wood on the fire, which is on the altar.

9 And he shall wash its inward parts and its legs with water. And the priest shall burn as incense the whole of it on the altar for a burnt offering, a fire offering of soothing fragrance to YAHWEH. *(Ps 116:15)*

10 And if his offering is out of the flock, out of the sheep, or out of the goats, for a burnt offering, a male, without blemish, he shall bring it near.

11 And he shall slaughter it by the side of the altar northward, before the face of YAHWEH.[4] And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall sprinkle its blood all around on the altar.

12 And he shall cut it to pieces with both its head and its fat, and the priest shall arrange them on the wood which is on the fire on the altar.

13 And he shall wash the inward parts and the legs with water, and the priest shall bring near all of it and burn it as incense on the altar; it is a burnt offering, a fire offering of soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.

14 And if the burnt offering is a burnt offering out of the fowls to YAHWEH, then he shall bring near his offering, of turtledoves or of the offspring of the dove.

15 And the priest shall bring it near to the altar and shall nip off its head. And he shall burn it as incense on the altar; its blood shall be drained by the side of the altar.

16 And he shall remove its crop with its feathers, and shall throw it near the altar eastward, to the place of the ashes.

---

1 The Hebrew name of the book is "*vayikra*" and means *"And He called*". The theme of the book are the requirements to be "*set apart"* to YHWH.

2 The word for "*burnt"* is "*owlah*" and means to ascend and is typical of the sacrifice going to the Father in heaven. This word also means holocaust. The word for offering also translated at times as sacrifice is "*korban"* and literally means to draw closer to through relationship. The idea of giving an offering to YHWH was to draw closer to Him by giving up something of value. The word korban is used in Mk 7:11 and some translate it as gift.

3 The laying on of hands to the animal was done to transfer the sins of the individual to the animal as a substitute. We see the laying on of hands for the transferring of the Holy Spirit to someone (Acts 8:17), and also for the transferring of power for ordination (Deut 34:9, Acts 6:6).

4 Ps 110:1, Heb 10:5-14

17 And he shall cleave it with its wings, not dividing it, and the priest shall burn it as incense on the altar, on the wood which is on the fire; a burnt offering; it is a fire offering of soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.

Chapter 2

1 And when a person brings near an offering, a food offering to YAHWEH, his offering shall be of flour. And he shall pour oil on it; and he shall put frankincense on it.

2 And he shall bring it to the sons of Aaron the priest, and he shall take from it the fullness of his handful from its flour, and from its oil, with all its frankincense. And the priest shall burn it as incense on the altar, a memorial offering, a fire offering, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.[1]

3 And the rest of the food offering is for Aaron and for his sons, most holy, of the fire offerings of YAHWEH.

4 And when you bring near an offering, a food offering baked in an oven, it shall be of fine flour, unleavened cakes mixed with oil, or unleavened thin cakes anointed with oil.

5 And if your offering is a food offering baked in a pan, it shall be of unleavened fine flour, mixed with oil.

6 You shall divide it into bits, and you should pour oil on it; it is a food offering.

7 And if your offering is a food offering on a griddle, your offering shall be fine flour mixed with oil;

8 And you shall bring the food offering made of these things to YAHWEH, and shall bring it to the priest. And the priest shall bring it near to the altar.

9 And the priest shall lift up the food offering, its memorial offering, and shall burn it as incense on the altar, a fire offering, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.

10 And the rest of the food offering is for Aaron and his sons, most holy, of the offerings of YAHWEH.

11 Any food offering which you shall bring to YAHWEH, you shall not make with leaven; for all leaven and all honey you shall not burn it as incense, a fire offering to YAHWEH.[2]

12 As an offering of first-fruits, you shall bring them to YAHWEH, but they shall not go up on the altar for a soothing fragrance.

13 And every offering of your food offering you shall season with salt, and you shall not let the salt of the covenant of your Elohim be lacking from your food offering; you shall offer salt with all your offerings.[3]

14 And if you bring near a food offering of first-fruits to YAHWEH, fresh ears roasted with fire, grains from a garden, you shall bring near your first-fruits for a food offering.

---

[1] The grain offering was a continual reminder for the people that YHWH is the provider of their daily bread and sustainer of their life. The Hebrew word for this offering also can mean '*a gift'* and recognized the gift of life that YHWH provides to the one offering.

[2] This offering was to accompany one of the other sacrifices and was made without yeast or honey as both of these items can ferment, which would disqualify the offering.

[3] The offering was salted to symbolize the eternal relationship YHWH had with His people. Salt was a preservative for meat in ancient times and extremely important to the life of animals and people. Salt is essential for our health and plays a crucial role in keeping our bodies functioning properly. The two elements of salt, sodium and chloride each play a variety of crucial roles in one's body. In ancient times salt was used to pay wages and the word *'salary'* comes from the word salt. (Math 5:13, Num 18:19)

15 And you shall put oil on it, and lay frankincense on it; it is a food offering.
16 And the priest shall burn it as incense, with its memorial offering from its grains, and from its oil, besides all its frankincense, a fire offering to YAHWEH.

Chapter 3

1 And if his offering is a sacrifice of peace offering, if he is offering it from the herd, whether male or female, without blemish, he shall bring it near before the face of YAHWEH.[1]
2 And he shall lay his hand on the head of his offering and slaughter it at the opening of the tent of the congregation. And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall sprinkle the blood on the altar all around.
3 And he shall bring near from the sacrifice of the peace offering a fire offering to YAHWEH, the fat which covers the inward parts, and all the fat on the inward parts,
4 and the two kidneys, and the fat on them, on the loins, and the fatty lobe by the liver beside the kidneys, he shall remove.
5 And the sons of Aaron shall burn it as incense on the altar, on the burnt offering on the wood on the fire, a fire offering of a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.
6 And if his offering for a sacrifice of peace offerings is from the flock, male or female, without blemish, he shall bring it near.
7 If he is bringing near a sheep for his offering, then he shall bring it near before the face of YAHWEH.
8 And he shall lay his hand on the head of his offering and shall slaughter it in front of the tabernacle of the congregation. And the sons of Aaron shall sprinkle its blood on the altar all around.
9 And he shall bring near from the sacrifice of the peace offerings a fire offering to YAHWEH, its fat; he shall remove the entire fat tail close by the backbone, and all the fat that covers the inward parts, and all the fat that is on the inward parts,
10 and the two kidneys, and the fat on them, on the loins, and he shall remove the lobe by the liver, beside the kidneys; he shall remove it.
11 And the priest shall burn it as incense on the altar, bread of the fire offering to YAHWEH.
12 And if his offering is a goat, then he shall bring it near before the face of YAHWEH.
13 And he shall lay his hand on its head and shall slaughter it in front of the tabernacle of the congregation. And the sons of Aaron shall sprinkle its blood all around on the altar.
14 And he shall bring near from it his offering, a fire offering to YAHWEH, the fat covering the inward parts, and all the fat on the inward parts,
15 and the two kidneys, and the fat on them, on the loins, and the lobe on the liver, beside the kidneys, he shall remove.
16 And the priest shall burn them as incense on the altar, bread of the fire offering for a soothing fragrance; all the fat belongs to YAHWEH.
17 It shall be a never ending statute for your generations in all your

[1] The peace offering comes from the Hebrew word "*shelem*", which comes from the root of the word for peace, which is shalom. It is the only offering where the offerer may also eat of the sacrifice with the priest. This showed the unity of the offerer with YHWH through the priestly mediator who made the sacrifice on his behalf. This also greatly symbolized the unity that one has with YHWH through the sacrifice of Yahshua, the Prince of Peace. (Is 9:6, Heb 7:2)

dwellings. You shall not eat any fat or any blood.

Chapter 4

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel saying, When a person sins against any of the commands of YAHWEH through ignorance, which is not to be done, and shall do any one of them;
3 if the priest who is anointed sins, resulting in guilt to the people, then he shall bring near for his sin which he has sinned a bull, a son of the herd, without blemish, to YAHWEH for a sin offering.
4 And he shall bring the bull into the opening of the tabernacle of the congregation, before the face of YAHWEH. And he shall lay his hand on the head of the bull and shall slaughter the bull before the face of YAHWEH.
5 And the priest who is anointed[1] shall take some of the blood of the bull and shall bring it to the tabernacle of the congregation.
6 And the priest shall dip his finger in the blood and sprinkle some of the blood seven times before the face of YAHWEH, at the front of the veil of the holy place.
7 And the priest shall put some of the blood on the horns of the altar of sweet incense, at the opening of the tent of the congregation, before the face of YAHWEH.
8 And all the fat of the bull of the sin offering, he shall lift up the fat which is covering over the inward parts, and all the fat which is on the inward parts,
9 and the two kidneys, and the fat which is on them, which is on the flanks, and he shall remove the lobe on the liver beside the kidneys.
10 As it is raised up from the sacrifice of the peace offerings of the bull, the priest shall burn them as incense on the altar of burnt offering.
11 And the skin of the bull, and all its flesh with its head, and with its legs, and the inward parts, and its dung,
12 he shall bring out all the bull to the outside of the camp, to a clean place, to the place of the pouring of ashes; and he shall burn it on the wood with fire; it shall be burned at the place of pouring of ashes.[2]
13 If all the company of Israel shall sin through ignorance, and the thing has been hidden from the eyes of the assembly, and they do that which is not to be done to any of all the commands of YAHWEH, and are guilty;
14 when the sin shall be known, that which they have sinned against it, then the congregation shall bring near a bull, a son of the herd, for a sin offering. And they shall bring it in front of the tabernacle of the congregation.

[1] This literally says in Hebrew, *" And the priest who is The Mashiach (Messiah)"* showing that the priest doing the sin offering symbolized Yahshua's great sacrifice He did for the sins of the people. (Is 53:12)

[2] Verses 1-12- The sin sacrifice was done by the priest who was a mediator for the people in symbolically shedding blood for their sins. The Torah states *"eye for eye"*, and "*life for life*", so this symbolic act could not pay the penalty of the sins, as the life of an animal is not equal with the life of a human, but merely was a symbolic reminder to them (Heb 10:1-4). During Temple times the bodies were burned and the ashes were placed at the third altar (Miphkad Altar) across the Kidron Valley on the lower part of the Mount of Olives where the Red Heifer sacrifice was done (Num 19) and also where Yahshua was crucified (Heb 13:10-13).

15 And the elders of the congregation shall lay their hands on the head of the bull before the face of YAHWEH.[1] And they shall slaughter the bull before the face of YAHWEH.

16 And the priest who is anointed shall bring in some of the blood of the bull to the tabernacle of the congregation.

17 And the priest shall dip his finger in the blood and shall sprinkle seven times before the face of YAHWEH, at the front of the veil.

18 And he shall put some of the blood on the horns of the altar before the face of YAHWEH in the tent of the meeting of the congregation. And he shall pour out all the blood at the base of the altar of burnt offering at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

19 And he shall lift up all its fat from it and shall burn it as incense on the altar.

20 And he shall do with the bull as he has done to the bull of the sin offering, so he shall do to it. And the priest shall atone for them; and it shall be forgiven them.

21 And he shall bring the bull to the outside of the camp, and he shall burn it as he burned the first bull; it is a sin offering of the congregation.

22 When a ruler sins and has acted against one of all the commands of YAHWEH his Elohim, which is not to be done, through ignorance, and is guilty;

23 or his sin which he has sinned shall be made known to him, then he shall bring his offering, a buck of the goats, a male, without blemish;

24 and he shall lay his hand on the head of the he-goat and shall slaughter it in the place where he slaughters the burnt offering, before the face of YAHWEH; it is a sin offering.

25 And the priest shall take some of the blood of the sin offering, and with his finger he shall put it on the horns of the altar of burnt offering; and he shall pour out its blood at the base of the altar of burnt offering.

26 And he shall burn it as incense on the altar, with all its fat, as the fat of the sacrifice of the peace offerings. And the priest shall atone for him because of his sin; and it shall be forgiven him.

27 And if any person of the people of the land sin through ignorance[2] by doing that which is not to be done, against one of the commands of YAHWEH, and is guilty;

28 or his sin which he has sinned shall be made known to him, then he shall bring his offering, an ewe of the goats, without blemish, a female, for his sin which he has sinned;

29 then he shall lay his hand on the head of the sin offering and shall slaughter the sin offering in the place of the burnt offering.

30 And the priest shall take some of its blood with his finger and shall put it on the horns of the altar of burnt offering. And he shall pour out all its blood at the base of the altar;

31 and he shall take off all its fat, as has been taken off the sacrifice of peace offerings. And the priest shall burn it as incense on the altar for a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH. And the priest shall atone for him, and it is forgiven him.

32 And if he brings a lamb as his

---

[1] The laying on of hands is to symbolically transfer the sin to the animal, see note on Lev 1:4.

[2] These sacrifices are for sins of ignorance, but not defiance (Num 15:30-31). Also, if a sin was committed that was not a crime that required capital punishment, then besides the killing of the sacrifice, there also had to be restitution made by the offender.

offering, a female, without blemish, he shall bring it,

33 and he shall lay his hand on the head of the sin offering, and he shall slaughter it for a sin offering in the place where he slaughters the burnt offering.

34 And the priest shall take some of the blood of the sin offering with his finger and put it on the horns of the altar of burnt offering, and shall pour out all the blood at the bottom of the altar.

35 And he shall take off all its fat, as is taken off the fat of the lamb from the sacrifice of peace offerings. And the priest shall burn them as incense on the altar, on the fire offerings of YAHWEH. And the priest shall atone for him for his sin which he has sinned; and it is forgiven him.[1]

Chapter 5

1 And when a person sins, and hears the voice of swearing, and he is a witness, or has seen, or has known, if he does not reveal it, then he shall bear his iniquity.[2] *(Pr 29:24)*

2 Or if a soul touches any unclean thing, or the unclean dead body of an animal, or the unclean dead body of livestock, or the dead body of unclean swarming things, it being hidden from him that he is unclean and is guilty,

3 or if he touches the uncleanness of man, any of his uncleanness by which he is unclean, and it is hidden from him, and he knows, then he is guilty.

4 Or if a person swears, speaking rashly with the lips, to do evil, or to do good, anything which the man speaks rashly with an oath, and it is hidden from him, and he knows, then he is guilty of one of these.

5 And it shall be when he is guilty of one of these, then he shall confess that in which he has sinned.[3]

6 And he shall bring his guilt offering to YAHWEH for his sin which he has sinned, a female out of the flock, a lamb, or a doe of the goats, for a sin offering. And the priest shall atone for him regarding his sin.

7 And if his hand does not reach to a lamb, then he shall bring his guilt offering, he who has sinned, two turtledoves, or two offspring of a dove, to YAHWEH; one for a sin offering, and one for a burnt offering.

8 And he shall bring them to the priest, who shall bring near for a sin offering first. And he shall nip off its head from its neck, but shall not divide it.

9 And he shall sprinkle some of the blood of the sin offering on the side of the altar, and that which remains of the blood shall be drained at the base of the altar; it is a sin offering.

10 And he shall offer the second for a burnt offering, as by decree. And the priest shall atone for him, because of his sin which he has sinned; and it shall be forgiven him.

---

1 There is a difference between forgiveness and restoration. This is the difference between Passover *(forgiveness)* and The Day of Atonement (*reconciliation)*. Although forgiveness is given, there still has to be restoration, according to Torah, to pay the penalty for what was lost. Much of the Torah lays out these judgments, depending on what the particular sin was, and if it was a crime that brought capital punishment, then only the principle of *"life for life*" could apply. This is why there was no salvation in the first covenant and why Yahshua had to come and die to pay the life sentence for sin of all those who believe in His sacrifice.

2 Neutrality is of the devil, and it is the Torah given responsibility for someone who witnesses evil to report it (Math 18:15-17).

3 There always has to be admission of guilt and repentance in order to receive YHWH's forgiveness.

11 And if his hand cannot reach to two turtledoves, or two offspring of a dove, then he who sinned shall bring his offering, a tenth of an ephah[1] of fine flour for a sin offering; he shall not put oil on it, nor put frankincense on it; for it is a sin offering.

12 And he shall bring it to the priest, and the priest shall take from it his full handful, the memorial offering, and shall burn it as incense on the altar, on the fire offering of YAHWEH; it is a sin offering.

13 And the priest shall atone for him, for his sin which he sinned from one of these; and it shall be forgiven him. And it shall be for the priest as a food offering.

14 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses saying,

15 If a person acts unfaithfully and sins through ignorance[2], against the holy things of YAHWEH, then he shall bring his guilt offering to YAHWEH, a ram, without blemish out of the flock, at your evaluation in silver shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary, for a guilt offering.

16 And he shall make good that in which he sinned against the holy thing, and he shall add its fifth part to it, and give it to the priest. And the priest shall atone for him with the ram of the guilt offering; and it shall be forgiven him. *(Is 53:10)*

17 And if a person sins, and he has done that which is not to be done from any one of all the commands of YAHWEH, and does not know it, and he is guilty, and bears his iniquity,

18 then he shall bring a ram, without blemish from the flock, at your evaluation for a guilt offering to the priest. And the priest shall atone for him, for his sin of error which he erred, and he did not know; and it shall be forgiven him.

19 It is a guilt offering; truly he is guilty before the face of YAHWEH.[3]

Chapter 6

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 If any person sins and is slyly treacherous against YAHWEH, and deals falsely with his neighbor concerning a deposit, or concerning security, or by robbery, or has extorted his neighbor,

3 or has found a lost thing and has lied about it, and has sworn to a falsehood in regard to any one of all these which a man does, sinning in them,

4 then it shall be, when he sins and is guilty, he shall return what he got by robbery, that which he robbed, or the extorted thing which he extorted, or the deposit which had been deposited with him, or the lost thing which he had found;

5 or all that about which he swore falsely; he shall even repay it in its principal, and the fifth part he shall add to it; to whomever it belongs. He shall give it on the day of his guilt offering.

6 And he shall bring his guilt offering to YAHWEH: a ram, without blemish out of the flock, at your evaluation for a guilt offering, to the priest.

7 And the priest shall make atonement for him before YAHWEH, and as regards to one thing of all that he has done, it shall be forgiven him, by being guilty in it.[4]

8 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

---

1 An ephah is about 22 liters

2 This Hebrew word does not mean that the person completely did not know what they were doing, but that they were not defiantly doing the sin.

3 Ro 3:23-25

9 Command Aaron and his sons, saying, This is the law of the burnt offering; it is the burnt offering because it is burned on the altar all the night until the morning, and the fire of the altar is kept burning on it.

10 The priest shall put on his long robe of fine linen, and he shall put his linen underpants on his flesh. And he shall lift up the ashes which the fire consumed with the burnt offering on the altar, and shall put them beside the altar.

11 And he shall strip off his garments, and shall put on other garments, and shall bring the ashes out to the outside of the camp, to a clean place.

12 And the fire on the altar shall be kept burning on it; it shall not be put out. And the priest shall burn wood on it morning by morning. And he shall lay the burnt offering in order on it. And he shall burn it as incense with the fat of the peace offering.

13 Fire shall be continually burning on the altar; it shall never go out.

14 And this is the law of the food offering: the sons of Aaron shall bring it near before YAHWEH, to the front of the altar.

15 And he shall lift from it his handful of the flour of the food offering, and of its oil, and all the frankincense on the food offering. And he shall burn it as incense on the altar, a soothing fragrance from its memorial to YAHWEH.

16 And Aaron and his sons shall eat the rest. It shall be eaten with unleavened things in the holy place, in the court of the tabernacle of the congregation they shall eat it.

17 It shall not be baked with leaven. I have given it as their portion out of My fire offerings. It is most holy, like the sin offering, and like the guilt offering.

18 Every male among the sons of Aaron shall eat it, a never ending statute throughout your generations from the fire offerings of YAHWEH. All that touches them shall be holy.

19 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

20 This is the offering of Aaron and his sons which they shall bring near to YAHWEH on the day he is anointed: a tenth of an ephah of flour, a continual food offering; half of it in the morning, and half of it in the evening.

21 It shall be made on a griddle with oil. You shall bring it in mixed. You shall bring baked pieces of the food offering, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.

22 And the priest who is anointed in his place, from among his sons, shall make it. It is a never ending statute of YAHWEH. It shall be completely burned;

23 and every food offering of a priest is a whole burnt offering. It shall not be eaten.

24 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

25 Speak to Aaron and to his sons, saying, This is the law of the sin offering: In the place where the burnt offering is killed, the sin offering shall

---

[4] Verses 1-6- Now we start to see specific cases of guilt with repentance, where there has to be both a sacrifice made by the mediator (priest), and also restitution for what was lost by the perpetrator. When Yahshua magnified the Torah, He showed that all sin starts in the mind, (Math 5:21-28) and to think lustful thoughts was considered adultery. Also, to be angry with someone is considered murder. By magnifying the Torah in such a way, Yahshua showed the people that all humans have not only sinned but have committed crimes that bring the death penalty (Ro 3:10-25), and only by repenting of those sins and allowing His shed blood to pay the penalty for them can one be justified before Yahweh, and gain eternal life.

be killed before YAHWEH. It is most holy.

26 The priest who offers it for sin shall eat it. It shall be eaten in the holy place in the court of the tabernacle of the congregation.

27 All that touches its flesh shall be holy. And when any of its blood is sprinkled on the garment that on which it is sprinkled shall be washed in the holy place.

28 And an earthen vessel in which it is boiled shall be broken. And if it is boiled in a copper vessel, then it shall be scoured and rinsed with water.

29 Every male among the priests shall eat of it. It is most holy.

30 And any sin offering of whose blood is brought into the tabernacle of the congregation to make atonement in the sanctuary shall not be eaten. It shall be burned with fire.

Chapter 7

1 And this is the law of the guilt offering; it is most holy.

2 In the place where they kill the burnt offering, they shall kill the guilt offering, and its blood shall be sprinkled on the altar all around.

3 And all its fat shall be brought near, he shall offer the fat tail of it, and the fat which covers the inward parts,

4 and the two kidneys, and the fat on them, on the flanks, and the lobe above the liver beside the kidneys, he shall remove.

5 And the priest shall burn them as incense on the altar, a fire offering to YAHWEH; it is a guilt offering.

6 Every male among the priests shall eat it; it shall be eaten in the holy place. It is most holy.

7 As a sin offering is, so is a guilt offering. One law is for them. The priest who makes atonement by it, it is his.

8 And the priest who brings near any man's burnt offering, the skin of the burnt offering which he has brought near, it is the priest's, his own.

9 And every food offering which was baked in an oven, and every one that is prepared in the stewing pan, and on the griddle, shall be the priest's that offers it; it is his.

10 And every food offering, mixed with oil or dry, it shall be for all the sons of Aaron to a man, as his brother.

11 And this is the law of the sacrifice of the peace offerings which shall be brought near to YAHWEH:

12 If he brings it for a thanksgiving, then he shall bring with the sacrifice of thanksgiving unleavened cakes mixed with oil, and thin unleavened wafers anointed with oil, and of well-mixed flour, cakes mixed with oil.

13 He shall bring his offering with the cakes of leavened bread with the sacrifice of thanksgiving, his peace offerings.

14 And he shall bring out of it one of every offering, a heave offering to YAHWEH, to the priest sprinkling the blood of the peace offering; it is his.

15 As to the flesh of the sacrifice of the thanksgiving peace offerings, it shall be eaten in the day of his offering. He shall not leave any of it until morning.

16 And if the sacrifice of his offering is a vow, or freewill offering, in the day he brings his sacrifice near, it shall be eaten. And on the morrow the rest of it shall also be eaten.

17 And the rest of the flesh of the sacrifice on the third day shall be burned with fire.

18 And if any of the flesh of the sacrifice of his peace offerings is at all eaten on the third day, it is not pleasing. It shall not be reckoned for him who has brought it. It shall be a

hateful thing, and the person who eats of it shall bear his iniquity.[1]

19 And the flesh which touches any unclean thing shall not be eaten. It shall be burned with fire. As to the flesh, every clean one shall eat of the flesh.

20 And the person who eats of the flesh of the sacrifice of the peace offerings which belong to YAHWEH, when his uncleanness is upon him, even that person shall be cut off from his people. *(1 Cor 10:21)*

21 And when a person touches any unclean thing, of the uncleanness of man, or of the uncleanness of animals, or of an unclean abominable creature, and shall eat of the flesh of the sacrifice of the peace offerings which belong to YAHWEH, even that person shall be cut off from his people.

22 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

23 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, You shall not eat any fat of ox, or of sheep, or of goat.

24 And the fat of a dead body, and the fat of a thing torn may be used for any work, but you certainly shall not eat it;

25 for whoever eats the fat of the animal, of which one brings near a fire offering to YAHWEH, even the person who eats shall be cut off from his people.

26 And you shall not eat any blood in all your dwellings, of fowl, or of animal.

27 Any person who eats any blood, even that person shall be cut off from his people.

28 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

29 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, He who brings near the sacrifice of his peace offerings to YAHWEH shall bring his offering to YAHWEH from the sacrifice of his peace offerings;

30 his own hands shall bring in the fire offerings of YAHWEH; the fat beside the breast he shall bring in with the breast, to wave it as a wave offering before YAHWEH.

31 And the priest shall burn the fat on the altar as incense; and the breast shall be Aaron's and his sons.

32 And you shall make a heave offering of the right leg to the priest of the sacrifices of your peace offerings;

33 one of the sons of Aaron who is bringing near the blood of the peace offerings, and the fat, the right leg is his for a portion.

34 For the breast of the wave offering and the leg of the heave offering, I have taken from the sons of Israel, from the sacrifices of their peace offerings, and I have given them to Aaron the priest, and to his sons, by a never ending statute, from the sons of Israel.

35 This is the portion of the anointing of Aaron, and the anointing of his sons out of the fire offerings of YAHWEH, in the day he shall bring them near to act as priests to YAHWEH,

36 which YAHWEH has commanded to give to them the day of His anointing them, from the sons of Israel, a never ending statute throughout their generations.

37 This is the law for burnt offering, for the food offering, and for sin offering, and for guilt offering, and for consecrations, and for a sacrifice of the peace offerings,

38 which YAHWEH had

[1] This is symbolic of Messiah's sacrifice, in which He was resurrected on the third day and with His resurrection no animal sacrifice according to the Levitical law was necessary any longer or acceptable to YHWH.

commanded Moses in Mount Sinai, in the days of His commanding the sons of Israel to bring near their offerings to YAHWEH, in the wilderness of Sinai.

Chapter 8

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Take Aaron, and his sons with him, and the garments, and the anointing oil, and the bull of the sin offering, and the two rams, and the basket of unleavened things,
3 and gather all the congregation together at the door of the tent of the meeting.
4 And Moses did as YAHWEH had commanded him, and the congregation was gathered to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.
5 And Moses said to the congregation, This is the thing which YAHWEH has commanded to be done.
6 And Moses brought Aaron and his sons, and bathed them in water,
7 and put on him the tunic, and girded him with the girdle, and clothed him with the upper robe, and put the ephod on him, and girded him with the ephod on him, and girded him with the girdle of the ephod, and bound it to him with it;
8 and put the breast pocket on him, and put the Urim and the Thummim into the breast plate,[1]
9 and put the miter on his head, and on the miter, on its front, he put the golden plate, the holy crown, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.
10 And Moses took the anointing oil, and anointed the tabernacle, and all in it, and sanctified them;
11 and he sprinkled some of it on the altar seven times, and anointed the altar, and all its vessels, and the laver, and its base, to sanctify them.
12 And he poured some of the anointing oil on the head of Aaron, and anointed him, to sanctify him. *(Ps 133:2)*
13 And Moses brought the sons of Aaron near, and clothed them with tunics, and girded them with girdles, and bound turbans on them, as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.
14 And he brought the bull of the sin offering, and Aaron and his sons laid their hands on the head of the bull of the sin offering;
15 and one slaughtered it; and Moses took the blood and put it on the horns of the altar all around with his finger, and cleansed the altar; and he poured out the blood at the base of the altar, and sanctified it, to make atonement on it.
16 And he took all the fat on the inward parts, and the lobe above the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat, and Moses burned it as incense on the altar.
17 And the bull, and its skin, and its flesh, and its dung, he burned with fire, at the outside of the camp, as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.
18 And he brought the ram of the burnt offering, and Aaron and his sons laid their hands on the head of the ram;
19 and one killed it, and Moses sprinkled the blood on the altar all around;
20 and he cut the ram into its pieces, and Moses burned it as incense with the head, and the pieces, and the fat.
21 And he washed the inward parts and the legs with water, and Moses

[1] Urim and Thummim were sacred stones that were used to determine the will of YHWH in a given situation (Num 27:21). Urim starts with the first letter in the Hebrew alphabet '*Aleph*' and Thummim starts with the last letter '*Tav*'. (Pr 16:33)

burned it as incense with the whole ram on the altar; it is a burnt offering, for a soothing fragrance; it is a fire offering to YAHWEH, as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.

22 And he brought the second ram, a ram of the consecrations, and Aaron and his sons lay their hands on the head of the ram.

23 And one killed it, and Moses took some of its blood and put it on the tip of the right ear of Aaron, and on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot.

24 And he brought Aaron's sons, and Moses put some of the blood on the tip of their right ear, and on the thumb of their right hand, and on the big toe of their right foot. And Moses sprinkled the blood on the altar all around,

25 and took the fat, and the fat tail, and all the fat on the inward parts, and the lobe above the liver, and the two kidneys, and their fat, and the right leg.

26 And out of the basket of unleavened bread which was before YAHWEH, he took one unleavened cake, and one cake of oiled bread, and one wafer, and put them on the fat, and on the right leg;

27 and placed the whole on the hands of Aaron, and on the hands of his sons, and waved them, a wave offering before YAHWEH.

28 And Moses took them off their hands and burned them with incense on the altar, on the burnt offering; they are consecrations for a soothing fragrance; it is a fire offering to YAHWEH.

29 And Moses took the breast and waved it, a wave offering before YAHWEH, of the ram of the consecrations. It was Moses' portion, as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.

30 And Moses took some of the anointing oil, and some of the blood on the altar, and sprinkled on Aaron, on his garments, and on his sons, and on his sons' garments with him. And he sanctified Aaron, his garments, and his sons, and the garments of his sons with him.

31 And Moses said to Aaron and to his sons, Boil the flesh at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, and you shall eat it there, and the bread in the basket of the consecrations, as I have commanded, saying, Aaron and his sons shall eat it.

32 And the rest of the flesh and of the bread you shall burn with fire;

33 and you shall not go out of the door of the tabernacle of the congregation for seven days, until the days of your consecration are fulfilled. For He shall consecrate you seven days; (Gen 7:10)

34 as He has done on this day, YAHWEH has commanded you to do, to make atonement for you.

35 And you shall remain at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation day and night for seven days, and you shall keep the charge of YAHWEH and shall not die; for so I have been commanded.

36 And Aaron and his sons did all the things which YAHWEH had commanded by the hand of Moses.

Chapter 9

1 And it happened, on the eighth day, Moses called for Aaron and for his sons, and for the elders of Israel.

2 And he said to Aaron, Take a calf to yourself, a son of the herd, for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering, ones without blemish, and bring them near before YAHWEH.

3 And speak to the sons of Israel, saying, Take a kid of the goats for a sin offering, and a calf, and a lamb, sons

of a year, ones without blemish, for a
burnt offering;
4 and a bull and a ram for peace
offerings, to sacrifice before
YAHWEH; and a food offering mixed
with oil; for today YAHWEH will be
seen.
5 And they took that which Moses
had commanded to the front of the
tent of meeting, and the entire
congregation drew near and stood
before YAHWEH.
6 And Moses said, This is the thing
that YAHWEH has commanded; do it,
and the glory of YAHWEH shall
appear to you.
7 And Moses said to Aaron, Draw
near to the altar and make your sin
offering, and your burnt offering, and
make atonement for yourself, and for
the people, and make the offering of
the people, and atone for them, as
YAHWEH has commanded.
8 And Aaron drew near to the altar
and killed the calf of the sin offering,
which is for himself;
9 and Aaron's sons brought the
blood near to him, and he dipped his
finger in the blood and put it on the
horns of the altar. And he poured out
the blood at the base of the altar;
10 and the fat, and the kidneys, and
the lobe of the liver, of the sin offering,
he burned with incense on the altar, as
YAHWEH had commanded Moses.
11 And he burned the flesh and the
skin with fire, at the outside of the
camp.
12 And he killed the burnt offering.
And Aaron's sons presented the blood
to him and he sprinkled it on the altar
all around;
13 and they presented to him the
burnt offering, by its pieces, and the
head, and he burned them with
incense on the altar.
14 And he washed the inward parts
and the legs, and burned them as
incense for the burnt offering on the
altar.
15 And he brought the offering of the
people, and took the he-goat of the sin
offering which is for the people, and
killed it, and made it a sin offering like
the first.
16 And he brought the burnt
offering, and offered it, according to
the ordinance.
17 And he brought the food offering
and filled his hand from it, and burned
it as incense on the altar, besides the
burnt offering of the morning.
18 And he killed the bull and the
ram, a sacrifice of the peace offerings,
which are for the people, and Aaron's
sons presented the blood to him, and
he sprinkled it on the altar all around;
19 and the fat of the bull, and of the
ram, the fat tail, and the covering, and
the kidneys, and the lobe above the
liver.
20 And they set the fat on the
breasts, and he burned as incense the
fat on the altar.
21 And Aaron waved the breasts, and
the right leg as a wave offering before
YAHWEH, as Moses commanded.
22 And Aaron lifted up his hands
toward the people and blessed them,
and came down from offering the sin
offering, and the burnt offering, and
the peace offerings.
23 And Moses and Aaron went into
the tabernacle of the congregation.
And they came out and blessed the
people; and the glory of YAHWEH
appeared to all the people.
24 And fire came out from before
YAHWEH and consumed the burnt
offering and the fat on the altar. And
all the people saw, and cried aloud,
and fell on their faces.

Chapter 10

1 And Nadab and Abihu, the sons of

Aaron, each took his censer[1] and put fire in them; and they put incense on it and brought profane fire before YAHWEH, which He had not commanded them.[2]
2 And fire went out from before YAHWEH and consumed them; and they died before YAHWEH.
3 And Moses said to Aaron, It is that which YAHWEH has spoken, saying, I will be treated holy by those drawing near to Me; and I will be honored before all the people. And Aaron was silent.[3]
4 And Moses called Mishael and Elzaphan, sons of Uzziel, Aaron's uncle, and said to them, Come near, carry your brothers from the front of the sanctuary to the outside of the camp.
5 And they came near and carried them in their coats to the outside of the camp, as Moses had commanded.
6 And Moses said to Aaron, and to Eleazar, and to Ithamar, his sons, You shall not uncover your heads and you shall not tear your garments, that you may not die, and He be angry on all the congregation. As to your brothers, the whole house of Israel, they shall mourn the burning which YAHWEH has kindled.
7 And you shall not go out of the door of the tent of the meeting, lest you die. For the anointing oil of YAHWEH is on you. And they did according to the word of Moses.
8 And YAHWEH spoke to Aaron, saying,
9 You shall not drink wine and fermented drink, you nor your sons with you, as you go into the tabernacle of the congregation, and you shall not die; a never ending statute throughout your generations;
10 and to make a distinction between the holy and profane, and between the unclean and the clean;
11 and to teach the sons of Israel all the statutes which YAHWEH has spoken to them by the hand of Moses.
12 And Moses spoke to Aaron, and to Eleazar, and to Ithamar, his sons who were left, Take the food offering that remains from the fire offerings of YAHWEH, and eat it unleavened near the altar, for it is most holy.
13 And you shall eat it in the holy place, for it is your portion, and the portion of your sons, from the fire offerings of YAHWEH; for so I have been commanded.
14 And the breast of the wave offering, and the leg of the heave offering, you shall eat in a clean place, you and your sons, and your daughters with you. For they have been given for your portion and the portion of your sons out of the sacrifices of peace offerings of the sons of Israel.
15 The leg of the heave offering, and the breast of the wave offering, besides fire offerings of the fat, they shall bring in to wave a wave offering before YAHWEH; and it shall be to you, and to your sons with you, a never ending

1 A censor was a ceremonial vessel containing hot coals and was used for burning incense.

2 Yahweh is quickly setting the standard of His judicial order and the grave consequences for breaking it. Nadab and Abihu apparently had used coals that were not taken from the brazen altar (Lev 6:12-13, 16:12). They also did not come in at the prescribed time of day that YHWH commanded (Ex 30:7-8), and considering the prohibition for a priest from alcohol when serving (verse 9), they were most likely intoxicated at this time also.

3 There is a great responsibility for covenant believers to live a holy, sanctified, life from worldliness and sin; and someone cannot think that they can come to YHWH on their own terms without respecting His judicial order in the congregation or in their personal lives (Heb 12:14).

statute, as YAHWEH has commanded.

16 And Moses sought carefully for the goat of the sin offering; and, behold, it had been burned! And he was angry against Eleazar and against Ithamar, Aaron's remaining sons, saying,

17 Why have you not eaten the sin offering in the holy place, for it is most holy, and He has given it to you to take away the iniquity of the congregation, to make atonement for them before YAHWEH?

18 Behold, its blood has not been brought into the holy place inside. You should certainly have eaten it in the sanctuary, as I have commanded.

19 And Aaron said to Moses, Behold, today they have brought their sin offering and their burnt offering before YAHWEH; and such things have happened to me. And if I had eaten the sin offering today, would it have been accepted in the sight of YAHWEH?

20 And when Moses heard, then it was good in his eyes.

Chapter 11

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying to them,

2 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, These are the living things which you shall eat out of all the animals which are on the earth.[1]

3 Any that divides the hoof and is wholly cloven footed, bringing up the cud, among the living things, you may eat it.

4 Only, you may not eat these, of those bringing up the cud, and of those dividing the hoof: the camel, though it brings up the cud, yet it does not divide the hoof; it is unclean to you;

5 and the rock badger, though it brings up the cud, yet it does not divide the hoof; it is unclean to you;

6 and the hare, though it brings up the cud,[2] yet it does not divide the hoof; it is unclean to you;

7 and the swine, though it divides the hoof and is cloven footed, yet it does not bring up the cud; it is unclean to you.

8 You shall not eat of their flesh, and you shall not touch their dead body; they are unclean to you.

9 Of all that are in the waters, you shall eat these; any one that has fins and scales in the waters, in the seas, and in the brooks, you may eat them.

10 But any one that does not have fins and scales in the seas, and in the brooks, of any swarming creature of the waters, and of any creature which lives in the waters; they are to be detested by you.

11 Yes, they shall be an abomination to you; you shall not eat of their flesh and you shall shun their dead bodies.

12 Any one that does not have fins and scales in the waters, it shall be an unclean thing to you.

13 And these you shall count unclean among the fowls; they shall not be eaten; they are unclean: the eagle, and the black vulture and the bearded vulture,

14 and the kite, and the falcon, according to its kind;

15 every raven according to its kind;

16 and the ostrich, and the great owl, and the gull, and small hawks, according to its kind;

---

[1] Chapter 11 defines the food laws of what animal life YHWH created for consumption and what animal life that He did not. It is paralleled in Deut 14:3-21. An animal had to chew the cud and have a split hoof to be considered clean to eat and sea life had to have fins and scales.

[2] Chewing the cud had to deal with the method for chewing not the manner of digesting.

17 and the little owl, and the Egyptian vulture, and the eared owl;
18 and the barn owl, and the pelican and the owl-vulture;
19 and the stork, the heron according to its kind, and the hoopoe, and the bat.[1]
20 Every flying swarming creature going on all four, it is an abomination to you.
21 Only, this you may eat of any swarming thing which flies, which goes on all four, which has legs above its feet, to leap with them on the earth;
22 these are those you may eat: the locusts according to its kind, and the bald locust according to its kind, and the long horned grasshopper according to its kind, and the short horned grasshopper according to its kind.
23 But every swarming thing which flies, which has four feet, it is unclean to you.
24 And by these you shall be made unclean; any who touches their dead body is unclean until the evening.
25 And anyone who lifts up their dead body shall wash his garments and shall be unclean until the evening;
26 even every living thing which divides the hoof, and is not cloven footed, and does not bring up the cud, they are unclean to you; anyone who touches them shall be unclean.
27 And any going on its paws among all the living things which go on all four, they are unclean to you; anyone who touches their dead body is unclean until the evening;
28 and he who lifts up their dead body shall wash his garments and shall be unclean until the evening; they are unclean to you.
29 And these shall be unclean to you among the swarming things which swarm on the earth: the weasel, and the mouse, and the great lizard according to its kind,
30 and the gecko, and the monitor, and the lizard, and the sand lizard, and the barn owl.
31 These are unclean to you among all which swarm; anyone who touches them in their death is unclean until the evening.
32 And anything on which any one of them falls in their death is unclean, whether of any vessel of wood, or garment, or skin, or sack; any vessel in which work is done shall be caused to go into water, and shall be unclean until the evening; then it shall be cleaned.
33 And any earthen vessel into the midst of which any one of them falls, whatever is in it shall be unclean, and you shall break it.
34 And of all the food which may be eaten, that on which such water falls shall be unclean, and all drink that may be drunk in any such vessel shall be unclean.
35 And anything on which any part of their dead body falls shall be unclean; an oven or hearth shall be broken down; they are unclean; yes, they are unclean to you.
36 But a fountain or a well, a collection of water, shall be clean; only that touching the dead body is unclean.
37 And when any part of their dead body falls on any sowing seed which is sown, it shall be clean;
38 but when water is put on the seed, and any of its dead body has fallen on it, it shall be unclean to you.
39 And when any of the animals which are food for you dies, he who touches its dead body is unclean until the evening;
40 and he who eats of its dead body shall wash his garments and shall be

[1] Verses 13-19- All of the unclean birds names are carnivores.

unclean until the evening; and he who lifts up its dead body shall wash his garments and shall be unclean until the evening.
41 And every swarming thing which swarms on the earth is unclean; it shall not be eaten.
42 Anything going on its belly, and any going on all four, and all having many feet, even every swarming thing that swarms on the earth, you shall not eat them, for they are unclean.
43 You shall not pollute yourselves with any swarming thing which swarms, nor shall you make yourselves unclean with them, so that you should be defiled by them.
44 For I am YAHWEH your Elohim, and you have sanctified yourselves, and you have become holy, for I am holy[1]. And you shall not defile your persons with any swarming thing which creeps on the earth;
45 for I am YAHWEH who brought you up out of the land of Egypt to become your Elohim; and you shall be holy, for I am holy.
46 This is the law of the animals, and of the fowl, and of every living creature which moves in the waters, and every creature which swarms on the earth,
47 to make a distinction between the unclean and the clean, and between the living thing that may be eaten and the living thing that may not be eaten.[2]

1 The Hebrew word here '*Kadosh'* means to be set apart. True covenant believers are to be set apart from the world not imitating their ways. To eat unclean food would be a defilement and outright act of rebellion.

2 The food laws here are quite simple; the Eternal Creator, who created all animals and sea life in Genesis, is simply telling His beloved creation which ones He created for consumption and which ones He did not.

Chapter 12

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, If a woman has conceived seed, and has borne a male, then she shall be unclean seven days; as on the days of her menstrual impurity she shall be unclean.
3 And on the eighth day the flesh of his foreskin shall be circumcised.[3]
4 And she shall remain in the blood of her cleansing thirty three days; she shall not touch any holy thing, and she shall not go into the sanctuary, until the days of her cleansing are fulfilled.
5 And if she bears a female, then she shall be unclean two weeks, as in her menstruation; and she shall continue in the blood of her cleansing sixty six days[4].
6 And when the days of her cleansing are fulfilled for son or for daughter, she shall bring in a lamb, a son of a year, for a burnt offering, and a young dove or a turtledove for a sin offering, to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, to the priest.
7 And he shall bring it near before YAHWEH, and shall atone for her; and she shall be cleansed from the fountain of her blood; this is the law of her who bears, whether a male or a female.

3 Circumcision was a sign of the first covenant (Gen 17:10), but here it is also a law of clean and unclean. Women who are married to men who are circumcised have a much lower rate of cervical cancer than those who are not circumcised. According to this law, believers should still circumcise their male children on the 8th day of life. On the 8th day of life of a male baby his vitamin k rises so that clotting can occur after the circumcision. Truly, the Creator's ways are perfect.

4 Quarantine time is given for newborn's immune system to build.

8 And if her hand is not able to find a lamb, then she shall take two turtle doves, or two young doves one for a burnt offering, and one for a sin offering, and the priest shall atone for her; and she shall be cleansed.

Chapter 13

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,
2 When a man has a swelling in the skin of his flesh, or a scab, or a bright spot, and it shall become in the skin of his flesh like the plague of leprosy, then he shall be brought in to Aaron the priest, or to one of his sons the priests.
3 And the priest shall look upon the plague in the skin of the flesh; and if the hair in the plague has turned white, and the appearance of the plague is deeper than the skin of his flesh, it is a plague of leprosy, and the priest shall look upon him and shall pronounce him unclean.
4 And if the bright spot is white in the skin of his flesh, and its appearance is not deeper than the skin, and its hair has not turned white, then the priest shall shut up the plague seven days.
5 And the priest shall look on him on the seventh day, and, behold, if the plague stays in its appearance, and the plague has not spread in the skin, then the priest shall shut him up seven more days.
6 And the priest shall look upon him again the seventh day; and, behold, if the plague has become dim, and the plague has not spread in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him clean; it is a scab, and he shall wash his garments and shall be clean.
7 But if the scab spreads greatly in the skin, after he has been seen by the priest for his cleansing, then he shall be seen a second time by the priest.
8 And the priest shall look, and, behold, if the scab has spread in the skin, the priest shall pronounce him unclean; it is leprosy.
9 When the plague of leprosy is in a man, then he shall be brought in to the priest.
10 And the priest shall look, and, behold, if a white rising is in the skin, and it has turned the hair white, and a living flesh is in the swelling,
11 it is an old leprosy in the skin of his flesh, and the priest shall pronounce him unclean; he shall not shut him up, for he is unclean.
12 And if the leprosy breaks out greatly on the skin, and the leprosy covers all the skin of the one who has the plague, from his head even to his feet, to all that appears to the priest's eyes,
13 then the priest shall look, and behold, if the leprosy has covered all his flesh, he shall pronounce the plague-spot clean; it has all turned white; he is clean.
14 And in the day living flesh is seen in him, he is unclean.
15 And the priest shall look on the living flesh and shall pronounce him unclean; the living flesh is unclean; it is leprosy.
16 Or when the living flesh turns back and shall be turned to white, then he shall come in to the priest;
17 and the priest shall look on him; and, behold, the plague has turned to white; the priest shall pronounce the plague-spot clean; he is clean.
18 And when the flesh has a boil in its skin, and it has been healed,
19 and a white swelling has replaced the boil, or a bright white spot, very red, a reddish white, then it shall be seen by the priest.
20 And the priest shall look; and,

behold, if its appearance is lower than the skin, and its hair has turned white, the priest shall pronounce him unclean; it is the plague of leprosy; it has broken out in a boil.

21 But if the priest looks at it; and, behold, there is no white hair in it, and it is not lower than the skin, and has become dim, then the priest shall shut him up seven days.

22 And if it spreads greatly in the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him unclean; it is a plague.

23 And if in its place the bright spot is stayed, it has not spread; it is an inflamed boil, and the priest shall pronounce him clean.

24 Or if there is flesh in which the skin has a hot burning, and the raw flesh of the burning becomes a bright white spot, being very red or white;

25 and the priest shall look on it; and, behold, the hair has turned white in the bright spot, and its appearance is deeper than the skin, it is leprosy. It has broken out in the burning, and the priest shall pronounce him unclean; it is the plague of leprosy.

26 But if the priest looks on it, and, behold, there is no white hair in the bright spot, and it is no lower than the other skin, but is somewhat faded, then the priest shall shut him up seven days.

27 And the priest shall look at him the seventh day. And if it is spread abroad very much in the skin, the priest shall pronounce him unclean. It is the plague of leprosy.

28 And if the bright spot stays in its place, and does not spread in the skin, but is somewhat faded, it is a swelling of the burning; and the priest shall pronounce him clean, for it is a scar of the burning.

29 And if a man or a woman has in them a plague in the head or in the beard,

30 then the priest shall look on the plague. And, behold, if its appearance is deeper than the skin, and a thin shining hair in it, the priest shall pronounce him unclean; it is a scab, a leprosy on the head or beard.

31 And when the priest looks on the plague of the scab; and, behold, it is not in sight deeper than the skin, and there is no black hair in it, then the priest shall shut up the plagued one with the scab seven days.

32 And in the seventh day the priest shall look on the plague. And, behold, if the scab has not spread, and there is no shining hair in it, and the appearance of the scab is not deeper than the skin,

33 then he shall shave himself, but he shall not shave the scab. And the priest shall shut up the one who has the scab a second seven days.

34 And the priest shall look on the scab on the seventh day. And, behold, if the scab has not spread in the skin, and its appearance is not deeper than the skin, then the priest shall pronounce him clean. And he shall wash his garments, and shall be clean.

35 And if the scab has spread further in the skin after his cleansing,

36 and the priest has looked on him; and, behold, the scab has spread in the skin, the priest shall not seek for the shining, yellow hair; he is unclean.

37 But if in his eyes the scab has stabilized, and black hair has sprung up in it, the scab has been healed; he is clean. And the priest shall pronounce him clean.

38 And when a man or a woman has bright spots, white bright spots, in the skin of their flesh,

39 and the priest has seen it; and, behold there are pale white spots in the skin of their flesh, it is a pale spot springing up in the skin; he is clean.

40 And when a man's head grows
bald, he is bald, he is clean.
41 And if his head grows bald from
the corner of his head toward his face,
he is forehead bald; he is clean.
42 And if there is in the bald head,
or the bald forehead, a reddish white
plague, it is a leprosy breaking out in
the bald head, or in the bald forehead.
43 And the priest shall look on him,
and, behold, if the rising of the plague
is reddish white in his bald head, or in
his bald forehead, as the appearance of
leprosy, in the skin of the flesh,
44 he is a leprous man; he is
unclean. The priest shall pronounce
him utterly unclean; his plague is in
his head.
45 And the leper who has the plague
in him, his garments shall be torn, and
his head shall be uncovered, and he
shall cover the upper lip; and he shall
call out, Unclean! Unclean!
46 And the days that the plague shall
be in him, he is unclean; he shall live
alone, he is unclean; his dwelling shall
be at the outside of the camp.
47 And if there is in any garment a
plague of leprosy, in a garment of
wool, or in a garment of linen,
48 or in the warp, or in the woof, or
of linen, or of wool, or in leather, or in
any work of leather,
49 and if the plague is greenish or
reddish in the garment, or in the
leather, or in the warp, or in the woof,
or in anything of leather, it is a plague
of leprosy; and it shall be seen by the
priest.
50 And the priest shall look on the
plague, and shall shut up the plagued
thing seven days.
51 And he shall look on the plague
on the seventh day. And if the plague
has spread in the garment, or in the
warp, or in the woof, or in the leather,
of all that is made of skin for use, the
plague is a corroding leprosy; it is
unclean.
52 And he shall burn the garment, or
the warp, or the woof, in wool or in
linen, or anything of leather, in which
the plague is; for it is a corroding
leprosy; it shall be burned with fire.
53 And if the priest shall look, and,
behold, the plague has not spread in
the garment, or in the warp, or in the
woof, or in anything of leather,
54 then the priest shall command,
and they shall wash that in which the
plague is. And he shall shut it up a
second seven days.
55 And the priest shall look on that
in which the plague is after it has been
washed. And, behold, if the plague has
not changed its appearance, and if the
plague has not spread, it is unclean;
you shall burn it with fire; it is eaten
away in its inside or in its outside.
56 And if the priest shall look, and,
behold, the plague has become pale
after it has been washed, then he shall
tear it out of the garment, or out of the
leather, or out of the warp, or out of
the woof.
57 And if it is still seen in the
garment, or in the warp, or in the
woof, or in anything of leather, it is a
spreading plague; you shall burn it
with fire, that in which the plague is.
58 And the garment, or the warp, or
the woof, or anything of leather which
you shall wash when the plague has
been taken off them, then it shall be
washed a second time, and shall be
clean.
59 This is the law of the plague of
leprosy in a garment of wool or of
linen, or of the warp, or of the woof, or
of anything of leather, to pronounce it
clean, or to pronounce it unclean.

Chapter 14

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 This shall be the law of the leper in the day of his cleansing, that he shall be brought to the priest.

3 And the priest shall go out to the outside of the camp. And the priest shall look; and, behold, if the plague of leprosy is healed in the leper,

4 then the priest shall command, and he shall take for him who is to be cleansed two clean living birds, and cedar wood, and scarlet, and hyssop.

5 And the priest shall command, and he shall kill the one bird on an earthen vessel, over running water;

6 he shall take the living bird, and the cedar wood, and the scarlet, and the hyssop, and shall dip them and the living bird in the blood of the slain bird, over the running water.

7 And he shall sprinkle on him who is to be cleansed from the leprosy seven times, and shall pronounce him clean. And he shall send out the living bird into the open field.

8 And he who is to be cleansed shall wash his garments, and shall shave all his hair, and shall bathe with water, and shall be clean. And afterwards he shall come into the camp, and shall live on the outside of his tent seven days.

9 And it shall be on the seventh day, he shall shave all his hair, his head, and his beard, and his eyebrows; he shall even shave all his hair. And he shall wash his garments, and shall bathe his flesh with water, and shall be clean.

10 And on the eighth day he shall take two male lambs without blemish, and one ewe lamb, daughter of a year, without blemish, and three tenth parts of flour for a food offering, mixed with oil, and one log of oil.

11 And the priest who is cleansing, and the man who is to be cleansed, shall stand with them before YAHWEH, at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

12 And the priest shall take the one male lamb and shall bring it near for a guilt offering, and the log of oil, and shall wave them as a wave offering before YAHWEH.

13 And he shall kill the lamb in the place where he killed the sin offering and the burnt offering, in the holy place. For like the sin offering, the guilt offering belongs to the priest; it is most holy.

14 And the priest shall take some of the blood of the guilt offering; and the priest shall put it on the tip of the right ear of him who is to be cleansed, and on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot.

15 And the priest shall take some of the log of oil and shall pour it on the left hand of the priest.

16 And the priest shall dip his right finger in the oil on his left palm and shall sprinkle some of the oil with his finger seven times before YAHWEH.

17 And of the rest of the oil on his palm, the priest shall put on the tip of the right ear of him who is to be cleansed, and on the thumb of his right hand, and on the big toe of his right foot, on the blood of the guilt offering;

18 and the rest of the oil on the palm of the priest, he shall put on the head of him who is to be cleansed. And the priest shall make atonement for him before YAHWEH.

19 And the priest shall make a sin offering, and shall atone for him who is to be cleansed from his uncleanness. And afterwards he shall slaughter the burnt offering;

20 and the priest shall offer the burnt offering, and the food offering,

on the altar; and the priest shall make
atonement for him; and he shall be
clean.
21 And if he is poor, and his hand is
not able to reach these things, then he
shall take one lamb as a guilt offering,
for a wave offering, to atone for him-
self, and one tenth part of flour mixed
with oil for a food offering, and a log of
oil,
22 and two turtledoves, or two
young doves, which his hand can
reach; and one shall be a sin offering,
and the other a burnt offering.
23 And he shall bring them in to the
priest on the eighth day for his
cleansing, to the door of the tabernacle
of the congregation, before
YAHWEH.
24 And the priest shall take the lamb
of the guilt offering, and the log of oil,
and the priest shall wave them as a
wave offering before YAHWEH;
25 and he shall kill the lamb of the
guilt offering; and the priest shall take
some of the blood of the guilt offering,
and he shall put it on the tip of the
right ear of him who is to be cleansed,
and on the thumb of his right hand,
and on the big toe of his right foot.
26 And the priest shall pour the oil
on the left hand of the priest;
27 and the priest shall sprinkle with
his right finger some of the oil on his
palm, seven times before YAHWEH.
28 And the priest shall put some of
the oil on his palm on the tip of the
right ear of him who is to be cleansed,
and on the thumb of the right hand,
and on the big toe of his right foot, on
the place of the blood of the guilt
offering.
29 And the rest of the oil on the
priest's palm he shall put on the head
of him who is to be cleansed, to atone
for him, before YAHWEH.
30 And he shall offer one of the
turtledoves, or of the young doves,
from that which he is able to reach;
31 that which his hand has reached
out to, the one a sin offering, and the
other a burnt offering, besides the
food offering. And the priest shall
make atonement for him who is to be
cleansed before YAHWEH.
32 This is the law of him in whom is
a plague of leprosy whose hand could
not reach to his cleansing.
33 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses
and to Aaron, saying,
34 When you come into the land of
Canaan, which I am giving to you for a
possession, and I have put a plague of
leprosy in the house in the land of
your possession;
35 then if he who owns the house
shall come in and declare to the priest,
saying, I have seen a plague in the
house.
36 And the priest shall command,
and they shall turn out from the house
before the priest comes in to see the
plague that all in the house may not be
unclean; and afterwards the priest
shall come in to see the house.
37 And he shall look upon the
plague; and, behold, if the plague is in
the walls of the house with
depressions greenish or reddish, and
the appearance of it is lower than the
wall;
38 then the priest shall go out of the
house to the door of the house, and
shut up the house seven days.
39 And the priest shall come again
the seventh day, and shall look; and,
behold, if the plague has spread in the
walls of the house;
40 then the priest shall command
that they take out the stones in which
the plague is, and throw them into an
unclean place outside the city.
41 And he shall cause the house to be
scraped inside all around, and they
shall pour out the dust which they

have scraped off at the outside of the
city, at an unclean place.
42 And they shall take other stones
and bring them in to the place of the
stones; and he shall take other clay
and shall plaster the house.
43 And if the plague returns and
breaks out in the house after he has
taken away the stones, and after he
has scraped the house, and after it has
been plastered,
44 then the priest shall come in and
look; and, behold, if the plague has
spread in the house, it is a corroding
leprosy in the house; it is unclean.
45 And he shall break down the
house; its stones, and its wood, and all
the clay of the house; and he shall
carry it out to the outside of the city, to
an unclean place.
46 And he who goes into the house
all the days he has shut it up shall be
unclean until the evening.
47 And he who lies in the house shall
wash his clothes and he who eats in
the house shall wash his clothes.
48 And if the priest shall come in
and carefully look, and, behold, the
plague has not spread in the house
after the house has been plastered,
then the priest shall pronounce the
house clean; for the plague has been
healed.
49 And he shall take two birds for
the cleansing of the house, and cedar
wood, and scarlet dye, and hyssop;
50 and he shall kill the one bird on
an earthen vessel, over running water;
51 and he shall take the cedar wood,
and the hyssop, and the scarlet, and
the living bird, and shall dip them in
the blood of the slain bird, and in the
running water, and shall sprinkle on
the house seven times.
52 And he shall cleanse the house
with the blood of the bird, and with
the running water, and with the living
bird, and with the cedar wood, and
with the hyssop, and with the scarlet
dye;
53 and he shall send away the living
bird to the outside of the city, to the
open field, and shall atone for the
house; and it shall be clean.
54 This is the law for every plague of
the leprosy and for scabs;
55 and for leprosy of a garment, and
of a house,
56 and for a rising, and for a scab,
and for a bright spot;
57 to teach when it is unclean and
when it is clean; this is the law of
leprosy.

Chapter 15

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses
and to Aaron, saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel, and you
shall say to them, to any man, When
there is a discharge from his flesh; it is
unclean because of his flow.
3 And this is his uncleanness in his
issue, if his flesh has run with his
issue, or his flesh has ceased from
issue, it is his uncleanness.
4 Every bed on which the issuing one
lies shall be unclean. And every thing
on which he sits shall be unclean.
5 And anyone who touches his bed
shall wash his garments, and shall
bathe with water, and shall be unclean
until the evening.
6 And he who sits on a thing on
which he who discharges sat, shall
wash his clothes, and bathe himself in
water, and shall be unclean until the
evening.
7 And he that touches the flesh of
him who discharges shall wash his
clothes, and bathe himself in water,
and be unclean until evening.
8 And if he who issues spits on a
clean one, then he shall wash his
clothes, and bathe himself in running

water, and be unclean until the evening.

9 And every saddle on which he who discharges rides shall be unclean.

10 And whoever touches anything that was under him shall be unclean until the evening. And the one carrying those things shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the evening.

11 And whomever he who has the discharge touches, and has not rinsed his hands in water, he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the evening.

12 And the earthen vessel that he who discharges touches shall be broken; and every wooden vessel shall be rinsed in water.

13 And when he who discharges is cleansed of his issue, then he shall number to himself seven days for his cleansing, and wash his clothes. And he shall bathe his flesh in running water, and shall be clean.

14 And on the eighth day he shall take to himself two turtle doves, or two young doves, and come before YAHWEH to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation and give them to the priest.

15 And the priest shall offer them, the one for a sin offering, and the other for a burnt offering. And the priest shall atone for him before YAHWEH for his discharge.

16 And if any man's semen goes out from him, then he shall bathe all his flesh in water, and be unclean until the evening.

17 And every garment, and every skin on which the semen is, shall be washed with water, and be unclean until the evening.

18 And a woman with whom a man lies with an emission of semen shall bathe with water, and be unclean until the evening.

19 And if a woman's issue in her flesh is a flow of blood, she shall be in her impurity seven days; and whoever touches her shall be unclean until the evening.

20 And anything on which she lies in her impurity shall be unclean;[1] and anything on which she sits shall be unclean.

21 And whoever touches her bed shall wash his clothes and bathe in water, and be unclean until the evening.

22 And whoever touches anything on which she sits shall wash his clothes and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the evening.

23 And if it is on the bed, or on anything on which she sits when he touches it, he shall be unclean until the evening.

24 And if lying any man lies with her, and her impurity is on him, he shall be unclean seven days, and every bed on which he lies shall be unclean.

25 And if a woman has an issue of her blood many days outside the time of her impurity, or if she issues beyond the time of her impurity, all the days of the issue of her uncleanness, she shall be as in the days of her impurity; she is unclean.

26 Every bed on which she lies all the days of her issue shall be to her as the bed of her impurity to her; and everything on which she sits shall be unclean as the uncleanness of her impurity.

27 And whoever touches those things shall be unclean, and shall wash his clothes and bathe himself in water, and be unclean until the evening.

28 And if she is cleansed of her issue then she shall number to herself seven days, and after that she shall be clean.

29 And on the eighth day she shall

[1] The Hebrew word used here is "*Tamaa*" and refers to a ceremonial uncleanness.

take to herself two turtledoves, or two young doves, and bring them to the priest, to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

30 And the priests shall offer the one for a sin offering, and the other for a burnt offering; and the priest shall atone for her before YAHWEH for the issue of her uncleanness.

31 So you shall separate the sons of Israel from their uncleanness, and they shall not die in their uncleanness, when they defile My tabernacle that is in their midst.

32 This is the law of him that discharges, and of him from whom semen goes out, for uncleanness by it;

33 and of her who is menstruating in her impurity, and of him from whom the issue goes, of a male or of a female, and of a man who lies with an unclean woman.

Chapter 16

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses after the death of the two sons of Aaron, as they drew near before YAHWEH, and they died.

2 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Speak to your brother Aaron, and he shall not come in at all times to the sanctuary within the veil, to the front of the mercy-seat.[1]

3 With this Aaron shall come into the sanctuary: with a bull, a son of the herd, for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering.

4 He shall put on a holy linen coat, and linen underpants shall be on his flesh, and he shall gird himself with a linen girdle, and he shall wrap himself in a linen miter; they are holy garments. And he shall bathe his flesh with water and shall put them on.

5 And he shall take from the congregation of the sons of Israel two kids of the goats for a sin offering, and one ram for a burnt offering.

6 And Aaron shall bring near the bull of the sin offering which is his own, and shall make atonement for himself, and for his house.

7 And he shall take the two he-goats and shall cause them to stand before YAHWEH, at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

8 And Aaron shall give lots over the two he-goats, one lot for YAHWEH, and one lot for the scapegoat[2].

9 And Aaron shall bring the goat on which the lot of YAHWEH fell and shall make it a sin offering.

10 And the goat on which the lot fell for a complete removal shall be made to stand living before YAHWEH to atone by it, to send it away for a complete removal into the wilderness.[3]

11 And Aaron shall bring the bull of the sin offering which is his own, and

---

1 "Mercy-seat" - The Hebrew word is "*Kapporeth",* coming from the word for the day of Yom Kippur, meaning to cover. The kapporeth was the actual cover of the ark (Ex 25:17) and where the priest sprinkled the blood to atone for the people on this day. The same word is used in Rom 3:25 for "*a sacrifice for atonement"* referring to Yahshua's sacrifice for sin. Undoubtedly, this was the connection the Apostle Paul was trying to make.

2 The Hebrew word means "*complete removal",* the two goats are both representative of the Messiah. One goat shows the dying Messiah, and the goat that was completely removed shows the Messiah completely taking away our sins and also the resurrection.

3 This is a most amazing parallel on Yom Kippur of the work of the Messiah. Both goats represent Yahshua; the slain goat represents the dying Messiah, and the scapegoat that is let into the wilderness represents the resurrected Messiah. It is also interesting to note this is the only living sacrifice in the Tanach.

shall atone for himself, and for his house, and shall kill the bull of the sin offering which is his own.

12 And he shall take a censer full of coals of the fire from off the altar before YAHWEH, and his hands full of fragrant perfumes beaten small, and bring it within the veil.

13 And he shall put the incense on the fire before YAHWEH, and the cloud of the incense shall cover the mercy-seat on the testimony; and he shall not die.

14 And he shall take some of the blood of the bull, and shall sprinkle with his finger on the front of the mercy-seat eastward. And he shall sprinkle at the front of the mercy-seat seven times from the blood with his finger.

15 And he shall kill the goat of the sin offering which is the people's, and shall bring in its blood to the inside of the veil, and shall do with its blood as he has done with the blood of the bull, and shall sprinkle it on the mercy-seat, and at the front of the mercy-seat.

16 And he shall atone for the sanctuary because of the pollutions of the sons of Israel, and because of their transgressions for all their sins. And so he shall do for the tent of meeting dwelling in the midst of their pollutions.

17 And not any man shall be in the tent of meeting as he goes in to atone in the sanctuary, until he comes out. And he shall atone for himself, and for his house, and for all the congregation of Israel.

18 And he shall go out to the altar before YAHWEH, and shall atone for it. And he shall take some of the blood of the bull, and some of the blood of the goat, and shall put it on the horns of the altar all around.

19 And he shall sprinkle on it from the blood with his finger seven times, and shall cleanse it, and shall purify it from the uncleanness of the sons of Israel.

20 And when he has finished atoning for the sanctuary, and the tent of meeting, and the altar, and has brought near the living goat;

21 then Aaron shall lay his two hands on the head of the living goat, and shall confess over it all the iniquities of the sons of Israel, and all their transgressions, and all their sins, and shall put them on the head of the goat, and shall send it by the hand of a chosen man into the wilderness.

22 And the goat shall bear on him all their iniquities to a land not inhabited. And he shall send the goat away into the wilderness.

23 And Aaron shall come into the tabernacle of the congregation, and shall strip off the linen garments which he had put on as he went into the sanctuary, and shall leave them there.

24 And he shall bathe his flesh with water in the sanctuary and shall put on his garments, and shall come out, and shall offer his burnt offering, and the burnt offering of the people, and shall atone for himself and for the people.

25 And he shall burn as incense the fat of the sin offering on the altar.

26 And he who let the goat go for a scapegoat shall wash his garments and shall bathe his flesh with water; and later he shall come into the camp.

27 And the bull of the sin offering, and the goat of the sin offering, whose blood has been brought in to atone in the sanctuary, one shall carry them out to the outside of the camp; and they shall burn their skins with fire and their flesh, and their dung.

28 And he burning them shall wash his garments, and shall bathe his flesh with water, and afterwards he shall come into the camp.

29 And it shall be for a never ending statute, in the seventh month, in the tenth of the month, you shall humble yourself and do no work, the native, and the alien who is staying in your midst.

30 For on this day He shall atone for you, to cleanse you from all your sins you shall be clean before YAHWEH.

31 It is a Sabbath of rest to you, and you shall humble yourself. It is a never ending statute.

32 And the priest whom He shall anoint, and whose hand He shall consecrate to act as priest instead of his father, shall make atonement, and shall put on the linen garments, the holy garments.

33 And he shall atone for the holy sanctuary, and for the tabernacle of the congregation, and for the altar he shall atone; yes, for the priests, and for all the people of the congregation he shall atone.

34 And this shall be to you a never ending statute to atone for the sons of Israel, because of all their sins, once a year. And he did as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.

Chapter 17

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Speak to Aaron, and to his sons, and to all the sons of Israel. And you shall say to them, This is the thing which YAHWEH has commanded, saying,

3 Any man of the house of Israel who kills an ox, or lamb, or goat, in the camp, or who kills at the outside of the camp,

4 and has not brought it in to the door of the tent of meeting as an offering to YAHWEH, before the tabernacle of YAHWEH, blood shall be imputed to that man; he has shed blood. And that man shall be cut off from the midst of his people;

5 so that the sons of Israel shall bring in their sacrifices which they are sacrificing in the open field to the door of the tent of meeting, to the priest, and sacrifice them for sacrifices of peace offerings to YAHWEH.

6 And the priest shall sprinkle the blood on the altar of YAHWEH, at the door of the tent of meeting, and shall burn the fat as incense for a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.

7 And they shall not sacrifice their sacrifices any more to devil like goats, after which they have gone whoring. This is a perpetual statute to them throughout their generations[1].

8 And you shall say to them, Any man of the house of Israel, or of aliens who sojourn in your midst, who offers burnt offering or sacrifice,

9 and does not bring it in to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation to offer it to YAHWEH, that man shall be cut off from his people.

10 And any man of the house of Israel, or of the alien who is staying in your midst, who eats any blood, I will set My face against that person that eats blood and will cut him off from his people.

11 For the life of the flesh is in the blood, and I have given it to you on the altar, to atone for your souls; for it is the blood which makes atonement for the soul.[2]

12 For this reason I have said to the sons of Israel, No person among you shall eat blood; and the alien who is

[1] The Canaanites had a practice of sacrificing to goat deities, and Satan has long been known as a goat. There was even a half man/half goat deity called Pan. This is why Yahweh prohibits the cutting of the corner of the beard to have a devil goat like appearance. Cross reference Lev 21:5, 2 Chron 11:15, Lev 19:27 Jer 9:25-26

staying in your midst shall not eat blood.

13 And any man of the sons of Israel, or of the aliens who stay in your midst, who hunts game, beast or fowl, which is eaten, shall even pour out its blood and shall cover it with dust.

14 For it is the life of all flesh; its blood is for its life. And I say to the sons of Israel, You shall not eat blood of any flesh, for the life of all flesh is in the blood; anyone eating it is cut off.[1]

15 And any person who eats a dead body or torn thing, be he a native, or an alien, he shall wash his clothes and bathe in water, and be unclean until the evening; then he shall be clean.

16 And if he does not wash them, nor bathe his flesh, then he shall bear his iniquity.

Chapter 18

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

3 You shall not do according to the doings of the land of Egypt in which you lived; and you shall not do according to the doings of the land of Canaan to which I am bringing you; nor shall you walk in their statutes.

4 You shall do My judgments and you shall keep My statutes, to walk in them; I am YAHWEH your Elohim,

5 and you shall keep My statutes and My judgments, which if a man does, he shall live by them. I am YAHWEH.

6 None of you shall draw near to any relative of his flesh to uncover their nakedness; I am YAHWEH.

7 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your father or the nakedness of your mother; she is your mother; you shall not uncover her nakedness.

8 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your father's wife; it is the nakedness of your father.

9 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your sister, the daughter of your father, or the daughter of your mother, born at home, or born away; you shall not uncover their nakedness.

10 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your son's daughter, or your daughter's daughter; you shall not uncover their nakedness, for theirs is your own nakedness.

11 The nakedness of the daughter of your father's wife, begotten by your father, she is your sister; you shall not uncover her nakedness.

12 You shall not uncover the nakedness of a sister of your father; she is a relative of your father.

13 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your mother's sister; for she is your mother's relative.

14 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your father's brother; you shall not draw near to his wife; she is your aunt.

15 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your daughter-in-law; she is your son's wife; you shall not uncover her nakedness.

16 You shall not uncover the nakedness of your brother's wife; it is your brother's nakedness.

17 You shall not uncover the nakedness of a woman and her daughter; you shall not undertake to uncover her son's daughter, or her daughter's daughter; they are her relatives; it is wickedness.

---

2 From this verse it is an undeniable fact that there is no atonement for sin without the shedding of blood. YHWH Himself instituted this principle in the Garden of Eden (Gen 3:21) and it shows that sin brings the shedding of innocent blood.

1 Although the life is in the blood, humans also needed the breath of life from YHWH to make man a living soul (Gen 2:7).

18 And you shall not take a wife with her sister, to vex her, to uncover her nakedness, beside the other in her lifetime.

19 And you shall not draw near to uncover the nakedness of a woman in her menstrual impurity.

20 And you shall not give your semen to your neighbor's wife by lying with her, to be unclean with her.

21 And you shall not give your seed to pass them through to Molech, nor shall you pollute the name of your Elohim; I am YAHWEH.

22 And you shall not lie with a male as one lies with a woman; it is detestable.

23 And you shall not give your semen with any animal, for uncleanness with it. And a woman shall not stand before an animal to lie down with it; it is a shameful mixing.

24 Do not defile yourself with all these, for with all these the nations have been defiled, which I am casting out before you[1];

25 and the land is defiled, and I will visit its iniquity on it; and the land is vomiting out those living in it;

26 and you, you shall keep My statutes and My judgments, and shall not do any of all these disgusting acts; neither the native nor the alien who is staying in your midst.

27 For the men of the land who are before you have done all these disgusting things, and the land is defiled.

28 Do not do these lest the land vomit you out for your defiling it, as it has vomited out the nation that was before you.

29 For anyone who does any of these disgusting things, even the persons who are doing them, shall be cut off from the midst of their people.

30 And you shall keep My charge, so as not to do any of the disgusting customs which were committed before you; and you shall not defile yourselves with them; I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

Chapter 19

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Speak to all the congregation of the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, You are holy, for I am holy, YAHWEH your Elohim.

3 Each man of you shall revere his mother and his father, and keep My Sabbaths; I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

4 Do not turn to the idols; and you shall not make molten Elohim for yourselves; I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

5 And if you sacrifice a sacrifice of peace offerings to YAHWEH, you shall sacrifice it of your free will;

6 it shall be eaten in the day of your sacrificing it, and on the morrow, and that which is left on the third day shall be burned with fire.

7 And if it is at all eaten on the third day, it is unclean; it shall not be accepted.

8 And he who eats it, he shall bear his iniquity; for he has polluted the holy thing of YAHWEH, and that person shall be cut off from his people.

9 And as you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not completely reap the corner of your field; and you shall not gather the gleaning of your harvest;

10 and you shall not glean your vineyard, and you shall not gather the leavings of your vineyard; you shall

[1] Clearly, we see that all forms of incest are abominable to Yahweh and came from Canaanite practices. It is inconceivable to think that Yahweh preconceived humanity through incest in Gen 1, when it is clearly condemned here.

leave them to the poor and to the alien; I am YAHWEH your Elohim. (Lev 23:22)
11 You shall not steal nor lie, nor deceive a man to another.
12 And you shall not swear by My name to a falsehood; nor shall you pollute the name of your Elohim; I am YAHWEH.
13 You shall not extort your neighbor, nor rob; you shall not allow the wages of one hired to remain with you until morning.
14 You shall not revile the deaf, nor put a stumbling block before the blind; for you shall revere your Elohim. I am YAHWEH.
15 You shall do no unrighteousness in judgment; you shall not respect the face of the poor, nor favor the face of the mighty; but in righteousness you shall judge your neighbor.
16 You shall not go as a slanderer among your people; you shall not stand up against the blood of your neighbor; I am YAHWEH.
17 You shall not hate your brother in your heart; you shall certainly reprove your neighbor, and not allow sin on him.
18 You shall not take vengeance, nor bear any grudge against the sons of your people; but you shall love your neighbor as yourself; I am YAHWEH.
19 You shall keep my statutes; you shall not cause your livestock to breed with different kinds; you shall not sow two kinds in your field; and you shall not allow a garment mixed of mixed fabric to come upon you. [1]*(Deut 22:11)*
20 And when a man lies with a woman with semen, and she is a slave-girl, betrothed to a man, and not truly redeemed, and freedom not having been given to her, there shall be an inquest; they shall not be put to death, because she was not free.
21 And he shall bring in his guilt offering to YAHWEH, to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation, a ram for a guilt offering.
22 And the priest shall atone for him with the ram of the guilt offering before YAHWEH for his sin which he has sinned; and it shall be forgiven him because of his sin he has sinned.
23 And when you come into the land and have planted all of the food trees, then you shall expose its foreskin, its fruit, it shall be as uncircumcised for you three years; it shall not be eaten.[2]
24 And in the fourth year all its fruit is holy; it is for praises for YAHWEH.
25 And in the fifth year you shall eat its fruit, that it may yield to you its increase; I am YAHWEH your Elohim.
26 You shall not eat with the blood; you shall not divine, nor conjure spirits.
27 You shall not round the side of your head, nor mar the corners of your beard.
28 And you shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead; and you shall not put on yourself any etched tattoo writing or marking; I am YAHWEH.
29 You shall not pollute your daughter, to cause her to be a prostitute, that the land may not go whoring, and the land become full of wickedness.
30 You shall keep My Sabbaths; and you shall revere My sanctuary. I am YAHWEH.
31 You shall not turn to mediums, and you shall not seek to spiritualists

---

[1] The Hebrew word '*Shahatnaze'* means a forbidden mixture. Just as one should not mix different seed in their field they also should not mix fabrics such as wool (from sheep) and linen (from a plant) as it would violate Yahweh's judicial order.

[2] The count starts from the time of the planting of the tree.

to be defiled by them; I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

32 You shall rise up in the face of gray hair; and you shall honor the face of an old man; and be afraid of your Elohim. I am YAHWEH.[1]

33 And when an alien lives with you in your land, you shall not oppress him;

34 as the native among you, so shall be the alien who is staying with you; and you shall love him as yourself, for you were aliens in the land of Egypt; I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

35 You shall do no unrighteousness in judgment, in measures and weights, or in quantity.

36 You shall have just balances, just weights, a just ephah, and a just hin. I am YAHWEH your Elohim, who brought you out from the land of Egypt;

37 and you shall observe all My statutes, and all My judgments and shall do them; I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 20

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 And you shall say to the sons of Israel, Any man of the sons of Israel, and of the aliens who are living in Israel, who gives of his seed to Molech shall certainly be put to death. The people of the land shall stone him with stones! *(2Kgs 23:10, Jer 32:35)*

3 And I, I shall set My face against that man, and shall cut him off from the midst of his people, for he has given of his seed to Molech, so as to defile My sanctuary, and to pollute My holy name.

4 And if the people of the land truly hide their eyes from that man, as he gives his seed to Molech, so as not to put him to death,

5 then I shall set My face against that man, and against his family, and shall cut him off, and all who go whoring after him, even going whoring after Molech from the midst of their people.

6 And the person who turns to mediums, and to spiritists, to go whoring after them, I shall set my face against that person, and cut him off from the midst of his people. [2]

7 And you shall sanctify yourselves, and you shall be holy, for I am YAHWEH your Elohim;

8 and you shall keep My statutes and shall do them; I am YAHWEH who is sanctifying you.

9 And any man who curses his father and his mother shall surely be put to death;[3] he has cursed his father and his mother; his blood shall be on him.

10 And a man who commits adultery with a man's wife, who commits adultery with the wife of his neighbor, the adulterer and the adulteress dying shall die.

11 And a man who lies with his father's wife, who has uncovered the nakedness of his father, both of them dying shall die; their blood shall be on them.

12 And a man who lies with his daughter-in-law, both of them dying shall die; they have performed a perversion; their blood shall be on them.

13 And a man who lies with a male as one lies with a woman, both of them have done a detestable thing, surely they shall die; their blood shall be on them. *(Lev 18:22, Ro 1:27)*

14 And a man who takes a woman and her mother, it is wickedness; they

[1] It is extremely important to Yahweh and proper judicial order to honor the older, more mature people in our families and communities, Pr 16:31, Pr 20:29.

[2] 1 Sam 28:3-11 Saul did this.

[3] The Hebrew implies blasphemy and maybe even using magic. Mk 7:10, Ex 20:12

shall burn him and them; and there shall be no wickedness in your midst.
15 And a man who lies with an animal dying shall die. And you shall kill the animal.
16 And if a woman draws near to any animal to lie with it, you shall even put to death the woman and the animal; surely they shall die; their blood shall be on them. *(Lev 18:23, Ex 22:19)*
17 And if a man takes his sister, the daughter of his father or daughter of his mother, and he has seen her nakedness, and she sees his nakedness, it is a shame. And they shall be cut off before the eyes of the sons of their people; he has uncovered his sister's nakedness; he shall bear his iniquity.
18 And if a man lies with a menstruating woman, and has uncovered her nakedness, he has made her fountain bare; and she has uncovered the fountain of her blood; even both of them shall be cut off from the midst of their people.
19 And you shall not uncover the nakedness of your mother's sister, nor of your father's sister, because he has made naked his near kin; they shall bear their iniquity.
20 If a man lies with his aunt, he has uncovered the nakedness of his uncle; they shall bear their sin; they shall die childless.
21 And if a man takes his brother's wife, it is an unclean thing; he has uncovered his brother's nakedness; they shall be childless.[1]
22 And you shall keep all My statutes, and all My judgments, and shall do them, and the land where I am bringing you to live in it shall not vomit you out.
23 And you shall not walk in the statutes of the nation which I am casting out from before you, for all these they have done, and I am disgusted with them.
24 But I have said to you, You shall surely possess their land; and, I, I am giving it to you to possess it, a land flowing with milk and honey; I am YAHWEH your Elohim, who has set you apart from the nations.
25 And you shall make a difference between the clean animals and the unclean, and between the unclean fowl and the clean. And you shall not defile yourself by beast or by fowl, or by anything which swarms the ground, which I have set apart to you as unclean;
26 and you shall be holy to Me, for I, YAHWEH, am holy; and I have set you apart from the nations to become Mine.
27 And a man or woman, when there is among them a medium, or a fortune teller, certainly they shall die; they shall stone them with stones; their blood is on them. *(Lev 19:31, 20:6)*

Chapter 21

1 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Speak to the priests, Aaron's sons, and you shall say to them, None shall be defiled for the dead among his people.
2 But for his relative who is near to him, for his mother, and for his father, and for his son, and for his daughter, and for his brother,
3 and for his sister, the virgin, who is near to him, who has not been with a man, for her he may be defiled.
4 A leader shall not defile himself among his people, to pollute himself;
5 they shall not make their heads bald, and they shall not shave the

[1] This rule is excepted by the Levirite law (Deut 25:5) but only after the death of his brother and if the widow of the brother was childless and the brother in law was single.

corner of their beard[1]; and they shall not make a cutting in their flesh;
6 they are holy to their Elohim, and they shall not pollute the name of their Elohim. For they offer the fire offerings of YAHWEH, bread of their Elohim, and they are holy.
7 They shall not take a woman who is a harlot, or polluted; nor shall they take a woman divorced from her husband; for he is holy to his Elohim.[2]
8 And you shall sanctify him, for he brings near the bread of your Elohim; he is holy to you; for I am holy, YAHWEH who is sanctifying you.
9 And when a daughter of any priest pollutes herself by going whoring, she is polluting her father; she shall be burned with fire.
10 And the high priest of his brothers, on whose head the anointing oil is poured, and whose hand is consecrated to put on the garments, his head shall not be bared[3], nor his garments torn;
11 nor shall he come near any dead person; he shall not defile himself for his father or for his mother;
12 nor shall he go out from the sanctuary; nor shall he pollute the sanctuary of his Elohim. For the crown of the anointing oil of his Elohim is on him; I am YAHWEH.
13 And he shall take a wife in her virginity.
14 He shall not take a widow, or one divorced, or a polluted one, a harlot, but he shall take a virgin of his own people for a wife;
15 and he shall not pollute his seed among his people; for I am YAHWEH who sanctifies him.
16 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
17 Speak to Aaron, saying, No man of your seed throughout their generations shall draw near to offer the bread of his Elohim if there is a blemish in him.
18 For no man in whom there is a blemish shall draw near, a blind man, or one lame, or disfigured, or deformed;
19 or a broken footed man, or a broken handed man,
20 or one humpbacked, or a crushed one, or with a spot in his eye, or a scurvy one, or one scabbed, or one with crushed testicles.
21 No man of the seed of Aaron the priest in whom there is a blemish shall come near to offer the fire offerings of YAHWEH; a blemish is in him; he shall not come near to offer the bread of his Elohim.
22 He shall eat of the bread of his Elohim, of the most holy things, and of the holy things.
23 But he shall not enter into the veil, and he shall not draw near to the altar; for a blemish is in him; and he shall not pollute My sanctuary; for I am YAHWEH who sanctifies them.
24 And Moses spoke to Aaron, and to his sons, and to all the sons of Israel.

Chapter 22

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Speak to Aaron, and to his sons, that they set themselves apart[4] from the holy things of the sons of Israel, and that they do not profane My holy

[1] The Canaanites had a practice of sacrificing to goat deities, and Satan has long been known as a goat. There was even a half man/half goat god called Pan. This is why Yahweh prohibits the cutting of the corner of the beard to have a devil goat like appearance. (Lev 17:7)
[2] Ezek 44:22
[3] Means he should not shave his head
[4] The Hebrew is '*netzar*' and the same root as the word for one who takes a nazarite vow.

name in what they devote to Me; I am YAHWEH.

3 Say to them, Out of all your seed throughout your generations, any man who draws near to the holy things which the sons of Israel set apart to YAHWEH, and his uncleanness being upon him, that person shall be cut off from before Me; I am YAHWEH.

4 Any man of the seed of Aaron that is leprous or has an issue, he shall not eat of the holy things until he is clean. And he who touches any uncleanness of a person, or a man whose semen has gone out of him;

5 or a man who touches any swarming thing which is unclean to him, or touches a man who is unclean to him, by any of his uncleanness,

6 the person who touches it shall even be unclean until the evening, and shall not eat of the holy things, but shall bathe his flesh with water.

7 And when the sun goes in, he shall be clean, and afterwards he shall eat of the holy things, for it is his food;

8 he shall not eat a dead body or torn thing, for it is unclean; I am YAHWEH.

9 And they shall keep My charge, and shall bear no sin for it, that they may not die for it when they pollute it; I am YAHWEH, who is sanctifying them.

10 And no stranger shall eat of the holy things, a tenant of a priest, or a hired servant; these shall not eat of the holy thing.

11 And if a priest buys a person, the purchase of his silver, he shall eat of it; also one born in his house, they shall eat of his bread.

12 And a priest's daughter, when she belongs to an alien man, she shall not eat of the heave offering of the holy things. *(2 Cor6:14-18)*

13 But a priest's daughter, when she is a widow, or divorced, and has no seed, and has turned back to her father's house, as in her youth, she shall eat of her father's bread. But no stranger shall eat of it.

14 And if a man shall eat of a holy thing through ignorance, then he shall add the fifth part of it, and shall give it to the priest along with the holy thing.

15 And they shall not pollute the holy things of the sons of Israel, that which they lift up to YAHWEH;

16 and so cause them to bear the iniquity of the guilt offering in their eating their holy things. For I am YAHWEH who sanctifies them.

17 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

18 Speak to Aaron, and to his sons, and to all the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, Any man of the house of Israel, or of the aliens in Israel, who brings near his offering, of all his vows, or of all his freewill offerings which they bring near to YAHWEH for a burnt offering;

19 at your own will a male, without blemish, of the oxen, of the sheep, or of the goats may be offered.

20 You shall not offer that which has a blemish; for it shall not be acceptable for you.

21 And when a man brings near a sacrifice of peace offerings to YAHWEH, to complete a vow, or for a freewill offering, of the herd or of the flock, it shall be without blemish to be accepted; no blemish shall be in it;

22 blind, or broken, or maimed, or having a flow, or scurvy, or scabbed, you shall not bring these near to YAHWEH; and you shall not make of them a fire offering on the altar to YAHWEH.

23 As to an ox or a sheep deformed, or dwarfed, you shall make it a freewill offering; but it is not acceptable for a vow.

24 As to anything bruised, or beaten,

or torn, or cut, you shall not bring it near to YAHWEH; even you shall not do it in your land.
25 And you shall not bring near the bread of your Elohim from the hand of a son of a stranger, or any of these, for their corruption is in them; they are blemished; they are not acceptable for you.
26 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
27 When an ox, or lamb, or goat is born, and when it has been seven days under its mother, then from the eighth day and onward it is acceptable for an offering, a fire offering to YAHWEH;
28 but an ox or sheep, it and its young one, you shall not slaughter in one day.
29 And when you sacrifice a sacrifice of thanksgiving to YAHWEH, you shall sacrifice it of your free will;
30 it shall be eaten on that day; you shall not leave any of it until morning; I am YAHWEH.
31 And you shall keep My commandments and shall do them; I am YAHWEH.
32 And you shall not profane My holy name, and I shall be counted holy among the sons of Israel[1]; I am YAHWEH, who is sanctifying you,
33 who is bringing you up out of the land of Egypt, to become your Elohim; I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 23

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, The set feasts of YAHWEH which you shall proclaim as holy gatherings, shall be these: These are My appointed feasts:
3 Work is to be done six days, and on the seventh day shall be a Sabbath of rest, a holy gathering; you shall do no work; it is a Sabbath to YAHWEH in all your dwellings.
4 These are appointed times of YAHWEH, holy gatherings which you shall proclaim in their appointed seasons[2]:
5 In the first month, on the fourteenth of the month, between the evenings is the Passover to YAHWEH.
6 And on the fifteenth day of this month is the Feast of Unleavened to YAHWEH; you shall eat unleavened things seven days.
7 On the first day you shall have a holy gathering; you shall do no laborious work;
8 and you shall bring near a fire offering to YAHWEH seven days; and the seventh day shall be a holy gathering; you shall do no laborious work.
9 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
10 Speak to the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, When you come in to the land which I am giving to you, and have reaped its harvest, and have brought in the Omer, of the first-fruits of your harvest, to the priest,[3]
11 then he shall wave the Omer before YAHWEH for your acceptance[4]; on the morrow of the Sabbath the priest shall wave it.
12 And you shall prepare a lamb in the day you wave the Omer, one

[1] By believing in and keeping the commandments, it was glorifying the name of Yahweh, the only true Elohim.

[2] The fact that it mentions "*these are my feasts"* twice, shows that although the Sabbath is also a feast it is separated from the other feast days, and the other feast days do not have to fall on a Sabbath.

[3] Ex 16:16, 18, 32-33, 36)

[4] An omer is a measurement, not a sheaf and is about 2 quarts or liters.

without blemish, a son of a year, for a burnt offering to YAHWEH.

13 And its grain offering[1] shall be two tenths part of flour[2] mixed with oil, a fire offering to YAHWEH, a sweet fragrance; and its drink offering, a fourth of a hin of wine.

14 And you shall not eat bread, nor roasted grain, nor fresh ears[3], until this same day, until you have brought the offering of your Elohim; it is a never ending statute throughout your generations in all your dwellings.

15 And you shall number to you from the next day after the Sabbath, from the day you bring in the omer of the wave offering; they shall be seven complete Sabbaths;

16 to the next day after the seventh Sabbath, you shall number fifty days; and you shall bring near a new food offering to YAHWEH;

17 you shall bring in bread out of your dwellings for a wave offering, two loaves; they shall be of two tenth ephah of flour; they shall be baked with leaven; first-fruits to YAHWEH

18 And besides the bread, you shall offer seven lambs, without blemish, sons of a year, and one bull, a son of the herd, and two rams; they are a burnt offering to YAHWEH, with their food offering and their drink offerings, a fire offering of soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.

19 And you shall offer one he-goat for a sin offering, and two lambs, sons of a year, for a sacrifice of peace offerings.

20 And the priest shall wave them, besides the bread of the first-fruits, a wave offering before YAHWEH, besides the two lambs; they are holy to YAHWEH for the priest.

21 And you shall make a proclamation on this same day; it is a holy gathering to you. You shall do no laborious work of service. It is a never ending statute in all your dwellings throughout your generations.

22 And when you reap the harvest of your land, you shall not completely reap the corner of your field, nor shall you gather the gleaning of your harvest; you shall leave them for the poor, and for the alien: I am YAHWEH your Elohim. (Lev 19:9-10)

23 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

24 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, In the seventh month, on the first of the month, a Holy Day Sabbath shall be to you, a memorial acclamation of the resounding of trumpets, a holy gathering.[4]

25 You shall do no laborious work and you shall bring a fire offering to YAHWEH.

26 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses saying,

27 Also, on the tenth of this seventh month shall be a day of atonement; there shall be a holy gathering, and you shall humble and weaken your bodies and shall bring a fire offering to YAHWEH. *(Is 58:3,5)*

28 And you shall do no work in this same day, for it is a day of atonement, to atone for you before YAHWEH your Elohim.

29 For any person who is not

1 The Hebrew word for this offering is '*minchah'* and means a bloodless offering.

2 The Hebrew word here for Flour is '*soleth'* and means fine flour milled and sieved many times.

3 There are three Hebrew words used here for the grain to show the different stages it matures in and it shows that no grain whatsoever could be eaten until the first fruit wavesheaf was accepted.

4 Memorial acclamation- ;literally a clamor of shouting with joy, could be with shofars and trumpets.

humbled in this same day shall be cut off from his people.

30 And any person who does any work in this same day, I shall even cut off that person from the midst of his people.

31 You shall do no work; it is a never ending statute throughout your generations, in all your dwellings.

32 It is a Sabbath of rest to you, and you shall humble your souls in the ninth of the month at evening; from evening until evening you shall keep[1] your Sabbath[2].

33 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

34 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, In the fifteenth day of this seventh month shall be a Feast of Booths, seven days to YAHWEH.

35 On the first day shall be a holy gathering; you shall do no laborious work.

36 Seven days you shall bring a fire offering to YAHWEH; on the eighth day you shall have a holy gathering; and you shall bring the fire offering to YAHWEH; it is a solemn assembly; you shall do no laborious work of service.

37 These are the set feasts of YAHWEH which you shall proclaim, holy gatherings, to bring a fire offering to YAHWEH, a burnt offering, and a food offering, a sacrifice, and drink offerings, the thing of a day on its own day;[3]

38 besides the Sabbaths of YAHWEH, and besides your gifts, and besides all your vows, and besides all your freewill offerings which you shall give to YAHWEH.

39 Also, in the fifteenth day of the seventh month, when you gather the increase of the land[4], you shall keep the feast of YAHWEH seven days; on the first day a Holy Day Sabbath, and on the eighth day a Holy Day Sabbath[5]. *(Ex 23:16)*

40 And you shall take to yourselves on the first day the fruit of majestic trees[6], palm branches, and boughs of thick oak trees, and willows of the valley,[7] and shall rejoice before YAHWEH your Elohim seven days.

41 And you shall celebrate it a feast to YAHWEH, seven days in a year, a never ending statute throughout your generations; in the seventh month you shall keep it.

42 You shall sit in Sookkuhs for seven days; all who are native in Israel shall sit down in Sookkuhs[8],

43 so that your generations shall

1 The Hebrew word for '*keep*' is Shabbath and the same word used here was used in Gen 2:2.

2 This is not only for Yom Kippur, but with the Hebrew calendar, days are from sunset to sunset, therefore the Sabbath is also from sunset to sunset.

3 Sukkot is the 7th feast in the 7th month and lasts for 7 days. The first day of Sukkot 13 bulls are sacrificed and each day one less are sacrificed with 7 bulls being sacrificed on the 7th day (Num 29:13-32). Sukkot pictures the millennial reign and 7 is the number of perfection picturing how society will be at that time.

4 The feast runs according to the agricultural cycle of Israel and should not be before the autumn equinox.

5 The eighth day although connected to Sukkot, was in actuality a separate holy day and pictures the great white throne judgment, directly after the millennium (Rev 20:11-15).

6 The Rabbis interpret this fruit to be the citron, but citrons were not indigenous to Israel and it is more likely referring to the pomegranate.

7 These were used for building the Sookkah.

8 As a reminder of their exodus, they were to make temporary dwellings called Sookkahs and sit in them during the 7 days of Sukkot. This 7 day festival also pictures the millennium rule of Messiah.

know that I caused the sons of Israel to live in Sookkuhs, when I brought them out of the land of Egypt; I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

44 And Moses declared the appointed feasts of YAHWEH to the sons of Israel[1].

Chapter 24

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Command the sons of Israel, and they shall bring to you pure olive oil, beaten, for the light, to cause a light to burn continually.

3 Outside the veil of the testimony in the tent of meeting, Aaron shall arrange it from evening until morning before YAHWEH continually, a perpetual statute throughout your generations.

4 He shall arrange the lamps on the pure gold Menorah before YAHWEH continually.

5 And you shall take flour, and shall bake twelve cakes with it; two tenths shall be in the one cake.

6 And you shall set them in two rows, six on a row on the pure gold table before YAHWEH.

7 And you shall put pure frankincense on the row, and it shall be the bread of a memorial, a fire offering to YAHWEH.

8 On each Sabbath day he shall arrange it before YAHWEH continually, from the sons of Israel, a never ending covenant.

9 And it shall belong to Aaron and to his sons, and they shall eat it in the sanctuary, for it is most holy to him, from the fire offerings of YAHWEH, a never ending statute.

10 And the son of an Israelite woman, and he was a son of an Egyptian man, went out among the sons of Israel. And the son of the woman of Israel and a man of Israel fought together in the camp.

11 And the son of the woman of Israel blasphemed the Name *of YAHWEH*[2], and cursed. And they brought him in to Moses; and his mother's name was Shelomith, the daughter of Dibri, of the tribe of Dan.

12 And they put him under guard, that it might be declared to them at the mouth of YAHWEH.

13 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

14 Bring out the reviler to the outside of the camp. And all those who heard shall lay their hands on his head, and all the congregation shall stone him.

15 And you shall speak to the sons of Israel, saying, When any man curses his Elohim, then he shall bear his sin.

16 And he who blasphemes the name of YAHWEH surely shall die. All the congregation shall certainly cast stones at him. As to the alien, so to a native, when he blasphemes the Name, he shall be executed.

17 And a man, when he strikes the life from any man, he shall surely be executed.

---

1 These are Yahweh's feasts, not merely the Jewish feast days.

2 Again, we see the great importance of the sacred name of Yahweh and how we need to keep that name sanctified. The Rabbis however take this to the point of not even ever mentioning the name and actually changing scripture when reading it to another name (Deut 4:2). The third commandment stating not to take Yahweh's name in vain, literally means not to change or falsify it, or bring it to nothing. We are commanded to praise His name, worship His name, call on His name and glorify His name; how can you do this if you do not ever vocalize it? In essence, by not vocalizing the name Yahweh, they inadvertently bring it to nothing.

18 And he who smites an animal to death shall make it good, body for body.
19 And when a man causes a blemish in his neighbor, as he has done, so it shall be done to him;
20 break for break, eye for eye, tooth for tooth. As he has given a blemish to be in a man, so it shall be done to him.
21 And he who smites an animal to death shall repay it; and he who smites a man to death shall be put to death.
22 One judgment shall be for you whether an alien or a native; for I am YAHWEH your Elohim.
23 And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel, and they brought the reviler to the outside of the camp and stoned him with stones. And the sons of Israel did as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.

Chapter 25

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses in Mount Sinai, saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel, and say to them, When you come into the land which I am giving to you, then the land shall keep a Sabbath to YAHWEH.
3 You shall sow your field six years, and you shall prune your vineyard six years, and shall gather its produce.
4 And in the seventh year shall be a Sabbath of rest to the land, a Sabbath to YAHWEH. You shall not sow your field, and you shall not prune your vineyard.
5 You shall not reap that which grows of itself of your harvest; and you shall not gather the grapes of your unkempt vine; it shall be a year of rest to the land.
6 And the Sabbath of the land shall be to you for food, to you, and to your male slave, and to your female slave, and to your hired one, and to your tenant, those living among you;
7 and to your livestock, and to the animal in your land, all its produce shall be for food.
8 And you shall number to yourself seven Sabbaths of years, seven years times seven, and all the days of the seven Sabbaths of years shall be to you forty nine years.
9 And you shall let a ram's horn resound, a signal in the seventh month, in the tenth of the month[1]; in the day of atonement, let a ram's horn pass throughout all your land;
10 and you shall make the fiftieth year holy[2], one year. And you shall proclaim liberty in the land to those living in it; He shall be a jubilee to you. And you shall return every man to his possession; yea, you shall turn back each to his family.
11 It is a jubilee year, the fiftieth year; it is to you. You shall not sow, nor reap that which grows of itself, nor gather from its unkempt vines;
12 for it is a jubilee, it is holy to you; you shall eat its increase out of the field.
13 In the year of jubilee you shall return each one to his possession.
14 And if you sell anything to your neighbor, or buy from the hand of

1 The reason why the Jubilee was announced at Yom Kippur is that planting for the next year was done directly after Sukkot before the rainy season, and if the next year was not to harvest the grain, there would be no reason to plant or sow the ground. Yom Kippur is also thought to be indicative of the wedding supper of the Messiah.

2 The 50th year is to be set apart. Some start the next jubilee year 1 of the next 7 year cycle on the 50th year and inadvertently count this year twice and only will have 49 years until the next Jubilee. Clearly, in the Hebrew, the 50th year is to be set apart (holy means set apart) and is separated from the 7 cycles of 7 years each, just as Shavuot is the 50 day, separated from the 7 weeks of 7 days.

your neighbor, you shall not each man oppress his brother.
15 By the number of years after the jubilee you shall buy from your neighbor; by the number of the years of increase he shall sell to you;
16 according to the many years you shall increase its price; and by the fewness of the years you shall diminish its price, for he is selling to you the number of crops.
17 And you shall not oppress each man his neighbor, and you shall fear your Elohim, for I am YAHWEH your Elohim.
18 And you shall do My statutes, and you shall keep my judgments and shall do them; and you shall live on the land securely.
19 And the land shall give its fruit, and you shall eat to satisfaction; and you shall dwell securely on it.
20 And when you say, What shall we eat in the seventh year; for, lo, we may not sow nor gather our increase?
21 Then I have commanded My blessing on you in the sixth year, and it shall produce the increase for three years;
22 and you shall sow the eighth year, and shall eat of the old crop until the ninth year, until the coming in of its crop; you shall eat of the old.
23 And the land shall not be sold in perpetuity; for the land is Mine; for you are aliens and tenants with Me[1].
24 And you shall grant a redemption for the land in all the land of your possession.
25 If your brother has become poor and has sold his property, then his kinsman redeemer[2] shall come, and he shall redeem the thing sold by his brother.
26 But when a man has no kinsman redeemer to him, and his own hand has reached out, and he has enough for its redemption,
27 then he shall count the years since its sale, and shall give back the surplus to the man to whom he sold; and he shall return to his possession.
28 And if his hand has not found enough to give back to him, then the thing he sold shall be in the hand of him who buys it until the year of jubilee. And it shall go out in the jubilee, and he shall return to his possession.
29 And when a man sells a dwelling house in a walled city, then his right of redemption shall be the end of the year of its sale; his right of redemption shall be a year of days.
30 And if it is not redeemed until a full year is complete, then the house in the walled city shall be established to perpetuity to its buyer, throughout his generations; it shall not go out in the jubilee.
31 But the houses of the villages which have no walls all around shall be counted as the field of the country; there are redemption rights to it. And it shall go out in the jubilee.
32 As to the cities of the Levites, houses of the cities of their possession, never ending redemption rights shall be to the Levites.
33 And that which one redeems from the Levites, both the sale of a house, and the city of his possession, shall go out in the jubilee. For the houses of the cities of the Levites are their

---

[1] The land of Israel belongs to Yahweh and whomever He shares it with.

[2] This word indicates the rightful next of kin who would redeem his relative who has fallen into bondage, and is indicative in scripture of the Messiah who redeems those who seek Him of the bondage of the debt of their sins, which according to the Torah would be punishable by death. This is why it is very clear the Messiah must return directly before the Jubilee year of redemption (Is 60:16, Is 59:19-21, Ruth 2:20, 3:9, 4:1-10).

possession in the midst of the sons of
Israel.
34 And the field, the open land of
their cities, shall not be sold; for it is a
never ending possession to them.
35 And when your brother has
become poor, and his hand has failed
with you, then you shall help him. He
shall live with you as an alien and a
tenant.
36 You shall take no interest or
increase from him, and you shall fear
your Elohim; and the life of your
brother is with you.
37 You shall not give silver to him
with interest, and you shall not give
your food for increase.
38 I am YAHWEH who has brought
you out of the land of Egypt, to give to
you the land of Canaan, to become
your Elohim.
39 And when your brother becomes
poor with you, and he has been sold to
you, you shall not lay on him the
service of a slave.
40 He shall be with you as a hireling,
as a tenant he shall be with you; he
shall serve with you until the year of
jubilee;
41 then he shall go out from you, he
and his sons with him, and shall
return to his family; he shall even
return to the possession of his father.
42 For they are My servants, whom I
have brought out from the land of
Egypt; they shall not be sold with the
sale of a slave.
43 You shall not rule over him with
severity, and you shall fear your
Elohim.
44 And your male slave and your
female slave whom you have shall be
from the nations who are all around
you, you shall buy them as male slave
or female slave;
45 and also you may buy of the sons
of the tenants who are residing with
you, and of their families who are with
you, which they have fathered in your
land. And they shall be a possession to
you.
46 And you shall take them for
inheritance to your sons after you, to
hold for a possession; you may lay
service on them forever. But on your
brothers, the sons of Israel, one over
another, you shall not rule over him
with severity.
47 And if an alien or a tenant lifts up
a hand with you, and your brother
grows poor with him, and he sells
himself to an alien, a tenant with you,
or to the offshoot of the family of an
alien,
48 after he has been sold, there is a
redemption to him; one of his brothers
may redeem him,
49 or his uncle, or a son of his uncle,
may redeem him, or any of his fleshly
relations of his family may redeem
him. Or, if his own hand has reached
out to gain, then he may be redeemed.
50 And he shall count with his buyer
from the year of his being sold to him
until the year of jubilee, and the silver
of his sale shall be by the number of
years. As the days of a hireling, it shall
be with him.
51 If there are yet many years, by
mouth he shall give back his
redemption, from the silver of his
purchase.
52 And if few are left of the years till
the year of jubilee, then he shall count
with him according to his years he
shall give back his redemption price.
53 As a hireling, year by year, he
shall be with him, and he shall not rule
him with severity before your eyes.
54 And if he is not redeemed in this
way, then he shall go out in the year of
jubilee, he and his sons with him.
55 For the sons of Israel are servants
to Me; they are My servants whom I
brought forth out of the land of Egypt;
I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

Chapter 26

1 You shall not make idols to yourselves; and you shall not set up for yourselves graven images, or a memorial pillar. And you shall not place any stone image in your land, to bow yourselves to it; for I am YAHWEH your Elohim.
2 You shall keep My Sabbaths, and revere My sanctuary; I am YAHWEH.
3 If you walk in My statutes, and keep My commandments, and do them,
4 then I will give you rains in their season, and the land shall give her produce, and the tree of the field shall give its fruit;
5 and your threshing shall reach to the vintage, and the vintage shall reach to the sowing time; and you shall eat your bread to satisfaction, and live in your land securely[1].
6 And I will give peace in the land, and you shall lie down, and none shall terrify you. And I shall cause evil beasts to cease out of the land, and the sword shall not pass over into your land.
7 And you shall pursue your enemies, and they shall fall before you by the sword.
8 And five of you shall pursue a hundred, and a hundred of you shall pursue a ten thousand; and your enemies shall fall before you by the sword.
9 And I shall turn My face toward you and make you fruitful, and multiply you, and shall establish My covenant with you.
10 And you shall eat very old store, and clear away the old store because of the new.
11 And I will set My tabernacle in your midst, and My soul shall not loathe you;
12 and I shall walk always in your midst, and shall be Elohim to you, and you, you shall be people to Me;
13 I am YAHWEH your Elohim, who has brought you out from the land of the Egyptians, from being their slaves; and I will break the bars of your yoke, and cause you to stand erect.
14 And if you will not listen to Me, and do not do all these commands;
15 and if you reject My statutes, and if your soul hates My judgments, so as not to do all My commands, to the breaking of My covenant;
16 I will also do this to you, and I shall appoint terror over you, the wasting, and the burning fever, destroying the eyes, and consuming the soul; and you shall sow your seed in vain, and your enemies will eat it.
17 And I shall set My face against you, and you shall be smitten before your enemies; and those who hate you shall rule over you, and you shall flee, and there will be no one pursuing you.
18 And if after these things you will not listen to Me, then I will chastise you seven times more for your sin;
19 and I will break the pride of your strength, and will make your heavens as iron, and your earth as copper;
20 and your strength shall be consumed in vain, and your land shall not give her produce, and the tree of the land shall not give its fruit.
21 And if you walk contrary to Me, and are not willing to listen to Me, then I will bring seven times more plagues on you according to your sins,
22 and send against you the beast of the field, and it shall bereave you. And

[1] Due to replacement theology, many have lost the fact that being in covenant relationship in scripture is synonymous with being in the land of Israel. More than half of the covenant blessings directly deal with the blessing of the physical land of Israel.

I shall cut off your livestock and shall
make you few, so that your ways are
desolate.
23 And if you are not chastised by
Me by these things, and shall walk
contrary to Me,
24 then I, I also, shall walk contrary
to you, and shall smite you, even I,
seven times more for your sins;
25 and I will bring a sword on you,
executing the vengeance of the
covenant, and you shall be gathered to
your cities, and I shall send pestilence
into your midst; and you shall be given
into the hand of an enemy.
26 When I break to you the staff of
bread, ten women shall bake your
bread in one oven, and shall give back
your bread by weight; and you shall
eat, and shall not be satisfied.
27 If you will not listen to Me for
this, and shall walk contrary to Me,
28 then I also will walk contrary to
you in fury. I also will chastise you, I
also, seven times[1] for your sins.
29 And you shall eat of the flesh of
your sons, and you shall eat of the
flesh of your daughters.
30 And I shall destroy your high
places and cut down your altars, and
shall put your dead bodies on the
carcasses of your idols. And My soul
shall loathe you.
31 And I shall make your cities a
waste, and shall make your sanctuaries
desolate; and I shall not smell your
sweet fragrances.
32 And I shall make the land
desolate, and your enemies who are
living in it shall be astonished at it.
33 And I will scatter you among
nations, and shall draw out the sword
after you, and your land shall become
a waste, and your cities shall be a
desolation.
34 Then the land shall enjoy its
Sabbaths, all the days of the
desolation. And you shall be in the
land of your enemies; then the land
shall enjoy rest, and shall enjoy its
Sabbaths.
35 It shall rest all the days of the
desolation, that which it has not rested
in your Sabbaths while you lived on it.
36 And those who are left of you, I
shall also bring a faintness into their
hearts in the lands of their enemies;
and the sound of a driven leaf shall
chase them; and they shall flee, as one
flees from the sword; and they shall
fall when no one pursues.
37 And they shall stumble upon one
another, as if it were before the sword,
when no one pursues. And you shall
have no power to stand before your
enemies.
38 And you shall perish among the
nations, and the land of your enemies
shall devour you.
39 And of those who are left of you,
they shall melt away in their iniquity,
in the lands of your enemies; and also
in the iniquities of their fathers, they
shall dwindle away with them.
40 And if they shall confess their
iniquity, and the iniquity of their
fathers, in their trespass with which
they have trespassed against Me; and,
also, that they have walked contrary to
Me,
41 that I also have walked contrary
to them, and I have brought them into
the land of their enemies; if their

---

[1] You see several times in this chapter that if Israel did not obey they would be punished and cast out of Israel for a duration that would last 7 times the punishment. If you take a biblical year of 360 days and times that by 7 you come up with 2,520. Using the year for a day principle in Num 14:34 you come up with a punishment of 2,520 yrs. Interesting enough from 573-72 BC when Israel was fully in captivity by the Babylonians if you add the 2,520 years, you come up with 1948, the very yr Israel became a nation again.

uncircumcised hearts are then humbled, and they are pleased to pay for their iniquity;

42 then I will remember My covenant with Jacob, and also My covenant with Isaac, and I shall also remember My covenant with Abraham, and I shall remember the land[1].

43 For the land shall be forsaken by them, and shall satisfy for its Sabbaths, in the desolation without them. And they shall satisfy for their iniquity, because, even because, they have kicked against My judgments, and their soul has loathed My statutes.

44 And yet for all that, when they are in the land of their enemies, I will not reject them, nor will I hate them, to consume them, to break My covenant with them; for I am YAHWEH their Elohim.

45 Then I shall remember for them the covenant of the first fathers, whom I brought forth out of the land of Egypt in the sight of the nations, that I might be their Elohim; I am YAHWEH.

46 These are the statutes and the judgments and the laws which YAHWEH has given between Him and the sons of Israel, in Mount Sinai, by the hand of Moses.

Chapter 27

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Speak to the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, When a man makes an extraordinary difficult vow by your evaluation, the persons shall belong to YAHWEH.

3 And your evaluation shall be of the male from a son of twenty years even until a son of sixty years; then your evaluation shall be fifty shekels of silver by the shekel of the sanctuary.

4 And if it is a female, then your evaluation shall be thirty shekels.

5 And if from a son of five years to a son of twenty years, then your evaluation shall be twenty shekels for the male and ten shekels for the female.

6 And if a son of a month even to a son of five years, then your evaluation shall be five shekels of silver for the male and three shekels of silver for the female.

7 And if from a son of sixty years and above, if a male, then your evaluation shall be fifteen shekels and for a female ten shekels.

8 But if he is too poor for your evaluation, then he shall be made to stand before the priest, and the priest shall value him; the priest shall value him according to the reach of him who vowed.

9 And if it is an animal of which they bring an offering to YAHWEH, all that one gives of it to YAHWEH is holy.

10 He shall not replace it, or change it, a good for a bad, or a bad for a good. And if he shall at all change animal for animal, then both it and that for which it is changed shall be holy.

11 And if it is any unclean animal, or one which they may not bring as an offering to YAHWEH, then he shall make the animal stand before the priest.

12 And the priest shall value it, whether it is good or bad; as you the priest value it, so it shall be.

13 But if he really redeems it, then he shall add its fifth to your evaluation.

14 And when a man sanctifies his

[1] In any covenant in scripture the people (Israel), the Torah (law) and the land (physical land of Israel) never change. By changing any of those three aspects it is merely replacement theology, which scripture does not support.

house as a holy thing to YAHWEH, then the priest shall value it, whether good or bad. As the priest values it, so it shall stand.

15 And if he who is sanctifying shall redeem the house, then he shall add a fifth of the silver of its valuation, and it shall become his.

16 And if a man sanctifies a field of his property to YAHWEH, then your valuation shall be according to its seed; a homer of barley seed at fifty shekels of silver.

17 If he shall sanctify his field from the year of jubilee, it shall stand according to your valuation.

18 And if he shall sanctify his field after the jubilee, then the priest shall count to him the silver according to the years which are left, to the year of the jubilee. And it shall be deducted from your estimation.

19 And if he sanctifying the field really will redeem it, then he shall add a fifth of the silver of your evaluation to it, and it shall rise to become his.

20 And if he does not redeem the field, or if he has sold the field to another man, it is not to be redeemed any more.

21 And the field shall be holy to YAHWEH when it goes out in the jubilee, as a field which is devoted. It shall be a possession to the priest.

22 And if he should devote a field of his purchase, which is not of the fields of his possession,

23 then the priest shall count to him the amount of your valuation to the year of jubilee. And he shall give your valuation in that day, a holy thing to YAHWEH.

24 In the year of jubilee the field shall return to him from whom he bought it, to him who owns it in the land.

25 And all your valuation shall be by the shekel of the sanctuary: twenty gerahs shall be the shekel.

26 However, no man shall dedicate a firstling, which is first-born to YAHWEH among animals, whether ox or sheep; it belongs to YAHWEH.

27 And if it is among the unclean animals, then he shall ransom it at your valuation, and he shall add its fifth to it. And if it is not redeemed, then it shall be sold at your evaluation.

28 But any devoted thing which a man devotes to YAHWEH from all which belongs to him, of man or of animal, or of the field of his possession, it shall not be sold nor redeemed. Every devoted thing to YAHWEH is most holy.

29 No devoted thing which is dedicated by man shall be ransomed, dying it shall die.

30 And all the tithe of the land, of the seed of the land, of the fruit of the tree, shall belong to YAHWEH; it is holy to YAHWEH[1].

31 And if a man really redeems any of his tithes, he shall add its fifth to it.

32 And all the tithe of the herd and of the flock, all that passes under the rod, a tenth shall be holy to YAHWEH[2];

33 he shall not search whether it is good or bad, nor shall he change it. And if he at all changes it, then it shall

1 Tithing is a principle that goes back to the beginning of time (Gen 28:22). It is a principle that all belongs to Yahweh (Ps 24:1) and He allows us to keep 90% of our increase if we rightfully give back 10% to Him for His work. Yahweh says it is stealing not to pay the tithe for the work of His sanctuary (Mal 3:8-10)

2 A shepherd would literally count each of his sheep by having them pass under a rod. As true believers are called the sheep of Yahshua Messiah's pasture (Joh 10:1-10) they are literally the tithe from this world to be part of the family of Yahweh.

be that it and its substitute shall be
holy; it shall not be redeemed.
34 These are the commands which
YAHWEH has commanded Moses for
the sons of Israel, on Mount Sinai.

Book Of Numbers (B'midbar)

Chapter 1

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the tabernacle of the congregation, on the first of the second month, in the second year after they had come out of the land of Egypt, saying,
2 Lift the heads of all the congregation of the sons of Israel, by their families, by their fathers' houses, according to the number of names, every male, by their heads;
3 from a son of twenty years and upward, all that are able to go forth to war in Israel. You and Aaron shall number them by their armies.
4 And there shall be a man of every tribe with you, every one head of his father's house.
5 And these are the names of the men that shall stand with you: Of Reuben, Elizur the son of Shedeur;
6 of Simeon, Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai;
7 of Judah, Nahshon the son of Amminadab;
8 of Issachar, Nethaneel the son of Zuar;
9 of Zebulun, Eliab the son of Helon;
10 of the sons of Joseph; of Ephraim, Elishama the son of Ammihud; of Manasseh, Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur;
11 of Benjamin, Abidan the son of Gideoni;
12 of Dan, Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai;
13 of Asher, Pagiel the son of Ocran;
14 of Gad, Eliasaph the son of Deuel;
15 of Naphtali, Ahira the son of Enan.
16 These were those called from the congregation, rulers of the tribes of their fathers. They were heads of the thousands of Israel.
17 And Moses and Aaron took these men who were marked out by name.
18 And they assembled all the congregation on the first of the second month. And they declared their births according to their families, by their fathers' house, according to the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, by their heads.
19 As YAHWEH commanded Moses, so he numbered them in the wilderness of Sinai.
20 And the sons of Reuben, Israel's first-born, their generations by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, by their heads, every male from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
21 those numbered of them for the tribe of Reuben were forty six thousand and five hundred.
22 Of the sons of Simeon, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, his numbered ones in the number of names, by their heads, every male from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
23 those numbered of them for the tribe of Simeon were fifty nine thousand and three hundred.
24 Of the sons of Gad, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
25 those numbered of them for the tribe of Gad were forty five thousand and six hundred and fifty.
26 Of the sons of Judah, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
27 those numbered of them for the

tribe of Judah were seventy four thousand and six hundred.
28 Of the sons of Issachar, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
29 those numbered of them for the tribe of Issachar were fifty four thousand and four hundred.
30 Of the sons of Zebulun, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
31 those numbered of them for the tribe of Zebulun were fifty seven thousand and four hundred.
32 Of the sons of Joseph, of the sons of Ephraim, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
33 those numbered of them for the tribe of Ephraim were forty thousand and five hundred.
34 Of the sons of Manasseh, their generations, by their families by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
35 those numbered of them for the tribe of Manasseh were thirty two thousand and two hundred.
36 Of the sons of Benjamin, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
37 those numbered of them for the tribe of Benjamin were thirty five thousand and four hundred.
38 Of the sons of Dan, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
39 those numbered of them for the tribe of Dan were sixty two thousand and seven hundred.
40 Of the sons of Asher, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
41 those numbered of them for the tribe of Asher were forty one thousand and five hundred.
42 Of the sons of Naphtali, their generations, by their families, by their fathers' house, in the number of names, from a son of twenty years and upward, everyone able to go out to war:
43 those numbered of them for the tribe of Naphtali were fifty three thousand and four hundred.
44 These were numbered, whom Moses and Aaron numbered, and the rulers of Israel being twelve men; they were each one of his fathers' house.
45 And all those numbered of the sons of Israel by their fathers' house, from a son of twenty years and upward, all able to go out to war in Israel;
46 even all those that were numbered were six hundred and three thousand and five hundred and fifty.
47 But the Levites, according to the tribe of their fathers, were not numbered among them.
48 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
49 However, you shall not number the tribe of Levi, nor shall you count their heads among the sons of Israel.
50 But you shall appoint the Levites over the tabernacle of the testimony,

and over all its furniture, and over all which is to it. They shall bear the tabernacle, and all its furniture. And they shall serve it, and shall encamp around the tabernacle.

51 And when the tabernacle goes forward, the Levites shall take it down. And when the tabernacle is to be encamped, the Levites shall set it up. And the stranger that draws near shall die.

52 And the sons of Israel shall encamp their tents, each man with his own camp, and each man with his own standard, according to their armies.

53 But the Levites shall encamp around the tabernacle of the testimony, that there be no wrath on the congregation of the sons of Israel. And the Levites shall keep the charge of the tabernacle of the testimony.

54 And the sons of Israel did according to all that YAHWEH commanded Moses, so they did.

Chapter 2

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and Aaron, saying,

2 The sons of Israel shall encamp by their fathers' house, every man with his own standard, according to the ensigns. They shall encamp around the tabernacle of the congregation, afar off.

3 And those who encamp on the east side, toward the sun rising, are of the standard of Judah's camp, according to their armies, the ruler of the sons of Judah being Nahshon the son of Amminadab.

4 And his army and those numbered of them were seventy four thousand and six hundred.

5 And those encamping next to him shall be the tribe of Issachar; the ruler of the sons of Issachar being Nethaneel the son of Zuar;

6 and his army, and those numbered of them were fifty four thousand and four hundred.

7 And the tribe of Zebulun; the ruler of the sons of Zebulun being Eliab the son of Helon.

8 And his army, and those numbered of them were fifty seven thousand and four hundred.

9 All numbered of the camp of Judah were a hundred and eighty six thousand and four hundred, by their armies. They shall set forth first.

10 On the south side shall be the standard of the camp of Reuben, according to their armies; the ruler of the sons of Reuben being Elizur the son of Shedeur.

11 And his army, and those numbered of it were forty six thousand and five hundred.

12 And those that encamp next to him shall be the tribe of Simeon; the ruler of the sons of Simeon being Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.

13 And his army, and those numbered of them were fifty nine thousand and three hundred.

14 And the tribe of Gad: the ruler of the sons of Gad being Eliasaph the son of Reuel.

15 And his army, and those numbered of them were forty five thousand, six hundred and fifty.

16 All numbered of the camp of Reuben were a hundred and fifty one thousand four hundred and fifty according to their armies. And they shall pull out second.

17 And the camp of the Levites, with the tabernacle of the congregation shall pull out in the middle of the camps. As they encamp, so they shall pull out, each man in his place, by their standards.

18 On the west side shall be the standard of the camp of Ephraim, according to their armies; the ruler of

the sons of Ephraim being Elishama the son of Ammihud.
19 And his army, and those numbered of them were forty thousand and five hundred.
20 And next to him shall be the tribe of Manasseh, the ruler of the sons of Manasseh, being Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.
21 And his army, and those numbered of them were thirty two thousand and two hundred.
22 And the tribe of Benjamin; the ruler of the sons of Benjamin being Abidan the son of Gideoni.
23 And his army, and those numbered of them were thirty five thousand and four hundred.
24 All numbered of the camp of Ephraim were a hundred and eight thousand and one hundred, according to their armies. And they shall pull out third.
25 On the north side shall be the standard of the camp of Dan, according to their armies; the ruler of the sons of Dan being Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.
26 And his army, and those numbered of them were sixty two thousand and seven hundred.
27 And those that encamp next to him shall be the tribe of Asher; the ruler of the sons of Asher being Pagiel the son of Ocran.
28 And his army, and those numbered of them were forty one thousand and five hundred.
29 And the tribe of Naphtali; the ruler of the sons of Naphtali being Ahira the son of Enan.
30 And his army, and those numbered of them were fifty three thousand and four hundred.
31 All numbered of the camp of Dan were a hundred and fifty seven thousand and six hundred. They shall pull out last by their standards.
32 These are those numbered of the sons of Israel by their fathers' houses; all numbered of the camps according to their armies were six hundred and three thousand, five hundred and fifty.
33 But the Levites were not numbered among the sons of Israel, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.
34 And the sons of Israel did according to all that YAHWEH had commanded Moses, so they encamped by their standards, and so they pulled out, each one according to his family, and according to the house of his father.

Chapter 3

1 And these are the generations of Aaron and Moses, in the day YAHWEH spoke with Moses in Mount Sinai.
2 And these are the names of Aaron's sons: Nadab, the first-born; and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.
3 These are the names of Aaron's sons, the anointed priests whose hands he consecrated to act as priests.
4 And Nadab and Abihu died before YAHWEH in the wilderness of Sinai, for bringing strange fire before YAHWEH. And they had no sons. And Eleazar and Ithamar acted as priests in the presence of their father Aaron.
5 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
6 Bring the tribe of Levi near, and you shall cause it to stand before Aaron the priest. And they shall serve him,
7 and keep his charge, and the charge of all the congregation before the tent of meeting, to do the service of the tabernacle.
8 And they shall keep all the vessels of the tent of meeting, and the charge

of the sons of Israel, to do the service of the tabernacle.

9 And you shall give the Levites to Aaron and to his son. Giving they shall be given to him out of the sons of Israel.

10 And you shall appoint Aaron and his sons, and they shall keep their priesthood. And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death.

11 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

12 And I, behold, I have taken the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel in the place of every first-born opening a womb from the sons of Israel; and the Levites have become Mine.

13 For every first-born is Mine, from the day I struck every first-born in the land of Egypt, I have set apart to Myself every first-born in Israel, from men to animal. They are Mine[1]. I am YAHWEH.

14 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, saying,

15 Number the sons of Levi by their families, by their fathers' house. You shall number every male from a son of a month and upward.

16 And Moses numbered them according to the command of YAHWEH, as he had been commanded.

17 And these are the sons of Levi by their names: Gershon, Kohath and Merari.

18 And these are the names of the sons of Gershon by their families: Libni and Shimei.

19 And the sons of Kohath, by their families: Amram, Izhar, Hebron and Uzziel.

20 And the sons of Merari by their families: Mahli and Mushi. These were the families of the Levites by their fathers' houses.

21 Of Gershon is the family of the Libnites, and the family of the Shimites. These were the families of the Gershonites.

22 Those numbered of them, according to the number of all the males, from a son of a month and upward, even those numbered of them were seven thousand and five hundred.

23 The families of the Gershonites were to encamp behind the tabernacle westward.

24 The ruler of the fathers' house of the Gershonites was Eliasaph the son of Lael.

25 And the duty of the sons of Gershon in the tabernacle of the congregation was the tabernacle, and the tent, and its coverings, and the veil at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation;

26 and the hangings of the court, and the veil at the door of the court, which is by the tabernacle and by the altar all around, and its cords, to all its service.

27 And of Kohath was the family of the Amramites, the family of the Izeharites, the family of the Hebronites and the family of the Uzzielites. These were the families of the Kohathites.

28 In number, all the males, from a son of a month and upward were eight thousand and six hundred, keepers of the charge of the sanctuary.

29 The families of the sons of Kohath were to encamp on the side of the tabernacle southward;

30 The ruler of the fathers' house of the families of the Kohathites being Elizaphan the son of Uzziel.

31 And their charge was the ark, the

---

1 Firstborn and firstfruits in scripture are interchangeable both are set apart for Yahweh and belong to Him. The firstborn are simply the firstfruit or tithe of the womb.

table, the Menorah, the altars and the
vessels of the sanctuary with which
they minister, the veil and all its
service.
32 Eleazar the son of Aaron the
priest was ruler over the rulers of the
Levites, and had the oversight of those
that keep the charge of the sanctuary.
33 Of Merari was the family of the
Mahlites and the family of the
Mushites. These were the families of
Merari.
34 And those numbered of them,
according to the number of all the
males, from a son of a month and
upward were six thousand and two
hundred.
35 The ruler of the fathers' house of
the families of Merari was Zuriel the
son of Abihail. They were to encamp
on the side of the tabernacle
northward.
36 The appointed duty of the sons of
Merari being the boards of the
tabernacle and its bars, its pillars, its
sockets, all its vessels and all its
service;
37 and the pillars of the court all
around, their sockets, their pins and
their cords.
38 And those that were to encamp
before the tabernacle eastward, before
the tabernacle of the congregation,
toward the sun rising, were Moses,
Aaron and his sons, keeping the
charge of the sanctuary and the charge
of the sons of Israel. And the stranger
who goes near shall die.
39 All numbered of the Levites,
whom Moses and Aaron numbered at
the mouth of YAHWEH, by their
families, all the males from a son of a
month and upward were twenty two
thousand.
40 And YAHWEH said to Moses,
Number every first-born male of the
sons of Israel from a son of a month
and upward, and take the number of
their names.
41 And you shall take the Levites for
Me, I am YAHWEH, instead of every
first-born among the sons of Israel;
and the cattle of the Levites instead of
every firstling among the livestock of
the sons of Israel.
42 And Moses numbered as
YAHWEH commanded him, all the
first-born among the sons of Israel.
43 And all the first-born males
according to the number of names,
from a son of a month and upward, of
those numbered of them were twenty
two thousand, two hundred and
seventy three.
44 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
45 Take the Levites instead of all the
first-born among the sons of Israel,
and the cattle of the Levites instead of
their cattle. And the Levites shall be
Mine; I am YAHWEH.
46 And from those redeemed of the
two hundred and seventy three who
are more than the Levites, of the
firstborn of the sons of Israel,
47 you shall even take five shekels
apiece, by the head; you shall take by
the shekel of the sanctuary; twenty
gerahs to the shekel.
48 And you shall give the silver to
Aaron, and to his sons, of the
redeemed over and above among
them.
49 And Moses shall take the
redemption silver from those that are
over and above those that were
redeemed by the Levites,
50 from the first-born of the sons of
Israel he shall take the silver, a
thousand, three hundred and sixty five
by the sanctuary shekel.
51 And Moses shall give the silver of
those redeemed to Aaron and to his
sons, according to the command of

YAHWEH, as YAHWEH has commanded Moses.

Chapter 4

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,
2 Lift the heads of the sons of Kohath from among the sons of Levi, by their families, by their fathers' houses,
3 from a son of thirty years and upward, even until fifty years old, all that enter upon the service, to do work in the tent of meeting.
4 This shall be the service of the sons of Kohath in the tent of the congregation, the Holy of Holies.
5 Aaron and his sons shall come in, when the camp pulls out, and shall take down the veil of the hanging, and shall cover the ark of the testimony with it.
6 And he shall put a covering of Tachash skins on it, and shall spread a garment entirely of blue on top, and shall put in its staves.
7 And they shall spread a blue cloth on the table of the showbread and shall put its dishes and the spoons, the bowls, the cups of the drink offering and the continual bread on it.
8 And they shall spread a cloth of scarlet over them, and shall cover it with a covering of Tachash skin, and shall put in its staves.
9 And he shall take a blue cloth and shall cover the menorah of the lamp, and its lights, its tongs, its firepans and all its oil vessels with which they minister to it.
10 And they shall put it and all its vessels into a covering of Tachash[1] skin, and shall put it on the bar.
11 And they shall spread a blue cloth on the golden altar, and shall cover it with a covering of Tachash skin, and shall put in its staves.
12 And they shall take all the vessels of ministry with which they minister in the sanctuary, and shall put them into a blue cloth, and shall cover them with a covering of Tachash skin, and shall put them on the bar.
13 And they shall remove the ashes of the altar, and shall spread over it a purple cloth;
14 and shall put on it all its vessels with which they minister around it, the firepans, the hooks, the shovels and the bowls, all the vessels of the altar. And they shall spread a covering of Tachash skin on it, and shall put in its staves.
15 And when Aaron and his sons have finished covering the sanctuary, and all the sanctuary vessels as the camp pulls up stakes, then afterward the sons of Kohath shall come to bear. And they shall not touch the holy thing, that they may not die. These are the burden of the sons of Kohath in the tent of meeting.
16 And the oversight of Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest shall be the oil of the lamp, and the sweet incense, and the continual food offering, and the anointing oil. He shall oversee all the tabernacle, and all that is in it, in the sanctuary, and its furniture.
17 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,
18 Do not cut off the tribe of the families of the Kohathites from among the Levites.
19 But do this to them, and they shall live and not die as they draw near the Holy of Holies. Aaron and his sons shall go in, and shall appoint them each man to his service, and to his burden.
20 And they shall not go in to see

[1] Tachash- archaic word that may mean blue or the verb form means to move quickly and could mean a quick animal. Please see note on Ex 25:5.

when the holy thing is covered, that
they may not die.
21 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
22 Lift the heads of the sons of
Gershon also, by their fathers' house,
by their families,
23 from a son of thirty years and
upward, you shall number them, until
a son of fifty years, all that enter to
wait on the service, to serve in the
tabernacle of the congregation.
24 This is the service of the families
of the Gershonites in serving and in
bearing burdens.
25 They shall bear the curtains of the
tabernacle, and the tabernacle of the
congregation, its covering, and the
covering of Tachash skins that is on its
top, and the hanging for the door of
the tabernacle of the congregation;
26 and the hangings of the court,
and the hanging for the door of the
gate of the court by the tabernacle and
by the altar all around, and their
cords, and all the vessels of their
service, and whatever there may be to
do with them; in this they shall serve.
27 At the mouth of Aaron, and of his
sons shall be all the service of the sons
of the Gershonites, and all their
burden, and all their service. And you
shall lay a charge on them concerning
the duty of all their burden.
28 This is the service of the families
of the sons of the Gershonites in the
tabernacle of the congregation; and
their charge is under the hand of
Ithamar, son of Aaron the priest.
29 You shall number the sons of
Merari by their families, by their
fathers' house,
30 from a son of thirty years and
upward, even to a son of fifty years you
shall number them, everyone who is
going into the service, to do the work
of the tabernacle of the congregation.
31 And this is the charge of their
burden, according to all their service
in the tabernacle of the congregation:
the boards of the tabernacle, and its
bars and its pillars and its sockets,
32 the pillars of the court all around
and their sockets, their pins and their
cords, of all their vessels and of all
their service. And you shall number
the vessels of the charge of their
burden by name.
33 This is the service of the families
of the sons of Merari, for all their
service, in the tabernacle of the
congregation, by the hand of Ithamar,
son of Aaron the priest.
34 And Moses and Aaron and the
ruler of the congregation numbered
the sons of the Kohathites by their
families, and by their fathers' house,
35 from a son of thirty years and
upward, even to a son of fifty years,
everyone who is going into the service,
for work in the tabernacle of the
congregation.
36 Their numbered ones, by their
families, were two thousand, seven
hundred and fifty.
37 These were those numbered of
the families of the Kohathites,
everyone who is serving in the
tabernacle of the congregation, whom
Moses and Aaron numbered by the
mouth of YAHWEH, by the hand of
Moses.
38 And those numbered of the sons
of Gershon, by their families, and by
their fathers' house,
39 from a son of thirty years and
upward, even to a son of fifty years,
and everyone who is going into the
service, for work in the tabernacle of
the congregation,
40 even those numbered of them, by
their families, by their father's house
were two thousand, six hundred and
thirty.
41 These were those numbered of
the families of Gershon, everyone who

is serving in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron numbered at the mouth of YAHWEH.

42 And those numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, by their families, by their fathers' house,

43 from a son of thirty years and upward, even to a son of fifty years, everyone who is going into the service, for work in the tabernacle of the congregation,

44 even their numbered ones by their families were three thousand and two hundred.

45 These were those numbered of the families of the sons of Merari, whom Moses and Aaron numbered by the mouth of YAHWEH, by Moses' hand.

46 All those numbered, whom Moses and Aaron and the rulers of Israel numbered, of the Levites, by their families, and by their fathers' house,

47 from a son of thirty years and upward, even to a son of fifty years, everyone who is going in to do the work of the service, even the service of burden in the tabernacle of the congregation,

48 even their numbered ones were eight thousand, five hundred and eighty;

49 he numbered them by the mouth of YAHWEH, by the hand of Moses, each man according to his service, and according to his burden, even they were numbered by him, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

Chapter 5

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Command the sons of Israel, and they shall send every leper out of the camp, and everyone with an issue, and everyone defiled by a dead body.

3 You shall send out from male and female. You shall send them to the outside of the camp. And they shall not defile their camps in the midst of which I dwell.

4 And the sons of Israel did so, and put them outside the camp. As YAHWEH spoke to Moses, so the sons of Israel did.

5 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

6 Speak to the sons of Israel, man or woman, when they commit any of the sins of man, by committing a trespass against YAHWEH, and that person is guilty,

7 then they shall confess their sin which they have done. And he shall make restitution for his guilt in full, and add its fifth to it, and shall give it to him against whom he has been guilty.

8 And if a man has no kinsman to whom the guilt may be restored, the guilt which is restored shall belong to YAHWEH, a priest's, besides the ram of the atonement by which he makes atonement for him.

9 And every heave offering of all the holy things of the sons of Israel which they bring to the priest shall be his.

10 And any man's dedicated things shall become his, that which any man gives to the priest becomes his.

11 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

12 Speak to the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, When any man's wife goes astray, and has committed a trespass against him,

13 and a man lies with her with semen, and it has been hidden from her husband's eyes, and is kept hidden, and she is defiled, and there is no other witness against her, and she has not been caught;

14 and a spirit of jealousy has passed over him, and he has become jealous

of his wife, and she has been defiled. Or, a spirit of jealousy has passed over him, and he has become jealous of his wife, and she has not become defiled:

15 then the man shall bring his wife in to the priest, and he shall bring in her offering for her, a tenth of an ephah of barley meal. He shall not pour oil on it, nor shall he put frankincense on it, for it is a food offering of jealousy, a food offering of memorial, bringing iniquity to remembrance.

16 And the priest shall bring her near, and shall cause her to stand before YAHWEH.

17 And the priest shall take holy water in an earthen vessel. And the priest shall take of the dust which is on the tabernacle floor, and shall put it into the water.

18 And the priest shall cause the woman to stand before YAHWEH, and shall make bare the woman's head, and shall give into her hand the food offering of memorial; it is a food offering of jealousy; and in the priest's hand shall be the bitter waters which cause the curse.

19 And the priest shall cause her to swear and shall say to the woman, If no man has lain with you, and if you have not turned aside to impurity under your husband, be free from these bitter waters which cause the curse.

20 And you, if you have turned aside under your husband, and if you have been defiled, and any man besides your husband has given his semen to you,

21 then the priest shall cause the woman to swear with an oath of cursing, and the priest shall say to the woman: YAHWEH shall make you a curse and an oath among your people, when YAHWEH makes your thigh to fall away, and your belly to swell.

22 And these waters which cause the curse shall go into your bowels to cause the belly to swell, and the thigh to fall. And the woman shall say, Amen, Amen.

23 And the priest shall write these curses in a book, and shall blot them with the bitter waters.

24 And he shall cause the woman to drink the bitter waters which cause the curse. And the waters which cause the curse shall enter into her for bitter things.

25 And the priest shall take the food offering of jealousy out of the woman's hand, and shall wave the food offering before YAHWEH, and shall bring it near to the altar.

26 And the priest shall take a handful of the food offering, its memorial, and shall burn it as incense on the altar. And afterward he shall cause the woman to drink the water.

27 And when he shall cause her to drink the water, then it shall be, if she has been defiled and has committed a trespass against her husband, the waters which cause the curse shall go into her for bitter things; and her belly shall swell, and her thigh shall fall away, and the woman shall become a curse in the midst of her people.

28 And if the woman has not been defiled, and is pure, then she shall be clean and shall conceive seed.

29 This is the law of jealousies when a wife turns aside under her husband, and has been defiled;

30 or when a spirit of jealousy passes over a man, and he has become jealous of his wife, then he shall cause the woman to stand before YAHWEH, and the priest shall do to her all this law;

31 and the man shall be clean from sin, and the woman shall bear her iniquity.

Chapter 6

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel and you
shall say to them, When a man or a
woman shall vow a vow, the vow of a
Nazarite to be separated to
YAHWEH:
3 He shall separate from wine and
fermented drink; he shall not drink
vinegar of wine or vinegar of
fermented drink; he shall not drink
any juice of the grapes; and he shall
not eat dry or moist grapes.
4 All the days of his separation he
shall not eat from all that is made of
the vine, from pressed grapes, even to
the stem.
5 All the days of the vow of his
separation, a razor shall not pass over
his head; he shall be holy until all the
days are fulfilled which he has
separated to YAHWEH. He shall
allow the locks of the hair of his head
to grow long.
6 All the days of his separation to
YAHWEH he shall not go near a dead
person.
7 He shall not make himself unclean
for his father or his mother or for his
brother or his sister at their death;
because his separation to his Elohim is
on his head.
8 All the days of his separation he
shall be holy to YAHWEH.
9 And if any man dies very suddenly
beside him, and he defiles his
consecrated head, then he shall shave
his head on the day of his cleansing,
on the seventh day he shall shave it.
10 And on the eighth day he shall
bring two turtledoves or two young
pigeons to the priest, to the door of the
tent of meeting.
11 And the priest shall prepare one
for a sin offering, and one for a burnt
offering, and shall atone for him,
because he sinned by reason of the
dead body. And he shall dedicate his
head on that day.
12 And he shall separate to
YAHWEH the days of his
consecration, and shall bring a he
lamb of the first year for a guilt
offering. But the former days shall be
void, for his separation was defiled.
13 And this is the law of the
Nazarite: when the days of his
separation are fulfilled, bring him in to
the door of the tent of meeting,
14 and he shall offer his offering to
YAHWEH, one he-lamb of the first
year, without blemish, for a burnt
offering; and one she-lambs, a
yearling, without blemish, for a sin
offering; and one ram, without
blemish, for a peace offering;
15 and a basket of unleavened cakes
of flour, cakes mixed with oil, and
unleavened wafers anointed with oil,
and their food offering, and their drink
offerings.
16 And the priest shall bring them
before YAHWEH, and shall offer his
sin offering and his burnt offering.
17 And he shall offer the ram for a
sacrifice of peace offering to
YAHWEH, with the basket of
unleavened cakes. And the priest shall
offer its food offering and its drink
offering.
18 And the Nazarite shall shave the
head of his separation at the door of
the tent of meeting and shall take the
hair of the head of his separation and
shall put it on the fire which is under
the sacrifice of the peace offering[1].
19 And the priest shall take the

---

[1] He did this because it was a shame for a man to have long hair or to have his head covered before Yahweh and he could not enter the sanctuary of Yahweh until he shaved his head. The long hair of the vow caused the separation from the sanctuary. (1 Cor:11:4, 14, Ex 34:34, Ezek 44:20)

boiled shoulder from the ram and one unleavened cake out of the basket, and one unleavened wafer, and shall put them on the hands of the Nazarite after he has shaved his separation.

20 And the priest shall wave them, a wave offering before YAHWEH. It is holy to the priest, besides the breast of the wave offering, and besides the leg of the heave offering. And afterward the Nazarite shall drink wine[1].

21 This is the law of the Nazarite who vows his offering to YAHWEH for his separation, besides that which his hand may get: according to his vow which he vows, so he shall do by the law of his separation.

22 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

23 Speak to Aaron and to his sons, saying, In this way you shall bless the sons of Israel, saying to them:

24 YAHWEH bless you and keep you;

25 YAHWEH cause His face to shine on you, and be gracious to you;

26 YAHWEH lift up His face to you, and give you peace.

27 So they shall put My name on the sons of Israel, and I Myself will bless them.

Chapter 7

1 And it happened on the day that Moses finished setting up the tabernacle, he anointed it and sanctified it, and all its vessels, and the altar and all its vessels. And he anointed them and sanctified them.

2 And the rulers of Israel, the chiefs of their fathers' houses offered. These were the rulers of the tribes, these were they that stood over the numbered ones.

3 And they brought their offerings before YAHWEH, six covered wagons and twelve oxen; a wagon for every two of the rulers, for each one an ox. And they presented them before the tabernacle.

4 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

5 Take it from them, that they may be used to do the service of the tabernacle of the congregation. And you shall give them to the Levites, to each man according to his service.

6 And Moses took the wagons and the oxen and gave them to the Levites.

7 He gave two wagons and four oxen to the sons of Gershon, according to their service.

8 And he gave four wagons and eight oxen to the sons of Merari, according to their service under Ithamar, the son of Aaron the priest.

9 But he did not give any to the sons of Kohath, because the service of the holy things belonged to them. They bore them on their shoulders.

10 And the rulers brought the dedication offering of the altar in the day it was anointed. And the rulers brought near their offering before the altar.

11 And YAHWEH said to Moses, They shall present their offering, one to the day, one ruler to the day, for the dedication of the altar.

12 And he who brought his offering the first day was Nahshon the son of Amminadab, of the tribe of Judah;

13 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

14 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

[1] Some have falsely assumed that any drinking of alcohol is sin, but we clearly see from this and many scriptures that drunkenness is sin and not simply drinking a small amount of wine or alcohol.

15 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

16 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

17 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Nahshon the son of Amminadab.

18 In the second day Nethaneel the son of Zuar, ruler of Issachar, offered;

19 he brought for his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering,

20 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

21 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

22 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

23 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Nethaneel the son of Zuar.

24 On the third day Eliab the son of Helon ruler of the sons of Zebulun;

25 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

26 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

27 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

28 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

29 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Eliab the son of Helon.

30 On the fourth day Elizur the son of Shedeur, the ruler of the sons of Reuben offered;

31 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

32 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

33 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

34 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

35 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Elizur the son of Shedeur.

36 On the fifth day Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai, ruler of the sons of Simeon;

37 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

38 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

39 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

40 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

41 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Shelumiel the son of Zurishaddai.

42 On the sixth day Eliasaph the son of Deuel, ruler of the sons of Gad;

43 his offering was one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one

silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

44 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

45 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

46 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

47 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Eliasaph the son of Deuel.

48 On the seventh day Elishama the son of Ammihud, ruler of the sons of Ephraim offered;

49 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

50 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

51 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

52 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

53 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Elishama, the son of Ammihud.

54 On the eighth day Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur, ruler of the sons of Manasseh offered;

55 his offering was one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

56 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

57 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

58 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

59 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

60 On the ninth day Abidan the son of Gideoni, ruler of the sons of Benjamin offered;

61 his offering was one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

62 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

63 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

64 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

65 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Abidan the son of Gideoni.

66 On the tenth day Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai, ruler of the sons of Dan offered;

67 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

68 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

69 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

70 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

71 and for the sacrifice of the peace

offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

72 On the eleventh day Pagiel the son of Ocran, ruler of the sons of Asher offered;

73 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

74 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

75 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

76 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

77 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Pagiel the son of Ocran.

78 On the twelfth day Ahira the son of Enan, ruler of the sons of Naphtali offered;

79 his offering: one silver dish, its weight a hundred and thirty, one silver basin of seventy shekels according to the sanctuary shekel, both of them full of flour mixed with oil for a food offering;

80 one golden pan of ten shekels full of incense;

81 one young bull, one ram, one he-lamb, the son of a year, for a burnt offering;

82 one male of the goats for a sin offering;

83 and for the sacrifice of the peace offering, two oxen, five rams, five he-goats, five he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the offering of Ahira the son of Enan.

84 This was the dedication of the altar, in the day when it was anointed, at the hand of the rulers of Israel: twelve silver dishes, twelve silver basins, twelve golden pans;

85 each silver dish a hundred and thirty in weight, and each basin seventy; all the silver of the vessels was two thousand and four hundred shekels by the sanctuary shekel;

86 twelve golden pans full of incense, ten to this and ten to that pan, according to the sanctuary shekel; all the gold of the pans was a hundred and twenty.

87 All the animals for the burnt offering, twelve bulls, twelve rams, twelve yearling he-lambs, and their food offering; and the twelve males of the goats for a sin offering;

88 and all the animals for the sacrifice of the peace offering, twenty four bulls, sixty rams, sixty he-goats, sixty he-lambs, sons of a year. This was the dedication of the altar after it was anointed.

89 And when Moses went into the tent of meeting to speak with Him, he heard the voice speaking to him from the mercy-seat which is on the ark of the testimony, from between the two cherubs; and He spoke to him.

Chapter 8

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Speak to Aaron and say to him, When you go up with the lamps, the seven lamps shall give light in the front of the menorah.

3 And Aaron did so. He went up with its lamps in front of the menorah, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

4 And this was the work of the menorah: hammered work of gold to its base, and to its flowers; it was hammered work, according to the pattern which YAHWEH caused

Moses to see. So he made the menorah.

5 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

6 Take the Levites from among the sons of Israel and cleanse them.

7 And thus you will do to them to cleanse them: sprinkle water of sin offering on them. And they shall make a razor pass over all their flesh and wash their garments and cleanse themselves.

8 And they shall take a bull, a son of the herd, and its food offering, flour mixed with oil, and a second bull, a son of the herd, you shall take for a sin offering.

9 And you shall bring the Levites near before the tent of meeting. And you shall assemble all the company of the sons of Israel.

10 And you shall bring the Levites before YAHWEH; and the sons of Israel shall lay their hands on the Levites.

11 And Aaron shall wave the Levites as a wave offering before YAHWEH, from the sons of Israel, that they may serve at the service of YAHWEH.

12 And the Levites shall lay their hands on the head of the bulls. And you shall offer the one for a sin offering, and one a burnt offering to YAHWEH, to atone for the Levites.

13 And you shall cause the Levites to stand before Aaron and before his sons, and shall wave them as a wave offering to YAHWEH.

14 And you shall separate the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel, and the Levites shall become Mine. (Num 18:6, Jos 13:33)

15 And afterward the Levites shall come in to serve in the tent of meeting; and you shall cleanse them, and shall wave them, a wave offering.

16 For they are wholly given to Me from among the sons of Israel; instead of the one who opens any womb, the first-born of all, from the sons of Israel. I have taken them to Myself.

17 For every first-born among the sons of Israel among man and among animal, is Mine. I set them apart for Myself in the day I smote every first-born in the land of Egypt.

18 And I take the Levites instead of every first-born among the sons of Israel. (Num 18:6)

19 And I have given the Levites as given to Aaron and to his sons from the midst of the sons of Israel to serve in the service of the sons of Israel in the tabernacle of the congregation, and to atone for the sons of Israel, and there shall not be a plague among the sons of Israel to the sons of Israel by coming near to the sanctuary.

20 And Moses and Aaron, and all the congregation of the sons of Israel, did to the Levites according to all that YAHWEH had commanded Moses concerning the Levites; so the sons of Israel did to them.

21 And the Levites cleansed themselves, and washed their garments. And Aaron waved them as a wave offering before YAHWEH; and Aaron atoned for them, to cleanse them.

22 And afterward the Levites went in to do their service in the tent of meeting, before Aaron and before his sons; as YAHWEH commanded Moses concerning the Levites, so they did to them.

23 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

24 This is that which pertains to the Levites: from twenty five years old and upward he shall go in to do the service and the works of the tabernacle of the congregation.

25 And from a son of fifty years they shall return from the service of the work, and shall not serve any more.

26 But he shall serve with his

brothers in the tent of meeting, to keep the charge; only he shall not serve at a service. So you shall do to the Levites concerning their charge.

Chapter 9

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the first month of the second year after they had come out of the land of Egypt, saying,
2 Also the sons of Israel shall prepare the Passover in its appointed season.
3 In the fourteenth day of this month, between the evenings, you shall prepare it according to all its statutes, and according to all its ordinances.
4 And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel to prepare the Passover.
5 And they prepared the Passover in the first month on the fourteenth day of the month, between the evenings, in the wilderness of Sinai, according to all that YAHWEH had commanded Moses, so the sons of Israel did.
6 And there were men who had been defiled by the body of a man, and they had not been able to prepare the Passover on that day. And they came near before Moses, and before Aaron on that day.
7 And those men said to him, We are defiled by the body of a man. Why are we restrained so as not to be able to offer the offering of YAHWEH in its appointed season, in the midst of the sons of Israel?
8 And Moses said to them, You stand by, so that I may hear what YAHWEH will command concerning you.
9 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
10 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, If any man of you or of your generations shall be unclean by reason of a body, or be in a distant journey, yet he shall keep the Passover to YAHWEH.
11 In the second month, on the fourteenth day between the evenings, they shall keep it; they shall eat it with unleavened bread and bitter herbs;
12 they shall leave none of it until morning, nor break a bone of it. According to all the statutes of the Passover, they shall keep it.
13 But the man that is clean, and is not on a journey, and has failed to prepare the Passover, even that person shall be cut off from his people, because he did not bring the offering of YAHWEH in its appointed season, that man shall bear his sin[1].
14 And if an alien shall reside with you, and desires to keep the Passover to YAHWEH; he shall do according to the statute of the Passover, and according to its ordinance. You shall have one statute, both for the alien and for the native of the land[2].
15 And on the day that the tabernacle was reared up, the cloud covered the tabernacle, even the tabernacle of the testimony. And at evening there was on the tabernacle the appearance of fire, until morning.
16 So it was always; the cloud covered it, and the appearance of fire by night.
17 And whenever the cloud was taken up from over the tabernacle,

[1] The passover was so serious because it was the renewing of Yahweh's covenant each yr that if someone did not partake in the passover, he was cut off from Israel and the congregation. That is why it is the only set apart day to Yahweh that has a second one if by necessity the first one was missed.

[2] There is one law for both Israelites and Gentiles who have been grafted into the one tree of Israel. Later rabbis developed what they call Noahide laws for Gentiles that are not found in scripture, but only in their oral tradition.

then after that the sons of Israel pulled up stakes; and in the place where the cloud abode, there the sons of Israel encamped.

18 By the mouth of YAHWEH the sons of Israel pulled up stakes; and by the mouth of YAHWEH they encamped. All the days that the cloud remained over the tabernacle, they remained in camp.

19 And when the cloud tarried over the tabernacle many days, then the sons of Israel kept the charge of YAHWEH, and did not pull up stakes.

20 And when the cloud was over the tabernacle many days, by the mouth of YAHWEH they encamped, and by the mouth of YAHWEH they pulled up stakes.

21 And so when the cloud was there from evening until morning, when the cloud was taken up in the morning, then they pulled up stakes. Whether by day or by night, when the cloud was taken up, then they pulled up stakes.

22 Whether two days, or a month, or days, when the cloud tarried over the tabernacle, to remain over it, the sons of Israel remained in camp, and did not pull up stakes. And when it was lifted up, they pulled up stakes.

23 By the mouth of YAHWEH they encamped, and by the mouth of YAHWEH they pulled up stakes. They kept the charge of YAHWEH, by the mouth of YAHWEH, by the hand of Moses.

Chapter 10

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Make two trumpets of silver for yourself. You shall make them of hammered work, and they shall be to you for the calling of the congregation, and for causing the camps to pull up stakes.

3 And when they blow with them, all the congregation shall gather themselves to you at the door of the tent of meeting.

4 And if they blow with one, then the rulers, the heads of the thousands of Israel, shall assemble to you.

5 And when you blow an alarm, the camps that lie on the east side shall then pull up stakes.

6 And when you blow an alarm the second time, the camps that lie on the south side shall pull up stakes; they shall blow an alarm for their journeys.

7 But when the assembly is gathered, you shall blow, but you shall not sound an alarm.

8 And the sons of Aaron, the priests, shall blow with the trumpets. And they shall be to you for a never ending statute throughout your generations.

9 And when you go into battle in your land against the foe distressing you, then you shall blow with the trumpets, and you shall be remembered before YAHWEH your Elohim. And you shall be saved from your enemies.

10 And in the day of your gladness, and in your appointed times, and in your new moons, you shall blow the trumpets over your burnt offerings, and over the sacrifices of your peace offerings. And they shall be to you for a memorial before your Elohim. I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

11 And it happened in the second year, in the second month, in the twentieth of the month, the cloud went up from off the tabernacle of the testimony.

12 And the sons of Israel pulled up stakes in their journeying from the wilderness of Sinai. And the cloud stayed on it in the wilderness of Paran.

13 And they pulled up stakes first at the mouth of YAHWEH, by the hand of Moses.

14 And in the front, the standard of the camp of the sons of Judah pulled up stakes, by their armies. And over its army was Nahshon the son of Amminadab.

15 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Issachar was Nethaneel the son of Zuar.

16 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Zebulun was Eliab the son of Helon.

17 And the tabernacle was taken down, and the sons of Gershon and the sons of Merari pulled up stakes, bearing the tabernacle.

18 And the standard of the camp of Reuben pulled up stakes, by their armies. And over its army was Elizur the son of Shedeur.

19 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Simeon, Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai.

20 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Gad was Eliasaph son of Deuel.

21 And the Kohathites pulled up stakes, bearing the sanctuary. And others set up the tabernacle while they came.

22 And the standard of the camp of the sons of Ephraim pulled up stakes, by their armies. And over its army was Elishama the son of Ammihud.

23 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Manasseh was Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

24 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Benjamin was Abidan the son of Gideoni.

25 And the standard of the camp of the sons of Dan pulled up stakes, to the rear of all the camps, by their armies. And over its army was Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

26 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Asher was Pagiel the son of Ocran.

27 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Naphtali was Ahira the son of Enan.

28 These were the journeyings of the sons of Israel according to their armies. And they pulled up stakes.

29 And Moses said to Hobab the son of Reuel the Midianite, Moses' father in law, We are pulling up stakes to go to the place of which YAHWEH has said, I will give it to you. Go with us, and we will do good to you; for YAHWEH has spoken good concerning Israel.

30 And he said to him, I shall not go, but I shall go to my land and to my kindred.

31 And he said, Please do not forsake us, because you know as to how we encamp in the wilderness, and you shall be to us for eyes.

32 And it shall be when you go with us; yea, it shall be that what good YAHWEH shall do to us, we shall do good to you.

33 And they pulled up stakes from the mount of YAHWEH three days' journey. And the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH pulled out before them, three days' journey, to seek out a resting place for them.

34 And the cloud of YAHWEH was on them by day as they pulled up stakes from the camp.

35 And it happened when the ark pulled out, Moses said, Rise, O YAHWEH, and Your enemies shall be scattered, and those hating You shall flee from Your presence.

36 And when it rested, he said, Return, O YAHWEH, to the myriads of the thousands of Israel.

Chapter 11

1 And the people were evil, as those complaining in the ears of YAHWEH. And YAHWEH heard, and His anger glowed, and the fire of YAHWEH

burned among them and devoured in the extreme edge of the camp.
2 And the people cried to Moses, and Moses prayed to YAHWEH, and the fire was quenched.
3 And he called the name of that place Taberah, because the fire of YAHWEH burned among them.
4 And the mixed multitude among them lusted with a great lust; and the sons of Israel also turned back and wept, and said, Who shall cause us to eat flesh? (2 Cor 6:14)
5 We remember the fish that we ate in Egypt for nothing; the cucumbers, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic;
6 and now our soul withers. There is nothing except this manna before our eyes.
7 And the manna was like coriander seed, and its appearance like the look of bdellium resin gum.
8 And the people went around and gathered it, and ground it in mills, or beat it in mortars, and boiled it in a pan, and made it into cakes. And its taste was like the taste of fresh oil.
9 And when the dew came down on the camp by night, the manna came down on it.
10 And Moses heard the people weeping by its families, each at the door of his tent; and the anger of YAHWEH glowed exceedingly, and in the eyes of Moses it was evil.
11 And Moses said to YAHWEH, Why have You done evil to Your servant; and why have I not found grace in Your eyes to put the burden of all this people on me?
12 I, have I conceived all this people? I, have I begotten it, that You say to me, Carry it in your bosom as the foster father bears the suckling, to the land which You have sworn to its fathers?
13 Where shall I get flesh to give to all this people? For they weep to me, saying, Give to us flesh that we may eat.
14 I am not able, I alone, to bear all this people, for it is too heavy for me;
15 and if You deal thus with me, please quickly kill me, if I have found grace in Your eyes, and let me not look on my evil.
16 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Assemble to Me seventy men of the elders of Israel, whom you have known that they are elders of the people, and its officers. And you shall take them to the tent of the congregation; and they shall line up themselves there with you.
17 And I shall come down and speak with you there; and I will take of the spirit which is upon you, and will put it on them; and they will bear the burden of the people with you, that you may not bear it yourself alone.
18 And you shall say to the people, Sanctify yourselves for tomorrow, and you shall eat flesh. For you have wept in the ears of YAHWEH, saying, Who shall give us flesh, for we had good in Egypt? And YAHWEH shall give flesh to you, and you shall eat.
19 You shall not eat one day, nor two days, nor five days, nor ten days, nor twenty days;
20 but to a month of days, until it comes out of your nostrils, and it shall become to you a loathsome thing; because you have despised YAHWEH, who is in your midst, and weep before Him, saying, Why is it that we have come out of Egypt?
21 And Moses said, The people in whose midst I am are six hundred thousand footmen; and You, You have said, I shall give flesh to them, and they shall eat a month of days.
22 Shall flock and herd be slaughtered for them, so one may find for them? Are all the fish in the sea to

be gathered for them, that one may find for them?

23 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Is the hand of YAHWEH shortened? Now you shall see whether My Word shall come to pass to you or not.

24 And Moses went out and spoke to the people the words of YAHWEH and gathered seventy men of the elders of the people, and caused them to stand around the tabernacle.

25 And YAHWEH came down in the cloud and spoke to him, and set apart of the spirit which was on him, and put it on the seventy men of the elders. And it happened, as the spirit rested on them, that they prophesied, but they did not continue.

26 And two of the men were left in the camp, the name of the one being Eldad, and the name of the second Medad; and the spirit rested on them, and they were among those written, but did not go out to the tabernacle. And they prophesied in the camp.

27 And a young man ran and told Moses, and said, Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp.

28 And Yahoshua the son of Nun, minister to Moses, of his young men, answered and said, My master Moses, stop them.

29 And Moses said to him, Are you jealous for my sake? Oh that all the people of YAHWEH were prophets, that YAHWEH would put His Spirit on them!

30 And Moses withdrew into the camp, he and the elders of Israel.

31 And a wind went forth from YAHWEH and cut off quails from the sea, and let them fall by the camp, as a day's journey here, and as a day's journey there, all around the camp, and about two cubits above the face of the land.

32 And the people rose up all that day, and all that night, and the day after, and gathered the quails; he who had least had gathered ten homers. And they spread them out for themselves around the camp.

33 The flesh was yet between their teeth, it was not yet cut off, and the anger of YAHWEH glowed among the people. And YAHWEH struck among the people with a very great plague.

34 And one called the name of that place, The Graves of Lust; for there they buried the people who lusted.

35 From the Graves of Lust the people pulled up stakes to go to Hazeroth, and they remained in Hazeroth.

Chapter 12

1 And Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses, because of the Cushite woman whom he had taken. For he had taken a Cushite woman.

2 And they said, Has YAHWEH spoken only by Moses? Has He not also spoken by us? And YAHWEH heard.

3 And the man Moses was very depressed, more than any man who was on the face of the earth.

4 And YAHWEH said suddenly to Moses, and to Aaron, and to Miriam, You three come out to the tent of the meeting. And the three of them came out.

5 And YAHWEH came down in the pillar of the cloud and stood at the tabernacle door, and called Aaron and Miriam. And both of them came out.

6 And He said, Now hear My words, If your prophet is of YAHWEH, I will make Myself seen by him in an appearance; I will speak to him in a dream.

7 It is not so with My servant Moses! He is faithful in all My house.

8 I speak to him mouth to mouth, and by an appearance, and not in

riddles; and he looks upon the form of
YAHWEH. So why have you not been
afraid to speak against My servant,
against Moses?
9 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed
against them, and He left.
10 And the cloud turned away from
the tent. And, behold Miriam was
leprous as snow! And Aaron turned
toward Miriam, and, behold, she was
leprous!
11 And Aaron said to Moses, Oh my
master, I beg you, do not lay sin upon
us, by which we have done foolishly,
and by which we have sinned.
12 I pray, do not let her be as one
who is dead, of whom the flesh is half
consumed when he comes out of his
mother's womb.
13 And Moses cried to YAHWEH,
saying, O Elohim, I beg you, please
heal her.
14 And YAHWEH said to Moses, If
her father had but spit in her face,
should she not be ashamed seven
days? She shall be shut out seven days
at the outside of the camp, and
afterward she shall be brought in.
15 And Miriam was shut out at the
outside of the camp seven days, and
the people did not pull up stakes until
Miriam was brought in.
16 And afterward the people pulled
up stakes from Hazeroth, and they
encamped in the wilderness of Paran.

Chapter 13

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
2 Send men for you, and they shall
spy out the land of Canaan which I am
giving to the sons of Israel; you shall
send one man for the tribe of his
fathers, one man, every one a leader
among them.
3 And by the command of
YAHWEH Moses sent them from the
wilderness of Paran they were all of
them men, heads of the sons of Israel.
4 And these were their names: of the
tribe of Reuben, Shammua the son of
Zaccur;
5 of the tribe of Simeon, Shaphat the
son of Hori;
6 of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son
of Jephunneh;
7 of the tribe of Issachar, Igal the son
of Joseph;
8 of the tribe of Ephraim, Yahoshua
the son of Nun;
9 of the tribe of Benjamin, Palti the
son of Raphu;
10 of the tribe of Zebulun, Gaddiel
the son of Sodi;
11 of the tribe of Joseph, of the tribe
of Manasseh, Gaddi the son of Susi;
12 of the tribe of Dan, Ammiel the
son of Gemalli;
13 of the tribe of Asher, Sethur the
son of Michael;
14 of the tribe of Naphtali, Nahbi the
son of Vophsi;
15 of the tribe of Gad, Geuel the son
of Machi.
16 These were the names of the men
whom Moses sent to spy out the land.
And Moses called Hoshea the son of
Nun, Yahoshua.
17 And Moses sent them to spy out
the land of Canaan, and said to them,
You go up this way into the Negev, and
go up into the hills;
18 and you shall see the land, what it
is, and the people who are living on it,
whether it is strong or feeble; whether
it is few or many;
19 and what the land is in which they
live, whether good or bad; and what
are the cities in which they live,
whether in camps or in fortresses;
20 and what the land is, whether it is
fat or lean; whether wood is in it or
not. And you shall make yourselves
strong and shall take of the fruit of the

land. And it was the days of the first ripe grapes.

21 And they went up and spied out the land, from the wilderness of Zin to Rehob, coming to Hamath.

22 And they went up into the Negev, and came to Hebron. And Ahiman, Sheshai and Talmai, the sons of Anak, were there. And Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt.

23 And they came in to the valley of Eshcol, and cut down from there a branch and one cluster of grapes. And they carried it on a staff by two; also of the pomegranates and of the figs.

24 That place was called the Valley of Eshcol, because of the cluster which the sons of Israel cut from there.

25 And they returned from spying out the land at the end of forty days.

26 And they went and came in to Moses and to Aaron, and to all the company of the congregation of the sons of Israel, to the wilderness of Paran, to Kadesh. And they brought them and all the congregation word, and made them see the fruit of the land.

27 And they reported to him and said, We came to the land where you sent us, and indeed it is flowing with milk and honey; and this is its fruit.

28 But the people that live in the land are fierce, and the cities are walled up, very great. And also we have seen the children of Anak there.

29 Amalek lives in the land of the Negev, and the Hittite, and the Jebusite, and the Amorite live in the hills. And the Canaanite is living by the sea, and beside the Jordan.

30 And Caleb stilled the people before Moses, and said, We will certainly go up, and we will seize it, for we are well able to do it.

31 And the men who had gone up with him said, We are not able to go up against the people, for it is stronger than we.

32 And they sent out an evil report of the land which they had spied out to the sons of Israel, saying, The land into which we passed, to spy it out, is a land eating up the ones living in it. And all the people we saw in its midst were men of stature.

33 And we saw the giants there, the sons of Anak, of the giants. And we were in our own eyes as grasshoppers, and so we were in their eyes.

Chapter 14

1 And all the congregation lifted up their voice and cried; and the people wept during that night.

2 And all the sons of Israel murmured against Moses, and against Aaron. And all the congregation said to them, Oh that we had died in the land of Egypt, or in this wilderness, oh that we had died!

3 And why is YAHWEH bringing us into this land to fall by the sword? Our wives and our infants have become a prey. Is it not good for us to return to Egypt? *(Is 30:1-3, Is 31:1-3)*

4 And they said each to his brother, Let us give a leader and return to Egypt.

5 And Moses and Aaron fell on their faces before all the assembly of the congregation of the sons of Israel.

6 And Yahoshua the son of Nun, and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, of those who spied out the land, tore their garments.

7 And they spoke to all the congregation of the sons of Israel, saying, The land into which we passed, to spy it out, is an exceedingly good land.

8 If YAHWEH has delighted in us, then He will bring us into this land

and will give it to us, a land which is flowing with milk and honey.

9 Only, do not rebel against YAHWEH. And you, do not fear the people of the land, for they are our bread; their defense has turned away from them; and YAHWEH is with us; do not be afraid of them.[1]

10 And all the congregation said to stone them with stones. And the glory of YAHWEH appeared in the tent of meeting, to all the sons of Israel.

11 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Until when will this people despise[2] Me? And until when will they continue not to believe in Me for all the signs I have done in its midst?

12 I shall strike it with pestilence and dispossess it. And I will make you a nation greater and mightier than it.

13 And Moses said to YAHWEH, And the Egyptians will hear. For You have brought up this people out of their midst with Your power.

14 And they will say to the one living in this land, They have heard that You, YAHWEH, are in the midst of this people, who is seen eye to eye. You are YAHWEH, and Your cloud stands over them; in a pillar of cloud You go before them by day, and in a pillar of fire by night.

15 And will You cause this people to die as one man? Then the nations who have heard Your fame will speak, saying,

16 Because YAHWEH is not able to bring this people into the land which He swore to them, therefore He has slain them in the wilderness.

17 And now, I beg You, let the power of YAHWEH be great, as You have spoken, saying,

18 YAHWEH is slow to anger, and of great mercy, bearing away iniquity and transgression; and by no means will clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers on the sons, on the third and on the fourth generation.

19 I pray, forgive the iniquity of this people, according to the greatness of Your mercy, and as You have gone with this people from Egypt, even until now.

20 And YAHWEH said, I have forgiven according to your word;

21 but as I live, all the earth shall be filled with the glory of YAHWEH;

22 for all the men who are seeing My glory, and My miracles which I have done in Egypt and in the wilderness, and have tried Me these ten times, and have not listened to My voice,

23 they shall not see the land which I have sworn to their fathers. Yea, not one of those who provoked Me shall see it. *(Heb 3:7-12)*

24 And My servant Caleb, because there is another spirit in him, and he is fully following Me, I shall bring him into the land into which he has gone, and his seed shall possess it.

25 And the Amalekite and the Canaanite were living in the valley. Tomorrow turn and pull up stakes for yourselves; going into the wilderness, the way of the Sea of Reeds.

26 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

27 How long shall I bear with this evil company who are murmuring against Me? I have heard the murmurings of the sons of Israel which they are murmuring against Me.

28 Say to them, As I live, says YAHWEH, as surely as you have spoken in My ears, so I will do to you.[3]

---

1 The Hebrew word for defense is '*Tzel*' and means shade or shadow. Yahweh's shadow of protection was leaving the people of the land . Also, the reference to the enemy being 'their bread'. Bread was the most basic food and form of subsistence.

2 Despise- this word means to treat with contempt or blaspheme.

3 Math 12:36-37

29 Your dead bodies shall fall in this wilderness, even all your numbered sons, as to your whole number, from twenty years old and upward, in that you have murmured against Me.

30 You shall certainly not come into the land which I lifted up My hand to cause you to live in it, except Caleb the son of Jephunneh and Yahoshua the son of Nun.[1]

31 As for your infants, of whom you have said, They shall be a prey, I shall bring them in, and they shall know the land which you have rejected.

32 As for you, your carcasses shall fall in this wilderness. *(Jude 5)*

33 And your sons shall be shepherds in the wilderness forty years, and shall bear your fornications until your carcasses are wasted in the wilderness;

34 by the number of the days in which you spied out the land, forty days, a day for a year, a day for a year; you shall bear your iniquities forty years[2]; you shall know My alienation from you.

35 I am YAHWEH; I have spoken. I shall do this to all this evil company who are gathered together against Me. They shall be brought to an end in this wilderness, and there they shall die.

36 And the men whom Moses had sent to spy out the land, and who, when they returned, made all the congregation to murmur against him, by bringing up an evil report against the land,

37 even those men bringing up an evil report of the land died by the plague before YAHWEH.

38 But Yahoshua the son of Nun, and Caleb the son of Jephunneh, remained alive of those men that went to spy out the land.

39 And Moses told these words to all the sons of Israel; and the people mourned deeply.

40 And they rose up early in the morning and went up to the top of the mountain, saying, Behold, we are here, and we will go up to the place which YAHWEH has said, for we have sinned.

41 And Moses said, Why do you now transgress the mouth of YAHWEH, since it will not prosper?

42 Do not go up, for YAHWEH is not in your midst, and you will be defeated by your enemies.

43 For the Amalekite and the Canaanite are there before you; and you shall fall by the sword because you have turned back from following YAHWEH; and YAHWEH is not with you.

44 And they presumed to go up to the top of the mountain, but the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH and Moses did not leave the middle of the camp.[3]

45 And the Amalekite and the Canaanite living in that mountain came down and struck them, and beat them down, to Hormah.

Chapter 15

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

2 Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, When you have come to the land of your dwellings, which I am giving to you,

3 then you shall prepare a fire offering to YAHWEH, a burnt offering, or a sacrifice, in fulfillment of a vow, or as a freewill offering, or in your appointed seasons, to make a

---

[1] Caleb was from the tribe of Judah and Yahoshua was an Ephraimite, showing the two represented the two Houses of Israel.

[2] This day for a year principle is used different times in scripture to delineate the times of certain punishments for Israel.

[3] Yahweh's presence only goes with His ordained leadership.

soothing fragrance to YAHWEH, out of the herd, or out of the flock.
4 And he who is bringing his offering to YAHWEH shall bring near a food offering of flour, a tenth part, mixed with a fourth of a hin of oil;
5 and wine for a drink offering, a fourth of a hin you shall prepare for the burnt offering, or for a sacrifice, for the one lamb.
6 Or you shall prepare a food offering of flour for a ram, two tenth parts mixed with oil, a third of a hin;
7 and wine for a drink offering, a third part of a hin. You shall bring it near, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.
8 And when you prepare a son of the herd for a burnt offering, or for a sacrifice, in fulfillment of a vow, or peace offerings to YAHWEH,
9 then he shall bring near for the son of the herd a food offering of flour, three tenth parts, mixed with oil, a half of a hin;
10 and you shall bring wine near for a drink offering, a half of a hin, as a fire offering of soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.
11 So it shall be done for one ox, or for the one ram, or for a lamb of the sheep, or of the goats.
12 You shall prepare according to the number. So you shall do for everyone according to their number.
13 All that are native shall do these things in this way, in bringing in an offering made by fire, of a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.
14 And if an alien lives with you, or whoever may be among you, throughout your generations, and desires to offer a fire offering of a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH; as you do, so he shall do.
15 As for the congregation, there shall be one statute both for you and for the alien that lives with you, a never ending statute throughout your generations; as you are, so shall the alien be before YAHWEH[1].
16 There shall be one law and one ordinance both for you and for the alien that lives with you.
17 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
18 Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, When you come into the land to which I bring you,
19 then it shall be that when you eat of the bread of the land, you shall lift up a heave offering to YAHWEH.
20 You shall lift up a cake of the first of your dough as a heave offering; as the heave offering of the threshing floor, so you shall lift it up.
21 You shall give of the first of your dough to YAHWEH, a heave offering for your generations.
22 And when you shall err and shall not perform all these commands which YAHWEH has spoken to Moses,
23 even all that YAHWEH has commanded you by the hand of Moses from the day that YAHWEH commanded, and onward for your generations,
24 then it shall be, if it be done in ignorance by the congregation, without knowledge, even all the congregation shall offer a son of the herd, one bull, for a burnt offering, for a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH, and its food offering, and its drink offering, according to the ordinance; and one kid of the goats for a sin offering.
25 And the priest shall atone for all the congregation of the sons of Israel; and it shall be forgiven them. For it was in ignorance, and they have brought their offering, a fire offering

1 There are not separate laws for Israelites and Gentiles grafted into Israel, but one Torah for everyone.

to YAHWEH, and their sin offering before YAHWEH for their error.

26 And all the congregation of the sons of Israel, and the alien that lives among them, shall be forgiven; for as to all the people, it was in ignorance.

27 And if one person sins through ignorance, then he shall bring a she goat of the first year for a sin offering.

28 And the priest shall atone for the soul that errs when he sins through ignorance before YAHWEH to atone for him. And he shall be forgiven,

29 both the native among the sons of Israel, and the alien that lives among them; one law shall be to you for him who acts in error.

30 And the soul that does anything with a high hand in defiance, whether of a native or of the alien, the same blasphemes YAHWEH. And that person shall be cut off from the midst of his people.

31 For he has despised the Word of YAHWEH and has broken His command; that soul shall utterly be cut off; his iniquity shall be on him.

32 And while the sons of Israel were in the wilderness they found a man gathering sticks on the Sabbath day.

33 And those who found him gathering sticks brought him to Moses and Aaron, and to all the congregation.

34 And they put him under guard; for it had not been declared what should be done to him.

35 And YAHWEH said to Moses, surely, the man shall die; all the congregation shall stone him with stones outside the camp.

36 And all the congregation brought him outside the camp and stoned him with stones. And he died, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

37 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

38 Speak to the sons of Israel and you shall say to them that they shall make themselves fringes on the corners of their garments, for their generations. And they shall put a thread of blue with the fringe of each corner. *(Deut 22:12)*

39 And He[1] shall be to you for a fringe, that you may look on it and remember all the commandments of YAHWEH, and do them; and that you do not go about after your own heart and your own eyes after which you fornicate;

40 that you may remember and do all My commandments, and be holy to your Elohim.

41 I am YAHWEH your Elohim who brought you out of the land of Egypt, to be your Elohim. I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

Chapter 16

1 And Korah, the son of Izhar, the son of Kohath, the son of Levi, took also Dathan and Abiram the sons of Eliab, and On, the son of Peleth, the sons of Reuben;

2 and they rose up before Moses, with certain of the sons of Israel, two hundred and fifty rulers of the congregation, elect men of the assembly, men of name.

3 And they were assembled against Moses and against Aaron, and said to them, You take too much! For all the congregation, all of them are holy, and YAHWEH is among them. Why then do you lift up yourselves above the assembly of YAHWEH?

4 And Moses heard and fell on his face.

5 And he spoke to Korah, and to all his company, saying, In the morning

[1] The verb "*shall be*" is in the third person future tense and can mean either "*he*" or "*it*", but in context it seems to be speaking of the Messiah being the authority to them by the tassel. (Math 9:20-21)

YAHWEH will know who are His, and him who is holy, and shall cause him to come near Him; even him whom He may choose, He will cause to come near to Him.
6 Do this: take fire-pans for yourselves, Korah, and all his company,
7 and put fire in them, and put incense on them before YAHWEH tomorrow; and it shall be, the man whom YAHWEH chooses, he shall be the holy one. You take too much, sons of Levi!
8 And Moses said to Korah, Hear now, you sons of Levi,
9 is it too little a thing to you that the Elohim of Israel has separated you from the congregation of Israel to bring you near to Himself, to do the service of the tabernacle of YAHWEH, and to stand before the congregation to minister to them?
10 Yea, He has brought you near, and all your brothers, the sons of Levi, with you. And will you seek the priesthood also?
11 Therefore, you and all your company that have gathered against YAHWEH, What is Aaron that you murmur against him?
12 And Moses sent to call for Dathan and for Abiram, the sons of Eliab; and they said, We will not come up.
13 Is it a small thing that you have brought us up out of a land flowing with milk and honey, to kill us in the wilderness, but must you also seize dominion over us[1]?
14 Yea, you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey, nor given us inheritance in fields and vineyards; will you put out the eyes of these men? We will not come up!
15 And Moses was very angry, and said to YAHWEH, Do not respect their offering; I have not taken one donkey from them, nor have I done evil to one of them.
16 And Moses said to Korah, You and all your company, you be there before YAHWEH, you and they, and Aaron tomorrow.
17 And each one take his fire-pan, and you shall put incense on them, and shall offer before YAHWEH, each his fire-pan, two hundred and fifty fire-pans; even you and Aaron, each his fire-pan.
18 And they each took his fire-pan, and put fire on them, and lay incense on them, and they stood at the door of the tent of meeting, with Moses and Aaron.
19 And Korah assembled all the congregation against them, to the door of the tent of meeting, and the glory of YAHWEH was seen by all the congregation.
20 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,
21 Separate yourselves from the midst of this company, and I will consume them in a moment[2].
22 And they fell on their faces, and said, O Elohim, Elohim of the spirits of all flesh; shall one man sin, and will You be angry with all the congregation?
23 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
24 Speak to the congregation, saying, You get away from around the tent of Korah, Dathan, and Abiram.
25 And Moses rose up and went to Dathan and Abiram, and the elders of Israel went after him.

[1] This is paramount to blasphemy, as they are condemning the great work Yahweh did by taking them out of Egypt and then calling the slavery in Egypt a land flowing with milk and honey.

[2] We see the consequences when Yahweh's judicial order is challenged. Yahweh's mercy is unending but only when there is repentance and not when there is a prideful hardened heart of rebellion.

26 And he spoke to the
congregation, saying, Please turn away
from the tents of these wicked men,
and do not touch anything that they
have, lest you be consumed in all their
sins.
27 And they got away from around
the tent of Korah, Dathan, and
Abiram; and Dathan and Abiram came
out, standing at the door of their tents,
and their wives, their sons, and their
infants.
28 And Moses said, By this you shall
know that YAHWEH has sent me to
do all these works, and that not from
my own heart.
29 If these die according to the death
of all men, and are visited according to
the visitation of all men, then
YAHWEH has not sent me.
30 And if YAHWEH makes a new
thing, and the ground opens its mouth
and swallows them, and all that they
have, and they go down alive to Sheol,
then you shall know that these men
have despised YAHWEH.
31 And it happened, as he made an
end of speaking all these words, the
ground which was under them split
apart,
32 and the earth opened her mouth
and swallowed them, and their houses,
and all the men who were for Korah,
and all their possessions.
33 And they went down, they and all
that they had, alive to Sheol, and the
earth covered over them; and they
perished from the midst of the
assembly.
34 And all Israel who were around
them fled at their cry; for they said,
Lest the earth swallow us up.
35 And fire came forth from
YAHWEH and consumed the two
hundred and fifty men that offered the
incense.
36 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
37 Speak to Eleazar, the son of
Aaron, the priest, and he shall lift up
the fire-pans from the midst of the
burning, and shall scatter the fire
yonder, for they have become holy,
38 the fire-pans of these sinners
against their own souls. And they shall
make of them spread out plates, a
covering for the altar, for they have
brought them near before YAHWEH,
and they are holy[1]. And they shall
become a sign to the sons of Israel.
39 And Eleazar the priest took the
copper fire-pans, which they who were
burned had brought near, and they
spread them out, a covering for the
altar,
40 a memorial to the sons of Israel,
so that an alien who is not of the seed
of Aaron shall not draw near to offer
incense before YAHWEH, and shall
not be as Korah, and as his company;
as YAHWEH had spoken by the hand
of Moses to him.
41 And all the congregation of the
sons of Israel murmured on the next
day against Moses and against Aaron,
saying, You have killed the people of
YAHWEH.
42 And it happened, as the company
was called together against Moses and
against Aaron, that they turned toward
the tent of meeting. And, behold, the
cloud had covered it, and the glory of
YAHWEH appeared!
43 And Moses and Aaron came to
the front of the tabernacle of the
congregation.
44 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
45 Get away from the midst of this
company, and I shall consume them in
a moment; and they fell on their faces.
46 And Moses said to Aaron, Take
the fire-pan, and put fire on it from the
altar, and lay on incense, and go, hurry

[1] Once we dedicate something to Yahweh it becomes set apart and no longer our own.

to the congregation, and atone for them, for the wrath has gone out from the presence of YAHWEH; the plague has begun.
47 And Aaron did as Moses had spoken, and ran into the midst of the assembly. And, behold, the plague had begun among the people! And he laid on the incense and atoned for the people,
48 and stood between the dead and the living, and the plague was stayed.
49 And those who died by the plague were fourteen thousand and seven hundred, besides those who died for the matter of Korah.
50 And Aaron turned back to Moses, to the door of the tabernacle of the congregation; and the plague was stayed.

Chapter 17

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel, and take from each of them a rod, for a father's house, from all their rulers, for the house of their fathers, twelve rods. You shall write the name of each on his rod.
3 And you shall write Aaron's name on the staff of the tribe of Levi; for one rod shall be for the head of their fathers' house.
4 And you shall place them in the tent of meeting, before the testimony, where I shall meet with you.
5 And it shall be that the man's rod which I choose shall blossom. And I shall cause the murmurings of the sons of Israel, which they are murmuring against you, to stop from Me.
6 And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel, and all their rulers gave to him one rod for each ruler, one rod for a ruler, for their fathers' house, twelve rods; and the rod of Aaron was among the rods.
7 And Moses placed the rods before YAHWEH, in the tent of the testimony.
8 And it happened on the next day, Moses went into the tent of the testimony, and, behold! The rod of Aaron for the house of Levi had budded, and put forth buds, and bloomed blossoms, and bore ripe almonds[1].
9 And Moses brought out all the rods from before YAHWEH to all the sons of Israel. And they looked, and each one took his rod.
10 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Put back the rod of Aaron, before the testimony, to be kept as a token to the sons of rebellion. And you shall end their murmurings from Me; and they shall not die.
11 And Moses did as YAHWEH had commanded him; so he did.
12 And the sons of Israel spoke to Moses, saying, Behold, we die, we perish, we all perish.
13 Anyone who draws near to the tabernacle of YAHWEH shall die; shall we be consumed to die?

Chapter 18

1 And YAHWEH said to Aaron, You, and your sons, and your father's house with you shall bear the iniquity of the sanctuary. And you, and your sons with you, shall bear the iniquity of your priesthood;
2 and also your brothers, the tribe of Levi, the tribe of your father, you shall bring near with you, that they may be

[1] The almond tree is the first tree each year to bear flowers and bud but the last to bear its fruit, and was known in ancient times for its diligence. Due to this Yahweh used it to show His unswerving backing of Aaron as High Priest.

joined to you and may minister to you, you and your sons in your being before the tent of the testimony.

3 And they shall keep your charge and the charge of all the tabernacle; only, they shall not go near to the vessels of the sanctuary and to the altar. And they shall not die, either they or you.

4 And they shall be joined to you, and shall keep the charge of the tent of meeting, for all the service of the tabernacle, and a foreigner shall not go near to you.

5 And you shall keep the charge of the sanctuary, and the charge of the altar, and there shall be no more wrath against the sons of Israel.

6 And I, behold, I have taken your brothers the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel; as a gift they are given to you by YAHWEH, to do the service of the tent of meeting. (Num 8:14-19)

7 And you, and your sons with you, shall keep your priesthood, in everything that pertains to the altar, and to that inside the veil. And you shall serve; I have given you the priesthood as a service of gift; and the stranger who comes near shall be caused to die.

8 And YAHWEH spoke to Aaron, saying, And I, behold, I have given to you the charge of My heave offerings, of all the devoted things of the sons of Israel. I have given them to you for the anointing, and to your sons, by a perpetual statute.

9 This shall be yours of the most holy things, from the fire: every offering of theirs, even every food offering of theirs, and every sin offering of theirs, and every guilt offering of theirs, which they may render to Me; it shall be most holy to you, and to your sons.

10 You shall eat it in the Holy Place; every male shall eat it; it shall be holy to you.

11 And this is yours, the heave offering of their gift with all the wave offerings of the sons of Israel. I have given them to you, and to your sons, and to your daughters with you, by a never ending statute; every clean one in your house shall eat it.

12 All the best of the oil, and all the best of the new wine, and wheat, the first fruits of them which they give to YAHWEH, I have given to you.

13 The first-fruits of all that is in their land, which they bring in to YAHWEH shall be yours; every clean one in your house shall eat it;

14 every devoted thing in Israel shall be yours;

15 every one opening a womb of all flesh which they offer to YAHWEH, among man and among animal, shall be yours. Only, you shall certainly redeem the first-born of man, and you shall redeem the firstling of the unclean beasts.

16 And their redeemed ones, from a month old, you shall redeem with your valuation of silver, five shekels, by the shekel of the sanctuary; it is twenty gerahs.

17 But the firstling of an ox, or the firstling of a sheep, or the firstling of a goat, you shall not redeem; they are holy. You shall sprinkle their blood on the altar, and you shall burn their fat as incense, a fire offering of soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.

18 And their flesh shall be yours, as the breast of the wave offering, and as the right leg; it shall be yours.

19 All the heave offerings of the holy things which the sons of Israel shall lift up to YAHWEH, I have given to you and to your sons, and to your daughters with you, by a never ending statute, a covenant of salt, it shall be

forever before YAHWEH to you and to your seed with you.

20 And YAHWEH said to Aaron, You shall have no inheritance in their land, nor shall you have any portion among them; I am your portion and your inheritance among the sons of Israel[1].

21 And, behold, I have given all the tithe in Israel to the sons of Levi for an inheritance, in return for their service which they are serving, the service of the tent of meeting.

22 And the sons of Israel shall not come near to the tent of meeting any more, lest they bear sin, and die.

23 But the Levites shall do the service of the tent of meeting, and they shall bear their iniquity; it shall be a never ending statute throughout your generations, that in the midst of the sons of Israel they shall have no inheritance;

24 but the tithes of the sons of Israel which they shall lift up to YAHWEH, a heave offering, I have given to the Levites for inheritance; therefore I have said to them, They shall have no inheritance among the sons of Israel.

25 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

26 And you shall say to the Levites; and you shall speak to them, When you take the tithe from the sons of Israel, which I have given to you from them, for your inheritance, then you shall lift from it a heave offering of YAHWEH, a tithe of the tithe.

27 And your heave offering shall be counted to you as grain from the threshing floor, and as fullness from the winepress.

28 So you also shall lift up the heave offering of YAHWEH from all your tithes which you receive from the sons of Israel. And you shall give from it the heave offering of YAHWEH to Aaron the priest.

29 You shall lift up the whole heave offering of YAHWEH out of all your gifts, out of all its fat, its holy part, out of it.

30 And you shall say to them, When you lift up its fat out of it, then it shall be counted to the Levites as increase of a threshing floor, and as increase of a winepress.

31 And you shall eat it in every place, you and your households, for it is your reward in return for your service in the tabernacle of the congregation.

32 And you shall bear no sin because of it, since you have lifted up from it the best of it. And you shall not profane the holy things of the sons of Israel so that you may not die.

Chapter 19

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

2 This is the statute of the law which YAHWEH has commanded, saying, Speak to the sons of Israel, that they bring you a red heifer, without blemish, in which there is no blemish, on which no yoke ever came. (Math 11:28-30)

3 And you shall give her to Eleazar the priest, and she shall be brought forth outside the camp; and she shall be slaughtered before his face.
(Heb 13:11-13)

4 And Eleazar the priest shall take of her blood with his finger, and shall sprinkle of her blood toward the front of the tent of meeting seven times.

5 And the heifer shall be burned before his eyes; her skin, and her flesh, and her blood with her dung, shall be burned.

6 And the priest shall take cedar

[1] True priests of Yahweh do not gather and hoard mammon, but live by faith and trust Yahweh to provide as they are His possession.

wood, and hyssop and scarlet, and shall cast it into the midst of the burning of the heifer.

7 Then the priest shall wash his clothes, and he shall bathe his flesh in water, and afterward he may come into the camp; and the priest shall be unclean until the evening.

8 And he that burned her shall wash his clothes in water, and shall bathe his flesh in water, and shall be unclean until the evening.

9 And a man that is clean shall gather up the ashes of the heifer, and shall lay them up outside the camp in a clean place. And it shall be kept for the congregation of the sons of Israel for a water of impurity[1]; it is a sin offering.

10 And he that gathers the ashes of the heifer shall wash his clothes, and shall be unclean until the evening; and it shall be to the sons of Israel, and to the stranger that lives among them, for a never ending statute.

11 He that touches the dead body of any man shall be unclean seven days.

12 He shall cleanse himself for it on the third day, and on the seventh day he shall be clean. And if he does not cleanse himself on the third day, then on the seventh day he shall not be clean[2].

13 Anyone who touches the dead body, the body of a man who dies, and does not cleanse himself, he shall have defiled the tabernacle of YAHWEH; and that person shall be cut off from Israel, for the water of impurity shall not be sprinkled upon him. He shall be unclean; his uncleanness shall be still on him.

14 This is the law when a man dies in a tent: Everyone who comes into the tent, and all that is in the tent, shall be unclean seven days.

15 And every open vessel which has no covering of thread on it shall be unclean.

16 And whoever in the open field touches one that has been pierced with a sword, or one that has died of himself, or the bone of a man, or a grave, shall be unclean seven days.

17 And for the unclean they shall take the ashes of the burning of the sin offering, and living water in a vessel shall be put on it.

18 And a clean person shall take hyssop, and shall dip it in the water, and shall sprinkle it upon the tent, and upon all the vessels, and upon the persons that were there, and upon him that touched the bone, or the slain, or the dead, or the grave.

19 And the clean person shall sprinkle on the unclean on the third day, and on the seventh day; and on the seventh day he shall purify himself; and he shall wash his clothes, and bathe himself in water, and shall be clean at evening.

20 But the man that shall be unclean, and shall not purify himself, that soul shall be cut off from the midst of the congregation, because he has defiled the sanctuary of YAHWEH; the water for impurity has not been sprinkled on him; he shall be unclean[3].

---

1 This water was used for the ceremonial washings for when one became ceremonially unclean.

2 The Red Heifer was the only sacrifice that was done on the third altar across the Kidron Valley on the slope of the Mount of Olives right below where the crucifixion of Yahshua the Messiah took place. This sacrifice was clearly pointing toward His cleansing of all sin through baptism in His name. If one did not cleanse himself on the third day (through the resurrection) he would not be clean on the 7th day (picturing the millennium and the resurrection).

3 Another clear prelude to the baptism ceremony which would become the sign of the New Covenant.

21 And it shall be a continual statute to them; and he that sprinkles the water of impurity shall wash his clothes; and he that touches the water of sprinkling shall be unclean until evening.

22 And whatever the unclean person touches shall be unclean; and the soul that touches it shall be unclean until evening.

Chapter 20

1 And the sons of Israel, even the whole congregation, came into the wilderness of Zin in the first month; and the people remained in Kadesh. And Miriam died there, and was buried there.

2 And there was no water for the congregation, and they were gathered against Moses, and against Aaron.

3 And the people contended with Moses, and spoke, saying, Oh that we had died when our brothers died before YAHWEH!

4 And, why have you brought the assembly of YAHWEH to this wilderness to die there, we and our animals?

5 And, why have you brought us up out of Egypt to bring us to this evil place, not a place of seed, nor fig, nor vine, nor pomegranate; and there is no water to drink?

6 And Moses and Aaron went in from the eyes of the assembly, to the door of the tent of meeting; and fell on their faces. And the glory of YAHWEH appeared to them.

7 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

8 Take the rod, and assemble the congregation, you and your brother Aaron. And speak to the rock before their eyes. And it shall give forth its water; and you shall bring water out of the rock to them; so you shall water the congregation and their animals.

9 And Moses took the rod from before YAHWEH, as He commanded him.

10 And Moses and Aaron assembled the congregation before the rock. And he said to them, Hear now, you rebels, shall we bring forth water to you out of this rock?

11 And Moses lifted up his hand and smote the rock with his rod twice; and much water came out; and the congregation and their animals drank.

12 And YAHWEH said to Moses and Aaron, Because you did not believe in Me, to sanctify Me before the eyes of the sons of Israel, therefore you shall not bring in this congregation to the land which I have given to them.[1]

13 These are the Waters of Meribah[2], because the sons of Israel contended with YAHWEH, and He was sanctified among them.

14 And Moses sent messengers from Kadesh to the king of Edom: So says your brother Israel, You surely have known all the travail which has found us;

15 that our fathers went down to Egypt, and we lived in Egypt many days, and the Egyptians did evil to us and to our fathers.

16 And we cried to YAHWEH, and He heard our voice, and sent a messenger, and is bringing us out of Egypt; and, behold, we are in Kadesh, a city on the edge of your border.

17 Please let us pass over, through

1 This was a grave sin before Yahweh, as Moses had started to take for granted the great power that Yahweh had given him, and did not follow the instructions of speaking to the rock but pridefully struck the rock in defiance to Elohim's command. This loss of self-control and lack of judgment cost him entrance into the Promised Land. Deut 1:37-38.

2 Meribah means strife.

your land; we shall not pass over through a field, nor through a vineyard, nor shall we drink water of a well; we shall go along the king's highway. We will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left, until we have passed your border.

18 And Edom said to him, You shall not pass through me, lest I come out with the sword against you.

19 And the sons of Israel said to him, We shall go in the highway; and if we drink of your waters, our cattle and us, then I shall give their price. Only let me pass through on my feet; there shall be no speech.

20 And he said, You shall not pass through. And Edom came out against him with many people, and with a strong hand.

21 And Edom refused to allow Israel to pass over through his border. And Israel turned away from him.

22 And the sons of Israel, the whole congregation, pulled up stakes from Kadesh and came in to Mount Hor.

23 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses and Aaron in Mount Hor, on the edge of the land of Edom, saying,

24 Aaron shall be gathered to his people, for he shall not go into the land which I have given to the sons of Israel, because you rebelled against My mouth at the Waters of Strife.

25 Take Aaron and his son Eleazar, and cause them to go up to Mount Hor;

26 and strip Aaron of his garments, and you shall put them on his son Eleazar. And Aaron shall be gathered and shall die there.

27 And Moses did as YAHWEH had commanded; and they went up to Mount Hor before the eyes of all the congregation.

28 And Moses stripped Aaron of his garments, and clothed his son Eleazar with them. And Aaron died there on the top of the mountain. And Moses and Eleazar came down from the mountain.

29 And all the congregation saw that Aaron had died, and they mourned Aaron thirty days, all the house of Israel.

Chapter 21

1 And King Arad the Canaanite, who lived in the south, heard that Israel had come the Way of Spies; and he fought against Israel, and took some of them captive.

2 And Israel vowed a vow to YAHWEH, and said, If giving You give this people into my hand, then I will exterminate their cities.

3 And YAHWEH listened to the voice of Israel, and delivered up the Canaanites; and they utterly destroyed them and their cities; and the name of the place was called Hormah.

4 And they pulled up stakes from Mount Hor by the way to the Red Sea, to go around the land of Edom. And the soul of the people became impatient because of the way.

5 And the people spoke against Elohim, and against Moses, Why have you brought us out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? For there is no bread, and there is no water; and our soul hates this light bread.

6 And YAHWEH sent the Seraphaim in the form of serpents among the people; and they bit the people, and many people of Israel died.

7 And the people came in to Moses and said, We have sinned, for we have spoken against YAHWEH, and against you. Pray to YAHWEH, and He shall turn the serpent away from us. And Moses prayed on behalf of the people.

8 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,

Make yourself a Seraph, and set it on a
pole; and it shall be that when anyone
is bitten, when he sees it, he shall live.
9 And Moses made a serpent of
copper and put it on a pole; and it
happened, if a serpent had bitten any
man, when he looked to the copper
serpent, he lived.
10 And the sons of Israel pulled up
stakes and encamped in Oboth.
11 And they pulled up stakes from
Oboth, and camped in Ijeabarim, in
the wilderness that is before Moab,
toward the rising of the sun.
12 From there they pulled up stakes
and camped in the valley of Zered.
13 From there they pulled up stakes
and camped beyond Arnon, which is in
the wilderness that comes out of the
border of the Amorite; for Arnon is the
border of Moab, between Moab and
the Amorite;
14 therefore, it is said in the Book of
the Wars of YAHWEH: Waheb in
Suphah, the torrents of Arnon,
15 and the slope of the torrent-beds
that turn down toward the site of Ar,
and lean on the border of Moab.
16 And from there they went to Beer;
that is the well of which YAHWEH
spoke to Moses, saying, Gather the
people and I will give water to them.
17 Then Israel sang this song: Spring
up, O well, sing to it;
18 The well which the rulers dug,
which the nobles of the people dug
with their staves, at the word of the
Lawgiver. And from the wilderness
they went to Mattanah.
19 And from Mattanah they went to
Nahaliel; and from Nahaliel to
Bamoth;
20 and from Bamoth in the valley
which is in the field of Moab to the top
of Pisgah, and looking toward the
wilderness.
21 And Israel sent messengers to
Sihon king of the Amorites, saying,
22 Let me pass through your land;
we will not turn into a field or into a
vineyard; we will not drink waters of a
well; we will go in the king's highway
until we have passed over your border.
23 And Sihon would not allow Israel
to pass through his border. And Sihon
gathered all his people and went out to
meet Israel in the wilderness, and they
came to Jahaz and fought against
Israel.
24 And Israel struck him by the
mouth of the sword and seized his
land, from Arnon to Jabbok, to the
sons of Ammon. For the border of the
sons of Ammon was strong.
25 And Israel took all these cities.
And Israel dwelt in all the cities of the
Amorite, in Heshbon and in all its
daughter villages.
26 For Heshbon was the city of
Sihon king of the Amorites. And he
had fought against the former king of
Moab and had taken his land out of his
hand, to Arnon.
27 On account of this the parable
speakers say, Come to Heshbon! Let
the city of Sihon be built and
established!
28 For a fire has gone out of
Heshbon, a flame from the city of
Sihon; it has consumed Ar of Moab,
the lords of the high places of Arnon.
29 Woe to you, Moab! You are
undone, O people of Chemosh! He has
given his sons as fugitives and his
daughters into captivity, to Sihon king
of the Amorites.
30 We have cast them down;
Heshbon has perished, even to Dibon;
and we have ravaged even to Nophah,
which is to Medeba.
31 And Israel dwelt in the land of the
Amorites.
32 And Moses sent to spy out Jaazer,
and they took its villages and drove
out the Amorite who was there.
33 And they turned and went the

way of Bashan. And Og king of Bashan
came out to meet them, he and all his
people, to battle at Edrei.
34 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Do
not fear him, for I have given him into
your hand, and all his people and his
land. And you shall do to him as you
have done to Sihon king of the
Amorites, who dwelt at Heshbon.
35 And they struck him and his sons
and all his people until he did not have
a remnant left. And they seized his
land.

Chapter 22

1 And the sons of Israel pulled up
stakes and camped on the plains of
Moab, beyond the Jordan, by Jericho.
2 And Balak the son of Zippor saw all
that Israel had done to the Amorites.
3 And Moab greatly feared because
of the people, for it was many. And
Moab was vexed by the presence of the
sons of Israel.
4 And Moab said to the elders of
Midian, Now this assembly is licking
up all that is around us, as the ox licks
up the grass of the field. And Balak the
son of Zippor was king of Moab at that
time.
5 And he sent messengers to Balaam
the son of Beor, to Pethor which is
beside the River of the land of the sons
of his people, to call for him, saying,
Behold! A people has come out of
Egypt. Behold! it has covered the eye
of the earth, and it is sitting next to
me.
6 And now please come, curse this
people for me, for it is stronger than I.
Perhaps I will prevail, that we may
strike them, that I may drive them out
from the land. For I know that
whoever you bless is blessed, and
whoever you curse is cursed.
7 And the elders of Moab and the
elders of Midian left with the rewards
of the seer in their hand. And they
came to Balaam and spoke the words
of Balak to him.
8 And he said to them, Stay here
tonight, and I will bring back word to
you, even as YAHWEH may speak to
me. And the leaders of Moab stayed
with Balaam.
9 And Elohim came to Balaam and
said, Who are these men with you?
10 And Balaam said to Elohim, Balak
the son of Zippor king of Moab has
sent to me,
11 saying, Behold, a people has come
out of Egypt which covers the eye of
the earth. Now come, curse them for
me; perhaps I will be able to overcome
it and drive it out.
12 And Elohim said to Balaam, You
shall not go with them.[1] You shall not
curse the people, for it is blessed.
13 And Balaam rose in the morning
and said to the leaders of Balak. Go to
your land, for YAHWEH has refused
to allow me to go with you.
14 And the leaders of Moab rose up
and came to Balak. And they said,
Balaam refuses to come with us.
15 And Balak sent yet again, more
leaders and more honorable than they.
16 And they came to Balaam and
said to him, So says Balak the son of
Zippor, Please do not be hindered
from coming to me,
17 for I will honor you with very
much riches; and all that you say to
me I will do. And please come, curse
this people for me.
18 And Balaam answered and said to
the servants of Balak, If Balak would
give to me his house full of gold and
silver, I could not go beyond the
mouth of YAHWEH my Elohim, to do
anything, small or great.[2]
19 And now you also please stay here

---

[1] Yahweh is not saying Balaam could not physically go with them but not to be with them in purpose of cursing Israel.

tonight. And I shall know what more
YAHWEH may speak to me[1].
20 And Elohim came to Balaam at
night and said to him, If the men have
come to call you, rise up, go with them
and say only the thing that I speak to
you; it you shall do.
21 And Balaam rose up in the
morning and saddled his donkey and
went with the chiefs of Moab.
22 And the anger of Elohim glowed
because he went. And the Messenger
of YAHWEH set Himself in the road,
as a foe against him. And he was riding
on his donkey, and two of his young
men with him.
23 And the donkey saw the
Messenger of YAHWEH standing in
the road, and His sword was drawn in
His hand. And the donkey turned out
of the road and went into a field. And
Balaam struck the donkey, to turn it
back into the road.
24 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
stood in a narrow path of the vine-
yards, a wall being on this side and a
wall on that.
25 And the donkey saw the
Messenger of YAHWEH, and she
pushed herself to the wall and crushed
the foot of Balaam against the wall.
And again he struck her.
26 And again the Messenger of
YAHWEH passed on and stood in a
narrow place, where there was no way
to turn, either to the right or to the
left.
27 And the donkey saw the
Messenger of YAHWEH, and she lay
down under Balaam. And the anger of
Balaam glowed, and he struck the
donkey with his staff.

28 And YAHWEH opened the
mouth of the donkey, and she said to
Balaam, What have I done to you that
you have beaten me these three times?
29 And Balaam said to the donkey,
Because you have insulted me. If only
there were a sword in my hand now I
would kill you.
30 And the donkey said to Balaam,
Am I not your donkey on which you
have ridden all your life long to this
day? Was I ever known to do so to
you? And he said, No.
31 And YAHWEH opened the eyes
of Balaam, and he saw the Messenger
of YAHWEH standing in the road
with His sword drawn in His hand.
And he bowed and fell on his face.
32 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
said to him, Why have you struck your
donkey these three times? Behold, I
have come out as an enemy because
your way is contrary to Me.
33 And the donkey saw Me and
turned aside before Me these three
times. If she had not turned aside
surely now I would have killed you and
saved her alive.
34 And Balaam said to the
Messenger of YAHWEH, I have
sinned, for I did not know that You
stood against me in the way. Now if
evil is in Your eyes, I will turn back by
myself.
35 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
said to Balaam, Go with the men. But
only the word that I speak to you, it
you shall speak. And Balaam went
with the leaders of Balak.
36 And when Balak heard that
Balaam had come, and had gone out to
meet him, to a city of Moab which is
on the border of Arnon, which is in the
outermost border,
37 then Balak said to Balaam,
Sending, did I not send to you, to call
for you? Why did you not come to me?
Am I not truly able to honor you?

---

[2] Balaam is not saying this out of conviction but simply stating a fact.

[1] Yahweh had distinctly already given His answer in verse 12, and he should not have even allowed these men in his house to tempt him from the word Yahweh gave him.

38 And Balaam said to Balak,
Behold, I have come to you. Now am I
able to speak anything at all? The
word which Elohim puts in my mouth
that I will speak.
39 And Balaam went with Balak.
And they came to Kirjath-Huzoth.
40 And Balak sacrificed oxen and
sheep, and sent to Balaam and to the
leaders who were with him.
41 And it happened in the morning,
and Balak took Balaam and caused
him to go up to the high places of Baal.
And from there he saw the edge of the
people.

Chapter 23

1 And Balaam said to Balak, Build
seven altars for me here, and prepare
seven bulls and seven rams for me
here.
2 And Balak did as Balaam had
spoken. And Balak and Balaam offered
a bull and a ram on the altar.
3 And Balaam said to Balak, Station
yourself by your burnt offering, and I
will go on; it may be that YAHWEH
will come to meet me, and I will
declare to you the things which He
reveals to me. And he went to a high
place.
4 And Elohim came to Balaam, and
he said to Him, I have set up seven
altars. And I have offered a bull and a
ram on the altar.
5 And YAHWEH put a word in
Balaam's mouth, and said, Return to
Balak, and you shall say this.
6 And he returned to him. And, lo,
he was standing by his burnt offering,
he and all the leaders of Moab.
7 And he took up his parable and
said, He has led me from Aram, Balak
king of Moab; from the mountains of
the east, saying, Come, curse Jacob for
me; and, come, rage at Israel.
8 How shall I curse him whom El has
not cursed? And how shall I rage at
him at whom YAHWEH has not
raged?
9 For from the top of the rocks I see
him, and I behold him from the
heights. Behold, it is a people that
shall dwell alone and not be reckoned
among the nations.
10 Who can count Jacob's dust, and
the number of the fourth part of
Israel? Let me die the death of the
righteous, and let my last end be like
his!
11 And Balak said to Balaam, What
have you done to me? I took you to
curse my enemies, and lo you have
surely blessed.
12 And he replied and said, Must not
I take heed to speak what YAHWEH
has put in my mouth?
13 And Balak said to him, Now come
with me to another place where you
will see it; only you will see its edge
and shall not see all of it; and curse it
for me there.
14 And he took him to the field of
Zophim, to the top of Pisgah, and built
seven altars, and offered a bull and a
ram on the altar.
15 And he said to Balak, Station
yourself by the burnt offering while I
go to meet Him over there.
16 And YAHWEH met Balaam and
put a word in his mouth and said,
Return to Balak, and say this.
17 And he came to him, and, lo, he
stood by his burnt offering, and
Moab's chiefs with him. And he said to
him, What has YAHWEH spoken?
18 And he took up his parable and
said, Rise up, Balak, and hear; give ear
to me, son of Zippor.
19 El is not a man that He should lie,
or a son of man that He should repent.
Has He said, and shall He not do it?
And has He spoken, and shall He not
make it good?
20 Behold, I have received word to

bless; yes, He has blessed; I cannot reverse it.

21 He has seen no iniquity in Jacob, nor has He seen mischief in Israel. YAHWEH his Elohim is with him, and the shout of a king is in him.

22 El who brought them out of Egypt is for him like the lofty horns of the wild ox.

23 For there is not a spell against Jacob, nor any fortune telling against Israel. Now it is said of Jacob and Israel, See what El has done!

24 Behold, the people shall rise like a lioness and like a lion he shall lift himself up; he shall not lie down until he eats the prey and drinks the blood of the slain.

25 And Balak said to Balaam, Do not curse it at all, nor bless it at all.

26 And Balaam answered and said to Balak, Did I not speak to you, saying, All that YAHWEH speaks, that I will do?

27 And Balak said to Balaam, Come, please, I will take you to another place. It may be that it will be right in the eyes of Elohim to curse it for me from there.

28 And Balak took Balaam to the top of Peor, which looks toward the wilderness.

29 And Balaam said to Balak, Build seven altars for me here, and prepare seven bulls and seven rams for me here.

30 And Balak did as Balaam said; and he offered a bull and a ram on the altar.

Chapter 24

1 And Balaam saw that it pleased YAHWEH to bless Israel, and he did not go, as at other times to seek spells. And he set his face toward the wilderness.

2 And Balaam lifted up his eyes and saw Israel camping, by its tribes. And the Spirit of Elohim was on him.

3 And he took up his parable and said, The saying of Balaam the son of Beor, and the saying of the man whose eyes have been opened;

4 the saying of him who hears the Words of Elohim, who sees the vision of the Almighty *(Shaddai)*, fallen down, yet with open eyes:

5 How good are your tents, O Jacob, your dwellings, O Israel!

6 They are spread out like valleys, like gardens by a river; and YAHWEH has planted aloes, as cedars beside the water.

7 He makes water flow from his buckets, and his seed shall be in many waters; his king shall be higher than Agag, and his kingdom exalted.

8 Elohim who has brought him out of Egypt is for him like the lofty horns of the wild ox; he shall eat up the nations that are his foes, and shall break their bones in pieces, and shall pierce them through with his arrows.

9 He has crouched; he has lain down like a lion, and like a lioness; who shall rouse him up? Blessed is everyone that blesses you, and cursed is everyone that curses you.

10 And Balak's anger glowed against Balaam, and he struck his hands together. And Balak said to Balaam, I called you to curse my enemies; and, behold, you have altogether blessed them these three times.

11 And now, flee to your place. I said to honor you with great riches, but, behold, YAHWEH has kept you back from honor.

12 And Balaam said to Balak, Did I not speak to your messengers that you sent to me, saying,

13 If Balak would give me his house full of silver and gold, I cannot go beyond the mouth of YAHWEH, to do

good or bad of my own heart. What YAHWEH speaks, that I will speak.

14 And now, behold, I go to my people. Come, and I will counsel you what this people shall do to your people in the latter days.

15 And he took up his parable and said, The saying of Balaam the son of Beor, and the saying of the man whose eyes are opened;

16 the saying of him who hears the words of El, and he knowing the knowledge of the Most High who sees the vision of the Almighty *(Shaddai)*, falling down, yet with open eyes:

17 I shall see him, but not now; I shall behold him, but not near. A star leads forth out of Jacob, and a scepter shall rise out of Israel and shall dash the corners of Moab, and break down all the sons of tumult[1].

18 And Edom shall be a possession; and Seir shall be a possession, for his foes; but Israel shall do mightily.

19 And one out of Jacob shall rule, and will destroy the survivors from Ar.

20 And he looked upon Amalek, and took up his parable and said, Amalek was the first of the nations, but his latter end is to destruction forever.

21 And he looked upon the Kenites, and took up his parable, and said, Your dwelling place may be enduring, and your nest may be set in a rock.

22 But the Kenites shall be consumed, until Assyria shall carry you away.

23 And he took up his parable and said, Alas! Who shall live when El does this?

24 And ships shall come from the coast of Cyprus, and they shall humble Assyria, and they shall humble Eber, and he also shall come to destruction forever.

25 And Balaam rose up and left, and returned to his place; and Balak also went on his way.

Chapter 25

1 And Israel lived in Shittim. And the people began to fornicate with the daughters of Moab.

2 And they called the people to the sacrifices of their Elohims. And the people ate and bowed themselves to their Elohims.

3 And Israel was joined to Baal-Peor, and the anger of YAHWEH burned against Israel.

4 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Take all the leaders of the people and hang them up to YAHWEH before the sun, that the fierce anger of YAHWEH may be turned away from Israel.

5 And Moses said to the judges of Israel, Each one of you kill his men, those who joined to Baal-Peor.

6 And, behold! A man of the sons of Israel came and brought in to his brothers a woman of Midian, before the eyes of Moses and before the eyes of all the congregation of the sons of Israel groaning at the door of the tent of meeting.

7 And Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, saw. And he rose from amidst the congregation and took a javelin in his hand,

8 and went in after the man of Israel, into the tent room. And he pierced both of them through, the man of Israel and the woman, through her belly. So the plague was stayed from the sons of Israel.

9 And those that died by the plague were twenty four thousand.

10 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

11 Phinehas the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron the priest, has turned My wrath away from the sons of Israel while he was zealous for My sake

[1] A clear Messianic prophecy. Is 63:1-6

among them, so that I did not consume the sons of Israel in My jealousy.

12 Therefore say, Behold, I give to him My covenant of peace.

13 And it shall be to him, and to his seed after him, the covenant of an everlasting priesthood, because he was zealous for his Elohim, and atoned for the sons of Israel.

14 And the name of the man of Israel who was smitten, who was struck with the woman of Midian, was Zimri, the son of Salu, ruler of a father's house of the Simeonites.

15 And the name of the woman who was struck, the woman of Midian, was Cozbi, the daughter of Zur; he was head of the people of a father's house in Midian.

16 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

17 Vex the Midianites, and you shall strike them;

18 for they are vexers to you, because of the wiles with which they have beguiled you in the matter of Peor, and in the matter of Cozbi the daughter of a ruler of Midian, their sister, who was struck in the day of the plague because of the matter of Peor.

Chapter 26

1 And it happened, after the plague, YAHWEH spoke to Moses, and to Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying,

2 Lift the heads of all the congregation of the sons of Israel, from a son of twenty years and upward, through-out their fathers' house, all that are able to go to war in Israel.

3 And Moses and Eleazar the priest spoke with them in the plains of Moab beside Jordan, at Jericho, saying,

4 Count from a son of twenty years and upward, as YAHWEH commanded Moses and the sons of Israel, who went forth out of the land of Egypt.

5 Reuben, the first-born of Israel, the sons of Reuben: of Hanoch, the family of the Hanochites; of Pallu, the family of the Palluites;

6 from Hezron, the family of the Hezronites; of Carmi, the family of the Carmites.

7 These are the families of the Reubenites; and their numbered ones were forty three thousand, seven hundred and thirty.

8 And the son of Pallu was Eliab.

9 And the sons of Eliab: Nemuel, and Dathan, and Abiram. This is that Dathan and Abiram who were called ones in the congregation, who fought against Moses and against Aaron in the company of Korah, when they fought against YAHWEH.

10 And the earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up together with Korah, at the death of that company, when the fire devoured two hundred and fifty men. And they became a sign;

11 but the sons of Korah did not die.

12 The sons of Simeon according to their families: of Nemuel, the family of the Nemuelites; of Jamin, the family of the Jaminites; of Jachin, the family of the Jachinites;

13 of Zerah, the family of the Zerahites; of Shaul, the family of the Shaulites.

14 These are the families of the Simeonites, twenty two thousand, two hundred.

15 The sons of Gad according to their families: of Zephon, the family of the Zephonites; of Haggi, the family of the Haggites; of Shuni, the family of the Shunites;

16 of Ozni the family of the Oznites; of Eri, the family of the Erites;

17 of Arod, the family of the

Arodites; of Areli, the family of the Arelites.

18 These are the families of the sons of Gad according to their numbered ones, forty thousand, five hundred.

19 The sons of Judah: Er and Onan; and Er and Onan died in the land of Canaan.

20 And the sons of Judah by their families: of Shelah, the family of the Shelanites; of Pharez, the family of the Pharzites; of Zerah, the family of the Zerahites.

21 And the sons of Pharez: of Hezron, the family of the Hezronites, of Hamul the family of the Hamulites.

22 These are the families of Judah, according to their numbered ones, seventy six thousand, five hundred.

23 Of the sons of Issachar, according to their families: of Tola, the family of the Tolaites; of Pua, the family of the Punites;

24 of Jashub, the family of the Jashubites; of Shimron, the family of the Shimronites.

25 These are the families of Issachar according to their numbered ones, sixty four thousand, three hundred.

26 Of the sons of Zebulun, according to their families: of Sered, the family of the Seredites; of Elon, the family of the Elonites; of Jahleel, the family of the Jahleelites.

27 These are the families of the Zebulunites according to those numbered to them, sixty thousand, five hundred.

28 And the sons of Joseph according to their families: Manasseh and Ephraim.

29 The sons of Manasseh: of Machir, the family of the Machirites; and Machir fathered Gilead; of Gilead, the family of the Gileadites.

30 These are the sons of Gilead: of Jeezer, the family of the Jeezerites; of Helek, the family of the Helekites.

31 And of Asriel, the family of the Asrielites; and of Shechem, the family of the Shechemites;

32 and of Shemida, the family of the Shemidaites; and of Hepher, the family of the Hepherites.

33 And Zelophehad the son of Hepher had no sons, but daughters; and the names of the daughters of Zelophehad were Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah and Tirzah.

34 These are the families of Manasseh, and by their numbered ones, fifty two thousand, seven hundred.

35 These are the sons of Ephraim, according to their families: of Shuthelah, the family of the Shuthelahites; of Becher, the family of the Bachrites; of Tahan, the family of the Tahanites.

36 And these are the sons of Shuthelah: of Eran, the family of the Eranites.

37 These are the families of the sons of Ephraim by their numbered ones, thirty two thousand, five hundred. These are the sons of Joseph according to their families.

38 The sons of Benjamin according to their families: of Bela, the family of the Belaites; of Ashbel, the family of the Ashbelites; of Ahiram, the family of the Ahiramites;

39 of Shupham, the family of the Shuphamites; of Hupham, the family of the Huphamites.

40 And Bela's sons were Ard and Naaman. Of Ard, the family of the Ardites; of Naaman the family of the Naamites.

41 These are the sons of Benjamin according to their families, and by their numbered ones, forty five thousand, six hundred.

42 These are the sons of Dan according to their families: of Shuham, the family of the Shuhamites. These

are the families of Dan according to their families.

43 All the families of the Shuhamites according to their numbered ones, sixty four thousand, four hundred.

44 Of the sons of Asher according to their families: of Jimna, the family of the Jimnites; of Jesui, the family of the Jesuites of Beriah, the family of the Berites.

45 Of the sons of Beriah: of Heber, the family of the Heberites; of Malchiel, the family of the Malchielites.

46 And Asher's daughter's name was Serah.

47 These are the families of the sons of Asher, by their numbered ones, fifty three thousand, four hundred.

48 The sons of Naphtali, according to their families: of Jahzeel, the family of the Jahzeelites; of Guni, the family of the Gunites;

49 of Jezer, the family of the Jezerites; of Shillem, the family of the Shillemites.

50 These are the families of Naphtali by their families, and their numbered ones were forty five thousand, four hundred.

51 These were the numbered ones of the sons of Israel, six hundred and one thousand, seven hundred and thirty.

52 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

53 The land shall be divided to those for an inheritance, according to the number of names.

54 To the many you shall increase their inheritance; and to the few you shall diminish their inheritance; each according to the mouth of his numbered ones shall be given his inheritance.

55 But the land shall be divided by lot. They shall inherit according to the names of the tribes of their fathers.

56 By the mouth of the lot, possession of it shall be divided between the many and few.

57 And these are the numbered ones of the Levites by their families: of Gershon, the family of the Gershonites; of Kohath, the family of the Kohathites; of Merari, the family of the Merarites.

58 These are the families of the Levites: the family of the Libnites; the family of the Hebronites; the family of the Mahlites; the family of the Mushites; the family of the Korathites. And Kohath fathered Amram.

59 And the name of Amram's wife was Jochebed, the daughter of Levi, who was born to Levi in Egypt. And she bore Aaron and Moses to Amram, and their sister Miriam.

60 And Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and Ithamar were born to Aaron.

61 And Nadab and Abihu died for bringing strange fire before YAHWEH.

62 And their numbered ones were twenty three thousand, all males, a son of a month and upward. For they were not counted among the sons of Israel, because there was no possession given them among the sons of Israel.

63 These are those numbered by Moses and Eleazar the priest, who numbered the sons of Israel in the plains of Moab, beside Jordan, near Jericho.

64 And among these there was not a man of those numbered by Moses and Aaron the priest, who numbered the sons of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai.

65 For YAHWEH had said to them, they shall surely die in the wilderness, and not a man of them should be left except Caleb the son of Jephunneh, and Yahoshua the son of Nun.

Chapter 27

1 And the daughters of Zelophehad the son of Hepher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the family of Manasseh, the son of Joseph came. And these are his daughters' names: Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah.

2 And they stood before Moses and Eleazar the priest, and before the rulers and all the congregation at the door of the tent of meeting, saying,

3 Our father died in the wilderness, and he was not among the company who met together against YAHWEH in the company of Korah, but he died for his own sins, and had no son.

4 Why is our father's name taken away from the midst of his family because there is no son to him? Give us an inheritance among our father's brothers.

5 And Moses brought their cause before YAHWEH.

6 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

7 The daughters of Zelophehad speak rightly. Giving you shall give them a possession, an inheritance among their father's brothers. And you shall cause their father's inheritance to pass to them.

8 And you shall speak to the sons of Israel, saying, When a man dies, and has no son, then you shall pass on his inheritance to his daughter.

9 And if he has no daughter, then you shall give his inheritance to his brothers.

10 And if he has no brothers, then you shall give his possession to his father's brothers. *(Num 36:1-12)*

11 And if his father has no brothers then you shall give his inheritance to his nearest relative, of his family. And he shall own it, and it shall be a statute of judgment to the sons of Israel, as YAHWEH has commanded Moses.

12 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Get up into this mountain of Abarim, and see the land which I have given to the sons of Israel.[1]

13 And when you have seen it, you also shall be gathered to your people as your brother Aaron was gathered.

14 For you rebelled against My mouth in the desert of Zin, in the strife of the congregation, to sanctify Me at the waters before their eyes. They were the Waters of Strife in Kadesh, in the desert of Zin.

15 And Moses spoke to YAHWEH, saying,

16 Let YAHWEH, the Elohim of the spirits of all flesh, appoint a man over the congregation

17 who may go out before them, and who may go in before them, and who may lead them out, and who may bring them in, so that the congregation of YAHWEH may not be as sheep to whom there is no shepherd.

18 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Take Yahoshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the Spirit, and lay your hands on him. (Deut 34:9)

19 And cause him to stand before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation, and give him a charge before their eyes.

20 And you shall put from your dignity on him, so that all the congregation of the sons of Israel will listen.

21 And he shall stand before Eleazar the priest, who shall ask for him according to the judgment of the Urim before YAHWEH. At his mouth they shall go out, and at his mouth they shall come in, he and all the sons of Israel with him, even all the congregation.

---

[1] This was Mount Nebo, Abarim means to crossover. Deut 34:1, Deut 3:27

22 And Moses did as YAHWEH commanded him. And he took Yahoshua and made him stand before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation.
23 And he laid his hands on him, and gave him a charge, even as YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses.[1]

Chapter 28

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Command the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, My offering, My bread for My fire offerings, My soothing fragrance, you shall take heed to offer to Me in its appointed season.
3 And you shall say to them, This is the fire offering which you shall offer to YAHWEH, two yearling lambs without blemish, day by day, as a continual burnt offering.
4 You shall offer the one lamb in the morning, and you shall offer the other lamb between the two evenings;
5 and a tenth of an ephah of flour for a food offering mixed with beaten oil, a fourth of a hin;
6 a continual burnt offering which was performed in Mount Sinai for a soothing fragrance, a fire offering to YAHWEH;
7 and its drink offering, a fourth of a hin for the one lamb; pour a drink offering of strong drink to YAHWEH in the sanctuary.
8 And you shall offer the other lamb between the evenings, even as the food offering of the morning, and as its drink offering, you shall offer as a sacrifice made by fire, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH.
9 And on the Sabbath day, two lambs, sons of a year, ones without blemish, and two tenth parts of flour, a food offering mixed with oil, and its drink offering;
10 the burnt offering of the sabbath on its Sabbath, besides the continual burnt offering and its drink offering.
11 And in the beginning of your months you shall bring near a burnt offering to YAHWEH: two bulls, sons of the herd, and one ram, seven lambs, sons of a year, ones without blemish.
12 and three tenth parts of flour, a food offering mixed with oil for the one bull; and two tenths parts of flour as a food offering mixed with oil for the one ram;
13 and a tenth part of flour mixed with oil as a food offering for the one lamb; a burnt offering, a soothing fragrance, a fire offering to YAHWEH;
14 and their drink offerings shall be a half of a hin to a bull, and a third of a hin to a ram, and a fourth of a hin to a lamb, of wine. This shall be the burnt offering of every month for the months of the year.
15 And one kid of the goats for a sin offering to YAHWEH; it shall be prepared besides the continual burnt offering, and its drink offering.
16 And in the fourteenth day of the first month is the Passover of YAHWEH.
17 And in the fifteenth day of this month a feast: unleavened bread shall be eaten seven days.
18 In the first day shall be a holy convocation; you shall do no work of service.
19 And you shall offer a fire offering, a burnt offering to YAHWEH: two bulls, sons of the herd, and one ram, and seven lambs, sons of a year; they shall be ones without blemish for you;
20 and their food offering, flour

[1] The laying on of hands was an important ceremony for transferring power and also the Holy Spirit. 1Tim 4:14, 2Tim4:1-5

mixed with oil. You shall prepare three tenths parts for a bull, and two tenths parts for a ram.
21 You shall prepare one tenth part for the one lamb, and for the seven lambs;
22 and one goat, a sin offering to atone for you,
23 besides the burnt offering of the morning, the continual burnt offering, you shall prepare these.
24 In this way you shall prepare daily, seven days, bread for a fire offering, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH. It shall be prepared besides the continual burnt offering and its drink offering.
25 And on the seventh day you shall have a holy gathering; you shall do no work of service.
26 And in the day of the first-fruits, as you offer a new food offering to YAHWEH in your Feast of Weeks, you shall have a holy gathering; you shall do no work of service;
27 and you shall offer a burnt offering for a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH: two bulls, sons of the herd, one ram, seven lambs, sons of a year
28 and their food offering, flour mixed with oil, three tenth parts to the one bull, two tenth parts to the one ram,
29 one tenth part to the one lamb, for the seven lambs;
30 one kid of the goats to atone for you.
31 You shall offer them besides the continual burnt offering and its food offering and drink offerings; they shall be ones without blemish for you.

Chapter 29

1 And in the seventh month, on the first of the month you shall have a holy gathering; you shall do no work of service. It shall be a day of blowing the trumpets to you.
2 And you shall prepare a burnt offering for a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH: one bull, a son of the herd, one ram, seven lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
3 and their food offering, flour mixed with oil, three tenths parts for the bull, two tenths parts for the ram,
4 and one tenth part for each of the seven lambs;
5 and one kid of the goats, a sin offering to atone for you;
6 besides the burnt offering of the month, and its food offering, and the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and their drink offerings, according to their ordinance for soothing fragrance, a fire offering to YAHWEH.
7 And on the tenth of this seventh month you shall have a holy gathering; you shall do no work of service, you shall humble your souls.
8 And you shall offer a burnt offering to YAHWEH, a soothing fragrance: one bull, a son of the herd, one ram, seven lambs, sons of a year, they shall be without blemish for you;
9 and their food offering, flour mixed with oil, three tenths parts for the bull two tenths parts for the one ram;
10 one tenth part for the one lamb, for the seven lambs;
11 one kid of the goats, a sin offering, besides the sin offering of the atonement, and the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and their drink offerings.
12 And on the fifteenth day of the seventh month, you shall have a holy gathering; you shall do no work of service; and you shall celebrate a feast to YAHWEH seven days.
13 And you shall offer a burnt offering, a fire offering, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH: thirteen bulls,

sons of the herd, two rams, fourteen lambs, sons of a year; they shall be without blemish;
14 and their food offerings, flour mixed with oil, three tenths parts to the one bull, for the thirteen bulls; two tenths parts to each of the two rams;
15 and one tenth part to each of the fourteen lambs;
16 and one kid of the goats, a sin offering, besides the continual burnt offering, its food offering and its drink offering.
17 And on the second day twelve bulls, sons of the herd, two rams, fourteen lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
18 and their food offerings, and their drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, in their number, according to the ordinance;
19 and one kid of the goats, a sin offering; besides the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and their drink offerings.
20 And in the third day eleven bulls, two rams, fourteen lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
21 and their food offerings, and their drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, in their number, according to the ordinance;
22 and one goat as a sin offering; besides the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and its drink offering.
23 And on the fourth day ten bulls, two rams, fourteen lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
24 their food offering, and their drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, in their number, according to the ordinance;
25 and one kid of the goats, a sin offering, besides the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and its drink offering.
26 And on the fifth day nine bulls, two rams, fourteen lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
27 their food offering, and their drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams and for the lambs, in their number, according to the ordinance;
28 and one goat, a sin offering; besides the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and its drink offering.
29 And on the sixth day eight bulls, two rams, fourteen lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
30 their food offerings, and their drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, in their number, according to the ordinance;
31 and one goat, a sin offering; besides the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and its drink offering.
32 And on the seventh day seven bulls, two rams, fourteen lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
33 their food offerings, and their drink offerings for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, in their number, according to the ordinance;
34 and one goat, a sin offering; besides the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and its drink offering.
35 And you shall have a solemn assembly on the eighth day; you shall do no work of service.
36 And you shall offer a burnt offering, a fire offering, a soothing fragrance to YAHWEH: one bull, one ram, seven lambs, sons of a year, without blemish;
37 their food offerings, and their drink offerings for the bull, for the ram, and for the lambs, in their number, according to the ordinance;
38 and one goat, a sin offering, besides the continual burnt offering, and its food offering, and its drink offering.

39 You shall prepare these for YAHWEH in your appointed seasons, apart from your vows and your freewill offerings, for your burnt offerings, and for your food offerings, and for your drink offerings, and for your peace offerings.

40 And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel according to all that YAHWEH had commanded Moses.

Chapter 30

1 And Moses spoke to the heads of the tribes of the sons of Israel, saying, This is the thing which YAHWEH has commanded:

2 When a man vows a vow to YAHWEH, or has sworn an oath to bind his soul with a bond, he shall not break his word; he shall do all that has gone out of his mouth.

3 And when a woman vows a vow to YAHWEH, and has bound a bond in the house of her father in her youth,

4 and her father has heard her vow, and her bond with which she has bound her soul, and her father has remained silent as to her, then all her vows shall stand; and every bond with which she has bound her soul shall stand.

5 But if her father has prohibited her in the day he heard, none of her vows and her bond with which she has bound her soul shall stand. And YAHWEH will forgive her because her father prohibited her.

6 And if she belongs to a husband, and her vows are on her, or a rash utterance on her lips with which she has bound her soul,

7 and her husband has heard, and in the day he heard he has remained silent as to her, then her vows shall stand, and her bond with which she has bound her soul shall stand.

8 And if in the day her husband hears, he prohibits her, then he has broken her vow which is on her, and the rash utterance of her lips with which she has bound her soul. And YAHWEH will forgive her.

9 And as to the vow of a widow, or her that is divorced, all that she has bound on her soul shall be established on her.

10 And if she has vowed in the house of her husband, or bound a bond on her soul with an oath,

11 and her husband has heard, and has remained silent as to her, and he has not denied her, then all her vows shall be established, and every bond with which she has bound her soul shall stand.

12 And if her husband has certainly broken them in the day he heard, none of the utterance of her lips concerning her vows, or concerning the bond of her soul, shall stand; her husband has broken them. And YAHWEH will forgive her.

13 Every vow and every oath, any bond to humble a soul, her husband shall establish it, or her husband shall break it.

14 And if her husband is altogether silent at her from day to day, then he has established all her vows or all her bonds which are on her; he has established them; for he remained silent as to her in the day he heard.

15 And if he at all breaks them after he hears, then he has borne her iniquity.

16 These are the statutes which YAHWEH has commanded Moses between a man and his wife, between a father and his daughter in her youth in the house of her father[1].

---

1 This ancient aspect of society that had much love and wisdom is almost lost in western society today.

Chapter 31

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Execute the vengeance of the sons of Israel against the Midianites. Afterward you shall be gathered to your people.
3 And Moses spoke to the people, saying, Some men of you be armed for the army, and they shall be against Midian, to give the vengeance of YAHWEH on Midian;
4 you shall send to the army a thousand for a tribe as to all the tribes of Israel.
5 And a thousand for a tribe were given out of the thousands of Israel, twelve thousand armed ones of the army.
6 And Moses sent them to the army, a thousand for a tribe, them and Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest to the army. Also he sent the holy vessels, and the trumpets to sound in his hand.
7 And they warred against Midian, as YAHWEH had commanded Moses, and killed every male.
8 And they killed the kings of Midian, besides the rest of their slain: Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, five kings of Midian. They also killed Balaam the son of Beor with the sword.
9 And the sons of Israel took the women of Midian captive, and their infants, and all their livestock, and all their possessions. And they plundered all their wealth.
10 And they burned all their cities with fire, their homes, and all their towers.
11 And they took all the spoil, and all the prey, among man and among animal.
12 And they brought it to Moses, and to Eleazar the priest, and to the congregation of the sons of Israel; the captives, and the prey, and the spoil, to the camp, to the plains of Moab which are by Jordan, near Jericho.
13 And Moses and Eleazar the priest, and all the rulers of the congregation went out to meet them outside the camp.
14 And Moses was angry with the officers of the army, the commanders of thousands and the commanders of hundreds who came from the service of the war.
15 And Moses said to them, Have you saved all the women alive?
16 Behold, these through the counsel of Balaam became to the sons of Israel a deliverance of treachery against YAHWEH in the matter of Peor; and the plague was on the company of YAHWEH.
17 And now kill every male among the infants; yea, you shall kill every woman having known a man by lying with a male.
18 And you shall keep alive for yourselves all the female children who have not known a man by lying with a male.
19 And encamp outside the camp seven days. Whoever has killed any person, and whoever touched a pierced one, purify yourselves on the third day and on the seventh day, you and your captives.
20 And as to every garment, and all that is made of skin, and all work of goats' hair, and all things made of wood, you shall purify them.
21 And Eleazar the priest said to the men of war who went to battle, This is the statute of the law which YAHWEH has commanded Moses:
22 only the gold, the silver, the copper, the iron, the tin, and the lead,
23 everything that passes through the fire, you shall make it go through the fire; and it shall be clean. Only it

shall be purified with the water for
impurity. And every thing that cannot
go through the fire, you shall make go
through the water.
24 And you shall wash your clothes
on the seventh day, and you shall be
clean. And afterwards you shall come
into the camp.
25 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses,
saying,
26 Lift the heads of the prey of the
captives, among man and among
beast, you and Eleazar the priest, and
the heads of the fathers of the
congregation.
27 And you shall divide the prey
between those skilled in war, that went
out to battle, and all the congregation.
28 And you shall levy a tribute to
YAHWEH from the men of war who
went out to the battle: one body out of
five hundred, of men, and of the herd,
and of the donkeys, and of the flock,
29 you shall take from their half, and
you shall give to Eleazar the priest as
the heave offering of YAHWEH.
30 And from the sons of Israel's half,
you shall take one portion out of fifty,
of man, and of the herd, and of the
donkeys, and of the flock, of all the
livestock, and you shall give them to
the Levites keeping the charge of the
tabernacle of YAHWEH.
31 And Moses and Eleazar the priest
did as YAHWEH had commanded
Moses.
32 And the prey, the rest of the spoil
which the people of the army
plundered, was six hundred and
seventy five thousand sheep,
33 and seventy two thousand oxen,
34 sixty one thousand of the
donkeys;
35 and of human beings, of the
women who had not known a man by
lying with a male, the persons were
thirty two thousand.
36 And the half, the portion of those
who went out to the war, the number
of the flock was three hundred and
thirty seven thousand, five hundred.
37 And the tribute to YAHWEH of
the sheep was six hundred and seventy
five,
38 and the oxen, thirty six thousand;
and their tribute to YAHWEH,
seventy two;
39 and the donkeys thirty thousand,
five hundred; and their tribute to
YAHWEH, sixty one;
40 and the human beings sixteen
thousand; and their tribute to
YAHWEH, thirty two persons.
41 And Moses gave the tribute, the
heave offering of YAHWEH, to
Eleazar the priest, as YAHWEH had
commanded Moses.
42 And of the sons of Israel's half,
which Moses divided from the men
who warred:
43 even the congregation's half was
three hundred and thirty seven
thousand, five hundred of the flock;
44 and of the oxen, thirty six
thousand;
45 and thirty thousand, five hundred
donkeys;
46 and sixteen thousand human
beings.
47 Moses took from the sons of
Israel's half the one portion from the
fifty of man and of animal. And he
gave them to the Levites keeping the
charge of the tabernacle of YAHWEH,
as YAHWEH had commanded Moses.
48 And the officers who were over
the thousands of the army, heads of
the thousands and heads of the
hundreds, drew near to Moses.
49 And they said to Moses, Your
servants have lifted the heads of the
men of war who were with us, and not
a man of us is missing.
50 And we bring near the offering of
YAHWEH, each what he has found,
vessels of gold, chains, and bracelets,

rings, earrings, and jewels, to atone for ourselves before YAHWEH.

51 And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from them, all crafted things.

52 And all the gold of the heave offering which they lifted up to YAHWEH was sixteen thousand, seven hundred and fifty shekels, from the heads of thousands and from the heads of hundreds,

53 men of the army who had each taken spoil for himself.

54 And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from the heads of the thousands and of the hundreds. And they brought it into the tabernacle of the congregation, a memorial for the sons of Israel before YAHWEH.

Chapter 32

1 And the sons of Reuben and the sons of Gad had many livestock, a very great multitude. And they saw the land of Jazer, and the land of Gilead. And, behold, the place was a place for livestock.

2 And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben came in and spoke to Moses, and to Eleazar the priest, and to the rulers of the congregation, saying,

3 Ataroth, and Dibon, and Jazer, and Nimrah, and Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Shebam, and Nebo, and Beon,

4 the land which YAHWEH has struck before the congregation of Israel is a land for livestock, and your servants own livestock.

5 And they said, If we have found favor in your eyes, let this land be given to your servants for a possession. Do not make us pass over the Jordan.[1]

6 And Moses said to the sons of Gad and to the sons of Reuben, Do your brothers go into the battle, and you, do you sit here?

7 And why do you discourage the heart of the sons of Israel from passing over to the land which YAHWEH has given to them?

8 So your fathers did when I sent them from Kadesh-Barnea to see the land.

9 And they went up to the valley of Eshcol and saw the land, and discouraged the hearts of the sons of Israel, so as for them not to go into the land which YAHWEH had given to them.

10 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed in that day, and He swore, saying,

11 Surely none of the men that came up out of Egypt, from twenty years old and upward, shall see the land which I swore to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob because they have not wholly followed Me;

12 except Caleb the son of Jephunneh, the Kenezite, and Yahoshua the son of Nun, for they have fully followed YAHWEH.

13 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed against Israel. And He made them wander in the wilderness forty years, until all the generation that had done evil in the eyes of YAHWEH was destroyed.

14 And, behold, you have risen up in your fathers' stead, an increase of sinful men, to add still more to the heat of the anger of YAHWEH toward Israel!

15 For if you turn away from following Him, He will yet again leave them in the wilderness; and so you will hurt all this people.

16 And they came near to him and said, We will build sheepfolds here for our livestock, and cities for our little ones.

[1] Verses 1-5 These lands were good grazing lands

17 And we ourselves shall go armed, hurrying before the sons of Israel, until we have brought them to their place. And our little ones shall live in the fortified cities because of those living in the land.
18 We will not return to our houses until each man of the sons of Israel has inherited his inheritance.
19 For we will not inherit with them on the other side of the Jordan, and beyond; for our inheritance has fallen to us eastward on this side of Jordan.
20 And Moses said to them, If you will do this thing; if you will arm for battle before YAHWEH,
21 and all of you will go over Jordan armed before YAHWEH, until He has driven His enemies out before Him,
22 and the land is subdued before YAHWEH, then afterwards you shall return and be guiltless before YAHWEH, and before Israel. And this land shall be your possession before YAHWEH.
23 But if you will not do so, behold, you have sinned against YAHWEH, and know that your sin will find you out.
24 Build cities for your little ones, and folds for your sheep and do that which has come out of your mouth.
25 And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben spoke to Moses, saying, Your servants will do as my master commands.
26 Our little ones, our wives, our flocks, and all our livestock shall be there in the cities of Gilead.
27 But your servants will go over, every man armed for war, before YAHWEH to battle, as my master says.
28 And Moses directed Eleazar the priest concerning them, and Yahoshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the sons of Israel;
29 even Moses said to them, If the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben pass over the Jordan with you each armed for battle before YAHWEH, and the land shall be subdued before you, then you shall give to them the land of Gilead for a possession.
30 But if they will not go over armed with you, they shall have possession among you in the land of Canaan.
31 And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben replied, saying, As YAHWEH has said to your servants, so we will do.
32 We ourselves will pass over armed before YAHWEH into the land of Canaan, so that the land of our inheritance on that side of Jordan may be ours.
33 And Moses gave to them, even to the sons of Gad and to the sons of Reuben, and to the half-tribe of Manasseh, the son of Joseph, the kingdom of Sihon king of the Amorites, and the kingdom of Og king of Bashan, the land, by its cities with their borders, even the cities of the land all around.
34 And the sons of Gad built Dibon, and Ataroth, and Aroer,
35 and Ataroth-Shophan, and Jaazer, and Jogbehah,
36 and Beth-Nimrah, and Beth-Haran, fortified cities, and folds for sheep.
37 And the sons of Reuben built Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Kirjath-Aim,
38 and Nebo, and Baal-Meon, their names being changed, and Sibmah. And they called by name the names of the cities which they had built.
39 And the sons of Machir the son of Manasseh went to Gilead and captured it, and expelled the Amorite who was in it.
40 And Moses gave Gilead to Machir the son of Manasseh, and he lived in it.

41 And Jair the son of Manasseh went out and captured their towns, and called them Towns of Jair.

42 And Nobah went and took Kenath and its villages; and he called it Nobah after his own name.

Chapter 33

1 These are the journeys of the sons of Israel who went out from the land of Egypt according to their armies under the hand of Moses and Aaron.

2 And Moses wrote their departures according to their journeys by the mouth of YAHWEH. And these are their journeys, according to their departures:

3 And they pulled up stakes from Rameses in the first month on the fifteenth day of the first month. On the next day after the Passover the sons of Israel went out with a high hand, before the eyes of all the Egyptians.
(Deut 16:1)

4 And the Egyptians were burying those whom YAHWEH had smitten among them, every first-born, and YAHWEH had executed judgments on their gods.

5 And the sons of Israel pulled up stakes from Rameses and camped in Succoth.

6 And they pulled up stakes from Succoth and camped at Etham, which is in the edge of the wilderness.

7 And they pulled up stakes from Etham and turned back to Pihahiroth, which is before Baal-Zephon; and they camped before Migdol.

8 And they pulled up stakes from Pihahiroth and passed over through the midst of the Sea, into the wilderness, and went a journey of three days in the wilderness of Etham, and camped at Marah.

9 And they pulled up stakes from Marah and came to Elim. And in Elim were twelve springs of water and seventy palm trees. And they camped there.

10 And they pulled up stakes from Elim and camped by the Sea of Reeds.

11 And they pulled up stakes from the Red Sea and camped in the wilderness of Sin.

12 And they pulled up stakes from the wilderness of Sin and camped in Dophkah.

13 And they pulled up stakes from Dophkah and camped in Alush.

14 And they pulled up stakes from Alush and camped in Rephidim; and no water was there for the people to drink.

15 And they pulled up stakes from Rephidim and camped in the wilderness of Sinai.

16 And they pulled up stakes from the wilderness of Sinai and camped in The Graves of Lust.

17 And they pulled up stakes from The Graves of Lust and camped in Hazeroth.

18 And they pulled up stakes from Hazeroth and camped in Rithmah.

19 And they pulled up stakes from Rithmah and camped in The Pomegranate Breach.

20 And they pulled up stakes from The Pomegranate Breach and camped in Libnah.

21 And they pulled up stakes from Libnah and camped in Rissah.

22 And they pulled up stakes from Rissah and camped in the Meeting Place.

23 And they pulled up stakes from the Meeting Place and camped in Mount Shapher.

24 And they pulled up stakes from Mount Shapher and camped in Haradah.

25 And they pulled up stakes from Haradah and encamped in Makheloth.

26 And they pulled up stakes from Makheloth and camped in Tahath.

27 And they pulled up stakes from Tahath and camped in Tarah.

28 And they pulled up stakes from Tarah and camped in Mithcah.

29 And they pulled up stakes from Mithcah and camped in Hashmonah.

30 And they pulled up stakes from Hashmonah and camped in Moseroth.

31 And they pulled up stakes from Moseroth and camped in Bene-Jaakan.

32 And they pulled up stakes from Bene-Jaakan and camped in The Hole in the Cleft.

33 And they pulled up stakes from The Hole in the Cleft and camped in Jotbathah.

34 And they pulled up stakes from Jotbathah and camped in Ebronah.

35 And they pulled up stakes from Ebronah and camped in Ezion-Geber.

36 And they pulled up stakes from Ezion-Geber and camped in the wilderness of Zin; it is Kadesh.

37 And they pulled up stakes from Kadesh and camped in Mount Hor, in the edge of the land of Edom.

38 And Aaron the priest went up into Mount Hor at the mouth of YAHWEH; and he died there in the fortieth year after the sons of Israel had come out of the land of Egypt, in the fifth month, on the first of the month.

39 And Aaron was a hundred and twenty three years old at his death in Mount Hor.

40 And King Arad the Canaanite, who lived in the Negev, in the land of Canaan, heard of the coming of the sons of Israel.

41 And they pulled up stakes from Mount Hor and camped in Zalmonah.

42 And they pulled up stakes from Zalmonah and camped in Punon.

43 And they pulled up stakes from Punon and camped in Oboth.

44 And they pulled up stakes from Oboth and camped in Ije-Abarim, in the border of Moab.

45 And they pulled up stakes from Ije-Abarim and camped in Dibon-Gad.

46 And they pulled up stakes from Dibon-Gad and camped in Almon-Diblathaim.

47 And they pulled up stakes from Almon-Diblathaim and camped in the Abarim mountains, by Nebo.

48 And they pulled up stakes from the Abarim mountains and camped in the plains of Moab beside Jordan, near Jericho.

49 And they camped by the Jordan, from The House of Deserts even to The Meadow of Acacias in the plains of Moab.

50 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab, beside Jordan, near Jericho, saying,

51 Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, When you have crossed the Jordan into the land of Canaan,

52 then you shall drive out all the ones living in the land from before you, and destroy all their carved images; yea, you shall destroy all their cast images, and demolish all their high places.

53 And you shall possess the land, and live in it, for I have given you the land, to possess it.

54 And you shall inherit the land by lot, by your families. You shall increase the inheritance to the many, and you shall diminish the inheritance to the few; wherever the lot falls out to him, it is his. You shall inherit by the tribes of your fathers.

55 And if you will not drive out the ones living in the land from before you, then it shall be, those whom you let remain of them shall be briars in your eyes, and as thorns in your sides.

And they will vex you on the land in which you are living.
56 And it shall be, as I thought to do to them, so I shall do to you.

Chapter 34

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
2 Command the sons of Israel, and you shall say to them, When you have come into the land of Canaan, this is the land which falls to you by inheritance, the land of Canaan, by its borders:
3 And your south quarter shall be from the wilderness of Zin, along by the land of Edom, and it shall be to you a south border from the end of the Salt Sea, eastward.
4 And the border shall turn around to you from the south to the ascent of Akrabbim, and shall pass on to Zin, and its end shall be from the south to Kadesh-Barnea; and it shall go out at Hazar-Addar, and it shall pass on to Azmon.
5 And the border shall turn from Azmon to the torrent of Egypt, and its border shall be at the sea.
6 As to the western border, even the Great Sea shall be a border to you; this is your western border.
7 And this is your northern border: from the Great Sea you shall mark out for yourselves Mount Hor;
8 from Mount Hor you shall mark out a line to the entrance to Hamath; and the edge of the border shall be at Zedad.
9 And the border shall go forth to Ziphron, and the edge of it shall be at Hazar-Enan; this shall be your northern border.
10 And you shall mark out your line for the eastern border from Hazarenan to Shepham.
11 And the border shall go down from Shepham to Riblah on the east side of Ain; and the border shall go down and shall reach on the shoulder of the Sea of Chinnereth eastward.
12 And the border shall go down to the Jordan, and the end of it shall be at the Salt Sea. This shall be your land according to its borders all around.
13 And Moses commanded the sons of Israel, saying, This is the land which you shall receive as inheritance by lot, which YAHWEH has commanded to give to the nine tribes and the half tribe:
14 For the tribe of the sons of Reuben according to their fathers' houses, and the tribe of the sons of Gad according to their fathers' houses have received; and the half tribe of Manasseh shall have received their inheritance.
15 The two tribes and the half tribe shall have received their inheritance beyond the Jordan at Jericho eastward, toward the sunrising.
16 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,
17 These are the names of the men that shall take possession of the land for you: Eleazar the priest, and Yahoshua the son of Nun.
18 And you shall take one ruler of every tribe, to take possession of the land.
19 And these are the names of the men: Of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of Jephunneh;
20 and of the tribe of the sons of Simeon, Shemuel the son of Ammihud;
21 of the tribe of Benjamin, Elidad the son of Chislon;
22 and of the tribe of the sons of Dan, Bukki the ruler, son of Jogli;
23 of the sons of Joseph, of the tribe of the sons of Manasseh, Hanniel the ruler, the son of Ephod;
24 and of the tribe of the sons of

Ephraim, Kemuel the ruler, the son of Shiphtan;

25 and of the tribe of the sons of Zebulun, Elizaphan the ruler, the son of Parnach;

26 and of the tribe of the sons of Issachar, Paltiel the ruler, the son of Azzan;

27 and of the tribe of the sons of Asher, Ahihud the ruler, the son of Shelomi;

28 and of the tribe of the sons of Naphtali, Pedahel the ruler, the son of Ammihud.

29 These are the ones whom YAHWEH commanded to divide the land to the sons of Israel in the land of Canaan.

Chapter 35

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab, beside Jordan, near Jericho, saying,

2 Order the sons of Israel that they give to the Levites cities to live in, from the land of their possessions, and you shall give to the Levites open land for the cities.

3 And they shall have the cities to live in, and their open lands shall be for their livestock, and for their substance, and for all their animals.

4 And the open land around the cities which you shall give to the Levites shall be from the wall of the city and outward a thousand cubits all around.

5 And you shall measure outside the city for the east side two thousand cubits, and for the south side two thousand cubits, and on the north side two thousand cubits, and for the west side two thousand cubits; the city being in the middle. This shall be to them the open land around the cities.

6 And the cities which you shall give to the Levites shall be the six cities of refuge which you shall give for the manslayer that he may flee there; and besides them you shall give forty two cities.

7 All the cities which you shall give to the Levites shall be forty eight cities, them and the open land around them.

8 And you shall give the cities from the possession of the sons of Israel. From the many you shall increase, and take away from the few. According to its inheritance which it inherits each tribe shall give of its cities to the Levites.

9 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses, saying,

10 Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, When you pass over the Jordan into the land of Canaan,

11 then you shall choose cities to be cities of refuge for you, so that the man-slayer may flee there, he that kills a person through error[1].

12 And the cities shall be to you for refuge from the kinsman avenger, that the manslayer may not die until he stands before the congregation for judgment.

13 As to the cities which you shall give six shall be cities of refuge for you.

14 You shall give three of the cities beyond the Jordan, and you shall give three of the cities in the land of Canaan; they shall be cities of refuge.

15 These six cities shall be for a refuge to the sons of Israel, and to an alien, and to a sojourner in their midst, that any person who kills anyone unawares may flee there.

16 And if he strikes him with an instrument of iron, and he dies, he is a murderer; dying the murderer shall die.

17 And if he strikes him with a stone

1 Six cities of refuge were to be set apart as follows; Bezer, Ramoth, Golan east of the Jordan River, and Kedesh, Shechem, and Hebron west of the Jordan River.

in the hand, by which he dies, and he dies, he is a murderer; the murderer certainly shall die.

18 And if he strikes him with a wooden instrument in the hand, by which he dies, and he dies, he is a murderer; the murderer certainly shall die.

19 The avenger of blood shall cause the murderer to die; when he meets with him, he shall cause him to die.

20 And if he pushes him down, or has thrown at him by lying in wait, and he dies;

21 or if he has struck him with his hand in enmity, and he dies, the striker shall certainly be put to death; he is a murderer. When the avenger of blood meets him he shall put to death the murderer.

22 And if in an instant he pushed him without enmity, or has thrown at him anything without lying in wait;

23 or with any stone without seeing, by which he dies, and has caused it to fall on him, and he dies, and he is not an enemy to him, nor seeking his evil;

24 then the congregation shall judge between the striker and the avenger of blood, by these judgments.

25 And the congregation shall deliver the manslayer out of the avenger of blood's hand. And the congregation shall return him to the city of refuge to which he had fled, and he shall live in it until the high priest dies, he who was anointed with the holy oil.

26 But if the manslayer at all goes out from the border of the city of his refuge, there to which he has fled,

27 and the avenger of blood finds him outside the border of the city of his refuge, and the avenger of blood kills the manslayer, there shall be no blood guiltiness to him,

28 because he should have dwelt in the city of his refuge until the death of the high priest. And after the death of the high priest the manslayer may return to the land of his possession.

29 And these things shall be to you for a statute of judgment for your generations, in all your dwellings.

30 Whoever kills any person, the murderer shall be put to death by the mouth of witnesses. And one witness shall not testify against a person, to die.

31 And you shall take no ransom for the life of a murderer; he is punishable for death, the murderer certainly shall die.

32 And you shall take no ransom for him to flee to the city of his refuge, to return to dwell in the land, until the death of the priest.

33 And you shall not pollute the land in which you are, for blood pollutes the land. And no ransom is to be taken for the land for blood which is shed in it, except for the blood of him who sheds it;

34 and you shall not defile the land in which you are living. I dwell in its midst, for I, YAHWEH, am dwelling among the sons of Israel.

Chapter 36

1 And the heads of the fathers of the families of the sons of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, of the families of the sons of Joseph, came near. And they spoke before Moses, and before the rulers, the heads of the fathers' houses of the sons of Israel.

2 And they said: YAHWEH commanded my master to give the land for inheritance by lot to the sons of Israel. And my master was commanded by YAHWEH to give the inheritance of our brother Zelophehad to his daughters.

3 And if they shall be for wives to one of the sons of the other tribes of the

sons of Israel, then their inheritance
will be taken away from the
inheritance of our fathers and will be
added to the inheritance of the tribe to
which they shall belong. So it shall be
taken away from the lot of our
inheritance.
4 And when the Jubilee of the sons
of Israel shall come, then their
inheritance shall be added to the
inheritance of the tribe to which they
shall belong. So their inheritance will
be taken away from the inheritance of
the tribe of our fathers.
5 And Moses commanded the sons of
Israel according to the mouth of
YAHWEH, saying, The tribe of the
sons of Joseph speak right.
6 This is the thing which YAHWEH
has commanded concerning the
daughters of Zelophehad, saying, Let
them be wives to those good in their
eyes, only let them be for wives to the
family of the tribe of their father,
7 so no inheritance of the sons of
Israel shall turn from tribe to tribe, for
each one of the sons of Israel shall
cling to the inheritance of the tribe of
his fathers.
8 And any daughter that possesses
an inheritance from any tribe of the
sons of Israel to one of the family of
the tribe of her father is to become a
wife of the family of the tribe of her
father, so that the sons of Israel may
each possess the inheritance of his
father.
9 And the inheritance shall not turn
from one tribe to another tribe. For
the tribes of the sons of Israel shall
each one cling to its own inheritance.
10 As YAHWEH commanded
Moses, so the daughters of Zelophehad
did.
11 For Mahlah, Tirzah, and Hoglah,
and Milcah, and Noah, Zelophehad's
daughters, were for wives to their
father's brothers' sons.
12 They were for wives to the
families of the son of Manasseh the
son of Joseph, and their inheritance
was with the tribe of the family of their
father.
13 These are the commandments
and the judgments which YAHWEH
commanded by the hand of Moses to
the sons of Israel in the plains of
Moab, beside the Jordan, near Jericho.

Book of Deuteronomy (Devarim)

Chapter 1

1 These are the words which Moses spoke to all Israel beyond the Jordan; in the wilderness, in the Arabah, opposite to Suph[1], between Paran and Tophel, and Laban and Hazeroth, and Dizahab;
2 eleven days from Horeb[2] by way of Mount Seir to Kadesh-Barnea.
3 And it came to pass, in the fortieth year, in the eleventh month on the first of the month, Moses spoke to the sons of Israel according to all that YAHWEH had commanded him concerning them;
4 after he had stricken Sihon the king of the Amorites, who lived in Heshbon, and Og the king of Bashan, who lived in Ashtaroth in Edrei,
5 beyond the Jordan in the land of Moab, Moses began to explain this law, saying,
6 YAHWEH our Elohim spoke to us in Horeb, saying, You have had enough of dwelling in this mountain;
7 turn and pull up stakes and go into the hills of the Amorites, and to all its neighboring places in the Arabah, in the hills, and in the low country[3], and in the Negev, and in the shore of the sea, the land of the Canaanites and of Lebanon, to the great river, the Euphrates River.
8 Behold! I have given before you the land; go in and possess the land which YAHWEH has sworn to your fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give to them, and to their seed after them. *(Gen 15:13-18, Gen 17:1-9)*
9 And I spoke to you at that time, saying, I am not able to bear you by myself.
10 YAHWEH your Elohim has multiplied you, and, behold, today you are as the stars of heaven for multitude. *(Gen 13:15, 15:4-6)*
11 May YAHWEH the Elohim of your fathers add to you a thousand times more than you are, and bless you as He has spoken to you!
12 How can I by myself bear the load of you and your burden, and your strife?
13 Give wise and understanding men, and those known to your tribes, and I will appoint them rulers over you.
14 And you answered me and said, The thing which you have spoken is good to do.
15 And I took the chiefs of your tribes, wise and noted men, and I gave them to be rulers over you, captains over thousands, and captains over hundreds and captains over fifties, and captains over tens, and officers, for your tribes.
16 And I commanded your judges at that time, saying, Hear between your brothers; and judge with righteousness between a man and his brother, and his alien.
17 You shall not recognize persons in judgment; you shall hear the small as well as the great; you shall not be afraid because of the face of a man, for the judgment is Elohim's; and the thing too hard for you, you shall bring near to me, and I shall hear it.
(Deut 10:17-18, 16:18-20, 17:8-13)
18 And at that time I commanded you all the things which you were to do.
19 And we pulled up stakes from Horeb and went through all that great and fearful wilderness which you have seen, the way of the hills of the

---

1 Yam Suph is the Sea of Reeds, Ex 13:18, 1 Kgs 9:26, According to the geography given this had to be on the eastern side of the Jordan River.

2 Mount Horeb is next to Mount Sinai in Saudi Arabia. (Gal 4:25), Mount Seir is called Jebel Esh Shera

3 The Shefelah region

Amorites, as YAHWEH our Elohim commanded us. And we came into Kadesh-Barnea.
20 And I said to you, You have come into the hills of the Amorites, which YAHWEH our Elohim is giving to us.
21 See, YAHWEH your Elohim has given the land before you; go up, possess it, as YAHWEH the Elohim of your fathers has spoken to you; do not fear or be afraid.
22 And you came near to me, every one of you, and said, Let us send men before us, and they shall search out the land for us, and they shall bring us back word as to the way in which we shall go up, and the cities to which we shall come. *(Num 13:1-3)*
23 And the thing was good in my eyes, and I took twelve men of you, one man for each tribe.
24 And they turned and went up to the hills and came into the valley of Eshcol, and searched it.
(Num 13:21-25)
25 And they took of the fruit of the land with their hands and brought it down to us, and brought us back word, and said, The land which YAHWEH our Elohim has given us is good.
26 And you were not willing to go up; yea, you rebelled against the mouth of YAHWEH your Elohim,
27 and murmured in your tents, and said, Because YAHWEH hates us, He has brought us out of the land of Egypt, to give us into the hand of the Amorite to destroy us.
28 Where shall we go up? Our brothers have melted our hearts, saying, We have seen there a people greater and taller than we, cities great and walled up to the heavens, and also the sons of Anak. *(Deut 2:10)*
29 And I said to you, do not be terrified; nor be afraid of them;
30 YAHWEH your Elohim who goes before you shall fight for you, according to all that He did for you in Egypt before your eyes;[1]
31 and in the wilderness, where you have seen how YAHWEH your Elohim has borne you as a man bears his son, in all the way which you have gone until you have come to this place.
32 Yet in this thing you are not believing in YAHWEH your Elohim,
33 who went before you in the way to seek out a place for your camping, in fire by night, to show you the way in which you should go, and in a cloud by the day. *(Num 9:15-23)*
34 And YAHWEH heard the sound of your words and was angry, and swore, saying,
35 Not one of these men of this evil generation shall see the good land which I have sworn to give to your fathers,
36 except Caleb the son of Jephunneh, he shall see it, and I shall give the land on which he has walked to him, and to his sons, because he has fully followed YAHWEH. *(Num 14:24)*
37 And YAHWEH was angry with me for your sake, saying, Also you shall not go in there.[2] *(Num 20:1-13)*
38 Yahoshua the son of Nun, who stands before you, he shall go in there; you shall strengthen him; for he shall cause Israel to inherit.
39 And your infants, of whom you said, They are a prey, and your sons who today have no knowledge of good or evil, they shall go in there, and I will

1 Anak means giant. This tribe lived near Hebron and and the surrounding mountains; later Yahoshua conquered them, Jos 11:21-22. A remnant remained in Gaza, Asdod and Gath, the city that Goliath came from.

2 This shows the consequences of our decisions and even Moses, a great man of Elohim lost out on the Promised Land due to this grave mistake.

give it to them, and they shall possess it[1]. *(Num 14:3, 31)*

40 And you, turn yourselves and pull up stakes toward the wilderness, the way of the Sea of Reeds.

41 And you answered and said to me, We have sinned against YAHWEH; we shall go up, and we shall fight, according to all that which YAHWEH our Elohim has commanded us. And you each one girded on his weapons of war, and you thought it easy to go up to the hill country. *(Num 14:40)*

42 And YAHWEH said to me, Say to them, You shall not go up, nor fight, for I am not in your midst; lest you be struck before your enemies.

43 And I spoke to you, and you did not listen, and rebelled against the mouth of YAHWEH, and acted proudly, and went up into the hills[2].

44 And the Amorites who lived in that hill country came out to meet you and they chased you, as the bees do, and struck you in Seir, to Hormah.

45 And you returned and wept before YAHWEH, but YAHWEH did not listen to your voice, nor did He give ear to you.

46 And you lived many days in Kadesh, according to the days that you remained there.

Chapter 2

1 And we turned and pulled up stakes into the wilderness, the way of the Red Sea, as YAHWEH had spoken to me; and we went around the mountain of Seir many days.[3]

2 And YAHWEH spoke to me, saying,

3 You have gone around this mountain long enough; turn yourselves northward.

4 And command the people, saying, You are passing over into the border of your brothers, the sons of Esau, who live in Seir, and they shall be afraid of you. And you shall be on guard very much;

5 you shall not fight against them, for I will not give their land to you, even to a step of a sole of a foot, for I have given Mount Seir to Esau as a possession.

6 You shall buy food from them with silver, and you shall eat; and you shall buy water from them with silver, and you shall drink.[4]

7 For YAHWEH your Elohim has blessed you with all the work of your hands; He has known your walking through this great wilderness. YAHWEH your Elohim has been with you these forty years; you have lacked nothing.

8 And we passed on from our brothers, the sons of Esau, those living in Seir, by the way of the Arabah, by Elath, and by Ezion-Geber, we turned and passed on by the way of the wilderness of Moab.[5]

9 And YAHWEH said to me, Do not besiege Moab, nor stir yourself up against them in battle, for I will not give their land to you for a possession. For I have given Ar as a possession to the sons of Lot.

---

1 This shows that children are teachable when they are young before many get older and develop a hardened heart.

2 The problem was that they were not repentant, but as Esau, they simply were sorry that they lost their blessing.

3 This clearly shows that Mount Sinai had to be on the east side of the Red Sea.

4 It is interesting as they are going through the land of Esau that their appears to be no manna present if they need to buy food, and shows the complete lack of blessing for those who sell their birthright.

5 Verses 1-8 clearly show that the Israelites were on the east side of the Jordan at this time where Mount Sinai was located in Jabel El Laws in Saudi Arabia, Gal 4:25.

10 The Emim[1] lived there in days gone by, a great and plentiful people, and tall as the Anakim; *(Deut 1:28)*
11 they are reckoned to be giants, they too, like the Anakim; but the Moabites call them Emim. *(Gen 6:4)*
12 And the Horites lived in Seir before; and the sons of Esau dispossessed them and destroyed them from before them, and lived in their place, as Israel has done to the land of his possession, which YAHWEH has given to them.
13 Now, rise up and you yourselves pass over the torrent Zered; and we crossed over the torrent Zered.
14 And the days in which we came from Kadesh-Barnea, until we had crossed over the torrent Zered, were thirty eight years, until the end of all the generation, even the men of war were destroyed from the midst of the camp, as YAHWEH swore to them.
15 And the hand of YAHWEH was also against them, to destroy them from the midst of the camp, until they were consumed.
16 And it happened, when all the men of war had finished dying from among the people,
17 YAHWEH spoke to me, saying,
18 You are passing over the border of Moab today, to Ar,
19 and you shall draw near, across from the sons of Ammon. You shall not besiege them nor be stirred up against them, for I have not given of the land of the sons of Ammon to you for a possession. For I have given it for a possession to the sons of Lot.
20 It is reckoned a land of giants[2], even it; giants formerly lived in it, and the Ammonites call them Zamzummim;
21 a great and plentiful people, and tall as the Anakim. And YAHWEH destroyed them before them, and they expelled them, and lived in their place;
22 as He had done for the sons of Esau, who live in Seir, when He destroyed the Horites from before them and they expelled them, and lived in their place until today.
23 And the Avvim[3] who lived in villages as far as Azzah, the Caphtorites[4] coming out of Caphtor destroyed them, and lived in their place.
24 Rise up; pull up stakes and cross over the Arnon River; behold, I have given Sihon the king of Heshbon, the Amorite, and his land into your hand. Begin to possess, and stir yourselves up against him in battle.
25 Today I will begin to put your dread and your fear on the face of the people under all the heavens, who will hear your fame, and will tremble and writhe because of you.
26 And I sent messengers from the wilderness of Kedemoth to Sihon the king of Heshbon with words of peace, saying,
27 Let me pass on the highway through your land; I will go on the highway; I will not turn aside to the right or the left;
28 you shall sell me food for silver, and I shall eat; and you shall give me water for silver, and I will drink. Only, let me pass through on my feet,
29 as the sons of Esau who live in Seir, and the Moabites who live in Ar, have done to me, until I have crossed over the Jordan, to the land which YAHWEH our Elohim is giving to us.
30 And Sihon the king of Heshbon was not willing to let us pass by him, for YAHWEH your Elohim had hardened his spirit, and had

---
1 E'ma in Hebrew means to frighten.
2 These giants are called Rephaim.
3 Avvim were a Pre-Philistine people other wise unknown, Jos 13:3.
4 Caphtorites- see Gen 10:14

emboldened his heart, so as to give him into your hand, as it is this day.

31 And YAHWEH said to me, Behold, I have begun to give Sihon and his land before you; begin to possess, in order to possess his land.

32 And Sihon came out to meet us, he and all his people, to battle at Jahaz.

33 And YAHWEH our Elohim delivered him before us, and we struck him and his sons, and all his people.

34 And we captured all his cities at that time, and utterly destroyed every city, men and women and little ones. We did not leave a remnant.

35 Only, we plundered the cattle for ourselves, and we took the plunder of the cities.

36 From Aroer, which is by the edge of the Arnon River, and the city beside the river, even to Gilead, there was not a city which was too high for us. YAHWEH our Elohim delivered all before us.

37 Only, you did not come near to the land of the sons of Ammon, any part of the Jabbok River, and the cities of the hill country, and all which YAHWEH our Elohim had forbidden us.

Chapter 3

1 And we turned and went up by the way of Bashan, and Og the king of Bashan came out to meet us, he and all his people, to battle at Edrei.

2 And YAHWEH said to me, Do not fear him, for I have given him into your hand, and all his people, and his land. And you shall do to him as you have done to Sihon the king of the Amorites who lived in Heshbon.

3 And YAHWEH our Elohim also gave Og the king of Bashan into our hands, and all his people. And we struck him until not one survivor was left to him.

4 And we captured all his cities at that time, there not being a city which we did not take from them, sixty cities, all the region of Argob, the kingdom of Og in Bashan[1].

5 All these cities were fortified with high walls, gates with bars and double-leaved doors, besides a great many of the unwalled towns.

6 And we utterly destroyed them, as we had done to Sihon the king of Heshbon, destroying every city, the men, the women and the little ones.

7 And we plundered for ourselves all the livestock, and the plunder of the cities.

8 And we took the land that was beyond the Jordan from the valley of Arnon to Mount Hermon, out of the hand of the two kings of the Amorites.

9 The Sidonians call Hermon Sirion, and the Amorites call it Senir;

10 all the cities of the plain, and all Gilead, and all Bashan, to Salcah and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan.

11 For only Og the king of Bashan remained of the rest of the giants. Behold, his bedstead was a bedstead of iron[2]; is it not in Rabbath of the sons of Ammon, nine cubits long and four cubits broad, by the cubit of a man?

12 And we possessed this land at that time: from Aroer by the valley of Arnon, and half the hill country of Gilead and its cities I gave to the Reubenites and to the Gadites.

13 And the rest of Gilead, and all

---

1 Bashan- The area east of the Sea of Galilee commonly known as the Golan Heights, which was allotted to the tribe of Manasseh.

2 This is speaking of his coffin, which was made of a stone structure called a dolmen. Many hundreds of these have been located in archeological excavations in the Golan Heights today.

Bashan, the kingdom of Og, I gave to the half tribe of Manasseh; all the region of Argob, to all Bashan that is called the land of the giants.

14 Jair the son of Manasseh took all the region of Argob, to the border of the Geshurites and the Maachathites, and called them, even Bashan, after his own name, Towns of Jair, until today.

15 And I gave Gilead to Machir.

16 And to the Reubenites and to the Gadites I gave from Gilead even to the valley of Arnon, the middle of the valley and its border; even to the Jabbok River, which is the border of the sons of Ammon;

17 and the Arabah, the Jordan and its border, from Chinnereth even to the sea of the Arabah, the Salt Sea, under the Slopes of Pisgah eastward.

18 And I commanded you at that time, saying, YAHWEH your Elohim has given you this land to possess it. And you shall pass over armed before your brothers, the sons of Israel, all the warriors.

19 Only, your wives and your little ones, and your livestock, shall dwell in your cities which I have given to you. I know that you have much livestock.

20 It shall be until YAHWEH shall give rest to your brothers like yourselves, and they, too, have possessed the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to them beyond the Jordan. Then you shall each man return to his possession which I have given to you.

21 And I at that time commanded Yahoshua, saying, Your eyes have seen all that YAHWEH your Elohim has done to these two kings; so YAHWEH shall do to all the kingdoms to which you are passing over.

22 Do not fear them, for YAHWEH your Elohim, He shall fight for you.

23 And I prayed to YAHWEH for favor at that time, saying,

24 Adonai YAHWEH, You have begun to show Your servant Your greatness and Your mighty hand (for who is a El in the heavens or in the earth who can do according to Your works and according to Your might?)

25 Please let me pass over and see the good land which is beyond the Jordan, this good hill country, and Lebanon.

26 But YAHWEH was angry with me on your account, and would not listen to me. And YAHWEH said to me, Let it be enough for you; do not speak any more to Me about this thing.

27 Go up to the top of Pisgah and lift up your eyes westward and northward and southward and eastward, and see with your eyes; for you shall not cross over this Jordan.

28 And command Yahoshua and make him strong, and make him brave, for he shall cross over before this people, and he shall cause them to inherit the land which you shall see.

29 So we stayed in the valley across from Beth-Peor.

Chapter 4

1 And now, Israel, listen to the statutes and to the judgments which I am teaching you to do[1], so that you may live and go in, and possess the land which YAHWEH the Elohim of your fathers is giving to you.

2 You shall not add to the Word which I command you, nor take from it, to keep the commandments of YAHWEH your Elohim which I command you[2]. *(Deut 12:30)*

3 Your eyes have seen that which

[1] "*Israel listen*"- Literally, "*hear and obey"*. This is written in command form. Obedience is a prerequisite for all covenants of Yahweh.

YAHWEH has done in Baal-Peor. For
YAHWEH your Elohim has destroyed
them from among you, the men that
followed Baal-Peor.
4 And those of you clinging to
YAHWEH your Elohim are alive
today, all of you.
5 See, I have taught you statutes and
ordinances, as YAHWEH my Elohim
has commanded me, to do them, in the
midst of the land where you are going
in, to possess it,
6 and you shall keep and do them,
for it shall be your wisdom and your
understanding before the eyes of the
peoples who hear all these statutes.
And they shall say, This great nation is
a people wise and understanding[1].
7 For who is a great nation whose
Elohim is coming near to them, as
YAHWEH your Elohim is, in all our
calling on Him?
8 And who is a great nation whose
statutes and judgments are as
righteous as all the Torah, which I set
before you today[2]?
9 Only, be on guard for yourself and
keep your soul carefully, that you do
not forget the things which your eyes
have seen; and that they not depart
from your heart all the days of your
life. And you shall make them known
to your sons, and to your sons' sons.
(Pr 22:6, Deut 6:7)
10 The day that you stood before
YAHWEH your Elohim in Horeb,
when YAHWEH said to me, Gather
the people to Me, and I will make
them hear My Words, that they may
learn to fear Me all the days that they
live on the earth; and that they may
teach their sons.
11 And you drew near and stood
below the mountain, and the
mountain burned with fire to the heart
of the heavens, darkness, cloud and
thick gloom.
12 And YAHWEH spoke to you out
of the midst of the fire; you heard the
sound of words, but you did not see a
form, only a voice.[3] *(1Jo 4:12, Jo 1:18)*
13 And He declared His covenant to
you which He has commanded you to
do, the Ten Words; and He wrote
them on two tablets of stone.
14 And YAHWEH commanded me
at that time to teach you statutes and
judgments, for you to do them in the
land which you shall pass over to
possess it.[4]
15 Therefore you shall carefully be
on guard for your souls, for you have
not seen any likeness in the day
YAHWEH spoke to you in Horeb out
of the midst of the fire,[5]
16 lest you act corruptly, and make
for yourselves a carved image, a
likeness of any figure, the shape of a
male or female, *(Deut 9:12)*
17 the shape of any animal in the

---

2 Many Christians forget that the New Testament was not written until late first century/early second century and early believers would have only had the Torah and would have highly upheld the words that are written here to esteem the Torah of Yahweh greatly (Acts 28:23).

1 The word Torah means "*instruction*". It was given as a manual to teach the people how to live a righteous, wisdom filled life. Understanding this fact; how could a spirit filled person ever say it is done away with? Pr 1:7-9, Pr 2:1-2, Pr 3:1-2

2 The Torah separates believers from other people of the world. (Ro 7:12, Ps 119172, Ps 19:7-11)

3 No human being has ever seen Yahweh the Father (1Joh 4:12), they have only heard the sound of His voice. When YHWH visably appears in the Tanach it is Yahshua Yahweh, the Son appearing, Gen 19:24, Gen 18:1.

4 Vs 9-14- It is not enough to just know the commandments but they must be internalized, loved and obeyed.

5 They did not see an image so they would not try to recreate an idol.

earth; the shape of any winged bird that flies in the heavens;

18 the shape of any creeping thing on the ground; the shape of any fish in the waters under the earth;[1]

19 and that you not lift up your eyes towards the heavens and shall see the sun, and the moon and the stars, all the host of the heavens, and you be drawn away and worship them, and serve them; which YAHWEH your Elohim has allotted to all the peoples under all the heavens.[2]

20 And YAHWEH has taken you, and has brought you forth out of the iron furnace, out of Egypt, to be a people to Him, an inheritance, as it is this day.

21 And YAHWEH was angry with me because of your words, and swore I would not pass over the Jordan, and that I might not go into the good land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you as an inheritance.

22 For I will not be in this land; I shall not pass over the Jordan. But you shall pass over, and shall possess this good land.

23 Be on guard for yourselves, that you not forget the covenant of YAHWEH your Elohim, which He has made with you, and make to yourselves a graven image, a likeness of anything which YAHWEH your Elohim has forbidden you.

24 For YAHWEH your Elohim is a consuming fire; He is a jealous El[3].

25 When you father sons and son's sons, and you have been long in the land, and have dealt corruptly, and have made a graven image, a likeness of anything, and have done evil in the sight of YAHWEH your Elohim, to provoke Him to anger;

26 I call the heavens and the earth to witness against you today that you shall soon utterly perish from off the land to which you go over the Jordan to possess it; you shall not prolong your days on it, but shall utterly be destroyed. *(Jer 33:19-21)*

27 And YAHWEH shall scatter you among the peoples, and you shall be left few in number among the nations to which YAHWEH shall lead you away.

28 And there you shall serve other gods, the work of man's hands, wood and stone, which cannot see, nor hear, nor eat, nor smell.[4]

29 And if you shall seek YAHWEH your Elohim from there, then you shall find Him, if you seek Him with your whole heart, and with all your soul,

30 in your distress, when all these things have found you, in the latter

---

1 Verses 16-18- It is interesting to note from these verses that there was no religious art with depictions of people or animals until the 3rd century A.D. And the start of the Byzantine era. It was considered breaking the 2nd commandment.

2 It is inconceivable to think that YHWH would command Israel every month to go out and visibly sight a crescent moon in the context of this verse. The biblical calendar started the month by conjunction and the sighting of the crescent came much later after the Babylonian captivity as it was adopted from Babylon. Yahweh works in the circular pattern and the day starts with the absence of the sun (at sunset) as the month starts with the absence of the moon (Heb 11:1-2) at conjunction. Knowing Israel's propensity to follow their pagan neighbors, Elohim would never purposely tempt them (Ja 1:13-14) by commanding His people to visibly sight a crescent moon each month. The sign of the crescent moon has traditionally been used in the occult and even is the sign of Islam. You can study the complete biblical calendar in lesson 11 online at www.coyhwh.com in the study section.

3 Yahweh is living and whatever does not draw close to Him will be consumed. He is jealous means He maintains His rights. Deut 9:3, Ex 24:17

days, then you shall return to
YAHWEH your Elohim, and shall
listen to His voice. *(Eze 36:16-38,
Amos 9:14-15, Zech 10:1-12)*
31 For YAHWEH your El is a
merciful Elohim. He will not forsake
you, nor destroy you, nor forget the
covenant of your fathers which He
swore to them. *(Mal 3:6)*
32 For ask now of the days past
which were before you, since the day
that Elohim created man on the earth,
and from the one end of the heavens to
the other end of the heavens, whether
there has been a thing as great as this,
or has anything like it been heard.
33 Has a people heard the voice of
Elohim speaking from the midst of the
fire, as you have heard, and lived?
34 Or has Elohim gone forth to take
to Himself a nation from the midst of a
nation, by trials, by signs, and by
wonders, and by war, and by a mighty
hand, and by a stretched out arm, and
by great terrors, according to all that
YAHWEH your Elohim did for you in
Egypt before your eyes?
35 To you it was revealed, so that
you might know that YAHWEH He is
The Elohim, and nothing exists
without Him. *(Is 45:18)*
36 He made you hear His voice out
of the heavens, that He might
discipline you; and He made you to see
His great fire on earth; and you heard
His Word from the midst of the fire.
37 And because He loved your
fathers, and chose their seed after
them, and brought you out with His
presence, with His great power, out of
Egypt,
38 in order to drive out nations
greater and mightier than you from
before you, to bring you in, to give
their land for an inheritance, as it is
this day;
39 know today, and lay it to your
heart, that YAHWEH, He is The
Elohim in the heavens above and on
the earth beneath. Nothing Else[1].
40 And you shall keep His statutes
and His commandments which I am
commanding you today, so that it may
be well with you, and with your sons
after you, and so that you may prolong
your days on the earth, which
YAHWEH our Elohim is giving to you
all the days.[2] *(Eccl 12:13)*
41 Then Moses separated three cities
beyond the Jordan, toward the sun-
rising,
42 that the manslayer might flee
there, he who killed his neighbor
unawares, and did not hate him in
times before, and that he fleeing to one
of these cities might live: *(Num 35:9-
29)*
43 Bezer in the wilderness, in the
tableland, for the Reubenites; and
Ramoth in Gilead for the Gadites; and
Golan in Bashan for the Manassites.[3]
44 And this is the Torah which
Moses set before the sons of Israel;
45 these are the testimonies and the
statutes and the ordinances which
Moses spoke to the sons of Israel when
they came out of Egypt;
46 beyond the Jordan in the valley

---

4 All three major religions worship paganism in some form through stone and wood. Christians have the wooden cross, Muslims have the stone in Mecca and even Judaism bows daily to the stone wall in Jerusalem which is the remains of the Roman Fort Antonia.

1 This verse means there is no life without Yahweh as the source.

2 This was north and east of the Dead Sea on the east side of the Jordan and again shows that Mount Sinai had to be east of the Sinai peninsula in Saudi Arabia.

3 All three of these places are on the eastern side of the Jordan River. Ramoth means heights and was between Hesbon and Bashan divided by the Jabbok River and was heavily wooded during biblical times.

opposite Beth-Peor, in the land of Sihon the king of the Amorites, who lived at Heshbon, whom Moses and the sons of Israel struck when they came out of Egypt.

47 And they took possession of his land, and the land of Og the king of Bashan, the two kings of the Amorites who were beyond the Jordan, toward the sunrising;[1]

48 from Aroer, which is on the edge of the river of Arnon, even to Mount Sion, which is Hermon;[2]

49 and all the Arabah beyond the Jordan eastward, even to the sea of the Arabah, under the Slopes of Pisgah.

Chapter 5

1 And Moses called to all Israel and said to them, Hear, Israel, the statutes and the judgments which I speak in your ears today. And you shall learn them, and be on guard to do them.

2 YAHWEH your Elohim cut a covenant with us in Horeb.

3 YAHWEH did not cut this covenant with our fathers, but with us, even us, these here today, all of us alive.[3] *(Num 26:63-65, Jud 5, Heb 3:19)*

4 YAHWEH talked with you face to face in the mountain out of the midst of the fire.

5 I stood between YAHWEH and you at that time to declare to you the Word of YAHWEH[4]; for you were afraid from the face of the fire, and you did not go up into the mountain, when He spoke, saying: *(Ex 19:16-24)*

6 I am YAHWEH your Elohim who brought you out of the land of Egypt, from the house of slavery.

7 You shall have no other Elohim before Me. *(Math 22:36-38)*

8 You shall not make a carved image for you, any likeness of anything in the heavens above, or in the earth beneath, and in the waters from under the earth.

9 You shall not bow yourself to them nor serve them, for I, YAHWEH your Elohim, am a jealous El, visiting the iniquity of fathers on sons, and on the third, and on the fourth generation of those that hate Me[5], *(Ex 34:7)*

10 and doing kindness to thousands of those who love Me and keep My commandments.

11 You shall not take the name of YAHWEH your Elohim in vain; for YAHWEH will not hold him guiltless who takes His name in vain[6].
(Ex 22:20, 23:13)

12 Observe the Sabbath day, to keep it holy[7], as YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you. *(Ex 20:8-11)*

---

1 Ruth was from this area and was not a Moabite, but from the tribe of Manasseh.

2 "*Mount Sion*" - possibly a spelling error of "*Sirion*" (Deut 3:9). If the scripture correctly names Mount Hermon as also Sion it could have some interesting implications for the last days, Rev 14:1-3, Math 24:14-15.

3 This shows there was a betrothal but the covenant was never ratified due to the sin of the golden calf.

4 Moses as a type of Messiah paralleled Yahshua in that they were both deliverers, prophets, mediators, and intercessors.

5 Verses 8-9- The premise of this command is the worshiping of a graven image.

6 *"In vain"* means to change, falsify or make common. The sacred name Yahweh is so set apart from any other name on earth, it must be revered above everything. The rabbis took this to the point of not even mentioning it, and inadvertently have brought it to nothing. How could we, according to scripture, praise His name, glorify His name, sing praises to His name, call on His name if we did not mention it?

7 The Hebrew word for "*holy*" is "*Kadosh"* and literally means "*set apart"*.

13 Six days you shall labor, and shall do all your work,
14 and the seventh day shall be a Sabbath to YAHWEH your Elohim. You shall not do any work, you nor your son, nor your daughter, nor your male slave, nor your female slave, nor your ox, nor your donkey, nor any of your livestock, nor your stranger that is within your gates; so that your male slave and your female slave may rest like yourself.
15 And remember that you were a slave in the land of Egypt, and YAHWEH your Elohim brought you out from there by a mighty hand and by a stretched out arm. On account of this YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you to keep the Sabbath day[1].
16 Honor your father and your mother, as YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you, so that your days may be prolonged, and so that it may be well with you in the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you. *(Eph 6:2-3)*
17 You shall not commit murder.
18 And you shall not commit adultery. *(Math 5:27-28)*
19 And you shall not steal.
20 And you shall not bear false witness against your neighbor.
21 You shall not lust after your neighbor's wife; nor shall you covet your neighbor's house, his field[2], nor his male slave, nor his female slave, his ox, nor his donkey, nor anything which is your neighbor's[3].
22 YAHWEH spoke these Words to all your assembly on the Mount, out of the midst of the fire of the cloud and out of the thick darkness with a great voice. And He added no more; and He wrote them on two tablets of stone, and gave them to me.[4]
23 And it happened, when you heard the voice out of the midst of the darkness, while the mountain burned with fire, you came near to me, all the rulers of your tribes, and your elders,
24 and you said, Behold! YAHWEH your Elohim has made us see His glory and His greatness to us, and we have heard His voice out of the midst of the fire; we have seen today that Elohim speaks with man, and he lives.
25 And then why should we die? For this great fire will consume us. If we hear the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim any more, then we shall die.
26 For who of all flesh that has heard the voice of the living Elohim speaking out of the midst of the fire, as we have, and has lived?

[1] In Exodus, the Sabbath commandment reverts back to creation, whereas here it is to remember their slavery. This shows us the two-fold commission of the Sabbath day to revere Yahweh as creator and look forward to His soon coming Kingdom when all will be as it was in the Garden of Eden. Secondly, it also reminds us every 7th day of the bondage that our sins brought us into and we give reverence to Yahshua Messiah (Mk 2:28) from saving us from that spiritual bondage by paying the penalty of our sins. Keeping these two most important aspects in remembrance is vital for true covenant believers and clearly shows the Sabbath is important to keep and is still a commandment today.

[2] This was not in Ex 20 under the law against coveting and shows in covenant relationship the former obligations remain and updates can simply be added according to the spirit of the law.

[3] The last commandment ties up all ten by not only telling what to do and not do, but that our thoughts can defile us and sin starts in the mind. Ja 1:14-15, 1 Cor 6:9-10, Eph 5:5.

[4] There is nothing written in the Torah that would make one think that there was a hidden oral law. Everything commanded by YHWH was written in the book of the Torah, Jos 8:33-35, Deut 31:9, Ex 24:4.

27 You go near and hear all that YAHWEH our Elohim may say, and you shall speak to us all that YAHWEH our Elohim may speak to you. And we will hear it and do it.

28 And YAHWEH heard the voice of your words when you spoke to me. And YAHWEH said to me, I have heard the voice of the words of this people, which they have spoken to you; they have well said all that they have spoken.

29 Would that this heart of theirs would be like this always, to fear Me, and to keep all My commandments, that it might be well with them, and with their sons forever. (Jer 31:31-34)

30 Go say to them, Return to your tents.

31 But as for you, you stand here by Me, and I will speak to you all the commandments and the statutes and the judgments which you shall teach them, that they may do them in the land which I am giving to them, to possess it.

32 And you shall be careful to do as YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you; you shall not turn aside to the right or left.

33 You shall walk in all the ways which YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you, so that you may live, and that good may be to you, and you may prolong your days in the land which you will possess[1].

Chapter 6

1 Now this is the commandment, the statute and the judgments which YAHWEH your Elohim commanded to teach you, to do them in the land to which you are crossing over, to possess it,

2 that you might fear YAHWEH your Elohim, to keep all His statutes and His commandments which I command you; you, and your son, and your son's son, all the days of your life; and that your days may be prolonged. *(Deut 4:40, Deut 5:33)*

3 Hear, then, O Israel, and take heed to do it, that it may be well with you, that you may increase greatly, as YAHWEH the Elohim of your fathers has promised you, in the land flowing with milk and honey[2].

4 Hear, O Israel, YAHWEH our Elohim is YAHWEH echad.[3]

5 And you shall love YAHWEH your Elohim with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your might.

6 And these Words which I am commanding you today shall be on your heart.

7 And you shall diligently teach them to your sons, and shall speak of them as you sit in your house, and as you walk in the way, and as you are lying

[1] Being obedient to the Torah was indicative of being able to dwell in the land.

[2] This phrase is used 14 times in the Torah and 19 times throughout the Tanach and would be a desert wanderers' dream. The milk and honey idiom shows much water and unlimited grazing for animals with sweetness of honey all around, something they did not have in the wilderness. Also it is showing a food source naturally from trees of date palm, pomegranate, and figs and not from having to plant a garden. Is 7:15, Deut 32:13-14

[3] This verse called *"The Great Shema"* because "*Hear O Israel*" means to listen or be attentive to. The Hebrew word *"echad"* is a unity word such as family, see Gen 2:24, and means "*Yahweh united"*. If the intention of the verse was to show there was only one YHWH, the Hebrew word used would have been "*yachid"*, see Gen 22:12. It would also make no sense to state there is only Yahweh, when scripture undeniably states there are cherubs and Seraphs and elders around His throne amongst other beings, Rev 4:4, Is 6:1-3.

down, and as you are rising up. *(Pr 22:6)*
8 And you shall bind them for a sign on your hand; and they shall be for frontlets between your eyes.[1]
9 And you shall write them on the doorposts of your house, and on your gates.
10 And it shall be, when YAHWEH your Elohim shall bring you into the land which He has sworn to your fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, to give to you great and good cities, which you have not built,
11 and houses full of every good thing which you have not filled, and wells dug which you did not dig, vineyards and olive yards which you did not plant; and you shall eat and be satisfied;
12 then you shall be on guard that you do not forget YAHWEH who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slaves.
13 You shall fear YAHWEH your Elohim, and you shall serve Him, and you shall swear by His name.[2]
14 You shall not go after other gods, of the Elohim of the people who are around you,
15 for YAHWEH your Elohim is a jealous Elohim in your midst, lest the anger of YAHWEH your Elohim burn against you, and He destroy you from off the face of the earth. *(Ex 34:14)*
16 You shall not test YAHWEH your Elohim as you tested Him in Massah.
17 Diligently, you shall keep[3] the commandments of YAHWEH your Elohim, and His testimonies, and His statutes which He has commanded you.
18 And you shall do the right thing and the good thing in the eyes of YAHWEH, so that it may be well with you, and that you may go in and possess the good land which YAHWEH has sworn to your fathers,
19 to drive out all your enemies from before you, as YAHWEH has spoken.
20 When your son asks you hereafter, saying, What are the testimonies and the statutes and the judgments which YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you?
21 Then you shall say to your son, We were Pharaoh's slaves in Egypt, and YAHWEH brought us out of Egypt with a strong hand.
22 And YAHWEH gave signs and great and grievous wonders on Egypt, on Pharaoh, and on all his household, before our eyes.
23 And He has brought us out from there in order to bring us in, to give us the land which He had sworn to our fathers.
24 And YAHWEH commanded us to do all these statutes, to fear YAHWEH our Elohim for our good forever, to keep us alive, as today.[4]
25 And it shall be righteousness for us when we take heed to do all this commandment before YAHWEH our Elohim, as He has commanded us.

Chapter 7

1 When YAHWEH your Elohim shall bring you into the land to which you are going, to possess it, and He casts out many nations from before

[1] You think with your mind and you do with your hands. This is the opposite of the mark of the beast giving your strength to YHWH. Pr 3:1-3, Ex 13:9, 16, Deut 11:18-20

[2] It was blasphemy and cursing to pray to the name of any deity but YAHWEH, Ex 22:20, Ex 23:13, Ex 3:15, Is 42:8.

[3] The Hebrew Shamar means to guard, protect.

[4] The fear of YHWH will lead one to repentance and obedience, Ps 111:10, Pr 1:7. Without the fear of YHWH, pride will rule one's life, Num 15:39.

you, the Hittites, and the Girgashites, and the Amorites, and the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, seven nations larger and mightier than you;[1] *(Deut 20:17)*

2 and when YAHWEH your Elohim shall give them up before you, and you strike them, then you shall utterly destroy them; you shall not cut a covenant with them, nor show mercy to them; (*Ro 16:17-19)*

3 nor shall you intermarry with them; you shall not give your daughter to his son, nor shall you take his daughter to your son. (*Ezr 9:5-15, 2 Cor 6:14-18, Num 11:1-4, Num 25:1-3)*

4 For he will turn your son away from following Me, that they may serve other Elohim; and the anger of YAHWEH will glow against you, and He will destroy you quickly.

5 But you shall deal with them in this way: you shall break down their altars, and shatter in pieces their pillars; and you shall cut down their Asherahs; and you will burn their carved images with fire.

6 For you are a holy people to YAHWEH your Elohim. YAHWEH your Elohim has chosen you to be His own treasure out of all the people on the face of the earth. *(Ex 19:3-6, 1Pe 2:9-10)*

7 YAHWEH did not set His love on you or choose you because you were more in number than any people, for you were the fewest of all peoples.

8 But because YAHWEH loved you, and because He kept the oath which He swore to your fathers, YAHWEH has caused you to go out with a strong hand, and redeemed you from the house of slaves, from the hand of Pharaoh king of Egypt.

9 Because of this, know that YAHWEH your Elohim, He is Elohim, the faithful El, keeping the covenant and mercy to those who love Him, and to those who keep His commandments, to a thousand generations;[2]

10 and repaying to his face those that hate Him, to destroy him; He will not delay, He will repay him who hates Him, to his face.[3]

11 And you shall keep the commandments, and the statutes, and the judgments which I am commanding you today, to do them.

12 And it shall be, because you hear judgments, and keep and do them, even YAHWEH your Elohim will keep with you the covenant and the mercy which He swore to your fathers.

13 And He will love you, and bless you, and multiply you. He will also bless the fruit of your body, and the fruit of your land, your grain and your wine and your oil, the increase of your oxen and the wealth of your flock, in the land which He has sworn to your fathers, to give it to you[4].

14 You shall be blessed above all

1 The Hittites were a dynasty located in Asia Minor and from 1800B.C. to around 1200B.C. they dominated much of the land of Canaan. The name Amorite comes from the Akkadian word for westerner (west from Babylon) and they lived in the hill country during the time of the Israelite conquest. The Perizzites lived in southern Judah (Jud 1:4-5) and some lived in the land of Ephraim (Jos 17:15). The Hivittes were from Gibeon (Jos 9:7, 11:19, 2 Sam 24:7) and the Jebusites were in Jerusalem (1 Chron 11:4-5).

2 Since the creation of Adam in Genesis, there have only been roughly 150 generations using the number 40, which is the smallest number in equating a generation. This shows that YHWH's love and mercy continues today to those fearing Him and keeping His commandments.

3 The singular suffix here indicates YHWH will personally punish each individual who disobeys Him.

people; there shall not be a barren man or a barren woman among you, nor among your livestock.

15 And YAHWEH shall turn aside every sickness from you; and He will not put on you any of the evil diseases of Egypt, which you have known, but He will put them on all who hate you.

16 And you shall destroy all the people whom YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you. And your eye shall have no pity on them; and you shall not serve their gods; for it shall be a snare to you.

17 If you shall say in your heart, These nations are more plentiful than I; how can I throw them out?

18 You shall not be afraid of them; remembering you shall remember that which YAHWEH your Elohim has done to Pharaoh, and to all Egypt,

19 the great trials which your eyes have seen, and the miracles, and the wonders and the mighty hand, and the stretched out arm with which YAHWEH your Elohim has brought you out. So YAHWEH your Elohim shall do to all the peoples of whose face you are afraid.

20 And YAHWEH your Elohim shall send the hornets among them, until the ones who are left perish, even those who hide themselves from your face. *(Ex 23:27-33)*

21 You shall not tremble before them, for YAHWEH your Elohim is among you, a mighty and fearful El.

22 And YAHWEH your Elohim will clear out those nations before you little by little. You may not consume them at once, lest the beasts of the field increase upon you.

23 And YAHWEH your Elohim shall deliver them up before you, and destroy them with a great destruction until they are exterminated.

24 And He shall give their kings into your hand; and you shall destroy their name from under the heavens. No man shall be able to stand before you until you have destroyed them.

25 You shall burn the carved images of their Elohim with fire; and you shall not lust after the silver and gold on them, nor shall you take it to yourself, that you not be snared by it; for it is an abomination to YAHWEH.

26 And you shall not bring an abomination into your house, that you not be a cursed thing like it. You shall utterly detest it, and you shall utterly hate it; for it is a cursed thing. (Jos 7:1)

Chapter 8

1 You shall be watchful to do every commandment which I am commanding you today, so that you may live and may multiply and may go in and possess the land which YAHWEH has sworn to your fathers.[1]

2 And you shall remember all the way which YAHWEH your Elohim has caused you to go these forty years in the wilderness, in order to humble you, to try you, to know that which is in your heart, whether you will keep His commandments or not[2].

3 And He has humbled you, and caused you to hunger, and caused you to eat the manna, which you had not known, and your fathers had not known, in order to cause you to know that man shall not live by bread alone, but man shall live by every Word that proceeds from the mouth of YAHWEH[3]. *(Math 4:4)*

---

4 The physical land of Israel is always an integral part of Yahweh's everlasting covenant.

1 Obedience to the Torah is a prerequisite for possessing the land.

2 The wilderness was simply a test of faith and obedience, Heb 3:7-19, 4:1-3.

3 Bread sustains life but does not give life.

4 Your clothing did not wear out on you, and your foot did not swell, these forty years.

5 And you have known with your heart that as a man disciplines his son, YAHWEH your Elohim disciplines you. *(Heb 12:5-8)*

6 And you shall keep the commandments of YAHWEH your Elohim, to walk in His ways, and to fear Him.

7 For YAHWEH your Elohim brings you into a good land, a land of streams of water, of fountains and depths that spring out of valleys and hills,

8 a land of wheat and barley and vines and fig trees and pomegranates, a land of olive oil and honey,[1]

9 a land in which you shall eat bread without want; you shall not lack anything in it; a land whose stones are iron; and you shall dig copper out of its mountains[2].

10 And you shall eat and be satisfied; and you shall bless YAHWEH your Elohim in the good land which He has given you.

11 Take heed to yourself, lest you forget YAHWEH your Elohim so as not to keep His commandments, and His judgments, and His statutes, which I am commanding you today;

12 that when you have eaten and are satisfied, and have built goodly houses, and have lived in them;

13 and when your herds and your flocks multiply, and your silver and your gold have multiplied, and all that you have is multiplied,

14 then it rises up into your heart, and you forget YAHWEH your Elohim who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slaves;[3]

15 who led you through the great and dreadful wilderness, with burning serpent, and scorpion, and thirsty ground where no water is; who brought you water out of the flinty rock; *(Is 30:6)*

16 who made you eat manna in the wilderness, which your fathers did not know; that He might humble you and that He might prove you, to do you good at your latter end; *(Deut 8:2)*

17 that you not say in your heart, My power and the might of my hand have made for me this wealth.[4]

18 But you shall remember YAHWEH your Elohim, for it is He who gives to you power to make wealth; that He may establish His covenant which He swore to your fathers, as it is this day.

19 And it shall be, if you shall forget YAHWEH your Elohim, and walk after other gods, and serve them, and worship them, I testify against you today that you shall utterly perish;

20 as the nations that YAHWEH makes to perish before you, so you shall perish; because you did not listen to the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim.

Chapter 9

1 Hear, O Israel, you shall cross over the Jordan today, to go in to

1 All of these are part of the seven species for Sukkot and are listed in order of importance.

2 The Timna copper mines in the south were used to mine copper for Solomon's sanctuary and also the trans-Jordan mountains.

3 Verses 11:14- It is much easier to forget Elohim during the times when everything is going good, instead of the times of trial when He is more needed. This is a warning to always remember the one who freed them.

4 This is the prideful, blinded thought of the Laodicean that thinks his own might got him all he has acquired and doesn't realize his pathetic spiritual state, (Rev 3:14-18).

dispossess nations greater and mightier than yourself, cities great and walled up to the heavens;

2 a people great and tall, the sons of the Anakim, whom you know, and of whom you have heard it said, Who can stand before the sons of Anak? [1]

3 And know today that YAHWEH your Elohim is He who passes over before you as a consuming fire; He will destroy them, and He will bring them down before you; so you shall dispossess them and make them to perish quickly, as YAHWEH has spoken to you.

4 Do not say in your heart, when YAHWEH your Elohim casts them out from before you, saying, YAHWEH has brought me in to possess this land for my righteousness. But say, YAHWEH dispossesses them from before you because of the wickedness of those nations. *(Lev 18:1-5,24-30)*

5 It is not for your righteousness or for the uprightness of your heart that you go to possess their land. But YAHWEH your Elohim is dispossessing them from before you because of the wickedness of these nations; and in order to establish the Word which YAHWEH has sworn to your fathers, to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob.

6 And you shall know that YAHWEH your Elohim is not giving you this good land, to possess it, for your righteousness; for you are a stiff-necked people.

7 Remember; do not forget how you made YAHWEH your Elohim angry in the wilderness; even from the day that you came out of the land of Egypt until you came into this place you have been rebellious against YAHWEH.

8 Even in Horeb you made YAHWEH angry; and YAHWEH breathed angrily against you, to destroy you.

9 When I went up into the mountain to receive the tablets of stone, tablets of the covenant which YAHWEH cut with you, and I remained in the mountain forty days and forty nights I did not eat bread nor did I drink water,

10 and YAHWEH gave to me the two tablets of stone written with the finger of Elohim, and on them was written according to all the Words which YAHWEH spoke with you in the mountain, out of the midst of the fire, in the day of the assembly;

11 then it happened, at the end of forty days and forty nights YAHWEH gave the two tablets of stone to me, tablets of the covenant,

12 and YAHWEH said to me, Rise up, go down quickly from here; for your people whom you have brought out of Egypt have acted corruptly; they have quickly turned aside out of the way which I commanded them; they have made themselves a cast image.

13 And YAHWEH spoke to me, saying, I have seen this people, and, behold, it is a stiff-necked people. *(Ex 32:1-10)*

14 Let Me alone that I may destroy them and blot out their name from under the heavens; and I will make of you a nation mightier and greater than they.

15 And I turned and came down from the mountain, and the mountain was burning with fire, and the two tablets of the covenant were in my two hands;

16 and I looked; and, behold! You had sinned against YAHWEH your Elohim; you had made a casted calf for yourselves; you had quickly turned out of the way which YAHWEH had commanded you.

---

1 See note on Deut 1:28.

17 And I took hold of the two tablets and threw them out of my two hands, and broke them before your eyes.

18 And I fell down before YAHWEH, as at the first, forty days and forty nights; I ate no bread and drank no water; because of all your sins which you had sinned, in doing that which was evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, to make Him angry.

19 For I was afraid because of the anger and the fury with which YAHWEH had been angry against you, to destroy you. And YAHWEH listened to me at this time also.

20 And YAHWEH was very angry with Aaron, to destroy him, and I also prayed for Aaron at that time.

21 And I took your sin, the calf which you made, and I burned it with fire, and beat it, grinding it very small until it was as fine as dust; and I threw its dust into the torrent that came down out of the mountain.

22 And at Taberah, and at Massah, and at The Graves of Lust you provoked YAHWEH to anger.

23 And when YAHWEH sent you from Kadesh-Barnea, saying, Go up and possess the land which I have given to you, then you rebelled against the mouth of YAHWEH your Elohim, and did not believe Him, nor listen to His voice.

24 You have been rebellious against YAHWEH from the day that I knew you.

25 And I fell down before YAHWEH the forty days and the forty nights as I had thrown myself down before, for YAHWEH had said to destroy you.

26 And I prayed to YAHWEH, and said, O Adonai YAHWEH, do not destroy Your people, and Your inheritance whom You have redeemed in Your greatness; whom You have brought out of Egypt with a mighty hand.

27 Remember Your servants, Abraham, Isaac and Jacob; do not look to the stubbornness of this people, nor to their wickedness nor to their sin,

28 lest the land from which You brought us say, Because YAHWEH was not able to bring them into the land which He promised them; and, because He hated them, He has brought them out to kill them in the wilderness.

29 And they are Your people, and Your inheritance, whom You have brought out by Your great power, and by Your stretched out arm.

(Ps 106:39-40)

Chapter 10

1 At that time YAHWEH said to me, Cut out for yourself two tablets of stone like the first, and come up to Me, into the mountain, and you shall make for yourself an ark of wood;

2 and I shall write on the tablets the words which were on the first tablets, which you have broken, and you shall place them in the ark.

3 And I made an ark of acacia wood, and cut out two tablets of stone like the first, and went up into the mountain; and the two tablets were in my hand.

4 And He wrote on the tablets according to the writing, the Ten Words[1], which YAHWEH had spoken to you in the mountain, out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly. And YAHWEH gave them to me,

5 and I turned and came down from the mountain and put the tablets in the ark which I had made. And they are there, as YAHWEH commanded me.

6 And the sons of Israel pulled up

[1] The 10 commandments called words here.

stakes from Beeroth of the sons of
Jaakan to Mosera[1]; Aaron died there
and he was buried there; and his son
Eleazar was acting as priest in his
place.
7 From there they pulled up stakes to
Gudgodah;and from Gudgodah to
Jotbath, a land of water brooks.[2]
8 At that time YAHWEH separated
the tribe of Levi, to bear the ark of the
covenant before YAHWEH, to stand
before YAHWEH and to minister to
Him, and to bless in His name, until
today.
9 Therefore, Levi has no portion nor
inheritance with his brothers;
YAHWEH is his inheritance,
according as YAHWEH your Elohim
spoke to him.
10 And I stayed in the mountain
forty days and forty nights, as at the
first. And YAHWEH listened to me
that time also; YAHWEH did not will
to destroy you.
11 And YAHWEH said to me Rise
up! Go before the people, causing
them to set forward, that they may go
in and possess the land which I swore
to their fathers, to give it to them.
12 And now, Israel, what has
YAHWEH your Elohim asked of you,
except to fear YAHWEH your Elohim,
to walk in all His ways, and to love
Him, and to serve YAHWEH your
Elohim with all your heart, and with
all your soul;
13 to keep the commandments of
YAHWEH, and His statutes which I
am commanding you today, for your
good.[3] *(Deut 5:33, Deut 6:24)*
14 Behold, the heavens and the
Heaven of the heavens, the earth and
all in it, belong to YAHWEH your
Elohim.
15 Only, YAHWEH has delighted in
your fathers, to love them; and He
chose their seed after them, on you out
of all the peoples, as it is today.
16 And you shall circumcise the
foreskin of your heart, and you shall
not harden your neck any more.
17 For YAHWEH your Elohim, He is
the Elohim of Elohims, and the Master
of Masters; the great, the mighty, the
fearful Elohim who does not lift up
faces, nor take a bribe.
18 He executes justice for the
fatherless and the widow, and loves
the alien, to give to him food and
clothing.
19 And you shall love the alien, for
you were aliens in the land of Egypt.
20 You shall fear YAHWEH your
Elohim; you shall serve Him; and you
shall cleave to Him; and you shall
swear by His name.
21 He shall be your praise, and He
shall be your Elohim, who has done
for you these great and fearful things
which your eyes have seen.
22 Your fathers went down to Egypt
with seventy persons[4]; and now
YAHWEH your Elohim has made you
as the stars of the heavens for
multitude.

Chapter 11

1 And you shall love YAHWEH your
Elohim, and keep His charge, and His
statutes and His judgments, and His
commandments all the days.
2 And you know today, for I do not
speak with your sons who have not
known, and who have not seen the
chastisement of YAHWEH your

[1] Mosera means chastisement and was a province in which Mount Hor was located.

[2] *"Gudgodah"*- The place is unknown but the name is after a false pagan goddess.

[3] There are only blessings for obedience (Ps 19:7-11) and curses for disobedience, Deut 28:58-67.

[4] This does not include Joseph and his family, whereas Gen 46:27 does.

Elohim, His greatness, His mighty
hand, and His stretched out arm,
3 and His signs, and His works
which He did in the midst of Egypt to
Pharaoh the king of Egypt, and to all
his land;
4 and that which He has done to the
army of Egypt, to its horses, and to its
chariots, when He caused the waters of
the Red Sea to flow over them as they
pursued them. And YAHWEH
destroyed them to this day;
5 and that which He has done to you
in the wilderness, until you came to
this place;
6 and that which He has done to
Dathan, and to Abiram, sons of Eliab,
Reuben's son, when the earth opened
her mouth and swallowed them and
their houses and their tents and all the
living substance at their feet, in the
midst of all Israel.
7 But your eyes see all the great work
of YAHWEH which He has done.
8 And you shall keep all the
commandments which I am
commanding you today, so that you
shall be strong, and shall go in and
possess the land to which you are
crossing over, to possess it;
9 and so that you may prolong your
days in the land which YAHWEH has
sworn to your fathers, to give to them
and to their seed, a land flowing with
milk and honey.
10 For the land to which you are
going, to possess it, is not as the land
of Egypt, from where you came, where
you sowed your seed and watered it
with your foot, as a garden of herbs[1].
11 But the land which you are
entering to possess it is a land of hills
and valleys, drinking water from the
rain of the heavens;[2]
12 a land which YAHWEH your
Elohim cares for; the eyes of
YAHWEH your Elohim are always on
it from the beginning of the year to the
end of the year.[3]
13 And it shall be, if listening you
will listen to My commands which I
command you today, to love
YAHWEH your Elohim, and to serve
Him with all your heart, and with all
your soul[4],
14 that I will give the rain of your
land in its season, the early rain and
the latter rain, that you may gather in
your grain, and your new wine, and
your oil.
15 And I will give grass in your fields
for your livestock; and you shall eat
and be satisfied.
16 Take heed to yourselves, that your
heart not be deceived, and you turn
aside and serve other elohim, and bow
down to them;
17 and the anger of YAHWEH glow
against you, and He shut up the
heavens, and there be no rain, and the
ground not give her increase, and you
perish quickly from off the good land
which YAHWEH is giving to you.
18 And you shall lay these Words up
in your hearts, and in your souls, and
shall bind them for a sign on your
hand. And they shall be for frontlets
between your eyes[5].
19 And you shall teach them to your
sons by speaking of them as you sit in
your house, and as you walk in the
way, and as you lie down, and as you
rise up. *(Deut 6:7)*
20 And you shall write them on the

---

1 In Egypt due to lack of rain water channels had to be dug out by foot to allow water to flow from reservoirs or cisterns.

2 This verse is contrasted with verse 10 showing in Israel Yahweh is giving the land rain from heaven in due season.

3 Although man thinks in the linear, YHWH works in the circular. The biblical year goes around in a circle from equinox to equinox.

4 Love is equated with obedience.

5 One thinks with the the brain and does with the hands. Deut 6:8, Ex 13:9, Pr 3:1-4

side posts of your house, and on your gates, *(Deut 6:9)*

21 that your days and the days of your sons may be multiplied in the land which YAHWEH has sworn to your fathers, to give to them, as the days of the heavens over the earth. *(Deut 34:4)*

22 For if keeping you will keep this command which I am commanding you, to do it, to love YAHWEH your Elohim, to walk in all His ways, and to cleave to Him,

23 then YAHWEH shall dispossess all these nations from before you, and you shall possess nations greater and mightier than you.

24 Every place where the sole of your foot treads shall be yours, from the wilderness and Lebanon, from the river, the Euphrates River even to the furthest sea shall be your border.[1]

25 No man shall stand before you. YAHWEH your Elohim shall put your dread and your fear on the face of all the land on which you tread, as He has spoken to you.

26 Behold! I set before you today a blessing and a curse:

27 a blessing if you hear the commandments of YAHWEH your Elohim which I command you today;

28 and a curse if you will not hear the commandments of YAHWEH your Elohim, but will turn aside out of the way which I command you today, to go after other gods which you have not known. *(Deut 30:11-19)*

29 And it shall be when YAHWEH your Elohim shall bring you into the land to which you go to possess it, that you shall set the blessing on Mount Gerizim, and the curse on Mount Ebal. *(Jos 8:33, Deut 27:10-13)*

30 Are they not beyond the Jordan, behind the way of the sunset, in the land of the Canaanites that live in the Arabah, opposite to Gilgal, beside the oaks of Moreh?

31 For you are to cross over the Jordan to go in to possess the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you; and you shall possess it and live in it.

32 And take heed to do all the statutes and the judgments which I am giving before you today.

Chapter 12

1 These are the statutes and the judgments which you shall take heed to do in the land which YAHWEH the Elohim of your fathers has given to you, to possess it, all the days that you live on the earth:

2 You shall completely destroy all the places where the nations which you are dispossessing served their gods, on the high mountains, and on the hills, and under every leafy tree.[2]

3 And you shall break down their altars, and shatter their standing pillars. And you shall burn their Asherahs with fire. And you shall cut down the carved images of their gods, and shall destroy their names out of that place. (*Deut 7:1-6)*

4 You shall not do so to YAHWEH your Elohim. (*Joh 4:24)*

5 But you shall seek to the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose out of all your tribes *(Jerusalem)*[3]; for you shall seek His

1 The promise given Abraham in Gen 15:18

2 So not to be enticed with false worship, Israel was commanded to destroy all the altars of worship where pagans were sacrificing to their false deities.

3 Jerusalem, since the Garden of Eden, has always been the eternal headquarters of Yahweh and will continue to be so in the Millennium Mic 4:2-4, Ps 132:13-14, Ps 122:1, Kgs 14:21, Ps 135:21, Joel 2:32, 3:17, 21, Jer 3:17.

dwelling, to put His name there. And you shall go there.[1] *(Deut 16:16)*

6 And you shall bring your burnt offerings there, and your sacrifices, and your tithes, and the heave offering of your hand, and your vows, and your freewill offering, and the firstlings of your herd and of your flock.

7 And you shall eat there before YAHWEH your Elohim, and shall rejoice in all that you put your hand to, you and your households, with which YAHWEH your Elohim has blessed you.

8 You shall not do according to all that we are doing here today, each doing all that is right in his own eyes. *(Jud 21:25)*

9 For you have not come to the rest and to the inheritance which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you.[2]

10 And you shall cross over the Jordan, and shall live in the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is causing you to inherit. And He shall give you rest from all your enemies all around; and you shall live securely[3]. *(Lev 25:18)*

11 And it shall be the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose to cause His name to dwell there *(Jerusalem)*, there you shall bring all that I am commanding you, your burnt offerings, and your sacrifices, your tithes, and the heave offering of your hand, and all your choice freewill offerings which you vow to YAHWEH.

12 And you shall rejoice before YAHWEH your Elohim, you and your sons, and your daughters, and your male slaves, and your female slaves, and the Levite within your gates because he has no portion or inheritance with you.

13 Take heed to yourself that you not offer your burnt offerings in every place that you see;

14 but in the place which YAHWEH shall choose in one of your tribes *(Jerusalem)*, there you shall offer your burnt offerings, and there you shall do all that I command. *(Lev 17:8-9)*

15 Only with all the desire of your soul you shall sacrifice and shall eat meat within all your gates according to the blessing of YAHWEH your Elohim which He has given you; the unclean one and the clean one may eat of it, as of the gazelle and as of the hart.

16 Only, you shall not eat the blood; you shall pour it as water on the earth.

17 You are not able to eat the tithe of your grain within your gates, and of your new wine, and your oil, and the firstlings of your herd and of your flock, and any of your vows which you vow, and your freewill offering, and the heave offering of your hand.

18 But you shall eat it before YAHWEH your Elohim in the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose *(Jerusalem)*, you and your son, and your daughter, and your male slave, and your female slave, and the Levite who is within your gates. And you shall rejoice before YAHWEH your Elohim in all that you put your hand to.

19 Take heed to yourself that you do not forsake the Levite as long as you live on the land.

20 Then YAHWEH your Elohim shall enlarge your border, as He has promised you, and you shall say, I will eat flesh, because your soul desires to

[1] YHWH's way is always leading to sanctification of His chosen people.

[2] As in ancient Israel, so it is today that one must be an over-comer to come to the rest (millennium) of YHWH, Phil 2:12, Rev 2:4-5.

[3] A clear parallel is shown of entering the Promised Land of Israel with the millennium. Heb 3:7-19

eat flesh, you may eat flesh according to all the desire of your soul.

21 If the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose to put His name there is too far from you, then you shall kill of your herd and of your flock which YAHWEH has given you, as I have commanded you; and you shall eat within your gates according to all the desire of your soul.

22 Only, as the gazelle and the hart are eaten, so you shall eat of it; the unclean and the clean may eat of it alike.

23 Only, be sure not to eat the blood, for the blood is the life, and you shall not eat the life with the flesh;

24 You shall not eat it; you shall pour it on the earth as water.

25 You shall not eat it in order that it may be well with you and with your sons after you, when you do that which is right in the eyes of YAHWEH.

26 Only, your holy things which you have, and your vows, you shall take up and shall go to the place which YAHWEH shall choose*(Jerusalem)*.

27 And you shall offer your burnt offerings, the flesh and the blood, on the altar of YAHWEH your Elohim; and the blood of your sacrifices shall be poured out by the altar of YAHWEH your Elohim; and you shall eat the flesh.

28 Take heed to listen to all these Words which I am commanding you, in order that it may be well with you and with your sons after you forever, when you do that which is good and right in the eyes of YAHWEH your Elohim.

29 When YAHWEH your Elohim shall cut off the nations from before you, where you are going in to possess them, and you shall possess them, and shall live in their land,

30 take heed to yourself that you not be snared to follow them after they have been destroyed before you; and that you not inquire after their gods, saying, How did these nations serve their Elohim? And I shall do so, even I. *(Lev 18:2-3, Lev 20:22-23)*

31 You shall not do so to YAHWEH your Elohim; for everything hateful to YAHWEH, which He detests, they have done to their gods. For they have even burned their sons and their daughters in the fire to their gods[1].

32 All the things that I command you, take heed to do them and you shall not add to it, nor take away from it. *(Deut 4:2)*

Chapter 13

1 If a prophet or a dreamer of dreams rises among you, and gives you a sign or a wonder,

2 and the sign or the wonder which he spoke to you occurs, saying, Let us go after other Elohim which you have not known, and let us serve them,

3 you shall not listen to the words of that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams. For YAHWEH your Elohim is testing you, to know if you love YAHWEH your Elohim with all your heart and with all your soul.
(Deut 18:22)

4 You shall walk after YAHWEH your Elohim, and you shall fear Him. And you shall keep His commandments, and you shall hear His voice, and you shall serve Him, and you shall cleave to Him.

5 And that prophet or that dreamer of dreams shall die, because he has spoken apostasy against YAHWEH

[1] The sacrifices of the pagans were so abominable, even sacrificing children, that Yahweh would have no part of any mixture of paganism with biblical practices. Today many Christians mix pagan practices such as Christmas and Easter and clearly go against the direct command of scripture.

your Elohim, who is bringing you out of the land of Egypt, and has redeemed you out of the house of slaves, to drive you out of the way in which YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you to walk. And you shall put away evil from among your midst.

6 If your brother, your mother's son, or your son, or your daughter, or the wife of your bosom, or your friend who is as your own soul, shall entice you secretly, saying, Let us go and serve other elohim, which you have not known, you and your fathers,

7 of the Elohim of the people around you, those near you or far off from you, from one end of the earth even to the other end of the earth,

8 you shall not consent to him, nor listen to him, nor shall your eye have pity on him, nor shall you spare nor hide him.

9 But you shall surely kill him; your hand shall be first upon him to cause him to die, and the hand of all the people last.

10 And you shall stone him with stones, and he shall die, for he has sought to drive you out from YAHWEH your Elohim, who brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slaves.

11 And all Israel shall hear and fear, and shall not again do any such wicked thing as this among you.

12 If, in one of your cities which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving you to live in, you hear one saying,

13 Certain men, sons of Belial, have gone out from among you and have drawn away those who live in their city, saying, Let us go and serve other elohim, which you have not known;

14 then you shall inquire and make search, and ask carefully; and, behold, if the thing is truly established, that this abominable thing has been done among you,

15 Surely, you shall strike those who live in that city by the mouth of the sword, destroying it completely, and all that is in it, and its livestock, with the mouth of the sword.

16 And you shall gather all its spoil into the middle of its open place, and shall burn the city with fire, and all its spoil, completely, before YAHWEH your Elohim. And it shall be a heap perpetually; it shall not be built any more.

17 And not any of the cursed thing shall cleave to your hand, so that YAHWEH shall turn from the fierceness of His anger, and shall give mercies to you, and shall love you, and shall multiply you, as He has sworn to your fathers,

18 when you listen to the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim, to keep all His commandments which I am commanding you today, to do that which is right in the eyes of YAHWEH your Elohim.

Chapter 14

1 You are sons to YAHWEH your Elohim; you shall not cut yourselves, nor make any baldness between your eyes for the dead[1].

2 For you are a holy people to YAHWEH your Elohim; and YAHWEH has chosen you to be a people to Him, a special treasure out of all the peoples who are on the face of the earth[2].

3 You shall not eat any abominable thing.

---

1 The practices mentioned here are pagan and cultic. Pagan priests also many times shaved their heads and even cut themselves to draw blood as a cultic ritual. 1 Kgs18:26-28, Lev 19:28, Lev 21:5-8, Jer 15:5-6.

2 1 Pe 2:9

4 These are the animals which you shall eat: the ox, the flocked sheep, and the flocked goat,
5 the hart and gazelle, and roe deer, and wild goat, and antelope, and Oryx, and moufflon.
6 And you may eat every animal that divides the hoof, and divides two hoofs wholly, and chews the cud among the animals.
7 But you shall not eat of those that only chew the cud, or those only dividing the cloven hoof: the camel, and the hare, and the rock badger; for they chew the cud but do not divide the hoof. They shall be unclean to you.
8 And the swine, because it divides the hoof, but does not chew the cud; it is unclean to you. You shall not eat of their flesh, nor touch their dead body.
9 These you shall eat of all in the waters: you shall eat all that have fins and scales.
10 And whatever does not have fins and scales, you shall not eat. It shall be unclean to you.
11 You shall eat of all clean birds.
12 But you shall not eat of these: the eagle, the black vulture, and the bearded vulture,
13 and the hawk, and falcons, and the kite by its kinds,
14 and all ravens by their kinds;
15 and the ostrich, and the great owl, and the sea gull, and small hawks by their kinds,
16 the little owl, and the eared owl, and the barn owl,
17 and the pelican, and the owl, and the cormorant,
18 and the stork, and the heron after its kind, and the hoopoe, and the bat.
19 And every teeming thing that flies shall be unclean to you; they shall not be eaten.[1]
20 You may eat of all clean birds.
21 You shall not eat of anything that died of itself. You may give it to the alien who is within your gates, that he may eat it. Or you may sell it to a foreigner. For you are a holy people to YAHWEH your Elohim. You shall not boil a kid in its mother's milk.[2]
22 Tithing you shall tithe all the increase of your seed that the field yields year by year[3].
23 And you shall eat before YAHWEH your Elohim in the place which He shall choose to cause His name to dwell there *(Jerusalem)*, the tithe of your grain, of your wine[4], and of your oil, and the first-lings of your herd and of your flock; that you may learn to fear YAHWEH your Elohim all your days[5].
24 And if the way is too long for you, so that you cannot carry it, because the place is too far from you which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose to set His name there, when YAHWEH your Elohim shall bless you;
25 Then you shall give it for silver, and bind up the silver in your hand. And you shall go to the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose *(Jerusalem)*[6].
26 And you shall pay the silver for whatever your soul rightly desires, for oxen, or for sheep, or for wine, or for

1 VS 11-19- All unclean birds are carnivores.

2 This was a Canaanite cultist practice dating back to the 15th century B.C.

3 Tithing is an Elohim given principle that all belongs to Yahweh, and when we receive increase from Him we give 10% tithe on all increase. Math 23:23, Gen 28:18-22, Num 18:21-29, Deut 26:12, Deut 12:5-8

4 The Hebrew word used here for wine, *"terosh"* indicates it is new wine.

5 This here is speaking of the festival tithe. Ten percent was already tithed in verse 22, and here in verse 23, it is stating by being faithful and putting aside Yahweh's 10%, you can now use 10% of the tithe for you and your family at feast time in Jerusalem. Deut 26:1-4,9-19, Neh 10:31-39

fermented drink, or for whatever your soul desires. And you shall eat there before YAHWEH your Elohim, and you shall rejoice, you and your household[1].
27 And you shall not forsake the Levite who is within your gates, for he has no portion nor inheritance with you.
28 At the end of three years, even the same year, you shall bring forth all the tithe of your increase, and shall lay it up within your gates[2].
29 And the Levite, because he has no portion nor inheritance with you, and the alien, and the fatherless, and the widow who are within your gates shall come and shall eat and be satisfied; so that YAHWEH your Elohim may bless you in all the work of your hand which you do. *(Gal 2:9-10, Gal 6:10)*

Chapter 15

1 At the end of every seven years you shall make a release. *(Lev 25;1-7)*
2 And this is the manner of the release: Everyone who has a loan to his neighbor shall release it; he shall not exact it of his neighbor and his brother, because a release has been proclaimed for YAHWEH.*(Deu 31:10)*
3 You may exact it from a foreigner, but your hand shall release whatever is yours with your brother[3],
4 only that there shall be no one in need among you. For YAHWEH will greatly bless you in the land that YAHWEH your Elohim is giving you for an inheritance, to possess it,
5 only if carefully you will listen to the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim, to take heed to do all this commandments, which I am commanding you today.
6 For YAHWEH your Elohim will bless you as He promised you. And you shall lend to many nations, but you shall not borrow. And you shall rule over many nations, but they shall not rule over you.
7 If there is a poor man among you, one of your brothers inside any of your gates in your land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, you shall not harden your heart, nor shut your hand from your needy brother.
8 But you shall open your hand wide to him, and surely you shall lend him enough for his need in that which he lacks. *(2 Cor 9:6-8)*
9 Beware that there is no evil thought in your heart, saying, The seventh year, the year of release draws

[6] Coming up to Jerusalem at feast time was a great blessing and also a commandment. One of the worst punishments of Israel's Diaspora was that they could no longer appear before Yahweh at feast time in His set apart city Jerusalem. Many today, due to Diaspora, have totally missed the point of the biblical calendar being agricultural to connect Israel to the land all year long. By keeping the feast in captivity worldwide there is a great blessing missed by not coming to Jerusalem at feast time.

[1] Not only did Yahweh condone happiness and joy at feast time, but He actually commanded it. You were able to use your second tithe for special meals etc that you may not be able to enjoy other times of the year.

[2] Yahweh commanded that every third year the tithe was to be used for the poor and less fortunate to make sure that the poor were not neglected. Also note, that the tithe was brought to the elders who would have been sitting in the city gate for distribution.

[3] Israel was to have a very special relationship with each other as brothers. If followed, it ensured that there would not be needy or poor among them. Unfortunately, as a nation they never implemented these practices.

near; and your eye be evil against your needy brother, and you give him nothing, and he cry to YAHWEH against you and it be sin to you.

10 Surely, you shall give to him, and your heart shall not be grieved when you give to him, because YAHWEH your Elohim will bless you for this thing, in all your work, and in all that you put your hand to. *(2 Cor 9:7)*

11 For the needy will never cease from the midst of the land. On account of this I command you, saying, Opening you shall open your hand to your poor and needy brother in your land.

12 If your brother, a Hebrew man, or a Hebrew woman, is sold to you and serves you six years, then in the seventh year you shall let him go free from you. *(Jer 34:14)*

13 And when you send him out free from you, you shall not let him go away empty.

14 You shall richly adorn him from your flock, and from your threshing floor, and from your winepress, with that which YAHWEH your Elohim has blessed you, you shall give to him.

15 And you shall remember that you were a slave in the land of Egypt, and YAHWEH your Elohim redeemed you. On account of this I command you this thing today. *(Ex 13:3, Deut 24:18)*

16 And it shall be, if he says to you, I will not go out from you, because he loves you and your house, because it was good for him with you;

17 then you shall take an awl, and shall put it through his ear, and through the door, and he shall be your slave forever. And you shall do so to your slave-girl also. *(Ex 21:1-6)*

18 It shall not seem hard in your eyes when you send him away free from you. For to the double of the hire of a hireling he has served you six years. And YAHWEH your Elohim will bless you in all that you do.

19 The firstling males that are born of your herd and of your flock, you shall sanctify to YAHWEH your Elohim. You shall do no work with the firstling of your ox, nor shear the firstling of your flock. *(Ex 13:2)*

20 You shall eat it before YAHWEH your Elohim year by year in the place which YAHWEH shall choose, you and your household. *(Deut 12:5-7, 17,18)*

21 And if there is any blemish in it, lameness, or blindness, or any evil blemish whatever, you shall not sacrifice it to YAHWEH your Elohim.

22 You shall eat it inside your gates; the unclean one and the clean one alike, as the gazelle and as the hart[1].

23 Only, you shall not eat its blood; you shall pour it on the ground like water. *(Lev 17:10-12)*

Chapter 16

1 Observe the month Aviv, and perform the Passover to YAHWEH your Elohim. For in the month of Aviv, YAHWEH your Elohim brought you out of Egypt by night. (*Num 33:3)*

2 And you shall sacrifice a Passover to YAHWEH your Elohim of the flock, and of the herd, in the place which He shall choose to cause His name to dwell there *(Jerusalem)*[2].

3 You shall eat with it no leaven. You shall eat unleavened bread with it seven days[3], even the bread of affliction. For you came out of the land of Egypt in haste, so that you may remember the day that you came out of the land of Egypt all the days of your life[4].

4 And there shall be no leaven seen

---

1 Speaking of people who may have been ceremonially unclean at the time.

with you in your borders seven days; nor shall any of the flesh which you sacrificed the first day at evening remain all night until the morning.

5 You may not sacrifice the Passover offering inside any of your gates, which YAHWEH your Elohim gives you.

6 But at the place which He shall choose to cause His name to dwell there *(Jerusalem)*, you shall sacrifice the Passover offering at evening, at the going of the sun, at the time when you came out of Egypt. *(Ex 12:42, Is 18:7)*

7 And you shall cook and eat in the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose. And in the morning you shall turn and go into your tents. *(Ex 12:8-9)*

8 You shall eat unleavened things six days, and on the seventh day shall be a solemn assembly to YAHWEH your Elohim. You shall do no work.

9 You shall number to yourself seven weeks. When the sickle begins to reap in the standing grain, you shall begin to number seven weeks[1].

10 And you shall keep the Feast of Weeks to YAHWEH your Elohim according to the measure of the freewill offering of your hand, which you shall give according as YAHWEH your Elohim blesses you.

11 And you shall rejoice before YAHWEH your Elohim, you and your son, and your daughter, and your male slave, and your slave-girl, and the Levite that is inside your gates, and the alien, and the fatherless, and the widow that are among you, in the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose to cause His name to dwell there.

12 And you shall remember that you were a slave in Egypt; and you shall take heed to do these statutes.

13 You shall perform the Feast of Tabernacles seven days after you have gathered in from your grain-floor, and from your winepress[2].

14 And you shall rejoice in your feast, you and your son, and your daughter, and your male slave, and your slave-girl, and the Levite, and the alien, and the fatherless, and the widow that are inside your gates.

15 You shall keep a solemn feast

---

2 The Passover is referred to by the actual sacrifice of the lamb at the beginning of Aviv 14,(Ex 12:3-5) but it is also referred to for the whole week of sacrifices associated with Passover (Num 28:16-31). Here we know that it is referring not only to the actual killing of the Passover lamb on the 14th of Aviv, but also to what is called the second Hagidah or peace offering to Yahweh because you can also use the herd for this sacrifice as with the actual Passover it could only be eaten from the sheep or goats. This sacrifice in verse two is what is called in scripture '*the night to be observed celebration'* for leaving Egypt the next night after the Passover. (Ex 12:29-42)

3 Again an indication of more than just the Passover offering on the 14th of Aviv.

4 This is clearly relating to the night Israel left Egypt in celebration, which was the night after the Passover, as the Passover was not a night of celebration but of death and they were commanded not to leave their houses until the next morning. (Ex 12:21, 29-42)

---

1 You must have Aviv grain for this ceremony. If you wait until after the equinox to start the year, according to scripture, you will always have grain ready enough for this ceremony.

2 Clearly, the feast of Sukkot must be after the summer harvest and after the fall equinox. Not only must the fruit be ripe enough for harvest but there would have had to be enough time to actually harvest the crop to bring the tithe to Jerusalem as commanded. It is inconceivable that Israelites would have came empty handed to Jerusalem for about a month's journey round-trip, while their crops would fall and rot on the ground while they would be gone feasting with no harvest fruit.

seven days to YAHWEH your Elohim in the place which YAHWEH shall choose *(Jerusalem)*; for YAHWEH your Elohim shall bless you in all your produce, and in every work of your hands, and you shall be altogether joyful.

16 Three times in a year shall all your males appear before YAHWEH your Elohim in the place which He shall choose *(Jerusalem)*: In the Feast of Unleavened Bread, and in the Feast of Weeks and in the Feast of Tabernacles. And they shall not appear before YAHWEH empty, *(2 Chron 6:6, Is 33:20, Ps 122:3-4)*

17 but each with his gift of his hand, according to the blessing of YAHWEH your Elohim, which He has given you.[1]

18 You shall appoint judges and officers[2] for yourself in all your gates which YAHWEH your Elohim gives you, tribe by tribe. And they shall judge the people with righteous judgment. *(Ex 18:24-26)*

19 You shall not pervert judgment. You shall not regard faces, nor shall you take a bribe; for a bribe blinds the eyes of the wise, and perverts the words of the righteous. *(Ex 23:7-8)*

20 You shall follow perfect justice, that you may live and possess the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving you.

21 You shall not set up for yourself pillars of any trees, which you make for yourself near the altar of YAHWEH your Elohim[3].

22 And you shall not raise up for yourself any standing image, which YAHWEH your Elohim detests.[4]

Chapter 17

1 You shall not sacrifice to YAHWEH your Elohim an ox or sheep in which there is a blemish, any evil thing, for it is a hateful thing to YAHWEH your Elohim.

2 When there is found among you, in one of your gates which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, a man or woman who does that which is evil in the sight of YAHWEH your Elohim, in transgressing His covenant,

3 and has gone and served other gods, and worshiped them; or the sun, or the moon, or of the host of the heavens, which I have not commanded;

4 and it has been revealed to you, and you have heard, and searching have searched; and, behold, it is true; and the thing is confirmed, that this hateful thing has been done in Israel,

5 then you shall bring out to your gates that man or that woman who has done this evil thing, the man or the woman; and you shall stone them with stones, and they shall die.

6 At the mouth of two witnesses or three witnesses shall he that is to die

---

1 It was a great blessing and a command to appear before Yahweh at feast time with your blessing in your hand for your obedience. It was one of the greatest punishments of their Diaspora that Israel could no longer appear before Yahweh in Jerusalem at feast times. Being in the land was synonymous with being in covenant relationship. We don't see any land covenant promises outside the land of Israel, only promises of restoration in the last days back into the physical land of Israel and back into covenant relationship.

2 These were subordinates who would carry out the sentence given by the judge.

3 The word for pillar is Asherim. These were images of Asherah, the mother goddess of 70 false gods including Baal. The symbol of this cult was the trunk of a tree. Pagans believed that Asherah was the wife of Yahweh.

4 Speaking of pagan worship. Anywhere a believer goes the Torah should sanctify them from the ways of pagan worship.

be put to death. He shall not be put to death at the mouth of one witness.

7 The hand of the witnesses shall be first on him, to put him to death; and the hand of all the people last. And you shall cut off the evil from among you.

8 If a matter is too hard for you in judgment, between blood and blood, between cause and cause, or between stroke and stroke, matters of strife within your gates, then you shall rise and go up to the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose *(Jerusalem)*.

9 And you shall come in to the priest, of the Levites, and to the judge who is in those days, and shall inquire. And they shall declare the word of judgment to you.

10 And you shall do according to the word which they declare to you from that place which YAHWEH shall choose *(Jerusalem)*. And you shall be careful to do according to all that they direct you.

11 You shall do according to the mouth of the Torah which they direct you, and according to the judgment which they deliver to you. You shall not turn aside from the word which they declare to you, right or left.

12 And the man who acts with pride so as not to listen to the priest who is standing to serve YAHWEH your Elohim there, or to the judge, even that man shall die; and you shall cut off the evil from Israel[1].

13 And all the people shall hear, and fear, and shall not presume any more.[2]

14 When you come into the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, and have possessed it, and settled in it; and you shall say, Let me set a king over me like all the nations around me,

15 then you shall certainly set a king over you whom *Yahweh* your Elohim shall choose from among your brothers. You may not give an alien the rule over you, one who is not your brother.

16 Only, he shall not multiply horses to himself, nor cause the people to turn back to Egypt so as to multiply horses, since YAHWEH has said to you, You shall not again return in this way any more.

17 And he shall not multiply wives to himself, and his heart shall not turn aside. And he shall not greatly multiply to himself silver and gold.

18 And it shall be, when he sits on the throne of his kingdom, he shall write for himself a copy of this Torah in a book, from before the priests, the Levites.

19 And it shall be with him, and he shall read in it all the days of his life, that he may learn to fear YAHWEH your Elohim, to keep all the Words of this Torah and these statutes, to do them;

20 so that his heart may not be lifted up above his brothers, and that he may not turn aside from the commandment, to the right or to the left; so that he may prolong his days over his kingdom, he and his sons in the midst of Israel.

1 It is noteworthy to state that one was obligated to listen to the judgment of the priest whether it was correct in their eyes or not.

2 VS 8-13- Yahweh is setting His judicial order in matters of judgment and also setting the precedent that He appoints His leaders and His authority is with them in their decision making. By going against the judgment of the leader that Yahweh appointed, in essence, they would be going against Yahweh Himself who placed the leader. (Ex 16:1-8)

Chapter 18

1 The priests, the Levites, all the tribe of Levi shall have no portion or inheritance with Israel. They shall eat fire offerings of YAHWEH, even His inheritance.
2 And he shall have no inheritance among his brothers. YAHWEH Himself is his inheritance, as He has spoken to him. (*Num 8:13-18, Num 18: 6-14, 20-24)*
3 And this shall be the priest's due from the people, from those that offer a sacrifice, whether an ox or sheep, that they shall give to the priest the leg, and the two cheeks, and the stomach,
4 the first of your grain, of your new wine, and of your oil, and the first of the fleece of your flock, you shall give to him[1].
5 For YAHWEH your Elohim has chosen him out of all your tribes to stand to serve in the name of YAHWEH, he and his sons continually.
6 And if a Levite comes from one of your gates of all Israel, where he has been living, and comes with all the desire of his soul to the place which YAHWEH shall choose,
7 then he shall serve in the name of YAHWEH his Elohim, as all his brothers the Levites who stand before YAHWEH do.
8 They shall eat portion like portion, except of the sales of what belonged to his father[2].
9 When you come to the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, you shall not learn to do according to the hateful acts of those nations.
10 There shall not be found in you one who passes his son or his daughter through the fire, one that uses divination, an observer of clouds, or one fortune-telling, or a spell caster,
11 or a magic charmer, or one consulting spirits, or a wizard, or one communicating with the dead. *(Deut 12:29-32, Ex 22:18)*
12 For all doing these things are an abomination to YAHWEH. And because of these filthy acts YAHWEH your Elohim is expelling these nations before you.
13 You shall be perfect with YAHWEH your Elohim.
14 For these nations whom you shall expel listen to observers of clouds, and to those divining. But as to you, YAHWEH your Elohim has not given to you to do so.
15 YAHWEH your Elohim shall raise up to you a prophet from among you, of your brothers, one like me; you shall listen to him[3],
16 according to all that you desired of YAHWEH your Elohim in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of YAHWEH my Elohim, nor let me see this great fire any more, lest I die.
17 And YAHWEH said to me, They have spoken well, what they have said.
18 I shall raise up a prophet to them from among their brothers, one like you; and I will put My Words in his mouth; and he shall speak to them all that I shall command him. (*Joh 1:21, Joh 5:45-47, Joh 6:14, 7:40)*
19 And it shall be, whoever will not listen to My Words which he shall speak in My name, I will require it at his hand.

---

[1] Num 8:13-18, Num 18:6, 14, 20-24

[2] There was equality of portion except for what belonged to family inheritance. Num 35:1-8, Jos 21:1-42

[3] Relating to the prophecy of Gen 3:15, the Messiah would be from the seed of a woman and He would be like Moses in that they both are intercessors, redeemers, prophets, and shepherds. Ex 32:30

20 But the prophet who presumes to speak a word in My name, that which I have not commanded him to speak, and who speaks in the name of other gods, even that prophet shall die[1].
21 And if you say in your heart, How shall we know the word which YAHWEH has not spoken? *(Is 8:20)*
22 When a prophet speaks in the name of YAHWEH, if the thing does not happen or come about, that is the thing which YAHWEH has not spoken; that prophet has spoken it proudly; you shall not be afraid of him.

Chapter 19

1 When YAHWEH your Elohim shall cut off the nations whose land YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, and when you dispossess them, and live in their cities, and in their houses,
2 you shall separate three cities for you in the midst of your land, which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving you to possess it.
3 You shall prepare the way for yourself, and shall divide into three parts the border of your land which YAHWEH your Elohim shall cause you to inherit, so that every manslayer may flee there.
4 And this is the case of the manslayer who shall flee there, that he may live: whoever strikes his neighbor without knowing, and has not hated him yesterday and the day before;
5 even he who goes into the forest with his neighbor to cut wood, and his hand brings a stroke with the axe to cut down the tree, and the iron head slips from the wood and finds his neighbor so that he dies; he shall flee to one of these cities, and shall live;
6 that the avenger of blood not pursue the manslayer when his heart is hot, and shall overtake him because the way is long, and shall strike him so as to die, and he had no sentence of death, for he did not hate him yesterday or the day before.
7 On account of this I am commanding you, saying, You shall separate to yourself three cities. *(Num 35:9-29)*
8 And if YAHWEH your Elohim shall enlarge your border, as He has sworn to your fathers, and shall give to you all the land which He has spoken to give to your fathers,
9 if you will keep these commandments which I am commanding you today, to love YAHWEH your Elohim, and to walk in His ways forever, then you shall add to yourself another three cities to these three.
10 And innocent blood shall not be shed in the midst of your land, which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you as an inheritance, and there be blood on you.
11 And if a man hates his neighbor, and lies in wait for him, and rises up against him, and strikes his life from him, so that he dies, and flees to one of these cities,
12 then the elders of his city shall send and bring from him there, and give him into the hand of the avenger of blood, that he may die.
13 Your eye shall not pity him, but you shall put away the innocent blood from Israel, and it shall be well with you.
14 You may not remove your neighbor's landmark, which those formerly have set in your inheritance, which you shall inherit in the land

[1] Any prophet in the bible without fail was spoken to by the Creator's name Yahweh. In turn, anyone claiming to be a prophet must only speak in the name of Yahweh or he would be put to death.

which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving you, to possess it.

15 One witness shall not rise against a man for any iniquity, or for any sin, in any sin which he sins. At the mouth of two witnesses, or at the mouth of three witnesses a thing shall be established[1].

16 If a vicious witness rises up against any man to charge apostasy against him,

17 then both the men who have the dispute shall stand before YAHWEH, before the priests and the judges who shall be in those days.

18 And the judges shall carefully investigate and, behold, if the witness is a false witness, and he has testified falsely against his brother,

19 then you shall do to him as he plotted to do to his brother. And you shall put away the evil from among you. *(Deut 17:6-7, 1 Cor 5:12-13)*

20 And those who remain shall hear and fear, and thereafter shall not add to commit any such evil among you.

21 And your eye shall not pity; life shall go for life, eye for eye, tooth for tooth, hand for hand, foot for foot[2].

Chapter 20

1 When you go out to battle against your enemies, and see horses and chariots, a people more than you, you shall not be afraid of them. For YAHWEH your Elohim is with you, who brought you up out of the land of Egypt.

2 And it shall be, when you draw near to battle, the priest shall come and speak to the people,

3 and say to them. Hear, Israel, you are drawing near today to battle against your enemies. Do not let your heart be faint; do not fear nor tremble, nor be terrified before their faces.

4 For YAHWEH your Elohim is He who is going before you, to fight for you against your enemies, to save you[3]. (*Ex 14:13-14)*

5 And the officers shall speak to the people, saying, Who is the man that has built a new house, and has not dedicated it? Let him go and return to his house, that he not die in battle and another man dedicate it.

6 And who is the man that has planted a vineyard, and has not used its fruit? Let him go and return to his house, that he not die in battle, and another man use its fruit.

7 And who is the man who has betrothed a woman, and has not taken her? Let him go and return to his house, that he not die in the battle, and another man take her.[4]

8 And the officers shall speak further to the people, and say, Who is the man who is afraid, and faint of heart? Let him go and return to his house; then the heart of his brothers will not melt like his heart. *(Jud 7:2-3)*

9 And it shall be, when the officers have finished speaking to the people, commanders of the armies shall be appointed at the head of the people.

10 When you come near a city to fight against it, then call to it for peace.

11 And it shall be, if it answers peace to you, and shall open to you, then it

1 This principle is also reiterated in Math 18:16, where at least 2 witnesses must corroborate an offense. Lev 5:1, Num 35:30

2 This means to *'let the punishment fit the crime'*. It should also be noted here that it is speaking to the leaders of the nation for proper justice not for individual vindictive purposes.

3 Every aspect of life including war was tied in with wanting the help of Elohim. Many times it was the priest who would lead the charge when going to war.

4 Here we see how compassionate YHWH is even in times of war considering each and every detail of one's life.

shall be that all the people found in it shall be forced laborers for you, and shall serve you.

12 And if it shall not make peace with you, and shall make war with you, then you shall lay siege against it.

13 And YAHWEH your Elohim shall give it into your hand; and you shall strike every male of it by the mouth of the sword.

14 Only, the women, and the little ones, and the livestock, and all in the city, all its plunder, you shall seize for yourself. And you shall eat the plunder of your enemies which YAHWEH your Elohim has given to you.

15 So you shall do to all the cities very far away from you, which are not of the cities of these nations.

16 But of the cities of these peoples which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you as an inheritance, you shall not keep alive any that breathes.

17 But you shall utterly destroy them, the Hittites, and the Amorites, the Canaanites, and the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites, as YAHWEH your Elohim has commanded you; *(Deut 7:1)*

18 so that they may not teach you to do according to all their filthy deeds which they have done for their elohim; and you would sin against YAHWEH your Elohim.[1]

19 When you shall lay siege to a city many days, to fight against it, to capture it, you shall not destroy its trees in order to force an axe against them. For you shall eat of them, and you shall not cut them down; for is the tree of the field a man, that it should be used by you to lay siege?

20 Only the tree which you know not to be a fruit tree, you may destroy it, and may cut it down[2], and may build a bulwark against the city making war with you, until you have subdued it.

Chapter 21

1 If one is found slain in the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, to possess it, lying in the field, and it is not known who has struck him;

2 then your elders and your judges shall come out. And they shall measure to the cities which are around the one slain.

3 And it shall be, that the city nearest to the one slain, even the elders of that city shall take a heifer of the herd, which has not been worked with, and which has not drawn in the yoke.

4 And the elders of that city shall bring the heifer down to an ever-flowing stream, which is not plowed nor sown. And they shall break the heifer's neck there by the stream[3].

5 And the priests, the sons of Levi, shall come near (for YAHWEH your Elohim has chosen them to minister to Him, and to bless in the name of YAHWEH) and by their mouth shall every controversy and every stroke be tried.

6 And all the elders of that city nearest to the one slain shall wash their hands by the stream, over the heifer whose neck was broken.

7 And they shall answer and say, Our hands have not shed this blood, nor have our eyes seen it.

8 O YAHWEH, be merciful to Your

---

1 Yahweh strictly commands that His covenant people do not follow the pagan wicked practices of the people of the land, but only His judgments and Torah. Deut 12:30-32, 18:10-12. Lev 18:3-4, 24-26

2 This truly showed how debase people were that trees were more valued than people. (Jon 4:9-11)

3 The shedding of innocent blood for sin showed the importance that was put on compensation for life, even if it was not known who killed the man (verse 9).

people Israel, whom You have redeemed, and do not allow innocent blood in the midst of Your people Israel. And the blood shall be forgiven them.
9 And you shall put away the innocent blood from among you, for you shall do that which is right in the eyes of YAHWEH.
10 When you go out to battle against your enemies, and YAHWEH your Elohim has given them into your hands, and you have taken them captive;
11 and you have seen in the captivity a woman of beautiful form, and you desire her, even to take her to you for a wife,
12 then you shall bring her into the midst of your household. And she shall shave her head, and prepare her nails,
13 and shall remove the clothing of her captivity from her, and shall live in your house, and shall sorrow for her father and her mother a month of days. Then afterwards you shall go in to her, and shall marry her; and she shall be a wife to you.
14 And it shall be, if you do not delight in her, you shall send her away at her desire[1]; and you shall not at all sell her for silver; you shall not treat her as a slave, because you have humbled her.
15 If a man has two wives, the one loved, and the other hated; and they have borne him sons, both the loved one and the hated one; and if the firstborn son was of her who was hated[2],
16 then it shall be, in the day that he causes his sons to inherit that which is his, he is not able to cause to inherit the first-born son of the one loved before the first-born son of the one hated, who is truly the first-born.
17 But he shall respect the first-born, the son of the hated one, by giving him a double portion of all that he has; for he is the first-fruit of his strength, the right of the first-born is his[3].
18 If a man has a stubborn and rebellious son who will not listen to his father's voice, or his mother's voice; even though they discipline him, he will not listen to them;
19 then his father and his mother shall lay hold on him and bring him out to the elders of his city, and to the gate of his place;
20 and they shall say to the elders of his city, This son of ours is stubborn and rebellious; he will not listen to our voice; he is a glutton, and a drunkard.
21 And all the men of his city shall stone him with stones, and he shall die[4]. So you shall put away the evil from among you that all Israel shall hear, and fear.
22 And if a man has committed a sin worthy of death, and he is executed, and you hang him on a tree,
23 his body shall not remain all night on the tree; but surely, you shall bury him the same day[5]. For he that is hanged is a reproach to Elohim. And

---

1 This could only take place if the woman agreed to leave and then the law was meant as a humane act to the slave woman.

2 Although having multiple wives is never condoned in scripture, we also never see it to be clearly defined as sin in the Tanach. Yet, it is evident by example that family dysfunction would occur, and from the New Testament and Yahshua, we clearly see it was never the will of Yahweh and is forbidden to any New Covenant believer (Mk 10:1-10)

3 The right of the first born is conditional and can be lost by the first-born himself, but not simply taken. 1 Chron 5:1, Gen 48:22, Gen 25:29-34.

4 Rebellion in the home would lead to rebellion in society.

5 The day ends at sunset, Math 27:57-60, Joh 19:31

you shall not defile your land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you as an inheritance.

Chapter 22

1 You shall not see your brother's ox or his sheep driven away, and hide yourself from them. surely you shall return them back to your brother.

2 And if your brother is not near you, and you do not know him, then you shall surely bring it home to your house; and it shall be with you until your brother inquires of it; and you shall restore it to him.

3 And so you shall do with his donkey, and so you will do with his clothing, and so you shall do with everything lost of your brother's, which he has lost and you have found; you may not hide it.

4 You shall not see your brother's donkey or his ox fallen down in the highway, and hide yourself from them. Surely, you shall help him lift it up.

5 There shall not be the thing of a man on a woman, nor shall a man put on a woman's garment. For whoever does these things is an abomination to YAHWEH your Elohim.[1]

6 If a bird's nest happens to be before you in the way in any tree, or on the ground, with young ones, or eggs; and the mother is sitting on the young, or on the eggs, you shall not take the mother with the young. *(Is 10:14)*

7 But in every case you shall let the mother go, and take the young for yourself, so that it may be well with you, and you may prolong your days.

8 When you build a new house, then you shall make a guardrail for your roof, so that you do not put blood on your house if someone falls from it.

9 You shall not sow your vineyard with different kinds of seeds, that the fruit of your seed which you have sown and the fruit of your vineyard not be defiled.

10 You shall not plow with an ox and a donkey together[2]. *(2 Cor 6:14)*

11 You shall not wear a garment of different kinds, of wool and linen together[3].

12 You shall make for yourself tassels on the four corners of your cloak which you cover with. *(Num 15:37-41)*

13 If any man takes a wife, and goes in to her, and hates her,

14 then makes against her shameful charges, and brings up an evil name on her, and says, I took this woman, and when I came near her, I did not find in her the tokens of virginity.

15 Then the girl's father and her mother shall take and bring the girl's tokens of virginity[4] to the elders of the city in the gate.

16 And the girl's father shall say to the elders, I have given my daughter to this man for a wife, and he hates her.

17 And, behold, he has laid shameful charges, saying, I have not found in your daughter the tokens of virginity. And yet see these tokens of my daughter's virginity. And they shall spread the garment before the elders of the city.

---

[1] Up until the 1960's and the era of rebellion, pants were a man's garment and not worn by women. In many conservative countries today, dresses are still worn by women including the religious community of Judaism.

[2] Their step is different, it would not work, Amos 3:3

[3] Under the same principle of keeping things in the purity of their created form, wool comes from an animal and linen from a plant. Lev 19:19

[4] This was the stained bloody sheet from the wedding night proving her virginity.

18 And the elders of that city shall take that man and punish him[5].
19 And they shall fine him a hundred pieces of silver, and give them to the girl's father, because he has brought an evil name on a virgin of Israel. And she shall be his wife; he may not put her away all his days.
20 But if this thing is true that tokens of virginity have not been found for the girl,
21 then they shall bring out the girl to the door of her father's house. And the men of her city shall stone her with stones, and she shall die; for she has done folly in Israel, to commit fornication in her father's house. And you shall put away the evil from among you. *(Deut 23:17-18, Lev 19:29, Lev 21:9, Deut 17:6)*
22 If a man is found lying with a woman married to a husband, then they shall both of them die, the man that lay with the woman, and the woman. And you shall put away the evil from Israel.
23 If there is a girl that is a virgin, betrothed to a man, and a man finds her in the city, and they commit fornication together,
24 then you shall bring them both out to the gate of that city. And you shall stone them with stones so that they die, the girl because she did not cry out, being in the city; and the man, because he has humbled his neighbor's wife[2]. And you shall put away the evil from among you.
25 But if a man finds a betrothed girl in the field, and the man forces her and lies with her; then only the man that lay with her shall die.
26 And you shall do nothing to the girl; the girl has no sin worthy of death; for as when a man rises against his neighbor and murders him, even so is this matter.
27 For he found her in the field, and the betrothed girl cried out, but no one saved her.
28 If a man finds a virgin girl, not being betrothed, and manipulates her and commits fornication with her[3], and they be found;
29 then the man lying with her shall give to the girl's father fifty pieces of silver, and she shall be his wife, because he has humbled her. He may not put her away all his days.
30 A man shall not take his father's wife, and shall not uncover his father's skirt. *(1Cor 5:1)*

Chapter 23

1 He being wounded, crushed, or cut in his male member shall not enter into the assembly of YAHWEH[4].
2 An illegitimate child shall not enter into the congregation of YAHWEH, even to the tenth generation none of his shall enter into the assembly of YAHWEH.
3 An Ammonite or a Moabite shall not enter into the congregation of YAHWEH; even to the tenth generation shall none of them enter into the assembly of YAHWEH, perpetually;[5]
4 because they did not meet you with bread and with water in the way when you came out of Egypt; and because they hired against you Balaam the son

5 Deut 25:2-3, 2Cor 11:24
2 Even though they were only engaged according to ancient Middle Eastern tradition she was by contract still considered to be his wife. Math 1:18-19
3 In the Hebrew it denotes that both parties were willing participants in the act.
4 Seems to indicate someone was purposely doing this to mimic a pagan practice.
5 The word for "*Moabite*" is in the masculine form denoting that this only applies to men and not woman, see Ruth 1:4.

of Beor, from Pethor of Mesopotamia,
to curse you.
5 But YAHWEH your Elohim would
not listen to Balaam, and YAHWEH
your Elohim turned the curse into a
blessing to you, because YAHWEH
your Elohim loved you. *(Num 24:10,
Pr 26:2, Pr 16:7, 1 Joh 4:4)*
6 You shall not seek their peace nor
their prosperity all your days,
perpetually.
7 You shall not despise an Edomite,
for he is your brother.[1] You shall not
despise an Egyptian, for you were an
alien in his land;
8 sons of the third generation that
are born to them may enter into the
assembly of YAHWEH.
9 When you go forth into camp
against your enemies, then keep
yourself from every evil thing.
10 If there is among you any man
who is not clean because of a discharge
at night, then he shall go to the outside
of the camp; he shall not come in to
the middle of the camp.
11 And it shall be, as evening is
turning, he shall bathe with water, and
as the sun is going, he shall come into
the middle of the camp.
12 Also you shall have a place
outside the camp, and you shall go out
there.
13 And you shall have a tool on your
staff. And it shall be, as you sit outside,
you shall dig with it, and shall turn
back, and shall cover that which comes
from you.
14 For YAHWEH your Elohim
walks in the middle of your camp to
deliver you and to give up your
enemies before you; therefore your
camp shall be holy, so that He may see
no unclean thing in you, and turn
away from you.[2]
15 You shall not hand over to his
master a slave that has escaped from
his master to you. *(Deut 24:7)*
16 He shall live with you, among
you, in the place which he chooses
inside one of your gates, wherever it is
good to him. You shall not oppress
him.[3]
17 There shall be no harlot among
the daughters of Israel, nor shall there
be a homosexual among the sons of
Israel. *(1 Cor 6:9)*
18 You shall not bring the hire of a
prostitute, or the price of a dog[4], into
the house of YAHWEH your Elohim
for any vow; for even both of these are
an abomination to YAHWEH your
Elohim.
19 You shall not lend at interest to
your brother; interest of silver, interest
of food, interest of anything loaned at
interest. *(Lev 25:35-37)*
20 To a stranger you may lend at
interest, but you shall not lend at
interest to your brother, so that
YAHWEH your Elohim may bless you
in all that you put your hand to, in the
land where you go to possess it.
21 When you shall vow a vow to
YAHWEH your Elohim, you shall not
delay to perform it; for YAHWEH
your Elohim will certainly require it of
you, and it shall be sin to you. *(Num
30:2, Eccl 5:4-6, Math 5:37)*
22 But if you shall forebear to vow, it
shall be no sin to you.
23 That which has gone out of your
lips, you shall keep, and shall do it.
According as you have vowed as a
freewill offering to YAHWEH your

---

[1] Edomites come from Esau, who was the brother of Jacob.

[2] Verses 12-14, are speaking of making sure you bury your stool outside the camp for hygiene and due to YHWH's presence among them.

[3] This is speaking of a foreign slave seeking refuge in Israel.

[4] This Hebrew term means a male prostitute.

Elohim, do even that which you have spoken with your mouth.[1]

24 When you come into your neighbor's vineyard, then you may eat grapes to your fill, at your pleasure. But you shall not put any in your vessel.

25 When you come into your neighbor's standing grain, then you may pluck heads with your hand; but you shall not move a sickle into your neighbor's standing grain.

Chapter 24

1 When a man has taken a wife and married her, and it happens that she finds no favor in his eyes because he has found a thing of uncleanness in her, and he writes her a bill of divorce and puts it in her hand, and sends her out of his house;

2 and if she goes out from his house[2] and goes and becomes another man's wife,

3 and the latter husband hates her, and writes her a bill of divorce, and puts it in her hand, and sends her out of his house or if the latter husband who took her to be his wife dies;

4 her former husband who sent her away is not to take her again to be his wife, after she is defiled. For it is an abomination before YAHWEH, and you shall not cause the land to sin which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you as an inheritance. *(Heb 6:4-6)*

5 When a man has taken a new wife, he shall not go out to war, and he shall not be given any thing to do. He shall be free at his own house for one year, and shall gladden his wife whom he has taken.

6 No one shall take in pledge the lower and upper millstone, for he is taking a man's life to pledge.[3]

7 If a man is found stealing a person of his brothers of the sons of Israel, and has dealt with him as a slave, and sold him, then that thief shall die. And you shall put away the evil from among you. *(Ex 21:16)*

8 Be on guard in the plague of leprosy, that you watch closely and do according to all that the Levitical priests shall teach you. As I commanded them, so you shall be careful to do.

9 Remember that which YAHWEH your Elohim did to Miriam in the way, as you came out of Egypt.

10 When you lend your neighbor any kind of loan, you shall not go into his house to get his pledge.

11 You shall stand outside, and the man to whom you lend shall bring the pledge outside to you.

12 And if the man is poor, you shall not sleep with his pledge.

---

[1] Verses 21-23- Today, people take very lightly making commitments to both YHWH and man and then, casually break them without wanting any consequences. Here we see that when one vows something to YHWH, he is bound to fulfill His word and that is why the marriage covenant is *"till death do them part"*. As they vowed this very thing to YHWH and each other and entered covenant relationship, Mal 2:14-17.

[2] This chapter is not condoning the practice of divorce, but is warning the woman not to leave even if the husband serves her a paper of divorce, as if she left and went to become another man's wife she could never come back to her first husband (Jer 3:1). This is a shadow of the New Covenant as if someone is baptized and has hands laid on them to join the New Covenant and become the bride of Messiah and then they would leave and turn his/her back on Yahshua, they can never return again and have blasphemed Yahweh's spirit. Heb 6:4-6

[3] The millstone was used to grind flour for bread and was essential for survival of one's family.

13 You shall certainly give back the pledge to him at sundown; and he shall lie down in his own clothing, and shall bless you. And it shall be righteousness to you before YAHWEH your Elohim.[1]

14 You shall not oppress a poor and needy hired servant, of your brothers or of your aliens who are in your land, within your gates.

15 In the same day you shall give him his hire; do not let the sun go down on it. For he is poor, and has lifted up his heart on it; that he not cry against you to YAHWEH, and it be sin against you.

16 The fathers shall not be executed for sons, and sons shall not be executed for fathers; they each shall be executed for his own sin. *(Eze 18:20)*

17 You shall not pervert judgment of an alien, or of an orphan; and you shall not take a widow's garment as pledge. *(Ex 22:22, Pr 23:10, Ja 1:27)*

18 But you shall remember that you were a slave in Egypt, and YAHWEH your Elohim redeemed you from there. For that reason I command you to do this thing.

19 When you cut down your harvest in your field, and have forgotten a sheaf in the field, you shall not turn back to take it. It shall be for the alien, for the orphan, and for the widow; so that YAHWEH your Elohim shall bless you in all the work of your hand. *(Lev 19:9, 23:22, Pr 19:17, 28:27)*

20 When you beat your olive tree, you shall not search the branch behind you. It shall be for the alien, for the orphan, and for the widow.

21 When you gather the grapes of your vineyard, you shall not glean it afterward. It shall be for the alien, for the orphan, and for the widow.

22 And you shall remember that you were a slave in the land of Egypt. On account of this I am commanding you to do this thing.

Chapter 25

1 If there is a contention between men, and they come to judgment, and they have been judged, and the righteous one is declared righteous, and the wrongdoer declared guilty;

2 then it shall be, if the wrongdoer is a son of stripes, the judge shall cause him to fall down. And one shall strike him before his face, enough for his wickedness, by number.

3 He may give him forty stripes; he shall not add more, lest, if he should exceed and beat him above these with many stripes, then your brother would be dishonored before your eyes.[2]

4 You shall not muzzle an ox when he is treading out grain.[3] *(1 Cor 9:9)*

5 If brothers live together, and one of them dies, and has no son, the wife of the dead shall not go outside to a strange man; her brother-in-law shall go in to her, and take her to himself for a wife, and shall perform the duty of the levirate;

6 and it shall be, the first-born which she bears shall rise up for his dead brother's name, and his name shall not be wiped out of Israel.

7 And if the man does not desire to take his brother's wife then his brother's wife shall go up to the gate, to the elders, and say, My husband's

[1] To a poor man the clothing given in pledge may be his only garment. By showing mercy to him the lender will be blessed for his mercy.

[2] In second temple times, soldiers had a whip with 13 leather strips and would whip the prisoner three times. Attached to the end of each whip would be rocks, glass, pieces of stone and other sharp objects to inflict greater pain, Math 27:26.

[3] See note on 1 Tim 5:17-18.

brother is refusing to raise up a name to his brother in Israel; he has not been willing to perform the duty of my levirate. *(Eccl 4:8)*
8 And the elders of his city shall call for him and shall speak to him. And he shall stand and say, I have no desire to take her. *(Ruth 4:1-10)*
9 Then his brother's wife shall draw near to him before the elders, and shall take his shoe from his foot, and spit in his face, and shall answer and say, So it shall be done to the man who will not build up the house of his brother. *(Gen 38:8-10)*
10 And his name shall be called in Israel, The house of him whose shoe was taken off.[1]
11 When men fight together, a man and his brother, and the wife of the one shall come near to deliver her husband from his assailant's hand, and shall put out her hand and lay hold on his genitals,
12 then you shall cut off her palm; your eye shall not pity.
13 You shall not have in your bag a stone and a stone weight, a great and a small. *(Pr 11:1, 20:23, Mic 6:11)*
14 You shall not have in your house an ephah and an ephah, a great and a small.
15 You shall have a perfect and just weight; you shall have a perfect and just ephah; so that they prolong your days in the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you.
16 For anyone doing these things is hateful to YAHWEH your Elohim, everyone doing unrighteousness.[2]
17 Remember what Amalek did to you by the way as you came forth out of Egypt; *(Ex 17:8-16)*
18 how he met you on the way and attacked your back, all the feeble ones in the rear, when you were faint and weary; and he did not fear Elohim.
19 And it shall be, when YAHWEH your Elohim gives you rest from all your enemies all around in the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you as an inheritance to possess it, you shall blot out the remembrance of Amalek from under the heavens; you shall not forget. *(Deut 7:1, Neh 13:1)*

Chapter 26

1 And it shall be, when you have come into the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you as an inheritance, and you have possessed it, and live in it;
2 then you shall take of the first of all the fruit of the ground which you shall bring in from your land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, and shall put it in a basket, and shall go to the place which YAHWEH your Elohim shall choose to cause His name to dwell there *(Jerusalem)*. *(Ex 22:29)*
3 And you shall come to the priest who is in those days, and shall say to him, I declare today to YAHWEH your Elohim that I have come into the land which YAHWEH has sworn to our fathers to give to us.
4 And the priest shall take the basket out of your hand and place it before the altar of YAHWEH your Elohim.
5 And you shall speak and say before YAHWEH your Elohim, My father

[1] Verses 5-10 is called the law of the levirate and shows the importance in ancient days about continuation of seed in a family and inheritance in the eyes of the people. Dying without an heir was about the worst thing that could happen to someone (Eccl 4:8).

[2] Verses 13-16- In ancient times many things were bartered and the seller would use a scale of weights or a measure and some dishonest people had a false weight or measure with the intent to cheat people.

was a perishing Aramean![3] And he went down to Egypt with few men, and lived there, and became a nation there, great, mighty and many.

6 And the Egyptians dealt ill with us, and afflicted us, and put hard labor on us.

7 And we cried to YAHWEH, the Elohim of our fathers, and YAHWEH heard our voice, and saw our affliction, and our labor, and our oppression.

8 And YAHWEH brought us out from Egypt by a mighty hand, and by an arm stretched out, and by great terribleness, and with signs, and with wonders.

9 And He has brought us to this place, and has given to us this land, a land flowing with milk and honey.

10 And now, behold, I have brought in the first of the fruits of the ground which You have given me, O YAHWEH. And you shall place it before YAHWEH your Elohim, and bow yourself before YAHWEH your Elohim,

11 and rejoice in all the good which YAHWEH your Elohim has given to you, and to your house, you, and the Levite, and the alien who is in your midst.

12 When you have made an end of tithing all the tithes of your increase the third year, the year of tithing, and have given it to the Levite, the alien, the orphan, and the widow, that they may eat inside your gates, and be filled, *(Deut 14:28-29, Neh 10:34-39)*

13 then you shall say before YAHWEH your Elohim, I have consumed the devoted things from the house, and also have given them to the Levite, and to the alien, to the orphan, and to the widow, according to all Your command which You have commanded me. I have not transgressed Your commands, and I have not forgotten.

14 I have not eaten of it in my mourning; nor have I put any of it away for uncleanness; nor have I given of it for the dead. I have listened to the voice of YAHWEH my Elohim. I have done according to all that You have commanded me.

15 Look down from Your holy habitation, from Heaven, and bless Your people Israel, and the land which You have given to us, as You swore to our fathers, a land flowing with milk and honey.

16 Today YAHWEH your Elohim commands you to do these statutes and judgments. You shall be careful to do them with all your heart, and with all your soul.

17 You have today declared YAHWEH to be your Elohim, and to walk in His ways, and to keep His statutes and His commandments, and His judgments, and to pay attention to His voice.

18 And YAHWEH has declared you today to be His people, a special treasure as He has spoken to you, and to keep all His commandments. *(1 Pe 2:9, Ex 19:5-6)*

19 And He will make you high above all nations that He has made, in praise, and in name, and in glory; and that you may be a holy people to YAHWEH your Elohim, as He has spoken.

Chapter 27

1 And Moses and the elders of Israel commanded the people, saying, Keep all the commands which I am commanding you today,

2 and it shall be in the day you cross over the Jordan to the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to

[3] A reference to Jacob who went from Canaan back to Paran and back again amidst many trials and struggles.

you, that you shall raise up for yourself great stones, and plaster them with plaster. *(Jos 4:1-3)*

3 And you shall write on them all the Words of this Torah when you have crossed over, so that you may go into the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving you, a land flowing with milk and honey, as YAHWEH the Elohim of your fathers has promised you.

4 And it shall be when you have crossed over the Jordan, that you shall raise up these stones as to which I am commanding you today, in Mount Ebal, and you shall plaster them with plaster. *(Deut 11:29)*

5 And you shall build an altar there to YAHWEH your Elohim, an altar of stones. You shall not wield any iron tool on them.

6 You shall build the altar of YAHWEH your Elohim of uncut stones. And you shall offer burnt offerings on it to YAHWEH your Elohim. *(Jos 8:30-34)*

7 And you shall offer peace offerings, and shall eat there. And you shall rejoice before YAHWEH your Elohim.

8 And you shall write on the stones all the Words of the Torah very plainly.

9 And Moses and the priests, the Levites, spoke to all Israel, saying, Keep silence, and hear, O Israel: Today you have become the people of YAHWEH your Elohim.

10 Therefore you shall obey the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim and do His commandments and His statutes which I command you today.

11 And Moses charged the people the same day, saying,

12 These shall stand on Mount Gerizim to bless the people when you have crossed over the Jordan: Simeon, and Levi, and Judah, and Issachar, and Joseph, and Benjamin.

13 And these shall stand on Mount Ebal to curse: Reuben, Gad, and Asher, and Zebulun, Dan, and Naphtali. *(Jos 8:33)*

14 And the Levites shall answer, and shall say to all the men of Israel with a loud voice:

15 Cursed is the man who makes a carved and cast image, an abomination to YAHWEH, the work of a crafts-man's hands, and who sets it up in a secret place! And all the people shall answer and say, Amen! *(Ex 20:4)*

16 Cursed is he who dishonors his father or his mother! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Ex 20:12)*

17 Cursed is he who removes his neighbor's landmark! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Deut 19:14)*

18 Cursed is he who makes the blind to wander out of the way! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Lev 19:14)*

19 Cursed is he who perverts the judgment of the alien, the fatherless, and widow! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Ex 22:21, Ja 1:27)*

20 Cursed is he who lies with his father's wife, because he uncovers his father's skirt! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Lev 18:7)*

21 Cursed is he who lies with any kind of animal! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Ex 22:19)*

22 Cursed is he who lies with his sister, his father's daughter, or his mother's daughter! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Lev 18:9)*

23 Cursed is he who lies with his mother-in-law! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Lev 20:14)*

24 Cursed is he who strikes his neighbor secretly! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Ex 21:12)*

25 Cursed is he who takes a bribe to strike a life, to shed innocent blood! And all the people shall say, Amen! *(Ex 23:7-8, Lev 19:16)*

26 Cursed is he who does not carry out to do all the Words of this Torah, to do them! And all the people shall say, Amen![1] *(Gal 3:10)*

Chapter 28

1 And it shall be if carefully you will listen to the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim, taking heed to do all His commandments which I command you this day, YAHWEH your Elohim shall give you to be on high above all nations of the earth.
2 And all these blessings shall come on you and overtake you if you will listen to the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim[2].
3 You shall be blessed in the city, and you shall be blessed in the field.
4 The fruit of your body shall be blessed, and the fruit of your ground, and the fruit of your livestock, the offspring of your oxen, and the young ones of your flock.
5 Your basket and your kneading-trough shall be blessed.
6 You shall be blessed when you come in, and you shall be blessed when you go out.
7 YAHWEH shall cause your enemies that rise up against you to be stricken before your face. They shall come out against you one way, and flee before you seven ways.
8 YAHWEH shall command the blessing on you in your storehouses and all that you set your hand to. And He shall bless you in the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you.
9 YAHWEH shall establish you a holy people to Himself, as He has sworn to you, if you shall keep the commandments of YAHWEH your Elohim and walk in His ways.
10 And all the peoples of the earth shall see that you are called by the name of YAHWEH, and they shall be afraid of you[3].
11 And YAHWEH shall prosper you in goods, and in the fruit of your body, and in the fruit of your livestock, and in the fruit of your ground in the land which YAHWEH swore to your fathers to give it to you.
12 YAHWEH shall open to you His good treasure, the heavens to give the rain to your land in its season, and to bless all the work of your hand. And you shall lend to many nations, but you shall not borrow.
13 And YAHWEH shall make you the head, and not the tail. And you shall be only above, and you shall not be beneath, if you heed the commandments of YAHWEH your Elohim, which I am commanding you today, to be watchful to do them.
14 And you shall not turn away from all the Words which I am commanding

---

[1] By repeating and confirming this scripture the recipient would put themselves under a curse of disobedience because no one is righteous who can keep the Torah completely. See note on Gal 3:11. Joshua warned against joining the covenant under such conditions without having an avenue to remove the penalty of sin, Jos 24:14-28

[2] This chapter clearly shows that you cannot separate the land of Israel from the covenant of Yahweh. If the people of Israel would be obedient to the Torah, then they would be blessed and the land would be blessed. If they did not, then they would be cursed and the land cursed and eventually they would be dispelled from the land.

[3] Yahweh is a family name consisting of Yah Yahweh the Father, and Yahshua Yahweh the Son. When someone is baptized into the New Covenant into the family name of Yahweh they are literally joining His family and that brings great blessing and protection and people will see this and have fear to go against a family member of YHWH. Ro 8:14-17, Gen 20:1-18

you today, to the right or to the left, to
go after other gods, to serve them.
15 And it shall be, if you will not
heed the voice of your Elohim, to take
heed to do all His commandments and
His statutes which I am commanding
you today, even all these curses shall
come on you and overtake you:[1]
16 You shall be cursed in the city,
and you shall be cursed in the field.
17 Your basket and your kneading-
trough shall be cursed.
18 The fruit of your body shall be
cursed, and the fruit of your land, the
offspring of your oxen, and the young
ones of your sheep.
19 You shall be cursed when you
come in, and you shall be cursed when
you go out.
20 YAHWEH shall send cursing on
you, trouble and rebuke in all that you
set your hand, all which you will do,
until you are destroyed, or until you
quickly perish, because of the badness
of your doings by which you have
forsaken Me.
21 YAHWEH shall make the plague
cling to you until He has consumed
you from off the land where you are
going, to possess it.
22 YAHWEH shall strike you with
lung disease and with a fever, and with
an inflammation, and with extreme
burning, and with the sword, and with
blasting and mildew. And they shall
pursue you until you perish. *(Lev
26:16)*
23 And your heavens over your head
shall become copper, and the earth
under you iron. *(Lev 26:19)*
24 YAHWEH shall make the rain of
your land be dust and ashes. It shall
come down on you from the heavens
until you are destroyed.[2] *(Deut 11:17)*
25 YAHWEH shall cause you to be
stricken before your enemies. You
shall go out one way against them, and
shall flee seven ways before them. And
you shall be a trembling to all the
kingdoms of the earth. *(Lev 26:17)*
26 And your body shall be food to all
the birds of the heavens, and to the
beasts of the earth; and there shall be
none to cause them to tremble.
27 YAHWEH shall strike you with
the ulcer of Egypt, and with
hemorrhoids, and with the scab, and
with itch, of which you cannot be
healed. *(Deut 7:15)*
28 YAHWEH shall strike you with
madness, and with blindness, and with
astonishment of heart.
29 And you shall grope at noonday
as the blind grope in darkness. And
you shall not prosper in your ways.
And you shall be always oppressed and
plundered all the days; and there will
be no one to save.
30 You shall betroth a wife, and
another shall lie with her. You shall
build a house, and you shall not live in
it. You shall plant a vineyard, and shall
not use its fruit.*(Amos 5:11, Jer 12:13)*
31 Your ox shall be slaughtered
before your eyes, and you shall not eat
of it. Your donkey shall be violently
taken away from before you, and it will
not be given back. Your sheep shall be
given to your enemies, and you shall
have no deliverer.
32 Your sons and your daughters
shall be given to another people; and
your eyes shall look and fail for them
all the day. And no power shall be in
your hand. *(Joel 3:6)*
33 The fruit of your ground, and all
your labor, shall be eaten up by a
nation which you do not know. And

1 In the entirety of the Holy scriptures there is only blessings for obedience and cursing for disobedience.

2 In ancient times water was equivalent with life. Without water one could not survive and this is why many times in scripture YHWH is equated with living water, Ps 29:3, Jer 2:13, Rev 22:1.

you shall always be oppressed and crushed. *(Jer 22:17)*

34 And you shall be maddened because of that which you shall see with the sight of your eyes.

35 YAHWEH shall strike you with an evil boil on the knees, and on the legs, of which you cannot be healed from the sole of your foot even to your crown. *(Rev 16:2, Deut 28:27)*

36 YAHWEH shall cause you and your king whom you shall raise up over you, to go to a nation which you have not known, you and your fathers. And you shall serve other gods there, wood and stone. *(Deut 4:27-28)*

37 And you shall be an astonishment, a proverb and a byword among all the peoples where YAHWEH shall lead you.

38 You shall carry much seed out to the field, and you shall gather in little; for the locusts will devour it.

39 You shall plant vineyards, and shall labor, and you shall not gather, nor drink wine; for the worm will devour it. *(Joel 1:4, Is 5:10, 17:10-11)*

40 You shall have olive trees in all your border, and you shall not anoint with oil; for your olive shall fall off.

41 You shall father sons and daughters, and they shall not be with you; for they shall go into captivity.

42 The locust shall possess all your trees and the fruit of your ground.

43 The alien in your midst shall go above you, higher and higher; and you shall come down, lower and lower.

44 He shall lend to you, and you shall not lend to him. He shall be the head, and you shall be the tail.

45 And all these curses shall come on you and shall pursue you and overtake you, until you are destroyed; for you did not heed the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim, to keep His commandments and His statutes which He commanded you.

46 And they shall be on you for a sign and for a wonder, and on your seed forever,

47 because you did not serve YAHWEH your Elohim with joyfulness and with gladness of heart for the abundance of all things,

48 and you shall serve your enemies whom YAHWEH shall send on you, in hunger, and in thirst, and in nakedness, and in lack of all things. And He shall put an iron yoke on your neck until He has destroyed you.

49 YAHWEH shall raise a nation against you from afar, from the end of the earth, as the eagle flies; a nation whose tongue you will not understand,

50 a nation fierce of face, who will not regard the person of the aged, nor show favor to the young.

51 And he shall eat the fruit of your livestock, and the fruit of your land, until you are destroyed. He shall not leave to you grain, new wine, and oil, offspring of your oxen, or young ones of your flock, until he has destroyed you.

52 And he shall lay siege to you in all your gates, until your high and fortified walls in which you are trusting come down, in all your land; yea, he shall distress you in all your gates, in all your land which YAHWEH your Elohim has given to you.

53 And you shall eat the fruit of your body, the flesh of your sons and your daughters whom YAHWEH your Elohim has given to you, in the siege, and in the anguish with which your enemies shall distress you.

54 The man who is tender and very delicate among you, his eye shall be evil against his brother, and against the wife of his bosom, and against the remnant of his sons which he leaves,

55 so that he will not give to any of them of the flesh of his sons that he

shall eat, because he has nothing left to him in the siege, and in the anguish with which your enemies shall distress you in all your gates.

56 The soft and delicate woman among you, who would not have ventured to set the sole of her foot on the ground for delicateness and tenderness, her eye shall be evil against the husband of her bosom, and against her son, and against her daughter;

57 and against her fetus which comes out from between her feet, even against her sons whom she shall bear. For she shall eat them in secret, for the lack of everything in the siege and in the anguish with which the enemy shall distress you within your gates.

58 If you will not take heed to do all the Words of this Torah, written in this book, to fear this glorious and fearful Name, YAHWEH your Elohim[1],

59 then YAHWEH will make your plagues remarkable, and the plagues of your children shall be great and persistent plagues with evil and long lasting sicknesses.

60 He shall also bring on you all the diseases of Egypt, of which you were afraid; and they shall cling to you.

61 Also every sickness and every plague which is not written in the book of this Torah[2], YAHWEH shall cause them to come on you until you are destroyed.

62 And you shall be left with few adult men, whereas you were as the stars of the heavens for multitude, because you would not obey the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim. *(Is 24:5-6)*

63 And it shall be, as YAHWEH rejoiced over you to do you good, and to multiply you, so YAHWEH shall rejoice over you to destroy you, and to lay you waste. And you shall be plucked from the land you are going to possess.

64 And YAHWEH shall scatter you among all people, from one end of the earth even to the other, and you shall serve other gods there, wood and stone, which you have not known, nor your fathers.*(Deut 4:27-28, Jer 32:23)*

65 And among these nations you shall find no ease, nor shall the sole of your foot have rest. But YAHWEH shall give you there a trembling heart and failing of eyes, and sorrow of mind.

66 And your life shall be in doubt before you, and you shall fear day and night, and shall have no assurance of your life.[3] *(1 Joh 4:18)*

67 In the morning you shall say, Oh that it were evening! And in the evening you shall say, Oh that it were morning! For the fear of your heart with which you fear, and for the sight of your eyes which you shall see.

68 And YAHWEH shall bring you into Egypt again with ships, by the way of which I said to you, You shall never see it again. And you shall be sold to your enemies there, for male slaves and slave-girls; and there shall be no buyer.

Chapter 29

1 These are the Words of the covenant which YAHWEH

1 The very essence of obedience and the first step toward repentance is to recognize and acknowledge the Creator of the Torah, YAHWEH, and to give glory to His name.

2 Torah means instruction

3 The word doubt here is implied, as in ancient Hebrew there is no actual word for doubt. Doubt is a horrible plague that will lead to uncertainty and fear and also torment (1 Joh 4:18). This plague is the opposite of faith and is instilled in many in western society today.

commanded Moses to cut[1] with the sons of Israel in the land of Moab, besides the covenant which He made with them in Horeb.

2 And Moses called to all Israel, and said to them, You have seen all that YAHWEH did before your eyes in the land of Egypt, to Pharaoh and to all his servants, and to all his land.

3 Your eyes have seen the great trials, the signs, and those great miracles.

4 Yet YAHWEH has not given to you a heart to know, and eyes to see, and ears to hear, until this day.

5 And I have led you forty years in the wilderness; your garments have not worn out from off you, and your sandal has not worn away off your foot[2]. *(Deut 8:4)*

6 You have not eaten bread, and you have not drunk wine or fermented drink, so that you might know that I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

7 And you came into this place, and Sihon the king of Heshbon, and Og the king of Bashan, came out to meet us, to battle. And we struck them,

8 and took their land, and gave it for an inheritance to the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and for the half tribe of Manasseh. *(Num 32:33)*

9 Then pay attention to the Words of this covenant, and do them, that you may act wisely in all that you do. *(Ro 2:13)*

10 You are standing today, all of you, before YAHWEH your Elohim; your rulers, your tribes, your elders, and your officers, every man of Israel;

11 your little ones, your wives, and your foreigner who is in the midst of your camps, from the woodchopper to the one drawing your water;

12 so that you should enter into the covenant of YAHWEH your Elohim, and into His oath, which YAHWEH your Elohim is cutting with you today;

13 so that He may establish you today for a people to Himself, and He Himself be your Elohim, as He has spoken to you, and as He has sworn to your fathers, to Abraham to Isaac, and to Jacob.

14 And I am not cutting this covenant and this oath with you alone,

15 but with him who stands here with us today before YAHWEH your Elohim; and also with him that is not here with us today.

16 For you know how we lived in the land of Egypt, and how we came through the nations through which you passed.

17 And you have seen their detestable things, and their idols of wood and stone, silver and gold, which were among them;

18 that there not be among you man, or woman, or family, or tribe, whose heart turns away today from YAHWEH our Elohim, to go and serve the gods of these nations; lest there should be among you today a root that bears gall and wormwood;[3]

19 and it happens when he hears the words of this curse, that he should bless himself in his heart, saying, I shall have peace, even though I walk in the stubbornness of my heart, to snatch away the drunken with the thirsty.

20 YAHWEH will not be willing to forgive him, for then the anger of

[1] Agreements between men are made and broken but covenants are cut and binding and lasting.

[2] As a mother cares for her suckling child, Yahweh cared for His people (Is 49:15) and provided every need for 40 yrs in the wilderness. This was to teach them full faith in Him for everything and is a stark difference from the world we live in today where most things in the west are provided by an individual himself or the government.

[3] These were poisonous bitter plants.

YAHWEH and His zeal shall smoke, and His zeal shall be against that man, and all the curses written in this book shall lie upon him. And YAHWEH shall blot out his name from under the heavens. *(Ex 32:32, Rev 3:5, 20:12,15)*

21 And YAHWEH shall set him apart to evil, out of all the tribes of Israel, according to all the curses of the covenant that are written in this book of the Torah;

22 so that the generation to come, your sons who rise after you, and the foreigner who comes in from a distant land, shall say when they see the plagues of that land, and its sicknesses which YAHWEH shall send into it,

23 The whole land shall be burned with brimstone and salt; it shall not be sown, nor shall it sprout; nor shall there be any herb in it. It shall be like the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah, Admah and Zeboim, which YAHWEH overthrew in His anger and in His fury.[1]

24 And all the nations shall say, Why has YAHWEH done this to this land? For what is the heat of this great anger?

25 Then they shall say, Because they have forsaken the covenant of YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers, which He made with them when He brought them out of the land of Egypt.

26 For they went and served other gods, and worshiped them, elohim which they did not know, and who had not divided to them any portion.

27 And the anger of YAHWEH was kindled against this land to bring on it all the curses that are written in this book.

28 And YAHWEH rooted them out of their land in anger and wrath, and in great indignation, and cast them into another land, as it is this day.

29 The secret things belong to YAHWEH our Elohim; and the things revealed belong to us and to our sons forever, that we may do all the Words of this Torah.[2] *(Pr 25:2)*

Chapter 30

1 And it shall be when all these things have come on you, the blessing and the curse which I have set before you among all the nations where YAHWEH your Elohim shall banish you, you shall bring these things back to your heart;

2 and shall turn back to YAHWEH your Elohim and listen to His voice, according to all that I am commanding you today, you and your sons with all your heart, and with all your soul;

3 then YAHWEH your Elohim will turn your captivity, and He will have pity on you, and will return and gather you from all the nations where YAHWEH your Elohim has scattered you.[3]

4 If you are cast out to the end of the heavens, YAHWEH your Elohim shall gather you from there, and He shall take you from there.

5 And YAHWEH your Elohim shall bring you into the land which your fathers have possessed, and you shall inherit it; and He shall do you good and multiply you above your fathers.

6 And YAHWEH your Elohim will circumcise your heart, and the heart of

---

1 Just like what happened at the Dead Sea. Brimstone is a sulfurous gas that comes from a volcanic eruption. You can still find remains of sulfur balls in this area.

2 One need not get caught up on all the mysteries of the universe, but simply read and obey the Torah and his life will be greatly blessed and he will inherit eternal life. Ps 19:7-11, Pr 3:1-3.

3 Jer 30:18, Eze 36:24, Ezek 34:13, Jer 31:8, Jer 3:18, Jer 50:4-5, Mic 4:6-7, Amos 9:14-15

your seed, to love YAHWEH your
Elohim with all your heart, and with
all your soul, that you may live. *(Deut
10:16, Ro 2:28-29)*
7 And YAHWEH your Elohim will
put all these curses on your enemies,
and on those that hate you, who have
persecuted you.
8 And you shall return and obey the
voice of YAHWEH, and do all His
commandments which I am
commanding you today.
9 And YAHWEH your Elohim will
make you abundant in every work of
your hand, in the fruit of your body,
and in the fruit of your livestock, and
in the fruit of your ground, for good.
For YAHWEH will again rejoice over
you for good, as He rejoiced over your
fathers.
10 For you shall listen to the voice of
YAHWEH your Elohim, to keep His
commandments and His statutes
which are written in the book of this
Torah. For you shall turn back toward
YAHWEH your Elohim, with all your
heart and with all your soul.
11 For this command which I am
commanding you today is not too
wonderful for you, nor is it too far off.
12 It is not in the heavens that you
should say, Who shall go up into the
heavens for us, and bring it to us, and
cause us to hear it, that we may do it?
13 And it is not beyond the sea that
you should say, Who shall cross over
for us to the region beyond the sea and
take it for us, and cause us to hear it,
that we may do it?
14 For the Word is very near to you,
in your mouth and in your heart, that
you may do it. *(Heb 8:10-11)*
15 Behold, I have set before you
today life and good and death and evil,
16 in that I am commanding you
today to love YAHWEH your Elohim,
to walk in His ways, and to keep His
commandments and His statutes, and
His judgments, and you shall live and
multiply, and YAHWEH your Elohim
shall bless you in the land where you
are going in, to possess it[1].
17 But if you turn away your heart,
and you do not listen, and are impelled
to, even bow down to other gods, and
serve them;
18 I have declared to you today that
you shall certainly perish. You shall
not prolong your days in the land to
which you are crossing the Jordan, to
go in there to possess it.
19 I call Heaven and earth to witness
against you today that I have set
before you life and death, the blessing
and the curse. Therefore, choose life,
that you and your seed may live,[2]
20 to love YAHWEH your Elohim,
to listen to His voice, and to cleave to
Him. For He is your life, and the
length of your days so that you may
live in the land which YAHWEH has
sworn to your fathers, to Abraham, to
Isaac, and to Jacob, to give it to them.

Chapter 31

1 And Moses went out and spoke
these words to all Israel.
2 And he said to them, I am a
hundred and twenty years old today. I
am not able any more to go out and to
come in. And YAHWEH has said to
me, You shall not cross over this
Jordan. *(Num 27:12-14)*
3 YAHWEH your Elohim will cross
over before you; He shall destroy these
nations from before you, and you shall

[1] Verses 10-16 is a beautiful poetic stanza that shows Yahweh's Torah is very simple and needs to be written in our heart for us to obey it and obedience to it is life. Throughout the entire bible you will only see blessings for obedience and cursing for disobedience.

[2] A great scripture showing life starts at conception.

possess them. Yahoshua is the one who shall cross over before you, as YAHWEH has spoken.

4 And YAHWEH shall do to them as He has done to Sihon and to Og, kings of the Amorites, and to their land, which He destroyed before them.

5 And YAHWEH shall give them up before your face, and you shall do to them according to all the commandment which I have commanded you.

6 Be strong and brave. Do not fear them, or be afraid of them. For YAHWEH your Elohim is He who is going with you; He shall not fail you nor forsake you.

7 And Moses called for Yahoshua, and said to him before the eyes of all Israel, Be strong and brave, for you shall go in with this people to the land which YAHWEH has sworn to their fathers, to give it to them, and you shall cause them to inherit it.

8 And YAHWEH is He who is going before you; He Himself shall be with you; He shall not fail you nor forsake you. Do not fear nor be afraid.

9 And Moses wrote this Torah, and delivered it to the priests, the sons of Levi, those bearing the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH, and to all the elders of Israel[1].

10 And Moses commanded them, saying, At the end of seven years in the appointed time, in the year of release, in the Feast of Sukkot,

11 when all Israel comes in to see the face of YAHWEH in the place which He chooses[2], you shall proclaim this Torah before all Israel, in their ears. *(Deut 12:5, Deut 16:6, Jos 8:34-35)*

12 Assemble the people, men and women, and the little ones, and your foreigner who is within your gates, so that they may hear, and so that they may learn, and may fear YAHWEH your Elohim, and take heed to do all the Words of this Torah;

13 and their sons who have not known shall hear, and shall learn to fear YAHWEH your Elohim all the days which you live on the land where you are crossing over the Jordan to possess it. *(Deut 4:10, Deut 6:7)*

14 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Behold, your days are coming near to die. Call Yahoshua, and present yourselves at the tent of meeting, and I shall charge him. And Moses and Yahoshua went, and they presented themselves at the tent of meeting.

15 And YAHWEH appeared at the tabernacle in a pillar of cloud; and the pillar of cloud stood at the door of the tabernacle. *(Ex 33:9)*

16 And YAHWEH said to Moses, Behold, you shall lie with your fathers, and this people shall rise up and go lusting after the gods of the strangers of the land into which they are going, and shall forsake Me, and shall break My covenant which I cut with them.[3]

17 And My anger shall burn against them in that day, and I shall forsake them and hide My face from them. And it shall be consumed, and many evils and distresses shall find this people. And it shall say in that day, Is it not because my Elohim is not in my midst, that these evils have found me?

18 And hiding I will hide My face in that day, because of all the evil which

[1] Moses wrote the entire Torah, there is no mention of an oral law that later came as a tradition of the Rabbis. Jos 8:34-35, Ex 24:4. Deut 31:24

[2] Jerusalem, 1 Kgs 14:21

[3] Verses 16-18- YHWH did not state this due to predestination as man has free will to choose his path, but because He knew their hardened hearts and prideful attitude to refuse to humble themselves before Him and repent and receive His spirit and grace, Ja 4:6, Acts 7:51.

this people has done, for it shall turn to other gods.

19 Now, then, write this song for you, and teach it to the sons of Israel. Put it in their mouths, so that this song shall be for a witness to Me against the sons of Israel.

20 And I shall bring them into the land flowing with milk and honey, which I have sworn to their fathers. And you shall eat and be satisfied, and become fat, and shall turn to other gods; and they shall serve them, and despise Me, and break My covenant.

21 And it shall be, when many evils and distresses have found them, this song shall testify against them as a witness. For it shall not be forgotten out of the mouths of their seed. For I know their scheme, which they are making today, before I bring them into the land which I have sworn.

22 And Moses wrote this song on that day, and taught it to the sons of Israel.

23 And He commanded Yahoshua the son of Nun, and said, Be strong and brave; for you shall bring the sons of Israel into the land which I have sworn to them, and I shall be with you.

24 And it happened, when Moses finished writing, until their completion, all the Words of this Torah in a book[1],

25 that Moses commanded the Levites who bore the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH, saying,

26 Take this book of the Torah, and you shall put it in the side of the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH your Elohim, so that it may be there for a witness against you.

27 For I have known your rebellion and your stiff neck. Behold, while I am yet alive with you this day, you have been rebellious against YAHWEH. And how much more after my death!

28 Gather to me all the elders of your tribes, and your officers, and I shall speak in their ears these words, and cause the heavens and the earth to testify against them.

29 For I know that after my death you shall utterly corrupt yourselves, and will turn aside from the way which I have commanded you. And evil shall happen to you in the latter end of the days because you shall do evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, to make Him angry with the work of your hands.

30 And Moses spoke in the ears of all the assembly of Israel the words of this song, until their conclusion:

Chapter 32

1 Give ear, O heavens, and I will speak. And hear, O earth, the words of my mouth.

2 My doctrine shall drop as the rain; my speech shall drop down as the dew, as the small rain on the tender plant, and as the showers on the grass;

3 because I will proclaim the name of YAHWEH and ascribe greatness to our Elohim.[2]

4 He is the Rock; His work is perfect. For all His ways are just, an El of faithfulness, and without evil; just and upright is He.

5 He has not corrupted Himself; His sons; it is their blemish; they are a crooked and perverse generation.

6 Do you thus give back to YAHWEH, O foolish and unwise people? Is He not your Father who bought you? Has not He made you and established you? *(Mal 2:10)*

7 Remember the ancient days,

[1] Moses wrote the entire Torah, there is no mention of an oral law that came as a tradition of the Rabbis later. Jos 8:34-35, Ex 24:4, Deut 31:9, Jos 1:8.

[2] As the "*Our Father*" prayer in Mathew 6:9, prayers always starts out by glorifying the wonderful, glorious name of YAHWEH.

consider the years of many
generations; ask your father, and he
will declare to you, your elders, and
they shall say to you; *(Ps 78:5-8)*
8 when the Most High divided to the
nations their inheritance; when He
separated the sons of mankind, He set
up the boundaries of the peoples,
according to the number of the
cherubs of Elohim[1].
9 For the portion of YAHWEH is
His people; Jacob is the lot of His
inheritance.
10 He found him in a desert land,
and in the waste, a howling
wilderness. He encircled him and
cared for him; He guarded him as the
pupil of His eye.
11 As the eagle stirs up its nest; it
hovers over its young; it spreads out
its wings and takes it, and bears it on
its wing.
12 YAHWEH alone led him, and
there was no strange god with him.
13 He made him ride on the high
places of the earth, so that he might
eat the increase of the fields. And He
made him suck honey out of the rock,
and oil out of the flinty rock;
14 butter from cows, and milk from
the flock, with fat from lambs, and
rams of the sons of Bashan, and he-
goats, with the fat of the kidneys of
wheat, and of the blood of the grape
you shall drink wine.
15 But Jeshurun[2] grew fat, and
kicked; you grew fat, thick and sated.
And he abandoned Elohim who made
him, and fell away from the Rock of
his salvation (Y'shua*).
16 With strange gods they moved
Him to jealousy; and with idols they
provoked Him to anger.
17 They sacrificed to demons[3] who
were not Eloha, to Elohim whom they
did not know, new ones who came
lately. Your fathers had not dreaded
them. *(Lev 17:7)*
18 The Rock that begat you, you
neglected, and forgot the El who
formed you. *(Ex 23:20-22, 1 Cor 10:4)*
19 And YAHWEH looked and
despised them because of the
provoking of His sons and of His
daughters.
20 And He said, I will hide My face
from them; I will see what their end
will be; for they are a perverse
generation, sons in whom is no
faithfulness.
21 They made Me jealous with a not-
El; they made Me angry by their
vanities; and I shall make them jealous
by a not-a-people; by a foolish nation I
shall make them angry.
22 For a fire has been kindled in My
anger, and it burns to the lowest part
of Sheol, and consumes the earth and
its produce; and sets on fire the
foundations of the mountains.
23 I will heap evils on them; I will
use up My arrows on them.
24 I will send on them exhaustion by
famine, and depletion by burning heat,
and bitter destruction, and the teeth of
beasts, with the venom of crawling
things of the dust.

1 The Masoretic text changed the text here to read "*according to the number of the sons of Israel*", but clearly the Dead Sea scrolls and the Septuagint both correctly states "*according to the number of the Cherubs of Elohim*". This verse is relating back to creation when Yahweh separated mankind by their races into the different regions of the earth and set cherubs in each area according to the number of people.

2 Verses 15-18 shows Israel's rebellion, however YHWH uses the word "*Jeshurun*", which means "*upright one*" and is a term of endearment to describe Israel's great potential in later years when they would turn back to Yahshua, the Son of YHWH.

3 The Hebrew word for demon is '*shad'* and comes from the root meaning robbers or desolate ones.

25 The sword shall bereave from without, and terror from within, both the young man and the virgin, the suckling with the man of gray hairs.

26 I said, I will dash them to pieces; I will make their memory cease from among men;

27 saying, Were it not the provocation of an enemy I feared, that their foes should judge amiss, that they might not say, Our hand is high, and YAHWEH has not done all this.

28 For they are a nation void of counsel, and no understanding is in them.

29 If they were wise, they would understand this; they would comprehend their latter end.

30 How could one chase a thousand, and two put ten thousand to flight, if it were not their Rock that sold them, and YAHWEH had shut them up? *(Is 30:17)*

31 For their rock is not as our Rock, even our enemies being judges.

32 For their vine is of the vine of Sodom, and their grapes of the fields of Gomorrah, grapes of gall; they have bitter clusters.

33 Their wine is the venom of serpents, and the cruel venom of asps.

34 Is it not stored up with Me, sealed in My treasuries?

35 Vengeance and retribution belong to Me; in due time their foot will slip; for the day of their calamity is near, and the things prepared are hurrying for them.

36 For YAHWEH will bring His people justice; and He shall have compassion on His servants, for He sees that their power is gone, and only the imprisoned and abandoned remain.

37 And He will say, Where are their gods, the rock in which they sought refuge?

38 Who ate the fat of their sacrifices, and drank the wine of their drink offerings? Let them rise up and help you; let it be a hiding place for you.

39 See now that I, I am He, and other elohim are nothing against Me. I kill, and I preserve alive. I wound and I heal, and there is no deliverer from My hand.

40 For I lift up My hand to the heavens and say, I live forever!

41 If I have sharpened My lightning sword, and My hand lays hold on judgment, I will render vengeance to My foes, and I will repay those who hate Me. (*Eze 21:9-17)*

42 I will make My arrows drunk with blood, and My sword shall devour flesh, with the blood of the slain and of the captives, from the hairy head of the enemy.

43 Rejoice, O nations with Him, and let the Cherubs of Elohim worship Him. Rejoice you nations with His people; for He shall avenge the blood of His servants, and shall render vengeance to His foes, and will atone for His land and His people.

44 And Moses came and spoke all the words of this song in the ears of the people, he and Yahoshua the son of Nun.

45 And Moses finished speaking all these words to all Israel,

46 and said to them, Set your heart on all the words which I have testified against you today, that you command your sons to take heed to do all the Words of this Torah.

47 For it is not a useless Word for you, for it is your life, and by this Word you shall prolong your days in the land where you are crossing over the Jordan, there to possess it[1].

---

1 If only Christian Pastors could drop the scales from their eyes to see the plainness of verses such as these and that the Torah is life and keeping it only brings life, happiness, and blessings.

48 And YAHWEH spoke to Moses in that same day, saying,
49 Go up into this Mount Abarim, to Mount Nebo in the land of Moab, which is opposite Jericho; and see the land of Canaan which I am giving to the sons of Israel for a possession;
50 and die in the mountain where you are going, and be gathered to your people, even as your brother Aaron died on Mount Hor, and was gathered to his people;
51 because you transgressed toward Me among the sons of Israel at the Waters of Strife[1] in Kadesh, in the wilderness of Zin; because you did not sanctify Me in the midst of the sons of Israel.
52 Yet you shall see the land across from you, but you shall not go in there to the land which I am giving to the sons of Israel.*(Deut 34:1-3, Deut 1:37)*

Chapter 33

1 And this is the blessing with which Moses the man of Elohim blessed the sons of Israel before his death.
2 And he said: YAHWEH came from Sinai, and rose up from Seir for them; He shone forth from Mount Paran, and He came from the myriads of holy ones. At His right hand a law of fire went forth to them.
3 Yes, He loves the people; all His holy ones are in Your hand; and they sit down at Your feet; He lifts up each at Your Words.
4 Moses has commanded to us Torah, an inheritance for the congregation of Jacob.
5 And he was king in Jeshurun, when the heads of the people assembled, the tribes of Israel.
6 Let Reuben live, and not die, and let his men be numbered.*(Gen 49:3-4)*
7 And this for Judah: And he said, Hear the voice of Judah, O YAHWEH, and bring him in to his people; his hands were much for him, and You shall be a help against his foes. *(Gen 49:8-12)*
8 And of Levi he said, Your Thummim and Your Urim are for Your devout man whom You tested at Massah; You contended with him at the Waters of Strife; *(Lev 8:8)*
9 who said of his father and his mother, I have not seen him. And he has not acknowledged his brothers, and did not know his own son, for they have kept Your Word, and observed Your covenant.
10 They shall teach Your judgments to Jacob, and Your Torah to Israel. They shall put incense at Your nostrils, and whole burnt offering on Your altar. *(Mal 2:4-9)*
11 O YAHWEH, bless his strength, and accept the work of his hands. Dash the loins of those rising against him, those who hate him, that they may not rise!
12 Of Benjamin he said, The beloved of YAHWEH shall dwell securely beside Him, covering him all the day long; yea he shall dwell between His shoulders. *(Gen 49:27)*
13 And of Joseph he said, Blessed of YAHWEH be his land, with the best of the heavens, for the dew, for the deep crouching beneath; *(Gen 49:22-26)*
14 and with the best of the produce of the sun, and with the best yield of the months;
15 and with the first of the ancient mountains, and with the best of the everlasting hills;
16 and with the best of the earth, and its fullness; and the good will of Him who dwelt in the Bush; let it come on

[1] Waters of Meribah, Num 20:12.

the head of Joseph, and on the crown of the separated one [1] of his brothers.

17 His glory is as the first-born of his ox, and the horns of the wild ox are his horns; with them he shall butt the peoples together to the ends of the earth. And they are the myriads of Ephraim, and they are the thousands of Manasseh. *(Num 23:22, Is 34:7)*

18 And of Zebulun he said, Rejoice, O Zebulun, in your going out, and O Issachar, in your tents; *(Gen 49:13-15)*

19 to the mountains they call the peoples; there they shall offer righteous sacrifices for they shall suck the bounty of the seas, and treasures hidden in the sand.

20 And of Gad he said, Blessed is he who enlarges Gad; he shall live like a lioness, and shall tear the arm, also the top of the head. *(Gen 49:19)*

21 And he eyes the first part for himself, for there was the portion of the lawgiver hidden; and he came with the rulers of the people; he executed the justice of YAHWEH, and His judgments with Israel.

22 And of Dan he said, Dan is a lion's whelp; he shall leap from Bashan. *(Gen 49:16)*

23 And of Naphtali he said, O Naphtali, satisfied with good will and full of the blessing of YAHWEH; possess the west and the south. *(Gen 49:21)*

24 And of Asher he said, Asher shall be blessed with sons; let him be accepted by his brothers, and dip his foot in oil.[2] *(Gen 49:20)*

25 May your shoe latches be iron and copper, and your days as your strength.

26 None is like the El of Jeshurun, riding the heavens for your help, and the clouds in His majesty.

27 The Elohim of old is a refuge, and underneath are the everlasting arms. And He shall cast the enemy out from before you, and shall say, Destroy!

28 And Israel shall live alone in safety; the fountain of Jacob in a land of grain and wine; and His heavens drop down dew.

29 Blessed are you, O Israel! Who is like you? A people saved by YAHWEH, the Shield of your help, and He who is the Sword of your Excellency! And your enemies shall be found liars before you, and you shall tread on their high places.

Chapter 34

1 And Moses went up from the plains of Moab to Mount Nebo, the top of Pisgah, which is opposite Jericho.[3] And YAHWEH caused him to see all the land; Gilead to Dan;

2 and all Naphtali, and the land of Ephraim, and Manasseh, and all the land of Judah to the sea beyond;

3 and the Negev, and the plain of the valley of Jericho, the city of palm trees, to Zoar.

4 And YAHWEH said to him, This is the land which I have sworn to Abraham, to Isaac, and to Jacob, saying, I will give it to your seed. I have caused you to see with your eyes, but you shall not cross over there[4].

5 And Moses the servant of YAHWEH died there in the land of Moab, according to the command of YAHWEH.

6 And He buried him in a valley in

---

1 "*Separated one*" in Hebrew is "*nazir*". As Joseph is clearly a type of the Messiah, this is just another clue to who the Messiah will be as Yahshua came from Nazareth, which is a form from nazir. Math 2:23, Is 11:1

2 The land of Asher was famous for its olive oil. Today some believe this prophecy is relating to fossil fuel and there is off shore drilling in this Territory.

3 This was across the Jordan River in modern day Jordan.

the land of Moab, opposite Beth-Peor;
and no man knows his grave to this
day.
7 And Moses was a son of a hundred
and twenty years at his death; his eye
had not become dim, and his vigor did
not flee him.
8 And the sons of Israel mourned
Moses in the plains of Moab thirty
days. And the days of weeping and
mourning for Moses were ended. *(Gen
50:3)*
9 And Yahoshua the son of Nun was
full of the spirit of wisdom, for Moses
had laid his hands on him[1]. And the
sons of Israel listened to him and did
as YAHWEH commanded Moses.
10 And never since has a prophet
like Moses arisen in Israel, whom
YAHWEH knew face to face,
(Num 12:6-8, Deut 18:15)
11 in regard to all the signs and
wonders which YAHWEH sent him to
do in the land of Egypt, to Pharaoh,
and to all his servants and to all his
land;
12 and in regard to all the mighty
hand, and in all the great terror which
Moses showed in the sight of all Israel.

---

[4] Some have tried through replacement theology to say that heaven or another land on earth has replaced the physical land of Israel in the New Covenant, but as we see nothing could be further from the truth and that theory has no scriptural support. Ezek 20:42.

[1] We see the ceremony of the laying on of hands is not just a New Testament doctrine (Heb 6:2), but goes back to the Torah and even to the book of Genesis 48:14.

Book of Yahoshua

Chapter 1

1 And it happened after the death of Moses the servant of YAHWEH, YAHWEH spoke to Yahoshua the son of Nun, Moses' minister, saying,
2 My servant Moses is dead. And now rise up, cross over this Jordan, you and all this people, to the land which I am giving to them, to the sons of Israel.
3 Every place on which the sole of your foot shall tread, I have given it to you, as I spoke to Moses.
4 From the wilderness, and this Lebanon, even to the great river, the river Euphrates, all the land of the Hittites, and to the Great Sea toward the setting of the sun, shall be your border.
5 No man shall be able to stand before you all the days of your life. As I was with Moses, so I will be with you. I will not fail you nor will I forsake you.
6 Be strong and brave. For you shall cause this people to inherit the land which I swore to their fathers to give to them.
7 Only be strong and very brave, so that you may take heed to do according to all the Torah which Moses My servant commanded you. Do not turn from it to the right or to the left, that you may act wisely wherever you go.
8 This book of the Torah shall not depart out of your mouth, and you shall meditate on it by day and by night, so that you shall be on guard to do according to all that is written in it. For then you shall prosper your way, and then you shall act wisely.(Ex 24:4)
9 Have I not commanded you? Be strong and brave. Do not be afraid or discouraged, for YAHWEH your Elohim is with you in all places where you go.
10 Then Yahoshua commanded the officers of the people, saying,
11 Pass through the camp and command the people, saying, Prepare food for you. For within three days you are crossing this Jordan to go in to possess the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to you, to possess it.
12 And Yahoshua spoke to the Reubenites, and to the Gadites, and to the half tribe of Manasseh, saying,
13 Remember the word which Moses the servant of YAHWEH commanded you, saying, YAHWEH your Elohim has given you rest, and He has given to you this land.
14 Your wives, your little ones, and your livestock shall remain in the land which Moses has given to you beyond the Jordan. But you shall cross over armed before your brothers, all the mighty warriors, and shall help them,
15 until YAHWEH has given rest to your brothers, as well as to you, and they, even they have possessed the land which YAHWEH your Elohim is giving to them. Then you may return to the land of your possession, and may possess it, which Moses the servant of YAHWEH has given to you beyond the Jordan toward the rising of the sun.
16 And they answered Yahoshua, saying, We will do all that you command us; and we will go everywhere you shall send us.
17 According to all we listened to from Moses, so we will listen to you. Surely YAHWEH your Elohim is with you, as He has been with Moses.
18 Whoever rebels against your mouth, and will not listen to your commands in all that you say to him, he shall die. Only, be strong and brave.

Chapter 2

1 And Yahoshua the son of Nun sent two men out of Shittim to spy secretly, saying, Go look over the land, and Jericho. And they went and came into the house of a woman, an inn-keeper[1]; and her name was Rahab. And they lay down there.

2 And it was reported to the king of Jericho saying, Behold, men have come here tonight from the sons of Israel, to search the land.

3 And the king of Jericho sent to Rahab, saying, Bring out the men who have come in to you, who have come into your house. For they have come in to search out all the land.

4 And the woman took the two men and hid them, and said, This way the men came in to me, but I did not know from where they were.

5 And it happened as the gate was to be shut at dark, even the men went out. I do not know where they have gone. You go after them, and hurry, for you may overtake them.

6 But she made them go up on the roof, and hid them with stalks of flax, which she arranged on the roof.

7 And the men went after them the way of the Jordan, by the fords. And they shut the gate afterwards, when the pursuers had gone after them.

8 And before they had laid down, she came up to them on the roof.

9 And she said to the men, I know that YAHWEH has given the land to you, and that your terror has fallen on us, and that all those living in the land have melted before you.

10 For we have heard how YAHWEH[2] dried up the water of the Red Sea before you, as you were going out of Egypt; also that which you have done to two kings of the Amorites who were beyond the Jordan; to Sihon, and to Og, whom you destroyed.

11 And we have heard, and our heart has melted, and there still does not rise the spirit in any man, because of you. For YAHWEH your Elohim, He is Elohim in the heavens above, and in the earth below.

12 And now, please swear to me by YAHWEH, since I have dealt with you in kindness, that you will also deal with my father's house in kindness, and shall give to me a true token;

13 and shall keep alive my father, and my mother, and my brothers, and my sisters, and all that is to them, and shall deliver our souls from death.

14 And the men said to her, Our life instead of yours, if you do not tell this business of ours, then it shall be, when YAHWEH gives this land to us that we shall deal with you in kindness and truth.

15 Then she let them down by a rope through the window, for her house was in the side of the wall, and she lived in the wall.

16 And she said to them, Go to the mountain lest the pursuers come upon you. And you shall hide there three days until the pursuers return; and afterward you shall go on your way.

17 And the men said to her, We will be guiltless from this oath of yours which you made us swear.

18 Behold, we are coming into the land; you shall bind this scarlet thread of line in the window by which you have let us down. And you shall gather your father, and your mother, and your brothers, and all your father's house to you, to the house. *(Is 1:18)*

19 And it shall be, anyone who goes

---

1 This word in Hebrew is somewhat ambiguous and can also mean innkeeper. Josephus also states that Rahab was an inn-keeper.

2 The people knew the personal name of Yahweh the Creator who did the wonders before Pharaoh in Egypt.

outside from the doors of your house his blood shall be on his head, and we shall be innocent. And anyone who is with you in the house, his blood shall be on our head, if any hand is on him.

20 But if you reveal this business of ours, then we shall be guiltless from your oath which you have made us swear.

21 And she said, Let it be according to your words. And she sent them away. And they went. And she bound the line of scarlet thread in the window.

22 And they departed and came to the mountain, and stayed there three days, until the pursuers had returned. And the pursuers searched in all the way, but did not find them.

23 And the two men returned and came down from the mountain, and crossed over, and came to Yahoshua the son of Nun, and reported to him all that had happened to them.

24 And they said to Yahoshua, Surely YAHWEH has given all the land into our hands. And also, all those living in the land have melted before us.

Chapter 3

1 And Yahoshua rose up early in the morning. And they set forth from Shittim and came to the Jordan, he and all the sons of Israel. And they stayed there before they crossed over.

2 And it happened, at the end of three days, the officers passed into the midst of the camp.

3 And they commanded the people, saying, When you see the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH your Elohim, and the priests, and the Levites bearing it, then you shall set forth from your place and shall go after it.

4 Only, keep a distance between you and it, about two thousand cubits by measure. You shall not come near it, so that you may know the way in which you are to go in. For you have not crossed over this way in time past.

5 And Yahoshua said to the people, Sanctify yourselves, for tomorrow YAHWEH will do wonders among you.

6 And Yahoshua spoke to the priests, saying, Take up the ark of the covenant and go before the people. And they took up the ark of the covenant and went before the people.

7 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, This day I will begin to make you great in the eyes of all Israel, so that they shall know that as I was with Moses, I am with you.

8 And you shall command the priests bearing the ark of the covenant, saying, When you come to the edge of the waters of the Jordan you shall stand still in the Jordan.

9 And Yahoshua said to the sons of Israel, Come near here and hear the Words of YAHWEH your Elohim.

10 And Yahoshua said, By this you shall know that the living Elohim is among you. And He shall certainly dispossess from before you the Canaanites, and the Hittites, and the Hivites, and the Perizzites, and the Girgashites, and the Amorites, and the Jebusites.

11 Behold, the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH of all the earth shall pass over before you into the Jordan.

12 And now, take for yourselves twelve men out of the tribes of Israel, one man for each tribe.

13 And it shall be, when the soles of the feet of the priests bearing the ark of YAHWEH, Master of all the earth, come to rest in the waters of the Jordan, the waters of the Jordan shall be cut off, the waters which come down from above. And they shall stand in one heap.

14 And it happened, as the people set

forth from their tents to cross over the
Jordan, and as the priests bore the ark
of the covenant before the people,
15 and as those bearing the ark came
into the Jordan, and the feet of the
priests bearing the ark were dipped in
the edge of the waters (and the Jordan
was full, over all its banks all the days
of harvest),
16 that the waters stood still, those
coming down from above rose up into
a heap, very far above the city Adam,
which is beside Zaretan; and those
going down by the sea of the Arabah,
the Salt Sea, were completely cut off.
And the people passed over opposite
to Jericho.
17 And the priests bearing the ark of
the covenant of YAHWEH stood firm
on dry ground in the middle of the
Jordan. And all Israel crossed over on
dry ground until all the nation had
completely passed over the Jordan.

Chapter 4

1 And it was, when all the nation had
completely crossed over the Jordan,
YAHWEH spoke to Yahoshua, saying,
2 Take twelve men for you out of the
people, one man of each tribe.
3 And charge them, saying, Take
twelve stones from this place, from the
middle of the Jordan, from the place
where the feet of the priests were
fixed. And you shall carry them over
with you and lay them down in the
lodging place which you stay in it
tonight.
4 And Yahoshua called to the twelve
men whom he had readied from the
sons of Israel, one man out of each
tribe.
5 And Yahoshua said to them, Cross
over before the ark of YAHWEH your
Elohim to the middle of the Jordan,
and each man of you lift up one stone
on his shoulder, according to the
number of the tribes of the sons of
Israel,
6 that this shall be a sign among you,
when your children ask hereafter,
saying, What are these stones to you?
7 You shall say to them, Because the
waters of the Jordan were cut off
before the ark of the covenant of
YAHWEH, as it crossed over into the
Jordan, the waters of the Jordan were
cut off. And these stones are for a
memorial to the sons of Israel all the
days.
8 And the sons of Israel did as
Yahoshua commanded, and took up
twelve stones out of the middle of the
Jordan, as YAHWEH had spoken to
Yahoshua, according to the number of
the tribes of the sons of Israel, and
crossed over with them to the lodging
place, and laid them down there;
9 even the twelve stones that
Yahoshua lifted up in the middle of the
Jordan, in the place where the feet of
the priests bearing the ark of the
covenant stood firm. And they are
there until this day.
10 And the priests bearing the ark
were standing in the middle of the
Jordan until everything was finished
that YAHWEH had commanded
Yahoshua to speak to the people,
according to all that Moses
commanded Yahoshua. And the
people hurried and crossed over.
11 And it happened, when the people
had finished crossing over, the ark of
YAHWEH and the priests crossed
over before the people.
12 And the sons of Reuben, and the
sons of Gad, and the half tribe of
Manasseh crossed over in battle array
before the sons of Israel, as Moses had
spoken to them;
13 about forty thousand armed men
of the army crossed over before
YAHWEH for battle, to the plains of
Jericho.

14 In that day YAHWEH made Yahoshua great in the sight of all Israel. And they feared him all the days of his life, even as they feared Moses[1].
15 And YAHWEH spoke to Yahoshua, saying,
16 Order the priests who carry the ark of the testimony, that they rise out of the Jordan.
17 And Yahoshua commanded the priests, saying, Rise out of the Jordan.
18 And it happened when the priests who bore the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH had come up out of the midst of the Jordan, and the soles of the feet of the priests had been lifted to the dry land, the waters of the Jordan returned to their place, and flowed over all its banks, as before.
19 And the people came up out of the Jordan on the tenth of the first month, and camped in Gilgal, in the east border of Jericho.
20 And the twelve stones which they took out of the Jordan were raised up in Gilgal by Yahoshua.
21 And he spoke to the sons of Israel, saying, When your sons ask their fathers hereafter, saying, What do these stones mean?
22 Then you shall make your sons know, saying, Israel came over this Jordan on dry land,
23 because YAHWEH your Elohim dried up the waters of the Jordan before you, until you crossed over, as YAHWEH your Elohim did to the Red Sea, which He dried up before you until we crossed over;
24 so that all the people of the land shall know that the hand of YAHWEH is strong, so that you may fear YAHWEH your Elohim all the days.

Chapter 5

1 And it happened, when all the kings of the Amorites beyond the Jordan, toward the sea, and all the kings of the Canaanites which were by the sea, heard how YAHWEH dried up the waters of the Jordan before the sons of Israel, until they crossed over, their heart was melted. And there was not any more spirit in them before the sons of Israel.
2 At that time YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, Make for yourself flint knives, and again circumcise the sons of Israel, the second time.
3 And Yahoshua made flint knives for himself, and circumcised the sons of Israel at the hill of the foreskins.
4 And this is the reason Yahoshua circumcised: All the people who had come out of Egypt, who were males, all the men of war, had died in the wilderness, in the way, as they came out of Egypt.
5 For all the people who had come out were circumcised. And all the people who were born in the wilderness, in the way, as they came out from Egypt, had not been circumcised.
6 For the sons of Israel had walked forty years in the wilderness, until all the nation, the men of war who had come out of Egypt were consumed, those who did not listen to the voice of YAHWEH, to whom YAHWEH had sworn to them not to show them the land which YAHWEH swore to their fathers, to give to us, a land flowing with milk and honey; these were consumed.
7 And He raised their sons up in their place. Yahoshua circumcised them, for they had been

[1] It is YHWH who lifts up man and takes him down. Dan 4:17, 4:31-33

uncircumcised; for they had not been circumcised in the way[1].

8 And it happened, when all the nation had finished being circumcised, they remained in their places in the camp until they revived.

9 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, Today I have rolled the reproach of Egypt off of you. And he called the name of that place Gilgal[2] to this day.

10 And the sons of Israel camped in Gilgal, and prepared the Passover in the fourteenth day of the month, at evening, in the plains of Jericho.

11 And they ate the old grain of the land on the next day after the Passover, unleavened bread and roasted grain, in this same day.

12 And the manna ceased on the next day after they ate of the old grain of the land. And there was no more manna to the sons of Israel, but they ate the produce of the land of Canaan in that year.

13 And it happened, when Yahoshua was beside Jericho, that he lifted up his eyes and looked. And, behold! A Man stood in front of him, and His drawn sword was in His hand. And Yahoshua went to Him and said to Him, Are You for us, or for our foes?

14 And He said, No, for I now come as the Captain of the army of YAHWEH. And Yahoshua fell on his face to the earth and worshiped. And he said to Him, What does my Master speak to His slave?

15 And the Captain of the army of YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, Take your shoe off your foot, for the place on which you are standing is holy. And Yahoshua did so[3].

Chapter 6

1 And Jericho was closed, and was shut in from the face of the sons of Israel; no one going out, and no one coming in.

2 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, See I have given Jericho and its king, mighty warriors, into your hand.

3 And you shall go around the city, all the men of battle, going around the city once; so you shall do six days.

4 And seven priests shall bear seven trumpets of rams' horns before the ark. And on the seventh day you shall go around the city seven times, and the priests shall blow with the rams' horns.[4]

5 And it shall be, when they make a long blast with the ram's horn, and when you hear the sound of the ram's horn, all the people shall shout with a great shout. And the wall of the city shall fall down underneath below you; and the people shall go up, each man in front of him.

6 And Yahoshua the son of Nun called the priests and said to them, Take up the ark of the covenant, and let seven priests bear seven trumpets of rams' horns before the ark of YAHWEH.

7 And he said to the people, Pass on,

1 Apparently, all the children who were born in the wilderness were not circumcised. This shows the covenant at Mount Sinai clearly was not consummated and here is being reestablished.

2 Gilgal means "*wheel*".

3 The word for captain here in Hebrew is "*sar*" and is used in Is 9:6 as a description of the Messiah being "S*ar Shalom*" or Prince of Peace. Undoubtedly, this had to be Yahshua as an angel would not allow worship, and an angel's presence would not make the ground holy. (Rev 22:8-9, Ex 3:2, 5)

4 Denotes circular patten of Yahweh's 7,000 yr plan, that is why three 7's are mentioned as 7 is the number of completion. The Hebrew word for ram's horn is Yobel Keren denoting the Jubilee year.

go around the city, and he who is armed shall go on before the ark of YAHWEH.

8 And it happened, when Yahoshua spoke to the people, the seven priests bearing seven trumpets of rams' horns before YAHWEH passed on and blew with the rams' horns. And the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH went after them.

9 And he who was armed went before the priests blowing the rams' horns. And the rear guard after the ark, going on and blowing with the rams' horns.

10 And Yahoshua had commanded the people, saying, You shall not shout, nor cause your voice to be heard, nor shall there go from your mouth a word until the day I say to you, Shout! Then you shall shout.

11 And the ark of YAHWEH went around the city, going around one time. And they came into the camp, and remained in the camp.

12 And Yahoshua rose early in the morning, and the priests bore the ark of YAHWEH.

13 And seven priests bearing seven trumpets of rams' horns were walking before the ark of YAHWEH, going on, and were blowing with the rams' horns. And he who was armed went before them. And the rear guard went behind the ark of YAHWEH, going on and blowing with the rams' horns.

14 And they circled the city on the second day one time, and returned to the camp. So they did six days.

15 And it happened on the seventh day, they rose early, at the dawning of the day, and went around the city seven times in the same way. Only on that day they circled the city seven times.

16 And it happened at the seventh time the priests blew with the rams' horns. And Yahoshua said to the people, Shout! For YAHWEH has given you the city.

17 And the city shall be devoted to YAHWEH, it and all that are in it. Only Rahab the inn-keeper shall live, she and all who are with her in the house, because she hid the messengers that we sent.

18 And you shall certainly keep clear of the cursed things, that you not become accursed by taking from the cursed things, and shall make the camp of Israel become accursed, and trouble it.

19 And all the silver and gold, and vessels of copper and iron, they are holy to YAHWEH; they shall come into the treasury of YAHWEH.

20 And the people shouted, and blew with the ram's horns, and it happened, when the people heard the sound of the ram's horn, the people shouted a great shout. And the wall fell under it; and the people went up into the city, each man in front of him; and they captured the city.

21 And they destroyed all that was in the city, from man even to woman, from young even to aged, and to ox, and sheep, and donkey, by the mouth of the sword.

22 And Yahoshua said to the two men who had spied out the land, Go into the house of the woman, the innkeeper, and bring the woman out from there, and all whom she has, as you have sworn to her.

23 And the young men, the spies, went in and brought out Rahab, and her father, and her mother, and her brothers, and all whom she had; yea, they brought all her family, and set them outside the camp of Israel.

24 And they burned the city with fire, and all that was in it. Only they gave the silver and the gold, and the vessels of copper, and of iron, to the treasury of the house of YAHWEH.

25 And Yahoshua kept alive Rahab the innkeeper, and the house of her father, and all whom she had. And she lives in the midst of Israel to this day. For she hid the messengers whom Yahoshua sent to spy out Jericho.

26 And at that time Yahoshua adjured, saying, Cursed be the man who rises up before the face of YAHWEH and builds this city of Jericho. He shall lay its foundation in his first-born, and he shall set up its doors in his youngest son.

27 And YAHWEH was with Yahoshua, and his fame was in all the land.

Chapter 7

1 And the sons of Israel sinned a sin in the cursed things. And Achan, the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah took of the cursed things. And the anger of YAHWEH glowed against the sons of Israel.

2 And Yahoshua sent men from Jericho to Ai, which is near Beth-Aven, on the east of Bethel, and spoke to them, saying, Go up and spy out the land. And the men went up and spied out Ai.

3 And they returned to Yahoshua, and said to him, Do not let all the people go up. Let about two thousand men, or about three thousand men, go up, and they shall strike Ai. Do not cause all the people to labor there, for they are few.

4 And about three thousand men of the people went up there. And they fled before the men of Ai.

5 And the men of Ai struck about thirty six men of them, and pursued them before the gate to Shebarim. And they struck them in the descent. And the heart of the people was melted, and became as water.

6 And Yahoshua tore his clothing, and fell on his face to the earth before the ark of YAHWEH until the evening, he and the elders of Israel. And they threw dust on their heads.

7 And Yahoshua said, Oh Adonai YAHWEH, why have You at all caused this people to cross over the Jordan to give us into the hands of the Amorites, to destroy us? And, Oh that we had been willing, and that we had dwelt beyond the Jordan!

8 Oh YAHWEH, what shall I say, after Israel has turned its back before its enemies?

9 And the Canaanites, and all the ones living in the land shall hear, and shall come around against us, and shall cut off our name out of the earth. And what shall You do for Your great name?

10 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, Get yourself up! Why do you fall on your face this way?

11 Israel has sinned, and they also have transgressed My covenant which I commanded them, and have also taken of the cursed things, and have also stolen, and also deceived, and also put it among their stuff[1].

12 And the sons of Israel have not been able to stand before their enemies; they have turned the back before their enemies because they have become cursed. I will not be with you again if you do not destroy the cursed things from among you.

13 Rise up, sanctify the people, and you shall say, Sanctify yourselves for tomorrow. For so says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, A cursed thing is among you, Israel; you are not able to stand before your enemies until you take away the cursed thing from among you.

14 And you shall be brought near in

---

[1] The whole camp of Israel was defiled due to one mans sin.

the morning, by your tribes. And it shall be, the tribe which YAHWEH takes shall draw near by families. And the family which YAHWEH takes shall draw near by households. And the house-hold which YAHWEH takes shall draw near by men.

15 And it shall be, he who is taken with the accursed thing shall be burned with fire, he and all that he has, because he has transgressed the covenant of YAHWEH and because he has committed folly in Israel.

16 And Yahoshua rose early in the morning, and brought Israel near by its tribes. And the tribe of Judah was taken.

17 And he brought the family of Judah near; and he took the family of the Zerahites. And he brought near the family of the Zerahites by men, and Zabdi was taken.

18 And he brought near his household by men, and Achan, the son of Carmi, the son of Zabdi, the son of Zerah, of the tribe of Judah, was taken.

19 And Yahoshua said to Achan, My son, now give glory to YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, and give thanks to Him, and please tell me what you have done. Do not hide it from me.

20 And Achan answered Yahoshua, and said, Truly I have sinned against YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, and this I have done:

21 When I saw among the spoil a goodly robe of Shinar, and two hundred shekels of silver, and a wedge of gold, one of fifty shekels in weight, then I lusted after them, and took them. And behold, they are hidden in the earth, in the middle of my tent, and the silver under it.

22 And Yahoshua sent messengers, and they ran to the tent; and behold, it was hidden in his tent, and the silver under it.

23 And they took them out of the middle of the tent, and brought them to Yahoshua, and to all the sons of Israel, and laid them out before YAHWEH.

24 And Yahoshua, and all Israel with him, took Achan the son of Zerah, and the silver, and the robe, and the wedge of gold, and his sons, and his daughters, and his oxen, and his donkey, and his flock, and his tent, and all that he had. And they made them go up to the valley of Achor.

25 And Yahoshua said, How you have troubled us! YAHWEH shall trouble you today! And all Israel threw stones at him, and they burned them with fire, and they stoned them with stones.

26 And they raised over him a great heap of stones to this day. And YAHWEH turned back from the heat of His anger. On this account the name of that place is The Valley of Achor until this day[1].

Chapter 8

1 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, Do not fear, nor be afraid. Take all the people of war with you, and rise up, go up to Ai. Behold, I have given the king of Ai, and his people, and his city, and his land into your hand.

2 And you shall do to Ai and to its king as you have done to Jericho and its king. Only, its spoil and its cattle you shall take for yourselves. Set yourself an ambush for the city behind it.

3 And Yahoshua rose up, and all the people of war, to go up to Ai. And Yahoshua chose thirty thousand men, mighty warriors and sent them away by night.

4 And he commanded them, saying, See, you will be an ambush against the

[1] Achor means grief, Hos 2:15

city, behind the city. You shall not go
very far off from the city, and all of you
shall be ready.
5 And I and all the people with me
shall draw near to the city. And it shall
be, when they come out to meet us as
at the first, and we have fled before
them,
6 and they will come out after us
until we have drawn them out of the
city. For they will say, They are fleeing
before us, as at the first. And we will
flee from them;
7 then you shall rise from the
ambush and shall possess the city. And
YAHWEH your Elohim shall give it
into your hand.
8 And it shall be when you capture
the city, you shall burn the city with
fire. You shall do according to the
Word of YAHWEH. See, I have
commanded you.
9 And Yahoshua sent them away,
and they went to the ambush, and
stayed between Bethel and Ai, on the
west of Ai. And Yahoshua remained
that night in the midst of the people.
10 And Yahoshua rose early in the
morning and called up the people, and
they went up, he and the elders of
Israel in the sight of the people of Ai.
11 And all the people of war with him
went up and drew near, and came
before the city. And they camped on
the north of Ai, and the valley was
between him and Ai.
12 And he took about five thousand
men and set them as an ambush
between Bethel and Ai, on the west of
the city.
13 And they set the people, all the
camp on the north of the city; and its
rear on the west of the city. And
Yahoshua went into the middle of the
valley on that night.
14 And it happened, when the king
of Ai saw, the men of the city rose
early and hurried to go out to meet
Israel in battle, he and all his people at
the appointed time before the plain.
He did not know that an ambush was
against him behind the city.
15 And Yahoshua and all Israel were
stricken before them, and they fled the
way of the wilderness.
16 And all the people in the city were
called to chase them. And they
pursued Yahoshua, and were drawn
away out of the city.
17 And there was not a man left in Ai
and Bethel who had not gone out after
Israel. And they left the city open, and
chased Israel.
18 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua,
Stretch out the javelin in your hand
toward Ai. For I will give it into your
hand. And Yahoshua stretched out the
javelin in his hand toward the city.
19 And the ambush rose up quickly
out of their place, and they ran as soon
as he had stretched out his hand, and
entered the city, and took it. And they
hastened and burned the city with fire.
20 And the men of Ai looked behind
them, and saw; and, behold! The
smoke of the city had gone up into the
heaven. And there was no power in
them to flee here or there. And the
people who had fled to the wilderness
turned back against the pursuers.
21 And Yahoshua and all Israel saw
that the ambush had captured the city,
and that the smoke of the city had
gone up. And they turned back and
struck the men of Ai.
22 And the others came out from the
city to meet them. And they were in
the midst of Israel, some on this side,
and some on that. And they struck
them until not a survivor was left to
them, not one that escaped.
23 And they caught the king of Ai
and brought him alive to Yahoshua.
24 And it happened, when Israel had
made an end to slaying all the ones
living in Ai in the field, even in the

wilderness where they pursued them
(and they, all of them, fell by the
mouth of the sword until they were
consumed) all Israel turned back to Ai,
and struck it with the mouth of the
sword.
25 And all who fell during that day,
of men and of women, were twelve
thousand, all the men of Ai.
26 And Yahoshua did not draw back
his hand with which he stretched out
the javelin until he had destroyed all
the ones living in Ai.
27 Only, Israel seized for themselves
the livestock, and the plunder of the
city, according to the Word of
YAHWEH which He commanded
Yahoshua.
28 And Yahoshua burned Ai, and
made it a heap forever, a desolation to
this day.
29 And he hanged the king of Ai on
the tree until evening time. And at
sundown Yahoshua commanded, and
they took his dead body down from the
tree[1], and threw it into the opening of
the gate of the city; and raised over it a
great heap of stones until this day.
30 Then Yahoshua built an altar to
YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, in
Mount Ebal,
31 as Moses, the servant of
YAHWEH, commanded the sons of
Israel, as it is written in the book of
the Torah of Moses; an altar of whole
stones, on which had been wielded no
iron. And they offered upon it burnt
offerings to YAHWEH, and offered
peace offerings.
32 And he wrote there on the stones
the copy of the Torah of Moses which
he had written in the presence of the
sons of Israel.
33 And all Israel, and its elders, and
authorities, and its judges were
standing on this side, the alien as well
as the native, and on that of the ark,
before the priests, the Levites, who
bore the ark of the covenant of
YAHWEH, half of them in front of
Mount Gerizim, and half of them in
front of Mount Ebal, as Moses the
servant of YAHWEH had commanded
at the first, that they should bless the
people of Israel.
34 And afterward he read all the
Words of the Torah, the blessing and
the curse, according to all that was
written in the book of the Torah.
35 There was not a word of all that
Moses commanded which Yahoshua
did not read before all the assembly of
Israel, and the women, and the little
ones, and the aliens that walked
among them[2].

Chapter 9

1 And it happened, when all the
kings who were beyond the Jordan in
the hills and in the Lowlands, and in
all the coast of the Great Sea toward
Lebanon, heard of it, the Hittite, and
the Amorite, the Canaanite, the
Perizzite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite,
2 they with one mouth gathered
themselves to fight with Yahoshua and
with Israel.
3 And the ones living in Gibeon
heard what Yahoshua had done to
Jericho and to Ai.
4 And they acted slyly, and they went
and acted like envoys, and took old
sacks for their donkeys, and old wine-
skins, even torn and bound up;
5 and old and patched sandals on
their feet; and old garments on them.
And all their provision of bread was
dry; it was crumbs.

---

[1] Since a biblical day starts and ends at sunset the body had to be removed before the new day would begin (Deut 21:22)

[2] Verses 34-35- Moses wrote the entire Torah, there is no mention of an oral law that came as a tradition of the Rabbis later. Ex 24:4. Deut 31:9, 24

6 And they went to Yahoshua, to the camp at Gilgal. And they said to him and to the men of Israel, We have come from a distant land. And now cut a covenant with us.
7 And the men of Israel said to the Hivites, Perhaps you are living in our midst, and how shall we cut a covenant with you?
8 And they said to Yahoshua, We are your servants. And Yahoshua said to them, Who are you? And from where do you come?
9 And they said to him, Your servants have come from a very distant land, because of the name of YAHWEH your Elohim, for we have heard of His fame, and all that He has done in Egypt.
10 Also what He has done to the two kings of the Amorites beyond the Jordan, to Sihon the king of Heshbon, and to Og the king of Bashan who was in Ashtaroth.
11 And our elders and all the people of our land spoke to us, saying, Take provisions in your hand for the way, and go to meet them. And you shall say to them, We are your servants; and now, cut a covenant with us.
12 We provided ourselves with this hot bread out of our houses on the day we came out to go to you. And now, behold, it is dry and it is crumbs.
13 And these are the wineskins which we filled new; and, behold, they have torn. And these garments of ours, and our sandals, have become old because of the exceeding greatness of the way.
14 And the men took of their provision, and did not ask at the mouth of YAHWEH.[1]
15 And Yahoshua made peace with them, and cut a covenant with them, to keep them alive. And the leaders of the congregation swore to them.
16 And at the end of three days after they had cut a covenant with them. And it happened that they heard that they were their neighbors, and they were living in their midst.
17 And the sons of Israel journeyed and came to their cities on the third day. And their cities were Gibeon, and Chephirah, and Beeroth, and Kirjath-Jearim.
18 And the sons of Israel did not strike them, for the leaders of the congregation swore to them by YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel.[2] And all the congregation murmured against the leaders.
19 And all the leaders said to all the congregation, We have sworn to them by YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel; and now we cannot touch them.
20 We shall do this to them, and shall keep them alive, and wrath shall not be on us because of the oath which we have sworn to them.
21 And the leaders said to them, They shall live and be woodcutters, and drawers of water for all the congregation, as the leaders spoke to them.
22 And Yahoshua called for them; and he spoke to them, saying, Why have you deceived us, saying, We are very far from you, yet you are living in our midst?
23 And now, you are cursed, and none of you shall fail to be slaves, and woodcutters, and drawers of water for the house of my Elohim.
24 And they answered Yahoshua and said, Because it was certainly told to your servants what YAHWEH your Elohim commanded His servant

[1] This was their first mistake as they should have immediately prayed and asked Yahweh what to do.

[2] Once they gave their solemn word they could not rescind even though they were deceived showing the importance of keeping our vows. Num 30:2

Moses, to give you all the land, and to destroy all the ones living in the land before you; and we were greatly afraid for ourselves, because of you. And we did this thing.

25 And now, behold, we are in your hand. Do whatever is good, and as is right in your eyes to do.

26 And he did so to them, and delivered them from the hand of the sons of Israel. And they did not kill them.

27 And on that day Yahoshua made them woodcutters, and drawers of water for the congregation, and for the altar of YAHWEH at the place which He should choose, to this day.

Chapter 10

1 And it happened, when Adoni-Zedek king of Jerusalem heard that Yahoshua had captured Ai, and had destroyed it (as he had done to Jericho and to its king, so he had done to Ai and to her king) and that the ones living in Gibeon had made peace with Israel, and were in their midst,

2 they were greatly afraid because Gibeon was a great city, like one of the royal cities, and because it was greater than Ai, and all its men were mighty.

3 And Adoni-Zedek king of Jerusalem sent to Hoham king of Hebron, and to Piram king of Jarmuth, and to Japhia king of Lachish, and to Debir king of Eglon, saying,

4 Come up to me and help me. And we shall strike Gibeon, for it has made peace with Yahoshua, and with the sons of Israel.

5 And the five kings of the Amorites assembled, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, the king of Eglon, they and all their camps. And they camped against Gibeon, and fought against it.

6 And the men of Gibeon sent to Yahoshua, and to the camp at Gilgal, saying, Do not withdraw your hand from your servants. Come up to us quickly, and save us, and help us, for all the kings of the Amorites living in the hills have gathered against us.

7 And Yahoshua went up from Gilgal, he and all the people of war with him, even all the mighty warriors.

8 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua, Do not be afraid of them, for I have given them into your hand. Not a man of them shall stand before you.

9 And Yahoshua came to them suddenly (he had traveled all night from Gilgal)

10 and YAHWEH troubled them before Israel, and struck them with a great blow at Gibeon, and He pursued by the way of the ascent of Bethhoron, and struck them to Azekah, and to Makkedah.

11 And it happened, as they fled from the face of Israel, they were in the descent of Bethhoron, even YAHWEH cast great hail stones on them out of the heavens, to Azekah; and they died. The many who died by the hail stones were more than the sons of Israel had killed by the sword.

12 Then Yahoshua spoke to YAHWEH in the day when YAHWEH gave the Amorites up before the sons of Israel; and he said, Sun, stand still before the eyes of Israel in Gibeon! And, Moon stand still in the valley of Aijalon! *(Hab 3:11)*

13 And the sun stood still, and the moon stood still, until the nation was avenged on its foes. Is it not written in the Book of the Upright? Yea, the sun stood still in the middle of the heavens, and did not hasten to go down for a full day.

14 And there has not been a day such

as that, before it or after it; for YAHWEH listened to the voice of a man. For YAHWEH fought for Israel.

15 And Yahoshua returned, and all Israel with him, to the camp at Gilgal.

16 And these five kings fled, and were hidden in a cave at Makkedah.[1]

17 And it was told to Yahoshua, saying, the five kings have been found hidden in a cave at Makkedah.

18 And Yahoshua said, Roll great stones to the mouth of the cave, and set men over it to watch them.

19 And you, do not stand still. Pursue your enemies, and you shall strike the hindmost of them. Do not allow them to go into their cities, for YAHWEH your Elohim has given them into your hand.

20 And it happened, when Yahoshua and the sons of Israel had finished destroying them with a very great blow, until they were completely destroyed, and the remnant of them who escaped went into the fortified cities,

21 that all the people returned to the camp in peace, to Yahoshua at Makkedah. Not one sharpened his tongue against the sons of Israel, against any man.

22 And Yahoshua said, Open the mouth of the cave, and bring out to me these five kings from the cave.

23 And they did so, and brought out to him these five kings from the cave, the king of Jerusalem, the king of Hebron, the king of Jarmuth, the king of Lachish, the king of Eglon.

24 And it happened, when they brought out these kings to Yahoshua, Yahoshua called to every man of Israel and said to the commanders of the men of war who had gone with him, Draw near, set your feet on the necks of these kings. And they drew near and set their feet on their necks.

25 And Yahoshua said to them, Do not fear nor be afraid. Be strong and brave, for so YAHWEH shall do to all your enemies with whom you are fighting.

26 And afterward Yahoshua struck them, and executed them, and hung them on five trees. And they were hanging on the trees until the evening.

27 And it happened at the time of the going down of the sun[2], Yahoshua commanded, and they took them down from the trees, and threw them into the cave where they had been hidden, and put great stones on the mouth of the cave until this very day.

28 And that day Yahoshua captured Makkedah. And he struck it by the mouth of the sword, and he destroyed its king, them, and every person in it. He did not leave a survivor. And he did to the king of Makkedah as he did to the king of Jericho.

29 And Yahoshua passed on, and all Israel with him, from Makkedah to Libnah. And he fought with Libnah.

30 And YAHWEH also gave it into the hand of Israel, and its king. And they struck it by the mouth of the sword, and every person in it; he did not leave a survivor in it. And he did to its king as he did to the king of Jericho.

31 And Yahoshua passed on, and all Israel with him, from Libnah to Lachish. And they camped against it, and fought against it.

32 And YAHWEH gave Lachish into the hand of Israel, and he captured it on the second day, and struck it by the mouth of the sword, and every person in it, according to all that he did to Libnah.

33 Then Horam the king of Gezer

[1] A town near Bet Shemesh and Azekah, but the exact location is unknown.

[2] The biblical day starts and ends at sunset (Deut) 21:22)

came up to help Lachish. And
Yahoshua struck him and his people
until there was not left to him a
survivor.
34 And Yahoshua passed on, and all
Israel with him, from Lachish to
Eglon. And they camped against it,
and fought against it,
35 and captured it on that day, and
struck it with the mouth of the sword.
And he destroyed every person in it on
that day, according to all that he did to
Lachish.
36 And Yahoshua went on, and all
Israel with him, from Eglon to
Hebron. And they fought against it,
37 and captured it, and struck it by
the mouth of the sword, and its king,
and all its cities, and every person in
it; he did not leave a survivor,
according to all that he did to Eglon,
and destroyed it and every person in it.
38 And Yahoshua returned, and all
Israel with him, to Debir, and fought
against it.
39 And they captured it and its king,
and all its cities. And they struck them
by the mouth of the sword, and
destroyed every person in it; he did
not leave a survivor. As he did to
Hebron, so he did to Debir, and to its
king; even as he did to Libnah, and to
its king.
40 And Yahoshua struck all the land:
the heights and the Negev, and the
Shefelah, and the slopes, and all their
kings; he did not leave a survivor, but
he destroyed all that breathed, as
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel had
commanded.
41 And Yahoshua struck them from
Kadesh-Barnea, even to Gaza, and all
the land of Goshen, even to Gibeon.
42 And Yahoshua captured all these
kings in their land at one time, for
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel fought
for Israel.
43 And Yahoshua returned, and all
Israel with him to the camp at Gilgal.

Chapter 11

1 And it happened, when Jabin the
king of Hazor heard, he sent to Jobab
the king of Madon, and to the king of
Shimron, and to the king of Achshaph,
2 and to the kings that were on the
north of the heights, and in the plains
south of Chinneroth, and in the low
country, and in the hills of Dor on the
west;
3 to the Canaanite on the east, and
on the west, and the Amorite, and the
Hittite, and the Perizzite, and the
Jebusite in the heights, and the Hivite
below Hermon, in the land of Mizpeh.
4 And they went out, they and all
their camps with them, a people
plentiful as the sand on the seashore
in number, and very many horses and
chariots.
5 And all these kings met together.
And they came and camped together
at the waters of Merom, to fight with
Israel.
6 And YAHWEH said to Yahoshua,
Do not fear before them, for about this
time tomorrow I will give all of them
up slain before Israel. You shall ham-
string their horses, and burn their
chariots with fire.
7 And Yahoshua came, and all the
people of war with him, against them
by the waters of Merom. And they
suddenly fell on them.
8 And YAHWEH gave them into
Israel's hand, and they struck them,
and pursued them to the great Sidon,
and to the burning waters, and to the
valley of Mizpeh eastward. And they
struck them until he did not have a
survivor left to them.
9 And Yahoshua did to them as
YAHWEH said to him. He hamstrung

their horses, and burned their chariots with fire.

10 And Yahoshua returned and captured Hazor at that time. And he struck its king by the sword; for Hazor was formerly head of all these kingdoms.

11 And they struck every person in it by the mouth of the sword. He destroyed them, he did not leave anyone breathing; and he burned Hazor with fire.

12 And Yahoshua captured all the cities of these kings, and all their kings. And he struck them by the mouth of the sword. He destroyed them, as Moses the servant of YAHWEH had commanded.

13 But as for all the cities which stood by their mounds, Israel did not burn them; but Yahoshua only burned Hazor.

14 And the sons of Israel seized for themselves all the plunder of these cities, and the livestock. But they struck every human being by the mouth of the sword, until they had destroyed them; they did not leave anyone breathing.

15 As YAHWEH commanded His servant Moses, so Moses commanded Yahoshua, and so Yahoshua did. He did not turn aside from anything of all that YAHWEH commanded Moses.

16 And Yahoshua took all this land: the heights, and all the Negev, and all the land of Goshen, and the Shefelah, and the Arabah and the mountains of Israel, and its lowlands,

17 from Mount Halak, that goes up to Seir, even to Baal-Gad in the Valley of Lebanon, below Mount Hermon. And he took all their kings, and struck them, and killed them.

18 And Yahoshua made war many days with all those kings.

19 There was not a city that made peace with the sons of Israel except the Hivites, ones living in Gibeon. They took all in battle.

20 For it was of YAHWEH to harden their hearts, so that they should come against Israel in battle, so that they might be destroyed, so that they might have no favor, but that He might destroy them, as YAHWEH commanded Moses.

21 At that time Yahoshua came and cut off the Anakim from the mountains, from Hebron, from Debir, from Anah, and from all the mountains of Judah, and from all the mountains of Israel. Yahoshua completely destroyed them with their cities.

22 There were none of the Anakim left in the land of the sons of Israel; only some remained in Gaza, in Gath, and in Ashdod.

23 And Yahoshua took the whole of the land, according to all that YAHWEH had spoken to Moses. And Yahoshua gave it for Israel according to their divisions, by their tribes. And the land had rest from war.

Chapter 12

1 And these are the kings of the land whom the sons of Israel struck, and they seized their land beyond the Jordan, at the sunrising, from the river Arnon to Mount Hermon, and all the Arabah eastward:

2 Sihon the king of the Amorites who lived in Heshbon, and ruled from Aroer, which is on the bank of the river Arnon, and from its valley floor, and half Gilead, even to the river Jabbok, the border of the sons of Ammon;

3 and from the Arabah to the sea of Chinneroth on the east, and to the sea of the Arabah, even the Salt Sea, eastward, the way to Beth-Jeshimoth;

and on the south under the Slopes of
Pisgah;
4 and the border of Og the king of
Bashan, of the rest of the giants, who
lived at Ashtaroth and at Edrei,
5 and reigned in Mount Hermon and
in Salecah, and in all Bashan, to the
border of the Geshurites and the
Maachathites, and half Gilead, the
border of Sihon the king of Heshbon.
6 Moses the servant of YAHWEH
and the sons of Israel struck them.
And Moses the servant of YAHWEH
gave it for a possession to the
Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the
half tribe of Manasseh.
7 And these are the kings of the land
whom Yahoshua and the sons of Israel
struck beyond the Jordan westward,
from Baal-Gad in the Valley of
Lebanon even to Mount Halak that
goes up to Seir, which Yahoshua gave
to the tribes of Israel for a possession
according to their divisions;
8 in the mountains, and in the
lowlands, and in the Arabah, and in
the slopes, and in the wilderness, and
in the Negev; the Hittites, the
Amorites, and the Canaanites, the
Perizzites, the Hivites, and the
Jebusites:
9 the king of Jericho, one; the king of
Ai, which is beside Bethel, one;
10 the king of Jerusalem, one; the
king of Hebron, one;
11 the king of Jarmuth, one; the king
of Lachish, one;
12 the king of Eglon, one; the king of
Gezer, one;
13 the king of Debir, one; the king of
Geder, one;
14 the king of Hormah, one; the king
of Arad, one;
15 the king of Libnah, one; the king
of Adullam, one;
16 the king of Makkedah, one; the
king of Bethel, one;
17 the king of Tappuah, one; the king
of Hepher, one;
18 the king of Aphek, one; the king
of Sharon, one;
19 the king of Madon, one; the king
of Hazor, one;
20 the king of Shimronmeron, one;
the king of Achshaph, one;
21 the king of Taanach, one; the king
of Megiddo, one;
22 the king of Kedesh, one; the king
of Jokneam in Carmel, one;
23 the king of Dor in the coast of
Dor, one; the king of the nations of
Gilgal, one;
24 the king of Tirzah, one. All the
kings were thirty one.

Chapter 13

1 And Yahoshua was old, going on in
days. And YAHWEH said to him, You
have become aged, you are far along in
days; yet very much land remains to be
possessed.
2 This is the land that still remains:
all the regions of the Philistines, and
all Geshuri,
3 from Shihor which fronts on Egypt,
and to the border of Ekron northward
(it is counted to the Canaanites) five
lords of the Philistines, of Gaza, of
Ashdod, of Ashkelon, of Gath, and of
Ekron; also the Avim.
4 From the south, all the land of the
Canaanites, and Mearah which
belongs to the Sidonians; to Aphek, to
the border of the Amorites;
5 and the land of the Giblites, and all
Lebanon, toward the sunrising, from
Baal-Gad below Mount Hermon to the
entering to Hamath;
6 all the ones living in the hills, from
Lebanon to the burning waters; all the
Sidonians; I will dispossess them
before the sons of Israel: Only, cause it
to fall to Israel for an inheritance, as I
have commanded you.

7 Now, then, divide this land for an inheritance to the nine tribes, and the half tribe of Manasseh.
8 With him the Reubenites, and the Gadites received their inheritance, which Moses gave to them beyond the Jordan eastward, as Moses the servant of YAHWEH has given to them;
9 from Aroer on the lip of the river Arnon, and the city which is in the middle of the valley, and all the plain of Medeba, to Dibon;
10 and all the cities of Sihon the king of the Amorites, who reigned in Heshbon, to the border of the sons of Ammon;
11 and Gilead, and the border of the Geshurites, and of the Maachathite, and all Mount Hermon, and all Bashan to Salcah;
12 all the kingdom of Og in Bashan, who reigned in Ashtaroth and in Edrei; he remained of the remnant of the giants. And Moses struck them and dispossessed them.
13 But the sons of Israel did not dispossess the Geshurites and the Maachathite, but Geshur and Maachath live in the midst of Israel until today.
14 Only, he has not given an inheritance to the tribe of Levi. The fire offerings of YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel are its inheritance, as He has spoken to it.
15 And Moses gave to the tribe of the sons of Reuben, for their families;
16 and their border was from Aroer on the lip of the river Arnon, and the city which is in the middle of the valley, and all the plain by Medeba;
17 Heshbon, and all its cities in the tableland; Dibon, and Bamoth-Baal, and Beth-Baal-Meon;
18 and Jahazah, and Kedemoth, and Mephaath;
19 and Kirjath-Aim, and Sibmah, and Zareth-Shahar in the mountain of the valley;
20 and Beth-Peor, and the Slopes of Pisgah, and Beth-Jeshimoth;
21 and all the cities of the tableland, and all the kingdom of Sihon the king of the Amorites, who reigned in Heshbon, whom Moses struck with the rulers of Midian, Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, chiefs of Sihon, those living in the land.
22 And the sons of Israel killed Balaam the son of Beor, the one divining, with the sword, among their slain.
23 And the border of the sons of Reuben was from the Jordan, and its border. This was the inheritance of the sons of Reuben for their families, the cities and their villages.
24 And Moses gave to the tribe of Gad, to the sons of Gad, for their families:
25 And their border was to Jazer, and all the cities of Gilead, and half of the land of the sons of Ammon, to Aroer, which is before Rabbah;
26 and from Heshbon to Ramath-Mizpeh, and Betonim, and from Mahanaim to the border of Debir;
27 and in the valley, Beth-Aram, and Beth-Nimrah, and Succoth, and Zaphon, the rest of the kingdom of Sihon the king of Heshbon; the Jordan and its border, to the edge of the Sea of Chinnereth, beyond the Jordan, eastward.
28 This is the inheritance of the sons of Gad, for their families, the cities and their villages.
29 And Moses gave inheritance to the half tribe of Manasseh. And it was to the half of the tribe of the sons of Manasseh, for their families:
30 and their border was from Mahanaim, all Bashan, all the kingdom of Og the king of Bashan, and

all the small towns of Jair in Bashan, sixty cities;
31 and the half of Gilead, and Ashtaroth, and Edrei, cities of the kingdom of Og in Bashan, belonged to the sons of Machir, the son of Manasseh, to the half of the sons of Machir for their families.
32 These are they whom Moses caused to inherit in the plains of Moab, beyond the Jordan, opposite Jericho, eastward.
33 But Moses did not give an inheritance to the tribe of Levi. YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel Himself is their inheritance, as He has spoken to them. (Num 8:14, Jos 18:7)

Chapter 14

1 And these are they of the sons of Israel who inherited in the land of Canaan, whom Eleazar the priest and Yahoshua the son of Nun and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the sons of Israel caused to inherit.
2 Their inheritance was by lot, as YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses, for the nine tribes, and the half tribe;
3 for Moses had given the inheritance of two of the tribes and the half tribe, beyond the Jordan; and he did not give any inheritance to the Levites among them.
4 For the sons of Joseph were two tribes, Manasseh and Ephraim. And they did not give a portion to the Levites in the land, except cities to live in, with the open land around them for their livestock and for their substance,
5 as YAHWEH commanded Moses, so the sons of Israel did, and they allotted the land.
6 And the sons of Judah came near to Yahoshua in Gilgal, and Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite said to him, You know the word that YAHWEH spoke to Moses the man of Elohim as to me and as to you in Kadesh-Barnea.
7 I was a son of forty years when Moses the servant of YAHWEH sent me from Kadesh-Barnea to spy out the land. And I brought him back word as it was in my heart.
8 But my brothers who went up with me caused the heart of the people to melt, yet I fully followed after YAHWEH my Elohim.
9 And Moses swore in that day, saying, Surely the land on which your foot has trodden shall be an inheritance for you and for your sons forever, because you have fully followed after YAHWEH my Elohim.
10 And now, behold, YAHWEH has kept me alive, as He said, these forty five years since YAHWEH spoke this word to Moses, when Israel went in the wilderness. And now, behold, today I am a son of eighty five years;
11 yet I am as strong today as in the day Moses sent me. As my strength was then, so is my strength now for war, both to go out and to come in.
12 And now, give to me this mountain, of which YAHWEH spoke in that day, for you heard in that day how the sons of Anak were there, and great walled cities. If YAHWEH shall be with me, then I shall dispossess them, as YAHWEH has spoken.
13 And Yahoshua blessed him, and he gave Hebron to Caleb the son of Jephunneh for an inheritance.
14 Therefore, Hebron has belonged to Caleb the son of Jephunneh, the Kenizzite, for an inheritance to this day, because he fully followed after YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel.
15 And the name of Hebron before was City of Arba; that one was a great man among the Anakim. And the land had rest from war.

Chapter 15

1 And the lot for the tribe of the sons of Judah for their families was to the border of Edom, the wilderness of Zin southward, in the extreme south.

2 And their south border was from the end of the Salt Sea, from the bay that looked southward.

3 And it went out southward to the ascent of Akrabbim, and passed on to Zin, and went up on the south of Kadesh-Barnea, and passed to Hezron, and went up toward Adar, and turned toward Karkaa,

4 and passed on to Azmon, and went out by the torrent of Egypt; and the boundary line was at the sea. This shall be your south border.

5 And the east border was the Salt Sea to the end of the Jordan; and the border on the north side was from the bay of the sea at the end of the Jordan.

6 And the border went up to Beth-Hoglah, and passed on the north of Beth-Arabah; and the border went up to the stone of Bohan, the son of Reuben;

7 And the border went up toward Debir from the valley of Achor, and northward looking toward Gilgal, which is opposite to the ascent of Adummim, which is the south side of the torrent; and the border passed to the waters of En-Shemesh, and its boundary line was at En-Rogel.

8 And the border went up to the valley of the son of Hinnom, to the side of the Jebusite on the south (it is Jerusalem) and the border went up to the top of the mountain which is before the valley of Hinnom westward at the far end of the Valley of the Giants northward.

9 And the border was drawn from the top of the mount to the fountain of the waters of Nephtoah; and it went up to the cities of Mount Ephron; and the border was drawn to Baalah (it is Kirjath-Jearim).

10 And the border turned around from Baalah westward to Mount Seir, and passed toward the side of Mount Jearim on the north (it is Chesalon) and went down to Beth-Shemesh, and passed along by Timnah;

11 and the border went out to the side of Ekron northward; and the border was drawn to Shikkeron, and passed along to Mount Baalah, and went out to Jabneel. And the boundary line was at the sea.

12 And the west border was to the Great Sea, and its coast. This is the border of the sons of Judah all around, for their families.

13 And he gave a portion to Caleb the son of Jephunneh among the sons of Judah, according to the command of YAHWEH to Yahoshua: the City of Arba, the father of Anak; it is Hebron.

14 And Caleb dispossessed from there the three sons of Anak, Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmai, the sons of Anak.

15 And he went up there to the ones living in Debir; and the name of Debir formerly was the City of Sepher.

16 And Caleb said, He who strikes the City of Sepher, and captures it, I shall give my daughter Achsah to him for a wife.

17 And Othniel, the son of Kenaz, the brother of Caleb, captured it. And He gave his daughter Achsah to him for a wife.

18 And it happened, as she came, that she persuaded him to ask from her father a field. And she dismounted from the donkey, and Caleb said to her, What do you desire?

19 And she said, Give a blessing to me. You have given me the land of the south, then you shall give to me springs of water. And he gave to her the upper springs and the lower springs.

20 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the sons of Judah, for their families:
21 And the cities at the furthest border of the tribe of the sons of Judah were to the border of Edom in the south: Kabzeel, and Eder, and Jagur,
22 and Kinah, and Dimonah, and Adadah,
23 and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Ithnan,
24 Ziph, and Telem, and Bealoth,
25 and Hazor, Hadattah, and Kerioth, and Hezron, which is Hazor,
26 Amam, and Shema, and Moladah,
27 and Hazar-Gaddah, and Heshmon, and Beth-Palet,
28 and Hazar-Shual and Beer-Sheba and Bizjothjah,
29 Baalah, and Iim, and Azem,
30 and Eltolad, and Chesil, and Hormah,
31 and Ziklag, and Madmannah, and Sansannah,
32 and Lebaoth, and Shilhim, and Ain, and Rimmon. All the cities are twenty nine and their villages.
33 In the Lowlands were: Eshtaol, and Zoreah, and Ashnah,
34 and Zanoah, and En-Gannim, Tappuah, and Enam,
35 Jarmuth, and Adullam, Socoh, and Azekah,
36 and Sharaim, and Adithaim, and Gederah, and Gederoth-Aim fourteen cities and their villages;
37 Zenan, and Hadashah, and Migdal-Gad,
38 and Dilean, and Mizpeh, and Joktheel,
39 Lachish and Bozkath, and Eglon,
40 and Cabbon, and Lahmam, and Kithlish,
41 and Gederoth, Beth-Dagon, and Naamah, and Makkedah, sixteen cities and their villages;
42 Libnah, and Ether, and Ashan,
43 and Jiphtah, and Ashnah, and Nezib,
44 and Keilah, and Achzib, and Mareshah; nine cities and their villages
45 Ekron with its daughter-villages;
46 from Ekron even to the sea, all that were at hand by Ashdod, and their villages;
47 Ashdod with its daughter-villages; Gaza with its daughter-villages, to the river of Egypt, and the Great Sea, and its coast.
48 And in the hills: Shamir, and Jattir, and Socoh,
49 and Dannah, and Kirjath-Sannah, which is Debir,
50 and Anab, and Eshtemoh, and Anim,
51 and Goshen, and Holon, and Giloh; eleven cities and their villages,
52 Arab and Dumah, and Eshean,
53 and Janum, and Beth-Tappuah, and Aphekah,
54 and Humtah, and the City of Arba, which is Hebron, and Zior; nine cities and their villages,
55 Maon, Carmel and Ziph, and Juttah,
56 and Jezreel, and Jokdeam, and Zanoah,
57 Cain, Gibeah, and Timnah; ten cities and their villages;
58 Halhul, Beth-Zur, and Gedor,
59 and Maarath, and Beth-Anoth, and Eltekon; six cities and their villages;
60 Kirjath-Baal, which is Kirjath-Jearim, and Rabbah; two cities and their villages.
61 In the wilderness, Beth-Arabah, Middin, and Secacah,
62 and Nibshan, and the city of Salt, and En-Gedi; six cities and their villages.
63 As for the Jebusites, the ones living in Jerusalem, the sons of Judah could not drive them out. But the Jebusites dwell with the sons of Judah at Jerusalem to this day.

Chapter 16

1 And the lot of the sons of Joseph went out from the Jordan at Jericho, to the waters of Jericho eastward, to the wilderness which went from Jericho to the hills of Bethel.
2 And it went from Bethel to Luz, and passed on to the border of the Archites, to Ataroth;
3 and went down westward to the border of the Japhletites, to the border of Beth-Horon the lower, and to Gezer, and its boundary line was at the sea.
4 And Manasseh and Ephraim, the sons of Joseph, inherited.
5 And the border of the sons of Ephraim was by their families; the border of their inheritance on the east was Ataroth-Addar to Beth-Horon the upper.
6 And the border went out at the sea to Michmethah on the north; and the border went around eastward to Taanath-Shiloh, and passed by it eastward to Janohah;
7 and went down from Janohah to Ataroth, and to Naarath, and touched on Jericho, and went out at the Jordan.
8 From Tappuah, the border went westward to the river Kanah, and its boundary line was at the sea. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the sons of Ephraim, for their families.
9 And the separate cities of the sons of Ephraim were in the midst of the inheritance of the sons of Manasseh, all the cities and their villages.
10 And they did not expel the Canaanite who lived in Gezer. And the Canaanite lives in the midst of Ephraim to this day, and is serving under tribute.

Chapter 17

1 And the lot came for the tribe of Manasseh, for he was the first-born of Joseph, to Machir the first-born of Manasseh, father of Gilead, for he had been a man of battle, and he had Gilead and Bashan.
2 And there was a lot remaining for the sons of Manasseh, for their families, for the sons of Abiezer, and for the sons of Helek, and for the sons of Asriel, and for the sons of Shechem, and for the sons of Hepher, and for the sons of Shemida; these being the sons of Manasseh the son of Joseph by their families.
3 But Zelophehad the son of Hepher, the son of Gilead, the son of Machir, the son of Manasseh, had no sons, but daughters. And these were the names of his daughters: Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milcah, and Tirzah.
4 And they drew near before Eleazar the priest, and before Yahoshua the son of Nun, and before the rulers, saying, YAHWEH commanded Moses to give to us an inheritance among our brothers; and at the mouth of YAHWEH he gave to them an inheritance among their father's brothers.
5 And ten portions fell to Manasseh, besides that from the land of Gilead and Bashan beyond the Jordan;
6 because the daughters of Manasseh had inherited an inheritance among his sons; and the land of Gilead belonged to the sons of Manasseh who remained.
7 And the border of Manasseh was from Asher to Michmethah, which fronts on Shechem. And the border went up to the right to the ones living in En-Tappuah.
8 The land of Tappuah belonged to Manasseh, but Tappuah on the border

of Manasseh belonged to the sons of Ephraim.

9 And the border went down to the river Kanah, south of the river; these cities of Ephraim were in the midst of the cities of Manasseh, and the border of Manasseh was on the north of the river, and its boundary line was at the sea.

10 Southward, it was Ephraim's. And northward, it was Manasseh's, and the sea was its border. And they met in Asher on the north, and in Issachar on the east.

11 And Manasseh had in Issachar and in Asher, Beth-Shean and its daughter-villages, and Ibleam and its daughter-villages, and the ones living in Dor and its daughter-villages, and the ones living in Endor and its daughter-villages, and the ones living in Taanach and its daughter-villages, and the ones living in Megiddo and its daughter-villages; three regions.

12 But the sons of Manasseh had not been able to dispossess these cities, for the Canaanite determined to live in this land.

13 And it happened, when the sons of Israel became strong, they put the Canaanites to tribute, but did not completely dispossess them.

14 And the sons of Joseph spoke with Yahoshua, saying, Why have you given to me one lot and one portion as an inheritance, since I am a numerous people? For YAHWEH has blessed me until now.

15 And Yahoshua said to them, If you are a numerous people, go up to the forest for yourself, and you shall cut down for yourself there in the land of the Perizzite, and of the giants, if Mount Ephraim is too narrow for you.

16 And the sons of Joseph said, The hills will not be acquired for us. And every Canaanite who lives in the land of the valley has a chariot of iron, those that are of Beth-Shean and its daughter-villages, and of him who is in the valley of Jezreel.

17 And Yahoshua spoke to the house of Joseph, to Ephraim and to Manasseh, saying, You are a numerous people, and have great power; you shall not have one lot,

18 because the hill is yours; because it is a forest, you shall cut it down, and its outer limits shall be yours; for you shall dispossess the Canaanite, even though it has chariots of iron; even though it is strong.

Chapter 18

1 And all the company of the sons of Israel were gathered at Shiloh. And they established the tabernacle of the congregation there. And the land had been subdued before them.

2 And seven tribes were left among the sons of Israel who had not shared their inheritance.

3 And Yahoshua said to the sons of Israel, Until when will you fail to go in to possess the land which He, YAHWEH the Elohim of your fathers, has given to you?

4 Give from among you three men of a tribe, and I shall send them. And they shall go up and down through the land, and map it according to their inheritance; and then come to me.

5 And they shall divide it into seven parts. Judah shall stay within their border on the south, and the house of Joseph shall stay within their border on the north.

6 And you shall map the land in seven parts, and shall bring it to me here. And I shall cast a lot for you here before YAHWEH our Elohim.

7 For there shall be no portion to the Levites among you, for the priesthood of YAHWEH is their inheritance. And Gad, and Reuben, and the half tribe of

Manasseh have received their inheritance beyond the Jordan eastward, which Moses the servant of YAHWEH gave to them.
8 And the men rose up and went. And Yahoshua commanded those who were going to map out the land, saying, Go, and walk up and down through the land, and map it, and return to me. And I will cast a lot for you here before YAHWEH at Shiloh.
9 And the men passed through the land, and mapped it by cities into seven parts, in a book. And they came to Yahoshua, to the camp at Shiloh.
10 And Yahoshua cast lots for them in Shiloh before YAHWEH. And Yahoshua apportioned the land to the sons of Israel there, according to their divisions.
11 And the lot of the tribe of the sons of Benjamin came up, according to their families, and the border of their lot went out between the sons of Judah and the sons of Joseph.
12 And their border was at the north side from the Jordan, and the border went up to the side of Jericho on the north, and went up through the hills westward; and its boundary line was at the wilderness of Beth-Aven;
13 and the border went up from there to Luz, to the side of Luz (it is Bethel) southward, and the border went down to Ataroth-Adar, near the hill that is on the south of the lower Beth-Horon;
14 and the border was drawn and went around to the sea coast southward, from the hill which fronts on Beth-Horon southward; and its boundary line was at the city of Baal; it is Kirjath-Jearim, a city of the sons of Judah; this is the west side.
15 And the south side was from the end of Kirjath-Jearim; and the border went out westward, and went out to the spring of the waters of Nephtoah.
16 And the border went down to the end of the mountain that is before the valley of the son of Hinnom, which is in the Valley of the Giants northward, and went down the valley of Hinnom to the side of the Jebusite on the south, and went down to En-Rogel.
17 And it was drawn from the north and went out to En-Shemesh, and went out toward Geliloth, which is across from the ascent of Adummim, and went down to the stone of Bohan the son of Reuben,
18 and passed on to the side opposite to the Arabah northward, and went down to the Arabah.
19 And the border passed on to the side of Beth-Hoglah northward, and the boundary line was at the north tongue of the Salt Sea, to the extreme south of the Jordan; this was the southern border.
20 And the Jordan borders it on the east side. This was the inheritance of the sons of Benjamin, according to its borders all around, according to their families.
21 And the cities for the tribe of the sons of Benjamin, by their families, were Jericho, Beth-Hoglah, and the valley of Keziz,
22 and Beth-Arabah, and Zemaraim, and Bethel,
23 and Avvites, and Parah, and Ophrah,
24 and Chephar-Haammonai, and Ophni and Gaba; twelve cities and their villages;
25 Gibeon, and Ramah, and Beeroth,
26 and Mizpeh, and Chephirah, and Mozah,
27 and Rekem, and Irpeel, and Taralah,
28 and Zelah, Eleph, and Jebusi, which is Jerusalem, Gibeath, and Kirjath; fourteen villages. This is the inheritance of the sons of Benjamin, by their families.

Chapter 19

1 And the second lot came forth to Simeon, for the tribe of the sons of Simeon according to their families. And their inheritance was inside the inheritance of the sons of Judah.
2 And they had for their inheritance, Beer-Sheba, and Sheba, and Moladah,
3 and Hazar-Shual, and Balah, and Azem,
4 and Eltolad, and Bethul, and Hormah,
5 and Ziklag, and Beth-Marcaboth, and Hazar-Susah,
6 and Beth-Lebaoth, and Sharuhen; thirteen cities and their villages;
7 Ain, Remmon, and Ether, and Ashan; four cities and their villages;
8 and all the villages that were all around these cities to Baalath-Beer, Ramah of the south. This is the inheritance of the tribe of the sons of Simeon according to their families.
9 The inheritance of the sons of Simeon was out of the portion of the sons of Judah. For the part of the sons of Judah was too much for them. Therefore, the sons of Simeon had their inheritance within their inheritance.
10 And the third lot came up for the sons of Zebulun according to their families. And the border of their inheritance was to Sarid.
11 And their border went up toward the sea, and Maralah, and reached to Dabbasheth, and reached to the torrent in front of Jokneam,
12 and turned east from Sarid toward the rising of the sun, to the border of The Flames of Tabor, and goes out to Daberath, and goes up to Japhia.
13 And from there it passes on along on the east to Gittah-Hepher, to Ittah-Kazin, and goes out to Remmon-Methoar to Neah.
14 And the border goes around it on the north side to Hannathon, and its boundaries are in the valley of Jiphthahel,
15 and Kattath, and Nahallal, and Shimron, and Idalah, and Bethlehem; twelve cities and their villages.
16 This is the inheritance of the sons of Zebulun according to their families, these cities and their villages.
17 The fourth lot came out to Issachar, for the sons of Issachar according to their families.
18 And their border was toward Jezreel, and Chesulloth, and Shunem,
19 and Hapharaim, and Shihon, and Anaharath,
20 and Rabbith, and Kishion, and Abez,
21 and Remeth, and En-Gannim, and En-Haddah, and Beth-Pazzez.
22 And the border reaches to Tabor, and Shahazimah, and Beth-Shemesh. And the boundaries of their border were at Jordan; sixteen cities and their villages.
23 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the sons of Issachar according to their families, the cities and their villages.
24 And the fifth lot came out for the tribe of the sons of Asher, according to their families.
25 And their border was Helkath, and Hali, and Beten, and Achshaph,
26 and Alammelech, and Amad, and Misheal, and reaches to Carmel westward, and to Shihor-Libnath.
27 And it turns toward the rising of the sun to Beth-Dagon, and it reaches to Zebulun, and to the valley of Jiphthahel toward the north side of Beth-Emek, and Neiel, and goes out to Cabul on the left hand,
28 and Hebron, and Rehob, and Hammon, and Kanah to great Sidon.

29 And the border turns to Ramah, and to the strong city Tyre. And the border turns to Hosah, and the outer limits of it are at the sea from the line to Achzib,
30 and Ummah, and Aphek, and Rehob; twenty two cities and their villages.
31 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the sons of Asher according to their families, these cities and their villages.
32 The sixth lot came out to the sons of Naphtali, for the sons of Naphtali by their families.
33 And their border was from Heleph, from Allon to Zaanannim, and Adami, Nekeb, and Jabneel, to Lakum. And its boundaries were at Jordan.
34 And the border turns west toward Aznoth-Tabor, and goes out from there to Hukkok, and reached to Zebulun on the south side, and reaches to Asher on the west side, and to Judah on Jordan toward the rising of the sun;
35 and the fortified cities are Ziddim, Zer, and Hammath, Rakkath, and Chinnereth,
36 and Adamah, and Ramah, and Hazor,
37 and Kedesh, and Edrei, and Enhazor,
38 and Iron, and Migdalel, Horem, and Beth-Anath, and Beth-Shemesh; nineteen cities and their villages.
39 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the sons of Naphtali by their families, the cities and their villages.
40 The seventh lot came out for the tribe of the sons of Dan by their families.
41 And the border of their inheritance was Zorah, and Eshtaol, and Irshemesh,
42 and Shaalabbin, and Ajalon, and Jethlah,
43 and Elon, and Timnah, and Ekron,
44 and Eltekeh, and Gibbethon, and Baalath,
45 and Jehud, and Beneberak, and Gath-Rimmon,
46 and Mejarkon, and Rakkon, with the border before Japho.
47 And the border of the sons of Dan came out too little for them. And the sons of Dan went up to fight against Leshem, and took it, and struck it with the mouth of the sword, and possessed it, and lived in it. And they called Leshem Dan, after the name of their father Dan.
48 This is the inheritance of the tribe of the sons of Dan by their families, these cities and their villages.
49 When they had made an end of dividing the land for inheritance by their borders, the sons of Israel gave an inheritance to Yahoshua the son of Nun among them.
50 According to the mouth of YAHWEH, they gave him the city which he asked, Timnath-Serah in Mount Ephraim. And he built the city and lived in it.
51 These are the inheritances which Eleazar the priest, and Yahoshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the sons of Israel divided for an inheritance by lot in Shiloh before YAHWEH, at the door of the tent of meeting. So they finished dividing the land.

Chapter 20

1 And YAHWEH spoke to Yahoshua, saying,
2 Speak to the sons of Israel, saying, appoint cities of refuge for you, as I have spoken to you by the hand of Moses,
3 that the manslayer who in innocence strikes anyone mortally, without knowing, may flee there. And

they shall be your refuge from the avenger of blood.

4 And he shall flee to one of those cities and shall stand at the entrance of the gate of the city, and shall declare his matter in the ears of the elders of that city. And they shall take him into the city to themselves, and shall give him a place, and he shall live with them.

5 And if the avenger of blood pursues him, then they shall not deliver the manslayer into his hand, for he has struck his neighbor without knowing, and did not hate him yesterday and the day before.

6 And he shall live in that city until he stands before the congregation for judgment, until the death of the high priest who is in those days. Then the manslayer shall return and come to his city, and to his house, to the city from where he fled.

7 And they set apart Kadesh in Galilee, in the hills of Naphtali; and Shechem in the hills of Ephraim; and Kirjath-Arba; (it is Hebron) in the hills of Judah.

8 And beyond the Jordan, at Jericho eastward, they gave Bezer in the wilderness, on the tableland out of the tribe of Reuben; and Ramoth in Gilead out of the tribe of Gad; and Golan in Bashan out of the tribe of Manasseh.

9 These were the appointed cities for all the sons of Israel, and for the alien who was living in their midst, that he who had struck anyone mortally without knowing might flee there, and not die by the hand of the avenger of blood, until he stood before the congregation.

Chapter 21

1 And the heads of the fathers of the Levites came near to Eleazar the priest, and to Yahoshua the son of Nun, and to the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the sons of Israel.

2 And they spoke to them in Shiloh, in the land of Canaan, saying, YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses to give cities to us to live in, and their open land for our livestock.

3 And the sons of Israel gave to the Levites out of their inheritance these cities and their open land, at the mouth of YAHWEH:

4 And the lot came out for the families of the Kohathites. And the sons of Aaron the priest, of the Levites, had by lot out of the tribe of Judah, and out of the tribe of Simeon, and out of the tribe of Benjamin, thirteen cities.

5 And the rest of the sons of Kohath had by lot out of the families of the tribe of Ephraim, and out of the tribe of Dan, and out of the half tribe of Manasseh, ten cities.

6 And the sons of Gershon had by lot out of the families of the tribe of Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher, and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and out of the half tribe of Manasseh in Bashan, thirteen cities.

7 The sons of Merari by their families had out of the tribe of Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad, and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve cities.

8 And the sons of Israel gave by lot to the Levites these cities with their open land, as YAHWEH commanded by the hand of Moses.

9 And they gave out of the tribe of the sons of Judah, and out of the tribe of the sons of Simeon, these cities which are called by name,

10 which the sons of Aaron had, being of the families of the Kohathites, who were of the sons of Levi. For theirs was the first lot.

11 And they gave them the City of Arba, the father of Anak (which is

Hebron) in the hills of Judah, with its open lands around it.
12 But the fields of the city, and its villages, they gave to Caleb the son of Jephunneh for his own.
13 So they gave Hebron and its open lands to the sons of Aaron the priest as a city of refuge for the slayer, and Libnah and its open lands,
14 and Jattir and its open lands, and Eshtemoa and its open lands,
15 and Holon and its open lands, and Debir and its open lands,
16 and Ain and its open lands, and Juttah and its open lands, and Beth-Shemesh and its open lands; nine cities out of those two tribes.
17 And out of the tribe of Benjamin, Gibeon and its open lands, Geba and its open lands,
18 Anathoth and its open lands, and Almon and its open lands; four cities.
19 And all the cities of the sons of Aaron the priest were thirteen cities and their open land.
20 And the families of the sons of Kohath, the Levites who were left of the sons of Kohath, even they had the cities of their lot out of the tribe of Ephraim.
21 And they gave them Shechem and its open land in Mount Ephraim as a city of refuge for the manslayer, and Gezer and its open lands,
22 and Kibzaim and its open lands, and Beth-Horon and its open lands; four cities.
23 And out of the tribe of Dan, Eltekeh and its open lands, Gibbethon and its open lands,
24 Aijalon and its open lands, Gath-Rimmon and its open lands; four cities.
25 And out of the half tribe of Manasseh, Taanach and its open lands, and Gathrimmon and its open lands; two cities.
26 All the cities were ten, and their open land, for the families of the sons of Kohath that were left.
27 And to the sons of Gershon, of the families of the Levites from the half tribe of Manasseh they gave Golan in Bashan and its open lands as a city of refuge for the manslayer, and Be-Eshterah and its open lands; two cities.
28 And from the tribe of Issachar they gave Kishon and its open lands, and Daberath and its open lands,
29 Jarmuth and its open lands, En-Gannim and its open lands; four cities.
30 And out of the tribe of Asher, Mishal and its open lands, Abdon and its open lands,
31 Helkath and its open lands, Rehob and its open lands; four cities.
32 And out of the tribe of Naphtali, Kedesh in Galilee and its open lands as a city of refuge for the manslayer, and Hammoth-Dor and its open lands, and Kartan, and its open lands; three cities.
33 All the cities of the Gershonites according to their families were thirteen cities and their open land.
34 And to the families of the sons of Merari, the rest of the Levites, out of the tribe of Zebulun, they gave Jokneam and its open lands, and Kartah and its open lands,
35 Dimnah and its open lands, Nahalal and its open lands; four cities.
36 And out of the tribe of Reuben, Bezer and its open lands, and Jahazah and its open lands,
37 Kedemoth and its open lands, and Mephaath and its open lands; four cities.
38 And out of the tribe of Gad, Ramoth in Gilead and its open lands as a city of refuge for the manslayer, and Mahanaim and its open lands,
39 Heshbon and its open lands, Jazer and its open lands; four cities in all.

40 All the cities for the sons of Merari by their families, those left of the families of the Levites, were by their lot twelve cities.

41 All the cities of the Levites within the possession of the sons of Israel were forty eight cities and their open land.

42 These cities were every one with their open land around them. So it was to all these cities.

43 And YAHWEH gave to Israel all the

land which He swore to give to their fathers. And they possessed it, and lived in it.

44 And YAHWEH gave them rest round about, according to all that He swore to their fathers. And not a man of all their enemies stood before them. YAHWEH delivered all their enemies into their hand.

45 Nor did fail a word from any good word which YAHWEH had spoken to the house of Israel. All came to pass[1].

Chapter 22

1 Then Yahoshua called for the Reubenites, and the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh,

2 and said to them, You have done all that which Moses the servant of YAHWEH commanded you. And you have listened to my voice, to all that I have commanded you.

3 You have not left your brothers these many days until today, and have kept the observance of the command of YAHWEH your Elohim.

4 And now YAHWEH your Elohim has given rest to your brothers, as He spoke to them. And now you turn and go to your tents, to the land of your possession, which Moses the servant of YAHWEH has given to you beyond the Jordan.

5 Only, be very much on guard to do the commandments and the Torah which Moses the servant of YAHWEH commanded you, to love YAHWEH your Elohim, and to walk in all His ways, and to keep His commandments, and to cleave to Him, and to serve Him with all your heart and with all your soul.

6 And Yahoshua blessed them and sent them away. And they went to their tents.

7 And to the half tribe of Manasseh, Moses had given possession in Bashan. And to its other half Yahoshua had given possession with their brothers beyond the Jordan westward. And also when Yahoshua had sent them away to their tents, then he blessed them.

8 And he spoke to them, saying, You are returning to your tents with great treasures, and with very much livestock, with silver, and with gold, and with copper, and with iron, and with much clothing. Divide the spoil of your enemies with your brothers.

9 And the sons of Reuben, and the sons of Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh turned and left the sons of Israel from Shiloh in the land of Canaan, to go to the land of Gilead, to the land of their possession in which they have possession, according to the command of YAHWEH by the hand of Moses.

10 And when they came to the regions of the Jordan in the land of Canaan, then the sons of Reuben, and the sons of Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh built an altar there by the Jordan, an altar of grand appearance.

1 The covenant blessings that Yahweh promised to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob are primarily millennium blessings, but in a physical way these blessings were fulfilled to Israel. The big difference in the millennium is that the people will have eternal life at that time.

11 And the sons of Israel heard it said, Behold, the sons of Reuben, and the sons of Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh have built an altar across from the land of Canaan, in the regions of the Jordan, at the border of the sons of Israel.

12 And the sons of Israel heard, and all the company of the sons of Israel assembled at Shiloh to go up against them to war.

13 And the sons of Israel sent Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest to the sons of Reuben, and to the sons of Gad, and to the half tribe of Manasseh, to the land of Gilead,

14 and ten rulers with him, one ruler each for the house of a father, for all the tribes of Israel, and each of them a head of the house of their fathers, for the thousands of Israel.

15 And they came to the sons of Reuben, and to the sons of Gad, and to the half tribe of Manasseh, to the land of Gilead, and spoke with them, saying,

16 So says all the company of YAHWEH, What is this treachery with which the Elohim of Israel was betrayed, to turn back today from after YAHWEH, in that you built for yourself an altar so that you might rebel today against YAHWEH?

17 Is the iniquity of Peor too little for us, from which we have not been cleansed until this day? Yea, a plague came on the company of YAHWEH;

18 that you turn away today from following after YAHWEH? And it shall be that today you rebel against YAHWEH, and tomorrow He shall be angry with all the company of Israel.

19 And surely, if the land of your possession is unclean, you may cross over to the land of the possession of YAHWEH, there where the tabernacle of YAHWEH dwells, and have possession among us. But do not rebel against YAHWEH, and do not rebel against us, by building for yourselves an altar besides the altar of YAHWEH our Elohim.

20 Did not Achan the son of Zerah commit a sin in the cursed thing, and was there not wrath on all the company of Israel? And he was not the only one to die in his iniquity.

21 And the sons of Reuben, and the sons of Gad, and the half tribe of Manasseh answered and spoke with the heads of the thousands of Israel,

22 YAHWEH is the El of Elohims; YAHWEH is the El of Elohims! He knows, and Israel shall know, if it is in rebellion, and if it is in treachery against YAHWEH, you shall not save us alive today.

23 If we built an altar for ourselves to turn away from following after YAHWEH, or to sacrifice on it burnt offering and food offering, or to offer on it sacrifices of peace, may YAHWEH Himself require it.

24 But surely from anxiety, for a reason, we have done this, saying, In the future your sons shall speak to our sons, saying, What is to you and to YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel?

25 For YAHWEH has put a border between you and us, O sons of Reuben, and sons of Gad; it is the Jordan. You have no portion in YAHWEH! And your sons will cause our sons to fail, not fearing YAHWEH.

26 And we said, Let us now prepare for ourselves, to build an altar, not for burnt offering or for sacrifice,

27 but it shall be a witness between us and you, and between our generations after us, to do the service of YAHWEH before Him with our burnt offerings, and with our sacrifices and with our peace offerings; that your sons may not say to our sons in the

future, You have no portion in YAHWEH.

28 And we said, And it shall be, when they say this to us, and to our generations hereafter, that we shall say, See the pattern of the altar of YAHWEH, which our fathers made, not for burnt offering or for sacrifice, but a testimony it is between us and you.

29 Far be it from us to rebel against YAHWEH, and to turn away today from following after YAHWEH, to build an altar for burnt offering, for food offering, and for sacrifice, apart from the altar of YAHWEH our Elohim, which is before His tabernacle!

30 And Phinehas the priest, and the rulers of the congregation and the heads of the thousands of Israel with him heard the words which the sons of Reuben, and the sons of Gad, and the sons of Manasseh had spoken. And it was good in their eyes.

31 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest said to the sons of Reuben, and to the sons of Gad, and to the sons of Manasseh, Today we have known that YAHWEH is among us, because you have not betrayed this treachery against YAHWEH. Now you have delivered the sons of Israel out of the hand of YAHWEH.

32 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest, and the rulers, returned from the sons of Reuben, and from the sons of Gad out of the land of Gilead to the land of Canaan, to the sons of Israel, and brought word back to them.

33 And the thing was good in the eyes of the sons of Israel, and the sons of Israel blessed Elohim and none said to go up against them to war, to destroy the land which the sons of Reuben and the sons of Gad were living in.

34 And the sons of Reuben, and the sons of Gad proclaimed regarding the altar, that it was a witness between us that YAHWEH is Elohim.

Chapter 23

1 And it happened many days after YAHWEH had given rest to Israel from all their enemies all around, that Yahoshua was old, going on in days.

2 And Yahoshua called for all Israel, for its elders, and for its heads, and for its judges, and for its officers, and said to them, I have become old, I have gone on in days;

3 and you have seen all that YAHWEH your Elohim has done to all these nations because of you, for YAHWEH your Elohim was He who was fighting for you.

4 Behold, I have caused to fall to you these nations that are left to be an inheritance for your tribes, from Jordan, with all the nations that I have cut off, as far as the Great Sea, toward the setting of the sun.

5 And YAHWEH your Elohim, He will thrust them out from before you, and will expel them from before you, and you shall possess their land, as YAHWEH your Elohim has spoken to you.

6 And you shall be very strong to keep and to do all that is written in the book of the Law of Moses, so as not to turn aside from it to the right or to the left;

7 so as not to go in among these nations, these who are left with you; and that you do not give glory to the name of their gods, nor shall you swear, nor shall you serve them, nor shall you bow yourselves to them.

8 But you shall cling to YAHWEH your Elohim, as you have done until today.

9 And YAHWEH has expelled from before you great and mighty nations.

And as for you no one has stood before you until today.
10 One man of you shall pursue a thousand; for YAHWEH your Elohim is He who is fighting for you, as He has spoken to you.
11 And you shall be very watchful for yourselves to love YAHWEH your Elohim.
12 But if you at all turn away and cleave to the remnant of the nations, of those who are left to you, and intermarry with them, and go in to them, and they to you,
13 know certainly that YAHWEH your Elohim shall not continue to expel these nations from before you, and they shall be snares and traps to you, and scourges in your sides, and thorns in your eyes, until you perish from off of this good land which YAHWEH your Elohim has given you[1].
14 And, behold! Today I am going in the way of all the earth, and you know with all your heart and with all your soul that there has not failed one thing of all the good things which YAHWEH your Elohim has spoken concerning you; all of it has come to you; there has not one thing failed of it.
15 And it shall be, as every good thing which YAHWEH your Elohim has spoken to you comes to you, so shall YAHWEH bring on you every evil thing, until He destroys you from off this good land which YAHWEH your Elohim has given to you,
16 when you transgress the covenant of YAHWEH your Elohim which He commanded you, and when you have gone and served other gods, and have bowed yourselves to them, then the anger of YAHWEH shall glow against you; and you shall perish quickly from off the good land which He has given to you[2].

Chapter 24

1 And Yahoshua gathered all the tribes of Israel to Shechem, and called for the elders of Israel, and for its heads, and for its judges, and for its officers. And they placed themselves before Elohim.
2 And Yahoshua said to all the people, So says YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, Your fathers have in the past lived Beyond the River (Terah the father of Abraham and father of Nahor) and they served other gods.
3 And I took your father Abraham from Beyond the River, and caused him to go through all the land of Canaan, and multiplied his seed, and gave Isaac to him.
4 And I gave Jacob and Esau to Isaac. And I gave Mount Seir to Esau, to possess it. And Jacob and his sons went down to Egypt.
5 And I sent Moses and Aaron and plagued Egypt, as I did in its midst. And afterward I brought you out.
6 And I brought your fathers out from Egypt, and you went into the sea, and the Egyptians pursued your fathers with chariots and with horsemen, into the Red Sea.
7 And they cried to YAHWEH, and He set thick darkness between you and the Egyptians, and brought the sea on

---

1 The sanctification or setting apart of the covenant people of Yahweh is a running theme throughout the entire bible. Covenant believers are told to be in the world, but not of the world (Joh 17:11-16, 1 Joh 2:15-17), and it is forbidden in both the 1st and New Covenant to marry unbelievers (2Cor 6:114-18).

2 You cannot separate the land of Israel from the covenant of Yahweh. Many today blindly try to do this through replacement theology, which is nowhere found in scripture.

them, and covered them. And your eyes saw that which I have done in Egypt. And you lived in the wilderness many days.

8 And I brought you into the land of the Amorite who lived beyond the Jordan. And they fought with you, and I gave them into your hand, and you possessed their land. And I destroyed them before you.

9 And Balak the son of Zippor, the king of Moab, rose up and fought against Israel, and sent and called for Balaam the son of Beor to curse you.

10 And I was not willing to listen to Balaam, and he greatly blessed you. And I delivered you out of his hand.

11 And you crossed over the Jordan and came to Jericho. And the masters of Jericho fought against you, the Amorite and the Perizzite, and the Canaanite, and the Hittite, and the Girgashite, the Hivite, and the Jebusite; and I gave them into your hand.

12 And I sent the hornet before you, and it cast them out before you, two kings of the Amorites, not by the sword nor by your bow.

13 And I have given you a land for which you have not labored, and cities which you have not built, and you live in them. You are eating of vineyards and olive-yards which you did not plant.

14 Now, then, fear YAHWEH, and serve Him in sincerity and truth, and turn away from the gods which your fathers served Beyond the River, and in Egypt; and you serve YAHWEH.

15 And if it seems evil in your eyes to serve YAHWEH, choose for yourselves today whom you will serve, whether the gods whom your fathers served Beyond the River, or the gods of the Amorites in whose land you are living. But as for me and my house, we will serve YAHWEH.

16 And the people replied and said, Far be it from us to forsake YAHWEH, to serve other gods.

17 For YAHWEH our Elohim is He who has brought us and our fathers out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slaves, and who has done these great signs before our eyes, and has preserved us in all the way in which we have gone, and among all the people through whom we have passed.

18 And YAHWEH has cast out all the peoples, even the Amorite inhabiting the land before us. We also will serve YAHWEH, for They are a holy Elohim.

19 And Yahoshua said to the people, You cannot serve YAHWEH, for They are a holy Elohim[1]; He is a jealous El. He will not lift up from you your transgressions or your sins.

20 When you forsake YAHWEH, and shall serve strange gods then He will turn away and do evil to you, and consume you, after He has done good to you.

21 And the people said to Yahoshua, No, but we will serve YAHWEH.

22 And Yahoshua said to the people, You are witnesses against yourselves, that you have chosen YAHWEH for yourselves, to serve Him (for they said, We are witnesses).

23 And now turn away from the strange gods among you, and incline your heart to YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel.

24 And the people said to Yahoshua,

---

1 The word Elohim is a plural noun and here the pronoun "*they*" is also plural. Yahweh in scripture is a family name. More than 50 times we see the Father referred to as Yah Yahweh, and His Son is Yahshua Yahweh (Pr 30:4). When a new believer is baptized to join the covenant of Yahweh, he is immersed in the family name of Yahweh.

We will serve YAHWEH our Elohim,
and we will listen to His voice.
25 And Yahoshua cut a covenant
with the people on that day, and laid
on them a law and a statute in
Shechem.
26 And Yahoshua wrote these words
in the book of the Torah of Elohim,
and took a great stone and raised it up
there under the oak by the sanctuary
of YAHWEH.
27 And Yahoshua said to all the
people, Behold, this stone shall be a
witness against us, for it has heard all
the sayings of YAHWEH which He
has spoken with us. And it shall be
against you for a witness, that you not
lie against your Elohim[1].
28 And Yahoshua sent the people
away, each to his inheritance.[2]
29 And it happened after these
things, the servant of YAHWEH,
Yahoshua the son of Nun died, being a
son of a hundred and ten.
30 And they buried him in the
border of his inheritance, in Timnath-
Serah, which is in the hills of Ephraim,
on the north of the Hill of Gaash.
31 And Israel served YAHWEH all
the days of Yahoshua, and all the days
of the elders whose days were
prolonged after Yahoshua, and who
knew all the work of YAHWEH which
He did to Israel.
32 And the bones of Joseph which
the sons of Israel brought up out of
Egypt, they buried in Shechem, in the
portion of the field which Jacob
bought from the sons of Hamor the
father of Shechem, for a hundred
silver pieces. And they were for an
inheritance to the sons of Joseph.
33 And Eleazar the son of Aaron
died, and they buried him in the hill of
Phinehas his son, which was given to
him in the hills of Ephraim.

---

1 Yahoshua 24:14-27 is an extremely important part of scripture and clearly shows the difference between the first covenant, which was cause and effect, and the New Covenant in which Yahweh sent His son to pay the penalty of sin and He remembers those sins no more.
In the first covenant there was forgiveness for sins of ignorance (Lev 4) but the penalty of those sins still remained. Each year on Yom Kippur (kippur means covering, not removal) the sins were placed on the altar and covered over until the next year. In the Torah, forgiveness must be followed by restitution of what was stolen or lost through the sin. This fact is completely lost in the false, easy grace that most of Christianity teaches today.

2 There were 4 sins that brought the death penalty and could not have a sacrifice to cover them. They were murder, blasphemy, idolatry and adultery. Yahshua by magnifying the Torah and showing that sin starts in the mind, He showed that to Yahweh "*anger is murder, and lust is adultery*". By realizing this sobering fact, it clearly shows that none are righteous (Ro 3:10-23) and we all need the blood of Messiah who poured out His blood to establish the New Covenant and pay the penalty of the sins of those who repent and are baptized into the covenant in His name.

Book of Judges

Chapter 1

1 And it was after the death of Yahoshua, the sons of Israel inquired of YAHWEH, saying, Who shall first go up for us against the Canaanites, to fight against them?

2 And YAHWEH said, Judah shall go up. Behold, I have given the land into his hand.

3 And Judah said to his brother Simeon, Go up with me into my lot, and we shall fight against the Canaanites. And I also will go with you into your lot. And Simeon went with him.

4 And Judah went up, and YAHWEH delivered the Canaanites and the Perizzites into their hand. And they struck them in Bezek, ten thousand men.

5 And they found Adoni-Bezek in Bezek, and fought against him, and struck the Canaanites and the Perizzites.

6 And Adoni-Bezek fled, and they pursued him and caught him, and cut off his thumbs and his big toes.

7 And Adoni-Bezek said, Seventy kings with their thumbs and their big toes cut off used to be gathering scraps under my table. As I have done, so Elohim has repaid me. And they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died there.

8 And the sons of Judah fought against Jerusalem, and captured it, and struck it with the mouth of the sword, and set the city on fire.

9 And afterward the sons of Judah went down to fight against the Canaanites who lived in the mountains, and the Negev, and the Shefelah.

10 And Judah went against the Canaanites who lived in Hebron (and the name of Hebron was formerly City of Arba) and they struck Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmai.

11 And from there he went against the ones living in Debir, and the name of Debir formerly was City of Sepher.

12 And Caleb said, He who strikes the City of Sepher and captures it, I shall give my daughter Achsah to him for a wife.

13 And Othniel the son of Kenaz, the brother of Caleb, the younger one, captured it. And he gave his daughter Achsah to him for a wife.

14 And it happened as she came, she persuaded him to ask a field from her father. And she dismounted from the donkey. And Caleb said to her, What do you desire?

15 And she said to him, Give a blessing to me. Since you have given me the land of the Negev, also you shall give springs of water to me. And Caleb gave the upper springs and the lower springs to her.

16 And the sons of the Kenite, the father-in-law of Moses, had gone up out of the city of palms with the sons of Judah to the wilderness of Judah, which is in the south of Arad. And they went and lived with the people.

17 And Judah went with his brother Simeon, and they struck the Canaanites living in Zephath and destroyed it. And the name of the city was called Hormah.

18 And Judah captured Gaza and its border, and Ashkelon and its border, and Ekron and its border.

19 And YAHWEH was with Judah, and he occupied the hills, but did not expel the ones living in the valley, for they had chariots of iron.

20 And they gave Hebron to Caleb, as Moses had said. And He expelled the three sons of Anak from there.

21 And the sons of Benjamin did not expel the Jebusites living in Jerusalem. And the Jebusites live with

the sons of Benjamin in Jerusalem
until this day.
22 And the house of Joseph went up,
they also against Bethel. And
YAHWEH was with them.
23 And the house of Joseph scouted
around Bethel, and the name of the
city formerly was Luz.
24 And those keeping watch saw a
man coming out from the city and said
to him, Let us see the entrance of the
city, and we will deal with you with
mercy.
25 And he showed them the entrance
of the city. And they struck the city
with the mouth of the sword; and they
sent away the man and all his family.
26 And the man went to the land of
the Hittites and built a city, and called
its name Luz; it is its name to this day.
27 And Manasseh had not expelled
Beth-Shean and its daughter-villages,
or Taanach and its daughter-villages,
nor struck the ones living in Dor and
its daughter-villages, nor the ones
living in Ibleam and its daughter-
villages; or the ones living in Megiddo
and its daughter-villages. For the
Canaanites desired to live in that land.
28 But it happened when Israel
became strong, it happened that they
put the Canaanites to tribute, but did
not completely expel them.
29 And Ephraim did not expel the
Canaanites who lived in Gezer, and the
Canaanites lived among them in
Gezer.
30 Zebulun did not expel the
inhabitants of Kitron, and the
inhabitants of Nahalol; but the
Canaanites lived among them, and
they became forced-laborers.
31 And Asher did not expel the ones
living in Accho, and the ones living in
Sidon, and Ahlab, and Achzib, and
Helbah, and Aphik, and Rehob.
32 And the Asherites lived among
the Canaanites, the ones living in the
land, for they did not expel them.
33 Naphtali did not expel the ones
living in Beth-Shemesh, and the ones
living in Beth-Anath, and they lived
among the Canaanites, the ones living
in the land. But the ones living in
Beth-Shemesh and Beth-Anath
became forced-laborers to them.
34 And the Amorites pressed the
sons of Dan into the hills, for they
would not allow them to come down to
the valley.
35 But the Amorites were
determined to live in Mount Heres, in
Aijalon, and in Shaalbim. Yet the hand
of the house of Joseph prevailed, so
that they became forced-laborers.
36 And the border of the Amorites
was from the ascent of Akrabbim,
from the rock and upward.

Chapter 2

1 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
came up from Gilgal to The Place of
Weeping, and said, I caused you to
come up out of Egypt and brought you
into the land which I had sworn to
your fathers, and said, I will not break
My covenant with you forever.
2 And you, you shall cut no covenant
with the ones living in this land. You
shall break down their altars. Yet you
have not listened to My voice. What is
this you have done?
3 And I also have said, I shall not
expel them before you, and they shall
become adversaries to you; and their
gods shall become a snare to you.
4 And it happened when the
Messenger of YAHWEH spoke these
words to all the sons of Israel, the
people lifted up their voice and wept.
5 And they called the name of that
place Bochim *(The place of weeping);*
and sacrificed to YAHWEH there.
6 And Yahoshua sent the people

away, and the sons of Israel each went
to his inheritance, to possess the land.
7 And the people served YAHWEH
all the days of Yahoshua, and all the
days of the elders who prolonged their
days after Yahoshua, who saw all the
great work of YAHWEH which He
had done for Israel.
8 And Yahoshua the son of Nun, the
servant of YAHWEH, died, being a
son of a hundred and ten years.
9 And they buried him in the border
of his inheritance, in Timnath-Heres,
in the hills of Ephraim on the north of
Mount Gaash.
10 And also all that generation was
gathered to their fathers, and another
generation arose after them who had
not known YAHWEH, nor yet the
works which He had done for Israel.
11 And the sons of Israel did evil in
the sight of YAHWEH, and served the
Baals.
12 And they forsook YAHWEH, the
Elohim of their fathers, who brought
them out from the land of Egypt. And
they went after other gods, of the gods
of the peoples who were around them,
and bowed themselves to them, and
angered YAHWEH.
13 Yea, they forsook YAHWEH, and
served Baal and the Ashtoreths.
14 And the anger of YAHWEH
glowed against Israel, and He gave
them into the hand of plunderers; and
they plundered them. And He sold
them into the hand of their enemies all
around, and they were not able to
stand before their enemies any longer.
15 Wherever they went, the hand of
YAHWEH was against them for evil,
as YAHWEH had spoken, and as
YAHWEH had sworn to them. And it
distressed them very much.
16 And YAHWEH raised up judges,
and they saved them from the hand of
their plunderers.
17 But they also did not listen even to
their judges, but went whoring after
other gods, and bowed themselves to
them. They quickly turned aside out of
the way in which their fathers walked
to obey the commands of YAHWEH.
They did not do so.
18 And when YAHWEH raised up
judges to them, then YAHWEH was
with the judge, and rescued them out
of the hand of their enemies all the
days of the judge. For YAHWEH took
pity because of their groaning before
their oppressors, and those that
crushed them.
19 And at the death of the judge, it
happened that they would turn and act
more corruptly than their fathers, to
go after other gods, to serve them, and
to bow themselves to them. And they
did not fall away from their own
practices, and from their stubborn
way.
20 And the anger of YAHWEH
glowed against Israel. And He said,
Because this nation has transgressed
My covenant which I commanded
their fathers, and has not listened to
My voice,
21 I also from now on will not drive
out any from before them of the
nations that Yahoshua left when he
died;
22 so that by them I may test Israel,
whether they are keeping the way of
YAHWEH, to go in it, as their fathers
kept it, or not.
23 And YAHWEH left those nations
without dispossessing them quickly.
And He did not deliver them into the
hand of Yahoshua.

Chapter 3

1 And these are the nations which
YAHWEH left in order to test Israel
by them, all who did not know all the
wars of Canaan;
2 only that the generations of the

sons of Israel might know, to teach them war, only those who did not before know them:
3 five lords of the Philistines, and all the Canaanites, and the Sidonians, and the Hivites that lived in Mount Lebanon from Mount Baal-Hermon to the entering of Hamath.
4 And they existed to test Israel by them, to know whether they would listen to the commands of YAHWEH, which He had commanded their fathers by the hand of Moses.
5 And the sons of Israel lived among the Canaanites, the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites.
6 And they took their daughters to themselves for wives, and gave their daughters to their sons, and they served their gods.
7 And the sons of Israel did that which was evil in the sight of YAHWEH, and forgot YAHWEH their Elohim, and served the Baals and the Asherahs.
8 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed against Israel. And He gave them over into the hand of Chushan-Rishathaim, king of Mesopotamia. And the sons of Israel served Chushan-Rishathaim eight years.
9 And when the sons of Israel cried to YAHWEH, YAHWEH raised up a deliverer to the sons of Israel, Othniel the son of Kenaz, Caleb's younger brother, who saved them.
10 And the Spirit of YAHWEH was put on him, and he judged Israel. And he went out to war, and YAHWEH gave Chushan-Rishathaim the king of Mesopotamia into his hand. And his hand had power over Chushan-Rishathaim.
11 And the land had rest forty years. And Othniel the son of Kenaz died.
12 And the sons of Israel did evil again in the sight of YAHWEH. And YAHWEH made Eglon the king of Moab strong against Israel, because they had done evil in the sight of YAHWEH.
13 And he gathered to him the sons of Ammon and Amalek, and went and struck Israel. And they possessed the city of palm trees.
14 And the sons of Israel served Eglon the king of Moab eighteen years.
15 And the sons of Israel cried to YAHWEH, even YAHWEH raised up a deliverer to them, Ehud the son of Gera, a son of the Benjamite, a man with his right hand impeded. And the sons of Israel sent a present by his hand to Eglon the king of Moab.
16 And Ehud made a sword for himself, and it had two edges, a cubit in length. And he girded it under his long robe, on his right thigh.
17 And he brought the present to Eglon the king of Moab; and Eglon was a very fat man.
18 And it happened, when he had finished offering the present, he sent away the people, the bearers of the present.
19 And he himself turned back from the carved images at Gilgal, and said, I have a secret word for you, O king. And he said, Be silent! And all those standing beside him went out from him.
20 And Ehud came to him. And he was sitting by himself in the cool roof room which was his. And Ehud said, I have a word from Elohim to you. And he rose out of his seat.
21 And Ehud put out his left hand and took the sword from his right thigh, and thrust it into Eglon's belly.
22 And the haft also went in after the blade; and the fat closed on the blade; for he did not draw the sword out of his belly. And it came out behind.
23 Then Ehud went out to the porch,

and shut the doors of the roof room on him, and locked them.

24 And when he had gone out, his servants came. And they looked, and, behold, the doors of the roof room were locked. And they said, Surely he is covering his feet in the cool roof room.

25 And they waited until they were ashamed. And, behold! He did not open the doors of the room. So they took the key and opened them. And, behold, their master had fallen down to the earth dead.

26 And Ehud escaped while they waited. And he had passed by the images, and had slipped away to Seirath.

27 And it happened, when he had come, he blew a horn in the hills of Ephraim. And the sons of Israel came down with him from the hills, and he before them.

28 And he said to them, Follow me, for YAHWEH has delivered your enemies the Moabites into your hand. And they went down after him and took the fords of the Jordan against the Moabites. And they did not allow a man to pass over.

29 And they struck about ten thousand men of Moab at that time, every lusty man, all mighty men. And not a man escaped.

30 So Moab was subdued that day under the hand of Israel. And the land had rest eighty years.

31 And after him was Shamgar the son of Anath, who struck six hundred men of the Philistines with an ox goad. And he also delivered Israel.

Chapter 4

1 And the sons of Israel did evil again in the sight of YAHWEH when Ehud was dead.

2 And YAHWEH sold them into the hand of Jabin the king of Canaan, who ruled in Hazor. And his army commander was Sisera; and he lived in Harosheth of the nations.

3 And the sons of Israel cried to YAHWEH, for he had nine hundred chariots of iron. And he mightily oppressed the sons of Israel twenty years.

4 And Deborah the wife of Lapidoth, a woman prophetess, was judging Israel at that time.

5 And she lived under the palm tree of Deborah, between Ramah and Bethel, in the hills of Ephraim. And the sons of Israel went up to her for judgment.

6 And she sent and called for Barak, the son of Abinoam, out of Kadesh in Naphtali, and said to him, Has not YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel commanded? Go and draw toward Mount Tabor, and take ten thousand men of the sons of Naphtali, and of the sons of Zebulun with you.

7 And I will draw to you at the Kishon River, Sisera, the army commander of Jabin, and his chariots, and his multitude, and shall give him into your hands.

8 And Barak said to her, If you go with me, then I will go. And if you will not go with me, I will not go.

9 And she said, I will certainly go with you; but, surely you shall not get the glory because of the way which you are going, for YAHWEH shall sell Sisera into the hand of a woman. And Deborah rose up and went with Barak to Kedesh.

10 And Barak called Zebulun and Naphtali together to Kedesh. And he

went up with ten thousand men at his feet. And Deborah went up with him.[1]

11 And Heber the Kenite had broken away from the Kenites, he being of the children of Hobab, the father-in-law of Moses. And he pitched his tent by the oak in Zaanaim, near Kedesh.

12 And they told Sisera that Barak the son of Abinoam had gone up to Mount Tabor.

13 And Sisera mustered all his chariots, nine hundred chariots of iron, and all the people with him, from Harosheth of the nations, to the Kishon River.

14 And Deborah said to Barak, Rise up, for this is the day in which YAHWEH has given Sisera into your hand. Has not YAHWEH gone out before you? And Barak went down from Mount Tabor, and ten thousand men after him.

15 And YAHWEH routed Sisera, and all the chariots, and all the army, by the mouth of the sword, before Barak. And Sisera came down from the chariot and fled on his feet.

16 And Barak pursued the chariots and went after the army, to Harosheth of the nations. And all the army of Sisera fell by the mouth of the sword; there was not even one left.

17 And Sisera fled on his feet to the tent of Jael, the wife of Heber the Kenite. For there was peace between Jabin the king of Hazor and the house of Heber the Kenite.

18 And Jael went out to meet Sisera, and said to him, Turn aside, my master; turn aside to me; do not fear. And he turned in to her into the tent; and she covered him with a rug.

19 And he said to her, Please give me a little water to drink, for I am thirsty. And she opened a skin of milk, and gave him drink, and covered him.

20 And he said to her, Stand at the door of the tent, and it shall be if anyone comes in and asks you, and says, Is there a man here? Then you shall say, There is not.

21 And Jael the wife of Heber took a tent peg, and took a hammer in her hand, and went to him secretly. And she drove the peg into his temple, and she beat it into the ground. And he had been fast asleep, and faint; and he died.

22 And, behold, as Barak followed Sisera, Jael came out to meet him, and said to him, Come, and I will show you the man whom you are seeking. And he came in to her, and, behold! Sisera had fallen dead with the peg in his temple.

23 And on that day Elohim humbled Jabin the king of Canaan before the sons of Israel.

24 And the hand of the sons of Israel went on, going on and pressing hard on Jabin the king of Canaan, until they had cut off Jabin the king of Canaan.

Chapter 5

1 And Deborah and Barak, the son of Abinoam, sang on that day, saying:

2 For the absolving of the leadership of Israel; for the volunteering of the people, bless YAHWEH!

3 Listen, O kings; give ear, O princes. I, even I, will sing to YAHWEH; I will sing praise to YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel.

4 O YAHWEH, when You went forth out of Seir, when You marched out of the fields of Edom, the earth trembled, and the heavens dropped. Yea, the clouds dropped water.

5 The mountains quaked before the

[1] According to Yahweh's judicial order, women are not to be in a position of authority over a man and it would have been a shame on Israel that a woman would have been the leader of the victory. (Gen 3:16, 1Tim 2:11-14)

face of YAHWEH, this Sinai quaked
from before YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel.
6 In the days of Shamgar the son of
Anath, in the days of Jael, the
highways ceased, and those going in
the paths traveled in byways.
7 The leaders ceased in Israel; they
ceased until I, Deborah, arose; I arose
as a mother in Israel.
8 They chose new gods; then war
was at the gates! Neither a shield nor a
spear was seen among forty thousand
in Israel.
9 My heart was toward the lawgivers
of Israel, who volunteered among the
people; bless YAHWEH!
10 You that ride on white donkeys,
you that sit on rich carpets, and you
going on the way, sing out!
11 Louder than the voice of the
dividers between the watering places
there, they shall tell of the righteous
acts of YAHWEH, the righteous acts
of His leaders in Israel. Then the
people of YAHWEH went down to the
gates.
12 Awake, awake, Deborah! Awake,
awake, utter a song! Rise, Barak, and
lead your captives captive, son of
Abinoam.
13 Then He caused me to tread on
the remnant of the noble ones of the
people; YAHWEH trod for me among
the warriors.
14 Out of Ephraim they came, those
whose root was against Amalek. After
you, Benjamin, among your peoples;
and out of Machir came down
commanders; and out of Zebulun the
ones that hold the staff of the scribe.
15 And my commanders in Issachar
were with Deborah; as was Issachar,
so was Barak. They were sent into the
valley at his feet. Among the divisions
of Reuben resolves of heart were great!
16 Why did you sit between the
sheepfolds to hear the bleating of
flocks? At the divisions of Reuben
searchings of heart were great!
17 Gilead remained beyond the
Jordan; and why did Dan stay in
ships? Asher sat at the shore by the
water, and remained by his havens.
18 Zebulun, a people who despised
his life, even to death; also Naphtali on
the high places of the field.
19 Kings came; they fought; then the
kings of Canaan fought in Taanach by
the waters of Megiddo; they took no
gain of silver.
20 The stars fought from the
heavens; from their courses they
fought with Sisera.
21 The Kishon torrent swept them
away, the ancient river, the Kishon
torrent. You trod, my soul, in strength.
22 Then did the hooves of horses
beat from the galloping, galloping of
his mighty stallions.
23 Curse Meroz, said the Messenger
of YAHWEH; curse the ones living in
it bitterly, because they did not come
to the help of YAHWEH, to the help
of YAHWEH against the warriors.
24 Most blessed among women is
Jael, the wife of Heber the Kenite. She
is blessed among women in the tent.
25 He asked for water; she gave him
milk; in a noble bowl she brought
curd.
26 She put her hand to the tent peg,
and her right hand to the workmen's
hammer; and she hammered Sisera;
she smashed his head; she struck
through and pierced his temple.
27 Between her feet he bowed; he
fell; he lay down. Between her feet he
bowed; he fell! Where he bowed, there
he fell down ruined.
28 Through the window she looked
out; yea, she cried out, the mother of
Sisera, through the lattice; Why does
his chariot delay to come? Why have
the steps of his chariot tarried?
29 The wise ones of her princesses

answered her; yea, she returned her
words to herself:
30 Do they not find and divide the
plunder? A womb, two wombs to each
man's head; a plunder of dyed
garments to Sisera, a plunder of
embroidered dyed garments, two
embroidered dyed garments for the
necks of the plunderers?
31 So all Your enemies shall perish,
O YAHWEH, and those who love Him
shall be as the sun when it goes forth
in its might. And the land had rest
forty years.

Chapter 6

1 And the sons of Israel did evil again
in the sight of YAHWEH, and
YAHWEH gave them into the hand of
Midian seven years.
2 And the hand of Midian was strong
against Israel. And the sons of Israel
made dens for themselves before the
faces of Midian, in the mountains, and
the caves, and the strongholds.
3 And it happened after Israel had
sown crops, Midian, and Amalek, and
the sons of the east came; and they
came against them,
4 and camped against them, and
destroyed the produce of the land until
you enter Gaza. And they left no food
in Israel, either sheep, or ox, or
donkey.
5 For they came up with their
livestock, and with their tents. They
came in like locusts for number, and
there was no number to them, to their
camels. And they came into the land to
destroy it.
6 And Israel was brought very low
before Midian. And the sons of Israel
cried to YAHWEH.
7 And it happened when the sons of
Israel had cried to YAHWEH about
Midian,
8 YAHWEH sent a man, a prophet,
to the sons of Israel. And he said to
them, So says YAHWEH the Elohim
of Israel, I have brought you up out of
Egypt; and I have brought you out
from a house of slaves.
9 And I have delivered you out of the
hand of the Egyptians, and out of the
hand of all your oppressors; and I have
driven them out before you; and I have
given you their land.
10 And I said to you, I am
YAHWEH your Elohim. You shall not
fear the gods of the Amorite among
whom you are dwelling in their land.
But you have not listened to My voice.
11 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
came and sat under the oak which is in
Ophrah, which belonged to Joash the
Abiezrite. And his son Gideon was
beating out wheat in the winepress, to
hide it from the eyes of Midian.
12 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
appeared to him, and said to him,
YAHWEH is with you, mighty warrior
of valor.
13 And Gideon said to Him, Oh my
master, if YAHWEH is with us, then
why has all this happened to us? And
where are all His wonders which our
fathers recounted to us, saying, Did
not YAHWEH bring us up out of
Egypt? And now YAHWEH has
abandoned us, and has given us into
the hands of Midian.
14 And YAHWEH[1] turned to him
and said, Go in this strength of yours,
and you shall deliver Israel out of the
hand of Midian. Have I not sent you?
15 And he said to Him, Oh
YAHWEH, with what shall I deliver
Israel? Behold, my family is the
weakest in Manasseh, and I the least
in my father's house.
16 And YAHWEH said to him,

---
[1] The Messenger of Yahweh is Yahshua Yahweh, the Son of Yahweh.

Because I am with you, you shall strike
Midian as one *(echad)* man.
17 And he said to Him, Please, if I
have found grace in Your eyes, then
You shall do for me a sign that You are
speaking with me.
18 Please do not move from here
until I come to You and bring my food
offering and lay it before You. And He
said, I will stay until you come back.
19 And Gideon went in and prepared
a kid of the goats, and unleavened
bread of an ephah of flour. He put the
flesh in a basket, and he put the broth
in a pot. And he brought it out to Him,
under the oak, and offered it.
20 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
said to him, Take the flesh and the
unleavened bread and place them on
this rock, and pour out the broth. And
he did so.
21 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
put forth the end of the staff in His
hand and touched the flesh and the
unleavened bread. And the fire rose up
out of the rock and burned up the flesh
and the unleavened bread. And the
Messenger of YAHWEH walked and
disappeared out of his sight.
22 And Gideon saw that He was the
Messenger of YAHWEH. And Gideon
said, Alas, Adonai YAHWEH! Because
I have seen the Messenger of
YAHWEH face to face!
23 And YAHWEH said to him,
Peace to you, fear not. You shall not
die.
24 And Gideon built an altar to
YAHWEH there, and called it Peace of
YAHWEH. It is still in Ophrah of the
Abiezrites until today.
25 And it happened on that night,
YAHWEH said to him, Take your
father's bull, and the second bull of
seven years; and you shall throw down
the altar of Baal which belongs to your
father, and you shall cut down the
pillar beside it.
26 And you shall build an altar to
YAHWEH your Elohim on the top of
this stronghold, in an orderly way, and
shall take the second bull and offer a
burnt offering with the wood of the
pillar which you have cut down.
27 And Gideon took ten men from
his servants and did as YAHWEH had
spoken to him. And it happened, since
he feared his father's house and the
men of the city, to do it by day, that he
did it by night.
28 And the men of the city rose early
in the morning. And, behold, the altar
of Baal had been smashed, and the
Asherah pillar beside it had been cut
down. And the second bull had been
offered on the altar which was built.
29 And they each said to his
neighbor, Who has done this thing?
And they asked and sought. And they
said, Gideon the son of Joash has done
this thing.
30 And the men of the city said to
Joash, Bring out your son, and he shall
die, because he has broken down the
altar of Baal, and because he has cut
down the Asherah pillar which was
beside it.
31 And Joash said to all that stood
against him, You, will you contend for
Baal? Or will you save him? He who
contends for him shall be killed by the
morning. If he is a Elohim, let him
contend for himself, because one has
smashed his altar.
32 And on that day he called him
Jerubbaal, saying, Let Baal contend
against him, because he has smashed
his altar.
33 And all Midian and Amalek, and
the sons of the east, were gathered
together, and crossed over, and
camped in the valley of Jezreel.
34 And the Spirit of YAHWEH
clothed Gideon with Himself, and he
blew with a ram's horn. And the
Abiezrites were called after him.

35 And he sent messengers to all Manasseh, and it also was called after him. And he sent messengers to Asher and Zebulun, and to Naphtali. And they came up to meet them.

36 And Gideon said to Elohim, If You are to deliver Israel by my hand, as You have spoken,

37 behold, I am placing the fleece of wool on the grain floor; if the dew is on the fleece only, and dryness on all the ground, then I will know that You will deliver Israel by my hand, as You have spoken.

38 And it was so. And he rose early on the next day and wrung the fleece, and drained dew out of the fleece, a bowl full of water.

39 And Gideon said to Elohim, Let not Your anger glow against me, and I shall speak only this time. Please let me try only this time with the fleece; please let there be dryness on the fleece alone; and let there be dew on all the ground.

40 And Elohim did so on that night, and there was dryness only on the fleece, and there was dew on all the ground[1].

Chapter 7

1 And Jerubbaal (he is Gideon) rose early, and all the people with him. And they camped by the spring of Harod, and the army of Midian was north of him on Mount Moreh, in the valley.

2 And YAHWEH said to Gideon, The people with you are too many for Me to give Midian into their hands, that Israel not glorify itself against Me, saying, My hand has delivered me.

3 And now then, cry in the ears of the people, saying, Whoever is fearful and trembling, let him return and leave Mount Gilead. And twenty two thousand of the people returned. And ten thousand were left.

4 And YAHWEH said to Gideon, The people are still too many. Bring them down to the water, and I will refine them for you there. And it shall be, he of whom I say to you, this one shall go with you, he shall go with you. And any of whom I shall say to you, This one shall not go with you, he shall not go.

5 And he brought the people down to the water. And YAHWEH said to Gideon, Everyone who laps of the water with his tongue, as a dog laps, you shall set him apart. And everyone who bows on his knees to drink, set apart.

6 And the number of those lapping with their hand to their mouth was three hundred men. And all the rest of the people bowed down on their knees to drink water.

7 And YAHWEH said to Gideon, I will deliver you by the three hundred men who lapped, and shall give Midian into your hand. And all the people shall go, each to his place.

8 And the people took the food in their hand, and their rams' horns; and he sent away every man of Israel, each to his tent. But he kept hold[2] on the three hundred men. And the camp of Midian was below him in the valley.

9 And it happened on that night, YAHWEH said to him, Rise up, go down to the camp, for I have given it into your hand.

10 And if you are afraid to go down, you and your young man Purah go down to the camp.

11 And you shall hear what they say. And afterward your hand shall be made stronger, and you shall go down against the army. And he went down, he and his young man Purah, to the

[1] Vs 38-40- There was nothing wrong with Gideon putting out a fleece to confirm his conviction.

[2] The Hebrew indicates they were kept but didn't willingly volunteer. Jud 19:4

edge of the battle alignment in the camp.

12 And Midian and Amalek, and all the sons of the east, were lying in the valley, as the locusts for multitude. And there was no number of their camels being as the sand on the lip of the sea for multitude.

13 And Gideon came; and, behold, a man was telling a dream to his companion. And he said, Behold, I have dreamed a dream. And, behold, a cake of barley bread was tumbling into the camp of Midian. And it came to the tent and struck it, and it fell, and turned it upside down; and the tent fell down.

14 And his companion answered and said, This is nothing but the sword of Gideon the son of Joash, a man of Israel. Elohim has given Midian and all the army into his hand.

15 And it happened when Gideon heard the telling of the dream, and its interpretation, he worshiped. And he returned to the army of Israel and said, Rise up, for YAHWEH has given the army of Midian into your hand.

16 And he divided the three hundred men into three companies. And he put a ram's horn in the hand of all of them, and empty jars, and torches inside the jars.

17 And he said to them, Look at me, and do this; even behold, I am coming to the edge of the camp. And it shall be, as I do, so you shall do.

18 And I shall blow with a ram's horn, I and all who are with me. And you shall blow with the ram's horns, you also all around the camp, and shall shout, For YAHWEH and for Gideon!

19 And Gideon came, and the hundred men with him, to the edge of the camp at the beginning of the middle watch. And they had newly set the watch. And they blew with the ram's horns, and shattered the jars in their hand.

20 And the three companies blew with their ram's horns, and broke the jars, and held the torches in their left hand; and in their right hand the ram's horns, and they cried out, A sword for YAHWEH and for Gideon!

21 And they each one stood in his place, all around the army. And all the army ran, and they shouted, and they fled.

22 And the three hundred blew the ram's horns, and YAHWEH set a man's sword against his companion even in all the army. And the army fled to Beth-Shittah, at Zererath, to the border of Abel-Meholah, by Tabbath.

23 And the men of Israel were called from Naphtali, and from Asher, and from all Manasseh, and chased Midian.

24 And Gideon had sent messengers to all the hills of Ephraim, saying, Come down to meet Midian, and capture the waters before them as far as Beth-Barah and the Jordan. And every man of Ephraim was called up, and they captured the waters as far as Beth-Barah and the Jordan.

25 And they captured the two rulers of Midian, Oreb and Zeeb. And Oreb was slain at the rock of Oreb; and they killed Zeeb at the winevat of Zeeb. And they pursued to Midian. And they brought the heads of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon beyond the Jordan.

Chapter 8

1 And the men of Ephraim said to him, What is this thing you have done to us, not to call us when you went out to fight against Midian? And they contended with him sharply.

2 And he said to them, What have I done now in comparison to you? Are

not the gleanings of Ephraim better
than the vintage of Abiezer?
3 Elohim has given the rulers of
Midian, Oreb and Zeeb, into your
hand. And what was I able to do like
you? Then their spirit was abated
toward him when he said this word.
4 And Gideon came to the Jordan, he
crossing over, and three hundred who
were with him, being weary, yet
pursuing.
5 And he said to the men of Succoth,
Please give loaves of bread to the
people at my feet, for they are weary;
and I am chasing Zebah and
Zalmunna, the kings of Midian.
6 And the rulers of Succoth said, Is
the hand of Zebah and Zalmunna now
in your hand, that we should give
bread to your army?
7 And Gideon said, Because of this,
when YAHWEH has given Zebah and
Zalmunna into my hand, I shall thresh
your flesh with thorns of the
wilderness and with briers.
8 And he went up from there to
Penuel, and spoke to them in this
same way. And the men of Penuel
answered him as the men of Succoth
had answered.
9 And he also spoke to the men of
Penuel, saying, When I come back in
peace, I will break down this tower.
10 And Zebah and Zalmunna were in
Karkor, and their armies with them,
about fifteen thousand, all who were
left of all the army of the sons of the
east. And those who fell were a
hundred and twenty thousand men
drawing sword.
11 And Gideon went up the way of
those who live in tents, on the east of
Nobah and Jogbehah, and struck the
army; for the army was at ease.
12 And Zebah and Zalmunna fled;
and he chased them and captured the
two kings of Midian, Zebah and
Zalmunna. And he caused all the army
to tremble.
13 And Gideon the son of Joash
returned from the battle, at the ascent
of Mount Heres.
14 And he captured a young man of
the men of Succoth, and questioned
him; and he wrote out to him the
rulers of Succoth, and its elders,
seventy seven men.
15 And he came in to the men of
Succoth, and said, Behold, Zebah and
Zalmunna, about whom you taunted
me, saying, Is the hand of Zebah and
Zalmunna now in your hand that we
should give bread to your weary men?
16 And he took the elders of the city,
and the thorns of the wilderness, and
the briers, and taught the men of
Succoth with them.
17 And he broke down the tower of
Penuel, and killed the men of the city.
18 And he said to Zebah and to
Zalmunna, How were the men whom
you killed in Tabor? And they said, As
you are, so they; each one as a king's
son in appearance.
19 And he said, They were my
brothers, sons of my mother. As
YAHWEH lives, if you had kept them
alive, I would not have killed you.
20 And he said to his first-born,
Jether, Rise up, kill them. But the
young man did not draw his sword, for
he was afraid, for he was still a youth.
21 And Zebah and Zalmunna said,
You rise up and fall on us, for as the
man, so is his might. And Gideon rose
up and killed Zebah and Zalmunna,
and took the moon crescents which
were on the necks of their camels.
22 And the men of Israel said to
Gideon, rule over us, both you and
your son, and your son's son, for you
have delivered us from the hand of
Midian.
23 And Gideon said to them, I shall
not rule over you, nor shall my son

rule over you; YAHWEH shall rule over you[1].

24 And Gideon said to them, Let me ask of you a request, that each man give to me a ring from his plunder; for they had gold rings, because they were Ishmaelites.

25 And they said, We will certainly give. And they spread out a garment and each threw a ring from their plunder there.

26 And the weight of the rings of gold which he asked was a thousand and seven hundred shekels of gold[2], apart from the ornaments, and the pendants, and the purple clothing that was on the kings of Midian; also apart from the necklaces on the necks of their camels.

27 And Gideon made an ephod of it, and put it in his city, even in Ophrah. And all Israel went whoring after it there, and it became a snare to Gideon and to his house.

28 And Midian was subdued before the sons of Israel, and they did not lift up their heads any more. And the land had rest forty years in the days of Gideon.

29 And Jerubbaal the son of Joash departed and lived in his own house.

30 And seventy sons were born to Gideon, coming out of his loins; for he had many wives.

31 And his concubine in Shechem bore a son to him, she also; and he called his name Abimelech.

32 And Gideon the son of Joash died in a good old age, and was buried in the burial place of his father Joash, in Ophrah of the Abiezrites.

33 And it happened, when Gideon was dead, the sons of Israel rebelled and went whoring after the Baals, and appointed Baal-Berith for a Elohim for themselves.

34 And the sons of Israel did not remember YAHWEH their Elohim who had delivered them out of the hand of all their enemies all around;

35 nor did they act with kindness on the house of Jerubbaal, Gideon, according to all the good which he did with Israel.

Chapter 9

1 And Abimelech the son of Jerubbaal went to Shechem, to his mother's brothers, and spoke with them, and to all the family of the house of his mother's father, saying,

2 Please speak in the ears of all the leaders of Shechem, Which is best for you, seventy men ruling over you, all the sons of Jerubbaal, or one man ruling over you? And you should remember that I am your bone and your flesh.

3 And his mother's brothers spoke all these words about him in the ears of all the leaders of Shechem, and their heart inclined after Abimelech. For they said, He is our brother.

4 And they gave to him seventy silverlings out of the house of Baal-Berith. And Abimelech hired worthless and reckless men with them; and they went after him.

5 And he went into his father's house at Ophrah, and killed his brothers, the sons of Jerubbaal, seventy men on one stone. But Jotham, the youngest son of Jerubbaal, was left; for he had hidden.

6 And all the leaders of Shechem were gathered together, and all the house of Millo. And they came and

---

1 This shows that Yahweh's leaders simply administer, but it is Yahweh that rules. So in essence when someone rejects the Elohim given position of a leader of Yahweh they are rejecting Yahweh who is the ruler that placed them (Ex 16:2-8).

2 This is at least 350 ounces, and more if the reference is to the heavier shekel.

caused Abimelech to reign as king at
the oak of the outpost which is in
Shechem.
7 And they told Jotham, and he went
and stood on the top of Mount
Gerizim. And he lifted up his voice and
cried, and said to them, Listen to me,
leaders of Shechem, and Elohim shall
listen to you.
8 Going the trees went forth to
anoint a king over them. And they said
to the olive, Reign over us.
9 And the olive said to them, Should
I cease from my fatness, by which they
honor Elohim and man, and go to hold
sway over the trees?
10 And the trees said to the fig, You
come, reign over us.
11 And the fig said to them, Should I
cease from my sweetness and my good
fruit, and go to hold sway over the
trees?
12 And the trees said to the vine, You
come, reign over us.
13 And the vine said to them, Should
I cease from my new wine, which
rejoices Elohim and men, and go to
hold sway over the trees?
14 And all the trees said to the
bramble bush, You come, reign over
us.
15 And the bramble bush said to the
trees, If you truly anoint me king over
you, come seek refuge in my shade.
And if not, let fire come out of the
bramble bush and burn up the cedars
of Lebanon.
16 And now if you have acted in
truth and integrity when you made
Abimelech king; and if you have done
well with Jerubbaal and his house; and
you have done to him as his hands did,
17 in which my father fought for you,
and cast aside his life, and delivered
you from the hand of Midian;
18 and you have today risen against
my father's house and have killed his
sons, seventy men on one stone, and
have made Abimelech the son of his
slave-girl king over the leaders of
Shechem, because he is your brother,
19 yea, if in truth and in integrity you
have acted toward Jerubbaal and his
house this day, rejoice in Abimelech;
and he shall rejoice, he and you.
20 If not, fire shall come out from
Abimelech and consume the leaders of
Shechem and the house of Millo. And
fire shall come out from the leaders of
Shechem and from the house of Millo
and consume Abimelech.
21 And Jotham hurried and fled, and
went to Beer and lived there, away
from the face of his brother
Abimelech.
22 And Abimelech ruled over Israel
three years.
23 And Elohim sent an evil spirit
between Abimelech and the leaders of
Shechem. And the leaders of Shechem
dealt deceitfully with Abimelech;
24 that the violence against
Jerubbaal's seventy sons, even their
blood, might be put on their brother
Abimelech who killed them, and on
the leaders of Shechem, who made his
hands strong to kill his brothers.
25 And the leaders of Shechem set
men in ambush at the tops of the
mountains; and they robbed all who
passed by them on the highway. And it
was told to Abimelech.
26 And Gaal, the son of Ebed, and
his brothers came. And they passed on
into Shechem. And the leaders of
Shechem trusted in him.
27 And they went out into the fields
and gathered their vineyards, and trod
out, and made a festival, and went into
the house of their god and ate and
drank, and cursed Abimelech.
28 And Gaal, the son of Ebed, said,
Who is Abimelech, and who is
Shechem, that we should serve him? Is
he not the son of Jerubbaal, and Zebul
his commander? Serve the men of

Hamor the father of Shechem! And
why should we serve him?
29 And who will give this people in
my hand? Then I would remove
Abimelech. And he said to Abimelech,
Multiply your army and come out.
30 And Zebul, the leader of the city,
heard the words of Gaal, the son of
Ebed; and his anger glowed.
31 And craftily he sent messengers to
Abimelech, saying, Behold, Gaal, the
son of Ebed, and his brothers have
come to Shechem. And, behold, they
are fortifying the city against you.
32 And now rise up by night, you
and the people with you, and lie in
wait in the field.
33 And it shall be, in the morning,
about the sunrise, you shall rise early
and charge against the city. And,
behold, he and the people with him
will come out to you; and you shall do
to him as you find your hand able to
do.
34 And Abimelech rose up by night,
and all the people with him; and they
lay in wait against Shechem in four
companies.
35 And Gaal, the son of Ebed, went
out and stood at the opening of the
gate of the city. And Abimelech and
the people with him rose up from the
ambush.
36 And Gaal saw the people, and he
said to Zebul, Behold, people are
coming down from the top of the
mountains. And Zebul said to him,
You are seeing the shadow of the
mountains like men.
37 And Gaal spoke again and said,
Behold, people are coming down from
the high part of the land, and one
company is coming by the way of the
Sorcerers' Oak.
38 And Zebul said to him, Now
where is your mouth with which you
said, Who is Abimelech, that we
should serve him? Is this not the
people you despised? Now go out now
and fight against it.
39 And Gaal went out before the
leaders of Shechem and fought against
Abimelech.
40 And Abimelech chased him, and
he fled before him. And many fell
down wounded, to the opening of the
gate.
41 And Abimelech remained in
Arumah. And Zebul threw Gaal and
his brothers out from living in
Shechem.
42 And it happened on the next day,
the people went out in the field and
told Abimelech.
43 And he took the people and
divided them into three companies,
and lay in wait in a field and watched.
And, behold, the people were coming
out from the city. And he rose up
against them and struck them.
44 And Abimelech and the
companies with him rushed forward
and stood in the opening of the gate of
the city. And the two companies
charged against all who were in the
field, and struck them.
45 And Abimelech fought against the
city all that day, and captured the city.
And he killed the people in it; and he
broke down the city and sowed it with
salt.
46 And all the leaders of the tower of
Shechem heard, and went into the
high place of the house of the god
Berith.
47 And it was told to Abimelech that
all the leaders of the tower of Shechem
had gathered.
48 And Abimelech went up to Mount
Zalmon, he and all the people with
him. And Abimelech took the axes in
his hand and cut off a bough of the
trees, and lifted it up, and set it on his
shoulder. And he said to the people
with him, You have seen what I have
done; you hasten and do the same.

49 And all the people also, each man, cut down his bough, and went after Abimelech, and set them at the stronghold, and kindled the stronghold with fire over them. And all the men of the tower of Shechem also died, about a thousand men and women.

50 And Abimelech went to Thebez and camped against Thebez, and captured it.

51 And a strong tower was in the middle of the city. And all the leaders of the city, and all the men and women fled there. And they shut it behind them, and went up on the roof of the tower.

52 And Abimelech came to the tower and fought against it. And he drew near to the door of the tower in order to burn it with fire.

53 And a certain woman threw a piece of a riding millstone[1] on Abimelech's head and crushed his skull.

54 And he quickly called to the young man bearing his weapons, and said to him, Draw your sword and cause me to die, that they not say of me, A woman killed him. And his young man thrust him through, and he died.

55 And when the men of Israel saw that Abimelech was dead, then each one went to his place.

56 And Elohim returned the evil of Abimelech which he did to his father, to kill his seventy brothers.

57 And all the evil of the men of Shechem Elohim turned back on their heads. And the curse of Jotham the son of Jerubbaal came on them.

Chapter 10

1 And after Abimelech, Tola the son of Puah, the son of Dodo, a man of Issachar, rose up to save Israel. And he lived in Shamir, in the hills of Ephraim.

2 And he judged Israel twenty three years. And he died and was buried in Shamir.

3 And after him Jair, a Gileadite, rose up. And he judged Israel twenty two years.

4 And he had thirty sons who rode on thirty donkey colts. And they had thirty cities, which are called The Towns of Jair to this day, which are in the land of Gilead.

5 And Jair died and was buried in Kamon.

6 And the sons of Israel did evil in the sight of YAHWEH again, and served the Baals, and the Ashtoroth, and the gods of Syria, and the gods of Sidon, and the gods of Moab, and the gods of the sons of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines. And they forsook YAHWEH and did not serve Him.

7 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed against Israel. And He sold them into the hands of the Philistines, and into the hand of the sons of Ammon.

8 And they crushed and oppressed the sons of Israel in that year, for eighteen years, all the sons of Israel that were beyond the Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which is in Gilead.

9 And the sons of Ammon crossed over the Jordan to fight against Judah also, and against Benjamin, and against the house of Ephraim. And Israel was greatly distressed.

10 And the sons of Israel cried to YAHWEH, saying, We have sinned against You, even because we have forsaken our Elohim, and have served the Baals.

11 And YAHWEH said to the sons of

[1] A mill stone was about 18 inches in diameter and 3 to 4 inches thick.

Israel, Did I not save you from the Egyptians, and from the Amorites, and from the sons of Ammon, and from the Philistines?
12 And the Sidonians, and Amalek, and Maon have oppressed you, and you cried to Me, and I saved you out of their hand.
13 Yet you have forsaken Me, and served other gods; therefore, I did not save you again.
14 Go and cry to the gods which you have chosen; let them save you in the time of your distress.
15 And the sons of Israel said to YAHWEH, We have sinned. Do to us whatever may be good in Your eyes; only please deliver us this day.
16 And they removed the gods of the alien from among them, and served YAHWEH. And His soul was grieved with the misery of Israel.
17 And the sons of Ammon were called together, and camped in Gilead. And the sons of Israel were gathered, and camped in Mizpeh.
18 And the people said, The chief men of Gilead, each man to his neighbor, Who will be the man who will begin to fight against the sons of Ammon? He shall be head over all the people of Gilead.

Chapter 11

1 And Jephthah the Gileadite was a mighty warrior. And he was the son of a harlot woman; and Gilead fathered Jephthah.
2 And the wife of Gilead bore sons to him. And the sons of the wife grew up, and they threw Jephthah out, and said to him, You shall not inherit in the house of your father, for you are the son of another woman.
3 And Jephthah fled from the face of his brothers, and lived in the land of Tob. And worthless men were gathered to Jephthah, and went out with him.
4 And it happened after some time, the sons of Ammon fought with Israel.
5 And it happened when the sons of Ammon fought with Israel, the elders of Gilead went to bring Jephthah from the land of Tob.
6 And they said to Jephthah, Come, and you shall be our commander, that we may fight against the sons of Ammon.
7 And Jephthah said to the elders of Gilead, Have you not hated me? Yea, you threw me out from my father's house. Why have you come to me when you are in distress?
8 And the elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, For this reason we have come back to you now; and you shall go with us and fight against the sons of Ammon. And you shall be our head, to all the people of Gilead.
9 And Jephthah said to the elders of Gilead, If you take me back to fight against the sons of Ammon, and YAHWEH gives them up before me, shall I be your head?
10 And the elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, YAHWEH shall be witness between us; surely we will do according to your word.
11 And Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people appointed him head over them, and as commander. And Jephthah spoke all his words before YAHWEH in Mizpeh.
12 And Jephthah sent messengers to the king of the sons of Ammon, saying, What have you to do with me, that you have come in to me to fight in my land?
13 And the king of the sons of Ammon said to the messengers of Jephthah, Because Israel took my land when he came up out of Egypt, from Arnon even to the Jabbok, and to the

Jordan. And now, restore them in peace.
14 And Jephthah again sent messengers to the king of the sons of Ammon,
15 and said to him, So says Jephthah, Israel did not take the land of Moab, and the land of the sons of Ammon.
16 For when they came up out of Egypt, Israel went in the wilderness to the Red Sea, and came in at Kadesh.
17 And Israel sent messengers to the king of Edom, saying, Please let me pass on through your land, and the king of Edom did not listen. And Israel sent also to the king of Moab, and he was not willing. And Israel remained in Kadesh.
18 And he went through the wilderness, and went around the land of Edom, and the land of Moab, and came in at the rising of the sun to the land of Moab. And they camped beyond Arnon, and did not come into the border of Moab, for Arnon was the border of Moab.
19 And Israel sent messengers to Sihon, the king of the Amorites the king of Heshbon, and Israel said to him, Please let us pass on through your land, to my place.
20 And Sihon did not trust Israel to pass on through his border. And Sihon gathered all his people and they camped in Jahaz, and fought with Israel.
21 And YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel gave Sihon and all his people into the hand of Israel, and they struck them. And Israel took possession of all the land of the Amorites, the inhabitants of that land.
22 And they took possession of all the border of the Amorites from Arnon and to the Jabbok, and from the wilderness, and to the Jordan.
23 And now, YAHWEH our Elohim has expelled the Amorite from before His people Israel. And would you possess it?
24 Whatever Chemosh your god causes you to possess, do you not possess it? And all that which YAHWEH our Elohim has expelled from before us, we will possess!
25 And now, are you at all any better than Balak the son of Zippor, the king of Moab? And striving, did he strive with Israel? Did he ever fight against them?
26 When Israel lived in Heshbon and its towns, and in Aroer and in its towns, in all the cities by the sides of Arnon three hundred years, then why have you not delivered them in that time?
27 So I have not sinned against you, and you are doing me wrong to fight against me. YAHWEH the Judge shall judge today between the sons of Israel and the sons of Ammon.
28 And the king of the sons of Ammon did not listen to the words of Jephthah which he sent to him.
29 And the Spirit of YAHWEH was on Jephthah. And he passed through Gilead and Manasseh, and passed through Mizpeh of Gilead, and from Mizpeh of Gilead he passed on to the sons of Ammon.
30 And Jephthah vowed a vow to YAHWEH, and said, If You will indeed give the sons of Ammon into my hand,
31 then it shall be that the thing which comes out from the doors of my house to meet me when I return in peace from the sons of Ammon, it shall

belong to YAHWEH; and I will offer it a burnt offering[1].

32 And Jephthah passed over to the sons of Ammon to fight against them. And YAHWEH delivered them into his hand.

33 And he struck them from Aroer until you come to Minnith, even twenty cities, and to the Meadow of the Vineyard, a very great destruction. And the sons of Ammon were humbled before the sons of Israel.

34 And Jephthah came to Mizpeh to his house. And, behold his daughter came out to meet him with timbrels, and with choruses. And she only, she alone; there was no other son or daughter to him.

35 And it happened when he saw her, he tore his garments, and said, Alas, my daughter! You have brought me very low, and you have made me bow. And surely I have opened my mouth to YAHWEH, and I am not able to take it back.

36 And she said to him, My father, you have opened your mouth to YAHWEH. Do to me whatever has gone out of your mouth, since YAHWEH has executed vengeance for you on your enemies, on the sons of Ammon.

37 And she said to her father, Let this thing be done to me. Leave me alone two months, and let me go and descend on the mountains. And I will weep for my virginity, my friends and I.

38 And he said, Go. And he sent her away two months. And she went, she and her friends. And she wept for her virginity on the mountains.

39 And it happened at the end of two months, she returned to her father. And he did to her his vow which he had vowed. And she never knew a man. And it is a fixed custom in Israel,

40 from days to days, the daughters of Israel go to tell again of the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite, four days in a year.[2] (Ezek 16:20-21

Chapter 12

1 And the men of Ephraim were called together, and went northward, and said to Jephthah, Why have you passed over to fight against the sons of Ammon, and you have not called on us to go with you? We will burn your house over you with fire.

2 And Jephthah said to them, I have been a man of war, my people and I, having great strife with the sons of Ammon. And I called you, and you did not save me out of their hands.

3 And seeing that you did not save us, I put my life in my hand and passed over against the Ammonites, and YAHWEH delivered them into my hand. And why have you come up to me today to fight with me?

4 And Jephthah gathered all the men of Gilead, and fought with Ephraim. And the men of Gilead struck Ephraim, because they said, You Gileadites are fugitives from Ephraim, in the midst of Ephraim, in the midst of Manasseh.

5 And Gilead captured the fords of the Jordan before Ephraim. And it happened when the fugitives from Ephraim said, Let me pass over, then the men of Gilead said to him, Are you an Ephraimite? And he said, No.

6 And they said to him, Please say

---

[1] This verse shows two things. First that vows to Yahweh are binding and number two: one should be very careful when making a vow as Yahweh expects us to keep our vows that we make (Eccl 5:1-6). This vow was extremely costly and was paid with the life of his daughter. Human sacrifice was common during these times. Jud 10:6

[2] Ezek 16:20-21, Jer 7:30-32

Shibboleth[1]. And he said, Sibboleth, and they could not frame to speak so. And they would seize him and kill him at the fords of the Jordan. And at that time forty two thousand of Ephraim fell.

7 And Jephthah judged Israel six years. And Jephthah the Gileadite died, and was buried in the cities of Gilead.

8 And after him Ibzan of Bethlehem judged Israel.

9 And he had thirty sons. And he sent thirty daughters abroad, and he brought thirty daughters in from abroad for his sons. And he judged Israel seven years.

10 And Ibzan died, and was buried at Bethlehem.

11 And after him Elon the Zebulunite judged Israel. And he judged Israel ten years.

12 And Elon the Zebulunite died, and was buried in Aijalon, in the land of Zebulun.

13 And after him Abdon the son of Hillel, the Pirathonite, judged Israel.

14 And he had forty sons, and thirty grandsons, who rode on seventy he-donkeys; and he judged Israel eight years.

15 And Abdon the son of Hillel of Pirathon died, and was buried in Pirathon, in the land of Ephraim, in the hills of the Amalekites.

Chapter 13

1 And the sons of Israel did evil again in the sight of YAHWEH, and YAHWEH gave them into the hands of the Philistines forty years.

2 And there was a certain man of Zorah, of the family of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. And his wife was barren, and had not borne.

3 And the Messenger of YAHWEH appeared to the woman, and said to her, Behold now, you are barren and have not borne. But you shall conceive and bear a son.

4 And now take heed, and please do not drink wine or fermented drink; and do not eat any unclean thing.

5 For, behold, you are pregnant and bearing a son. And a razor shall not go on his head, for the boy shall be a Nazarite to Elohim from the womb. And he shall begin to save Israel out of the hand of the Philistines.

6 And the woman came and spoke to her husband, saying, A Man of Elohim has come to me, and His appearance was like the appearance of the Messenger of Elohim, very terrifying. And I did not ask Him where He was from, and He did not tell me His name.

7 And He said to me, Behold, you are pregnant and will bear a son. And now do not drink wine or fermented drink, and do not eat any unclean thing, for the boy shall be a Nazarite to Elohim from the womb, until the day of his death.

8 Then Manoah prayed to YAHWEH, and said, O YAHWEH, the Man of Elohim whom You sent, please let Him come again to us and direct us what we shall do to the boy being born.

9 And Elohim listened to the voice of Manoah, and the Messenger of Elohim came again to the woman. And she was sitting in a field; and her husband Manoah was not with her.

10 And the woman hurried and ran, and told her husband, and said to him, Behold, He has appeared to me, the Man who came to me that day.

11 And Manoah rose up and went after his wife, and came to the Man. And he said to Him, Are You the Man

[1] The Ephraimites had a special accent that could not pronounce this word.

who spoke to the woman? And He
said, **I Am**.
12 And Manoah said, Then let Your
words come about. What shall be the
manner of life of the youth, and his
undertaking?
13 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
said to Manoah, Let her take heed of
all that I said to the woman;
14 she shall not eat of anything that
came forth from the grapevine; and
she shall not drink wine or fermented
drink; and she shall not eat any
unclean thing. She shall be careful of
all that I commanded her.
15 And Manoah said to the
Messenger of YAHWEH, Please let us
keep You, and prepare before You a
kid of the goats.
16 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
said to Manoah, If you detain Me, I
will not eat of your bread. And if you
prepare a burnt offering, you shall
offer it to YAHWEH. For Manoah did
not know that He was the Messenger
of YAHWEH.
17 And Manoah said to the
Messenger of YAHWEH, What is
Your name? So when Your words
come about, then we shall honor You.
18 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
said to him, Why do you ask this about
My name? Yea, it is Wonderful[1].
19 And Manoah took the kid of the
goats, and the food offering, and
offered on the rock to YAHWEH. And
He did wonderfully, and Manoah and
his wife were watching.
20 And it happened as the flame
from off the altar was going up to the
heavens, that the Messenger of
YAHWEH went up in the flame of the
altar. And Manoah and his wife were
watching. And they fell on their faces
to the ground.
21 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
did not appear any more to Manoah,
or to his wife. Then Manoah knew that
He was the Messenger of YAHWEH.
22 And Manoah said to his wife,
surely we shall die, because we have
seen Elohim[2].
23 And his wife said to him, If
YAHWEH desired to put us to death,
He would not have received a burnt
offering and a food offering from our
hands, nor made us see all these
things; nor would He now have caused
us to hear things like these.
24 And the woman bore a son, and
called his name Samson. And the
youth grew, and YAHWEH blessed
him.
25 And the Spirit of YAHWEH
began to move him in the camp of Dan
between Zorah and Eshtaol.

Chapter 14

1 And Samson went down to
Timnath and saw a woman in
Timnath, of the daughters of the
Philistines.
2 And he came up and told his father
and mother, and said, I have seen a
woman in Timnath, of the daughters
of the Philistines. And now get her for
me for a wife.
3 And his father and his mother said
to him, Is there not a woman among
the daughters of your brothers, and
among all my people, that you must go
to take a woman from the
uncircumcised Philistines? And

[1] The Hebrew word used here "*pelay*" is the same word used in Is 9:6 in giving the names of the Messiah of Israel. Clearly, the Messenger of Yahweh is the being later to become Yahshua, the Son of Yahweh. The Messenger also appeared as a man, was called Elohim and ascended up to heaven.

[2] The Messenger of Yahweh, who is defined as the being who later became Yahshua, the Son of Yahweh is also Elohim and clearly preexisted before the virgin birth to Mariam in Mathew chapter 1.

Samson said to his father, Get her for
me, for she is pleasing in my eyes.
4 And his father and his mother did
not know that it was from YAHWEH,
that He was seeking an occasion
against the Philistines. For at that time
the Philistines were ruling over Israel.
5 And Samson and his father and his
mother went down to Timnath. And
they came to the vineyards of
Timnath. And, behold, a young lion
roaring to meet him.
6 And the Spirit of YAHWEH came
mightily on him. And he tore it as the
cleaving of a kid. And there was
nothing in his hand; and he did not
tell his father and his mother what he
had done.
7 And he went down and talked with
the woman. And she was pleasing in
the eyes of Samson.
8 And some days later he returned to
take her, and turned aside to see the
remains of the lion. And, behold, a
bee-swarm was in the carcass of the
lion, and honey.
9 And he took it out on his hands,
and went on, eating and walking. And
he went to his father and to his
mother, and gave some to them. And
they ate, but he did not tell them that
he took the honey out of the body of
the lion.
10 And his father went down to the
woman, and Samson made a feast
there, for so the young men usually
did.
11 And it happened when they saw
him, they took thirty companions, and
they were with him.
12 And Samson said to them, Please
let me riddle a riddle to you. If
declaring you declare it to me in the
seven days of the feast, and find it out,
then I shall give you thirty linen
garments and thirty changes of
clothing.
13 And if you are not able to tell me,
then you shall give me thirty linen
garments and thirty changes of
clothing. And they said to him, Riddle
your riddle, and we shall hear it.
14 And he said to them, Out of the
eater came forth food, and out of the
strong came forth sweetness. And they
were not able to declare the riddle in
three days.
15 And it happened on the seventh
day, they said to Samson's wife, Entice
your husband, that he may declare to
us the riddle, lest we burn you and
your father's house with fire. Have you
called for us to make us poor? Is it not
so?
16 And Samson's wife wept before
him, and said, You only hate me, and
do not love me. You have riddled the
riddle to the sons of my people, and
you have not declared it to me. And he
said to her, Behold, I have not
declared it to my father and to my
mother, and shall I declare it to you?
17 And she wept before him the
seven days on which they feasted. And
it was on the seventh day, he told her,
for she distressed him. And she told
the riddle to the sons of her people.
18 And the men of the city said to
him on the seventh day, before the sun
went in, What is sweeter than honey?
And what is stronger than a lion? And
he said to them, Unless you had
plowed with my heifer, you would not
have found out my riddle.
19 And the Spirit of YAHWEH came
upon him. And he went down to
Ashkelon and struck thirty men of
them, and took their plunder. And he
gave the changes to those who told the
riddle; and his anger glowed. And he
went up to his father's house.
20 And Samson's wife became his
companion's, who had been his flock
watcher.

Chapter 15

1 And it happened afterward, in the days of wheat harvest, that Samson visited his wife with a kid of the goats. And he said, I will go in to my wife, to the inner room. And her father would not allow him to go in.

2 And her father said, I certainly said that hating you would hate her, and I gave her to your companion. Is not her sister, the young one, better than she? Please let her belong to you, instead of her.

3 And Samson said to them, This time I will be blameless regarding the Philistines, though I am doing evil with them.

4 And Samson went and caught three hundred foxes, and took torches, and turned tail to tail, and put a torch between the two tails, in the middle.

5 And he kindled fire on the torches, and sent them out into the grain-stalks of the Philistines, and burned from the stacks and the grain-stalks, and to the vineyard and the olive grove.

6 And the Philistines said, Who has done this? And they said, Samson, the son-in-law of the Timnite, because he took away his wife and gave her to his companion. And the Philistines went and burned her and her father with fire.

7 And Samson said to them, Though you do this, yet I shall be avenged on you; and afterwards I will stop.

8 And he struck them hip on thigh, a great slaughter, and went down and lived in the cleft of the rock Etam.

9 And the Philistines went up and pitched in Judah, and were spread out in Lehi.

10 And the men of Judah said, Why have you come up against us? And they said, We have come up to bind Samson, to do to him as he has done to us.

11 And three thousand men of Judah went down to the cleft of the rock Etam, and said to Samson, Do you not know that the Philistines are rulers over us? And what is this that you have done to us? And he said to them, As they did to me, so I did to them.

12 And they said to him, We have come down to bind you, to give you into the hands of the Philistines. And Samson said to them, Swear to me that you will not fall on me yourselves.

13 And they spoke to him, saying, No, but we will certainly bind you, and will give you into their hand. But we certainly will not cause you to die. And they bound him with two thick cords, new ones, and brought him up from the rock.

14 He came to Lehi, and the Philistines shouted to meet him, And the Spirit of YAHWEH came upon him, and the thick cords which were on his arms were as flax which they burn with fire. And his bonds melted from his hands.

15 And he found a fresh jawbone of a donkey, and put out his hand and took it. And he struck a thousand men with it.

16 And Samson said, With the jawbone of a donkey, a heap, two heaps, with the jawbone of a donkey I have killed a thousand men.

17 And it happened when he finished speaking, he threw the jawbone out of his hand. And he called that place Ramath-Lehi[1].

18 And he was exceedingly thirsty, and called to YAHWEH and said, Surely You have given this great deliverance by the hand of Your servant. And now I am dying with thirst, and will fall into the hand of the uncircumcised.

19 And Elohim broke open the hollow place which is in Lehi, and

[1] Ramath- Lehi means jawbone height.

water came out of it. And he drank, and his spirit returned, and he revived. Therefore its name is called the Fountain of the calling One, which is in Lehi to this day.

20 And he judged Israel twenty years in the days of the Philistines.

Chapter 16

1 And Samson went to Gaza, and saw a woman there, a harlot, and went in to her.

2 The Gazites were told, saying, Samson has come here. And they encircled and set a trap for him all the night at the gate of the city, and kept quiet all night, saying, Until the light of the morning, then we will kill him.

3 And Samson lay down until the middle of the night, and rose up in the middle of the night. And he took hold on the leaves of the gate of the city, and on the two side posts, and plucked them up with the bar, and put them on his shoulders and took them up to the top of the mountain that is before Hebron.

4 And it happened afterward that he loved a woman in the valley of Sorek, and her name was Delilah.

5 And the Philistine rulers came to her and said to her, Entice him, and see in what lies his great strength, and by what we may prevail against him, so that we may bind him, to afflict him. And we will surely each give to you eleven hundred pieces of silver.

6 And Delilah said to Samson, Now tell me in what your great strength lies, and with what you may be bound in order to afflict you.

7 And Samson said to her, If they bind me with seven green bowstrings which have not been dried, then I shall be weak and shall be as any man.

8 And Philistine rulers brought to her seven fresh bowstrings which had not been dried, and she bound him with them.

9 And the ambush was sitting for her in an inner room. And she said to him, The Philistines are upon you, Samson! And he snapped the bowstrings like a thread of tow when it smells fire. And his strength was not known.

10 And Delilah said to Samson, Behold, you have trifled with me, and have told me lies. Now, please tell me with what you may be bound.

11 And he said to her, If binding they bind me with new ropes, by which no work has been done, then I shall be weak and shall be as any man.

12 And Delilah took new ropes and bound him with them, and said to him, Samson, the Philistines are upon you! And the ambush was sitting in the inner room. And he tore them off his arms like thread.

13 And Delilah said to Samson, Until now you have trifled with me, and have told me lies. Tell me with what you may be bound. And he said to her, If you weave the seven braids of my head with a web.

14 And she fastened it with a pin, and said to him, Samson, the Philistines are upon you! And he awoke out of his sleep and pulled out the pin, the hand-loom, and the web.

15 And she said to him, How can you say, I love you, and your heart is not with me. These three times you have trifled with me, and have not told me where your great strength lies.

16 And it happened, because she distressed him with her words all the days, and urged him; and his soul was grieved to death,

17 that he told her all his heart, and said to her, No razor has come on my head, for I am a Nazarite to Elohim from my mother's womb. If I were shaved, my strength would go away

from me, and I would be weak, and be like any one of men.

18 And Delilah saw that he had told her all his heart. And she sent and called for the Philistine rulers, saying, Come, for this time he has told me all his heart. And the Philistine rulers came up to her, and brought the silver in their hand.

19 And she made him sleep on her knees, and called for a man, and had him shave seven braids of his head, and began to afflict him. And his strength departed from him.

20 And she said, Samson, the Philistines are upon you! And He awakened from his sleep, and said, I will go out and shake myself free as time after time. But he did not know that YAHWEH had departed from him.

21 And the Philistines seized him, and bored out his eyes, and brought him down to Gaza. And they bound him with bands of copper. And he was grinding in the house of prisoners.

22 But the hair of his head began to grow, for he had been shaved.

23 And the Philistine rulers gathered to offer a great sacrifice to their god Dagon, and to exult. And they said, Our god has given our enemy Samson into our hand.

24 And the people saw him, and praised their god. For they said, Our god has delivered our enemy into our hand, even the devastator of our land, who multiplied our fatally wounded.

25 And it happened when their heart felt good, they said, Call for Samson, and he shall entertain us. And they called for Samson from the prison house. And he entertained them. And they made him stand between the pillars.

26 And Samson said to the young man grasping his hand, Let me alone, and let me feel the pillars on which the house rests, that I may lean on them.

27 And the house was full of men and women, and all the Philistine rulers were there. And about three thousand men and women were on the roof watching Samson entertaining.

28 And Samson called to YAHWEH, and said, O Adonai YAHWEH, remember me, I pray, and please make me strong only this time, O Elohim. And I shall be avenged with one vengeance on the Philistines, because of my two eyes.

29 And Samson grasped the two middle pillars on which the house rested, and on which it was supported; one with his right hand, and one with his left.

30 And Samson said, Let my soul die with the Philistines! And he bowed mightily, and the house fell on the rulers, and on all the people who were in it. And the dead that he killed in his death were more than those he killed in his life.

31 And his brothers and all his father's house came down and lifted him up and brought him up. And they buried him between Zorah and Eshtaol, in the burying place of his father Manoah. And he judged Israel twenty years.

Chapter 17

1 And there was a man of the hills of Ephraim, and his name was Micah.

2 And he said to his mother, The eleven hundred pieces of silver[1] which were taken from you, and you uttered a curse, even also speaking in my ear; behold, the silver is with me. I have taken it. And his mother said, Blessed be my son by YAHWEH.

3 And he gave back the eleven hundred silver pieces to his mother.

1 Jud 16:5

And his mother said, I have wholly consecrated the silver to YAHWEH from my hand for my son, to make a graven image and a molten image. And now, I am returning it to you.

4 And he returned the silver to his mother. And his mother took two hundred silver pieces and gave them to a refiner. And he made it a graven image, and a molten image. And it was in Micah's house.

5 And the man Micah had a house of gods. And he made an ephod, and household idols, and consecrated one of his sons. And he was a priest for him.

6 And in those days there was no king in Israel; each man did what was right in his own eyes. *(Jud 21:25)*

7 And there was a young man of Bethlehem in Judah, of the family of Judah; and he was a Levite. And he resided there.

8 And the man went out of the city, out of Bethlehem-Judah, to live where he might find a place. And he came to the hills of Ephraim, to the house of Micah, to work his way.

9 And Micah said to him, From where do you come? And he said to him, I am a Levite of Bethlehem-Judah, and I am going to live where I may find a place.

10 And Micah said to him, Live with me, and be a father and a priest to me. I will give you ten silver pieces for the days, and an order of garments, and your upkeep. And the Levite went in.[1]

11 And the Levite was willing to live with the man, and the young man was to him as one of his sons.

12 And Micah filled the hand of the Levite and the young man was a priest to him; and he was in Micah's house.

13 And Micah said, Now I know that YAHWEH will do me good, for the Levite is a priest to me.

[1] The Levite was a hireling.

Chapter 18

1 In those days there was no king in Israel. And in those days the tribe of the Danites was seeking an inheritance for itself to inhabit. For to that day it had not fallen to them by inheritance among the tribes of Israel.

2 And the sons of Dan sent out of their family five men from their whole number, men, sons of valor, from Zorah and from Eshtaol, to spy out the land, and to search it. And they said to them, Go, search the land. And they came to the hills of Ephraim, to Micah's house, and lodged there.

3 They were near the household of Micah, and they recognized the young man's voice, the Levite. And they turned in there, and said to him, Who has brought you here? And what are you doing in this place? And what have you here?

4 And he said to them, This and this Micah has done to me. And he hired me, and I am a priest to him.

5 And they said to him, Please ask of Elohim and we will know whether our way in which we are going will be prosperous.

6 And the priest said to them, Go in peace. Your way in which you go is before YAHWEH.

7 And the five men departed, and came to Laish. And they saw the people living securely in its midst, according to the custom of the Sidonians, quiet and secure. And there were none to put them to shame in a thing, nor possessing authority. And they were far away from the Sidonians, and they had no word with any men.

8 And they came to their brothers at Zorah and Eshtaol. And their brothers said to them, What did you do?

9 And they said, Rise up, and we shall go against them, for we have seen

the land, and, behold, it is very good.
And would you be silent? Do not
hesitate to go to enter in to possess the
land.
10 When you go you shall come to a
secure people, and the land is large on
both hands; for Elohim has given it
into your hand, a place in which there
is no lack of anything which is in the
land.
11 And six hundred men of the
family of the Danites from Zorah and
from Eshtaol girded themselves with
weapons of war.
12 And they went up and camped in
Kirjath-Jearim, in Judah. Therefore
they called that place a camp of Dan
until this day. Behold, it is behind
Kirjath-Jearim.
13 And they passed on from there to
the hills of Ephraim, and came into the
house of Micah.
14 And the five men who had gone to
spy out the land of Laish answered and
said to their brothers, Do you not
know that there are in these houses an
ephod and household idols, and a
graven image, and a molten image?
And now, you know what you are to
do.
15 And they turned in there, and
came into the house of the young man,
the Levite in Micah's house. And they
asked him for the peace.
16 And the six hundred men of the
sons of Dan girded with their weapons
of war were standing at the opening of
the gate.
17 And the five men, those who went
to spy out the land came in there, and
they took the graven image, and the
ephod, and the household idols, and
the casted image. And the priest was
standing at the opening of the gate,
and the six hundred men who were
girded with weapons of war.
18 And when these went into the
house of Micah and took the graven
image, the ephod, and the household
idols, and the casted image, even the
priest said to them, What are you
doing?
19 And they said to him, Be quiet!
Lay your hand on your mouth, and go
with us, and be a father and a priest to
us. Is it better for you to be a priest for
one man's house, or for you to be a
priest to a tribe and a family in Israel?
20 And the heart of the priest was
glad. And he took the ephod, and the
household idols, and the graven
image, and went among the people.
21 And they turned and departed,
and put the little ones, and the
livestock, and the valuables before
them.
22 They had gone far away from
Micah's house, and the men who were
in the houses near Micah's house had
been called together, and had over-
taken the sons of Dan.
23 And they called to the sons of
Dan, and they turned their faces and
said to Micah, What ails you, that you
have been called together?
24 And he said, You have taken my
gods which I made, and the priest, and
you are leaving, and what more do I
have? What is this you say to me,
What ails you?
25 And the sons of Dan said to him,
Do not let your voice be heard among
us, that men bitter in soul not fall on
you, and you lose your life, and the
lives of your household.
26 And the sons of Dan went on
their way. And Micah saw that they
were stronger than he, and turned and
went back to his house.
27 And they took that which Micah
had made, and the priest he had, and
came against Laish, against a people
quiet and secure. And they struck
them with the mouth of the sword, and
burned the city with fire.
28 And there was no deliverer,

because it was far from Sidon, and they had no business with any men. And it was in the valley which is beside Beth-Rehob. And they built the city and lived in it.

29 And they called the name of the city, Dan, by the name of their father Dan, who was born to Israel. And yet Laish was the name of the city at first.

30 And the sons of Dan raised up for themselves the graven image. And Jonathan the son of Gershom, the son of Moses, he and his sons were priests to the tribe of the Danites until the day of the captivity of the land.

31 And they set up for themselves Micah's graven image, which he had made, all the days that the house of Elohim was in Shiloh.

Chapter 19

1 And it happened in those days when there was no king in Israel, there was a man, a Levite, living on the further side of the hills of Ephraim. And he took a wife to himself, a concubine out of Bethlehem-Judah.

2 And his concubine committed adultery against him. And she went away from him to her father's house, to Bethlehem-Judah, and was there many days, four months.

3 And her husband rose up and went after her, to speak to her heart, to bring her back. And his young man was with him, and a team of donkeys. And she brought him into her father's house. And the young woman's father saw him and rejoiced to meet him.

4 And his father-in-law, the young woman's father, detained him. And he stayed with him three days. And they ate and drank, and stayed there.

5 And it happened on the fourth day, they rose up early in the morning, and he rose up to go. And the young woman's father said to his son-in-law, Sustain your heart with a bit of food, and afterward you shall go on.

6 And they sat and ate both of them together, and drank. And the young woman's father said to the man, Please be content and stay all night, and let your heart be good.

7 And the man rose up to go; and his father-in-law pressed him, and he turned back and stayed there.

8 And he rose up early in the morning to go on the fifth day. And the young woman's father said, Please refresh your heart. And they stayed until the turning of the day. And they ate, both of them.

9 And the man rose to go, he and his concubine, and his young man. And his father-in-law, the young woman's father, said to him, Please notice that the day has faded toward evening. Please stay the night. Behold, the day is declining. Stay here, and let your heart be good, and you shall rise early tomorrow for your journey. And you shall go to your tent.

10 But the man was not willing to stay the night. And he rose up and departed, and went until he was opposite Jebus (it is Jerusalem) and with him a team of saddle donkeys. And his concubine was with him.

11 They were near Jebus, and the day was spent. And the young man said to his master, Please come and we shall turn to this city of the Jebusites, and stay in it.

12 And his master said to him, Let us not turn to the city of an alien that is not of the sons of Israel, but we shall pass over to Gibeah.

13 And he said to his young man, Come and we shall draw near to one of these places, and shall stay in Gibeah, or in Ramah.

14 And they passed on and traveled on. And the sun went down on them

near Gibeah, which belongs to Benjamin.

15 And they turned aside there, to go in to lodge in Gibeah. And he went in and sat in a broad place of the city. Yet there was no man that took them into his house to lodge them.

16 And, behold, a man, an aged one, came from his work from the field in the evening. And the man was from the hills of Ephraim; and he was a fearful stranger in Gibeah. But the men of the place were sons of Benjamin.

17 And he lifted up his eyes and saw the man, the traveler, in a broad place of the city. And the aged man said, Where are you going, and where do you come from?

18 And he said to him, We are passing from Bethlehem-Judah to the other side of the hills of Ephraim. I am from there, and I am going to Bethlehem-Judah. And I am going to the house of YAHWEH. Yet there is no man to take me into the house.

19 But there is straw and food for our donkeys, and also there is bread and wine for me, and for your slave girl, and for the young man with your servants; there is no lack of anything.

20 And the old man said, Peace to you. Only, all that you lack shall be on me. Only, do not spend the night in the open.

21 And he brought him to his house, and mixed fodder for the donkeys. And they washed their feet and ate and drank.

22 They were making their hearts merry. And, behold, men of the city, sons of worthless men, went around the house, beating on the door. And they spoke to the old man, the housemaster, saying, Bring out the man who has come into your house, and we shall know him.

23 And the man, the house-master, went out to them and said to them, No, my brothers, please do not do evil, since this man has come into my house; do not do this grave sin.

24 Behold, my daughter, a virgin, and his concubine. Please let me bring them out, and you humble them. And do to them that which is good in your eyes but do not do this wicked thing to this man.

25 And the men were not willing to listen to him, and the man took hold on his concubine and brought her out to them outside. And they knew her, and abused her all night, until the morning. And they sent her away at the dawning of the day.

26 And the woman came in at the dawning of the morning, and fell at the door of the man's house where her master was, till it was light.

27 And her master rose up in the morning, and opened the door of the house, and went out to go his way. And behold, the woman, his concubine, had fallen at the door of the house, and her hands were on the threshold.

28 And he said to her, Rise up, and we will go. But there was no answer. And he took her on the donkey, and the man rose up and went to his place.

29 And he came to his house, and took the knife and lay hold on his concubine. And he cut her in pieces to her bones, into twelve pieces, and sent her into all the borders of Israel.

30 And it was so: all who saw it said, There has never been, and never was seen, a thing like this from the day the sons of Israel came up out of the land of Egypt until this day. Set yourselves on it, take counsel. Then speak.

Chapter 20

1 And all the sons of Israel went out, and the congregation was assembled as one man, from Dan even to Beer-

Sheba, and the land of Gilead, to YAHWEH at Mizpeh.

2 And the leaders of all the people of all the tribes of Israel, presented themselves in the assembly of all the people of Elohim, four hundred thousand footmen drawing sword.

3 And the sons of Benjamin heard that the sons of Israel had gone up to Mizpeh. And the sons of Israel said, Speak up. How did this evil happen?

4 And the man, the Levite, husband of the woman who had been murdered, answered and said, I came into Gibeah which is to Benjamin, I and my concubine, to lodge.

5 And the men of Gibeah rose up against me. And they went around the house against me at night; they had in mind to kill me, and they raped my concubine, and she died.

6 And I took hold on my concubine, and cut her in pieces, and sent her into all the land of the inheritance of Israel. For they have done evil and folly in Israel.

7 Behold, you are the sons of Israel. Give here your word and counsel.

8 And all the people rose up as one man, saying, Not one of us shall go to his tent, and not one of us shall return to his house.

9 And now, this is the thing which we shall do to Gibeah, going against it by lot.

10 And we shall take ten men of a hundred of all the tribes of Israel, and a hundred of a thousand, and a thousand of ten thousand, to take food for the people, that they may act when they come to Gibeah of Benjamin, according to all the folly which it has done in Israel.

11 And every man of Israel was gathered to the city, knit together as one *(echad)* man.

12 And the tribes of Israel sent men to all the tribes of Benjamin, saying, What is this evil which has happened among you?

13 And now, give up the men, sons of worthlessness, which are in Gibeah, and let us execute them. And we shall consume evil from Israel. But Benjamin was not willing to listen to the voice of their brothers, the sons of Israel.

14 And the sons of Benjamin were gathered out of the cities to Gibeah, to go out to battle with the sons of Israel.

15 And the sons of Benjamin counted themselves on that day. Out of the cities were twenty six thousand men drawing sword, besides the inhabitants of Gibeah who counted themselves seven hundred chosen men.

16 Among all this people were seven hundred chosen men who were left handed, each of these able to sling a stone at a hair. And he did not miss!

17 And the men of Israel numbered themselves, besides Benjamin, four hundred thousand men drawing sword, each of these a man of war.

18 And they rose up and went up to Bethel and asked of Elohim. And the sons of Israel said, Who shall go up for us at the beginning of the battle with the sons of Benjamin? And YAHWEH said, Judah, at the beginning.

19 And the sons of Israel rose up in the morning and camped against Gibeah.

20 And the men of Israel went to battle with Benjamin; and the men of Israel set themselves in order against them, to battle against Gibeah.

21 And the sons of Benjamin came out from Gibeah. And on that day they destroyed twenty two thousand to the earth in Israel.

22 And the people, the men of Israel, took courage, and again set the battle in order in the place where they set themselves on the first day.

23 And the sons of Israel went up
and wept before YAHWEH until the
evening, and asked of YAHWEH,
saying, Shall I again draw near to
battle with the sons of my brother
Benjamin? And YAHWEH said, Go up
against him.
24 And the sons of Israel drew near
to the sons of Benjamin on the second
day.
25 And Benjamin came out to meet
them from Gibeah on the second day,
and again destroyed to the earth
eighteen thousand men of the sons of
Israel; all these were drawers of sword.
26 And all the sons of Israel went up,
even all the people, and came to
Bethel, and wept. And they sat there
before YAHWEH, and fasted on that
day until the evening, and caused
burnt offerings and peace offerings to
ascend before YAHWEH.
27 And the sons of Israel asked of
YAHWEH (and the ark of the
covenant of Elohim was there in those
days,
28 and Phinehas the son of Eleazar
the son of Aaron was standing before
it in those days) saying, Shall I again
go out to battle with the sons of my
brother Benjamin, or shall I cease?
And YAHWEH said, Go up, for
tomorrow I will give him into your
hand.
29 And Israel set ambushers against
Gibeah all around.
30 And the sons of Israel went up
against the sons of Benjamin on the
third day, and set themselves in order
against Gibeah, as at other times.
31 And the sons of Benjamin came
out to meet the people. They were
drawn away out of the city, and began
to strike the people down wounded as
at other times, in the highways, of
which one goes up to Bethel, and one
to Gibeah in the field, about thirty
men of Israel.
32 And the sons of Benjamin said,
They are destroyed before us as at the
beginning. But the sons of Israel said,
Let us flee and draw them away out of
the city, into the highways.
33 And all the men of Israel rose
from their place and set themselves in
order at Baal-Tamar. And Israel's
ambush came out of its place, out of
the meadow of Gibeah.
34 And they came in across from
Gibeah, ten thousand chosen men out
of all Israel. And the battle was heavy.
And they did not know that evil was
striking against them.
35 And YAHWEH struck Benjamin
before Israel. And the sons of Israel
destroyed twenty five thousand, one
hundred men on that day in Benjamin;
all these were drawers of sword.
36 And the sons of Benjamin saw
that they were stricken. And the men
of Israel had given place to Benjamin,
for they trusted to the ambush which
they had set against Gibeah.
37 And the ambush hurried and
came against Gibeah, and the ambush
drew itself out and struck all of the city
by the mouth of the sword.
38 And there was a set time to the
men of Israel with the ambush, to
make it great, their causing a rising of
smoke to go up from the city.
39 And the men of Israel turned in
battle, and Benjamin had begun to
strike, causing some to be slain of the
men of Israel, about thirty men. For
they said, Surely they are stricken
down before us, as at the first battle.
40 And the rising of smoke began to
go up from the city, a pillar. And
Benjamin turned around, and, behold,
the whole city had gone up toward the
heavens.
41 And the men of Israel turned, and
the men of Benjamin were troubled.
For they had seen that evil had struck
them.

42 And they turned before the men of Israel toward the way of the wilderness. And the battle followed them. And those who were from the city were destroying them in their midst.

43 They surrounded Benjamin, and they pursued them without rest. And they trod them down until they were opposite Gibeah, at the rising of the sun.

44 And eighteen thousand men of Benjamin fell, all of these mighty men.

45 And they turned and fled toward the wilderness to the rock of Rimmon. And they gleaned five thousand men of them in the highways, and caught them, to Gidom. And they struck two thousand men of them.

46 And all the ones of Benjamin who fell were twenty five thousand men drawing the sword on that day; all of these mighty men.

47 And six hundred men turned and fled into the wilderness, to the rock of Rimmon. And they lived in the rock of Rimmon four months.

48 And the men of Israel turned back to the sons of Benjamin, and struck them by the mouth of the sword, from the entire city to live-stock, to all that was found. Also they set fire to all the cities which were found.

Chapter 21

1 And the men of Israel had sworn in Mizpeh, saying, Not one of us shall give his daughter to Benjamin for a wife.

2 And the people came to Bethel, and sat there before Elohim until the evening. And they lifted up their voices and wept a great weeping.

3 And they said, O YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, Why has this happened in Israel, to be lacking one tribe today from Israel?

4 And it happened on the next day, the people rose early and built an altar there, and offered burnt offerings and peace offerings.

5 And the sons of Israel said, Who is he that did not come up in the assembly out of all the tribes of Israel to YAHWEH? For a great oath had been undertaken concerning him that did not come up to YAHWEH to Mizpeh saying, surely he shall die.

6 And the sons of Israel repented concerning their brother Benjamin. And they said, One tribe from Israel has been cut off today.

7 What shall we do for them, for those who are left, for wives? For we surely have sworn by YAHWEH not to give them of our daughters for wives.

8 And they said, What one out of the tribes of Israel did not come up to YAHWEH to Mizpeh? And, behold, no one had come into the camp from Jabesh-Gilead to the assembly.

9 And the people numbered themselves. And, behold, there was not a man of those living in Jabesh-Gilead.

10 And the assembly sent twelve thousand men there of the mighty sons, and commanded them, saying, Go, and you shall strike the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead with the mouth of the sword, even the women and the little ones.

11 And this is the thing which you shall do. You shall destroy every male and every woman who has been known by lying with a male.

12 And out of all the inhabitants of Jabesh-Gilead they found four hundred young women, virgins, who had not known a man by lying with a male. And they brought them into the camp at Shiloh, which is in the land of Canaan.

13 And all the assembly sent and spoke to the sons of Benjamin who were in the rock of Rimmon, and called out peace to them.
14 And Benjamin came again at that time. And they gave the women whom they had kept alive, of the women of Jabesh-Gilead. But they did not find enough for them.
15 And the people repented as to Benjamin, for YAHWEH had made a breach among the tribes of Israel.
16 And the elders of the assembly said, What shall we do to the remnant for wives for the women have been destroyed out of Benjamin?
17 And they said, The one who escaped shall be a legacy of Benjamin, that a tribe may not be blotted out from Israel.
18 And we surely are not able to give wives to them from our daughters, for the sons of Israel have sworn, saying, Cursed is he who gives a wife to Benjamin[1].
19 And they said, Behold, there is a feast of YAHWEH from year to year in Shiloh, on the north side of Bethel, toward the rising of the sun, by the highway which goes up from Bethel to Shechem, and on the south of Lebonah.
20 They commanded the sons of Benjamin, saying, Go, and you shall lie in wait in the vineyards.
21 And you shall watch. And, behold, if the daughters of Shiloh come out to dance in dances, then you shall go out from the vineyards and each of you catch his wife from the daughters of Shiloh, and go to the land of Benjamin.
22 And it shall be, when their fathers or their brothers come to strive with us, we shall say to them, Favor us with them, for we did not take for each man of them a wife in battle, for if you did not give to them as at this time, you would be guilty.
23 And the sons of Benjamin did so, and took women according to their number from the dancers whom they had seized. And they went and returned to their inheritance, and built the cities, and lived in them.
24 And the sons of Israel went up and down from there at that time, each to his tribe, and to his family. And they departed from there, every man to his inheritance.
25 In those days there was no king in Israel. Each man did that which was right in his own eyes[2].

[1] This verse again shows the sacredness in ancient times associated with making a vow and keeping ones word.

[2] This last verse of Judges truly shows the sad consequences when Yahweh's judicial order is ignored for self motivation.

Book of 1 Samuel

Chapter 1

1 And there was a certain man of Ramathaim-Zophim from the hills of Ephraim, and his name was Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Elihu, the son of Tohu, the son of Zuph, an Ephrathite.
2 And he had two wives, the name of the one was Hannah, and the name of the second, Peninnah. And Peninnah had children, but Hannah had no children.
3 And that man went up from his city from year to year to worship and to sacrifice before YAHWEH of Hosts in Shiloh. And the two sons of Eli, Hophni and Phinehas, were priests to YAHWEH there.
4 And the day came, and Elkanah sacrificed. And he would give to his wife Peninnah and to all her sons and her daughters portions.
5 And to Hannah he gave one double portion, for he loved Hannah. And YAHWEH had shut up her womb.
6 And her rival tormented her even to vexation, so as to make her tremble, because YAHWEH had shut up her womb.
7 And so he did year by year, as often as she went up to the house of YAHWEH, so she provoked her. And she wept, and did not eat.
8 And her husband Elkanah said to her, Hannah, why do you weep? And why do you not eat? And why is your heart afflicted? Am I not better to you than ten sons?
9 And Hannah rose up after eating in Shiloh, and after drinking. And Eli the priest was sitting on the seat by the side post of the sanctuary of YAHWEH.
10 And she was bitter of soul, and prayed to YAHWEH, and weeping she wept.
11 And she vowed a vow, and said, O YAHWEH of Hosts, if looking You will look upon the affliction of Your handmaid, and shall remember me, and not forget Your handmaid, and shall give to Your handmaid a seed of men, then I will give him to YAHWEH all the days of his life; and a razor shall not go up on his head.
12 And it happened, when she prayed long before YAHWEH, Eli was watching her mouth.
13 And Hannah was speaking in her heart; only, her lips moved; but her voice could not be heard. So Eli thought that she was drunk.
14 And Eli said to her, Until when will you be drunken? Put away your wine from you.
15 And Hannah answered and said, No, my master; I am a woman pained in spirit. And I have not drunk wine or fermented drink, but I am pouring out my soul before YAHWEH.
16 Do not put your handmaid down for a daughter of wickedness; for from the abundance of my complaint and grief until now I have been speaking.
17 And Eli answered and said, Go in peace, and may the Elohim of Israel give you your petition which you have asked of Him.
18 And she said, Let your handmaid find grace in your eyes. And the woman went her way, and ate, and her face was no longer sad.
19 And they rose up early in the morning and worshiped before YAHWEH. And they went back and came to their house in Ramah. And Elkanah knew his wife Hannah, and YAHWEH remembered her.
20 And it happened when the time had come around, Hannah conceived and bore a son. And she called his name Samuel, saying, Because I have asked him of YAHWEH.
21 And the man Elkanah and all his house went up to sacrifice to

YAHWEH a sacrifice of the days, and
to vow his vow.
22 And Hannah did not go up, for
she said to her husband, Until the
child is weaned, then I will bring him,
that he may appear before YAHWEH
and remain there forever.
23 And her husband Elkanah said to
her, Do that which is good in your
eyes. Remain until you wean him.
Only, may YAHWEH confirm His
Word. And the woman remained, and
suckled her son until she had weaned
him.
24 And when she had weaned him,
she brought him up with her, along
with three bulls, and one ephah of
flour, and a skin of wine. And she
brought him to the house of
YAHWEH at Shiloh. And the child
was a young one.
25 And they slaughtered the bull,
and brought the boy to Eli.
26 And she said, O my master, may
your soul live! My master, I am the
woman who stood with you here to
pray to YAHWEH.
27 I prayed for this boy, and
YAHWEH has given my petition to
me which I asked of Him.
28 And I have asked him to be given
to YAHWEH all the days which he
shall be, he is loaned for YAHWEH.
And he worshiped there before
YAHWEH.

Chapter 2

1 And Hannah prayed and said: My
heart has exulted in YAHWEH; my
horn has been high in YAHWEH. My
mouth has been large over my
enemies; for I have rejoiced in Your
salvation.
2 There is none holy like YAHWEH,
for there is none except You; yea, there
is no rock like our Elohim.
3 Do not multiply your haughty
words; let not arrogance go out from
your mouth; for YAHWEH is a
Elohim of knowledge, and by Him
actions are weighed.
4 Bows of the mighty are broken;
and they that stumble gird on
strength.
5 They that were full have hired
themselves out for bread; and the
hungry have ceased, while the barren
has borne seven; yea, she who had
many sons has languished.
6 YAHWEH kills and keeps alive;
He brings down and causes to go to
Sheol.
7 YAHWEH brings down, and He
gives riches; He brings low; yea, He
lifts up high.
8 He raises the poor from the dust;
He lifts up the needy from the
dunghill, to cause them to sit with
nobles; yea, He causes them to inherit
a throne of honor; for to YAHWEH
are the pillars of the earth; and He sets
the habitable world on them.
9 He keeps the feet of His saints, and
the wicked are silenced in darkness;
for man does not become mighty by
power.
10 They who strive with YAHWEH
will be smashed; He thunders in the
heavens against him. YAHWEH
judges the ends of the earth and gives
strength to His king; and He exalts the
horn of His Messiah.
11 And Elkanah went to Ramah, to
his house. And the child served
YAHWEH before Eli the priest.
12 And the sons of Eli were sons of
worthlessness; they did not know
YAHWEH.
13 And the custom of the priests with
the people was: any man offering a
sacrifice and the priest's young man
came when the flesh was boiling with
the three-toothed hook in his hand,
14 even he stuck it into the pan, or
kettle, or caldron, or pot; all that the

hook brought up, the priest took for himself. So they did to all Israel who came in there to Shiloh.

15 Yea, before they made the fat to smoke, then the priest's young man came in. And he said to the man who was sacrificing, Give meat to roast for the priest; and he will not take boiled meat from you, but raw.

16 And if the man said to him, Let the fat be made to smoke as the day, and then take as much as your soul desires; then he would say, No, but you shall give now. And if not, I will take it by force.

17 And the sin of the young men was very great before YAHWEH, for the men had despised the offering of YAHWEH.

18 And Samuel was serving before YAHWEH, a boy girded with an ephod of linen.

19 And his mother made a small coat for him, and she brought it up to him from year to year, as she came up with her husband to offer the sacrifice of the days.

20 And Eli blessed Elkanah and his wife, and said, YAHWEH shall give you seed of this woman, because of the petition she prayed to YAHWEH. And they went away to their place.

21 So YAHWEH visited Hannah, and she conceived and bore three sons and two daughters. And the boy Samuel grew up with YAHWEH.

22 And Eli was very old and had heard all that his sons did to Israel, and how they lay with the women who assembled by troops at the door of the tent of meeting.

23 And he said to them, Why do you do things like these? For I am hearing of your evil doings from all these people.

24 No my sons, for the report which I am hearing is not good, causing the people of YAHWEH to transgress.

25 If a man sins against a man, then Elohim shall judge him. But if a man sins against YAHWEH, who shall pray for him? But they did not listen to the voice of their father because YAHWEH desired to put them to death.

26 And the boy Samuel went on, growing both in stature and in goodness, both with YAHWEH and also with men. *(Luk 2:52)*

27 And a man of Elohim came to Eli, and said to him, So says YAHWEH: Did I reveal Myself plainly to the house of your father when they were in Egypt, at the house of Pharaoh,

28 even to choose him out of all the tribes of Israel to be priest to Me, to go up on My altar, to cause incense to smoke, to bear an ephod before Me? And did I give to your father's house all the fire offerings of the sons of Israel?

29 Why do you kick at My sacrifice and at My offering which I commanded in My habitation? And why do you honor your sons above Me, to make yourselves fat with the best of all the offerings of My people?

30 So says YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, I said indeed that your house and your father's house should walk before Me until forever. But now YAHWEH says, Be it far from Me! For those who honor Me I will honor; and those despising Me will be despicable.

31 Behold, days come when I shall cut off your arm, and the arm of your father's house, that no old man shall be in your house.

32 And you shall see an adversary in My habitation, in all the good that he does with Israel. And there shall not be an old man in your house all the days.

33 And the man of yours that I shall not cut off from My altar shall be to cause your eyes to fail, and to grieve

your soul. And all the increase of your house shall die young men.

34 And this shall be the sign to you, that which shall come on your two sons, on Hophni and Phinehas: in one day the both of them shall die.

35 And I shall raise up for Myself a faithful priest. He shall do all that is in My heart and in My soul. And I shall build for him a sure house; and he shall walk before My Messiah all the days.[1] *(2 Sam 6:12, Eze 37:23-24)*

36 And it shall be, everyone who is left in your house shall come in to bow to him for a wage of silver and a loaf of bread. And they shall say, please admit me into one of the priest's offices to eat a bit of bread.

Chapter 3

1 And the boy Samuel was ministering to YAHWEH before Eli. And the Word of YAHWEH was rare in those days. There was no breaking-through vision.

2 And it happened at that time, Eli was lying down in his place, and his eyes had begun to be dim; he was not able to see.

3 And the lamp of Elohim had not yet gone out. And Samuel was lying down in the sanctuary of YAHWEH, where the ark of Elohim was.

4 And YAHWEH called to Samuel. And he said, Behold me.

5 And he ran to Eli and said, Behold, I am here. For you have called to me. And he said, I did not call. Go back and lie down. And he went and lay down.

6 And YAHWEH again called Samuel. And Samuel rose up and went to Eli and said, Behold me, for you have called me. And he said, I have not called, my son. Go back and lie down.

7 And Samuel did not yet know YAHWEH, and the Word of YAHWEH had not yet been revealed to him.

8 And YAHWEH again called Samuel the third time. And he rose up and went to Eli and said, Behold me, for you have called me. And Eli understood that YAHWEH was calling the boy.

9 And Eli said to Samuel, Go, lie down; and it shall be, if One calls you, even you shall say, Speak, O YAHWEH, for Your servant hears. And Samuel lay down in his place.

10 And YAHWEH came and stood, and called as the other times, Samuel, Samuel! And Samuel said, Speak, for Your servant hears.

11 And YAHWEH said to Samuel, Behold! I am doing a thing in Israel at which the two ears of every one hearing it shall tingle.

12 In that day I will confirm to Eli all that I have spoken to his house, beginning and making an end.

13 And I declare to him that I am judging his house forever, for the iniquity which he has known; for his sons have been making themselves vile, and he has not restrained them.

14 And so I have sworn to the house of Eli, the iniquity of the house of Eli shall not be atoned for, by sacrifice or by offering, until forever.

15 And Samuel lay until the morning. And he opened the doors of the house of YAHWEH. And Samuel was afraid to declare the vision to Eli.

16 And Eli called Samuel and said,

---

[1] Because King David had a heart to build a house for YHWH, Yahweh said that He would build an eternal house for David (2Sam 7:8-13, 26-29). This is speaking of an everlasting dynasty with a physical sanctuary for Yahshua, the son of David. Yahshua will be king and David will reign with Him Jer 30:9, Eze 37:23-24.

Samuel, my son. And he said, here I am.

17 And he said, What is the word which He has spoken to you? Please do not hide it from me. May Elohim do so to you, and more also, if you keep back anything from me of all the words that He spoke to you.

18 And Samuel told him all the words, and did not hide from him. And he said, It is YAHWEH; He does that which is good in His eyes.

19 And Samuel grew up, and YAHWEH was with him, and did not let any of his words fall to the earth.

20 And all Israel knew, from Dan even to Beer-Sheva, that Samuel was confirmed to be a prophet to YAHWEH.

21 And YAHWEH again appeared in Shiloh. For YAHWEH revealed Himself to Samuel in Shiloh, by the Word of YAHWEH.

Chapter 4

1 And the word of Samuel was revealed to all Israel. And Israel went out to meet the Philistines for battle. And they pitched beside Ebenezer, and the Philistines pitched in Aphek.

2 And the Philistines set themselves in order to meet Israel, and the battle was spread. And Israel was stricken before the Philistines. And they struck about four thousand men from the battle line in the field.

3 And the people came into the camp, and the elders of Israel said, Why has YAHWEH stricken us today before the Philistines? Let us take the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH to us, and let it come into our midst; and it will save us from the hand of our enemies.

4 And the people sent to Shiloh, and they took from there the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH of Hosts, who dwells between the cherubs. And the two sons of Eli were there with the ark of the covenant of Elohim, Hophni and Phinehas.

5 And it happened, when the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH came into the camp, all Israel shouted a great shout, and the earth shook.

6 And the Philistines heard the noise of the shouting, and said, What is the noise of this great shout in the camp of the Hebrews? And they saw that the ark of YAHWEH had come into the camp.

7 And the Philistines were afraid, for they said, Elohim has come to the camp. And they said, Woe to us! For never has it been like this before.

8 Woe to us! Who will deliver us out of the hand of these great Elohim? These are the Elohim who struck Egypt with every plague in the wilderness.

9 Make yourselves strong and become men, O Philistines, lest you become slaves to the Hebrews, as they were slaves to you. Then you must be men and fight.

10 And the Philistines fought, and Israel was beaten. And they each one fled to his tent. And the blow was very great, and thirty thousand footmen of Israel fell.

11 And the ark of Elohim was taken, and the two sons of Eli died, Hophni and Phinehas.

12 And a man of Benjamin ran out of the battle line and came to Shiloh on that day. And his clothes were torn, and earth on his head.

13 And he came in. And, behold, Eli was sitting on the seat by the side of the highway, watching. For his heart trembled for the ark of Elohim. And the man came in to report in the city. And all the city cried out.

14 And Eli heard the noise of the cry, and said, What is the noise of this

tumult? And the man hurried and came and reported to Eli.

15 And Eli was ninety eight years old, and his eyes were set, and he was not able to see.

16 And the man said to Eli, I am he who has come from the ranks, and I fled today out of the battle line. And he said, How did the matter go, my son?

17 And he bearing the news answered and said, Israel has fled before the Philistines; and also there has been a great slaughter among the people. And also your two sons have died, Hophni and Phinehas. And the ark of Elohim has been taken.

18 And it happened when he mentioned the ark of Elohim, Eli fell off the seat backward, by the side of the gate. And his neck was broken, and he died. For the man was old and heavy. And he judged Israel forty years.

19 And his daughter-in-law, the wife of Phinehas, was with child, about to bear. And she heard the report of the taking of the ark of Elohim, and that her father-in-law and her husband had died. And she bowed and bore, for her pains had turned in on her.

20 And at the time of her death, when the women who stood by her said, Fear not, for you have borne a son; she did not even answer, nor set her heart.

21 And she called the child Ichabod, saying, The glory has departed from Israel, because of the taking of the ark of Elohim, and because of her father-in-law and her husband.

22 And she said, The glory has departed from Israel, for the ark of Elohim has been taken.

Chapter 5

1 And the Philistines took the ark of The Elohim and brought it from Ebenezer to Ashdod.

2 And the Philistines took the ark of The Elohim and brought it to the house of Dagon, and set it near Dagon.

3 And the Ashdodites rose early on the next day. And, behold! Dagon had fallen on its face to the earth before the ark of YAHWEH! And they took Dagon and put it back in its place.

4 And they rose early in the morning on the next day; and, behold! Dagon had fallen on its face to the earth before the ark of YAHWEH, and the head of Dagon, and the two palms of its hands, were cut off at the threshold. Only the flat part had been left to him.

5 On account of this the priests of Dagon, and all those coming into the house of Dagon, do not step on the threshold of Dagon in Ashdod until this day.

6 And the hand of YAHWEH was heavy on the men of Ashdod. And He wasted them, and struck them with hemorrhoids, Ashdod and its borders.

7 And the men of Ashdod saw that it was so, and said, The ark of the Elohim of Israel shall not remain with us, for His hand has been hard on us, and on our Elohim Dagon.

8 And they sent and gathered all the rulers of the Philistines to them, and said, What shall we do with the ark of the Elohim of Israel? And they said, Let the ark of the Elohim of Israel go around to Gath. And they brought around the ark of the Elohim of Israel.

9 And it happened after they had brought it around, the hand of YAHWEH was against the city with a very great destruction. And He struck the men of the city, from the least to the greatest; and hemorrhoids broke forth on them.

10 And they sent the ark of the Elohim around to Ekron. And it happened as the ark of Elohim came

into Ekron, the Ekronites cried out, saying, They have brought around the ark of the Elohim of Israel to me to cause me and my people to die.
11 And they sent and gathered all the rulers of the Philistines, and said, Send away the ark of the Elohim of Israel, and let it return to its place, and it may not cause me and my people to die. For there had been a great destruction throughout all the city. The hand of the Elohim had been very heavy there.
12 And the men who had not died were stricken with hemorrhoids. And the cry of the city went up to the heavens.

Chapter 6

1 And the ark of YAHWEH was in the field of the Philistines seven months.
2 And the Philistines called for priests and for those divining, saying, What shall we do to the ark of YAHWEH? Let us know with what we shall send it to its place.
3 And they said, If you send away the ark of the Elohim of Israel, you shall not send it away empty. For turning back you shall return a guilt offering back to Him. Then you shall be healed, and it shall be known to you why His hand has not turned away from you.
4 And they said, What shall be the guilt offering which we shall send back to Him? And they said, The number of the rulers of the Philistines, five golden hemorrhoids, and five golden mice. For one plague has been on all of you, and on your rulers.
5 And you shall make images of your hemorrhoids, and images of your mice that are corrupting the land, and shall give honor to the Elohim of Israel. It may be that He will lift His hand from off you and from off your gods, and from off your land.
6 And why do you harden your heart as the Egyptians and Pharaoh hardened their heart? When He dealt ruthlessly with them, did they not send them away? And they went.
7 And now, take and make one new cart, and two suckling cows, on which a yoke has never gone up. And you shall tie the cows to the cart, and cause their young ones to return home from them.
8 And you shall take the ark of YAHWEH and put it on the cart, and the vessels of gold which you shall return to Him for a guilt offering. Put them in a coffer in its side and send it away; and let it go.
9 And watch; if it goes up by way of its own border, to Beth-Shemesh, He has done this great evil to us. And if not, then we shall know that it is not His hand that touched us; it was an accident to us. *(Eccl 9:11)*
10 And the men did so. And they took two suckling cows and tied them to the cart. And they shut their young ones in the house.
11 And they placed the ark of YAHWEH on the cart, and the coffer with the golden mice and the images of their hemorrhoids.
12 And the cows went straight in the way, on the way to Beth-Shemesh. They went on one highway, going and lowing. And they did not turn to the right or to the left. And the rulers of the Philistines went after them to the border of Beth-Shemesh.
13 And those of Beth-Shemesh were reaping their wheat harvest in the valley. And they lifted up their eyes and saw the ark, and rejoiced to see it.
14 And the cart had come to the field of Yahoshua the Beth-Shemite, and stood there. And there was a great stone. And they cut the wood of the cart, and they offered the cows as a burnt offering to YAHWEH.

15 And the Levites took the ark of YAHWEH down, and the coffer which was with it, in which were the vessels of gold. And they placed them on the great stone. And the men of Beth-Shemesh offered burnt offerings and sacrificed sacrifices in that day to YAHWEH.

16 And the five rulers of the Philistines saw it, and turned back to Ekron on that day.

17 And these were the golden hemorrhoids which the Philistines sent back as a guilt offering to YAHWEH: one for Ashdod, one for Gaza, one for Ashkelon, one for Gath, one for Ekron:

18 and the golden mice, the number of all the cities of the Philistines, for the five rulers, from the fortified city even to the hamlet of the villagers, even to the great meadow on which they placed the ark of YAHWEH remain until this day in the field of Yahoshua the Beth-Shemite.

19 And he struck among the men of Beth-Shemesh, because they looked into the ark of YAHWEH. Yea, He struck seventy among the people, fifty out of a thousand men. And the people mourned because YAHWEH destroyed among the people with a great destruction.

20 And the men of Beth-Shemesh said, Who is able to stand before YAHWEH, this holy Elohim? And to whom shall He go up from us?

21 And they sent messengers to the ones living in Kirjath-Jearim, saying, The Philistines have sent back the ark of YAHWEH. Come down: take it up to you.

Chapter 7

1 And the men of Kirjath-Jearim came and brought up the ark of YAHWEH, and brought it to the house of Abinadab, in the hill. And they sanctified his son Eleazar to keep the ark of YAHWEH.

2 And it happened from the day the ark began to dwell in Kirjath-Jearim, the days became many; yea, they were twenty years. And all the house of Israel lamented after YAHWEH.

3 And Samuel said to all the house of Israel, saying, If you are returning to YAHWEH with all your heart, put aside the foreign Elohims from among you, and the Ashtoroth. And prepare your heart to YAHWEH, and serve Him only, and He will deliver you out of the hand of the Philistines.

4 And the sons of Israel put away the Baals and the Ashtaroth, and served YAHWEH only.[1] *(Ex 22:20)*

5 And Samuel said, Gather all Israel to Mizpah, and I will pray to YAHWEH for you.

6 And they were gathered to Mizpah, and drew water, and poured out before YAHWEH. And they fasted on that day, and said there, We have sinned against YAHWEH. And Samuel judged the sons of Israel in Mizpah.

7 And the Philistines heard that the sons of Israel had gathered to Mizpah. And the rulers of the Philistines went up against Israel, and the sons of Israel heard, and were afraid before the Philistines.

8 And the sons of Israel said to Samuel, Do not cease to cry to YAHWEH our Elohim for us, that He save us out of the hand of the Philistines.

9 And Samuel took a milk lamb and offered a whole burnt offering to YAHWEH. And Samuel cried to YAHWEH for Israel. And YAHWEH answered him.

10 And it happened as Samuel made

[1] To serve any other deity but YAHWEH was death.

a whole burnt offering to go up, the Philistines drew near to battle against Israel. And YAHWEH thundered with a great noise on that day, on the Philistines, and troubled them. And they were stricken before Israel.
11 And the men of Israel went out from Mizpah and pursued the Philistines, and struck them as far as below Beth-Car.
12 And Samuel took a stone and set it between Mizpah and Shen, and called its name Stone of Help, saying, YAHWEH has helped us until now.
13 And the Philistines were subdued and did not yet again come into the border of Israel. And the hand of YAHWEH was on the Philistines all the days of Samuel.
14 And the cities which the Philistines had taken from Israel were restored to Israel, from Ekron even to Gath. And Israel delivered their border out of the hand of the Philistines. And there was peace between Israel and the Amorites.
15 And Samuel judged Israel all the days of his life.
16 And He went from year to year even in a circuit to Bethel, and Gilgal, and Mizpah, and judged Israel in all these places.
17 And he returned to Ramah, for his house was there. And there he judged Israel; and he built an altar to YAHWEH there.

Chapter 8

1 And it happened when Samuel was old, he made his sons judges over Israel.
2 And the name of his first-born was Joel, and the name of his second, Abiah, judges in Beer-Sheba.
3 And his sons did not walk in his ways, and turned aside after dishonest gain, and took a bribe, and perverted judgment.
4 And all the elders of Israel gathered and came in to Samuel, to Ramah.
5 And they said to him, Behold, you have become old, and your sons have not walked in your ways. Now appoint a king to us, to judge us, like all the nations.
6 And the thing was evil in Samuel's eyes when they said, Give to us a king to judge us. And Samuel prayed to YAHWEH.
7 And YAHWEH said to Samuel, Listen to the voice of the people, to all that they say to you. For they have not rejected you, but they have rejected Me from reigning over them.[1]
8 According to all the works that they have done from the day I brought them up out of Egypt, even to this day, when they forsook Me and served other Elohim, so they are also doing to you.
9 And now listen to their voice. Only, protesting you shall protest to them, and shall declare to them the privilege of the king who shall reign over them.
10 And Samuel spoke all the words of YAHWEH to the people who were asking a king from him.
11 And he said, This is the privilege of the king who shall reign over you. He shall take your sons and shall appoint them for himself among his chariots, and among his horsemen. And they shall run before his chariots.
12 And he will appoint for himself heads of thousands, and heads of fifties; and to plow his plowing, and to reap his reaping; and to make

---

1 Israel had rejected Yahweh and His governmental system and wanted to govern themselves. Many today have the same mindset and syndrome in the Laodicean congregation, Rev 3:17-18.

weapons for war for him, and weapons for his charioteer.
13 And he will take your daughters for perfumers, and for cooks, and for bakers.
14 And he will take your fields, and your vineyards, and your olive-yards, the best, and give them to his servants.
15 And he will tithe your seed and your vineyards, and will give them to his eunuchs and to his servants.
16 And he will take your male slaves and your slave-girls, and the best of your young men, and your donkeys, and will use them for his own work.
17 He will tithe your flock, and you will be servants to him.
18 And you will cry out in that day because of your king whom you have chosen for yourselves. And YAHWEH will not answer you in that day.
19 And the people refused to listen to the voice of Samuel, and said, No, but a king shall be over us.
20 And we shall be, even we, like all the nations. And our king shall judge us and shall go out before us and fight our battles.
21 And Samuel heard all the words of the people, and spoke them in the ears of YAHWEH.
22 And YAHWEH said to Samuel, Listen to their voice, and you shall cause a king to reign over them. And Samuel said to the men of Israel, Each of you go to his city.

Chapter 9

1 And there was a man of Benjamin, and his name was Kish, the son of Abiel, the son of Zeror, the son of Bechorath the son of Aphiah, a man of Benjamin, a mighty warrior.
2 And he had a young and handsome son, and his name was Saul. And there was not a man among the sons of Israel more handsome than he, being taller than any of the people from his shoulder and upward.
3 And the donkeys of Kish, Saul's father, were lost. And Kish said to his son Saul, Please take with you one of the young men, and rise up, go seek the donkeys.
4 And he passed through the hills of Ephraim, and passed through the land of Shalisha. And they did not find them. And they passed through the land of Shaalim, and they were not there. And he passed through the land of the Benjamites, and they did not find them.
5 And they came to the land of Zuph, and Saul said to his young man with him, Come and we shall turn back, lest my father give up the donkeys and become anxious for us.
6 And he said to him, Behold now, a man of Elohim is in this city, and the man is held in honor. All that he speaks certainly comes to pass. Now let us go there. It may be he will declare our way to us on which we should go.
7 And Saul said to his young man, Yea, behold, we will go. But what will we bring in to the man? For the bread from our vessels is gone, and there is no present to bring to the man of the Elohim. What is with us?
8 And the young man answered Saul again and said, Behold, I have found a fourth of a shekel of silver; and I shall give it to the man of the Elohim, and he shall declare our way to us.
9 Before in Israel, a man who was going to seek Elohim said this, Come and we shall go to the seer; for the prophet of today, before, was called the seer.
10 And Saul said to his young man, Your word is good; come and we shall go. And they went into the city where the man of the Elohim was.
11 They were going up the ascent to

the city, and found young women
going out to draw water, and said to
them, Is the seer in this place?
12 And they replied to them and
said, He is. See, he is before you.
Hurry now, for today he will come into
the city, for the people have a sacrifice
in the high place.
13 As you go into the city, so you
shall find him, before he goes up to the
high place to eat. For the people will
not eat until he comes, for he shall
bless the sacrifice. Afterward they who
are called will eat. And now, go up, for
this day you will find him.
14 And they went up to the city. They
were coming into the middle of the
city, and, behold, Samuel was coming
out to meet them, to go up to the high
place.
15 And YAHWEH revealed in
Samuel's ear one day before Saul
came, saying,
16 At this time tomorrow I will send
to you a man out of the land of
Benjamin. And you shall anoint him
for the leader over My people Israel.
And he shall save My people out of the
hand of the Philistines; for I have seen
My people, for his cry has come to Me.
17 When Samuel saw Saul, then
YAHWEH answered him, Behold, the
man of whom I spoke to you. This one
shall rule over My people.
18 And Saul drew near to Samuel
amidst the gate, and said, Please tell
me where is the seer's house?
19 And Samuel answered Saul and
said, I am the seer. Go up before me
into the high place, and you shall eat
with me today. And I will send you
away in the morning, and all that is in
your heart, I will declare to you.
20 And as to the donkeys which were
lost to you three days ago, do not set
your heart on them, for they have been
found. And to whom is all the desire of
Israel? Is it not to you and to all the
house of your father?
21 And Saul answered and said, Am I
not a Benjamite, of the smallest of the
tribes of Israel? And my family is the
least of all the families of the tribe of
Benjamin. And why have you spoken
to me according to this word?
22 And Samuel took Saul and his
young man and brought them into the
room, and gave to them a place at the
head of the invited ones. And they
were about thirty men.
23 And Samuel said to the cook, Give
the portion which I gave to you, of
which I said to you, Set it beside you.
24 And the cook lifted up the leg,
and that on it, and set it before Saul.
And he said, Behold that which is
reserved. Set it before you, eat. For it
has been kept for you for this
appointed time, saying, I have invited
the people. And Saul ate with Samuel
on that day.
25 And they came down from the
high place to the city. And he spoke
with Saul on the roof.
26 And they rose up early, and about
the going up of the dawn it happened
that Samuel called to Saul on the roof,
saying, Rise up, and I will send you
away. And Saul rose up, and they went
out, both of them, he and Samuel, to
the outside.
27 They were going down to the edge
of the city, and Samuel said to Saul,
Say to the young man that he should
pass on before us and cross over. And
you stand still at this time, and I will
cause you to hear the Word of Elohim.

Chapter 10

1 And Samuel took the flask of oil
and poured on his head, and kissed
him, and said, Is it not because
YAHWEH has anointed you for a
leader over His inheritance?

2 As you go from me today even you
will find two men by Rachel's tomb, in
the border of Benjamin at Zelzah. And
they will say to you, The she donkeys
that you went to seek have been found.
And, behold, your father has left off
the matters of the she donkeys and is
anxious for you, saying, What shall I
do for my son?
3 And you will go on from there even
further, and you will come to the great
tree of Tabor. And you will find three
men going up to Elohim at Bethel, one
carrying three kids, and one carrying
three loaves of bread, and one carrying
a skin of wine.
4 And they will ask you of your
welfare and give to you two loaves of
bread, and you will take them from
their hand.
5 Afterward you will come to the hill
of Elohim where there is a fort of the
Philistines. And it will happen as you
come there to the city even you will
meet a band of prophets going down
from the high place; and before them
will be a harp, and a tambourine, and
a flute, and a lyre. And they will be
prophesying.
6 And the Spirit of YAHWEH will be
powerful on you, and you will
prophesy with them; and you will be
turned into another man.
7 And it will be, when these signs
come to you, do for yourself what your
hand finds, for the Elohim is with you.
8 And you will go before me to
Gilgal. And, behold! I will come down
to you to offer burnt offerings, to
sacrifice peace offerings. You will wait
seven days until I come to you and
make known to you what you shall do.
9 And it happened when he turned
his back to go from Samuel, Elohim
changed him with another heart. And
all these signs came on that day.
10 And they came there to the hill.
And behold! A band of prophets were
there to meet him. And the Spirit of
Elohim pushed on him, and he
prophesied in their midst.
11 And it happened, all who knew
him from yesterday and the third day,
and saw him, even behold, he
prophesied with prophets. And the
people said, each one to his neighbor,
What is this happening to the son of
Kish? Is Saul also among the
prophets?
12 And a man from there answered
and said, And who is their father? On
account of this it is for a proverb: Is
Saul also among the prophets?
13 And he finished from
prophesying, and he came to the high
place.
14 And the uncle of Saul said to him
and to his young man, Where did you
go? And he said, To seek the she
donkeys. And we saw that they were
not, and we went to Samuel.
15 And the uncle of Saul said, Please
tell me what Samuel said to you.
16 And Saul said to his uncle, He
told us plainly that the she donkeys
were found. But he did not tell what
Samuel said about the matter of the
kingdom.
17 And Samuel called the people to
YAHWEH, to Mizpah.
18 And he said to the sons of Israel,
So says YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel, I caused Israel to go up from
Egypt and delivered you from the
hand of the Egyptians, and from the
hand of all the kingdoms who
oppressed you.
19 But today you have rejected your
Elohim who Himself is your deliverer
from all your evils and your distresses;
yet you say to Him, But set a king over
us! And now present yourselves before
the face of YAHWEH, by your tribes
and by your families.
20 And Samuel brought near all the

tribes of Israel, and the tribe of Benjamin was taken.

21 And he brought near the tribe of Benjamin by its families, and the family of Matri was taken. And Saul the son of Kish was taken. And they sought him, but not did find him.

22 And they inquired again of YAHWEH, Has the man yet come here? And YAHWEH said, Behold he is hiding himself by the baggage.

23 And they ran and took him from there. And he stood in the midst of the people, and he was taller than all the people, from his shoulders and upward.

24 And Samuel said to all the people, Do you see him whom YAHWEH has chosen, for none is like him among all the people? And all the people shouted and said, May the king live!

25 And Samuel spoke to the people the duties of the kingdom, and wrote in the book, and placed it before YAHWEH. And Samuel sent all the people away, each to his house.

26 And Saul also went to his house, to Gibeah, and with him went the valiant whose hearts Elohim had touched.

27 But the sons of worthlessness said, How can this one deliver us? And they despised him and did not bring a gift to him. But he was as one keeping silent.

Chapter 11

1 And Nahash the Ammonite went up and camped against Jabesh-Gilead. And all the men of Jabesh said to Nahash, Cut a covenant for us, and we will serve you. *(2 Sam 10:2)*

2 And Nahash the Ammonite said to them, With this I will cut a covenant for you, when every right eye is dug out for you; and I will make it a reproach on all Israel.[1]

3 And the elders of Jabesh said to him, Leave us alone seven days, and we will send messengers in all the boundary of Israel. And if there is no deliverer for us, then we will come out to you.

4 And the messengers came to Gibeah of Saul. And they spoke the words in the ears of the people. And all the people lifted up their voice and wept.

5 And, behold, Saul came behind the oxen from the field. And Saul said, What is it to the people, that they weep? And they related to him the words of the men of Jabesh.

6 And the Spirit of Elohim came powerfully on Saul when he heard these words, and his anger glowed greatly.

7 And he took the team of oxen and cut them in pieces, and he sent them into all the boundary of Israel, by the hand of the messengers, saying, Whoever does not come out after Saul and after Samuel, so it shall be done to his oxen. And the fear of YAHWEH fell on the people. And they came out as one man.

8 And he mustered them in Bezek, and the sons of Israel were three hundred thousand, and the men of Judah, thirty thousand.

9 And they said to the messengers who came, So you shall say to the men of Jabesh-Gilead. Tomorrow there shall be deliverance for you, in the heat of the sun. And the messengers came and related this to the men of Jabesh; and they rejoiced.

10 And the men of Jabesh said, Tomorrow we will come out to you,

[1] The shield is held with the left hand, covering the left eye. One could not be an archer without a right eye.

and you do to us according to all that
is good in your eyes.
11 And it happened, on the next day
Saul put the people in three heads, and
they came into the midst of the camp
in the morning watch and they struck
Ammon until the heat of the day. And
it was, the ones left were scattered; in
them were not two left together.
12 And the people said to Samuel,
Who is he saying, Shall Saul reign over
us? Give the men and we will execute
them.
13 And Saul said, Not a man shall be
executed on this day, for today
YAHWEH worked deliverance in
Israel.
14 And Samuel said to the people,
Come, and let us go to Gilgal and
renew the kingdom there.
15 And all the people went to Gilgal
and made Saul to reign there in Gilgal,
before the face of YAHWEH. And they
offered Sacrifices of peace offerings
there before YAHWEH. And Saul and
all the men of Israel greatly rejoiced
there.

Chapter 12

1 And Samuel said to all Israel,
Behold, I have heard your voice, to all
that you said to me, and I made a king
to reign over you.
2 And now, behold, the king is
walking before you, but I am old and
gray. And, behold, my sons, they are
with you. And I have walked before
your face from my youth until this day.
3 Behold, I am here! Testify against
me before YAHWEH and before His
anointed: Whose ox have I taken, and
whose donkey have I taken, and whom
have I offended? Whom have I
crushed, and from whose hand have I
taken a bribe that I might hide my eyes
with it; and I will give back to you.
4 And they said, You have not
oppressed us, and you have not
crushed us, and you have not taken
from the hand of any man. *(1Sam 8:3)*
5 And he said to them, YAHWEH is
witness against you, and His anointed
is witness this day, that you have not
found anything in my hand. And they
said, He is witness.
6 And Samuel said to the people, It is
YAHWEH who made Moses and
Aaron, and who caused your fathers to
go up from the land of Egypt.
7 And now stand, and I will contend
with you before the face of YAHWEH
regarding all the righteous acts of
YAHWEH which He did with you and
with your fathers.
8 When Jacob came into Egypt, and
your fathers cried to YAHWEH, then
YAHWEH sent Moses and Aaron; and
they brought your fathers out from
Egypt and made them dwell in this
place.
9 And they forgot YAHWEH their
Elohim. And He sold them into the
hand of Sisera, commander of the
army of Hazor, and into the hand of
the Philistines, and into the hand of
the king of Moab; and they fought
against them.
10 And they cried to YAHWEH and
said, We have sinned, for we forsook
YAHWEH and served the Baals and
the Ashtoroth, but now deliver us from
the hand of our enemies and we will
serve You.
11 And YAHWEH sent Jerubbaal,
and Bedan, and Jephthah, and
Samuel, and delivered you from the
hand of your enemies from all around;
and you lived in safety.
12 And you saw that Nahash the king
of the sons of Ammon came against
you, and you said to me, No, for a king
shall reign over us even though
YAHWEH your Elohim was king over
you.
13 And now, behold the king whom

you chose, whom you requested. And behold YAHWEH gave a king over you.

14 If you will fear[1] YAHWEH and serve Him, and listen to His voice, and do not rebel against the mouth of YAHWEH, then you, both you and also the king who reigns over you, shall follow YAHWEH your Elohim.

15 But if you will not listen to the voice of YAHWEH, and you rebel against the mouth of YAHWEH, then the hand of YAHWEH shall be against you and against your fathers.

16 Also, now present yourselves and see this great thing that YAHWEH will do before your eyes.

17 Is it not wheat harvest today? I will call to YAHWEH and He will give sounds and rain. And know and see that your evil is great, that which you have done in the eyes of YAHWEH, to ask a king for yourselves.[2]

18 And Samuel called to YAHWEH. And YAHWEH gave sounds and rain in that day. And all the people greatly feared YAHWEH and Samuel.

19 And all the people said to Samuel, Pray to YAHWEH your Elohim for your servants, that we may not die, for we have added this evil to all our sins to ask a king for ourselves.

20 And Samuel said to the people, Do not fear. You have done all this evil, only do not turn aside from following YAHWEH, and serve YAHWEH with all your heart.

21 And do not turn aside to go after worthless things which do not profit and do not deliver, for they are worthless.

22 For YAHWEH will not abandon His people, for the sake of His great name. For YAHWEH resolves to make you a people for Himself.

23 Also I, far be it from me from sinning against YAHWEH, from ceasing to pray for you. But I will instruct you in the good and the right way.

24 Only fear YAHWEH and serve Him in truth with all your heart, for seeing that He has done great things for you.

25 But if you still do evilly, both you and your king will be swept away.

Chapter 13

1 It was one year since Saul became king, then he reigned two more years over Israel.

2 And Saul chose for himself three thousand out of Israel. And two thousand were with Saul in Michmash, and in the hills of Bethel. And a thousand were with Jonathan in Gibeah of Benjamin. And he sent the rest of the people each to his tent.

3 And Jonathan struck the fort of the Philistines in Geba. And the Philistines heard. And Saul blew with the ram's horn throughout all the land, saying, Let the Hebrews hear.

4 And all Israel heard, saying, Saul has struck a fort of the Philistines; and also Israel has made himself stink to the Philistines. And all the people were called after Saul, to Gilgal.

5 And the Philistines gathered to fight with Israel, with thirty thousand chariots and six thousand horsemen, and people as the sand which is on the lip of the sea for multitude. And they came up and pitched in Michmash, east of Beth-Aven.

6 And the men of Israel saw that they were distressing to them, for the people were distressed. And the people hid themselves in caves, and in

[1] To fear: not only to minister to, but also to worship.

[2] Usually there is no rain at wheat harvest, so this was a sign and a warning as the rain could have destroyed the crop.

crevices, and in crags, and in tombs, and in cisterns.

7 And the Hebrews crossed over the Jordan to the land of Gad and Gilead. And Saul was still in Gilgal. And all the people followed him, trembling.

8 And he waited seven days, according to the set time with Samuel. But Samuel had not come to Gilgal; and the people were scattered from him.

9 And Saul said, Bring near to me the burnt offering and the peace offerings. And he offered up the burnt offering.[1]

10 And it happened, as soon as he finished the burnt offering, behold, Samuel came. And Saul went out to meet him, and to bless him.

11 And Saul said, Because I saw that the people were scattering from me, and you did not come in the days set out, and the Philistines were gathering at Michmash,

12 then I said, Now the Philistines will come down to me to Gilgal, and I have not sweetened the face of YAHWEH; and I forced myself, and offered a burnt offering.

13 And Samuel said to Saul, You have acted foolishly that you have not kept the command of YAHWEH your Elohim which He commanded you. For now YAHWEH would have established your kingdom over Israel forever.

14 But now your kingdom shall not stand. YAHWEH has sought out for Himself a man according to His own heart, and YAHWEH has appointed him as leader over His people. For you have not kept that which YAHWEH commanded you.[2]

15 And Samuel rose up and went up from Gilgal to Gibeah of Benjamin. And Saul numbered the people who were found with him, about six hundred men.

16 And Saul and his son Jonathan, and the people who were found with them, were staying in Gibeah of Benjamin; and the Philistines pitched in Michmash.

17 And the ones ravaging came out of the Philistine camp in three heads; one head turned to the way to Ophrah, to the land of Shual;

18 And another head turned the way to Beth-Horon. And another head turned to the way of the border looking down on the valley of Zeboim toward the wilderness.

19 And there was no iron smith found throughout all the land of Israel, for the Philistines said, Lest the Hebrews make swords or spears.

20 And all Israel went down to the Philistines, each man to sharpen his plowshare, and his mattock, and his axe, and his plowshare.

21 And the sharpening charge was a pim[3] for the plowshares, and for the mattocks, and for the three pronged forks, and for the axes, and for setting the plowshares.

22 And it happened in the day of battle that there was neither sword nor spear in the hand of any of the people with Saul and Jonathan. But one was found with Saul and with his son Jonathan.

23 And the fort of the Philistines went out to the pass of Michmash.

---

1 Saul was totally outside of Yahweh's judicial order by performing the sacrifice even though he was not a priest.

2 The consequences of poor decision making not only affects the person, but also all those around him. The tribe of Benjamin lost out on the kingly line due to Saul's pride and lack of repentant heart.

3 A pim was 2/3 of a shekel or ¼ ounce, or 8 grams.

Chapter 14

1 And the day came that Jonathan the son of Saul said to the young man bearing his armor, Come, and we will go over to the fort of the Philistines on the other side. But he did not tell his father.

2 And Saul was waiting at the edge of Gibeah, under the pomegranate in Migron; also the people with him, about six hundred men.

3 And Ahijah, the son of Ahitub, the brother of Ichabod, the son of Phinehas, the son of Eli the priest of YAHWEH in Shiloh, was wearing the ephod. And the people did not know that Jonathan had left.

4 And between the passes by which Jonathan sought to go over to the Philistine fort, there was a rocky crag on the one side, and the rocky crag opposite this; and the name of the one was Bozez, and the name of the other, Seneh.

5 The one crag was a pillar on the north in front of Michmash, and the one on the south in front of Gibeah.

6 And Jonathan said to the young man bearing his weapons, Come, we shall cross over to the fort of these uncircumcised ones. It may be YAHWEH will work for us, for there is no hindrance to YAHWEH, to save by many or by few.

7 And his armor bearer said to him, Do all that is in your heart; turn yourself. Behold, I am with you according to your heart.

8 And Jonathan said, Behold, we will cross over to the men and show ourselves to them.

9 If they say this to us, Stand still until we reach you, then we will stand in our place and not go up to them.

10 But if they say this, Come up to us, then we will go up, for YAHWEH has given them into our hand; and this will be the sign for us.

11 And both of them were revealed to the fort of the Philistines. And the Philistines said, See, Hebrews coming out from the holes there where they hid themselves!

12 And the men of the fort answered Jonathan and his armor bearer, and said, Come up to us, and we will teach you a thing. And Jonathan said to his armor bearer, Come up after me, for YAHWEH has given them into the hand of Israel.

13 And Jonathan went up on his hands and on his feet, and the armor bearer after him. And they fell before Jonathan, and the armor bearer made them die behind him.

14 And this was the first blow, when Jonathan and his armor bearer struck about twenty men in about half of a furrow of an acre of a field.

15 And there was trembling in the camp in the field, and among all the people; the fort and those ravaging trembled, even them. And the ground quaked, and it was for a trembling of Elohim.

16 And the watchmen of Saul in Gibeah of Benjamin looked; and behold, the multitude had melted away; and they went, even here and there.

17 And Saul said to the people with him, Make a count now and see who has gone from us. And they counted, and, behold, Jonathan and the armor bearer were not there.

18 And Saul said to Ahijah, Bring the ark of Elohim here, for the ark of Elohim was with the sons of Israel on that day.

19 And it happened while Saul spoke to the priest, that the turmoil which was in the camp, even the Philistines went on, going and increasing. And

Saul said to the priest, Withdraw your
hand.
20 And Saul and all the people with
him gathered together and went to the
battle. And, behold, every man's sword
was against his fellow, a very great
panic!
21 Then the Hebrews who were for
the Philistines before, who had gone
with them to the camp all around,
even they turned to be with Israel,
with Saul and Jonathan.
22 And all the men of Israel who had
been hiding themselves in the hills of
Ephraim heard that the Philistines had
fled. And they also pursued them in
battle.
23 And YAHWEH saved Israel that
day. And the battle passed over to
Beth-Aven.
24 And the men of Israel were
distressed on that day, for Saul took an
oath of the people, saying, Cursed
shall be the man who eats food until
the evening, when I have been
avenged on my foes. And none of the
people tasted food.
25 And all those of the land came
into a forest, and there was honey on
the ground.
26 And the people came into the
forest; and behold, a flow of honey!
But no man put his hand to his mouth,
for the people feared the oath.
27 And Jonathan did not hear when
his father made the people swear. And
he put out the tip of the staff in his
hand and dipped it into the
honeycomb. And he put his hand to
his mouth, and his eyes brightened.
28 And one of the people answered
and said, Swearing your father made
the people swear, saying, Cursed shall
be the man who eats food today. And
the people were weak.
29 And Jonathan said, My father has
troubled the land. See, now, that my
eyes became bright, for I tasted this
little honey.
30 How much more if the people
had eaten freely today of this spoil of
its enemies which it has found. For
now would not the blow among the
Philistines have been great?
31 And they struck the Philistines on
that day from Michmash to Aijalon,
and the people were very weak.
32 And the people fell on the spoil,
and took sheep, and oxen, and sons of
the herd, and slaughtered them to the
ground. And the people ate with the
blood.
33 And they told Saul, saying,
Behold, the people are sinning against
YAHWEH, to eat with the blood. And
he said, You have acted treacherously.
Now roll me a great stone today.
34 And Saul said, Disperse
yourselves among the people and say
to them, Each one bring his ox near to
me, and each his sheep, and you
slaughter here, and eat; and you shall
not sin against YAHWEH, to eat with
the blood. And each of all the people
brought near his ox in his hand that
night, and they slaughtered there.
35 And Saul built an altar to
YAHWEH. With it he began to build
an altar to YAHWEH.
36 And Saul said Let us go down
after the Philistines by night and
plunder them until the morning light,
and not a man remains among them.
And they said, Do all that is good in
your eyes. And the priest said, Let us
draw near here to Elohim.
37 And Saul asked of Elohim, Shall I
go down after the Philistines? Will You
give them into the hand of Israel? But
He did not answer him on that day.
38 And Saul said, All leaders of the
people draw near here, and know and
see how this sin has happened today.
39 For as YAHWEH lives, who
delivers Israel, surely if it is my son

Jonathan, surely he shall die. And no one answered him from all the people.
40 And he said to all Israel, You be on one side, and my son Jonathan and I will be on another side. And the people said to Saul, Do that which is good in your eyes.
41 And Saul said to YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, Give a perfect lot. And Jonathan and Saul were taken, and the people went out.
42 And Saul said, Cast between me and my son Jonathan. And Jonathan was taken.
43 And Saul said to Jonathan, Tell me, what did you do? And Jonathan told him, and said, I indeed tasted a little honey with the end of the staff in my hand. Behold, I! I will die.
44 And Saul said, Elohim do so and more also, for surely you shall die, Jonathan.
45 And the people said to Saul, Shall Jonathan die, he who did this great deliverance in Israel? Far be it! As YAHWEH lives, there shall not one hair of his head fall to the ground, for he has worked with Elohim this day. And the people rescued Jonathan, and he did not die.
46 And Saul went up from following the Philistines. And the Philistines went to their own place.
47 And Saul took the kingdom over Israel, and fought against all his enemies all around, with Moab, and with the sons of Ammon, and with Edom, and with the kings of Zobah, and with the Philistines, and wherever he turned, he put them to the worse.
48 And he acted with force and struck Amalek, and delivered Israel from the hand of their plunderers.
49 And the sons of Saul were Jonathan and Ishvi, and Malchishua; and his two daughters' names: the first-born's name was Merab; and the name of the younger, Michal.
50 And the name of Saul's wife was Ahinoam, the daughter of Ahimaaz. And the name of his army commander was Abner, the son of Ner, Saul's uncle.
51 And Kish was Saul's father, and Ner Abner's father was the son of Abiel.
52 And the war was strong against the Philistines all the days of Saul. And when Saul saw any mighty man, or any brave man, then he gathered him to himself.

Chapter 15

1 And Samuel said to Saul, YAHWEH sent me to anoint you king over His people, over Israel. And now listen to the voice of the words of YAHWEH.
2 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, I will visit Amalek with what he did to Israel, how he set himself against him in the way, when he came up from Egypt.
3 Now go, and you shall strike Amalek and destroy all that he has. And you shall have no pity on him, and you shall put to death all from man to woman, from little one to suckling, from ox to sheep, from camel to donkey.
4 And Saul listened and mustered the people in Telaim, two hundred thousand footmen, and ten thousand were men of Judah.
5 And Saul came to a city of Amalek, and lay in wait in a torrent-bed.
6 And Saul said to the Kenite, Go! Depart! Go out from the midst of Amalek, lest I destroy you with him. For you acted with kindness toward all the sons of Israel when they came up out of Egypt. And the Kenite departed from the midst of Amalek.
7 And Saul struck Amalek from

Havilah, as you go to Shur, which is before Egypt.

8 And he captured Agag the king of Amalek alive. But he exterminated all the people with the mouth of the sword.

9 And Saul and the people had pity on Agag, and on the best of the flock, and of the herd, and the seconds, and the lambs, and all that was good, and were not willing to exterminate them. But they exterminated every despised and worthless thing.

10 And the Word of YAHWEH was to Samuel, saying,

11 I repent that I made Saul reign as king, for he has turned back from following Me, and he has not risen to do My Words. And Samuel was angry, and he cried to YAHWEH all night.

12 And Samuel rose early to meet Saul in the morning. And it was told to Samuel, saying, Saul has come to Carmel. And behold, he has set up a place to himself, and has gone around, and has passed over and gone down to Gilgal.

13 And Samuel came to Saul. And Saul said to him, Blessed are you of YAHWEH. I have risen to do the Word of YAHWEH.

14 And Samuel said, What then is this noise of the flock in my ears, and the sound of the herd that I hear?

15 And Saul said, They have brought them from Amalek, because the people had pity on the best of the flock, and of the herd, in order to sacrifice to YAHWEH your Elohim. And the rest we have exterminated.

16 And Samuel said to Saul, Stop, and I will declare to you that which YAHWEH spoke to me tonight. And he said to him, Speak.

17 And Samuel said, Were you not, even you, little in your own eyes before becoming leader of the tribes of Israel? And YAHWEH anointed you as king over Israel.

18 And YAHWEH sent you on the way, and said, Go, and exterminate the sinners, Amalek; and fight against them until they finish them.

19 Why then did you not listen to the voice of YAHWEH? But did fly upon the spoil, and did the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH.

20 And Saul said to Samuel, I did obey the voice of YAHWEH, and I went in the way which YAHWEH sent me, and brought Agag the king of Amalek, and I exterminated Amalek.

21 And the people took from the spoil of the flock, and the first of the herd, that devoted, to sacrifice to YAHWEH your Elohim in Gilgal.

22 And Samuel said, Does YAHWEH delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as in obeying the voice of YAHWEH? Behold! Obeying is better than sacrifice; to give attention is better than the fat of rams.[1]

23 For rebellion is as the sin of divination;[2] and stubbornness is both iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the Word of YAHWEH, so He has rejected you from being king.

24 And Saul said to Samuel, I have sinned, for I have transgressed the mouth of YAHWEH and your word, because I feared the people, and I listened to their voice.

25 And now please lift up my sin, and return with me that I may worship YAHWEH.

26 And Samuel said to Saul, I will not return with you, for you have

---

1 Yahweh is looking for humble, obedient servants that will be loyal to Him throughout eternity. Faith is simply undying loyalty and to trust and obey YAHWEH under any circumstance.

2 Rebellion = bitterness and divination = sorcery or witchcraft.

rejected the Word of YAHWEH and YAHWEH has rejected you from being king over Israel.

27 And Samuel turned around to go. And he took hold on the edge of his robe[1], and it tore.

28 And Samuel said to him, YAHWEH has torn the kingdom of Israel from you today, and has given it to your neighbor who is better than you.

29 And also the Glory of Israel will not lie nor repent, for He is not a man that He should repent.

30 And he said, I have sinned. Honor me now, please, before the elders of my people, and before Israel, and return with me. And I shall worship YAHWEH your Elohim.

31 And Samuel turned back away from Saul, and Saul worshiped YAHWEH.

32 And Samuel said, Bring near to me Agag the king of Amalek. And Agag came to him cheerfully. And Agag said, Surely the bitterness of death has passed.

33 And Samuel said, As your sword has bereaved women of children, so shall your mother be bereft among women. And Samuel cut Agag in pieces before YAHWEH in Gilgal.

34 And Samuel went to Ramah, and Saul went to his house, to Gibeah of Saul.

35 And Samuel never again saw Saul until the day of his death, for Samuel mourned for Saul. And YAHWEH repented that He had caused Saul to reign over Israel.

Chapter 16

1 And YAHWEH said to Samuel, Until when will you mourn for Saul, for I have rejected him from reigning over Israel? Fill your horn with oil and go. I will send you to Jesse the Bethlehemite, for I have seen a king for Me among his sons.

2 And Samuel said, How can I go? When Saul hears, then he will kill me. And YAHWEH said, You shall take a heifer from the herd in your hand, and shall say, I have come to sacrifice to YAHWEH.

3 And you invite Jesse to the sacrifice. And I will make you know what you shall do. And you shall anoint for Me whomever I say to you.

4 And Samuel did what YAHWEH said, and came to Bethlehem. And the elders of the city trembled to meet him, and said, Do you come in peace?

5 And he said, Peace! I have come to sacrifice to YAHWEH. Sanctify yourselves and you shall come with me to the sacrifice. And he sanctified Jesse and his sons, and called them to the sacrifice.

6 And it happened as they came in, that he saw Eliab, and said, Surely before YAHWEH is His Messiah.

7 And YAHWEH said to Samuel, Do not look on his appearance, nor to the height of his stature, for I have rejected him. For man does not see what He sees. For man looks for the eyes, but YAHWEH looks for the heart.

8 And Jesse called to Abinadab, and he passed him before Samuel but he said, Also YAHWEH has not chosen this one.

9 And Jesse passed Shammah by, but he said, Also YAHWEH has not chosen this one.

10 And Jesse passed seven of his sons before Samuel, but Samuel said

---

1 This was the tzitzeet (tassel), which represents the authority of a male. By ripping his tzitzeet it showed that due to his lack of judicial order Saul's authority was being ripped away from him.

to Jesse, YAHWEH has not chosen among these.

11 And Samuel said to Jesse, Are these all the young men? And he said, There yet remains the youngest; and behold, he is feeding the flock. And Samuel said to Jesse, Send and bring him, for we will not sit until he comes here.

12 And he sent and brought him in. And he was ruddy, with beautiful eyes and good form. And YAHWEH said, Rise up, anoint him, for this is he.

13 And Samuel took the horn of oil and anointed him in the midst of his brothers. And the Spirit of YAHWEH came upon David from that day and onward. [1]And Samuel rose up and went to Ramah.

14 And the Spirit of YAHWEH departed from Saul, and a spirit of adversity from YAHWEH terrified him.

15 And Saul's servants said to him, Behold, now a spirit of adversity from Elohim is terrifying you.

16 Please let our master say to your servants before you, let them seek out a man who knows how to play on the harp. And it shall be, when the spirit of adversity from Elohim is upon you, then he shall play with his hand, and it shall be well with you.

17 And Saul said to his servants, Now look for a man who is good at playing for me, and bring him to me.

18 One of the servants answered and said, Behold, I have seen a son of Jesse the Bethlehemite who is skillful in playing, and a mighty warrior, and a man of battle, and skillful in speech, and a man of form. And YAHWEH is with him.

19 And Saul sent messengers to Jesse and said, Send your son David to me, who is with the flock.

20 And Jesse took a donkey, with bread, and a skin of wine, and one kid of the goats; and he sent by the hand of his son David to Saul.

21 And David came to Saul and stood before him. And he loved him greatly; and he became one who bore his armor for him.

22 And Saul sent to Jesse, saying, Please let David stand before me, for he has found grace in my eyes.

23 And it happened, when the spirit of adversity from Elohim was on Saul, then David would take the harp and play with his hand. And there was relief for Saul, and it was well with him. And the spirit of adversity would depart from him.

Chapter 17

1 And the Philistines[2] had gathered their armies for battle, and were gathered at Socoh which is to Judah. And they camped between Socoh and Azekah in Ephes-Dammim.

2 And Saul and the men of Israel were gathered, and camped in the valley of Elah. And they set the battle in order to meet the Philistines.

3 And the Philistines stood on the mountain on this side, and Israel stood on the mountain on that side, and the valley between them.

4 And a champion came out from the armies of the Philistines, Goliath was his name, from Gath; his height was six cubits and a span.

5 And a copper helmet was on his head, and he was clothed with scaled body armor; and the weight of the armor was five thousand shekels of copper.

---

[1] David had YHWH's Holy Spirit, Ps 51:11.

[2] The Philistines were an Indo-European, maritime people who invaded Egypt in the 12th century B.C. and were driven out and went to southwest Canaan, and other parts of the land, by this time they had a foothold on the whole southern portion of Israel.

6 And a covering of copper was on his legs, and a javelin of copper between his shoulders.

7 And the wood of his spear was like a weaver's beam; and the blade of his spear weighed six hundred shekels of iron. And the shield bearer went before him.

8 And he stood and called to the ranks of Israel, and said to them, Why do you come out to set in order the battle? Am I not the Philistine, and you Saul's servants? Choose one of yourselves, and let him come to me.

9 If he is able to fight with me and strike me, then we shall become slaves to you. But if I prevail over him, and strike him, then you shall become slaves to us and shall serve us.

10 And the Philistine said, I defy the ranks of Israel this day; give me a man, and we will fight together.

11 And Saul and all Israel heard these words of the Philistine. And they were dismayed and greatly afraid.

12 And David was the son of an Ephrathite of Bethlehem-Judah named Jesse. And to him were eight sons. And the man was old among men in the days of Saul.

13 And the three eldest sons of Jesse went out; they went after Saul to the battle. And the name of his three sons who went into the battle: Eliab, the first-born; and his second, Abinadab; and the third, Shammah.

14 And David was the youngest. And the three eldest had gone after Saul.

15 And David went and returned from Saul, to feed his father's flock at Bethlehem.

16 And the Philistine drew near morning and evening, and presented himself forty days.[1]

17 And Jesse said to his son David, Please take to your brothers an ephah of this roasted grain and these ten loaves, and run to the camp, to your brothers.

18 And you shall take these ten cuttings of cheese to the commander of the thousand, and you shall visit your brothers, as to their welfare. And you shall bring their token.

19 And Saul, and they, and all the men of Israel were in the valley of Elah, fighting with the Philistines.

20 And David rose up early in the morning and left the sheep with a keeper, and got up and went, as Jesse commanded him. And he came to the barricade, and to the army which was going out to the battle array. And they were shouting for battle.

21 And Israel and the Philistines set up in battle array for rank to meet rank.

22 And David left the goods on him into the hands of the keeper of the goods, and he ran to the army. And he came and asked his brothers of their welfare.

23 And as he was speaking to them, even, behold! The man between the two, Goliath the Philistine was his name, came up out of the ranks of the Philistines. And he spoke according to these words. And David heard.

24 And when they saw the man, all the men of Israel ran from him, and were very much afraid.

25 And the men of Israel said, Have you seen this man who comes up? For he has come to defy Israel. And it shall be, the man who strikes him, the king will enrich him with great riches, and he will give his daughter to him. And he will make his father's house free in Israel.

26 And David spoke to the men who were standing with him, saying, What shall be done to the man who strikes this Philistine, and turns aside reproach from Israel? For who is this

[1] 40 in scripture is the number of trial or overcoming.

uncircumcised Philistine that he
should reproach the armies of the
living Elohim?
27 And the people spoke to him
according to this word, saying, So shall
it be done to the man who strikes him.
28 And his eldest brother, Eliab,
heard when he spoke to the men. And
Eliab's anger glowed against David.
And he said, Why is it you have come
down? And with whom have you left
those few sheep in the wilderness? I
know your pride and the evil of your
heart, for you have come down to see
the battle.
29 And David said, What have I
done now? Was it not only a word?
30 And he turned around from him
to another and said according to this
word. And the people answered him a
word like the first word.
31 And the words which David had
spoken were heard. And they were told
before Saul, and he received him.
32 And David said to Saul, Let no
man's heart fail because of him. Your
servant will go and will fight with this
Philistine.
33 And Saul said to David, You are
not able to go to this Philistine, to fight
with him, for you are a youth, and he
is a man of war from his youth.
34 And David said to Saul, Your
servant has been a shepherd among
sheep for his father. And the lion
came, and the bear, and took away a
sheep out of the flock.
35 And I went out after him and
struck him, and delivered out of his
mouth. And he rose against me, and I
took hold of his beard and struck him,
and killed him.
36 Your servant has struck both the
lion and the bear, and this
uncircumcised Philistine shall be as
one of them, for he has taunted the
armies of the living Elohim.
37 And David said, YAHWEH, who
has delivered me out of the paw of the
lion, and out of the paw of the bear, He
shall deliver me from the hand of this
Philistine. And Saul said to David, Go,
and YAHWEH be with you.
38 And Saul clothed David with his
apparel, and put a copper helmet on
his head, and clothed him with body
armor.
39 And David girded his sword on
his apparel, and started to go. But he
had not tested these. And David said
to Saul, I am not able to go with these,
for I have not tested them. And David
took them off him.
40 And he took his staff in his hand,
and chose for himself five smooth
stones from the valley. And he put
them in the shepherd's bag which he
had, even in his pouch. And his sling
was in his hand, and he drew near to
the Philistine.
41 And the Philistine came on,
coming and drawing near to David;
and the shield bearer was before him.
42 And the Philistine looked, and he
saw David, and disdained him, for he
was a youth, even ruddy, with a
handsome form.
43 And the Philistine said to David,
Am I a dog that you have come to me
with sticks? And the Philistine cursed
David by his Elohim.
44 And the Philistine said to David,
Come to me, and I will give your flesh
to the birds of the heavens and to the
beasts of the field.
45 And David said to the Philistine,
You are coming to me with sword, and
with spear, and with javelin. But I am
coming to you in the name of
YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of the
armies of Israel, which you have
reproached.
46 Today YAHWEH shall shut you
up into my hand, and I shall strike
you, and take off your head from you
and give the carcasses of the Philistine

army to the birds of the heavens and to the beasts of the earth today. And all the earth shall know that there is an Elohim for Israel.

47 And all this company shall know that YAHWEH does not save by sword and by spear, but that the battle belongs to YAHWEH, and He has given you into our hand.

48 And it happened, when the Philistine arose and went, and drew near to meet David, David hurried and ran toward the ranks to meet the Philistine.

49 And David put his hand into the pouch and took a stone from there. And he slung it and struck the Philistine in his forehead. And the stone sank into his forehead, and he fell on his face to the earth.

50 And David was stronger than the Philistine with the sling and with the stone. And he struck the Philistine and killed him. And there was no sword in David's hand.

51 And David ran and stood over the Philistine, and took his sword; and he drew it out of its sheath and killed him. And he cut off his head with it. And the Philistines saw that their warrior was dead, and they fled.

52 And the men of Israel and Judah rose up and shouted, and pursued the Philistines until you enter the valley, even to the gates of Ekron. And the wounded of the Philistines fell in the way of Shaaraim, even to Gath, and to Ekron.

53 And the sons of Israel returned from hotly pursuing the Philistines; and they pillaged their camps.

54 And David took the head of the Philistine and brought it to Jerusalem; and he put his weapons in his own tent.

55 And when Saul saw David going out to meet the Philistine, he said to Abner, the army commander, Whose son is this youth, Abner? And Abner said, As your soul lives, O king, I do not know.

56 And the king said, You ask whose son this young man is.

57 And when David returned from striking the Philistine, then Abner took him and brought him before Saul; and the head of the Philistine was in his hand.

58 And Saul said to him, Whose son are you, boy? And David said, The son of your servant Jesse, the Bethlehemite.

Chapter 18

1 And it happened, when he finished speaking to Saul, the soul of Jonathan was knitted with the soul of David; and Jonathan loved him as his own soul.[1]

2 And Saul took him that day, and would not let him return to his father's house.

3 And Jonathan and David cut a covenant, because he loved him as his own soul.

4 And Jonathan stripped off the robe on him and gave it to David; also his apparel, even to his sword and to his bow and to his belt.

5 And David went out wherever Saul sent him. And he acted wisely. And Saul set him over the men of war. And it was good in the eyes of all the people, and also in the eyes of the servants of Saul.

6 And it happened as they came in, as David returned from striking the Philistine, the women came out from all the cities of Israel to sing with the dancers, to meet Saul the king with tambourines and with joy and three-stringed instruments.

1 Jonathan and David's relationship is one of the greatest examples in scripture of a true, covenant friendship.

7 And the women who were playing
answered and said, Saul has slain his
thousands, but David his ten
thousands.
8 And it very much burned Saul, and
this thing was evil in his eyes. And he
said, They have given ten thousands to
David, and to me they have given
thousands. And is there more to him,
except the kingdom?
9 And from that day forward Saul
was watching David.
10 And on the next day it happened
that the spirit of adversity from
Elohim came on Saul. And he
prophesied in the midst of the house;
and David was playing with his hand,
as he did day by day. And Saul's spear
was in his hand.
11 And Saul threw the spear, and
said, I will strike David, even to the
wall. And David twice drew back from
his face.
12 And Saul feared David, because
YAHWEH was with him, and had
departed from Saul.
13 And Saul separated him from
himself and set him as his commander
over a thousand. And he went out and
came in before the people.
14 And David acted wisely in all his
ways, and YAHWEH was with him.
15 And Saul saw that he was acting
wisely, and was afraid of him.
16 And all Israel and Judah loved
David, for he went out and came in
before them.
17 And Saul said to David, Behold
my elder daughter Merav! I will give
her to you for a wife; only, you be a
brave son for me and fight the battles
of YAHWEH. And Saul said, Let not
my hand be on him, but let the hand of
the Philistines be on him.
18 And David said to Saul, Who am
I, and what is my life, and the family of
my father in Israel, that I should be
son-in-law to the king?
19 And it happened at the time Saul
was to give his daughter Merav to
David, she was given to Adriel the
Meholathite for a wife.
20 And Saul's daughter Michal loved
David. And they told Saul, and the
thing was right in his eyes.
21 And Saul said, I will give her to
him, and she shall be a snare to him.
And the hand of the Philistines shall
be on him. And Saul said to David a
second time, You shall be my son-in-
law today.
22 And Saul commanded his
servants, Speak to David secretly,
saying, Behold the king delights in
you, and all his servants love you. And
now, be son-in-law to the king.
23 And Saul's servants spoke these
words in David's ears. And David said,
Is it a light thing in your eyes to be
son-in-law to the king? And I am a
poor man, and lightly esteemed.
24 And Saul's servants spoke to him,
saying, David has spoken according to
these words.
25 And Saul said, So you shall say to
David, There is no delight to the king
in dowry, but in a hundred foreskins of
the Philistines, to be avenged on the
king's enemies. And Saul thought to
cause David to fall by the hand of the
Philistines.
26 And his servants told David these
words. And the thing was right in
David's eyes, to be son-in-law to the
king. And the days had not been
fulfilled.
27 And David rose up and went out,
he and his men. And they struck two
hundred men of the Philistines. And
David brought their foreskins, and he
gave them in full to the king, in order
to be son-in-law to the king. And Saul
gave him his daughter Michal for a
wife.
28 And Saul saw and knew that

YAHWEH was with David, and that Saul's daughter Michal loved him.

29 And Saul was still more afraid of David. And Saul was an enemy to David continually.

30 And the rulers of the Philistines came out. And it happened from the time they came out, David acted more wisely than all the servants of Saul. And His name was greatly esteemed.

Chapter 19

1 And Saul spoke to his son Jonathan, and to all his servants, to kill David.

2 And Saul's son Jonathan delighted exceedingly in David. And Jonathan told David, saying, My father Saul is seeking to kill you. And, now, please be on guard in the morning, and you shall stay in the secret place, and shall hide.

3 And I, I will go out and will stand by my father's side in the field where you are. And I will speak of you to my father, and shall see what it is, and will tell you.

4 And Jonathan spoke good of David to his father Saul, and said to him, Do not let the king sin against his servant, against David, because he has not sinned against you; also because his works for you are very good.

5 Yea, he has put his life in his hand and killed the Philistine. And YAHWEH worked a great deliverance for all Israel. You saw it and rejoiced. And why do you sin against innocent blood, to put David to death for no reason?

6 And Saul listened to Jonathan's voice, and Saul swore, As YAHWEH lives he shall not die.

7 And Jonathan called David, and Jonathan told him all these words. And Jonathan brought David to Saul, and he was before him as yesterday and the day before.

8 And there was war again. And David went out and fought against the Philistines, and struck among them with a great slaughter. And they fled from his face.

9 And the spirit of adversity from YAHWEH was on Saul. And he was sitting in his house, and his spear in his hand. And David was playing with the hand.

10 And Saul tried to strike with the spear through David and through the wall. But he burst forth from Saul's presence. And he struck the spear through the wall. And David fled, and escaped during that night.

11 And Saul sent messengers to David's house to watch him, and to kill him in the morning. And his wife Michal told David, saying, If you do not escape with your life tonight, tomorrow you will be killed.

12 And Michal made David go down through the window. And he went, and fled, and escaped.

13 And Michal took an image and laid it on the bed; and she put the quilt of goat's hair at his head-place, and covered with a spread.

14 And Saul sent messengers to take David. And she said, He is sick.

15 And Saul sent the messengers to see David, saying, Bring him up to me in the bed, to kill him.

16 And the messengers came in. And, behold, the image was on the bed, and the quilt of goat's hair was at his head-place.

17 And Saul said to Michal, Why have you deceived me this way, that you have sent away my enemy, and he has escaped? And Michal said to Saul, He said to me, Send me away; why should I kill you?

18 And David fled, and escaped, and came to Samuel at Ramah, and told

him all that Saul had done to him. And
he went, he and Samuel, and they lived
in Naioth.
19 And it was told to Saul, saying,
Behold, David is in Naioth in Ramah.
20 And Saul sent messengers to take
David. And they saw the assembly of
the prophets prophesying, and Samuel
standing as head over them. And the
Spirit of Elohim came on Saul's
messengers, and they also prophesied.
21 And they told Saul, and he sent
other messengers. And they also
prophesied. And again Saul sent
messengers, a third time. And they
also prophesied.
22 And he went, he also, to Ramah,
and came to the great well in Sechu.
And Saul asked and said, Where are
Samuel and David? And one said,
Behold, in Naioth in Ramah.
23 And he went there, to Naioth in
Ramah, and the Spirit of Elohim was
on him, him also. And going on, he
went and prophesied until he came
into Naioth in Ramah.
24 And he stripped off his garments,
he also, and he prophesied before
Samuel, even he. And he fell down
disrobed all that day and all that night.
Because of this they say, Is Saul also
among the prophets?

Chapter 20

1 And David fled from Naioth in
Ramah, and came and said before
Jonathan, What have I done? What is
my iniquity, and what is my sin before
your father, that he is seeking my life?
2 And he said to him, Far be it! You
shall not die. Behold, my father shall
not do anything great or small, and
not reveal it to my ear. And why
should my father hide this thing from
me? It is not so.
3 And David again swore and said,
Your father has certainly known that I
have found grace in your eyes; and he
said, Do not let Jonathan know this,
that he not be grieved. And yet, as
YAHWEH lives, and your soul lives,
there is only a step between me and
death.
4 And Jonathan said to David, What
your soul may say, I also will do for
you.
5 And David said to Jonathan,
Behold, the new moon is tomorrow.
And sitting I should certainly sit with
the king to eat. And you shall send me
away, and I shall be hidden in the field
until the third evening.
6 If looking your father looks for me,
then you shall say, David asked
earnestly of me to run to his city Beth-
Lehem; for the yearly sacrifice is there
for all the family.
7 If he shall say so, Good! Peace shall
be for your servant. But if it burns him
greatly, know that evil has been
determined by him.
8 And you shall do kindness to your
servant, for you have brought your
servant with you into a covenant of
YAHWEH. And if there is iniquity in
me, you kill me. For why is this, that
you bring me to your father?
9 And Jonathan said, Far be it from
you! For if I knew with certainty that
evil was determined by my father to
come on you, would I not tell it to you?
10 Then David said to Jonathan,
Who shall tell me? Or what if your
father answers harshly?
11 And Jonathan said to David,
Come, and we shall go out to the field;
and both of them went out to the field.
12 And Jonathan said to David,
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel be
witness when I search my father about
this time tomorrow, or the third day,
and behold, there is good toward
David and I do not send to you and do
not reveal it in your ear,
13 so may YAHWEH do to Jonathan

and do much more than this. If it
should seem good to my father to do
evil to you, then I will reveal it in your
ear and send you away. And you shall
go in peace; and may YAHWEH be
with you, as He was with my father.
14 And not only while I live, even
you shall do with me the kindness of
YAHWEH, that I not die,
15 but you shall not cut off your
kindness from my house forever, not
even when YAHWEH cuts off the
enemies of David, each one from off
the face of the earth.
16 And Jonathan covenanted with
the house of David, that YAHWEH
should seek it from the hand of
David's enemies.
17 And Jonathan again made David
swear, because he loved him; for he
loved him as he loved his own soul.
18 And Jonathan said to him,
Tomorrow is the new moon, and you
shall be expected, for your seat will be
empty.
19 And on the third day you shall
quickly come down, and shall come
there to the place where you were
hidden in the day of the deed. And you
shall remain near the stone Ezel.
20 And I will shoot three arrows to
the side, shooting at a mark for myself.
21 And, behold, I shall send a boy,
saying, Find the arrows! If I expressly
say to the boy, Behold, the arrows are
on this side of you, take them; then
you come, for peace shall be to you,
and there is nothing, as YAHWEH
lives.
22 But if I say to the young man,
Behold, the arrows are away from you
and onwards; go, for YAHWEH has
sent you away.
23 As to the thing which we have
spoken, you and I; behold, YAHWEH
is between you and me forever.
24 And David was hidden in the
field. And it was the new moon. And
the king sat down by the food to eat.
25 And the king sat on his seat, as
from time to time, on the seat by the
wall. And Jonathan rose up, and
Abner sat at Saul's side. And David's
place was empty.
26 But Saul did not say anything on
that day, for he said, It is an accident;
he is not clean; he is surely not clean.
27 And it happened on the day after
the new moon, David's place was
empty. And Saul said to his son
Jonathan, Why has the son of Jesse
not come to the meal, either yesterday
or today?
28 And Jonathan answered Saul,
David earnestly asked of me to go to
Bethlehem.
29 And he said, Please send me
away, for we have a family sacrifice in
the city, and my brother commanded
me. And now, if I have found favor in
your eyes, please let me be released,
and to see my brothers. So he has not
come to the table of the king.
30 And the anger of Saul glowed
against Jonathan. And he said to him,
Son of a perverse rebelliousness! Do I
not know that you have chosen the son
of Jesse to your shame, and to the
shame of the nakedness of your
mother?
31 For as long as the son of Jesse
lives on earth you shall not be
established, you and your kingdom.
And now send and bring him to me,
for he is a son of death.
32 And Jonathan answered his
father Saul, and said to him, Why
should he die? What has he done?
33 And Saul threw the spear at him,
to strike him. And Jonathan knew that
it had been determined by his father to
kill David.
34 And Jonathan rose up from the
table in the heat of anger. And he did
not eat food on the second day of the

new moon, for he was grieved for
David. For his father had put him to
shame.
35 And it happened in the morning
that Jonathan went out in the field for
the meeting with David. And a little
boy was with him.
36 And he said to the boy, Now run
and find the arrow which I am
shooting. The boy ran, and he shot the
arrow, causing it to pass over him.
37 And the boy came to the place of
the arrow which Jonathan had shot.
And Jonathan called after the boy and
said, Is the arrow not away from you
and onwards?
38 And Jonathan called after the
boy, Hurry, make haste, do not stand!
And Jonathan's boy gathered the
arrow and came to his master.
39 And the boy did not know
anything. Only Jonathan and David
knew the matter.
40 And Jonathan gave his weapons
to the boy with him, and said to him,
Go, bring them to the city.
41 The boy left, and David rose up
from the south side. And he fell on his
face to the ground. And he bowed
three times. And they each one kissed
his friend. And they each wept on his
friend, until David was overcome.
42 And Jonathan said to David, Go
in peace, because we have sworn, the
two of us, in the name of YAHWEH,
saying, YAHWEH shall be between
you and me, and between my seed and
your seed forever. And he rose up and
went. And Jonathan went into the city.

Chapter 21

1 And David came to Nob, to
Ahimelech the priest. And Ahimelech
trembled at meeting David, and said to
him, Why are you by yourself, and no
man with you?
2 And David said to Ahimelech the
priest, The king has commanded me a
matter; and he said to me, Do not let a
man know anything of the matter
about which I am sending you, and
which I told you. And I have directed
the young men to such and such a
place.
3 And now, what is there under your
hand? Give five loaves into my hand,
or whatever is found.
4 And the priest answered David and
said, There is no common bread under
my hand, but only holy bread, if the
young men have only been kept from a
woman.
5 And David answered the priest and
said to him, Surely, a woman has been
kept from us as yesterday and the
third day, since I came out, and the
vessels of the young men are holy. And
in a way the holy bread is common;
also surely today it is sanctified in the
vessels.
6 And the priest gave the holy bread
to him, for there was no bread there
except the Bread of the Presence
which is taken from the presence of
YAHWEH in order to put hot bread in
on the day it is taken away.
7 And a man was there on that day,
of the servants of Saul, detained before
YAHWEH. And his name was Doeg
the Edomite, the chief of Saul's
shepherds.
8 And David said to Ahimelech, Is
there not here under your hand a
spear or sword? For I have taken
neither my sword or my weapons, for
the king's matter was urgent.
9 And the priest said, The sword of
Goliath the Philistine, whom you
struck in the valley of Elah; behold, it
is wrapped in the cloak behind the
ephod. If you desire, take it for
yourself; for there is no other here
except it. And David said, There is
none like it. Give it to me.
10 And David rose up and fled from

the face of Saul on that day, and he came to Achish the king of Gath.

11 And the servants of Achish said to him, Is this not David the king of the land? Is it not of this one they sang in dances, saying, Saul killed his thousands, and David his myriads?

12 And David put these words in his heart, and was very much afraid of the face of Achish the king of Gath.

13 And he changed his behavior before their eyes, and pretended himself to be insane in their hand, and scribbled on the doors of the gate, and let his spittle fall onto his beard.

14 And Achish said to his servants, Behold, you see the man is showing madness. Why do you bring him to me?

15 Am I in need of madmen that you have brought this one in to show madness beside me? Shall this one come into my house?

Chapter 22

1 And David left there and escaped to the cave of Adullam. And his brothers heard, and all his father's house, and they went down to him there.

2 And every man in distress, and every man who had a creditor, and every man bitter of soul, gathered themselves to him. And he became commander over them. And about four hundred men were with him.

3 And David went from there to Mizpeh of Moab. And he said to the king of Moab, Please let my father and my mother come and be with you, until I know what Elohim will do to me.

4 And he settled them before the king of Moab; and they lived with him all the days David was in the stronghold.

5 And Gad the prophet said to David, You shall not remain in the stronghold. Go, and you come into the land of Judah. And David left and came into the forest of Hareth.

6 And Saul heard that David had been discovered, and the men with him. And Saul was staying in Gibeah under the tamarisk tree in Ramah, with his spear in his hand. And all his servants were standing by him.

7 And Saul said to his servants who were standing by him, Now hear, Benjamites. Will the son of Jesse also give to any of you fields and vineyards? Will he make each of you commanders of thousands and commanders of hundreds,

8 that all of you have conspired against me, and no one was revealing in my ear when my son cut a covenant with the son of Jesse? And not one of you is sorry for me, even to reveal in my ear that my son has stirred up my servant against me, to lie in wait, as at this day.

9 And Doeg the Edomite, even he was set over Saul's servants, answered and said, I saw the son of Jesse coming to Nob, to Ahimelech the son of Ahitub.

10 And he asked for him of YAHWEH, and gave provisions to him, and gave him the sword of Goliath the Philistine.

11 And the king sent to call Ahimelech the priest, the son of Ahitub, and all his father's house, the priests in Nob. And they came, all of them, to the king.

12 And Saul said, Now hear, son of Ahitub. And he said, I am here, my master.

13 And Saul said to him, Why have you conspired against me, you and the son of Jesse by your giving bread and a sword to him, and to ask of Elohim for him, to rise up against me, to lie in wait, as at this day?

14 And Ahimelech answered the king

and said, And who among all your servants is as David the faithful, and son-in-law of the king; who does your bidding, and is honorable in all your house?

15 Have I today begun to ask of Elohim for him? Far be it from me! Do not let the king lay anything against his servant, against any of my father's house, for your servant has known nothing of this, more or less.

16 And the king said, surely you shall die, Ahimelech, you and your father's house.

17 And the king said to the runners that stood by him, Turn and kill the priests of YAHWEH, because their hand also is with David, and because they knew that he was fleeing, and did not reveal it in my ear. But the king's servants were not willing to put forth their hand to fall on the priests of YAHWEH.

18 And the king said to Doeg, You turn and fall on the priests. And Doeg the Edomite turned and fell on the priests and killed eighty five men bearing a linen ephod in that day.

19 And he struck Nob, the city of the priests with the mouth of the sword, from man even to woman, from child even to suckling, and ox, and donkey, and sheep, with the mouth of the sword.

20 And one son escaped of Ahimelech the son of Ahitub. And his name was Abiathar, and he fled after David.

21 And Abiathar told David that Saul had killed the priests of YAHWEH.

22 And David said to Abiathar, I knew on that day when Doeg the Edomite was there, that he certainly would tell Saul. I am turned to grief for every life of the house of your father.

23 Stay with me. Do not fear. For he who seeks my life seeks your life. For with me you will be under protection.

Chapter 23

1 And they spoke to David, saying, Behold, the Philistines are fighting against Keilah, and they are plundering the threshing floors.

2 And David asked of YAHWEH, saying, Shall I go? And shall I strike against these Philistines? And YAHWEH said to David, Go, and you shall strike the Philistines and save Keilah.

3 And David's men said to him, Behold, we are afraid here in Judah; and how shall we go to Keilah to the armies of the Philistines?

4 And David once again inquired of YAHWEH. And YAHWEH answered him and said, Rise up, go down to Keilah, for I have given the Philistines into your hand.

5 And David and his men went to Keilah, and fought with the Philistines, and led away their livestock, and killed among them with a great blow. And David saved those living in Keilah.

6 And it happened, when Abiathar the son of Ahimelech fled to David, near Keilah, an ephod came down in his hand.

7 And it was told to Saul that David had come to Keilah. And Saul said, Elohim has estranged him into my hand. For he is shut in, to enter into a city of gates and a bar.

8 And Saul heard and called all the people to battle, to go down to Keilah, to lay siege to David and to his men.

9 But David knew that Saul was devising evil against him. And he said to Abiathar the priest, Bring the ephod near.

10 And David said, O YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, Your servant has surely heard that Saul seeks to come to Keilah to destroy the city because of me.

11 Will the masters of Keilah shut me up into his hand? Will Saul come down as Your servant has heard? I pray You, YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, tell your servant. And YAHWEH said, He will come down.

12 And David said, Will the masters of Keilah shut me and my men up into Saul's hand? And YAHWEH said, They will shut you up.

13 And David and his men, about six hundred men, rose up and left Keilah, and went wherever they could go. And it was told to Saul that David had escaped from Keilah. And he ceased to go out.

14 And David stayed in the wilderness, in the strongholds. And he stayed in the hill, in the wilderness of Ziph. And Saul sought him all his days. And Elohim did not give him into his hand.

15 And David saw that Saul had come out to seek his life; and David was in the wilderness of Ziph, in the forest.

16 And Jonathan the son of Saul rose up and went out to David, to the forest. And he made his hand strong in Elohim,

17 and said to him, Do not fear, for the hand of my father Saul shall not find you; and you shall reign over Israel; and I shall be second to you. And my father Saul knows it is so.

18 And they cut a covenant, both of them, before YAHWEH. And David stayed in the forest, and Jonathan went to his house.

19 And the men of Ziph went to Saul, to Gibeah, saying, Is not David hiding himself with us in strongholds, in the forest, in the hill of Hachilah, which is south of the wilderness?

20 And now, come down according to all the desires of your soul, O king. Come down, and our duty is to deliver him up into the king's hand.

21 And Saul said, You are blessed of YAHWEH, for you have had pity on me.

22 Please go, make yet more sure, and know, and see his place where his foot is; who has seen him there, for one has said to me, He is being very crafty.

23 And see and know of all the hiding places where he hides himself. And you shall return to me ready, and I shall go with you, and it shall be, if he is in the land, that I shall search him out through all the thousands of Judah.

24 And they rose up and went to Ziph before Saul. But David and his men were in the wilderness of Maon, in the Arabah on the south of the desert.

25 And Saul and his men went to search. And they told David. And he went down to the rock, and stayed in the wilderness of Maon. And Saul heard, and pursued David in the wilderness of Maon.

26 And Saul went on this side of the mountain, and David and his men on that side of the mountain. And David was hurrying to go away from the face of Saul. And Saul and his men were encircling David and his men, to catch them.

27 And a messenger came to Saul, saying, Hurry, and come, for the Philistines have made a raid on the land.

28 And Saul turned back from pursuing David, and went to meet the Philistines. On account of this they have called that place, The Rock of the Division.

29 And David went up from there and stayed in the strongholds at En-Gedi.

Chapter 24

1 And it happened, when Saul had returned from after the Philistines, they told him, saying, Behold, David is in the wilderness of En-Gedi.

2 And Saul took three thousand chosen men out of all Israel, and went to seek David and his men on the front of the rocks of the wild goats.

3 And on the way he came in to the folds of the flock. And there was a cave. And Saul went in to cover his feet.[1] And David and his men were staying in the recesses of the cave.

4 And David's men said to him, Behold, the day of which YAHWEH said to you, Behold, I will deliver your enemy into your hand, and you shall do to him as it is good in your eyes. But David rose up and quietly cut off the tassel of Saul's robe.

5 And it happened afterward, the heart of David struck him, because he had cut off Saul's tassel.

6 And he said to his men, Far be it from me, by YAHWEH. I shall not do this thing to my master, to the anointed of YAHWEH, to put out my hand against him. For he is the anointed of YAHWEH.

7 And David held back his men by words, and did not allow them to rise up against Saul. And Saul rose up from the cave and went in the way.

8 And David rose up afterward and went out from the cave and called after Saul, saying, My master the king! And Saul looked behind him. And David was bowing face to the earth and prostrated himself.

9 And David said to Saul, Why do you listen to the words of man, saying, Behold, David seeks to do you evil?

10 See, this day your eyes have seen how YAHWEH has delivered you today into my hand in the cave. And one said to kill you, but I had pity on you. And I said, I shall not put out my hand against my master, for he is the anointed of YAHWEH.

11 And my father, behold! Yes, see the tassel of your robe in my hand. For in that I cut off the tassel of your robe, and did not kill you, know and see that there is neither evil nor transgression in my hand, and I have not sinned against you. Yet you are lying in wait for my soul, to take it.

12 YAHWEH shall judge between you and me, and YAHWEH shall avenge me of you. But my hand shall not be on you.

13 As the proverb of the ancients says, Wickedness proceeds from the wicked. But my hand shall not be on you.

14 After whom has the king of Israel come out? After whom are you pursuing? After a dead dog? After a flea?

15 Yea, YAHWEH shall be judge, and shall judge between you and me. Yea, He shall see and contend for my cause, and shall deliver me out of your hand.[2]

16 And it happened, when David finished speaking these words to Saul, Saul said, Is this your voice, my son David? And Saul lifted up his voice and wept.

17 And he said to David, You are more righteous than I. For you have done good to me, and I have rewarded you with evil.

18 And you have today shown that you have dealt well with me, in that YAHWEH shut me up into your hand, and you did not kill me.

19 For if a man finds his enemy, will

---

[1] Saul was relieving himself.

[2] One does not need to take matters into his own hands but to simply trust in YHWH who will avenge those who fight against His elect.

he let him go on his way well? And YAHWEH will repay you good for that which you have done to me today.
20 And now, behold, I know that you shall certainly reign, and the kingdom of Israel shall be established in your hand.
21 And now, swear to me by YAHWEH that you shall not cut off my seed after me, nor shall you destroy my name from the house of my father.
22 And David swore to Saul. And Saul went to his house, and David and his men went up into the stronghold.

Chapter 25

1 And Samuel died, and all Israel was gathered, and mourned for him. And they buried him in his house, in Ramah. And David rose up and went down to the wilderness of Paran.
2 And a certain man was in Maon, and his work was in Carmel. And the man was very great, and there were three thousand sheep and a thousand goats to him. And he was shearing his flock in Carmel.
3 And the man's name was Nabal, and his wife's name, Abigail. And the woman was of good understanding, and beautiful of form. And the man was cruel and evil in his dealings. And He was a Calebite.
4 And David heard in the wilderness that Nabal was shearing his flock.
5 And David sent ten young men, and David said to the young men, Go up to Carmel, and you shall come to Nabal and ask him of his welfare in my name.
6 And say this, Long life and peace to you! And peace to your house, and peace to all that you have.
7 And now, I have heard that you have shearers. And your shepherds have been with us; we have not shamed them, nor was anything missing to them all the days they were in Carmel.
8 Ask your young men, and they will tell you. And may the young men find favor in your eyes, for we have come at a good day. Please give that which your hand finds to your servants, and to your son, to David.
9 And the young men of David came and spoke to Nabal according to all these words, in the name of David, and rested.
10 And Nabal answered David's servants and said, Who is David, and who the son of Jesse? The servants have multiplied today who have broken away from his master.
11 And shall I take my bread, and my water, and my meat which I have killed for my shearers, and give to men whom I have not known, from where they are?
12 And the young men of David turned to their way, and returned and came and told him according to all these words.
13 And David said to his men, Each man gird on his sword. And David also girded on his sword. And about four hundred men went up after David and two hundred stayed by the baggage.
14 And one young man of the youths told Abigail the wife of Nabal, saying, Behold, David has sent messengers out of the wilderness to bless our master, and he screamed at them.
15 And the men were good to us, and have not shamed us, and we have not missed anything all the days we have gone up and down with them when we were in the field.
16 They have been a wall to us both by day and by night, all the days we have been with them, feeding the flock.
17 And now, know and consider what you should do; for evil has been

determined against our master, and on
all his house. And he is a son of
worthlessness, no one can speak to
him.
18 And Abigail hurried and took two
hundred loaves, and two skins of wine,
and five prepared sheep, and five
measures of roasted grain, and a
hundred bunches of raisins, and two
hundred cakes of figs. And she set
them on the donkeys.
19 And she said to her young men,
Pass on before me. Behold, I am
coming after you. But she did not tell
her husband Nabal.
20 And it happened she was riding
on the donkey and coming down by
the cover of the mountain. And,
behold, David and his men were
coming down to meet her; and she met
them.
21 And David had said, Surely, in
vain I have guarded all that belongs to
this fellow in the wilderness, so that
not anything was missed of all that
was his. And he has returned to me
evil for good.
22 So may Elohim do to the enemies
of David, and may He do more so, if I
leave any of all that is to him to the
light of the morning, of one who
urinates against a wall.
23 And Abigail saw David, and she
hurried, and she dismounted from the
donkey and fell on her face before
David and bowed to the earth.
24 And she fell at his feet and said,
On me, even me, my master, be the
iniquity. And please, let your
handmaid speak in your ears; and hear
the words of your handmaid.
25 Please, do not let my master set
his heart toward this man of
worthlessness, on Nabal. For as his
name is, so is he. Nabal is his name,
and foolishness is with him. And I,
your handmaid, did not see the young
men of my master whom you sent.
26 And now, my master, as
YAHWEH lives, and as your soul
lives, in that YAHWEH has withheld
you from coming in with blood, and
delivering your hand for you; even
now let your enemies be as Nabal,
even those seeking evil to my master.
27 And now this blessing which your
handmaid has brought to my master,
even let it be given to the young men
who go after my master.
28 Please, bear with the sin of your
handmaid, for YAHWEH shall
certainly make a sure house for my
master. For my master has fought the
battles of YAHWEH, and evil has not
been found in you all your days.
29 And if a man rises up to pursue
you and to seek your soul, the soul of
my master will be bound up in the
bundle of life with YAHWEH your
Elohim; and the souls of your enemies,
He shall sling them from the hollow of
the sling.
30 And it shall be, when YAHWEH
does to my master according to all the
good which He has spoken concerning
you, and has commanded you to be
ruler over Israel,
31 that this shall not be for a cause of
staggering, or of stumbling of heart to
my master, either to shed blood for
nothing, or that my master saved
himself. And may YAHWEH do good
to my master, and you remember your
handmaid.
32 And David said to Abigail,
Blessed is YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel, who has sent you to meet me
today.
33 And blessed is your discernment.
And blessed are you in that you have
kept me from coming in with blood
this day, and from delivering myself
with my own hand.
34 And, indeed, as YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel lives, who has kept
me back from doing evil to you, for

unless you had hurried and had come
to meet me, surely there would not
have been left to Nabal one who
urinates against the wall till the light
of morning.
35 And David received from her
hand what she had brought to him.
And he said to her, Go in peace to your
house. See, I have heard your voice,
and have accepted your face.
36 And Abigail came to Nabal. And,
behold, he was at a feast in his house,
like the feast of the king. And Nabal's
heart felt good within him, and he was
drunk to excess. And she did not tell
him a word, more or less, until the
light of the morning.
37 And it happened in the morning,
when the wine had gone out of Nabal,
his wife told him these things. And his
heart died within him, and he became
like a stone.
38 And it happened about ten days
later, YAHWEH struck Nabal and he
died.
39 And David heard that Nabal had
died, and said, Blessed be YAHWEH
who has contended for the cause of my
reproach from the hand of Nabal; and
His servant has been kept back from
evil. And YAHWEH has caused the
evil doing of Nabal to return on his
head. And David sent and spoke with
Abigail, to take her to himself for a
wife.
40 And David's servants came to
Abigail at Carmel, and spoke to her,
saying, David has sent us to you to
take you to him for a wife.
41 And she rose up and bowed her
face to the earth, and said, Behold, let
your handmaid be a servant to wash
the feet of the servants of my master.
42 And Abigail hurried and arose
and rode on a donkey, and five of her
young women following her. And she
went after David's messengers. And
she became a wife to him.
43 And David had taken Ahinoam
from Jezreel. And they became, even
both of them, wives to him.
44 And Saul gave his daughter
Michal, David's wife, to Phalti the son
of Laish, who was of Gallim.

Chapter 26

1 And the men of Ziph came to Saul,
to Gibeah, saying, Is not David hiding
himself in the hill of Hachilah, on the
face of the desert?
2 And Saul rose up and went down to
the wilderness of Ziph, and three
thousand men were with him, chosen
ones of Israel, to seek David in the
wilderness of Ziph.
3 And Saul camped in the hill of
Hachilah which is on the face of the
desert, by the highway. And David was
staying in the wilderness. And he saw
that Saul had come after him into the
wilderness.
4 And David sent spies, and he knew
that Saul had certainly come to
Nachon.
5 And David rose up and came to the
place where Saul camped. And David
saw the place where Saul lay down.
And Abner the son of Ner, his army
commander, and Saul were lying
within the barricade. And the people
were camping all around him.
6 And David answered and said to
Ahimelech the Hittite, and to Abishai
the son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother,
saying, Who shall go down with me to
Saul, to the camp? And Abishai said, I
will go down with you.
7 And David and Abishai came to the
people by night. And, behold, Saul was
lying down, sleeping within the
barricade. And his spear was stuck
into the earth at his head-place. And
Abner and all the people were lying all
around him.
8 And Abishai said to David, Elohim

has shut up your enemy into your hand today. And now please let me strike him with a spear, even to the earth one time, and I will not repeat it to him.
9 And David said to Abishai, Do not destroy him. For who shall put forth his hand against the anointed of YAHWEH and be guiltless?
10 And David said, As YAHWEH lives, except YAHWEH strike him, or his day shall come and he dies, or he goes down and is devoured in battle,
11 far be it from me, by YAHWEH, from putting forth my hand against the anointed of YAHWEH. And now, please take the spear at his head-place, and the jar of water, and we will go.
12 And David took the spear and the jar of water at the head-place of Saul, and they went away. And no one was seeing; and no one knew; and no one was awake; for all of them were sleeping because a deep sleep from YAHWEH had fallen on them.
13 And David crossed over to the other side and stood on the top of the hill far away, the distance between them being great.
14 And David called to the people, and to Abner the son of Ner, saying, Do you not answer, Abner? And Abner replied and said, Who are you, the one calling to the king?
15 And David said to Abner, Are you not a man? And who is like you in Israel? But why have you not watched over your master the king? For one of the people came in to destroy your master the king.
16 This thing which you have done is not good. As YAHWEH lives, you also are sons of death, in that you have not watched over your master, over the anointed of YAHWEH. And now, see where the king's spear is, and the jar of water which was at his head-place?
17 And Saul recognized the voice of David, and said, Is this your voice, my son David? And David said, My voice, my master, O king!
18 And he said, Why is this, that my master is pursuing his servant? For what have I done, and what in my hand is evil?
19 And now, please let my master the king hear the words of his servant. If YAHWEH has moved you against me, let Him accept an offering. And if the sons of men, they are cursed before YAHWEH; for they have driven me out today from joining myself with the inheritance of YAHWEH, saying, Go, serve other gods.
20 And now, let not my blood fall to the earth before the face of YAHWEH, for the king of Israel has come out to seek a flea, as one hunts the partridge in the mountains.
21 And Saul said, I have sinned. Return, my son David, for I shall not do evil to you any more, because my life has been precious in your eyes today. Behold, I have acted foolishly, and I have erred exceedingly much.
22 And David answered and said, Behold, the king's spear! And let one of the young men cross over and receive it.
23 And YAHWEH will return to each his righteousness and his faithfulness, in that YAHWEH has delivered you into my hand, and I have not been willing to put forth my hand against the anointed of YAHWEH.
24 And behold, as your life has been highly esteemed in my eyes today, so let my soul be highly esteemed in the eyes of YAHWEH. And may He deliver me out of all distress.
25 And Saul said to David, Blessed be you, my son David. Both you shall surely do, also you shall surely be able. And David went on his way. And Saul returned to his place.

Chapter 27

1 And David said in his heart, I shall now perish one day by the hand of Saul. Nothing is better for me than that escaping I escape to the land of the Philistines. And Saul will despair of me, to still seek me in all the border of Israel. And I shall escape out of his hand.
2 And David rose up and crossed over, he and six hundred men who were with him, to Achish the son of Maoch, the king of Gath.
3 And David lived with Achish in Gath, he and his men, each one and his household: David and his two wives, Ahinoam of Jezreel, and Abigail the former wife of Nabal of Carmel.
4 And it was told to Saul that David had fled to Gath, and he did not seek for him any more.
5 And David said to Achish, Please, if I have found grace in your eyes, they shall give to me a place in one of the cities of the field, and I shall live there. Yea, why should your servant live in the royal city with you?
6 And Achish gave Ziklag to him in that day. Therefore, Ziklag has been counted to the kings of Judah until this day.
7 And the number of days which David lived in the field of the Philistines was a year and four months.
8 And David and his men went up and attacked the Geshurites, and the Gezrites, and the Amalekites. For they were the ones living in the land from the past days, as you come into Shur and into the land of Egypt.
9 And David struck the land, and did not keep alive man, or woman, and took sheep, and oxen, and donkeys, and camels, and clothing, and turned back and came to Achish.
10 And Achish said, Did you not make raids today? And David said, Against the south of Judah, and against the south of the Jerahmeelites, and to the south of the Kenites.
11 David did not keep alive man or woman to bring news to Gath, saying, Lest they speak against us, saying, So David has done; And so has been his custom all the days that he has lived in the fields of the Philistines.
12 And Achish trusted David, saying, Surely he has made himself to be hated among his people in Israel, and has become my servant forever.

Chapter 28

1 And in those days it happened that the Philistines gathered their armies for warfare, to fight against Israel. And Achish said to David, Going you shall go out with me in the army, you and our men.
2 And David said to Achish, By this you shall know that which your servant will do. And Achish said to David, Then I appoint you keeper of my head all the days.
3 And Samuel was dead. And all Israel had mourned for him, and buried him in Ramah, even in his city. And Saul had taken away the necromancers and the fortune tellers out of the land.
4 And the Philistines had gathered and had come in and camped in Shunem. And Saul gathered all Israel, and they camped in Gilboa.
5 And Saul saw the camp of the Philistines, and his heart trembled and he greatly feared.
6 And Saul asked of YAHWEH, but YAHWEH did not answer him, either by dreams, or by Urim, or by prophets.
7 And Saul said to his servants, Seek out for me a woman, with the ability to call up the dead, and I will go to her

and inquire of her. And his servants said to him, Behold, a woman, a medium, is in Endor.

8 And Saul disguised himself and put on other clothes. And he and two of the men with him went; and they came to the woman by night. And he said, I beg you, divine for me by necromancy, and bring up to me him whom I say to you.

9 And the woman said to him, Behold, you know that which Saul has done, that he has cut off necromancers and the fortune tellers, out of the land. And why are you laying a snare for my life, to kill me?

10 And Saul swore to her by YAHWEH, saying, As YAHWEH lives, no evil shall happen to you because of this thing.

11 And the woman said, Whom shall I bring up to you? And he said, Bring up Samuel to me.

12 And the woman saw Samuel[1], and cried out with a loud voice. And the woman spoke to Saul, saying, Why have you deceived me? For you are Saul!

13 And the king said to her, Do not be afraid. For what have you seen? And the woman said to Saul, I have seen an Elohim coming up out of the earth.

14 And he said to her, What is his appearance? And she said, An old man is coming up, and he is covered with a robe. And Saul perceived that he was Samuel. And he bowed his face to the earth, and prostrated himself.

15 And Samuel said to Saul, Why have you disturbed me, to bring me up. And Saul said, I am grievously distressed. And the Philistines are fighting against me, and Elohim has turned from me and has not answered me any more, either by the hand of the prophets, or by dreams. And I called for you to make known to me what I should do.

16 And Samuel said, And why do you ask me, since YAHWEH has departed from you and is your adversary?

17 And YAHWEH is doing for Himself as He spoke by my hand. And YAHWEH is tearing the kingdom out of your hand, and is giving it to your neighbor, to David.

18 Because you did not listen to the voice of YAHWEH, or execute the anger of His wrath on Amalek, on this account YAHWEH is doing this thing to you today.

19 Yea, YAHWEH is also giving Israel into the hand of the Philistines along with you. And tomorrow you and your sons will be with me. And YAHWEH will give the army of Israel into the hand of the Philistines.

20 And Saul hurried and fell the full length of his stature to the earth, and greatly feared from the words of Samuel. And there was no power in him, for he had not eaten food all that day, and all the night.

21 And the woman came to Saul. And she saw that he was much terrified, and said to him, Behold, your servant has listened to your voice, and I put my life in my hand, and I obeyed your words which you spoke to me.

22 And now please, you listen to the voice of your servant, and I will set before you a bit of bread; and eat, and there will be strength in you when you go on your way.

23 And he refused, and said, I will not eat. But his servants forced him, and the woman also. And he listened to their voices and rose from the earth and sat on the bed.

24 And the woman had a fat calf in the house. And she hurried and

---

[1] The witch apparently had seen a demon who was portraying himself as Samuel as scripture states Samuel never saw Saul again after he rebuked him (1 Sam 15:35).

slaughtered it, and took flour, and kneaded it, and baked unleavened cakes of it.
25 And she brought it near before Saul, and before his servants. And they ate, and rose up, and went on during that night.

Chapter 29

1 And the Philistines gathered all their armies to Aphek. And Israel was camped at a fountain which is in Jezreel.
2 And the Philistine rulers were passing on by hundreds and by thousands. And David and his men were passing on in the rear with Achish.
3 And the Philistine rulers said, What are these Hebrews? And Achish said to the Philistine rulers, Is this not David the servant of Saul the king of Israel who has been with me these days and years? And I have not found anything evil in him from the day he fell away until today.
4 And the Philistine rulers were angry against him. And the Philistine rulers said to him, Send the man back, and he shall return to his place where you have appointed him. And he shall not go down with us into battle, and shall not become an adversary to us in battle. And with what should this one give pleasure to his master, if not with the heads of these men?
5 Is this not David, of whom they answer in dances, saying, Saul has killed his thousands, and David his myriads?
6 And Achish called David and said to him, As YAHWEH lives, Surely you are upright and good in my eyes in your going out and in your coming in with me in the camp. For I have not found evil in you from the day of your coming in to me until today. But you are not good in the eyes of the rulers.
7 And now return, and go in peace, that you not do evil in the eyes of the rulers of the Philistines.
8 And David said to Achish, But what have I done? And what have you found in your servant from the day that I have been in your presence until today, that I may not go in and fight against the enemies of my master the king?
9 And Achish replied and said to David, I have known that you are good in my eyes, like a messenger of Elohim. But the rulers of the Philistines have said, He shall not go up with us into battle.
10 And now, you and the servants of your master who have come with you rise early in the morning. When you have light, then go.
11 And David rose up early, he and his men, to go in the morning, to return to the land of the Philistines. And the Philistines went up to Jezreel.

Chapter 30

1 And it happened, when David and his men came to Ziklag on the third day, the Amalekites had raided to the Negev, even to Ziklag, and had struck Ziklag and burned it with fire.
2 And they captured the women in it, from the small even to the great; they did not kill anyone, but they led them away, and went on their way.
3 And David and his men came into the city. And, behold! It was burned with fire! And their wives and their sons and their daughters had been taken captive.
4 And David and the people with him lifted up their voice and wept, until they had no power in them to weep.
5 And the two wives of David had

been taken, Ahinoam of Jezreel, and
Abigail the former wife of Nabal of
Carmel.
6 And David was greatly distressed,
for the people said to stone him. For
the soul of the people was bitter, each
for his sons and for his daughters. And
David made himself strong in
YAHWEH his Elohim.
7 And David said to Abiathar the
priest, the son of Ahimelech, Please
bring the ephod near to me. And
Abiathar brought the ephod to David.
8 And David asked of YAHWEH,
saying, Shall I pursue this troop? Shall
I overtake it? And He said to him,
Pursue, for you shall certainly
overtake, and shall certainly recover.
9 So David went on, he and six
hundred men who were with him. And
they came to the torrent Besor. And
those that were left stood.
10 And David pursued, he and four
hundred men; for two hundred men
stood, who were too exhausted to pass
over the torrent Besor.
11 And they found a man, an
Egyptian, in the field, and took him to
David, and gave him food, and he ate.
And they made him drink water.
12 And they gave to him a piece of
fig-cake, and two bunches of raisins.
And he ate, and his spirit returned to
him, for he had not eaten food nor
drunk water three days and three
nights.
13 And David said to him, Whose are
you? And from where do you come?
And he said, I am an Egyptian youth,
slave to an Amalekite man. And my
master abandoned me, for I had been
sick three days.
14 We raided the south of the
Cherethites, and went against that
belonging to Judah, and against the
south of Caleb. And we burned Ziklag
with fire.
15 And David said to him, Are you
able to bring me down to this troop?
And he said, Swear to me by Elohim
that you will neither put me to death,
nor deliver me up into my master's
hand, and I will bring you down to this
troop.
16 And he brought him down. And,
behold, they were spread out over the
face of all the earth, eating and
drinking and feasting, with all the
great plunder which they had taken
out of the land of the Philistines, and
out of the land of Judah.
17 And David struck them from the
twilight even to the evening of the next
day. And not a man of them escaped,
except four hundred young men who
rode on camels and fled.
18 And David recovered all that the
Amalekites had taken; and David
recovered his two wives.
19 And nothing was missing to them,
from the small even to the great, and
to sons and daughters, and from the
plunder, even to all that they had
taken for themselves; David brought
back the whole of it.
20 And David took all the flock, and
the herd. They drove on before those
other cattle. And they said, This is
David's prize.
21 And David came to the two
hundred men who were too exhausted
to go after David, and whom they
caused to remain at the torrent Besor.
And they went out to meet David, and
to meet the people with him. And
David came up to the people, and
asked them of their peace.
22 And every evil and worthless man
of the men who had gone with David
answered, and they said, Because they
did not go with me, we will not give to
them from the plunder which we have
delivered, except to each man his wife
and his sons. And let them take them
and go.
23 And David said, You shall not do

so, my brothers, with that which YAHWEH has given to us. And He has protected us, and has given the troop which came against us into our hand.
24 And who will listen to you in this thing? For as the portion of him who goes down to battle, so shall be his share who remains by the baggage. They shall share together.
25 And it was so, from that day and forward he commanded it for a statute and for an ordinance for Israel to this day.
26 And David came to Ziklag. And he sent of the plunder to the elders of Judah, to his friends, saying, Behold, a blessing for you of the plunder of the enemies of YAHWEH;
27 to those in Bethel, and to those in Ramoth of the Negeb, and to those in Jattir,
28 and to those in Aroer, and to those in Siphmoth, and to those in Eshtemoa,
29 and to those in Rachal, and to those in the cities of the Jerahmeelites, and to those in the cities of the Kenites,
30 and to those in Hormah, and to those in Chorashan, and to those in Athach,
31 and to those in Hebron, and to all the places where David had gone up and down, he and his men.

Chapter 31

1 And the Philistines were fighting against Israel. And the men of Israel fled from the face of the Philistines, and they fell down wounded in Mount Gilboa.
2 And the Philistines followed Saul and his sons. And the Philistines struck Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malchishua, Saul's sons.
3 And the battle went hard against Saul. And the archers, men with the bow, found him and he was sorely wounded by the archers.
4 And Saul said to his armor bearer, Draw your sword and thrust it through me, lest these uncircumcised ones come and thrust it through me and abuse me. But his armor bearer would not, for he was much afraid. So Saul took the sword and fell on it.
5 And his armor bearer saw that Saul was dead, and he also fell on his sword and died with him.
6 And Saul and three of his sons, and his armor-bearer, and all his men died together on that day.
7 And the men of Israel who were beyond the valley, and who were beyond the Jordan, saw that the men of Israel had fled, and that Saul and his sons had died. And they abandoned the cities and fled. And the Philistines came in and lived in them.
8 And it happened on the next day, the Philistines came to strip the wounded. And they found Saul and his three sons fallen down on Mount Gilboa.
9 And they cut off his head, and stripped off his weapons, and sent into the land of the Philistines all around to proclaim the news in the house of their idols, and among the people.
10 And they put his weapons in the house of Ashtaroth, and they fastened his body on the wall of Beth-Shean.
11 And when they heard about it, the ones living in Jabesh-Gilead, that which the Philistines had done to Saul,
12 then all the mighty men rose up, and they went all the night; and they took the body of Saul, and the bodies of his sons, from the wall of Beth-Shean. And they came to Jabesh, and burned them there.
13 And they took their bones and

buried them under the tamarisk tree
in Jabesh. And they fasted seven days.[1]

[1] Verses 11-13- The bodies were recovered by the men of Jabesh- gilead, who had not forgotten how Saul had once saved them, 1 Sam 11:1-11.

Book of 2 Samuel

Chapter 1

1 And it happened, after the death of Saul, David returned from striking the Amalekites. And David remained in Ziklag two days.

2 And it happened on the third day, behold, a man came in out of the camp from Saul. And his garments were torn, and earth on his head. And it happened as he came to David, he fell to the earth and prostrated himself.

3 And David said to him, From where do you come? And he said to him, I have escaped out of the camp of Israel.

4 And David said to him, How did the matter go? Please tell me. And he answered, The people fled from the battle and also a multitude of the people have fallen, and they died, and also Saul and his son Jonathan have died.

5 And David said to the youth who was telling him, How do you know that Saul and his son Jonathan are dead?

6 And the youth who was telling him said, By chance I happened to be on Mount Gilboa. And behold, Saul was leaning on his spear. And, behold, the chariots and the masters of horses closely followed him!

7 And he turned behind him and he saw me and called to me. And I said, Behold me.

8 And he said to me, Who are you? And I said, I am an Amalekite.

9 And he said to me, Please stand over me and kill me, for agony has seized me; for all my life is still in me.

10 And I stood over him and killed him, for I knew that he could not live after his falling. And I took the crown on his head, and the bracelet on his arm, and I brought them to my master here.

11 And David took hold on his garments and tore them; and also all the men with him did so.

12 And they mourned and wept and fasted until the evening, for Saul, and for his son Jonathan, and for the people of YAHWEH, and for the house of Israel, because they had fallen by the sword.

13 And David said to the youth who told him, From where are you? And he said, I am the son of a foreign man, an Amalekite.

14 And David said to him, Why were you not afraid to put forth your hand to destroy the anointed of YAHWEH?

15 And David called to one of the young men, and said, Draw near and fall on him. And he struck him, and he died.

16 And David said to him, Your blood be on your own head, for your mouth has testified against you, saying, I caused to die the anointed of YAHWEH.

17 And David sang this death-dirge over Saul, and over his son Jonathan;

18 and he said to teach the sons of Judah The Song of the Bow. Behold, it is written in the Book of Jashar:

19 The beauty of Israel is slain on your high places. How are the mighty fallen!

20 Tell it not in Gath; do not make it known in the streets of Ashkelon, that the daughters of the Philistines not rejoice; that the daughters of the uncircumcised not exult.

21 Mountains of Gilboa, let not dew or rain be on you, nor fields of offerings; for there the shield of the mighty was vilely cast away, the shield of Saul, not being anointed with oil.

22 From the blood of the slain, from the fat of the mighty, the bow of Jonathan did not turn the back; and the sword of Saul did not return empty.

23 Saul and Jonathan! They were

beloved and delightful in their lives; and in their death they were not parted. They were swifter than eagles; they were stronger than lions.

24 Daughters of Israel, weep over Saul, who clothed you with scarlet delights, who brought ornaments of gold on your clothing.

25 How are the mighty fallen in the midst of the battle! Jonathan is slain on your high places!

26 I am distressed over you, my brother Jonathan. You were very delightful to me; your love was wonderful to me, more than the love of women.

27 How are the mighty fallen, and the weapons of war perished!

Chapter 2

1 And it happened after this, David asked of YAHWEH, saying, Shall I go up to one of the cities of Judah? And YAHWEH said to him, Go up. And David said, Where shall I go up? And He said, To Hebron.

2 And David went up there, and also his two wives, Ahinoam of Jezreel, and Abigail the former wife of Nabal of Carmel.

3 And David brought up his men of those who were with him, each man and his household. And they lived in the cities of Hebron.

4 And the men of Judah came and anointed David king over the house of Judah there. And they told David, saying, It was the men of Jabesh-Gilead who buried Saul.

5 And David sent messengers to the men of Jabesh-Gilead, and said to them, Blessed are you of YAHWEH, in that you have done this kindness with your master, with Saul, that you have buried him.

6 And now, may YAHWEH do with you in kindness and truth. And I also will do good to you because you have done this thing.

7 And now, let your hands be made strong, and be valiant; for your master Saul is dead. And also, the house of Judah has anointed me as king over them.

8 And Abner the son of Ner, the commander of the Saul's army, took Ishbosheth the son of Saul, and caused him to cross over to Mahanaim.

9 And he caused him to reign over Gilead, and over the Ashurites, and over Jezreel, and over Ephraim, and over Benjamin, and over all Israel.

10 Ishbosheth the son of Saul was forty years old when he began to reign over Israel, and he reigned two years. But the house of Judah followed after David.

11 And it happened, the number of the days that David was king in Hebron, over the house of Judah, was seven years and six months.

12 And Abner the son of Ner and the servants of Ishbosheth the son of Saul went out from Mahanaim to Gibeon.

13 And Joab the son of Zeruiah, and David's servants went out. And they met by the pool of Gibeon, and sat down, these by the pool on this side, and those by the pool on that side.

14 And Abner said to Joab, Let the young men rise up now and make sport before us. And Joab said, Let them rise.

15 And they rose up and went over by number, twelve for Benjamin, and for Ishbosheth the son of Saul, and twelve of the servants of David.

16 And each one seize the head of his companion, and thrust his sword into the side of his companion. And they fell together. And one called that place The Field of smooth Rocks, which is in Gibeon.

17 And the battle was very hard on that day, and the men of Israel and

Abner were stricken before David's servants.

18 And there were three sons of Zeruiah there, Joab, and Abishai, and Asahel. And Asahel was swift with his feet, like one of the gazelles in the field.

19 And Asahel ran after Abner, and did not turn to go to the right or to the left from following Abner.

20 And Abner looked behind him, and said, Are you Asahel? And he said, I am.

21 And Abner said to him, Turn aside to your right, or to your left, and seize one of the young men for yourself, and take his spoil for yourself. And Asahel was not willing to turn aside from following him.

22 And Abner said again to Asahel, Turn aside from following me. Why should I strike you to the earth? And how shall I lift up my face to your brother Joab?

23 And he refused to turn aside. And Abner struck him in the belly with the butt of the spear. And the spear came out from behind him; and he fell there, and died in his place. And it happened that all who came to the place, there where Asahel fell and died, they stood still.

24 And Joab and Abishai ran after Abner, and the sun was going. And they came to the hill of Ammah which is before Giah, by the way of the wilderness of Gibeon.

25 And the sons of Benjamin gathered themselves after Abner, and became one troop, and stood on the top of a certain hill.

26 And Abner called to Joab, and said, Does the sword devour forever? Do you not know that it will be bitter in the end? And until when will you say to the people to turn back from after their brothers?

27 And Joab said, As Elohim lives, for if you had not spoken, surely then in the morning the people would have gone up, each one from following his brother.

28 And Joab blew the ram's horn. And all the people stood still, and did not pursue Israel any more; nor did they fight any more.

29 And Abner and his men went through the Arabah all that night, and crossed the Jordan, and went all the forenoon, and came to Mahanaim.

30 And Joab returned from pursuing Abner. And he gathered all the people. And there were lacking nineteen men of David's servants, and Asahel.

31 And David's servants had struck three hundred and sixty men of Benjamin, even among the men of Abner these died.

32 And they lifted up Asahel and buried him in the burying place of his father, which is in Bethlehem. And they went all night, Joab and his men; and it was light to them coming into Hebron.

Chapter 3

1 And there was a long war between the house of Saul and the house of David. And David was going on and was strong, but the house of Saul was going on and was weak.

2 And sons were born to David in Hebron. And his first-born was Amnon, of Ahinoam of Jezreel.

3 And his second was Chileab, of Abigail the former wife of Nabal of Carmel. And the third was Absalom the son of Maacah, the daughter of Talmai the king of Geshur.

4 And the fourth was Adonijah the son of Haggith. And the fifth was Shephatiah the son of Abital.

5 And the sixth was Ithream, of Eglah the wife of David. These were born to David in Hebron.

6 And it happened while there was war between the house of Saul and the house of David, Abner was making himself strong for the house of Saul.

7 And Saul had a concubine, and her name was Rizpah the daughter of Aiah. And Ishbosheth said to Abner, Why have you gone in to my father's concubine?

8 And Abner was exceedingly angry over the words of Ishbosheth. And he said, Am I a dog's head that is to Judah, that I deal with kindness with the house of your father Saul in regards to Judah today, to his brothers, and to his friends, and have not caused you to be found in the hand of David, and you charge a sin against me with this woman today?

9 May Elohim do to Abner, and more so, if I do not do to David as YAHWEH has sworn,

10 to cause the kingdom to pass over from the house of Saul, and to establish the throne of David over Israel and over Judah from Dan even to Beer-Sheba.

11 And he was not able to return a word to Abner any more, because he feared him.

12 And Abner sent messengers to David for himself, saying, Whose is the land? He said, Cut your covenant with me, and, behold, my hand shall be with you, to bring all Israel around to you.

13 And he said, Good, I will cut a covenant with you, but one thing I ask of you, saying, You shall not see my face except you first bring Michal the daughter of Saul when you come to see my face.

14 And David sent messengers to Ishbosheth the son of Saul, saying, Give up my wife Michal, whom I betrothed to myself with a hundred foreskins of the Philistines.

15 And Ishbosheth sent and took her from the man, from Phaltiel the son of Laish.

16 And her husband went with her, going on and weeping behind her to Bahurim. And Abner said to him, Go, return. And he returned.

17 And the word of Abner was with the elders of Israel, saying, Before now you have been seeking David for king over you.

18 And now do it. For YAHWEH has spoken of David, saying, By the hand of My servant David He will save My people Israel out of the hand of the Philistines, and out of the hand of all their enemies.

19 And Abner also spoke in the ears of Benjamin. And Abner went also to speak in the ears of David in Hebron all that was good in the eyes of Israel, and in the eyes of all the house of Benjamin.

20 And Abner came to David, to Hebron, and twenty men with him. And David made a feast for Abner and for the men with him.

21 And Abner said to David, let me rise up and go, and gather all Israel to my master the king. And they shall cut a covenant with you. And you shall reign over all that your soul desires. And David sent Abner away, and he went in peace.

22 And, behold, the servants of David and Joab came from pursuing a troop. And they brought much plunder with them. And Abner was not with David in Hebron, for he had sent him away; and he had gone in peace.

23 And Joab and all the army with him had come. And they told Joab, saying, Abner the son of Ner has come to the king. And he has sent him away, and he has gone in peace.

24 And Joab came to the king, and said, What have you done? Behold, Abner has come to you; why is this,

that you have sent him away, and
going he is gone?
25 You know Abner the son of Ner,
that he came to deceive you, and to
know your going out and your coming
in, and to know all that you are doing.
26 And Joab left David, and sent
messengers after Abner. And they
brought him back from the well of
Sirah. But David did not know it.
27 And Abner returned to Hebron.
And Joab turned him aside into the
middle of the gate, to speak with him
privately. And he struck him in the
belly there, and he died, because of the
blood of his brother Asahel.
28 And afterward David heard, and
said, I and my kingdom are guiltless
before YAHWEH forever from the
blood of Abner the son of Ner.
29 May it whirl about the head of
Joab, and on all his father's house; and
let there not fail from the house of
Joab one that has an issue, or that is a
leper, or that leans on a staff, or who
falls by the sword, or that lacks bread!
30 And Joab and his brother Abishai
killed Abner because he had killed
their brother Asahel in Gibeon, in
battle.
31 And David said to Joab, and to all
the people with him, Tear your
garments and gird on sackcloth, and
mourn before Abner. And King David
was following after the bier.
32 And they buried Abner in
Hebron. And the king lifted up his
voice and wept at the grave of Abner;
and all the people wept.
33 And the king lamented for Abner,
and said, Should Abner die as it were
like a fool?
34 Your hands were not bound, nor
your feet put into fetters. As one falls
before sons of evil, you have fallen!
And all the people wept again over
him.
35 And all the people came to cause
David to eat food while it was yet day.
But David swore, saying, So may
Elohim do to me, and still more, if I
taste bread or anything before the sun
goes in.[1]
36 And all the people took notice,
and it was good in their eyes. As to all
the king did, it was good in the eyes of
all the people.
37 And all the people, even all Israel,
knew in that day that it was not from
the king to kill Abner the son of Ner.
38 And the king said to his servants,
Do you not know that a commander,
even a great one has fallen this day in
Israel?
39 And I am weak today, though
anointed king. And these men, the
sons of Zeruiah, are too hard for me.
May YAHWEH reward the doer of the
evil according to his evil!

Chapter 4

1 And the son of Saul heard that
Abner was dead in Hebron. And his
hands dropped; and all those in Israel
were terrified.
2 And Saul's son had two men, troop
commanders, one's name being
Baanah, and the other's name Rechab,
the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, of
the sons of Benjamin (for Beeroth also
is counted to Benjamin.
3 And the Beerothites fled to
Gittaim, and are aliens there to this
day.)
4 And Jonathan the son of Saul had
a crippled son, he was a son of five
years when the news of Saul and
Jonathan came out of Jezreel; and his
nurse lifted him up and fled; and it
happened as she hurried to flee, that
he fell and became crippled; and his
name was Mephibosheth.
5 And the sons of Rimmon the
Beerothite, Rechab and Baanah, went

[1] The new day began at sunset, Lev 23:32.

and came at the heat of the day to the house of Ishbosheth. And he was lying on his bed at noon.

6 And they came to the middle of the house, bringing wheat. And they struck him in the belly. And Rechab and his brother Baanah escaped.

7 And they entered the house, and he was lying on his bed in his bedroom; and they struck him and killed him, and took off his head. And they took his head and went the way of the Arabah all the night.

8 And they brought Ishbosheth's head to David in Hebron, and said to the king, Behold, the head of Ishbosheth the son of your enemy Saul, who sought your life. And may YAHWEH give to my lord the king vengeance this day, on Saul and on his seed.

9 And David answered Rechab and his brother Baanah, the sons of Rimmon the Beerothite, and said to them, As YAHWEH lives, who has redeemed my life out of all distress,

10 when one spoke to me, saying, Behold Saul is dead, and he was as a bearer of good news in his own eyes; even I seized and killed him in Ziklag. I gave that to him as a reward.

11 And when wicked men have slain a righteous man in his own house on his bed, should I not even now seek his blood from your hand, and glean you from the earth?

12 And David commanded his young men. And they killed them, and cut off their hands and their feet, and hung them by the pool in Hebron. And they took the head of Ishbosheth and buried it in the burying place of Abner in Hebron.

Chapter 5

1 And all the tribes of Israel came to David, to Hebron, and spoke, saying, Behold, we are your bone and we are your flesh.

2 Both yesterday and the day before, when Saul was king over us, you were he who led out and brought in Israel. And YAHWEH said to you, You shall shepherd My people Israel, and you shall be for a leader over Israel.

3 And all the elders of Israel came to the king, to Hebron. And King David cut a covenant with them in Hebron before YAHWEH. And they anointed David as king over Israel.

4 And David was a son of thirty years old when he became king; he reigned forty years.[1]

5 In Hebron he reigned over Judah seven years and six months; and in Jerusalem he reigned thirty three years over all Israel and Judah.

6 And the king and his men went to Jerusalem, to the Jebusites, those dwelling in the land. And one spoke to David, saying, You shall not come in here except you will turn away the blind and the lame, thinking, David cannot come in here.[2] *(1 Chron 11:4-9)*

7 And David captured the stronghold of Zion. It is the city of David.[3]

8 And David said on that day, Anyone who strikes the Jebusite, let him go by the water shaft, and let him take the lame and the blind, the hated of the soul of David. On this account they say, The blind and the lame shall not enter into the house.

9 And David lived in the stronghold,

---

1 David was 30 yrs old when he began to reign, exactly the same age Yahshua was when He began His ministry, Luk 3:23.

2 Because of the natural fortress of Mount Zion, the Jebusites mocked that even the blind and lame could defend against David, not knowing he would come through the water shaft.

3 The Temple Mount where the sanctuary of YHWH was built is Mount Zion, which is also the city of David (2 Chron 5:2).

and called it the city of David. And David built all around from the Millo and inward.

10 And David went on and became great. And YAHWEH the Elohim of Hosts was with him.

11 And Hiram the king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar trees, and carpenters, and masons; and they built a house for David.

12 And David knew that YAHWEH had established him for king over Israel, and that He had lifted up his kingdom because of His people Israel.

13 And David again took concubines and wives out of Jerusalem after he came from Hebron. And again sons and daughters were born to David.

14 These are the names of those born to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, and Shobab, and Nathan, and Solomon,

15 and Ibhar, and Elishua, and Nepheg, and Japhia,

16 and Elishama, and Eliada, and Eliphalet.

17 And the Philistines heard that they had anointed David for king over Israel. And all the Philistines came up to seek David. And David heard and went down to the stronghold.

18 And the Philistines came and were spread out in the Valley of the Giants.

19 And David asked of YAHWEH, saying, Shall I go up to the Philistines? Will You give them into my hand? And YAHWEH said to David, Go up, for I will certainly give the Philistines into your hand.

20 And David came to Baal Perazim. And David struck them there, and said, YAHWEH has broken forth on my enemies before me as the breaking forth of waters. On account of this he called the name of that place The Breaches of Baal.[1]

21 And they abandoned their idols there; and David and his men took them away.

22 And the Philistines again came up and were spread out in the Valley of the Giants.

23 And David asked of YAHWEH, and He said, You shall not go up. Turn around to their rear, and come to them in front of the weeping trees.

24 And it shall be, when you hear the sound of the marching in the tops of the weeping trees, then you shall strike. For then YAHWEH shall go out before you to strike the army of the Philistines.

25 And David did so, as YAHWEH commanded him. And he struck the Philistines from Geba until you come to Gezer.

Chapter 6

1 And David again gathered every chosen one in Israel, thirty thousand.

2 And David rose up and went, and all the people with him, from Baal-Judah, to bring up the ark of the Elohim from there which is called by the Name, the Name of YAHWEH of Hosts, who dwells above the cherubs over it.

3 And they made to ride the ark of the Elohim on a new cart, and took it from the house of Abinadab, which is in the hill. And Uzzah and Ahio the sons of Abinadab were leading the new cart.

4 And they took it from the house of Abinadab, which is in the hill, with the ark of the Elohim. And Ahio was going before the ark.

5 And David and all the house of Israel were dancing before YAHWEH with all instruments of fir wood, with lyres and with harps, and with tambourines, and with cornets, and with cymbals.

6 And when they came to the

[1] Baal perazim in Hebrew.

threshing floor of Nachon, and Uzzah reached out to the ark of the Elohim, and took hold of it, for the oxen nearly upset it.

7 Then the anger of YAHWEH burned against Uzzah. And the Elohim struck him there for the fault. And he died there by the ark of the Elohim.

8 And it angered David because YAHWEH broke out a break against Uzzah. And one calls that place The Breaking of Uzzah to this day.

9 And David feared YAHWEH on that day, and said, How shall the ark of YAHWEH come to me?

10 And David was not willing to bring the ark of YAHWEH to himself, to the city of David. And David turned it aside to the house of Obed-Edom the Gittite.

11 And the ark of YAHWEH remained in the house of Obed-Edom the Gittite three months. And YAHWEH blessed Obed-Edom and all his house.

12 And it was told to King David, saying, YAHWEH has blessed the house of Obed-Edom and all that is his, because of the ark of the Elohim. And David went and brought up the ark of the Elohim from the house of Obed-Edom to the city of David with joy.

13 And it happened, when those bearing the ark of YAHWEH had gone six steps, he sacrificed an ox and a fatling.

14 And David was dancing with all his might before YAHWEH. And David was girded with a linen ephod.

15 And David and all the house of Israel were bringing up the ark of YAHWEH with shouting, and with the sound of a ram's horn.

16 And it happened, when the ark of YAHWEH had come to the city of David, and Michal the daughter of Saul looked through the window and saw King David leaping and dancing before YAHWEH, she despised him in her heart.

17 And they brought the ark of YAHWEH in, and set it up in its place, in the midst of the tent that David had pitched for it. And David caused burnt offerings to be offered before YAHWEH, and peace offerings.

18 And David finished offering the burnt offerings, and the peace offerings, and blessed the people in the name of YAHWEH of Hosts.

19 And he shared out to all the people, to all the multitude of Israel, from man even to woman, to each one cake of bread and one date cake and one raisin cake. And all the people left, each one to his house.

20 And David returned to bless his house. And Michal the daughter of Saul went out to meet David, and said, How glorious was the king of Israel today, who was uncovered today before the eyes of the slave-girls of his servants, as one of the vain ones shamelessly uncovers himself.

21 And David said to Michal, Before YAHWEH, who chose me over your father and over all your father's house, to command me to be leader over the people of YAHWEH, and over Israel, so I danced before YAHWEH.

22 And I will be yet lighter than this, and shall be lowly in my own eyes. But with the slave-girls of whom you spoke, with them I will be honored.

23 And there was no child to Michal the daughter of Saul until the day of her death.

Chapter 7

1 And it happened, when the king lived in his house, and YAHWEH had given him rest from all his enemies all around,

2 The king said to Nathan the
prophet, See, now, I am living in a
house of cedar, and the ark of the
Elohim dwells within tent curtains.
3 And Nathan said to the king, All
that is in your heart, go, do. For
YAHWEH shall be with you.
4 And it happened in that night, the
Word of YAHWEH was to Nathan,
saying,
5 Go, and you shall say to My
servant, to David, So says YAHWEH,
Will you build a house for Me, for My
dwelling?
6 For I have not dwelt in a house
even from the day of My bringing the
sons of Israel out of Egypt, even to this
day; but I have been moving about in a
tent, even in a shepherds hut.
7 In all places in which I have gone
with all Israel's sons, have I spoken a
word with one of the tribes of Israel,
those I commanded to shepherd My
people Israel, saying, Why have you
not built for me a house of cedars?
8 And now, so you shall say to My
servant, to David, So says YAHWEH
of Hosts, I have taken you from the
good pasture, from following the flock,
to be ruler over My people, over Israel.
9 And I have been with you wherever
you have gone, and have cut off all
your enemies from before you and
have made you a great name, like the
name of the great men who are on the
earth.
10 And I will appoint a place for My
people Israel, and will plant them, that
they may dwell in their own place and
not be made to tremble any more. Nor
shall the sons of evil afflict them again,
as at the first,
11 even from the day I commanded
judges to be over My people Israel.
And I will cause you to rest from all
your enemies. And YAHWEH
declares to you that YAHWEH will
make you a house.
12 When your days are fulfilled, and
you lie with your fathers, then I shall
raise up your seed after you, who shall
come out from your loins, and I shall
establish his kingdom. *(Ps 89:4)*
13 He shall build a house for My
Name, and I shall establish the throne
of his kingdom forever.[1] *(Zech 6:12-
13)*
14 I shall be a father to him, and he
shall be a son to Me. If He takes
iniquity upon Himself, then I will
chasten him with a rod of men, and
with strokes of the sons of men. *(Is
53:4-6, 10)*
15 But My mercy shall not be taken
from him, as I took it from Saul, whom
I removed from before you.
16 And your house shall be sure, and
your kingdom before me forever. Your
throne shall be established forever.
17 According to all these words, and
according to all this vision, so Nathan
spoke to David.
18 And King David came in and sat
before YAHWEH, and said: Who am
I, O Adonai YAHWEH, and what is
my house, that you have brought me
here?
19 And this was yet but little in Your
eyes, O Adonai YAHWEH. But You
have spoken also of Your servant's
house for a time afar off. And is this
the Torah of the man[2], O Adonai
YAHWEH?
20 And what more can David say to
You? And You know Your servant, O
Adonai YAHWEH.
21 Because of Your Word, and
according to Your heart, You have

[1] This cannot be Solomon who lost out on the kingdom but can only be speaking about Yahshua, the Son of David and YHWH and also the Messiah.

[2] In Hebrew- The Torah of H' Adawm, reverting back to show Adam's purpose was to bring the Torah to mankind.

done all this greatness to make Your servant know.

22 For this reason, O YAHWEH Elohim, You are great; for there is none like You; and there is no Elohim except You, according to all that we have heard with our ears.

23 And who is like Your people, like Israel, the one *(echad)* nation in the earth that Elohim went out to redeem to be a people for Themselves, and to make Themselves a name, and to do for You great and fearful things for Your land, before Your people which You redeemed to Yourself from Egypt, from nations and their Elohims?

24 Yea, You have established Your people Israel to Yourself, to You for a people forever. And You, O YAHWEH have become to them for Elohim.

25 And now, O YAHWEH Elohim, the Word which You have spoken concerning Your servant, and concerning his house, confirm it forever. And do as You have spoken.

26 And Your name shall be great forever, saying, YAHWEH of Hosts is Elohim over Israel, and the house of Your servant David is established before You.

27 For You, O YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, You have uncovered the ear of Your servant, saying, I will build a house for you. On account of this Your servant has found his heart to pray to You this prayer.

28 And now, O Adonai YAHWEH, You are the Elohim, and Your Words are truth, and You speak this goodness to Your servant.

29 And now, let it please You to bless the house of Your servant, to be forever before You. For You, O Adonai YAHWEH, have spoken, and with Your blessing let the house of Your servant be blessed forever.

Chapter 8

1 And it happened afterward, David struck the Philistines, and humbled them. And David took the Bridle of the Metropolis out of the hand of the Philistines.

2 And he struck Moab, and measured them with a line; making them to lie down on the ground. And he measured two lines to cause them to died, and one full line to keep alive. And the Moabites were slaves to David, bearers of a gift.

3 And David struck Hadadezer the son of Rehob, king of Zobah, as he went to restore his power at the River.

4 And David captured from him seventeen hundred horsemen, and twenty thousand footmen. And David hamstrung all of the chariot horses; he only left a hundred chariots of them.

5 And the Syrians of Damascus came to give help to Hadadezer the king of Zobah. And David struck twenty two thousand men of Syria.

6 And David put garrisons in Syria of Damascus. And the Syrians became servants to David, bearers of tribute. And YAHWEH saved David in all places in which he went.

7 And David took the shields of gold which were on Hadadezer's servants and bore them to Jerusalem.

8 And King David took very much copper from Betah, and from Berothai, cities of Hadadezer.

9 And Toi the king of Hamath heard that David had struck all the army of Hadadezer.

10 And Toi sent his son Joram to King David to ask of his peace, and to bless him, because he had fought against Hadadezer and struck him. For Hadadezer had been a man of wars against Toi. And in his hand were silver articles, and golden articles, and copper articles.

11 King David also dedicated them to YAHWEH, with the silver and the gold which he dedicated of all the nations which he subdued:

12 from Syria, and from Moab, and from the sons of Ammon, and from the Philistines, and from Amalek, and from the plunder of Hadadezer the son of Rehob, the king of Zobah.

13 And David made a name for himself when he returned, after he had struck the Syrians in the Valley of Salt, eighteen thousand men.

14 And he put garrisons in all Edom; and all Edom became servants to David. And YAHWEH saved David in all places in which he went.

15 And David reigned over all Israel, and David executed justice and righteousness to all his people.

16 And Joab the son of Zeruiah was over the army; and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud was the historian;

17 and Zadok the son of Ahitub, and Ahimelech the son of Abiathar were priests; and Seraiah was scribe;

18 and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over both the Cherethites and the Pelethites; and the sons of David were priests.[1]

Chapter 9

1 And David said, Is there yet any left to the house of Saul, that I may show him kindness because of Jonathan?

2 And the house of Saul had a servant, and his name was Ziba. And they called him to David. And the king said to him, Are you Ziba? And he said, Your servant!

3 And the king said, Is there not yet a man to the house of Saul, that I may show the kindness of Elohim to him? And Ziba said to the king, There is yet a son to Jonathan, lame in both feet.

4 And the king said to him, Where is he? And Ziba said to the king, Behold, he is in the house of Machir, the son of Ammiel in Lo-Debar.

5 And King David sent and took him out of the house of Machir the son of Ammiel, of Lo-Debar.

6 And Mephibosheth the son of Jonathan the son of Saul came to David and fell on his face, and bowed himself. And David said, Mephibosheth! And he said, Behold, your servant.

7 And David said to him, Do not be afraid, for I will certainly show kindness to you because of your father Jonathan. And I will give back to you all the land of your father Saul. And you shall eat bread at my table continually.

8 And he bowed and said, What is your servant, that you should look upon such a dead dog as I am?

9 And the king called to Ziba the servant of Saul, and said to him, All that belonged to Saul and to all his house, I have given to the son of your master.

10 And you shall till the land for him, you and your sons and your servants. And you shall bring in the fruits, so that your master's son may have bread to eat. But Mephibosheth your master's son shall eat bread continually at my table. And Ziba had fifteen sons, and twenty servants.

11 And Ziba said to the king, According to all that my master the king commands his servant, so your servant will do. And Mephibosheth was eating at my table like one of the king's sons.

12 And Mephibosheth had a young son, and his name was Micha. And everyone living in Ziba's house were servants to Mephibosheth.

1 David's sons were priests or cohen, however they were not Levites, so this must be referring to the Melchizedek priesthood (Heb 7:14-17).

13 And Mephibosheth lived in Jerusalem, for he ate continually at the table of the king. And he was lame in both his feet.

Chapter 10

1 And it happened afterward, the king of the Ammonites died. And his son Hanun reigned in his place.
2 And David said, I will show kindness to Hanun the son of Nahash, as his father showed kindness to me. And David sent to comfort him concerning his father by the hand of his servants. And David's servants came into the land of the sons of Ammon.
3 And the leaders of the sons of Ammon said to their master Hanun. Is David honoring your father in your eyes, because he has sent comforters to you? Has not David sent his servants to you to search the city, and to spy it out, and to overthrow it?
4 And Hanun took David's servants and shaved off half of their beards, and cut off their long robes in the center, to their buttocks; and he sent them away.
5 And they told David, and he sent to meet them; for the men were greatly ashamed. And the king said, Remain in Jericho until your beard grows; then you shall return.
6 And the sons of Ammon saw that they were odious to David. And the sons of Ammon sent and hired Syrians from Beth-Rehob, and Syrians from Zobah, twenty thousand footmen; and the king of Maacah with a thousand men; and the men of Tob with twelve thousand men.
7 And David heard, and he sent Joab and all the army, the mighty men.
8 And the sons of Ammon came out and set the battle in order at the opening of the gate. And the Syrians of Zobah, and Rehob, and the men of Tob, and Maacah were by themselves in the field.
9 And Joab saw that the front of the battle was against him before and behind. And he chose from all the chosen in Israel, and set them in order to meet the Syrians.
10 And the rest of the people he gave into the hand of his brother Abishai, and he set in order to meet the sons of Ammon.
11 And he said, If the Syrians are stronger than I, then you shall be for me; and if the sons of Ammon are stronger than you, then I will come to help you.
12 Be strong, and let us be strong for our people, and for the cities of our Elohim. And may YAHWEH do that which seems good in His eyes.
13 And Joab and the people with him drew near to battle against the Syrians. And they fled before him.
14 And the sons of Ammon saw that the Syrians fled, and they fled before Abishai, and went into the city. And Joab returned from the sons of Ammon, and came to Jerusalem.
15 And Syria saw that it was stricken before Israel. And they assembled.
16 And Hadarezer sent and brought out the Syrians which were beyond the River. And they came to Helam, and Shobach was the commander of the army of Hadarezer before them.
17 And it was told to David. And he gathered all Israel, and passed over the Jordan, and came to Helam. And the Syrians set themselves in order to meet David. And they fought with him.
18 And the Syrians fled before Israel. And David killed from Syria seven hundred in chariots, and forty thousand horsemen. And he struck Shobach the commander of the army, and he died there.
19 And all the kings, the servants of

Hadarezer, saw that they had been stricken before Israel. And they made peace with Israel, and served them. And Syria feared to help the sons of Ammon any more.

Chapter 11

1 And it happened at the return of the year, at the time when the kings go out, David sent Joab and his servants with him, and all Israel. And they destroyed the sons of Ammon, and lay siege to Rabbah. But David remained at Jerusalem.

2 And it happened at evening time, David rose up from his bed and walked up and down on the roof of the king's house. And he saw from the roof a woman bathing. And the woman was very good of form.

3 And David sent and asked about the woman. And one said, Is this not Bathsheba, the daughter of Eliam, the wife of Uriah the Hittite?

4 And David sent messengers and took her. And she came to him, and he lay with her. And she purified herself from uncleanness, and she returned to her house.

5 And the woman conceived, and sent, and told David. And she said, I am with child.

6 And David sent to Joab, Send Uriah the Hittite to me. And Joab sent Uriah to David.

7 And Uriah came to him. And David asked the peace of Joab, and the peace of the people, and of the success of the war.

8 And David said to Uriah, Go down to your house and wash your feet. And Uriah went out of the king's house, and a gift from the king went out after him.

9 Uriah lay down at the entrance of the king's house, with all the servants of his lord. And he did not go down to his house.

10 And they told David, saying, Uriah did not go down to his house. And David said to Uriah, Have you not come from a journey? Why have you not gone down to your house?

11 And Uriah said to David, The ark, and Israel, and Judah dwell in booths. And my master Joab, and my master's servants are camping on the face of the field. And I, shall I go into my house to eat and to drink, and to lie with my wife? As you live, and as your soul lives, I will not do this thing.

12 And David said to Uriah, Remain here today also, and tomorrow I will send you away. And Uriah remained in Jerusalem on that day, and on the next day.

13 And David called for him, and he ate and drank before him. And he made him drunk, and he went out in the evening to lie on his bed with the servants of his master. And he did not go down to his house.

14 And it happened in the morning David wrote a letter to Joab, and sent it by the hand of Uriah.[1]

15 And he wrote in the letter, saying, Place Uriah in the front of the strongest battle, and withdraw from him, that he may be struck, and die.

16 And it happened, as Joab watched the city, that he sent Uriah to the place where he knew there would be mighty men.

17 And the men of the city went out and fought with Joab, and some of the people fell of David's servants. And Uriah the Hittite also died.

18 And Joab sent and told David all the matters of the war.

---

[1] A letter sent by the King had a small wax seal closing it, and if someone other than the recipient opened it, it would mean death. David also trusted Uriah, which is a sad irony to the story.

19 And he commanded the messenger, saying, As you finish all the matters of the war, speaking to the king,
20 then it shall be, if the king's fury rises, and he says to you, Why did you draw near to the city to fight? Did you not know that they would shoot from off the wall?
21 Who killed Abimelech the son of Jerubbesheth? Did not a woman throw a piece of a riding millstone on him from the wall, and he died in Thebez? Why did you draw near to the wall? Then you shall say, Also your servant Uriah the Hittite is dead.
22 And the messenger went and came and told David all that which Joab had sent him to tell,
23 and the messenger said to David, Surely the men have been mighty against us, and came out to us into the field. And we were on them to the entrance of the gate.
24 And those shooting shot at your servants from off the wall, and some of the servants of the king are dead. And also your servant Uriah the Hittite is dead.
25 And David said to the messenger, You shall say to Joab, Do not let this thing be evil in your eyes. For the sword devours one as well as another. Make your battle stronger against the city, and overthrow it. And make him strong.
26 And Uriah's wife heard that her husband Uriah was dead. And she mourned for her husband.
27 And the mourning time passed by. And David sent and gathered her to his house; and she became his wife, and bore a son to him. And the thing which David had done was evil in the eyes of YAHWEH.

Chapter 12

1 And YAHWEH sent Nathan to David. And he came to him and said to him, There were two men in one city, the one rich, and the other poor.
2 The rich one had flocks and very many herds.
3 But the poor one had nothing except one little ewe lamb, which he had bought and nourished. And it grew up with him, and with his sons together, and it ate of his morsel, and it drank from his cup, and it lay in his bosom. And it was like a daughter to him.
4 And a traveler came to the rich one, and he spared to take of his own flock, and of his own herd, to prepare for the traveler who had come to him. And he took the ewe lamb of the poor man, and prepared it for the man who had come to him.
5 And David's anger glowed greatly against the man. And he said to Nathan, As YAHWEH lives, surely the man who did this is a son of death.
6 And he shall repay fourfold for the ewe lamb, because he has done this thing, and because he had no pity.
7 And Nathan said to David, You are the man! So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, I anointed you as king over Israel, and I delivered you out of the hand of Saul.
8 And I gave you the house of your master, and your master's wives into your bosom. And I gave you the house of Israel and of Judah. And if that were too little, then I would have added to you these and those things.
9 Why have you despised the Word of YAHWEH, to do the evil in His eyes? You have stricken Uriah the Hittite by the sword, and you have taken his wife to yourself for a wife. And you have killed him by the sword of the sons of Ammon.

10 And now the sword shall not turn aside from your house continually, because you have despised Me, and have taken the wife of Uriah the Hittite to be a wife to you.

11 So says YAHWEH, Behold, I shall raise up evil against you out of your house, and shall take your wives before your eyes and give them to your neighbor. And he shall lie with your wives in the sight of the sun. *(2 Sam 1621-22)*

12 For you acted in secret, but I will do this thing before all Israel and before the sun.

13 And David said to Nathan, I have sinned against YAHWEH. And Nathan said to David, YAHWEH also has put away your sin; you shall not die.

14 Only, because you have caused to scorn the enemies of YAHWEH by this thing, also the son who shall be born to you dying shall die.

15 And Nathan went to his house, and YAHWEH struck the boy whom the wife of Uriah had borne to David. And it became sick.

16 And David sought the Elohim for the child. And David fasted a fast, and went in and stayed the night, and lay on the earth.

17 And the elders of his house rose up toward him, to raise him up from the earth. But he was not willing; and he ate no bread with them.

18 And it happened on the seventh day, the boy died. And David's servants feared to tell him that the boy was dead, for they said, Behold, while the boy was alive, we spoke to him, and he would not listen to our voice. And how shall we say to him, The boy is dead? Then he may do harm.

19 And David saw that his servants were whispering among themselves. And David understood that the boy was dead. And David said to his servants, Is the boy dead? And they said, He is dead.

20 And David rose up from the earth, and bathed, and anointed. And he changed his clothing, and came into the house of YAHWEH, and worshiped. And he came to his house, and commanded, and they brought bread for him; and he ate.

21 And his servants said to him, What is this thing you have done? You fasted and wept because of the living boy, yet when the boy is dead, you have risen up and have eaten food?

22 And he said, While the boy was alive, I fasted and wept. For I said, Who knows? YAHWEH may pity me and the boy may stay alive.

23 And now he has died. Why this, that I should fast? Am I able to bring him back again? I shall go to him, but he shall not return to me.

24 And David comforted his wife Bathsheba. And he went in to her, and lay with her. And she bore a son, and he called his name Solomon. And YAHWEH loved him,

25 and sent by the hand of Nathan the prophet, and called his name Jedidiah[1], because of YAHWEH.

26 And Joab fought against Rabbah of the sons of Ammon, and captured the royal city.

27 And Joab sent messengers to David, and said, I have fought against Rabbah, and I have captured the city of waters.

28 And now gather the rest of the people, and encamp against the city, and take it; that I not take the city, and my name be called over it.

29 And David gathered all the people and went to Rabbah, and fought against it, and took it.

30 And he took the crown of the kingdom off his head. And its weight was a talent of gold, and a precious

---

[1] Jedidiah means "*beloved of Yah*".

stone was in it. And it was set on
David's head. And he brought out the
plunder of the city in great abundance.
31 And he brought out the people in
it, and put them to the saw, and to
sharp tools of iron, and to axes of iron.
And he caused them to go over into
the brick kiln. And so he did to all the
cities of the sons of Ammon. And
David and all the people returned to
Jerusalem.

Chapter 13

1 And afterward it happened that
Absalom the son of David had a
beautiful sister, and her name was
Tamar. And Amnon the son of David
loved her.
2 And Amnon was distressed, even
to becoming sick, because of his sister
Tamar. For she was a virgin, and it was
hard in the eyes of Amnon to do
anything to her.
3 And Amnon had a friend, and his
name was Jonadab the son of
Shimeah, David's brother. And
Jonadab was a very shrewd man.
4 And he said to him, Why are you,
the king's son, so lean morning by
morning? Will you not tell me? And
Amnon said to him, I love Tamar, my
brother Absalom's sister.
5 And Jonadab said to him, Lie down
on your bed and pretend to be ill. And
your father will come in to see you,
and you shall say to him, Please let my
sister Tamar come in and give me food
to eat. And she shall make the food
before my eyes, so that I may see and
may eat from her hand.
6 And Amnon lay down and
pretended to be ill. And the king came
to see him. And Amnon said to the
king, Please let my sister Tamar come,
and she shall make two cakes before
my eyes, and I shall eat from her hand.
7 And David sent home to Tamar,
saying, Please go to the house of your
brother Amnon and make food for
him.
8 And Tamar went to her brother
Amnon's house. And he was lying
down. And she took the dough, and
kneaded it, and made cakes before his
eyes, and baked the cakes.
9 And she took the baking pan and
poured out before him. But he refused
to eat, and Amnon said, Cause every
man to go out from me. And every one
of them went out from him.
10 And Amnon said to Tamar, Bring
the food into the inner room, and I
shall eat from your hand. And Tamar
took the cakes that she had made and
brought them in to her brother
Amnon, into the inner room.
11 And she brought near to him to
eat. And he lay hold on her, and said to
her, Come lie with me, my sister.
12 And she said to him, No, my
brother, do not humble me, for it is
not done so in Israel. Do not do this
foolishness.
13 And I, where should I cause my
disgrace to go? And you, you shall be
as one of the fools in Israel. But now,
please speak to the king; for he shall
not withhold me from you.
14 But he was not willing to listen to
her voice. And he was stronger than
she, and humbled her, and lay with
her.
15 And Amnon hated her with a very
great hatred, so that the hatred with
which he hated her was greater than
the love with which he had loved her.
And Amnon said to her, Get up and
go!
16 And she said to him, No, for this
evil is greater than the other that you
have done to me, to send me away. But
he was not willing to listen to her.
17 And he called his young man who
attended him, and said, Now put this

one out from me, and bolt the door after her.

18 And a long tunic was on her, for so the virgin daughters of the king usually dressed. And his attendant brought her robes outside, and bolted the door after her.

19 And Tamar put ashes on her head, and tore the long tunic on her, and put her hand on her head, and left; going on and crying out.

20 And her brother Absalom said to her, Has your brother Amnon been with you? But now, my sister, keep silent. He is your brother. Do not set your heart on this thing. And Tamar lived in the house of her brother Absalom, but she was desolate.

21 And King David heard all these things, and it angered him very much.

22 But Absalom did not speak either good or evil with Amnon, for Absalom hated Amnon, because he had humbled his sister Tamar.

23 And after two years it happened that Absalom had shearers in Baal-Hazor, which is beside Ephraim. And Absalom called to all the sons of the king.

24 And Absalom came to the king and said, Behold, your servant now has shearers. Please let the king and his servants go with your servant.

25 And the king said to Absalom, No, my son, let us not all go now, and we shall not be too burdensome on you. But he urged him, and he was not willing to go, but he blessed him.

26 And Absalom said, If not, please let my brother Amnon go with us. And the king said to him, Why should he go with you?

27 And Absalom urged him, and he sent Amnon with him, and all the king's sons.

28 And Absalom commanded his young men, saying, Now watch when Amnon's heart is glad with wine, and when I say to you, Strike Amnon, you shall kill him. Do not fear. Did not I command you? Be strong, and be valiant.

29 And the young men of Absalom did to Amnon as Absalom commanded. And all the king's sons rose up, and they each rode on his mule, and fled.

30 And it happened while they were in the highway, even the report had come to David, saying, Absalom has stricken all the sons of the king, and not one of them is left.

31 And the king rose up and tore his garments, and lay on the earth; and all his servants were standing by with torn garments.

32 And Jonadab the son of Shimeah, David's brother, answered and said, Do not let my master say, They have killed all of the young men, the king's sons; for only Amnon is dead. For it has been settled by Absalom's command from the day of his humbling of his sister Tamar.

33 And now, do not let my master the king lay the word to heart, saying, All the king's sons have died; for only Amnon has died.

34 And Absalom fled. And the young man who was watching lifted up his eyes and looked. And, behold! Many people were coming by the highway behind him, by the side of the hill.

35 And Jonadab said to the king, See, the sons of the king have come; as the word of your servant, so it has been.

36 And it happened as he finished speaking, behold, the king's sons came. And they lifted up their voice and wept. And also the king and all his servants wept with a very great weeping.

37 And Absalom fled, and went to Talmai the son of Ammihud, the king

of Geshur. And David mourned for his son all the time.

38 And Absalom had fled, and had gone to Geshur, and was there three years.

39 And King David determined to go out to Absalom, for he had been comforted for Amnon, for he had died.

Chapter 14

1 And Joab the son of Zeruiah knew that the king's heart was on Absalom.

2 And Joab sent to Tekoah and took a wise woman from there, and said to her, Pretend yourself to be a mourner now, and please put on garments of mourning. And do not anoint yourself with oil, and you shall be a woman mourning for one who died these many days.

3 And you shall go to the king and speak with him according to this word. And Joab put the words into her mouth.

4 And the woman of Tekoah spoke to the king, and fell on her face to the earth, and bowed and said, Save, O king!

5 And the king said to her, What shall be to you? And she said, Truly I am a widow woman, and my husband died.

6 And your servant had two sons. And the two of them fought in the field, and there was no deliverer between them. And the one struck the other, and killed him.

7 And, behold, the whole family has risen against your servant, and said, Give up him who struck his brother, and we shall kill him for the life of his brother whom he has slain. And we shall also destroy the heir. And they shall quench my coal which is left, so as not to set to my husband a name and remnant on the face of the earth.

8 And the king said to the woman, Go to your house, and I will give command concerning you.

9 And the woman of Tekoah said to the king, My master, O king, let the iniquity be on me, and on my father's house; and the king and his throne shall be guiltless.

10 And the king said, Whoever speaks to you, you also shall bring him to me, then he shall not touch you any more.

11 And she said, Please let the king remember YAHWEH your Elohim, that the avenger of blood not destroy any more, and that they may not destroy my son. And he said, As YAHWEH lives, not one hair of your son shall fall to the earth.

12 And the woman said, Please let your servant speak a word to my master the king. And he said, Speak.

13 And the woman said, And why have you thought in this way about the people of Elohim? Yea, the king is speaking this thing as a guilty one, in that the king has not brought back his outcast one.

14 For surely we do die and are as water which is spilled on the ground, which cannot be gathered up. And Elohim does not take a life, but has devised plans so that the outcast is not cast out from Him.

15 And now that I have come to speak this word to my master the king, because the people made me afraid; and your servant said, Please let me speak to the king; it may be the king shall do the word of his servant.

16 For the king has listened, to deliver his servant out of the hand of the man seeking to destroy me and my son together, out of the inheritance of Elohim.

17 And your servant said, Please let the word of my master the king be comforting. For as a messenger of Elohim, so is my master the king, to

understand the good and the evil. And YAHWEH your Elohim shall be with you.

18 And the king answered and said to the woman, Please do not hide from me the thing that I am asking you. And the woman said, Then let my master the king speak.

19 And the king said, Is the hand of Joab with you in all this? And the woman answered and said, As your soul lives, my master, O king, none shall turn to the right or to the left from all that my master the king has spoken. For your servant Joab commanded me, and he put all these words in your servant's mouth.

20 Your servant Joab has done this thing to turn about the face of the matter, and my master is wise according to the wisdom of a messenger of Elohim, to know all that is in the land.

21 And the king said to Joab, Behold, now, I have done this thing. Then go, bring back the young man Absalom.

22 And Joab fell on his face to the earth, and bowed, and blessed the king. And Joab said, Today your servant has known that I have found grace in your eyes, my master, O king, in that the king has done the word of his servant.

23 And Joab rose up and went to Geshur, and brought Absalom to Jerusalem.

24 And the king said, Let him turn to his house, and he shall not see my face. And Absalom turned to his house, and he did not see the king's face.

25 And no man was handsome like Absalom in all Israel, to be so greatly praised. From the sole of his foot to his crown, there was not a blemish in him.

26 And when he sheared his head (for it was at the end of days of days that he sheared it, because the hair was heavy on him, and he sheared it), he weighed the hair of his head at two hundred shekels by the king's weight.

27 And three sons were born to Absalom, and one daughter. And her name was Tamar; she was a woman of a beautiful form.

28 And Absalom lived in Jerusalem two years, and had not seen the king's face.

29 And Absalom sent to Joab, to send him to the king. But he was not willing to come to him. And he sent again a second time, and he was not willing to come.

30 And he said to his servants, Behold, Joab's allotment is beside mine, and he has barley there. Go and set it on fire. And Absalom's servants set the allotment on fire.

31 And Joab rose up and came to Absalom, to the house, and said to him, Why have your servants set my allotment on fire?

32 And Absalom said to Joab, Behold, I sent to you, saying, Come here, and I will send you to the king to say, Why have I come from Geshur? It was good for me to be there still. And now, let me see the king's face, and if there is guilt in me, then you shall cause me to die.

33 And Joab came to the king and told him. And he called to Absalom; and he came to the king, and bowed to him on his face to the earth before the king. And the king gave a kiss to Absalom.

Chapter 15

1 And it happened afterward that Absalom prepared a chariot for himself, and horses, and fifty men running before him.

2 And Absalom rose up and stood by the side of the way of the gate. And it happened that every man who had a

cause to come to the king for judgment, Absalom called to him and said, Of what city are you? And he said, Your servant is from one of the tribes of Israel.

3 And Absalom said to him, Behold, your matters are good and right. And there is no listener to you from the king.

4 And Absalom said, Who shall make me a judge in the land, that every man who has a dispute, I will then declare him right, even with justice?

5 And it happened, when a man drew near to bow himself to him, he put out his hand and laid hold on him, and gave him a kiss.

6 And Absalom acted this way to all Israel who came in to the king for judgment. And Absalom stole the heart of the men of Israel.

7 And at the end of forty years[1], it happened, Absalom said to the king, Please let me go and I shall pay my vow that I have vowed to YAHWEH, in Hebron.

8 For your servant has vowed a vow when I lived in Geshur in Syria, saying, If YAHWEH bringing shall bring me back to Jerusalem, then I shall serve YAHWEH.

9 And the king said to him, Go in peace. And he rose up and went to Hebron.

10 And Absalom sent spies among all the tribes of Israel, saying, When you hear the sound of the ram's horn, then you shall say, Absalom is king in Hebron.

11 And two hundred men went out of Jerusalem with Absalom, invited ones. And they went out in their simplicity and did not know anything.

12 And Absalom sent Ahithophel a Gilonite, a counselor of David, out of his city, out of Giloh, as he offered the sacrifices. And the conspiracy was strong. And the people were going on and increasing with Absalom.

13 And a messenger came to David, saying, The hearts of the men of Israel have gone after Absalom.

14 And David said to all his servants who were with him in Jerusalem, Rise up, and we will flee; for we have no escape from the face of Absalom. Hurry to leave, that he not overtake us and bring evil down on us, and strike the city with the edge of the sword.

15 And the king's servants said to the king, According to all that my master the king desires, behold, your servants will do.

16 And the king went out, and all his household at his feet. And the king left ten women, concubines, to keep the house.

17 And the king went out, and all the people at his feet. And they stood still at the house farthest away.

18 And all his servants were passing on by his side, and all the Cherethites, and all the Pelethites, and all the Gittites, six hundred men who came at his feet from Gath. These were passing on before the king.

19 And the king said to Ittai the Gittite, Why do you go, even you with us? Turn back and remain with the king, for you are an alien, and also you are an exile. Go to your place.

20 You came in yesterday and today. Should I make you roam with us, to go while I go, where I go? Turn back, and turn your brothers to go with you in kindness and truth.

21 And Ittai replied to the king and said, As YAHWEH lives, and my master the king lives, surely in the place where my master the king is, there your servant shall be, whether for death or for life.

22 And David said to Ittai, Go on and pass over. And Ittai the Gittite

[1] This is a copyist error and should read 4 yrs.

passed over, and all his men, and all the little ones with him.
23 And all the land was weeping with a loud voice. And all the people were passing over. And the king was passing over through the torrent Kidron, and all the people passed over, toward the way of the wilderness.
24 And, behold, Zadok also came, and all the Levites with him, bearing the ark of the covenant of Elohim. And they set the ark of Elohim down. And Abiathar went up until all the people finished passing on out of the city.
25 And the king said to Zadok, Take the ark of Elohim back to the city. If I find grace in the eyes of YAHWEH, then He will bring me back and make me see it and His dwelling place.
26 And if He says this, I have not delighted in you, behold, I am here. He shall do to me as seems good in His eyes.
27 And the king said to Zadok the priest, Are you a seer? Return to the city in peace, and your two sons with you, your son Ahimaaz, and Jonathan the son of Abiathar.
28 Behold, I will wait in the plain of the wilderness until word comes from you to report to me.
29 And Zadok and Abiathar took the ark of Elohim back to Jerusalem. And they remained there.
30 And David was going up in the ascent of the olives, going up and weeping. And his head was covered, and he was going barefooted.[1] And all the people who were with him each had covered his head, and had gone up, going up and weeping.
31 And one told David, saying, Ahithophel is among the conspirators with Absalom. And David said, O YAHWEH, I pray You, make the counsel of Ahithophel foolish.
32 And it happened as David had come to the top, there where he bowed to Elohim. And, behold, Hushai the Archite came to meet him, his tunic torn, and earth on his head.
33 And David said to him, If you pass on with me, then you shall be a burden to me.
34 But if you return to the city, and shall say to Absalom, I also will be your servant, O king; I was servant of your father before now; and now I am also your servant. Then you can break down the counsel of Ahithophel for me.
35 And do you not have there with you Zadok and Abiathar, the priests? And it shall be, you shall declare everything that you hear from the house of the king; you shall report to Zadok and to Abiathar, the priests.
36 Behold, there are with them their two sons, Ahimaaz to Zadok, and Jonathan to Abiathar. And you shall send to me by their hand anything that you hear.
37 And David's friend Hushai came into the city. And Absalom came into Jerusalem.

Chapter 16

1 And David had passed on a little from the top. And behold, Ziba, the servant of Mephibosheth, came to meet him with a couple of saddled donkeys, and on them two hundred loaves and a hundred bunches of raisins, and a hundred of summer fruit, and a skin of wine.
2 And the king said to Ziba, What are these to you? And Ziba said, The donkeys are for the king's household to ride on, and the bread and the summer fruit for the young men to eat;

[1] These were signs of mourning and humility as it is a shame for a man to cover his head (1 Cor 11:14).

and the wine for the wearied to drink in the wilderness.

3 And the king said, And where is the son of your master? And Ziba said to the king, Behold, he is staying in Jerusalem, for he said, Today the house of Israel will give back to me the kingdom of my father.

4 And the king said to Ziba, Behold, all that Mephibosheth has is yours. And Ziba said, I bow myself; may I find favor in your eyes, my master, O king.

5 And King David came to Bahurim. And, behold, a man was coming out from there, of the family of the house of Saul; and his name was Shimei, the son of Gera. He came out, and he came cursing.

6 And he stoned David with stones and all the servants of King David, and all the people, and all the mighty men on his right and on his left.

7 And Shimei said this in his cursing, Go out! Go out, O man of blood, O worthless man!

8 YAHWEH has turned back on you all the blood of the house of Saul, in whose place you have reigned. And YAHWEH shall give the kingdom into the hand of your son Absalom. And, behold, you are taken in your evil, for you are a man of blood.

9 And Abishai the son of Zeruiah said to the king, Why does this dead dog curse my master the king? Please let me pass over, and I will take off his head.

10 And the king said, What have I to do with you, sons of Zeruiah? For let him curse, even because YAHWEH has said to him, Curse David. And who shall say, Why have you done so?

11 And David said to Abishai, and to all his servants, Behold, my son who came out of my loins is seeking my life, and surely now also the Benjamite. Leave him alone, and let him curse, for YAHWEH has spoken to him.

12 Perhaps YAHWEH will look on my affliction, and YAHWEH will return good to me for his cursing this day. *(Is 37:4, Deut 23:5)*

13 And David went with his men in the highway, and Shimei was going along at the side of the hill across from him. As he went, he cursed, and stoned with stones across from him, and dusted with dust.

14 And the king came in wearied, and all the people with him; and he was refreshed there.

15 And Absalom and all the people, the men of Israel, had come into Jerusalem, and Ahithophel with him.

16 And it happened, when Hushai the Archite, David's friend, had come to Absalom, Hushai said to Absalom, Let the king live! Let the king live!

17 And Absalom said to Hushai, Is this your kindness with your friend? Why have you not gone with your friend?

18 And Hushai said to Absalom, No, for he whom YAHWEH and this people have chosen, even all the men of Israel, his I shall be, and I shall remain with him.

19 And a second time, Whom should I serve? Should I not serve before the face of his son. As I served before the face of your father, so shall I be before your face.

20 And Absalom said to Ahithophel, Give your counsel, what we shall do.

21 And Ahithophel said to Absalom, Go in to your father's concubines, those he left to keep the house. And all Israel shall hear that you have become odious with your father. And the hands of all who are with you will be strong.

22 And they spread out a tent for Absalom on the roof. And Absalom

went in to his father's concubines before the eyes of all Israel.

23 And the counsel of Ahithophel which he counseled in those days was as one who had inquired at the Word of the Elohim. So was all the counsel of Ahithophel, both to David and to Absalom.[1] *(2 Sam 17:14)*

Chapter 17

1 And Ahithophel said to Absalom, Please let me choose twelve thousand men, and I shall rise up and pursue David tonight.

2 And I shall come on him, and he shall be weary and feeble handed. And I will make him tremble, and the people with him shall flee. And I shall strike the king by himself.

3 And I shall bring all the people back to you when all return, except the man whom you are seeking. All the people shall be in peace.

4 And the thing was pleasing in Absalom's eyes, and in the eyes of all the elders of Israel.

5 And Absalom said, Please call for Hushai the Archite also. And we shall hear what is in his mouth, also he.

6 And Hushai came in to Absalom. And Absalom spoke to him, saying, Ahithophel has spoken according to this word. Shall we do this word? If not, you speak.

7 And Hushai said to Absalom, The counsel Ahithophel counseled is not good at this time.

8 And Hushai said, You have known your father and his men, that they are mighty men. And they are bitter of soul, like a bear bereaved of cubs in the field. And your father is a man of war, and shall not stay the night with the people.

9 Behold, now he is hidden in one of the pits, or in one of the places. And it shall be, at the falling among them at the beginning, that whoever hears even shall say, There has been a slaughter among the people who follow Absalom.

10 And also he, the son of valor, whose heart is as the heart of the lion, shall utterly melt. For all Israel knows that your father is a mighty man, and those with him sons of valor.

11 So I counsel this: Gathering, let all Israel be gathered to you, from Dan even to Beer-Sheba, as the sand that is by the sea for multitude. And you in person shall go into battle.

12 And we shall come in to him, in one of the places, there where he shall be found. And we shall fall on him as the dew falls on the ground. And of all the men who are with him, not even one shall be left.

13 And if he is taken into a city, then all Israel shall bear ropes to that city. And we shall draw it into the torrent bed, until there shall not be found even a pebble.

14 And Absalom and all the men of Israel said, The counsel of Hushai the Archite is better than the counsel of Ahithophel. And YAHWEH had ordained to break down the good counsel of Ahithophel, for the sake of bringing the evil of YAHWEH to Absalom.

15 And Hushai said to Zadok and to Abiathar, the priests, Ahithophel has counseled this and this to Absalom and the elders of Israel. And I have counseled this and this.

16 And now send quickly and tell David, saying, Do not stay in the fords of the wilderness tonight. And, also, crossing, pass over, that there not be a

[1] Counsel to a king was extremely important, as was discerning the counsel. Without discernment a leader will enter much trouble for many.

swallowing up of the king and of all the people with him.

17 And Jonathan and Ahimaaz were standing at En-Rogel, for they were not able to be seen going into the city. And a slave-girl went and told them. And they went and told it to King David.

18 And a youth saw them, and told Absalom. And they went on, both of them in haste, and came into the house of a man in Bahurim. And he had a well in his court, and they went down there.

19 And the woman took and spread the covering over the well, and spread ground grain on it. And the thing was not known.

20 And the servants of Absalom came in to the woman, to the house, and said, Where are Ahimaaz and Jonathan? And the woman said to them, They passed over the river of water. And they looked and did not find them. And they returned to Jerusalem.

21 And it happened after they left, they came up out of the well and went and told King David. And they said to David, Rise up and quickly pass over the waters, for Ahithophel has counseled this against you.

22 And David and all the people with him rose up, and they passed over the Jordan until the light of the morning, until there was not one lacking who had not crossed the Jordan.

23 And Ahithophel saw that his counsel was not done. And he saddled the donkey and rose up and went to his house, to his city. And he gave command to his household, then hanged himself, and died. And he was buried in the burying place of his father.

24 And David came to Mahanaim. And Absalom crossed the Jordan, he and all the men of Israel with him.

25 And Absalom had set Amasa over the army instead of Joab. And Amasa was the son of a man whose name was Ithra the Israelite, who had gone in to Abigail, the daughter of Nahash, the sister of Zeruiah, the brother of Joab.

26 And Israel camped with Absalom in the land of Gilead.

27 And it happened as David came into Mahanaim, Shobi the son of Nahash, from Rabbah of the sons of Ammon, and Machir the son of Ammiel, from Lo-Debar, and Barzillai the Gileadite, from Rogelim,

28 brought beds, and basins, and earthen vessels, and wheat, and barley, and flour, and roasted grain, and beans, and lentils, and roasted grain,

29 and honey, and curds and sheep, and cheese from the herd, for David, and for the people who were with him to eat. For they said, The people are hungry and weary and thirsty in the wilderness.

Chapter 18

1 And David mustered the people who were with him, and he set over them commanders of hundreds.

2 And David sent one third of the people by the hand of Joab, and one third by the hand of Abishai the son of Zeruiah, Joab's brother, and one third by Ittai the Gittite. And the king said to the people. Going out I will go with you, I also.

3 And the people said, You shall not go out, for if we flee they will not set their heart on us even if half of us die; for now you are like ten thousand to us. And now it is good that you be a helper for us from the city.

4 And the king said to them, I will do that which is good in your eyes. And the king stood at the side of the gate,

and all the people went out by hundreds and by thousands.[1]

5 And the king commanded Joab, and Abishai, and Ittai, saying, For my sake deal gently with the young man, with Absalom. And all the people heard as the king commanded the commanders concerning Absalom.

6 And the people went into the field to meet Israel. And the battle was in the forest of Ephraim.

7 And the people of Israel were stricken before David's servants. And there was a great destruction on that day of twenty thousand.

8 And the battle was scattered over the face of all the land, and the forest devoured among the people more than the sword had devoured in that day.

9 And Absalom came before David's servants. And Absalom was riding on a mule, and the mule came in under the thick branches of a great oak. And his head caught hold in the oak, and he was lifted up between the heavens and the earth. And the mule under him passed on.

10 And a man saw and told Joab, and said, Behold! I saw Absalom hanging in the oak;

11 and Joab said to the man who told him, And behold, you have seen. And why did you not strike him to the earth there and call on me to give you ten silver pieces and a girdle?

12 And the man said to Joab, Yes, though I weighed a thousand silver pieces in my hand, I would not put forth my hand to the king's son. For in our ears the king commanded you, and Abishai, and Ittai saying, Take heed, whoever goes against the young man, against Absalom.

13 Or I would have dealt falsely against my soul. For no matter is hidden from the king, and you, you yourself would have set against me.

14 And Joab said, I will not wait this before you. And he took three darts in his hand and struck them into Absalom's heart while he was alive, in the midst of the oak.

15 And they went around, ten young men bearing Joab's weapons, and struck Absalom, and killed him.

16 And Joab blew the ram's horn, and the people returned from pursuing Israel, for Joab had held the people back.

17 And they took Absalom and threw him into a great pit in the forest, and set up a very great heap of stones over him. And all Israel fled, each one to his tent.

18 And during his lifetime Absalom had taken and set up for himself a standing-pillar, which is in the King's Valley. For he said, I have no son to cause my name to be remembered. And he called the standing pillar by his name and it is called Absalom's Monument to this day.

19 And Ahimaaz the son of Zadok said, Please let me run, and I will bear news to the king. For YAHWEH has vindicated him from the hand of his enemies.

20 And Joab said to him, You are not a man of tidings today. But you shall bear tidings another day. And today you shall not bear tidings, because the king's son is dead.

21 And Joab said to Cushi, Go, tell the king that which you have seen. And Cushi bowed to Joab, and ran.

22 And Ahimaaz the son of Zadok said yet again to Joab, Yet whatever may be, please let me run after the Cushite, I also. And Joab said, Why is this that you are running, my son?

---

1 Due to David's great leadership ability his life was worth 10,000 others, as without him all the army would be discouraged and fall. This truly shows how important true leadership really is.

Also for you there are no tidings found.

23 And he said, Yet whatever it may be, let me run. And he said to him, Run. And Ahimaaz ran the way of the circuit and passed by the Cushite.

24 And David was sitting between the two gates. And the watchman went to the roof of the gate and lifted up his eyes, and looked. And, behold, a man running by himself!

25 And the watchman called and told the king. And the king said, If he is by himself, tidings are in his mouth. And he came, coming on, and drawing near.

26 And the watchman saw another man running. And the watchman called to the gatekeeper and said, Behold, a man running by himself! And the king said, Also this one is bearing tidings.

27 And the watchman said, I see the running of the first as the running of Ahimaaz the son of Zadok. And the king said, This is a good man and he comes with good news.

28 And Ahimaaz called and said to the king, Peace! And he bowed on his face to the earth to the king and said, Blessed be YAHWEH your Elohim who has shut up the men who lifted up their hand against my master the king.

29 And the king said, Peace to the young man, to Absalom? And Ahimaaz said, I saw the great tumult, at the sending away of the servant of the king, even your servant sent by Joab, but I do not know what.

30 And the king said, Turn aside, stand here. And he turned aside and stood.

31 And, behold, the Cushite had come. And the Cushite said, News is borne, my master, O king! For YAHWEH has vindicated you today out of the hand of those rising up against you.

32 And the king said to the Cushite, Peace to the young man, to Absalom? And the Cushite said, Let them be as the young man, the enemies of my master the king, and all who have risen up against you for evil.

33 And the king trembled. And he went up to the upper room of the gate and wept. And he said this as he went, My son! My son Absalom! My son Absalom! Oh that I had died instead of you, my son Absalom, my son!

Chapter 19

1 And it was announced to Joab, Behold, the king is weeping and mourning over Absalom.

2 And the deliverance on that day became mourning to all the people, for the people had heard on that day, saying, The king is grieving for his son.

3 And the people stole away on that day to go into the city, as the people steal away who are ashamed as they flee in battle.

4 And the king had covered his face. Yea, the king cried with a loud voice, My son Absalom! Absalom my son, my son!

5 And Joab came in to the king to the house, and said, You have put to shame today the faces of all your servants, those delivering your life today, and the life of your sons, and of your daughters, and the life of your wives, and the life of your concubines,

6 by loving those who hate you, and by hating those who love you, for you have declared today that there are no leaders nor servants to you. For I know today that if Absalom were alive and all of us dead today, that it would be right in your eyes.

7 And now rise up; go out and speak to the heart of your servants. For I have sworn by YAHWEH that if you do not go out, not a man shall remain

with you tonight. And this would be worse for you than all the evil that has come on you from your youth until now.
8 And the king rose up and sat in the gate. And they announced it to all the people, saying, Behold, the king is sitting in the gate. And all the people came in before the king. And Israel had fled, each one to his tents.
9 And it happened, all the people were quarreling through all the tribes of Israel, saying, The king delivered us out of the hand of our enemies. Yea, he himself delivered us out of the hand of the Philistines. And now he has fled out of the land because of Absalom.
10 And Absalom whom we anointed over us is dead in battle. And now why are you silent as to bringing back the king?
11 And King David sent to Zadok and Abiathar the priests, saying, Speak to the elders of Judah, saying, Why are you the last to bring back the king to his house? For the word of all Israel had come to the king, to his house.
12 You are my brother; you are my bone and my flesh. And why are you the last to bring back the king?
13 And say to Amasa, Are you not my bone and my flesh? So shall Elohim do to me, and more so He shall do, if you are not commander of the army before me all the days, instead of Joab.
14 And he inclined the heart of all the men of Judah as one man, and they sent to the king, Return, you and all your servants.
15 And the king returned and came in to the Jordan. And Judah had come to Gilgal, to go to meet the king, to bring the king over the Jordan.
16 And Shimei, the son of Gera, the Benjamite, from Bahurim, hastened and came down with the men of Judah to meet King David.
17 And a thousand men were with him from Benjamin; also Ziba, the servant of the house of Saul, and his thirteen sons and his twenty servants with him. And they had rushed over the Jordan before the king.
18 And they had crossed over the ford to carry over the king's household, and to do the good in his eyes. And Shimei the son of Gera had fallen before the face of the king as he crossed over the Jordan.
19 And he said to the king, Do not let my master charge iniquity to me, nor shall you remember that which your servant perversely did in the day that my master the king went out from Jerusalem, for the king to take it to his heart.
20 For your servant knows that I have sinned; and behold, I come today, the first of the house of Joseph, to go down to meet my master the king.
21 And Abishai the son of Zeruiah answered and said, Shall not Shimei be put to death for this, because he cursed the messiah of YAHWEH?
22 And David said, What have I to do with you, O sons of Zeruiah, that you are as my foe today? Shall any man be executed today in Israel? For do I not know that today I am king over Israel?
23 And the king said to Shimei, You shall not die. And the king swore to him.
24 And Mephibosheth the son of Saul had come down to meet the king. And he had not dressed his feet, nor had shaved his upper lip. Yea, he had not washed his garment, even from the day that he went away till the day that he came in peace.
25 And it happened when he had come to Jerusalem to meet the king, the king said to him, Why did you not go with me, Mephibosheth?
26 And he said, My master, O king,

my servant deceived me. For your servant said, I will saddle the donkey for myself and ride on it and go with the king, for your servant is lame.
27 And he spoke slander against your servant to my master the king. And my master the king is as a messenger of the Elohim; yet you do that which is good in your eyes.
28 For all the house of my father would be nothing except men of death before my master the king, and you have set your servant among those eating at your table. And what right is there to me any more, even to cry any more to the king?
29 And the king said to him, Why do you speak any more of your matters? I have said, You and Ziba share the land.
30 And Mephibosheth said to the king, Yes, let him take all, since my master the king has come in peace to his house.
31 And Barzillai the Gileadite had gone down from Rogelim and had crossed over the Jordan with the king, to send him away over the Jordan.
32 And Barzillai was very old, a son of eighty years, and he had sustained the king as he abode in Mahanaim, for he was a very great man.
33 And the king said to Barzillai, You pass over with me and I will sustain you with me in Jerusalem.
34 And Barzillai said to the king, How many are the days of the years of my life, that I should go up with the king to Jerusalem?
35 I am a son of eighty years today. Can I distinguish between good and evil? Can your servant taste that which I am eating, and that which I drink? Can I any more listen to the voice of singing men and singing women? And why should your servant be any more as a burden to my master the king?
36 Just a little way your servant shall cross over the Jordan with the king. And why should the king repay me with this reward?
37 Please let your servant return, and I shall die in my own city, near the burying place of my father and my mother. And, behold your servant Chimham! Let him cross over with my master the king, and you do to him the good in your eyes.
38 And the king said, Chimham shall go over with me, and I shall do to him that which is good in your eyes. Yea, all that you shall choose of me I will do for you.
39 And all the people crossed over the Jordan, and the king crossed over. And the king gave a kiss to Barzillai and blessed him. And he returned to his place.
40 And the king crossed over to Gilgal. And Chimham crossed over with him, and all the people of Judah. And they brought the king over, and also half of the people of Israel.
41 And, behold, all the men of Israel were coming to the king. And they said to the king, Why have they, our brothers, the men of Judah, stolen you away? For they brought the king and his household over the Jordan, and all the men of David with him.
42 And, behold, all the men of Judah answered against the men of Israel, Because the king is near to us. And why is this that you are angry about this matter? Have we at all eaten from the king, or has he given a gift to us?
43 And the men of Israel answered the men of Judah and said, We have ten hands in the king, and we also have more in David than you. Why then did you despise us, that our word was not first to bring back our king? And the word of the men of Judah was more fierce than the word of the men of Israel.

Chapter 20

1 And a man of worthlessness happened to be there, and his name was Sheba, the son of Bichri, a man of Benjamin. And he blew the ram's horn and said, We have no part in David, and we have no inheritance in the son of Jesse. Each man to his tents, O Israel.

2 And every man of Israel went up from following David, going after Sheba the son of Bichri. But the men of Judah clung to their king, from the Jordan even to Jerusalem.

3 And David came into his house at Jerusalem. And the king took the ten women, the concubines whom he had left to guard the house, and fed them. But he did not go in to them, and they were shut up to the day of their death in widowhood.

4 And the king said to Amasa, Call for me the men of Judah within three days; and you stand here.

5 And Amasa went to call Judah, but delayed beyond the set time which he had set for him.

6 And David said to Abishai, Now Sheba the son of Bichri will do more evil to us than Absalom. You take the servants of your master and pursue him, that he not find fortified cities for himself, and deliver himself from our eye.

7 And the men of Joab went out after him, and the Cherethites, and the Pelethites, and all the mighty men. And they went out from Jerusalem to pursue Sheba the son of Bichri.

8 They were near the great stone in Gibeon, and Amasa had gone before them. And Joab was girded with his war coat as his clothing; and over it was a belt with a sword fastened on his loins in its sheath. And as he went out, it fell out.

9 And Joab said to Amasa, Is it well with you, my brother? And Joab's right hand took hold of Amasa's beard to give a kiss to him.

10 And Amasa was not on guard against the sword in Joab's hand. And he struck him with it in the fifth rib, and poured out his bowels to the ground, and did not strike him again. And he died. And Joab and his brother Abishai pursued Sheba the son of Bichri.

11 And a man stood beside him, of the young men of Joab; and he said, Whoever delights in Joab, and whoever is for David follow after Joab!

12 And Amasa was wallowing in blood in the middle of the highway. And the man saw that all the people stood still. And he turned Amasa away from the highway to the field, and threw a garment over him, when he saw that all who came beside him stood still.

13 When he was taken from the highway, every man passed on after Joab to pursue Sheba the son of Bichri.

14 And he went through all the tribes of Israel to Abel, and to Beth-Maachah, and to all the Berites. And they were gathered, and went after him also.

15 And they went in and lay siege against him in Abel-Beth-Maachah, and mounded up a siege-mound against the city. And it stood against the outermost wall, and all the people with Joab were undermining, to cause the wall to fall.

16 And a wise woman called out of the city, Hear! Hear! Please say to Joab, Come near here and I will speak to you.

17 And he came near to her. And the woman said, Are you Joab? And he said, I am. And she said to him, Hear the words of your handmaid. And he said, I am hearing.

18 And she spoke, saying, They spoke often in days gone by, saying, Asking they will ask at Abel, and so they ended all dispute.

19 I am of the peaceful, faithful ones of Israel. You are seeking to destroy a city, and a mother in Israel. Why will you swallow up the inheritance of YAHWEH?

20 And Joab answered and said, Far be it! Far be it from me that I should swallow up or destroy.

21 The case is not such. For a man of the hills of Ephraim, Sheba the son of Bichri is his name, has lifted up his hand against the king, against David. If you will give him up by himself, then I will go away from the city. And the woman said to Joab, Behold, his head will be thrown over the wall to you.

22 And the woman came to all the people in her wisdom. And they cut off the head of Sheba the son of Bichri and threw it to Joab. And he blew the ram's horn, and they were dispersed from the city, each man to his tents. And Joab went back to Jerusalem to the king.

23 And Joab was over all the army of Israel, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada over the Cherethites and over the Pelethites.

24 And Adoram was over the forced labor, and Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud was the recorder.

25 And Sheva was the scribe, and Zadok and Abiathar the priests.

26 And also Ira the Jairite was a priest to David.

Chapter 21

1 And there was a famine in the days of David, three years, year after year. And David sought the face of YAHWEH. And YAHWEH said, It is for Saul and for his bloody house, because he killed the Gibeonites.

2 And the king called for the Gibeonites and said to them (as to the Gibeonites, they were not of the sons of Israel, but of the remnant of the Amorites, and the sons of Israel had sworn to them) and Saul sought to strike them in his zeal for the sons of Israel and Judah.

3 And David said to the Gibeonites, What shall I do for you? And with what shall I atone, and you bless the inheritance of YAHWEH?

4 And the Gibeonites said to him, We will have neither silver nor gold by Saul and by his house. Also, we will have no man in Israel put to death. And he said, What you say, I will do for you.

5 And they said to the king, The man who destroyed us and schemed against us that we be wasted from standing in all the border of Israel was Saul.

6 Let be given to us seven men of his sons to us. And we will expose them to YAHWEH in Gibeah of Saul, the chosen of YAHWEH. And the king said, I will deliver them.

7 But the king spared Jonathan's son Mephibosheth the son of Saul because of the oath of YAHWEH that was between them, between David and Jonathan, the son of Saul.

8 And the king took the two sons of Rizpah the daughter of Aiah, whom she bore to Saul, Armoni and Mephibosheth. And he took the five sons of Michal the daughter of Saul, whom she brought up for Adriel the son of Barzillai the Meholathite.[1]

9 And he gave them into the hands of

[1] Michal is the sister of Merab who was married to Adriel. (1 Sam 18:19). Apparently, Merab died and Michal raised her 5 sons. Michal had no children of her own due to the curse for despising David for his worship of YHWH when they brought up the ark of the covenant, 2Sam 6:16, 20-23.

the Gibeonites. And they exposed them in the mountain before YAHWEH. And the seven fell together. And they were executed in the days of harvest, in the first days, in the beginning of barley harvest.
10 And Rizpah the daughter of Aiah took sackcloth and stretched it out for herself on the rock, from the beginning of harvest until water poured on them out of the heavens. And she did not allow a bird of the heavens to rest on them by day nor the beast of the field by night.[1]
11 And that which Rizpah the daughter of Aiah, Saul's concubine, had done was told to David.
12 And David went and took the bones of Saul, and the bones of his son Jonathan from the rulers of Jabesh-Gilead, who had stolen them from the plaza of Beth-Shean, there where the Philistines hanged them in the day the Philistines struck Saul in Gilboa.
13 And he brought up the bones of Saul and the bones of his son Jonathan from there, and they gathered up the bones of those hanged.
14 And they buried the bones of Saul and of his son Jonathan in the land of Benjamin, in Zelah, in the burying place of his father Kish, and did all that the king had commanded. And afterward Elohim heard prayer for the land.
15 And again the Philistines warred with Israel. And David went down, and his servants with him. And they fought with the Philistines. And David was weary.
16 And Ishbibenob, who was of the sons of Rapha the giant, the weight of his spear being three hundred copper shekels in weight, and was girded with a new sword, even he said to strike David.
17 And Abishai the son of Zeruiah helped him, and struck the Philistine, and killed him. Then the men of David swore to him, saying, You shall not again go out with us to battle, that you not cause the lamp of Israel to go out.
18 And it happened after this that the battle was again in Gob of the Philistines. Then Sibbechai the Hushathite struck Saph, who was among the sons of Rapha.
19 And again the battle was in Gob with the Philistines, and Elhanan the son of Jaare-Oregim the Bethlehemite struck one of Goliath the Gittite[2], and the wood of his spear was like a weaver's beam.
20 And again the battle was in Gath, and there was a man of stature, and the fingers of his hands were six, and the fingers of his feet six, twenty four in number. And he also had been born to Rapha.
21 And he cursed Israel; and Jonathan, the son of David's brother Shimeah, struck him.
22 These four here born to the giant in Gath. And they fell by the hand of David, by the hand of his servants.

Chapter 22

1 And David spoke to YAHWEH the words of this song in the day YAHWEH delivered him out of the hand of all his enemies, and out of the hand of Saul.
2 And he said: YAHWEH is my rock and my fortress, and my Deliverer.
3 My Elohim is my rock; I shall take refuge in Him; my shield, and the horn of my Y'shua*, my high tower, and my refuge! My Savior, You shall save me from violence *(Hamas)*.

[1] This is April at the beginning of the harvest and she defended the corpses until Nov-Dec when the first real rain would fall.

[2] The one struck was Lahmi, the brother of Goliath, 1 Chron 20:5.

4 I call on YAHWEH, the One to be
praised; and I shall be saved from my
enemies.
5 When the waves of death surround
me, the floods of wickedness terrify
me,
6 the cords of Sheol are all around
me, the snares of death confronted
me.
7 In my distress I called on
YAHWEH, and I called to my Elohim.
And He heard my voice from His
sanctuary, and my cry was in His ears.
8 And the earth shook and trembled,
the foundations of the heavens were
troubled, and were shaken; for He was
angry.
9 Smoke rose up in His nostrils, and
fire devoured out of His mouth; coals
were kindled by it.
10 And He bowed the heavens and
came down, and thick darkness was
under His feet.
11 And He rode on a cherub, and did
fly, and was seen on the wings of the
wind.
12 And He made darkness pavilions
all around Him, the gathering of
waters, thick clouds of the skies.
13 From the brightness before Him
were kindled coals of fire!
14 YAHWEH thundered from the
heavens, and the Most High gave forth
His voice.
15 And He sent forth arrows and
scattered them; lightning, and
troubled them;
16 and the channels of the sea were
seen; the world's foundations were
revealed by the rebuke of YAHWEH,
from the blast of the breath of His
nostrils.
17 He sent from above; He took me;
He drew me out of many waters.
18 He delivered me from my strong
enemy, from those who hated me; for
they were stronger than me.
19 They confronted me in the day of
my calamity, and YAHWEH was my
support;
20 and He brought me out to a large
place; He delivered me, for He
delighted in me.
21 YAHWEH rewarded me
according to my righteousness;
according to the cleanness of my
hands, He has repaid me.
22 For I have kept the ways of
YAHWEH, and have not acted
wickedly against my Elohim.
23 For all His judgments were before
me. As to His statutes, I did not turn
away from them.
24 And I was blameless before Him,
and I kept myself from my iniquity.
25 And YAHWEH returned to me
according to my righteousness,
according to my cleanness in His eyes.
26 With the faithful You show
Yourself kind. With the upright man,
You will show Yourself upright.
27 With the pure, You will show
Yourself pure, and with the perverted
You will appear perverse.
28 And You shall save the afflicted
people, and Your eyes are on the
haughty, whom You bring low.
29 For You are my lamp, O
YAHWEH; and YAHWEH shall light
up my darkness.
30 For by You I have run through a
troop; by my Elohim I have leaped
over a wall.
31 The El, blameless is His way; the
Word of YAHWEH is tested; He is a
shield to all those who seek refuge in
Him.
32 For who is El except YAHWEH?
And who is a rock except our Elohim?
33 The El is my strong fortress; and
He sets the blameless free in his way,
34 making my feet like hinds' feet,
even causing me to stand on my high
places;
35 teaching my hands for battle, so

that my hands may bend a bow of
copper.
36 And You have given to me the
shield of Your Y'Shua*; and Your
lowliness has made me great.
37 You have enlarged my steps
under me, and my feet have not
slipped.
38 I have pursued my enemies and
destroyed them; and I did not turn
until they were consumed.
39 And I consumed them, and struck
them, and they did not rise; but fell
under my feet.
40 Yea, You girded me with might
for battle; You caused those rising
against me to bow under me.
41 And You gave to me the necks of
my enemies; those hating me I
silenced.
42 They looked, and there was none
to save; to YAHWEH, and He did not
answer them.
43 And I beat them as the dust of the
earth; I crushed them small as the
mire of the streets; I spread them out.
44 And You delivered me from the
quarrels of my people; You kept me as
the head of the nations; a people I
have not known served me.
45 The sons of strangers submit to
me; at the hearing of the ear they
listen to me.
46 The sons of strangers wither, and
shall come trembling out of their
dungeons.
47 YAHWEH lives! And blessed be
my Rock, and is exalted the Elohim of
the Rock of my Y'shua*.
48The Elohim who gives vengeance
for me, and brings down peoples
under me,
49 and brings me forth from my
enemies; yea, You raise me up above
those rising up against me; You deliver
me from the men of violence.
50 On account of this I will confess
You, YAHWEH, among nations; and I
will sing praise to Your name.
51 A tower to Y'shua* His King; even
doing mercy to His Messiah; to David
and to his seed, until forever!

Chapter 23

1 And these are the last words of
David, the saying of David the son of
Jesse, and the saying of the man raised
on high, the Messiah of the Elohim of
Jacob, and the sweet singer of Israel:
2 The Spirit of YAHWEH has
spoken by me, and His Word is on my
tongue.
3 The Elohim of Israel said, the Rock
of Israel spoke to me: One ruling over
man righteously, who rules in the fear
of Elohim,
4 is as the light of the morning, as
the sun shines; a morning without
clouds; through shining after rain the
tender grass sprouts from the earth.
5 For is not my house so with El? For
He has made an everlasting covenant
with me, ordered in all things, and
sure; for all my salvation, and all my
desire, will He not make it grow?
6 As to the wicked, all of them shall
be as a thorn driven away; for they
cannot be taken by the hand; *(Is 27:4)*
7 but the man who shall touch them
must be armed with iron and the shaft
of a spear; they shall be utterly burned
with fire in their place.
8 These are the names of the mighty
ones who were called to David: He
who sits in the seat of the Tachmonite,
chief of the captains; He was called
Adino the Eznite, because of the eight
hundred he killed at one time.
9 And after him was Eleazar the son
of Dodo, the son of the Ahohite. He
was of the three mighty men with
David when they taunted the
Philistines, when they were gathered

there to battle; and the men of Israel
went up;
10 he rose up and struck the
Philistines until his hand was weary,
and his hand clung to the sword. And
YAHWEH worked a great salvation
on that day, and the people returned
after him only to plunder.
11 And next was Shammah the son of
Agee the Hararite. And the Philistines
had gathered into a company, and
there was a plot of the field full of
lentils, and the people had fled before
the Philistines.
12 And he set himself in the midst of
the plot, and delivered it, and struck
the Philistines. And YAHWEH
worked out a great salvation.
13 And three of the thirty
commanders went down and came to
the harvest, to David, to the cave of
Adullam. And the company of the
Philistines was camping in the Valley
of the Giants.
14 And David was then in a
stronghold, and the garrison of the
Philistines was then in Bethlehem.
15 And David longed, and said, Who
shall give me drink from the water of
the well of Bethlehem beside the gate?
16 And the three mighty ones cut
through the camp of the Philistines,
and drew water out of the well of
Bethlehem beside the gate, and took it
up, and brought it to David. But he
was not willing to drink it, and poured
it out to YAHWEH;
17 and said, Far be it from me, O
YAHWEH, to do this; is it not the
blood of the men who went with their
lives? And he was not willing to drink
it. The three mighty ones did these
things.
18 And Abishai the son of Zeruiah,
the brother of Joab, was the
commander of three. And he raised up
his spear against three hundred, and
killed them. And to him was a name
among the three.
19 With honor he was honored more
than the three. And he was the
commander to them, but he did not
come to the first three.
20 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada
from Kabzeel, a son of a mighty man,
great in deeds; he killed two lion like
men of Moab. And he went down and
killed a lion in the middle of a pit in a
day of snow.
21 And he killed an Egyptian, a man
of form; and a spear was in the
Egyptian's hand; and he went down to
him with a staff and tore away the
spear from the Egyptian's hand, and
killed him with his own spear.
22 Benaiah the son of Jehoiada did
these things, and had a name among
three mighty ones.
23 He was more honored than the
thirty, but he did not come to the first
three. And David set him over his
guard.
24 Asahel the brother of Joab was of
the thirty; Elhanan the son of Dodo of
Bethlehem;
25 Shammah the Harodite; Elika the
Harodite;
26 Helez the Paltite; Ira the son of
Ikkesh, the Tekoite;
27 Abiezer the Anathothite;
Mebunnai the Hushathite;
28 Zalmon the Ahohite; Maharai the
Netophathite;
29 Heleb the son of Baanah, a
Netophathite; Ittai the son of Ribai out
of Gibeah, of the sons of Benjamin;
30 Benaiah the Pirathonite; Hiddai
of the torrents of Gaash;
31 Abialbon the Arbathite; Azmaveth
the Barhumite;
32 Eliahba the Shaalbonite, of the
sons of Jashen; Jonathan;
33 Shammah the Hararite; Ahiam
the son of Sharar, the Hararite;
34 Eliphelet the son of Ahasbai, the

son of the Maachathite; Eliam the son of Ahithophel, the Gilonite;
35 Hezrai the Carmelite; Paarai the Arbite;
36 Igal the son of Nathan of Zobah; Bani of Gad;
37 Zelek of Ammon; Naharai the Beerothite, armor-bearer to Joab the son of Zeruiah;
38 Ira the Ithrite; Gareb, an Ithrite;
39 Uriah the Hittite; thirty seven in all.

Chapter 24

1 And again the anger of YAHWEH glowed against Israel, and moved David against them, to say, Go, number Israel and Judah.
2 And the king said to Joab, the commander of the army with him, Go now to and fro through all the tribes of Israel, from Dan even to Beer-Sheba, and number the people, that I may know the number of the people.
3 And Joab said to the king, Yea, may YAHWEH your Elohim add to the people, however many they may be, a hundredfold. And may the eyes of my master the king see it. But why does my master the king delight in this thing?
4 But the word of the king prevailed against Joab, and against the army commanders. And Joab and the army commanders went out from the presence of the king to number the people of Israel.
5 And they crossed over the Jordan and camped in Aroer, on the right of the city, in the middle of the Valley of Gad, and to Jazer.
6 And they came into Gilead, and to the land of Tahtim-Hodshi. And they came to Dan-Jaan, and around to Sidon.
7 And they came into the fortress of Tyre, and all the cities of the Hivite, and of the Canaanite. And they went out to the south of Judah, to Beer-Sheba.
8 And they went to and fro through all the land, and came in to Jerusalem at the end of nine months and twenty days.
9 And Joab gave the count from the numbering of the people to the king. And Israel was eight hundred thousand mighty men drawing sword; and the men of Judah five hundred thousand men.
10 And after he had numbered the people, the heart of David struck him. And David said to YAHWEH, I have sinned greatly in that which I have done. And now, O YAHWEH, I pray, take away the iniquity of your servant, for I have acted very foolishly.
11 And David rose up in the morning; and the Word of YAHWEH came to Gad the prophet, David's seer, saying,
12 Go and you shall speak to David, So says YAHWEH, I am setting up three things for you; you choose one of them and I will do it for you.
13 And Gad came in to David and told him, and said to him, Shall seven years of famine come to you in your land? Or shall you flee before your adversary three months, and they pursue you? Or shall three days' plague come into your land? Now consider, and see what I shall take back to Him who sent word to me.
14 And David said, Because of this it is great distressing to me. Let us fall now into the hand of YAHWEH, for many are His mercies; and do not let me fall into the hand of man.
15 And YAHWEH sent a plague on Israel from the morning even to the time appointed. And from Dan even to Beer-Sheba seventy thousand of the people died.
16 And the Messenger of YAHWEH

put forth his hand to Jerusalem, to destroy it. And YAHWEH had pity as to the evil, and said to the Messenger who was destroying among the people, Enough! Now drop your hand. And the Messenger of YAHWEH was near the threshing-floor of Araunah the Jebusite.

17 And when he saw the Messenger who was striking among the people, David spoke to YAHWEH and said, Behold, I have sinned. Yea, I have acted perversely. And these, the flock, what have they done? Now let your hand be on me, and on my father's house.

18 And Gad came in to David on that day and said to him, Go up, raise up an altar to YAHWEH in the threshing floor of Araunah the Jebusite.

19 And David went up according to Gad's word, as YAHWEH commanded.

20 And Araunah looked and saw the king and his servants crossing over to him. And Araunah went out and bowed himself to the king, his nose to the earth.

21 And Araunah said, Why has my master the king come to his servant? And David said, To buy the threshing-floor from you, in order to build an altar to YAHWEH; and the plague will be stayed from the people.

22 And Araunah said to David, Let my master the king take and offer up that which is good in his eyes. Behold, the oxen for a burnt offering, and the threshing instruments, and the yokes of the oxen for wood.

23 O king, all these Araunah gives to the king. And Araunah said to the king, May YAHWEH your Elohim accept you.

24 And the king said to Araunah, No, for buying I will buy from you for a price, and I will not offer to YAHWEH my Elohim burnt offerings for nothing. And David bought the threshing-floor and the oxen for fifty shekels of silver.

25 And David built an altar there to YAHWEH, and offered burnt offering and peace offerings. And YAHWEH was entreated for the land; and the plague was stayed from Israel.

Book of 1 Kings

Chapter 1

1 And King David was old, going into days. And they covered him with garments, for he had no heat.

2 And his servants said to him, Let them seek out a young woman for my master the king, a virgin, and she shall stand before the king, and be a nurse to him, and lie in your bosom, and my master the king shall have heat.

3 And they sought out a beautiful young woman in all the border of Israel. And they found Abishag the Shunammite, and brought her in to the king.

4 And the young woman was exceedingly beautiful, and she was a nurse to the king and served him. But the king did not know her.

5 And Adonijah the son of Haggith exalted himself, saying, I will reign. And he prepared a chariot for himself, and horsemen, and fifty men running before his face.

6 And his father had not troubled him all his days, saying, Why have you done so? And he also was very good of form, and one had borne him after Absalom.

7 And his words were with Joab the son of Zeruiah, and with Abiathar the priest. And they helped, going after Adonijah.

8 But Zadok the priest, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and Nathan the prophet, and Shimei, and Rei, and the mighty men who were to David, were not with Adonijah.

9 And Adonijah sacrificed sheep and oxen and fatlings near the Stone of Serpents which is near En-Rogel. And he called all his brothers, the sons of the king, and all the men of Judah, the servants of the king.

10 But he did not call Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah, and the mighty men, and his brother Solomon.

11 And Nathan spoke to Bathsheba, the mother of Solomon, saying, Have you not heard that Adonijah the son of Haggith reigns, and our master David does not know?

12 And now, come, please let me counsel you with counsel, and save your life, and the life of your son Solomon.

13 Go up and go in to King David. And you shall say to him, My master, O king, have you not sworn to your handmaid, saying, Surely your son Solomon shall reign after me, and he shall sit on my throne? And why does Adonijah reign?

14 Behold, while you are speaking with the king, then I will come in after you and will confirm your words.

15 And Bathsheba came in to the king, to the inner room. And the king was old, and Abishag the Shunammite was serving the king.

16 And Bathsheba bowed and knelt before the king. And the king said, What shall I do for you?

17 And she said to him, My master, you have sworn to your handmaid by YAHWEH your Elohim, saying, Surely your son Solomon shall reign after me, and he shall sit on my throne.

18 And now, behold, Adonijah reigns. And now, my master O king, you have not known.

19 And he sacrifices oxen, and fatlings, and sheep in abundance, and has called all the king's sons, and Abiathar the priest and Joab the commander of the army. But he has not called to your servant Solomon.

20 And you, my master O king, the eyes of Israel are on you, to tell them who shall sit on the throne of my master the king after him.

21 And it will be, when my master the king lies with his fathers, my son Solomon and I, shall be offenders.

22 And, behold, she was speaking with the king, and Nathan the prophet came in.

23 And they told the king, saying, Behold, Nathan the prophet! And he came in before the king and bowed to the king, his nose to the earth.

24 And Nathan said, My master O king, have you said, Adonijah shall reign after me, and he shall sit on my throne?

25 For he has gone down today and sacrificed oxen, and fatlings, and sheep in abundance, and has called all the king's sons, and the army commanders, and Abiathar the priest. And behold, they are eating and drinking before him, and they are saying, Let King Adonijah live!

26 But as for me, I, your servant, and for Zadok the priest, and for Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and for your servant Solomon, he has not called.

27 If this thing is to come about from my master the king, then you have not caused your servant to know who shall sit on the throne of my master the king after him.

28 And King David replied and said, Call Bathsheba for me. And she came in before the king, and stood before the king.

29 And the king swore and said, As YAHWEH lives, who has redeemed my soul out of all distress,

30 surely as I swore to you by YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, saying, Surely your son Solomon shall reign after me, and he shall sit on my throne in my place; surely so I will do this day.

31 And Bathsheba bowed her face to the earth, even bowing to the king, and said, Let my master King David live forever.

32 And King David said, Call Zadok the priest for me and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada. And they came in before the king.

33 And the king said to them, Take with you the servants of your master, and you shall cause my son Solomon to ride on my mule, and cause him to go down to Gihon.

34 And Zadok the priest and Nathan the prophet shall anoint him there as king over Israel. And you shall blow with the ram's horn and shout, Let King Solomon live!

35 And you shall come up after him, and let him come and sit on my throne, for he shall reign in my place. For I have appointed him ruler over Israel, and over Judah.

36 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada answered the king and said, Amen! So says YAHWEH the Elohim of my master the king.

37 As YAHWEH has been with my master the king, so shall He be with Solomon, and shall make his throne greater than the throne of my master King David.

38 And Zadok the priest, and Nathan the prophet, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and the Cherethites and the Pelethites went out and caused Solomon to ride on King David's mule, and caused him to go to Gihon.

39 And Zadok the priest took the horn of oil out of the Tabernacle and anointed Solomon. And they blew with the ram's horn, and all the people shouted, Let King Solomon live!

40 And all the people came up after him. And the people were piping with pipes, and rejoicing with great joy. And the earth was torn with their sound.

41 And Adonijah heard, and all those invited, who were with him. And they stopped eating. And Joab heard the sound of the ram's horn, and said, What is this noise roaring from the city?

42 And he was still speaking, and,
behold, Jonathan the son of Abiathar
the priest came in. And Adonijah said,
Come in, for you are a mighty man and
bear good news.
43 And Jonathan answered and said
to Adonijah, Truly our master, King
David, has caused Solomon to reign.
44 And the king sent Zadok the
priest and Nathan the prophet with
him, and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada,
and the Cherethites and the Pelethites.
And they caused him to ride on the
king's mule.
45 And they anointed him, Zadok
the priest and Nathan the prophet, as
king in Gihon. And they have come up
from there rejoicing. And the city was
roaring. It is the noise that you heard.
46 And also Solomon has sat on the
throne of the kingdom.
47 And also the king's servants have
come in to bless our master, King
David, saying, Your Elohim shall make
the name of Solomon better than your
name, and his throne greater than
your throne. And the king bowed
himself on the bed.
48 And also the king has said,
Blessed is YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel who has today given one sitting
on my throne, and my eyes seeing it.
49 And they trembled and rose up,
all those who were invited by
Adonijah, and left, each to his way.
50 And Adonijah was afraid because
of Solomon, and he rose up and went
and lay hold on the horns of the altar.
51 And it was told to Solomon,
saying, Adonijah is afraid of King
Solomon. And, behold, he has laid
hold on the horns of the altar, saying,
Let King Solomon swear to me as of
today that he will not put his servant
to death by the sword.
52 And Solomon said, If he becomes
a son of virtue, not a hair of his head
shall fall to the earth. But if evil is
found in him, then he shall die.
53 And King Solomon sent, and they
brought him down from the altar. And
he came in and bowed to King
Solomon. And Solomon said to him,
Go to your house.

Chapter 2

1 And the days of David drew near
for him to die. And he commanded his
son Solomon, saying,
2 I am going in the way of all the
earth. And you be strong, and be a
man,
3 and keep the charge of YAHWEH
your Elohim, to walk in His ways, to
keep His statutes, His commands, and
His judgments, and His testimonies,
as it is written in the Torah of Moses,
so that you may do wisely all that you
do, and there wherever you may turn,
4 so that YAHWEH may establish
His Word which He spoke to me,
saying, If your sons take heed to their
way, to walk before me in truth, with
all their heart, and with all their soul,
saying, There shall not be a man to you
cut off from the throne of Israel.[1]
5 And also, you know that which
Joab the son of Zeruiah did to me, that
which he did to the two army
commanders of Israel, to Abner the
son of Ner, and to Amasa the son of
Jether, that he murdered them, and
shed the blood of war in peace, and
put the blood of war on his girdle, on
his loins and in his sandals on his feet;
6 and you shall do according to your
wisdom, and shall not let his gray hair
go down to Sheol in peace.
7 You shall be merciful to the sons of

1 The promise to have a son be on the throne of Israel for eternity was conditional on obedience to the Torah. Solomon failed, but Yahshua, the eternal king did not fail, Math 5:17.

Barzillai the Gileadite, and they shall be among those eating at your table, for so they drew near to me when I fled from the face of your brother Absalom.

8 And, behold, with you is Shimei the son of Gera, the Benjamite of Bahurim. And he cursed me with a grievous cursing in the day I went to Mahanaim. And he came down to meet me at the Jordan, and I swore to him by YAHWEH, saying, I will not cause you to die by the sword.

9 And now, do not acquit him, for you are a wise man, and you know that which you shall do to him and shall bring his old age down with blood to Sheol.

10 And David lay with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David.

11 And the days that David reigned over Israel were forty years. He reigned seven years in Hebron, and he reigned thirty three years in Jerusalem.

12 And Solomon sat on the throne of his father David, and his kingdom was firmly established.

13 And Adonijah the son of Haggith came in to Bathsheba, the mother of Solomon. And she said, Do you come in peace? And he said, Peace.

14 And he said, may a word be to you and to me? And she said, Speak.

15 And he said, You know that the kingdom was mine, and all Israel had set their faces toward me to reign. Yet the kingdom has been turned around and is my brother's, because it was his from YAHWEH.

16 And now I am asking one petition of you. Do not turn away your face. And she said to him, Speak.

17 And he said, Please speak to King Solomon, for he will not turn away your face, that he give to me Abishag the Shunammite for a wife.

18 And Bathsheba said, Well! I will speak to the king for you.

19 And Bathsheba came in to King Solomon to speak to him for Adonijah. And the king rose up to meet her, and bowed to her, and sat on his throne, and placed a throne for the king's mother. And she sat at his right hand.

20 And she said, I ask one small petition of you. Do not turn away my face. And the king said to her, Ask, my mother, for I will not turn away your face.

21 And she said, let Abishag the Shunammite be given to your brother Adonijah for a wife.

22 And King Solomon answered and said to his mother, And why are you asking Abishag the Shunammite for Adonijah? Will you also ask the kingdom for him, for he is my older brother; yea, for him, and for Abiathar the priest, and for Joab the son of Zeruiah.

23 And King Solomon swore by YAHWEH, saying, So shall Elohim do to me, and so shall He do more, if Adonijah has not spoken this word against his life.

24 And now, as YAHWEH lives, who has established me and caused me to sit on the throne of my father David, and who has made a house for me, as He spoke, surely today Adonijah shall be made to die.

25 And King Solomon sent by the hand of Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and he fell on him, and he died.

26 And the king said to Abiathar the priest, Go to Anathoth, to your fields. For you are a man of death. But I will not at this time cause you to die, because you have borne the ark of Adonai YAHWEH before my father David, and because you were afflicted in all the things with which my father was afflicted.

27 And Solomon drove Abiathar

from being priest to YAHWEH, to fulfill the Word of YAHWEH which He spoke concerning the house of Eli in Shiloh.

28 And the report came to Joab, for Joab had turned aside after Adonijah though he did not turn aside after Absalom. And Joab fled to the tent of YAHWEH, and lay hold on the horns of the altar.

29 And it was told to King Solomon that Joab had fled to the tabernacle of YAHWEH, and, behold, he was by the altar. And Solomon sent Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, saying, Go, fall on him.

30 And Benaiah came into the tabernacle of YAHWEH and said to him, So says the king, Come out. And he said, No, but I will die here. And Benaiah brought back word to the king, saying, So says Joab. Yea, so he answered me.

31 And the king said to him, Do as he has said, and fall on him, and bury him, and turn aside the innocent blood which Joab shed, off of me and off of my father's house.

32 And YAHWEH shall turn back his blood on his own head, who has fallen on two men more righteous and better than he, and murdered them with the sword; and my father David not knowing: Abner the son of Ner, the commander of the army of Israel, and Amasa the son of Jether, the commander of the army of Judah.

33 Yea, He shall turn back their blood on the head of Joab, and on the head of his seed forever. And as for David and for his seed, and for his house, and for his throne, there shall be peace forever from YAHWEH.

34 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada went up and fell on him, and caused him to die. And he was buried in his own house in the wilderness.

35 And the king put Benaiah the son of Jehoiada in his place over the army. And the king put Zadok the priest in the place of Abiathar.

36 And the king sent and called Shimei and said to him, Build a house for yourself in Jerusalem and live there, and do not go out from there anywhere.

37 And it shall be, in the day you go out and cross the torrent Kidron, surely you shall know that surely you shall die; your blood shall be on your head.

38 And Shimei said to the king, The word is good. As my master the king has spoken, so your servant shall do. And Shimei lived in Jerusalem many days.[1]

39 And it happened at the end of three years, two of Shimei's servants fled to Achish the son of Maachah, the king of Gath. And they told Shimei, saying, Behold, your servants are in Gath.

40 And Shimei rose up and saddled his donkey and went to Gath, to Achish, to seek his servants. And Shimei went and brought his servants from Gath.

41 And it was told to Solomon that Shimei had gone from Jerusalem to Gath, and had returned.

42 And the king sent and called for Shimei, and said to him, Did I not cause you to swear by YAHWEH, and testify to you, saying, In the day you go out, and you have gone anywhere, surely you shall know that certainly you shall die. And you said to me, The word I have heard is good.

43 And why have you not kept the oath of YAHWEH, and the charge that I commanded you?

44 And the king said to Shimei, You

---

1 Verses 36-38- By keeping Shimei from crossing the Kidron it kept him from conspiring with his relatives who revolted against King David in 1 Sam 20.

shall know all the evil that your heart has known, that which you did to my father David. Now YAHWEH has turned back your evil on your head.

45 And King Solomon shall be blessed, and the throne of David shall be established before YAHWEH forever.

46 And the king commanded Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, and he went out and fell on him, and he died. And the kingdom was established in the hand of Solomon.

Chapter 3

1 And Solomon made an alliance by marriage with Pharaoh the king of Egypt. And he took Pharaoh's daughter and brought her into the city of David, until he finished building his own house, and the house of YAHWEH, and the wall of Jerusalem all around.

2 Only, the people were sacrificing in high places, for a house for the name of YAHWEH had not been built until those days.

3 And Solomon loved YAHWEH, to walk in the statutes of his father David. Only, he was sacrificing in high places and burning incense.

4 And the king went to Gibeon to sacrifice there; for it was the great high place. Solomon offered a thousand burnt offerings on that altar.

5 YAHWEH appeared to Solomon in Gibeon in a dream of the night. And Elohim said, Ask. What shall I give to you?

6 And Solomon said, You have done great kindness to Your servant, my father David, as he walked before You in truth and in righteousness and in uprightness of heart with You. And You have kept for him this great kindness, and have given to him a son sitting on his throne, as today.

7 And now, O YAHWEH my Elohim, You have caused Your servant to reign instead of my father David. And I am but a young boy; I do not know to go out and to come in.

8 And Your servant is in the midst of Your people whom You have chosen, a numerous people that cannot be numbered or counted for multitude.

9 Therefore, give to Your servant an understanding heart, to judge Your people to discern between good and evil. For who is able to judge this, Your great people?

10 And the word was good in the eyes of YAHWEH, that Solomon had asked this thing.

11 And Elohim said to him, Because you have asked this thing, and have not asked for yourself many days, nor asked riches for yourself, nor asked the life of your enemies, and have asked for discernment for yourself, to understand judgment,

12 behold, I have done according to your words. Behold, I have given to you a wise and understanding heart, so that there was none like you before you, and after you none shall rise up like you.

13 And also, I have given you that which you have not asked, both riches and honor, that there shall not be a man like you among the kings all your days.

14 And if you walk in My ways, to keep My statutes and My commands, as your father David walked, then I will prolong your days.

15 And Solomon awoke, and behold, it was a dream! And he came into Jerusalem and stood before the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH, and offered burnt offerings, and made peace offerings. And he made a banquet for all his servants.

16 Then two women, harlots, came in to the king and stood before him.

17 And the one woman said, O my master, this woman and I were living in one house. And I gave birth, with her in the house.
18 And it happened on the third day after I gave birth, this woman also gave birth. And we were together; no stranger was with us in the house, only we two in the house.
19 And the son of this woman died at night, because she laid on it.
20 And she rose up in the middle of the night and took my son from beside me and laid it in her bosom; and your handmaid was asleep. And she laid her dead son in my bosom.
21 And I rose up in the morning to suckle my son; and behold! It was dead. And I looked at it in the morning; and, behold, it was not my son whom I had borne.
22 And the other woman said, No, but my son is the living, and your son the dead. And this one said, No, but your son is dead, and my son the living. And they spoke before the king.
23 And the king said, This one says, This is my son, the living one, and your son the dead. And that one says, No, but your son is the dead, and my son the living.
24 And the king said, Bring a sword to me. And they brought the sword before the king.
25 And the king said, Divide the living child into two, and give the half to the one, and the half to the other.
26 And the woman whose son was the living one said to the king (for her womb yearned over her son) yea, she said, O my master, give her the living child, and do not at all put it to death. And this one said, Let it be neither yours or mine, divide it.
27 And the king answered and said, Give to her the living child, and do not put it to death at all; she is its mother.
28 And all Israel heard of the judgment that the king had judged, and feared from the face of the king; for they saw that the wisdom of Elohim was in him to do judgment.

Chapter 4

1 And King Solomon was king over all Israel.
2 And these were the rulers he had: Azariah the son of Zadok was the priest.
3 Elihoreph and Ahiah, the sons of Shisha, were the scribes, Jehoshaphat the son of Ahilud the recorder.
4 And Benaiah the son of Jehoiada was over the army. And Zadok and Abiathar were priests.
5 And Azariah the son of Nathan was over the officers. And Zabud the son of Nathan was the minister and friend of the king.
6 And Ahishar was over the household. And Adoniram the son of Abda was over the forced labor.
7 And Solomon had twelve officers over all Israel. And they sustained the king and his household. Each man had one month in the year to provide.
8 And these are their names: Ben-Hur in the hills of Ephraim;
9 the son of Dekar in Makaz and in Shaalbim, and Beth-Shemesh, and Elon-Beth-Hanan;
10 the son of Hesed, in Aruboth (to him was Sochoh and all the land of Hepher);
11 the son of Abinadab in all the height of Dor, Taphath the daughter of Solomon was his wife;
12 Baana the son of Ahilud to whom was Taanach and Megiddo, and all Beth-Shean (which is by Zartanah below Jezreel, from Beth-Shean to Abel-Meholah, to the place that is beyond Jokneam);
13 the son of Geber in Ramoth-Gilead (to him were the towns of Jair,

Manasseh's son, which are in Gilead; and to him was the region of Argob, which is in Bashan, sixty great cities with walls and copper bars);
14 Ahinadab the son of Iddo had Mahanaim;
15 Ahimaaz was in Naphtali; he also took Basemath the daughter of Solomon for a wife;
16 Baanah the son of Hushai was in Asher and in Aloth;
17 Jehoshaphat the son of Paruah was in Issachar;
18 Shimei the son of Elah was in Benjamin;
19 Geber the son of Uri was in the land of Gilead, the land of Sihon king of the Amorites, and Og king of Bashan; and there was one officer who was in the land;
20 Judah and Israel were many, as the sand by the sea in multitude; eating and drinking and rejoicing.
21 And Solomon reigned over all the kingdoms from the River to the land of the Philistines, and to the border of Egypt. They brought presents and served Solomon all the days of his life.
22 And Solomon's food for one day was thirty measures of fine flour, and sixty measures of meal,
23 ten fat oxen, and twenty oxen out of the pastures, and a hundred sheep, besides deer and gazelles, and roebucks, and fattened fowl.
24 For he had the rule over all on this side of the River, from Tiphsah even to Azzah, over all the kings on this side of the River. And he had peace on all sides from around him.
25 And Judah and Israel lived securely, every man under his vine and under his fig tree; from Dan even to Beer-Sheba all the days of Solomon[1]. (*Mic 4:4, Zech 3:10)*
26 And Solomon had forty thousand stalls of horses for his chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen.
27 And those officers provided food for King Solomon, and for all who came to King Solomon's table, a man in his month: they did not lack anything.
28 They also brought barley and straw for the horses and mules to the place where the officers were, each man according to his charge.
29 And Elohim gave Solomon exceeding great wisdom and understanding, and largeness of heart, even as the sand that is on the lip of the sea.
30 And Solomon's wisdom was greater than the wisdom of all the sons of the east, and than all the wisdom of Egypt.
31 For he was wiser than all men; wiser than Ethan the Ezrahite, and Heman, and Chalcol, and Darda, the sons of Mahol. And his name was in all nations all around.
32 And he spoke three thousand proverbs, and his songs were a thousand and five.
33 And he spoke of trees, from the cedar tree in Lebanon, even to the hyssop that springs out of the wall. He spoke also of beasts and of birds, and of creeping things, and of fish.
34 And there came some from all the people to hear the wisdom of Solomon, from all the kings of the earth who had heard of his wisdom.

Chapter 5

1 And Hiram the king of Tyre sent his servants to Solomon, for he heard

---

[1] Solomon was a type of Messiah, and peace was granted during his reign. The true Messiah will have everlasting peace, Jer 23:6, Math 5:35, Heb 7:1-2, Is 9:6-7.

that they had anointed him king
instead of his father. For Hiram was a
lover of David all his days.
2 And Solomon sent to Hiram,
saying,
3 You knew my father David, that he
was not able to build a house to the
name of YAHWEH his Elohim
because of the warfare that was
around him, until YAHWEH had put
them under the soles of his feet.
4 And now YAHWEH my Elohim
has given me rest all around; there is
no adversary nor evil happening.
5 And, behold, I am commanding a
house to be built to the name of
YAHWEH my Elohim, as YAHWEH
spoke to my father David, saying, Your
son, whom I will appoint in your place
on your throne, he shall build the
house for My name.[1] *(1 Chron 3:5)*
6 And now, command and they shall
cut down for me cedars out of
Lebanon. And my servants shall be
with your servants. And I will give you
hire for your servants according to all
that you say. For you know that there
is not a man among us knowing to cut
timber like the Sidonians.
7 And it happened, when Hiram
heard the words of Solomon, he
rejoiced exceedingly, and said, Blessed
be YAHWEH today, who has given to
David a wise son over this great
people.
8 And Hiram sent to Solomon,
saying, I have heard that for which you
have sent to me. I will do all your will
as to cedar wood and fir wood.
9 My servants will bring it down
from Lebanon to the sea. And I will
make floats for them in the sea to go to
the place that you tell me. And I will
spread them out there; and you shall
take them up. And you shall do what I
desire, to give food for my house.
10 And Hiram gave Solomon cedar
trees and fir trees, all his desire.
11 And Solomon gave to Hiram
twenty thousand measures of wheat,
food for his house; and twenty
measures of beaten oil. This Solomon
gave to Hiram year by year.
12 And YAHWEH gave wisdom to
Solomon, as He had spoken to him.
And there was peace between Hiram
and Solomon; and they cut a covenant,
the two of them.
13 And King Solomon caused a labor
force to go out of all Israel; and the
labor force was thirty thousand men.
14 And he sent them to Lebanon, ten
thousand a month by courses. They
were a month in Lebanon, two months
in their own house. And Adoniram was
over the labor force.
15 And Solomon had seventy
thousand bearing burdens, and eighty
thousand hewing in the mountain;
16 besides the rulers of Solomon's
overseers who were over the work,
three thousand and three hundred,
those ruling over the people who were
working in the work.
17 And the king commanded, and
they brought great stones, costly
stones, quarried stones, to lay the
foundation of the house.
18 And Solomon's builders and
Hiram's builders, and the Giblites, cut
and prepared the wood and the stones
to build the house.

Chapter 6

1 And it happened in the four
hundred and eightieth year from the
going out of the sons of Israel from the
land of Egypt, in the fourth year, in the
month of Zif, it is the second month, in
the reigning of Solomon over Israel he
built the house for YAHWEH.

[1] The Hebrew word for "*appoint*" is "*Nathan*" and this is a prophecy showing that the Messiah will be born from the lineage of Nathan NOT Solomon, Luk 3:31.

2 As to the house that King Solomon built for YAHWEH, its length was sixty cubits, its breadth twenty, and its height thirty cubits.

3 As to the porch on the front of the temple of the house, its length was twenty cubits according to the breadth of the house; its breadth on the front of the house was ten cubits.

4 And he made windows of narrowing frames for the house.

5 And he built a side-structure on the wall of the house all around, against the walls of the house all around; to the Sanctuary and to the Inner Sanctuary. And he made side sections all around.

6 The lowest side-structure was five cubits wide; and the middle was six cubits wide; and the third story side-structure was seven cubits wide. For outside of the house he made narrowed ledges for the house all around, so as not to lay hold of the walls of the house.

7 And when it was being built, the house was built of finished stone made ready beforehand. And there was not heard in the house a hammer or an axe, or any iron tool, while it was being built.

8 The door for the middle side section was in the right side of the house. And they went up with winding stairs into the middle one; and from the middle one into the third.

9 And he built the house and finished it, and covered the house with beams and rows of cedars.

10 And he built the side-stories on all the house, each five cubits in height; and they held to the house with cedar wood.

11 And the Word of YAHWEH came to Solomon, saying,

12 As to this house that you are building, if you shall walk in My statutes, and shall do My judgments, and shall do all My commandments, to walk in them, then I shall lift up My word with you which I spoke to your father David.

13 And I shall dwell in the midst of the sons of Israel, and shall not forsake My people Israel.[1]

14 And Solomon built the house, and finished it.

15 And he built the walls of the house inside with beams of cedar, from the floor of the house to the walls of the ceiling. He overlaid the inside with wood, and covered the floor of the house with boards of fir.

16 And he built the twenty cubits on the back part of the house with boards of cedar, from the floor to the walls. And he built for it inside, for the sanctuary, for the Holy of Holies.[2]

17 And the house was forty cubits, that is, the Sanctuary before it.

18 And the cedar for the house inside was with carvings of gourds and flowers spread out; the whole was cedar; not a stone was seen.

19 And he prepared the Holy of Holies in the midst of the house, to place the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH there.

20 And the face of the Holy of Holies was twenty cubits in length, and twenty cubits in height. And he overlaid it with refined gold, and overlaid the altar with cedar.

21 And Solomon overlaid the house inside with refined gold, and caused it to pass over in chains of gold to the

---

[1] Verses 12-13- Shows that the covenant of YHWH was conditional on obedience to the Torah and still is today. In any biblical covenant the three elements that never change are the people being Israel, the land always being the land of Israel, and the Torah as a protective agent to safeguard the people in the covenant.

[2] A cubit was roughly 18 inches, so the Holy of Holies was 30 feet long and the complete sanctuary was 90 feet.

face of the Holy of Holies, and overlaid
it with gold.
22 And he overlaid all of the house
with gold, until all of the house was
complete. And he overlaid with gold
all of the altar that belonged to the
Holy of Holies.
23 And inside the Holy of Holies he
made two cherubs of the olive tree;
their height was ten cubits. *(Rev 11:4)*
24 And one wing of the cherub was
five cubits; and the second wing of the
cherub five cubits; ten cubits from the
ends of its wings even to the ends of its
wings.
25 And the second cherub was ten
cubits; one measure and one form to
the two cherubs.
26 The height of the one cherub was
ten cubits, and so was the second
cherub.
27 And he set the cherubs in the
middle of the inner house. And they
spread out the wings of the cherubs.
And the wing of the one touched the
wall; and the wing of the second
touched the second wall; and their
wings were to the middle of the house,
coming wing against wing.
28 And he overlaid the cherubs with
gold.
29 And all the walls of the house all
around he carved with figures of
cherubs and palm trees, and spread
out flowers inside and out.
30 And he overlaid the floor of the
house with gold, inside and out.
31 As to the entrance of the Holy of
Holies, he made doors of the olive
tree; the lintel, the side posts, being a
fifty part.
32 And the two doors were of olive
wood. And he carved on them carvings
of cherubs, and palm trees, and spread
out flowers; and he overlaid them with
gold. And he caused the gold to go
down on the cherubs and on the palm
trees.
33 So also he made side posts for the
entrance of the sanctuary from the
olive tree, a fourth part.
34 And the two doors were of fir
wood; the two sides of the one door
were folding, and the two leaves of the
other door were folding.
35 And he carved cherubs, and palm
trees, and spread out flowers, and
overlaid them with gold fitted on the
carved work.
36 And he built the inner court,
three rows of hewn stone, and a row of
cedar beams.
37 The house of YAHWEH was
founded in the fourth year, in the
month of Zif.
38 And in the eleventh year, in the
month Bul, the eighth month, the
house was finished as to all its parts,
and according to all its plans. So he
built it for seven years.

Chapter 7

1 And Solomon built his own house
for thirteen years. And he finished all
his house.
2 And he built the house of the forest
of Lebanon. Its length was a hundred
cubits, and its breadth fifty cubits, and
its height thirty cubits on four rows of
cedar pillars, and cedar beams on the
pillars.
3 And it was covered with cedar
above, on the sides that lay on forty-
five pillars, fifteen in a row.
4 And windows were in three rows,
and light was against light in three
rows.
5 And all the doors and the side
posts were square along with the
windows; and the front of a window
was against a window in three rows.
6 And he made the porch of the
pillars, its length fifty cubits, and its
breadth thirty cubits. And the porch

was before them; and the pillars and the roof were over them.

7 And he made the porch of the throne where he judged, the porch of judgment. And it was covered with cedar from floor to floor.

8 As to his house where he lived, the other court was within the porch, as this work was. Solomon also made a house for Pharaoh's daughter whom he had taken, like this porch.

9 And these were of costly stones according to the measures of hewn stones, sawed with a saw, inside and out, even from the foundation to the coping, and from the outside, to the great court.

10 And the foundation was of costly stones, huge stones, stones of ten cubits and stones of eight cubits.

11 And above were costly stones, according to the measures of hewn stone and cedar.

12 And the great court all around was three rows of hewn stone and a row of cedar beams, even for the inner court of the house of YAHWEH, and for the porch of the house.

13 And King Solomon sent and brought Hiram out of Tyre.

14 He was the son of a widow woman of the tribe of Naphtali, and his father a man of Tyre, an engraver in copper. And he was filled with the wisdom and understanding and knowledge to do all work in copper. And he came to King Solomon and did all his work.

15 And he formed the two pillars of copper; eighteen cubits was the height of the one pillar, and a line of twelve cubits went around the second pillar.

16 And he made two capitals to put on the tops of the pillars, cast in copper; five cubits was the height of the one capital, and five cubits the height of the second capital.

17 He made gratings of network with twisted threads of chain-work, for the capitals on the top of the pillars; seven for the one capital, and seven for the other capital.

18 And he made the pillars. And two rows were all around on the one grating, to cover the capitals on the top with the pomegranates. And so he did for the other capital.

19 And the capitals on the top of the pillars in the porch were lily-work, four cubits.

20 And the capitals were on the two pillars, also above, over against the belly which was by the grating; and the pomegranates were two hundred in rows all around on the other capital.

21 And he set up the pillars in the porch of the sanctuary. And he set up the right pillar and called its name Jachin. And he set up the left pillar, and called its name of Boaz.

22 And on the top of the pillars was lily-work. So the work of the pillars was finished.

23 And he made a cast sea of ten cubits from brim to brim; it was round all about. And its height was five cubits; and a line of thirty cubits went around it all about.

24 And gourds were below its brim all around, going around it, ten by the cubit, circling the sea all around; the gourds were cast in two rows when it was cast.

25 It stood on twelve oxen: Three facing the north, and three facing the west, and three facing the south, and three facing the east. And the sea was above on them; and all their hinder parts were inward.

26 And its thickness was one hand wide; and its brim was fashioned like the brim of a cup, with a bud of a lily. It contained two thousand baths.

27 And he made ten bases of copper; four cubits the length of the one base,

and four cubits the breadth, and three cubits the height.

28 And this was the work of the base: They had borders; and there were borders between the stays.

29 And on the borders that were between the stays were lions, oxen, and cherubs. And a pedestal was on the stays above. And below the lions and oxen were wreaths of hanging work.

30 And the one base had four wheels of copper, and axles of copper. And its four feet were supports to them; under the basin were cast supports with wreaths at each side.

31 And its mouth within and above the capital was a cubit; and its mouth was round like the work of a pedestal, a cubit and half of the cubit. And also on its mouth were carvings; and their borders were square, not round.

32 And the four wheels were under the borders. And the hands of the wheels were in the base; and the height of the one wheel was a cubit and a half.

33 And the work of the wheels was as the work of a chariot wheel, their hands, and their rims, and their spokes, and their hubs were all cast.

34 And there were four supports to the four corners of one base; the supports were of the base itself.

35 And in the top of the base was a round compass of half a cubit high. And on the top of the base its sides and its borders were from it.

36 And he engraved cherubs, lions, and palm trees on the plates of its sides, and on its borders, as the place of each, with wreaths all around.

37 So he made the ten bases, one casting, one measure, one form was to them all.

38 And he made ten basins of copper; the one basin contained forty baths. The one basin was four cubits, one basin on the one base, to the ten bases.

39 And he put the five bases on the right side of the house, and five on the left side of the house. And he put the sea on the right side of the house, eastward, across from the south.

40 And Hiram made the basins, and the shovels, and the bowls. And Hiram finished all the work that he made for King Solomon for the house of YAHWEH:

41 Two pillars, and two bowls of the capitals that were on the top of the pillars; and the two gratings to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the top of the pillars;

42 and the four hundred pomegranates for the two gratings, two rows of pomegranates for each grating, to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the pillars;

43 and ten bases, and ten basins on the bases;

44 and one sea, and twelve oxen under the sea;

45 and the pots, and the shovels, and the basins. And all these vessels which Hiram made for King Solomon for the house of YAHWEH were of burnished copper.

46 The king cast them in the plain of the Jordan, in the thick soil of the ground between Succoth and Zarethan.

47 And Solomon left all the vessels unweighed because they were very, very many; the weight of the copper was not searched out.

48 And Solomon made all the vessels that were in the house of YAHWEH: The altar of gold; and the table of gold on which was the Bread of the Presence;

49 and the menorahs, five on the right and five on the left before the Holy of Holies, of refined gold, and the

flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs were of gold;
50 and the basins, and the snuffers, and the bowls, and the spoons, and the firepans were of refined gold; and the hinges for the doors of the inner house, for the Holy of Holies, for the doors of the house of the sanctuary were of gold.
51 And it was complete, all the work that King Solomon had made for the house of YAHWEH. And Solomon brought in the sanctified things of his father David: The silver, and the gold, and the vessels he had put into the treasuries of the house of YAHWEH.

Chapter 8

1 Then Solomon gathered the elders of Israel, and all the heads of the tribes, the chief of the fathers of the sons of Israel, to King Solomon in Jerusalem, that they might bring up the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH out of the city of David, which is Zion.
2 And all the men of Israel were gathered to King Solomon, in the month of Ethanim, at the feast, which is the seventh month.
3 And all the elders of Israel came in, and the priests lifted up the ark,
4 and brought up the ark of YAHWEH, and the tabernacle of the congregation, and all the holy vessels that were in the tabernacle, even those the priests and the Levites brought.
5 And King Solomon and all the company of Israel who had assembled to him were with him before the ark, sacrificing sheep and oxen, that could not be counted or numbered for multitude.
6 And the priests brought in the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH to its place, to the holy place of the house, into the Holy of Holies, to the place of the wings of the cherubs;
7 for the cherubs were spreading forth their wings to the place of the ark, and the cherubs covered over the ark, and over its staves from above.
8 And they lengthened the staves, and the heads of the staves were seen from the holy place on the front of the Holy of Holies, and were not seen outside; and they are there to this day.
9 Nothing was in the ark, only the two tables of stone which Moses put there in Horeb, when YAHWEH cut a covenant with the sons of Israel as they went out of the land of Egypt.
10 And it happened as the priests went out from the Holy of Holies, that the cloud filled the house of YAHWEH,
11 and the priests were not able to stand to minister because of the cloud, for the glory of YAHWEH had filled the house of YAHWEH.
12 And Solomon said, YAHWEH has said that He would dwell in the thick darkness.
13 Building I have built a house of loftiness for You, a settled place for You to abide in forever.
14 And the king turned around his face and blessed the whole assembly of Israel; and all the assembly of Israel was standing.
15 And he said, Blessed be YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, who spoke by His mouth with my father David, and by his hand has fulfilled it, saying,
16 From the day that I brought out My people, even Israel, from Egypt, I have not chosen a city out of all the tribes of Israel to build a house for My name to be there; but I chose David to be over My people Israel.
17 And it was in the heart of my father David to build a house for the name of YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel;
18 and YAHWEH said to my father David, Because it has been in your

heart to build a house for My name,
you have done well that it has been in
your heart;
19 only, you shall not build the
house, but your son who shall come
out from your loins, he shall build the
house for My name.
20 And YAHWEH has lifted up His
Word that He spoke; for I have risen
up instead of my father David and sit
on the throne of Israel, as YAHWEH
spoke, and have built the house for the
name of YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel;
21 and set there a place for the ark,
in which is the covenant of YAHWEH
which He made with our fathers when
He brought them out from the land of
Egypt.
22 And Solomon stood before the
altar of YAHWEH, across from the
assembly of Israel, and spread his
hands toward the heavens;*(1 Tim 2:8)*
23 and said, YAHWEH, Elohim of
Israel, there is no Elohim like You in
the heavens above or on the earth
beneath; who keeps covenant and
mercy with Your servants that walk
before You with all their heart;
24 who have kept for Your servant
David, my father, that which You
spoke to him; yea, You spoke with
Your mouth, and with Your hand have
fulfilled it as it is this day.
25 And now, YAHWEH, Elohim of
Israel, keep for Your servant David,
my father, that which You spoke to
him, saying, There shall not be cut off
from you a man from before Me,
sitting on the throne of Israel; only, if
your sons watch their way, to walk
before Me as you have walked before
Me.
26 And now, O Elohim of Israel, let
it be established, I beseech You, Your
Word which You have spoken to Your
servant, my father David.
27 But will Elohim dwell in truth on
the earth? Behold, the heavens and
Heaven of the heavens cannot contain
You; how much less this house which I
have built!
28 Yet You have turned toward the
prayer of Your servant, and to his
supplication, O YAHWEH my Elohim,
to listen to the cry and to the prayer
which Your servant is praying before
You today;
29 for Your eyes are open toward
this house night and day, toward the
place of which You have said, My
name shall be there; to listen to the
prayer which Your servant prays
toward this place.
30 And You shall listen to the
supplication of Your servant, and of
Your people Israel when they shall
pray toward this place; yea, You shall
listen in Your dwelling-place, in
Heaven; and You shall hear and shall
forgive.
31 If any man sins against his
neighbor, and an oath be exacted of
him to cause him to swear, and the
oath has come before Your altar in this
house,
32 then You shall hear in Heaven,
and shall act, and shall judge Your
servants, to declare the wicked to be
wicked, to put his way on his head,
and to declare the righteous to be
righteous, to give him according to his
righteousness.
33 When Your people Israel are
stricken before the enemy, when they
sin against You, if they turn again to
You, and confess Your name, and pray
and make supplication to You in this
house;
34 then You shall hear in Heaven,
and shall forgive the sin of Your people
Israel, and shall bring them back to
the land that You gave to their fathers.
35 When the heavens are restrained,
and there is no rain, because they have
sinned against You, and they have

prayed toward this place, and confess Your name, and have turned from their sin because You have afflicted them,

36 then You shall hear in Heaven, and shall forgive the sin of Your servants, and of Your people Israel, for You shall teach them the good way in which they shall go, and shall give rain on Your land which You have given to Your people for an inheritance.[1]

37 When there is famine in the land; when there is pestilence, blasting, mildew, locusts; when there is the stripping locust; when its enemy has distressed it in the land in its gates; any plague, any sickness,

38 any prayer, any supplication that shall come from any man of all of Your people Israel, who shall each know the plague of his own heart, and shall spread his hands toward this house,

39 then You shall hear in Heaven Your dwelling place and shall forgive and shall act, and shall give to each according to all his ways, whose heart You know (for You have known, You alone, the heart of all the sons of Adam),

40 so that they shall fear You all the days that they are living on the face of the land that You have given to our fathers.

41 And also, to the stranger who is not of Your people Israel, and has come from a land afar off for Your name's sake,

42 (for they shall hear of Your great name, and of Your strong hand, and of Your stretched out arm, and he shall have come in and prayed toward this house,)

43 You shall hear in Heaven, Your dwelling place, and shall do according to all that the stranger calls to You for, so that all the peoples of the earth may know Your name, to fear You like Your people Israel, and to know that Your name has been called on this house which I have built.[2]

44 If Your people shall go out to battle against its enemy, in the way that You have sent them, and they have prayed to YAHWEH the way of the city which You have chosen, and of the house which I have built for Your name,

45 then hear their prayer and their supplication in Heaven, and perform their cause.

46 When they sin against You (for there is not a man who does not sin) and You have been angry with them, and have given them up before an enemy, and they have been led away into captivity to the land of the enemy, far off or near;

47 and they have turned their heart back in the land where they have been taken captive, and have repented, and made supplication to You in the land of their captors, saying, We have sinned and done perversely; we have done wickedly;

48 and, they have turned back to You with all their heart, and with all their soul, in the land of their enemies who have taken them captive, and have prayed to You the way of their land which You gave to their fathers, the city which You have chosen, and the house which I have built for Your name,

---

1 Verse 29, 33, 36. The sanctuary of YHWH had to do with drawing close to Him through sacrificing animals, where in the NT it is through believe in His Son (Joh 4:21-24). This has nothing to do with the command of going up to Jerusalem at feast time to receive the reward for obedience throughout the year. Appearing in Jerusalem for the feast had to do with the blessing of obedience and bringing the harvest fruits for celebration.

2 Verses 41-43- YHWH also hears the voice of the stranger if he is pure-hearted and sincere.

49 then You shall hear their prayer
and their supplication in Heaven Your
dwelling place, and shall perform their
cause,
50 and shall forgive Your people who
have sinned against You, even all their
transgressions which they have
transgressed against You, and shall
give them mercy before their captors,
and they shall have mercy on them.
51 For they are Your people and
Your inheritance, whom You brought
out of Egypt, out of the midst of the
furnace of iron;
52 for Your eyes shall be open to the
supplication of Your servant, and to
the supplication of Your people Israel,
to listen to them in all that they call to
You for;
53 for You have separated them to
Yourself for an inheritance out of all
the peoples of the earth, as You spoke
by the hand of Your servant Moses
when You brought out our fathers
from Egypt, O Adonai YAHWEH.
(Amos 3:2, Deut 9:29)
54 And it happened as Solomon
finished praying to YAHWEH all this
prayer and supplication, he arose from
before the altar of YAHWEH, from
bending on his knees, and his hands
spread out to Heaven;
55 and he stood and blessed all the
congregation of Israel with a loud
voice, saying,
56 Blessed be YAHWEH who has
given rest to His people Israel,
according to all that He has spoken;
not one word of all His good Word has
fallen, which He spoke by the hand of
His servant Moses.
57 YAHWEH our Elohim is with us
as He has been with our fathers; He
shall not forsake us or leave us,
58 to incline our heart to Himself, to
walk in all His ways, and to keep His
commandments, and His statutes, and
His judgments, which He commanded
our fathers;
59 and these words of mine which I
have prayed before YAHWEH be near
to YAHWEH our Elohim by day and
by night, to perform the cause of His
servant, and the cause of His people
Israel, the matter of each day in its
day;
60 for all the peoples of the earth
know that YAHWEH, He is the
Elohim; there is no other;
61 let your heart therefore be perfect
with YAHWEH our Elohim, to walk in
His statutes, and to keep His
commandments, as at this day.
62 And the king and all Israel with
him were offering a sacrifice before
YAHWEH;
63 and Solomon offered the sacrifice
of peace offerings, which he had
offered to YAHWEH: Twenty two
thousand oxen, and a hundred and
twenty thousand sheep; and the king
and all the sons of Israel dedicated the
house of YAHWEH.
64 On that day the king sanctified
the middle of the court that was before
the house of YAHWEH, for he had
made the burnt offering there, and the
food offering, and the fat of the peace
offerings; because the copper altar
that was before YAHWEH was too
small to contain the burnt offering,
and the food offering, and the fat of
the peace offerings.
65 And at that time Solomon made a
feast, and all Israel with him, a great
congregation, from the entering in of
Hamath to the river of Egypt, before
YAHWEH our Elohim, seven days
and seven days, fourteen days.
66 On the eighth day he sent the
people away, and they blessed the
king, and went to their tents rejoicing
and joyous of heart for all the good
that YAHWEH had done to His

servant David, and to His people
Israel.

Chapter 9

1 And it happened, as Solomon
finished building the house of
YAHWEH, and the house of the king,
and all the desire of Solomon that he
delighted to do,
2 that YAHWEH appeared to
Solomon a second time, as He
appeared to him in Gibeon.
3 And YAHWEH said to him, I have
heard your prayer and your
supplication with which you have
made supplication before Me; I have
sanctified this house that you have
built to put My name there forever;
and My eyes and My heart shall be
there forever.
4 And you, if you walk before me as
your father David walked, in
singleness of heart, and in
uprightness, to do according to all that
I have commanded you; you shall keep
My statutes and My judgments;
5 then I shall lift up the throne of
your kingdom over Israel forever, as I
spoke to your father David, saying,
there shall not fail you a man on the
throne of Israel.
6 If you at all turn back, you and
your sons, from following me, and do
not keep My commandments, My
statutes which I have set before you,
and you shall go and serve other gods
and bow yourselves to them,
7 then I shall cut off Israel from the
face of the land that I have given to
them, and the house that I have
hallowed for My name I shall send
away from My face, and Israel shall be
a proverb and a byword among all
peoples.
8 As to this house, which is high,
everyone passing by it shall be
astonished and shall hiss, and they
shall say, Why has YAHWEH done
this to this land and to this house?
9 And they shall say, Because they
have forsaken YAHWEH their
Elohim, who brought their fathers out
from the land of Egypt, and they laid
hold on other gods and bowed
themselves to them and served them.
On account of this YAHWEH has
brought in upon them all this evil.
10 And it happened, at the end of
twenty years Solomon had built the
two houses, the house of YAHWEH
and the house of the king.
11 Hiram the king of Tyre had lifted
Solomon with cedar trees and with fir
trees, and with gold, according to all
his desire; then King Solomon gave to
Hiram twenty cities in the land of
Galilee.
12 And Hiram came out from Tyre to
see the cities that Solomon had given
to him, and they were not right in his
eyes.
13 And he said, What are these cities
that you have given to me, my
brother? And one called them the land
of Cabul[1] to this day.
14 And Hiram sent to the king a
hundred and twenty talents of gold.
15 And this is the reason of the labor
force that King Solomon raised, to
build the house of YAHWEH, and his
own house, and Millo, and the wall of
Jerusalem, and Hazor, and Megiddo,
and Gezer.
16 (Pharaoh the king of Egypt had
gone up and had captured Gezer, and
had burned it with fire. And he killed
the Canaanites who lived in the city,
and gave it as a dowry to his daughter,
the wife of Solomon.)
17 and Solomon built Gezer, and
Beth-Horon the lower,
18 and Baalath, and Tadmor in the
wilderness, in the land;
19 and all the store cities which

[1] Cabul- means good for nothing

Solomon had, and the cities for his chariots, and the cities of the horsemen, and the desire of Solomon that he desired to build in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and in all the land of his dominion.

20 All the people that were left of the Amorites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites who were not of the sons of Israel,

21 their sons left behind them in the land, whom the sons of Israel had not been able to exterminate, Solomon even caused to go on them a burden of forced labor to this day.

22 But Solomon did not give as a slave out of the sons of Israel, for they were the men of war, and his servants, and his rulers, and his commanders, and the commanders of his chariots, and his horsemen.

23 These were the commanders of the officers who were over the work of Solomon: Five hundred and fifty, those ruling among the people who were working in the work.

24 But the daughter of Pharaoh went up out of the city of David to her house that he built for her; then he built Millo.

25 And three times in a year Solomon offered burnt offerings and peace offerings on the altar that he built to YAHWEH, and he burned incense on the altar before YAHWEH, and finished the house.

26 And King Solomon built a navy in Ezion-Geber, which is beside Eloth, on the lip of the Red Sea, in the land of Edom.[1] *(Deut 1:1, Ex 13:18)*

27 And Hiram sent his servants in the navy, shipmen who knew the sea, with the servants of Solomon;

28 and they came to Ophir and took gold from there, four hundred and twenty talents, and brought it in to King Solomon.

[1] This is at the Gulf of Aqaba.

Chapter 10

1 And the queen of Sheba[2] heard of the fame of Solomon as to the name of YAHWEH, and she came to test him with hard questions.

2 And she came to Jerusalem with a very great company, camels bearing spices, and very much gold, and precious stones. And she came to Solomon and spoke with him all that had been in her heart.

3 And Solomon told her all her matters; there was not one thing hidden from the king that he did not declare to her.

4 And the queen of Sheba saw the wisdom of Solomon, and the house that he built,

5 and the food of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the standing of his ministers, and their clothing, and his cupbearers and his burnt offering that he offered in the house of YAHWEH; and there was no more spirit in her.

6 And she said to the king, The word that I heard in my land was true as to your matters and your wisdom.

7 And I did not believe the words until I had come and my eyes had seen; and behold, the half was not told to me. You have wisdom and prosperity exceeding the fame which I heard.

8 Oh the happiness of your men! Oh the happiness of your servants, these who stand before you continually, who hear your wisdom!

9 Blessed be YAHWEH your Elohim who delighted in you, putting your person on the throne of Israel, because YAHWEH loved Israel forever, therefore He appointed you king, to do judgment and righteousness.

[2] She was most likely from east of Arabia in Yemen.

10 And she gave to the king a hundred and twenty talents of gold, and very many spices, and precious stones; no spice like that came any more for abundance, that the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon.
11 And also, the navy of Hiram that bore gold from Ophir brought in from Ophir almug trees, a great many, and precious stones;
12 and the king made the almug trees a support for the house of YAHWEH, and for the king's house, and harps and lyres for singers; no such almug trees have come, nor have there been seen such to this day.
13 And King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire that she asked, apart from that which he gave to her as a memorial of King Solomon. And she turned and went to her land, she and her servants.
14 And the weight of the gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred and sixty six talents of gold[1],
15 apart from the merchant men, and from the traffic of the traders, and from all the Arabian kings, and from the governors of the lands.
16 And King Solomon made two hundred targets of beaten gold: six hundred shekels of gold went to one target;
17 and three hundred shields of beaten gold: Three minas of gold went to one shield; and the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon.
18 And the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with refined gold.
19 The throne had six steps, and the top of the throne was round behind; and stays were on either side on the place of the seat, and two lions stood beside the stays;
20 and twelve lions were standing on the six steps, on this side and on that; there was not the like made in any kingdom.
21 And all the drinking vessels of King Solomon were of gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon were of refined gold; there was none of silver; it was not counted for anything in the days of Solomon;
22 For the king had a navy of Tarshish at sea with a navy of Hiram; once in three years the navy of Tarshish would come bearing gold, and silver, and ivory, and apes, and peacocks.
23 And King Solomon was greater than any of the kings of the earth for riches and for wisdom;
24 and all the earth was seeking the presence of Solomon, to hear his wisdom that Elohim had put into his heart;
25 and they were each one bringing his present, vessels of silver, and vessels of gold, and garments, and armor, and spices, horses, and mules, a year by year matter.
26 And Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen, and he had a thousand, four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen; and he placed them in the cities of the chariots, and with the king in Jerusalem.
27 And the king made silver in Jerusalem as stones, and he made cedars as the sycamores that are in the Shefalah *(low-country)*, for abundance.
28 And the horses that King Solomon had were brought from Egypt, and from Kue; the king's merchants received them from Kue at a price;
29 and a chariot came up and went out of Egypt for six hundred shekels of silver, and a horse for a hundred and fifty; and so for all the kings of the

[1] Six is the number of man and 666 shows man's government in rebellion to YHWH, Rev 13:16-18.

Hittites, and for the kings of Syria they brought them out by their means.

Chapter 11

1 And King Solomon loved many foreign women, even the daughter of Pharaoh, Moabites, Ammonites, Edomites, Sidonians, Hittites;

2 of the nations which YAHWEH said to the sons of Israel, You shall not go in to them, and they shall not go in to you; they shall turn aside your heart after their elohim; Solomon clung to these in love.

3 And he had seven hundred wives, princesses, and three hundred concubines; and his wives turned away his heart.

4 And it happened, at the time Solomon was old, his wives turned away his heart after other elohims, and his heart was not perfect with YAHWEH his Elohim, like the heart of his father David.

5 And Solomon went after Ashtoreth, goddess of the Sidonians, and after Milcom, the abomination of the Ammonites;[1]

6 and Solomon did evil in the sight of YAHWEH, and did not go fully after YAHWEH like his father David.

7 Then Solomon built a high place for Chemosh, the abomination of Moab, in the hill that is before Jerusalem, and for Molech, the abomination of the sons of Ammon;

8 and so he did for all his foreign wives, who burnt incense and sacrificed to their elohims.

9 And YAHWEH was angry with Solomon, for his heart had bent away from YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel who had appeared to him twice,

10 and had given a charge to him concerning this thing, not to go after other elohim; and he did not keep that which YAHWEH commanded.[2]

11 And YAHWEH said to Solomon, Because this has been done by you, and you have not kept My covenant and My statutes that I charged on you, I shall surely tear the kingdom from you and shall give it to your servant.

12 Only, I will not do it in your days, for the sake of your father David; I shall tear it out of your son's hand.

13 Only I will not tear away all the kingdom; I will give one tribe to your son for my servant David's sake, and for the sake of Jerusalem that I have chosen. *(1 Kgs 11:32,36, 1Kgs 14:21)*

14 And it happened, YAHWEH raised an adversary to Solomon, Hadad the Edomite; he was of the seed of the king in Edom.

15 And it happened when David was in Edom, and Joab the commander of the army had gone up to bury the ones who died, after he had stricken every male in Edom;

16 Joab and all Israel remained there six months until every male in Edom was cut off.

17 And Hadad fled, he and certain Edomites of his father's servants with him, to go into Egypt; and Hadad was a little child.

18 And they rose up out of Midian and came to Paran, and they took men with them out of Paran and came into Egypt, to Pharaoh the king of Egypt. And he gave him a house and commanded bread for him, and gave land to him.

19 And Hadad found much favor in the eyes of Pharaoh, and he gave him a wife, the sister of his own wife, the sister of Tahpenes the queen.

---

1 Solomon worshiped false deities. Ashtoreth is the same goddess as "*Istar*" or "*Easter*".

2 Yahweh gave Solomon a great opportunity but it was conditional on his obedience and due to his failure the kingdom would be taken from him and divided 1 Chron 28:1-9.

20 And the sister of Tahpenes bore
him a son, Genubath, and Tahpenes
weaned him in Pharaoh's house
among Pharaoh's sons.
21 And Hadad had heard in Egypt
that David had slept with his fathers,
and that Joab the commander of the
army was dead. And Hadad said to
Pharaoh, Send me away and I will go
to my land.
22 And Pharaoh said to him, But
what are you lacking with me, that, lo,
you are seeking to go to your land?
And he said, Nothing. However, you
shall certainly send me away.
23 And Elohim raised up an
adversary to him, Rezon the son of
Eliadah, who fled from his master
Hadadezer the king of Zobah.
24 And he gathered men to himself,
and was head of a troop when David
killed them. And they went to
Damascus and lived in it, and reigned
in Damascus.
25 And he was an adversary to Israel
all the days of Solomon, besides the
evil that Hadad did; and he despised
Israel and reigned over Syria.
26 And Jeroboam the son of Nebat,
an Ephrathite of Zereda, a servant of
Solomon (and his mother's name was
Zeruah, a widow woman) he also lifted
up a hand against the king.
27 And this was the thing for which
he lifted up his hand against the king:
Solomon built Millo, and closed up the
breaks of the city of his father David.
28 And the man Jeroboam was a
mighty warrior. And Solomon saw the
young man, that he was doing work.
And he appointed him to all the
burden of the house of Joseph.
29 And at that time it happened that
Jeroboam had gone out from
Jerusalem, and Ahijah the Shilonite,
the prophet, found him in the way.
And he covered himself with a new
garment, and both of them were by
themselves in a field.
30 And Ahijah laid hold on the new
garment on him and tore it into twelve
pieces.
31 And he said to Jeroboam, Take
ten pieces for yourself. For so says
YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, Behold, I
am tearing the kingdom from the hand
of Solomon and giving to you the ten
tribes.
32 And he shall have the one tribe
for my servant David's sake, and for
Jerusalem's sake, the city which I have
chosen out of all the tribes of Israel.
33 Because they have forsaken Me,
and bow themselves to Ashtoreth the
goddess of the Sidonians, to Chemosh
the god of Moab, to Milcom the god of
the sons of Ammon; and have not
walked in My ways, to do the right in
My eyes, and My statutes and My
judgments, as his father David did.
34 But I will not take the whole
kingdom out of his hand, but I will
make him ruler all the days of his life,
for My servant David's sake, whom I
chose, because he kept My
commandments and My statutes.
35 But I will take the kingdom out of
his son's hand, and will give it to you,
ten tribes.
36 And I will give one tribe to his
son, that there may be a lamp to My
servant David before Me all the days in
Jerusalem, the city that I have chosen
to Myself, to put My name there.
37 And I will take you, and you shall
reign according to all that your soul
desires, and shall be king over Israel.
38 And it shall be, if you shall hear
all that I command you, and shall walk
in My ways, and do that which is right
in My eyes, to keep My statutes and
My commandments, as My servant
David did, then I shall be with you and
shall build a sure house for you, as I

built for David, and shall give Israel to you.

39 And for this I will afflict the seed of David; but not forever.

40 And Solomon sought to put Jeroboam to death, and Jeroboam rose up and fled to Egypt, to Shishak the king of Egypt; and he was in Egypt until the death of Solomon.

41 And the rest of the matters of Solomon, and all that he did, and his wisdom, are they not written in the Book of the Acts of Solomon?

42 And the days that Solomon reigned in Jerusalem over all Israel were forty years;

43 and Solomon lay with his fathers and was buried in the city of his father David; and his son Rehoboam reigned in his place.

Chapter 12

1 And Rehoboam went to Shechem, for all Israel had come to Shechem to make him king.

2 And it happened, when Jeroboam the son of Nebat heard (and he was still in Egypt where he had fled from the face of Solomon the king, and Jeroboam lived in Egypt)

3 that they sent and called for him; and they came, Jeroboam and all the assembly of Israel, and spoke to Rehoboam, saying,

4 Your father made our yoke hard; and now you should lighten some of the hard service of your father, and his heavy yoke that he put upon us, and we will serve you.

5 And he said to them, Go; yet in three days come back to me. And the people went.

6 And King Rehoboam consulted with the elders who had been standing before the face of his father Solomon while he was alive, saying, How do you advise in order to answer this people?

7 And they spoke to him, saying, If you are servant to this people today, and will serve them, and answer them and speak to them good words, then they will be servants to you forever.

8 But he forsook the counsel of the elders which they advised him, and consulted with the young men who had grown up with him, who were standing before him.

9 And he said to them, What do you advise, and we shall answer the people who have spoken to me, saying, Lighten some of the yoke that your father put upon us?

10 And they spoke to him, the young men who had grown up with him, saying, So you shall say to this people who have spoken to you, saying, Your father made our yoke heavy, and you make it light on us; so you shall speak to them, My little finger is thicker than the loins of my father,

11 and now my father laid a heavy yoke on you, and I will add to your yoke; my father chastised you with whips, and I will surely chastise you with scorpions.

12 And they came, Jeroboam and all the people, to Rehoboam on the third day, as the king had spoken, saying, Come back to me on the third day.

13 And the king replied to the people harshly, and forsook the counsel of the elders which they advised him,

14 and spoke to them according to the counsel of the young men, saying, My father made your yoke heavy, and I shall add to your yoke; my father chastised you with whips, and I will surely chastise you with scorpions.

15 And the king did not listen to the people, for the turn of events was from YAHWEH, in order to lift up His Word that YAHWEH spoke by the hand of Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat.

16 And all Israel saw that the king did not listen to them, and the people

sent the king back word, saying, What
portion do we have in David? Yea,
there is no inheritance in the son of
Jesse; to your tents, O Israel; now see
to your house, O David! And Israel
went to its tents. *(1 Kgs 12:28)*
17 As to the sons of Israel, those
living in the cities of Judah,
Rehoboam reigned over them.
18 And King Rehoboam sent
Adoram who was over the tribute, and
all Israel threw stones at him, and he
died. And King Rehoboam made haste
to go up into a chariot to flee to
Jerusalem.
19 And Israel rebelled against the
house of David to this day.
20 And it happened when all Israel
heard that Jeroboam had returned,
that they sent and called him to the
company, and caused him to reign
over all Israel; none followed after the
house of David except the tribe of
Judah only.
21 And Rehoboam came to
Jerusalem, and gathered all the house
of Judah and the tribe of Benjamin, a
hundred and eighty thousand chosen
makers of war to fight with the house
of Israel, to bring back the kingdom to
Rehoboam the son of Solomon,
22 then the Word of Elohim came to
Shemaiah a man of Elohim, saying,
23 Speak to Rehoboam the son of
Solomon the king of Judah, and to all
the house of Judah, and Benjamin,
and the rest of the people, saying,
24 So says YAHWEH, You shall not
go up nor fight with your brothers the
sons of Israel. Each turn back to his
house, for this thing has been from
Me. And they heard the Word of
YAHWEH, and turned to go back,
according to the Word of YAHWEH.
25 And Jeroboam built Shechem in
the hills of Ephraim and lived in it,
and went out from there and built
Penuel.
26 And Jeroboam said in his heart,
Now the kingdom shall turn back to
the house of David;
27 if this people go up to do sacrifice
in the house of YAHWEH at
Jerusalem, then the heart of this
people shall turn again to their master,
to Rehoboam the king of Judah, and
they will kill me and go again to
Rehoboam the king of Judah.
28 And the king took counsel and
made two calves of gold. And he said
to them, It is too much for you to go
up to Jerusalem. Behold your gods, O
Israel, which brought you up out of the
land of Egypt!
29 And he set the one in Bethel, and
the other he put in Dan.[1]
30 And this thing became a sin, for
the people went before the one, to
Dan.
31 And he made a house of high
places, and made priests of the lowest
of people, who were not of the sons of
Levi.
32 And Jeroboam made a feast in
the eighth month, in the fifteenth day
of the month, like the feast that is in
Judah; and he offered on the altar, so
he did in Bethel, to sacrifice to the
calves which he made; and he made
stand in Bethel the priests of the high
places that he made.
33 And he offered up on the altar
that he made in Bethel, on the
fifteenth day of the eighth month, in

[1] Verses 28-29- Jeroboam tried to prevent the Northern tribes from going back to Jerusalem and maybe turning on him. So he set 2 places of worship one at the southern border in Bethel and one at the northern border in Dan. He then went on to change the feast to the 8th month from the 7th month thinking it would be more convenient for those in the north as in northern Israel the harvest can be a little later than in the south. He thought this might appeal to the people who may rather have a later feast and be able to care for their harvest first.

the month that he devised out of his own heart; and he made a feast for the sons of Israel, and offered on the altar, to burn incense.[1]

Chapter 13

1 And, behold, a man of Elohim had come from Judah to Bethel, by the Word of YAHWEH, and Jeroboam was standing by the altar to burn incense.
2 And he cried against the altar, by the Word of YAHWEH, and said, Altar! Altar! So says YAHWEH, Behold, a son shall be born to the house of David, his name Josiah, and he shall sacrifice on you the priests of the high places who are burning incense on you, and they shall burn the bones of man on you.[2]
3 And on that day he gave a sign, saying, This is the sign that YAHWEH has spoken, Behold, the altar is torn, and the ashes that are on it poured out.
4 And it happened when the king heard the saying of the man of Elohim which he had cried against the altar in Bethel, Jereboam put out his hand from the altar, saying, Seize him. And his hand which he put out against him withered, and he was not able to bring it back to him.
5 And the altar was torn, and the ashes poured out from the altar, according to the sign that the man of Elohim had given by the Word of YAHWEH.
6 And the king answered and said to the man of Elohim, Please entreat the face of YAHWEH your Elohim, and pray for me, and my hand shall come back to me. And the man of Elohim entreated the face of YAHWEH, and the hand of the king came back to him, and it was as at the beginning.
7 And the king spoke to the man of Elohim, Come home with me, and refresh yourself, and I will give you a gift.
8 And the man of Elohim said to the king, If you would give me the half of your house, I would not go in with you, nor will I eat bread, nor will I drink water in this place.
9 For so He commanded me by the Word of YAHWEH, saying, You shall not eat bread nor drink water, nor turn back in the way that you have come.
10 And he went on another way, and did not turn back in the way in which he came into Bethel.
11 And a certain aged prophet was living in Bethel, and his son came and told him all the deeds that the man of Elohim had done that day in Bethel, the words that he had spoken to the king; yea, they told them to their father.
12 And their father said to them, Where is this man, what way did he go? And his sons saw the way that the man of Elohim from Judah had gone.
13 And he said to his sons, Saddle the donkey for me. And they saddled the donkey for him, and he rode on it,
14 and went after the man of Elohim, and found him sitting under an oak tree. And he said to him, are you the man of Elohim who has come from Judah? And he said, I am. *(Ps 108:8)*
15 Then he said to him, Come home with me and eat bread.
16 And he said, I am not able to go back with you, and to go in with you,

[1] Yahweh's calendar is set in the heaven's (Gen 1:14) by the moon and the sun and stars. It is a grave sin to purposely change the set apart time of YHWH.

[2] This most amazing prophecy was fulfilled exactly according to the word of YAHWEH almost 300 years later, even naming the king Josiah who would fulfill it, 2 Kgs 23:15-16.

nor may I eat bread or drink water with you in this place;
17 for a word came to me by the Word of YAHWEH, You shall not eat bread nor drink water there; you shall not turn back to go in the way in which you came.
18 And he said to him, I also am a prophet like yourself, and a cherub spoke to me by the Word of YAHWEH, saying, Bring him back with you into your house, and he shall eat bread and water (he lied to him).[1]
19 And he turned back with him and ate bread in his house and drank water.
20 And it happened as they were sitting at the table, and a Word of YAHWEH came to the prophet who brought him back;
21 and he cried to the man of Elohim who came from Judah, saying, So says YAHWEH, Because you have resisted the mouth of YAHWEH, and have not kept the command that YAHWEH your Elohim charged you,
22 and turned back and ate bread and drank water in the place of which He said to you, You shall not eat bread nor drink water; your carcass shall not come to the burying place of your fathers.
23 And after he ate bread and after he drank, it happened that he saddled the donkey for him, for the prophet whom he had brought back.
24 And he left, and a lion found him in the way and killed him; and his carcass was thrown down in the way, and the donkey was standing near it, and the lion was standing near the carcass.
25 And behold, men were passing by and saw the carcass thrown in the way, and the lion standing near the carcass; and they came and spoke of it in the city in which the old prophet lived.
26 And the prophet who brought him back out of the way heard and said, It is the man of Elohim who provoked the mouth of YAHWEH, and YAHWEH gave him to the lion, and it tore him apart and killed him, according to the Word of YAHWEH that He spoke to him.
27 And he spoke to his sons, saying, Saddle the donkey for me. And they saddled.
28 And he went and found the carcass thrown down in the way, and the donkey and the lion were standing near the carcass; the lion had not eaten the carcass nor had he torn apart the donkey.
29 And the prophet took up the carcass of the man of Elohim and placed it on the donkey, and brought it back; and the old prophet came into the city to mourn and to bury him.
30 And he placed his carcass in his own grave, and they mourned for him, O my brother!
31 And it happened, after he buried him, that he spoke to his sons, saying, At my death, you shall bury me in the burying place in which the man of Elohim is buried; place my bones beside his bones;
32 for the word that he cried by the Word of YAHWEH concerning the altar in Bethel, and concerning all the houses of the high places that are in the cities of Samaria, shall surely occur.
33 After this thing Jeroboam did not turn from his evil way, but turned again and made from the lowest of the people priests of high places; he who desired, he consecrated him, and he

[1] It is not fully apparent why the man would have lied to the prophet of YHWH, but the prophet should have realized that YHWH is not double-minded and once given a direct command YHWH wouldn't have changed His mind (Ja 1:8, Mal 3:6).

became one of the priests of the high places.[1]

34 And in this thing is the sin of the house of Jeroboam, even to blot it from off the face of the earth. [2]

Chapter 14

1 At that time Abijah the son of Jeroboam was sick.

2 And Jeroboam said to his wife, Please rise up and disguise yourself, that you may not be known to be the wife of Jeroboam. And you shall go to Shiloh. Behold, Ahijah the prophet is there. He spoke to me of being king over this people.

3 And you shall take ten loaves in your hand, and biscuits, and a flask of honey, and come to him. He will tell you what shall become of the boy.

4 And Jeroboam's wife did so, and rose up and went to Shiloh and entered the house of Ahijah. And Ahijah was not able to see, for his eyes were set because of his age.

5 And YAHWEH said to Ahijah, Behold, the wife of Jeroboam is coming to ask a thing of you for her son, for he is sick. You shall say this and this to her, and it shall be when she comes in, she will act as a foreigner.

6 And it happened when Ahijah heard the sound of her feet as she came in the door, he said, Come in, wife of Jeroboam. Why are you acting as a foreigner? And I am sent to you with a hard thing.

7 Go, say to Jeroboam, So says YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, Because I have exalted you from among the people, and have appointed you leader over My people Israel;

8 and have torn the kingdom from the house of David, and have given it to you, and you have not been as My servant David who kept My commandments, and who walked after Me with all his heart, to do only that which is right in My eyes;

9 and you did evil above all who have been before you, and went and made for yourself other Elohim and cast images to provoke Me to anger; and you have cast Me behind your back

10 therefore, behold, I am bringing evil to the house of Jeroboam, and will cut off from Jeroboam him who urinates against the wall, bound and free in Israel; and will sweep away the rest of the house of Jeroboam as a man sweeps away the dung, until it is all gone.

11 The dogs shall eat those of Jeroboam who die in the city. And the birds of the heavens shall eat those who die in a field; for YAHWEH has spoken.

12 And you, rise up, go to your house. When your feet enter the city, the boy shall die.

13 And all Israel shall mourn for him, and bury him, for only this one of Jeroboam shall come to the grave because there has been found in him a good thing toward YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, in the house of Jeroboam.

14 And YAHWEH shall raise up a king over Israel for Himself, who shall cut off the house of Jeroboam this day. And what? Even now!

1 YHWH consecrated the tribe of Levi to be the priests, as He also consecrates His ministers in the New Covenant through the laying on of hands and a very strict criteria (1 Tim 3:1-6). Someone cannot consecrate himself to be a priest or minister of YHWH and it is wickedness for one to try to do so and fully outside of judicial order and will only bring chaos and confusion.

2 This was a great sin in the eyes of YHWH. When someone takes the role of leadership over others in Yahweh's congregation there is a great responsibility to follow YHWH's judicial order and grave consequences not to (1 Kgs 15:28-30).

15 And YAHWEH shall strike Israel as the reed waves in the water, and shall pluck up Israel from off this good land that He gave to their fathers. And He shall scatter them beyond the River, because they have made their Asherahs, provoking YAHWEH to anger.

16 And He shall give up Israel because of the sins of Jeroboam that he sinned, and that he caused Israel to sin.

17 And Jeroboam's wife rose up and left, and came to Tirzah. She came in to the threshold of the house, and the boy died.

18 And they buried him, and all Israel mourned for him, according to the Word of YAHWEH that He spoke by the hand of his servant Ahijah the prophet.

19 And the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, how he fought, and how he reigned, behold, they are written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel.

20 And the days that Jeroboam reigned were twenty two years. And he lay with his fathers, and his son Nadab reigned in his place.

21 And Rehoboam the son of Solomon reigned in Judah. Rehoboam was forty one years old when he began to reign. And he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city which YAHWEH chose out of all the tribes of Israel, to put his name there. And his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess. *(2 Chron 12:13)*

22 And Judah did evil in the sight of YAHWEH, and they provoked Him to jealousy above all their fathers did by their sins that they had sinned.

23 And they also built high places for themselves, and standing pillars, and Asherahs on every high hill, and under every green tree.

24 And also the sodomite was in the land. They did according to all the abominations of the nations that YAHWEH dispossessed before the sons of Israel.

25 And it happened in the fifth year of King Rehoboam, Shishak the king of Egypt went up against Jerusalem.

26 And he took the treasures of the house of YAHWEH, and the treasures of the king's house; yea, he took all. And he took all the golden shields that Solomon had made.

27 And King Rehoboam made in their place copper shields. And he gave them into the hand of the commander of the runners, who kept the door of the king's house.

28 And it happened, when the king went to the house of YAHWEH, the runners bore them, and brought them back to the room of the runners.

29 And the rest of the acts of Rehoboam, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

30 And there was war between Rehoboam and Jeroboam continually.

31 And Rehoboam lay with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess. And his son Abijam reigned in his place.

Chapter 15

1 And in the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam the son of Nebat, Abijam reigned over Judah.

2 He reigned three years in Jerusalem, and his mother's name was Maachah the daughter of Abishalom.

3 And he walked in all the sins of his father, those that he did before him, and his heart was not perfect with YAHWEH his Elohim, as was the heart of his father David.

4 But for David's sake YAHWEH his
Elohim gave to him a lamp in
Jerusalem, to raise up his son after
him, and to establish Jerusalem.
5 For David did that which is right in
the eyes of YAHWEH, and did not
turn aside from all that He
commanded him all the days of his
life, except in the matter of Uriah the
Hittite.
6 And there was war between
Rehoboam and Jeroboam all the days
of his life.
7 And the rest of the acts of Abijam,
and all that he did, are they not
written in the Book of the Matters of
the Days of the Kings of Judah? And
there was war between Abijam and
Jeroboam.
8 And Abijam lay with his fathers,
and they buried him in the city of
David. And his son Asa reigned in his
place.
9 And in the twentieth year of
Jeroboam the king of Israel Asa
reigned over Judah.
10 And he reigned forty one years in
Jerusalem, and his grandmother's
name was Maachah the daughter of
Abishalom.
11 And Asa did that which was right
in the eyes of YAHWEH, like his
father David.
12 And he removed the sodomites
out of the land, and removed all the
idols that his fathers made.
13 And he also removed his mother
Maachah from being queen, in that
she made a horrid thing for Asherah.
And Asa cut down her horrid thing
and burned it by the torrent Kidron.
14 But they did not remove the high
places. Only the heart of Asa was
perfect with YAHWEH all the days.
15 And he brought in the things
which his father had dedicated and his
holy things, into the house of
YAHWEH, silver and gold and
vessels.
16 And there was war between Asa
and Baasha king of Israel all their
days.
17 And Baasha king of Israel went up
against Judah, and built Ramah, to
keep anyone from going out and
coming in to Asa the king of Judah.
18 And Asa took all the silver and
gold that remained in the treasures of
the house of YAHWEH, and the
treasures of the king's house, and gave
them into his servants' hand; and King
Asa sent them to Ben-Hadad, the son
of Tabrimon, the son of Hezion, the
king of Syria, who lived at Damascus,
saying,
19 A treaty between you and me,
between my father and your father!
Behold, I have sent you a present of
silver and gold. Go, break your treaty
with Baasha the king of Israel, that he
go up from me.
20 And Ben-Hadad listened to King
Asa, and sent his army commanders
against the cities of Israel. And he
struck Ijon, and Dan, and Abel-Beth-
Maachah, and all Chinneroth, with all
the land of Naphtali.
21 And it happened, when Baasha
heard, he ceased building Ramah, and
dwelt in Tirzah.
22 And King Asa proclaimed to all
Judah *(no one was exempt)* and they
carried away the stones of Ramah, and
its timber with which Baasha had
built. And King Asa built with it Geba
of Benjamin, and Mizpah.
23 And the rest of all the acts of Asa,
and all his might, and all that he did,
and the cities he built, are they not
written in the Book of the Matters of
the Days of the Kings of Judah? Only,
at the time of his old age he was
diseased in his feet.
24 And Asa lay with his fathers, and
was buried with his fathers in the city

of his father David. And his son Jehoshaphat reigned in his place.
25 And Nadab the son of Jeroboam began to reign over Israel in the second year of Asa the king of Judah. And he reigned over Israel two years.
26 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, and walked in the way of his father, and in his sin with which he made Israel to sin.
27 And Baasha the son of Ahijah, of the house of Issachar, conspired against him And Baasha struck him at Gibbethon which belonged to the Philistines. For Nadab and all Israel had laid siege to Gibbethon.
28 And in the third year of Asa the king of Judah, Baasha[1] killed him, and reigned in his place.
29 And it happened when he reigned, he struck all the house of Jeroboam; he did not leave Jeroboam any who breathed, until he had destroyed him according to the saying of YAHWEH which He spoke by His servant Ahijah the man of Shiloh;
30 because of the sins of Jeroboam which he sinned, and that he caused Israel to sin by his provocation with which he provoked YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel to anger. *(1Kgs 14:6-11)*
31 And the rest of the acts of Nadab, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?
32 And there was war between Asa and Baasha the king of Israel all their days.
33 In the third year of Asa the king of Judah, Baasha the son of Ahijah reigned over all Israel in Tirzah, twenty four years.
34 And he did that which was evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, and walked in the way of Jeroboam, and in his sin that he caused Israel to sin.

Chapter 16

1 And the Word of YAHWEH came to Jehu the son of Hanani against Baasha, saying,
2 Since I have raised you up out of the dust, and made you ruler over My people Israel, and you have walked in the way of Jeroboam, and caused My people Israel to sin, to provoke Me to anger with their sins;
3 behold, I will utterly sweep away Baasha and his house; and I will make your house like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat.
4 He who dies of Baasha in the city, the dogs shall eat; and whoever of his dies in the field, the birds of the heavens shall eat.
5 And the rest of the acts of Baasha, and that which he did, and his might, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?
6 And Baasha lay with his fathers, and was buried in Tirzah. And his son Elah reigned in his place.
7 And also by the hand of Jehu the son of Hanani the prophet, the Word of YAHWEH came against Baasha, and against his house, and against all the evil that he did in the eyes of YAHWEH to provoke Him to anger with the work of his hands, to be like the house of Jeroboam, and because he killed him.
8 In the twenty sixth year of Asa the king of Judah, Elah the son of Baasha began to reign over Israel in Tirzah, two years.
9 And his servant Zimri, the captain of half of the chariots, conspired against him. And he was in Tirzah drinking himself drunk in the house of Arza, who was over the house of Tirzah.
10 And Zimri came in and struck

[1] Baasha was from Issachar.

him, and killed him in the twenty
seventh year of Asa the king of Judah,
and reigned in his place.
11 And it happened, when he began
to reign, as he sat on his throne, that
he struck all the house of Baasha; he
did not leave him one who urinated
against the wall, nor of his kinsmen,
nor of his friends.
12 And Zimri destroyed the whole
house of Baasha, according to the
Word of YAHWEH that He spoke as
to Baasha, by the hand of Jehu the
prophet;
13 concerning all the sins of Baasha
and the sins of his son Elah that they
sinned, and that they caused Israel to
sin, to provoke to anger YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel with their vanities.
14 And the rest of the acts of Elah,
and all that he did, are they not
written in the Book of the Matters of
the Days of the Kings of Israel?
15 In the twenty seventh year of Asa
the king of Judah, Zimri reigned seven
days in Tirzah. And the people were
camped against Gibbethon, which was
the Philistines'.
16 And the people who were
encamped heard, saying, Zimri has
conspired and has struck the king. And
all Israel made Omri the commander
of the army to rule over Israel on that
day in the camp.
17 And Omri went up, and all Israel
with him from Gibbethon, and they
laid siege to Tirzah.
18 And it happened when Zimri saw
that the city would be captured he
came into a high place of the king and
burned the house of the king with fire
over him, and died,
19 for his sins that he sinned, to do
the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, to
walk in the way of Jeroboam, and in
his sin that he did, to cause Israel to
sin.
20 And the rest of the acts of Zimri,
and his conspiracy that he made, are
they not written in the Book of the
Matters of the Days of the Kings of
Israel?
21 Then the people of Israel were
divided into two parts: Half of the
people followed Tibni the son of
Ginath to cause him to reign, and the
other half after Omri.
22 And the people that followed
Omri were stronger than the people
who followed Tibni the son of Ginath;
and Tibni died, and Omri reigned.
23 In the thirty first year of Asa the
king of Judah, Omri began to reign
over Israel, twelve years. He reigned
six years in Tirzah;
24 then he bought the hill Samaria
from Shemer with two talents of silver,
and built the hill, and called the name
of the city that he built by the name of
Shemer, the owner of the hill, that is
Samaria.
25 And Omri did that which was evil
in the eyes of YAHWEH, and did evil
above all who were before him,
26 and walked in all the way of
Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and in his
sin that he caused Israel to sin, to
provoke to anger YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel with their vanities.
27 And the rest of the acts of Omri
that he did, and his might that he
attained, are they not written in the
book of the Matters of the Days of the
Kings of Israel?
28 And Omri lay down with his
fathers, and was buried in Samaria.
And his son Ahab reigned in his place.
29 And in the thirty eighth year of
Asa the king of Judah, Ahab the son of
Omri began to reign over Israel. And
Ahab the son of Omri reigned over
Israel in Samaria twenty two years;
30 and Ahab the son of Omri did evil
in the eyes of YAHWEH above all who
were before him.
31 And it happened as if it were a

light thing, that he walked in the sins
of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, that he
took a wife, Jezebel the daughter of
Ethbaal, the king of the Sidonians, and
went and served Baal, and bowed
himself to it.
32 And he reared up an altar for Baal
in the house of Baal, which he had
built in Samaria.
33 And Ahab made an Asherah, and
Ahab did still more to provoke to
anger YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel
than all the kings of Israel that were
before him.
34 In his days Hiel the man of Bethel
built Jericho; he laid its foundation in
his first-born Abiram, and he set up its
doors in Segub his youngest, according
to the Word of YAHWEH that He
spoke by the hand of Yahoshua the son
of Nun.

Chapter 17

1 And Elijah the Tishbite, of the
sojourners of Gilead, said to Ahab, As
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel lives,
before whom I stand, there shall be no
dew nor rain these years, except
according to my word.
2 And the Word of YAHWEH came
to him, saying,
3 Go away from here; and you shall
turn eastward and shall hide by the
torrent Cherith, that is before Jordan.
4 And it shall be, you shall drink of
the torrent; and I shall command the
ravens to feed you there.
5 And he went and did according to
the Word of YAHWEH; for he went
and lived by the torrent Cherith, that
is before Jordan.
6 And the ravens brought him bread
and flesh in the morning, and bread
and flesh in the evening; and he drank
of the torrent.
7 And it happened after a while, that
the torrent dried up, because there
was no rain in the land.
8 And the Word of YAHWEH came
to him, saying,
9 Rise up, go to Zarephath that
belongs to Sidon; and you shall live
there. Behold, I have commanded a
widow woman there to sustain you.
10 And he rose up and went to
Zarephath, and came in to the
entrance of the city; and, behold, a
widow woman was gathering sticks.
And he called to her and said, Please
bring to me a little water in a vessel,
and I shall drink.
11 And she went to bring it. And he
called to her and said, Please bring me
a bit of bread in your hand.
12 And she said, As YAHWEH your
Elohim lives, I do not have a cake, only
a handful of meal in a pitcher, and a
little oil in a jar; and behold, I am
gathering two sticks and will go in and
prepare for myself and for my son; and
we shall eat it, and die.
13 And Elijah said to her, Do not
fear, go, do according to your word,
only first make me a little cake of it,
and bring to me and afterward prepare
for you and for your son.
14 For so says YAHWEH the Elohim
of Israel, The pitcher of meal shall not
be consumed, and the jar of oil shall
not fail, until the day that YAHWEH
sends rain on the land.
15 And she went and did according
to the word of Elijah, and she ate, she
and he and her household, many days;
16 the pitcher of meal was not
consumed, and the jar of oil did not
fail, according to the Word of
YAHWEH that He spoke by the hand
of Elijah. *(Deut 29:5-6)*
17 And it happened after these
things, that the son of the woman, the
mistress of the house became sick; and
his illness was very severe until he had
no breath left to him.

18 And she said to Elijah, What have I to do with you, O man of Elohim? Have you come to me to cause my iniquity to be remembered, and to cause my son to die?

19 And he said to her, Give me your son; and he took him out of her bosom, and caused him to go up into the upper room where he was staying, and laid him on his own bed.

20 And he cried to YAHWEH and said, YAHWEH my Elohim, have You also brought evil on the widow with whom I am staying by slaying her son?

21 And he stretched himself on the child three times, and called to YAHWEH and said, O YAHWEH my Elohim, I pray, let the soul of this boy return to him.

22 And YAHWEH listened to the voice of Elijah, and the soul of the boy returned to him, and he lived.

23 And Elijah took the boy and brought him down from the upper room of the house, and gave him to his mother; and Elijah said, See your son lives![1]

24 And the woman said to Elijah, Now I know this, that you are a man of Elohim, and the Word of YAHWEH that is in your mouth is truth.

Chapter 18

1 And it happened after many days the Word of YAHWEH came to Elijah in the third year, saying, Go, show yourself to Ahab, and I will give rain on the face of the ground.

2 And Elijah went to appear to Ahab. And the famine in Samaria was severe.

3 And Ahab called to Obadiah, who was over the house (and Obadiah greatly feared YAHWEH;

4 and it happened, when Jezebel cut off the prophets of YAHWEH, that Obadiah had taken a hundred prophets and had hidden them, fifty men in a cave, and had fed them with bread and water)

5 and Ahab said to Obadiah, Go through the land to all the fountains of water, and to all the torrents; perhaps we may find grass and keep alive horse and mule, and will not cut off any of the livestock.

6 And they divided the land to themselves, to pass over into it; Ahab went in one way by himself, and Obadiah went in another way by himself.

7 And Obadiah was in the highway; and behold, Elijah came to meet him. And he recognized him, and he fell on his face, and said, Are you this one, my master Elijah?

8 And he said to him, I am; Go, say to your master, Behold, Elijah!

9 And he said, What have I sinned, that you are giving your servant into the hand of Ahab to kill me?

10 As YAHWEH your Elohim lives, there is no nation or kingdom where my master has not sent to seek you; and when they said, He is not here, then he caused the kingdom and the nation to swear that it did not find you.

11 And now, you are saying, Go, say to your master, Behold, Elijah.

12 And it shall be, I will go away from you, and the Spirit of YAHWEH will lift you up, where I do not know, and I will come to tell Ahab, and he will not find you, and he will kill me. And your servant has feared YAHWEH from my youth.[2]

13 Was it not told to my master that which I did when Jezebel killed the prophets of YAHWEH, that I hid a hundred men of the prophets, fifty by

---

[1] Verses 17-23- See story in Luk 7:11-17

[2] Apparently, Elijah had been translated before this occurrence of being taken up in the chariot of fire (2Kgs:2:11, 15-17).

fifty in a cave, and fed them with bread and water?

14 And now you are saying, Go, say to your master, Behold, Elijah, and he will kill me!

15 And Elijah said, As YAHWEH of Hosts lives, before whom I stand, surely today I will be seen by him.

16 And Obadiah went to meet Ahab and told him: And Ahab went to meet Elijah.

17 And it happened when Ahab saw Elijah, that Ahab said to him, Are you this one, the disturber of Israel?

18 And he answered, I have not disturbed Israel, but you and the house of your father, in that you have forsaken the commandments of YAHWEH, and you have gone after the Baals.

19 And now send, gather all Israel to me, to Mount Carmel and four hundred and fifty of the prophets of Baal, and four hundred of the prophets of the Asherah, who eat at the table of Jezebel.

20 And Ahab sent among all the sons of Israel and gathered the prophets to Mount Carmel.

21 And Elijah came near all the people and said, Until when are you limping over two opinions? If YAHWEH is Elohim, follow Him; and if Baal, follow him. But the people did not answer him a word.[1]

22 Then Elijah said to the people, I, I am the only one of who remains a prophet of YAHWEH; but the prophets of Baal are four hundred and fifty men.

23 Then let them give us two bulls; and let them choose one bull for themselves, and cut it in pieces, and place it on the wood, and place no fire. And I, I will prepare the other bull and will put it on the wood, and I will not place fire.

24 And you shall call on the name of your Elohim; and I, I will call on the name of YAHWEH; and it shall be, the Elohim who answers by fire, he is the Elohim. And all the people answered and said, The word is good.

25 And Elijah said to the prophets of Baal, Choose the one bull for yourself, and prepare first, for you are many; and you call on the name of your Elohim, but place no fire.

26 And they took the bull that was given to them, and prepared, and called on the name of Baal from the morning even until noon, saying, O Baal, answer us! And there was no sound, and no one was answering; and they hopped about the altar that had been made.

27 And it happened at noon, that Elijah taunted them and said, Call with a loud voice, for he is a Elohim; for he is meditating, or he is relieving himself, or on a journey; it may be he is asleep and must be awakened.

28 And they called with a loud voice, and cut themselves, according to their custom, with swords and with spears until blood gushed out on them.[2]

29 And it happened as noon passed by, that they prophesied madly until the offering up of the offering; and no sound came, and no one was answering, and no one was paying attention.

30 And Elijah said to all the people, Come near to me. And all the people came near to him; and he healed the altar of YAHWEH that had been broken down.

1 A striking challenge by Elijah to the lukewarm people. It would be interesting to see what Elijah would say to people today who read their bibles but call Yahweh by the names of "*god*" and "*lord*"; names of false pagan deities.

2 This was a pagan ritual of self-mutilation and strictly forbidden in the Torah, Lev 19:28, Deut 14:1.

31 And Elijah took twelve stones, according to the number of the tribes of the sons of Jacob, to whom the Word of YAHWEH came, saying, Israel shall be your name.

32 And he built an altar with the stones in the name of YAHWEH[1], and made a trench as large as two seahs of seed [2]in space around the altar.

33 And he arranged the wood, and cut the bull in pieces, and placed it on the wood, and said, Fill four water jars of water and pour it on the burnt offering and on the wood.

34 And he said, Do it twice; and they did it twice; and he said, Do it a third time; and they did it a third time.

35 And the water went around the altar, and also he filled the trench with water.

36 And it happened at the offering of the sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near and said, O YAHWEH, the Elohim of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, let it be known today that You are Elohim in Israel, and I am Your servant, that by Your Word I have done all these things.

37 Answer me, O YAHWEH, answer me; and this people shall know that You are YAHWEH Elohim; and You shall turn their hearts back again.[3]

38 And fire fell from YAHWEH and consumed the burnt offering, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and the water that was in the trench it was licked up.

39 And all the people saw, and fell on their faces, and said, YAHWEH, He is the Elohim; YAHWEH, He is the Elohim![4]

40 And Elijah said to them, Seize the prophets of Baal; do not let a man of them escape. And they caught them, and Elijah brought them down to the torrent of the Kishon and killed them there.

41 And Elijah said to Ahab, Go up, eat and drink, because of the sound of abundance of rain.

42 And Ahab went up to eat, and to drink; and Elijah went up to the top of Carmel, and he stretched himself out on the earth, and he put his face between his knees;

43 and said to his young man, Now go up, look closely to the way of the sea. And he went up and looked closely, and said, There is nothing; and he said, Go back seven times.

44 And it happened at the seventh time, he said, Behold, a little cloud like the hand of a man is coming up out of the sea. And he said, Go up and say to Ahab, Bind up and go down, that the rain may not stop you.

45 And until this and this, it happened that the heavens became black with thick clouds and wind, and the rain was heavy; and Ahab rode and went to Jezreel;

46 and the hand of YAHWEH was on Elijah, and he girded up his loins and ran before Ahab until you come to enter Jezreel.[5]

Chapter 19

1 And Ahab told Jezebel all that Elijah did, and all, that he killed all the prophets by the sword.

2 And Jezebel sent a messenger to Elijah, saying, So let the gods do, and more so, if at this time tomorrow I will

[1] The altar was arranged in the Hebrew letters of the name of YHWH to show which Elohim was the only true Elohim.

[2] This was about 15 liters

[3] It was part of the job of Elijah to turn the people's heart back to YAHWEH, the only true Elohim, (Mal 4:5-6).

[4] Elijah won the victory for YAHWEH.

[5] Jezreel was a winter residence of Ahab and about 17 miles from Mount Carmel.

not cause your life to be as the life of
one of them.
3 And he saw, and rose up and went
for his life, and came to Beer-Sheba of
Judah, and left his young man there;[1]
4 and he himself went into the
wilderness a day's journey, and came
and sat under one broom tree. [2]And he
begged for his life, that he might die,
and said, Enough, now, O YAHWEH;
take my life, for I am no better than
my fathers.
5 And he lay down and slept under a
certain broom tree; and behold, a
Messenger from YAHWEH touched
him and said to him, Get up, eat!
6 And he looked, and behold, at his
head was a cake on burning stones,
and a jar of water; and he ate and
drank, and turned and lay down.
7 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
returned a second time, and touched
him, and said, Get up, eat, for the way
is too great for you.
8 And he rose up and ate and drank,
and went in the power of that food
forty days and forty nights to the
mount of The Elohim, Horeb.[3]
9 And he came there to the cave[4],
and lodged there; and behold, the
Word of YAHWEH came to him, and
said to him, What are you doing here,
Elijah?[5]
10 And he said, zealously, I have
been zealous for YAHWEH Elohim of
Hosts, for the sons of Israel have
forsaken Your covenant; they have
thrown down Your altars, and they
have killed Your prophets with the
sword, and I am left, I alone, and they
seek to take my life.
11 And he said, Go out and stand on
the mountain before YAHWEH. And,
behold, YAHWEH passed by, and a
great and strong wind tearing the
mountains and breaking the rocks in
bits before YAHWEH! YAHWEH was
not in the wind. And after the wind
was an earthquake, but YAHWEH
was not in the earthquake.
12 And after the earthquake was a
fire, but YAHWEH was not in the fire;
and after the fire came a voice which
was a small whisper.[6]
13 And it happened when Elijah
heard, he wrapped his face in his robe
and went out and stood at the cave
opening; and, behold, a voice came to
him, and it said, What are you doing
here, Elijah?[7] *(Ex 34:30-33)*
14 And he said, zealously, I have
been zealous for YAHWEH, Elohim of
Hosts for the sons of Israel have
forsaken Your covenant; they have
thrown down Your altars, and they
have slain Your prophets by the sword;
and I, I alone, am left; and they seek to
take my life.
15 And YAHWEH said to him, Go,

1 It is quite striking that after just having such great courage to fight and defeat 450 priests of Baal that Elijah would be so afraid of the woman Jezebel.

2 This was a desert shrub that could grow up to 10 feet tall.

3 Mount Horeb was an alternate name for Mount Sinai, Ex 3:1.

4 Apparently, this was the same cave that Moses was in when YHWH showed him His backside, Ex 33:12-23.

5 It is evident by this question that YHWH did not call for Elijah but that he came on his own misguided instructions.

6 It is hard to hear the voice of YHWH when there is clutter in one's life, as one must listen very intently to hear a small still voice.

7 A second time the word of YHWH asked what Elijah was doing there as he just defeated the priests of Baal and the people were on his side chanting "*Yahweh is Elohim*", (1 Kgs 19:39). At this most pivotal moment when the people now needed Elijah's guidance in how to properly worship YHWH, he had ran away from his responsibility and was sulking in a sympathy party.

return on your way to the wilderness
of Damascus, and you shall go in and
anoint Hazael as king over Syria;
16 and you shall anoint Jehu the son
of Nimshi as king over Israel; and you
shall anoint Elisha the son of Shaphat,
of Abel-Meholah, as prophet in your
place.[1]
17 And it shall be, he who escapes
from the sword of Hazael, Jehu shall
kill; and he who escapes from the
sword of Jehu, Elisha shall kill.
18 And I have left in Israel seven
thousand, all the knees that have not
bowed to Baal, and every mouth that
has not kissed him.[2]
19 And he left there and found Elisha
the son of Shaphat; and he was
plowing; twelve pairs were before him,
and he was with the twelfth. And
Elijah passed over to him, and threw
his robe upon him.
20 And he left the oxen and ran after
Elijah, and said, Please let me kiss my
father and my mother, and then I will
follow you. And he said to him, Go
back; for what have I done to you?
21 And he returned from following
him, and took the pair of oxen, and
sacrificed them, and boiled their flesh
with the yoke of the oxen, and gave to
the people, and they ate. Then he
arose and went after Elijah and
ministered to him.

Chapter 20

1 And Ben-Hadad the king of Syria
gathered all his army together; and
there were thirty-two kings with him,
and horses and chariots; and he went
up and besieged Samaria, and fought
against it.
2 And he sent messengers to Ahab
the king of Israel, to the city, and said
to him, So says Ben-Hadad,
3 Your silver and your gold are mine,
and your wives and your sons, the
best, are mine.
4 And the king of Israel answered
and said, According to your word, my
master, O king, I am yours, and all
that I have.
5 And the messengers came again
and said, So says Ben-Hadad, saying,
Surely I sent to you, saying, Your silver
and your gold and your wives and your
sons you shall give to me;
6 I will send my servants to you
tomorrow about this time, and they
shall search your house, and your
servants' houses; and it shall be that
whatever is pleasing in your eyes, they
will put it in their hand and take it
away.
7 And the king of Israel called all the
elders of the land, and said, Please
note, and see the evil this one is
seeking, for he sent to me for my
wives, and for my sons, and for my
silver, and for my gold, and I did not
withhold from him.
8 And all the elders and all the
people said to him, Do not listen nor
consent.
9 And he said to the messengers of
Ben-Hadad, Say to my master the
king, All that you sent for to your
servant at the first, I will do; but this
thing I am not able to do; and the
messengers went and took word back
to him.
10 And Ben-Hadad sent to him, and

[1] Verses 14-16- Due to Elijah shirking his responsibility he lost his position as prophet to Elisha. A stark warning that when Yahweh gives someone a job they should be thankful and grateful and work as hard as possible to accomplish what Yahweh wants them to do.

[2] Many times a prideful person will think that they are the only one serving YHWH, when in reality YHWH always has others to replace someone who is not fit for their position. This should be quite humbling.

said, So shall the Elohim do to me and more also if the dust of Samaria shall be enough for handfuls for all the people that follow me.

11 And the king of Israel answered and said, Tell him, Do not let him that girds on his armor boast himself,, like one who loosens his armor.

12 And it happened when this word was heard, and he was drinking, he and the kings, in the booths, that he said to his servants, Set in order; and they set in order against the city.

13 And behold, a certain prophet came near to Ahab the king of Israel, and said, So says YAHWEH, Have you seen all this great multitude? Behold I am going to give it into your hand today, and you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

14 And Ahab said, By whom? And he said, So says YAHWEH, by the young men of the rulers of the provinces. Then he said, Who shall begin the battle? And he answered, You.

15 Then he called up the young men of the rulers of the provinces, and they were two hundred and thirty two; and after them he called up all the people, even all the sons of Israel, being seven thousand.

16 And they went out at noon, and Ben-Hadad was drinking himself drunk in the booths, he and the kings, the thirty two kings helping him.

17 And the young men of the rulers of the provinces went out at first; and Ben-Hadad sent, and they told him, saying, Men have come out of Samaria.

18 And he said, If they have come out for peace, seize them alive; and if they have come to battle, seize them alive.

19 And these went out of the city, the young men of the rulers of the provinces, and the army which followed them.

20 And each struck his man, and Syria fled, and Israel pursued them; and Ben-Hadad the king of Syria escaped on a horse, also the horsemen.

21 And the king of Israel went out and struck the horses, and the chariots, and struck the Syrians with a great blow.

22 And the prophet came to the king of Israel and said to him, Go, make yourself strong, and look and see what you do; for at the return of the year the king of Syria will come up against you.

23 And the king of Syria's servants said to him, Their Elohim is a Elohim of the hills; on account of this they were stronger than us; but let us fight against them in the plain, and surely, we shall be stronger than them,

24 And do this thing: Take away the kings, each out of his place, and set commanders in their place.

25 And number to yourself an army like the army that was lost from you, even, horse for horse and chariot for chariot; and we shall fight with them in the plain. Are we not stronger than them? And he listened to their voice and did so.

26 And it happened at the turn of the year, Ben-Hadad called up the Syrians, and went up to Aphek to fight against Israel.

27 And the sons of Israel were called up, and were supplied. And they went to meet them. And the sons of Israel camped before them, like two flocks of goats. And the Syrians filled the land.

28 And a man of Elohim came near to the king of Israel and said, So says YAHWEH, Because the Syrians have said, YAHWEH is Elohim of the hills and not Elohim of the valleys, therefore I will deliver all this great multitude into your hand, and you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

29 And they pitched, these against those, seven days. And it happened in

the seventh day, the battle came up.
And the sons of Israel struck Syria, a
hundred thousand footmen in one day.
30 And those remaining fled to
Aphek, to the city. And the wall fell on
twenty seven thousand of those left.
And Ben-Hadad fled, and came into
the city, into an inner room.
31 And his servants said to him,
Behold now, we have heard that the
kings of the house of Israel are
merciful kings. Please let us put
sackcloth on our loins, and ropes on
our heads, and we shall go to the king
of Israel. It may be he will keep alive
your life.
32 And they girded sackcloth on
their loins, and ropes on their heads.
And they came in to the king of Israel
and said, Your servant Ben-Hadad has
said, Please let me live. And he said, Is
he yet alive? He is my brother.
33 And the men keenly observed,
and quickly caught it from him, and
said, Your brother, Ben-Hadad. And
he said, Go, bring him. And Ben-
Hadad came out to him. And he took
him up on the chariot.
34 And he said to him, The cities
that my father took from your father, I
give back. And you shall make streets
for yourself in Damascus, as my father
did in Samaria. Then, I will let you go
with a covenant. And he cut a
covenant with him and sent him away.
35 And a certain man of the sons of
the prophets said to his neighbor, By
the Word of YAHWEH, please strike
me. And the man refused to strike
him.
36 And he said to him, Because you
have not listened to the voice of
YAHWEH, behold, you shall go from
me, and a lion shall kill you. And he
left him, and a lion found him and
killed him.
37 And he found another man and
said, Please strike me. And the man
struck him, striking and wounding.
38 And the prophet went and stood
for the king on the highway, and
disguised himself with ashes on his
eyes.
39 And as the king passed by, it
happened that he cried to the king,
and said, Your servant went out into
the middle of the battle, and behold, a
man turned aside and brought a man
to me, and said, Keep this man. If he is
at all missing, then your life shall be
for his life; or you shall weigh out a
talent of silver.
40 And it happened, your servant
was working here and there, and he
was not there. And the king of Israel
said to him, Your judgment is right.
You have decided it.
41 And he hurried and took the
ashes from his eyes. And the king of
Israel saw him, that he was of the
prophets.
42 And he said to him, So says
YAHWEH, Because you have sent
away the man I had devoted from your
hand, therefore your life shall go for
his life, and your people for his people.
43 And the king of Israel went to his
house sullen and angry, and came to
Samaria.

Chapter 21

1 And it happened after these things,
Naboth the Jezreelite had a vineyard
in Jezreel, close by the palace of Ahab
the king of Samaria.
2 And Ahab spoke to Naboth, saying,
Give me your vineyard, and it shall be
a garden of green herbs for me, for it is
near my house. And I will give to you
in its place a better vineyard than it. If
it is good in your eyes, I will give silver
to you, the price of this one.
3 And Naboth said to Ahab, Far be it
from me, by YAHWEH, that I should

give the inheritance of my fathers to
you.
4 And Ahab came into his house
sullen and angry over the word which
Naboth the Jezreelite had spoken. For
he had said, I will not give the
inheritance of my fathers to you. And
he lay on his bed and turned away his
face, and would not eat food.
5 And his wife Jezebel came in to
him, and said to him, Why is your
spirit sullen that you are not eating
food?
6 And he said to her, Because I spoke
to Naboth the Jezreelite and said to
him, Give me your vineyard for silver,
or if you desire, I will give you a
vineyard in its place. And he said, I
will not give you my vineyard.
7 And his wife Jezebel said to him,
Do you now rule over Israel? Rise up,
eat food and let your heart be good. I
will give you the vineyard of Naboth
the Jezreelite.
8 And she wrote letters in the name
of Ahab, and sealed them with his seal,
and sent the letters to the elders and to
the nobles of his city, dwelling with
Naboth.
9 And she wrote in the letters,
saying, Proclaim a fast, and set Naboth
at the head of the people.
10 And set two men, sons of
worthlessness, across from him; and
they shall testify of him, saying, You
have cursed Elohim and the king. And
they shall bring him out and stone
him; and he shall die.
11 And the men of his city, the elders
and the nobles who lived in his city,
did as Jezebel had sent to them, as was
written in the letters that she sent to
them.
12 They proclaimed a fast, and made
Naboth to sit at the head of the people.
13 And two men, sons of
worthlessness, came in and sat across
from him. And the men of
worthlessness testified of Naboth
before the people, even saying, Naboth
has cursed Elohim and the king. And
they took him out to the outside of the
city, and stoned him with stones. And
he died.
14 And they sent to Jezebel, saying,
Naboth has been stoned and is dead.
15 And it happened when Jezebel
heard that Naboth had been stoned,
and was dead, Jezebel said to Ahab,
Rise up, take possession of the
vineyard of Naboth the Jezreelite, that
he refused to give to you for silver. For
Naboth is not alive, but dead.
16 And it happened, when Ahab
heard that Naboth was dead, Ahab
rose to go down to the vineyard of
Naboth the Jezreelite, to take
possession of it.
17 And the Word of YAHWEH came
to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,
18 Rise up, Go down to meet Ahab
the king of Israel, who is in Samaria.
Behold, he is in the vineyard of
Naboth, where he has gone down to
possess it.
19 And you shall speak to him,
saying, So says YAHWEH, Have you
murdered, and also taken possession?
And you shall speak to him, saying, So
says YAHWEH, In the place where
the dogs lick the blood of Naboth, so
the dogs shall lick your blood, even
yours.
20 And Ahab said to Elijah, Have
you found me, O my enemy? And he
said, I have found you, because you
have sold yourself to do that which is
evil in the eyes of YAHWEH.
21 Behold, I shall bring evil on you,
and shall consume those after you, and
cut off to Ahab him who urinates
against a wall, both bond and free in
Israel.
22 And I shall give up your house
like the house of Jeroboam the son of
Nebat, and like the house of Baasha

the son of Ahijah, because of the provocation with which you have provoked to anger, and have caused Israel to sin.

23 And also YAHWEH has spoken of Jezebel, saying, The dogs shall eat Jezebel by the wall of Jezreel.

24 He who dies of Ahab in the city, the dogs shall eat. And the birds of the heaven shall eat him who dies in a field.

25 Surely, none has been like Ahab, who sold himself to do that which was evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, whom his wife Jezebel incited.

26 And he did abominably, to go after idols, according to all that the Amorites did, whom YAHWEH expelled from before the sons of Israel.

27 And it happened, when Ahab heard these words, he tore his garments, and put sackcloth on his flesh, and fasted, and lay in sackcloth, and went softly.

28 And the Word of YAHWEH came to Elijah the Tishbite, saying,

29 Have you seen that Ahab has been humbled before Me? Because he was humbled before Me, I will not bring the evil in his days. I will bring the evil on his house in the days of his son.

Chapter 22

1 And they continued three years; there was no war between Syria and Israel.

2 And it happened in the third year, Jehoshaphat the king of Judah came down to the king of Israel.

3 And the king of Israel said to his servants, Have you known that Ramoth-Gilead is ours? And we remain still from taking it from the king of Syria's hand.

4 And he said to Jehoshaphat, Will you go to battle with me, to Ramoth-Gilead? And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, I am as you, my people as your people; my horses as your horses.

5 And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, Please inquire at the Word of YAHWEH today.

6 And the king of Israel gathered the prophets, about four hundred men, and said to them, Shall I go to battle against Ramoth-Gilead, or shall I forbear? And they said, Go up, that YAHWEH may give it into the hand of the king.

7 And Jehoshaphat said, Is there not here a prophet of YAHWEH besides, that we might inquire of him?

8 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, Yet one man, to seek YAHWEH by him. But I hate him, for he does not prophesy good concerning me, but evil, Micaiah the son of Imlah. And Jehoshaphat said, let not the king say so.

9 And the king of Israel called to a certain eunuch and said, Cause Micaiah the son of Imlah to hurry here.

10 And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah each was sitting on his throne having put on their robes, in a threshing-floor in the entrance of the gate of Samaria. And all the prophets prophesied before them.

11 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah made horns of iron for himself. And he said, So says YAHWEH, With these you shall push the Syrians until you have consumed them.

12 And all the prophets were prophesying so, saying, Go up to Ramoth-Gilead, and prosper. For YAHWEH shall give it into the king's hand.

13 And the messenger that had gone to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying,

Behold now, the words of the prophets with one mouth are good to the king. Please let your word be as the word of one of them, and speak good. *(Is 30:10)*

14 And Micaiah said, As YAHWEH lives, Surely that which YAHWEH says to me, that I will speak.

15 And he came in to the king. And the king said to him, Micaiah, shall we go to battle to Ramoth-Gilead, or shall we forbear? And he said to him, Go up, and prosper, and YAHWEH shall give it into the king's hand.

16 And the king said to him, How many times have I adjured you that you shall speak nothing to me but truth in the name of YAHWEH?

17 And he said, I have seen all Israel scattered on the hills like sheep that have no shepherd. And YAHWEH said, These have no masters; they shall each return to his house in peace.

18 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, Did I not say to you, He will not prophesy good of me, but evil?

19 And he said, Therefore, hear the Word of YAHWEH: I saw YAHWEH sitting on His throne, and all the host of Heaven were standing by Him, on His right and on His left.

20 And YAHWEH said, Who shall entice Ahab, and he shall go up and fall in Ramoth-Gilead? And this one said this, and this one said that.

21 And a spirit came forth and stood before YAHWEH, and said, I surely will entice him.

22 And YAHWEH said to him, By what means? And he said, I will go out and shall be a spirit of falsehood in the mouth of all his prophets. And He said, You shall entice him, and also you are able. Go out and do so.

23 And now, behold, YAHWEH has put a spirit of falsehood in the mouth of all these prophets of yours; and YAHWEH has spoken evil as to you!

24 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah came near and struck Micaiah on the cheek, and said, Where did the Spirit of YAHWEH pass over from me to speak with you?

25 And Micaiah said, Behold, You shall see on that day when you go into the innermost room to be hidden.

26 And the king of Israel said, Take Micaiah and return him to Amon the ruler of the city, and to Joash the king's son,

27 and say, So says the king, Put this one in the prison house, and cause him to eat the bread of oppression, and the water of oppression, until I come in peace.

28 And Micaiah said, If you at all return in peace, YAHWEH has not spoken by me. And he said, Hear, O people, all of them.

29 And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah went up to Ramoth-Gilead.

30 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, I will disguise myself and enter into the battle. But you put on your robes. And the king of Israel disguised himself and went into the battle.

31 And the king of Syria commanded the thirty two captains of the chariots, saying, You shall not fight with small or great, but with the king of Israel.

32 And it happened when the captains of the chariots saw Jehoshaphat, they said, Surely he is the king of Israel. And they turned aside to fight with him. And Jehoshaphat cried out.

33 And it happened when the captains of the chariots saw that he was not the king of Israel, they turned back from following him.

34 And a man drew a bow in his simplicity, and he struck the king of Israel between the joints and the breastplate. And he said to his

charioteer, Turn your hand and take
me out from the host, for I have been
wounded.
35 And on that day the battle went
on, and the king was caused to stand
up in the chariot against Syria. And he
died in the evening, and the blood of
the wound poured out into the middle
of the chariot.
36 And the cry passed through the
camp when the sun went, saying, Each
to his city, and each to his land.
37 And the king died, and came to
Samaria. And they buried the king in
Samaria.
38 And they rinsed the chariot by
the pool of Samaria; and the dogs
licked up his blood when they had
washed the armor, according to the
Word of YAHWEH that He spoke.
39 And the rest of the acts of Ahab,
and all that he did, and the house of
ivory that he built, and all the cities
that he built, are they not written in
the Book of the Matters of the Days of
the Kings of Israel?
40 And Ahab lay with his fathers.
And his son Ahaziah reigned in his
place.
41 And Jehoshaphat the son of Asa
reigned over Judah in the fourth year
of Ahab the king of Israel.
42 He was a son of thirty five years
when he began to reign. And he
reigned twenty five years in
Jerusalem. And his mother's name
was Azubah the daughter of Shilhi.
43 And he walked in all the ways of
his father Asa. He did not turn aside
from it, doing right in the eyes of
YAHWEH. But the high places were
not taken away; the people offered and
burned incense yet in the high places.
44 And Jehoshaphat made peace
with the king of Israel.
45 And the rest of the acts of
Jehoshaphat, and his might that he
showed, and how he warred, are they
not written in the Book of the Matters
of the Days of the Kings of Judah?
46 And the rest of the sodomites
which remained in the days of his
father Asa he consumed out of the
land.
47 No king was in Edom; a deputy
was king.
48 Jehoshaphat had ten ships of
Tarshish to go to Ophir for gold. But
they did not go, for the ships were
broken at Ezion -Geber.
49 Then Ahaziah the son of Ahab
said to Jehoshaphat, Let my servants
go with your servants in the ships. But
Jehoshaphat was not willing.
50 And Jehoshaphat lay with his
fathers, and was buried with his
fathers in the city of his father David.
And his son Jehoram reigned in his
place.
51 Ahaziah the son of Ahab began to
reign over Israel in Samaria the
seventeenth year of Jehoshaphat the
king of Judah, and reigned two years
over Israel.
52 And he did evil in the eyes of
YAHWEH, and walked in the way of
his father, and in the way of his
mother, and in the way of Jeroboam
the son of Nebat, who made Israel to
sin.
53 For he served Baal, and bowed to
it, and provoked to anger YAHWEH
the Elohim of Israel, according to all
his father had done.

Book of 2 Kings

Chapter 1

1 And Moab rebelled against Israel
after the death of Ahab.
2 And Ahaziah fell through the
lattice-work in his upper room in
Samaria, and was sick. And he sent
messengers and said to them, Go, ask
of Baal-Zebub the god of Ekron if I will
recover from this sickness.
3 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
spoke to Elijah the Tishbite, Rise, go
up to meet the messengers of the king
of Samaria, and say to them, Is it
because there is not an Elohim in
Israel that you are going to ask of
Baal-Zebub the god of Ekron?
4 And so YAHWEH says this, You
shall not come down from that bed on
which you have gone up, but dying you
shall die. And Elijah departed.
5 And the messengers returned to
him. And he said to them, What is this,
that you have turned back?
6 And they said to him, A man came
up to meet us, and said to us, Go,
return to the king who sent you. And
you shall say to him, So says
YAHWEH, Is it because there is not
an Elohim in Israel that you are
sending to ask of Baal-Zebub the god
of Ekron? Therefore, you shall not
come down from the bed on which you
have gone up, for surely, you shall die.
7 And he said to them, What was the
fashion of the man who came up to
meet you and spoke these words to
you?
8 And they said to him, A hairy man,
and a girdle of leather was girded
about his loins. And he said, He is
Elijah the Tishbite.
9 And the king sent to him the
commander of fifty with his fifty. And
he went up to him. And behold, he was
sitting on the top of the hill. And he
spoke to him, O man of Elohim, the
king has said, Come down.
10 And Elijah answered and said to
the commander of fifty, And if I am a
man of Elohim, fire will come down
from the heavens and consume you
and your fifty. And fire came down
from the heavens and consumed him
and his fifty.
11 And he turned and sent another
commander of fifty and his fifty to
him. And he answered and said to
him, O man of Elohim, so says the
king, Hurry, come down.
12 And Elijah answered and said to
them, If I am a man of Elohim, fire
will come down from the heavens and
will consume you and your fifty. And
fire from Elohim came down from the
heavens and consumed him and his
fifty.
13 And he turned and sent a third
commander of fifty and his fifty. And
the third commander of fifty went up,
and came and fell on his knees before
Elijah, and begged him, and said to
him, O man of Elohim, please let my
life and the life of your servants, these
fifty, be precious in your eyes.
14 Behold, fire has come down from
the heavens and has consumed the two
commanders of the former fifties and
their fifties. And now let my life be
precious in your eyes.
15 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
spoke to Elijah, Go down with him. Do
not be afraid of him. And he rose up
and went down with him to the king.
16 And he said to the king, So says
YAHWEH, Because you have sent
messengers to ask of Baal-Zebub the
god of Ekron, is it because there is not
an Elohim in Israel to inquire of His
Word? Therefore, you shall not come
down from the bed on which you have
gone up, for surely, you shall die.
17 And he died, according to the
Word of YAHWEH that Elijah spoke.
And Jehoram reigned in his place, in
the second year of Jehoram the son of

Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, for he had no son.

18 And the rest of the acts of Ahaziah that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?

Chapter 2

1 And it happened, when YAHWEH was to cause Elijah to go up to the skies in a whirlwind, Elijah and Elisha went from Gilgal.

2 And Elijah said to Elisha, Please stay here, for YAHWEH has sent me to Bethel. And Elisha said, As YAHWEH lives, and your soul lives, I will not leave you. And they went down to Bethel.

3 And the sons of the prophets in Bethel came out to Elisha, and said to him, Do you know that today YAHWEH will take your master from over your head? And he said, Yes, I know. Keep silent.

4 And Elijah said to him, Elisha, please stay here, for YAHWEH has sent me to Jericho. And he said, As YAHWEH lives, and your soul lives, I will not leave you. And they came into Jericho.

5 And the sons of the prophets in Jericho came near to Elisha, and said to him, Do you know that today YAHWEH will take away your master from over your head? And he said, Yes, I know. Keep silent.

6 And Elijah said to him, Please stay here, for YAHWEH has sent me to the Jordan. And he said, As YAHWEH lives, and your soul lives, I will not leave you. And they went on, both of them.

7 And fifty men of the sons of the prophets went on and stood afar off, across from them. And they both stood by the Jordan.

8 And Elijah took his mantle, and rolled it up, and struck the waters. And they were divided here and there, so that they both went over on dry ground.

9 And it happened, when they were crossing, Elijah said to Elisha, Ask what I shall do for you before I am taken from you. And Elisha said, Then let there now be a double mouth of your spirit on me.

10 And he said, You have asked a hard thing. If you shall see me taken from you, it shall be so to you. And if not, it shall not be.

11 And it happened, as they were going on and speaking, behold, a chariot of fire and horses of fire came. And they separated between them both, and Elijah went up in a whirlwind to the skies.[1] *(2Chron 21:12)*

12 And Elisha was watching, and he was crying, My father, my father, the chariot of Israel and its horsemen! And he did not see him again. And he took hold on his garments and tore them into two pieces.

13 And he lifted up the mantle of Elijah that had fallen from him, and turned back and stood on the lip of the Jordan.

14 And he took Elijah's mantle that had fallen from him, and struck the waters, and said, Where is YAHWEH the Elohim of Elijah, even He? And he struck the waters; and they were split in two here and there, and Elisha crossed over.

---

1 The word for "*translated*" in most bibles means to "*take from one place to another*". Elijah did not go to the third heaven, which is the throne of YAHWEH, which no man has ever gone (Joh 3:13), but he was taken across the sky to another mountain somewhere as he had on other occasions (1 Kgs 18:11-12, 2 Kgs 2:16). He later wrote to King Jerhoram (2 Chron 21:12), which proved he was still on the earth and not in heaven.

15 And when they saw him, the sons
of the prophets across in Jericho, then
they said, The spirit of Elijah has
rested on Elisha. And they came to
meet him, and bowed to the earth to
him.
16 And they said to him, Behold,
now, there are with your servants fifty
men, mighty sons. Please let them go,
and they shall seek your master, lest
the Spirit of YAHWEH has taken him
up and has cast him on one of the
mountains, or into one of the valleys.
And he said, You shall not send. *(1 Kg
18:12)*
17 And they urged him until he was
ashamed. And he said, Send. And they
sent fifty men, and they sought three
days and did not find him.
18 And they returned to him, and he
was staying in Jericho. And he said to
them, Did I not say to you, Do not go?
19 And the men of the city said to
Elisha, Behold, now, the site of the city
is good, as my master sees, but the
waters are bad; and the ground causes
barrenness.
20 And he said, Bring a new dish to
me, and put salt there. And they took
it to him.
21 And he went out to the source of
the waters and threw salt there, and
said, So says YAHWEH, I have given
healing to these waters; there shall not
be death and barrenness there any
more.
22 And the waters were healed to
this day, according to the word of
Elisha that he spoke.
23 And he went up from there to
Bethel. And he was going up in the
highway. And little boys came out
from the city and mocked him, and
said to him, Go up, bald head! Go up,
bald head!
24 And he turned behind him and
saw them, and cursed them in the
name of YAHWEH. And two bears
came out of the forest and tore forty
two boys of them.
25 And he went from there to Mount
Carmel, and from there he returned to
Samaria.

Chapter 3

1 And Jehoram the son of Ahab
reigned over Israel in Samaria, in the
eighteenth year of Jehoshaphat the
king of Judah; and he reigned twelve
years.
2 And he did that which was evil in
the eyes of YAHWEH; only not like
his father and his mother. For he put
away the pillar of Baal that his father
had made.
3 But he clung to the sins of
Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who made
Israel to sin. He did not turn aside
from it.
4 And Mesha the king of Moab was a
sheep-breeder. And he paid a hundred
thousand lambs to the king of Israel
and a hundred thousand rams with
wool.
5 And it happened when Ahab died,
the king of Moab rebelled against the
king of Israel.
6 And King Jehoram went out in that
day from Samaria, and called up all
Israel.
7 And he went and sent to
Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, saying,
The king of Moab has rebelled against
me. Will you go with me to Moab to
battle? And he said, I will go up. I am
as you; my people as your people; my
horses as your horses.
8 And he said, Which way shall we
go up? And he answered, The way
through the wilderness of Edom.
9 And the king of Israel went, and
the king of Judah, and the king of
Edom. And they made a circuit of
seven days' journey. And there was no

water for the army, and for the
livestock that were at their feet.
10 And the king of Israel said, Alas,
that YAHWEH has called these three
kings to deliver them into the hand of
Moab!
11 And Jehoshaphat said, Is there
not here a prophet of YAHWEH, that
we may inquire of YAHWEH by him?
And one of the servants of the king of
Israel answered and said, Here is
Elisha the son of Shaphat, who poured
water on the hands of Elijah.
12 And Jehoshaphat said, The Word
of YAHWEH is with him. And the
king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat, and
the king of Edom went down to him.
13 And Elisha said to the king of
Israel, What have I to do with you? Go
to the prophets of your father, and to
the prophets of your mother. And the
king of Israel said to him, No, for
YAHWEH has called these three kings
in order to give them into the hand of
Moab.
14 And Elisha said, As YAHWEH of
Hosts lives, before whom I stand,
surely, if I did not regard the face of
Jehoshaphat the king of Judah I would
not look toward you, nor see you.
15 And now, bring a minstrel to me.
And it happened when the minstrel
played, the hand of YAHWEH was on
him.
16 And he said, So says YAHWEH,
Make this valley full of ditches.
17 For so says YAHWEH, You shall
not see wind nor shall you see rain. Yet
that stream bed shall be filled with
water, so that you may drink, both you
and your livestock, and your animals.
18 But this is a light thing in the eyes
of YAHWEH; He also has given Moab
into your hand.
19 And you shall strike every
fortified city, and every choice city.
And you shall fell every good tree, and
you shall stop all the fountains of
water. And every good piece you shall
ruin with stones.
20 And it happened in the morning,
when the food offering was caused to
go up, behold, water came by the way
of Edom; and the country was filled
with water.
21 And all Moab had heard that the
kings had come up to fight against
them. And they were called together,
everyone able to gird on a girdle, and
upward. And they stood by the border.
22 And they rose up early in the
morning. And the sun was shining on
the water, and the Moabites saw the
water on the opposite side as red as
blood.
23 And they said, This is blood. The
kings fighting have fought one
another, and they each man struck his
neighbor. And now to the spoil, Moab!
24 And they came to the camp of
Israel. And the Israelites rose up and
struck the Moabites. And they fled
from before them. And striking they
struck Moab.
25 And they broke down the cities;
and they each man cast his stone on
every good piece of land, and filled it.
And they stopped every fountain of
water. And they felled every good tree,
until there was left only Kir-Haraseth
with its stones. But the slingers
surrounded it and struck it.
26 And when the king of Moab saw
that the battle was too strong for him,
then he took with him seven hundred
men who drew swords to break
through to the king of Edom. And they
were not able.
27 And he took his son, the firstborn
who would reign in his place and
caused him to go up for a burnt
offering on the wall. And there was
great wrath against Israel. And they
left him and returned to the land.

Chapter 4

1 And a certain woman of the wives of the sons of the prophets had cried to Elisha, saying, My husband, your servant, is dead. And you know that your servant has seen YAHWEH. And the lender has come to take my two children to himself for slaves.

2 And Elisha said to her, What shall I do for you? Tell me. What do you have in the house? And she said, Your handmaid has nothing in the house except a pot of oil.

3 And he said, Go, beg vessels for yourself from outside, from your neighbors, empty vessels. Do not let them be few.

4 And you shall go in and shut the door on you, and on your sons, and shall pour out into all these vessels. And you shall set aside the full ones.

5 And she left him, and shut the door on her and on her sons. They carried to her, and she poured out.

6 And it happened when the vessels were full, she said to her son, Bring another vessel to me. And he said to her, There is no other vessel; and the oil stopped.

7 And she came and told the man of Elohim. And he said, Go, sell the oil, and repay your loan. And you and your sons shall live from the rest.

8 And the day came that Elisha crossed over to Shunem. And a great woman was there. And she lay hold on him to eat bread. And it happened, as often as he passed by, he turned aside there to eat bread.

9 And she said to her husband, Behold now, I know that he is a holy man of Elohim who passes by us continually.

10 Now let us make a little walled roof room, and let us set a bed for him there, and a table, and a chair, and a lampstand. And it shall be, when he comes to us, he shall turn in there.

11 And the day came when he came in there and turned into the roof room, and lay there.

12 And he said to his young man Gehazi, Call this Shunammite. And he called her, and she stood before him.

13 And he said to him, Now say to her, Behold, you have trembled with all this care for us. What shall I do for you? Shall I speak to the king for you, or to the army commander? And she said, I live among my people.

14 And he said, What then shall I do for her? And Gehazi said, Truly there is no son to her. And her husband is old.

15 And he said, Call for her. And he called for her. And she stood at the door.

16 And he said, At this season, according to the time of life you shall embrace a son. And she said, No, my master, O man of Elohim, do not lie to your handmaid.

17 And the woman conceived and bore a son, at this season, according to the time of life that Elisha spoke of to her.[1]

18 And the boy grew, and the day came that he went out to his father, to the reapers.

19 And he said to his father, My head! My head! And he said to the young man, Carry him to his mother.

20 And he carried him, and brought him to his mother. And he sat on her knees until noon, and died.

21 And she went up and laid him on the bed of the man of Elohim, and shut the door on him, and went out.

22 And she called to her husband, and said, Please send to me one of the young men, and one of the donkeys, and I shall run to the man of Elohim, and return.

[1] Verses 16-17- This is Aviv-Spring

23 And he said, Why are you going to him today; it is neither new moon nor Sabbath? And she said, Peace.

24 And she saddled the donkey and said to her young man, Lead on, and go. Do not hold back riding for me except I speak to you.

25 And she went, and came to the man of Elohim, to Mount Carmel. And it happened, when the man of Elohim saw her from afar, he said to his young man Gehazi, Behold, The Shunammite!

26 Now please run to meet her, and say to her, Is it well with you? Is it well with your husband? Is it well with the boy? And she said, Well.

27 And she came to the mountain to the man of Elohim, and lay hold on his feet. And Gehazi came near to thrust her away. But the man of Elohim said, Let her alone, for her soul is bitter in her, and YAHWEH has hidden it from me, and has not told me.[1]

28 And she said, Did I ask a son from my master? Did I not say, Do not deceive me?

29 And he said to Gehazi, Gird up your loins and take my staff in your hand, and go. When you meet a man, you shall not greet him. And when a man shall greet you, you shall not answer him. And you shall lay my staff on the face of the boy.

30 And the mother of the boy said, As YAHWEH lives, and your soul lives, I will not leave you. And he rose up and went after her.

31 And Gehazi passed on before them, and laid the staff on the face of the boy. But there was no voice, and there was no hearing. And he turned back to meet him, and told him, saying, The boy has not awakened.

32 And Elisha came into the house. And, behold, the boy was dead, laid out on his bed.

33 And he went in and shut the door on both of them, and prayed to YAHWEH.

34 And he went up and lay down on the boy, and put his mouth on his mouth, and his eyes on his eyes, and his hands on his hands, and stretched himself on him. And the flesh of the boy became warm.

35 And he returned, and walked in the house, once here and once there. And he went up and stretched himself on him. And the boy sneezed seven times, and the boy opened his eyes.

36 And he called Gehazi and said, Call this Shunammite. And he called her, and she came in to him. And he said, Take up your son.

37 And she went in and fell at his feet, and bowed to the earth, and took up her son, and went out.

38 And Elisha returned to Gilgal. And the famine was in the land. And the sons of the prophets were sitting before him. And he said to his young man, Set on the big pot and boil soup for the sons of the prophets.

39 And one went out to the field to gather herbs, and found a vine of the field, and gathered gourds from it in the field. And with the lap of his garment full, he came in and shredded them into the pot of soup; for they did not know.

40 And they poured out for the men to eat. And it happened, when they were eating the soup, they cried out and said, Death is in the pot O man of Elohim! And they were not able to eat.

41 And he said, Then bring meal. And he threw into the pot, and said, Pour out for the people and they shall eat. And there was no evil thing in the pot.

42 And a man came from Baal-Shalisha and brought the man of Elohim bread of the first-fruits, twenty loaves of barley, and ripe ears of grain

1 Joh 12:3, Luk 7:38, 44

in his sack. And he said, Give to the people, and they may eat.
43 And his servant said, What? Should I set this before a hundred men? And he said, Give to the people, and they shall eat. For so says YAHWEH, Eat and have some left.
44 And he set before them, and they ate, and left some of it, according to the Word of YAHWEH. *(Joh 6:5-14)*

Chapter 5

1 And Naaman the commander of the army of the king of Syria was a great and exalted man before his master, for YAHWEH had given deliverance to Syria by him. And he was a brave warrior, but leprous.
2 And the Syrians had gone out in bands, and they seized from the land of Israel a little girl. And she was before Naaman's wife.
3 And she said to her mistress, Oh that my master were before the prophet who is in Samaria! Then he would recover him from his leprosy.
4 And one went in and told his master, saying, This and this she said, the girl who is from the land of Israel.
5 And the king of Syria said, Go, go in, and I will send a letter to the king of Israel. And he went and took in his hand ten talents of silver, and six thousand of gold, and ten changes of garments.
6 And he came to the king of Israel with the letter, saying, And now when this letter comes to you, behold, I have sent to you my servant Naaman. And you shall remove from him his leprosy.
7 And it happened, when the king of Israel read the letter, he tore his garments and said, Am I the Elohim, to kill and to keep alive, that this one is sending to me to recover a man from his leprosy? For consider now, and see for he is seeking an occasion with me.
8 And it happened, when Elisha the man of The Elohim heard that the king of Israel had torn his garments, he sent to the king, saying, Why have you torn your garments? Let him come now to me, and he shall know that there is a prophet in Israel.
9 And Naaman came with his horses and with his chariot, and stood at the door of the house of Elisha.
10 And Elisha sent a messenger to him, saying, Go, and you shall wash seven times in the Jordan. And your flesh shall return to you, and you shall be clean.
11 And Naaman was angry, and went on, and said, Behold, I said, He will certainly come out to me and will stand and call on the name of YAHWEH his Elohim, and will wave his hand over the place, and remove the leprosy.
12 Are not Abanah and Pharpar, the rivers of Damascus, better than all the waters of Israel? Shall I not wash in them and be clean? And he turned and went on in fury.
13 And his servants came near and spoke to him, and said, My father, if the prophet had spoken a great thing to you would you not do it? How much rather then when he says to you, Wash, and be clean?
14 And he went down and dipped in the Jordan seven times, according to the word of the man of The Elohim. And his flesh returned like the flesh of a little boy, and he was clean.
15 And he went back to the man of The Elohim, he and all his company, and came in and stood before him, and said, Behold, now I know that there is not an Elohim in all the earth except in Israel. And now, please take a blessing from your servant.
16 And he said, As YAHWEH lives, before whom I stand, I shall not take.

And he pressed on him to take, but he refused.[1] *(Math 10:8, Pr 23:23)*

17 And Naaman said, If not, please let a couple of mules' burden of earth be given to your servant. For your servant shall not make any more burnt offering and sacrifice to other Elohim, only to YAHWEH.

18 May YAHWEH pardon your servant for this thing, when my master goes to the house of Rimmon to bow there, and he is supported by my hand, and I bow myself in the house of Rimmon; when I bow myself in the house of Rimmon, may YAHWEH pardon your servant in this thing.

19 And he said to him, Go in peace. And he went away a little way from him.

20 And Gehazi, the servant of Elisha the man of The Elohim, said, Behold, my master has spared this Syrian, Naaman, not to receive from his hand that which he has brought. As YAHWEH lives, surely I will run after him. Then I shall take something from him.

21 And Gehazi ran after Naaman. And Naaman saw one running after him, and got down from the chariot to meet him, and said, Is there Peace?

22 And he said, Peace. My master has sent me, saying, Behold this now, two young men from the hills of Ephraim have come to me, of the sons of the prophets. Please give to them a talent of silver, and two changes of garments.

23 And Naaman said, Be pleased, take two talents. And he forced these on him, and bound two talents of silver and two purses, and two changes of garments, and gave to two of his young men, and they carried before him.

24 And he came into the hill, and took them out of their hand, and put them away in the house, and sent away the men. And they went.

25 And he went in and stood by his master. And Elisha said to him, Where from Gehazi? And he said, Your servant did not go here or there.

26 And he said to him, Did not my heart go out when the man turned from his chariot to meet you? Is it a time to take silver, and to take garments and olives, and vineyards, and flock, and herd, and male slaves, and slave-girls?[2] *(Is 55:1-2, Math 10:8)*

27 Yea, the leprosy of Naaman shall cling to you, and to your seed forever. And he went out from him as leprous as snow.

Chapter 6

1 And the sons of the prophets said to Elisha, See, now, the place where we are living with you is too narrow for us.

2 Please let us go to the Jordan, and we each one shall take a beam from there. And we shall make for ourselves a place there, to live there. And he said, Go.

3 And the one said, Please be willing, and go with your servants. And he said, I will surely go.

4 And he went with them. And they came to the Jordan, and cut down trees.

5 And it happened that one was felling the log, and the iron fell into the water. And he cried out and said, Alas, my master! For it was borrowed.

6 And the man of The Elohim said, Where did it fall? And he made him

[1] Yahweh's truth has no price tag and is a free gift from Him. No true man of Elohim will market the word of YHWH.

[2] In these last days, it is not a time to be marketing the good news of Yahshua, but it is the time to be making the word of YHWH available to all those who want to receive it.

see the place. And he cut a stick and
threw it in there, and made the iron
float.
7 And he said, Take it up to you. And
he put out his hand and took it.
8 And the king of Syria was fighting
against Israel, and rose up with his
servants, saying, At such and such a
place shall be my camp.
9 And the man of The Elohim sent to
the king of Israel, saying, Be on guard
in passing by this place, for the Syrians
are coming down there.
10 And the king of Israel sent to the
place of which the man of The Elohim
spoke to him and warned him. And he
protected himself there not once nor
twice.
11 And the heart of the king of Syria
was enraged over this thing. And he
called his servants and said to them,
Will you not tell me who of us is for
the king of Israel?
12 And one of his servants said, No,
my master O king, For Elisha the
prophet who is in Israel tells the king
of Israel the words that you speak in
your sleeping room.
13 And he said, Go and see where he
is, and I will send and seize him. And
it was told him, Behold, he is in
Dothan.
14 And he sent horses and chariots
there, and a heavy army. And they
came in by night and surrounded the
city.
15 And the servant of the man of The
Elohim rose up early and went out.
And, behold, an army was surrounding
the city, and horses and chariots. And
his young man said to him, Alas, my
master! What shall we do?
16 And he said, Do not fear, for those
with us are more than those with
them.
17 And Elisha prayed and said, I beg
You, O YAHWEH, open his eyes so
that he may see. And YAHWEH
opened the eyes of the young man.
And he looked, and behold, the
mountain was full of horses and
chariots of fire all around Elisha.
18 And they came down to it, and
Elisha prayed to YAHWEH and said, I
beg You, strike this nation with
blindness. And He struck them with
blindness, according to the word of
Elisha.
19 And Elisha said to them, This is
not the way, nor is this the city. Follow
me, and I will lead you to the man you
seek. And he led them to Samaria.
20 And it happened, when they came
to Samaria, Elisha said, Open the eyes
of these, O YAHWEH, and they will
see. And YAHWEH opened their eyes,
and they looked; and, behold, they
were in the middle of Samaria!
21 And when he saw them, the king
of Israel said to Elisha, Shall I strike?
Shall I strike, my father?
22 And he said, You shall not strike.
Would you strike those whom you
have captured with your sword and
with your bow? Set bread and water
before them that they may eat and
drink and go to their master. *(Deut
20:11-16, Math 5:44-45, Ro 12:20)*
23 And he prepared a great banquet
for them, and they ate and drank. And
he sent them away, and they went to
their master. And the companies of
Syria did not come into the land of
Israel any more.
24 And afterwards it happened that
Ben-Hadad the king of Syria gathered
all his army and went up and laid siege
to Samaria.
25 And there was a great famine in
Samaria. And behold! They were
laying siege to it until the head of a
donkey was at eighty silver pieces, and
a fourth of a cab of dove's dung at five
silver pieces.
26 And it happened, the king of
Israel was passing by on the wall. And

a woman cried to him, saying, Save,
my master, O king.
27 And he said, If YAHWEH does
not save you, from where shall I save
you? Out of the threshing floor, or out
of the winevat?
28 And the king said to her, What
ails you? And she said, This woman
said to me, Give your son and we will
eat him today; and tomorrow we will
eat my son.
29 And we boiled my son and ate
him, and I said to her on the next day,
Give your son, that we may eat him.
But she hid her son.
30 And it happened when the king
heard the words of the woman, he tore
his garments. And he was passing by
on the wall, and the people looked.
And, behold, the sackcloth was inside
on his flesh.
31 And he said, So may Elohim do to
me, and more also, if the head of
Elisha the son of Shaphat shall remain
on him today.
32 And Elisha was sitting in his
house, and the elders were sitting with
him. And the king sent a man from
before him. Before the messenger
came to him, even he himself said to
the elders, Do you see that this son of
the murderer has sent to take away my
head? Behold, when the messenger
comes in, shut the door, and you shall
hold him fast at the door. Is not the
sound of the feet of his master behind
him?
33 While he was speaking with them,
then, behold, the messenger came
down to him. And he said, Behold, this
is the evil from YAHWEH. Why
should I wait for YAHWEH any
more?

Chapter 7

1 And Elisha said, Hear the Word of
YAHWEH: So says YAHWEH, About
this time tomorrow a measure of fine
flour will be at a shekel, and two
measures of barley at a shekel, in the
gate of Samaria.
2 And the third officer on whose
hand the king leaned replied to the
man of The Elohim, and said, Behold,
if YAHWEH would make windows in
the heavens, could this thing be? And
he said, Behold, you shall see with
your eyes, but you shall not eat of it.
3 And four men, lepers, were at the
gate entrance. And they said to one
another, Why should we sit here until
we die?
4 If we say, We shall go into the city,
then the famine is in the city, and we
shall die there. If we sit here, then we
shall die. Therefore now, come and we
will fall into the camp of Syria. If they
keep us alive, we shall live. And if they
kill us, then we die.
5 And they rose up in the twilight to
go to the Syrian camp. And they came
to the edge of the Syrian camp. And,
behold, there was not a man there!
6 For YAHWEH had caused the
Syrian army to hear a sound of
chariots, and a sound of horses, and a
sound of a great army. And they said
to one another, Behold, the king of
Israel has hired the kings of the
Hittites against us, and the kings of
Egypt, to come against us.
7 And they rose up and fled in the
twilight, and left their tents, and their
horses, and their donkeys, and the
camp as it was. And they fled for their
life.
8 And these lepers came to the edge
of the camp, and came into one tent,
and ate and drank, and took up from
there silver and gold and garments,
and went and hid them. And they
returned and went into another tent,
and took from there, and went and hid
them.
9 And they said to one another, We

are not doing right this day. It is a day of good news, and we are keeping silent. And if we wait until the morning light, then punishment will find us. And now come and we will go and tell the house of the king.
10 And they came in and called to the gatekeeper of the city, and spoke for themselves, saying, We have come to the camp of Syria. And, behold, there is not a man there, nor voice of man, but horses tied, and donkeys tied, and the tents as they were.
11 And he called the gatekeepers, and they told the house of the king inside.
12 And the king rose up by night and said to his servants, Let me show you now that which the Syrians have done to us. They know that we are famished, and they have gone out from the camp to hide in the field, saying, When they come out of the city, then we will catch them alive and we shall come into the city.
13 And one of his servants answered and said, Let men take now five of the horses that remain, which are left in the city. Behold, they are as all the multitude of Israel who have been left in it. Behold, they are as all the multitude of Israel who have perished. And we will send and see.
14 And they took two chariots with horses, and the king sent after the Syrian army, saying, Go and see.
15 And they went after them to the Jordan. And, behold, all the way was full of garments and vessels that the Syrians had thrown away in their haste. And the messengers returned and told the king.
16 And the people went out and plundered the Syrian camp. And it happened, a measure of fine flour sold at a shekel, and two measures of barley at a shekel, according to the Word of YAHWEH.
17 And the king appointed the third officer over the gate, he on whose hand he leaned. And the people trod him down in the gate, and he died, as the man of The Elohim spoke, which he spoke when the king came down to him.
18 And it happened according to the saying of the man of The Elohim to the king, saying, Two measures of barley at a shekel, and a measure of fine flour at a shekel; this shall be at this time tomorrow in the gate of Samaria.
19 And the third officer had answered the man of The Elohim, and said, And behold, if YAHWEH should make windows in the heavens, could it be according to this word? And he said, Behold, you shall see with your eyes, but you shall not eat from there.
20 And it happened to him in this way; yea, the people trampled him in the gate, and he died.

Chapter 8

1 And Elisha spoke to the woman whose son he had revived, saying, Rise up and go, you and your household. And stay where you can stay, for YAHWEH has called for a famine. And also, it shall come on the land seven years.
2 And the woman rose up and did according to the word of the man of The Elohim. And she and her household went and stayed in the land of the Philistines seven years.
3 And it happened at the end of seven years that the woman returned from the land of the Philistines, and went to cry to the king for her house, and for her field.
4 And the king was speaking to Gehazi, the servant of the man of The Elohim, saying, Please tell me all of the great things that Elisha has done.
5 And it happened as he was telling

the king how he had revived the dead, then, behold, the woman whose son he had revived was crying to the king for her house and for her field. And Gehazi said, My master, O king, this is the woman, and this is her son whom Elisha revived.

6 And the king asked the woman, and she told him. And the king appointed to her a certain eunuch, saying, Give back all that she has, and all the increase of the field from the day she left the land even until now.

7 And Elisha came to Damascus. And Ben-Hadad the king of Syria was sick. And he was told, saying, The man of The Elohim has come here.

8 And the king said to Hazael, Take a present in your hand and go to meet the man of The Elohim. And you shall seek YAHWEH by him, saying, Shall I revive from this sickness?

9 And Hazael went to meet him and took a present in his hand, even of every good thing from Damascus, a burden of forty camels. And he came in and stood before him, and said, Your son Ben-Hadad, the king of Syria has sent me to you, saying, Shall I revive from this sickness?

10 And Elisha said to him, Go, say to him, surely, you shall live. But YAHWEH has shown me that surely, he shall die.

11 And he fixed his face; yea, he settled it until he was ashamed. And the man of The Elohim wept.

12 And Hazael said, Why is my master weeping? And he said, Because I know the evil that you will do to the sons of Israel. You will send their fortified places into fire and you will slay their young men with the sword. And you will dash their sucklings to pieces; and you will rip up their pregnant women.

13 And Hazael said, But what! Is your servant a dog that he should do this great thing? And Elisha said, YAHWEH has shown me that you will be king over Syria.

14 And he left Elisha and came to his master, and he said to him, What did Elisha say to you? And he said, He said to me, You shall surely recover.

15 And it happened on the next day, he took a plaited cloth and dipped it in water, and spread it on his face, and he died. And Hazael reigned in his place.

16 And in the fifth year of Jehoram the son of Ahab the king of Israel, and Jehoshaphat was king of Judah, Jehoram the son of Jehoshaphat, the king of Judah, reigned.

17 And he was a son of thirty two years when he began his reign. And he reigned eight years in Jerusalem.

18 And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, as the house of Ahab had done, for a daughter of Ahab was his wife. And he did that which was evil in the eyes of YAHWEH.

19 And YAHWEH was not willing to destroy Judah, for His servant David's sake, as He had said to give him a lamp to his sons forever.

20 In his days Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah, and they caused a king to reign over them.

21 And Jehoram passed over to Zair, and all the chariots with him. And it happened, he rose up by night and struck Edom, who had encircled him, and the commanders of the chariots. And the people fled to their tents.

22 Yet Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah to this day. Then Libnah revolted at the same time.

23 And the rest of the acts of Jehoram, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

24 And Jehoram lay with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And his son Ahaziah began to reign in his place.

25 In the twelfth year of Jehoram the son of Ahab, the king of Israel, Ahaziah the son of Jehoram, the king of Judah, began to reign.

26 Ahaziah was a son of twenty two years when he began to reign, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem. And his mother's name was Athaliah the daughter of Omri, the king of Israel.

27 And he walked in the way of the house of Ahab, and did that which was evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, like the house of Ahab, for he was the son-in-law of the house of Ahab.

28 And he went with Jehoram the son of Ahab to battle with Hazael the king of Syria in Ramoth-Gilead. And the Syrians struck Jehoram.

29 And Jehoram the king returned to be healed in Jezreel of the wounds with which the Syrians had struck him in Ramah, as he fought with Hazael the king of Syria. And Ahaziah the son of Jehoram the king of Judah had gone down to see Jehoram the son of Ahab in Jezreel, for he was sick.

Chapter 9

1 And Elisha the prophet called to one of the sons of the prophets and said to him, Gird up your loins and take this vial of oil in your hand, and go to Ramoth-Gilead.

2 And you shall go there, and you shall see there Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat, the son of Nimshi. And you shall go in and cause him to rise up from among his brothers. And you shall bring him to an inner room.

3 And take the vial of oil and pour on his head, and say, So says YAHWEH, I have anointed you as king to Israel. And you shall open the door and flee, and shall not wait.

4 And the young man went, the servant of the prophet, to Ramoth-Gilead.

5 And he came in; and, behold, the army commanders were sitting. And he said, I have a word to you, O commander. And Jehu said, To which of all of us? And he said, To you, O commander.

6 And he rose up and came into the house, and poured the oil on his head, and said to him, So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, I have anointed you as king to the people of YAHWEH, to Israel.

7 And you shall strike the house of your master Ahab, that I may avenge the blood of My servants the prophets, and the blood of all the servants of YAHWEH from the hand of Jezebel.

8 And all the house of Ahab shall perish. Yea, I have cut off to Ahab those who urinate against the wall, both bound and free in Israel.

9 And I have given up the house of Ahab like the house of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, and like the house of Baasha the son of Ahijah.

10 And the dogs shall eat Jezebel in the portion of Jezreel. And there shall be none to bury her. And he opened the door and fled.

11 And Jehu went out to the servants of his master. And one said to him, is there peace? Why did this madman come to you? And he said to them, You know the man, and his message.

12 And they said, A lie! Tell us now. And he said, This and this he said to me, saying, So says YAHWEH, I have anointed you king over Israel.

13 And they hurried, and each man took his garment and put it under him on the bare steps, and blew with the ram's horn, and said, Jehu reigns!

14 And Jehu the son of Jehoshaphat the son of Nimshi conspired against Joram. And Joram was keeping watch at Ramoth-Gilead, he and all Israel before Hazael the king of Syria.

15 And King Jehoram returned to be

healed in Jezreel of the wounds with
which the Syrians had smitten him as
he fought with Hazael the king of
Syria. And Jehu said, If it is in your
minds, do not let one escapee leave the
city to go to tell it in Jezreel.
16 And Jehu rode and went to
Jezreel, for Joram lay there. And
Ahaziah the king of Judah had gone
down to see Joram.
17 And the watchman was standing
on the tower in Jezreel. And he saw
the troop of Jehu as he came. And he
said, I see a troop. And Jehoram said,
Take a rider, and send to meet them,
and let him say, is there peace?
18 And the rider on the horse went
to meet him, and said, So says the
king, Is it peace? And Jehu said, What
have you to do with peace? Turn
behind me. And the watchman spoke,
saying, The messenger came to them,
and he has not returned.
19 And he sent a second rider on a
horse. And he came to them, and said,
So says the king, is there to be peace?
And Jehu said, What have you to do
with peace? Turn behind me.
20 And the watchman spoke, saying,
He came to them, and he has not
returned. And the driving is like the
driving of Jehu the son of Nimshi, for
he drives madly.
21 And Jehoram said, Harness up!
And his chariot was harnessed. And
Jehoram the king of Israel and
Ahaziah the king of Judah went out,
each in his chariot. And they went out
to meet Jehu, and found him in the
portion of Naboth the Jezreelite.
22 And it happened, when Jehoram
saw Jehu, he said, is it peace, Jehu?
And he said, What peace, so long as
the harlotries of your mother Jezebel
and her sorceries are so many?
23 And Jehoram turned his hands
and fled, and said to Ahaziah,
Treachery, O Ahaziah!
24 And Jehu filled his hand with a
bow and struck Jehoram between his
arms. And the arrow went out from his
heart. And he sank down in his
chariot.
25 And Jehu said to his third officer,
Bidkar, Take up, throw him in the
portion of the field of Naboth the
Jezreelite. For, remember, you and I
were riding together after his father
Ahab, and YAHWEH laid this burden
on him:
26 Surely yesterday I have seen the
blood of Naboth, and the blood of his
sons, says YAHWEH. And I will repay
you in this portion, says YAHWEH.
Now, then, take him up, throw him
into the portion of Naboth, according
to the Word of YAHWEH.
27 And Ahaziah the king of Judah
saw, and he fled the way of the garden
house. And Jehu pursued him, and
said, Strike him, him also, in the
chariot, in the ascent to Gur, that is,
Ibleam. And he fled to Megiddo and
died there.
28 And his servants carried him in a
chariot to Jerusalem, and buried him
in his burying place, with his fathers in
the city of David.
29 And in the eleventh year of
Jehoram the son of Ahab, Ahaziah
reigned over Judah.
30 And Jehu came to Jezreel. And
Jezebel had heard, and had painted
her eyes and adorned her head, and
looked down through the window.
31 And Jehu came to the gate. And
she said, Was it peace to Zimri the
slayer of his master?
32 And he lifted his face to the
window, and said, Who is with me?
Who? And two or three eunuchs
looked down to him.
33 And he said, Throw her down!
And they threw her down. And some
of her blood was splashed on the wall,

and on the horses. And he trampled her.

34 And he came in and ate and drank, and said, Now look after this cursed woman and bury her, for she is a king's daughter.

35 And they went to bury her, but did not find any of her except the skull, and the feet, and the palms of the hands.

36 And they came back and told him. And he said, It is the Word of YAHWEH that He spoke by the hand of his servant Elijah the Tishbite, saying, In the portion of Jezreel, the dogs shall eat the flesh of Jezebel.

37 And the carcass of Jezebel shall be as dung on the face of the field in the portion of Jezreel, so that they shall not say, This is Jezebel.

Chapter 10

1 And Ahab had seventy sons in Samaria. And Jehu wrote letters and sent to Samaria, to the rulers of Jezreel, the elders, and to the supporters of Ahab, saying,

2 And now when this letter comes to you, and you have with you the sons of your master, and chariots and horses are with you, and a fortified city, and armor;

3 and you shall look out the best and the most upright of the sons of your master, and you shall set him on the throne of his father. And you shall fight for the house of your master.

4 And they were greatly afraid, and said, Behold, the two kings have not stood before him, and how shall we stand?

5 And he who was over the house, and he over the city, and the elders, and the supporters, sent to Jehu, saying, We are your servants, and all that you say to us we will do. We will not make anyone king. Do what is good in your eyes.

6 And he wrote a letter to them a second time, saying, If you are for me, and are listening to my voice, take the heads of the men, the sons of your master, and come to me about this time tomorrow, to Jezreel. And the king's sons, seventy persons, were with the great men of the city, who reared them.

7 And it happened, when the letter came to them, they took the sons of the king and killed them, seventy persons, and put their heads in baskets, and sent to him in Jezreel.

8 And the messenger came and told him, saying, They have brought the heads of the king's sons. And he said, Make them two heaps at the entrance of the gate until the morning.

9 And it happened in the morning, he went out and stood, and said to all the people, You are righteous. Behold, I have conspired against my master, and have killed him. But who struck all these?

10 Then know that nothing of the Word of YAHWEH shall fall to the earth, that which YAHWEH spoke against the house of Ahab. For YAHWEH has done that which He spoke by the hand of His servant Elijah.

11 And Jehu killed all those left to the house of Ahab in Jezreel, and his great men, and his friends, and his priests, until he did not leave a survivor to him.

12 And he rose up and came in, and went to Samaria. He was at the shepherds' shearing house in the way.

13 And Jehu met the brothers of Ahaziah the king of Judah, and said, Who are you? And they said, We are brothers of Ahaziah, and we are going down to ask the welfare of the sons of the king, and the sons of the queen.

14 And he said, Capture them alive! And they captured them alive, and killed them at the pit of the shearing house, forty men. And he did not leave a man of them.

15 And he left there and found Jehonadab the son of Rechab coming to meet him, and he blessed him. And he said to him, Is your heart right, as my heart is with your heart? And Jehonadab said, It is. If it is, give your hand. And he gave his hand, and he made him come up to him into the chariot.

16 And he said, Come with me and see my zeal for YAHWEH. And they made him ride in the chariot.

17 And he came to Samaria and killed all those left of Ahab in Samaria, until he had destroyed him, according to the Word of YAHWEH that He spoke to Elijah.

18 And Jehu gathered all the people and said to them, Ahab served Baal a little; Jehu shall serve him much.

19 And now call to me all the prophets of Baal, all his servants, and all his priests. Do not let a man be lacking, for I shall have a great sacrifice to Baal. Anyone who is lacking, he shall not live. And Jehu was acting with cunning in order to destroy the servants of Baal.

20 And Jehu said, consecrate an assembly for Baal. And they proclaimed it.

21 And Jehu sent to all Israel, and all the servants of Baal came in. And there was not a man left who did not come in. And they came into the house of Baal, and the house of Baal was full from mouth to mouth.

22 And he said to the one over the wardrobe, Bring out garments to all the servants of Baal. And he brought out the garments to them.

23 And Jehu and Jehonadab the son of Rechab went in to the house of Baal and said to the servants of Baal, Search and see that there are none of the servants of YAHWEH here with you; but only the servants of Baal.

24 And they came in to offer sacrifices and burnt offerings. And Jehu had set for himself eighty men on the outside. And he said, The man who lets any of the men escape whom I am bringing into your hands, his life for the life of him.

25 And it happened, when he finished offering the burnt offering, Jehu said to the runners and the third officers, Go in, strike them. Do not let any man come out. And they struck them by the edge of the sword. And the runners and the third officers threw them out. And they went into the city to the house of Baal,

26 and brought out the pillars of the house of Baal and burned them.

27 And they broke down the pillar of Baal, and broke down the house of Baal, and made it an outhouse to this day.

28 And Jehu destroyed Baal out of Israel.

29 Only, from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin, Jehu did not turn from following them, the calves of gold at Bethel, and in Dan.

30 And YAHWEH said to Jehu, Because you have done well, to do what is right in my eyes, and you have done to the house of Ahab according to all that was in My heart, the sons of the fourth generation shall sit for you on the throne of Israel.

31 And Jehu did not take heed to walk in the Torah of YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, with all his heart. He did not turn from the sins of Jeroboam, who caused Israel to sin.

32 In those days YAHWEH began to cut off in Israel, and Hazael struck them in all the border of Israel,

33 from the Jordan eastward, the
whole land of Gilead, of the Gadites,
and the Reubenites, and the
Manassites, from Aroer by the Arnon
River, even Gilead and Bashan.
34 And the rest of the matters of
Jehu, and all that he did, and all his
might, are they not written in the Book
of the Matters of the Days of the Kings
of Israel?
35 And Jehu lay with his fathers, and
they buried him in Samaria. And his
son Jehoahaz reigned in his place.
36 And the days that Jehu reigned
over Israel were twenty eight years, in
Samaria.

Chapter 11

1 And Athaliah[1] was the mother of
Ahaziah. And when she saw that her
son was dead, then she rose up and
destroyed all the seed of the kingdom.
2 But Jehosheba the daughter of
King Jehoram, the sister of Ahaziah,
took Joash the son of Ahaziah and
stole him from among the king's sons
who were put to death, him and his
nurse, in the sleeping room. And they
hid him from the face of Athaliah, and
he was not killed.
3 And he was with her in the house
of YAHWEH, hiding himself six years.
And Athaliah reigned over the land.
4 And in the seventh year, Jehoiada
sent and called the rulers of the
hundreds, with the Carites[2] and the
runners. And he brought them to him
into the house of YAHWEH, and cut a
covenant with them, and took an oath
of them in the house of YAHWEH.
And he revealed the king's son to
them.
5 And he commanded them, saying,
This is the thing that you shall do. A
third of you shall go in on the Sabbath
for keepers of the watch of the king's
house.
6 A third shall be at the Sur Gate. A
third shall be at the gate behind the
runners. And you shall keep the watch
of the house, alternately.
7 And two parts of you, all who go
out on the Sabbath, they shall keep the
watch of the house of YAHWEH
about the king.
8 And you shall fully surround the
king, each with his weapons in his
hand. And he that comes within the
ranks shall be put to death. And they
shall be with the king as he goes in and
comes out.
9 And the rulers of the hundreds did
according to all that Jehoiada the
priest commanded. And each man
took his men, going in on the Sabbath,
with those going out on the Sabbath,
and came in to Jehoiada the priest.
10 And the priest gave to the rulers
of the hundreds King David's spears
and the shields, that were in the house
of YAHWEH.
11 And the runners stood, each with
his weapons in his hand, from the
right side of the house to the left side
of the house, beside the altar and
beside the house, by the king all
around.
12 And he brought out the son of the
king, and put the crown on him, and
the testimony. And they made him
king, and anointed him, and clapped
their hands, and said, Let the king live!
13 And Athaliah heard the sound of
the runners of the people. And she
came to the people, to the house of
YAHWEH.
14 And she looked, and, behold, the
king was standing by the pillar,

1 She was the daughter of Ahab and Jezebel and just like her mother was completely outside of YHWH's judicial order.

2 These were mercenary soldiers from Caria in southwest Asia minor, who served as royal bodyguards.

according to the custom.[3] And the
rulers and the trumpeters were beside
the king. And all the people of the land
were rejoicing, and blowing with
trumpets. And Athaliah tore her
clothes, and cried, Treason! Treason!
15 And Jehoiada the priest
commanded the commanders of the
hundreds who were set over the army,
and said to them, Bring her out to the
outside of the ranks; and he who
comes after her put to death by the
sword. For the priest had said, Do not
let her be killed in the house of
YAHWEH.
16 And they laid hands on her, and
she entered the way of the horse gate
to the house of the king, and was
executed there.
17 And Jehoiada cut a covenant
between YAHWEH and the king and
the people to be for a people to
YAHWEH, and between the king and
the people.
18 And all the people of the land
went into the house of Baal and broke
it down. They completely smashed its
altars and its images. And they killed
Mattan the priest of Baal before the
altars. And the priest set guards over
the house of YAHWEH.
19 And he took the commanders
over the hundreds, and the Carites,
and the runners, and all the people of
the land. And they brought the king
down from the house of YAHWEH,
and came by the way of the Runners'
Gate to the king's house. And he sat on
the throne of the kings.
20 And all the people of the land
rejoiced, and the city was quiet. And
they had slain Athaliah by the sword in
the king's house.
21 Joash was a son of seven years
when he began to reign.

Chapter 12

1 Joash reigned in the seventh year
of Jehu. And he reigned forty years in
Jerusalem; and the name of his
mother was Zibiah of Beer-Sheba.
2 And Joash did that which was good
in the eyes of YAHWEH all his days in
which Jehoiada the priest guided him;
3 only, the high places were not
destroyed; the people still sacrificed
and offered incense in high places.
4 And Joash said to the priests, All
the silver of the devoted things that is
brought into the house of YAHWEH,
the silver coming over, each man the
silver of his valuation, all the silver
that comes upon any man's heart to
bring into the house of YAHWEH,
5 even the priests shall take to
themselves, each man from his friend;
and they shall repair the breach of the
house, in all places where a breach
may be found.
6 And it happened, in the twenty
third year of King Joash, that the
priests had not repaired the breach of
the house.
7 And King Joash called to Jehoiada
the priest, and the priests, and said to
them, Why have you not repaired the
breach of the house? And now, do not
receive any silver from your friends,
but give it for the breach of the house.
8 And the priests consented not to
receive silver from the people, nor to
strengthen the breach of the house.
9 And Jehoiada the priest took a
chest and cut a hole in its lid, and put
it near the altar, on the right side, as
one comes into the house of
YAHWEH, and the priests who kept

[3] The custom started with King Solomon being coronated at the stone pillars at the entrance to the sanctuary of YHWH at the Gihon spring in the southwestern tip of the city of David. This entrance with stone pillars has been excavated in recent times by archaeologists in Jerusalem.

the door put in it all the silver brought into the house of YAHWEH.

10 And it happened, when they saw that the silver in the chest was plentiful, that a scribe of the king, and the high priest went up, and they bound it up, and counted the silver found in the house of YAHWEH.

11 And they weighed silver into the hands of those doing the work, those overseeing the house of YAHWEH; and they gave it, weighed it out, to the craftsmen in wood, and to the builders who were working on the house of YAHWEH,

12 and to the masons, and the stone cutters, and to buy wood and cut stone to strengthen the breach of the house of YAHWEH; and for all that went out on the house, to make it strong.

13 However, there were not made for the house of YAHWEH basins of silver, snuffers, bowls, trumpets, any vessels of gold or vessels of silver, of the silver brought into the house of YAHWEH;

14 for they gave it to those doing the work, and they made strong the house of YAHWEH with it.

15 And they did not reckon with the men into whose hand they gave the silver, to give to those doing the work, for they were dealing with faithfulness.

16 And the guilt offering silver and the sin offering silver was not brought into the house of YAHWEH, for it was the priests'.

17 Then Hazael the king of Syria went up and fought against Gath, and captured it; and Hazael set his face to go up against Jerusalem.

18 And Joash the king of Judah took all the dedicated things that Jehoshaphat, and Jehoram, and Ahaziah, his fathers, the kings of Judah, had dedicated, and his own dedicated things, and all the gold found in the treasures of the house of YAHWEH, and of the house of the king, and sent to Hazael the king of Syria; and he went away from Jerusalem.

19 And the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

20 And his servants rose up and made a conspiracy and killed Joash in the house of Millo, which goes down to Silla.

21 For Jozachar the son of Shimeath, and Jehozabad the son of Shomer, his servants, struck him; and he died. And they buried him with his fathers in the city of David. And his son Amaziah reigned in his place.

Chapter 13

1 In the twenty third year of Joash the son of Ahaziah, the king of Judah, Jehoahaz the son of Jehu reigned over Israel, in Samaria, seventeen years.

2 And he did the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, and went after the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin; he did not turn aside from it.

3 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed against Israel, and He gave them into the hand of Hazael the king of Syria, and into the hand of Ben-Hadad the son of Hazael, all the days.

4 And Jehoahaz sought the face of YAHWEH, and YAHWEH listened to him, for He saw the oppression of Israel; for the king of Syria had oppressed them.

5 And YAHWEH gave a deliverer to Israel, and they went out from under the hand of Syria, and the sons of Israel lived in their tents as before.

6 Only, they did not turn aside from the sins of the house of Jeroboam, who caused Israel to sin; he walked in it,

and also the Asherah remained in Samaria.

7 For he did not leave to Jehoahaz any of the people except fifty horsemen, and ten chariots, and ten thousand footmen; for the king of Syria had destroyed them, and had made them like dust by threshing.

8 And the rest of the acts of Jehoahaz, and all that he did, and his might, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?

9 And Jehoahaz lay with his fathers, and they buried him in Samaria. And his son Joash reigned in his place.

10 In the thirty seventh year of Joash the king of Judah, Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz reigned over Israel, in Samaria, sixteen years.

11 And he did the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH; he did not turn aside from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin; he walked in it.

12 And the rest of the acts of Joash, and all that he did, and his might with which he fought with Amaziah the king of Judah, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?

13 And Joash lay with his fathers; and Jeroboam sat on his throne; and Joash was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel.

14 And Elisha had become sick with his illness in which he died; and Joash the king of Israel came down to him, and wept on his face, and said, My father, my father, the chariot of Israel, and its horsemen!

15 And Elisha said to him, Take bow and arrows. And he took bow and arrows to himself.

16 And he said to the king of Israel, Cause your hand to ride on the bow. And he caused his hand to ride. And Elisha placed his hand on the hands of the king,

17 and said, Open the window eastward. And he opened. And Elisha said, Shoot. And he shot. And he said, The arrow of deliverance of YAHWEH, and the arrow of deliverance from Syria; for you shall strike the Syrians in Aphek, until it is finished.

18 And he said, Take the arrows. And he took them up. And he said to the king of Israel, Strike the earth. And he struck three times, and stopped.

19 And the man of The Elohim was angry with him, and said, By striking five or six times, then you would have smitten Syria until it was finished; but now, you shall strike Syria three times.

20 And Elisha died, and they buried him. And the bands of Moab came into the land, at the beginning of the year;

21 and it happened, they were burying a man; and, behold, they saw the band, and threw the man into the grave of Elisha. And the man fell and touched the bones of Elisha, and came alive, and rose on his feet.

22 And Hazael the king of Syria oppressed Israel all the days of Jehoahaz.

23 And YAHWEH was gracious to them, and pitied them, and turned toward them, for the sake of His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, and was not willing to destroy them, nor to cast them out from His presence as yet.

24 And Hazael the king of Syria died, and his son Ben-Hadad reigned in his place.

25 And Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz returned and took the cities out of the hand of Ben-Hadad the son of Hazael that he had taken out of the hand of his father Jehoahaz in battle. Jehoash struck him three times, and he brought back the cities of Israel.

Chapter 14

1 In the second year of Joash the son of Jehoahaz the king of Israel, Amaziah the son of Joash the king of Judah reigned.

2 He was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty nine years in Jerusalem; and his mother's name was Jehoaddan of Jerusalem.

3 And he did right in the eyes of YAHWEH, but not like his father David; he did according to all that his father Joash did;

4 however, the high places were not taken away; the people still sacrificed and offered in the high places.

5 And it happened, when the kingdom was strong in his hand, he struck his servants, those who struck his father, the king.

6 But he did not cause to die the sons of those who struck him, as it is written in the book of the Law of Moses that YAHWEH commanded, saying, The fathers are not to be caused to die for the sons, and the sons are not to be caused to die for the fathers, but each shall be caused to die for his own sin.

7 He struck Edom in the Valley of Salt, ten thousand, and captured the Rock by war, and called its name Joktheel[1] to this day.

8 Then Amaziah sent messengers to Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu, the king of Israel, saying, Come, we shall look one another in the face.

9 And Jehoash the king of Israel sent to Amaziah the king of Judah, saying, The thorn that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar in Lebanon, saying, Give your daughter to my son as wife; and a beast of the field in Lebanon passed by and trampled the thorn.

10 You have certainly stricken Edom, and your heart has lifted you up. Glory in it and stay in your house; and why should you stir yourself up to evil so that you may fall, you and Judah with you?

11 But Amaziah would not listen, and Jehoash the king of Israel went up; and they looked one another in the face, he and Amaziah the king of Judah, in Beth-Shemesh of Judah.

12 And Judah was stricken before Israel, and they each fled to his tent.

13 And Jehoash the king of Israel caught Amaziah the king of Judah, the son of Joash, the son of Ahaziah, in Beth-Shemesh. And they came in to Jerusalem, and he broke through the wall of Jerusalem at the Gate of Ephraim to the Corner Gate, four hundred cubits.

14 And he took all the gold and the silver, and all the vessels that were found in the house of YAHWEH, and in the treasures of the king's house, and the sons of the hostages, and returned to Samaria.

15 And the rest of the acts of Jehoash which he did, and his might, and how he fought with Amaziah the king of Judah, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?

16 And Jehoash lay with his fathers, and was buried in Samaria with the kings of Israel. And his son Jeroboam reigned in his place.

17 And Amaziah the son of Joash the king of Judah lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz the king of Israel.

18 And the rest of the acts of Amaziah, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

19 And they made a conspiracy

[1] Joktheel means the rocky height.

against him in Jerusalem, and he fled to Lachish; and they sent after him to Lachish and killed him there.[1]

20 And they lifted him up on the horses, and he was buried in Jerusalem with his fathers in the city of David.

21 And all the people of Judah took Azariah (and he was a son of sixteen years), and they made him king instead of his father Amaziah.

22 He built Elath and restored it to Judah after the king slept with his fathers.

23 In the fifteenth year of Amaziah the son of Joash the king of Judah, Jeroboam the son of Jehoash the king of Israel reigned in Samaria, forty one years.

24 And he did the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH; he did not turn aside from all the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, that he caused Israel to sin.

25 He restored the border of Israel from the entering in of Hamath to the sea of the Arabah, according to the Word of YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel which He spoke by the hand of his servant Jonah the prophet, the son of Amittai of Gathhepher.

26 For YAHWEH had seen the affliction of Israel to be very bitter; and none was bound, and none free, and there was no helper for Israel.

27 And YAHWEH had not spoken that He would blot the name of Israel from under the heavens, but saved them by the hand of Jeroboam the son of Joash.

28 And the rest of the acts of Jeroboam, all that he did, and his might with which he fought, and with which he recovered Damascus and Hamath of Judah for Israel, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?

29 And Jeroboam lay with his fathers, with the kings of Israel. And his son Zechariah reigned in his place.

Chapter 15

1 In the twenty seventh year of Jeroboam the king of Israel Azariah the son of Amaziah the king of Judah began to reign.

2 He was a son of sixteen years when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty two years in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Jecholiah of Jerusalem.

3 And he did right in the eyes of YAHWEH, according to all that his father Amaziah did;

4 however, the high places were not taken away; the people still sacrificed and burned incense in the high places.

5 And YAHWEH touched the king, and he was a leper to the day of his death; and he lived in a separate house, and Jotham the son of the king was over the house, judging the people of the land.

6 And the rest of the acts of Azariah, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

7 And Azariah lay with his fathers, and they buried him with his fathers in the city of David. And his son Jotham reigned in his place.

8 In the thirty eighth year of Azariah the king of Judah, Zechariah the son of Jeroboam reigned over Israel, in Samaria, six months.

9 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, as his fathers did; he did not turn aside from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin.

10 And Shallum the son of Jabesh conspired against him and struck him

[1] Lachish was about 25 miles southwest of Jerusalem and was the summer palace of several kings and a fortress city.

before the people, and killed him, and reigned in his place.

11 And the rest of the acts of Zechariah, behold, they are written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel.

12 This was the Word of YAHWEH that He spoke to Jehu, saying, Your son of the fourth generation shall sit to you on the throne of Israel; and it was so.

13 Shallum the son of Jabesh began to reign in the thirty ninth year of Uzziah the king of Judah, and he reigned a full month in Samaria.

14 And Menahem the son of Gadi from Tirzah went up and came into Samaria and struck Shallum the son of Jabesh in Samaria, and killed him, and reigned in his place.

15 And the rest of the acts of Shallum, and his conspiracy that he conspired, behold, they are written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel.

16 Then Menahem struck Tiphsah, and all who were in it, and its borders from Tirzah, for it did not open, and he struck it; he ripped up all its pregnant women.

17 In the thirty ninth year of Azariah the king of Judah, Menahem the son of Gadi began to reign over Israel, ten years in Samaria.

18 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH; he did not turn aside from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin, all his days.

19 Pul the king of Assyria came against the land, and Menahem gave a thousand talents of silver to Pul, that his hand might be with him to confirm the kingdom in his hand.

20 And Menahem brought out the silver from Israel, on all the mighty men of wealth, to give to the king of Assyria, fifty shekels of silver for each one; and the king of Assyria turned back and did not stay there in the land.

21 And the rest of the acts of Menahem, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel?

22 And Menahem lay with his fathers. And his son Pekahiah reigned in his place.

23 In the fiftieth year of Azariah the king of Judah, Pekahiah the son of Menahem reigned over Israel two years in Samaria.

24 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH; he did not turn aside from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin.

25 And Pekah the son of Remaliah, his general, conspired against him and struck him in Samaria, in the high place of the house of the king, with Argob and Arieh, and fifty men of the sons of the Gileadites with him; and he killed him and reigned in his place.

26 And the rest of the acts of Pekahiah, and all that he did, behold, they are written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel.

27 In the fifty second year of Azariah the king of Judah, Pekah the son of Remaliah began to reign over Israel, twenty years in Samaria.

28 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH; he did not turn aside from the sins of Jeroboam the son of Nebat, who caused Israel to sin.

29 In the days of Pekah the king of Israel, Tiglath-Pileser the king of Assyria came and took Ijon, and Abel-Beth-Maachah, and Janoah, and Kedesh, and Hazor, and Gilead, and Galilee, all the land of Naphtali, and removed them to Assyria.

30 And Hoshea the son of Elah conspired a conspiracy against Pekah the son of Remaliah, and struck him, and killed him, and reigned in his

place, in the twentieth year of Jotham the son of Uzziah.

31 And the rest of the acts of Pekah and all that he did, behold, they are written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Israel.

32 In the second year of Pekah the son of Remaliah the king of Israel, Jotham the son of Uzziah, the king of Judah, began to reign.

33 He was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem; and his mother's name was Jerusha the daughter of Zadok.

34 And he did right in the eyes of YAHWEH; he did according to all that his father Uzziah did.

35 Only, the high places were not taken away; the people still sacrificed and burned incense in high places; he built the Upper Gate of the house of YAHWEH.

36 And the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

37 In those days YAHWEH began to send against Judah Rezin the king of Syria and Pekah the son of Remaliah.

38 And Jotham lay with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of his father David. And his son Ahaz reigned in his place.

Chapter 16

1 In the seventeenth year of Pekah the son of Remaliah, Ahaz the son of Jotham the king of Judah began to reign.

2 Ahaz was a son of twenty years when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem; and he did not do right in the eyes of YAHWEH his Elohim, like his father David.

3 But he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, and also he caused his son to pass through the fire, according to the idolatries of the nations, whom YAHWEH had cast out from before the sons of Israel.

4 And he sacrificed and offered incense in the high places, and on the heights, and under every green tree.

5 Then Rezin the king of Syria and Pekah the son of Remaliah the king of Israel came up to Jerusalem to war. And they besieged Ahaz, but they were not able to fight.

6 At that time Rezin the king of Syria brought Elath back to Syria, and threw the Jews out of Elath; and the Syrians came to Elath and lived there to this day.

7 And Ahaz sent messengers to Tiglath-Pileser the king of Assyria, saying, I am your servant and your son; come up and save me out of the hand of the king of Syria, and out of the hand of the king of Israel, who have risen up against me.

8 And Ahaz took the silver and the gold which was found in the house of YAHWEH, and in the treasures of the king's house, and sent to the king of Assyria a bribe.

9 And the king of Assyria listened to him. And the king of Assyria went up to Damascus and captured it, and removed it to Kir, and he killed Rezin.

10 And King Ahaz went to meet Tiglath-Pileser the king of Assyria at Damascus. And he saw the altar that was in Damascus. And King Ahaz sent the form of the altar to Urijah the priest, and its pattern, according to all its work.

11 And Urijah the priest built the altar according to all that King Ahaz had sent from Damascus; so Urijah the priest did until King Ahaz came in from Damascus.

12 And the king came in from Damascus, and the king saw the altar;

and the king drew near to the altar and offered on it;
13 and offered his burnt offering, and his food offering, and poured out his drink offering, and sprinkled the blood of his peace offerings on the altar.
14 But as to the copper altar that was before YAHWEH, he brought near from the forefront of the house, from between his altar and the house of YAHWEH, and put it on the north side of his altar.
15 And King Ahaz commanded Urijah the priest, saying, On the great altar offer the burnt offering of the morning, and the evening food offering, and the king's burnt offering and his food offering with the burnt offering of all the people of the land, and their food offering, and their drink offerings; and sprinkle on it all the blood of the burnt offering, and all the blood of the sacrifice; but the copper altar shall be for me to inquire by.
16 And Urijah the priest did according to all that King Ahaz commanded.
17 And King Ahaz cut off the borders of the bases, and removed the laver from them; and took down the sea from off the copper oxen under it, and put it on a pavement of stones.
18 And the covered way that they had built in the house for the Sabbath, and the king's entry outside, he turned from the house of YAHWEH, because of the king of Assyria.
19 And the rest of the acts of Ahaz that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?
20 And Ahaz lay with his fathers, and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And his son Hezekiah reigned in his place.

Chapter 17

1 In the twelfth year of Ahaz the king of Judah, Hoshea the son of Elah reigned in Samaria, nine years over Israel.
2 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, only not as the kings of Israel who were before him.
3 Shalmaneser[1] the king of Assyria came against him, and Hoshea was a servant to him, and paid him tribute.
4 And the king of Assyria found a conspiracy in Hoshea, in that he had sent messengers to So the king of Egypt, and had not offered tribute up to the king of Assyria, as year by year. And the king of Assyria shut him up, and bound him in a prison house.
5 And the king of Assyria went up into all the land, and he went up to Samaria and besieged it three years.
6 In the ninth year of Hoshea, the king of Assyria captured Samaria, and removed Israel to Assyria, and made them live in Halah, and in Habor, by the river Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes.[2]
7 And it was so because the sons of Israel had sinned against YAHWEH their Elohim, who brought them up out of the land of Egypt, from under

---

1 Shalmaneser was son to and successor of Tiglash- Pileser and reined from 727-722B.C.

2 This area was south of the Caspian Sea and NE of the Tigris River. Sargon ll, the general under Shalmaneser takes credit for this battle in his annals. Interesting enough, although there were several million Israelites living in the attacked region, Sargon states he only took 27, 290 captive. The reason being that many Israelites had already fled before this battle ever took place to the south to the Carthage empire, to the west, to Europe, and also some went to Judah and assimilated into other areas around the globe and became known as "*The lost tribes of Israel*".

the hand of Pharaoh the king of Egypt, and feared other gods,
8 and walked in the statutes of the nations that YAHWEH had expelled from the face of the sons of Israel, and of the kings of Israel that they made.
9 And the sons of Israel secretly did the things which were not right against YAHWEH their Elohim, and built high places for themselves in all their cities, from the tower of the watchmen to the fortified city,
10 and set up for themselves pillars and Asherahs on every high hill, and under every green tree;
11 and burned incense there in all high places, like the nations that YAHWEH had removed from their face; and did evil things to provoke YAHWEH,
12 and served the idols, of which YAHWEH had said to them, You shall not do this thing.
13 And YAHWEH testified against Israel, and against Judah, by the hand of all His prophets, and every seer, saying, Turn back from your evil ways, and keep My commandments, My statutes, according to all the Torah that I commanded your fathers, and that I sent to you by the hand of My servants the prophets.
14 And they did not listen, and hardened their necks, like the necks of their fathers, who did not remain faithful to YAHWEH their Elohim.
15 And they rejected His statutes and His covenant that He cut with their fathers, and His testimonies that He testified against them, and went after the vain thing, and became vain, and after the nations that were around them, of whom YAHWEH had commanded them not to do like them.
16 And they forsook all the commandments of YAHWEH their Elohim and made for themselves cast images, two calves, and made an Asherah, and bowed to all the host of the heavens, and served Baal,
17 and caused their sons and daughters to pass through the fire and divined divination, and used incantations, and sold themselves to do the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, to provoke Him,
18 so that YAHWEH was very angry against Israel, and turned them away from His face; not one was left, only the tribe of Judah by itself.[1]
19 Also Judah did not keep the commands of YAHWEH their Elohim, and they walked in the statutes of Israel that they had made.
20 And YAHWEH rejected all the seed of Israel, and afflicted them, and gave them into the hand of the plunderers, until He had cast them out from His presence.
21 For He tore Israel from the house of David, and they made Jeroboam the son of Nebat king; and Jeroboam lured Israel from following YAHWEH, and caused them to sin a great sin.
22 And the sons of Israel walked in all the sins of Jeroboam that he did; they did not turn aside from them;
23 until YAHWEH turned away Israel from His face, as He spoke by the hand of all His servants the prophets; and Israel was exiled from off its land to Assyria to this day.
24 And the king of Assyria brought men in from Babylon, and from Cuthah, and from Ava, and from Hamath, and Sepharvaim, and made them live in the cities of Samaria instead of the sons of Israel; and they

[1] Verses 7-18- although YHWH has great patience and never-ending mercy and love, there is a point when people give themselves over to evil and sin that their hearts will be hardened and they will be unable to ever repent and only judgment for their pride and sin awaits, Heb 3:10-13.

possessed Samaria and lived in its cities.
25 And it happened at the beginning of their living there, they did not fear YAHWEH, and YAHWEH sent lions among them, and they were killing among them.
26 And they spoke to the king of Assyria, saying, The nations that you have exiled and have made to live in the cities of Samaria do not know the custom of the Elohim of the land, and He has sent the lions into their midst; and, behold, they are killing them, since they do not know the custom of the Elohim of the land.
27 And the king of Assyria commanded, saying, Cause one of the priests whom you removed from there to go there, and they shall go and live there; and he shall teach them the custom of the Elohim of the land.
28 And one of the priests whom they exiled from Samaria came and lived in Bethel, and he taught them how they should fear YAHWEH.
29 yet was making nation by nation their own gods, and putting them in the houses of the high places which the Samaritans had made, nation by nation in their cities where they lived.
30 And the men of Babylon made Succoth-Benoth; and the men of Cuth made Nergal; and the men of Hamath made Ashima;
31 and the Avites made Nibhaz and Tartak; and the Sepharvites burned their sons with fire to Adrammelech and Anammelech the Elohims of Sepharvaim. *(2 Kgs 17:17)*
32 So it was that they feared YAHWEH, and made for themselves, of the lowest of them, priests of the high places and they sacrificed for them in the houses of the high places.
33 They feared YAHWEH, and served their own gods, according to the custom of the nations from where they exiled them.[1]
34 To this day they do according to the former custom; they do not fear YAHWEH, and do not do according to their statutes, and according to their ordinances, and according to the Torah, and according to the commandment that YAHWEH commanded the sons of Jacob, on whom He set His name, Israel.
35 And YAHWEH made a covenant with them, and commanded them, saying, You shall not fear other gods, nor bow yourselves to them, nor serve them, nor sacrifice to them;
36 but YAHWEH who brought you up out of the land of Egypt with great power, and with a stretched out arm, you shall fear Him, and you shall bow yourselves to Him, and you shall sacrifice to Him;
37 and the statutes, and the judgments, and the Torah, and the commandments that He wrote for you, you shall observe to do forever, and you shall not fear other gods;
38 and the covenant that I have made with you, you shall not forget, and you shall not fear other gods;
39 but you shall fear YAHWEH your Elohim, and He shall deliver you out of the hand of all your enemies.[2]

---

1 Verses 26-33- Due to their fear of the lions, the people developed a mixture of pagan worship with some of YHWH's biblical statutes, which is a religious trend that continued through time and even today. They also had unqualified men as their priests whom YHWH did not ordain and without proper leadership the people will inevitably be led astray.

2 Verses 33-39- These verses show us how vitally important it is to obey YHWH's eternal Torah, which is His very character or else man will simply work every evil from the imagination of his own heart, Jer 17:9-10, Jud 21:25.

40 But they did not listen, but did according to their former custom.

41 And it happened, these nations feared YAHWEH, yet they served their graven images, both their sons and their sons' sons. As their fathers did, they are doing to this day.[1]

Chapter 18

1 And it happened in the third year of Hoshea the son of Elah the king of Israel, Hezekiah the son of Ahaz the king of Judah began to reign.

2 He was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem twenty nine years; and the name of his mother was Abi the daughter of Zechariah.

3 And he did right in the eyes of YAHWEH, according to all that his father David did;

4 he took away the high places, and broke in pieces the pillars, and cut down the Asherah, and beat to bits the copper serpent that Moses made (for in those days it was that the sons of Israel burned sacrifices to it) and called it Nehushtan.

5 He trusted in YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, and after him there was none like him among all the kings of Judah, nor who were before him;

6 and he clung to YAHWEH; he did not turn aside from following Him, and kept His commandments that YAHWEH commanded Moses.

7 And YAHWEH was with him. He acted prudently every place he went. And he rebelled against the king of Assyria and would not serve him.

8 He struck the Philistines to Gaza and its borders, from the Watch Tower to the fortified city.

9 And it happened, in the fourth year of King Hezekiah (it was the seventh year of Hoshea the son of Elah the king of Israel) Shalmaneser the king of Assyria came up against Samaria and besieged it.

10 And they captured it at the end of three years; in the sixth year of Hezekiah (it was the ninth year of Hoshea the king of Israel) Samaria was conquered;

11 and the king of Assyria carried Israel away to Assyria, and placed them in Halah, and in Habor by the river Gozan, and in the cities of the Medes,

12 because they did not listen to the voice of YAHWEH their Elohim, and transgressed His covenant, all that Moses the servant of YAHWEH commanded; yea, they did not listen nor obey them.[2] *(Mal 4:4)*

13 And in the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah, Sennacherib the king of Assyria came up against all the fortified cities of Judah, and captured them.

14 And Hezekiah the king of Judah sent to the king of Assyria, to Lachish, saying, I have offended, turn back from me; that which you put on me I will bear. And the king of Assyria laid on Hezekiah the king of Judah three

[1] The fact that human beings are very quick to follow something that is purely evil, but will resist tooth and nail to something pure from Elohim is clear proof of the fallen nature of man and that redemption can only come through the transformation by the Ruach H'Chodesh of YHWH, after full repentance is admitted and made.

[2] In these end times, as YHWH is revealing who the tribes of Israel are today, it is a stark warning that disobedience to the Torah that Moses gave Israel from YHWH was the main avenue that caused their captivity, and returning to it is a per-requisite to returning to covenant relationship with YHWH, 2 Chron 6:36-39, Lev 26:40-46, Mal 4:4, Joel 2:12-27.

hundred talents of silver and thirty
talents of gold.
15 And Hezekiah gave all the silver
that was found in the house of
YAHWEH, and in the treasures of the
house of the king.
16 At that time Hezekiah cut off the
doors of the Sanctuary of YAHWEH,
and the pillars that Hezekiah the king
of Judah had overlaid, and gave them
to the king of Assyria.
17 And the king of Assyria sent
Tartan, and the chief of the eunuchs,
and the chief of the cupbearers from
Lachish, to King Hezekiah with a
heavy force, to Jerusalem. And they
went up and came to Jerusalem, and
they went up and came in and stood by
the conduit of the upper pool that was
in the highway of the Fuller's Field.
18 And they called to the king, and
Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, who was
over the house, and Shebna the scribe,
and Joah the son of Asaph the
recorder went out to them.
19 And the chief of the cupbearers
said to them, Now say to Hezekiah, So
says the great king, the king of Assyria,
What is this hope in which you have
trusted?
20 Do you say that a mere word of
the lips is counsel and strength for
war; now, on whom have you trusted
that you have rebelled against me?
21 Now, behold, you have trusted for
yourself on the staff of this broken
reed, on Egypt, which if a man lean on
it, it will go into his hand and pierce it!
So is Pharaoh the king of Egypt to all
those who trust in him.
22 And when you say to me, We have
trusted to YAHWEH our Elohim, is it
not He whose high places and whose
altars Hezekiah has removed, and has
said to Judah and to Jerusalem, Before
this altar you shall bow yourselves in
Jerusalem?
23 And, now, I ask you, exchange
pledges for yourself to my master the
king of Assyria, and I will give to you
two thousand horses if you are able to
give for yourself riders on them.
24 And how will you turn back the
face of one prefect of the least of the
servants of my master, that you trust
for yourself upon Egypt for chariots
and for horsemen?
25 Now, have I come up against this
place to destroy it without YAHWEH?
YAHWEH said to me, Go up against
this land, and you shall destroy it.[1]
26 And Eliakim the son of Hilkiah,
and Shebna, and Joah said to the chief
of the cup-bearers, Please speak
Aramaic to your servants, for we
understand; and do not speak with us
in Jewish, in the ears of the people on
the wall.
27 And the chief of the cupbearers
said to them, Has my master sent me
to speak these words to your master,
and to you, and not to the men that sit
on the wall, to eat their own dung, and
to drink the water of their feet with
you?
28 And the chief of the cupbearers
stood and called with a great voice in
Jewish, and spoke and said, Hear the
word of the great king, the king of
Assyria;
29 So says the king, Do not let
Hezekiah delude you, for he is not able
to deliver you out of his hand;
30 and do not let Hezekiah make
you trust to YAHWEH, saying,
YAHWEH surely shall deliver us; and,
This city shall not be given into the
hand of the king of Assyria.
31 Do not listen to Hezekiah, for so
says the king of Assyria, Make with me
a peace treaty and come out to me;
and you each shall eat of his vine, and
each of his fig tree, and you each shall
drink of the waters of his own well,
32 until I come; and I will take you

[1] Obviously, he was lying.

to a land like your own land, a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards, a land of olive oil, and honey; and live, and do not die; and do not listen to Hezekiah, when he persuades you, saying, YAHWEH shall deliver us.

33 Have the gods of the nations at all delivered each his land out of the hand of the king of Assyria?

34 Where are the gods of Hamath and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah, that they have delivered Samaria out of my hand?

35 Who among all the gods of the lands have delivered their land out of my hand, that YAHWEH should deliver Jerusalem out of my hand?

36 But the people kept silent and did not answer him a word, for the command of the king was, saying, Do not answer him.

37 And Eliakim the son of Hilkiah, who was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and Joah the son of Asaph the recorder, came in to Hezekiah, having torn their garments; and they told him the words of the chief of the cupbearers.

Chapter 19

1 And it happened, when King Hezekiah heard, that he tore his garments and covered himself with sackcloth and went in to the house of YAHWEH;

2 and he sent Eliakim, who was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, covering themselves with sackcloth, to Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz.

3 And they said to him, So says Hezekiah, it is a day of distress, and of rebuke, and of disgrace today; for the sons have come to the birth, and there is no power to bring forth.

4 It may be that YAHWEH your Elohim will hear all the words of the chief cupbearer, with which his master the king of Assyria has sent him to reproach the living Elohim, and will rebuke the words which YAHWEH your Elohim has heard; and you shall lift up prayer for the remnant that is found.

5 And the servants of King Hezekiah came to Isaiah.

6 And Isaiah said to them, You shall say this to your master: So says YAHWEH, Do not be afraid because of the words that you have heard, with which the servants of the king of Assyria have reviled Me.

7 Behold, I will put a spirit in him, and he shall hear a rumor and shall turn back to his land; and I will cause him to fall by the sword in his land.

8 And the chief cupbearer returned and found the king of Assyria fighting against Libnah, for he had heard that he had traveled from Lachish.

9 And when he heard it said of Tirhakah the king of Ethiopia, Behold, he is coming out to fight against you, he sent messengers again to Hezekiah, saying,

10 So you shall speak to Hezekiah the king of Judah, saying, Do not let your Elohim in whom you trust delude you, saying, Jerusalem shall not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.

11 Behold, you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands, by utterly destroying them; and shall you be delivered?

12 Have the gods of the nations delivered them, which my fathers have destroyed, Gozan, and Haran, and Rezeph, and the sons of Eden in Telassar?

13 Where is the king of Hamath, and the king of Arpad, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, of Hena, and Ivah?

14 And Hezekiah took the letters out
of the hand of the messengers, and
read them, and went up to the house
of YAHWEH. And Hezekiah spread it
before the face of YAHWEH.
15 And Hezekiah prayed before
YAHWEH, and said, O YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel, who sits above the
cherubs, You are He, The Elohim who
all life comes from, to all the kingdoms
of the earth; You have made the
heavens and the earth.
16 O YAHWEH, incline Your ear
and hear; O YAHWEH, open Your
eyes and see; and hear the words of
Sennacherib with which he has sent
him to reproach the living Elohim.
17 Truly, O YAHWEH, the kings of
Assyria have laid waste the nations,
and their lands;
18 and have put their gods into the
fire, for they were no Elohim, but the
work of the hands of man, wood and
stone, and have destroyed them.
19 And now, O YAHWEH our
Elohim, we pray to You, save us out of
his hand, and all the kingdoms of the
earth shall know that You are
YAHWEH Elohim, and life only
comes from you.
20 And Isaiah the son of Amoz sent
to Hezekiah, saying, So says
YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, I
have heard that which you have
prayed to Me regarding Sennacherib
the king of Assyria;
21 this is the Word that YAHWEH
spoke concerning him: The virgin
daughter of Zion has despised you and
laughed you to scorn; the daughter of
Jerusalem has shaken her head behind
you.
22 Whom have you reproached and
reviled? Against whom have you lifted
up a voice? Yea, you have lifted up
your eyes on high, even against the
Holy One of Israel!
23 By the hand of your messengers,
you have defamed YAHWEH, and
have said, With the multitude of my
chariots I have gone up to the height of
the mountains, to the sides of
Lebanon, and I will cut down the
height of its cedars, the best of its firs,
and I will enter into the furthest
dwelling, its densest forest;
24 I have dug and drunk strange
waters, and I dried up with the sole of
my feet all the rivers of Egypt.
25 Have you not heard from afar, I
made it? From days of old I formed it.
Now I have caused it to come, that you
should make fortified cities desolate
ruin heaps.
26 And those living in them were
short in hand; they were terrified and
were ashamed; they were as the grass
of the field, and the green herb, as the
grass on the housetops and blasted
grain before it was grown!
27 But I have known your sitting
down, and your going out, and your
coming in, and your rage against Me.
28 Because of your raging against
Me, and because your arrogance has
come up into My ears, even I will put
My hook in your nose, and My bridle
in your lips, and I will turn you back
by the way which you came.
29 And this shall be the sign for you:
you shall eat this year that which
grows of itself, and in the second year
that which is self produced; and in the
third year you shall sow, and reap, and
plant vineyards, and eat their fruit.
30 And the escaped ones of the
house of Judah that is left shall again
take root downward, and bear fruit
upward.
31 For out of Jerusalem shall go
forth a remnant, and out of Mount
Zion they that shall escape; the zeal of
YAHWEH of Hosts shall do this.
32 So YAHWEH says this
concerning the king of Assyria, He
shall not come into this city, nor shoot

an arrow there, nor come before it
with shield, nor shall he pour out a
siege mound against it.
33 By the way that he came in, in it
he shall return; and he shall not come
into this city, says YAHWEH.
34 For I will defend this city, to save
it, for My own sake, and for My
servant David's sake.
35 And it happened in that night,
that the Messenger of YAHWEH went
out and struck a hundred and eighty
five thousand in the camp of Assyria;
and they rose up early in the morning,
and behold, all of them were dead
bodies.
36 And Sennacherib the king of
Assyria moved, and went and
returned, and lived in Nineveh.
37 And it happened, as he was
bowing himself in the house of his
Elohim Nisroch, his sons
Adrammelech and Sharezer struck
him with the sword; and they escaped
into the land of Ararat. And his son
Esarhaddon reigned in his place.

Chapter 20

1 In those days Hezekiah was sick to
death, and Isaiah the prophet, the son
of Amoz, came to him and said to him,
So says YAHWEH, Order your house,
for you are dying, and shall not live.
2 And he turned his face to the wall,
and prayed to YAHWEH, saying,
3 I pray to You, O YAHWEH, please
remember how I have walked always
before your face in truth, and with a
perfect heart, and I have done the
good in Your eyes. And Hezekiah wept
with a great weeping.
4 And it happened when Isaiah had
not gone out to the middle court, the
Word of YAHWEH came to him,
saying,
5 Return, and you shall say to
Hezekiah the leader of My people, So
says YAHWEH, the Elohim of your
father David, I have heard your
prayer; I have seen your tears; behold,
I will heal you; you shall go up to the
house of YAHWEH the third day.
6 And I have added fifteen years to
your days; and I will deliver you and
this city out of the hand of the king of
Assyria, and shall defend this city for
My own sake, and for My servant
David's sake.
7 And Isaiah said, Take a cake of figs;
and they took and laid it on the boil;
and he revived.
8 And Hezekiah said to Isaiah, What
will be the sign that YAHWEH will
heal me, that I will go up on the third
day to the house of YAHWEH? *(Is
38:8)*
9 And Isaiah said, This will be the
sign to you from YAHWEH, that
YAHWEH will do the thing that He
has spoken: Shall the shadow advance
ten steps, or shall it return ten steps?
10 And Hezekiah said, It would be a
light thing for the shadow to go down
ten steps; no, but let the shadow go
back ten steps.
11 And Isaiah the prophet cried to
YAHWEH; and He brought back the
shadow by the steps the shadow had
gone down on the sundial stairs of
Ahaz, ten steps backward.
12 At that time Berodach-Baladan,
the son of Baladan the king of
Babylon, sent letters and a present to
Hezekiah, for he heard that Hezekiah
had been ill.
13 And Hezekiah listened to them,
and showed them all the house of his
treasury, the silver and the gold, and
the spices, and the precious ointment,
and all the house of his weapons, and
all found in his treasure house; there
was not a thing that Hezekiah did not
show them in his house and in all his
dominion.
14 And Isaiah the prophet came in to

King Hezekiah and said to him, What did these men say? And where did they come from to you? And Hezekiah said, They have come from a land afar off, from Babylon.
15 And he said, What did they see in your house? And Hezekiah said, They saw all that is in my house; there was not a thing that I did not show them from my storehouses.
16 And Isaiah said to Hezekiah, Hear the Word of YAHWEH:
17 Behold, the days are coming when all that is in your house, and all that your fathers have treasured up until this day, shall be carried to Babylon; there shall not be a thing left, says YAHWEH.
18 And of your sons that shall go out from you, whom you shall father, they shall be taken away, and they shall be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.
19 And Hezekiah said to Isaiah, The Word of YAHWEH that you have spoken is good. And he said, Is it not good if peace and truth are in my days?
20 And the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and all his might, and how he made the pool, and the conduit, and brought in the waters to the city, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?[1]
21 And Hezekiah lay with his fathers. And his son Manasseh reigned in his place.

Chapter 21

1 Manasseh was a son of twelve years when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty five years in Jerusalem, and the name of his mother was Hephzibah.
2 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, according to the abominable customs of the nations that YAHWEH expelled from before the sons of Israel. *(2Kgs 23:26-17)*
3 And he built again the high places that his father Hezekiah had destroyed, and raised up altars for Baal, and made an Asherah, as did Ahab the king of Israel, and worshiped all the host of the heavens, and served them.
4 And he built altars in the house of YAHWEH, of which YAHWEH had said, In Jerusalem I will put My name.
5 And he built altars for all the host of the heavens in the two courts of the house of YAHWEH.
6 And he made his son to pass through the fire, used magic, and used divination, and dealt with mediums and soothsayers. He expanded to work the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, to provoke Him to anger.[2]
7 And he set a graven image of the Asherah that he had made in the house of which YAHWEH had said to David and to his son Solomon, In this house, and in Jerusalem, that I have chosen out of all the tribes of Israel, I will put My name forever.
8 And I will not again make the feet of Israel wander any more out of the land which I gave their fathers; only if they observe to do all that I

[1] Hezekiah made a tunnel out of the rock to bring the water inside the city walls in case of a siege. This tunnel was found in the 1890's with the inscription from Hezekiah in Jerusalem near the pool of Shiloam.

[2] Verses 1-6- Manasseh was 12 yrs old and Hezekiah was granted 15 yrs after his prayer to YHWH for more time to live, so Manasseh would have never been born had Hezekiah not asked YHWH for more time and it would have saved the life and sorrow of untold thousands in Judah from his evil ways. Sometimes it is better to simply trust in YHWH's mercy than to dictate our desires to Him from our own selfish hearts.

commanded them, and to all the
Torah that My servant Moses
commanded them.
9 But they did not listen, and
Manasseh caused them to be led astray
above the nations that YAHWEH had
destroyed from before the sons of
Israel.
10 And YAHWEH spoke by His
servants the prophets, saying,
11 Because Manasseh the king of
Judah has done these abominations,
doing more wickedly than all that the
Amorites did before him, and has
made Judah also to sin with his idols,
12 therefore so says YAHWEH, the
Elohim of Israel, Behold, I am
bringing evil on Jerusalem and Judah,
so that whoever hears of it, his two
ears shall tingle.
13 And I will stretch out over
Jerusalem the line of Samaria, and the
plummet of the house of Ahab, and
shall wipe Jerusalem as one wipes a
dish (he wipes and turns it on its face).
14 And I will abandon the remnant
of My inheritance, and give them into
the hand of their enemies; and they
shall be for a prey and for a spoil to all
their enemies,
15 because they have done evil in My
eyes, and have provoked Me to anger
from the day their fathers came out of
Egypt, even to this day.
16 And also Manasseh has shed very
much innocent blood, till he has filled
Jerusalem from mouth to mouth;
apart from his sin that he caused
Judah to sin, to do evil in the eyes of
YAHWEH.
17 And the rest of the acts of
Manasseh, and all that he did, and his
sin that he sinned, are they not written
in the Book of the Matters of the Days
of the Kings of Judah?
18 And Manasseh lay with his
fathers, and was buried in the garden
of his house in the Garden of Uzza.
And his son Amon reigned in his place.
19 Amon was a son of twenty two
years when he began to reign, and he
reigned two years in Jerusalem; and
the name of his mother was
Meshullemeth the daughter of Haruz
of Jotbah.
20 And he did evil in the eyes of
YAHWEH, as his father Manasseh
did,
21 and walked in all the way that his
father walked, and served the idols
that his father served, and bowed
himself to them.
22 And he forsook YAHWEH, the
Elohim of his fathers, and did not walk
in the way of YAHWEH.
23 And the servants of Amon
conspired against him and killed the
king in his own house.
24 And the people of the land killed
all those who conspired against King
Amon, and the people of the land
made his son Josiah king in his place.
25 And the rest of the acts of Amon
that he did, are they not written in the
Book of the Matters of the Days of the
Kings of Judah?
26 And they buried him in his grave
in the garden of Uzza. And his son
Josiah reigned in his place.

Chapter 22

1 Josiah was a son of eight years
when he began to reign, and he
reigned thirty one years in Jerusalem;
and the name of his mother was
Jedidah the daughter of Adaiah of
Boscath.
2 And he did the good in the eyes of
YAHWEH, and walked in all the way
of his father David, and did not turn
aside to the right or the left.
3 And it happened, in the eighteenth
year of King Josiah, the king sent
Shaphan the son of Azaliah, the son of

Meshullam, the scribe, to the house of YAHWEH, saying,

4 Go to Hilkiah the high priest, and he shall count the silver that is brought into the house of YAHWEH that the keepers of the door have gathered from the people.

5 And they will give into the hand of the workers, those who oversee in the house of YAHWEH; and they shall give it to the doers of the work who are in the house of YAHWEH, to repair the breaks of the house;

6 to the carpenters, and to the builders, and to the masons, and to buy wood and cut stone to strengthen the house;

7 only, the silver that is given into their hand shall not be reckoned with them, for they are acting in faithfulness.

8 And Hilkiah the high priest said to Shaphan the scribe, I have found the Book of the Torah in the house of YAHWEH; and Hilkiah gave the book to Shaphan, and he read it.

9 And Shaphan the scribe came to the king and brought back word to the king, and said, Your servants have poured out the silver that has been found in the house, and have given it into the hand of the doers of the work, those who oversee in the house of YAHWEH.

10 And Shaphan the scribe told the king, saying, Hilkiah the priest has given a book to me; and Shaphan read it before the king.

11 And it happened when the king heard the Words of the Book of the Torah, he tore his garments.

12 And the king commanded Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam the son of Shaphan, and Achbor the son of Micaiah, and Shaphan the scribe, and Asahiah the king's servant, saying,

13 Go, inquire of YAHWEH for me, and for the people, and for all Judah, as to the Words of this Book that has been found; for great is the wrath of YAHWEH that burns against us, because our fathers have not listened to the Words of this Book, to do according to all that which is written concerning us.

14 And Hilkiah the priest, and Ahikam, and Achbor, and Shaphan, and Asahiah, went to Huldah the prophetess the wife of Shallum, the son of Tikvah, the son of Harhas, the keeper of the wardrobe (and she lived in Jerusalem, in the second quarter). And they spoke with her.

15 And she said to them, So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, Tell the man that sent you to me,

16 So says YAHWEH, Behold, I will bring evil on this place, and on its inhabitants, even all the Words of the Book which the king of Judah has read;

17 because they have forsaken Me and have burned incense to other gods, that they might provoke Me to anger with all the works of their hands; therefore My wrath shall be kindled against this place, and shall not be quenched.

18 And to the king of Judah who sent you to inquire of YAHWEH, you shall say this to him, So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, the words that you have heard,

19 (because your heart was tender, and you have bowed before YAHWEH when you heard what I spoke against this place, and against those living in it, to become a desolation and a curse, and have torn your clothes, and have wept before Me;) even also I have heard, says YAHWEH.

20 Behold! Even so I will gather you to your fathers, and you shall be gathered into your grave in peace; and your eyes shall not see all the evil which I will bring on this place. And

they brought back this word to the king.

Chapter 23

1 And the king sent, and they gathered to him all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem.

2 And the king went up to the house of YAHWEH, and every man of Judah, and all the ones living in Jerusalem with him, and the priests, and the prophets, and all the people, from small to great; and he read in their ears all the Words of the Book of the covenant that was found in the house of YAHWEH. *(1Kgs 13:1-2)*

3 And the king stood by the pillar, and made the covenant before YAHWEH, to walk after YAHWEH, and to keep His commandments, and His testimonies, and His statutes, with all his heart, and with all his soul, to lift up the Words of this covenant that were written in this Book. And all the people stood to the covenant.

4 And the king commanded Hilkiah the high priest, and the priests of the second order, and the keepers of the door, to bring out from the temple of YAHWEH all the vessels that were made for Baal, and for Asherah, and for all the host of the heavens. And he burned them at the outside of Jerusalem, in the fields of Kidron[1], and carried their ashes to Bethel.

5 And he caused to cease the idolatrous priests whom the kings of Judah had given place to burn incense in the high places in the cities of Judah, and in the places around Jerusalem, and those burning incense to Baal, to the sun, and to the moon, and to constellations, and to all the host of the heavens.

6 And he brought out the sacred pole[2] from the house of YAHWEH to the outside of Jerusalem, to the torrent Kidron, and burned it at the torrent Kidron, and ground it to powder, and threw the powder of it on the graves of the sons of the people.

7 And he broke down the houses of the male prostitutes that were in the house of YAHWEH, where the women were weaving shelters for Asherah.

8 And he made all the priests come in out of the cities of Judah, and defiled the high places where the priests burned incense, from Geba to Beer-Sheba, and broke down the high places of the gates that were at the entrance of the gate of Yahoshua the governor of the city, which were on a man's left hand at the gate of the city.

9 However the priests of the high places did not come up to the altar of YAHWEH in Jerusalem, but they ate unleavened bread among their brothers.

10 And he defiled Topheth in the valley of the sons of Hinnom, so that no man could cause his son and his daughter to pass through the fire of Molech. *(Is 30:33, Lev 20:2)*

11 And he caused to cease the horses that the kings of Judah had given to the sun, at the entrance of the house of YAHWEH, by the room of Nathan-Melech the eunuch, that was in the suburbs. And he burned with fire the chariots of the sun.

12 And the altars that were on the top of the upper room of Ahaz, which the kings of Judah had made, and the altars which Manasseh had made in the two courts of the house of YAHWEH, the king broke down, and ran from there and threw the dust of them into the torrent Kidron.

13 And the high places that were

---

[1] These were cultivated terraced gardens

[2] These were Asherah poles made of wood with a depiction of the false goddess Asherah.

before Jerusalem, which were on the right hand of the Mount of Corruption, which Solomon the king of Israel had built for Ashtoreth the idol of the Sidonians, and for Chemosh the idol of the Moabites, and for Milcom the idol of the sons of Ammon, the king defiled.

14 And he broke the images in pieces, and cut down the Asherahs, and filled their places with the bones of men.

15 And also the altar that was in Bethel, the high place that Jeroboam the son of Nebat had made by which he made Israel to sin, both that altar and the high place he broke down, and burned the high place; he ground it into powder, and burned the Asherah.

16 And Josiah turned and saw the graves that were there in the mount, and sent and took the bones out of the graves and burned them on the altar, and defiled it according to the Word of YAHWEH that the man of Elohim had proclaimed, who had proclaimed these things.

17 And he said, What is this monument that I see? And the men of the city said to him, The grave of the man of the true Elohim who came from Judah and proclaimed these things that you have done concerning the altar of Bethel.

18 And he said, Let him alone, let no one touch his bones. And they let his bones escape with the bones of the prophet that came out of Samaria.

19 And also all the houses of the high places in the cities of Samaria, that the kings of Israel had made to provoke to anger, Josiah took away, and he did to them according to all the acts that he had done in Bethel.

20 And he slaughtered all the priests of the high places who were there by the altars, and burned the bones of man upon them, and returned to Jerusalem.

21 And the king commanded all the people, saying, Perform a Passover to YAHWEH your Elohim, as it is written in this Book of the covenant.

22 Surely none has been performed like this Passover from the days of the Judges who judged Israel even to all the days of the kings of Israel, and of the kings of Judah;

23 but in the eighteenth year of King Josiah, this Passover was prepared to YAHWEH in Jerusalem.

24 And also the mediums, and the spirit-knowers, and the family gods, and the idols, and all the detestable things that were seen in the land of Judah and in Jerusalem, Josiah put away in order to fulfill the Words of the Torah that were written in the Book that Hilkiah the priest had found in the house of YAHWEH.

25 And there was no king before him like him, who turned to YAHWEH with all his heart, and with all his soul, and with all his might, according to all the Torah of Moses; and after him none rose up like him.

26 However, YAHWEH did not turn away from the fury of His great anger with which His anger glowed against Judah, because of all the provocations with which Manasseh had provoked Him.

27 And YAHWEH said, I will also turn away Judah from My face, as I turned Israel away, and I will reject this city that I have chosen, Jerusalem, and the house of which I have said, My name shall be there.

28 And the rest of the acts of Josiah, and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

29 In his days Pharaoh-Necho the king of Egypt came up against the king of Assyria by the river Euphrates; and

King Josiah went out to meet him, and he killed him in Megiddo, when he saw him.

30 And his servants made him ride dead from Megiddo, and brought him to Jerusalem, and they buried him in his own grave. And the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah and anointed him, and made him king in place of his father.

31 Jehoahaz was a son of twenty three years when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Hamutal the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.

32 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH according to all that his fathers did.

33 And Pharaoh-Necho bound him in Riblah, in the land of Hamath, from reigning in Jerusalem, and he put a fine on the land, a hundred talents of silver and a talent of gold.

34 And Pharaoh-Necho made Eliakim the son of Josiah to reign instead of Josiah his father, and turned his name into Jehoiakim; and he took away Jehoahaz, and he came to Egypt and died there.

35 And Jehoiakim gave the silver and the gold to Pharaoh; but he taxed the land to give the silver by the mouth of Pharaoh. From each, according to his valuation, he exacted the silver and gold from the people of the land, to give to Pharaoh-Necho.

36 Jehoiakim was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem eleven years; and the name of his mother was Zebudah the daughter of Pedaiah of Rumah.

37 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH according to all that his fathers did.

Chapter 24

1 In his days Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon came up, and Jehoiakim was a servant to him three years; and he turned and rebelled against him.

2 And YAHWEH sent against him the troops of the Chaldeans, and the troops of Syria, and the troops of Moab, and the troops of the Ammonites; and He sent them against Judah to destroy it, according to the Word of YAHWEH that He spoke by the hand of His servants the prophets.

3 Only at the mouth of YAHWEH this came upon Judah, to remove them from His presence for the sins of Manasseh, according to all he did,

4 and also the innocent blood that he shed; for he filled Jerusalem with innocent blood, and YAHWEH was not willing to forgive.

5 And the rest of the acts of Jehoiakim and all that he did, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Judah?

6 And Jehoiakim lay with his fathers. And his son Jehoiachin reigned in his place.

7 And the king of Egypt did not come again out of his land; for the king of Babylon had taken from the river of Egypt to the Euphrates River, all owned by the king of Egypt.

8 Jehoiachin was a son of eighteen years when he began to reign and he reigned in Jerusalem three months; and the name of his mother was Nehushta, the daughter of Elnathan of Jerusalem.

9 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH according to all that his fathers did.

10 At that time the servants of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon came to Jerusalem, and the city came under siege.

11 And Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon came against the city, and his servants lay siege to it.

12 And Jehoiachin the king of Judah went out to the king of Babylon, he and his mother, and his servants, and his leaders, and his eunuchs. And the king of Babylon took him in the eighth year of his reign.

13 And he brought out from there all the treasures of the house of YAHWEH, and the treasures of the house of the king, and cut in pieces all the vessels of gold that Solomon the king of Israel had made in the temple of YAHWEH, as YAHWEH had spoken.

14 And he carried away all Jerusalem, and all the leaders, and all the mighty men of valor, even ten thousand captives, and all the craftsmen and the smiths; none remained except the poorest sort of the people of the land.

15 And he exiled Jehoiachin to Babylon, and the king's mother, and the king's wives, and his eunuchs, and the mighty ones of the land; he caused a captivity to go from Jerusalem to Babylon.

16 And all the men of valor were seven thousand, and the craftsmen and the smiths a thousand; all were mighty men, warriors; and the king of Babylon brought them in a captivity to Babylon.

17 And the king of Babylon made Mattaniah, the brother of his father, to reign in his place, and turned his name into Zedekiah.

18 Zedekiah was a son of twenty one years when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem eleven years; and the name of his mother was Hamutal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah.

19 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH according to all that Jehoiakim did.

20 For through the anger of YAHWEH it happened in Jerusalem and Judah, until He had cast them out from His face, that Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon.

Chapter 25

1 And it happened in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth of the month, Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon came, he and all his army, against Jerusalem, and camped against it, and built a siege mound all around it.

2 And the city entered into siege until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah,

3 on the ninth of the month, when the famine was severe in the city, and there was no bread for the people of the land,

4 then the city was broken into, and by night all the men of war went by way of the gate, between the two walls by the king's garden; and the Chaldeans were against the city all around; and the king went the way toward the Arabah.

5 And the army of the Chaldeans pursued the king and overtook him in the Arabah of Jericho; and all his army was scattered from him.

6 And they seized the king and brought him to the king of Babylon, to Riblah; and they gave judgment on him.

7 And they killed the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes, and blinded Zedekiah's eyes, and bound him with copper fetters and caused him to go to Babylon.

8 And in the fifth month, on the seventh of the month (it was the nineteenth year of King Nebuchad-nezzar, the king of Babylon) Nebuzaradan the chief of the

executioners, the servant of the king of Babylon, came to Jerusalem.

9 And he burned the house of YAHWEH, and the king's house, and all the houses of Jerusalem; yea, he burned every great house with fire.

10 And all the army of the Chaldeans who were with the chief of the executioners broke down the wall of Jerusalem all around.

11 And the rest of the people, those left in the city, and those that had fallen away, that fell to the king of Babylon, and the rest of the multitude, Nebuzaradan the chief of the executioners exiled.

12 But the chief of the executioners left of the poorest of the land for vinedressers and farmers.

13 And the copper pillars in the house of YAHWEH, and the bases, and the copper sea in the house of YAHWEH, the Chaldeans broke in pieces and lifted up their copper to Babylon.

14 And they took the pots, and the shovels, and the snuffers, and the spoons, and all the vessels of copper with which they ministered.

15 And the chief of the executioners took the firepans, and the sprinkling basins, all of gold and silver.

16 There was no weighing of the copper of all these vessels, the two pillars, the one sea, and the bases that Solomon had made for the house of YAHWEH.

17 Eighteen cubits was the height of the one pillar, and the capital on it was of copper, and the height of the capital was three cubits, and the grating and the pomegranates were on the capital all around; all was of copper. And the second pillar was like these with the grating.

18 And the chief of the executioners took Seraiah the head priest, and Zephaniah the second priest, and the three keepers of the gate;

19 and he took out of the city a certain eunuch who was appointed over the men of war, and five men of those who saw the king's face, found in the city, and the chief scribe of the army who mustered the people of the land, and sixty men of the people of the land found in the city.

20 And Nebuzaradan chief of the executioners took them and made them go to the king of Babylon, to Riblah.

21 And the king of Babylon struck them, and killed them in Riblah, in the land of Hamath; and he exiled Judah from its land.

22 And the people that were left in the land of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had left, he appointed over them Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan.

23 And all the commanders of the army, they and the men, heard that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah. And they came to Gedaliah, to Mizpeh, even Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, and Johanan the son of Careah, and Seraiah the son of Tanhumeth the Netophathite, and Jaazaniah the son of a Maachathite, they and their men.

24 And Gedaliah swore to them, and to their men, and said to them, Do not be afraid of the servants of the Chaldeans; live in the land and serve the king of Babylon, and it shall be well with you.

25 And it happened in the seventh month Ishmael the son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama of the seed of the kingdom, and ten men with him came, and they struck Gedaliah, and he died, and the Jews and the Chaldeans who were with him in Mizpah.

26 And all the people rose up, from the small even to the great, and the

commanders of the armies, and came into Egypt, for they were afraid of the face of the Chaldeans.

27 And it happened in the thirty seventh year of the captivity of Jehoiachin the king of Judah, in the twelfth month, in the twenty seventh of the month, Evil-Merodach the king of Babylon, in the year he began to reign, lifted up the head of Jehoiachin the king of Judah out of the prison,

28 and spoke good things with him, and put his throne above the throne of the kings with him in Babylon.

29 And he changed his prison garments, and he ate bread continually before him all the days of his life.

30 And his allowance, a continual allowance, was given to him from the king, a daily rate for every day, all the days of his life.

Book of Isaiah 740-680 BC

Chapter 1

1 The vision of Isaiah the son of Amoz, which he saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.

2 Hear, O heavens, and listen, O earth! For YAHWEH has spoken: I have enlarged and brought up sons, but they have rebelled against Me.

3 The ox knows his owner, the donkey his master's manger, but Israel does not know; My people have not understood.

4 Woe, sinful nation, a people heavy with iniquity, a seed of evildoers, sons who corrupt! They have forsaken YAHWEH; they have scorned the Holy One of Israel. They are estranged backward.

5 Why will you be beaten any more? Will you continue the revolt? The whole head is sick, and the whole heart is faint.

6 From the sole of the foot even to the head, no soundness is in it; only a wound and a stripe and a fresh blow; they have not been closed, nor bound up; nor softened with oil.

7 Your land is a desolation; your cities burned with fire. Foreigners devour your land before you; and behold, ruin, as overthrown by foreigners.

8 And the daughter of Zion is left like a booth in a vineyard, like a hut in a cucumber field, like a besieged city.

9 Except YAHWEH of Hosts had left a remnant for us, a few, we would be as Sodom; we would be as Gomorrah[1].

10 Hear the Word of YAHWEH, rulers of Sodom. Listen to the Torah of our Elohim, people of Gomorrah.

11 What good to Me are your many sacrifices, says YAHWEH? I am full with burnt offerings of rams, the fat of fattened cattle, and the blood of bulls; nor do I delight in the blood of lambs and he-goats.

12 When you come to see My face, who has required this at your hand, to trample My courts?

13 Do not add to bringing vain sacrifice; its incense is an abomination to Me. The new moon and Sabbath, the going to meeting, I cannot endure the evil assembly.

14 My soul hates your new moons and your appointed feasts. They are a burden to Me. I am disgusted of bearing them.

15 And when you spread out your hands, I will hide My eyes from you. Yea, when you multiply prayer, I will not hear. Your hands are full of blood.[2]

16 Wash yourselves, purify yourselves. Put away the evil of your doings from My sight; stop doing evil.

17 Learn to do good, seek justice, make straight the violent one, judge the orphan, contend for the widow.[3]

18 Come now and let us reason together, says YAHWEH: Though your sins are as scarlet, they shall be white as snow; though they are red as the crimson, they shall be like wool.

19 If you are willing and hear, you shall eat the good of the land.

20 But if you refuse and rebel, you shall be devoured with the sword; for the mouth of YAHWEH has spoken.

21 Oh how the faithful city has become a harlot! She was full of justice; righteousness lodged in it. But now, murderers!

22 Your silver has become dross; your wine is diluted with water.[4]

---

[1] Ro 9:29 it is always only a remnant that is faithful.

[2] Pr 28:9

[3] Ezek 22:7, Jac 1:27

[4] They were overtaken with a spirit of compromise.

23 Your princes are rebellious and companions of thieves. Everyone loves a bribe, and is pursuing rewards. They do not judge the orphan, nor does the cause of the widow come to them,

24 and says the Master, YAHWEH of Hosts, the mighty One of Israel, Alas! I will be eased of My foes, and avenge Myself of My enemies.

25 And I will return My hand on you, and refine your dross, as with lye, and turn aside all your alloy.

26 And I will return your judges as at the first; and your advisers, as at the beginning; then you shall be called the city of righteousness, a faithful city[1].

27 Zion shall be redeemed with justice, and her returning ones with righteousness.[2]

28 And the ruin of the transgressors and of the sinners shall be together. And those who forsake YAHWEH shall be consumed.

29 For they shall be ashamed of the trees which you lusted after; and you shall be ashamed of the gardens that you have chosen.[3]

30 For you shall be like a tree whose leaf fades, and like a garden that has no water in it.

31 And the strong shall be for tow, and his work for a spark; and they shall burn both together and no one shall quench them. *(Math 3:12)*

Chapter 2

1 The Word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning Judah and Jerusalem:

2 And it shall be in the last days, the mountain[4] of the house of YAHWEH shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow into it.

3 And many people shall go and say, Come and let us go up to the mount of YAHWEH, to the house of the Elohim of Jacob. And He will teach from His ways, and we will walk in His paths. For out of Zion the Torah will go forth, and the Word of YAHWEH from Jerusalem[5].

4 And He shall judge among the nations and shall rebuke many people. And they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruning hooks. Nation shall not lift up sword against nation, nor shall they learn war any more.

5 Oh house of Jacob, come and let us walk in the light of YAHWEH.

6 For You have forsaken Your people, the house of Jacob, because they are filled from the east, and are fortunetellers like the Philistines. And they clap hands with children of foreigners.

7 And his land is filled with silver and gold. There is no end of his treasures. And his land is full of horses; his chariots also do not have an end.

8 And his land is full of idols; they worship the work of their own hands, that which their own fingers have made.

9 And man bowed down; and man

---

1 It was never the intention of YHWH to have a earthly king over Israel. The original system set up under Moses was for judges in each area and captains over 1,000's, over 100's and 50's and over 10's. YAHWEH would have been King over them. (1Sam 8:4-9)

2 Is 35:9-10, 51:10-11, 52:9, 59:20

3 These were used for cultic worship. 2Kgs 16:4, Hos 4:13

4 Mountain is synonymous in scripture with a kingdom or large land mass (Rev 17:9).

5 Jerusalem is where the Garden of Eden was and has been set apart for YHWH from creation as His headquarters and will be restored as His eternal dwelling place when Yahshua returns. (Mich 4:2)

was humbled, but You do not lift them up.
10 Enter into the rock and hide in the dust from fear of YAHWEH, and from the glory of His majesty.
11 The lofty eyes of the proud man shall be humbled, and the pride of men shall be bowed down; but YAHWEH, He alone, will be exalted in that day.
12 For the day of YAHWEH of Hosts shall be on all the proud and lofty ones, and on all that is lifted up; and it will be abased;
13 and against all Lebanon's cedars, high and lifted up; and against all the oaks of Bashan[1];
14 and against all the high mountains; and against all the lifted up hills;
15 and against every tall tower; and against every fortified wall;
16 and against all the ships of Tarshish[2]; and on all desirable craft.
17 And the pride of man shall be humbled; and the loftiness of men shall be abased; and YAHWEH alone will be exalted in that day.
18 And the idols shall completely vanish.
19 And they shall go into the caves of the rocks, and into the holes of the earth, for dread of YAHWEH, and from the glory of His majesty; when He rises up to make the earth quake.
20 In that day a man shall throw his silver and his golden idols which they made for him to worship to the hole of the burrower and to bats;
21 To go into the crevices of the rocks, and into the clefts of the cliffs, from the dread of YAHWEH, and from the glory of His majesty, when He rises up to make the earth quake.
22 Cease yourself from man, whose breath is in his nostril; for in what is he to be esteemed?

Chapter 3

1 For, behold, the Master, YAHWEH of Hosts, takes away the stay and the staff from Jerusalem and from Judah; the whole stay of bread and the whole stay of water;
2 the mighty man and the man of war; the judge, the prophet and the one divining and the elder;
3 the commander of fifty and the exalted of face; the counselor and the skilled craftsman; and the expert enchanter.
4 And I will give young boys to be their rulers, and a tyrant shall rule over them.
5 And the people shall be crushed, man against man, and a man on his neighbor. The boy will be insolent against the elder, and the despised against the honorable.
6 When a man shall take hold of his brother, at his father's house, saying, A cloak! Come, you be a ruler for us; let this ruin be under your hand.
7 In that day he shall swear, saying, I will not be one who binds up; for there is no bread nor a cloak in my house; you shall not make me a ruler of the people.
8 For Jerusalem has stumbled, and Judah has fallen; because their tongue and their doings toward YAHWEH are to rebel against the eyes of His glory.
9 The expression of their faces witnesses against them; they have declared their sin like Sodom; they do

---

1 An analogy on pride, which is lifted up with the large cedar trees of Lebanon. The oak tree is one of the strongest and longest lasting, showing the contrast of the strength of Yahweh, which is greater than the longest lasting trees

2 These were especially large ships that carried smelted metal to Tarshish. Tarshish means smelted metal.

not hide it. Woe to their soul! For they
have dealt evil to themselves.
10 Say to the righteous that it is well;
for they shall eat of the fruit of their
doings.
11 Woe to the wicked! For the evil,
the doing of his hand will be done to
him.
12 As for My people, children are
their oppressors, and women rule over
him[1]. Oh My people, those leading you
cause you to go astray, and they
swallow the way of your paths.
13 YAHWEH stands up to plead His
cause, and stands up to judge the
peoples.
14 YAHWEH will enter into
judgment with the elders of His people
and their kings. For you have eaten up
the vineyard, the plunder of the poor is
in your houses.
15 What do you mean that you crush
My people, and grind the faces of the
poor, says Adonai YAHWEH of
Hosts?
16 And YAHWEH says, Because the
daughters of Zion are proud, and walk
with stretched out necks and wanton[2]
eyes, walking and mincing as they go,
and make a tinkling with their feet;
17 So YAHWEH will make the
crown of the daughter of Zion scabby;
and YAHWEH will lay their secret
parts bare.
18 In that day YAHWEH will take
away the beauty of the ankle bracelets,
the headbands, and the crescents,
19 the pendants, the bracelets and
the veils;
20 the turbans, the leg ornaments,
the sashes and the houses of the soul,
and the amulets;
21 the rings and nose jewels;
22 the festal apparel and the outer
garments; and the mantles, and the
purses[3];
23 the mirrors and the fine linen;
and the turbans and the veils.
24 And it shall be, instead of a smell
of perfume, there shall be an odor of
decay. And instead of a sash, a rope.
And instead of well set hair, baldness.
And instead of a rich robe, a girding of
sackcloth; a scar instead of beauty.
25 Your men shall fall by the sword
and your mighty in the war.
26 And her gates shall lament and
mourn; and she shall sit bare on the
ground.

Chapter 4

1 And in that day seven women shall
take hold of one man, saying, We will
eat our own bread and wear our own
clothing, only let your name be called
on us[4]; collect our shame.
2 In that day the Branch of
YAHWEH will be beautiful and
glorious, and the fruit of the earth for
pride and for glory for the survivors of
Israel.
3 And it shall be, he remaining in
Zion, and he who is left in Jerusalem,
shall be called holy, every one who is
written among the living in Jerusalem;
4 When YAHWEH shall have
washed away the filth of the daughters
of Zion, and the blood of Jerusalem
shall have been rinsed away from its

[1] A prophecy for the last days of the break down of the family.

[2] The Hebrew word Shakar means painted eyes. In ancient days only prostitutes would paint the eyes and wear lipstick to attack their prey.

[3] These ornaments being mentioned are showing Israel living in a state of prosperity and ease and due to disobedience YHWH is going to bring punishment.

[4] Showing in the end times women feeling that they can be independent of husbands as their Elohim given covering and want children out of wedlock.

midst by a spirit of judgment, and by a spirit of burning[1].

5 Then YAHWEH will create a cloud and smoke by day, and the shining of a flaming fire by night, over all the site of Mount Zion, and over her assemblies; for over all the glory will be a canopy.

6 And there shall be a booth for a shade from the heat, and for a refuge, and for a hiding place from storm and rain[2].

Chapter 5

1 Now I will sing to my Beloved a song of my Beloved concerning His vineyard: My Beloved has a vineyard in a fruitful horn[3]. *(Is 27:2)*

2 And He dug it, and cleared it of stones, and planted it with the choicest vine, and built a tower in its midst, and also hewed out a wine vat in it. And He waited for it to produce grapes, but it produced rotten grapes.

3 And now, O people of Jerusalem and men of Judah, I ask you, judge between Me and My vineyard.

4 What more could have been done to My vineyard that I have not done in it? Who knows? I waited for it to yield grapes, but it yielded rotten grapes[4].

5 And now I will make known to you what I will do then to My vineyard. I will take away its hedge, and it will be burned. I will breach its wall, and it will become a trampling ground.

6 And I will lay it waste; it shall not be pruned nor hoed; but briers and thorns shall come up. And I will command the clouds from raining rain on it.

7 For the vineyard of YAHWEH of Hosts is the house of Israel, and the man of Judah is His delightful plant. And He waited for justice, but behold, bloodshed; for righteousness, but behold, a cry!

8 Woe to those touching house to house, bringing near field to field until the end of space, and you are made to dwell alone in the middle of the land[5]!

9 YAHWEH of Hosts has sworn in my ears, If not, many houses shall be a waste, large and beautiful ones without one living in them.

10 Yea, ten acres of vineyard shall yield one bath, and the seed of a homer shall yield an ephah.

11 Woe to those who rise early in the morning to pursue fermented drink, tarrying in the twilight while wine inflames them!

12 And the lyre and the harp, the timbrel and flute, and wine are at their feasts; but they do not regard the work of YAHWEH; yea, they do not see the work of His hands.

13 For this My people go into exile without knowledge, and his men of glory into famine; and his multitude is parched with thirst.

14 So Sheol has enlarged its appetite, and opened its mouth without measure, and her glory and her multitude, and her uproar, he who exults in her, shall come down in it.

15 And man is bowed down, and

---

1 Depicting a great judgment that will come due to the immoral system being displayed.

2 Showing a heavenly security that will follow the judgment.

3 Is 5:1-12, Israel in other places (Jer 12:10, Math 21:33-45) has been pictured as a vineyard to whom YHWH had nurtured but which yielded very little fruit.

4 The patience of YHWH with the nation through antiquity shows His unending mercy, and long-suffering, and love. The Hebrew word for rotten, '*beosheen*' can literally mean poison.

5 YHWH created mankind to have land to cultivate and to be blessed by and it is a curse to bring house on house and put so many people condensed into small area.

man is humbled, and the eyes of the
proud are humbled.
16 But YAHWEH of Hosts is exalted
in judgment, and Elohim the Holy One
is proven holy in righteousness.
17 Then the lambs shall feed as in
their pasture, and strangers shall eat
the waste places of the fatlings.
18 Woe to those who draw iniquity
with cords of vanity, and sin as with
ropes of a cart;
19 who say, Let Him hurry and
hasten His work, so that we may see;
and let the purpose of the Holy One of
Israel draw near and come, so that we
may know[1]!
20 Woe to those who say to evil,
good; and to good, evil; who put
darkness for light, and light for
darkness; who put bitter for sweet,
and sweet for bitter!
21 Woe to those wise in their own
eyes, and discerning in their own
sight!
22 Woe to those mighty to drink
wine, and men of strength to mix
fermented drink;
23 who justify the wicked for a bribe,
and turn aside the righteousness of the
righteous from him!
24 So, as the tongue of fire devours
the stubble, and the flame burns up
the chaff; their root shall be like
rottenness, and their blossoms shall go
up like dust, because they have
rejected the Torah of YAHWEH of
Hosts; and despised the Word of the
Holy One of Israel.
25 On account of this the anger of
YAHWEH is kindled on His people,
and He has stretched out His hand
against them, and has struck them;
and the mountains quaked, and their
dead bodies were as filth in the midst
of the streets. In all this His anger does
not turn away, but His hand is
stretched out still.
26 And He will lift up a banner to
distant nations, and will hiss to them
from the ends of the earth; and,
behold, it shall come with swift speed!
27 None shall be weary nor stumble
among them; none will slumber nor
sleep; nor shall the waist cloth of their
loins be opened, nor the thong of their
sandals broken;
28 whose arrows are sharp, and all
their bows bent; their horses' hooves
shall appear as flint, and their wheels
like a hurricane.
29 Their roaring shall be like a lion;
they shall roar like young lions. Yea,
they roar and seize the prey and carry
it away; and no one shall deliver.
30 And in that day they shall roar
against them like the roaring of the
sea; when one looks to the land, and
lo, darkness! Distress! And light shall
be darkened by its clouds.

Chapter 6

1 In the year that King Uzziah died,
then I saw YAHWEH sitting on a
throne, high and lifted up. And His
train filled the temple.
2 Above it stood the seraphim[2]. Each
one had six wings; with two he covered
his face; and with two he covered his
feet; and with two he flew.
3 And one cried to the other and
said, Holy, holy, holy is YAHWEH of
Hosts; all the earth is full of His glory!
4 And the doorposts shook from the
voice of the one who cried; and the
house was filled with smoke.
5 Then I said, Woe is me! For I am
cut off; for I am a man of unclean lips,

1 A curse on those who want prophecy to happen simply to see the excitement of it not knowing that there are grave times coming in the end of days (Amos 5:18-20)

2 Seraphim were angelic beings such as cherubs. The word seraph comes from the verb to burn and these were representatives of YHWH used for cleansing (Num 21:6).

and I live amongst a people of unclean
lips; for my eyes have seen the King,
YAHWEH of Hosts.
6 Then one of the seraphs flew to me
with a live coal in his hand, snatched
with tongs from the altar.
7 And he touched it on my mouth,
and said, See, this has touched your
lips; and your iniquity is taken away,
and your sin is covered[1].
8 And I heard the voice of
YAHWEH, saying, Whom shall I
send, and who will go for Us? Then I
said, Here I am. Send me!
9 And He said, Go and say to this
people, Hearing you hear, but do not
understand; and seeing you see, but do
not know.
10 Make the heart of this people fat,
and make his ears heavy, and shut his
eyes, that he not see with his eyes, and
hear with his ears, and understand
with his heart, and turn back, and one
heals him. *(Math 13:13-15)*
11 Then I said, Until when, O
YAHWEH? And He said, Until cities
lie desolate without inhabitant, and
the houses without man, and the land
is laid waste, a desolation;
12 and until YAHWEH has sent
mankind far away, and the desolation
in the midst of the land is great.
13 But yet a tenth[2] shall be in it, and
it shall return and be burned like the
terebinth and like the oak that in being
felled yet has its stump, the holy seed
is its stump. [3]

[1] The sin was covered as on Yom Kippur (*kippur means to cover*), but were not removed. They can only be removed when the penalty is paid. This was done when Messiah was crucified on the Mount of Olives right above the Mikphad altar where all ashes of every sin sacrifice was brought.

[2] It is a pattern in scripture of the set apart 10% always remaining.

[3] It will be purified by trial but the root will remain. Is 11:1, Gen 17:1, Gen 12:3

Chapter 7

1 And it happened in the days of
Ahaz: the son of Jotham, the son of
Uzziah, king of Judah, Rezin the king
of Syria, and Pekah the son of
Remaliah, king of Israel, went up to
Jerusalem to war against it, but were
not able to do battle against it.
2 And the house of David was told,
saying, Syria is allied with Ephraim,
and his heart and the heart of his
people shook, as the trees of the forest
shake from the wind.
3 And YAHWEH said to Isaiah, Go
out to meet Ahaz, you and your son
Shear-Jashub, at the end of the
conduit of the upper pool, to the
highway of the Fuller's Field.
4 And say to him, Be on guard and
be calm. Do not fear nor be timid of
heart because of the two tails of these
smoking firebrands, because of the
fierce anger of Rezin and Syria, and of
the son of Remaliah.
5 Because Syria, Ephraim, and the
son of Remaliah have plotted evil
against you, saying,
6 Let us go up against Judah and
make her to dread, and break her for
ourselves, and set a king in her midst,
the son of Tabeal[4].
7 So says Adonai YAHWEH, It shall
not rise, nor shall it happen.
8 For the head of Syria is Damascus,
and the head of Damascus is Rezin;
and within sixty five years Ephraim
shall be broken from being a people.
9 And the head of Ephraim is
Samaria, and the head of Samaria is
Remaliah's son. If you will not believe,
surely you will not be established.
10 And YAHWEH spoke again to
Ahaz, saying,

[4] This is a play on words whereas Tabeal means "*good for Elohim*", he was going to be "*good for nothing*".

11 Ask a sign from YAHWEH your Elohim; make deep the request, or make it high above.
12 But Ahaz said, I will not ask, nor will I tempt YAHWEH.
13 And He said, Hear now, O house of David, is it too little that you weary men, but will you also weary my Elohim?
14 So, YAHWEH Himself will give you a sign: Behold[1]! The virgin[2] will conceive and will bring forth a son; and she shall call His name ImmanuEl[3].
15 He shall eat curds and honey until He knows to refuse the evil and choose the good.
16 For before the boy shall know to refuse the evil and choose the good, the land that you hate will be forsaken before both her kings[4].
17 YAHWEH shall bring the king of Assyria on you, and on your people, and on your father's house, days which have not come since the days Ephraim turned aside from Judah.
18 And it shall be in that day YAHWEH shall hiss for the fly that is in the end of the rivers of Egypt and for the bee in the land of Assyria.
19 And they shall come, and they shall all rest in the steep ravines, and in the clefts of the rocks, and in all the thorn bushes, and in all the pastures.
20 In that day YAHWEH will shave with a razor that is hired, beyond the River, by the king of Assyria, the head, and the hair of the feet, and also it shall sweep away the beard.
21 And it shall be in that day, a man shall keep alive a heifer of the herd, and two sheep.
22 And it shall be, he shall eat curds from the plenty of milk making; for everyone who is left in the land shall eat curds and honey.[5]
23 And it shall be in that day, every place where there were a thousand vines worth a thousand pieces of silver, it shall be for briers and thorns.
24 With arrows and with the bow, he shall come there; because all the land shall be briers and thorns.
25 And all the hills which were hoed with the hoe, you shall not come there for fear of briers and thorns; but it shall be for the sending out of the ox, and for trampling of sheep.

Chapter 8

1 And YAHWEH said to me, Take a big tablet and write in it with a man's

1 Whereever the word behold *"hineh"* in the Hebrew appears with the present participle it always refers to a future event.

2 This word in Hebrew is "*almah*" and can only mean a women or young women who has never had sexual relations with a man.

3 Immanual means "*Elohim is with us"* and clearly shows that although the Messiah will be born from a virgin He will also be Elohim. The situation is that YHWH has already promised that the Messiah would come through the seed of David and now Syria is threatening to destroy Judah. Yahweh is giving a sign to show that Judah will not be destroyed before the Messiah will be born and to show He is the Messiah He will be born of a virgin. If this was simply a statement about a young woman having a baby where would be the sign? Also, in English the word "*you"* is ambiguous and can mean one person or multiple people. In Hebrew this is not the case and in verse 9, 11, 16 and 17 the "*you*" is in the singular speaking to Ahaz. However in verse 13 and 14, which are insertion prophetic verses about Messiah, the "*you*" is plural speaking to the nation.

4 This verse speaking about Ahaz son was fulfilled as within 12 yrs of this prophecy Damascus was captured by Assyria (732) and Israel had also fallen (721).

5 This is because of the devastation of the land by Assyria.

pen: Make haste to plunder! Hurry to
the spoil[1]!
2 And I took faithful witnesses to
record for me, Uriah the priest, and
Zechariah the son of Jeberechiah.
3 And I drew near the prophetess.
And she conceived, and bore a son.
Then YAHWEH said to me, Call his
name, Make haste to plunder! Hurry
to the spoil[2]!
4 For before the boy knows to cry,
My father, or, My mother, the riches of
Damascus and the plunder of Samaria
shall be lifted up before the king of
Assyria.
5 YAHWEH also spoke to me again,
saying,
6 Because this people has refused the
waters of Shiloah that flow softly, and
rejoices in Rezin and Remaliah's son,
7 Behold, therefore YAHWEH also
brings on them the waters of the River,
mighty and many, the king of Assyria
and all his glory. And he shall come up
over all its channels and go over all its
banks.
8 And he shall pass through Judah.
He shall overflow and go over. He
shall reach to the neck; and his wings
will be stretching out, filling the
breadth of your land, O Immanuel.
9 O peoples, suffer evil, and be
broken! And listen, all from the far
places of the earth; gird yourselves,
and be broken. Gird yourselves and be
broken!
10 Counsel a plan, and it is
frustrated; speak a word, and it shall
not rise; for El is with us *(ImmanuEl)*.
11 For so YAHWEH spoke to me
with a strong hand, and taught me
against walking in the way of this
people, saying,
12 Do not say, A conspiracy, to
everything of which this people says, A
conspiracy! And do not fear its fear,
and do not dread.
13 Sanctify YAHWEH of Hosts
Himself, and let Him be your fear; and
let Him be your dread.
14 And He shall be for a sanctuary,
and for a stone of stumbling, and for a
rock of falling to the two houses of
Israel; for a trap and for a snare to the
ones living in Jerusalem.
15 And many among them shall
stumble and fall, and be broken, and
be snared, and be taken.
16 Bind up the Testimony and seal
the Torah among My disciples[3].
17 And I will wait on YAHWEH,
who hides His face from the house of
Jacob; and I will look for Him.
18 Behold, I and the children whom
YAHWEH has given to me are for
signs and wonders in Israel from
YAHWEH of Hosts, who dwells in
Mount Zion.
19 And when they say to you, Seek to
the mediums, and to fortunetellers
who peep and mutter; should not a
people seek to its Elohim, rather than
for the living to seek to the dead?
20 To the Torah and to the
Testimony! If they do not speak
according to this Word, it is because
there is no light to them[4]!
21 And they shall pass through it,
hard pressed and hungry. And it shall
be, they shall be hungry; he will rave
and curse his king and his Elohim, and
face upward.
22 And they shall look to the land.
And, behold, distress and darkness
and gloom of anguish; and they are
driven to darkness.

[1] The Hebrew word for this phrase to hurry the spoil and haste to plunder is "*Maher-shalal-hash-baz*". This was the name of Isaiah's second son.

[2] "*Maher-shalal-hash-baz*"

[3] The true disciples of YHWH would have the Torah written on their hearts Jer 31:33.

[4] Any true servant of YHWH will teach only what is scripturally sound according to the Torah.

Chapter 9

1 Yet there shall not be gloom for
which anguish is to her; as in the
former time when He degraded the
land of Zebulun, and the land of
Naphtali, so afterwards He will glorify
the way of the sea, beyond the Jordan,
Galilee of the nations.
2 The people who walk in darkness
have seen a great light. The ones who
dwell in the land of the shadow of
death, light has shone on them[1].
3 You have not multiplied the
nation; You have not increased the joy.
They rejoice before You as in the joy of
harvest, as men shout when they
divide the plunder.
4 For You have broken his
burdensome yoke and the staff of his
shoulder, the rod of his taskmaster, as
in the day of Midian.
5 For every boot of the trampler is
with shaking, and a coat rolled in
blood shall be burning fuel for the fire.
6 For unto us a Child is born; to us a
Son is given; and the government is on
His shoulder; and His name is called
Wonderful Counselor, The Mighty El,
The Prince of Peace, The one who
Fathered Everlasting life[2].
7 There is no end to the increase of
His government and of peace on the
throne of David, and on His kingdom,
to order it, and to sustain it with
justice and with righteousness, from
now and forever. The zeal of
YAHWEH of Hosts will do this.
8 YAHWEH sent a Word into Jacob,
and it has fallen into Israel.
9 And all the people shall know,
Ephraim and the ones living in
Samaria, who say in pride and
greatness of heart,
10 Bricks have fallen, but we will
build with cut stones; the sycamores
are cut down, but we will substitute
with cedars instead[3].
11 And YAHWEH will set up Rezin's
foes against him, and join together his
enemies;
12 Syrians in front, and the
Philistines behind; and they shall
devour Israel with all the mouth. In all
this His anger does not turn away, but
His hand is still stretched out.
13 For the people do not turn to Him
who strikes them, and they do not seek
YAHWEH of Hosts.
14 And YAHWEH will cut off from
Israel head and tail, branch and rush,
in one day.
15 The elder and the exalted of face;
he is the head. And the prophet who
teaches lies, he is the tail.
16 For this people's leaders led them
astray, and its guided ones are
swallowed up.
17 For this, YAHWEH shall not
rejoice over their young men, nor have
pity on their orphans and widows; for
everyone is a hypocrite and an
evildoer; and every mouth speaks
foolishness. In all this His anger does
not turn away, but His hand is still
stretched out.
18 For wickedness burns like a fire;
it shall devour the briers and thorns
and shall kindle the thickets of the
forest; and they shall roll upward, like
the going up of smoke.
19 The land is scorched by the wrath
of YAHWEH of Hosts, and the people
shall be as the fuel of the fire; no man
shall spare his brother.
20 And he shall cut off on the right

---

1 Math 4:15-16

2 This scripture shows that the Messiah would be born as a human, but also 3 out of the 4 titles mentioned also show that He will be Elohim.

3 Instead of repenting for their sin and looking toward Elohim, the people are saying that they will merely rebuild and move on as if nothing has happened.

hand, yet be hungry. And he shall eat
on the left, but not be satisfied. Each
man shall eat the flesh of his own arm;
21 Manasseh, Ephraim; and
Ephraim, Manasseh; together they are
against Judah. In all this His anger
does not turn away, but His hand is
still stretched out.

Chapter 10

1 Woe to those who decree decrees of
injustice, and writers who write toil;
2 to turn aside the poor from
judgment, and to steal justice from the
poor of My people; that widows may
be their prey; that they may rob
orphans.
3 And what will you do in the day of
visitation and of destruction? It comes
from far away. To whom will you flee
for help? And where will you leave
your glory?
4 Surely, he will grovel under the
prisoners, and they will fall under the
slain. In all this His anger does not
turn away, but His hand is still
stretched out.
5 Woe to Assyria, the rod of My
anger! And My fury is the staff in their
hand.
6 I will send him against a profane
nation, and against the people of My
wrath. I will command him to plunder,
and to strip off spoil, and to trample
them like the mud of the streets.
7 Yet he does not purpose this, nor
does his heart think so. For it is in his
heart to destroy, and to cut off not a
few nations.
8 For he says, Are not my
commanders all like kings?
9 Is not Calno like Carchemish? Is
Hamath not like Arpad? Is Samaria
not like Damascus?
10 As my hand has found the
kingdoms of the idols (for their carved
images excelled those of Jerusalem
and Samaria);
11 shall I not do to Jerusalem and
her idols as I have done to Samaria
and her idols?
12 And it will be, when YAHWEH
has broken off all His work on Mount
Zion and on Jerusalem, I will visit on
the fruit of the proud heart of the king
of Assyria, and on the glory of his lofty
eyes.
13 For he says, I have worked by the
strength of my hand and by my
wisdom; for I am wise. And I take
away the borders of peoples, and have
robbed their treasures. And like a
mighty one, I have subdued the
inhabitants.
14 And my hand has found the riches
of the people. Like a nest, I also have
gathered all the earth, as forsaken eggs
are gathered. And there was not one
moving a wing, or opening a mouth, or
one chirping.
15 Shall the axe glorify itself over
him chopping with it? Or shall the saw
magnify itself over him moving it? As
if a rod could wave those who lift it. As
if a staff could raise what is not wood!
16 Therefore the Master, YAHWEH
of Hosts shall send leanness among his
fat ones. And under His glory will
kindle a burning like the burning of
fire.
17 And the Light of Israel shall be for
a fire, and his Holy One for a flame;
and it shall burn and devour his thorns
and briers in one day.
18 And He shall consume the glory
of his forest and his fruitful field, even
from soul to flesh; and it shall be as a
sick man melts away.
19 And the rest of the trees of the
forest shall be few, so that a boy might
write them.
20 And it shall be in that day, the
remnant of Israel, and the escaped
ones from the house of Jacob, shall

not any more lean on him who struck
him. But they will truly lean on
YAHWEH, the Holy One of Israel.
21 The remnant shall return, the
remnant of Jacob, to the mighty El.
22 For though Your people Israel is
like the sand of the sea, only a
remnant of it shall return[1]; a decisive
end, overflowing with righteousness.
23 For Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts is
making a full end, even ordained, in
the midst of all the land.
24 So Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts
says this: Oh My people who dwell in
Zion, do not fear Assyria. He shall
strike you with the rod, and he shall
lift up his staff against you in the way
of Egypt.
25 But yet a little while, and the fury
is finished; and My anger shall be over
their destruction.
26 And YAHWEH of Hosts shall stir
up a whip on him, according to the
striking of Midian at the rock Oreb;
and as His rod was on the sea, and He
lifted it up in the way of Egypt.
27 And it shall be in that day, his
burden shall turn away from on your
shoulder, and his yoke from your neck;
and the yoke shall be destroyed
because of the anointing.
28 He has come to Aiath; he has
passed to Migron; he has left his
baggage at Michmash.
29 They have crossed the ford; they
have bedded down at Geba; Ramah is
afraid; Gibeah of Saul has fled.
30 Shriek with your voice, daughter
of ruins; bow, Laish, afflicted of
Anathoth.
31 Madmenah wanders; those living
in Gebim take refuge.
32 Yet he remains in Nob today; he
will shake his hand against the mount
of the daughter of Zion, the hill of
Jerusalem.
33 Behold, the Master, YAHWEH of
Hosts, shall lop the bough of terror!
And the lofty ones shall be cut down,
and the proud shall be humbled.
34 And He shall cut down the
thickets of the forest with iron, and
Lebanon shall fall by a mighty one.

Chapter 11

1 And a Shoot goes out from the
stump of Jesse[2], and a Branch[3] will
bear fruit out of his roots.
2 And the Spirit of YAHWEH shall
rest on Him; He will have the spirit of
wisdom and understanding, the spirit
of counsel and power, the spirit of
knowledge and of the fear of
YAHWEH[4].
3 And He is made to breathe in the
fear of YAHWEH. But He shall not
judge by the sight of His eyes, nor
decide by the hearing of His ears.
4 But He shall judge the poor in
righteousness, and shall decide rightly
for the meek of the earth. And He shall
strike the earth with the rod of His
mouth, and He shall cause the wicked
to die with the breath of His lip.
5 And righteousness shall be the
encircler of His loins, and faithfulness
the encircler of His loins.
6 And the wolf shall live with the

---

[1] Ro 9:27-28 Although there would be millions upon millions of Israelites scattered abroad only a remnant will return.

[2] Jesse was the father of David and this shows that when the Messiah will appear David will not have a great dynasty as he did, but there will merely be a shoot coming from the stump of Jesse. When David was under his father Jesse he was still a shepherd before he was a king.

[3] The word in Hebrew for branch is "*netzar*" and this is the scripture referred to in Math 2:23, the whole chapter is Messianic.

[4] Where believers get a down payment of the Holy Spirit (2Cor 5:5), the Messiah has the fullness of the spirit of YHWH.

lamb; and the leopard shall lie with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little boy shall lead them.

7 The cow and the bear shall feed, their young shall lie together; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

8 And the infant shall play on the hole of the asp; yea, the weaned child shall put his hand on the viper's den[1].

9 They shall not do evil, nor destroy in all My holy mountain[2]. For the earth shall be full of the knowledge of YAHWEH, as the waters cover the sea.

10 And it shall be in that day, the Root of Jesse stands as a banner[3] of His people; nations shall seek to Him; and His resting place shall be glorious.

11 And it shall be in that day, YAHWEH shall again set His hand, the second time, to recover the remnant of His people that remains[4], from Assyria, and from Egypt, and from Pathros, and from Ethiopia, and from Elam, and from Shinar, and from Hamath, and from the coasts of the sea[5].

12 And He shall lift up a banner for the nations, and shall gather the outcasts of Israel, and gather those dispersed from Judah, from the four wings of the earth[6].

13 And the envy of Ephraim shall turn off; and Judah's foes shall be cut off. Ephraim shall not envy Judah, and Judah shall not trouble Ephraim[7].

14 But they shall fly onto the shoulder of the Philistines to the west; together they shall plunder the sons of the east, the stretching of the hand on Edom and Moab and the sons of Ammon; they will obey them.

15 And YAHWEH shall utterly destroy the tongue of the sea of Egypt; and with His scorching wind He shall wave His hand over the River, and shall strike it into seven torrents, and make one tread it with shoes[8].

16 And there shall be a highway for the remnant of His people, those left from Assyria, as it was to Israel in the day when he came up out of the land of Egypt.

Chapter 12

1 And in that day you shall say, O YAHWEH, I will thank You. Though You were angry with me, turn away Your anger and You shall comfort me.

2 Behold, El is Y'shua*[9] ! I will trust and not be afraid, for my strength and song is Yah YAHWEH[10]; yea, He has become to me Y'shua*[11].

---

1 Verse 6-9 is showing the peaceful nature during the millennial kingdom.

2 Speaking of Jerusalem (Is 2:3).

3 In ancient Israel there was a specific banner for each of the 12 tribes and this is a messianic phrase showing that when the messiah is here all 12 tribes will be restored once again.

4 “In that day”refers to the time period that the messiah will be returning, and at that time Yahweh will regather Israel 2 times. One has already happened with Judah getting a homeland in 1948, and their will be a second regathering of the rest of the remnant of the tribes of Israel in the future.

5 Many of these areas are where the northern tribes of Israel were dispersed in 721-718 B.C.

6 The Messiah is gathering both the House of Judah and the House of Israel (Ezek 37:15-28).

7 Since the days right after king Solomon there has been a vexation between the divided kingdom of Judah and Israel (Ephraim). This is indicating in the messianic age that vexation will be removed through the presence of messiah.

8 If you look at an aerial view of the Red Sea crossing it looks like a lip and this is stating Yahweh in that day will divide it into 7 channels for the returning exiles.

9 *Y'shua = My salvation*

3 And you shall draw waters out of the wells of salvation with joy[12].

4 And in that day you shall say, Praise YAHWEH! Call on His name; declare His doings among the peoples; make mention that His name is exalted[2].

5 Sing to YAHWEH[3], for He has done majestically; this is known in all the earth.

6 Cry and shout, O dweller of Zion! For great is the Holy One of Israel in your midst.

Chapter 13

1 The burden of Babylon which Isaiah the son of Amoz saw:

2 Lift up a banner[4] on a bare mountain; make the voice rise to them; wave the hand that they may enter the gates of nobles.

3 I have commanded My holy ones; I have also called My warriors for My anger, those who rejoice in My Majesty.

4 The noise of a multitude in the mountains, as of a great people! A noise of tumult of the kingdoms of nations gathered together; YAHWEH of Hosts is calling up an army for the battle.

5 They come from a distant land, from the end of the heavens, YAHWEH and the weapons of His wrath, to destroy all the land.

6 Howl! For the day of YAHWEH is at hand. It shall come as a destruction from the Almighty[5].

7 On account of this all hands shall droop, and every heart of man shall melt;

8 and they shall be afraid. Pangs and sorrows shall take hold of them; they shall be in pain like one giving birth; they shall be amazed, each man to his neighbor; faces of flames shall be their faces.

9 Behold, the day of YAHWEH comes, cruel and with wrath and fierce anger, to lay the land waste. And He shall destroy its sinners out of it.

10 For the stars of the heavens and their constellations shall not give light; the sun shall be darkened in its going forth, and the moon shall not reflect its light. *(Joel 2:10)*

11 And I will visit evil on the world, and their iniquity on the wicked. And I will cause the arrogance of the proud to cease; and I will humble the pride of tyrants.

12 I will make a man more rare than fine gold; even a man more than the carvings of Ophir.

13 So I will shake the heavens, and the earth shall move out of its place, in the wrath of YAHWEH of Hosts, and in the day of His fierce anger. *(Is 24:1-6)*

14 And it shall be as a gazelle driven away, and as a sheep no one gathers; each man shall look to his own people, and each one shall flee to his land.

15 Everyone who is found shall be pierced through; yea, everyone who is swept away shall fall by the sword.

---

10 Yahweh is a family name with the Father being Yah Yahweh and the Son Yahshua Yahweh.

11 Yahshua when He came to earth was the exact representation of Yahweh the Father (Col 1:15, Heb 1:3) although they are not the same being they have the same spirit.

12 Joh 7:38

2 In the millennial kingdom all people will honor the one true name of the Creator Yahweh.

3 It is commanded in scripture to exult the name of YHWH, to sing to His name, to praise His name, glorify His name etc. How could one do this without recognizing His true name Yahweh?

4 Is 11:12

5 This is the end time period of YHWH's wrath on mankind for their sin and rebellion.

16 And their children shall be dashed in pieces before their eyes; their houses shall be robbed, and their wives raped.
17 Behold! I stir up the Medes[1] against them, who shall not value silver. And they shall not delight in gold.
18 And bows shall also smash the young men to pieces; and they shall have no pity on the fruit of the womb; their eye shall not spare sons.
19 And Babylon, the glory of the kingdoms, the beauty of the pride of the Chaldeans, shall be as when Elohim overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah. *(Jer 50:40)*
20 It shall not be lived in forever, nor shall it be lived in from generation to generation. And the dessert wanderer shall not pitch a tent there, nor shall the shepherds make flocks lie down there[2].
21 But the desert creatures shall lie there; and their houses shall be full of howling creatures; and daughters of ostriches shall dwell there; and he-goats shall skip there.
22 And hyenas shall cry along with his widows; and jackals in palaces of delight. Yea, her time to come is near, and her days shall not be prolonged.

Chapter 14

1 For YAHWEH will have pity on Jacob, and will yet choose among Israel, and set them in their own land. And the foreigner shall be joined to them; and they shall cling to the house of Jacob.
2 And the peoples shall take them and bring them to their own place. And the house of Israel shall possess them in the land of YAHWEH for slaves and slave girls. And they shall be captives of their captors; and they shall rule over their oppressors.
3 And it shall be, in the day that YAHWEH shall give you rest from your sorrow, and from your trouble, and from the hard bondage which was pressed on you,
4 you shall lift up this proverb against the king of Babylon, and say: How the oppressor, the gold gatherer, has ceased!
5 YAHWEH has broken the rod of the wicked, the staff of rulers,
6 who struck the peoples in wrath, a blow without turning away, ruling the nations in anger, dealing out persecution without restraint.
7 All the earth is at rest, quiet; they break forth into singing.
8 Yea, the fir trees rejoice over you; the cedars of Lebanon say, Since you have lain down, no wood cutter will come up against us.
9 Sheol from below is stirred for you, to meet you at your coming; it stirs up the departed spirits for you, all the leaders of the people of the earth. It has raised all the kings of the nations from their thrones.
10 All of them shall answer and say to you, Are you also made as weak as we? Are you likened to us?
11 Your majesty is lowered into Sheol; the noise of your harps. The maggot is spread under you; yea, the worms cover you.
12 Oh Lucifer, son of the morning, how you have fallen from the heavens[3]! You weakening the nations, you are cut down to the ground.

---

[1] The Persians and the Medes are prophesied to destroy Babylon. These nations today are geographically Iran and Russia.

[2] End time Babylon is being destroyed right before the wrath of YHWH on the earth. These scriptures and others (Jer 50:3,8, 12, Rev 18:2, 4) show that end time Babylon is a physical land and not just a system.

[3] Showing the downfall of Satan.

13 For you have said In your heart, I will go up to the heavens; I will raise my throne above the stars of El, and I will sit in the mountain of appointment, in the sides of the north[1].

14 I will rise over the heights of the clouds; I will be compared to Elyone *(The Most High)*[2].

15 Yet you shall go down to Sheol, to the sides of the Pit.

16 They that see you shall stare and closely watch you, saying, Is this the man who made the earth tremble, shaking kingdoms[3],

17 making the world like a wilderness, and who tore down its cities; he did not open a house for his prisoners?

18 All kings of nations, all of them lie in glory, each man in his house.

19 But you are thrown from your grave like a despised branch[4], like the covering of the slain, those pierced by the sword, those who go down into the stones of the Pit, like a dead body trampled under foot.

20 You shall not be united with them in burial, because you ruined your land; you have slain your people; the seed of evildoers shall never be named.

21 Prepare for the slaughter of his sons, for the iniquity of their fathers; that they may not rise and possess the land and fill the face of the earth with cities.

22 For I will rise against them, says YAHWEH of Hosts, and I will cut off the name and remnant, the son and grandson, from Babylon, declares YAHWEH.

23 Also I will make it a possession of the hedgehog and pools of water; and I will sweep it with the broom of ruin, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

24 YAHWEH of Hosts has sworn, saying, Surely as I have thought, so it shall be; and as I have purposed, it shall rise up;

25 to break Assyria in My land, and trample him on My mountains. Then his yoke shall depart from them, and his burden shall depart from his shoulders.

26 This is the purpose that is purposed on all the earth; and this is the hand that is stretched out on all the nations.

27 For YAHWEH of Hosts has purposed. And who shall reverse it? And His hand is stretched out. Who shall turn it back?

28 This burden was in the year King Ahaz died:

29 Do not rejoice, O Philistia, all of you, for the rod of your striking is broken, because a viper comes forth from the root of a snake, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent.[5]

30 And the first-born of the poor shall eat; and the needy shall lie down in safety; and I will kill your root with famine; and it shall kill your remnant.

31 Howl, O gate! Cry, O city! Philistia is melted away, all of you. For a smoke comes from the north, and not one is alone in his ranks.

32 What then shall one answer to the messengers of the nation? That YAHWEH has founded Zion, and the poor of His people shall trust in it.

---

1 Satan had a very high position to YHWH (Ezek 28;13-15) until pride and vanity destroyed him.

2 YHWH tells us to emulate Him in His character and likeness (Math 5:48) but not to try to usurp His position and authority.

3 In the end Satan will rule for 42 months over an evil world system (Rev 13:4-8).

4 A parallel to Messiah who is the true branch (Is 11:1, Zech 6:12).

5 The Hebrew word used here is Seraph.

Chapter 15

1 The burden of Moab: Because in a night Ar of Moab is laid waste; it is cut off; because in a night Kir of Moab is laid waste; it is cut off.

2 One goes up to the house, even to Dibon, to the high places, to weep. Moab shall howl over Nebo and over Medeba; all its heads shall be bald, every beard shorn.

3 They shall put on sackcloth in the streets; everyone shall howl on their housetops and in their plazas, melting in tears.

4 And Heshbon and Elealeh shall cry; their voice shall be heard as far as Jahaz; so the warriors of Moab shall shout; his life is broken to him.

5 My heart shall cry to Moab; her fugitives to Zoar, a heifer of three years; he goes up the ascent of Luhith with weeping, for in the way of Horonaim they shall raise up a cry of ruin.

6 For Nimrim's waters are desolations; for the hay is dried up; the grass fails; there is not a green thing.

7 On account of this one made up the remainder, and their store; they shall carry them over the torrent of the willows.

8 For the cry has gone around Moab's borders; his howling even to Eglaim; and his howling even to the Well of Elim.

9 For Dimon's waters are full of blood; for I will put more on Dimon, a lion on him who escapes from Moab, and for the remnant of the land.

Chapter 16

1 Send a lamb to the ruler of the land, from the rock of the desert[1] *(Sela)* to the mountain of the daughter of Zion.

2 For it is as a fleeing bird cast out of the nest; the daughters of Moab shall be at the fords of Arnon.

3 Take counsel; do judgment; make your shadow as the night in midday; hide the outcasts; do not uncover the fugitive!

4 Let My outcasts from Moab stay with you[2]. Be a hiding place to them from the face of the destroyer. For the exacter has ceased, destruction has failed; the trampler is ended out of the land.

5 And in mercy the throne shall be founded; and he shall sit on it in truth in the tabernacle of David, judging and seeking justice, and swift in righteousness.

6 We have heard of the pride of Moab, very proud; of his pride, his arrogance, and his rage; not so are his babblings.

7 So Moab shall howl for Moab; everyone shall howl; all of it shall howl for the foundations of Kir-Hareseth; surely they are stricken.

8 For the fields of Heshbon droop, the vine of Sibmah. The masters of the nations have crushed its choice plants. They have come to Jazer; they wander in the desert; her branches are spread out; they have crossed the sea.

9 On account of this I will weep with the weeping of Jazer, the vine of Sibmah; I will drench you with my tears, O Heshbon and Elealeh; for shouting has fallen on your fruit and on your harvest.

10 And gladness and joy is gathered up from the fruitful field; and there is no singing and no shouting in the vineyards; the one treading shall not tread out wine in the presses. I have made the shout to cease.

---

[1] Sela is the city of Petra in modern day Jordan.

[2] The Moabites in Petra are asking Judah for refuge.

11 For this reason my belly shall sound like a harp for Moab, and my inward parts for Kir-Haresh.
12 And it shall be, when it is seen that Moab shall be wearied on the high place, then he shall come to his shrine to pray, and he shall not be able.
13 This is the Word that YAHWEH had spoken to Moab from that time.
14 But now YAHWEH has spoken, saying, Within three years, as the years of a hireling, then the glory of Moab will be abased, with all the great host; and the remnant shall be few; small, not mighty.

Chapter 17

1 The burden of Damascus: Behold, Damascus is taken away from being a city, and it shall be a ruined heap.
2 The cities of Aroer are forsaken; now they are for flocks; they lie down and no one terrifies them.
3 And the fortress shall cease from Ephraim; and the kingdom from Damascus and the rest of Syria. They shall be as the glory of the sons of Israel, declares YAHWEH of Hosts.
4 And it shall be in that day, Jacob's glory shall be made thin, and the fatness of his flesh shall be made lean.
5 And it shall be as the reaping of the harvest grain, and his arm reaps the ears. And it shall be as he who gathers ears in the Valley of the Giants.
6 Yet gleaning grapes shall be left in it, as the shaking of an olive tree; two or three ripe olives in the top of the uppermost branch; four or five in the fruit tree branches, declares YAHWEH Elohim of Israel.
7 In that day a man shall gaze to his Maker; and his eyes shall look to the Holy One of Israel.
8 And he shall not gaze to the altars, the work of his hands; and he will not see what his fingers have made, even the Asherahs, and the sun pillars.
9 In that day his fortified cities shall be as a thing left in the forest, or the branch that they leave, from before the sons of Israel. And it will become a desolation.
10 Because you have forgotten the Elohim of your salvation *(Y'shua*)*, and you did not remember the Rock of your strength. On account of this you shall plant pleasing plants, and shall sow it with profane shoots.
11 In the day of your planting you fence it in; in the morning you make your seed sprout; the harvest is a heap in the day of sickness and incurable pain.
12 Woe to the multitude of many peoples; they roar like the roar of seas; and the crash of nations, they crash like the crash of mighty waters!
13 The nations shall crash like the crashing of many waters, but He rebukes it, and it flees far away; yea, it is driven like the chaff of mountains before the wind, and like a rolling thing before a tempest.
14 At the time of evening, behold, terror! Before it is morning, it shall not be. This is the portion of those robbing us, and the lot of those plundering us.

Chapter 18

1 Woe to the land of whirring of wings, which is beyond the rivers of Ethiopia;
2 which sends ambassadors by the sea, even in ships of papyrus on the face of the waters. Go, swift messengers, to a nation tall and smooth, to a dreadful people from it and onwards; and a nation mighty and trampling down, whose land the rivers have divided!
3 All you inhabitants of the world and those living on the earth, as one

lifts a banner on the peaks, you will
see. And you will hear as the blowing
of a ram's horn.
4 For so YAHWEH said to me, I will
rest, and I will watch My dwelling
place; as the glowing heat on light; as
the cloud of dew in the heat of harvest.
5 For before the harvest, when the
bud is perfect, and the sour grape is
ripening in the flower, then He will cut
off the sprigs with pruning hooks, and
cut down and take away the branches.
6 They shall be left together to the
birds of the hills, and to the beasts of
the earth. And the birds shall summer
on them, and all the beasts of the earth
shall winter on them.
7 Then shall be brought in that time
to YAHWEH of Hosts a present from
a tall and smooth people, and a
terrifying people, from it and onward;
a mighty and trampling nation whose
land the rivers have divided, to the
place of the name of YAHWEH of
Hosts: Mount Zion.

Chapter 19

1 The burden of Egypt: Behold!
YAHWEH rides on a light cloud and
comes into Egypt. And the idols of
Egypt shall tremble from before Him;
and the heart of Egypt shall melt in its
midst.
2 And I will stir up Egyptians against
Egyptians; and they each man shall
fight against his brother; and each
against his neighbor; city against city,
kingdom against kingdom.
3 And the spirit of the Egyptians
shall be empty in its midst; and I will
swallow its counsel. And they shall
seek to idols, and to the enchanters,
and to the mediums, and to the
fortune tellers.
4 And I will shut up the Egyptians
into the hand of cruel masters
(Adonim); and a fierce king shall rule
them, declares Adonai YAHWEH of
Hosts.
5 And the waters shall dry up from
the sea, and the river shall fail and dry
up.
6 And rivers shall be fouled; and the
Nile of Egypt will languish and dry up;
the reed and the rush shall decay.
7 Bare places shall be at the Nile, by
the mouth of the Nile, and everything
sown by the Nile shall dry up, driven
away, and be no more.
8 The fishermen shall mourn; and all
who cast a hook into the Nile shall
wail; and those who spread nets on the
surface of the waters shall droop.
9 And the workers in fine flax, and
the weavers of white cloth are
ashamed.
10 And her supports shall be
crushed; and all who make wages shall
be sad of soul.
11 Surely the rulers of Zoan are fools;
the advice of Pharaoh's wise counselor
has become stupid. How can you say
to Pharaoh, I am the son of wise ones,
the son of kings of old?
12 Where are your wise ones now?
Yea, let them tell you now, that they
may know what YAHWEH of Hosts
has planned against Egypt.
13 The rulers of Zoan are fools; the
rulers of Noph are deceived; they also
have led Egypt astray, the cornerstone
of her tribes.
14 YAHWEH has mixed a perverse
spirit in her midst; and they led astray
Egypt in all his work; as a drunkard
strays in his vomit.
15 And Egypt shall have no work that
the head or the tail, the branch or
rush, may do.
16 In that day Egypt shall be like
women; and it will tremble and dread
from before the shaking of the hand of
YAHWEH of Hosts, which He shakes
over it.
17 And the land of Judah shall be a

terror to Egypt; everyone who mentions it shall dread to it, from before the counsel of YAHWEH of Hosts, which He counsels against it.

18 In that day five cities in the land of Egypt shall speak the language of Canaan, and swear to YAHWEH of Hosts. One shall be called, City of Ruin.

19 Then an altar to YAHWEH shall be in the midst of the land of Egypt, and a pillar to YAHWEH at its border.

20 And it shall be for a sign and for a witness to YAHWEH of Hosts in the land of Egypt. For they shall cry to YAHWEH because of the oppressors; and He shall send them a savior, even a great one, and will deliver them.

21 And YAHWEH shall be known to Egypt. Egypt shall know YAHWEH in that day. And they shall offer sacrifice and offering, and vow a vow to YAHWEH, and repay it.

22 And YAHWEH shall strike Egypt. He shall strike and heal. Then they shall return to YAHWEH, and He shall hear them and will heal them.

23 In that day there shall be a highway out of Egypt to Assyria. And Assyria shall come into Egypt; and Egypt into Assyria; and Egypt shall serve with Assyria[1].

24 In that day Israel shall be the third with Egypt and with Assyria, a blessing in the midst of the earth[2],

25 whom YAHWEH of Hosts shall bless, saying, Blessed be My people Egypt, and Assyria, the work of My hands, and Israel My inheritance.

Chapter 20

1 In the year Tartan came to Ashdod, when Sargon the king of Assyria sent him, and fought against Ashdod, and took it;

2 at that time YAHWEH spoke by Isaiah the son of Amoz, saying, Go and loosen the sackcloth from your loins, and take your shoe off from your foot. And he did so, walking naked and barefoot.

3 And YAHWEH said, Just as My servant Isaiah has walked naked and barefoot three years (a sign and a wonder on Egypt and on Ethiopia)

4 so shall the king of Assyria lead away the captives of Egypt and the exiles of Ethiopia, young and old; naked and barefoot, and with uncovered buttocks; to the nakedness of Egypt.

5 And they shall be afraid and ashamed of their hope Ethiopia, and of their glory Egypt.

6 And he who lives in this coast shall say in that day, Behold, this has become our hope to which we fled for help there, to be delivered from before the king of Assyria; and, How shall we escape?

Chapter 21

1 The burden of the desert of the sea: As storms in the Negev pass, it comes from the desert from a terrifying land.

2 A harsh vision is revealed to me; the deceiver betrays, and the plunderer plunders. Go up, O Elam! Besiege, O Media! I have caused all her sighing to cease.

3 Because of this my loins are filled with pain; pangs have taken hold on me like the pangs of a travailing woman. I am bowed from hearing; I am troubled from seeing.

4 My heart wanders; terror

[1] Is 11:16 states that Yahweh will once again make the waters dry at the Red Sea in Sinai. This scripture seems to indicate that the drying of the water will be permanent and make a crossing for those coming from Assyria.

[2] In the millennial kingdom Egypt, Assyria and Israel all will be allies.

overwhelms me; He has made the twilight of my pleasure into a fear.
5 Arrange the table; watch in the watchtower; eat, drink; rise up, rulers, and anoint the shield.
6 For so YAHWEH has said to me: Go, set a watchman; he will declare what he sees.
7 And he sees a chariot, a couple of horsemen; a chariot of a donkey; a chariot of a camel; and let him give ear attentively, very attentively.
8 And he cried, A lion! YAHWEH, I always stand on my watchtower by day; and I am stationed at my post all the nights.
9 And, behold, here comes a chariot of a man, a pair of horses. And he answered and said, Babylon has fallen, has fallen! And He has smashed the graven images of her gods to the earth.
10 Oh my threshing, and the grain of my floor! That which I have heard of YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, I have told to you.
11 The burden of Dumah: He calls to me out of Seir, Watchman, what of the night? Watchman, what of the night?
12 The watchman says, The morning comes, and also night. If you would inquire, inquire. Come! Return!
13 The burden of Arabia: You shall stay in the forest of Arabia, travelers of Dedanites.
14 The people of the land of Tema bring water to him who is thirsty; they went to meet the fugitive with his bread.
15 For they fled from before swords, from the drawn sword, and from the bent bow, and from the press of battle.
16 For so YAHWEH has said to me, Within a year, as the years of a hireling, all the glory of Kedar shall be ended,
17 and the rest of the number of the archers, the warriors of the sons of Kedar, shall be few. For YAHWEH Elohim of Israel has spoken.

Chapter 22

1 The burden of the valley of vision: What ails you now, that you have gone up to the housetops?
2 Crashings fill the noisy city, the joyous city. Your slain ones are not slain by the sword, nor died in battle.
3 All your rulers fled together; they were bound without the bow; all found in you were bound together; they have fled from afar.
4 On account of this I said, Look away from me; I will weep bitterly; do not hurry to comfort me over the ruin of the daughter of my people.
5 for it is a day of trouble, and of trampling down, and confusion, by Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts, in the valley of vision; digging down a wall, and crying to the mountain.
6 And Persia lifted the quiver with a chariot of a man and horsemen; and Kir uncovered the shield.
7 And it happened; your choicest valleys were full of chariots; and the horsemen surely set in order at the gate.
8 And he removed Judah's covering; and you looked in that day to the armor of the house of the forest.
9 You have also seen the breaks in the city of David, that they are many; and you gathered the waters of the lower pool.
10 And you have counted the houses of Jerusalem; and you broke down the houses to fortify the wall.
11 And you made a reservoir between the walls, for the water of the old pool. But you have not looked to its Maker, nor did you see its Former from long ago.
12 And in that day Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts called to weeping

and mourning; and to baldness, and to
girding with sackcloth.
13 Then, lo, joy and gladness, slaying
oxen and slaughtering sheep; eating
flesh and drinking wine, saying, Eat
and drink, for tomorrow we die!
14 And YAHWEH of Hosts revealed
in my ears, Surely this iniquity shall
not be atoned for you until you die,
says Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts.
15 So says Adonai YAHWEH of
Hosts, Go! Go to this treasurer, to
Shebna who is over the house.
16 What is to you here? And who is
here to you, that you have carved a
tomb for yourself here, as one having
cut out his tomb on high, having
carved out a home for himself in the
rock?
17 Behold, YAHWEH hurls you with
a hurling, O man, and grasps you with
a grasping.
18 Surely, He will violently whirl you
like a ball, into a land wide of hands.
You shall die there, and there are the
chariots of your glory, the shame of
your master's house.
19 And I will drive you from your
position, and he will pull you from
your station.
20 And in that day it shall be, even I
will call to My servant Eliakim the son
of Hilkiah.
21 And I will clothe him with your
robe and will fasten your sash on him.
And I will give your authority into his
hand. And he shall be a father to the
ones living in Jerusalem and to the
house of Judah.
22 And the key of the house of David
I will lay on his shoulder, so that he
opens, and no one shuts; and he shuts,
and no one opens. *(Rev 3:7)*
23 And I will drive him as a nail in a
sure place; and he shall be for a throne
of glory to his father's house.
24 And they shall hang on him all
the glory of his father's house, the
offspring and the offshoots, all small
vessels, from vessels of cups even to all
vessels of jars.
25 In that day, says YAHWEH of
Hosts, the nail that is driven in the
sure place shall be removed, and be
cut down, and fall. And the burden
that was on it shall be cut off.
YAHWEH has spoken.

Chapter 23

1 The burden of Tyre: Howl, ships of
Tarshish! For it is ruined, without
house, without entrance. It is revealed
to them from the land of Kittim[1].
2 Be silent, ones living in the coast,
trader of Sidon crossing the sea; they
have filled you.
3 And by great waters, the seed of
Sihor and the harvest of the river Nile
was her revenue; and she was the mart
of nations.
4 Be ashamed, Sidon, for the sea has
spoken, the strength of the sea, saying,
I have not travailed, nor brought forth,
I have not nourished young men nor
raised up virgins.
5 As the report comes to Egypt, so
they shall be grieved at the report of
Tyre.
6 Pass over Tarshish; howl, people of
the coast!
7 Is this your exulting city from days
of her old age? Her own feet carry it
far away to stay.
8 Who has counseled this against
Tyre, the crowning city, whose
merchants are rulers, whose traders
are the weighty of the earth?
9 YAHWEH of Hosts has counseled
it, to stain the pride of all glory, to
bring all the honored of the earth into
contempt.
10 Pass through your land as the
Nile, O daughter of Tarshish; there is
no more strength.

---

[1] Modern day Cyprus

11 He stretched His hand over the sea; He shook kingdoms. YAHWEH has made a decree against the merchant city, to destroy its forts.

12 And He said, You shall rejoice no more, oppressed one, virgin daughter of Sidon. Arise, cross over to Cyprus, even there is no rest to you.

13 Behold, the land of the Chaldeans! This people did not exist! Assyria founded it for those who live in the desert. They set up their siege towers; they lay bare its palaces; they appointed it to be a ruin.

14 Howl, ships of Tarshish! For your fortress is ruined.

15 And it shall be in that day that Tyre shall be forgotten seventy years, according to the days of one king. At the end of seventy years, it will be as the song of a harlot to Tyre.

16 Take a harp; go about the city, O forgotten harlot. Do well to play; make many songs, that you may be remembered.

17 And it will be, after the end of seventy years, YAHWEH will visit Tyre; and she shall return to her hire, and will fornicate with all the kingdoms of the earth on the face of the earth.

18 And her goods and her wages shall be holiness to YAHWEH; it shall not be hoarded nor stored; for her goods shall be for those who dwell before YAHWEH, to eat enough, and for a choice covering.

Chapter 24

1 Lo, YAHWEH empties the earth and makes it bare, and distorts its face, and scatters those living in it[1].

2 And as it is with the people, so with the priest; as with the servant, so with the master; as with the maid, so with her mistress; as with the buyer, so with the seller; as with the lender, so with the borrower; as with the creditor, so with the debtor[2].

3 The earth shall completely be emptied and utterly stripped, for YAHWEH has spoken this Word.

4 The earth mourns and languishes; the world droops and languishes; the proud people of the earth droop.

5 And the earth is profaned under those living in it, because they transgress Torah and violate a statute, and break the everlasting covenant[3].

6 On account of this a curse has devoured the earth; and they who live in it are held guilty. For this those living in the earth are consumed, and few men are left[4].

7 The new wine has failed; the vine droops; all the merry-hearted sigh[5].

8 The exultation of timbrels ceases; the noise of those who revel ends; the exultation of the harp ceases.

9 They shall not drink wine with a song; fermented drink shall be bitter to those who drink it.

10 The city of shame is broken down; every house is shut, that no one may enter.

11 A crying over the wine is in the streets; all joy is darkened; the gladness in the land is exiled.

12 Desolation is remaining in the city, and a ruin; the gate is battered.

13 For it is thus in the midst of the earth, among the peoples, it shall be as the shaking of an olive tree, and as

1 This is the wrath of YHWH on the earth called "*The day of YHWH*" in scripture

2 Ezek 7:12

3 This judgment coming on mankind that is still futuristic, is coming due to the breaking of the Torah, which conclusively proves the Torah could not be done away with.

4 This judgment will wipe off almost all people living on earth at the time.

5 A metaphoric phrase showing that all happiness has left the earth during this most troublesome time.

gleanings when the grape harvest is completed.

14 They lift up their voice; they sing for the majesty of YAHWEH; they cry aloud from the sea.

15 On account of this, glorify YAHWEH in the flames, the name of YAHWEH Elohim of Israel, in the coasts of the sea.

16 We have heard songs from the end of the earth, Honor to the Righteous. But I said, Leanness to me! Leanness to me! Woe to me! Traitors betray, even with treachery; traitors betray!

17 Dread, and the pit, and a snare are upon you, one living in the earth.

18 And it shall be, he who flees from the sound of dread shall fall into the pit. And he who comes up out of the middle of the pit shall be taken in the snare. For the windows from on high are opened, and the foundations of the earth quake.

19 The earth is breaking, breaking! The earth is crashing, crashing! The earth is tottering, tottering.

20 Like a drunkard, the earth is staggering, staggering! And it rocks to and fro like a hut[1]. And its trespass is heavy on it; and it shall fall, and not rise again.

21 And it shall be in that day, YAHWEH shall punish the army of the high place on high, and on the kings of the land on the land.

22 And they will be gathered, a gathering of prisoners in a dungeon. And they shall be shut up in a prison; and after many days they will be visited.

23 Then the moon shall blush, and the sun shall be ashamed, when YAHWEH of Hosts shall reign in Mount Zion and in Jerusalem; and before His elders is His glory. *(Joel 2:31)*

Chapter 25

1 O YAHWEH, You are my Elohim. I will exalt You; I will thank Your name; for You have done a wonderful thing: counsels from afar; faithful faithfulness.

2 Because You have made a heap from a city, a fortified city into a ruin; a citadel of foreigners not to be a city, not to be built, to forever.

3 For this the mighty people glorify You, the city of the ruthless nations shall fear You.

4 For You are a stronghold to the poor, a stronghold to the needy in his distress, a refuge from storm, a shadow from heat; because the breath of the ruthless is like a storm against a wall.

5 You shall lay low the noise of foreigners, like the heat in a dry place, the heat with the shadow of cloud; the shouting of the terrifying ones shall be laid low.

6 And YAHWEH of Hosts shall make a feast of fat things for all the peoples in this mountain; a feast of wine on the lees, of fat things full of marrow, refined wine on the lees.

7 And He will destroy in this mountain the face of the covering which covers all people, and the veil that is woven over all nations.

8 He will swallow up death in victory[2]! And Adonai YAHWEH will wipe away tears from all faces[3]. And He shall reprove the reproach of His people from all the earth; for YAHWEH has spoken.

9 And one shall say in that day, Behold, this is our Elohim; we have waited for Him, and He will save us.

---

[1] This seems to indicate some sort of cosmic disturbance such as an asteroid or meteor hitting the earth.

[2] 1 Cor 15:54

[3] Rev 21:4

This is YAHWEH; we have waited for Him; we will be glad and rejoice in His Y'shua*.

10 For the hand of YAHWEH shall rest in this mountain; and Moab shall be trampled under Him, even as straw is trampled in the water of a dung pit.

11 And He shall spread His hands in his midst, as he who swims strokes to swim. And He shall lay low his pride with the skill of His hands.

12 And He shall bow down the fortress of the height of your walls; He will lay low, touch to the earth, even to the dust.

Chapter 26

1 In that day this song shall be sung in the land of Judah: Y'shua* is a strong city to us; He sets up our walls and rampart.

2 Open the gates so the righteous nation may come in, keeping faithfulness.

3 You will keep in perfect peace the mind stayed on You, for he trusts in You.

4 Trust in YAHWEH forever, for in Yah YAHWEH[1] is an everlasting rock.

5 For He bows the dwellers on high; He lays low the lofty city; He lays it low to the ground; He makes it touch even to the dust.

6 The foot shall trample it, the feet of the poor, steps of the weak.

7 The path for the just is uprightness. Upright One, level the track of the just.

8 Yea, YAHWEH, in the path of Your judgments we awaited You; for Your name and for Your memory is the desire of our soul.

9 With my soul I desire You in the night; yea, with my spirit within me I diligently seek You. For when Your judgments are in the earth, those living in the world learn righteousness.

10 The wicked finds favor; he does not learn righteousness; he deals perversely in the land of honesty, and does not see the majesty of YAHWEH.

11 YAHWEH, Your hand is high; they do not see; they see and are ashamed of the zeal of the people. Yea, the fire of Your foes devours them.

12 YAHWEH, You will ordain peace for us; for also You have worked all our works for us.

13 YAHWEH our Elohim, masters beside You have governed us; only in You we will mention Your name.

14 Dead ones do not live; departed spirits do not rise; because of this You visited and destroyed them, and caused all memory of them to perish.

15 You have added to the nation, YAHWEH; You have added to the nation, You are glorified; You have extended it to the ends of the earth.

16 YAHWEH, they visited You in distress; they poured out a whisper; Your chastening was to them.

17 As a woman with child draws near to bear, she writhes and cries out in her pangs. So are we before You, YAHWEH.

18 We conceived; we writhe; as it were, we gave birth to wind. We have not worked salvation for the earth; and those living in the world have not fallen.

19 Your dead ones shall live, my dead body, they shall rise up. Awake and sing, those that dwell in the dust[2]; for the dew of lights is your dew; and the earth shall cast out departed spirits.

20 Come, My people, go in your rooms and shut your doors behind

[1] The Father's name is Yah Yahweh. Yahweh being a family name.

[2] The dead are asleep in the dust awaiting the resurrection. (1Cor 15:50-51, 1 Thes 4:13-17, Job 14:10, 12-14).

you. Hide for a little moment, until the
fury passes[1].
21 For, behold, YAHWEH comes
out of His place to visit his iniquity on
those dwelling on the earth. The earth
shall also reveal her blood, and shall
no more cover over her slain ones.

Chapter 27

1 In that day YAHWEH shall visit
the sea monster, the fleeing serpent,
with His great and fierce and strong
sword; even on the sea monster, the
twisting serpent; and He shall slay the
monster that is in the sea.
2 In that day sing to it, A vineyard of
desire;
3 I, YAHWEH, keep it; I will water it
every moment, that no one punish it; I
will guard it night and day.
4 Fury is not in Me. Who will give
Me briers and thorns in the battle? I
will step through it; I would burn it at
once.
5 Or will he lay hold of My strength
that he may make peace with Me? Let
him make peace with Me.
6 Those coming in shall take root;
Jacob shall blossom and Israel shall
bud, and they will fill the face of the
world with fruit.
7 As the striking of His striker, did
He strike him? Or as the slaying of His
slain, is he slain?
8 You will contend with her by
driving her away, by sending her away.
He shall take away by His harsh wind,
in the day of the east wind.
9 By this, then, the iniquity of Jacob
will be covered, and this is all the fruit,
to take away his sin; when he makes
all the stones of the altar as chalk-
stones that are beaten in pieces;
Asherahs and sun pillars shall not rise.
10 For the fortified city shall be
lonely, a forsaken pasture, and left like
a wilderness. The calf shall feed there,
and he shall lie there, and eat up its
branches.
11 When its boughs dry up, they are
broken off. Women shall come and
kindle them, for it is a people with no
understanding. On account of this His
Maker shall not pity him, and His
Former will not show him grace.
12 And it shall be in that day,
YAHWEH shall thresh from the
channel of the River to the torrent of
Egypt; and you shall be gathered one
by one, sons of Israel.
13 And it shall be in that day, the
great ram's horn shall be blown; and
those perishing in the land of Assyria
and the outcasts in the land of Egypt
shall come and shall worship
YAHWEH in the holy mountain in
Jerusalem.

Chapter 28

1 Woe to the crown of pride of the
drunkards of Ephraim, whose glorious
beauty is a fading flower on the head
of the fat valley of those who are
overcome with wine!
2 Behold, might and strength are to
YAHWEH; like a hailstorm, a
destroying storm; like a storm of
mighty waters overflowing; He sets
down to the earth with His hand.
3 The crown of pride of the
drunkards of Ephraim shall be
trampled down by His feet.
4 And the glorious beauty which is
on the head of the fat valley shall be a
fading flower, like the first ripe fig
before summer which the seeing one
sees; while it is yet in his hand, he
swallows it.
5 In that day YAHWEH of Hosts
shall become a crown of splendor and
a crown of beauty to the rest of His
people,

[1] Speaking to the remnant during this time of tribulation to be hidden from the fury.

6 and a spirit of justice to him who sits on the judgment seat; and for might to those turning back the battle toward the gate.
7 But they also have gone astray by wine, and have erred through liquor; priest and prophet have erred through fermented drink; they have been swallowed by wine; they strayed from liquor; they err in vision; they stumble in judgment;
8 for all tables are full of vomit and filth, without a clean place.
9 To whom shall He teach knowledge? And to whom shall He explain the message? Those weaned from milk, those moving from breasts?
10 For precept must be on precept, precept on precept; line on line, line on line; here a little, there a little[1].
11 For with stammering lip and another language, He will speak to this people[2];
12 to whom He said, This is the rest; cause the weary to rest. Also, This is the repose. But they willed not to hear.
13 Yet the Word of YAHWEH was to them, precept on precept, precept on precept; line on line, line on line; here a little, there a little; that they might go, and stumble, and be broken, and snared, and taken.
14 Therefore hear the Word of YAHWEH, scornful men, rulers of this people in Jerusalem.
15 Because you have said, We have cut a covenant with death; and, We have made a vision with Sheol, when the overwhelming rod passes through it will not come to us for we have made the lie our refuge, and we have hidden in falsehood.
16 So, Adonai YAHWEH says this: Behold, I place in Zion a Stone for a foundation, a tried Stone, a precious Cornerstone, a sure Foundation; he who believes shall not hurry[3].
17 And I will lay justice for a line, and righteousness for a plummet; and the hail shall sweep away the refuge of the lie; and the waters shall overflow the hiding place.
18 And your covenant with death shall be atoned for; and your vision with Sheol shall not rise up. When the overwhelming whip passes through, then you shall be for a trampling to it.
19 As often as it passes, it shall take you; for morning by morning it shall pass; and by day and by night, it shall only be a terror to understand the message.
20 For the bed is shorter than one can stretch himself on; and the cover is narrower than one can wrap himself in.
21 For YAHWEH shall rise up, as at Mount Perazim; He shall be stirred as in the Gibeon Valley; to do His work, His strange work; and to perform His task, His foreign task.
22 So, then, do not be mockers, that your bonds not be made strong. For I have heard from Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts that a full end is decreed on all the earth[4].
23 Listen and hear My voice; pay attention and hear My Word:
24 Does the plowman plow all day to sow? Does he open and break the clods of his ground?

---

1 There is no private interpretation to scripture 2Pe 1:20, but you must go from scripture to scripture and let the bible interpret itself.

2 All throughout scripture Yahweh spoke to Israel through his servants who spoke Hebrew or Aramaic, a close dialect of Hebrew. However, this prophecy is saying to Ephraim they will be taught by non-Hebrew speaking people showing this is due to their Diaspora and the penalty of losing the language, due to their rejection of Torah and dispersion from the land.

3 Speaking of Messiah

4 Speaking of the "*day of YHWH*" and His wrath in the end time.

25 When he has leveled its surface, does he not strew black cummin, and scatter cummin, and place wheat in rows, and barley in its place, and spelt in its border?
26 And He instructs him for the right; his Elohim teaches him.
27 For black cummin is not threshed with the sledge; nor is a cartwheel turned on cummin. But black cummin is beaten out with the staff, and cummin with the rod.
28 Bread is crushed, but not always does one thresh it with threshing; and he drives the wheel of his cart; and his horses do not beat it small[1].
29 This also comes from YAHWEH of Hosts, doing wonders in counsel, making sound wisdom great.

Chapter 29

1 Woe to Ariel[2], to Ariel, the city where David camped. Add year on year; let the feasts run their circle[3].
2 Then I will compress Ariel, and there shall be mourning and sorrow; and it shall be to Me as Ariel.
3 And I will camp as a circle on you, and will lay siege work on you[4]; and I will raise up ramparts on you.
4 And you shall be brought low; you shall speak from the ground; and your speech shall be bowed down; and your voice shall be from the ground, like a fortuneteller; and your speech shall chirp out of the dust.
5 And the host of your strangers shall be as fine powder, and as chaff passing, the host of terrifying ones; and it will be suddenly, instantly;
6 you shall be visited from YAHWEH of Hosts; with thunder and earthquake, and great noise, tempest and storm, and flame of devouring fire.
7 And the multitude of all the nations who fight against Ariel[5], even all battling her and compressing her and her stronghold, shall be like a dream of a night vision.
8 It shall even be as when a hungry one dreams; and, behold, he is eating; but when he awakes, his soul is empty. Or it shall be as when a thirsty one dreams; and, behold, he is drinking, but when he awakes, he is faint, and his soul is longing. So shall be the multitude of all the nations who fight against Mount Zion.
9 Wait and wonder! Blind yourselves, and be blind! They are drunk, but not with wine! They stagger, but not with liquor!
10 For YAHWEH has poured out on you the spirit of deep sleep, and has closed your eyes. He has covered the prophets and your heads, the seers[6].
11 And the whole vision to you is like the words of a sealed book which they give to one knowing books, saying, Please read this. Then he says, I am not able, for it is sealed. *(Dan 12:4)*
12 And the book is given to one who does not know books, saying, Please read this. Then he says, I do not know books[7].
13 And YAHWEH says, Because this people draws near with its mouth, and they honor Me with its lip; but its

1 Vs 23-28, Just as a farmer uses different threshing instruments for each type of grain, YHWH intends to use different types of judgments to bring His people to repentance.
2 Speaking of Jerusalem
3 The feast run by the Hebrew lunar cycle, which is a 19 yr time cycle.
4 There is a play on words here to the circular pattern to the 19 yr time cycle to to allowing the enemy to encircle the camp of Jerusalem and building a rampart to attack her.
5 Zech 14:2
6 Rom 11:8
7 Dan 12:10

heart is far from Me, and their fear of Me is taught by the commands of men;
14 So, behold, I am adding to do wonderfully with this people, the wonder, even a wonder. For the wisdom of his wise ones shall perish, and the wit of his witty ones shall be hidden.
15 Woe to those who go deep to hide their purposes from YAHWEH; yea, their works are in the dark; and they say, Who sees us? And, Who knows us?
16 Oh your perversity! Shall the former be counted as the clay? For shall the work of its maker say, He did not make me? Or shall the thing formed say to him who formed it, He does not understand?
17 Is it not yet a little while, and Lebanon shall be turned into a fruitful field; and the fruitful field shall be counted for the forest?
18 And in that day[1] the deaf shall hear the words of a book; and the eyes of the blind shall see out of their gloom and out of darkness. *(Is 35:5)*
19 And the humble ones shall increase joy in YAHWEH, and the poor among men shall rejoice in the Holy One of Israel.
20 For the terrible one is brought to nothing; and the scorner is ended; and all that watch for iniquity are cut off;
21 those who make a man sin by a word, even laying a trap for the reprover in the gate, and turn aside the just for a worthless thing.
22 So YAHWEH says this: He who redeemed (Aleph/Tav) Abraham, as to the house of Jacob: Jacob shall not be ashamed now, nor shall his face become pale now.
23 But when he sees his children in his midst, the work of My hands, they shall sanctify My name. They shall sanctify the Holy One of Jacob, and shall fear the Elohim of Israel.
24 Those who erred in spirit shall come to understanding, and those who murmured shall learn the teaching.

Chapter 30

1 Woe to rebellious sons, declares YAHWEH, to make counsel, but not from Me; and to weave a covering web, but not of My Spirit, in order to add sin on sin;
2 who are walking to go down to Egypt, but have not asked at My mouth, to take refuge in the stronghold of Pharaoh, and to trust in the shadow of Egypt[2].
3 And the stronghold of Pharaoh shall become a shame to you; and relying on the shadow of Egypt shall be a disgrace.
4 For his rulers were in Zoan, and his ambassadors reached to Hanes.
5 Every one is ashamed over a people who do not profit them; they are not for a help, and not for profiting, but for a shame; yea, also for a reproach[3].
6 The burden of the beasts of the south: Into the land of trouble and constraint. The lioness and the lion are from them; the viper and fiery flying serpent. They carry their riches on the shoulders of young donkeys, and their treasures on the humps of camels, to a people who cannot profit them.
7 And Egypt; vainly and emptily they help. So I have called to this: Their strength is to sit still.
8 Now come, write it before them on a tablet, and note it on a book, so that

[1] A Jewish idiom for the end times.

[2] A strong warning against Judah seeking an alliance with Egypt for security instead of seeking YHWH.

[3] Egypt has never been a true ally of Israel and has never been their refuge, only a false security.

it may be for the latter day, until forever[1];
9 that this is a rebellious people, lying sons; sons who are not willing to hear the Torah of YAHWEH;
10 who say to the seers, Do not see; and to the prophets, Do not have a vision for right things to us; speak smooth things to us; have a vision of delusions.
11 Turn aside from the way; stretch from the path; cause the Holy One of Israel to cease from before us.
12 For this reason, so says the Holy One of Israel, Because of your rejection of this Word, and your trust in oppression and perversity, even resting on it;
13 So this iniquity shall be to you as a broken section falling, like the bulging out of a high wall, the breaking of which comes suddenly, in an instant.
14 And its smashing is as the smashing of a potter's vessel; when broken in pieces, he has no pity; for in its breaking there is not found a shard to carry fire from the hearth, nor to skim water from a marsh.
15 For so says Adonai YAHWEH, the Holy One of Israel, In returning and rest you shall be saved; and in quietness and hope shall be your strength. But you were not willing.
16 For you said, No! For we will flee on horseback. On account of this you shall flee. Also, you say, We will ride on swift ones. On account of this, those who pursue you shall be swift.
17 One thousand shall flee at the rebuke of one. You shall flee from the rebuke of five, until you are left like a pole on the top of the mountain, and like a sign on a hill.
18 And so YAHWEH waits to be gracious to you. And for this He is exalted to have mercy on you; for YAHWEH is an Elohim of justice. Blessed are all who wait for Him.
19 For the people shall live in Zion[2], at Jerusalem; you shall surely cry no more. He surely will be gracious to you at the sound of your cry. When He hears, He will answer you.
20 And YAHWEH gives you the bread of adversity, and the water of affliction; but your teachers shall not be hidden any more; but your eyes shall be able to see your teachers.
21 And your ears shall hear a word behind you, saying, This is the way, walk in it, when you go right, or when you go left.
22 And you shall defile the covering of your carved images of silver; and the covering of your molten images of gold. You shall strew them as a menstruous cloth; you shall say to it, Go out!
23 Then He shall give rain for your seed, with which you sow the ground. And the bread of the produce of the earth also shall be fat and plentiful. In that day your livestock shall feed in a pasture made wide.
24 Also, the oxen and the young donkeys that till the ground shall eat seasoned fodder which one winnows with the shovel and with the fork[3].
25 And on every high mountain, and on every high hill, shall be rivulets lifted up, streams of water, in a day of great slaying, when towers fall.
26 And the moonlight shall be like the light of the sun. And the sun's light shall be sevenfold, as the light of seven days, in the day of binding up, YAHWEH binding the break of His people, and healing the wound of His blow.

1 This message is for the end times.

2 Verses 18-26 go into millennial blessings

3 Showing fullness of bounty, as the harvest is plentiful, and even the chaff is used for food for the animals who worked turning the sled to crush the grain.

27 Behold, the name of YAHWEH comes from afar; His anger burns; and is heavy as the uplifting of smoke; His lips are full of fury, and His tongue like a devouring fire.

28 And like an overflowing torrent, His breath shall divide to the neck, to sift the nations with the sieve of vanity, and a misleading bridle on the jaws of the peoples.

29 The song shall be to you, as the night when the feast is sanctified, and gladness of heart, as one going with the flute, to come into the mount of YAHWEH, to the Rock of Israel.

30 And YAHWEH shall make the majesty of His voice heard; and He causes His arm to be seen coming down with raging anger and a flame of consuming fire, cloudburst and storm, and hailstones.

31 For through the voice of YAHWEH, Assyria shall be crushed, the rod with which He strikes.

32 And every passage of the appointed staff that YAHWEH causes to rest on him will be with timbrels and with harps. And in brandishing battles He fights with her.

33 For Topheth[1] is ordained from yesterday. Also, it is prepared for the king; He deepened; He widened its pyre; He makes great with fire and wood. The breath of YAHWEH burns in it like a torrent of brimstone.

Chapter 31

1 Woe to those who go down to Egypt for help, and lean on horses, and trust on chariots, because they are great; and in horsemen because they are very strong! But they do not look to the Holy One of Israel, nor seek YAHWEH[2].

2 And He also is wise, and brings evil, and will not turn aside His Words, but will rise against the house of evildoers, and against the help of those who work iniquity.

3 And Egypt is a man, and not El. And their horses are flesh, and not spirit. And YAHWEH stretches out His hand, and both he who helps shall fall, and he who is helped shall fall; and they shall all cease together.

4 For so YAHWEH has said to me: As the lion roars, even the young lion on his prey when the multitude of shepherds are gathered against him, he will not fear their voice, nor fret himself because of their noise. So YAHWEH of Hosts shall go down to fight on Mount Zion, and on its hill[3].

5 As birds that fly, so YAHWEH of Hosts will shield over Jerusalem; shielding and delivering, and passing over, He will save it.

6 Turn back to Him against whom you have made a deep revolt, sons of Israel.

7 For in that day each shall despise his silver idols and his golden idols, which your hands have made for you; a sin.

8 Then Assyria shall fall by a sword, not of man; yea, a sword, not of man, shall devour him. For he shall flee from the sword, and his young men shall become forced labor.

9 And his rock will pass away from fear; and his commanders shall tremble at the banner[4], declares YAHWEH, whose fire is in Zion, and His furnace in Jerusalem[5].

---

1 A region in Jerusalem west of the Kidron valley where children were sacrificed to Molech.

2 See note on Is 30:5

3 Zech 14:2-4

4 Sign of Messiah

5 Jerusalem is the eternal capital and headquarters of YHWH forever.

Chapter 32

1 Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and rulers shall rule in judgment[1].
2 And a man shall be a hiding place from the wind, a shelter from the storm, as streams of water in a dry place; like the shadow of a great rock in a weary land.
3 And the eyes of those that see shall not be dim, and the ears of those who hear shall listen.
4 And the heart of the rash one shall discern knowledge; and the tongue of those that stutter shall hurry to speak clear things.
5 The fool shall no more be called noble, and a miser will not be said to be generous.
6 For the fool speaks foolishness, and his heart works iniquity, to do wickedness; and to speak error against YAHWEH, to make the hungry soul empty; and he causes the drink of the thirsty to fail.
7 And the weapons of the miser are evil; he devises wicked plots to destroy the poor with lying words, even the needy when he speaks right.
8 But the noble one devises noble things; and he shall rise by noble things.
9 O women who are at ease, rise up. Hear my voice; confident daughters, listen to my word.
10 You will shake for days on a year, confident women; for the vintage fails; the gathering will not come.
11 Tremble, women at ease; shake, confident women; strip and make yourselves bare, and bind on sackcloth on your loins;
12 be wailing over breasts, over pleasant fields, over the fruitful vine.
13 Thorns and briers shall spring up on the land of My people; even over all the houses of joy in the jubilant city,
14 because the palace is forsaken; the crowd of the city is forsaken; mound and tower are instead caves, until forever; a joy of wild donkeys; pasture for flocks;
15 until is poured out on us the Spirit from on high, and the wilderness becomes a fruitful field; and the fruitful field is reckoned as a forest.
16 Then justice shall dwell in the wilderness, and righteousness shall dwell in the fruitful field.
17 And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the service of righteousness shall be quietness and hope forever.
18 And My people shall live in a peaceful home, and in safe dwellings, and in secure resting places.
19 Though it hails when the forest is going down, and the city is laid low,
20 blessed are you who sow beside all waters, who send out the foot of the ox and the donkey[2].

Chapter 33

1 Woe to one destroying, and you not being destroyed, betraying and they did not betray you! When you finish destroying, you will be destroyed; when you stop betraying, they will betray you.
2 O YAHWEH, give us your grace. We have hoped in You; be their arm in the mornings, also, our salvation *(Y'shua*)* in time of distress.
3 At the sound of the tumult, peoples fled; at Your exaltation, nations scattered.
4 And Your prey shall be gathered as the stripping locust gathers; as locusts

[1] More millennial blessings implied.

[2] They are having the blessing of water for crops and the animals to plant and harvest them.

run to and fro, he also runs about on it.
5 YAHWEH is exalted, for He dwells on high; He has filled Zion with justice and righteousness.
6 And He will be the security of your times, strength of salvation *(Y'shua*)*, wisdom, and knowledge; the fear of YAHWEH is His treasure.
7 Behold, their heroes cry outside; the envoys of peace shall weep bitterly.
8 The highways are desolated; the path crosser ceases. He has broken the covenant; he has rejected cities; he has not respected man.
9 The land mourns and droops; Lebanon is ashamed; Sharon withers like a wilderness; Bashan is shaken out; also Carmel.
10 Now I will rise up, says YAHWEH. Now I will be exalted; now I will be lifted up.
11 You shall conceive chaff; you shall bear stubble[1]; your fiery breath shall devour you.
12 And peoples shall be as burnings of lime; as thorns cut away, they shall be burned in fire.
13 Distant ones, hear what I have done; and you near ones, know My might.
14 The sinners of Zion are afraid; terror has seized profane ones[2]; who of us shall tarry with consuming fire? Who of us shall tarry with everlasting burnings[3]?
15 He who walks righteously and speaks uprightly; he who despises the gain of oppressions, who shakes his hands free from taking the bribe, who stops his ear from hearing of blood, and shuts his eyes from looking at evil[4].
16 He shall live on high; strongholds of rocks will be his retreat; his bread shall be given; his waters are faithful.
17 Your eyes shall see the king in his beauty; they shall see a land that is very far off.
18 Your heart shall ponder terror: Where is he counting? Where is he weighing? Where is he counting the towers?
19 You shall not see the fierce people, from hearing a people of a deep lip, of a foreign tongue, that none understands.
20 Behold, Zion, the city of our Holy Day meetings! Your eyes shall see Jerusalem, a quiet home, a tent that shall not be moved; its stakes shall not be pulled up forever, nor shall any of its cords be pulled off.
21 But majestic YAHWEH will place there for us a place of rivers and streams, broad on both hands; a ship with oars shall not go in it, and a majestic boat shall not pass through it.
22 For YAHWEH is our judge; YAHWEH is our lawgiver; YAHWEH is our king; He will save us.
23 Your ropes are loosened; they do not hold the base of their mast; they could not spread the sail. Then the prey of much plunder shall be divided; the lame shall seize on the spoil.
24 And an inhabitant shall not say, I am sick; the people who live in it; iniquity is taken away.

Chapter 34

1 Nations, come near to hear; and peoples, listen! Let the earth hear, and its fullness, the world and all its offspring.

[1] Compare this barren forecast to the blessing of Is 32:20.

[2] The righteous who keep the Torah of YHWH are blessed but the sinners are afraid when the wrath of YHWH comes (Math 7:21-23).

[3] Heb 10:26-32.

[4] Whatever you focus on is most real to you and a true believer is not to look upon evil. (Pr 20:8)

2 For the wrath of YAHWEH is on all the nations, and fury on all their army; He has devoted them; He gave them to slaughter.

3 And their slain shall be thrown out; and the stench from their carcasses shall go up; and the mountains shall be melted with their blood.

4 And all the host of the heavens shall be dissolved, and the heavens shall be rolled together like a scroll. Then all their host shall droop, as a leaf drooping from the vine, and as the drooping from a fig tree.

5 For My sword is drenched in the heavens. Behold, it shall come down on Edom, and on the people of My curse, for judgment.

6 A sword is to YAHWEH; it is filled with blood; it is made fat with fatness, with the blood of lambs and goats, with the fat of the kidneys of rams. For YAHWEH has a sacrifice in Bozrah, and a great slaughter in the land of Edom. *(Is 63:1-6)*

7 And wild oxen shall come down with them, and bulls with strong bulls; and their land is drenched with blood, and their dust made fat with fatness.

8 For the day of vengeance is to YAHWEH[1], the year of repayments for Zion's cause.

9 And its torrents shall be turned to pitch, and its dust to brimstone; and its land shall become burning pitch.

10 It shall not be put out night or day; its smoke shall go up forever. From generation to generation, it shall lie waste; no one shall pass through it forever and forever.

11 But the owl and the hedgehog shall possess it; and the eared owl and the raven shall live in it. And He shall stretch out on it the line of shame, and the stones of emptiness.

12 They shall call its nobles to a kingdom, but none shall be there; and all her rulers shall be nothing.

13 And thorns shall grow in her palaces, nettles and thistles in its fortresses; and it shall be a home for jackals, a court for daughters of ostriches.

14 The desert creatures shall also meet with the howlers; and the shaggy goat shall cry to his fellow. The screech owl shall also settle there, and find a place of rest for herself.

15 The snake shall nest there, and shall lay, and hatch, and shall gather in her shadow. Vultures shall also be gathered together, each with its mate.

16 Search and read from the Book of YAHWEH; not one of these misses, each not lacking her mate; for He has commanded my mouth, and by His Spirit He has assembled them.

17 And He has made fall a lot for them, and His hand divided it to them by line. They shall possess it until forever, from generation to generation they shall live in it.

Chapter 35

1 The wilderness and dry land shall rejoice for them; and the desert shall exult and bloom like the crocus.

2 Surely, it shall bloom and exult, even with joy and singing. Lebanon's glory shall be given to it, the honor of Carmel and Sharon; they shall see the glory of YAHWEH, the majesty of our Elohim[2].

3 Make the weak hands strong, and firm up the stumbling knees.

4 Say to those of a hasty heart, Be strong! Do not fear! Behold, your Elohim will come with vengeance; with the full dealing of Elohim, He will come *(Y'shua*)* and save you.

5 Then the eyes of the blind shall be

---

[1] Yahweh's wrath on the earth is called *"The Day of YHWH*" in scripture.

[2] Showing the glory in the kingdom given to YHWH even by His creation and nature.

opened, and the ears of the deaf opened.

6 Then the lame shall leap like a deer, and the tongue of the dumb shall sing[1]. For waters shall break out in the wilderness, and streams in the desert[2].

7 And the mirage shall become a pool, and the thirsty land shall become springs of waters, in the home of jackals, in its lair, and a place for the reed and rush.

8 And a highway shall be there, and a way, and it shall be called, The Way of Holiness. The unclean shall not pass over it[3]. And it is for them, the one going in the way; yea, fools shall not go astray.

9 No lion shall be there; and no violent beast shall go up on it; it shall not be found there. But redeemed ones shall walk there.

10 And the ransomed of YAHWEH shall return and enter Zion, with singing and everlasting joy on their head; gladness and joy shall reach them; and sorrow and sighing shall flee. *(Rev 21:4, Is 51:11)*

Chapter 36

1 And it happened in the fourteenth year of King Hezekiah, Sennacherib, king of Assyria, came against all the fortified cities of Judah, and took them.

2 And the king of Assyria sent the chief of the cupbearers from Lachish to Jerusalem, to King Hezekiah, with a great army. And he stood by the conduit of the upper pool, in the highway of the Fuller's Field.

3 And Eliakim, Hilkiah's son, who was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and Asaph's son Joah, the recorder, came out to him.

4 And the chief of the cupbearers said to them, Say now to Hezekiah, The great king says this, the king of Assyria, What trust is this in which you trust?

5 I say, Are only words of the lips counsel and strength for war? Now, in whom have you trusted that you rebelled against me?

6 Behold, you trust on the staff of this broken reed, on Egypt, which if a man leans on it, it goes into his hand and pierces it; so is Pharaoh king of Egypt to all who trust in him.

7 But if you say to me, We trust in YAHWEH our Elohim; is it not He whose high places and altars Hezekiah has removed? And He said to Judah and Jerusalem, You shall worship before this altar. *(2Kgs 18:1-5)*

8 Now, then, please exchange pledges with my master the king of Assyria, and I will give you two thousand horses, if you are able to set riders on them for you.

9 How then will you turn away the face of one commander of the least of my master's servants, and put your trust in Egypt for chariotry and horsemen?

10 And now have I come up against this land to destroy it without YAHWEH? YAHWEH said to me, Go up to this land and destroy it.

11 And Eliakim and Shebna and Joah said to the chief of the cupbearers, Please speak to your servants in Aramaic, for we hear. But do not speak

---

1 In the Kingdom there will be total healing to sickness and as a sign that He was the Messiah and King of that Kingdom, Yahshua opened the eyes of the blind and healed the deaf and the lame fulfilling this scripture.

2 Over the last 20 yrs in the southern Israeli dessert, from artisan underground wells, this scripture has literally come to past and there is much vegetation now growing in the dessert.

3 Heb 12:14

to us in Judean, in the ears of the people on the wall.

12 But the chief of the cupbearers said, Has my master sent me to your master and to you to speak these words? Is it not on the men who sit on the wall, to eat their own dung, and to drink the water of their feet with you?

13 And the chief of the cupbearers stood and cried with a loud voice in Judean, and said, Hear the words of the great king, the king of Assyria.

14 So says the king, Do not let Hezekiah deceive you, for he will not be able to save you.

15 And let not Hezekiah make you trust in YAHWEH, saying, YAHWEH saving will save us; this city shall not be given into the hand of the king of Assyria.

16 Do not listen to Hezekiah. For the king of Assyria says this, Make peace with me and come out to me. Then let each eat of his own vine, and each of his own fig tree, and each drink the waters of his own well,

17 until I come and take you to a land like your own land, a land of grain and new wine, a land of bread and vineyards.

18 Let not Hezekiah persuade you, saying, YAHWEH will deliver us. Have the gods of the nations delivered a man of his land from the king of Assyria's hand?

19 Where are the gods of Hamath, and Arpad? Where are the gods of Sepharvaim? And when have they delivered Samaria out of my hand?

20 Who among all the gods of these lands has delivered their land out of my hand, that YAHWEH should keep Jerusalem out of my hand?

21 But they were silent, and did not answer him a word; for this was the king's order, saying, Do not answer him.

22 And Eliakim, Hilkiah's son who was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and Asaph's son Joah, the recorder, came to Hezekiah with their garments torn. And they reported to him the words of the chief of cupbearers.

Chapter 37

1 And it happened when King Hezekiah heard, he tore his garments and was covered with sackcloth. And he went into the house of YAHWEH.

2 And he sent Eliakim, who was over the house, and Shebna the scribe, and the elders of the priests, covered with sackcloth, to Isaiah the prophet, the son of Amoz.

3 And they said to him, So says Hezekiah, This day is a day of distress, and reproach, and contempt. For sons have come to the breach and there is no strength to give birth.

4 It may be YAHWEH your Elohim will hear the words of the chief of the cupbearers whom his master the king of Assyria has sent to reproach the living Elohim, and rebuke against the words which YAHWEH your Elohim has heard. And you shall lift up prayer for the remnant that is found.

5 So the servants of King Hezekiah came to Isaiah.

6 And Isaiah said to them, You shall say this to your master, So says YAHWEH: Do not fear the words which you have heard, with which the followers of the king of Assyria have blasphemed Me

7 Behold, I am giving into him a spirit, and he shall hear a rumor, and return to his own land. And I will cause him to fall by the sword in his own land.

8 So the chief of the cupbearers returned and found the king of Assyria warring against Libnah[1]; for he had

[1] 1 Chron 6:57.

heard that he had pulled up stakes from Lachish.
9 And he heard about Tirhakah the king of Ethiopia, saying, He has come out to fight with you. And he heard and sent messengers to Hezekiah, saying,
10 So you shall say to Hezekiah, king of Judah, saying, Do not let your Elohim in whom you trust deceive you, saying, Jerusalem shall not be given into the king of Assyria's hand.
11 Behold, you have heard what the kings of Assyria have done to all lands, to destroy them utterly. And shall you be delivered?
12 Have the gods of the nations saved those whom my fathers have destroyed, Gozan and Haran, and Rezeph, and the sons of Eden in Telassar[1]?
13 Where is Hamath's king, and Arpad's king, and the king of the city of Sepharvaim, Hena, and Ivah[2]?
14 And Hezekiah received the letter from the hand of the couriers, and read it. Then Hezekiah went up to the house of YAHWEH and spread it before YAHWEH.
15 And Hezekiah prayed to YAHWEH, saying,
16 O YAHWEH of Hosts, Elohim of Israel, who sits between the cherubs[3], You are He, Elohim, all the kingdoms of the earth come from you. You have made the heavens and the earth.
17 Bow down Your ear, O YAHWEH, and hear. Open Your eye, O YAHWEH, and see; and hear all the words of Sennacherib which he has sent, to reproach the living Elohim.
18 Truly, O YAHWEH, the kings of Assyria have laid waste all the lands, and their land,
19 and have given their gods into the fire (for they were not Elohim, only the work of men's hands, wood and stone; so they have destroyed them).
20 And now, O YAHWEH our Elohim, save us from his hand, so that all the kingdoms of the earth may know that You are YAHWEH, the only Elohim.
21 And Isaiah the son of Amoz sent to Hezekiah, saying, So says YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, Because you have prayed to Me against Sennacherib the king of Assyria,
22 this is the Word YAHWEH has spoken about him: The virgin, the daughter of Zion, has despised you, laughing you to scorn; the daughter of Jerusalem has shaken the head behind you.
23 Whom have you mocked and reviled? And against whom have you lifted your voice, and lifted your eyes on high? Against the Holy One of Israel!
24 By your servants, you have mocked YAHWEH, and said, By my many chariots I have come up to the tops of mountains, the sides of Lebanon; and I will cut down its tall cedars, its choice fir trees; and I will go to its greatest height, the forest of its fruitful field. *(2Kgs 19:24)*
25 I have dug and drunk water; and I have dried up the streams of Egypt with the sole of my feet.
26 Have you not heard it from afar? I have made it from days of old, even I formed it. Now I have caused it to come, and you are to cause fortified cities to crash into heaps, ruins.
27 And those living in it were short of hand, dismayed and ashamed. They were as the field grass and the green herbs; like the grass of the housetops, even blasted before it has risen.
28 But I know your sitting down, and your going out, and your coming in, and your raging against Me.

1 These cities were in Mesopotamia.
2 These cities were in Syria, Is 36:18-20.
3 Ex 25:21-22, Num 7:89, Ps 80:1, Ps 99:1.

29 Because of your raging against Me, and your arrogance has come up to My ears, even I will put My hook in your nose[1], and My bridle in your lips; and I will turn you back by the way you came in.

30 And this shall be the sign to you: You shall eat self-sown grain this year; and the second year, that which springs up; and in the third year you shall sow and reap, and plant vineyards, and eat their fruit[2].

31 The remnant of the house of Judah that has escaped shall again take root downward, and it produces fruit upward.

32 For a remnant shall go out of Jerusalem, and the escaped ones out of Mount Zion; the zeal of YAHWEH of Hosts shall do this.

33 So YAHWEH says this to the king of Assyria, He shall not come into this city, nor shoot an arrow there, nor come before it with a shield, nor pour out a siege mound on it.

34 He shall return by the same way that he came in, and he shall not come into this city, says YAHWEH.

35 For I will defend over this city to save it, for My own sake, and for My servant David's sake.

36 Then the Messenger of YAHWEH went out and struck a hundred and eighty five thousand in the camp of Assyria. And they rose early in the morning; and, behold! They were all dead corpses.

37 And Sennacherib, king of Assyria, set out, and went and returned; and he lived at Nineveh.

38 And it happened as he was worshiping in the house of his god Nisroch, even his sons Adrammelech and Sharezer struck him with the sword. And they escaped into the land of Ararat. And his son Esar-Haddon reigned in his place.

Chapter 38

1 In those days Hezekiah was sick to death. And Isaiah the son of Amoz, the prophet, came to him and said to him, So says YAHWEH, Command your house, for you are dying, and shall not live.

2 And Hezekiah turned his face to the wall and prayed to YAHWEH,

3 and said, O YAHWEH, I beg You to remember now that I have walked before You in truth and with a whole heart; and I have done the good in Your eyes. And Hezekiah wept with a great weeping.

4 Then the Word of YAHWEH was to Isaiah, saying,

5 Go and say to Hezekiah, So says YAHWEH the Elohim of your father David, I have heard your prayer; I have seen your tears. Behold, I will add fifteen years to your days.

6 And I will deliver you and this city out of the king of Assyria's hand. And I will shield over this city.

7 So this shall be the sign to you from YAHWEH, that YAHWEH shall do this thing that He has spoken:

8 Behold, I will bring back the shadow of the steps which has gone down in the steps of Ahaz with the sun, backward ten steps. So the sun went back up ten steps, by which steps it had gone down[3]!

9 The writing of Hezekiah king of Judah, when he had been sick, and had recovered from his illness:

[1] The Assyrians often led away their captives by tying ropes to rings placed in their noses.

[2] YHWH is promising that they would not be destroyed and His sign is that He would grow the grain for survival for 2 yrs and they would be there in the third year to plant.

[3] Some believe that this was a sun dial with literal steps that the sun would shade to know the time of day.

10 I said in the cessation of my days, I shall go to the gates of Sheol; I am called to account for the rest of my years.
11 I said, I shall not see Yah YAHWEH[1] in the land of the living; I shall no longer look on man with those dwelling in the death-rest.
12 My generation is plucked up and carried away from me, like a shepherd's tent; I have cut off my life like the weaver. He will cut me off from the threads; from day to night You will make an end of me.
13 I leveled my soul until morning. Like a lion, so He shatters all my bones. From day until night You make an end of me.
14 Like a swift or a crane, so I chatter. I moan as the dove; my eyes look weakly to the heights, O YAHWEH; I am oppressed; intervene for me!
15 What shall I say? For He speaks to me, and He has acted. I shall go softly all my years over the bitterness of my soul.
16 O YAHWEH, on them they live, and for all in them is the life of my spirit. And You heal me, and make me live.
17 Behold, for peace was bitter to me, most bitter; but You loved my soul from the pit of destruction; You have cast all my sins behind Your back.
18 For Sheol cannot thank You; death cannot praise You; the ones going down to the Pit cannot hope for Your truth.
19 The living, the living is the one thanking You; as I do today. The father makes known Your truth to his sons.
20 For YAHWEH will save me; and we will play my songs on stringed instruments all the days of our life, at the house of YAHWEH.
21 For Isaiah had said, Let them take a cake of figs[2] and rub it on the ulcer, and he will live.
22 And Hezekiah said, What is the sign that I will go up to the house of YAHWEH?

Chapter 39

1 At that time Merodach-Baladan, the son of Baladan, king of Babylon, sent letters and a present to Hezekiah; for he had heard that he was ill, and was made strong.
2 And Hezekiah was glad because of them and let them see the house of his treasure[3], the silver, and the gold, and the spices, and the good oil, and all his weapons, and all that was found in his treasuries; there was nothing in his house or in all his kingdom that Hezekiah did not let them see.
3 And Isaiah the prophet came to King Hezekiah and said to him, What did these men say? And from where did they come to you? And Hezekiah said, They have come from a distant land to me, from Babylon.
4 Then he said, What have they seen in your house? And Hezekiah said, They have seen all that is in my house; there is not a thing among my treasures that I have not made them see.
5 And Isaiah said to Hezekiah, Hear the Word of YAHWEH of Hosts:
6 Behold, days come when all that is in your house, even what your fathers have treasured up until now, shall be borne away to Babylon[4]; nothing shall be left, says YAHWEH.
7 And they shall take of your sons who shall come forth out from you, which you shall father; and they shall

1 Yah Yahweh is the name of the Father.

2 Figs were used for medicinal purposes in ancient Ugarit.

3 2 Chron 32:23.

4 2 Kgs 25:13-15, Dan 1:2, Dan 5:3, 23.

be eunuchs in the palace of the king of Babylon.

8 Then Hezekiah said to Isaiah, The Word of YAHWEH that you have said is good. And he said, For there shall be peace and truth in my days.

Chapter 40

1 Comfort, O comfort My people, says your Elohim.

2 Speak lovingly to the heart of Jerusalem; yea, cry to her that her warfare is done, that her iniquity is pardoned; for she has taken from the hand of YAHWEH double for all her sins.

3 The voice of him who cries in the wilderness: Prepare the way of YAHWEH; make straight in the desert a highway for our Elohim. (*Math 3:3)*

4 Every valley shall be exalted, and every mountain and hill shall be made low; and the knoll shall be a level place, and the rough places a plain.

5 And the glory of YAHWEH shall be revealed, and all flesh shall see it together, for the mouth of YAHWEH has spoken.

6 A voice said, Cry! And he said, What shall I cry? All flesh is grass, and all its grace as the flower of the field!

7 The grass withers, the flower fades because the Spirit of YAHWEH blows on it. Surely the people is grass.

8 The grass withers; the flower fades; but the Word of our Elohim shall rise forever.

9 Go up for yourself on the high mountain, one bearing good news to Zion; lift up your voice with strength, one bearing good news to Jerusalem. Lift up, do not fear. Say to the cities of Judah, Behold! Your Elohim! *(Is 52:7)*

10 Behold, Adonai YAHWEH will come with strength, and His arm rules for Him. Behold, His reward is with Him, and His wage before Him. *(Is 62:11, Zech 14:1-4)*

11 He shall feed His flock like a shepherd; He shall gather lambs with His arm; and carry them in His bosom; those with young He will lead;[1]

12 who has measured in His hand the waters and the heavens by a span meted out; and enclosed in the measure the dust of the earth, and weighed in the balance the mountains, and the hills in the scales,

13 who has meted out the Spirit of YAHWEH, or a man His counsel taught Him?

14 With whom did He take counsel, and who trained Him and taught Him in the path of justice; and taught Him knowledge, and made known to Him the way of discernment?

15 Lo, nations are as a drop from a bucket, and are reckoned as dust of the scales. Lo, He takes up coasts as a little thing.

16 And Lebanon is not enough to burn, nor are its beasts enough for a burnt offering.

17 All the nations are as nothing before Him; to Him they are reckoned less than nothing and emptiness.

18 And to whom will you liken El? Or what likeness will you array to Him?

19 The craftsman pours out the casted image, the smelter spreads it with gold; and he casts the chains of silver.

20 He too poor for that offering chooses a tree that will not rot; he seeks a skilled artisan for him, to prepare a carved image that will not be shaken.

21 Have you not known? Have you not heard? Was it not told to you from the beginning? Did you not discern from the foundations of the earth?

[1] This is referring to the captives returning from Babylon. Is 52:11-12

22 He who sits on the circle[1] of the earth, even those living in it are like grasshoppers; He who stretches the heavens like a curtain, and spreads them like a tent to live in; *(Zech 12:1)*
23 who brings princes into nothing. He makes judges of the earth as nothing.
24 Yea, they shall not be planted; yea, they are not sown; yea, their stem is not taking root in the earth. And He shall also blow on them, and they shall wither, and the whirlwind shall lift them up like stubble and take them away.
25 To whom then will you compare Me, or am I equaled, says the Holy One?
26 Lift up your eyes on high and look: Who has created these? Who brings out their host by number? By greatness of vigor, and might of power, He calls them all by names; not one is lacking.
27 Why will you say, O Jacob, and speak, O Israel; My way is hidden from YAHWEH, and my judgment is passed over by my Elohim?
28 Have you not known? Have you not heard? YAHWEH, the everlasting Elohim, the Creator of the ends of the earth; He is not faint, nor does He grow weary; there is no searching to His understanding.
29 He gives power to the faint, and to him with no vigor He increases might.
30 Even youths are faint and fatigued, and young men stumbling shall stumble;
31 but the ones waiting for YAHWEH shall renew[2] power; they shall go up with wings as the eagles; they shall run and not be weary; they shall walk and not be faint!

Chapter 41

1 Be quiet before Me, O coasts; and let peoples renew their power. They come near; then they speak: Let us draw near together for judgment.
2 Who raised up the righteous one from the east? He called him to His foot; He gives nations before him, and subdues kings; He gives them as dust to his sword, as driven stubble to his bow;
3 He pursues them; he passes on in peace; he does not go by the way with his feet.
4 Who has planned and done it, calling forth the generations from the beginning? I YAHWEH am the first (Aleph/Tav) and the last; I am He[3].
5 The coasts have seen and fear; the ends of the earth tremble; they have drawn near; yea, they come.
6 Each man helps his neighbor, and says to his brother, Be strong.
7 So the carver strengthens the refiner; and he smoothing with the hammer, him who struck the anvil, saying of the soldering, It is good. And he made it strong with nails; it will not totter.
8 But you Israel are My servant, Jacob whom I have elected; the seed of My friend Abraham[4];
9 whom I have made strong from the ends of the earth, and called you from its sides; and I said to you, You are My servant. I chose you, and have not rejected you.
10 Do not fear, for I am with you; do not gaze about, for I am your Elohim; I will make you strong; yea, I will help

[1] From biblical times the bible revealed that the earth was round.
[2] This is an exchange of power from physical to Yahweh's power.
[3] Rev 21:6.
[4] Abraham is called friend of YHWH (Ja 2:21-23).

you; yes, I will uphold you with the
right hand of My righteousness.
11 Behold, they all shall be
humiliated, all who are provoked with
you; they shall be as nothing; men who
contend with you shall perish.
12 You shall seek them and shall not
find them; men of your strife shall be
as nothing, even men of your battle as
ceasing.
13 For I, YAHWEH your Elohim am
strengthening your right hand, who
says to you, Do not fear I will help you.
14 Fear not, worm of Jacob, men of
Israel; I will help you, states
YAHWEH, and your [1]Redeemer, the
Holy One of Israel.
15 Behold! I have made you a new
sharp threshing sledge[2], a master of
teeth; you shall thresh mountains and
beat them small, and shall make hills
like the chaff.
16 You shall winnow them, and the
wind will carry them away, and the
tempest will scatter them. And you
shall rejoice in YAHWEH; you shall
glory in the Holy One of Israel.
17 The poor and the needy seek
water, and there is none; their tongue
is parched for thirst. I, YAHWEH will
hear them; the Elohim of Israel will
not leave them.
18 I will open rivers in bare places,
and fountains in the midst of valleys; I
will make the desert for a pool of
water, and the dry land springs of
water.
19 I will plant cedar in the
wilderness, acacia, and myrtle, and the
oil tree; I will set fir, pine and
boxwood together in the desert;
20 so that they may see, and know,
and set up, and understand together,
that the hand of YAHWEH has done
this; and the Holy One of Israel has
created it.
21 Bring your cause, says
YAHWEH; let your strong reasons
come near, says the King of Jacob.
22 Let them draw near and tell us
what shall happen; the former things,
let them reveal what they are, that we
may set our heart and know their end;
or declare to us the coming things.
23 Reveal the near things hereafter,
so that we may know that you are
Elohim. Yea, do good, or do evil, that
we may gaze and see together.
24 Behold, you are of nothing; and
your work of nothing; he who chooses
you is an abomination.
25 I have raised up one from the
north; and he shall come from the
east; he will call on My name. And he
shall come upon rulers as on mortar,
and as a potter tramples clay.
26 Who has declared from the
beginning, that we may know; and
before, that we may say, He is right?
Yea, no one declares; yea, no one
proclaims; yea, there is no one who
hears your words.
27 At first to Zion, I say, Behold!
Behold them! And I will give to
Jerusalem one proclaiming good news.
28 But I saw, and there was not a
man; and of these, there was not a
counselor, that I may ask them, and
they could return a word.
29 Behold, they are all evil; their
works are nothing; their images are
wind and vanity.

Chapter 42

1 Behold My Servant; I will support

---

1 *'Redeemer'* This word means someone who is an obligated family protectorate, who redeems lost land, and is showing that YHWH is the family leader and protectorate of Israel and the one who will restore their heritage.

2 A threshing sledge had sharp stones, and metal on the bottom to crush the grain. YHWH is metaphorically stating that they will have much new grain and food.

Him; My Elect in whom My soul delights[1]! I have put My Spirit on Him; He shall bring forth justice to the nations[2].

2 He shall not cry, nor lift up, nor cause His voice to be heard in the street[3].

3 A bruised reed He shall not break, and a smoking wick He shall not quench[4]; He shall bring forth justice to truth.

4 He shall not fail nor be crushed until He has set justice in the earth; and the coasts shall wait for His Torah[5].

5 So says YAHWEH The El, creating the heavens and stretching them out; spreading out the earth and its offspring, giving breath to the people on it, and spirit to those walking in it.

6 I, YAHWEH, have called You in righteousness[6], and will hold Your hand, and will keep You, and give You for a covenant of the people, for a Light of the nations;

7 to open blind eyes, to lead out the prisoner from the prison; those who sit in darkness from the prison[7].

8 I am YAHWEH; that is My name; and I will not give My glory to another, nor My praise to engraved images[8].

9 Behold, the former things have come to pass, and I declare new things before they happen, I cause you to hear.

10 Sing a new song to YAHWEH; His praise from the end of the earth, you who go to sea, and all that is in it; the coasts and their people.

11 Let the wilderness and its cities lift up, the villages where Kedar lives. Let those dwelling in the rock sing; let them shout from the top of the mountains.

12 They give glory to YAHWEH and declare His praise in the coastlands.

13 YAHWEH shall go out as a mighty warrior; and He shall stir up His zeal like a man of war; He shall shout, yea, roar; He shall act mightily on His enemies.

14 I have forever kept silence; I have been quiet and refrained Myself; I will groan like a woman in travail; I will pant and gasp at once.

15 I will make mountains and hills become a waste, and dry up all their plants. And I will make the rivers coastlands, and I will dry up pools.

16 And I will make the blind go by a way that they did not know. I will make them go in paths they never knew. I will make darkness go into light before them, and crooked places a level place. I do these things to them and do not forsake them;

17 they are turned back; they are ashamed with shame, those trusting in the carved image, who say to cast images, You are our gods.

---

1 From this point of Isaiah until the end of the book it becomes about the Messiah of Israel and the millennial rule of the Kingdom of YHWH.

2 Whereas before when speaking about the promised messiah it referred to the redemption of the nation, now it becomes broader that the Messiah would be the redeemer of all mankind.

3 The Messiah would not be a street preacher looking for followers but people would be coming to hear Him.

4 This shows the tenderness of the Messiah, as He is careful not to break or loss the littlest part (Joh 6:10-12).

5 The Messiah will uphold the Torah (Math 5:17).

6 Yahweh the Father had called His servant personally and clearly they are not the same being, although He will come in the authority of His Father.

7 Referring to the darkness that each human being sits in due to their sins.

8 The Creator (named Yahweh) will not give the glory of His name to pagan deities.

18 O deaf ones, hear! And O blind
ones, look to see!
19 Who is blind but My servant? Or
deaf, as My messenger whom I send?
Who is blind as he who is at peace, and
blind as the servant of YAHWEH[1]?
20 You see many things, but do not
observe; your ears are open, but not
any hears[2].
21 YAHWEH is delighted for His
righteousness' sake; He will magnify
the Torah and make it honorable[3].
22 But it is a people robbed and
spoiled; they shall all be snared in
holes; they were hidden in prison
houses. They were for spoil, and no
one delivers; a prey, and no one says,
Return!
23 Who among you will give ear to
this, will listen and hear for the time to
come?
24 Who gave Jacob to the plunderer,
and Israel to the robbers? Did not
YAHWEH, He against whom we have
sinned? For they willed not to walk in
His ways, and they did not obey His
Torah.
25 And He poured on him the fury of
His anger, and the strength of battle;
and it has set him on fire all around,
yet he did not know; and it burned
him, yet he did not lay it on his heart.

Chapter 43

1 But now so says YAHWEH who
formed you, O Jacob; and He who
made you, O Israel[4]: Fear not, for I
have redeemed you; I called you by
your name; you are Mine.
2 When you pass through the waters,
I will be with you; and through the
rivers, they shall not overflow you.
When you walk in the fire, you shall
not be burned, nor shall the flame
kindle on you.
3 For I am YAHWEH your Elohim,
the Holy One of Israel, your Savior. I
gave Egypt for your atonement;
Ethiopia and Seba instead of you.
4 Since you were precious in My
eyes, you are honored, and I love you;
and I give men instead of you; and
peoples instead of your soul.
5 Fear not, for I am with you; I will
bring your seed from the east, and I
will gather you from the west.
6 I will say to the north, Give up!
And to the south, Do not hold back!
Bring My sons from afar, and bring My
daughters from the ends of the earth[5];
7 everyone who is called by My
name, and I have created him for My
glory; I have formed him; yea, I have
made him.
8 Bring out the blind people, yet
there are eyes; and the deaf, yet there
are ears to him.
9 Let all the nations be assembled,
and let the peoples be gathered. Who
among them can declare this and
cause us to hear former things? Let
them give their witnesses, that they
may be justified. Or let them hear and
say, It is true.
10 You are My witnesses, says
YAHWEH; and My servant whom I
have elected; that you may know and

1 He has one purpose and vision to serve YHWH and fulfill His will, but He has no vision to anything else, His only trust is in YHWH (Is 50:4, Ps 38:12-15, Jer 5:21).

2 Showing He is not speaking about physically being deaf and blind in verse 19.

3 Far be it from doing away with the Torah, the Messiah will bring the spiritual intent (Math 5:17-18).

4 Almost always in scripture when using the name Jacob, it is about fleshly Israel, but when using the term Israel, it is about the one who overcame with Elohim, which is the meaning of Israel.

5 Israel would go into captivity from their land, but it is the promise of YHWH that they would return.

believe Me, and understand that I am
He. Before Me there was no El formed;
nor shall any be after Me[1].
11 I, I am YAHWEH; and there is no
Savior without Me[2].
12 I declared, and I saved, and I
proclaimed; and there is not a foreign
Elohim among you. And you are My
witnesses, says YAHWEH, and I am
El.
13 Yea, from this day I am He, and
no one delivers from My hand. I will
work, and who will reverse it?
14 So says YAHWEH, your
Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel: For
your sake I have sent to Babylon, and
have brought all of them down as ones
fleeing, even the Chaldeans, whose
shout is in the ships.
15 I am YAHWEH, your Holy One,
the Creator of Israel, your King.
16 So says YAHWEH, who makes a
way in the sea, and a path in mighty
waters;
17 who brings out chariot and horse,
force and power. They shall lie down
together; they shall not rise; they are
put out; they are snuffed out like the
wick.
18 Do not remember former things,
nor consider the things of old.
19 Behold, I will do a new thing; now
it shall sprout. Shall you not know it? I
will even make a way in the
wilderness, rivers in the desert.
20 The beast of the field shall honor
Me, jackals and daughters of ostriches;
because I give waters in the
wilderness, rivers in the desert, to give
drink to My people, My chosen[3].
21 The people that I formed for My-
self shall recount My praise.
22 But you have not called on Me,
Jacob; but you have been weary of Me,
Israel.
23 You have not brought Me the
lamb of your burnt offerings; even
your sacrifices have not honored Me. I
have not caused you to serve with an
offering, nor wearied you with incense.
24 You have not bought calamus for
Me with silver, nor have you filled Me
with fat of your sacrifices; but you
made Me serve by your sins; you
wearied Me by your iniquities.
25 I, even I, am He who blots out
your trespasses for My sake; and I will
not remember your sins.
26 Remind me; let us enter into
judgment together; sum up for
yourself, that you may be justified.
27 Your first father sinned, and your
interpreters transgressed against Me.
28 And I will defile the rulers of the
sanctuary, and will give Jacob to the
curse, and Israel to blaspheming.

Chapter 44

1 And now listen, My servant Jacob,
and Israel whom I have chosen.
2 So says YAHWEH, who made you
and formed you from the womb. He
helps you. Do not fear, My servant
Jacob; and you, Jeshurun[4] whom I
have chosen.
3 For I will pour water on a thirsty
place, and floods on the dry ground. I
will pour My Spirit on your seed, and
My blessing on your offspring.
4 And they shall sprout as among
grass, as willows by streams of water.
5 This one shall say, I belong to

---

[1] Yahweh is eternal. There was no El before Him and there will be none after Him. Yahweh is a family name and Elohim is plural as we see in Gen 1:1, and 26, and eternally there has been Yah Yahweh the Father and Yahshua Yahweh, who in the Tanach was called the Messenger of YHWH.

[2] Yahshua came in the name and authority of His Father and did the will of the Father perfectly (Joh 5:30, 37,43).

[3] Ex 15,:22-27, 17:1-7.

[4] Means upright one, a term of endearment

YAHWEH; and this one will call himself by the name of Jacob; and this one shall write with his hand, For YAHWEH, and be surnamed by the name of Israel.
6 So says YAHWEH, the King of Israel, and His Redeemer, YAHWEH of Hosts: I am the First, and I am the Last; and there is no Elohim except Me[1].
7 And who, as I, shall call, and shall declare this, and set it in order before Me, since I placed the people of old? And as to things to come, even which shall come, let them declare concerning them.
8 Do not dread, nor be afraid. Have I not declared and made you hear since then? So you are My witnesses: Is there a Eloah besides Me? Yea, there is none[2]. I have not known a Rock.
9 Those who form a carved image are all of them vanity. And their delights do not profit; and they are their own witnesses. They do not see, nor know, that they may be ashamed.
10 Who has formed an El, or poured out an image to no profit?
11 Behold, all his companions shall be ashamed; and the craftsmen, they are from men. They shall assemble, all of them shall stand; they shall dread; they shall be shamed together.
12 He carves iron with a tool; he works in the coals and forms it with hammers, and works it with his powerful arm; then he is hungry, and has no strength; he drinks no water and is weary[3].
13 The carpenter fashions the wood, and stretches a line; he marks it with a chisel; he shapes it with a carving tool, and he marks it with a compass. And he makes it according to the figure of a man, as the beauty of a man, to sit in the house.
14 He cuts down cedars and takes cypress and oak, and he makes the trees of the forest strong for him. He plants a tree, and rain makes it grow.
15 And it shall be for a man to burn; yea, he takes of them and is warmed; and he kindles it and bakes bread. Yea, he makes a god and worships; he makes a carved image and bows to it.
16 He burns half of it in the fire; he eats flesh on half of it; he roasts roast, and is satisfied. Then he warms himself and says, Ah, I am warm; I have seen the fire.
17 And he makes a god of the rest, his carved image; he bows to it and worships, and prays to it, and says, Deliver me, for you are my El.
18 They do not know nor discern; for He has smeared their eyes from seeing, their hearts from understanding.
19 And not one turns back to his heart, nor has knowledge nor discernment to say, I have burned half of it in the fire; and I also have baked bread on its coals. I have roasted flesh and have eaten it; and I have made the rest of it into an idol. Shall I bow to a product of a tree[4]?
20 Feeding on ashes, a deceived heart turns him aside, and he does not deliver his soul, nor say, Is there not a lie in my right hand?
21 Remember these, O Jacob, and Israel. For you are My servant; I have formed you; you are My servant, O Israel; you shall not forget Me.
22 I have blotted out your transgressions like a thick cloud; and

1 There are 2 YHWH's here, one the King of Israel and His redeemer, Yahweh of Hosts. Elohim is plural, besides them (the one true YHWH family) there is no other Elohim.
2 As verses 9-20 will show YHWH is clearly speaking about false Elohim.
3 Showing how fruitless it is to make an idol.
4 If one would just think of the process in creating an idol it is most ridiculous.

your sins like a cloud. Return to Me, for I have redeemed you.

23 Sing, O heavens, for YAHWEH has done it. Shout, O lower parts of the earth; burst forth into praise, O mountains. O forest and every tree in it, sing praise, because YAHWEH has redeemed Jacob, and He glorifies Himself in Israel.

24 So says YAHWEH, your Redeemer and your Former from the womb; I am YAHWEH who makes all things; stretching out the heavens, Everything comes from me, even spreading out the earth. Who was with Me? *(Is 48:16, Pr 30:4)*

25 Frustrating the signs of liars; yea, He makes divining ones mad, turning wise ones backward, and making their knowledge foolish.

26 He confirms the word of His servant, and completes the counsel of His messengers. He says to Jerusalem, You will be filled; and to the cities of Judah, You shall be built; and, I will raise up its ruins.

27 He says to the deep, Be a waste! And I will dry up your rivers!

28 He says to Cyrus, You are My shepherd; and he shall complete all My pleasure, even for Me to say to Jerusalem, You are built; and to the temple, your foundation shall be laid[1].

Chapter 45

1 So says YAHWEH to His anointed, to Cyrus, whom I have seized by his right hand, to subdue nations before him. Yea, I will open the loins of kings, to open the two leaved doors before him, and the gates shall not be shut[2].

2 I will go before you and make hills level; I will tear apart the copper doors, and cut the iron bars in two.

3 And I will give you the treasures of darkness, even riches in secret places, that you may know that I am YAHWEH, who calls you by your name, the Elohim of Israel.

4 For My servant Jacob's sake, and for Israel My elect, I even call you by your name. I name you, but you do not know Me[3].

5 I am YAHWEH, and there is none else; there is no Elohim except Me. I will clothe you, though you do not know Me,

6 that they may know from the rising of the sun, and to its going down, that there is none besides Me; I am YAHWEH, and there is none else[4];

7 forming light, and creating

[1] This is a most amazing prophecy written about King Cyrus of Persia more than 200 years before his birth, stating that he would be servant of YHWH. It states that he would allow the rebuilding of Jerusalem after the destruction by the Babylonians exactly as he did. He was so amazed that the one true Elohim named him 200 yrs before his birth that he gave a royal degree to help with gold, money and even a royal escort to go back and rebuild the sanctuary of YHWH.

[2] When King Cyrus overtook Babylon they diverted the great River that ran under the wall and then went under the wall in the dry river bed and opened the 2 great doors of Babylon, exactly as the prophecy predicts. (Dan 4:7, Ez 1:1-7)

[3] Although YHWH named Cyrus by name before birth and Cyrus carried out the will of YHWH, according to scripture, Cyrus never turned to YHWH from his false, pagan, deities and never personally knew YHWH.

[4] In Hebrew, this verse means that all life comes from YHWH, there is no other source of life but Him, but does not mean that He is alone in the vast universe as we know that He had Yahshua with Him at creation (Gen 1:1, 26, Eccl 12:1, Is 48:16, Pr 30:4, Joh 1:1-5) and also there were cherubs and other elders in Heaven (Rev 4:4).

darkness; making peace, and creating evil. I, YAHWEH, do all these things[1].

8 Drop down from above, O heavens; and let the clouds pour down righteousness. Let the earth open and let Y'shua* bear fruit; and let righteousness spring up together. I, YAHWEH have created it.

9 Woe to him who fights with the One who formed him! A potsherd among the potsherds of the earth! Shall the clay say to its former, What are you making? Or does your work say, He has no hands?

10 Woe to him who says to a father, What are you fathering? Or to the woman, What are you laboring over?

11 So says YAHWEH, the Holy One of Israel, and the One who formed him, Do you ask Me of the things to come? Do you give command to Me about My sons, and about the work of My hands?

12 I have made the earth, and created man on it. I stretched out the heavens with My hands; and I have set all their host in order.

13 I raised him up in righteousness, and have made straight all his ways. He shall build My city, and he will release My captives; not for price, nor for reward, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

14 So says YAHWEH, The labor of Egypt, and the goods of Ethiopia, and of the Sabeans, men of stature, shall come to you; and they shall be yours. They shall come after you; they shall cross in chains; and they shall bow to you; they shall plead to you. Surely El is in you, and there is none else, no other Elohim.

15 Truly, You are a El who hides Himself, O Elohim of Israel, the Savior.

16 They shall be ashamed, and also are disgraced, all of them. Together they go into disgrace, carvers of images.

17 Israel is saved in YAHWEH with everlasting salvation *(Y'shua*)*. You shall not be ashamed nor disgraced to the forevers of eternity.

18 For so says YAHWEH, Creator of the heavens; He is The Elohim, forming the earth and making it; He makes it stand, not creating it empty, but forming it to be lived in. I am YAHWEH, and compared to Me there is none else.[2] *(Deut 4:35)*

19 I have not spoken in secret, in a dark place of the earth. I did not say to Jacob's seed, Seek Me in vain. I YAHWEH speak righteousness, declaring right things.

20 Gather yourselves and come; draw near together, escaped ones of the nations; the ones who set up the wood of their carved image, and the ones who pray to an El who is not Y'shua*; they know nothing.

21 Declare and bring near; yea, let them consult together. Who has revealed this of old; who has told it from then? Is it not I, YAHWEH? And there is no Elohim other than Me; a just El and a Savior; compared to Me they are nothing.

22 Turn to Me and be saved, all the ends of the earth; for I am El, and besides Me there is nothing else[3].

23 I have sworn by Myself, the Word has gone out of My mouth in

---

1 Darkness is simply the absence of light, so by creating light, you give the possibility for darkness. In the same way evil is simply the absence of peace, so by creating peace you give the ability for evil in its absence, but YHWH does not make the evil itself, it is simply a by product from the rejection of Him and His Torah.

2 Empty- This Hebrew word from Gen 1:2, does not mean that the original earth was not created void or empty as it states, but that it was made with the intent to be created and inhabited.

righteousness, and shall not return,
that to Me every knee shall bow, every
tongue shall swear[1].
24 He shall say, Only in YAHWEH
do I have righteousness and strength;
to Him he comes; and they are
ashamed, all who are angry with Him.
25 In YAHWEH all of the seed of
Israel shall be justified, and shall
glory.

Chapter 46

1 Bel has bowed; Nebo stoops; their
idols are for the beast, and for the
cattle; your things carried are loads; a
burden for the weary.
2 They stoop; they bow together;
they are not able to deliver the burden;
and their soul has gone into captivity.
3 Listen to me, O house of Jacob,
and all the remnant of the house of
Israel; who are borne from the belly,
who are lifted from the womb:
4 Even to old age I am He; and I will
bear to gray hair; I made, and I will
carry; and I will bear and deliver.
5 To whom will you compare and
make Me equal; yea, compare Me, that
we may be alike?
6 Those who lavish gold out of the
bag, and weigh silver on the
measuring rod; they hire a refiner and
he makes it a El. They fall down; yea,
they worship.
7 They carry it on the shoulder; they
bear it and set it in its place, and it
stands; it shall not move from its
place. Yes, he cries to it, but it does not
answer, it does not save him from his
distress.
8 Remember this and be a man;
return it on your heart, transgressors.
9 Remember former things from
forever, for I am El, and no other
Elohim exist, even none like Me[2],
10 declaring the end from the
beginning, and from the past those
things which were not done, saying,
My counsel shall rise; and, I will do all
My desire;
11 calling a bird of prey from the
east, the man of My counsel from a far
off land[3]. Yes, I have spoken; yes, I will
cause it to come; I have formed; yes, I
will do it.
12 Listen to Me, mighty ones of heart
who are far from righteousness:
13 I bring near My righteousness; it
shall not be far off, and My salvation
shall not wait; I will place salvation
(Y'shua*) in Zion, My glory for Israel.

Chapter 47

1 Go down and sit on the dust, O
virgin daughter of Babylon; sit on the
earth; a throne is not to the daughter
of the Chaldeans; for they shall not
again call you tender and delicate.
2 Take millstones and grind meal;
uncover your veil; strip off the skirt;
uncover the leg; pass over rivers.
3 Your nakedness shall be
uncovered; yea, your shame shall be
seen. I will take vengeance and I will
not meet a man.
4 Our Redeemer; YAHWEH of
Hosts is His name, the Holy One of
Israel.
5 Sit in silence, and go into darkness,
O daughter of the Chaldeans, for they
shall no more call you the lady of
kingdoms[4].
6 I was angry with My people; I
defiled My inheritance and gave them

---

3 The comparisons are always to false deities not to His heavenly Kingdom nor His Son who reigns at His right hand under Him (Ps 110:1, 1 Pe 3:22, Heb 1:3, Heb 8:1, Heb 10:10-13, Heb 12:2 Acts 2:33 Acts 7:55-56).

1 Ro 14:11, Phil 2:10.

2 YHWH is comparing Himself to the false deities that are being made from gold.

3 Speaking of king Cyrus of Persia.

into your hand. You gave them no mercy; you made your yoke on the aged very heavy.

7 And you said, I shall be a mistress forever, until you did not set these things on your heart, and did not remember its end.

8 Now, then, hear this, O pleasure seeker, who lives carelessly; who says in her heart, I am, and none else is; I shall not sit as a widow, nor shall I know the loss of children[1].

9 But these two things shall suddenly come to you, in one day: loss of children, and widowhood; according to completeness they come on you, for your many sorceries, for the power of your great spells.

10 For you trusted in your evil; you said, No one sees me. Your wisdom and your knowledge; it is turning you back, and you said in your heart, I am and none else is[2].

11 For this, evil shall come on you; you shall not know its origin. And mischief[3] shall fall on you; you shall not be able to cover it. And ruin shall come on you suddenly, you shall not know.

12 Stand now among your spells, and with your many sorceries, in which you have wearied yourself since your youth. Perhaps you will be able to profit; perhaps you may cause quaking.

13 You are exhausted by your many plans; let those dividing the heavens stand up now and save you, the stargazers, making known what is coming on you into the new moons.

14 Behold, they are as stubble; the fire burns them; they shall not save their soul from the flame's hand; there is no coal to warm them; nor fire, to sit before it.

15 So they are to you with whom you have labored, your traders from your youth; each one wanders to his own way; no one saves you.

Chapter 48

1 Hear this, O house of Jacob, who are called by the name of Israel, and have been begotten from the waters of Judah, who swear by the name of YAHWEH and profess by the Elohim of Israel, but you mention not in truth or in righteousness.

2 For they are called of the holy city, and rest themselves on the Elohim of Israel; YAHWEH of Hosts is His name[4].

3 I have declared the former things from then; and they went out of My

---

4 Babylon is represented as a woman. In the archives found in Iraq it states that Istar the false goddess of Babylon was the mother of immigrants, and she had a 7 spike crown on her head and either a torch or a golden cup in her hand and the law book of Hammurabi in the other hand. She also had red and purple garments (Rev 17:4).

1 End time Babylon is a pleasure seeking nation who is living in relative luxury as most other live in poverty (Rev 18:7-8).

2 Babylon instead of giving glory to Elohim became a deity to themselves.

3 This Hebrew word is "*hovah*" and means ruin or mischief. It is where the name Jehovah comes from, which cannot be the Father's name as there is no letter *'J'* in Hebrew, and Yahweh is not Elohim of mischief. Jehovah is a false combination of taking the four letters for the name Yahweh, **Y H W H** and putting in the vowels for Adonai. Jewish Rabbis started this tradition during second temple times as they began to think the sacred name YAHWEH was too holy to pronounce. So not to inadvertently pronounce the name they changed the vowel pointing in the Masoretic text with the vowels of Adonai.

4 As we see here YAHWEH is the only personal name that the Creator gives Himself (Ex 3:15). He has many titles but only one family name, YAHWEH.

mouth; and I made them hear; suddenly I acted, and they came about.
4 Because I knew that you are hard, and your neck is a sinew of iron, and your brow copper.
5 And I declared to you from then; before it came I made you hear, lest you should say, My idol did them; and my image and my cast image commanded them.
6 You heard; see it all; and will you not declare? I made you hear new things from now, even hidden things, and you did not know them.
7 They are created now, and not from then; even before today, but you did not hear them; lest you should say, See, I knew them.
8 Yea, you did not hear; yea, you did not know; yea, from then your ear was not opened; for I know that surely you will betray and revolt from the womb; it was called to you.
9 For My name's sake I will put off My anger; and for My praise I will hold back for you, so as not to cut you off.
10 Behold, I have refined you, but not with silver; I have chosen you in the furnace of affliction.
11 For My sake, for My sake, I will act; for how is it defiled? And I will not give My glory to another. *(Is 42:8)*
12 Listen to Me, O Jacob, and Israel My called: I am He; I am the First; surely I am the Last.
13 My hand surely founded the earth, and My right hand has stretched out the heavens[1]; I called to them, they stood up together.
14 All of you gather and hear: Who among them has declared these things? YAHWEH has loved him[2]. He will do His pleasure on Babylon; yea, His arm shall be on the Chaldeans.
15 I, I have spoken; yea, I have called him, I brought him, and he causes his way to prosper[3].
16 Come near to Me; hear this: I have not spoken in secret from the beginning. From its existence, I was there; and now Adonai YAHWEH, and His Spirit, has sent Me[4].
17 So says YAHWEH, your Redeemer, the Holy One of Israel, I am YAHWEH your Elohim, who teaches you to profit, who leads you in the way you should go.
18 Oh that you had listened to My commandments! Then your peace would have been like the river, and your righteousness like the waves of the sea.
19 And your seed would have been like the sand, and your offspring of your bowels like its grain; his name would not have been cut off nor destroyed from My presence.
20 Go out of Babylon; flee from the Chaldeans. Tell this with the voice of rejoicing; let this be heard, let it go out to the end of the earth; say, YAHWEH has redeemed His servant Jacob
21 And they did not thirst; He led them in the deserts; He made waters flow out of rock for them. And He cut open the rock and the water gushed out.
22 There is no peace, says YAHWEH, to the wicked.

Chapter 49

1 Hear Me, coastlands, and you people from afar, and prick up your ear, YAHWEH called Me from the

[1] Yahshua is the right hand of YHWH, (Is 63:1-5, Is 59:16, Ps 110:1-5).
[2] Speaking of the Messiah who was with Him at creation (Gen 1:1, 26, Joh 1:1-4).
[3] Yah Yahweh the Father speaking here.
[4] Yahshua Yahweh the Son answering in this verse and clearly showing the duality of the one Yahweh family at Creation (Eccl 12:1, Is 54:5, Ps 149:2, Is 44:24).

womb; He mentioned My name from My mother's belly[1].

2 And He made My mouth like a sharp sword; He hid Me in the shadow of His hand, and made Me a polished arrow; He hid Me in His quiver;

3 and said to Me, You are My servant to Israel, You in whom I shall be glorified.

4 Then I said, I have labored in vain; I have spent My strength for nothing, and in vain; yet surely My judgment is with YAHWEH, and My work with My Elohim.

5 And now, says YAHWEH who formed Me from the womb to be His servant, to bring Jacob back to Him: Though Israel is not gathered, yet I am honored in the eye of YAHWEH, and My Elohim is My strength[2].

6 And He said, It is too little that You should be My servant to raise up the tribes of Jacob, and to restore the preserved ones of Israel; I will also give You, my Y'shua*, to be for a light of the nations, to the end of the earth[3].

7 So says YAHWEH, the Redeemer of Israel; His Holy One, to the despised of soul, to the hated of the nation[4], the servant of rulers, Kings shall see and rise up; and chiefs shall worship; because of YAHWEH who is faithful, and the Holy One of Israel; and He chose You.

8 So says YAHWEH: In a favorable time I have answered You, and in a day of salvation I have helped You. And I will preserve You, and give You for a covenant of the people; to establish the land, to cause to inherit the desolated inheritances;[5]

9 to say to the prisoners, Go out! To those who are in darkness, Reveal yourselves[6]. They shall feed in the ways, and their pastures shall be in all high places.

10 They shall not hunger nor thirst; and the heat and sun shall not strike them. For He who has mercy on them shall lead them; and He shall guide them by the springs of water[7].

11 And I will make all My mountains a way, and My highways shall be set on high.

12 Behold, these shall come from afar; and, lo, these from the north and from the west; and these from the land of Sinim[8].

13 Sing, O heavens; and be joyful, O earth; break out into singing, O mountains. For YAHWEH has comforted His people and will have pity on His afflicted.

14 But Zion said, YAHWEH has forsaken me, and, My Adonai has forgotten me.

---

[1] Just as YHWH named the pagan king Cyrus to fulfill His will with allowing Israel to return after the Babylonian exile, the Messiah is also called by name by YAHWEH and He will bring the Israelites back to the land a second time at His return (Is 11:13, Ezek 37:15-28, Ex 23:21, Math 1:21, Acts 4:12).

[2] Even though Israel would have to wait for their redemption till the latter days, the Servant of YHWH is still honored throughout the earth until that time.

[3] Here Yahshua Messiah is promised to be king over all the earth. This was never promised to king David. (Is 42:1-4) Simeon also prophesied of this verse in Luk 2:32.

[4] The Messiah will not be accepted by the nation at first, but will be at His second coming (Zech 12:10).

[5] This verse is referring to the Jubilee.

[6] Whereas physical Israel was led out of the darkness of slavery in Egypt, The Messiah will bring Israel out of spiritual darkness. (Is 61:1-2 Luk 4:18)

[7] As a good shepherd does, the Messiah will lead His followers to green pastures and watered oasis's. (Joh 10:11)

[8] "*Sinim"* is China, showing that King Messiah has scattered sheep from the House of Israel from the four corners of the earth and they will be gathered at His return.

15 Can a woman forget her suckling child, from pitying the son of her womb? Yes, these may forget, yet I will surely not forget you.

16 Behold, I have carved you on the palms of My hands; your walls are always before Me.

17 Your sons hurry; those destroying you and ruining you shall go out from you.

18 Lift up your eyes all around and see! They all gather and come to you. As I live, says YAHWEH, you shall surely wear all of them as an ornament, and bind them on as a bride.

19 For your wastes and your deserted places, and your land of ruins shall even now be too narrow to live there; and they who swallow you shall be far away.

20 The sons of your bereavement shall yet say in your ears, The place is too narrow for me; come near for me so that I may have place to live.

21 Then you shall say in your heart, Who has borne these to me, for I am bereaved and desolate, turned aside and an exile; who then has brought up these? Behold, I was left alone. From where do these come?

22 So says Adonai YAHWEH, Behold, I will lift up My hand to the nations, and will set up My banner to peoples. And they shall bring your sons in the bosom, and your daughters shall be carried on the shoulder.

23 And kings shall be supporting you, and their princesses your nurses. They shall bow to you, faces down to the earth, and lick up the dust of your feet. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH, by whom they who wait for Me shall not be ashamed.

24 Shall the plunder be taken from the warrior, or the righteous captive escape?

25 But so says YAHWEH, Even the captives of the warrior shall be taken, and the plunder of the terrifying ones shall be delivered. For I will strive with him who contends with you; and I will save your sons.

26 And those who oppress you, I will feed with their own flesh: and they shall be drunk by their own blood, as with fresh wine. And all flesh shall know that I am YAHWEH, and your Savior *(Y'shua*),* the Kinsman Redeemer[1], the Mighty One of Jacob.

Chapter 50

1 So says YAHWEH, Where is the writing of the severing of your mother's matrimonial bond, whom I have put away[2]? Or who of My creditors that I have sold you to him? Behold, you were sold for your iniquities, and your mother was put away for your trespasses.

2 Who knows why I have come, and no one is here? I called, and not one answered. Is My hand truly cut short from ransom? Or is there not power in Me to deliver? Behold, at My rebuke I dry up the sea; I make rivers a wilderness; their fish stink because of no water, and die in thirst.

3 I clothe the heavens with blackness, and sackcloth makes their covering.

4 Adonai YAHWEH has given to Me

---

1 Yahshua is the kinsman redeemer, who is in scripture the legal close relative who is able to redeem a relative from debt and to restore to them property that was lost. Messiah is showing that Israel had more than a physical debt to pay, but a spiritual debt for their sins that only He could pay as their kinsman redeemer. (Is 50:1, 53:6, 12)

2 This is a severing of the engagement agreement as when Moses went up to Mount Sinai to receive the contract of marriage, Israel greatly sinned with the golden calf and the marriage covenant agreement was broken.

the tongue of learned ones, to know to help the weary with a word. He awakens me in the morning; He wakens the ear to Me, to hear as the learned.

5 Adonai YAHWEH has opened My ear and I did not rebel; I did not turn away backwards.

6 I gave My back to strikers, and My cheeks to them that plucked off the hair; I did not hide My face from shame and spitting[1].

7 And Adonai YAHWEH will help Me. On account of this I was not ashamed. On account of this I set My face like flint, and I know that I shall not be ashamed.

8 My Justifier is near. Who will contend with Me? Let us stand up together. Who is master of My judgment? Let him come near to Me.

9 Behold, Adonai YAHWEH will help Me; who is He who will condemn Me? Behold, like a garment they shall wear out; the moth shall eat them.

10 Who among you fears YAHWEH, obeying the voice of His Servant; who walks in darkness, and no light is in him? Let him trust in the name of YAHWEH, and lean on his Elohim.

11 Behold, all of you who kindle fire, who are surrounded by sparks; walk in the light of your fire and in the sparks you are burning. This shall be to you from My hand; you shall lie down in pain.

Chapter 51

1 Hear Me, pursuers of righteousness, seekers of YAHWEH: Look to the rock from which you were cut, and to the hollow of the pit from which you were dug[2].

2 Look to your father Abraham, and to Sarah who bore you. For he being but one, I called him and blessed him and increased him.

3 For YAHWEH comforts Zion. He comforts all her desolations, and He makes her wilderness like Eden, and her desert like the garden of YAHWEH[3]; joy and gladness shall be found in it, thanksgiving and the voice of singing praise.

4 Hear Me, My people; yea, give ear to Me, My nation. For the Torah shall go out from Me, and My justice I will make rest as light to peoples[4].

5 My righteousness is near; My salvation *(Y'shua*)* went out; and My arms shall judge peoples; coastlands shall wait on Me, and they shall hope on My arm.

6 Lift up your eyes to the heavens, and look to the earth beneath; for the heavens vanish like smoke, and the earth shall wear out like a garment; and those living in it shall die in the same way, but my Y'shua* shall be forever, and My righteousness shall not be broken.

7 Hear Me, those knowing righteousness, the people of My Torah in their heart; do not fear the reproach of man, and do not be bowed from their blaspheming.

8 For the moth shall eat them like a

---

1 Yahweh is completely with His Messiah and His Messiah has fully yielded to the call of YHWH even to be subject to physical torture and humiliation. The beard was a sign of respect and for someone to pluck it out on someone else was utterly contemptible. (Math 26:67, 27:30, Mk 15:19 Luk 22:63)

2 Telling them to go back to their beginnings and learn the wonderful lessons of the rewards of faith in YHWH.

3 Going back to the beginning would bring them to The Garden of Eden, which was in Jerusalem and will literally be restored in the millennial kingdom (Ezek 47:1-12, Rev 22:1-3, Joel 2:3).

4 At the core of peace and harmony in the millennial kingdom will be the obedience by all to the Torah (Mic 4:2, Jer 31:33).

garment; yea, the moth worm shall eat them[1] like wool. But My righteousness shall be forever, and my Y'shua* shall be from generation to generation.

9 Awake! Awake! Arm of YAHWEH, put on strength. Awake, as in days of old, everlasting generations. Was it not You cutting in pieces Rahab[2], and piercing the sea monster?

10 Was it not You drying up the sea, the waters of the great deep, who set the depths of the sea a way for the redeemed to pass? *(Ex 14:21)*

11 Yea, the ransomed of YAHWEH shall return and come to Zion with singing, and everlasting joy shall be on their head; gladness and joy shall overtake them; sorrow and sighing shall flee[3].

12 I, I am He comforting you. Who are you, that you should fear from man? He shall die! And from the son of man? He is given as grass.

13 And you forget your Maker YAHWEH, who has stretched out the heavens and founded the earth. And you dread continually, every day, from the fury of the oppressor, since he was ready to destroy. And where is the fury of the oppressor?

14 Bowed down, he hurries to be freed, that he not die in the pit, nor that he lack his bread.

15 But I am YAHWEH your Elohim, stirring up the sea and making its waves roar; YAHWEH of Hosts is His name.

16 And I have put My Words in your mouth, and covered you in the shade of My hand, to plant the heavens and found the earth, and to say to Zion, You are My people. *(Jer 31:33)*

17 Awake! Awake! Rise up, O Jerusalem, who drank the cup of His fury from the hand of YAHWEH; you drank the bowl of the cup of reeling; you fully drained it. *(Is 29:9-13)*

18 No guide is for her among all the sons she has borne; and of all the sons she made to grow none makes strong her hand.

19 Those two things came to you; who shall grieve for you? Ruin and shattering and famine and the sword, who but I shall comfort you? *(Is 40:2)*

20 Your sons have fainted; they lie at the head of all the streets, like an antelope in a net, filled with the fury of YAHWEH, the rebuke of your Elohim.

21 So hear this now, afflicted one, and drunken, but not from wine:

22 So says your Master YAHWEH and your Elohim, He strives for His people. Behold, I have taken the cup of reeling out of your hand, the bowl of the cup of My fury; you shall not yet again drink it. (*Is 60:14-21)*

23 But I will put it into the hand of those oppressing you, who have said to your soul, Bow down that we may cross, and, Put your back to the ground, and as the street to those who cross. (*Jos 10:24, Rev 18:20)*

Chapter 52

1 Awake! Awake! Put on your strength, Zion; put on your beautiful robes, O Jerusalem, the holy city. For never again shall uncircumcised and unclean ones come to you.

2 Shake yourself from the dust; rise up! Sit, Jerusalem; free yourself from your neck bands, O captive daughter of Zion. *(Zech 2:7)*

3 For so says YAHWEH: You were

---

1 Is 50:9

2 In Is 30:7, the word for strength is '*rahab*' and this may be a metaphor for how YHWH destroyed Egypt, or it could be a creature that this verse here indicated but otherwise is not mentioned in scripture (Ps 87:4, 89:9-10).

3 Speaking of the second exodus (Is 11:11-16, Jer 31:1-17).

sold for nothing, and you will not be redeemed with silver.

4 For so says Adonai YAHWEH: My people went down to Egypt at the first, to reside there, and without cause Assyria oppressed him.

5 So then what is to Me here, declares YAHWEH? For My people are taken for nothing; those ruling howl, declares YAHWEH. And My name is continually despised[1], every day.

6 So My people shall know My name thus in that day[2]; for I am He speaking. Behold Me!

7 How beautiful on the mountains are the feet of him proclaiming good news, making peace heard, bearing tidings of good, making heard salvation *(Y'shua*),* saying to Zion, Your Elohim reigns. *(Ro 10:15, Nah 1:15)*

8 The voice of your watchmen, they lift the voice together, they sing aloud. For they shall see eye to eye when YAHWEH brings back Zion.

9 Break out, sing together, waste places of Jerusalem; for YAHWEH comforts His people; He has redeemed Jerusalem.

10 YAHWEH has bared His holy arm in the eyes of all the nations; and all the ends of the earth shall see *(Aleph /Tav)* Y'shua* from our Elohim[3].

11 Turn! Turn! Go out from there! Touch not the unclean! Go out of her midst, purify yourselves, bearers of the vessels of YAHWEH[4].

12 For you shall not go out with haste, nor will you go by flight; for YAHWEH is going before you, and the Elohim of Israel gathers you[5].

13 Behold, My Servant shall rule wisely; He shall be exalted and lifted up and be very high. *(Joh 3:14)*

14 Just as many were astonished over You, so much was the disfigurement from man, His appearance and His form from sons of mankind[6]. *(Mk 14:65)*

15 So He sprinkles from many nations. At Him kings shall shut their mouths; for they will see that which was not told to them; yea, what they had not heard, they will understand.

Chapter 53

1 Who has believed our report? And to whom is the arm of YAHWEH revealed[7]?

2 For He comes up as a shoot before Him, and as a root out of dry ground[8]. He has no form nor majesty that we should see Him; nor form that we should desire Him[9].

3 He is despised and abandoned of men, a Man of pains, and acquainted

---

1 Literally means to blaspheme.

2 Where as today the name of YHWH is not known or uttered in Israel, during the millennial reign of Yahshua everyone will know the name of YAHWEH.

3 When Yahshua returns on the Mount of Olives (Zech 14:1-5) all eyes will see Him, (Math 24:30).

4 This is addressed to those in Babylon and they are told that they must leave the immoral filth of Babylon and return to their homeland (Rev 18:4).

5 This is to those that take the early warning of leaving Babylon in faith. To those who wait for the last minute they are told to run in haste for their lives (Jer 51:6, 45).

6 Starting with this verse and going through all of chapter 53, the Messiah is pictured as a willing suffering servant that gave His life for exchange of the sins of the people. Is 53 is the only chapter of the entire Tanach that is not read in the Torah cycle of readings in the Synagogue. The disfigurement is from the scourging that He took (Math 27:26).

7 A prophecy showing that the nation would not accept the servant at this time.

8 Is 11:1, showing the humble beginnings of King Messiah.

with sickness[1]. And as it were hiding our faces from Him, He being despised, and we did not value Him[2].

4 Surely He has borne our sicknesses, and He carried our pain; yet we esteemed Him plagued, smitten by Elohim, and afflicted.[3]

5 But He was wounded for our transgressions; He was bruised for our iniquities; the chastisement of our peace was upon Him; and with His wounds we ourselves are healed[4].

6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have each one turned to his own way; and YAHWEH made meet in Him the iniquity of all of us[5].

7 He was oppressed, and He was afflicted, but He did not open His mouth. He was led as a lamb to the slaughter; and as a ewe before her shearers is dumb, so He opened not His mouth. *(Math 26:63-64, 27:12-14)*

8 He was taken from prison and from justice; and who shall consider His generation? For He was cut off[6] out of the land of the living; for the transgression of My people, the stroke was to Him.

9 And He appointed Him His grave with the wicked, but He was with a rich man in His death; though He had done no violence, and deceit was not in His mouth. *(Math 27:38, 57-60)*

10 But YAHWEH pleased to crush Him, to make Him sick, so that If He should put His soul as a guilt offering[7], He shall see His seed[8]; He shall prolong His days; and the will of YAHWEH shall prosper in His hand[9].

11 He shall see the life of light, the fruit of the travail of His soul; He shall be fully satisfied. By His knowledge shall My righteous Servant justify for many, and He shall bear their iniquities. *(Joh 8:12, Job 33:28)*

12 Because of this I will divide to Him with the great, and with the strong He shall divide the spoil; because He poured out His soul to death; and He was counted with those transgressing; and He bore the sin of many, and made intercession for transgressors[10].

Chapter 54

1 Sing out, barren one who never bore; break out a song and shout, you who never travailed. For the sons of the desolate one are more than the sons of the married woman, says YAHWEH[11].

2 Make the place of your tent larger,

---

9 It is not physical beauty that attracts people to the Servant but His being filled with the spirit of Elohim.

1 Indicating the sufferings that the Servant went through early in His life to be able to have empathy on others.

2 At His first coming the nation would not truly understand the great blessing being brought to them by King Messiah.

3 Math 27:39-44

4 The substitutionary sacrifice that the Messiah will make for the people is due to their sin. 1 Pe 2:23-25

5 Every human being has sinned sins worthy of death and only by excepting the sacrifice of Yahshua to pay the penalty of those sins can someone have them paid for Ro 3:10-26.

6 This literally means that He was killed for the transgression of the people.

7 Ps 40:6-8

8 There has never been a human being born that has affected the lives of more people than Yahshua of Nazareth.

9 Clearly, showing a promise of resurrection (Ps 16:9-11).

10 Because of the great sacrifice that King Messiah made in paying the penalty for the sins of the covenant people, YHWH will give Him a great position for eternity, Phil 2:7-11.

11 An idiomatic poetic phrase speaking to the House of Israel who grew much larger in their Diaspora than Judah who never lost their identity.

and let them stretch out the curtains of your dwellings. Do not spare, lengthen your cords and strengthen your stakes[1].

3 For you shall break forth on the right hand and on the left. And your seed shall possess nations, and people will inhabit ruined cities.

4 Do not fear, for you shall not be shamed, nor shall you be disgraced, for you shall not be wounded. For you shall forget the shame of your youth, and you shall not remember the reproach of your widowhood any more.

5 For your Makers[2] are your husbands; YAHWEH of Hosts is Their name; and your Redeemer is the Holy One of Israel; He is called the Elohim of all the earth.

6 For YAHWEH has called you as a woman forsaken and grieved in spirit, even a wife of young men when she is rejected, says your Elohim.

7 For a little moment I have left you, but I will gather you with great pitying.

8 In a flood of wrath I hid My face from you for a moment; but I will have pity on you with everlasting kindness, says YAHWEH your Redeemer.

9 For this is the waters of Noah to Me; for as I swore to refrain from passing over the waters of Noah over the earth again, so I have sworn from being angry with you and rebuking you.

10 For the mountains shall depart and the hills be removed, but My mercy shall not depart from you; nor shall the covenant of My peace be removed, says YAHWEH who has pity on you.

11 Afflicted one, storm tossed and not comforted! Behold, I am laying your stones with fair colors, and have founded you with sapphires.

12 And I will make your battlements of ruby, and your gates carbuncle stones, and all your borders stones of delight;

13 and all your sons will be taught of YAHWEH; and the peace of your sons will be great.

14 You shall be established in righteousness; you shall be far from oppression, for you shall not fear; and from terror, for it shall not come near you.

15 Behold, gathering they shall gather, but not from Me. Who has gathered against you? By you he shall fall.

16 Behold, I have created the smith who blows the coal in the fire, and who brings out a weapon for his work; and I have created the waster to destroy.

17 Every weapon formed against you shall not prosper, and every tongue that shall rise against you in judgment, you shall condemn. This is the inheritance of the servants of YAHWEH, and their righteousness is from Me, says YAHWEH.

Chapter 55

1 Ho, everyone who thirsts, come to the water; and he who has no money, come buy grain and eat. Yes, come buy grain, wine and milk without silver and with no price[3]. *(Is 43:18-20,)*

2 Why do you weigh out silver for that which is not bread, and your labor

---

1 In ancient times when a child would marry, the family would simply lengthen the tent they lived in for the new couple. This is stating to Judah that they need to do the same for the returning Ephraimites coming from Diaspora (Is 56:8).

2 This word is plural in Hebrew and shows 2 beings at creation (Ps 149:2, Eccl 12:1).

3 The word of YHWH has no price tag to it and one cannot buy or earn his/her salvation, it is a gift of YHWH paid for by the blood of Yahshua. (Math 10:8, 1 Pe 1:18-20, Math 5:6)

for what never satisfies? Listen
carefully to Me and eat the good; and
let your soul delight itself in fatness[1].
3 Bend your ear[2] and come to Me;
hear, and your soul shall live; and I
will cut an everlasting covenant with
you, the faithful mercies of David[3].
4 Behold, I gave Him a Witness to
peoples, a Leader and Commander of
peoples.
5 Behold, You shall call a nation You
do not know; yea, a nation not
knowing You shall run to You, because
of YAHWEH Your Elohim, and for the
Holy One of Israel; for He has glorified
You.
6 Seek YAHWEH while He may be
found; call on Him while He is near[4].
7 Let the wicked forsake his way and
the man of vanity his thoughts, and let
him return to YAHWEH, and He will
have mercy on him; and to our
Elohim, for He will abundantly
pardon[5].
8 For My thoughts are not your
thoughts, nor are your ways My ways,
says YAHWEH[6].
9 For as the heavens are high from
the earth, so My ways are high from
your ways, and My thoughts from your
thoughts.
10 For as the rain and the snow
comes down from the heavens and do
not return there, except it waters the
earth and make it bring forth and bud,
and give seed to the sower and bread
to the eater,
11 so shall My Word be, which goes
out of My mouth; it shall not return to
Me void, but it shall accomplish that
which I please, and it shall prosper in
what I sent it to do[7]!
12 For you shall go out with joy and
be led out with peace. The mountains
and the hills shall break out into song
before you, and all the trees of the field
shall clap the hand. *(Ps 98:8-9)*
13 Instead of the thorn bush, the fir
tree shall come up; instead of the
brier, the myrtle shall come up; and it
shall be for a name to YAHWEH, for
an everlasting sign that shall not be
cut off[8]. *(Is 32:13, Is 35:1-2)*

Chapter 56

1 So says YAHWEH: Keep justice
and do righteousness, for my Y'shua*
is coming soon, and My righteousness
will be revealed.
2 Blessed is the man who does this,
and the son of man who lays hold on
it; keeping the Sabbath, from defiling
it; and keeping his hand from doing
every evil.
3 And do not let the son of the
foreigner speak, he who joins himself
to YAHWEH, saying, surely,
YAHWEH separates me from His
people; and do not let the eunuch say,
Behold, I am a dried tree[9].
4 For so says YAHWEH to the
eunuchs who keep (Aleph/Tav) My
Sabbaths and choose things I am
pleased with, and take hold of My
covenant:

1 Joh 6:32-35, 53-58
2 Jewish idiom meaning to listen to.
3 Whoever, repents and accepts the shed blood of Messiah (*who is from the lineage of King David*) will inherit the blessings with King David. (Jer 31:31-33, Jer 32:37-40, Ezek 34:24-25, Ps 89:2-5, Acts 13:34)
4 Amos 5:6, Ps 32:6
5 Joel 2:11-18, Ps 130:3-8
6 Is 53:6
7 This shows Yahweh's circular pattern of worship and also that every last word of scripture will come to pass exactly as YHWH stated. Deut 32:1-4, Joh 1:1-5,14, Joh 17:4-5
8 Rom 8:19-22
9 Gentiles joining themselves to the covenant of Yahweh must keep the Torah as Israelites do, including the keeping of the blessing of the Sabbath day Num 15:15-16.

5 I, even I will give to them in My house and in My walls a hand and a name better than sons and than daughters; I will give them an everlasting name which shall not be cut off.

6 And the sons of the foreigner, who join themselves to YAHWEH to serve Him, and to love the name of YAHWEH, to be His servants, everyone who keeps from defiling the Sabbath, and takes hold of My covenant:

7 even them I will bring to My holy mount and make them joyful in My house of prayer. Their burnt offerings and their sacrifices shall be accepted on My altar, for My house shall be called a house of prayer for all the peoples,

8 states Adonai YAHWEH, who gathers the outcasts of Israel; I will yet gather others beside him to his gathered ones[1].

9 All beasts of the field come to devour, all beasts in the forest!

10 His watchmen are blind; they all do not know; they are all dumb dogs; they cannot bark, dreaming, lying down, loving to slumber;

11 yea, dogs greedy of soul; they do not know satisfaction. And they are shepherds; they do not know to discern; they all look to their own way, each one for his own gain, from his own end, saying:

12 Come, and let me bring wine, and let us gulp down fermented drink; and tomorrow shall be as this day, great, exceedingly abundant.

Chapter 57

1 The righteous one perishes, and no one lays it to heart; yea, merciful men are gathered, with no one discerning that the righteous is gathered from the face of evil.

2 He shall enter peace; they shall rest on their couches, walking in his uprightness.

3 But you, draw near here, sons of the sorceress, seed of the adulterer and the harlot.

4 On whom are you making sport? On whom do you make a wide mouth and draw out the tongue? Are you not children of transgression, a lying seed,

5 being inflamed with idols under every green tree, slaughtering the children in the torrent beds, under the clefts of the rocks?

6 In the torrent's smoothness is your portion; they, they are your lot; even to them you have poured a drink offering; you have offered a food offering. Should I be consoled over these?

7 You have set your couch on a lofty and high mountain; yea, you went up there to sacrifice a sacrifice.

8 And you have set up your memorial behind the door and post. For you uncovered yourself from Me and went up; you enlarged your couch; and you cut covenant with them; you loved their couch; at a hand you looked.

9 And you went to the king with oil and multiplied your perfume. And you sent your messengers far away, and lowered yourself to Sheol.

10 You were wearied in the length of your way; you did not say, Despair! You found the life of your hand, so you were not sick.

11 And whom have you dreaded and feared? You have lied and have not remembered Me, not laying it on your heart. Have I not been silent, even from forever, and you have not feared Me?

12 I will reveal your righteousness

[1] Joh 10:16 Speaking of the scattered Israelite tribes in Diaspora. Also, Ps 147:2.

and your works, and they will not benefit you.

13 When you cry, let your assembly deliver you; but the wind shall bear away all of them; vanity takes them. But he who takes refuge in Me shall inherit the land and possess My holy mountain[1].

14 And he shall say, Raise up! Raise up! Clear the way! Make the stumbling block rise from the way of My people.

15 For so says the high and lofty One who inhabits eternity, and His name is Holy: I dwell in the high and holy place, even with the contrite and humble of spirit; to make live the spirit of the humble and to make live the heart of the contrite ones.

16 For I will not contend forever, nor will I always be angry, for the spirit would faint before Me, even the breaths I have made.

17 For I was angry and struck him for the iniquity of his gain; I hid Myself and was angry; yet he went, turning in his heart's way.

18 His ways I have seen, but I will heal him, and will lead him and complete comforts to him and to his mourners.

19 I create the fruit of the lips: peace, peace, to the ones far off and near, says YAHWEH, and I will heal him.

20 But the wicked are like the driven sea, which cannot be quiet, and its waves cast up mire and dirt.

21 There is no peace to the wicked, says my Elohim. *(Is 48:22)*

Chapter 58

1 Call out with the throat! Do not spare. Lift up your voice like the ram's horn! And declare to My people their rebellion, and their sins to the house of Jacob.

2 Yet they seek Me day by day, and desire knowledge of My ways. As a nation that has done right, and not forsaking the judgment of their Elohim, they ask Me about judgments of righteousness; they desire to draw near to Elohim.

3 They say, Why have we fasted, and You did not see? We have afflicted our soul, and You did not acknowledge. Behold, on the day of your fast you find pleasure; and you drive all your laborers hard.

4 Look! You fast for strife, and for debate, and to strike with the fist of wickedness. Do not fast as today, to sound your voice in the high place.

5 Is this like the fast I will choose, a day for a man to afflict his soul? To bow his head down like a bulrush, and he spreads sackcloth and ashes? Will you call to this as a fast and a day of delight to YAHWEH[2]?

6 Is this not the fast I have chosen: to open bands of wickedness, to undo thongs of the yoke, and to send out the oppressed ones free; even that you pull off every yoke[3]?

7 Is it not to break your bread to the hungry, that you should bring the wandering poor home? When will you see the naked and cover him, and you will not hide yourself from your flesh?

8 Then your light shall break as the dawn, and your healing shall spring up quickly; and your righteousness shall go before you; the glory of YAHWEH shall gather you.

9 Then you shall call, and YAHWEH will answer; you shall cry, and He shall say, Here I am. If you put the yoke away from among you, the pointing of the finger, and the speaking of vanity[4];

---

[1] Must have total faith in YHWH to be blessed to possess the Holy Land.

[2] Unless someone is humbling himself and truly dedicating their fast to YHWH, they are simply going hungry.

[3] Math 11:27-30, is 61:1

[4] Pr 15:29, Joel 2;12-19

10 and if you let out your soul to the
hungry, and satisfy the afflicted soul;
then your light shall rise in the
darkness, and your gloom shall be as
the noonday[1].
11 And YAHWEH shall always guide
you, and satisfy your soul in dry
places, and make strong your bones.
And you shall be like a watered
garden, and like a spring of water
whose waters do not fail. *(Ps 1:3)*
12 And those who come of you shall
build the old ruins; you shall rear the
foundations of many generations[2]; and
you shall be called, The repairer of the
breach, the restorer of paths to live in.
13 If you turn your foot away
because of the Sabbath, from doing
what you please on My holy day, and
call the Sabbath a delight, to the
holiness of YAHWEH, glorified; and
shall glorify Him, to the holiness of not
doing your own ways, from finding
your own pleasure or speaking your
own words[3];
14 then you shall delight yourself in
YAHWEH. And I will cause you to
ride on the heights of the earth, and
make you eat with the inheritance of
your father Jacob. For the mouth of
YAHWEH has spoken[4].

Chapter 59

1 Behold, the hand of YAHWEH is
not shortened from saving, nor is His
ear heavy from hearing. *(Is 50:2)*
2 But your iniquities are separating
between you and your Elohim; and
your sins have hidden His face from
you, from hearing.
3 For your hands are defiled by
blood; yea, your fingers with iniquity.
Your lips have spoken falsehood; your
tongue murmurs perverseness.
4 No one calls for righteousness; and
no one pleads with truth. Trusting
emptiness, and speaking vanity, they
conceive mischief, and give birth to
iniquity.
5 They hatch adders' eggs, and weave
the spider's web; he who eats their
eggs dies; and that which is crushed
hatches out a viper.
6 Their webs shall not become
clothing, nor shall they cover
themselves with their works. Their
works are works of evil, and the act of
violence[5] is in their hands.
7 Their feet run to evil, and they
hurry to pour out innocent blood.
Thoughts of iniquity are their
thoughts; wasting and ruin are in their
ways. *(Pr 6:17, Rom 3:15-17)*
8 They do not know the way of
peace; and no justice is in their tracks.
They have made crooked paths for
themselves; everyone going in them
does not know peace[6].
9 For this reason justice is far from
us; and righteousness does not
overtake us. We wait for light, but,
behold, dimness; for brightness, but
we walk in gloom.
10 We grope for the wall like the
blind, and we grope as if we had no
eyes; we stumble at noonday as in the
twilight, in deserted places like ones
dying.
11 We all of us roar like bears, and
moaning we moan like doves. We wait

[1] Luk 23:44-45
[2] Ps 102:14
[3] The Sabbath day is more than simply resting, but it is a day sanctified to YHWH and a covenant believer should refrain on the Sabbath from personal entertainment and self motivated pleasure seeking (Neh 13:15-22).
[4] There are great rewards involved with keeping the Sabbath day sanctified to YHWH.
[5] The word here for violence is Hamas, the same as the Palestinian terror group.
[6] Although not the primary meaning of the verse, this defines Hamas exactly.

for justice, but there is none; for
Y'shua*, but He is far from us.
12 For our rebellions are multiplied
before You, and our sins testify against
us. For our transgressions are with us,
and we know our iniquities; *(Is 58:1)*
13 transgressing and lying against
YAHWEH, and turning back from our
Elohim, speaking oppression and
revolt, conceiving and murmuring
words of falsehood from the heart.
14 And justice is driven back; and
righteousness stands far off; for truth
stumbles in the plaza, and right is not
able to enter.
15 And the truth is lacking; and
whoever turns from evil makes himself
a prey. And YAHWEH saw; and it was
evil in His eyes, that there was no
justice.
16 And He saw that there was no
man, and He was astonished that
there was no intercessor. And His own
arm saved for Him; and His
righteousness sustained Him[1].
17 For He put on righteousness like
armor, and a helmet of Y'shua* *He* put
on His head. And He put on robes of
vengeance as clothing; and He put on
zeal like a mantle[2].
18 According to works, so He will
repay; fury to His foes; recompense to
His foes; He will repay recompense to
the coasts.
19 So they shall fear the name of
YAHWEH from the west, and His
glory from the rising of the sun. When
the foe comes like a flood, the Spirit of
YAHWEH shall cause him to flee.
20 And the Redeemer comes to
Zion, and to those in Jacob who turn
back from their rebellion, declares
YAHWEH[3].
21 As for Me, this is My covenant
with them, says YAHWEH: My Spirit
who is on you, and My Words which I
have put in your mouth, shall not
depart out of your mouth, or out of the
mouth of your seed, or out of the
mouth of your seed's seed, from now
on and forever, says YAHWEH[4].

Chapter 60

1 Arise, shine; for your light has
come, and the glory of YAHWEH has
risen on you[5]! *(Eph 5:14)*
2 For behold, the darkness shall
cover the earth, and gross darkness
the peoples. But YAHWEH shall rise
on you, and His glory shall be seen on
you. *(Joel 2:1-2)*
3 And nations shall walk to your
light, and kings to the brightness of
your dawning. *(Is 42:6, Is 52:15)*
4 Lift up your eyes all around and
see; they are all assembling; they are
coming to you. Your sons shall come
from far away, and your daughters
shall be supported on the side.[6]
5 Then you shall fear and be bright;
and your heart shall dread and swell.
For the abundance of the sea shall be
turned to you; the wealth of nations
shall come to you.

---

1 Since man was too corrupt, Yahweh needed His own right arm Yahshua (Is 62:8, Ps 110:1) to pay the penalty for sin. Is 63:5, Ezek 22:27-30, Jer 5:1, Ps 98:1, Is 40:10, Is 51:5, 8, 53:12

2 Rom 12:19

3 This is speaking about the kinsman redeemer, who has the legal right of redemption. When Yahshua came the first time He redeemed the sins of those who repented and accepted His substitutionary death for the penalty of their sins, and the second time He will redeem the land back to those in covenant with Him. Is 44:22, Heb 9:28 Lev 25:25-28.

4 Jer 31:31

5 This whole chapter is describing the glory of Jerusalem and Israel in the millennial kingdom.

6 Referring to Ephraim's return. Jer 31:1-14, Is 49:18, 22.

6 A host of camels shall cover you, young camels of Midian and Ephah. All of them shall come from Sheba[1], they shall bear gold and incense; and they shall proclaim the praises of YAHWEH.
7 All the flocks of Kedar shall be gathered to you; rams of Nebaioth shall serve you; they shall come up for acceptance on My altar; and the house of My beauty I will glorify[2].
8 Who are these who fly like a cloud, and with the doves to their windows?
9 For the coastlands shall wait for Me, and the ships of Tarshish at the first, to bring your sons from far away, their silver and their gold to them, to the name of YAHWEH your Elohim, and to the Holy One of Israel, because He has glorified you.
10 And the sons of the foreigner shall build your walls; and their kings shall serve you. For I struck you in My wrath, but I pitied you in My favor.
11 So your gates shall be always open; they shall not be shut day or night, so that men may bring to you the force of nations, and that their kings may be led. *(Is 26:1-3)*
12 For the nations and the kingdom that will not serve you shall perish; yea, the nations shall be utterly destroyed. *(Zech 14:17-19)*
13 The glory of Lebanon shall come to you: the juniper, the box tree, and the cypress together, to beautify the place of My sanctuary; yea, I will glorify the place of My feet. (*Is 35:2-3)*
14 Also the sons of ones afflicting you shall come bowing to you. And all who despised you shall fall at the soles of your feet. And they shall call you, The City of YAHWEH, the Zion of the Holy One of Israel. *(Is 62:12)*
15 Instead of your being forsaken and hated, so that no one passes through, I will make you for everlasting majesty, a joy of many generations.
16 You shall also suck the milk of nations, and you shall suck the breast of kings. And you shall know that I, YAHWEH, am your Savior and your Kinsman Redeemer, the mighty One of Jacob. *(Is 54:5, Lev 25:25)*
17 Instead of copper, I will bring gold; and instead of iron, I will bring silver. And instead of timber, copper; and instead of stones, iron. And I will make your governors peace, and your oppressors righteousness.
18 Violence shall not still be heard in your land, or wasting and ruin within your borders; but you shall call out[3] to Y'shua* by name as your wall of protection, and your gates, Praise[4].
19 The sun shall not still be your light by day, or the brightness of the moon give you light; but YAHWEH shall be for everlasting light to you, and your Elohim for your beauty.
(Rev 21:23)
20 Your sun shall not go in any more, and your moon shall not be removed; for YAHWEH will become your everlasting light; and the days of your mourning shall end.(Rev 22:5, Rev 21:4)
21 And your people shall all be righteous; they shall possess the earth forever, a branch of My planting, a work of My hands, to beautify Myself[5].
22 A little one shall become a thousand and a small one a strong nation. I, YAHWEH, will hasten it in its time[6].

---

1 Sheba- modern day Yemen.

2 Verses 6 & 7- All these places are associated with the Arabian desert.

3 To call out- The Hebrew word Qara has the idea of approaching a person and calling Him out by name. This word is also used to invite a famous guest.

4 Is 26:1, Is 42:7, Is 49:9, Is 54:14

5 Rev 5:10

6 Luk 18:17, Math 13:31-32, Is 51:2, 54:3

Chapter 61

1 The Spirit of Adonai YAHWEH is on Me, because YAHWEH has anointed Me to preach the good news to the meek. He has sent Me to heal the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to captives, and recovery of sight to the blind, and complete opening to the bound ones;
2 to proclaim the acceptable year of YAHWEH[1], and the day of vengeance of our Elohim; to comfort all who mourn;
3 to appoint to those who mourn in Zion, to give them beauty instead of ashes, the oil of joy instead of mourning, the mantle of praise instead of the spirit of infirmity, so that one calls them trees of righteousness, the planting of YAHWEH, in order to beautify Himself.
4 And they shall build old ruins; they shall raise up former desolations; and they shall restore the waste cities, ruins of generations and generations.
5 And foreigners shall stand and feed your flocks, and the sons of strangers shall be your plowmen and your vinedressers.
6 But you shall be called, Priests of YAHWEH; it will be said of you, Ministers of our Elohim[2]. You shall eat the wealth of the nations, and you shall revel in their glory.
7 Instead of your shame and disgrace, double. They rejoice in their portion; for they shall possess a second time in their land; everlasting joy shall be theirs.
8 For I, YAHWEH, love judgment, hating plunder in burnt offering. And I will give their work in truth; and I will cut an everlasting covenant to them[3].
9 And their seed shall be known among the nations, and their offspring among the peoples; all who see them shall acknowledge them, that they are the seed that YAHWEH has blessed.
10 Rejoicing I will rejoice in YAHWEH. My soul shall exult in my Elohim. For He clothed me with the *wedding* garments of Y'shua*; He put on me the robe of righteousness, even as a bridegroom, adorned as a priest with his fancy attire, and as a bride wears her wedding dress.[4]
11 For as the earth comes out with her buds, and as a garden causes that which is sown to grow, so Adonai YAHWEH will make righteousness and praise to grow before all the nations.[5]

Chapter 62

1 For Zion's sake, I will not be silent; and for Jerusalem's sake, I will not rest; until her righteousness goes forth as brightness, and Y'shua* as a burning torch.
2 And nations shall see your righteousness, and all kings your glory. And you shall be called by a new name which the mouth of YAHWEH shall name[6].
3 You also shall be a crown of beauty in the hand of YAHWEH, and a royal head dress in the hand of your Elohim.
4 You no longer shall be called

[1] This is the Jubilee year when the kinsman redeemer will restore back to His own that which was lost (Lev 25:25-29). The very first time Yahshua read in the synagogue (Luk 4:16-20), He read verses 1 & 2, but stopped in the middle of verse two as verse 1 and part of 2 was about His first mission on earth and the rest of verse 2 and verse 3 is about judgment on the day of YHWH at His return.

[2] Ex 19:5-6, 1Pe 2:5, 9-10, Rev 1:6, 5:10

[3] Jer 31:31-34

[4] Ps 132:9,16, Rev 19:7-8

[5] Is 45:8, 25, Is 55:10-11, Is 11:9

[6] Rev 3:12, Rev 19:12

Azubah[1]; nor shall your land any longer be called Shemamah[2]. But you shall be called, Hephzibah[3]; and your land, Beulah[4]. For YAHWEH delights in you, and your land is married[5].

5 For as a young man marries a virgin, so shall your sons marry you. And as a bridegroom rejoices over the bride, so your Elohim shall rejoice over you. *(Rev 19:7-9)*

6 I have set watchmen on your walls, O Jerusalem. All the day and all the night they shall not always be silent; you who remember YAHWEH, keep not silent.

7 And give no rest to Him until He sets up and makes Jerusalem a praise in the earth. *(Rev 21:2, Mic 4:1-2)*

8 YAHWEH **has sworn by His right hand[6]**, and by the might of His arm: Surely I will no longer give your grain as food for your enemies; and the sons of a stranger shall not drink your new wine for which you have labored.

9 But those who have gathered it shall eat it, and praise YAHWEH. And they who have collected it shall drink it in My holy courts. *(Is 65:13, 21-23)*

10 Pass! Pass through the gates; prepare the way of the people! Raise up! Raise up the highway; clear it from stones; lift up a banner[7] over the peoples.

11 Behold, YAHWEH has made it to be heard to the end of the earth; Tell the daughter of Zion, **Behold! Y'shua* comes**! Behold! His reward[8] is with Him, and His work before Him.

12 And they shall call them, The Holy People, the Redeemed[9] of YAHWEH. And to you it shall be called, Sought Out, A City Not Forsaken.

Chapter 63

1 Who is this who comes from Edom with crimson[10] garments from Bozrah, this One adorned in His clothing, inclining in His great power? It is I, to speak in righteousness *the* Great Y'shua*![11] *(Jos 5:13-15, Mic 2:12-13)*

2 Why is Your clothing red, and Your garments like one who treads in the winepress? *(Rev 19:11-13)*

3 I have trodden the winepress, I alone, and no man of the peoples was with Me. And I will tread them in My anger, and trample them in My fury; and their juice shall be spattered on My garments; and I will pollute all My clothes. *(Rev 14:15-20)*

4 For the day of vengeance is in My heart, and the year of My redeemed[12] has come.

5 And I looked, and no one was helping. And I was astonished that no

---

1 Means forsaken

2 Means desolate

3 Means my delight is in her

4 Means married

5 Jerusalem is the wedding dowry from Yahweh the Father to Yahshua His Son and His bride. Rev 21:2

6 See note Is 59:16

7 Messianic phrase showing the Messiah and redeemer of Israel is near.

8 This Hebrew word "*sakar*" means payment of contract. Col 2:14, Heb 9:27-28, Is 40:10

9 Redeemed by the kinsman redeemer. 1Pe 2:9

10 There is a play on words here as Edom means red, Bozrah is similar to the word for grape gatherer and Messiah has crimson garments, all highlighting Messiah's return and His judgment, Rev 14:15-20, Rev 19:13.

11 The Hebrew Reads '*Rab Yahshua*'. In Aramaic Raboni means my great one and that is why Yahshua stated not to call any man Raboni, my great one, but Him (Math 23:8).

12 This is speaking of the Jubilee year, Is 61:2.

one was upholding. Then My own arm saved for Me[1], and My fury upheld Me.

6 And I tread down peoples in My anger, and made them drunk in My fury. And I poured their juice to the earth. *(Ps 75:8, Is 51:17, 21-22)*

7 I will mention the mercies of YAHWEH, the praises[2] of YAHWEH, according to all that YAHWEH has benefited us, and the great good to the house of Israel, by which He benefited them according to His mercies, and according to the multitude of His loving-kindness.

8 For He said, Surely they are My people, sons that do not lie, and He became to them a Savior.

9 In all their affliction, He was not a foe; and the Messenger of his Face saved them[3]. In His love and in His pity He was their kinsman-redeemer. And He bore them up, and lifted them up all the days of old.

10 But they rebelled, and provoked His Holy Spirit, so He was turned to be their enemy; He fought against them. *(Ps 78:40, Acts 7:51, Neh 9:20)*

11 Then His people remembered the days past of Moses and His people, saying, Where is He who brought us up from the sea with the shepherd of His flock. Where is He who put His Holy Spirit within him;*(Ps 106:44-46)*

12 who led them by Moses' right hand, with His glorious arm, dividing the water before them, to make for Him an everlasting name? *(Ex 14:21-22)*

13 He led them through the deeps; like the horse in the wilderness, they did not stumble.

14 As the cattle go down into the valley, so the Spirit of YAHWEH caused him to rest; so You led Your people, to make a glorious name for Yourself.

15 Look down from Heaven and peer from the place of Your holiness and Your glory. Where is Your zeal and Your might? The roaring of Your bowels and Your mercies toward me, are they held back?

16 For You are our Father, though Abraham does not know us, and Israel does not acknowledge us; You, YAHWEH, are our Father, our Kinsman-Redeemer[4]; Your name is from everlasting. *(Jer 31:1-2)*

17 O YAHWEH, why do You make us wander from Your ways? You harden our heart from Your fear. For Your servants' sake, return the tribes of Your inheritance[5].

18 For a little while Your holy people possessed it. Our enemies have trampled Your sanctuary.

19 We are of old; You never ruled over them. Your name was never called on them[6].

Chapter 64

1 Oh that You would tear the heavens and come down, that mountains would quake before You.

2 As the brushwood fire burns and fire causes water to boil, make known

1 See note on Is 59:16

2 Praises- Tehilaw the word used for Psalms.

3 Yahshua is the Messenger of Yahweh that was at Mount Sinai, with Israel in the desert and came to them as a human being later Ex 23:2-23, 1Cor 10:4, Joh 1:1-3,14.

4 These are the dispersed Israelites pleading to YHWH that although Judah never lost their identity and is known to all and they are scattered that they are still Yahweh's children. Abraham does not know them because the 12 tribes were born after his death.

5 Pleading for bringing back the northern tribes of Israel in the end time as Judah was also restored.

6 Yahweh is a family name and many Israelite children bore the name of Yahweh such as Jeremiah which in Hebrew is Yeremeyahu, or Isaiah which is Yesheyahu.

Your name to Your foes, that nations might tremble before You. *(Jer 5:22)*
3 When You did terrifying things which we did not look for, You came down; mountains flowed down before You. (*Ps 68:8, Ex 34:10*)
4 And from forever they have not heard; they did not give ear. Eye has not seen a Elohim except You, who works for him who waits for Him.
(1Cor 2:9)
5 You meet him who rejoices and works righteousness; they recall You in Your ways. Behold, You were angry, for we sinned. In them is eternity, we shall be saved.
6 But we are all as the unclean thing, and all our righteousness is as a menstruation cloth. And we all fade as a leaf, and like the wind our iniquities take us away.
7 And there is not one who calls on Your name[1], who stirs himself up to take hold of You. For You have hidden Your face from us, and have melted us away into the hand of our iniquities.
8 But now, YAHWEH, You are our Father. We are the clay, and You are our maker; yea, we all are Your handiwork. *(Is 29:16)*
9 Be not angry, YAHWEH, until extreme, and do not remember iniquity forever. Behold! look, please; all of us are Your people.
10 Your holy cities are a wilderness; Zion is a wilderness; Jerusalem is a desolation.
11 The house of our holiness and our beauty where our fathers praised You has become a burning of fire, and all our pleasant things have become a ruin. *(2Chron 36:19)*
12 Will You restrain Yourself over these things, YAHWEH? Will you be silent and vehemently afflict us?

Chapter 65

1 I have been sought, not by those who asked. I have been found, not by those who sought Me. To a nation not calling on My name, I said, Behold Me! Behold Me![2]
2 I have spread out My hands all the day long to a rebellious people who walk in the way not good, after their own thoughts; *(Ro 10:21)*
3 a people who continually provoke Me to My face; who sacrifice in gardens, and burn incense on the bricks;
4 who sit among the graves and lodge in the towers; who eat swine's flesh, and broth of unclean things in their pots[3];
5 who say, Keep to yourself! Do not come near me, for I am holier than you! These are a smoke in My nose, a fire burning all the day.
6 Behold! It is written before Me: I will not be silent, except I repay; yea, I will repay to their bosom,
7 your iniquities and the iniquities of your fathers together, says YAHWEH; they that burned incense on the mountains, and have blasphemed Me on the hills. And I will return their former work into their bosom.
8 So says YAHWEH: As the new wine is found in the cluster, and one says, Do not destroy it, for a blessing is

[1] There are almost ½ the people on this planet who read and accept the bible, but not even 1/100 of one percent of them acknowledge the Creator's one and only Sovereign name YAHWEH. Although it is recorded almost 7,000 times alone in the Tanach or Old Testament..

[2] Ro 10:19-20, Ro 11:11-15, Hos 1:10

[3] This is an end time scripture and the people are rebuked for eating unclean food according to Leviticus 11, showing that these laws of Torah are still in affect at this time.

in it; so I will do for the sake of My servants, not to destroy the whole.

9 And I will bring forth a seed out of Jacob, and out of Judah one to inherit My mountains[1]. And My elect shall inherit, and My servants shall live there.

10 And Sharon shall be a fold of flocks; and the valley of Achor[2] a resting place of herds for My people who have sought Me.

11 But you are those who forsake YAHWEH, who forget My holy mountain; who array a table for Gawd[3] *(The Babylonian Deity of fortune)*, and who fill mixed wine for Meni *(The Deity of fate)*.

12 And I will number you to the sword; and you shall all bow down to the slaughter; because I called and you did not answer. I spoke, and you did not hear; and you did the evil in My eyes; and you chose that in which I had no pleasure.[4]

13 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Behold, My servants shall eat, but you shall be hungry. Behold, My servants shall drink, but you shall be thirsty. Behold, My servants shall rejoice, but you shall be ashamed.

14 Behold, My servants shall sing for joy of heart, but you shall cry from heartbreak, and howl from breaking of spirit.

15 And you shall leave your name for a curse to My elect. And Adonai YAHWEH shall kill you; and He shall call His servants by another name.

16 He who blesses himself in the earth shall bless himself in the Elohim of truth. And he who swears in the earth shall swear by the Elohim of truth; because the former distresses are forgotten; and because they are hidden from My eyes.

17 For, behold, I create new heavens and new earth. And the former things shall not be recalled, and they shall not go up on the heart.

18 However, be glad and rejoice forever in what I create. For, behold, I create in Jerusalem a rejoicing, and her people a joy. *(Zech 8:3-6)*

19 And I will rejoice in Jerusalem, and joy in My people. And the voice of weeping and the voice of crying shall no longer be heard in her.

20 There shall not still be an infant of days, or an old man that has not filled his days. For the youth shall die the son of a hundred years, but the sinner the son of a hundred years shall be accursed.

21 And they shall build houses and live in them; and they shall plant vineyards and eat their fruit.

22 They shall not build, and another live in them; they shall not plant, and another eat. For like the days of the tree are the days of My people; and My elect shall grow old to the work of their hands.

23 They shall not labor in vain, nor bring forth for terror. For they are the seed of the beloved ones of YAHWEH, and their offspring with them.

24 And it will be, before they call, I will answer. While they are speaking, then I will hear.

25 The wolf and the lamb shall feed

---

[1] The Messiah will be born from the seed of David (Mich 5:2).

[2] "*Achor*" means "*trouble*" and only through trouble will Israel find her restoration.

[3] Gawd or "*god*" is the name of the Babylonian deity of fortune and meni is the name of the deity of fate. Yahweh is rebuking the people for exchanging His exulted name YAHWEH with the name of the false deity "*god*". It is most ironic that on the US dollar, which is the reserve currency of the world, that it is written *"in god we trust"*. Most are doing this today breaking the third commandment. Ex 3:15, Is 42:8, Deut 28:58-59

[4] Pr 1:24-31, Is 66:4

as one; and the lion shall eat straw like the ox. And dust is the food of the snake. They shall not do evil nor destroy in all My holy mountain, says YAHWEH *(Is 11:6)*

Chapter 66

1 So says YAHWEH: Heaven is My throne, and earth the footstool of My feet. Where then is the house that you build for Me? And where then is the place of My rest?

2 And My hand has made all these things, even all these things exist, declares YAHWEH. But I will look toward this one, to the humbled one, and to the contrite of spirit, even trembling at My Word.

3 He who slaughters an ox is as if he struck a man; he who sacrifices a lamb is as if he broke a dog's neck; he who offers a present is as if it were swine's blood; he making mention of incense is as if he blessed an idol. Yea, they have chosen their way, and their soul delights in their abominations[1].

4 I also will choose their vexations; and I will bring their fears to them; because I called, and no one answered; I spoke, and they did not hear. But they did the evil in My eyes, and chose that in which I had no pleasure.

5 Hear the Word of YAHWEH, those who tremble at His Word. Your brothers who hate you, who drive you out for My name's sake, have said, YAHWEH is glorified. But He shall appear in your joy, and they shall be ashamed.

6 A roaring sound from the city! A sound from the sanctuary! It is the sound of YAHWEH repaying retribution to His enemies.

7 Before she travailed, she brought forth; before pain came to her, she delivered a male child.

8 Who has heard a thing like this? Who has seen things like these? Shall the earth be brought forth in one day? Shall a nation be born in one step? For Zion travailed and also brought forth her sons.

9 Shall I bring to the birth, and not cause to bring forth? says YAHWEH. Surely I cause birth, and restrain, says your Elohim.

10 Rejoice with Jerusalem, and be glad with her, all who love her. Rejoice a rejoicing with her, all who mourn for her;

11 that you may suck and be satisfied with her comforting breasts; that you may milk out and delight yourselves with the fullness of her glory.

12 For so says YAHWEH: Behold, I stretch out peace to her like a river, and glory of nations like an overflowing torrent. And you shall suck; you shall be carried on the side and be dandled on knees.

13 As one whom his mother comforts, so I will comfort you. And you shall be comforted in Jerusalem.

14 And you will see, and your heart shall rejoice; and your bones shall flourish like the grass. And the hand of YAHWEH shall be known toward His servants, and He shall be indignant with His enemies.

15 For, behold, YAHWEH will come with fire, and His chariots like the whirl-wind, to return His wrath in fury, and His rebuke in flames of fire.

16 For by fire and by His sword YAHWEH will execute judgment with all flesh; and the slain of YAHWEH shall be many.

17 Those who sanctify themselves, and purify themselves to the gardens, each one in the midst, eaters of swine's flesh, and the hateful thing, and the

[1] YHWH will not accept the man-made false temple in the end times.

mouse, these are cut off together, says YAHWEH.
18 For I know their works and their thoughts; it comes to gather all the nations and the tongues; and they shall come and see My glory.
19 And I will set a sign among them, and I will send those who escape from them to the nations of Tarshish, Pul, and Lud, drawers of the bow; to Tubal and Javan, to the far away coasts that have not heard (Aleph/Tav) My fame nor seen (Aleph/Tav) My glory. And they shall declare (Aleph/Tav) My glory among the nations.
20 And they shall bring all your brothers out of all nations, an offering to YAHWEH, on horses, and in chariots, and in litters, and on mules, and on camels, to My holy mountain Jerusalem, says YAHWEH; as the sons of Israel bring the offering in a clean vessel to the house of YAHWEH.
21 And I will also take some of them for the priests, for the Levites, says YAHWEH.
22 For as the new heavens and the new earth which I make stand before Me, declares YAHWEH, so your seed and your name shall stand.
23 And it will be, from new moon to its new moon, and from Sabbath to its Sabbath, all flesh shall come to worship before Me, says YAHWEH.
24 And they shall go out and see the dead bodies of the men who have rebelled against Me; for their worm shall not die, nor shall their fire be put out; and they shall be an object of disgust to all flesh.

Book of Jeremiah 627-585 BC

Chapter 1

1 The words of Jeremiah the son of Hilkiah, one of the priests who resided in Anathoth in the land of Benjamin,
2 to whom the Word of YAHWEH came in the days of Josiah the son of Amon, king of Judah, in the thirteenth year of his reign.
3 It also came in the days of Jehoiakim, the son of Josiah, king of Judah, to the end of the eleventh year of Zedekiah the son of Josiah, king of Judah, to the exile of Jerusalem in the fifth month.
4 Then the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
5 I knew you before I formed you in the belly; and before you came out of the womb, I sanctified you. I appointed you a prophet to the nations.
6 Then I said, Ah, Adonai YAHWEH! Behold, I do not know how to speak for I am a boy.
7 But YAHWEH said to me, Do not say, I am a boy; for you shall go to all that I shall send you. And whatever I command you, you shall speak.
8 Do not be afraid of their faces, for I am with you to deliver you, says YAHWEH.
9 Then YAHWEH put out His hand and touched my mouth. And YAHWEH said to me, Behold, I have put My Words in your mouth.
10 Behold, I have today appointed you over the nations and over the kingdoms, to root out, and to tear down, and to destroy, and to throw down, to build, and to plant.
11 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying, Jeremiah, what do you see? And I said, I see an almond rod.
12 Then YAHWEH said to me, You have seen well; for I will watch over My Word to perform it.[1]
13 And the Word of YAHWEH came to me the second time, saying, What do you see? And I said, I see a boiling pot; and its face is from the face of the north[2].
14 And YAHWEH said to me, Out of the north, evil will be set loose on all those living in the land.
15 For, behold, I will call all the families of the kingdoms of the north, declares YAHWEH. And they shall come, and they will give to each his throne at the entrance of the gates of Jerusalem, and against its walls all around, and against the cities of Judah.
16 And I will speak My judgments against them regarding all their evil, those who have forsaken Me and have burned incense to other gods, and have worshiped the works of their hands.
17 And you must gird up your loins, and rise up and speak to them all that I command you. Do not be terrified before their faces, that I not prostrate you before them.
18 For, behold, today I have made you a fortified city, and an iron pillar, and copper walls against the whole land, against the kings of Judah, against her princes, against her priests, and to the people of the land.
19 And they shall fight against you; but they shall not overcome you. For I am with you to deliver you, declares YAHWEH.

---

1 Verse 11 and 12 are a play on words in the original Hebrew as the word for almond is "*shaked*" and the word for diligently watching is "s*hoked*".

2 The seething pot ready to boil over is an illustration of the imminent invasion by Babylon.

Chapter 2

1 And was the Word of YAHWEH to me, saying,

2 Go and cry in the ears of Jerusalem, saying, So says YAHWEH, I remember you, the kindness of your youth, the love of your espousals, your going after Me in the wilderness, in a land not sown.

3 Israel was holy to YAHWEH, the first-fruits of His increase. All that devour him become guilty; evil shall come on them, declares YAHWEH.

4 Hear the Word of YAHWEH, O house of Jacob and all the families of the house of Israel.

5 So says YAHWEH, What iniquity have your fathers found in Me, that they went far from Me and have walked after vanity, and have become vain?

6 Nor did they say, Where is YAHWEH who brought us up out of the land of Egypt, who led us in the wilderness, in a land of deserts and of pits, in a dry land and deep darkness, in a land that no man has passed through, and not a man has lived there?

7 And I brought you into a plentiful land to eat its fruit and its goodness. But when you went in, you defiled My land and made My inheritance an abomination.

8 The priests did not say, Where is YAHWEH? And they who handle the Torah did not know Me. And the shepherds rebelled against Me; and the prophets prophesied by Baal, and went after things not profitable.

9 Therefore, I will contend with you, says YAHWEH, and I will contend with your sons' sons.

10 For go to the isles of Kittim[1] and see, and send to Kedar[2], and carefully consider and see if there is any like this.

11 Has a nation changed its Elohim, and they were not Elohim? But My people have changed my Glory without profiting.

12 Be amazed at this, O heavens, and be horrified; be completely desolated, declares YAHWEH.

13 For My people have done two evils: they have forsaken Me, the Fountain of living waters[3], to hew out cisterns for themselves, broken cisterns that can hold no water.

14 Is Israel a servant? Or is he a servant of the house? Why has he become a prey?

15 The young lions roared against him; they gave their voice. And they made his land a waste; his cities are ruined, without inhabitant.

16 Also the sons of Noph and Tahpanhes have fed on your crown.

17 Have you not done this to yourself by your forsaking YAHWEH your Elohim when He led you by the way?

18 And now what is for you toward the way of Egypt, to drink the waters of Sihor? Or what for you toward Assyria, to drink the waters of the River Euphrates?

19 Your own wickedness shall correct you, and your apostasies shall reprove you. Know, then, and see that your forsaking YAHWEH your Elohim is evil and bitter; and My fear

---

[1] Cyprus

[2] Arabia

[3] In the sanctuary of YHWH in Jerusalem there was an inexhaustible natural spring called Gihon under the throne of YHWH in the Holy of Holies. Ironically, today about 1/3 of a mile north of the original sanctuary is where the Roman fort Antonia was where today many believe the original sanctuary of YHWH stood. In this area there are many ancient broken cisterns underground that cannot hold water any longer (Jer 17:13).

is not in you, declares Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts.

20 For long ago you broke your yoke and tore up your bonds. And you said, I will not transgress, when on every high hill and under every green tree you lay down like a harlot.

21 Yet I planted you a choice vine, wholly a true seed. How then have you turned into the deteriorating shoots of a foreign vine to Me?

22 Though you wash yourself with potash, and multiply soap for yourself, your iniquity is stained before Me, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

23 How can you say, I am not defiled; I have not gone after Baals? See your way in the valley; know what you have done! You are a swift camel crisscrossing her ways;

24 a wild donkey used to the wilderness. In the passion of her desire she snuffs up the wind in her time. Who can turn her away? All those who seek her will not tire themselves; in her month they will find her[1].

25 Withhold your foot from being bare and your throat from thirst. But you said, It is hopeless! For I love strangers, and after them I will go.

26 As the thief is ashamed when he is found, so is the house of Israel ashamed. They, their kings, their princes, and their priests, and their prophets are

27 saying to a tree, You are my father; and to a stone, You gave us birth[2]. For they turned their back to Me, and not the face. But in the time of their evil, they will say, Arise, and save us!

28 But where are your gods that you have made for yourselves? Let them arise, if they can save you in the time of your evil; for according to the number of your cities are your gods, O Judah.

29 Why do you contend with Me? All of you, you have rebelled against Me, says YAHWEH.

30 In vain I have stricken your sons; they received no correction. Your own sword has devoured your prophets, like a destroying lion.

31 O generation, see the Word of YAHWEH. Have I been a wilderness to Israel, or a land of darkness? Why do My people say, We roam; we will come no more to You.

32 Can a virgin forget her ornaments, a bride her attire? Yet My people have forgotten Me days without number.

33 What? Do you trim your ways to seek love? For this reason you have even taught the evil women your ways.

34 Also on your skirts is found the blood of the souls of the poor innocents; I did not find them by breaking in, but on all these.

35 Yet you say, Because I am innocent, surely His anger shall turn from me. Behold, I will judge with you, because you say, I have not sinned.

36 Why do you go about so much to change your way? You also shall be ashamed of Egypt, as you were ashamed of Assyria.

37 Yes, you shall go out from this place, and your hands on your head. For YAHWEH has rejected those in whom you trust, and you will not prosper by them.

Chapter 3

1 They say, If a man lets go his wife, and she goes from him and will be for another man, will he return to her again? Would not that land be greatly defiled? But you play the harlot with

---

[1] YHWH is comparing Israel's idolatry and promiscuity to an animal in heat.

[2] Israel was following the Canaanite deities made out of wood and stone.

many lovers; yet would you come back to Me, says YAHWEH. *(Deut 24:1-4)*

2 Lift up your eyes on the bare heights and see. Where have you not been lain with? By the highways you have sat for them, like an Arab in the desert. And you have defiled the land with your fornications and with your evil.

3 And the showers are withheld, and there has been no latter rain. And the forehead of a woman, a harlot, was to you; you refused to be ashamed.

4 Have you not just now called to Me, saying, My father, You are the friend of my youth?

5 Will He keep His anger forever? Or will He guard it to the end? Behold, you have spoken, and you have done all the evil things that you could.

6 YAHWEH also said to me in the days of Josiah the king, Have you seen what the apostate Israel has done? She has gone up on every high hill and under every green tree, and has fornicated there. *(Jer 17:2-3)*

7 And after she had done all these, I said, She will return to Me; but she did not return. And her treacherous sister Judah saw it.

8 And I watched. When for all the causes for which the apostate Israel committed adultery, I sent her away and I gave the writ of her divorce to her. Yet her treacherous sister Judah did not fear, but she also went and fornicated.

9 And it happened, from the wantonness of her harlotry she defiled the land, and committed adultery with stones and with pieces of wood.

10 And yet for all this her treacherous sister Judah has not turned to Me with her whole heart, but with falsehood, says YAHWEH.

11 And YAHWEH said to me, The apostate Israel has justified herself more than treacherous Judah.

12 Go and cry these words toward the north, and say, Return, O apostate Israel, says YAHWEH. I will not cause My face to fall on you, for I am merciful, says YAHWEH; I will not keep anger forever.

13 Only acknowledge your iniquity, that you have rebelled against YAHWEH your Elohim and have scattered your ways to the strangers under every green tree, and you have not obeyed My voice, says YAHWEH.

14 Return, O apostate sons, declares YAHWEH; for I am Adonai over you. And I will take you, one from a city, and two from a family, and I will bring you to Zion[1].

15 And I will give you shepherds according to My heart, who will feed you with knowledge and understanding[2].

16 And it will be, when you multiply and increase in the land in those days, says YAHWEH, they will no longer say, The ark of the covenant of YAHWEH! Nor shall it come to the heart, nor shall they remember it, nor shall they miss it, nor shall it be made any more[3].

17 At that time they shall call Jerusalem the throne of YAHWEH.

---

[1] There is always only a remnant being redeemed as the majority of the people will always continue in their sinful ways and refuse to repent.

[2] In the end time YHWH will give true shepherds that will teach His people properly according to His Torah Is 8:20, Eph 4:10-14)

[3] The ark of the covenant represented YHWH's presence with His people, but in the last days His spirit will be with His remnant and they will not even think about the ark of the covenant. The ark was only in the first sanctuary built by Solomon, but not in the Herodian sanctuary in the days of Yahshua. Yahshua's presence in person superseded the need for the ark of the covenant.

And all nations shall be gathered to it, to the name of YAHWEH, to Jerusalem[1]. And they shall not walk any more after the stubbornness of their evil heart.

18 In those days the house of Judah shall walk with the house of Israel, and they shall come together out of the land of the north, to the land that I have given for an inheritance to your fathers[2].

19 But I said, How gladly would I put you among the sons, and give you a pleasant land, a beautiful inheritance among the multitudes of nations! And I said, You shall call Me, My Father; and you shall not turn away from Me.

20 Surely as a wife treacherously departs from her lover, so you have dealt treacherously with Me, O house of Israel, declares YAHWEH.

21 A voice was heard weeping on the bare heights, pleadings of the sons of Israel; for they have perverted their way; they have forgotten YAHWEH their Elohim.

22 Return, O apostate sons; I will heal your apostasies. Behold, we come to You, for You are YAHWEH our Elohim[3].

23 Truly, for delusion comes from the hills, tumult on the mountains. Truly, in YAHWEH our Elohim is the salvation of Israel.

24 For the shameful thing has eaten up the labor of our fathers from our youth, their flocks and their herds, their sons and their daughters.

25 We lie down in our shame, and our confusion covers us. For we have sinned against YAHWEH our Elohim, we and our fathers, from our youth even to this day. And we have not obeyed the voice of YAHWEH our Elohim. *(Jer 22:21)*

Chapter 4

1 If you will return, O Israel, says YAHWEH, return to Me. And if you will turn away from your hateful idols out of My face and will not waver,

2 and you will swear, As YAHWEH lives, in truth, in justice, and in righteousness; even the nations shall bless themselves in Him, and in Him they will glory.

3 For so says YAHWEH to the men of Judah and to Jerusalem, Break up your fallow ground, and do not sow to the thorns. *(Hos 10:12-13, Mat 13:22)*

4 Circumcise yourselves to YAHWEH, and take away the foreskin of your heart[4], O men of Judah and those living in Jerusalem, that My fury not go forth like fire and burn, so that no one can put it out; because of the evil of your doings.

5 Declare in Judah, and make it heard in Jerusalem, and say, Blow the ram's horn in the land[5]. Cry, the end and say, Assemble yourselves and go into the cities of defense.

6 Lift up a banner toward Zion[6]. Flee for safety and do not wait. For I will bring evil from the north and a great ruin[7]. *(Jer 6:1)*

7 The lion has come up from his thicket, and a destroyer of nations has set out. He has left his place to make your land a waste. Your cities will fall into ruins without one living in them.

8 Clothe yourselves with sackcloth

[1] Is 2:3, Ezek 43:7, Mic 4:2, Zech 14:16-17

[2] Ezek 37:15-28, Ezek 36:24, Is 11:12-13, Jer 31:1, 50:4-5, Verses 5-18 are written in the present tense showing the judgment is sure and irreversible.

[3] Jer 30:17, 33:6, Hos 6;1, 14:4

[4] Jer 9:25-26, Deut 10:16, Ro 2:28-29

[5] A ram's horn would be blown to warn the people of imminent war.

[6] A plea for messianic help.

[7] Verse 5-18 is a vivid description of the invasion of Jerusalem comparing it to a Lion chasing his prey.

for this, wail and howl. For the fierce anger of YAHWEH has not turned back from us.

9 And it will be in that day, says YAHWEH, the king's heart and the heart of the rulers shall perish. And the priests shall be amazed; and the prophets shall be astounded.

10 Then I said, Ah, Adonai YAHWEH! Surely You have greatly deceived this people and Jerusalem, saying, You shall have peace, but the sword reaches to the soul.

11 At that time it shall be said to this people and to Jerusalem, A hot wind from the bare hills in the desert toward the daughter of My people, not to sift nor to cleanse![1]

12 A wind more full than these shall come for Me. Now I also will speak judgments against them.

13 Behold, he shall come up like clouds, and his chariots like a windstorm. His horses are swifter than eagles. Woe to us, for we are devastated!

14 O Jerusalem, cleanse your heart from evil so that you may be saved. Until when will your vain thoughts lodge within you?

15 For a voice announces from Dan, and proclaims evil from Mount Ephraim.[2]

16 Tell it to the nations: Behold, proclaim against Jerusalem, Besiegers are coming from a distant land and will set their voice against the cities of Judah.

17 Like the ones watching a field, they are against her all around because she has rebelled against Me, says YAHWEH.

18 Your way and your doings have done these things to you; this is your evil, because it is bitter, because it reaches to your heart.

19 My bowels! My bowels! I convulse in pain. O walls of my heart! My heart is restless within me. I cannot be silent, for I have heard, O my soul, the sound of the ram's horn, the alarm of war[3]!

20 Call Out, Ruin upon ruin; for the whole land is laid waste. Suddenly my tents are laid waste, my curtains in a moment.

21 How long must I see the banner and hear the sound of the ram's horn?

22 For My people are foolish. They do not know Me. They are stupid children, and they have no understanding. They are wise to do evil, but they do not know to do good.

23 I looked on the earth, and, behold! It was without form and void; and to the heavens, and they had no light. *(Gen 1:2)*

24 I looked on the mountains, and, behold! They quaked, and all the hills were shaken.

25 I looked, and, behold! There was no man, and all the birds of the skies had fled.

26 I looked, and, behold! The fruitful place was a wilderness, and all its cities were broken down before the face of YAHWEH, before His glowing anger.

27 For so YAHWEH has said, The whole earth shall be a desolation; yet I will not make a full end.

28 The earth shall mourn for this, and the heavens above shall grow black, because I have seen, I have

---

1 In summer with no rain for at least 7 months this scorching hot wind with sand withers vegetation. The purpose is not to cleanse but to destroy.

2 Mount Ephraim is the southern border of the Israelite kingdom and Dan is the northern border with modern day Lebanon and Syria.

3 Jeremiah is distressed to the inner most being of his soul over the impending invasion and the complete devastation that it will bring.

purposed and I will not repent, nor will I turn back from it.

29 Every city shall flee from the noise of the horsemen and shooters of the bow. They shall go into thickets and go up in the rocks. Every city shall be forsaken, and not a man shall live in them. *(Jer 16:14-21)*

30 And you, O desolate one, what will you do? Though you clothe yourself with crimson, though you adorn yourself with ornaments of gold, though you make large your eyes with paint, you beautify yourself in vain. Lovers despise you; they will seek your life[1].

31 For I have heard a voice as of a sick woman, the anguish as one bearing her first child, the voice of Zion's daughter gasping and spreading her hands, saying, Woe is to me now, for my soul faints because of murderers.

Chapter 5

1 Roam around in Jerusalem's streets and see now, and know, and seek in her plazas if you can find a man, if there is one who does justice, who seeks truth; and I will pardon her[2].

2 And though they say, As YAHWEH lives, surely they swear falsely.(Is 48:1)

3 O YAHWEH, are not Your eyes for the truth? You struck them, but they felt no pain. You consumed them, yet they refused to take correction. They made their faces harder than rock; they have refused to return.

4 So I said, Surely they are poor; they are foolish, for they do not know the way of YAHWEH, the judgment of their Elohim.

5 I will go up for myself to the great men and will speak to them. For they have known the way of YAHWEH, the ordinances of their Elohim. Surely these have joined in breaking the yoke; they have torn off the bonds.

6 On account of this a lion out of the forest shall strike them; a wolf of the desert shall destroy them; a leopard is watching over their cities. Everyone who goes out from them shall be torn in pieces, because their transgressions are many; their rebellions are multiplied[3].

7 Why should I pardon you for this? Your sons have forsaken Me and have sworn by ones who are Not Elohim. When I fed them to the full, they then committed adultery and gathered themselves by troops in a harlot's house.

8 They were like lusty, well fed stallions in the morning, everyone neighing after the wife of his neighbor.

9 Shall I not judge for these things, says YAHWEH? And shall not My soul be avenged on such a nation as this?

10 Go up on her vine rows and destroy, but do not make a full end. Take away her branches, for they are not of YAHWEH.

11 For the house of Israel and the house of Judah have been very devious with Me, declares YAHWEH.

12 They have lied against YAHWEH and said, It is not He; and, No evil

1 The root of this word is only used elsewhere in Ezek 23, showing that the nations that Israel has aligned themselves with have only wanted to destroy her. The wearing of make -up is also equated with harlotry.

2 It is a sad state of affairs when there is not even one righteous man left in all Jerusalem, Gen 18:26-32.

3 A stark contrast to where in the kingdom of YHWH these same animals will bless the people, here, due to their sin they will destroy them (Is 11:6).

shall come on us; and, We shall not see sword or famine.

13 And the prophets shall become wind, and the Word is not in them; so it shall be done to them.

14 Therefore YAHWEH Elohim of Hosts says this: Because you spoke this word, behold! I will make My Words fire in your mouth, and these people wood; and it shall consume them.

15 Behold, I will bring a nation on you from far away, O house of Israel, declares YAHWEH. It is an enduring nation; it is an ancient nation, a nation whose language you do not know, nor understand what they say.

16 Their quiver is as an open grave; they are all mighty men.

17 And they will eat up your harvest and your food, and they will devour your sons and your daughters. They will eat up your flocks and your herds; they will eat up your vines and your fig trees. One shall beat down your fortified cities with the sword, those in which you trust.

18 Yet even in those days, declares YAHWEH, I will not make a full end with you[1].

19 And it will be when you shall say, Why does YAHWEH our Elohim do all these things to us? Then you shall answer them, Just as you have forsaken Me and served foreign Elohim in your land, so you shall serve strangers in a land that is not yours.

20 Declare this in the house of Jacob and cry it in Judah, saying,

21 Now hear this, O foolish people, even you without heart, who have eyes and do not see, who have ears and do not hear. *(Is 6:10)*

22 Do you not fear Me, declares YAHWEH? Will you not tremble before My face, that I have placed the sand as the limit for the sea by an eternal decree, so that it cannot cross over it? And though they toss themselves, yet they cannot prevail; though its waves roar, yet they cannot cross over it.

23 But to this people there is a revolting and a rebellious heart; they have turned and are gone[2].

24 And they do not say in their heart, Let us now fear YAHWEH our Elohim who gives both the former and the latter rain in its season; He keeps for us the appointed weeks of the harvest[3].

25 Your iniquities have turned away these things, and your sins have withheld good from you. *(Ps 84:11)*

26 For among My people are found wicked ones. They lie in wait, as one who sets snares. They set a trap, they catch men.

27 Like a cage full of birds, so their houses are full of treachery. On account of this they have become great and grown rich.

28 They have become fat; they shine. Yes, they pass over the deeds of the evil; they do not judge the cause of the orphan, that they may prosper. And they do not vindicate the right of the needy.

29 Shall I not visit for these things, declares YAHWEH? Shall not My soul be avenged on such a nation as this?

30 There is an appalling and

---

1 Although the devastation will be heavy YHWH will not completely destroy her.

2 Yahweh shows in verse 22 His judicial order over nature and the sea and yet states in verse 23 that Israel has rebelled against Yahweh's judicial order by their stubbornness, pride, and selfish ways.

3 The Holy days and whole biblical calendar depend on the harvest in Israel and YHWH providing the early rain for the germination of the seed and the latter rain for its fruition. These people stopped relying on YHWH for their substance and had no fear before Him for their sinful nature and idolatry.

horrible thing that has happened in the land.

31 The prophets prophesy falsely, and the priests bear rule by their hands; and My people love it so. And what will you do at the end of it[1]?

Chapter 6

1 O sons of Benjamin take refuge to flee out of the midst of Jerusalem. And blow the ram's horn in Tekoa[2]; and set up a signal over Beth-Haccerem. For evil appears out of the north, and great destruction.
2 I will destroy the daughter of Zion, the beautiful and tender one.
3 The shepherds with their flocks shall come to her; they shall pitch tents on her all around. They shall each one feed in his hand.
4 Consecrate war against her. Rise up and let us go up at noon. Woe to us, for the day wanes! For the shadows of the evening are stretched out.
5 Rise up and let us go up by night and destroy her palaces.
6 For so YAHWEH of Hosts has said, Cut down her trees and pour out a mound against Jerusalem. She is the city to be visited. In her midst is oppression, all of her.
7 As a cistern keeps fresh its waters, so she keeps fresh her evil. Violence and destruction are heard in her. Sickness and wounds are continually before My face.
8 O Jerusalem, take advice, that My soul not be alienated from you; that I not make you a ruin, a land with not one living in it.
9 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, They shall thoroughly glean the remnant of Israel like a vine. Turn back your hand as a grape gatherer over the tendrils.
10 To whom shall I speak and give warning that they may hear? Behold, their ears are not circumcised, and they cannot listen. Behold, the Word of YAHWEH is a reproach to them. They have no delight in it.
11 And I am full of the fury of YAHWEH; I am weary with holding in. Pour it out on the child in the street and on the circle of the young men together. For even the husband with the wife shall be taken, the elder with fullness of days.
12 And their houses shall be turned to others, fields and wives together. For I will stretch out My hand on those living in the land, declares YAHWEH.
13 For everyone from the least of them even to the greatest of them cuts off a profit. And from the prophet even to the priest, everyone deals falsely.
14 They have also healed the break of My people slightly, saying, Peace, peace, when there is no peace[3].
15 Were they ashamed when they made an abomination? They were not at all ashamed, nor did they know to blush. So they shall fall among those who fall. At the time I visit them, they shall be cast down, says YAHWEH.
16 So says YAHWEH, Stand by the ways and see, and ask for the old paths, where the good way is, and walk in it; and you shall find rest for your souls. But they said, We will not walk in it[4].
17 Also I raised watchmen over you,

---

1 The religious leaders were at the head of the corruption and the people did not mind such a situation because of their decrepit spiritual condition. Without proper Elohim guided leaders this will always be the result.

2 Jeremiah is warning his own tribe Benjamin to flee. Also, a word play on "*Tekoa*", a city 12 miles south of Jerusalem where Amos the prophet was from with the Hebrew word "*blow*".

3 This whole situation that happened more than 2500 yrs ago is similarly paralleled today with the failed peace process with the Palestinians (Ezek 13:16).

saying, Listen to the sound of the
ram's horn. But they said, We will not
listen.
18 So hear, O nations, and know, O
congregation, that which is coming on
them.
19 Hear, O earth, behold! I will bring
evil on this people, the fruit of their
thoughts. For they have not listened to
My Words, and My Torah; they also
rejected it[1].
20 Why is this to Me? Frankincense
comes from Sheba, and the good cane
from a far land? Your burnt offerings
are not for acceptance, nor are your
sacrifices sweet to Me[2].
21 So YAHWEH says this, Behold! I
am giving stumbling blocks to this
people, and the fathers and the sons
together shall stumble on them; a
neighbor and his friend shall perish.
22 So says YAHWEH, Behold! A
people comes from the north country;
and a great nation shall be stirred
from the sides of the earth.
23 They shall lay hold on bow and
javelin; they are cruel and have no
mercy. Their voice roars like the sea;
and they ride on horses, arrayed like a
man for the battle against you, O
daughter of Zion.
24 We have heard the rumor of it.
Our hands have dropped down;
anguish has seized us, pain like one
giving birth.
25 Do not go out into the field or
walk by the way, because of the sword
of the enemy and terror from every
side.
26 O daughter of My people, put on
sackcloth and roll in ashes. Make
mourning for yourself, as for an only
son, most bitter mourning; for the
ravager shall suddenly come on us.
27 I have given you as a tower, a
fortress among My people, that you
may know and examine their way.
28 They are all rebellious revolters,
walkers in slander. All of them are as
copper and iron; they are corrupters.
29 The bellows blow, the lead is
consumed from the fire, the refiner
refines in vain; for the evil is not
separated.
30 Men will call them reprobate
silver, for YAHWEH has rejected
them.

Chapter 7

1 The Word that came to Jeremiah
from YAHWEH, saying,
2 Stand in the gate of the house of
YAHWEH and call out there this
Word, and say, Hear the Word of
YAHWEH all Judah, who enter in at
these gates to worship YAHWEH.
3 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the
Elohim of Israel, Amend your ways
and your doings, and I will let you
dwell in this place.
4 Do not trust yourself to lying
words, saying, The sanctuary of
YAHWEH! The sanctuary of
YAHWEH! This is the sanctuary of
YAHWEH!
5 For if you thoroughly amend your
ways and your doings; if you truly
practice justice between a man and his
neighbor;
6 if you do not oppress the stranger,
the orphan, and the widow; and do not
pour out innocent blood in this place,
or walk after other Elohim to your evil;

---

4 YHWH urging the people to return to the moral conservative times of obedience, but the wicked liberal people would hear nothing of it and suffer the consequences.

1 Rejection of the Torah and pride is always the core to misery and destruction.

2 These spices came from Arabia and the ancient spice routes. Cane (calamus) was an ingredient of the sacred anointing oil Ex 30:23 Song of Sol 4:14.

7 then I will let you dwell in this place, in the land that I gave to your fathers, from forever and to forever.

8 Behold, you trust for yourself on lying words without being of use.

9 Will you steal, murder, and commit adultery, and swear falsely, and burn incense to Baal, and walk after other Elohim whom you do not know?

10 And will you then come and stand before Me in this house on which My name is called[1], and say, We are delivered in order to do all those detestable things.

11 Has this house on which My name is called become a den of violent ones in your eyes? Behold, even I have seen, declares YAHWEH.

12 But go now to My place which was in Shiloh[2], where I made My name dwell at the first, and see what I did to it for the evil of My people Israel.

13 And now, because you have done all these works, says YAHWEH, and I spoke to you, rising up early and speaking, but you did not hear. Yea, I called you, but you did not answer.

14 And I will do to the house on which My name is called, in which you are trusting, and to the place which I gave to you and to your fathers, as I have done to Shiloh.

15 And I will cast you out from My face as I cast out all your brothers, all the seed of Ephraim.

16 And you, do not pray for this people; do not lift up cry or prayer for them. Do not intercede with Me, for I do not hear you[3]. (*Pr 28:9)*

17 Do you not see what they are doing in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem?

18 The sons gather wood, and the fathers kindle the fire, and the women knead dough, to make cakes to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings to other gods, that they may provoke Me.[4]

19 Do they provoke Me, says YAHWEH? Is it not themselves, to the shame of their own faces?

20 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Behold, My anger and My fury will be poured out on this place, on man and on animal, and on the trees of the field, and on the fruit of the ground. And it will burn and will not be put out.

21 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Add your burnt offerings to your sacrifices and eat flesh.

22 For I did not speak to your fathers, nor command them in the day that I brought them out from the land of Egypt, concerning matters of burnt offerings and sacrifices[5].

23 But I commanded them this thing, saying, Obey My voice, and I will be your Elohim, and you shall be My people. Also, Walk in all the ways that I have commanded you, so that it may be well with you. *(1Sam 15:22, Ps 51:17)*

24 But they did not listen nor bow their ear. But they walked in their own plans, in the stubbornness of their evil heart, and went backward and not forward. *(1 Sam 15:23)*

25 Since the day that your fathers

---

[1] The sanctuary was named after YAHWEH

[2] Jos 18:1

[3] Yahweh does not hear prayers for those who refuse to repent, Pr 28:9.

[4] This is speaking about Istar the Babylonian goddess, where also Easter came from (Jer 44:16-19)

[5] When Israel first left Egypt YHWH had intended for them to be a kingdom of priests to Him Ex 19:5-6. However, due to the golden calf incident YHWH chose Levi to be a mediator for Israel (Ex 32:26-30) with the sacrifices and ceremonial law until Messiah would come and rightfully return the priesthood of Melchizedek.

came out of the land of Egypt until this day, I have even sent to you all My servants, the prophets, daily rising up early and sending.

26 Yet they did not listen to Me nor bow their ear, but they stiffened their neck. They did more evil than their fathers. *(Jer 11:8)*

27 And you shall speak all these Words to them, but they will not listen to you. And you will call to them, but they will not answer you.

28 But you shall say to them, This is the nation that does not obey the voice of YAHWEH their Elohim, nor receive instruction. Truth has perished, and it is cut off from their mouth.

29 Cut off your crown[1] and throw it away, and lift up a dirge on the heights. For YAHWEH has rejected and forsaken the generation of His wrath.

30 For the sons of Judah have done evil in My eyes, says YAHWEH. They have set their idols in the house on which is called by My name, in order to defile it.

31 They have built the high places of Tophet in the valley of the son of Hinnom, to burn their sons and their daughters in the fire, which I did not command, nor did it come into My heart.

32 So, behold, the days come, declares YAHWEH, when it shall no more be called Tophet[2], or the valley of the son of Hinnom[3], but the Valley of Slaughter. For they shall bury in Tophet from lack of a place.

33 And the bodies of this people shall be food for the birds of the heavens, and for the beasts of the earth; and no one shall frighten them away.[4]

34 Then I will cause the voice of gladness to cease from the cities of Judah and from the streets of Jerusalem, even the voice of joy, and the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride. For the land shall become a waste.

Chapter 8

1 At that time, declares YAHWEH, they will bring out the bones of the kings of Judah, and the bones of its rulers, and the bones of the priests, and the bones of the prophets, and the bones of those living in Jerusalem, out of their graves.

2 And they shall spread them before the sun and the moon and all the host of the heavens whom they have loved, and whom they have served, and after whom they have walked, and whom they have sought, and whom they have worshiped. They shall not be gathered or buried; they shall be dung on the face of the ground[5].

3 And death shall be chosen rather than life by all the rest of those who remain of this evil family, who remain

1 Referring to the top of the head or hair. And this word originally referred to the crown that the high priest wore. The word is related to the Hebrew for Nazerite who cut off his hair if he was defiled. In like manner YHWH is telling them to shave their heads and repent and mourn.

2 Meaning fireplace and the place where child sacrifice would take place.

3 Northwest of and connecting to the Kidron valley and the place where garbage would be burned and also where Yahshua will judge at His return (valley of Gehenna Math 10:28)

4 Rev 19:17-18, Ezek 39:17-18

5 In ancient philosophy, desecrating the dead was a grave insult. They spread them out before the sun and moon and host of heaven as a defiant action to show the gods were helpless against their actions.

there in all the places where I have driven them, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

4 And you shall say to them, So says YAHWEH, Shall they fall and not rise up? Or shall one turn away and not return?

5 Why has this people, Jerusalem, turned away to a never-ending apostasy? They hold fast to deceit. They refuse to return.

6 I listened and heard. They did not speak so. No man repented because of this evil, saying, What have I done? Everyone turned in their own courses, as a horse rushes into the battle.

7 Also the stork in the heavens knows her seasons, and the turtledove and the swallow and the thrush observe the time of their coming. But My people do not know the judgment of YAHWEH[1].

8 How do you say, We are wise, and the Torah of YAHWEH is with us[2]? Behold, the lying pen of the scribes has certainly worked deceit[3].

9 The wise are ashamed; they are terrified and are captured. Behold, they have rejected the Word of YAHWEH, and what wisdom is theirs?

10 So I will give their wives to others, their fields to those who shall inherit. For everyone from the least even to the greatest cuts off a profit. From the prophet even to the priest, everyone deals falsely.

11 For they have healed the hurt of the daughter of My people slightly, saying, Peace, peace! And there is no peace.

12 Were they ashamed when they had done hateful things? They were not even at all ashamed, nor did they know how to blush. So they shall fall among those who fall. In the time of their punishment they will wither, says YAHWEH.

13 I will utterly consume them, says YAHWEH. No grapes will be on the vine, or figs on the fig tree; even the leaf withers. And I will give to them those who pass over them[4].

14 Why do we sit still? Gather yourselves, and let us enter into the fortified cities; and let us be silent there. For YAHWEH our Elohim has made us silent there, and He has made us drink poisonous water, because we have sinned against YAHWEH.

15 We looked for peace, but no good came; for a time of healing, but, behold, terror[5]!

16 The snorting of his horses was heard from Dan[6]; all the land trembles at the sound of the neighing of his stallions. For they come and devour the land and its fullness, the city and those who live in it.

17 For behold, I will send serpents among you, vipers for which there is no charm; and they will bite you, says YAHWEH. *(Ps 58:3-5)*

---

[1] The Hula valley in Northern Israel is a most amazing place where millions of birds instinctively stop there every year between moving north and south for summer and winter without ever a thought and yet Israel cannot see their sins even though YHWH gave them His Torah, sent His prophets and did great miracles continually before them.

[2] The Torah only profits if one is obedient.

[3] The religious leaders of the day had manipulated the Torah and lied to the people for personal gain and power.

[4] Sukkot was the most festive feast of the yr where all Israel would bring up their harvest fruits before YHWH and celebrate with great joy. However, YHWH is showing here that there would be no harvest to apostate Israel and that their enemies would eat anything that was left due to their being removed into Diaspora.

[5] Through the Oslo accords starting in 1993 modern Israel also sadly has seen the fulfillment of this verse.

[6] Dan was the most northern tribe up on the Northern border with Syria.

18 My refreshing is beyond grief; my heart is sick within me.
19 Behold, the voice of the cry of the daughter of my people from a distant land! Is not YAHWEH in Zion? Or is not her king in her? Why have they provoked Me with their carved images, with foreign vanities?
20 Harvest has passed; the summer has ended, and we are not delivered[1].
21 For the breaking of the daughter of my people, I am broken. I mourn; horror has taken hold on me.
22 Is there no balm in Gilead? Is there no healer there? Why then has the healing of the daughter of my people not come?

Chapter 9

1 Oh, that my head were waters and my eyes a fountain of tears, that I might weep day and night for the slain of the daughter of my people!
2 Oh, that I had a lodging place for travelers in the wilderness, that I might leave my people and go away from them! For they are all adulterers, an assembly of treacherous ones.
3 And they bend their tongues, their bow is a lie. And they are not mighty for the truth on the earth, for they go from evil to evil. They also do not know Me, says YAHWEH.
4 Let everyone be on guard against his neighbor, and do not trust any brother. For every brother will supplant, and every neighbor will walk as a slanderer.
5 And everyone will deceive his neighbor, and they will not speak the truth. They have taught their tongue to speak lies. They weary themselves to commit iniquity.
6 Your home is in the midst of deceit; through deceit they refuse to know Me, says YAHWEH.
7 For this reason, so says YAHWEH of Hosts, Behold, I will refine them and test them. For what else can I do because of the daughter of My people?
8 Their tongue is a murdering arrow; it speaks deceit. One speaks peace with his neighbor with his mouth, but in his heart he sets his ambush[2].
9 Shall I not visit them for these things? says YAHWEH. Or shall not My soul be avenged on such a nation as this?
10 I will take up a weeping and a wailing for the mountains and a mourning for the pastures of the wilderness. For they are burned up, without a man passing through. Yea, they do not hear the voice of cattle. From the fowl of the heavens and to the beast, they have fled; they are gone.
11 And I will make Jerusalem ruins, a den of jackals; and I will make the cities of Judah a desolation without inhabitant.
12 Who is the wise man that can understand this? And he to whom the mouth of YAHWEH has spoken, that he may declare it? Why does the land perish? It is burned up like the wilderness, so that no one passes through.
13 And YAHWEH says, Because they have forsaken My Torah, which I set before them, and have not obeyed My voice, and have not walked in it[3];
14 but have walked after the stubbornness of their own heart, and after the Baals, which their fathers taught them;
15 so YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, says this: Behold, I

[1] Showing the circular feast cycle of YHWH has ended with no harvest festival for Sukkot, no planting for the next year, but only captivity awaits Judah.

[2] Ja 3:5-10

[3] The main reason for Judah going into captivity was that they rejected the Torah.

will feed them, this people with wormwood, and make them drink poison waters. *(Jer 23;15)*
16 I will also scatter them among the nations which they have not known, nor their fathers. And I will send the sword after them until I have consumed them.
17 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, Consider and call for the wailers, that they may come. And send for the wise women, that they may come.
18 And let them make haste and take up a lament over us, so that our eyes may run down with tears, and waters flow from our eyelids.
19 For the voice of lament is heard from Zion. How we are ravaged! We are greatly ashamed because we have forsaken the land; because they have thrown down our dwellings.
20 Yet hear the Word of YAHWEH, women. And let your ear receive the Word of His mouth, and teach your daughters a lament, and each one her neighbor a lamentation.
21 For death has come into our windows, entering into our fortresses, to cut off the children from the street, the young men from the plazas.
22 Speak, So says YAHWEH, Even the bodies of men shall fall as dung on the open field, and as the swath after the reaper, and no one shall gather them.
23 So says YAHWEH, Do not let the wise glory in his wisdom, and do not let the mighty glory in his might. Do not let the rich glory in his riches.
24 But let him who glories glory in this, that he understands and knows Me, that I am YAHWEH, doing kindness, justice and righteousness in the earth; for I delight in these, says YAHWEH.
25 Behold, the days come, says YAHWEH, that I will punish all the circumcised with foreskin[1]:
26 Egypt, and Judah, and Edom, and the sons of Ammon, and Moab, and all those trimmed on the edges of their beards[2], who dwell in the wilderness. For all the nations are uncircumcised, and all the house of Israel, those uncircumcised of heart[3].

Chapter 10

1 Hear the Word which YAHWEH speaks to you, O house of Israel.
2 So says YAHWEH, Do not learn the way of the nations[4]; and do not be terrified at the signs of the heavens; for the nations were terrified at them.
3 For the customs of the people are vanity. For one cuts a tree out of the forest with the axe, the work of the hands of the craftsman.
4 They adorn it with silver and with gold; they fasten it with nails and hammers, so that it will not wobble.
5 They are upright as the palm tree, and they cannot speak; carrying they must be carried, because they cannot walk. Do not be afraid of them, for they cannot do evil, neither is it in them to do good[5].
6 There is none like You, O

---

[1] Circumcision was the sign of being in covenant relationship with YHWH. He is stating here that He will take these people who are disobedient and idol worshipers out of covenant relationship with Him. Possibly why also He changed the sign of the New Covenant to baptism from circumcision.

[2] YHWH commanded against trimming the edge of the beard (Lev 21:5) making what is called a goat tee beard, as it was a cultic practice, which some pagan deities looked like a devil goat and YHWH did not want His people to resemble a devil goat deity.

[3] Physical circumcision is meaningless if there is not circumcision of the heart (Rom 2:25-29)

[4] Deut 12:29-32

YAHWEH; You are great, and Your name is great in might[1].

7 Who would not fear You, O King of the nations? For it is fitting to You, because there is none like You among all the wise of the nations, and in all their kingdoms.

8 But they are all together foolish and stupid; their tree is an instruction of vanities.

9 Silver beaten into plates is brought from Tarshish, and gold from Uphaz, the work of the craftsman and the hands of the goldsmith. Violet and purple is their clothing; they are all the works of skillful ones.

10 But YAHWEH is the true Elohim, He is the living Elohim and the ever-lasting King. At His wrath the earth shall tremble, and the nations shall not be able to stand His indignation.

11 So you shall say to them, The gods who have not made the heavens and the earth, they shall perish from the earth and from under these heavens[2].

12 It is He who made the earth by His power, who established the world by His wisdom, and who stretched out the heavens by His understanding.

13 When He utters His voice, there is a noise of waters in the heavens. He causes the vapors to go up from the ends of the earth; He makes lightnings for the rain and brings forth the wind out of His storehouses. *(Ps 135:7)*

14 Every man is stupid from lack of knowledge; every refiner is put to shame by the carved image. For his molten image is a lie and no breath is in them. (Ps 97:7)

15 They are vanity, the work of delusion. In the time of their judgment they shall perish.

16 The Portion of Jacob is not like these. For He is the Former of all things; and Israel is the tribe of His inheritance; YAHWEH of Hosts is His name.

17 Gather up your bundle from the ground, you who live under the siege.

18 For so says YAHWEH, Behold, I will sling out those living in the land at this time, and I will distress them so that they may find Me.

19 Woe to me for my breaking! My wound is grievous. But I said, Truly this is a malady, and I must bear it.

20 My tent is ravaged, and all my cords are broken. My sons went away from me and they are not. There is no stretching out my tent any more, or setting up my curtains.

21 For the shepherds have become stupid, and they have not sought YAHWEH. Therefore, they shall not be blessed, and all their flock shall be scattered.

22 Behold, the sound of report! It comes, and a great commotion from the land of the north, to make the cities of Judah a desolation, a den of jackals.

23 O YAHWEH, I know that his way does not belong to man; it is not in man who walks to direct his steps.

24 O YAHWEH, correct me, only with judgment, not in Your anger, that You do not bring me to nothing.

25 Pour out Your fury on the nations who do not know You, and on the families who do not call on Your name.

---

5 Verse 3-5 is primarily speaking of making a wooden totem pole for pagan worship, but one can also easily equate these verses with the Christmas tree, which is a not a christian custom but also originated in paganism and was a phallic symbol to the ancient, pagan, people during the pagan Brumalia festival at the winter solstice (Dec 20-22).

1 There is great power in the name YAHWEH.

2 This is the only verse in Jeremiah that is written in Aramaic.

For they have eaten up Jacob[1]. Yea, they have devoured him and have destroyed him, and they have made his dwelling place desolate.*(Ps 79:6-7)*

Chapter 11

1 The Word that came to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, saying,
2 Hear the Words of this covenant, and speak to the men of Judah, and to those living in Jerusalem,
3 and say to them, So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, Cursed is the man who does not obey the Words of this covenant, *(Deut 27:26)*
4 which I commanded your fathers in the day I brought them out of the land of Egypt, from the iron furnace, saying, Obey My voice and do them according to all that I command you, so that you shall be My people, and I will be your Elohim; *(Jer 31:32)*
5 in order to establish the oath which I swore to your fathers, to give them a land flowing with milk and honey, as it is this day. Then I answered and said, Amein, O YAHWEH.
6 And YAHWEH said to me, Declare all these Words in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem, saying, Hear the Words of this covenant and do them.
7 For I solemnly warned your fathers in the day I brought them up out of the land of Egypt, to this day rising early and warning, saying, Obey My voice[2].

[1] He is rebuking those pagans who have influenced Judah to use the names of pagan deities instead of the name YAHWEH. This verse is almost verbatim in Ps 79:6-7 and read at Passover time by Jews. Ps 79:1-5 shows it is not a prayer of vengeance, but an appeal for justice.

[2] Obedience is better than sacrifice (1 Sam 15:22 and our deeds are the evidence of our faith in YHWH.

8 Yet they did not obey nor stretch out their ear, but each one walked in the stubbornness of their evil heart. And I will bring on them all the Words of this covenant which I commanded them to do, but they did not do.
9 And YAHWEH said to me, A plot is found among the men of Judah, and among those living in Jerusalem.
10 They have turned back to the iniquities of their forefathers, who refused to hear My Words. And they went after other gods to serve them. The house of Israel and the house of Judah have broken My covenant which I cut with their fathers.
11 So YAHWEH says this: Behold, I will bring evil on them from which they shall not be able to escape. And though they cry to Me, I will not listen to them.
12 Then the cities of Judah and those living in Jerusalem shall go and cry to the gods to whom they burned incense. But they are not at all able to save them in the time of their trouble.
13 For according to the number of your cities were your Elohim, O Judah; yea, according to the number of the streets of Jerusalem you have set up altars to that shameful thing, altars to burn incense to Baal[3].
14 And you, do not pray for this people; and do not lift up a cry or prayer for them. For I will not hear in the time they cry to Me for their trouble[4].
15 What belongs to My beloved in My house, since she has committed her many evils? And has the holy flesh caused your evil to pass from you? How then do you exult?
16 YAHWEH called your name, a green olive tree, fair, with fine fruit. With the sound of a great roaring, He

[3] 2 Chron 28:24

[4] It is fruitless to pray for people who refuse to repent and are being judged by YHWH.

has set fire to it, and its branches are
worthless.
17 And YAHWEH of Hosts, who
planted you, has spoken evil against
you, because of the evil of the house of
Israel and of the house of Judah which
they have done to themselves, to
provoke Me to anger by burning
incense to Baal.
18 And YAHWEH made me know.
And I knew. Then You made me know
their doings.
19 And I was like a docile lamb being
brought to the slaughter; and I did not
know that they had plotted schemes
against me, saying, Let us destroy the
tree with its fruit; and let us cut him
off from the land of the living so that
his name may be remembered no
more.
20 But, O YAHWEH of Hosts who
judges with righteousness, who tries
the reins and the heart, let me see
Your vengeance on them. For to You I
have laid open my cause.
21 For this reason, so says
YAHWEH concerning the men of
Anathoth who seek your life, saying,
Do not prophesy in the name of
YAHWEH, that you do not die by our
hand.
22 So YAHWEH of Hosts says this:
Behold, I will punish them. The young
men shall die by the sword; their sons
and their daughters shall die by
famine.
23 And there shall be no survivor of
them, for I will bring evil on the men
of Anathoth, even the year of their
punishment.

Chapter 12

1 Righteous are You, O YAHWEH,
when I might complain to You, yet let
me speak with You of Your judgments.
Why does the way of the wicked
prosper? Why are all those who deal
treacherously at ease?
2 You planted them; yea, they take
root, they grow, they even make fruit.
You are near in their mouth, and far
from their reins.
3 But You know me, O YAHWEH.
You have seen me and tried my heart
toward You. Pull them out like sheep
for the slaughter, and devote them to
the day of slaughter.
4 Until when shall the land mourn,
and the plant of every field wither
from the evil of those who dwell in it?
The beasts and the birds are swept
away, because they said, He will not
see our last end.
5 If you have run with footmen, and
they wore you out, then how can you
compete with the horses? And if you
feel secure in the land of peace, then
how will you do in the swelling of
Jordan?
6 For even your brothers and the
house of your father, even they have
dealt treacherously with you; even
they have fully called after you. Do not
believe them, though they speak good
things to you.
7 I have forsaken My house; I have
left My inheritance. I have given the
beloved of My soul into the hand of
her enemies.
8 My inheritance has become as a
lion in the forest to Me; she gave out
her voice against Me; on account of
this I hated her.
9 My inheritance is like a speckled
bird to Me; the birds all around are
against her. Come, gather all the
beasts of the field, bring them to
devour.
10 Many shepherds have destroyed
My vineyard; they have trampled My
portion under foot; they have made
My pleasant portion a desolate
wilderness.
11 One has made it desolate; it

mourns to Me. The whole land is a desolation, but no man lays it to heart.

12 The ravagers have come on all bare heights through the wilderness, for the sword of YAHWEH devours from one end of the land even to the other end of the land. There is no peace for any flesh.

13 They have sown wheat, but they have reaped thorns. They are worn out, but they do not profit. And they shall be ashamed of your harvests, because of the glow of the anger of YAHWEH.

14 So says YAHWEH against all My evil neighbors who touch the inheritance which I have caused My people Israel to inherit: Behold, I will tear them from their land, and I will tear the house of Judah from among them.

15 And it shall be, after I have torn them out, I will return and have pity on them and will bring them again, each man to his inheritance and each man to his land.

16 And it shall be, if they will diligently learn the ways of My people, to swear by My name, As YAHWEH lives, as they taught My people to swear by Baal *(Lord)*, then they will be built in the midst of My people.

17 But if they will not obey, then I will tear out that nation, I will tear and destroy it says YAHWEH.

Chapter 13

1 So says YAHWEH to me, Go and buy for yourself a linen girdle, and put it on your loins, and do not put it in water.

2 So I bought a girdle according to the Word of YAHWEH and put it on my loins.

3 And the Word of YAHWEH came to me a second time, saying,

4 Take the girdle that you bought, which is on your loins, and rise up. Go to Euphrates[1] and hide it there in the cleft of the rock.

5 So I went and hid it by Euphrates, as YAHWEH commanded me.

6 And it happened at the end of many days, YAHWEH said to me, Rise up, go to Euphrates and take the girdle from there, which I commanded you to hide there.

7 And I went to Euphrates and dug, and I took the girdle from the place, there where I had hidden it. And behold, the girdle was rotted! It was not useful for anything.

8 Then the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,

9 So says YAHWEH, So I will spoil the pride of Judah, and the great pride of Jerusalem.

10 This evil people who refuse to hear My Words, who walk in the stubbornness of their heart, and walk after other gods, to serve them and to worship them, shall even be like this girdle which is not useful for anything.

11 For as this girdle holds fast to the loins of a man, so I have caused the whole house of Israel and the whole house of Judah to cling to Me, says YAHWEH, to be to Me for a people, and for a name, and for praise, and for glory; but they would not listen.

12 So you will speak to them this Word: So says YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, Every skin shall be filled with wine. And they shall say to you, Do we not know full well that every skin shall be filled with wine?

13 Then you shall say to them, So says YAHWEH, Behold, I will fill all those living in this land, even the kings

[1] This could either refer to the Euphrates River or the city of Parah which is about 3 miles from Anathoth, in Hebrew the words are the same and probably referring to the latter as a sign to the Babylonian influence that Judah was under.

that sit on David's throne, and the priests, and the prophets, and all those living in Jerusalem, with drunkenness.

14 And I will smash them one against another, even the fathers and the sons together, declares YAHWEH; I will not pity nor spare nor have compassion, to keep them from their destruction[1].

15 Hear and give ear; do not be proud, for YAHWEH has spoken.

16 Give glory to YAHWEH your Elohim before He brings darkness, and before your feet stumble on the dark mountains. Yea, while you look for light, He puts it into the shadow of death, setting up deep darkness.

17 But if you will not hear it, my soul shall weep in secret places for your pride. And my eye shall bitterly weep and run down with tears, because the flock of YAHWEH was captured.

18 Say to the king and to the queen mother, Humble yourselves, sit down. For the crown of your glory will come down from your head places.

19 The cities of the south have been shut up, and none are opening. Judah has been exiled; all of it has been peacefully exiled[2].

20 Lift up your eyes and see those who come from the north. Where is the flock that was given to you, your beautiful flock?

21 What will you say when He visits you? For you taught them to be rulers over you for a head. Will not birth pangs seize you like a woman bearing?

22 And if you say in your heart, Why do these things come upon me? It is because of the greatness of your iniquity. Your skirts are bared; your heels suffer violence.

23 Can the Ethiopian change his skin or the leopard his spots? Then also may you do good who are accustomed to doing evil?

24 And I will scatter them as the stubble that passes away to the wilderness wind.

25 This is your lot, the share of your measure from Me, declares YAHWEH, because you have forgotten Me and have trusted in falsehood.

26 So I also have stripped off your skirts over your face, that your shame may appear.

27 I have seen your adulteries and your whinnying, the plot of your infidelity, your abominations on the hills, in the fields. Woe to you, O Jerusalem! Will you not be made clean? Until when will it still be?

Chapter 14

1 That which was the Word of YAHWEH to Jeremiah concerning the matter of droughts.

2 Judah mourns, and her gates droop. They put on mourning for the land, and the cry of Jerusalem has gone up.

3 And their nobles have sent their little ones to the waters. They came to the cisterns; they found no water. They returned with their vessels empty. They were ashamed and confounded and covered their head.

4 Because the ground was cracked, for there was no rain in the land; the plowmen were ashamed; they covered their head.

5 For even the doe calved in the field and forsook it because there was no grass.

6 And the wild donkeys stood in the

---

1 Although in the people's complacency they looked for prosperity (illustrated by the wine), in reality they would behave in the coming crisis as a drunkard unable to distinguish ally from enemy.

2 Speaking of Jehoiachin and his mother (2 Kgs 24:8) who were taken captive into Babylon earlier.

high places; they snuffed up the wind
like jackals; their eyes failed because
there was no grass[1].
7 O YAHWEH, though our iniquities
testify against us, act for Your name's
sake; for our apostasies are many; we
have sinned against You.
8 O Hope of Israel, its Savior in time
of trouble, why should You be as a
stranger in the land, and as a traveler
who turns aside to lodge[2]?
9 Why should You be as one who is
stunned, as a mighty warrior who
cannot save? Yet You, O YAHWEH,
are in our midst, and Your name is
called on us. Do not leave us.
10 So says YAHWEH to this people:
So they have loved to wander; they
have not restrained their feet;
therefore, YAHWEH does not accept
them. He will now recall their iniquity
and punish their sins.
11 Then YAHWEH said to me, Do
not pray for good for this people.
12 I will not listen to their cry when
they fast; and when they offer burnt
offering and food offering I will not
accept them. But I will consume them
by the sword, and by famine, and by
the plague.
13 Then I said, Ah, O Adonai
YAHWEH! Behold, the prophets are
saying to them, You shall not see the
sword, nor shall you have famine, but I
will give you true peace in this place.
14 And YAHWEH said to me, The
prophets prophesy lies in My name. I
did not send them and I have not
commanded them, nor did I speak to
them. They prophesy to you a false
vision, and a worthless divination, and
the deceit of their heart.
15 So YAHWEH says this
concerning the prophets who prophesy
in My name, and I did not send them;
yet they say, Sword and famine shall
not be in this land: By sword and
famine those prophets shall be
consumed.
16 And the people to whom they
prophesy shall be cast out in the
streets of Jerusalem because of the
famine and the sword. And none will
bury them, either them, their wives, or
their sons, or their daughters. For I
will pour evil on them.
17 And you shall speak this Word to
them: Let my eyes run down with tears
night and day, and do not let them
cease. For the virgin daughter of my
people is broken with a great break,
with a very grievous blow.
18 If I go out into the field, then I see
those pierced with the sword. And if I
enter into the city, then, behold,
diseases of famine! Yes, both the
prophet and the priest have gone
around into a land that they do not
know.
19 Have You completely rejected
Judah? Or has Your soul hated Zion?
Why have You stricken us and no
healing is for us? We waited for peace,
but nothing good came; and for a
healing time, but, behold, terror!
20 We acknowledge our wickedness,
O YAHWEH, the iniquity of our
fathers; for we have sinned against
You.
21 For Your name's sake, do not
spurn us; do not dishonor the throne
of Your glory. Remember, and do not
break Your covenant with us.
22 Are there any among the vanities
of the nations, who make rain fall? Or
can the heavens give showers? Is it not

---

1 Water in ancient times meant life and YHWH's sanctuary was over the inexhaustible Gihon Spring. By showing the analogy that the water is dried up with the grass it is showing that Yahweh's presence is not with the people any longer due to their sin and rebellion.

2 Showing due to their rebellion that even the Messiah would be a stranger to the people in time of need.

You, O YAHWEH our Elohim? Then we will wait for You; for You do all these things.

Chapter 15

1 Then YAHWEH said to me, Though Moses and Samuel stood before Me, My soul could not be toward this people. Send them out from before My face; yea, let them go out.
2 And it will be, if they say to you, Where shall we go? Then you will tell them, So says YAHWEH, Those who are for death, go to death; and those for the sword, to the sword; and those for the famine, to the famine; and those for the captivity, to the captivity.
3 And I will set over them four kinds, says YAHWEH: the sword to kill, and the dogs to drag off, and the birds of the heaven and the beast of the earth to devour and destroy.
4 And I will make them a horror to all the kingdoms of the earth, because of Manasseh, the son of Hezekiah, king of Judah; for what he did in Jerusalem. *(2Kgs 21:1-16)*
5 For who shall have pity on you, O Jerusalem? Or who shall weep over you? Or who shall turn aside to ask your welfare?
6 You have forsaken Me, says YAHWEH. You have gone backward, so I will stretch out My hand against you and destroy you; I am weary of repenting.
7 And I will sift them with a fork in the gates of the land; I will bereave; I will destroy My people, for they do not turn from their ways.
8 Their widows are more numerous about Me than the sand of the seas. I have brought for them a ravager at noonday against the mother of a young man; I caused anguish and terror to fall on her suddenly.
9 She who bore seven now languishes; she has breathed out her life; her sun has gone down while it was still day. She has been ashamed and humiliated, and I will give the rest of them to the sword before their enemies, says YAHWEH.
10 Woe to me, my mother, that you have borne me[1], a man of strife, and a man of contention to the whole earth! I have not loaned, nor have they loaned to me; yet everyone curses me.
11 YAHWEH said, Truly, I will not free you for good. Truly I will cause the enemy to entreat you in the time of evil and in the time of distress.
12 Can one break iron, iron or copper from the north?
13 Your wealth and your treasures I will give for prey, not for price, but for all your sins, even in all your borders.
14 And I will make you pass with your enemies into a land you do not know. For a fire has been kindled in My anger; it shall burn against you.
15 O YAHWEH, You know. Remember me and visit me, and take vengeance for me on those who seek to hurt me. Do not take me away in Your long-suffering; know that I bear reproach for You.
16 Your Words were found and I ate them; and Your Word was to me the joy and gladness of my heart. For I am called by Your name[2], O YAHWEH, Elohim of Hosts.
17 I did not sit in the circle of merrymakers, nor exult. I sat alone because of Your hand; for You have filled me with indignation.
18 Why has my pain been continual and my wound incurable, refusing to be healed? You surely are to me like a

[1] Job 3:1, 10:18-19, Jeremiah is grieved to the point of regretting his very birth.
[2] The Hebrew name is YermeYahu called after the family name of Yahweh.

false stream, whose waters cannot be trusted.

19 So YAHWEH says this: If you return, then I will restore you again; you shall stand before Me. And if you take the precious from the worthless, you shall be as My mouth. Let them turn back to you, but do not return to them.

20 And I will make you a fortified wall of copper to this people. And they shall fight against you, but they shall not overcome you; for I am with you to save you and to deliver you, says YAHWEH.

21 And I will deliver you out of the hand of the wicked, and I will redeem you out of the hand of the evil ones.

Chapter 16

1 The Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,

2 You shall not take a wife for yourself, nor shall you have sons or daughters in this place[1].

3 For so says YAHWEH concerning the sons and concerning the daughters who are born in this place, and concerning their mothers who bore them, and concerning their fathers who fathered them in this land:

4 They shall die of deadly diseases; they shall not be mourned nor shall they be buried; they shall be as dung on the face of the earth. And they shall be consumed by the sword and by famine, and their bodies shall be food for the birds of the heavens, and for the beasts of the earth. *(Jer 19:7)*

5 For so says YAHWEH, Do not enter into the house of mourning. Do not go to weep or moan for them. For I have removed My peace with loving-kindness and compassions from this people says YAHWEH[2].

6 Both the great and the small shall die in this land. They shall not be buried, nor shall men mourn for them, nor cut himself, nor shave himself bald for them[3].

7 Nor shall anyone break *bread[4]* for them in mourning, to comfort him for ones who died. Nor shall they give them the cup of comfort to drink for one's father or one's mother[5].

8 Also you shall not go into the house of feasting, to sit with them to eat and drink.

9 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts the Elohim of Israel: Behold I will cause to cease out of this place, before your eyes, and in your days, the voice of joy and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom and the voice of the bride[6].*(Je 7:34 Je 25:10, Je 33:10-11)*

10 And it shall be, when you declare to this people all these Words, they will say to you, Why has YAHWEH spoken all this great evil against us? Or what is our iniquity, or what is our sin that we have committed against YAHWEH our Elohim?

11 Then you shall say to them, Because your fathers have forsaken Me, says YAHWEH, and have walked

---

1 Due to the grave situation that was coming Jeremiah was restricted by YHWH in his own personal life.

2 Jeremiah was restricted from contact with those that Yahweh had cut off relationship with as a sign of loyalty to Him. (2Joh 1:9-11).

3 These acts were pagan and therefore forbidden in the Torah (Lev 19:28, 21:5, Deut 14:1-2). However, some Israelites were still practicing these pagan rituals (Jer 41:4-5).

4 Breaking bread was an ancient Semitic term for eating. Acts 2:46, Acts 20:11

5 Food and drink were customarily given to mourners (2 Sam 3:35). In later Judaism a special cup of drink was set out for the chief mourner.

6 Jerusalem's punishment will ultimately be transferred to Babylon (Rev 18:20, 24)

after other gods, and have served them, and have worshiped them, and have forsaken Me, and have not kept My Torah[1].

12 And you have done more evil than your fathers. For, behold, you each one walk after the stubbornness of his evil heart, without listening to Me.

13 And I will cast you out of this land into a land that you do not know, you nor your fathers. And there you shall serve other Elohim day and night, where I will not grant you favor. *(Deut 28:64)*

14 So, behold, the days come, says YAHWEH, that it shall no more be said, As YAHWEH lives who brought up the sons of Israel out of the land of Egypt.

15 But rather, As YAHWEH lives who brought up the sons of Israel from the land of the north, and from all the lands, there where He had banished them to. And I will bring them again into their land that I gave to their fathers[2].

16 Behold, I will send for many fishermen, says YAHWEH. And they shall fish them. And after this I will send for many hunters, and they will hunt them, from every mountain and from every hill, and out of the clefts of the rocks. *(Is 7:19)*

17 For My eyes are on all their ways; they are not hidden from My face; their iniquity is not hidden from My eyes.

18 And first I will repay double their iniquity and their sin, because they have defiled My land with the bodies of their hateful things. Yea, their hateful idols have filled My inheritance. *(Is 40:2)*

19 O YAHWEH, my strength and my fortress, and my refuge in the day of affliction, the nations shall come to You from the ends of the earth and say, Our fathers have inherited only lies, vanity, and there is no profit in them[3].*(Ps 18:11-2, Ps 28:7-9, Ps 91:1-2)*

20 Can a man make gods to himself? But they are not Elohim!

21 Therefore, behold, I will make them know this time; I will cause them to know My hand and My might; and they shall know that My name is YAHWEH[4].

Chapter 17

1 The sin of Judah is engraved with an iron pen. It is carved on the tablet of their heart with the point of a diamond, and on the horns of your altars[5],

2 even while their sons remember their altars and their Asherahs by the green trees on the high hills.

3 O My mountain in the field! I will give your wealth, all your treasures, for prey, your high places for sin throughout all your borders.

4 And you, even through yourself, will let drop from your inheritance

---

[1] It is the breaking of the Torah that led to this grave attack and ultimate captivity. YHWH laid out in the precepts of the Torah how to serve and love Him and how to love our fellow man. When the Torah is ignored for mankind's own human nature, he will ultimately fail and bring his own misery.

[2] Jer 3:18, Jer 33:7, Is 11:11, Is 49:8, Is 61:4, Eze 36:24,28, Amos 9:14-15

[3] This is what the people will be saying at Messiah's return when they see all their pagan customs were not pleasing to YHWH and only brought curses.

[4] When Israel is returned no longer will Yahweh be referred to by pagan titles and names but all people will know that YAHWEH is the one redeeming them, Ex 3:15.

[5] Both a diamond and iron showing the permanency of their actions. Being on the horns of their altar shows that the sin remains; it is not atoned for.

which I gave you. And I will cause you to serve your enemies in a land which you do not know. For you have kindled a fire in My anger; it will burn forever.

5 So says YAHWEH, Cursed is the man who trusts in man, and who makes flesh his arm, and who turns aside his heart from YAHWEH[1].

6 For he shall be like a juniper in the desert, and shall not see when good comes. But he shall live in dried places in the wilderness, in a salt land that is not inhabited[2].

7 Blessed is the man who trusts in YAHWEH, and YAHWEH is his refuge. *(Ps 146:5, Ps 26:1, 34:8, 40:4)*

8 For he shall be like a tree planted by the waters. It sends out its roots by the stream, and it will not fear when the heat comes; but its foliage will be green; and it is not anxious in the year of drought, nor will it cease from yielding fruit. *(Ps 1;1-3)*

9 The heart is deceitful above all things, and it is incurable; who can know it? *(Eccl 9:3, Mk 7:21-22)*

10 I, YAHWEH, search the heart, I try the reins, even to give to each man according to his ways, according to the fruit of his doings. *(2 Chron 6:30 Rev 2:23)*

11 As a partridge broods and does not hatch, so is he who makes riches, and not by right; it will leave him in the middle of his days, and in his end he will be a fool.

12 A glorious high throne from the beginning is the place of our sanctuary.

13 O YAHWEH, the Hope of Israel, all who forsake You shall be ashamed. Those who depart from Me shall be written in the earth, because they have forsaken YAHWEH, the Fountain of living waters[3]. *(Jer 14:8)*

14 Heal me, O YAHWEH, and I will be healed; save me, and I will be saved; for You are my praise.

15 Behold, they say to me, Where is the Word of YAHWEH? Let it come now.

16 And I have not hurried away from shepherding after You, nor have I desired the woeful day. You surely know that the utterance of my lips was before Your face.

17 Do not be a terror to me; You are my refuge in the day of evil.

18 Let those who persecute me be ashamed, but do not let me be ashamed. Let them be terrified, but do not let me be terrified. Bring on them the day of evil, and break them with double breaking.

19 So said YAHWEH to me, Go and stand in the gate of the sons of the people, that by which the kings of Judah come in, and by which they go out, and in all the gates of Jerusalem[4].

20 And say to them, Hear the Word of YAHWEH, kings of Judah, and all Judah, and all the residents of Jerusalem who enter in by these gates.

21 So says YAHWEH, Take heed for the sake of your lives, and do not carry a burden on the Sabbath day, nor bring it in by the gates of Jerusalem.

22 And do not carry a burden from your houses on the Sabbath day, nor do any work, but keep the Sabbath day holy, as I commanded your fathers[5].

23 But they did not obey nor bow down their ear, but they made their

[1] Israel did not turn to Yahweh in faith during their distress, but continually looked toward human sources of either Egypt, Syria and Babylon Is 2:22.

[2] Job 39:6, Deut 29:23, Ps 107:34

[3] See note on Jer 2:13

[4] The word for people, indicates the common people, as the city gate was where business was transacted, things were traded and judges sat to hear disputes and secure legal documents in front of the people.

neck stiff, not to hear, nor to receive instruction[6].

24 And it shall be, if you carefully listen to me, says YAHWEH, to bring in no burden through the gates of this city on the Sabbath day, but keep the Sabbath day holy, to do no work in it,

25 even kings and rulers sitting on the throne of David shall enter into the gates of this city, riding on chariots and on horses, they and their rulers, the men of Judah, and those living in Jerusalem. And this city will be inhabited forever. *(Jer 22:2-4, Is 9:6)*

26 And they will come from the cities of Judah, and from the places about Jerusalem, and from the land of Benjamin, and from the Shephelah, and from the mountains, and from the south, bringing burnt offerings, and sacrifices, and grain offerings, and incense, and bringing sacrifices of thanksgiving to the house of YAHWEH. *(Jer 32:44, Jer 33:13)*

27 But if you will not listen to Me to keep the Sabbath day holy, and to not carry a burden and enter at the gates of Jerusalem on the Sabbath day, then I will kindle a fire in her gates. And it shall devour the palaces of Jerusalem; yea, it shall not be put out. *(1Kg 9:6-7)*

[5] The Hebrew implies carrying a "*load*" as someone who was coming through the gates to trade and work, which would be violating the Sabbath command. Also, since most worked 6 days in the field, some were using the Sabbath day to gather in their fruit from the countryside. The ultra religious have wrongly interpreted this to not even carry a horn to blow on Yom Terruah, or a bible to synagogue. See Math 12:1.

[6] Sabbath breaking was one of the main violations why Yahweh allowed Israel to go into captivity Ezek 20:13, 16, 21, 24.

Chapter 18

1 The Word which was to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, saying,

2 Rise up and go down to the potter's house, and there I will cause you to hear My Words.

3 Then I went down to the potter's house, and behold, he was working a work on the wheel.

4 And the vessel that he made in clay was ruined in the hand of the potter. So repeating he made it, another vessel, as it seemed good in the potter's eyes to make it.

5 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

6 O house of Israel, can I not do to you as this potter? says YAHWEH. Behold, as the clay in the potter's hand, so are you in My hand, O house of Israel. *(Is 29:16)*

7 The instant I speak concerning a nation, and concerning a kingdom, to pluck up, or to break down, or to destroy;

8 if that nation against whom I have spoken will turn from their evil, I will repent of the evil that I thought to do to it.

9 And the instant I speak concerning a nation, and concerning a kingdom, to build and to plant it;

10 if it does evil in My eye, not to obey My voice, then I will repent of the good which I had said to do good to it.

11 Now then, please speak to the men of Judah and to those living in Jerusalem, saying, So says YAHWEH, Behold, I am forming evil against you, and devising a plan against you. Now each one turn from his evil way, and make your ways and your doings good.

12 And they say, It is hopeless. For we will walk after our own thoughts, and we will each one do according to the stubbornness of his evil heart.

13 Therefore YAHWEH says this:

Ask now among the nations, Who has heard things like these? The virgin of Israel has done a very horrible thing.

14 Does the snow of Lebanon forsake from the rock of the field? Or are the cold flowing waters that come from another place uprooted[1]?

15 But My people have forgotten Me. They have burned incense to vain idols; and they have caused them to stumble in their ways, from the old paths, to walk in bypaths, not on the highway;

16 to make their land a desolation, a hissing forever. Everyone who passes by will be amazed and will shake his head.

17 I will scatter them like an east wind before the enemy; I will make them see the back, and not the face in the day of their calamity.

18 Then they said, Come and let us plot schemes against Jeremiah. For the Torah shall not perish from the priest, nor counsel from the wise, nor word from the prophet. Come and let us strike him with the tongue, and let us not attend to any of his words[2].

19 O YAHWEH, pay attention to me, and pay attention to the voice of my adversaries.

20 Should evil be repaid for good? For they have dug a pit for my soul. Remember, I stood before You to speak good concerning them, to turn Your wrath from them.

21 Therefore give their sons to the famine, and make them run onto the hand of the sword. And let their wives be bereaved, and be widows, and let their men be the slain of death, their young men be those struck by the sword in battle.

22 Let a cry be heard from their houses when You suddenly bring a raiding band on them. For they have dug a pit to seize me, and have hidden snares for my feet.

23 Yet, O YAHWEH, You know all their counsel to death against me. Do not atone for their iniquity, nor blot out their sin from Your face, but let them be those made to stumble before You; deal with them in the time of Your anger[3].

Chapter 19

1 So says YAHWEH, Go and buy a potter's earthen jar, and gather from the elders of the people, and from the elders of the priests.

2 And go out to the valley of the son of Hinnom by the entry of Potsherd Gate. And there declare the Words that I will speak to you.

3 And say, Hear the Word of YAHWEH, O kings of Judah, and those living in Jerusalem. So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Behold, I will bring evil on this place by which all who hear it will have tingling ears. *(2 Kgs 21:12)*

4 Because they have forsaken Me, and have estranged this place, and have burned incense in it to other gods whom neither they nor their fathers have known, nor the kings of Judah, and have filled this place with the blood of innocents.

5 They have also built the high places of Baal, to burn their sons with fire for burnt offerings to Baal, which I never commanded nor spoke, nor did it come into My heart.

6 So, behold, the days come, says YAHWEH, that this place shall be no more called Tophet, or the valley of the

---

1 The point being made is that the weather is more reliable than Judah.

2 Israel's response as with human nature in general is to attack the messenger instead of repenting for the sin.

3 A plea, not for vengeance, but for vindication and justice.

son of Hinnom, but the Valley of Slaughter. *(Jer 7:31, 2Kgs 23;10)*
7 And I will make the counsel of Judah and Jerusalem come to nothing in this place. And I will cause them to fall by the sword before their enemies, and by the hand of those who seek their life. And I will give their dead bodies for food to the birds of the heavens, and for the animals of the earth. *(Jer 16:4)*
8 And I will make this city a waste and a hissing. Everyone who passes by shall be amazed and shall hiss because of all its plagues. (*Jer 18:16)*
9 And I will cause them to eat the flesh of their sons and the flesh of their daughters[1]. And they shall each one eat the flesh of his friend in the siege and distress with which their enemies and those who seek their life shall oppress them.
10 And you shall break the jar before the eyes of the men who go with you,
11 and shall say to them, So says YAHWEH of Hosts, Even so I will break this people and this city, as one breaks the potter's vessel that cannot be restored again. And they shall bury in Tophet, since no place is left to bury. *(Ps 2:9, Is 30:14)*
12 I will do this to this place, says YAHWEH, and to those living in it, and give this place to be as Tophet.
13 And the houses of Jerusalem and the houses of the kings of Judah shall be defiled as the place of Tophet, because of all the roofs of the houses on which they have burned incense to all the host of the heavens, and have poured out drink offerings to other gods.
14 Then Jeremiah came from Tophet, where YAHWEH had sent him there to prophesy. And he stood in the court of the house of YAHWEH, and he said to all the people,
15 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Behold, I will bring to this city, and on all its towns, all the evil that I have spoken against it, because they have stiffened their necks in order not to hear My Words.

Chapter 20

1 When Pashur the son of Immer, the priest (he also was chief officer in the house of YAHWEH), heard Jeremiah prophesying these things,
2 then Pashur struck Jeremiah the prophet and put him in the stocks in the upper Benjamin Gate, which was by the house of YAHWEH.
3 And it was on the next day that Pashur made Jeremiah go out from the stocks. Then Jeremiah said to him, YAHWEH has not called your name Pashur, but Terror[2] from All Around.
4 For so says YAHWEH, Behold, I will make you a terror to yourself and to all your friends. And they shall fall by the sword of their enemies, and your eyes shall see. And I will give all Judah into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he shall exile them into Babylon and kill them with the sword.
5 And I will give all the wealth of this city, and all its produce, and all its precious things, and all the treasures of the kings of Judah, even I will give them into the hand of their enemies who will strip them and take them, and carry them to Babylon.
6 And you, Pashur, and all who live in your house, shall go into captivity. And you shall come to Babylon; and you shall die there. And you shall be buried there, you and all those loving you to whom you have prophesied lies.

---

[1] One of the curses for disobedience to the covenant (Deut 28:53-57).

[2] In Hebrew the word is "*magor- missabib*" and means terror on all sides.

7 O YAHWEH, You have deceived[1] me; yea, I was deceived. You are stronger than I, and You have prevailed. I am a laughingstock all day long and everyone mocks me.

8 For whenever I speak, I cry out, I proclaim violence and ruin; for the Word of YAHWEH has been to me a reproach and mockery all day long.

9 And I said, I will not mention Him or speak any more in His name. But His Word was in my heart like a burning fire shut up in my bones, and I was grieved of holding in, and I was not able to[2].

10 For I heard the slanders of many, Terror is all around! Expose! Yea, let us expose him! Every man of my peace watched for my fall, saying, Perhaps he will be lured away, and we shall prevail against him; and we shall take revenge on him.

11 But YAHWEH is with me like a mighty, awesome one. On account of this my persecutors shall stumble and will not prevail. And they shall be greatly ashamed. For they have not acted wisely; they are an everlasting disgrace that will not be forgotten.

12 But, O YAHWEH of Hosts, who tries the righteous, who sees the reins and the heart, let me see Your vengeance on them; for I have revealed my cause to You.

13 Sing to YAHWEH. Praise YAHWEH. For He has delivered the soul of the poor from the hand of evildoers.

14 Cursed is the day in which I was born; let not the day in which my mother bore me be blessed. *(Job 3:3)*

15 Cursed is the man who brought news to my father, saying, A man child is born to you, making him very glad.

16 And let that man be as the cities which YAHWEH overthrew and did not repent. And let him hear a cry in the morning and the shouting at noontime;

17 because he did not kill me from the womb; and that my mother would have been my grave, and her womb always great with me.

18 Why did I come forth from the womb to see toil and sorrow, and my days consumed in shame?

Chapter 21

1 The Word which was to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, when King Zedekiah sent Pashur the son of Melchiah, and Zephaniah the son of Maaseiah the priest to him, saying,

2 Please inquire of YAHWEH for us. For Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon is warring against us. Perhaps YAHWEH will deal with us according to all His wonderful works, that he may go up from us.

3 Then Jeremiah said to them, You shall say this to Zedekiah,

4 So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel: Behold, I will turn back the weapons of war in your hand, with which you fight against the king of Babylon, and against the Chaldeans who besiege you outside the wall. And I will gather them together in the middle of the city.

5 And I Myself will fight against you with an outstretched arm and with a strong arm, even in anger, and in fury, and in great wrath.

6 And I will strike the people of this city, both man and beast. They shall die of a great plague.

7 And afterward, says YAHWEH, I will deliver Zedekiah king of Judah, and his servants, and the people, and those who remain in this city from the plague, from the sword, and from the

---

[1] To entice

[2] When someone is filled with the spirit of YHWH they cannot help but to speak the truth.

famine, into the hand of Nebuchad-
nezzar king of Babylon and into the
hand of their enemies, and into the
hand of those who seek their life. And
he shall strike them with the mouth of
the sword; he shall not spare them,
nor have pity, nor have compassion.
8 And you shall say to this people, So
says YAHWEH, Behold, I set before
you the way of life and the way of
death. *(Deut 30:15)*
9 He who remains in this city shall
die by the sword, and by the famine,
and by the plague. But he who goes out
and falls to the Chaldeans who are
besieging you, he shall live, and his life
shall be for a prize to him. *(Jer 14:12)*
10 For I have set My face against this
city for evil, and not for good, says
YAHWEH. It shall be given into the
hand of the king of Babylon, and he
shall burn it with fire. *(2Kgs 25:9)*
11 And concerning the house of the
king of Judah, say, Hear the Word of
YAHWEH,
12 O house of David, so says
YAHWEH: Do justice in the morning,
and deliver the plundered one out of
the hand of the oppressor, that My
fury not go out like fire and burn so
that none can put it out, because of the
evil of your doings.
13 Behold, I am against you, one
dwelling in the valley, rock of the
plain, says YAHWEH, those who say,
Who can come down against us? Or,
Who can enter our dwellings?
14 But I will punish you according to
the fruit of your doings, says
YAHWEH. And I will kindle a fire in
its forest, and it shall devour all things
around it.

Chapter 22

1 So says YAHWEH, Go down to the
house of the king of Judah and speak
this Word there,
2 and say, Hear the Word of
YAHWEH, O king of Judah who sits
on the throne of David, you and your
servants, and your people who enter in
by these gates.
3 So says YAHWEH, Do justice and
righteousness, and deliver the one
robbed from the oppressor's hand.
And do not oppress the foreigner, the
widow, or the orphan, and do not do
violence nor shed innocent blood in
this place.
4 For if you indeed do this thing,
then there shall enter in by the gates of
this house kings sitting on the throne
of David, riding in chariots and on
horses, he and his servants and his
people. *(Jer 17:25)*
5 But if you will not hear these
Words, I swear by Myself, says
YAHWEH, that this house shall
become a ruin.
6 For so says YAHWEH concerning
the king of Judah's house, You are
Gilead to Me, the head of Lebanon; yet
surely I will make you a wilderness,
cities not inhabited.
7 And I will consecrate destroyers
against you, each one with his
weapons; and they will cut down your
choice cedars and make them fall into
the fire.
8 And many nations shall pass by
this city, and they shall each say to one
another, Why has YAHWEH done
this to this great city?
9 Then they will answer, Because
they have forsaken the covenant of
YAHWEH their Elohim and
worshiped other gods and served
them.
10 Weep not for the ones who died
nor moan for him; weep bitterly for
him who goes away, for he shall return
no more, nor see the land of his birth.
11 For so says YAHWEH concerning

Shallum[1] the son of Josiah, king of Judah, who reigned in his father Josiah's place, who went forth from this place: he shall not return there any more.

12 But he shall die there in the place where they have exiled him, and he will see this land no more.

13 Woe to him who builds his house without righteousness, and his upper rooms without justice. His neighbor serves without pay, and he does not give him for his work;

14 who says, I will build myself a wide house and large upper rooms. And he cuts out windows for it and covers with cedar, and paints with vermilion.

15 Do you reign because you lust to excel in cedar? Did not your father eat and drink and do justice and righteousness? Then it was well for him.

16 He judged the cause of the poor and needy, then it was well. Was this not to know Me, says YAHWEH?

17 But your eyes and your heart lust for nothing but your unjust gain, and to shed innocent blood, and oppression, and to do violence.

18 So YAHWEH says this concerning Jehoiakim the son of Josiah, king of Judah, They shall not mourn for him, saying, Ah, my brother! Or, Ah, sister! They shall not mourn for him, saying, Ah, master! Or, Ah, his glory!

19 He shall be buried with the burial of a donkey, drawn beyond the gates of Jerusalem and thrown out.

20 Go up to Lebanon and cry. And lift up your voice in Bashan, and cry out from the other side of the Jordan; for all those loving you are destroyed.

21 I spoke to you in your prosperity, but you said, I will not hear. This has been your way from your youth, for you have not obeyed My voice.

22 Those feeding you shall feed the wind, and those loving you shall go into captivity. Surely then you will be ashamed and will blush for all your wickedness.

23 One dwelling in Lebanon, nested in the cedars, how you will groan when pangs come to you, the pain as of a woman in labor!

24 As I live, says YAHWEH, though Coniah *(Jeconiah)* the son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah were the signet on My right hand, yet I would tear you out of there!

25 And I will give you into the hand of those who seek your life, and into the hand of those whose face you fear, even into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, and into the hand of the Chaldeans.

26 And I will cast you and your mother who bore you into another country, there where you were not born; and there you shall die.

27 But concerning the land which they lift up with their soul, to return there, they shall not return there.

28 Is this man Coniah *(Jeconiah)* a despised, broken jar, or a vessel in which is no pleasure? Why are they hurled, he and his seed, and are cast into the land which they do not know?

29 O earth, earth, earth! Hear the Word of YAHWEH!

30 So says YAHWEH, Write this man childless, a man who will not prosper in his days. For not one from his seed will succeed, a man sitting on

---

[1] Shallum was his personal name, Jehoahaz his throne name 1Chron 3:15.

the throne of David and ruling any more in Judah[1].

Chapter 23

1 Woe to shepherds who destroy and scatter the sheep of My pasture, says YAHWEH.

2 Because of this, so says YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel against the shepherds who shepherd My people: You have scattered My flock, and have driven them away, and have not visited them. Behold, I will visit on you the evil of your doings, says YAHWEH.

3 And I will gather the remnant of My flock out of all the lands where I have driven them there, and I will bring them again to their fold. And they shall be fruitful and multiply.

4 And I will raise up shepherds over them who will shepherd them. And they will fear no more, nor be terrified; nor will they be missing anything, says YAHWEH.

5 Behold, the days come, says YAHWEH, that I will raise to David a righteous Branch, and a King shall reign and act wisely, and He shall do justice and righteousness in the earth.

6 In His days Judah shall be saved, and Israel shall dwell safely. And this is His name by which He shall be called, YAHWEH TZEDEKENU[2].

7 Behold, so the days come, says YAHWEH, that they shall no more say, As YAHWEH lives who brought the sons of Israel up out of the land of Egypt; *(Jer 16:14)*

8 but, As YAHWEH lives who brought up and led the seed of the house of Israel out of the land of the north, and from all the lands where I have driven them there. And they shall dwell on their own land. *(Ezek 20:42)*

9 My heart within me is broken concerning the prophets; all my bones shake. I am like a drunken man, and like a man overcome by wine, because of YAHWEH, and because of the Words of His holiness.

10 For the land is full of adulterers. For the land mourns because of a curse. The pastures of the wilderness are dried up. And their course is evil, and their might is not right.

11 For both prophet and priest are wicked; yea, I have found their evil in My house, says YAHWEH.

12 So their way shall be to them as slippery places in the darkness; they shall be driven out and fall by it. For I will bring evil on them, the year of their judgment, says YAHWEH.

13 And I have seen folly among the prophets of Samaria; they prophesied by Baal and led astray My people Israel.

14 I have also seen a horrible thing among the prophets of Jerusalem; they commit adultery and walk in falsehood. And they make the hands of evildoers strong, so that not a man returns from his evil. They are all of them like Sodom to Me, and those living in her like Gomorrah.

15 So YAHWEH of Hosts says this concerning the prophets: Behold, I will feed them wormwood, and make them drink poisonous water, for wickedness has gone forth from the prophets of Jerusalem into all the land.

16 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, Do not listen to the words of the prophets

---

[1] This prophecy does not mean that Jeconiah would not have physical children, but that he would never again have a son to sit on and prosper on the throne of King David. The lineage in the book of Matthew has Jeconiah in it (Math 1:11-12) and therefore shows that the lineage in Matthew is from Joseph (the step father of Yahshua) and Luke's genealogy is from Miriam, Yahshua's biological mother.

[2] Means YAHWEH our righteousness.

who prophesy to you; they make you
vain; they speak a vision of their own
heart, not out of the mouth of
YAHWEH.
17 They say to those who despise Me,
YAHWEH has said, You shall have
peace. And they say to everyone who
walks in the stubbornness of his own
heart, Evil shall not come on you.
18 For who has stood in the counsel
of YAHWEH, and has seen and heard
His Word? Who has listened to His
Word and heard?
19 Behold, the whirlwind of
YAHWEH has gone forth in fury, even
a whirling storm. It will whirl on the
head of the wicked.
20 The anger of YAHWEH shall not
turn back until He has executed, and
until He has set up the purposes of His
heart. In latter days you shall
understand it perfectly[1].
21 I have not sent the prophets, yet
they ran; I have not spoken to them,
yet they prophesied.
22 But if they had stood in My
counsel and had caused My people to
hear My Words, then they would have
turned them from their evil way, and
from the evil of their doings.
23 I Am an Elohim near by, says
YAHWEH, and not a Elohim from
afar.
24 Or can a man hide himself in
secret places so that I do not see him,
says YAHWEH? Do I not fill the
heavens and the earth, says
YAHWEH?
25 I have heard what the prophets
said, those who prophesy lies in My
name, saying, I have dreamed, I have
dreamed.
26 How long is this there in the
heart of the prophets, the prophets of
lies; yea, the prophets of the deceit of
their own heart?
27 They plot to cause My people to
forget My name by their dreams which
they tell, each one to his neighbor,
even as their fathers have forgotten
My name for Baal *(Lord)*[2].
28 The prophet who has a dream, let
him tell his dream. And he who has
My Word, let him speak My Word
faithfully. What has the chaff to do
with the wheat, says YAHWEH[3]?
29 Is not My Word thus like fire,
says YAHWEH, and like a hammer
which breaks a rock in pieces?
30 Therefore, Behold, says
YAHWEH, I am against the prophets
who steal My Words, each one from
his neighbor.
31 YAHWEH says, Behold, I am
against the prophets who use their
tongues and say, He says.
32 YAHWEH says, Behold, I am
against those who prophesy false
dreams, and tell them, and cause My
people to go astray by their lies, and by
their foolishness. Yet I did not send
them nor command them. And they
will not profit this people at all, says
YAHWEH.
33 And when this people, or the
prophet, or a priest, shall ask you,
saying, What is the utterance of
YAHWEH? You shall then say to
them, What utterance? I will even
abandon you, says YAHWEH.
34 And the prophet, and the priest,

---

1 The same deception that plagued Israel in ancient times by corrupt leadership would also be the same in the end time.

2 Baal means master or lord. It is a most striking parallel today that most Christians will share false visions and prophecies out of their own hearts and say "*the lord*" told me this. Every true prophet in scripture knew the Creator's true name Yahweh, and did not refer to Yahweh as Baal or lord.

3 Yahweh's litmus test is clearly His word and not dreams and visions, although He does speak to His people by dreams and visions at times.

and the people who shall say, The utterance of YAHWEH, I will even punish that man and his house.

35 And you shall say each one to his neighbor, and each one to his brother, What has YAHWEH answered? And what has YAHWEH spoken?

36 And you shall not mention the utterance of YAHWEH again, for each man's word shall be his burden. But you have perverted the Words of the living Elohim, of YAHWEH of Hosts, our Elohim[1].

37 So you shall say to the prophet, What has YAHWEH answered you? And what has YAHWEH spoken?

38 But if you say, The utterance of YAHWEH, therefore so says YAHWEH: Because you say this word, the utterance of YAHWEH; and I have sent to you saying, You shall not say, The utterance of YAHWEH;

39 therefore, behold! I, even I will utterly forget you and cast you off and the city that I gave to you and your fathers, away from My face.

40 And I will put on you an everlasting reproach and never-ending disgrace on you, which shall not be forgotten.

Chapter 24

1 YAHWEH caused me to see, and behold, two baskets of figs set before the sanctuary of YAHWEH, after Nebuchad-nezzar king of Babylon had exiled Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, and the rulers of Judah, and the craftsmen, and the smiths from Jerusalem, and had brought them to Babylon. *(2Kgs 24:16)*

2 One basket had very good figs, like first ripe figs. And the other basket had very bad figs which could not be eaten from their badness[2].

3 And YAHWEH said to me, What do you see, Jeremiah? And I said, Figs. The good figs are very good, and the bad are very bad, so that they cannot be eaten from their badness.

4 Again the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,

5 So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, Like these good figs, so I will acknowledge the exiles of Judah whom I have sent out of this place into the land of the Chaldeans for good.

6 For I will set My eyes on them for good, and I will bring them again to this land. And I will build them and not tear down; and I will plant them, and will not pluck up[3].

7 And I will give them a heart to know Me, that I am YAHWEH. And they shall be My people, and I will be their Elohim. For they shall return to Me with their whole heart. *(Jer 31:33, Heb 8:10)*

8 And like the bad figs which cannot be eaten from badness, so says YAHWEH: So I shall make Zedekiah the king of Judah, and his rulers, and the remnant of Jerusalem who remain in this land, and those who dwell in the land of Egypt;

9 I will even make them a horror among all the kingdoms of the earth for evil, for a reproach, and a proverb, a gibe, and a curse, there in all places where I will drive them.

---

1 Verses 32-36 is stating that Yahweh gives us His will in His word and not by the false utterances of false prophets. The false prophecy will be the burden only to the false prophet and not to the people.

2 Israel is equated as a fig tree (Math 24:32) as there were good and bad figs; so was the nation with its inhabitants. The Hebrew word for first ripe fig is '*bekoorah*', which is a special juicy early fig.

3 Is 10:22 and repeated in Ro 9:27 clearly shows that although Israel will grow into mighty numbers in their Diaspora that only a remnant would return.

10 And I will send the sword, the famine, and the plague among them until they are consumed from being upon the land that I gave to them and to their fathers. *(Jer 9:16, 15:2, 21:9)*

Chapter 25

1 The Word that was to Jeremiah concerning all the people of Judah in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah, king of Judah. It was the first year of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon[1].
2 This Jeremiah the prophet spoke to all the people of Judah and to all the residents of Jerusalem, saying,
3 From the thirteenth year of Josiah the son of Amon, king of Judah, even to this day, this twenty three years, the Word of YAHWEH has come to me, and I have spoken to you, rising up early and speaking; but you have not listened[2].
4 And YAHWEH has sent to you all His servants the prophets, rising early and sending, but you have not listened nor bowed your ear to hear,
5 saying, Now turn each one from his evil way and from the evil of your doings, and live on the land which YAHWEH has given to you and to your fathers from forever even to forever.
6 And do not go after other gods to serve them and to worship them, and do not provoke Me to anger with the works of your hands; and I will do you no harm.
7 Yet you have not listened to Me, says YAHWEH, so that you might provoke Me to anger with the works of your hands, for evil to you.
8 So YAHWEH of Hosts says this: Because you have not obeyed My Words,
9 behold! I will send and take all the families of the north, says YAHWEH, and Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, My servant; and I will bring them against this land, and against those living in it, and against all these nations all around. And I will completely destroy them, and make them a horror, and a hissing, and everlasting ruins.
10 And I will take from them the voice of rejoicing, and the voice of gladness, the voice of the bridegroom, and the voice of the bride, the sound of the millstones, and the light of the lamp[3].
11 And this whole land shall be a waste and a horror; and these nations shall serve the king of Babylon seventy years.
12 And it shall be, when seventy years are fulfilled, I will punish the king of Babylon and that nation, and the land of the Chaldeans, for their iniquity, says YAHWEH; and I will make it everlasting ruins[4].
13 And I will bring on that land all My Words which I have spoken against it, all that is written in this book which Jeremiah has prophesied against all the nations[5].
14 For many nations and great kings will lay service on them, even they.

---

1 In Israel the accession yr is counted as yr one of the reign whereas in Babylon the next yr was considered the first yr of reigning. Daniel dates this from the Babylon way of recording (Dan 1:1).

2 Jeremiah prophesied about Judah's punishment and captivity for 23 yrs before the actual destruction happened. Yahweh in His mercy gives warning of repentance before the actual destruction will come.

3 See note on Rev 18:20 (Rev 18:23)

4 Whereas Judah and Jerusalem will be redeemed and restored (Zech 2:7-12) in the end time, Babylon will take Judah's punishment and be destroyed forever (Rev 18:20, Jer 50 :39-40)

And I will repay them according to
their deeds, and according to the work
of their own hands.
15 For so says YAHWEH, the
Elohim of Israel, to me. Take the wine
cup of this wrath from My hand and
cause all the nations to whom I shall
send you to drink it.
16 And they shall drink, and reel to
and fro, and be maddened, because of
the sword that I will send among
them.
17 Then I took the cup from the hand
of YAHWEH and made all the nations
drink, those to whom YAHWEH had
sent me:
18 Jerusalem, and the cities of
Judah, and their kings, and their
rulers, to make them a ruin, a horror,
a hissing, and a curse, as it is this day;
19 Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and his
servants, and his rulers, and all his
people;
20 and all the mixed people, and all
the kings of the land of Uz[1], and all the
kings of the land of the Philistines[2],
and Ashkelon, and Gaza, and Ekron,
and the remnant of Ashdod,
21 Edom, and Moab, and the sons of
Ammon,
22 and all the kings of Tyre[3], and all
the kings of Sidon, and the coastal
kings beyond the sea[4],
23 Dedan, and Tema, and Buz, and
all who cut the corners of their
beards[5],
24 and all the kings of Arabia, and
all the kings of the mixed people who
dwell in the desert,
25 and all the kings of Zimri, and all
the kings of Elam [6], and all the kings of
Media,
26 and all the kings of the north, far
and near[7], each one to his brother, and
all the kingdoms of the world which
are on the face of the earth; and the
king of Sheshach[8] shall drink after
them.
27 So you shall say to them, So says
YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of
Israel: Drink, and be drunk, and
vomit, and fall, and do not rise up,
because of the sword which I will send
among you.
28 And it shall be, if they refuse to
take the cup from your hand to drink,
then you shall say to them, So says
YAHWEH of Hosts, surely you shall
drink.
29 For, behold, I begin to bring evil
on the city on which is called My
name, and shall you be found entirely
without guilt? You shall not be without
guilt. For I will call for a sword on all
those living in the earth, says
YAHWEH of Hosts.
30 And now you prophesy against
them all these Words, and say to them,
YAHWEH shall roar from on high
and give forth His voice from His holy
habitation[9]; He shall mightily roar
over His dwelling place. He answers
with a shout, like those who tread out
the grapes, against all those living in
the earth[10].
31 A roaring will go to the ends of

[5] Jeremiah chapter 50 and 51 is solely on the destruction of end time Babylon. These chapters are not historical as none of the destruction spoke about in those chapters have ever happened historically in the past nor was there ever any great fleeing by Judah and Israel out of Babylon.

[1] Jordan

[2] Palestinians

[3] Lebanon

[4] Possibly inferring to Cyprus, Turkey, and the Greek Islands

[5] Saudi Arabia, Afghanistan

[6] Iran

[7] Ukraine, Georgia and Russian provinces

[8] Iraq (Jer 51:41)

[9] In the end time, YHWH will punish Judah first for their sin and rebellion, but then will punish Babylon who acquiesced to Israel's full destruction if YHWH did not intervene (Zech 2:10-13, Jer 51:35, 49)

the earth, for YAHWEH has a
controversy with the nations. He will
enter into judgment with all flesh; He
will give the wicked to the sword, says
YAHWEH.
32 So says YAHWEH of Hosts,
Behold, evil is going from nation to
nation, and a great whirlwind shall be
stirred up from the corners of the
earth.
33 And the slain of YAHWEH shall
be at that day from one end of the
earth even to the other end of the
earth. They shall not be mourned, nor
gathered, nor buried; they shall be as
dung on the face of the earth.
34 Howl, O shepherds, and cry, and
roll in ashes, O leaders of the flock!
For the days of your slaughter and of
your scatterings are fulfilled, and you
shall fall like a desirable vessel.
35 And refuge has perished from the
shepherds, and escape from the
leaders of the flock.
36 The sound of the cry of the
shepherds, and the howling from the
leaders of the flock will be heard. For
YAHWEH is spoiling their pasture.
37 And the peaceful pastures are
devastated, because of the glow of the
anger of YAHWEH.
38 Like the young lion, He has left
His den; for their land is a waste
because of the glow of the oppressor,
and because of His flowing anger.

[10] In the end time, first, YHWH is punishing Judah for not relying on Him and for their breaking of the Torah, and then He is punishing Babylon who caused Judah's destruction and then He is punishing all the earth who participated in these events due to global governance; verse 31-38 is describing this worldwide judgment called the day of YHWH. Cross reference this with Joel 2:1-11, Is 24:1-6. Even though there is worldwide calamity YHWH still allows people to repent and be saved, Joel 2:12-14, 18-32. Those who refuse will perish (Jer 38:2-6).

Chapter 26

1 In the beginning of the reign of
Jehoiakim the son of Josiah, king of
Judah, this Word came from
YAHWEH, saying,
2 So says YAHWEH, Stand in the
court of the house of YAHWEH and
speak to all the cities of Judah which
come to worship in the house of
YAHWEH, all the Words that I
command you to speak to them. Do
not keep back a word.
3 It may be that they will listen, and
each man turn from his evil way, that I
may repent of the evil which I plan to
do to them because of the evil of their
doings[1].
4 And you shall say to them, So says
YAHWEH, If you will not listen to
Me, to walk in My Torah which I have
set before you,
5 to listen to the words of My
servants the prophets whom I am
sending to you, even rising up early
and sending (but you have not
listened),
6 then I will make this house like
Shiloh, and will make this city a curse
to all the nations of the earth.
7 And the priests and the prophets
and all the people heard Jeremiah
speaking these words in the house of
YAHWEH.
8 And it happened when Jeremiah
had made an end of speaking all that
YAHWEH had commanded him to
speak to all the people, the priests and
the prophets and all the people seized
him, saying, Surely, you shall die.
9 Why have you prophesied in the
name of YAHWEH, saying, This
house shall be like Shiloh, and this city

[1] Yahweh's way is always redemption first, but due to free will, punishment will follow for the prideful of heart who don't repent.

shall be wasted, without one living in it? And all the people were gathered against Jeremiah in the house of YAHWEH.
10 When the rulers of Judah heard these things, then they came up from the king's house to the house of YAHWEH and sat down in the entrance of the New Gate of YAHWEH.
11 And the priests and the prophets spoke to the rulers, and to all the people, saying, Let a death sentence be for this man, for he has prophesied against this city, as you have heard with your ears[1].
12 Then Jeremiah spoke to all the rulers and to all the people, saying, YAHWEH sent me to prophesy against this house and against this city all the Words that you have heard.
13 So now make good your ways and your doings, and obey the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim, and YAHWEH will repent toward the evil that He has spoken against you.
14 As for me, behold, I am in your hands; do with me as seems good and right to you.
15 But know for certain that if you put me to death, you shall surely bring innocent blood on yourselves, and on this city, and on those living in it. For truly YAHWEH has sent me to you, to speak all these Words in your ears.
16 Then the rulers, and all the people, said to the priests and to the prophets, There is not a sentence of death for this man, for he has spoken to us in the name of YAHWEH our Elohim.
17 Then some of the elders of the land rose up and spoke to all the assembly of the people, saying,
18 Micah of Moresheth[2] prophesied in the days of Hezekiah, king of Judah. And he spoke to all the people of Judah, saying, So says YAHWEH of Hosts: Zion shall be plowed like a field, and Jerusalem shall become heaps, and the mountain of the house like the high places of a forest.
19 Did Hezekiah, king of Judah and all Judah indeed put him to death? Did he not fear YAHWEH and entreat the face of YAHWEH? And did not YAHWEH repent of the evil which He had spoken against them? So we are doing great evil against our souls.
20 And there was also a man who prophesied in the name of YAHWEH, Urijah the son of Shemaiah of Kirjath-Jearim, who prophesied against this city and against this land according to the words of Jeremiah.
21 And when Jehoiakim the king, with all his mighty men, and all the rulers, heard his words, the king tried to put him to death. But Urijah heard, and he was afraid, and fled, and went to Egypt.
22 And Jehoiakim the king sent men to Egypt, Elnathan the son of Achbor, and men with him into Egypt.
23 And they brought Urijah out of Egypt and brought him to Jehoiakim the king, who struck him with the sword, and threw his dead body into the graves of the sons of the people.
24 But the hand of Ahikam the son of Shaphan was with Jeremiah, that they should not give him into the hand of the people to put him to death.

Chapter 27

1 In the beginning of the reign of

[1] Human nature is to always strike the messenger instead of adhering to the message of repentance. When one rejects the messenger that Yahweh sent with His message they are rejecting Yahweh who gave the message (Ex 16:2-8, Joh 5:30)

[2] "*Micah"* The prophet with the book after his name.

Jehoiakim[1] the son of Josiah, king of Judah, this Word came to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, saying,

2 So says YAHWEH to me, Make bonds and yokes for yourself, and put them on your neck.

3 And send them to the king of Edom, and to the king of Moab, and to the king of the sons of Ammon, and to the king of Tyre, and to the king of Sidon, by the hand of the messengers who came to Jerusalem to Zedekiah, king of Judah.

4 And command them to go to their masters, saying, So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: So you shall say to your masters,

5 I have made the earth, the man, and the animals on the face of the earth by My great power and by My outstretched arm; and I have given it to whom it seemed right in My eyes.

6 And now I have given all these lands into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, My servant. And I have also given him the beast of the field to serve him.

7 And all nations shall serve him, and his son, and his son's son, until the time of his own land comes; also it. And many nations and great kings shall serve him.

8 And it shall be, the nation and kingdom which will not serve him, Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon, and that will not put its neck in the yoke of the king of Babylon, I will punish that nation, says YAHWEH, with the sword, and with the famine, and with the plague, until I have destroyed them by his hand.

9 As for you, do not listen to your prophets, or to those divining to you, or to your dreams, or to your soothsayers, or to your sorcerers, those who speak to you, saying, You shall not serve the king of Babylon.

10 For they prophesy a lie to you, to remove you far from your land, that I should drive you out, and you should perish.

11 But the nation that will bring its neck into the yoke of the king of Babylon, and serve him, says YAHWEH, I will leave it on its own land, and it may work it and live in it.

12 I also spoke to Zedekiah, king of Judah according to all these words, saying, Bring your necks into the king of Babylon's yoke, and serve him and his people, and live.

13 Why will you die, you and your people, by the sword, by the famine, and by the plague, as YAHWEH has spoken against the nation that will not serve the king of Babylon?

14 So then do not listen to the words of the prophets who speak to you, saying, You shall not serve the king of Babylon, for they prophesy a lie to you.

15 For I have not sent them, says YAHWEH. Yea, they prophesy a lie in My name, so that I might drive you out, and that you might perish, you and the prophets who prophesy to you.

16 Also I spoke to the priests and to all this people, saying, So says YAHWEH, Do not listen to the words of your prophets who prophesy to you, saying, Behold, the vessels of the house of YAHWEH shall now be quickly brought again from Babylon. For they prophesy a lie to you.

17 Do not listen to them. Serve the king of Babylon and live. Why should this city be a waste?

18 But if they are prophets, and if the Word of YAHWEH is with them, let them now intercede with YAHWEH of Hosts that the vessels which are left in the house of YAHWEH, and in the house of the king of Judah, and at Jerusalem, may not go to Babylon.

19 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts concerning the pillars, and concerning

---

[1] Some manuscripts read Zedekiah.

the sea, and concerning the bases, and concerning the rest of the vessels which remain in this city,
20 which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon did not take when he exiled Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, from Jerusalem to Babylon, and all the nobles of Judah and Jerusalem.
21 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, concerning the vessels that remain in the house of YAHWEH, and the house of the king of Judah, and Jerusalem:
22 They shall be brought to Babylon, and they shall be there until the day I visit them, says YAHWEH. Then I will bring them up and restore them back to this place. (Ez 1:7-11 Ez 5:13-15)

Chapter 28

1 And it happened in that year, in the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, in the fourth year, in the fifth month, Hananiah[1] the son of Azur the prophet, of Gibeon, spoke to me in the house of YAHWEH, for the eyes of the priests and all the people, saying,
2 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, saying, I have broken the yoke of the king of Babylon.
3 Within two years I will again bring into this place all the vessels of the house of YAHWEH which Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon took away from this place and brought them to Babylon.
4 And I will bring again to this place Jeconiah the son of Jehoiakim, king of Judah, with all the exiles of Judah who went into Babylon, says YAHWEH. For I will break the yoke of the king of Babylon.
5 Then the prophet Jeremiah said to the prophet Hananiah in the presence of the priests, and in the presence of all the people who stood in the house of YAHWEH,
6 even the prophet Jeremiah said, Amein! May YAHWEH do so; may YAHWEH confirm your words which you have prophesied, to bring again the vessels of the house of YAHWEH, and all the exiles, from Babylon into this place.
7 But hear now this word that I speak in your ears and in the ears of all the people:
8 The prophets who have been before me and before you from times past prophesied against many lands and against great kingdoms, of war, and of evil, and of plague.
9 As for the prophet who prophesies of peace, when the word of the prophet shall come to pass, the prophet shall be known as one whom YAHWEH has truly sent him.
10 Then Hananiah the prophet took the yoke from the prophet Jeremiah's neck and broke it[2].
11 And Hananiah spoke for the eyes of the people saying, So says YAHWEH, Even so I will break the yoke of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon from the neck of all nations within the time of two years. And the prophet Jeremiah went his way.
12 Then the Word of YAHWEH came to Jeremiah, after Hananiah the prophet had broken the yoke from the neck of the prophet Jeremiah, saying,
13 Go and tell Hananiah, saying, So says YAHWEH, You have broken yokes of wood, but you shall make instead of them yokes of iron.
14 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: I have put a yoke

[1] He was a false prophet and YHWH took his life due to his arrogance.

[2] Notice Jeremiah is still wearing the yoke from Jer 27:2.

of iron on the neck of all these nations to serve Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon. And they shall serve him. And I have given him the beasts of the field also.

15 Then the prophet Jeremiah said to Hananiah the prophet, Hear now, Hananiah, YAHWEH has not sent you, but you have made this people trust in a lie.

16 So YAHWEH says this, Behold, I send you away from the face of the earth. You shall die this year, because you have spoken apostasy against YAHWEH.

17 And Hananiah died the same year in the seventh month.

Chapter 29

1 And these are the words of the letter that Jeremiah the prophet sent from Jerusalem to the rest of the elders of the exile, and to the priests, and to the prophets, and to all the people whom Nebuchadnezzar had exiled from Jerusalem to Babylon

2 after Jeconiah the king, and the queen mother, and the eunuchs, the rulers of Judah and Jerusalem, and the craftsmen, and the smiths, had gone out from Jerusalem.

3 He sent by the hand of Elasah the son of Shaphan, and Gemariah the son of Hilkiah, whom Zedekiah, king of Judah, sent to Babylon to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, saying,

4 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, to all the exiles whom I have caused to be exiled from Jerusalem to Babylon:

5 Build houses and live, and plant gardens, and eat their fruit.

6 Take wives, and father sons and daughters. And take wives for your sons; and give your daughters to husbands, that they may bear sons and daughters, and multiply there, and do not become few.

7 And seek the peace of the city, there where I have caused you to be exiled. And pray to YAHWEH for it; for in its peace you shall have peace.

8 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Do not let your prophets and your divining ones in your midst deceive you. And do not listen to your dreams which you dream.

9 For they prophesy falsely to you in My name. I have not sent them, says YAHWEH.

10 For so says YAHWEH, When according to My mouth seventy years have been fulfilled for Babylon[1], I will visit you and confirm My good Word to you, to bring you back to this place.

11 For I know the purposes which I am planning for you, says YAHWEH; purposes of peace, and not for evil; to give you a future and a hope.

12 Then you shall call on Me, and you shall go and pray to Me, and I will listen to you.

13 And you shall seek and find Me when you search for Me with all your heart.

14 And I will be found by you, says YAHWEH. And I will turn away your captivity, and I will gather you from all the nations, and from all the places where I have driven you, says YAHWEH. And I will bring you again into the place from which I sent you into exile, from there[2].

15 Because you have said, YAHWEH

---

[1] YHWH gave Babylon 70 yrs to rule the nations and then His judgment would come on them for their immorality, abuse of Yahweh's power to them and their causing Judah's downfall. This prophecy was fulfilled anciently in 539 BC when Persia overthrew Babylon and will also be fulfilled again to end time Babylon (Jer chapters 50 & 51, Rev chapters 17 & 18).

has raised up for us prophets in Babylon,

16 for so says YAHWEH to the king who sits on the throne of David, and to all the people who live in this city, your brothers who have not gone out with you into exile,

17 so says YAHWEH of Hosts, Behold, I am sending among them the sword, the famine, and the plague. And have given them up as figs that are vile, which cannot be eaten from badness. *(Jer 24:2-5)*

18 And I will pursue them with the sword, with the famine, and with the plague. And I will make them a horror to all the kingdoms of the earth, to be a curse, and a terror, and a hissing, and a reproach among all the nations, there where I have driven them.

19 For they have not listened to My Words, says YAHWEH, which I sent to them by My servants the prophets, rising up early and sending; but you would not hear, says YAHWEH.

20 And now you hear the Word of YAHWEH, all you exiles whom I have sent from Jerusalem to Babylon.

21 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel concerning Ahab the son of Kolaiah, and concerning Zedekiah the son of Maaseiah, who prophesy a lie to you in My name: Behold, I will give them into the hand of Nebuchad-nezzar king of Babylon, and he shall strike them before your eyes.

22 And a curse shall be taken up from them for all the exiles of Judah who are in Babylon, saying, May YAHWEH make you like Zedekiah and like Ahab, whom the king of Babylon roasted in the fire,

23 because they have committed disgraceful folly in Israel, and have committed adultery with their neighbor's wives, and have spoken a lying word in My name, which I have not commanded them. For I am a witness and He who knows, says YAHWEH.

24 You shall also speak to Shemaiah the Nehelamite, saying,

25 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, saying, Because you have sent letters in your name to all the people in Jerusalem, and to Zephaniah the son of Maaseiah the priest, and to all the priests, saying,

26 YAHWEH has made you priest instead of Jehoiada the priest, to be officers in the house of YAHWEH, over every raving man who prophesies, that you should put him into the stocks and into the torture collar.

27 And now why have you not reproved Jeremiah of Anathoth, who prophesies to you?

28 On account of this he sent to us in Babylon, saying, This exile is long; build houses and live; and plant gardens and eat their fruit.

29 And Zephaniah the priest read this letter in the ears of Jeremiah the prophet.

30 Then the Word of YAHWEH came to Jeremiah, saying,

31 Send to all the exiles, saying, So says YAHWEH concerning Shemaiah the Nehelamite: Because Shemaiah has prophesied to you, and I did not send him; and he caused you to trust in a lie;

32 therefore so says YAHWEH, Behold, I will punish Shemaiah the Nehelamite and his seed. There shall not be to him a man living among this people; nor shall he behold the good which I shall do for My people, says YAHWEH, because he has uttered rebellion against YAHWEH.

---

2 This prophecy has been fulfilled in modern times with the establishment of the modern state of Israel and the Aliyah of Jewish people from all over the globe.

Chapter 30

1 The Word that came to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, saying,
2 So speaks YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel, saying, Write for yourself all the Words that I have spoken to you in a book.
3 For, lo, the days come, says YAHWEH, that I will turn the captivity of My people Israel and Judah, says YAHWEH; and I will cause them to return to the land that I gave to their fathers, and they shall possess it[1].
4 And these are the Words that YAHWEH spoke concerning Israel and concerning Judah:
5 For so says YAHWEH, We have heard a sound of trembling, of dread, and not of peace.
6 Ask now and see whether a male is giving birth? Why do I see every man with his hands on his loins, like a woman giving birth, and all faces are turned to paleness? (Jer 6:24, 22:23)
7 Alas! For that day is great, for none is like it. And it is a time of Jacob's trouble, but he will be saved out of it[2].
8 For it shall be in that day, says YAHWEH of Hosts, I will break his yoke from your neck, and I will burst your bonds. And strangers will not again enslave him[3];
9 but they shall serve YAHWEH their Elohim, and David their king, whom I will raise up to them[4].
10 And you, O My servant Jacob, do not fear, says YAHWEH. Do not be terrified, O Israel. For, lo, I will save you from afar, and your seed from the land of their captivity. And Jacob shall return, and have quiet, and be untroubled, and no one will make him afraid[5]. *(Is 41:8-9 Hos 2:18)*
11 For I am with you, says YAHWEH, to save you. Though I make a full end among all nations where I have scattered you, yet I will not make a full end with you. But I will correct you justly, and I will not leave you unpunished. *(Jer 16:14-19)*
12 For so says YAHWEH, Your break cannot be cured; your wound is grievous.
13 There is no one to judge your cause; for your ulcer there are no healing medicines for you.

---

1 Yahweh clearly states He will return both the captivity of Judah who went into Babylon from 609-573 BC, but also that He will return the House of Israel who went into captivity by Assyria in 734-718 BC. The latter has not happened yet, but just as Judah is back in their homeland today, Yahweh will also accomplish to bring back the Northern tribes of Israel.

2 This is the time in the end time that is called in Math 24:21, as the worst time that man will ever have in his existence. First, Satan is allowed to set up his earthly kingdom for 42 months in which he will try to destroy all true believers and Israel (Rev 13:5-7), this is the time of Jacob's trouble, and then the time called "*the day of YHWH*" (Joel 1-2, 11) will directly follow with YHWH's wrath over all the earth just preluding His Kingdom being set up.

3 The yoke that Israel has borne is that they have never fully surrendered to YHWH as a nation to fulfill His great blessings for them as they being His people and YHWH being their Elohim. Through antiquity and even today, Israel has depended on foreign powers for security and ultimately this has led to their captivity more than once.

4 Clearly, this is millennial. When Yahshua returns to set up the Kingdom of Yahweh (Zech 14:1-5, Acts 1:9-12) David will be a prince and ruler directly under Yahshua (Ezek 34:23-24Ezek 37:34) and Yahshua YHWH will literally be reigning on earth. YHWH the Father does not come to earth until the millennium is over (Rev 21:1-4)

5 Yahweh will redeem all 12 tribes back to Israel in end time (Jer 31:1, Jer 32:37-38, Jer 33:7-9, Ezek 34:25-28.

14 All those loving you have forgotten you; they do not seek you[1]. For I have wounded you with the wound of an enemy, with the chastisement of a cruel one, because of the greatness of your iniquity. Your sins are many.
15 Why do you cry out over your crushing? Your pain is incurable, for the greatness of your iniquity; your sins are many, so I have done these things to you.
16 Therefore, all those who devour you shall be devoured. And all your foes, every one of them, shall go into captivity. And those plundering you I will give up to plunder, and all preying on you I will give up for prey[2].
17 For I will give health back to you, and I will heal you of your wounds[3], says YAHWEH, because they called you, Outcast; saying, This is Zion; no one is seeking for her. *(Is 56:8)*
18 So says YAHWEH, Behold I will turn the captivity of Jacob's tents and will have mercy on his dwelling places. And the city shall be built on her ruin heap; and the palace shall remain on its own divine place[4].
19 And out of them shall come thanksgiving and the voice of those who are merry. And I will multiply them, and they shall not be few. I also will honor them, and they shall not be small. *(Jer 33:11, Ps 126:1-2, Is 35:10)*
20 Also, his sons shall be as before, and his congregation shall be established before Me; and I will punish all who oppress them.
21 And his leader shall be from him, and his ruler shall come from among him. And I will cause him to draw near, and he shall approach Me. For who is he who pledged his heart to come near to Me, says YAHWEH?
22 And you shall be My people, and I will be your Elohim. *(Jer 32:38)*
23 Behold, the tempest of YAHWEH: fury goes forth, a sweeping whirlwind; it shall whirl on the head of the wicked.
24 The glow of the anger of YAHWEH will not turn back until He has executed, and until He has established the purposes of His heart. In latter days you will understand it[5].

Chapter 31

1 At that time, says YAHWEH, I will be the Elohim of all the families of Israel, and they shall be My people[6].
2 So says YAHWEH, Israel, the people, the survivors of the sword, have found grace in the wilderness, I will go to give rest to him[7].

---

1 All the nations who Israel looked for their security through instead of YHWH have ultimately forsaken her anyway.

2 Although Israel is getting her punishment during the time of Jacob's trouble, the nations that caused her demise, such as Babylon, will also be punished during the wrath of YHWH on earth.

3 Although Israel will go through a harsh chastisement for their sins, ultimately, their punishment is put on Babylon and Babylon is destroyed forever as where Jerusalem will be the eternal capital of the Kingdom of YHWH (Rev 18:20, 23, Jer 50:39-40, Mic 4:2)

4 The Hebrew word for ruin here is '*tel*'. There are currently more than 30,000 such archaeological tels in Israel. The science of Archeology is only about 140 years old, which even makes this scripture more amazing (Is 58:12, Ps 102:14).

5 Most of this chapter as well as the next few are mostly about things that will take place in the end times. (Jer 3:18)

6 In the millennial setting all 12 tribes will be restored (Ro 11:26-27)

7 Yahweh always brings those to the wilderness who are being prepared and here YHWH Yahshua will meet this remnant in the wilderness (Eze 20:33-44).

3 YAHWEH has appeared to me
from far away, saying, Yes, I have
loved you with an everlasting love! On
account of this, with loving kindness I
have drawn you.
4 Again I will build you, and you
shall be built again, O virgin of Israel.
You will again put on your
tambourines[1] and go forth in the dance
of those making merry. *(Jer 30:19)*
5 You shall yet plant vineyards on
the mountains of Samaria, the
planters shall plant and shall treat
them as common[2].
6 For there shall be a day when the
watchmen on the hills of Ephraim
shall call out, Arise and let us go up to
Zion, to YAHWEH our Elohim[3].
7 For so says YAHWEH, Sing with
gladness for Jacob, and shout among
the head of the nations. Cry out, give
praise and say, O YAHWEH, save
Your people[4], the remnant of Israel.
8 Behold! I will bring them from the
North Country, and gather them from
the recesses of the earth. Among them
the blind, and the lame, the pregnant
one, and the travailing one together, a
great company shall return here[5].
9 They shall come with weeping, and
I will lead them with prayers. I will
cause them to walk by rivers of waters,
in a right way; they will not stumble in
it. For I am a Father to Israel, and
Ephraim is My first-born[6].
10 Hear the Word of YAHWEH, O
nations, and declare in the coastlands
far away, and say, He who scattered
Israel will gather him and keep him, as
a shepherd his flock.
11 For YAHWEH has redeemed
Jacob, and redeemed him from the
hand of the one stronger than him.
12 And they shall come and sing in
the height of Zion, and be radiant over
the goodness of YAHWEH, for grain,
and for wine, and for oil, and for the
sons of the flock and the herd. And
their life shall be as a watered garden;
and they shall not continue to languish
any more[7].
13 Then the virgin shall rejoice in the
dance, both young men and elders
together. For I will turn their
mourning into joy, and will comfort
them and make them rejoice from
their sorrow.
14 And I will fill the soul of the
priests with fatness, and My people

---

1 Tambourines were used on a joyful occasion, especially a military victory (Ps 68:24-25 Ex 15:20-21).

2 Wine is associated in scripture with joy and feasting. Here YHWH is showing that in Israel's redemption it will be with great joy. Also, Samaria was the Capital of the northern kingdom. This area has some of the best grapevines in Israel. The fact that they are treated as common infers a great abundance of harvest.

3 A wonderful scenario is being played out in chapter 31 of the redemption and return of Ephraim and the northern tribes of Israel. Here it is prophesying about the wonderful time when Judah and Israel together will be going up to Jerusalem at feast time to worship YAHWEH. (Ps 122:1-4). This had not happened since the days of Solomon as Jeroboam built an altar in Dan in the north and had the northern tribes coming there at the feast that he had made to replace Sukkot, 1Kg 12:26-33.

4 The Hebrew is "*Hoshanna*" Math 21:9, Ps 118:25, Ps 20:9

5 Is 35:5-6, Jer 3:18, Ps 106:47, Ezek 34:12-14, Mic 4:6, Amos 9:14-15

6 There were two great promises that YHWH gave to Israel in the bible. One was the promise of the scepter, which is to reign on the throne of Israel; this was given to Judah and King David (Gen 49:10). The other is the promise of the birthright given to the firstborn and this was given to Ephraim through his father Joseph (1Chron 5:1-2). The right of the firstborn was also a double portion (Deut 21:15-17). Ephraim means double blessing.

shall be satisfied with My goodness, says YAHWEH.

15 So says YAHWEH, A voice was heard in Ramah, wailing, bitter weeping: Rachel weeping for her sons; she refuses to be comforted for her sons for they are not here[1].

16 So says YAHWEH, Hold back your voice from weeping, and your eyes from tears. For there will be a reward for your work, says YAHWEH, and they shall come again from the land of the enemy.

17 And there is hope for you in the end time, says YAHWEH, that your sons will come again to their own territory.

18 Hearing I have heard Ephraim moaning over himself, saying, You have chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bull not broken in. Turn me, and I shall be turned; for You are YAHWEH my Elohim.

19 For after I had turned away, I repented; and after I knew, I slapped on my thigh. I was ashamed; yea, I even blushed, because I bore the reproach of my youth.

20 Is Ephraim My dear son? Or is he a delightful child? For as often as I spoke against him, I will earnestly remember him still. So My bowels are groaning for him; surely, I will have pity on him, declares YAHWEH.

21 Set up road marks for yourself; make sign posts for yourself. Set your heart toward the highway, even the way you went. Turn again, O virgin of Israel; turn again to these cities of yours[2].

22 Until when will you turn to and fro, O faithless daughter? For YAHWEH has created a new thing in the land: a woman shall enclose a man[3].

23 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Again they will speak this Word in the land of Judah, and in its cities, when I turn again their captivity, saying, YAHWEH bless you, O home of righteousness, O holy mountain!

24 And Judah and all its cities shall live in it together, the tenant farmers and those who travel with flocks.

25 For I satisfy the weary soul, and I have filled every sorrowful soul.

26 On this I awoke and looked up, and my sleep was sweet to me[4].

27 Behold, the days come, says YAHWEH, even I will sow the house of Israel and the house of Judah with the seed of man, and the seed of animal.

28 And it shall be, as I have watched over them to pluck up, and to break down, and to throw down, and to destroy, and to bring calamity; so I will watch over them to build and to plant, says YAHWEH.

29 In those days they shall not any more say, The fathers have eaten sour

---

7 A beautiful poetic verse showing the completeness of all of Israel's needs in that day. The grain is for bread, the oil for cooking and health and anointing and the wine for joy and happiness (Eccl 10:19, Ps 104:15). These circumstances make life like a watered garden. As where normal harvests depended solely on the rain of season, here Israel will be like a watered garden having water whenever it is needed.

1 Rachel was the mother of Joseph, and as this chapter is referencing end time fulfillment, Rachel will not be happy until the northern tribes of Israel are also redeemed in the end time. Math 2:18

2 Yahweh's promise to redeem all 12 tribes of Israel in the end time Jer 31:1.

3 It implies in Hebrew that a weak woman will encompass a strong man. Where in the past tiny Israel was at the mercy of her enemies, now this tiny nation, Israel, would be the center of the earth and the strength of the kingdom.

4 This whole chapter was a revelation to Jeremiah given in a dream by Elohim.

grapes, and the teeth of the sons are dull[1]. *(Ezek 18:2)*

30 But every man will die in his iniquity. Every man who eats the sour grapes, his teeth will be dull[2].

31 Behold, the days come, says YAHWEH, that I will cut a new covenant with the house of Israel and with the house of Judah,

32 not according to the covenant that I cut with their fathers in the day I took them by the hand to bring them out of the land of Egypt (which covenant of Mine they broke, although I was to be a husband to them, says YAHWEH).

33 But this shall be the covenant that I will cut with the house of Israel: After those days, declares YAHWEH, I will put My Torah in their inward parts, and I will write it on their hearts; and I will be their Elohim, and they shall be My people.

34 And they shall no longer each man teach his neighbor, and each man his brother, saying, Know YAHWEH. For they shall all know Me, from the least of them even to the greatest of them, declares YAHWEH. For I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sins no more[3].

35 So says YAHWEH, who gives the sun for a light by day, the laws of the moon, and the stars for a light by night, who stirs up the sea so that its waves roar, YAHWEH of Hosts is His name[4].

36 If these ordinances depart from before Me, says YAHWEH, the seed of Israel also shall cease from being a nation before Me forever.

37 So says YAHWEH, If the heavens above can be measured, and the foundations of the earth below can be searched out, I will also reject all the seed of Israel for all that they have done, declares YAHWEH[5].

38 Behold, the days come, says YAHWEH, that the city will be built to YAHWEH, from the Tower of Hananeel to the Corner Gate.

39 And the measuring line[6] shall yet go before it to the hill Gareb, and shall go around to Goath.

40 And the whole valley of the dead bodies and the ashes and all the fields to the torrent Kidron, to the corner of the Horse Gate east, shall be holy to YAHWEH. It shall not be torn up, nor demolished any more, forever.

Chapter 32

1 The Word that came to Jeremiah from YAHWEH in the tenth year of Zedekiah, king of Judah, which was the eighteenth year of Nebuchadnezzar[7].

2 For then the king of Babylon's army was besieging Jerusalem. And Jeremiah the prophet was shut in the court of the guard, which was in the king of Judah's house.

---

1 In times past the people excused their own sin by claiming the punishment at hand was due to their father's sins. In this day true repentance will prevail and each person will take responsibility for their own sins.

2 People will reap what they sow for their own actions and sins (Ezek 18:20)

3 Jer 31:31-34 is a promise of the New Covenant and is repeated in Heb 8:8-12. The Torah is the same but in the New Covenant there would be a different priesthood (Melchizedek) and the agreement about sin has changed through the blood of Messiah paying the penalty of sin. See Hebrews chapter 7 through 10.

4 It is YAHWEH making this covenant.

5 A poetic way of saying that Israel will continue to exist even though they will go through much hardships.

6 The measuring line is connected with restored Jerusalem (Ezek 40:3, Zech 1:16, Zech 2:1, Is 28:16-17, Rev 11:1-2).

7 This was the yr before Israel was destroyed See Jer 52:3-4, 12-13, Jer 39:1

3 For Zedekiah, king of Judah, had shut him up, saying, Why do you prophesy and say, So says YAHWEH, Behold, I will give this city into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he will take it?

4 And Zedekiah, king of Judah, shall not escape out of the hand of the Chaldeans, but delivering shall be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he will speak with him mouth to mouth, and will see his eyes with his eyes.

5 And he shall lead Zedekiah into Babylon, and there he shall be until I visit him, says YAHWEH. Though you fight with the Chaldeans, you shall not succeed.

6 And Jeremiah said, The Word of YAHWEH was to me saying,

7 Behold, Hanameel the son of Shallum, your uncle, shall come to you, saying, Buy my field in Anathoth for yourself, for the right to redeem is yours, to buy it[1].

8 So Hanameel, my uncle's son, came to me in the court of the guard, according to the Word of YAHWEH, and said to me, Please buy my field in Anathoth, which is in the land of Benjamin; for the right of inheritance is yours, and the right of redemption is yours. Buy it for yourself. Then I knew that this was the Word of YAHWEH.

9 And I bought the field in Anathoth from my uncle's son, Hanameel, and weighed him the silver, seventeen shekels of silver[2].

10 And I wrote it in the document, and sealed it, and called witnesses, and weighed the silver on the scales[3].

11 So I took the document of the purchase, that which was sealed according to the law and the statutes, and the open copy.

12 And I gave the purchase document to Baruch the son of Neriah the son of Maaseiah, before the eyes of my uncle's son, Hanameel, and before the eyes of the witnesses who wrote in the purchase document before the eyes of all the Jews who sat in the court of the guard.

13 And I commanded Baruch[4] before their eyes, saying,

14 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Take these books, the purchase document, the one sealed, and the open book, and put them in an earthen vessel so that they may stand many days.

15 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Houses and fields and vineyards will again be bought in this land.

16 And after I gave the document of the purchase to Baruch the son of Neriah, I prayed to YAHWEH, saying,

17 Ah, Adonai YAHWEH! You have made the heavens and the earth by Your great power and Your outstretched arm; nothing is too difficult for You,

18 who acts with loving-kindness to thousands, and repays the iniquity of

---

1 This was Jeremiah's hometown (Jer 1:1) and he was the nearest kinsman redeemer (Lev 25:23-25). Yahweh was using this as a sign to show that His word that Israel would return was sure. Symbolically, The Messiah is the true kinsman redeemer and will return the land to all the tribes of Israel at His return (Ezek 48).

2 The field was worthless at this time since the Babylonians had already taken captive this area and showed Jeremiah's great faith in Yahweh.

3 This was the normal mode of making a transaction in that day. The scale would have weighted measures on one side against the silver on the other side. Some dishonest people would have false weighted measures to gain more silver than what was legally agreed upon, Pr 11:1, Pr 16:11 Is 46:6.

4 Baruch means blessed and he was the faithful secretary and friend of Jeremiah.

the fathers into the bosom of their
sons after them. The great, El, the
mighty YAHWEH of Hosts, is His
name.
19 He is great in counsel and mighty
in work. For Your eyes are open on all
the ways of the sons of men, to give to
each man according to his ways, and
according to the fruit of his doings.
20 For You have set signs and
wonders in the land of Egypt until this
day, and in Israel, and among men;
and You have made a name for
Yourself, as at this day.
21 And You have brought Your
people Israel out of the land of Egypt
with signs, and with wonders, and
with a strong hand, and with an
outstretched arm, and with great
terror.
22 And You have given them this
land which You swore to their fathers
to give to them, a land flowing with
milk and honey.
23 And they came in and possessed
it, but they did not obey Your voice nor
did they walk in Your Torah. They
have not done all that You
commanded them to do, so You have
caused all this evil to meet them.
24 Behold, the siege mounds have
come to the city, to capture it. And the
city is given into the hand of the
Chaldeans who fight against it,
because of the sword, and the famine,
and the plague. And what You have
spoken has happened. And, behold,
You see it.
25 O Adonai YAHWEH, And You
have said to me, buy for yourself the
field with silver, and call witnesses; for
the city is given into the hand of the
Chaldeans.
26 And the Word of YAHWEH was
to Jeremiah, saying,
27 Behold, I am YAHWEH, the
Elohim of all flesh. Is anything too
difficult for Me?
28 So YAHWEH says this: Behold, I
will give this city into the hand of the
Chaldeans, and into the hand of
Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, and
he shall take it.
29 And the Chaldeans who fight
against this city shall enter and set this
city on fire, and burn it, with the
houses where they offered incense on
their roofs to Baal, and poured out
drink offerings to other gods, to
provoke Me to anger.
30 For the sons of Israel and the
sons of Judah have only done evil in
My eyes from their youth. For the sons
of Israel have only provoked Me to
anger with the work of their hands,
declares YAHWEH.
31 For this city has been to Me a
cause of My anger and My wrath from
the day that they built it even to this
day, that I should remove it from My
face;
32 because of all the evil of the sons
of Israel and of the sons of Judah
which they have done to provoke Me
to anger, they, their kings, their rulers,
their priests, and their prophets, and
the men of Judah, and those living in
Jerusalem.
33 And they have turned the back to
Me, and not the face; though I taught
them, rising up early and teaching, yet
they have not listened to receive
instruction.
34 But they set their abominable
idols in the house on which My name
has been called, to defile it.
35 And they built the high places of
Baal in the valley of the son of
Hinnom, to cause their sons and their
daughters to pass through the fire to
Molech, which I did not command
them, nor did it come into My heart,
that they should do this detestable
thing, to cause Judah to sin[1].
36 And so now YAHWEH, Elohim

[1] Lev 18:21, Lev 20:2, 2 Kgs 23:10

of Israel, says this concerning this city,
of which you say, It is given into the
hand of the king of Babylon by the
sword, and by the famine, and by the
plague;
37 Behold, I will gather them out of
all the lands, there where I have driven
them in My anger, and in My fury, and
in great indignation. And I will bring
them again to this place, and I will
cause them to live in safety.
38 And they shall be My people, and
I will be their Elohim. *(Jer 31:33)*
39 And I will give them one heart
and one way, that they may fear Me all
the days, for good to them and to their
sons after them.
40 And I will cut an everlasting
covenant with them, that I will not
turn away from them, to do good to
them. But I will put My fear in their
heart, that they shall not depart from
Me. *(Jer 31:31-34)*
41 And I will rejoice over them, to do
good to them; and I will truly plant
them in this land with all My heart and
with all My soul. (Deut 30:8-9)
42 For so says YAHWEH: As I have
brought this great evil on this people,
so I will bring on them all the good
that I am speaking to them.
43 And fields will be bought in this
land, of which you say, It is a
desolation, without man or beast; it
has been given into the hand of the
Chaldeans.
44 Men shall buy fields for silver,
and write in a document, and seal it,
and call witnesses in the land of
Benjamin, and in the places around
Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah,
and in the cities of the mountains, and
in the cities of the Shephelah[1] and in
the cities of the Negev. For I will cause
their captivity to return, says
YAHWEH.

Chapter 33

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to
Jeremiah the second time, while he
was still shut up in the court of the
guard, saying,
2 So says YAHWEH its Maker,
YAHWEH who formed it in order to
establish it; YAHWEH is His name[2]:
3 Call to Me, and I will answer you;
and I will tell you great and
inaccessible things; you do not know
them.
4 For so says YAHWEH, the Elohim
of Israel, Concerning the houses of this
city, and concerning the houses of the
kings of Judah, which are torn down
to defend against the siege mounds,
and against the sword,
5 they come to fight with the
Chaldeans, and to fill them with the
dead bodies of men whom I have
struck in My anger and in My wrath,
and for whom I have hidden My face
from this city, because of all their evil.
6 Behold, I will bring health and
healing to it, and I will heal them and
will show them the abundance of
peace and truth.
7 And I will cause the captivity of
Judah and the captivity of Israel to

[1] The Shephelah means lowland and was between Jerusalem and what is today the coast land of Tel Aviv. The coast was lower than the Shephelah, but the equating is directed from Jerusalem, the center of the earth (Ezek 38:12).

[2] Almost 7,000 times in scripture the Heavenly Father states that His name is YAHWEH. Since most have rejected that throughout antiquity, He clearly states that in the end time all will know that it is YAHWEH doing these things Jer 16:21.

return, and will build them, as at the
first. *(Amos 9:13-14, Ezek 36:24, 28)*
8 And I will cleanse them from all
their iniquity which they have sinned
against Me; and I will pardon all their
iniquities which they have sinned
against Me, and which they have
rebelled against Me.
9 And it shall be a name of joy to Me,
a praise and a glory to all the nations
of the earth, which shall hear all the
good that I do for them. And they shall
fear and tremble for all the goodness
and for all the peace that I do for it.
10 So says YAHWEH, Again there
shall be heard in this place, which you
say shall be waste without man and
without beast, in the cities of Judah,
and in the streets of Jerusalem that
are desolate without man, without one
living in it, and without beast,
11 the voice of joy, and the voice of
gladness, the voice of the bridegroom,
and the voice of the bride, the voice of
those saying, Praise (Aleph/Tav)
YAHWEH of Hosts, for YAHWEH is
good, for His mercy endures forever;
those who shall bring the sacrifice of
thanks-giving into the house of
YAHWEH. For I will bring back the
captivity of the land, as at the first,
says YAHWEH[1].
12 So says YAHWEH of Hosts,
Again in this place which is a waste
without man or even beast, and in all
its cities shall be a home of shepherds
causing flocks to lie down.
13 In the cities of the mountains, in
the cities of the Shephelah, and in the
cities of the Negev, and in the land of
Benjamin, and in the places around
Jerusalem, and in the cities of Judah,
the flocks shall pass again under the
hands of him who tallies[2], says
YAHWEH.
14 Behold, the days come, says
YAHWEH, that I will fulfill the good
thing which I have promised to the
house of Israel and to the house of
Judah.
15 In those days, and at that time, I
will cause a Branch of Righteousness
to grow up to David. And He shall do
judgment and righteousness in the
land.
16 In those days Judah shall be
saved, and Jerusalem shall dwell in
safety. And this is the name that shall
be called on her: YAHWEH
TZADEKENU [3].
17 For so says YAHWEH, Not a man
sitting on the throne of the house of
Israel will be cut off to David[4].
18 And for the Levitical priests, they
shall not have a man cut off before Me
to offer burnt offerings, and to kindle
food offerings, and to do sacrifice
continually[5].

---

1 Although Israel will go through a harsh chastisement for their sins, ultimately, their punishment is put on Babylon and Babylon is destroyed forever as where Jerusalem will be the eternal capital of the Kingdom of YHWH (Rev 18:20, 23, Jer 50:39-40, Mic 4:2)

2 At the end of each day the shepherd would have each sheep pass under his staff and count them to make sure that not even one was lost. This showed his ownership to them and enabled him to separate any animal that was not his. Ezek 20:37, Math 25:32-33.

3 Means Yahweh "*OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS*". The Messiah is called YAHWEH. Yahweh is a family name with the Father being Yah Yahweh and the Son being Yahshua Yahweh.

4 2 Sam 7:12-16, 1 Kgs 2:4, 25, 1Kgs 9:5, 2 Chron 6:16. However, due to the sin of Jeconiah *(Conaiah for short)* who was from the line of Solomon (Jer 22:24, 28-30), this promise is fulfilled through Nathan, who is also the son of David 1Kgs 5:5, Luk 3:31.

5 However, in the millennial kingdom the Levites will be doing the menial tasks in the sanctuary of YHWH Ezek 44:10-15.

19 And the Word of YAHWEH was to Jeremiah, saying,
20 So says YAHWEH, If you can break My covenant of the day, and My covenant of the night, and there should not be day and night in their time,
21 then My covenant with My servant David may also be broken, that he should not have a son to reign on his throne, and with the Levitical priests, My attendants.
22 As the host of the heavens cannot be numbered, nor the sand of the sea measured, so I will multiply the seed of My servant David, and the Levites who minister to Me.
23 And the Word of YAHWEH was to Jeremiah, saying,
24 Have you not observed what these people have spoken, saying, The two families[1] that YAHWEH has chosen, has He also rejected them? And they despise My people, no more to be a nation before them.
25 So says YAHWEH, If My covenant is not with day and night, and if I have not appointed the ordinances of the heavens and earth,
26 then I also will reject the seed of Jacob, and My servant David, not to take of his seed to be rulers over the seed of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob. For I will bring back their captivity and have pity on them[2].

Chapter 34

1 The Word which was to Jeremiah from YAHWEH when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and all his army, and all the kingdoms of the earth (because his hand rules), and all the peoples fought against Jerusalem, and against all its cities, saying,
2 So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel: Go and speak to Zedekiah, king of Judah, and tell him, So says YAHWEH, Behold, I will give this city into the hand of the king of Babylon, and he will burn it with fire.
3 And you shall not escape out of his hand, but surely shall be captured and delivered into his hand. And your eyes shall behold the eyes of the king of Babylon, and he shall speak, his mouth with your mouth; and you shall go to Babylon.
4 Yet hear the Word of YAHWEH, O Zedekiah, king of Judah: So says YAHWEH concerning you, You shall not die by the sword.
5 You shall die in peace. And as the burnings of spices for your fathers, the former kings who were before you, so they shall burn spices for you, saying, Ah, master! They will wail for you. For I have spoken the Word, says YAHWEH[3].
6 And Jeremiah the prophet spoke all these Words to Zedekiah, king of Judah, in Jerusalem,
7 when the king of Babylon's army fought against Jerusalem and against all the cities of Judah that remained; against Lachish, and against Azekah;

---

1 Since right after the reign of king Solomon, Israel was divided into two kingdoms. The Northern Kingdom called the House of Israel (Ephraim), which consisted of the 10 northern tribes and the southern kingdom was called the House of Judah and consisted of Judah and Benjamin. Levi was also with Judah due to the sanctuary being in Jerusalem but Levites also lived in cities among the other tribes and acted as judges and priests.

2 Unless Yahweh would keep His promise and redeem all 12 tribes, He could not keep His promise to David to rule over all of Israel.

3 He would have a proper burial as his forefathers did, 2Chron 16:14, 21:19.

for these fortified cities remained of the cities of Judah.

8 The Word that was to Jeremiah from YAHWEH after King Zedekiah had cut a covenant with all the people in Jerusalem, to proclaim freedom to them,

9 that each man should release his male slave, and each man his female slave, if a Hebrew man or a Hebrew woman, to go free, that not any should enslave a Jew, a man, his brother among them.

10 And all the rulers obeyed, and all the people who had entered into the covenant allowed them to go free, each man his male slave, and each man his female slave; so that not any should enslave among them any more; and they obeyed and let them go.

11 But afterward they turned and caused to return the male slaves and the female slaves whom they sent away. And they subjected them for male slaves and for female slaves.

12 For this reason the Word of YAHWEH came to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, saying,

13 So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel: I cut a covenant[1] with your fathers in the day I brought them forth out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of slavery, saying,

14 At the end of seven years each man should let go his brother who is a Hebrew, who has been sold to him. When he has served you six years, you shall let him go free from you. But your fathers did not listen to Me nor stretch out their ear. (*Ex 21:1-2)*

15 And you had turned today, and you did right in My eyes, to call for freedom, each man to his neighbor. And you cut a covenant before Me in the house on which is called My name.

16 But you turned and profaned My name, and each man caused his male slave, and each man his female slave, to return whom you had sent away according to their desire. And you subjected them to be slaves and female slaves to you.

17 So YAHWEH says this: You have not listened to Me, to call for liberty, each man to his brother, and each man to his neighbor. Behold, I call for freedom to you, says YAHWEH: to the sword, to the plague, and to the famine. And I will give you for a terror to all the kingdoms of the earth.

18 And I will give the men who have transgressed My covenant, who have not stood on the words of the covenant which they have cut with Me when they cut the calf in two, and passed between its pieces[2], *(Ps 50:5, Ge 15:10)*

19 the rulers of Judah and the rulers of Jerusalem, the eunuchs and the priests, and all the people of the land who passed between the pieces of the calf;

20 I will even give them into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of those seeking their life. And their dead bodies shall be for food to the birds of the heavens, and to the beasts of the earth.

21 And I will give Zedekiah, king of Judah, and his rulers, into the hand of their enemies, and into the hand of those seeking their life, even into the hand of the king of Babylon's army that has gone up from you.

22 Behold, I will command and cause them to return to this city, says YAHWEH. And they shall fight against it, and take it, and burn it with fire. And I will make the cities of

---

[1] The ancient blood covenant ceremony had 9 steps and cutting the animal in 2 was the third step of the process.

[2] After cutting the animal in two, the 2 parties stand back to back and do a figure 8 through the pieces and wind up facing each other to take their covenant vows.

Judah a desolation, so that no inhabitant can live in it.

Chapter 35

1 The Word which was to Jeremiah from YAHWEH in the days of Jehoiakim[1], the son of Josiah, king of Judah, saying,
2 Go to the house of the Rechabites[2] and speak to them, and bring them to the house of YAHWEH, into one of the rooms, and give them wine to drink.
3 Then I took Jaazaniah, the son of Jeremiah, the son of Habaziniah, and his brothers, and all his sons, and the whole house of the Rechabites.
4 And I brought them into the house of YAHWEH, into the room of the sons of Hanan, the son of Igdaliah, a man of Elohim, which was near the room of the rulers, above the room of Maaseiah, the son of Shallum, the keeper of the threshold.
5 And I set bowls and cups full of wine before the sons of the house of the Rechabites. And I said to them, Drink wine.
6 But they said, We will not drink wine, for Jonadab, the son of Rechab our father, commanded us, saying, You shall not drink wine, you nor your sons forever.
7 And you shall not build a house nor sow seed, nor plant a vineyard, nor shall there be anything to you; but all your days you shall live in tents, so that you may live many days on the face of the land where you are residing.
8 And we have obeyed the voice of Jonadab, the son of Rechab our father, to all that he commanded us[3], to drink no wine all our days, we, our wives, our sons, and our daughters,
9 nor to build houses for us for our dwelling; nor do we have a vineyard, or field, or seed.
10 But we live in tents[4], and we have obeyed and done according to all that Jonadab our father commanded us.
11 But it happened when Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came up against the land, then we said, Come, and let us go to Jerusalem, because of the army of the Chaldeans and because of the army of the Syrians. And we live in Jerusalem.
12 Then the Word of YAHWEH was to Jeremiah, saying,
13 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Go and tell the men of Judah and the people of Jerusalem, Will you not receive instruction, to listen to My Words? says YAHWEH.
14 The words of Jonadab, the son of Rechab are done, in which he commanded his sons not to drink wine. And to this day they do not drink, but obey their father's command. But I have spoken to you, rising early and speaking; and you did not listen to Me.
15 I have also sent to you all My servants the prophets, rising up early and sending, saying, Each man now turn back from his evil way, and amend your doings, and do not go after other gods to serve them, and

---

[1] Chapter 35 & 36 are a flashback to Jehoiakim's reign which was 609 to 598 B.C.

[2] The Rechabites were a nomadic tribal group related to the Kenites (1Chron 2:55). Some of this group lived near the Israelites (Ju 4:11). This group originated with Jonadab, son of Recab in Israel about 842 B.C (2Kgs 10:15-23).

[3] This nomadic group was still obeying their fore-father several generations after his death and honoring his non-indulgent way of life.

[4] There is much proof that these Rechabite Kenites have a lineage going back to Cain (Gen 4:20).

you shall live in the land which I have given to you and to your fathers. But you have not bowed your ear, nor listened to Me.

16 Because the sons of Jonadab, the son of Rechab, have stood on the command of their father which he gave them[1], but this people has not listened to Me,

17 so YAHWEH, Elohim of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, says this, Behold, I will bring on Judah and on all the people of Jerusalem all the evil that I have spoken against them because I have spoken to them, but they did not listen. Yea, I have called to them, but they did not answer.

18 And Jeremiah said to the house of the Rechabites, So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Because you have obeyed your father Jonadab's command, and have kept all his commands, and have done according to all that he has commanded you,

19 so YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, says this: Jonadab, the son of Rechab, shall not have a man cut off from standing before Me all the days[2].

Chapter 36

1 And it happened in the fourth year of Jehoiakim the son of Josiah, king of Judah, this Word was to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, saying,

2 Take a scroll of a book for yourself and write in it all the Words that I have spoken to you against Israel, and against Judah, and against all the nations, from the day I spoke to you, from the days of Josiah even to this day[3].

3 It may be the house of Judah will hear all the evil which I plan to do to them, that they may each man turn from his evil way, and I may forgive their iniquity and their sin.

4 Then Jeremiah called Baruch, the son of Neriah. And Baruch wrote from the mouth of Jeremiah all the Words of YAHWEH that He had spoken to him, on a scroll of a book.

5 And Jeremiah commanded Baruch, saying, I am shut up; I cannot go to the house of YAHWEH.

6 So you go and read in the scroll the Words of YAHWEH that you have written from my mouth, in the house of YAHWEH, in the ears of the people on the day of fasting. And also you shall read them in the ears of all Judah who come out from their cities.

7 Perhaps their pleading will fall before YAHWEH, and each man will turn from his evil way. For great is the anger and the wrath that YAHWEH has spoken against this people[4].

8 And Baruch, the son of Neriah, did according to all that Jeremiah the prophet commanded him, reading in the book the Words of YAHWEH in the house of YAHWEH.

9 And it happened in the fifth year of Jehoiakim, the son of Josiah, king of Judah, in the ninth month, they called a fast before YAHWEH, to all the people of Jerusalem, and to all the

[1] Yahweh blessed the Rechabites because they followed judicial order and obeyed their fore-father (*a non Israelite)* on non biblical commands and Yahweh is chastising Judah because He sent His prophets and warned them by His living word and they refused. This shows the importance of Judicial order and the parents training the children to the next generation (Pr 22:6).

[2] The Jewish Mishnah states that the Rechabites were later given special duties to perform related to the 2nd temple.

[3] Showing the origin on the writing of the scroll of Jeremiah.

[4] Deut 31:17-18

people who came from the cities of Judah to Jerusalem.

10 And Baruch read in the book the words of Jeremiah in the house of YAHWEH, in the room of Gemariah, the son of Shaphan the scribe, in the upper court, at the entrance to the New Gate of the house of YAHWEH, in the ears of all the people.

11 When Micaiah, the son of Gemariah, the son of Shaphan, had heard all the Words of YAHWEH out of the book,

12 then he went down into the king's house, into the scribe's room. And, behold, all the rulers were sitting there, Elishama the scribe, and Delaiah the son of Shemaiah, and Elnathan the son of Achbor, and Gemariah, the son of Shaphan, and Zedekiah, the son of Hananiah, and all the rulers.

13 And Micaiah declared to them all the words that he had heard when Baruch read the book in the ears of the people.

14 And all the rulers sent Jehudi, the son of Nethaniah, the son of Shelemiah, the son of Cushi, to Baruch, saying, Take the scroll in your hand, in which you have read in the ears of the people, and come. So Baruch, the son of Neriah, took the scroll in his hand and came to them.

15 And they said to him, Sit down now and read it in our ears. So Baruch read in their ears.

16 And it happened, when they had heard all the Words, they turned each man to his companion in fear. And they said to Baruch, We will surely tell all these words to the king.

17 And they asked Baruch, saying, Tell us now, how did you write all these words? From his mouth?

18 And Baruch said to them, He spoke all these words to me from his mouth, and I wrote with ink on the book.

19 And the rulers said to Baruch, Go, hide yourselves, you and Jeremiah; and do not let any man know where you are.

20 And they went in to the king, into the court. But they laid up the scroll in the room of Elishama the scribe. And they told all the words in the ear of the king.

21 And the king sent Jehudi to take the scroll. And he took it out of the room of Elishama the scribe. And Jehudi read it in the king's ears, and in the ears of all the rulers who stood beside the king.

22 And the king was sitting in the winter house in the ninth month, and with the burning fire pan before him.

23 And it happened, when Jehudi had read three or four leaves, he cut it with the scribe's knife and threw it into the fire in the fire-pan, until all the scroll was burned up in the fire that was in the fire-pan.

24 Yet the king and all his servants who heard these Words were not afraid, nor did they tear their garments[1].

25 But Elnathan, and Delaiah, and Gemariah had pleaded with the king that he should not burn the scroll, but he would not listen to them.

26 And the king commanded Jerahmeel, the son of Hammelech, and Seraiah, the son of Azriel, and Shelemiah, the son of Abdeel, to seize Baruch the scribe and Jeremiah the prophet. But YAHWEH hid them.

27 Then the Word of YAHWEH was to Jeremiah, after the king had burned the scroll[2] and the Words which

[1] Even though this message clearly came from YHWH, due to their pride they had no fear of Yahweh's punishment.

[2] The scroll would be replaced but burning it did not change the judgment at hand.

Baruch wrote from the mouth of Jeremiah, saying,

28 Take for yourself another scroll, and write on it all the former words that were in the first scroll, which Jehoiakim the king of Judah has burned.

29 And you shall say to Jehoiakim the king of Judah, So says YAHWEH, You have burned this scroll, saying, Why have you written on it, saying, surely, the king of Babylon shall come and destroy this land, and shall cause man and beast to cease from there?

30 Therefore, so says YAHWEH of Jehoiakim, king of Judah: There shall not be one to him to sit on the throne of David, and his dead body shall be cast out in the day to the heat, and in the night to the frost.

31 And I will punish him and his seed[1] and his servants for their sin. And I will bring on them, and on the people of Jerusalem, and on the men of Judah, all the evil that I have spoken against them. But they did not listen.

32 Then Jeremiah took another scroll and gave it to Baruch the scribe, the son of Neriah, who wrote in it from the mouth of Jeremiah, all the words of the book which Jehoiakim, king of Judah, had burned in the fire. And again, many words like them were added to them.

Chapter 37

1 And King Zedekiah, the son of Josiah, reigned instead of Coniah the son of Jehoiakim[2], whom Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, made king in the land of Judah.

2 But he did not listen to the Words of YAHWEH, nor his servants, nor the people of the land, which He spoke by Jeremiah the prophet.

3 And Zedekiah the king sent Jehucal, the son of Shelemiah and Zephaniah, the son of Maaseiah the priest, to Jeremiah the prophet, saying, Pray now for us to YAHWEH our Elohim.

4 And Jeremiah came in and went out among the people, for they had not put him into prison.

5 And Pharaoh's army had come forth out of Egypt. And when the Chaldeans who besieged Jerusalem heard news of them, they went up from Jerusalem.

6 And the Word of YAHWEH was to the prophet Jeremiah, saying,

7 So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, You shall say this to the king of Judah who sent you to Me to inquire of Me: Behold, Pharaoh's army, which has come out to help you, shall return to Egypt into their own land.

8 And the Chaldeans shall come again and fight against this city, and they will capture it and burn it with fire.

9 So says YAHWEH, Do not deceive yourselves, saying, surely the Chaldeans will go from us, for they shall not leave.

10 For though you had stricken the entire army of the Chaldeans who fight against you, and only wounded men remained among them, yet they would rise up, each man in his tent, and burn this city with fire.

11 And it happened, when the army of the Chaldeans went up from Jerusalem because of Pharaoh's army,

12 then Jeremiah went out of Jerusalem, to go into the land of Benjamin to receive a portion from there in the midst of the people.

13 And it happened, he being in the gate of Benjamin, a captain of the guard was there, and his name was

[1] There is great punishment involved always for willingly defying Yahweh.

[2] Fulfilling the prophecy of Jer 36:30.

Irijah the son of Shelemiah, the son of Hananiah. And he seized Jeremiah the prophet, saying, You are falling to the Chaldeans.

14 And Jeremiah said, A lie! I am not falling to the Chaldeans. But he did not listen to him. And Irijah took Jeremiah and brought him to the rulers[1].

15 And the rulers were angry with Jeremiah and struck him, and they put him in the prison house, the house of Jonathan the scribe. For they had made it into a prison house.

16 When Jeremiah had gone into the house of the pit, and into the cells, then Jeremiah remained there many days.

17 And Zedekiah the king sent and took him out. And the king asked him secretly in his house, and said, Is there Word from YAHWEH[2]? And Jeremiah said, There is. For He said, You shall be delivered into the hand of the king of Babylon.

18 And Jeremiah said to King Zedekiah, What have I sinned against you, or against your servants, or against this people, that you have put me into the prison house?

19 Where now are your prophets who prophesied to you, saying, The king of Babylon shall not come against you, or against this land?

20 And now hear, I beg you, O my master the king, please let my plea fall before you, so that you do not make me return to the house of Jonathan the scribe, that I not die there.

21 And Zedekiah the king commanded, and they committed Jeremiah into the court of the guardhouse, and that they should give him a piece of bread out of the baker's street daily, until all the bread of the city was gone. And Jeremiah remained in the court of the guardhouse.

Chapter 38

1 And Shephatiah the son of Mattan, and Gedaliah the son of Pashur, and Jehucal, the son of Shelemiah, and Pashur, the son of Malchiah, heard the words that Jeremiah had spoken to all the people, saying,

2 So says YAHWEH, He who remains in this city shall die by the sword, by the famine, and by the plague. But he who goes forth to the Chaldeans shall live; and his life shall be a prize; and he shall live.

3 So says YAHWEH, This city giving shall be given into the hand of the king of Babylon's army, and he shall capture it.

4 And the rulers said to the king, Please cause this man to die. For in this way he weakens the hands of the men of war who remain in this city, and the hands of all the people, in speaking these words to them. For this man does not seek the peace of this people, but the evil.

5 And Zedekiah the king said, Behold, he is in your hand. For the king cannot do anything against you.

6 And they took Jeremiah and threw him into the pit of Malchiah, the king's son, which was in the court of the guardhouse. And they let Jeremiah down with ropes. But no water was in the pit, only mud. So Jeremiah sank into the mud[3].

7 And Ebed-Melech[4], the Ethiopian man, of the eunuchs in the king's house, heard that they had put

---

1 To some of the leaders Jeremiah's prophecies were looked at as treason, which was completely false, they simply did not understand the will of YHWH.

2 Zedekiah knew that Jeremiah's words were not his own but coming from Elohim.

3 This cistern was found in the City of David.

4 Means "*king's servant*"

Jeremiah into the pit (the king then sitting in the gate of Benjamin).

8 Ebed-Melech went out of the king's house and spoke to the king, saying,

9 My master the king, these men have done evil in all that they have done to Jeremiah the prophet, whom they have thrown into the pit. And it will be that he has died in his place because of the famine, for there is no more food in the city.

10 And the king commanded Ebed-Melech the Ethiopian, saying, Take in your hand thirty men from here and bring up Jeremiah the prophet out of the pit before he dies.

11 And Ebed-Melech took the men in his hand and went into the king's house, to under the treasury. And he took worn out clothes and worn out rags from there. And he let them down by ropes into the pit to Jeremiah.

12 And Ebed-Melech the Ethiopian said to Jeremiah, Now put these worn out clothes and rags under the armpits of your hands, under the ropes. And Jeremiah did so[1].

13 And they drew Jeremiah up with ropes and brought him up out of the pit. And Jeremiah dwelt in the court of the guardhouse.

14 And Zedekiah the king sent and took Jeremiah the prophet to him, into the third entrance in the house of YAHWEH. And the king said to Jeremiah, I will ask you a thing; do not hide a thing from me.

15 And Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, If I declare it to you, surely will you not cause me to die? And if I counsel you, you will not listen to me.

16 And Zedekiah the king swore secretly to Jeremiah, saying, As YAHWEH lives, who made us this soul, I will not cause you to die, nor will I give you into the hand of these men who seek your life.

17 And Jeremiah said to Zedekiah, So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: If surely you will go out to the rulers of the king of Babylon, then your soul shall live, and this city shall not be burned with fire. And you and your house shall live.

18 But if you will not go out to the rulers of the king of Babylon, even this city shall be given into the hands of the Chaldeans, and they will burn it with fire. And you shall not escape out of their hand.

19 And Zedekiah the king said to Jeremiah, I am afraid of the Jews who have fallen to the Chaldeans, lest they give me into their hand and they abuse me.

20 And Jeremiah said, They will not give. Please obey the voice of YAHWEH which I am speaking to you, and it will be well with you and your soul will live.

21 But if you refuse to go out, this is the Word YAHWEH has made me see:

22 Even, behold, all the women who are left in the house of the king of Judah shall be brought out to the rulers of the king of Babylon[2]. And they will say, The men who look after your welfare have seduced you and have prevailed against you; your feet have sunk in the mire, and they turned back. *(Ps 69:14)*

23 And they shall bring out all your wives and your sons to the Chaldeans. And you shall not escape out of their hand, but shall be seized by the hand of the king of Babylon. And this city shall be burned with fire.

24 And Zedekiah said to Jeremiah, Let not a man know of these words, and you shall not die.

---

[1] Ebed-Melech showed kindness to Jeremiah because he was a servant of YHWH and was rewarded for it later Jer 39:15-18.

[2] Women who are captured from the king's quarters became property of the conquerors.

25 But if the rulers hear that I have talked with you, and they come to you and say to you, Now tell us what you said to the king; do not hide it from us and we will not put you to death; also, What did the king say to you?
26 Then you shall say to them, I was causing my plea to fall before the king, that he should not return me to the house of Jonathan, to die there.
27 And all the rulers came to Jeremiah and asked him. And he told them according to all these words that the king had ordered. And they were silent with him, for the matter was not heard.
28 And Jeremiah dwelt in the court of the guardhouse until the day Jerusalem was captured. And he was there when Jerusalem was captured[1].

Chapter 39

1 In the ninth year of Zedekiah, king of Judah, in the tenth month, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon and all his army came against Jerusalem, and they besieged it. *(Jer 52:4-5)*
2 In the eleventh year of Zedekiah, in the fourth month, the ninth of the month, the city was breached.
3 And all the rulers of the king of Babylon came in and sat in the middle gate[2]: Nergal-Sharezer, Samgar-Nebo, Sarsechim, chief of the eunuchs, Nergal-Sharezer, chief magician, and all the rest of the rulers of the king of Babylon.
4 And it happened when Zedekiah, king of Judah and all the men of war saw them, they fled and went out from the city by night, the way of the king's garden, by the gate between the two walls. And he went the way of the Arabah.
5 But the Chaldean army pursued them and overtook Zedekiah in the Arabah of Jericho. And they took him and brought him up to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon, to Riblah in the land of Hamath, where he spoke judgment on him.
6 And the king of Babylon slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes at Riblah. Also the king of Babylon slaughtered all the rulers of Judah. *(Jer 52:7-11)*
7 And he blinded the eyes of Zedekiah and bound him in copper fetters, to make him go to Babylon.
8 And the Chaldeans burned the king's house and the houses of the people with fire. And they broke down the walls of Jerusalem.
9 Then the rest of the people who remained in the city, and those who fell away, who fell to him, even the rest of the people who remained, Nebuzaradan, the chief of the executioners, exiled to Babylon.
10 But Nebuzaradan, the chief of the executioners, left some of the poor people, who had not a thing to themselves, in the land of Judah. And he gave to them vineyards and fields on that day. *(Jer 52:12-16)*
11 And Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon commanded concerning Jeremiah by the hand of Nebuzaradan the chief of the executioners, saying:
12 Take him and set your eyes on him. But do not do anything evil to him. But do with him even as he shall say to you.
13 And Nebuzaradan, the chief of the executioners, and Nebushasban the chief of the eunuchs, and Nergal-Sharezer, chief magician, and all the rulers of the king of Babylon, sent,
14 even they sent and took Jeremiah out of the court of the guardhouse. And they gave him to Gedaliah the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, to

---
1 Jer 37:21
2 Jer 1:15

cause him to go out to the house. And he lived among the people.

15 And the Word of YAHWEH was to Jeremiah while he was shut up in the court of the guardhouse, saying,

16 Go and speak to Ebed-Melech the Ethiopian, saying, So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Behold, I am bringing My Words on this city for evil, and not for good. And they shall be before you in that day.

17 But I will deliver you in that day, states YAHWEH, and you shall not be given into the hand of the men, of those whom you fear.

18 For surely I will deliver you, and you shall not fall by the sword; but your life shall be a prize to you, because you have trusted in Me, states YAHWEH. *(Jer 38:7-13)*

Chapter 40

1 The Word that was to Jeremiah from YAHWEH, after Nebuzaradan, the chief of the executioners, had sent him from Ramah[1], when he had taken him (and he was bound in chains, among all the captives of Jerusalem and Judah being exiled to Babylon).

2 And the chief of the executioners took Jeremiah and said to him, YAHWEH your Elohim has spoken this evil against this place.

3 And YAHWEH has brought it and has done according as He has spoken, because you have sinned and have not obeyed His voice, even this thing has come upon you.

4 And now, behold! I free you today from the chains on your hand. If it is good in your eyes to come with me into Babylon, come. And I will set my eye on you. But if it is evil in your eyes to come with me into Babylon, stay. Behold, all the land is before you, to go to the good and to the right in your eyes, go there.

5 Even while he had not yet returned, he said, Or go back to Gedaliah[2] the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, whom the king of Babylon has appointed over the cities of Judah, and live with him among the people. Or to all that is right in your eyes to go, go. And the chief of the executioners gave him ration and a reward, and sent him away.

6 And Jeremiah went to Gedaliah the son of Ahikam at Mizpah[3], and he lived with him among the people remaining in the land.

7 And when all the commanders of the army who were in the field, they and their men, heard that the king of Babylon had appointed Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, over the land, and had appointed with him men, and women, and children, and of the poor of the land, of those who were not exiled to Babylon,

8 then they came to Gedaliah, to Mizpah, even Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, and Johanan and Jonathan, the sons of Kareah, and Seraiah the son of Tanhumeth, and the sons of Ephai of Netopha, and Jezaniah the son of the Maachathite, they and their men.

9 And Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, swore to them and to their men, saying, Do not fear to serve the Chaldeans. Live in the land, and serve the king of Babylon, and it shall be well with you.

10 As for me, behold, I will live at Mizpah to stand before the Chaldeans who have come to us. But you, go

---

[1] Ramah *(modern Ramallah)* is 5 miles north of Jerusalem and was where deportees were screened before being taken to Babylon.

[2] Gedaliah was the grandson of one of Josiah's nobles and was made a puppet governor to Babylon.

[3] Mizpah was a city a few miles north of Jerusalem.

gather wine, and the harvest, and oil, and put them in your vessels, and live in your cities that you have taken[1].
11 And when all the Jews in Moab, and among the sons of Ammon, and in Edom, and in all the lands, heard that the king of Babylon had left a remnant of Judah, and that he had set over them Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan,
12 even all the Jews returned out of all places where they were driven, and came to the land of Judah, to Gedaliah, to Mizpah, and gathered wine and summer fruits in great abundance.
13 And Johanan, the son of Kareah, and all the commanders of the army that were in the field, came to Gedaliah, to Mizpah.
14 And they said to him, surely you know that Baalis[2], the king of the sons of Ammon, has sent Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, to strike your soul. But Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, did not believe them.
15 And Johanan, the son of Kareah, spoke to Gedaliah in Mizpah secretly, saying, Please let me go, and I will strike Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, and a man shall not know. Why should he strike your soul, and all the Jews who are gathered to you be scattered, and the remnant of Judah perish?
16 But Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, said to Johanan, the son of Kareah, You shall not do this thing. For you speak falsely concerning Ishmael.

Chapter 41

1 And it happened in the seventh month, Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, the son of Elishama, of the royal seed, and of the chief ones of the king, and ten men with him, came to Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, to Mizpah. And they ate bread together there in Mizpah.
2 And Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, and the ten men with him rose up and struck Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, the son of Shaphan, with the sword. And they killed him whom the king of Babylon had appointed over the land.
3 Ishmael also struck all the Jews who were with him, with Gedaliah at Mizpah, and the Chaldeans who were found there, the men of war.
4 And it happened, the second day after he had killed Gedaliah; and no one knew,
5 men from Shechem came from Shiloh, and from Samaria, eighty men, having their beards shaved, and their clothes torn, and having cut themselves[3], and with offerings and incense in their hand, to bring to the house of YAHWEH.
6 And Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, went out from Mizpah to meet them, walking as he walked and was weeping. And it happened, as he met them, he said to them, Come to Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam.
7 And it happened when they came into the middle of the city, Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, killed them, he and the men with him, throwing them into the middle of the pit.
8 But ten men were found among them who said to Ishmael, Do not kill us, for we have treasures in the field,

[1] Grapes, olives and summer fruit such as figs and pomegranates were harvested in August- September, which shows the time of the seige.

[2] Either King Ba'lay as his name is written on an early 6th century BC bottle found in Jordan. Or Baal Yasha an Ammorite king whose name was found on a seal at Tel El-Umeiri in Jordan in 1984.

[3] They did this as a sign of mourning for the destruction of the sanctuary of YHWH, although cutting the flesh was cultic and forbidden according to Torah Lev 19:28.

of wheat, and barley, and oil, and
honey. So he held back, not killing
them with their brothers.
9 And the pit there in which Ishmael
had thrown all the dead bodies of the
men, whom he had struck because of
Gedaliah, was the one which Asa the
king had made from the face of
Baasha, king of Israel. Ishmael, the
son of Nethaniah, filled it with the
slain. *(1Kg 15:22, 2Chron 16:6)*
10 And Ishmael took captive all the
rest of the people who were in Mizpah,
the king's daughters, and all the
people who stayed in Mizpah, whom
Nebuzaradan, the chief of the
executioners, had entrusted to
Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam. And
Ishmael, the son of Nethaniah, took
captive and went to go over to the sons
of Ammon.
11 But when Johanan, the son of
Kareah, and all the army heads with
him, heard of all the evil that Ishmael,
the son of Nethaniah, had done,
12 then they took all the men and
went to fight with Ishmael, the son of
Nethaniah. And they found him by the
many waters that are in Gibeon.
13 And it happened when all the
people with Ishmael saw Johanan, the
son of Kareah, and all the army heads
with him, then they were glad.
14 And all the people that Ishmael
had taken captive from Mizpah turned
around and came back, and went to
Johanan, the son of Kareah.
15 But Ishmael, the son of
Nethaniah, escaped from Johanan
with eight men, and went to the sons
of Ammon.
16 Then Johanan, the son of Kareah,
and all the army heads with him, took
all the remnant of the people whom he
had recovered from Ishmael, the son
of Nethaniah, from Mizpah (after he
had killed Gedaliah, the son of
Ahikam), mighty men of war, and the
women, and the children, and the
eunuchs, whom he had brought again
from Gibeon.
17 And they departed and lived in
the inn of Chimham[1], which is by
Bethlehem, to go to enter Egypt,
18 because of the Chaldeans; for they
were afraid of them, because Ishmael,
the son of Nethaniah, had struck
Gedaliah, the son of Ahikam, whom
the king of Babylon had appointed in
the land.

Chapter 42

1 And all the army heads, and
Johanan, the son of Kareah, and
Jezaniah, the son of Hoshaiah, and all
the people, from the least even to the
greatest, came near.
2 And they said to Jeremiah the
prophet, We beg you, let our plea fall
before you; and pray for us to
YAHWEH your Elohim, for all this
remnant, (for we are left but a few of
many, as your eyes see us),
3 that YAHWEH your Elohim may
show us the way in which we may
walk, and the thing that we may do.
4 Then Jeremiah the prophet said to
them, I have heard. Behold, I will pray
to YAHWEH your Elohim according
to your words; and it shall be, all the
word YAHWEH shall answer, I will
declare to you. I will not keep back a
thing from you.
5 And they said to Jeremiah, Let
YAHWEH be a true and faithful
witness between us if not according to
all things YAHWEH your Elohim
shall send you to us, so we will do.
6 Whether it is good, or whether evil,
we will obey the voice of YAHWEH
our Elohim, to whom we send you; so
that it may be well with us when we

[1] This was part of a parcel of land given by King David, 2 Sam 19:37-40.

obey the voice of YAHWEH our Elohim.

7 And it happened at the end of ten days, the Word of YAHWEH was to Jeremiah.

8 And he called Johanan, the son of Kareah, and all the army heads with him, and all the people, from the least even to the greatest.

9 And he said to them, So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, to whom you sent me to cause to fall your petition before Him.

10 If you will still remain in this land, then I will build you up, and will not tear you down. And I will plant you, and will not pluck you up. For I repent as to the evil that I have done to you.

11 Do not be afraid of the king of Babylon, of whom you are afraid. Do not be afraid of his face, declares YAHWEH, for I am with you to save you and to deliver you from his hand.

12 And I will show mercies to you, so that he may have pity on you, and cause you to return to your own land.

13 But if you say, We will not live in this land or obey the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim,

14 saying, No, but we will go into the land of Egypt, where we shall see no war or hear the sound of the ram's horn, and we will not hunger for bread, and there we will live;

15 then hear now the Word of YAHWEH, O remnant of Judah, So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: If you surely set your faces to go into Egypt, and go to live there,

16 then it shall be, the sword which you feared shall overtake you there in the land of Egypt. And the famine which you were anxious about shall cling to you there in Egypt, and you shall die there.

17 So it shall be to all the men who have set their faces to go into Egypt to reside there. They shall die by the sword, by the famine, and by the plague. And none of them shall remain or escape from the evil that I will bring on them.

18 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, As My anger and My fury has flowed out upon the people of Jerusalem, so shall My fury flow out on you when you enter Egypt. And you shall be a curse, and a horror, and a shame, and a reproach, and you shall not see this place anymore.

19 YAHWEH has spoken concerning you, O remnant of Judah. Do not go into Egypt. surely, know that I have testified against you today.

20 For you used deceit against your souls when you sent me to YAHWEH your Elohim, saying, Pray for us to YAHWEH our Elohim; and according to all that YAHWEH our Elohim shall say, so declare to us, and we will do it.

21 And I have declared it to you this day, but you have not obeyed the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim, or anything for which He has sent me to you.

22 And now know certainly that you shall die by the sword, by the famine, and by the plague in the place where you desire to go to sojourn[1].

Chapter 43

1 And it happened when Jeremiah had finished speaking to all the people all the Words of YAHWEH their Elohim, for which YAHWEH their Elohim had sent him to them, all these words,

2 Azariah, the son of Hoshaiah, and

[1] Jeremiah's warning from YHWH is quite clear; stay in Israel and Elohim will protect them or go to Egypt for help and die. Since Yahweh delivered His chosen people out of Egypt it was a great sin in His eyes for the people to want to return there Is 30:1-3.

Johanan, the son of Kareah, and all
the proud men, then spoke, saying to
Jeremiah, You speak falsely.
YAHWEH our Elohim has not sent
you to say, Do not go to Egypt, to
sojourn there[1].
3 But Baruch, the son of Neriah, is
inciting you against us, to give us into
the hand of the Chaldeans, that they
might cause us to die, or exile us to
Babylon.
4 And Johanan, the son of Kareah,
and all the army commanders, and all
the people, did not obey the voice of
YAHWEH, to live in the land of
Judah.
5 But Johanan, the son of Kareah,
and all the army heads, took all the
remnant of Judah who had returned
from all the nations where they had
been driven, to sojourn in the land of
Judah:
6 men, and women, and children,
and the king's daughters[2], and every
person that Nebuzaradan, the chief of
the executioners, had left with
Gedaliah the son of Ahikam the son of
Shaphan, and Jeremiah the prophet,
and Baruch the son of Neriah.
7 And they came into the land of
Egypt, for they did not obey the voice
of YAHWEH. And they came to
Tahpanhes.
8 And the Word of YAHWEH was to
Jeremiah in Tahpanhes, saying,
9 Take great stones to your hand and
hide them in the mortar in the
brickwork which is at the entrance to
Pharaoh's house in Tahpanhes[3], in the
sight of the men of Judah.
10 And say to them, So says
YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of
Israel, Behold I will send and take
Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon,
My servant, and will set his throne on
these stones that I have hidden. And
he shall spread his royal pavilion over
them.
11 And when he comes, he shall
strike the land of Egypt. And whoever
is for death shall go to death; and
whoever is for captivity shall go into
captivity; and whoever is for the
sword, to the sword[4]. *(Jer 15:2)*
12 And I will kindle a fire in the
houses of the gods of Egypt. And he
shall burn them, and take them
captive. And he shall adorn himself
with the land of Egypt, as a shepherd
covers himself with his robe. And he
shall go forth from there in peace.
13 He shall also break the obelisks of
The House of the Sun[5] which is in the
land of Egypt; and he shall burn the

---

[1] The people were willing to claim to obey Jeremiah when they perceived that he would tell them what they wanted to hear, but when they received instructions against their own will, they quickly turned on him and in the coming verses their motives will be evident. They never planned on obeying YHWH.

[2] Some folk law exists that claim that these daughters of the king eventually wound up in Britain and that the Royal family today are descendants of these women.

[3] Tahpanhes is in NE Egypt. In excavations there was such a pavement that has been found in front of the entrance to the Royal Palace. This was not Pharaoh's main palace but as the Elephantine papyri states was a smaller residence used when Pharaoh was visiting this area.

[4] This is the same punishment YHWH gave in Jer 15:2 to those who did not follow His will before the captivity and this shows that He is teaching the people that He never changes and sin and rebellion will always bring punishment.

[5] In Hebrew "B*et Shemesh*" and in Israel, Bet Shemesh was the place were the ark of the Covenant once dwelt. This is a contrast to show that if they had stayed in Israel that is where YHWH truly dwells but going into Egypt there is only a counterfeit that will be destroyed.

houses of the gods of the Egyptians with fire.

Chapter 44

1 The Word which was to Jeremiah concerning all the Jews who were living in the land of Egypt[1], those living at Migdol, and at Tahpanhes, and at Noph, and in the land of Pathros, saying,
2 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, You have seen all the evil that I have brought on Jerusalem, and on all the cities of Judah. And, behold! This day they are a ruin, and no one lives in them,
3 because of the evil which they have done, by provoking Me to anger, by going to burn incense, by serving other gods that they did not know, they, you nor your fathers.*(Deut 13:6-11, 29:26*)
4 And, I sent to you all my servants the prophets, rising early and sending, saying, Oh, do not do this abominable thing which I hate!
5 But they did not listen nor bow their ear, to turn from their evil, not to burn incense to other gods.
6 For this reason My fury and My anger poured out and burned in the cities of Judah, and in the streets of Jerusalem. And they are for a waste and for a desolation as at this day.
7 And now so says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Why do you work great evil against your souls, to cut off from you man and woman, child and suckling, out of Judah, not leaving to yourselves a remnant,
8 to provoke Me to wrath with the works of your hands, burning incense to other gods in the land of Egypt, there where you have gone to reside, that I might cut you off, and that you might be a curse and a reproach among all the nations of the earth?
9 Have you forgotten the evilness of your fathers, and the evilness of the kings of Judah, and the evilness of his wives, and your own evilness, and the wickedness of your wives, which they have done in the land of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem?
10 They are not crushed to this day, nor have they feared, nor walked in My Torah[2], nor in My statutes which I have set before you and before your fathers.
11 So YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel says this: Behold, I will set My face against you for evil, and to cut off all Judah.
12 And I will take the remnant of Judah who have set their faces to go into the land of Egypt, to reside there; and they shall all be consumed and fall in the land of Egypt. They shall be consumed by the sword, and by the famine. They shall die, from the least even to the greatest, by the sword, and by the famine, and they shall be a curse, a horror, and a shame, and a reproach.
13 For I will punish those who dwell in the land of Egypt, as I have punished Jerusalem, by the sword, by the famine, and by the plague,
14 so that none of the remnant of Judah which has gone into the land of Egypt, to reside there, will be a refugee, or a survivor, or turn back to the land of Judah to which they are lifting up their soul to return back to

[1] This is the last message of Jeremiah from YHWH to the exiles living in Egypt and it was the same message that he always preached that you cannot serve YHWH through paganism and any form of idolatry will only bring punishment.

[2] Even though they now resided in Egypt Yahweh still required them to obey the Torah, which teaches how to love and worship Elohim and how to love our neighbor as ourselves.

live there, for none shall return, except those who escape.
15 Then all the men who knew that their wives had burned incense to other gods, and all the women who stood by, a great assembly, even all the people who lived in the land of Egypt, in Pathros, answered Jeremiah saying,
16 As for the Word that you have spoken to us in the name of YAHWEH, we will not listen to you.
17 But we will certainly do whatever thing goes out of our own mouth, to burn incense to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings to her, as we have done, we and our fathers, our kings, and our rulers, in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem[1]. And we had plenty of food, and were well, and saw no evil.
18 But when we stopped burning incense to the queen of heaven, and pouring out drink offerings to her, we have lacked all things, and have been devoured by the sword and by the famine.
19 And when we burned incense to the queen of heaven and poured out drink offerings to her, and did we also, without our men make her cakes to worship her image, and pour out drink offerings to her[2]?
20 Then Jeremiah said to all the people; to the men, and to the women, and to all the people who were answering,
21 The incense that you burned in the cities of Judah and in the streets of Jerusalem, you, and your fathers, your kings, and your rulers, and the people of the land, did not YAHWEH remember them? Yea, it came into His heart.
22 And YAHWEH could no longer bear because of the evil of your doings, because of the detestable things you have committed. For this reason your land is a waste, and a horror, and a curse, without one living in it, as at this day.
23 Because you have burned incense, and because you have sinned against YAHWEH, and have not obeyed the voice of YAHWEH, in His Torah, or in His statutes; and because you did not walk in His testimonies, therefore this evil has happened to you, as at this day.
24 Jeremiah also said to all the people, and to all the women, Hear the Word of YAHWEH, all Judah in the land of Egypt.
25 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, saying: You and your wives have both spoken with your mouths, and fulfilled with your hands, saying, surely we will perform our vows that we have vowed, to burn incense to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings to her. Certainly, you lift up your vows and certainly, you perform your vows.
26 So hear the Word of YAHWEH, all Judah who reside in the land of Egypt: Behold, I have sworn by My great name, says YAHWEH, that My name shall no more be named in the mouth of any man of Judah[3] in all the land of Egypt, saying, Adonai YAHWEH lives. *(Ezek 20:9)*
27 Behold, I will watch over them for evil, and not for good; and all the men of Judah in the land of Egypt shall be

[1] Ezek 8:9-18

[2] The prideful self-willed people refused to obey Yahweh, but wanted to keep their own pagan traditions (Jud 21:25). Everyone was doing what was right in their own eyes and even the great calamity that just occurred did not bring them to repentance, but actually made them more obstinate against YHWH (Rev 16:9).

[3] It is quite telling that after this point Jews stopped using and pronouncing verbally the sacred name of YAHWEH even up to today.

destroyed by the sword, and by the famine, until they come to an end.

28 And he who escapes the sword shall return out of the land of Egypt to the land of Judah, few in number[1]. And all the remnant of Judah who have gone into the land of Egypt, to reside there, shall know whose word shall stand, theirs or Mine.

29 And this shall be a sign to you, says YAHWEH, that I will punish you in this place, so that you may know that My Words surely shall stand against you for evil:

30 So says YAHWEH, Behold, I am giving Pharaoh-Hophra, king of Egypt, into the hand of his enemies, and into the hand of those who seek his soul, even as I gave Zedekiah, king of Judah, into the hand of Nebuchad-nezzar, the king of Babylon, his enemy that sought his soul.

Chapter 45

1 The Word that Jeremiah the prophet spoke to Baruch, the son of Neriah, when he had written these words in a writing from the mouth of Jeremiah, in the fourth year of Jehoiakim, the son of Josiah, king of Judah, saying,

2 So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, to you, O Baruch:

3 You said, Woe is me now, for YAHWEH has added grief to my pain; I fainted in my groaning, and I find no rest.

4 So you shall say to him, YAHWEH says this: Behold, I am tearing down what I have built; and I am pulling up what I have planted, even all the land itself to Me.

5 And do you seek great things for yourself? Do not seek them. For, behold, I will bring evil on all flesh, declares YAHWEH. But I will give your soul to you for a prize, there on all the places where you go[2].

Chapter 46

1 The Word of YAHWEH which was to Jeremiah the prophet against the nations[3]:

2 against Egypt, against the army of Pharaoh-Necho, king of Egypt, which was by the river Euphrates in Carchemish[4], which Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, struck in the fourth year of Jehoiakim, the son of Josiah, king of Judah:

3 Set in order the buckler and shield, and draw near to battle.

4 Harness the horses, and mount, O horsemen. Yea, stand with helmets, polish the spears, put on coats of armor.

5 Why have I seen that they are afraid and turned backward? And their mighty ones are beaten down, and have fled for refuge, and do not look back. Terror is all around, says YAHWEH.

6 Do not let the swift flee away, nor the mighty man escape. They stumbled and fell to the north, by the side of the river Euphrates.

7 Who is this rising up like the Nile, whose waters surge about like the rivers?

8 Egypt rises up like the Nile, and his waters surge about like the rivers. And he says, I will go up and will cover the

---

1 Throughout most of the bible it is always only a small remnant that survives.

2 Baruch is told not to have self-pity for himself, but to think about the great heartache that Judah's sins have brought and that he was spared by YHWH's grace.

3 Jeremiah 46-49 are prophecies against the nations around Israel whose purpose was to destroy her.

4 Means fortress of Chemosh who was the main false deity of Moab 2Kgs 23:13.

earth; I will destroy the city and its
people.
9 Come up, horses; and rage,
chariots! And let the mighty men come
forth, the Ethiopians and the Libyans
who handle the shield, and the
Lydians who handle and tread the
bow.
10 For this is the day of Adonai,
YAHWEH of Hosts, a day of
vengeance, that He may avenge
Himself of His foes. And the sword
shall devour, and be filled to
satisfaction, and made drunk with
their blood, for there is a sacrifice to
Adonai, YAHWEH of Hosts in the
north country by the river Euphrates.
11 Go up into Gilead and take balm,
O virgin daughter of Egypt. In vain
you shall use many remedies; healing
is not for you.
12 The nations have heard of your
shame, and your cry has filled the
land. For the mighty man has
stumbled against the mighty; they
have fallen together, both of them.
13 The Word that YAHWEH spoke
to Jeremiah the prophet of the coming
of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of
Babylon, to strike the land of Egypt[1].
14 Declare it in Egypt, and make it
heard in Migdol, and make it heard in
Noph and in Tahpanhes; say, Stand
fast and get yourself ready, for the
sword shall devour all around you.
15 Why is your mighty one swept
away? He did not stand because
YAHWEH thrust him down.
16 He made many stumble; yea, one
fell on his neighbor. And they said,
Arise, and let us go again to our own
people, and to the land of our birth,
away from the oppressing sword.
17 They cried there, Pharaoh, king of
Egypt, is an empty roar; he has passed
the appointed time[2].
18 As I live, says the King whose
name is YAHWEH of Hosts, Surely as
Tabor is among the mountains, and as
Carmel[3] is by the sea, he shall come.
19 O daughter dwelling in Egypt, get
ready to go into captivity. For Noph
shall be a waste, and set afire, without
inhabitant.
20 Egypt is a beautiful heifer[4], but
coming a stinger comes out of the
north.
21 Also her hired ones are in the
midst of her like calves of the stall; for
they also have turned back, fleeing
together. They did not stand because
the day of their calamity had come on
them, the time of their punishment.
22 Its sound is like a serpent's going,
for they shall go in force, and come
against her with axes, like
woodcutters.
23 They have cut down her forest,
says YAHWEH, though it cannot be
searched, because they are more than
the locusts, and there is no number to
them.
24 The daughter of Egypt shall be
ashamed. She shall be delivered into
the hand of the people of the north[5].
25 YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim
of Israel, says, Behold, I am punishing
the multitudes of No, and Pharaoh,
and Egypt, with her gods and her

---

1 Nebuchadnezzar attacked and conquered Egypt in 568-67 B.C.

2 The word used for appointed time is "*moed*" and is the word used for the Hebrew Holy Days.

3 Mount Tabor located just north of the Jezreel valley, and Mount Carmel on the northern shore of the Mediterranean Sea is where many miracles and battles of Israel took place.

4 An idiomatic expression to Egyptian bull worship.

5 Many times in scripture where the phrase "*the daughter of*" appears it is referencing a dual prophecy and many times has end time implications.

kings, even Pharaoh and those who trust in him.

26 And I will deliver them into the hand of those who seek their lives, and into the hand of Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, and into the hand of his servants. And afterward it will be inhabited, as in the days of old, declares YAHWEH[1].

27 But you, do not fear, O My servant Jacob; and do not be afraid, O Israel. For, behold, I am saving you from afar off, and your seed from the land of their exile. And Jacob shall return and be in rest and at ease, and none shall make afraid.

28 You shall not fear, O Jacob My servant, says YAHWEH, for I am with you. For I will make a full end of all the nations there where I have driven you. But I will not make a full end of you, but I will correct you justly, and by no means will I leave you unpunished[2]. *(Jer 30:10-11)*

Chapter 47

1 The Word of YAHWEH that was to Jeremiah the prophet against the Philistines, before Pharaoh struck Gaza[3].

2 So says YAHWEH, Behold, waters rise up out of the north and shall become an overflowing torrent. And it shall overflow the land and all its fullness; the city, and those who dwell in it. Then the men shall cry, and all the people of the land shall wail.

3 At the noise of the stamping of the hooves of his strong horses, at the rushing of his chariots, the rumbling of his wheels, the fathers shall not look back to their sons, because of feebleness of hands;

4 because of the day that comes to destroy all the Philistines, to cut off from Tyre and Sidon every survivor who helps. For YAHWEH will plunder the Philistines, the rest of the coast of Caphtor.

5 Baldness has come on Gaza; Ashkelon is ruined. O remnant of their valley, until when will you cut off yourself[4]?

6 O sword of YAHWEH, until when will you not be quiet? Put yourself into your sheath; rest, and be still[5].

7 How can you be quiet, since YAHWEH has given it a command? He has set it there against Ashkelon, and against the seashore.

Chapter 48

1 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, against Moab[6]: Woe to Nebo, for it is ravaged! Kiriathaim is put to shame and captured. The fortress is put to shame and razed.

2 Moab shall not still be praised. In

1 A clear messianic reference to the future glory of Egypt in the Kingdom of YHWH Is 19:19-25.

2 Clearly showing the end time reference of the chapter as it ends with Israel's restoration to the land of Israel and peace with Egypt.

3 The literal fulfillment of this happened with Pharaoh Necho in around 609 B.C. However, there could also be a dual end time meaning to the modern day Palestinians living in Gaza.

4 If this is relating to the first destruction by Pharaoh Necho then the baldness is self made as a sign of mourning. If it is referring to an end time fulfillment it could be referencing some sort of nuclear device being detonated.

5 Ezek 21:3-5, 9-11, 14-16 Showing end time implications.

6 Josephus states (*Antiquities 10.9.7)* that this prophecy concerning Moab's judgment happened by Nebuchadnezzar in the 23rd yr of his reign in 582 B.C. Nebo and Kiriathaim are 2 cities that were allotted to Reuben (Num 32:3, 37=38).

Heshbon they have plotted evil against
it, saying, Come and let us cut it off as
a nation. And you shall be silenced, O
madmen; a sword will go after you,
3 a voice of crying from Horonaim,
plundering and great ruin!
4 Moab is broken up; her little ones
have caused a cry to be heard.
5 For in the ascent to Luhith, they
shall go up with great weeping. For in
the descent to Horonaim, the enemies
have heard a cry of ruin.
6 Flee! Save your lives, and be like a
bare juniper in the wilderness.
7 For because you have trusted in
your works and in your treasures, you
shall also be captured. And Chemosh
shall go into exile; both his priests and
his rulers.
8 And a plunderer shall come on
every city, and no city shall escape.
Also the valley shall perish, and the
plain shall be destroyed, as YAHWEH
has spoken.
9 Give wings to Moab, for it will fly
away; and its cities shall be a desert,
without an inhabitant in them.
10 Cursed is he who does the work of
YAHWEH deceitfully, and cursed is
he who keeps back his sword from
blood.
11 Moab has been at ease from his
youth, and he has settled on his lees
and has not been emptied from vessel
to vessel. He has not gone into
captivity. So his taste remains in him,
and his scent is not changed.
12 So, behold, the days come,
declares YAHWEH, that I will send
pourers to him, who shall pour him
off, and shall empty his vessels, and
break their jars in pieces.
13 And Moab shall be ashamed of
Chemosh, as the house of Israel was
ashamed of their confidence in
Bethel[1].
14 How do you say, We are mighty
and strong men for war?
15 Moab is ravaged, and her cities
have come up. And his chosen young
men have gone down to the slaughter[2],
says the King whose name is
YAHWEH of Hosts[3].
16 The calamity of Moab is near to
come, and his evil hurries fast.
17 All who are around him mourn for
him. And all who know his name, say,
How the strong staff is broken, the
beautiful rod[4]!
18 O dweller, daughter of Dibon,
come down from glory and sit in thirst.
For a ravager of Moab shall come on
you; he has ruined your strongholds.
19 O dweller of Aroer, stand by the
way and watch. Ask him who flees and
her who escapes; say, What has
happened?
20 Moab is put to shame, for it is
torn down. Wail and cry! Tell it in
Arnon that Moab is ravaged.
21 And judgment has come to the
plain country, on Holon, and on
Jahazah, and on Mephaath,
22 and on Dibon, and on Nebo, and
on Beth-Diblathaim,
23 and on Kiriathaim, and on Beth-
Gamul, and on Beth-Meon,
24 and on Kerioth, and on Bozrah,
and on all the cities of the land of
Moab, far and near.

1 Chemosh was the national deity of Moab as where Jeroboam put a golden calf in Bethel (1Kgs 12:28-29).

2 War here is compared to a sacrificial animal going to be slaughtered (Is 34:6).

3 This chapter names the false deities of Moab compared to the only true Elohim whose name is referenced almost 7,000 times in scripture as YAHWEH.

4 The staff and Rod is referring to a scepter, which is a symbol of authority and dominion.

25 The horn of Moab is cut off, and his arm is broken, says YAHWEH.

26 Make Him drunk, for he magnified himself against YAHWEH. Moab also shall wallow in his vomit, and he also shall be a mockery.

27 For was not Israel a mockery to you? Was he found among thieves? Forever since you spoke of him, you lamented.

28 Dwellers of Moab, leave the cities, and live in the rock, and be like the dove who makes her nest in the sides of the mouth of the pit.

29 We have heard the pride of Moab, he is exceeding proud; his loftiness, and his pride, and his arrogance, and his elevated heart.

30 I have known, declares YAHWEH, his wrath, and it is not so; his lie, they have not done so.

31 On account of this I will wail for Moab, and I will cry out for all Moab, and he shall mourn for the men of Kirheres.

32 O vine of Sibmah, I will weep for you more than the weeping of Jazer. Your plants have crossed the sea; they reach to the sea of Jazer. A ravager has fallen on your harvest, and on your grape crop.

33 And joy and gladness is taken from the plentiful field, and from the land of Moab. And I have caused wine to cease from the winepresses. None shall tread the grapes with shouting; their shouting shall be no shouting.

34 From the city of Heshbon to Elealeh, to Jahaz, they have given their voice, from Zoar to Horonaim, like a heifer three years old. For the waters of Nimrim also shall be desolate.

35 Also I will cause him who offers in the high places to cease in Moab, says YAHWEH, and he who burns incense to his gods.

36 On account of this my heart shall mourn for Moab, like flutes[1]; and my heart shall sound like flutes for the men of Kirheres, because the riches that he has gotten have perished.

37 For every head shall be bald, and every beard clipped. On all the hands shall be cuttings, and sackcloth on the loins[2].

38 On all Moab's housetops, and in its streets, is wailing for all. For I have broken Moab like a vessel; no pleasure is in it, says YAHWEH.

39 They shall howl, saying, How it is broken down! How has Moab turned his back in shame! So Moab shall be a mockery, and a terror to all those around him.

40 For so says YAHWEH: Behold, he shall fly like an eagle, and shall spread his wings toward Moab.

41 Kerioth is captured, and the strongholds are seized. And the mighty men's hearts in Moab shall be at that day like the heart of a woman being distressed.

42 And Moab shall be destroyed from being a people, because he has magnified himself against YAHWEH.

43 Fear, and the pit, and the snare, shall be on you, O one living in Moab, declares YAHWEH.

44 He who flees from the dread shall fall into the pit. And he who goes up out of the pit shall be taken in the snare. For I will bring it on Moab, the year of their punishment, declares YAHWEH.

45 Those who fled stood powerless in the shadow of Heshbon, for a fire shall come out of Heshbon, and a flame out of the midst of Sihon, and shall devour the corner of Moab, and the crown of the head of the sons of tumult.

46 Woe to you, Moab! The people of Chemosh have perished. For your sons

---

1 Flutes were played at a funeral dirge

2 All signs of mourning

are taken away into exile, and your daughters into exile.

47 But I will restore the prisoners of Moab in the end of the days, declares YAHWEH. So far is the judgment of Moab[1].

Chapter 49

1 So says YAHWEH to the sons of Ammon: Has Israel no sons? Or has he no heir? Why does their king inherit Gad, and his people dwell in its cities[2]?

2 So, behold, the days come, declares YAHWEH, that I will cause a shout of war to be heard in Rabbah of the sons of Ammon. And it shall be a heap, a ruin, and her daughter villages shall be burned with fire. Then Israel shall inherit his inheritance, says YAHWEH.

3 Wail, O Heshbon, for Ai is spoiled! Cry, daughters of Rabbah, gird yourselves with sackcloth; mourn, and run to and fro in the walls. For their king shall go into exile, his priests and his rulers together.

4 Why do you glory in your valleys, your flowing valley, O backsliding daughter? She trusted in her treasures, saying, Who shall come to me?

5 Behold, I will bring a dread on you, declares YAHWEH of Hosts, from all those who are around you. And you shall be driven out, each man before him. And there shall be none to gather up the runaways.

6 And after this I will bring again the prisoners of the sons of Ammon, declares YAHWEH.

7 So says YAHWEH of Hosts concerning Edom: Is wisdom no more in Teman? Has counsel perished from the prudent? Has their wisdom vanished?

8 Flee, turn back, go deep to dwell, O people of Dedan. For I will bring the calamity of Esau on him in the time I will visit him.

9 If the grape gatherers come to you, would they not leave gleanings? If thieves come by night, will they destroy until they have enough?

10 But I have stripped Esau, I have uncovered his secret places, and he shall not be able to hide himself. His seed is ravaged, also his brothers and his neighbors, and he is not[3].

11 Leave your orphans, I will keep them alive. And let your widows trust in Me.

12 For so says YAHWEH: Behold, those whose judgment was not to drink of the cup, surely they have drunk. And are you to be entirely acquitted? You shall not be acquitted, but surely you shall drink. *(Jer 25:15)*

13 For I have sworn by Myself, declares YAHWEH, that Bozrah shall become a ruin, a reproach, a waste, and a curse. And all its cities shall be wastes forever. *(Is 34:6)*

14 I have heard a message from YAHWEH, and a herald is sent to the nations: Gather together and come against her, and rise up to the battle.

15 For, behold, I will make you small among the nations, despised among men.

16 Your dreadfulness has deceived you, the pride of your heart, you who live in the clefts of the rock, who hold the height of the hill. Though you should make your nest as high as the eagle, I will bring you down from there, declares YAHWEH.

17 And Edom shall be a ruin, everyone who goes by it shall be

1 Although the judgment is very severe, there is also a promise for end time restoration in the kingdom.

2 Amos 1:13-15

3 Usually grape gatherers and even thieves will leave something behind, but in this case Edom is completely destroyed.

amazed and shall hiss at all its plagues.
18 As in the overthrow of Sodom and Gomorrah, and its neighbor, declares YAHWEH, no man shall remain there, a son of man shall not live in it.
19 Behold, he shall come up like a lion from the swelling of Jordan against the home of the strong. But I will suddenly make him run away from it. And who is the chosen one I shall appoint over it? For who is like Me? And who will summon Me? And who then is a shepherd who will stand before Me?
20 So then, hear the counsel of YAHWEH which He has planned against Edom, and His purposes which He has purposed against those living in Teman: Surely they shall drag them, the least of the flock. Surely He shall make their dwellings desolate over them.
21 The earth is shaken at the noise of their fall. When they cried, the noise of it was heard in the Red Sea.
22 Behold, he shall come up and fly like the eagle and spread his wings over Bozrah. And at that day the heart of the mighty men of Edom shall be like the heart of a woman being distressed.
23 Concerning Damascus[1]: Hamath and Arpad are put to shame, for they have heard bad news, they are melted; anxiety is in the sea, it cannot be quiet.
24 Damascus has become feeble; she has turned to flee, and trembling has seized her; anguish and sorrows have taken her like a woman giving birth[2].
25 How is the city of praise not forsaken, the city of my joy!
26 So her young men shall fall in her streets, and all the men of war shall be silenced in that day, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

[1] The capital of Syria
[2] Is 17:1-3

27 And I will kindle a fire in the wall of Damascus; and it shall burn up the palaces of Ben-Hadad.
28 So says YAHWEH concerning Kedar, and concerning the kingdoms of Hazor which Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, struck: Rise up, go up to Kedar, and strip the sons of the east[3].
29 They shall take their tents and their flocks. They shall take their curtains, and all their vessels, and their camels, to themselves. And they shall cry to them, Terror is all around.
30 Flee, go far away, go deep to dwell, ones living in Hazor, declares YAHWEH. For Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, has taken counsel against you, and has plotted a scheme against you.
31 Rise up, go up to the nation at ease, who dwells securely, declares YAHWEH; neither gates nor bars are on it, and they dwell alone.
32 And their camels shall be a prize, and the multitude of their cattle a prey. And I will scatter them to all winds, those who cut the corners of their beards[4]. And I will bring their calamity from all sides of it, says YAHWEH.
33 And Hazor shall be a dwelling for jackals, a ruin forever. No man shall live there, nor any son of man stay in it.
34 The Word of YAHWEH that came to Jeremiah the prophet against Elam[5] in the beginning of the reign of Zedekiah, king of Judah, saying,
35 So says YAHWEH of Hosts,

[3] This is not the Hazor in Israel that Yahoshua burned, but a region of nomadic desert tribes that Nebuchadnezzar tried to bring under his control in 599 B.C.
[4] These were Arabian Arabs who wore goat tee beards a practice Yahweh forbid because they did so to honor their devil goat deity Jer 9:26, Lev 19:27, 21:5, 2Chron 11:15)

Behold I will break the bow of Elam, the chief of their might.

36 And I will bring the four winds from the four ends of the heavens on Elam, and will scatter them toward all those winds. And there shall be no nation where the outcasts of Elam shall not come[1].

37 And I will cause Elam to be afraid before their enemies and before those seeking their life. And I will bring evil on them, the burning of My anger, declares YAHWEH. And I will send the sword after them until I have destroyed them.

38 And I will set My throne in Elam, and I will destroy the king and the rulers from there, declares YAHWEH.

39 But it shall happen in the latter days; I will turn back the captivity of Elam, declares YAHWEH[2].

Chapter 50

1 The Word that YAHWEH spoke against Babylon, against the land of the Chaldeans by Jeremiah the prophet[3]:

2 Declare among the nations, and make them hear, and lift up a banner[4]. Make them hear, do not hide it; say, Babylon is captured, Bel is put to shame, Merodach[5] is broken in pieces, her images are put to shame, her idols are broken in pieces.

3 For a nation comes up against her from the north, which shall make her land a desert. Yea, no one shall dwell in it. They shall flee, they shall go, both man and animal[6]. *(Jer 50:39-42)*

4 In these days, and at that time[7], the sons of Israel shall come, declares YAHWEH, they and the sons of Judah together, going and weeping; they shall go and seek YAHWEH their Elohim[8]. *(Hos 1:11 Is 11:12)*

5 They shall ask the way to Zion with their faces pointing there, saying,

---

5 Located in Persia, which is modern day Iran.

1 There is one end time beast mentioned in Daniel 2:31-33, that consists of 4 different empires. The first is Babylon, who has enriched the earth with wealth and is the richest nation on earth and also the world policeman. Second is Medio/Persia made up of modern day Russia and Iran. The third entity of this beast is Greece envisioned by the EU and the fourth is world government. For more detail see the book of Daniel.

2 As with Egypt and Moab there is restoration of Elam in the millennial kingdom.

3 Whereas chapters 45-49 have dual fulfillment to the countries at hand, chapter 50 and 51 almost exclusively are about end time Babylon and its complete destruction. When ancient Babylon was taken over by Persia there was no war or destruction as mentioned in these 2 chapters. King Cyprus simply had his army divert the waterway coming under the wall of the great wall of Babylon and then his men went into the city by night under the dried waterbed. Babylon was taken without massive fighting or killing and no fleeing of the Jewish residents as outlined in these two chapters. See note on Is 44:28 & 45:1 about king Cyrus.

4 A messianic phrase showing the time frame is close to the messiah to appear.

5 Bel or baal means master and was a title given to Merodach, the chief deity of the Babylonians.

6 Babylonian's attack is most complete. Also note that end time Babylon is a land not simply a system or religion.

7 A Jewish idiom used almost exclusively for end times and millennial settings.

8 This has never happened and will only happen when the Messiah returns (Ezek 37:15-28). When Cyrus allowed the return to build the sanctuary of YHWH in 538 B.C only Judah returned as the Northern House of Israel had gone into captivity almost 200 yrs earlier. The northern tribes have never returned and these verses are clearly end time, Jer 31:7-9.

Come and let us join ourselves to YAHWEH in an everlasting covenant never to be forgotten[1].

6 My people are lost sheep, their shepherds have caused them to go astray; they turned them away on the mountains, they have gone from mountain to hill; they have forgotten their resting place.

7 All who have found them have devoured them. And their foes said, We are not guilty, because they have sinned against YAHWEH, the habitation of righteousness, and YAHWEH, their fathers' hope.

8 Flee from the midst of Babylon, and go out of the land of the Chaldeans[2], and be as the he-goats before the flocks[3]. *(Rev 18:4, Jer 51:6)*

9 For, behold, I am stirring up and bringing up a company of great nations[4] from a northern land against Babylon. And they shall array themselves against her. She shall be captured there; their arrows shall be as those of a mighty, skillful man; they shall not return empty.

10 And Chaldea shall be a prize; all who plunder her shall be satisfied, declares YAHWEH.

11 Because you rejoice, because you exult, O destroyers of My inheritance, because you are fat like the heifer in grass, and neigh like strong ones[5],

12 your mother shall be deeply ashamed, she who bore you shall turn pale. Behold, the last of the nations shall be a wilderness, a dry land, and a desert[6].

13 Because of the wrath of YAHWEH, it shall not be inhabited, but all of it shall be a waste. Everyone who goes by Babylon shall be amazed and hiss at all her plagues[7].

14 Put yourselves in order against Babylon all around. All you who tread a bow, shoot at her. Do not spare arrows, for she has sinned against YAHWEH. *(Is 13:18)*

15 Shout against her all around. She has given her hand, her foundations have fallen, her walls have been thrown down, for it is the vengeance of YAHWEH. Take vengeance on her. As she has done, do to her[8]. *(Rev 18:6)*

16 Cut off the sower from Babylon, and the one handling the sickle in the time of harvest. They shall turn from a sword of the oppressor, each one to his

---

1 The end time restoration of all of Israel and the fulfilling of the New Covenant Jer 31:1, 31-34.

2 Chaldean means "*astrologer*". End time Babylon is into astrology and fortune telling

3 The first of 7 direct commands to the people of YHWH to flee the land of Babylon before it gets destroyed. Here the ones who leave early are compared to a he-goat that leads a flock to green pasture and prepares the way for the flock to follow.

4 Although Media and Persia will be the two main attackers, there will be a bigger coalition to help. Again, this never happened in the ancient attack on Babylon.

5 Because of end time Babylon's wealth and military might she has become lazy and overweight.

6 Contrary to ancient Babylon, end time Babylon is not an ancient country, but is a relatively new superpower of the world.

7 Whereas all of the other countries around Israel (Jer chapters 45-49) even including Jerusalem are promised restoration in the end times, end time Babylon is not, but is prophesied to be desolate forever. This cannot be speaking of ancient Babylon as in the millennial kingdom the borders will go as far as ancient Iraq, Gen 15:18.

8 Babylon although always a physical land is also represented by world democracy and a trading system inspired by Satan to gain physical wealth but oppress most in the process. In the end time YHWH will take the combined punishment throughout time and condense it all into the full destruction of end time Babylon, Rev 18:20, 23.

people. And they shall flee, each one to his own land[1]. *(Is 13:14)*

17 Israel is a scattered sheep, driven away by lions. First, the king of Assyria devoured him. And last, this King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon crunched his bones.

18 So YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, says this: Behold, I am punishing the king of Babylon and his land as I have punished the king of Assyria.

19 And I will again bring Israel to his home, and he shall feed on Carmel and Bashan, and his soul shall be satisfied on Mount Ephraim and Gilead.

20 In those days, and at that time, states YAHWEH, the iniquity of Israel shall be sought for, and it is not; and the sins of Judah, and they will not be found; for I will pardon those whom I leave as a remnant[2].

21 Go up against the land of Merathaim[3], against it and against the dwellers of Pekod[4]. Waste and destroy after them, says YAHWEH, and do according to all that I have commanded you.

22 A sound of battle is in the land and of great ruin.

23 How the hammer[5] of all the earth is cut off and broken! How Babylon has become a ruin among the nations!

24 I have laid a trap for you, and you also are captured, Babylon, and you did not know. You were found and also caught, because you stirred up yourself against YAHWEH.

25 YAHWEH has opened His armory and has brought out the weapons of His fury. For this is a work of Adonai, YAHWEH of Hosts, in the land of the Chaldeans.

26 Come against her from the end, open her granaries, pile her up as heaps and utterly destroy her. Do not let a remnant be left[6]. *(Jer 51:37-43)*

27 Put the sword to all her bulls, let them go down to the slaughter. Woe to them! For their day has come, the time of their punishment.

28 The voice of those who flee and escape out of the land of Babylon to declare in Zion the vengeance of YAHWEH our Elohim, the vengeance of His sanctuary[7]. *(Is 47:6, Is 48:20)*

29 Make the archers hear against Babylon. All you who tread a bow camp against it all around. Let none of them escape. Repay her according to her work, according to all that she has done, do to her. For she has been proud against YAHWEH, against the Holy One of Israel.

30 So her young men shall fall in the streets, and all her men of war shall be silenced in that day, declares YAHWEH[8].

31 Behold, I am against you, O proud

---

1 Babylon is a great melting pot made up of immigrants (Rev 17:15) of many nations, but as she is being destroyed most are leaving and going back to their original home lands.

2 Clearly an end time fulfillment as due to the scattering of the kings of verse 17, Judah and Israel had been in Diaspora for more than 2500 and 2700 yrs respectively.

3 Merathaim means double bitterness as Babylon's punishment is doubled to her, Rev 18:6.

4 Pekod means visitation or punishment

5 This Hebrew phrase literally means a "*superpower or world policeman*". One who pounds other nations. Only the USA can fit this scripture in the times we are living in as they have attacked many nations in the last 20 yrs and are the only world superpower. However, that will change when Babylon is destroyed.

6 Babylon's destruction is complete and not even one person will be left Jer 50:39-40.

7 Due to Babylon's immoral lifestyle they have corrupted the very people of YHWH. Those who are blessed to escape are told to share in Jerusalem, the vengeance that YHWH has for those who are being lost in Babylon and give a warning to stay away.

one[1], says Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts,
for your day has come, the time I will
punish you.
32 And the proud one shall stumble
and fall, and none shall raise him up.
And I will kindle a fire in his cities,
and it shall burn up everything all
around him.
33 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, The
sons of Israel and the sons of Judah
are oppressed together[2]. Yea, all who
captured them held them fast, they
refused to let them go.
34 Their Redeemer is strong,
YAHWEH of Hosts is His name.
surely He shall plead their cause, so
that He may give rest to the land, and
make to tremble the dwellers of
Babylon.
35 A sword is on the Chaldeans,
states YAHWEH, and on those living
in Babylon, and on her rulers, and on
her wise men.
36 A sword is on the liars, and they
shall become fools; a sword is on her
mighty men, and they shall be broken.
37 A sword is on his horses and his
chariots, and to all the mixed people in
her midst[3]. And they shall become as
women. A sword is to her treasuries,
and they shall be robbed.
38 A drought is on her waters, and
they shall be dried up. For it is the
land of idols, and they boast
themselves in idols[4].
39 So the beasts of the desert shall
dwell there with jackals. And the
daughters of the ostrich shall dwell in
her again. And it shall not again have
anyone in it forever; it shall not be
lived in from generation and
generation.
40 As Elohim overthrew Sodom and
Gomorrah and their neighbors, states
YAHWEH, so no man shall live there,
nor shall a son of man stay in it.[5] *(Is
13:19-20)*
41 Behold, a people shall come from
the north, and a great nation, and
many kings shall be stirred up from
the farthest parts of the earth. (Jer
50:3, 9)
42 They lay hold of a bow and a
javelin, they shall be cruel and will
show no mercy. Their voice shall roar
like the sea, and arrayed like a man for
the battle, they shall ride on horses
against you, O daughter of Babylon[6].
43 The king of Babylon has heard
their report, and his hands became
limp; anguish took hold of him, pangs
like a woman giving birth.
44 Behold, he shall come up like a
lion from the swelling of Jordan
against the home of the brave. But I

---

8 End time Babylon is the world's greatest military might at this time (Hab 1:6-10), but when judgment comes it will not help them.

1 One of Babylon's great sins is pride due to her great wealth and military might Is 47:5-11

2 Whereas in ancient Babylon only Judah was taken captive there as Israel was taken captive to Parthia and others places, but in end time Babylon both Judah and Israel are both dwelling there. Only the United sates of America could fit this prophecy as around 6 million Jews live in America and probably close to 100 million others who have Israelite origins, Jer 50:4-6, 18-20.

3 End time Babylon is a great melting pot (Rev 17:15) ancient Babylon was not.

4 Idolatry with pride are the 2 great sins of end time Babylon. As where in the USA people think freedom of religion is a good thing it is an abomination to YHWH to bring in and freely allow all the false deities of every pagan religion into your nation. There is also great idolatry in the USA to mammon and wealth. On the US dollar bill it states "*In god we trust*". God is the name of the Babylonian deity of fortune, see Is 65:11.

5 Babylon's destruction is sure and complete.

6 Whenever the phrase "*daughter of*" is used in scripture it shows that it is not referring to the original entity but another entity with similar characteristics.

will make them suddenly run away
from it. And who is a chosen one I will
appoint over it? For who is like Me?
And who will summon Me? And who
is a shepherd who will stand before
Me?
45 So hear the counsel of YAHWEH
that He has planned against Babylon,
and His purposes which He has
purposed against the land of the
Chaldeans: Surely they shall drag
them, the least of the flock. Surely He
will make their dwelling desolate over
them.
46 At the sound of Babylon's
capture, the earth shall tremble, and a
cry is heard among the nations[1].

Chapter 51

1 So says YAHWEH, Behold, I am
arousing a destroying wind against
Babylon and against those dwelling in
the heart of My foes.
2 And I will send foreigners to
Babylon who will sift her and shall
empty her land[2]. For in the day of evil
they shall be against her all around.
3 Do not let the one treading fully
tread his bow, nor go up in his armor.
And do not spare her young men;
utterly destroy all her army.
4 So the slain shall fall in the land of
the Chaldeans, yea, pierced through in
her streets.
5 For neither Israel nor Judah has
been widowed by his Elohim, by
YAHWEH of Hosts, though their land
was filled with guilt against the Holy
One of Israel.
6 Flee from the midst of Babylon;
yea, each man deliver his soul. Do not
be silenced in her iniquity. For it is the
time of the vengeance of YAHWEH.
He will give her a just recompense. He
will repay her[3]. *(Jer 51:9, 45 Rev 18:4)*
7 Babylon was a golden cup in the
hand of YAHWEH, making all the
earth drunk. The nations have drunk
of her wine, therefore the nations are
mad[4]. *(Rev 17:2-4, Rev 18:3, 6)*
8 Suddenly Babylon has fallen, and it
is broken. Wail for her, take balm for
her pain, if perhaps she may be healed.
9 We would have healed Babylon,
but she is not healed. Forsake her, and
let us go, each one into his own
country. For her judgment reaches to
the heavens and is lifted up[5] to the
skies. *(Jer 50:8, Jer 51:6, 45)*
10 YAHWEH has brought forth our
righteousness; come and let us declare

---

1 Since Babylon is the world policeman and sole superpower and also the economic steam engine of the world economy (Rev 18:9-18) there will be great fear and anxiety throughout the world at her fall. This never happened when ancient Babylon fell.

2 Literally, she is being winnowed as one separates wheat and chaff. As she lived in luxury (Rev 18:7) where most of the world lived in poverty, now her attackers are going to pillage her wealth and resources.

3 YHWH is now urgently telling His people to flee the land of Babylon as He is ready to destroy it for all of the sins that world democracy has brought on the world throughout the ages. End time Babylon is taking the condensement of all the sins that have piled up through time, Rev 18:20, 23.

4 Just as Nebuchadnezzar and ancient Babylon was a tool in the hand of YHWH to bring punishment on Judah, end time Babylon also had value (golden cup) to YHWH in that they produced bibles worldwide and had many missionaries bringing the good news of Yahshua around the globe, but they became vile and immoral by the very freedoms that enabled them to be of value to YHWH and were the instrument that set up a world government that will enslave the earth, Rev 17:2, Rev 13:3-7.

5 Her judgment is "*lifted up*" to the skies. This word in Hebrew is "*Nasa*", the very name of Babylon's space program Jer 51:53.

in Zion the work of YAHWEH our Elohim.
11 Purify the arrows, fill the shields; YAHWEH has aroused the spirit of the kings of the Medes. For His plan is against Babylon, to destroy it, because it is the vengeance of YAHWEH, the vengeance of His sanctuary.
12 Lift up the banner upon Babylon's walls, make the watch strong; set up the watches, prepare the ambushes. For YAHWEH has both planned and has done that which He spoke against the people of Babylon.
13 O you who live by many waters, rich in treasures, your end has come, the measure of your unjust gain and covetousness[1]. *(Rev 17:1, 15, Rev 18:6)*
14 YAHWEH of Hosts has sworn by Himself, saying, Surely I will fill you with men as with locusts, and they shall lift up a shout against you.
15 He has made the earth by His power, He has established the world by His wisdom, and stretched out the heavens by His understanding.
16 When He gives His voice, a multitude of waters is in the heavens, and He causes the mists to ascend from the end of the earth. He makes lightnings for rain, and brings forth the wind out of His treasuries.
17 Every man is foolish in knowledge, every refiner is put to shame by idols. For his cast image is a lie, and no breath is in them.
18 They are vanity, the work of errors; in the time of their punishment they shall perish.
19 The Portion of Jacob is not like them, for He is the Former of all things, and He is the rod of His inheritance, YAHWEH of Hosts is His name. *(Jer 10:12-16)*
20 You are My war club and weapons of war, for with you I will shatter nations and with you I will destroy kingdoms.
21 And with you I will shatter the horse and his rider, and with you I will shatter the chariot and his charioteer.
22 And I will shatter man and woman with you, and with you I will shatter old and young, and with you I will shatter the young man and the girl.
23 And I will shatter the shepherd and his flock with you. And I will shatter the farmer and his team with you, and with you I will shatter heads and rulers.
24 And I will give to Babylon, and to all the people of Chaldea all the evil that they have done in Zion, before your eyes, declares YAHWEH[2].
25 Behold, I am against you, O destroying mountain[3], declares YAHWEH, who destroys all the earth. And I will stretch out My hand on you, and will roll you down from the rocks, and I will make you a burned mountain,
26 and they shall not take a stone from you for a corner, or a stone for foundations, but you shall be a waste forever, says YAHWEH.
27 Set up a banner in the land. Blow a rams horn among the nations; consecrate nations against her. Make to hear the kingdoms of Ararat, Minni, and Ashkenaz together against her[4],

1 Yahweh's judgment is coming due to Babylon creating a system where she lived in great wealth and luxury as where most of the rest of the earth lived in squalor.

2 Babylon's destruction in part comes by their turning on Israel and causing their harm (Jer 51:35, 49-50).

3 Mountains in scripture are compared to large land masses and power, Rev 17:9.

4 Ararat, Minni and Ashkenaz are lands that were north of Babylon and today comprise the area of Russia and its break off provinces as well as Armenia and possibly part of Turkey.

set a marshal against her. Cause the
horses to come up like rough locusts.
28 Consecrate nations against her,
with the kings of the Medes[1], her
governors and all her rulers, and all
the land of his dominion. *(Dan 8:20)*
29 And the land trembles and
writhes in pain. For every purpose of
YAHWEH shall be done against
Babylon, to make the land of Babylon
a waste without one living in it. *(Je
50:26, 40, Jer 51:37,43,62)*
30 The mighty men of Babylon have
stopped fighting. They have dwelt in
their strongholds; their might has
withered; they became as women; they
have burned their houses, her bars are
broken.
31 A runner shall run to meet a
runner, and a herald to meet a herald,
to announce to the king of Babylon
that his city[2] is captured from end to
end,
32 and that the fords are captured.
And they have burned the reeds with
fire, and the men of war are terrified.
33 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts,
the Elohim of Israel, The daughter of
Babylon is like a grain floor, it is time
to trample her. Yet a little while, and
the time of her harvest will come.
34 Nebuchadnezzar, the king of
Babylon, has devoured us. He has
crushed us. He has made us an empty
vessel. He has swallowed us like a
jackal. He has filled his belly with
delicacies. He has thrown me out.
35 The violence done to me and to
my flesh is on Babylon, the one living
in Zion shall say. And Jerusalem shall
say, My blood shall be on those living
in Chaldea[3]. *(Jer 51:24, 49-50)*
36 So YAHWEH says this: Behold, I
will strive for you and take vengeance
for you. And I will dry up her sea and
make her well dry.
37 And Babylon shall become heaps,
a home for jackals, a horror and a
hissing, without even one inhabitant[4].
38 They shall roar together like
lions, they shall growl like lions' cubs.
39 In their heat, I will make their
feasts, and I will make them drunk so
that they rejoice and sleep a never
ending sleep and never awaken, says
YAHWEH[5].
40 I shall bring them down like
lambs to the slaughter, like rams with
he-goats.
41 How Sheshach is captured! And
how the praise of all the earth is
seized! How Babylon has become a
ruin among the nations[6]!
42 The sea has come up over
Babylon, she is covered with the
multitude of its waves[7].
43 Her cities have become a ruin, a
dry land and a wilderness, a land in
which no man dwells, nor does any
son of man pass by it. *(Jer 50:26,40)*
44 And I will punish Bel[8] in Babylon,
and I will bring forth out of his mouth
that which he has swallowed up. And
the nations shall not flow together any

[1] The Persians and the Medes are the second entity of the beast of Dan 2:31-33. The lands coincide with modern Iran and Russia.

[2] Many times in scripture a capital city is interchangeable with the nation such as Babylon, Rome, Nineveh.

[3] See note on Jer 51:24

[4] Rev 18:2, in the end the land of Babylon will be a deserted wilderness where only demons dwell.

[5] An indication that the destruction may occur in summer time.

[6] Babylon which is the richest and most powerful nation on earth will become desolate so quickly all will be amazed Rev 18:8-10.

[7] Indication that a tsunami may be part of Babylon's judgment.

[8] “Bel” or Baal means master similar to the word “lord” used in English.

more to him[1]; yea, the wall of Babylon shall fall.

45 My people, go out of her midst, and deliver each man his soul from the burning anger of YAHWEH[2].

46 And that your heart not faint, and you fear the report that shall be heard in the land, the report shall come in a year. And after that the report shall come in another year, and there shall be violence[3] in the land, governor against governor.

47 So behold, the days come that I will punish on the idols of Babylon. And all her land shall be put to shame, and all her slain shall fall in her midst.

48 Then the heavens and the earth, and all that is in them, shall shout for Babylon. For the plunderers shall come to her from the north, says YAHWEH.

49 As Babylon is to fall for the slain of Israel, so for Babylon the slain of all the earth shall fall[4]. *(Jer 51:24, 35)*

50 You who have escaped the sword, go away. Do not stand still. Remember (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH afar off, and let Jerusalem come into your mind[5].

51 We have turned pale because we have heard reproach, dishonor has covered our faces. For foreigners have come into the holy places of the house of YAHWEH.

52 So, behold, the days are coming, says YAHWEH, that I will punish on her idols, and through all her land the wounded shall groan.

53 Though Babylon should ascend up to the heavens, and though she should fortify her strong height, plunderers shall come from Me to her, states YAHWEH. *(Jer 51:9)*

54 A sound of a cry from Babylon, and great ruin from the land of Chaldeans!

55 For YAHWEH is stripping Babylon, and the great voice will perish out of her. And her waves will roar like many waters, the noise of their voice is given.

56 Because the plunderer is coming on her, on Babylon, and her mighty men are captured, their bows are shattered; for YAHWEH the El of vengeance, surely shall repay.

57 And I will make her rulers drunk, also her wise ones, her governors, and her rulers, and her prefects; and they shall sleep a never-ending sleep, and not awaken, says the King whose name is YAHWEH of Hosts.

58 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, The broad walls of Babylon shall be utterly laid bare, and her high gates shall be burned with fire. And the peoples shall labor as for vanity, and the peoples as for fire; and they shall be weary.

59 The word which Jeremiah the prophet commanded Seraiah, the son of Neriah, the son of Maaseiah, when he went with Zedekiah, the king of Judah, to Babylon in the fourth year of his reign. And Seraiah was a chief official.

60 So Jeremiah wrote in a book all the evil that should come on Babylon, all these words that are written against Babylon.

61 And Jeremiah said to Seraiah, When you come to Babylon and shall see and shall cry all these words,

62 then you shall say, O YAHWEH,

[1] All the nations assemble in Babylon (Rev 17:18) a possible reference to the United Nations assembly in New York City where all the nations of the earth meet.

[2] Another of the 7 direct commands to flee Babylon or be destroyed. Je 50:8, Je 51:6,9

[3] The word for violence here is "*Hamas*". It is quite interesting that Hamas has most of its fund raising and money sources from the USA.

[4] See note on Jer 51:24, Jer 25:31-33

[5] Those who escape the land of Babylon are to remember the end goal of the restoration of Israel where ever they may flee to when they leave.

You have spoken against this place to cut it off so that none shall remain in it, from man to animal, but it shall be a ruin forever. *(Jer 25:12-13, Jer 50:26)*

63 And it shall be, when you have finished calling out this book, you shall tie a stone to it and throw it into the middle of the Euphrates.

64 And you shall say, In this way Babylon shall sink and shall not rise from the evil that I am bringing on her. And they shall be weary. So far are the words of Jeremiah. *(Rev 18:21)*

Chapter 52

1 Zedekiah was a son of twenty-one years when he began to reign, and he reigned eleven years in Jerusalem. And the name of his mother was Gametal, the daughter of Jeremiah of Libnah. *(2Kgs 24:18)*

2 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, according to all that Jehoiakim had done.

3 For it was because of the anger of YAHWEH in Jerusalem and Judah that Zedekiah rebelled against the king of Babylon, until YAHWEH had cast them out from His face.

4 And in the ninth year of his reign, in the tenth month, in the tenth day of the month, King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon came, he and all his army against Jerusalem, and pitched against it, and built a siege wall against it all around. *(2Kgs 25:8)*

5 And the city came under siege until the eleventh year of King Zedekiah.

6 And in the fourth month, in the ninth of the month, the famine was severe in the city, so that there was no food for the people of the land.

7 Then the city was breached, and all the men of war fled, and went out of the city by night by the way of the gate between the two walls, which was by the king's garden. And the Chaldeans lay all around the city. And they went by the way of the Arabah[1].

8 But the army of the Chaldeans pursued the king and overtook Zedekiah in the Arabah of Jericho. And all his army was scattered from him.

9 And they took the king and carried him up to the king of Babylon, to Riblah in the land of Hamath, where he gave judgments against him.

10 And the king of Babylon slaughtered the sons of Zedekiah before his eyes. He also slaughtered all the rulers of Judah in Riblah.

11 And he blinded the eyes of Zedekiah. And the king of Babylon bound him in copper fetters and carried him to Babylon. And he put him in prison until the day of his death.

12 And in the fifth month, in the tenth of the month, which was the nineteenth year of King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon, Nebuzaradan, the chief of the executioners, who stood before the king of Babylon, came into Jerusalem.

13 And he burned the house of YAHWEH and the king's house. And he burned all the houses of Jerusalem with fire, and all the houses of the great ones. *(2Kgs 25:9)*

14 And all the army of the Chaldeans with the chief of the executioners broke down all the walls of Jerusalem all around.

15 Then Nebuzaradan, the chief of the executioners, exiled some of the poor of the people, and the rest of the people who remained in the city, and those who fell away, who fell to the king of Babylon, and the rest of the multitude.

16 But Nebuzaradan, the chief of the

[1] The Arabah was a dry river bed that led south east to the Dead Sea area and Jericho before it.

executioners, left some of the poor of
the land for vinedressers and for
farmers.
17 Also the Chaldeans broke the
pillars of copper that were in the house
of YAHWEH, and the bases, and the
copper sea in the house of YAHWEH,
and carried all the copper from them
to Babylon.
18 They also took away the pots, and
the shovels, and the snuffers, and the
bowls, and the spoons, and all the
vessels of copper with which they
served.
19 And the chief of the executioners
took away the basins, and the fire-
pans, and the bowls, and the pots, the
lampstands, and the spoons, and the
cups; what was gold, in gold, and what
was silver, in silver,
20 the two pillars, one sea, and
twelve copper bulls that were under
the bases, which King Solomon had
made in the house of YAHWEH. The
weight of the copper of all these
vessels was not known.
21 And the pillars: the height of one
pillar was eighteen cubits, and a line of
twelve cubits went around it, and its
thickness was four fingers; it was
hollow.
22 And a capital of copper was on it;
and the height of one capital was five
cubits, with grating and pomegranates
on the capitals all around, all of
copper. And like these was the second
pillar, and the pomegranates.
23 And ninety-six pomegranates
were on a side; all the pomegranates
on the grating were a hundred all
around.
24 And the chief of the executioners
took Seraiah the head priest, and
Zephaniah the second priest, and the
three doorkeepers.
25 He also took out of the city one
eunuch who was in charge of the men
of war, and seven men who saw the
king's face, who were found in the city,
and the commander of the army's
scribe who mustered the people of the
land, and sixty men of the people of
the land who were found in the middle
of the city.
26 And Nebuzaradan, the chief of
the executioners, took them and led
them to the king of Babylon, to Riblah.
27 And the king of Babylon struck
them and slaughtered them in Riblah
in the land of Hamath. And Judah was
exiled from off his land.
28 This is the people whom
Nebuchadnezzar exiled: In the seventh
year, three thousand and twenty three
Jews;
29 in the eighteenth year of
Nebuchadnezzar, eight hundred thirty
two souls from Jerusalem;
30 in the twenty third year of
Nebuchadnezzar, Nebuzaradan, the
chief of the executioners, exiled seven
hundred forty five souls of the Jews.
All the souls were four thousand and
six hundred.
31 And it happened in the thirty
seventh year of the exile of Jehoiachin,
king of Judah, in the twelfth month, in
the twenty fifth of the month, Evil-
Merodach, king of Babylon, in the year
of his reign lifted up the head of
Jehoiachin, king of Judah, and
brought him from the prison house.
32 And he spoke good to him and set
his throne above the throne of the
kings who were with him in Babylon.
33 And he changed his prison
garments, and he ate bread before his
face continually all the days of his life.
34 And his allowance, in continual
allowance, was given to him from the
king of Babylon, the matter of a day in
its day, until the day of his death, all
the days of his life.

Book of Ezekiel 592-573 BC

Chapter 1

1 And it happened in the thirtieth year, in the fourth month, in the fifth of the month[1], as I was among the captives by the river Chebar, the heavens were opened, and I saw visions of Elohim.

2 On the fifth of the month, the fifth year of the captivity of Jehoiachin the king,

3 coming the Word of YAHWEH existing, came to pass to Ezekiel, the son of Buzi, the priest, in the land of the Chaldeans, by the river Chebar. And there the hand of YAHWEH was on him.

4 And I looked, and behold, a windstorm came out of the north, a great cloud, and a fire flashing itself, and a brightness to it all around. And out of its midst, like the color of polished copper it came, out of the midst of the fire. *(Ezek 8:2)*

5 Also from its midst came the likeness of four living creatures. And this was how they looked[2]: they had the likeness of a man,

6 and four faces were to each, and four wings to each of them,

7 and their feet were straight feet, and the sole of their feet like the sole of a calf's foot. And they sparkled like the color of burnished copper.

8 And the hands of a man extended from under their wings on their four sides. And their faces and their wings were to the four of them,

9 joining each one to the other by their wings. They did not turn in their going, each one went toward the front of their face. (*Ezek 10:21-22)*

10 And the likeness of their faces: the face of a man, and the face of a lion, on the right side to the four of them; and the face of an ox on the left to the four of them, and the face of an eagle to the four of them[3].

11 So their faces were. And their wings were spread upward, to each, the two wings were joined, and two wings of each covering their bodies.

12 And each went toward the front of their faces. To where the spirit was to go, there they went; they did not turn in their going.

13 And the likeness of the living creatures: they appeared like coals of burning fire, like the appearance of torches; it was continually circling among the living creatures. And the fire was bright, and out of the fire went forth lightning. *(Rev 4:5)*

14 And the living creatures kept running and returning, like the appearance of a flash of lightning.

15 And I looked at the living creatures, and, behold, one wheel was on the earth beside the living creatures, with the four of its faces.

16 The appearance of the wheels and their workmanship was like the color of beryl; and the one likeness was to the four of them. And their appearance and their workmanship was like the wheel in the middle of the wheel.

---

[1] Ezekiel gives more dates in his book than any other prophet. The 30th year is probably his own age and the age one starts to work in the priesthood. The yr is 592 B.C.

[2] 4 is a world number and these living creatures are cherubim (Ezek 10:15) who serve YHWH at His throne and also around the world.

[3] These faces show the 4 good news books and aspects of Yashua Messiah. Mathew was written to the Jews and represents the lion, which is Judah's symbol. Mark shows Messiah as the servant of YHWH and is depicted by the ox who is the hardest working animal for man. Luke was written for the nations and shows the face of man that Messiah came for all mankind and John's good news message typifies the eagle who ascends to the heavens and represents Messiah as Elohim.

17 They went on the four of their sides in their going, they did not turn in their going.
18 And also their rims were high to them, even awesome to them. And their rims were full of eyes all around the four of them.
19 And in the going of the living creatures the wheels went beside them. And in the lifting up of the living creatures from on the earth, the wheels were lifted up.
20 There where the spirit was to go, there they went; there their spirit was to go, and the wheels were lifted up along with them. For the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.
21 In their going, these went; and in their standing still, these stood still. And in their being lifted up from the earth, the wheels were lifted up along with them. For the spirit of the living creature was in the wheels.
22 And a likeness was over the heads of the living creature, an expanse like the color of awesome crystal, stretched out over their heads from above.
23 And under the expanse their wings were straight, the one toward the other, to each, two wings covering on this side, and to each two covering on that side of their bodies.
24 And I heard the sound of their wings like the sound of great waters, like the voice of the Almighty. In their going was the sound of tumult, like the sound of an army. In their standing still, they let down their wings.
25 And there was a voice from the expanse that was over their heads. In their standing still, they let down their wings.
26 And from above the expanse that was over their heads was an appearance like a stone of lapis sapphire, the likeness of a throne. And on the likeness of the throne was a likeness in appearance like a man on it from above.
27 And I saw Him, like the color of polished copper, looking like fire within it all around. From the appearance of His loins and upward, and from the appearance of His loins and downward, I saw Him looking like fire; and brightness to it all around[1].
28 As the appearance of the bow that is in the cloud in the day of the rain, so appeared the brightness all around. This was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of YAHWEH. And I saw, and I fell on my face, and I heard a voice of One speaking[2].

Chapter 2

1 And He said to me, Son of man, stand on your feet, and I will speak to you.
2 And the Spirit entered into me as He spoke to me, and He made me stand on my feet, and I heard Him speaking to me.
3 And He said to me, Son of man, I am sending you to the sons of Israel, to the nations, the rebelling ones who have rebelled against Me. They and their fathers have transgressed against Me to this day[3].
4 And the sons are stiff of face and hard of heart. I am sending you to them. And you shall say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH.
5 And they, whether they will hear or whether they will forbear (for they are a rebellious house), yea, they shall

---

1 Ezek 8:2, Rev 1:14-15

2 The rainbow was a sign of YHWH's covenant with the earth (Gen 9:13) Also see Rev 10:1.

3 Ezekiel lived at the time of Judah's captivity to Babylon, yet YHWH is sending Ezekiel not to Judah but to the dispersed Israelites living in Diaspora, who went captive around 130 yrs earlier.

know that a prophet has been among
them[1].
6 And you, son of man, do not be
afraid of them and of their words. Do
not be afraid, though briers and thorns
are with you[2], and though you are
living among scorpions. Do not be
afraid of their words, and do not be
frightened by their faces, though they
are a house of rebellion.
7 And you shall speak My Words to
them, whether they will hear, or
whether they will forbear, for they are
rebellious[3].
8 But you, son of man, hear what I
am saying to you. Do not be like that
rebellious house of rebellion. Open
your mouth and eat what I am giving
to you.
9 And I looked, and behold, a hand
was extended to me. And behold, a roll
of a book[4] was in it.
10 And He spread it before me, and
it was written on the face and the
back[5]. And written on it were
weepings, and mourning, and woe[6].

Chapter 3

1 And He said to me, Son of man, eat
what you find. Eat this roll, and go
speak to the house of Israel.
2 So I opened my mouth, and He
made me eat that roll.
3 And He said to me, Son of man,
make your belly eat, and fill your
bowels with the roll, this that I give to
you. And I ate, and it was in my mouth
like honey for sweetness.*(Rev 10:9-10)*
4 And He said to me, Son of man,
Go! Come to the house of Israel and
speak with My Words to them.
5 For you are not sent to a people of
deep lip and difficult of language, but
to the house of Israel;
6 not to many peoples of deep lip
and of a difficult language, whose
words you cannot hear. If I had sent
you to them, they would have listened
to you. (*Is 28:11)*
7 But the house of Israel is not
willing to listen to you, for they are not
willing to listen to Me, for all the house
of Israel are strong of forehead and
hard of heart.
8 Behold, I have made your face
strong over against their faces, and
your forehead strong over against their
foreheads.
9 I have made your forehead as an
adamant harder than flint. Do not fear
them, and do not be frightened by
their faces, though they are a house of
rebellion.
10 And He said to me, Son of man,
all My Words which I speak to you,
receive into your heart, and hear with
your ears.
11 And go! Come to the exiles, to the
sons of your people, and speak to
them, and say to them, So says Adonai
YAHWEH, whether they will hear, or
whether they will forbear.
12 And the Spirit lifted me up, and I
heard behind me a sound of a great
tumult, saying, Blessed be the glory of
YAHWEH from His place!
13 And there was the sound of the

---

1 Ezekiel's message is primarily to the prideful stiff-necked house of Israel living in Diaspora around the world and much of the message in the book is for the end times.

2 Mk 4:18-19

3 The messages by the prophets of YHWH were not necessarily to change the people, as most times they were greatly prideful and stubborn, but it was a warning message of the judgment to come.

4 This was a scroll that is rolled up before reading.

5 Most scrolls were only written on one side, this one was written front and back possibly showing its dual fulfillment Rev 5:1.

6 Much of Ezekiel's imagery parallel's the book of Revelation (Rev 8:13).

wings of the living creatures touching each one to the other, and the sound of the wheels along with them, and the sound of a great tumult.
14 So the Spirit lifted me up and took me, and I went bitterly in the heat of my spirit, but the hand of YAHWEH was strong upon me.
15 Then I came to the exiles at Tel-Aviv[1], those dwelling by the river Chebar. And I sat there where they were sitting. I also dwelt there seven days, being appalled among them.
16 And it happened at the end of the seven days, even it happened that the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,
17 Son of man, I have made you a watchman[2] for the house of Israel. And hear the Word of My mouth, and warn them from Me.
18 In My saying to the wicked, surely you shall die; and you do not warn him, and you do not speak to warn the wicked from his wicked way, to save his life, he, the wicked, shall die in his iniquity. But I will require his blood at your hand.
19 And you, because you have warned the wicked, and he does not turn from his wickedness or from his way, he, the wicked, shall die in his iniquity. But you have delivered your soul.
20 And when the righteous turns from his righteousness and does injustice, and I lay a stumbling-block before him, he shall die. Since you have not warned him, he shall die in his sin, and his righteousness which he has done shall not be remembered. But I will require his blood at your hand.
21 But you, because you warned him, the righteous, so that the righteous should not sin, and he does not sin, surely he shall live because he is warned. And you have delivered your soul.
22 And the hand of YAHWEH was on me there. And He said to me, Arise, go forth into the plain, and I will speak with you there.
23 And I rose up and went forth into the plain. And, behold, there the glory of YAHWEH was standing, like the glory which I saw by the river Chebar. And I fell on my face.
24 And the Spirit entered into me and stood me on my feet and spoke with me. And He said to me, Come, shut yourself within your house.
25 But you, son of man, behold, they shall put on you cords and shall bind you with them, and you shall not go out among them.
26 And I will make your tongue cling to your palate, and you shall be dumb. And there shall not be to them a reproving man. For they are a rebellious house.
27 But in My speaking with you, I will open your mouth, and you shall say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH. He who hears, let him hear; and he rejects, let him reject. For they are a rebellious house.

Chapter 4

1 And you, son of man, take a brick to yourself, and lay it before you, and engrave on it a city, Jerusalem.
2 And lay a siege on it, and build a fort on it, and pour out a ramp on it.

---

[1] Not the modern Israeli city but a city in Babylon. The name Tel Aviv means "*tel*" which is an ancient mount and "*aviv*" is young; so it is the place where the ancient and the new come together.

[2] Ezekiel was a watchman who warned of the coming judgment. In ancient times they were stationed at the top of the city watch tower so they saw the invasion coming first. A "*watch*"- man also tells time and Ezekiel has more dates than any other prophet.

And place a camp on it, and set
battering rams all around on it.
3 And you, take a griddle of iron to
yourself, and place it as a wall of iron
between you and the city. And place
your face against it, and it shall be
under siege, and thrust upon it. It is a
sign to the house of Israel.
4 And you, lie down on your left side,
and lay the iniquity of the house of
Israel on it. The number of the days
that you shall lie down on it, you shall
bear their iniquity.
5 For I have laid on you the years of
their iniquity, according to the number
of days: three hundred and ninety
days. And you shall bear the house of
Israel's iniquity[1]. *(Num 14:34)*
6 And when you complete them,
even lie on your right side, the second.
And you shall bear the house of
Judah's iniquity forty days; a day for a
year. I have given it for you, a day for a
year.
7 And you shall set your face toward
the siege of Jerusalem, and your arm
bared; and you shall prophesy over it.
8 And, behold, I will put cords on
you, and you cannot turn from your
side to your other side until you have
completed the days of your siege.
9 And you, take to yourself wheat,
and barley, and beans, and lentils, and
millet, and spelt, and place them in a
single vessel; and make them for
yourself into bread, to the number of
days that you are lying on your side.
You shall eat it three hundred and
ninety days.
10 And your food which you shall eat
shall be by weight: twenty shekels a
day. From time to time you shall eat it.
11 And you shall drink water by
measure: the sixth part of a hin. From
time to time you shall drink[2].
12 And you shall eat cakes of barley,
and you shall bake it with dung of the
excrement of man, in their sight.
13 And YAHWEH said, Even so the
sons of Israel shall eat their defiled
bread among the nations there where I
will drive them[3].
14 Then I said, Adonai YAHWEH!
Behold, my soul has not been defiled. I
have not even eaten a carcass or a torn
animal, from my youth even until now.
And unclean flesh has not come into
my mouth.
15 Then He said to me, See, I have
given to you the dung of cattle in place
of the dung of man. And you shall
make bread over it[4].
16 And He said to me, Son of man,
behold, I am breaking the staff of
bread in Jerusalem. And they shall eat
bread by weight, and with anxiety.
And they shall drink water by
measure, and in horror,
17 because they will lack bread and
water, and each one be stunned with

---

[1] Many times in scripture the principle of a day for a yr exists especially in correlation of punishment (Num 14:34). Also, though YHWH stated in Lev 26:18, 24, that Israel's punishment would be 7 times duration for their great sins. So if you take the 390 day for a yr principle and multiple it by the 7 times duration you come up with 2,730 yr duration that the Northern tribes of Israel would be in captivity among the nations before being able to return to the Promised Land of Israel.

[2] Verse 9-10 shows the meager vegetarian diet that Ezekiel was to eat daily showing the hardship that would be coming on the besieged city. This equated to about 2 pints of water and about 8 ounces of bread daily.

[3] Since many Israelites were breaking kosher laws of Lev 11, YHWH was going to have Ezekiel make his food from fire made with human excrement to show them the blessing they had in Israel of being able to eat kosher that would not be in the nations of their captivity.

[4] Since Ezekiel was faithful to keeping all aspects of the kosher laws, Elohim had mercy on him to use cow dung (a clean animal) compared to human dung.

his brother. And they will waste away in their iniquity.

Chapter 5

1 And you, son of man, take to yourself a sharp sword, the razor of a barber. Take it to yourself and make it pass over your head and over your beard[1]. And take to yourself scales to weigh, and to divide them out[2].
2 You shall burn a third part in the fire, in the midst of the city, when the days of the siege are fulfilled. And you shall take the third part and beat with a sword all around it. And you shall scatter the third part into the wind, and I will draw out a sword after them.
3 Also you shall take from there a few in number and bind them in your skirts[3].
4 And take from them again, and throw them into the middle of the fire and burn them in the fire. From it shall come forth a fire into all the house of Israel[4].
5 So says Adonai YAHWEH: This is Jerusalem. I have set her in the midst of the nations, and all around her are the lands.
6 And she has changed My judgments for wickedness more than the nations, and defiled My Torah more than the lands that are all around her. For they have rejected My judgments and My Torah; they have not walked in them.
7 Therefore, so says Adonai YAHWEH: Because you rebelled more than the nations that are all around you, not having walked in My statutes, and not having performed My judgments, and you have not done according to the judgments of the nations all around you;
8 therefore, so says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold! I, even I am against you, and will execute judgments in your midst in the sight of the nations.
9 And I will do in you that which I have not done, and which I will not do the like again, for all your abominations[5].
10 Therefore, the fathers shall eat the sons in your midst, and the sons shall eat their fathers. And I will execute judgments against you, and I will scatter the whole remnant of you into every wind. *(Lev 26:29)*
11 Therefore, as I live, says Adonai YAHWEH, surely because you have defiled My sanctuary with all your idolatries and with all your

---

1 Ezekiel finished this final act of defilement by shaving his head and beard, which was a pagan ritual for the dead (Ezek 27:31, Is 22:12) which the Torah forbade (Deut 14:1). This whole process was extremely humiliating and disqualifying from serving Elohim Lev 21:5.

2 What Isaiah had used as a metaphor (Is 7:20) of punishment Ezekiel was actually acting out.

3 Verse 2-3. A third of the people would die immediately, a third would die in the fighting and a third would be scattered into Diaspora, in which out of this last third their would be a small remnant (usually 10%, so 10% of only the last third) and they would be left in the land (2Kgs 25:12, Jer 39:10)

4 There is always a purification of the remnant through fire, which is symbolic of being purified through trials and suffering (Luk 12:49, 50). Water baptism is for repentance, spirit baptism is for becoming a firstfruit, and fire baptism is for purification. (Rev 3:18-19).

5 It is quite interesting when you look at the first 9 chapters of Ezekiel as they are written to the House of Israel who has been in captivity for almost 130 yrs already, but yet it speaks about destruction on Jerusalem which was already prophesied much by Jeremiah to this point. When you look at the prophecies here with the punishment it seems that Ezekiel chapters 1-9 definitely have a dual end time fulfillment in mind.

abominations, so I also will withdraw. And My eye shall not spare, and I will not have pity.

12 A third part of you shall die by the plague and shall be consumed by the famine in your midst. And a third part shall fall by the sword all around you. And a third part I will scatter into every wind, and I will draw out a sword after them[1]. *(Ezek 5:2)*

13 And My anger shall be spent, and I will make My fury rest on them, and I will be eased. And they shall know that I, YAHWEH, have spoken in My zeal, in My fulfilling My fury among them.

14 And I will make you into a waste and a reproach among the nations that are around you, in the eyes of all who pass by.

15 And it shall be a reproach and a taunt, an example and a horror, to the nations which are all around you, when I shall execute against you judgments in anger and in fury and in chastisements among them. I, YAHWEH, have spoken it.

16 When I shall send the arrows of evil famine among them, which shall be for ruin, for which I will send them to destroy you, even I will increase the famine on you and break the staff of bread to you.

17 Yea, I will send famine and evil beasts on you, and you will be bereaved. And pestilence and blood shall pass among you, and I shall bring a sword on you. I, YAHWEH, have spoken.

Chapter 6

1 And it happened, the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,

2 Son of man, set your face towards the mountains of Israel and prophesy against them.

3 And say, Mountains of Israel, hear the Word of Adonai YAHWEH: So says Adonai YAHWEH to the mountains, and to the hills, to the ravines, and to the valleys, Behold, I, even I will bring a sword on you, and I will destroy your high places.

4 And your altars shall be ruined, and your pillars shall be broken. And I will cast down your slain before your idols.

5 And I will put the dead bodies of the sons of Israel before their idols, and I will scatter your bones around your altars.

6 In all your dwelling places the cities shall be laid waste, and the high places shall be deserted, so that your altars may be laid waste and become guilty, and that your idols may be broken and brought to an end, and your pillars may be cut down, and your works wiped out.

7 And the slain shall fall in your midst, and you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

8 Yet I will leave a remainder, so that may be left to you those who escape the sword among the nations, in your scattering among the lands[2].

9 And those who escape shall remember Me among the nations where they will be made captive, because I was broken by their whoring heart which has turned away from Me, and by their whoring eyes which go after their idols. And they shall loathe against their faces for the evils which they have done in all their abominations. *(Ezek 20:43-44, 36:31)*

10 And they shall know that I am YAHWEH; and not in vain have I said to do this evil to them.

11 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Strike with your hand, and stamp with your

---

[1] See note on Ezek 5:3.

[2] However bad Israel's prognostication may be, they are always promised a remnant for restoration in the end time.

foot, and say, Alas, for all the evil abominations of the house of Israel! For they shall fall by the sword, by the famine, and by the plague. *(Ezek 25:6)*

12 He who is far off shall die by the plague, and he who is near shall fall by the sword, and he who remains and is besieged shall die by the famine. So I will fulfill My fury on them.

13 And you shall know that I am YAHWEH when their slain shall be in the midst of their idols all around their altars, on every high hill, in all the tops of the mountains, and under every green tree, and under every leafy oak, (the place where they gave there a soothing aroma to all their idols).

14 And I will stretch out My hand on them and make the land a desolation even more desolate than the desert toward Diblath, in all their dwelling places. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH[1].

Chapter 7

1 And it happened, the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 And you, son of man, so says Adonai YAHWEH to the ground of Israel: An end! The end has come on the four corners of the earth[2].

3 The end is now on you, and I will send My anger on you and will judge you according to your ways and will lay on you all your abominations.

4 And My eye shall not spare you, and I will not have pity. But I will lay your ways on you, and your abominations shall be in your midst, and you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

5 So says Adonai YAHWEH: An evil! An only evil! Behold, it has come!

6 An end has come, the end has come! It has awakened against you, behold, it has come[3]!

7 The encirclement has come to you, O dwellers of the earth. The time has come, the day of tumult is near, and not a shout of the hills.

8 I will soon pour out My fury on you and fulfill My anger on you. And I will judge you according to your ways and will put on you all your abominations.

9 And My eye shall not spare, and I will not have pity; I will put on you according to your ways and your abominations that are in your midst. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH who strikes.

10 Behold the day! Behold, it has come, the encirclement has gone out, the rod has blossomed, and pride has budded. *(Pr 16:18)*

11 Violence has risen for a rod of wickedness. None of them shall remain, even none of their multitude, and none of their riches, and none lamenting among them.

12 The time has come, the day has arrived. Do not let the buyer rejoice, and do not let the sellers mourn, for wrath is on all her multitude.

13 For the seller shall not return to that which is sold, although they still are among the living (for the vision is to all her multitude, and it shall not return); and a man shall not hold his life strong in his iniquity.

14 They have blown the trumpet, even to make all ready, but no one

---

[1] This should probably read "*from the wilderness to Riblah*" (a city in the north near Hamath), which would mean from north to south, or a full destruction.

[2] This confirms Ezek 2:3, that the message is to the Israelites living around the globe in Diaspora and is end time (Jer 25:30-33). First, Israel gets punished for their rejecting of the Torah and idolatry, then, the nations where the Northern tribes are living get punished as Ephraim in their Diaspora is filled with pride and rebellion Ezek 2:4-8.

[3] Not just the end of Israel but YHWH's judgment on all nations Is 24:1-6.

goes to the battle, for My wrath is on all her multitude.

15 The sword is outside, and the plague, and the famine are inside. He who is in the field shall die with the sword. And he who is in the city, famine and plague shall devour him.

16 But if their fugitives shall escape, then they shall be on the mountains like doves of the valleys, all of them mourning, each for his iniquity.

17 All hands shall be feeble, and all knees shall go as water.

18 They shall also gird on sackcloth, and trembling shall cover them. And shame shall be on all faces, and baldness on all heads.

19 They shall throw their silver in the streets, and their gold shall be an impure thing. Their silver and their gold shall not be able to deliver them in the day of the wrath of YAHWEH. They shall not satisfy their soul, and they shall not fill their bowels, for their iniquity has become a stumbling-block for them[1]. *(Zeph 1:18, Pr 11:4)*

20 And the beauty of His ornament, He set it in majesty. But they made it the images of their abominations, and of their hateful things. Therefore, I have put it to them as an impure thing.

21 And I will also give it into the hand of the strangers for a prize, and to the wicked of the earth for a spoil. And they shall defile it.

22 I also will turn My face from them, and they shall defile My hidden place. And violent ones shall enter into it and defile it.

23 Take the chain, for the land is full of bloody judgments, and the city is full of violence[2].

24 And I will bring the most evil of the nations, and they shall possess their houses. And I will make cease the pomp of the strong ones, and their holy places shall be defiled.

25 Anguish comes! And they shall seek peace, but none shall be.

26 Disaster on disaster shall come, and rumor to rumor shall be. And they shall seek a vision from the prophet, but the Torah shall perish from the priest, and counsel from the elders.

27 The king shall mourn, and the ruler shall be clothed with despair. And the hands of the people of the land shall be terrified. According to their way, I will do to them, and according to their judgments, I will judge them. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 8

1 And it was in the sixth year, in the sixth month, on the fifth of the month[3], I was sitting in my house. And the elders of Judah were sitting before me. And the hand of Adonai YAHWEH fell on me there.

2 And I looked, and behold, a likeness as the appearance of fire, from the appearance of His loins and downward, like fire, and from His loins and upward, as the appearance of brightness, like the color of polished copper. *(Dan 10:5-6, Rev 1:12-15)*

3 And He put forth the form of a hand and took me by a lock of my head. And the Spirit lifted me up between the earth and the heavens and brought me to Jerusalem (in the visions of Elohim), to the opening of the inner gate facing north, where

[1] Since almost time, immemorial, gold and silver have been the most secure means of exchange. However, in the end as war, famine, and pestilence will be ramped, even gold will not be able to help them.

[2] Verse 21-23 is referring to Jerusalem and YHWH's sanctuary.

[3] This is the second of 13 dates that are mentioned in Ezekiel and is 14 months from his calling.

there was a seat of the image of jealousy, which causes jealousy.

4 And, behold! The glory of the Elohim of Israel was there, like the appearance which I saw in the plain.

5 And He said to me, Son of man, lift up your eyes now to the way of the north. So I lifted up my eyes the way of the north, and, behold, from the north, at the gate of the altar, was this image of jealousy at the entrance.*(Deut 4:24)*

6 And He said to me, Son of man, do you see what they are doing, the great abominations which the house of Israel is doing here, that I should be far from My sanctuary? But you turn back and you shall see greater abominations.

7 And He brought me to the opening of the court. And I looked, and, behold, a single hole in the wall.

8 And He said to me, Son of man, dig now in the wall. And I dug in the wall; and, behold, an opening!

9 And He said to me, Go in and see the evil abominations that they are doing here.

10 And I went in and looked. And, behold, every form of creeping thing, and hateful beast, and all the idols of the house of Israel were carved on the wall all around.

11 And seventy men of the elders of the house of Israel, and Jaazaniah, the son of Shaphan, were standing among them. These were standing among them, and each man with his censer in his hand, and the odor of the cloud of incense rising.

12 And He said to me, Son of man, have you seen what the elders of the house of Israel are doing in the dark, each man in the rooms of his image? For they are saying, YAHWEH does not see us, YAHWEH has forsaken the earth.

13 And He said to me, You turn back again, and you shall see greater abominations which they are doing.

14 And He brought me to the opening of the gate of the house of YAHWEH, toward the north. And, behold, women were sitting there weeping for Tammuz[1].

15 And He said to me, Have you seen, son of man? You turn again and you shall see greater abominations than these.

16 And he brought me into the inner court of the house of YAHWEH. And, behold, at the opening of the sanctuary of YAHWEH, between the porch and the altar, were about twenty five men with their backs to the sanctuary of YAHWEH, and their faces eastward. And they bowed themselves eastward to the sun[2].

17 And He said to me, Son of man, have you seen? Is it a light thing to the house of Judah from doing the abominations which they do here? For they have filled the land with violence[3] and have returned to provoke Me to

---

[1] The beloved of the goddess Istar, and the supposed deity of agriculture, who was said to have resurrected. People mourned for him starting at the time of the summer solstice and believed he was resurrected at the winter solstice. This is the origin of the pagan holiday Christmas, which was never celebrated by early believers in Yahshua. As the pagans started to join the early congregation they mixed and blended much of their pagan customs until it separated into two distinct religions under Constantine in the 4th century.

[2] Almost all ancient temples had there orientation toward the east, whereas Yahweh's sanctuary was orientated opposite toward the west. These pagan cultic people would bow to the rising sun each morning as it would be coming up from the east 2 Kgs 23:5,11 Ezek 11:1, 12.

[3] The Hebrew word for violence is Hamas

anger. And, behold, they are putting the branch to their nose[1]!

18 And I also will deal with fury. My eye shall not spare, and I will not have pity. And though they cry in My ears with a loud voice, I will not hear them.

Chapter 9

1 And He cried in my ears with a loud voice, saying, Let the overseers of the city draw near, even each with his destroying weapon in his hand.

2 And, behold, six men were coming from the way of the Upper Gate, which faces north. And each had his shattering weapon in his hand. And one man among them was clothed in linen, and an ink horn of a scribe at his loins. And they went in and stood beside the copper altar[2].

3 And the glory of the Elohim of Israel had gone on, from on the cherub where it was on it, to the threshold of the house. And He called to the man clothed in linen with the ink horn of a scribe at his loins.

4 And YAHWEH said to him, Pass through in the midst of the city, in the midst of Jerusalem, and imprint a mark[3] on the foreheads of the men who are groaning and are mourning over all the abominations that are done in her midst[4]. *(Rev 7:3)*

5 And He said to those in my hearing, Pass over in the city after him and strike. Do not let your eye spare, and do not have pity.

6 Slay the aged men, the young man, and the virgin, even children, and women, all to destruction. But to every man who has the mark on him, do not come near. And begin from My sanctuary[5]. And they began with the aged men who were before the house.

7 And He said to them, Defile the house and fill the courts with the dead. Go forth! And they went out and killed in the city.

8 And it happened as they struck, and I remained, even I. Then I fell on my face and I cried out and said, Ah, Adonai YAHWEH! Will You destroy all the remnant of Israel in Your pouring out of Your fury on Jerusalem?

9 And He said to me, The iniquity of the house of Israel and of Judah is very great, and the land is filled with blood, and the city is full of perversity[6]. For they say, YAHWEH has forsaken the land; and, YAHWEH does not see.

10 And even I, My eye does not spare, and I will not have pity. I will put their way on their head. *(Pr 1:24-31)*

11 And, behold, the man clothed with linen, with the ink horn at his loins,

---

1 A ceremonial gesture related to nature worship.

2 These are 6 cherubs that are bringing the judgment of YHWH at this time. With the other cherub who is among them that makes 7 and they are probably the same cherubs bringing judgment in Rev 8:2, 6. It will be similar to a second passover where only those with the mark of YHWH will survive. (Ex 12:23, Rev 4:4, 15:6, Dan 7:9, Acts 1:10-11)

3 Literally the Hebrew letter "*tav*" which was similar to an x.

4 The ones who are protected during this time of great distress are those who have come out of the worldly system of corruption and grieve and fervently pray daily for the suffering that is happening in the world at this time Jer 25:29.

5 1 Pe 4:17 judgment starts at the sanctuary of YHWH for they had more accountability for knowing the truth Luk 12:48. This is a total contrast to those loving the wicked end time global system set up by Satan and taking the mark of the beast, Rev 13:8, 16-17.

6 The House of Israel went into captivity almost 130 yrs before this, so clearly this has end time implications.

reported the matter, saying, I have done as You commanded me.

Chapter 10

1 And I looked. And, behold, in the expanse over the head of the cherubs was seen the appearance of the form of a throne, like a stone of sapphire, above them.
2 And He spoke to the man clothed with linen, and said, Go in among the wheels, under the cherub, and fill your hands with coals of fire from between the cherubs, and sprinkle on the city. And he went in before me. *(Is 6:6)*
3 And the cherubs were standing on the right side of the house when he, the man, went in. And the cloud filled the inner court.
4 And the glory of YAHWEH lifted up from the cherub, over the threshold of the house. And the house was filled with the cloud. And the court was full of the radiance of the glory of YAHWEH.
5 And the sound of the wings of cherubs was heard over the outer court, as the voice of El Shaddai when He speaks.
6 And it happened, when He had commanded the man clothed with linen, saying, Take fire from between the wheels, from between the cherubs. Then he went and stood beside the wheels.
7 And one cherub stretched out his hand from between the cherubs, to the fire between the cherubs. And he lifted and put it into the hands of the one clothed with linen. And he took it and went out.
8 And the form of a man's hand was seen under the wings of the cherubs.
9 And I looked, and, behold, the four wheels were beside the cherubs: one wheel beside one cherub, one wheel beside one cherub. And the appearance of the wheels was like the color of a stone of Tarshish.
10 And their appearance was as one, the four of them, as if the wheel were in the midst of the wheel.
11 In their going on their four sides, they went. They did not turn in their going. For to the place where the head faces, after it they went. They did not turn in their going.
12 And all their flesh, and their backs, and their hands, and their wings, and the wheels, were full of eyes all around, even their wheels which the four of them had.
13 As for the wheels, it was cried to them in my hearing, Whirling wheel!
14 And four faces were to each. The first face was the face of a cherub[1], and the second face the face of a man, and the third the face of a lion, and the fourth the face of an eagle. *(Ezek 1:10)*
15 And the cherubs rose up. This is the living creature that I saw by the river Chebar.
16 And in the going of the cherubs, the wheels went beside them. And when the cherubs lifted their wings to soar from the earth, the wheels did not turn from beside them, even they.
17 When they stood still, these stood still. And when they rose up, these also lifted up. For the spirit of the living creature was in them.
18 And the glory of YAHWEH went from the threshold of the house and stood over the cherubs.
19 And the cherubs lifted their wings and rose up from the earth in my sight. When they went out, the wheels also were with them. And he stood at the door of the gate of the house of YAHWEH, the eastern gate And the

[1] This verse is identical to Ezek 1:10 except that the face of the ox is now the face of a Cherub.

glory of the Elohim of Israel was over them from above[1].

20 This is the living creature that I saw under the Elohim of Israel by the river Chebar, and I knew that they were cherubs.

21 Four, even four faces are to each, and four wings to each. And the form of a man's hands was under their wings.

22 And the form of their faces, they are the faces that I saw by the river Chebar, their appearances, even theirs. They each went straight forward.

Chapter 11

1 And the Spirit lifted me up and brought me to the eastern gate of the house of YAHWEH, the gate which faces eastward. And, behold, at the opening of the gate were twenty five men. And I saw among them Jaazaniah[2] the son of Azzur, and Pelatiah, the son of Benaiah, leaders of the people.

2 And He said to me, Son of man, these are the men who plot evil and advise wicked advice in this city,

3 who say, It is not near, let us build houses; she is the pot, and we are the flesh[3].

4 So prophesy against them, prophesy, son of man!

5 And the Spirit of YAHWEH fell on me and said to me, Speak, So says YAHWEH: So you have said, house of Israel, for I Myself know the steps of your spirit.

6 You have multiplied your dying ones in this city, and you have filled her streets with the dying.

7 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Your dying ones whom you have laid in her midst, they are the flesh, and she is the pot. But I will bring you forth out of her midst.

8 You have feared the sword, but I will bring a sword on you, says Adonai YAHWEH.

9 And I will bring you out of her midst and will give you into the hand of strangers. And I will execute judgments against you.

10 You shall fall by the sword. I will judge you to the border of Israel, and you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

11 This city shall not be for a pot to you, nor shall you be in its midst for flesh. But I will judge you in the border of Israel,

12 and you shall know that I am YAHWEH in whose statutes you have not walked. Yea, you have not done My judgments. Yea, as the judgments of the nations who are around you, you have done.

13 And it happened when I prophesied, Pelatiah, the son of Benaiah, died. Then I fell on my face and cried with a loud voice and said, Ah, Adonai YAHWEH! Will you make a full end of the remnant of Israel?

14 And the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,

15 Son of man, your brothers, your brothers, the men of your redemption, and all the house of Israel, all of them who have said to those living in Jerusalem, Go far away from YAHWEH, this land is given to us for a possession.

16 Therefore, say, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Though I have sent them

---

[1] The glory of YHWH or the "*Shekinah*" was moved from over the throne to the eastern gate and then, later, to the Mount of Olives Ezek 11:23.

[2] Possibly the brother of Jeremiah's opponent in Jer 28:1.

[3] The advice of these men to build houses in the city showed they did not believe in YHWH's coming judgment. They felt the ones already in Babylon had been judged and they were the choice meat in the pot not to go into captivity.

far off among the nations, and though I scattered them among the lands, yet I was to them as a little sanctuary in the countries there where they had gone[1].
17 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: I shall gather you from the peoples, and assemble you out of the lands, in those where you were scattered, and I shall give to you the land of Israel[2].
18 And they will come there, and they will remove all its hateful things and all its abominations from it.
19 And I shall give to them one *(echad)* heart, and I will put a new spirit within you. And I will remove the stony heart out of their flesh, and I will give them a heart of flesh[3],
20 so that they may walk in My statutes and keep My judgments, and do them. And they shall be to Me for a people, and I will be to them for Elohim. *(Jer 32:38)*
21 And as to those whose heart is going after their hateful things, and also their heart is after their disgusting idols, I will give their way on their heads, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
22 Then the cherubs lifted up their wings, and the wheels were beside them. And the glory of the Elohim of Israel was over them from above.
23 And the glory of YAHWEH went up from the midst of the city and stood on the mountain which is on the east of the city[4].
24 And the Spirit lifted me up and brought me into Chaldea, to the exiles, in a vision by the Spirit of Elohim. And the vision that I had seen went up from me.
25 And I spoke to the exiles all the things which YAHWEH had made me see.

Chapter 12

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 Son of man, you dwell in the midst of a rebellious house. They have eyes to see, but they do not see; they have ears to hear, but they do not hear; for they are a rebellious house.
3 And you, son of man, prepare for yourself vessels for exile, and go into exile by day before their eyes. And you shall be exiled from your place to another place before their eyes. Perhaps they will see that they are a rebellious house.
4 And you shall bring forth your vessels as vessels for exile by day before their eyes. And you shall go forth at evening before their eyes, as those going into exile.
5 In their sight dig for yourself through the wall, and carry out through it.
6 Before their eyes you shall carry on the shoulder, in the dark carry out. You shall cover your face so that you do not see the ground, for I have set you as a wonder to the house of Israel.
7 And I did so, as I was commanded. By day I brought forth my vessel as a vessel for exile. And in the evening I dug by hand for myself through the wall. I brought it out in the dark, and I

1 Yahweh's presence from the sanctuary in Jerusalem was removed before as it was going to be destroyed, but now YHWH promises that He will be the sanctuary to His people in their captivity.

2 The promise of Yahweh to restore the tribes of Israel back to the Promised Land Jer 3:18, Is 11:12, Jer 31:1, 8-11, Is 35:10, Ps 106:47, Ezek 34:12-14, Ezek 36:24, 28 Mic 4:6, Amos 9:14-15

3 Jer 31: 33, Eze 36:25-26, 2Cor 3:3

4 Yahweh's presence moved to the Mount of Olives, the place where Yahshua was crucified, buried, resurrected and ascended to Heaven (Acts 1:8-12) and where He will return to earth (Zech 14:3-4).

carried on my shoulder before their eyes[1].

8 And in the morning the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,

9 Son of man, has not the house of Israel, that rebellious house, said to you, What are you doing?

10 Say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: This burden is to the prince in Jerusalem, and to all the house of Israel who are among them.

11 Say, I am your wonder. As I have done, so it shall be done to them. They shall go into exile, into captivity.

12 And the prince who is among them shall carry on his shoulder in the dark and go forth through the wall. They shall dig to bring out by it. He shall cover his face so that he does not look with the eye on the earth[2].

13 And I will spread My net on him, and he shall be taken in My snare. And I will bring him to Babylon, the land of the Chaldeans. Yet he will not see it, and he shall die there.

14 And all who are around him, his help and all his bands, I will scatter to every wind, and I will draw out a sword after them.

15 And they shall know that I am YAHWEH when I shall scatter them among the nations and disperse them throughout the earth.

16 But of them I will leave a number of men from the sword, from the famine, and from the plague, so that they may declare all their abominations among the nations, there where they go. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

17 And the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,

18 Son of man, eat your bread with quaking, and drink your water with trembling and with anxiety.

19 And say to the people of the land, So says Adonai YAHWEH to those living in Jerusalem, to the land of Israel: They shall eat their bread with anxiety and drink their water with horror, so that her land may be desolated of her fullness, because of the violence of all those who live in her.

20 And the cities that have people shall be laid waste, and the land shall be desolate. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

21 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

22 Son of man, what is this proverb to you on the land of Israel, saying, The days are long, and every vision shall perish?

23 Therefore, tell them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: I will make this proverb cease, and they shall not use it again in Israel. However, say to them, The days draw near, and the matter of every vision.

24 For there shall not again be every vain vision, nor smooth divination, within the house of Israel.

25 For I, YAHWEH, will speak. The Word which I shall speak shall be done; it shall not be drawn out again. For in your days, O house of rebellion, I will say **"The Word"** and *(He)* will do it[3], declares Adonai YAHWEH.

26 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

27 Son of man, behold, the house of Israel is saying, The vision that he is seeing is for many days, and he prophesies for times far off.

28 So say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Not any of My Words will be drawn out any longer. What I have

---

1 Ezekiel is told to dig through the wall of his house and pack a backpack with necessities for fleeing. He had to do the same in the evening as if he was escaping a siege.

2 Jere 39:4 is the fulfillment of this

3 Joh 1;1-3, 14

spoken, that Word shall be done, declares Adonai YAHWEH[1].

Chapter 13

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 Son of man, prophesy against the prophets of Israel who prophesy. And say to those who prophesy out of their own heart, Hear the Word of YAHWEH:
3 So says Adonai YAHWEH, Woe to the foolish prophets who walk after their own spirit and have seen nothing!
4 O Israel, your prophets are like foxes in the deserts.
5 You have not gone up into the breaks, nor built a wall around the house of Israel, that it might stand in the battle, in the Day of YAHWEH.
6 They have seen vanity and lying divination, saying, YAHWEH declares! And YAHWEH has not sent them, but they hoped to confirm their word.
7 Did you not see a vain vision and speak a lying divination? Yet you say, YAHWEH declares, though I have not spoken[2].
8 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Because you have spoken vanity and have seen a lie, therefore, behold, I am against you, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
9 And My hand shall be against the prophets who see vanity, and who divine a lie. They shall not be in the council of My people, and they shall not be written in the register of the house of Israel, and they shall not enter into the land of Israel[3]. And you shall know that I am Adonai YAHWEH.
10 Because, even because they made My people go astray, saying, Peace! and there was no peace. And he builds a wall, and, behold, others smeared it with lime.
11 Say to those plastering with lime, Yea, it will fall. There will be a flooding rain; and you, O hailstones, shall fall, and a tempestuous wind shall break.
12 And, behold, when the wall has fallen, it shall not be said to you, Where is the plaster with which you have smeared[4]?
13 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: I will even break in My fury with a hurricane type wind. And there shall be a flooding rain in My anger, and hailstones in fury, to consume it.
14 And I will break down the wall that you have plastered with lime and bring it down to the ground; yea, I will bare its base. And it shall fall, and you

1 Verses 21-28, since Ezekiel was prophesying for many days to the people and no seizure took place the people were growing skeptical that the prophecy was true.

2 There were many false prophets in these days. Some were false prophets of false deities and some falsely spoke in the name of YHWH. There is a similar situation today; many falsely prophesy in the name of the Babylonian deity called "*god*" and others falsely prophesy using the true name of the Creator YAHWEH. No true prophet in scripture ever used any other personal name for the Creator than YAHWEH.

3 The punishment for such individuals would be that they would not be allowed within the congregation, nor even in the Promised Land of Israel. Today, in similar circumstances many of these false prophets are separated outside of the judicial order of YHWH on their own, Pr 18:1.

4 In ancient times walls had to be plastered yearly with lime to stop rain and mold from eroding the house. Here, the false prophets are telling the people that there will be peace. Elohim uses the analogy of someone plastering with lime that will not stick but fall as Israel will go into captivity and will not be able to plaster their homes.

will be consumed in its midst. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.
15 And I will complete My wrath in the wall, and in those who plastered it with lime. And I will say to you, The wall is not; and, Those who plastered are not.
16 The prophets of Israel who are prophesying concerning Jerusalem, and who see visions of peace for her, even there is no peace, declares Adonai YAHWEH. *(Jer 6:14)*
17 And you, son of man, set your face against the daughters of your people who prophesy out of their heart, and prophesy against them,
18 and say, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Woe to those sewing amulets to all joints of my hands, and make long veils for the head of every man of stature, to hunt souls[1]! Will you hunt the souls of My people, and will you save alive the souls for yourselves?
19 And will you profane Me among My people for handfuls of barley, and for bits of bread, to cause to die the souls that should not die, and to save alive the souls that should not live, by your lying to My people who listen to lies[2]?
20 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Behold, I am against your amulets with which you are hunting the souls there, to make them fly. And I will tear them from your arms, and will send out the souls, souls which you are hunting, to make them fly.
21 Also I will tear your long veils and deliver My people out of your hand. And they shall not again be in your hand to be hunted. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.
22 Because you have saddened the heart of the righteous with lies, and I have not pained him, and you have made the hands of the wicked strong, so that he should not turn from his evil way, to keep him alive.
23 So you shall not see vanity, and you shall not divine any divination. And I will deliver My people out of your hand. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 14

1 Then came the men of the elders of Israel and sat before me.
2 And the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,
3 Son of man, these men have caused their idols to go up in their hearts, and have put the stumbling-block of their iniquity before their faces. Should I at all be sought by them?
4 Therefore, speak to them and say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Every man of the house of Israel who causes idols to go up in his heart, and who puts the stumbling-block of his iniquity before his face, and comes to the prophet, I, YAHWEH, will answer him in it by the host of his idols,
5 so that I may capture the house of Israel in their own heart, who are turned aside from Me by their idols, all of them.
6 Therefore, say to the house of Israel, So says Adonai YAHWEH: turn, and be turned from your idols, and from all your abominations turn away your faces.
7 For every man of the house of Israel, or of the foreigner who resides in Israel, who is separated from after Me and causes his idols to go up in his heart, and puts the stumbling-block of

1 Referring to women using the occult to curse the innocent and bless those doing evil. All such practices are condemned by the Torah.
2 Apparently, these false wicked people were lying for gaining small bits of food not caring whose lives they were destroying with their lying words Math 12:33-37.

his iniquity before his face, and comes to the prophet to inquire of him concerning Me, I, YAHWEH, will answer him Myself.
8 And I will set My face against that man, and I will make him desolate for a sign and for proverbs. And I will cut him off from the midst of My people. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.
9 And the prophet, if he is deceived, and he speaks a word, I, YAHWEH, have deceived that prophet. And I will stretch out My hand on him and will destroy him from the midst of My people Israel.
10 And they shall bear their iniquity. As the iniquity of the inquirer, so the iniquity of the prophet shall be.
11 So that the house of Israel may not stray any more from after Me, and not be defiled again with all their transgressions; but they are to Me for a people, and I will be to them for Elohim, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
12 And the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,
13 Son of man, when a land sins against Me, by traitorous betraying, then I will stretch out My hand on it, and I will shatter the staff of bread to it, and I will send famine on it. And I will cut off from it man and beast.
14 And though these three men were in its midst, Noah, Daniel, and Job, by their righteousness they should deliver only their souls, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
15 If I make evil beasts go through the land, and they bereave it, and it is desolate, so that no one would go through because of the beasts,
16 though these three men were in its midst, as I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, they would deliver neither sons nor daughters; they would only deliver themselves[1], but the land would be desolate. *(Eze 18:14-20)*
17 Or if I bring a sword on that land and say, Let a sword go through the land, and I will cut off man and beast from it;
18 even though these three men were in its midst, as I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, they should not deliver sons or daughters, but they only would deliver themselves.
19 Or if I send a plague into the land and pour out My fury on it in blood, to cut off from it man and beast;
20 though Noah, Daniel, and Job were in its midst, as I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, they would deliver neither son nor daughter; they by their righteousness would deliver only their souls.
21 For so says Adonai YAHWEH, How much more when the four of My evil judgments: sword, and famine, and evil beast, and plague I send on Jerusalem, to cut off from it man and beast! *(Jer 15:1-3, Rev 6:8)*
22 Yet, behold, there shall be left in it escaping ones that shall be brought out, sons and daughters. Behold, they shall come to you, and you shall see their way and their doings. And you will be comforted for the evil which I have brought against Jerusalem, for all which I have brought upon it.
23 And they will comfort you when you see their way and their doings.

[1] Noah, Job and Daniel were 3 of the most righteous people who ever lived, yet if they were there they would only save themselves because each person will die for their own sins (Eze 18:20) and according to Torah *"eye for eye and life for life"* (Deut 19:21). Even a righteous person can only save his own life, not others. Only by Yahshua being the eternal Creator of all things (Col 1:16, Joh 1;1-3) can His life be worth more than everything He created. This proves Yahshua was Elohim and eternal and was not a created being.

And you will know that not in vain I have done all that I did in it, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 15

1 And the Word of YAHWEH came to me, saying,
2 Son of man, how is the vine tree more than any other tree, or than a branch that is among the trees of the forest[1]?
3 Shall wood be taken from it to do work? Or will men take from it for a peg to hang every vessel on it?
4 Behold, it is put in the fire for fuel. The fire devours both its ends, and its middle is charred. Will it prosper for work?
5 Behold, when it was whole it was not made for work. How much less when the fire has devoured it, and it is charred! Shall it yet be made to work?
6 Therefore, so says Adonai YAHWEH: As the vine tree among the trees of the forest, it which I have given to the fire for fuel, so I will give those living in Jerusalem.
7 And I will set My face against them. They shall go out from the fire, and the fire shall devour them. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH when I set My face against them.
8 And I will give the land to be desolate because they have done treachery, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 16

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 Son of man, cause Jerusalem to know her abominations,
3 and say, So says Adonai YAHWEH to Jerusalem: Your origin and your birth is of the land of Canaan. Your father was an Amorite and your mother a Hittite[2].
4 As for your birth, in the day you were born, your navel was not cut, and you were not washed with water to cleanse you. And you were not salted, and you were not at all swaddled[3].
5 An eye did not have pity on you to do to you one of these, to have compassion on you. But you were thrown into the face of the field, for your person was loathed in the day you were born.
6 And when I passed by you and saw you squirming in your blood, I said to you in your blood, Live! Yea, I said to you in your blood, Live[4]!
7 As a myriad, as a field shoot, I have made you, and you are grown and are great. And you come in the finest ornaments. Your breasts are formed, and your hair is grown, yet you were naked and bare.
8 And I passed by you, and I looked on you, and, behold, your time was the time of love. And I spread My skirt over you and covered your nakedness. And I swore to you and entered into a covenant with you, declares Adonai YAHWEH. And you became Mine.
9 And I washed you with water; I washed away your blood from you, and I anointed you with oil.
10 And I dressed you with embroidered work, and gave you

---

1 Judah is being compared to a wild vine of the forest that is useless (verse 3) and not a cultivated vineyard that will bring much fruit (Is 5:1-7). The only purpose of the wild vine is for fuel for burning (verse 5-6), which will be Judah's judgment. Israel is also compared to a vine in Ps 80:8-15.

2 Showing the pre-Israelite origin of Jerusalem before they entered the Promised Land.

3 An ancient practice that was supposed to make the body firm, clean and fight infection.

4 As an abandoned child, YHWH saved them.

Tachash sandals to wear.[1] And I wrapped you in fine linen, and I covered you with silk.
11 And I adorned you with ornaments, and I put bracelets on your hands and a chain on your neck.
12 And I gave a jewel for yourself and rings for your ears and a crown of beauty on your head[2].
13 And you were adorned with gold and silver. And your clothing was fine linen and silk and embroidered work. Fine flour and honey and oil you ate. And you were very, very beautiful. And you advanced to regal estate.
14 And your name went out among the nations, because of your beauty, for it was perfect by My splendor which I had set on you, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
15 But you trusted in your beauty, and you played the harlot because of your name, and poured out your fornications[3] on all who passed by; it was to him!
16 And you took from your clothes and made for you high places of various colors, and fornicated on them, such as had not come, nor shall be.
17 And you have taken beautiful things of My gold and of My silver, which I had given to you, and you made images of males, and fornicated with them.
18 And you took your embroidered clothes and covered them. And My oil and My incense you have given to their face.
19 Also My food which I gave you, fine flour and oil and honey which I fed you, you have given it to their face for a soothing aroma. And it happened, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
20 And you have taken your sons and your daughters whom you have borne to Me, and you sacrificed these to them for food. Are your fornications small?
21 You have slaughtered My sons, and you gave them to cause these to pass through the fire for them[4].
22 And in all your abominations and your fornications you have not remembered the days of your youth, when you were naked and bare, when you were squirming in your blood.
23 Woe, woe to you, says Adonai YAHWEH! For it happened, after all your evil,
24 Woe to you that you have also built yourself a mound, and you have made yourself a high place in every open place!
25 At the head of every highway you have built your high place, and have made your beauty despised. And you have parted your feet to all who passed by, and have multiplied your fornications.
26 You have whored with the sons of Egypt, your neighbors, great of flesh. And you have multiplied your fornications to provoke Me to anger.
27 And behold, I have stretched out My hand over you, and I drew back your portion. And I gave you to the will of those hating you, the daughters of the Philistines, who are ashamed of your wicked way.
28 You have fornicated with the sons

1 "Tachash" an unknown archaic Hebrew word that could be a blue shaded animal skin, or the verb of this root means to move quickly and could describe the type of animal that tachash represents. (Ex 25:5)

2 Verses 9-13 are figuratively speaking. "*Rings for your ears*" an expression for their hearing.

3 The charge of prostitution was both turning spiritually away from YHWH, but also for physical involvement in Canaanite fertility rites.

4 Verses 20-21- Children were offered as a sacrifice to Molech, Jer 7:30-32. Jud 11:30-31, 39.

of Assyria without being satisfied. Yea,
you fornicated and yet you were not
satisfied.
29 And you have multiplied your
fornication in the land of Canaan, to
the Chaldean, and yet you were not
satisfied with this.
30 How weak is your heart, declares
Adonai YAHWEH, since you do all
these, the work of a woman, an
overbearing prostitute,
31 in that you built your mound in
the head of every highway, and you
make your high place in every open
place; yet you have not been as a
prostitute, even scorning wages.
32 Like the adulterous wife, instead
of her husband, she takes strangers.
33 They give a gift to all harlots, but
you give your gifts to all your lovers
and bribe them to come to you from all
around for your fornication.
34 And in you was the opposite from
those women in your fornications,
since no one whores after you, and in
your giving wages, and hire is not
given to you. In this you are opposite.
35 Therefore, O harlot, hear the
Word of YAHWEH,
36 So says Adonai YAHWEH:
Because your lewdness was poured
out, and your nakedness was bared in
your fornications with your lovers and
with the idols of your abominations,
and by the blood of your sons whom
you gave to them;
37 therefore, behold, I will gather all
your lovers with whom you have been
pleased, even all whom you have
loved, with all whom you have hated, I
will even gather them against you from
all around, and will uncover your
nakedness to them. Yea, they will see
all your nakedness.
38 And I will judge you with
judgments of adulteresses, and with
shedders of blood. And I will give you
blood of fury and jealousy.
39 And I will give you into their
hand, and they will tear down your
mound, and will demolish your high
places. They shall also strip you of
your clothes and shall take your
beautiful things, and leave you naked
and bare.
40 And they will raise an assembly
to come up against you, and they shall
stone you with stones, and cut you
with their swords.
41 And they shall burn your houses
with fire and make judgments against
you in the sight of many women. And I
will make you stop fornicating; and,
also, you shall not give hire again.
42 So I will make My fury to rest
against you, and My jealousy shall
depart from you. And I will be quiet
and will not be angry any more.
43 Because you have not
remembered the days of your youth,
but have troubled Me in all these, so,
behold, I also will give your way back
on your head, declares Adonai
YAHWEH. And you shall not commit
the wickedness above all your
abominations.
44 Behold, all who use proverbs
shall use this proverb against you,
saying, As the mother, so is the
daughter.
45 You are your mother's daughter
who despises her husband and her
sons. And you are the sister of your
sisters who despise their husbands
and their sons. Your mother was a
Hittite and your father was an
Amorite.
46 And your older sister is Samaria,
she and her daughters who are
dwelling on your left. And your
younger sister from you who dwells on
the right is Sodom and her daughters.
47 Yet you have not walked in their
ways nor have done according to their
abominations. As if it were only a little

thing, you were even more corrupted
than they in all your ways.
48 As I live, declares Adonai
YAHWEH, your sister Sodom, she
and her daughters, have not done as
you and your daughters have done.
49 Behold, this was the iniquity of
your sister Sodom: pride, fullness of
bread, and abundance of idleness was
in her and her daughters. Also, she did
not strengthen the hand of the poor
and needy.
50 Also, they were haughty and did
abomination before My face, so I
turned them away as I saw fit.
51 And Samaria has not sinned as
much as half your sins, but you have
multiplied your abominations more
than they, and have justified your
sisters in all your abominations which
you have done.
52 And you who have judged your
sisters must bear your humiliation by
your sins which you abominably did
more than they; they are more
righteous than you. And also you be
ashamed and bear your shame, in that
you have justified your sisters.
53 When I shall return their
captivity, the captivity of Sodom and
her daughters, and the captivity of
Samaria and her daughters, then also
the captivity of your captivity in their
midst;
54 so that you may bear your shame
and be disgraced from all that you
have done, since you are a comfort to
them.
55 When your sisters, Sodom and
her daughters, shall return to their
former state, and Samaria and her
daughters shall return to their former
state, then you and your daughters
shall return to your former state.
56 For your sister Sodom was not to
be heard from your mouth in the day
of your pride,
57 before your evil was uncovered, as
at the time of the reproach of Syria's
daughters and all the ones around her,
the daughters of the Philistines who
hated you from all around.
58 You are bearing your wickedness
and your abominations, declares
YAHWEH.
59 For so says Adonai YAHWEH: I
will even do with you as you have
done, who have despised the oath in
breaking the covenant.
60 But I will remember My covenant
with you in the days of your youth, and
I will raise up to you an everlasting
covenant.
61 Then you shall remember your
ways and be ashamed, when you shall
receive your sisters, the older than you
to the younger than you, and I will give
them to you for daughters, but not by
your covenant.
62 And I, even I, will raise up My
covenant with you. And you shall
know that I am YAHWEH,
63 so that you may remember and be
ashamed. And you will not any more
open your mouth, because of your
humiliation, when I am propitiated for
you for all that you have done, declares
Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 17

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to
me, saying,
2 Son of man, put forth a riddle and
speak a parable to the house of Israel.
3 And say, So says Adonai
YAHWEH: A great eagle came to
Lebanon, one with great wings, long of
pinion, full of feathers, having
different colors to him. And he took
the top of the cedar.
4 He plucked off the first of its young
twigs and brought it into a land of
traders. He set it in a city of
merchants.
5 He also took of the seed of the land

and planted it in a field of seed. He
took it by great waters; he set it as a
willow.
6 And it sprouted and became a
spreading low vine, and it turned its
branches to face toward him, and its
roots were under him. So it became a
vine and made branches, and sent out
boughs.
7 Also there was another great eagle
with great wings and many feathers.
And, behold, this vine bent its roots
toward him, and sent out its branches
to him, to water it, away from the beds
of its planting.
8 It was planted in a good field by
great waters to make branches and to
bear fruit, to be a splendid vine.
9 Say, So says Adonai YAHWEH:
Shall it prosper? Shall he not pull up
its roots and cut off its fruit and wither
it? All the leaves of its sprouting shall
wither, and not with great arm, nor by
many people shall any raise it by its
roots.
10 And behold, being planted, shall
it prosper? Shall it not utterly wither
when the east wind[1] touches it? It shall
wither in the beds where it sprouted.
11 And the Word of YAHWEH was
to me, saying,
12 Say now to the rebellious house,
Do you not know what these mean?
But speak, Behold, the king of Babylon
has come to Jerusalem, and has taken
its king and its rulers, and has brought
them to himself at Babylon.
13 And he took of the royal seed, and
he has cut with him a covenant and
has made him enter into an oath. And
he took the mighty of the land,
14 that the kingdom might be low,
that it might not lift itself up to keep
its covenant, that it might stand.
15 But he rebelled against him in
sending his messengers to Egypt, to
give horses and many people to him.
Shall he prosper? Shall he who does
these things escape? Or shall he break
the covenant and be delivered?
16 As I live, declares Adonai
YAHWEH, Surely, in the place of the
king who made him king, whose oath
he despised and whose covenant he
broke, there he shall die with him in
the midst of Babylon.
17 And Pharaoh shall not work for
him with great army or great company
in the war by pouring out mounds and
building siege walls to cut off many
souls.
18 And he has despised the oath by
breaking the covenant. And, behold,
he had given his hand, and he has
done all these things, he shall not
escape[2].
19 So Adonai YAHWEH says this:
As I live, surely My oath that he has
despised, and My covenant that he has
broken, I will even give it on his head.
20 And I will spread My net over
him, and he shall be taken in My
snare. And I will bring him to Babylon.
And I will judge him there with his
treason which he has betrayed against
Me.
21 And all his fugitives shall fall by
the sword, with all his bands. And
those who remain shall be scattered to
every wind. And you shall know that I,
YAHWEH, have spoken.
22 So says Adonai YAHWEH: I will
also take, even I, of the top of the
highest cedar and I will set it; I will
crop off a tender one from the first of

[1] The Hebrew word is Kadima, the same name as the political party in Israel.

[2] The explanation of the story is the leader of Babylon took the leader of Judah to Babylon and coerced him into a deal trusting in Babylon instead of YHWH and the whole nation was punished for it. Babylon is depicted by a great eagle another clue to who end time Babylon is.

its young twigs[3], and I will plant it on a high and lofty mountain.
23 I will plant it in a high mountain of Israel. And it will bear boughs and produce fruit and will become a majestic cedar. And every bird of every wing shall dwell under it; they shall dwell in the shadow of its branches.
24 And all the trees of the field shall know that I, YAHWEH, have brought down the high tree. and have exalted the low tree, and have dried up the green tree, and have made the dry tree flourish. I, YAHWEH, have spoken and acted. *(Dan 5:21, 1 Sam 2:7-8)*

Chapter 18

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 What is it to you that you use this proverb concerning the land of Israel, saying, The fathers have eaten sour grapes and the teeth of the sons are dull[1]? *(Jer 31:29)*
3 As I live, states Adonai YAHWEH, there is not any longer occasion to you to use this proverb in Israel.
4 Behold, they are all My souls. As the soul of the father, also the soul of the son, they are Mine. The soul that sins, it shall die[2].
5 But a man that is righteous and does what is just and right,
6 who has not eaten on the mountains, and his eyes have not lifted up to the idols of the house of Israel, and has not defiled his neighbor's wife, and has not come near to a menstruating woman,
7 and has not oppressed a man (he returns his pledge to the debtor and has not robbed by robbery), has given his bread to the hungry, and he has covered the naked with clothing.
8 He has not given on interest, and he has not taken increase[3]; he has turned his hand from injustice, having done true justice between man and man.
9 He has walked in My statutes and has kept My judgments to deal truly; he is righteous. Surely, he shall live, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
10 And if he fathers a violent son, who sheds blood and does to a brother any of these;
11 even if he does not do any of these himself; that also the son he has eaten on the mountains, and has defiled his neighbor's wife;
12 he has oppressed the poor and needy; he has robbed violently; he has not returned the pledge, and has lifted up his eyes to the idols; he has committed abomination;
13 he has given on interest and has taken increase; shall he also live? He shall not live. He has done all these abominations; surely, he shall die; his blood shall be on him.
14 Now, behold! If he fathers a son who sees all his father's sins which he has done, and sees, and does not do like them;
15 he has not eaten on the mountains, and has not lifted up his eyes to the idols of the house of Israel; he has not defiled his neighbor's wife,
16 and has not oppressed a man, has not withheld the pledge, and he has not robbed violently; he has given his bread to the hungry, and he has covered the naked with clothing,
17 has turned back his hand off the poor, and has not received interest and

---

[3] A messianic promise Is 11:1, Zech 6:12
[1] See note on Jer 31:29
[2] Man does not have a soul, but "*is*" a living soul (Gen 2:7), by having the breath of life from YHWH. Clearly, here this scripture shows that souls are not immortal, which is a medieval doctrine out of paganism, but a soul can die and sin will bring eternal death.

[3] To charge a fellow Israelite interest was unlawful Ex 22:25 Lev 25:35-37.

increase. He has done My judgments, has walked in My statutes. He shall not die for the iniquity of his father. Surely, he shall live.

18 His father, because he did cruelly oppress, he has robbed his brother violently, and did what is not good among his people, behold, even he shall die in his iniquity.

19 Yet you say, Why? Does not the son bear the iniquity of the father? When the son has done justice and righteousness, he has kept all My statutes and has done them, surely, he shall live.

20 The soul that sins, it shall die. A son shall not bear the iniquity of the father. And a father shall not bear the iniquity of the son. The righteousness of the righteous shall be upon him, and the wickedness of the wicked shall be on him[1]. *(Ezek 18:4, Math 10:28)*

21 But the wicked, if he will turn from all his sins which he has done, and keep all My statutes, and do justice and righteousness, living he shall live; he shall not die.

22 All his transgressions that he has done, they shall not be mentioned to him in his righteousness which he has done; he shall live.

23 Do I take pleasure and delight in the death of the wicked? Declares Adonai YAHWEH. Is it not that he should turn from his ways and live[2]?

24 But when the righteous turns from his righteousness and does injustice, according to all the abominations that the wicked do, he also does, shall he live? All his righteousness that he has done shall not be remembered in his treason[3] that he has betrayed, and in his sin that he has sinned, in them he shall die.

25 Yet you say, The way of YAHWEH, is not fair. Hear now, O house of Israel. Is My way not fair? Are your ways not unfair?

26 When a righteous one turns from his righteousness and does injustice and dies in them, he shall die for his injustice which he has done.

27 And when the wicked turns from his wickedness that he has done and does justice and righteousness, he shall keep his soul alive.

28 Because he sees and turns from all his transgressions that he has done, surely, he shall live; he shall not die.

29 But the house of Israel says, The way of YAHWEH, is not fair. Are My ways not fair, O house of Israel? Is it not your ways that are not fair?

30 I will judge you, each man by his ways, O house of Israel, declares Adonai YAHWEH. Turn and be made to turn from all your transgressions, and iniquity shall not be a stumbling-block to you.

31 Cast away all your transgressions from you by which you have transgressed in them, and make for yourselves a new heart and a new spirit; for why will you die, O house of Israel? *(Jer 31:31-34, Ezek 36:24-26)*

32 For I do not have delight in the death of him who dies, declares Adonai YAHWEH. So turn and live.

---

[1] Each person will either be rewarded or punished for his own actions, 2Cor 5:10.

[2] YHWH is all merciful and any person, no matter how grave the sin, if they have true heartfelt repentance, then YAHWEH will forgive them, Math 9:12-13, Ps 103:8-13.

[3] This scripture is a good example why good works alone cannot earn salvation, as a good deed cannot equal a bad deed (sin). To turn from Yahweh, even if one had done many good deeds is considered treason. Loyalty is an extreme per-requisite to enter the Kingdom, Math 7:21-23.

Chapter 19

1 And you lift up a lament for the rulers of Israel,
2 and say, What is your mother? A lioness, she lay down among lions, among young lions she multiplied her cubs.
3 And she brought up one of her cubs; he became a young lion and learned to tear the prey; he ate men.
4 And the nations heard of him. He was taken in their pit, and they brought him in chains to the land of Egypt[1].
5 And when she saw that she had waited, and her hope had been lost, then she took another of her cubs and made him a young lion.
6 And he went about among the lions. He became a young lion and learned to tear the prey; he ate men.
7 And he knew his widows, and he laid their cities waste, and the land and its fullness were desolated from the sound of his roaring.
8 Then the nations set against him on every side from the provinces, and they spread their net over him; he was taken in their pit.
9 And they put him in a cage in chains and brought him to the king of Babylon. They brought him into hunting nets so that his voice should not any longer be heard on the mountains of Israel[2].
10 Your mother is like a vine in your blood, planted by the waters. She was fruitful and full of branches because of many waters.
11 And there were rods to her, strong for the scepters of rulers, and her stature was exalted among the thick branches. And it was seen in her height, with the multitude of her branches.
12 But she was plucked in fury. She was thrown to the ground, and the east wind dried up her fruit. Her strong rods were torn away and withered; the fire burned her.
13 And now she is planted in the wilderness, in a dry and thirsty ground.
14 And fire has gone out from a rod of her branches, it consumed her fruit, and there is not a strong rod in her to be a scepter to rule. It is a lament, and has become a lament[3].

Chapter 20

1 And it was in the seventh year, in the fifth month, the tenth of the month, men came from the elders of Israel to inquire of YAHWEH, and sat before me.
2 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
3 Son of man, speak to the elders of Israel and say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Have you come to inquire of Me? As I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, I will not be inquired of by you.
4 Will you judge them, will you judge, son of man? Cause them to know the abominations of their fathers.
5 And say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: In the day I chose Israel and lifted My hand to the seed of the house of Jacob, and I was made known to them in the land of Egypt, when I lifted up My hand to them[4], saying, I am YAHWEH your Elohim.

---

[1] Most likely referencing Jehoahaz who was taken captive to Egypt by Pharaoh Necho in around 609 B.C (2 Kgs 23:33-34).

[2] The second lion would be Jehoiachin taken to Babylon in 597 B.C by Nebuchadnezzar 2Kgs 24:15.

[3] Verse 10-14, Judah is again compared to a vine Ezek 15:2-5, Ezek 17:6 Is 5:1-7.

[4] An act involved with swearing an oath according to the ancient blood covenant.

6 In that day I lifted up My hand to
them to bring them out from the land
of Egypt into a land flowing with milk
and honey that I had searched out for
them, the glory of it is to all lands[1].
7 Then I said to them, Let each man
cast away the filthy idols of his eyes,
and do not defile yourselves with the
idols of Egypt; I am YAHWEH your
Elohim.
8 But they rebelled against Me and
would not listen to Me. They did not
each man throw away the filthy idols
of their eyes, and they did not forsake
the idols of Egypt. Then I said, I will
pour out My fury against them, to
complete My anger against them in the
midst of the land of Egypt.
9 But I worked for My name's sake,
that it should not be profaned in the
eyes of the nations among whom they
were[2], for I made Myself known to
them in their eyes, by bringing them
out of the land of Egypt. *(Jer 44:26)*
10 I caused them to go out from the
land of Egypt, and brought them into
the wilderness.
11 And I gave them My statutes, and
I made them know My judgments,
which if a man does them, he will even
live by them[3].
12 And I also gave them My
Sabbaths[4] to be a sign between Me and
them, that they might know that I am
YAHWEH who sets them apart.
13 But the house of Israel rebelled
against Me in the wilderness. They did
not walk in My statutes, and they
despised My judgments, which if a
man does them he will even live by
them. And they greatly profaned My
Sabbaths. Then I said, I will pour out
My fury on them in the wilderness, to
consume them.
14 But I worked for My name's sake,
that it should not be profaned in the
eyes of the nations, before whom I
brought them out, in their eyes.
15 And I also lifted up My hand to
them in the wilderness, that I would
not bring them into the land flowing
with milk and honey which I had
given; it is the glory to all the lands[5],
16 because they despised My
judgments, and they did not walk in
My statutes, and they profaned My
Sabbaths; for their heart went after
their idols.
17 And My eye spared them, from
destroying them, and I did not make
an end of them in the wilderness.
18 But I said to their sons in the
wilderness, Do not walk in the statutes
of your fathers and do not keep their
judgments, and do not defile
yourselves with their idols.
19 I am YAHWEH your Elohim,
walk in My statutes, and keep My
judgments, and do them.
20 And guard My Sabbaths to keep
them holy, and they shall be a sign
between Me and you, that you may
know that I am YAHWEH your
Elohim[6].
21 But the sons rebelled against Me.
They did not walk in My statutes, and
they did not keep My judgments, to do
them, which if a man does them, he

[1] Israel went as shepherds in Egypt to farmers in Israel. Here, showing a land of *"milk and honey"* is showing the abundance of food and drink for both them and their animals, a shepherds dream.

[2] The Creator's name is YAHWEH and He states He will not give His glory to idols (Is 42:8). When Judah went into captivity in Babylon from that time they stopped using the true name of the Creator YAHWEH, and in doing so caused the nations and ultimately Christianity later to adopt the personal name of the Babylonian deity "*god" or "gawd*" instead of **YAHWEH**.

[3] Keeping Torah only gives life and blessings

[4] The Sabbath goes back to creation (Gen 2:1), and is Yahweh's not Israel's.

[5] Deut 11:11-12

shall live by them. They profaned My Sabbaths. Then I said I would pour out My fury on them, to fulfill My anger against them in the wilderness.

22 But I withdrew My hand and acted for My name's sake, that it should not be profaned in the eyes of the nations, from whom I brought them out in their eyes.

23 And I lifted up My hand to them in the wilderness, to scatter them among the nations and sow them among the lands,

24 because they had not done My judgments and had despised My statutes and had profaned My Sabbaths. And their eyes were after their fathers' idols.

25 Therefore I also gave them statutes that were not good, and judgments by which they could not live.

26 And I defiled them by their own gifts, by making all that open the womb to cross the fire, so that I might waste them, to the end that they might know that I am YAHWEH.

27 So speak to the house of Israel, son of man, and say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Yet in this your fathers have blasphemed Me, by covering up their trespass against Me.

28 When I had brought them into the land for which I lifted up My hand, to give it to them, then they saw every high hill and every leafy tree; and they offered their sacrifices there. And they have their provoking offering there. They also made their soothing aroma there and poured out their drink offerings there.

29 Then I said to them, What is the high place to which you go there? And its name is called Bamah[1] to this day.

30 For this reason, say to the house of Israel, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Are you being defiled in the way of your fathers? And do you go whoring after their filthy idols?

31 For when you lift up your gifts, when you pass your sons through the fire[2], you defile yourselves with all your idols, even to this day. And I will not be inquired of by you, O house of Israel. As I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, I will not be inquired of by you.

32 And what comes up on your spirit shall surely not occur, that you say, We will be like the nations, like the families of the lands, to serve wood and stone[3].

33 As I live, says Adonai YAHWEH, Surely with a mighty hand, and with an outstretched arm, and with fury poured out, I will reign over you[4].

34 And I will bring you out from the peoples and gather you from the lands in which you are scattered among them with a mighty hand and with an outstretched arm, and with fury poured out[5].

35 And I will bring you into the

[6] Israel was commanded to guard Yahweh's Sabbath day to keep it set apart, instead they greatly defiled it. The Sabbath is the very sign between Yahweh and His children that He is their Creator and sustainer (Ex 31:12-19)

[1] Means "*High Place*" where false worship took place.

[2] Referring to human sacrifice of their children

[3] The Israelites had a real living relationship with YAHWEH, the Sovereign Creator and they were willing to disregard this relationship for false deities made of wood and stone simply to be like the nations around them. This is similar today, many will choose false man-made religion over repentance and a true relationship with YAHWEH.

[4] From verse 33 to the end of the chapter it becomes prophetic of Israel's redemption in the end time.

wilderness of the peoples, and I will be
judging with you there face to face[1].
36 Just as I was judging your fathers
in the wilderness of the land of Egypt,
so I will be judging you, declares
Adonai YAHWEH.
37 And I will cause you to pass under
the rod, and I will bring you into the
bond of the covenant[2].
38 And I will purge from among you
the rebels and the transgressors
against Me. I will bring them out of the
land where they reside, and they shall
not enter into the land of Israel. And
you shall know that I am YAHWEH[3].
39 And you, O house of Israel, so
says Adonai YAHWEH: Every man
go, serve his idols, even hereafter, if
you will not listen to Me. But you will
not still profane My holy name with
your gifts and with your idols.
40 For in My holy mountain in the
mountain height of Israel, declares
Adonai YAHWEH, all the house of
Israel shall serve Me there, all of them
in the land. There I will accept them,
and there I will seek your heave
offerings and the first-fruits of your
offerings, with all your holy things[4].
41 I will accept you with a soothing
aroma when I bring you from the
peoples and gather you from the lands
where you have been scattered in
them. And I will be sanctified among
you in the eyes of the nations.
42 And you shall know that I am
YAHWEH when I bring you into the
land of Israel, to the land for which I
lifted up My hand to give it to your
fathers.
43 And you shall remember there
your ways and all your evils by which
you have been defiled in them. And
you will hate yourselves to your faces
for all your evils which you have done[5].
44 And you shall know that I am
YAHWEH when I have worked with
you for My name's sake, and not by
your evil ways, nor by your evil doings,
O house of Israel, declares Adonai
YAHWEH.
45 And the Word of YAHWEH was
to me, saying,
46 Son of man, set your face the way
of the south, and drop a word toward
the Negev, and prophesy against the
forest of the field of the Negev.
47 And say to the forest of the
Negev, Hear the Word of YAHWEH.
So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I
will kindle a fire in you, and it will eat
up every moist tree and every dry tree
among you. The glowing of the flame
shall not be put out, and by it shall be

---

5 Once again YHWH foretells His regathering of Israel from the lands they were scattered showing this all 12 tribes. Here however, He states He will do it with fury Jer 16:11-21.

1 In the end time YHWH will redeem Israel first by revealing their identity to them, and then taking them out of the nations again to the wilderness where their fore-fathers failed to teach them. He will teach them "*face to face*".

2 A shepherd would literally count each of his sheep by having them pass under a rod. This showed ownership to the shepherd and he would discard any sheep that did not belong to him. He would also check each one as they passed under the rod for their welfare and safety. It is interesting to note as this scripture denotes a counting of the chosen by YHWH and Rev 7:3-8 shows the sealing of exactly 144,000.

3 No one in the end time who has a rebellious Laodicean attitude and refuses to follow the leadership and judicial order that YAHWEH has ordained will be accounted to be chosen as a vessel to Elohim, nor will they enter the Promised Land of Israel.

4 Jer 31:1-9

5 True repentance can only come when a person realizes and repents not simply for an act that they did but for their very wicked human nature and who they are.

scorched all the faces from the Negev to the north[1].

48 And all flesh shall see that I, YAHWEH, have kindled it; it shall not be put out.

49 Then I said, Ah, Adonai YAHWEH! They are saying of me, Does he not speak in parables?

Chapter 21

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 Son of man, set your face against Jerusalem and drop a word toward the holy places, and prophesy against the land of Israel.

3 And say to the land of Israel, So says YAHWEH: Behold, I am against you and My sword goes out from its sheath, and I will cut off from you the righteous and the wicked.

4 Because I will cut off the righteous and the wicked from you, therefore, My sword shall go out from its sheath against all flesh, from the Negev to the north. *(Ezek 20:47)*

5 And all flesh shall know that I, YAHWEH, have brought out My sword from its sheath; it shall not return any more.

6 And you, son of man, groan with the breaking of your loins, and groan with bitterness before their eyes.

7 And it will be, when they say to you, For what do you groan? Then you shall say, Because of the news that is coming. And every heart will melt, and all hands will become feeble. And every spirit will faint and all knees will go down as water. Behold, it comes, and it shall be, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

8 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

9 Son of man, prophesy and say, So says Adonai: Say, A sword! A sword is sharpened and also is polished![2]

10 It is sharpened in order to slaughter a slaughter. It is polished so that there may be a flash to it. Or shall we rejoice? You are despising the rod of My son, as if it were every tree.

11 And He has given it to be polished, to be taken by the hand. The sword, it is sharpened, and it is polished, to give it into the hand of the slayer.

12 Cry out and howl, son of man. For it shall be on My people. It shall be on all the rulers of Israel; they are thrown to the sword with My people, so slap your thigh,

13 because it is a test. And what if even the despising rod[3] shall not be? declares Adonai YAHWEH.

14 And you, son of man, prophesy and strike hand to hand. And let the sword be doubled the third time, the sword of the slain. It is the sword of the slain, the great one that surrounds them,

15 so that their heart may melt and many stumble at all their gates. I have given the slaughter by the sword. Ah! It is made like lightning, it is wrapped for a slaughter.

16 Sharpen yourself on the right! Set yourself on the left, wherever your face is appointed.

17 And also I, I will strike My hand to My hand, and I will cause My fury to rest. I, YAHWEH, have spoken.

18 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

19 And you, son of man, set for yourself two ways, that the sword of the king of Babylon may come. Both of

---

1 This phrase "from the *Negev to the north*" is showing a totality of the fire more than a actual direction.

2 This is the sword of YHWH to be used for judgment

3 *"Rod"* referring to the king's scepter. The statement is saying what will Judah do if a king is no longer there to rule the people?

them shall come out from one land. And create a hand at the head of the way to the city, create it.
20 You shall set a way that the sword may enter into Rabbah[1] of the sons of Ammon, and into Judah, into fortified Jerusalem.
21 For the king of Babylon shall stand at the mother of the way, at the head of the two ways to practice divination. He shall shake arrows, he shall ask household idols; he shall look at the liver[2].
22 At his right shall be the divining for Jerusalem, to set battering rams, to open the mouth in the slaughter, to lift up the voice with shouting, to set battering rams against the gates, to pour out a mound, and to build a siege wall.
23 And it shall be to them an empty divining before their eyes, those who have sworn oaths to them. But he will remember iniquity, that they may be taken.
24 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Because you made remembrance of your iniquity, in that your transgressions are uncovered, so that your sins are seen in all your doings, because you have been remembered, you shall be taken with the hand.
25 And you, O slain, wicked prince of Israel, of whom has come his day in the time of iniquity of the end,
26 so says Adonai YAHWEH: Remove the turban and lift off the crown. This shall not be as this was. Lift up the low one, and make the high one low[3].
27 Ruin, ruin, ruin! I will appoint it! Also this shall not be until the coming of Him to whom is the right, and I will give it[4].
28 And you, son of man, prophesy and say, So says Adonai YAHWEH concerning the sons of Ammon, and as to their reproach, even say, The sword, the sword is loosened. It is polished for slaughter to make an end, so that it may be like lightning.
29 While they see vain visions for you, while they divine a lie to you, to put you on the necks of the slain, of the wicked (of whom their day has come), in the time of iniquity it shall have an end.
30 Return it to its sheath. In the place where you were created, in the land of your origin, I will judge you.
31 And I will pour out on you My disgust; with the fire of My wrath I will blow against you and give you into the hand of burning men, skilled in destruction.
32 You shall be to the fire for food. Your blood shall be in the midst of the land. You shall not be remembered. For I, YAHWEH, have spoken.

Chapter 22

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 And you, son of man, will you judge, will you judge the bloody city? Then cause her to know all her abominations.
3 Then you shall say, So says Adonai YAHWEH: The city sheds blood in

[1] "Rabbah" modern day Amman, the capital of Jordan.

[2] Nebuchadnezzar was at a crossroad to either go to Rabbah in trans-Jordan or to Jerusalem. He used divination to decide by marking arrows and placing them in a shaker and choosing one.. The king used the occult by the marks and color of a sheep's liver to decide.

[3] "*Turban*" a royal headdress mostly worn by priests but here showing the reversal of fortune of conditions due to Elohim's intervention.

[4] The scepter would return to Israel when King Messiah would appear (Gen 49:10).

her midst, that her time may come. And she makes idols against herself, to defile herself.

4 By your blood which you have shed, you are guilty; and by your idols which you have made, you are defiled. And your days are brought near, and you have come to your years. On account of this, I have made you a reproach to the nations, and a mocking to all the lands.

5 Those who are near and those far from you shall mock against you, O defiled of name, abounding in tumult.

6 Behold, the rulers of Israel, each man by his might, have been in you in order to pour out blood.

7 In you they have despised father and mother. In your midst they have dealt with the alien by oppression. In you they oppressed the widow and the orphan. *(Is 1:17, Ja 1:27)*

8 You have despised My holy things and have profaned My Sabbaths[1].

9 In you are men of slander in order to shed blood, and in you they eat on the mountains. In your midst they do unchaste acts.

10 In you he has uncovered the nakedness of the father; in you they humbled the defiled by her impurity.

11 And a man has done abomination with his neighbor's wife, and a man has defiled his daughter-in-law in unchaste acts. And in you a man has humbled his sister, his father's daughter[2].

12 In you they have taken bribes in order to pour out blood. You have taken interest and increase, and you have gained by extortion of your neighbor. And you have forgotten Me, declares Adonai YAHWEH[3].

13 And behold! I have struck My hand against your unjust gain which you have made, and at your blood which has been in your midst.

14 Can your heart stand, or can your hands be strong, in the days that I shall work with you? I, YAHWEH, have spoken, and I will work.

15 And I will scatter you among the nations and sow you in the lands. And I will destroy your uncleanness out of you.

16 And you will be profaned in you in the eyes of the nations. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

17 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

18 Son of man, the house of Israel has become dross to Me. All of them are copper and tin, and iron and lead, in the middle of the furnace; they are the dross of silver.

19 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Because all of you have become for dross, therefore, behold, I will gather you into the midst of Jerusalem.

20 As they gather silver, and copper, and iron, and lead, and tin, into the middle of the furnace, to blow the fire on it to melt it; so I will gather you in My anger and in My fury. And I will leave you there and melt you.

21 And I will collect you and blow on you in the fire of My wrath, and you shall be melted in its midst.

22 As silver is melted in the midst of the furnace, so you shall be melted in its midst. And you shall know that I, YAHWEH, have poured out My fury on you.

23 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

24 Son of man, speak to her: You are a land, she is not being cleansed, you are not rained on in the day of disgust.

25 A plot by her prophets is in her midst, like a roaring lion tearing prey. They have devoured souls and they

---

1 One of the gravest sins that Israel committed was to defile the Sabbath day Ezek 20:13, 21, 24.

2 All violations of the Torah Lev 18:7-20.

3 Lev 25:35-37

have taken the riches and gems. They multiplied her widows in her midst.

26 Her priests have violated My Torah and have profaned My holy things. They have not divided between the holy and the common, and between the unclean and clean they have not taught. And they have hidden their eyes from the Sabbaths, and I am profaned among them[1]. *(Ezek 44:23)*

27 Her rulers in her midst are like wolves tearing prey, to pour out blood, to destroy souls, in order to gain unjust gain.

28 And her prophets have smeared themselves with lime, a seer of empty visions, and divining lies to them, saying, So says Adonai YAHWEH, when YAHWEH has not spoken[2].

29 The people of the land have used oppression and practiced robbery. And they troubled the poor and the needy, and they have oppressed the stranger without justice.

30 And I sought among them a man to wall up a wall and stand in the gap before Me for the land, that I should not destroy it, but I found none. (*Jer 5:1)*

31 So I have poured out on them My disgust. With the fire of My wrath I consumed them. I have given their way on their heads, states Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 23

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 Son of man, there were two women, daughters of one mother.

3 And they played the harlot in Egypt; in their youth they fornicated. Their breasts were handled, and there their virgin nipples were worked.

[1] It was the responsibility of the priests to be teaching the Torah to the people.

[2] Ezek 13:2, 6-7, 10

4 And their names were Oholah, the oldest, and Oholibah, her sister. And they were Mine, and they bore sons and daughters. And their names: Samaria is Oholah, and Jerusalem is Oholibah[3].

5 And Oholah whored under Me. And she lusted on her lovers, to Assyrian neighbors,

6 clothed with purple, governors and rulers, all of them desirable young men, horsemen riding horses.

7 And she bestowed her harlotries on them, the choice sons of Assyria, with all of them, and with all after whom she lusted. She defiled herself with all their idols.

8 And she did not leave her fornications from Egypt. For they lay with her in her youth, and they worked her virgin nipples and poured their fornications on her.

9 So I have given her into the hand of her lovers, into the hand of the sons of Assyria on whom she lusted.

10 They uncovered her nakedness. They took her sons and her daughters. And they killed her with the sword. And she was notorious among women, and they executed judgments on her.

11 And her sister Oholibah saw. And she was more corrupt in her lustfulness than she, and her fornications were greater than her sister's whoredom.

12 She lusted to the sons of Assyria, neighboring governors and rulers clothed most perfectly, horsemen riding horses, all of them desirable young men.

13 Then I saw that she was defiled, one way was to both of them.

14 And she added to her fornications. And she saw men carved on the wall, images of the Chaldeans engraved with red color,

[3] Oholah mean she who has a tent and Oholibah means my tent is in her.

15 girded with girdles on their loins,
with overflowing turbans on their
heads, the appearance of rulers, all of
them, like the sons of Babylon in
Chaldea, the land of their birth.
16 And she lusted after them, to the
sight of her eyes, and sent messengers
to them into Chaldea.
17 And the sons of Babylon came to
her, to the bed of love. And they
defiled her with their fornications.
And she was defiled with them, and
her soul was alienated from them.
18 And she uncovered her
fornications and uncovered her
nakedness. Then My soul was
alienated from her, just as My soul was
alienated from her sister.
19 And she multiplied her
fornications to recall the days of her
youth, in which she had fornicated in
the land of Egypt.
20 And she lusted on their lovers of
whom the flesh of donkeys resembles
their flesh, and as the issue of horses
was their issue.
21 And you longed for the
wickedness of your youth, when from
Egypt they worked your nipples, for
the sake of the breasts of your youth.
22 Therefore, O Oholibah, Adonai
YAHWEH says this: Behold, I will
arouse your lovers against you, from
whom your soul is alienated. And I will
bring them against you from all
around[1],
23 Babylon's sons and all the
Chaldeans, Pekod, and Shoa, and
Koa,[2] all the sons of Assyria with them,
desirable young men, governors and
rulers, all of them, third heads and
called ones, all of them riding horses.
24 And they shall come against you
with weapons, chariots, and wheels,
and with an assembly of peoples;
buckler and shield and helmet shall set
against you all around. And I will give
before them judgment, and they will
judge you by their judgments.
25 And I will give My jealousy
against you, and they will deal with
you in fury. Your nose and your ears
they will take, and the rest of you shall
fall by the sword. They will take your
sons and your daughters, and the rest
of you shall be devoured by the fire.
26 And they will strip you of your
clothes, and take the articles of your
beauty.
27 And I will cause your wickedness
to cease from you, and your
fornication from the land of Egypt.
And you shall not lift up your eyes to
them, and Egypt shall not be
remembered by you any more.
28 For so says Adonai YAHWEH:
Behold, I will give you into the hand of
those whom you hate, into the hand of
whom your soul was alienated from
them.
29 And they shall deal with you in
hatred and take all your labor, and
shall leave you naked and bare. And
the nakedness of your adulteries will
be bared, even your lewdness and your
fornications.
30 These will be done to you because
you have whored after the nations,
because you are defiled with their
idols.
31 You have walked in the way of
your sister, and I will give her cup into
your hand.
32 So says Adonai YAHWEH: You
shall drink your sister's cup deep and
wide; you shall be laughed at and
mocked, for it holds much.

---

1 Verse 3-22 is poetically showing how unfaithful both the House of Israel and the House of Judah were and how they sought the corrupt pagan nations around them instead of seeking YHWH and these very nations whom they sought alliance with will destroy them.

2 These are all tribes east of the Tigris River and in alliance with Babylon.

33 With drunkenness and sorrow
you are filled, the cup of horror and
ruin, the cup of your sister Samaria.
34 And you shall drink it and drain
it. And you shall break its fragments
and tear off your breasts. For I have
spoken, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
35 Therefore Adonai YAHWEH says
this: Because you have forgotten Me
and cast Me behind your back, so also
you bear your wickedness and your
adulteries.
36 And YAHWEH said to me, Son
of man, will you judge Oholah and
Oholibah? Then declare to them their
abominations.
37 For they committed adultery, and
blood is on their hands. Yea, they
committed adultery with their idols,
and even their sons whom they bore to
Me, they cause to pass to them to be
consumed.
38 Even still they have done this to
Me: They have defiled My sanctuary in
that day, and have profaned My
Sabbaths.
39 And when they had slain their
sons to their idols, then they came into
My sanctuary in that day to profane it.
And, lo, this they have done in the
midst of My house.
40 Furthermore, they have sent for
men to come from a distance, of whom
a messenger was sent to them. And
behold, they came, for whom you
washed, painted your eyes, and were
adorned with gems.
41 And you sat on a glorious bed,
and a table was arranged before it, and
My incense and My oil you set on it.
42 And the sound of a crowd at ease
was with her, and drunkards from the
wilderness were brought with the men
of the host of mankind. And they put
bracelets on their hands and crowns of
beauty on their heads.
43 Then I said about the one worn in
adulteries, Will they now fornicate
with her, and she with them?
44 And they went in to her. As they
go in to a woman of harlotry, so they
went in to Oholah and to Oholibah, the
wicked women.
45 And as righteous men, they shall
judge them with the judgment of
adulteresses, and the judgment of
women who shed blood, because they
are adulteresses, and blood is in their
hands.
46 For so says Adonai YAHWEH:
Bring up on them an assembly, and
give them to terror and plunder.
47 And the assembly shall stone
them with stones and cut them down
with their swords. They shall slay their
sons and their daughters, and they
shall burn their houses with fire.
48 So I will cause to cease
wickedness out of the land, that all the
women may be taught, even not to do
according to your wickedness.
49 And they shall put your
wickedness on you, and you shall bear
the sins of your idols. And you shall
know that I am Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 24

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to
me in the ninth year, in the tenth
month, in the tenth of the month,
saying[1],
2 Son of man, write for yourself the
name of the day, this very day. The
king of Babylon has leaned toward
Jerusalem in this very day.
3 And parable a parable to the house
of rebellion, and say to them, So says
Adonai YAHWEH: Set on the pot! Set
it on, and also pour water in it.
4 Gather its pieces into it, every good

[1] Ezekiel's parable is being acted out in Babylon on the anniversary of when the siege began on Jerusalem, 2Kgs 25:1.

piece, the thigh and the shoulder. Fill
it with choice bones,
5 take the choice of the flock and also
pile the bones under it. Boiling make it
boil. Also let them seethe its bones in
it.
6 So Adonai YAHWEH says this:
Woe to the bloody city, to the pot
whose rust is in it, and its rust has not
gone out of it! Bring it out piece by
piece. Let not a lot fall on it.
7 For her blood is in her midst, she
set it on a shining rock. She did not
pour it on the ground, to cover it with
dust.
8 In order to cause fury to come up
to take vengeance, I have put her
blood on a shining rock, that it should
not be covered.
9 So Adonai YAHWEH says this:
Woe to the bloody city! I also shall
make great the pile,
10 and heap on the wood, kindle the
fire, consume the flesh, and mix in the
spice, and let the bones be burned.
11 Then make it stand on its coals
empty, so that it may be hot and its
copper may glow, and its defilement
be melted in its midst, that its rust
may be consumed.
12 She is wearied with toil, and the
increase of her rust did not go out, her
rust will be in the fire.
13 In your defilement is wickedness.
Because I have cleansed you, yet you
are not cleansed, you shall not be
cleansed from your defilement any
more until I have caused My fury to
cease on you.
14 I, YAHWEH, have spoken; it
shall come, and I will do it. I will not
let go, and I will not spare, I will not
pity. By your ways and by your doings
they shall judge you, declares Adonai
YAHWEH.
15 And the Word of YAHWEH was
to me, saying,
16 Son of man, behold, I am taking
from you the desire of your eyes with a
stroke. Yet you shall not wail nor
weep, and your tears shall not come[1].
17 Groan, but be silent; do not make
a mourning for her who died. Bind
your turban on you, and put your
sandals on your feet, and do not cover
the mustache nor eat the bread of
men.
18 And I spoke to the people in the
morning. And my wife died in the
evening. And I did in the morning as I
was commanded.
19 And the people said to me, Will
you not tell us what the things you are
doing are to us?
20 Then I said to them, The Word of
YAHWEH was to me, saying,
21 Speak to the house of Israel, So
says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I will
profane My sanctuary, the pride of
your strength, the desire of your eyes,
and that which your soul pities. And
your sons and your daughters whom
you have forsaken shall fall by the
sword.
22 And you shall do as I have done.
You shall not cover over the mustache,
and you shall not eat the bread of men.
23 And your turbans shall be on your
heads and your sandals on your feet.
You shall not wail nor weep, but you
shall rot away in your iniquities, and
each man groan to his brother.
24 So Ezekiel is for a sign to you. As
all that he has done, you shall do. And
when it comes, then you shall know
that I am Adonai YAHWEH.
25 And you, son of man, will it not
be on the day when I take from them
their strength, the joy of their beauty,
the desire of their eyes, and the lifting
up of their soul, their sons and their
daughters?
26 He will come in that day, he who

[1] Elohim is about to take Ezekiel's wife by a sudden stroke.

escaped to you, to cause you to hear with your ears.

27 In that day your mouth shall be opened to the escaped one, and you shall speak and not be dumb any longer. And you shall be to them a sign, and they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 25

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 Son of man, set your face against the sons of Ammon and prophesy against them.

3 And say to the sons of Ammon, Hear the Word of Adonai YAHWEH. So says Adonai YAHWEH: Because you have said, Aha! against My sanctuary when it was profaned, and against the land of Israel when it was ruined, and against the house of Judah when they went into exile;

4 therefore, behold, I will give you to the sons of the east[1] for a possession. And they shall set their camp sites among you, and put among you their dwellings. They shall eat your fruit, and they shall drink your milk.

5 And I will give Rabbah for a pasture for camels, and the sons of Ammon for a resting place for flocks. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

6 For so says Adonai YAHWEH: Because you have clapped the hand, and you stamped the foot, and rejoiced with all your spite in your soul against the land of Israel;

7 Therefore, behold, I will stretch out My hand on you and will give you as a prize to the nations. And I will cut you off from the peoples, and I will make you perish from the earth; I will destroy you, and you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

8 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Because Moab and Seir say, Behold, the house of Judah is like all the nations.

9 So behold! I will open the side of Moab from the cities, from his cities, from his borders, the glory of the land: Beth-Jeshimoth, Baal-Meon, and Kiriathaim.

10 To the sons of the east, with the sons of Ammon, even I will give it for a possession so that the sons of Ammon may not be remembered among the nations.

11 And I will execute judgments on Moab. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

12 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Because Edom has acted by taking vengeance against the house of Judah, and they are very guilty and are avenged on them,

13 Therefore, Adonai YAHWEH says this: I will stretch My hand on Edom and will cut off from it man and beast, and I will lay it waste. From Teman even to Dedan they shall fall by the sword.

14 And I will put My vengeance on Edom by the hand of My people Israel. And they shall do in Edom as is My anger and as is My fury. And they shall know My vengeance, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

15 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Because the Philistines have acted in vengeance and have taken vengeance with spite in their soul, to destroy with perpetual hatred;

16 so Adonai YAHWEH says this, Behold, I will stretch My hand on the Philistines, and I will cut off the Cherethites and will destroy the rest of the coast of the sea.

17 And I will execute on them great vengeance with rebukes of fury. And

---

[1] The Hebrew for this word is Kadima, which is also a new political party formed in Israel in 2006.

when I put My vengeance on them, they will know that I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 26

1 And it was in the eleventh year, in
the first of the month, the Word of
YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 Son of man, because Tyre has said
against Jerusalem, Aha! She is
shattered, the doors of the peoples;
she has turned to me, I shall be filled,
she is laid waste.
3 So Adonai YAHWEH says this,
Behold, I am against you, O Tyre. And
I will cause many nations to go up
against you, as the sea causes its waves
to go up.
4 And they shall destroy the walls of
Tyre and break down her towers. I will
also scrape her dust from her and
make her like a shining rock.
5 It shall be a spreading place for
nets in the middle of the sea. For I
have spoken, declares Adonai
YAHWEH. And she shall be a prize to
the nations.
6 And her daughters who are in the
field shall be killed by the sword. And
they shall know that I am YAHWEH.
7 For so says Adonai YAHWEH:
Behold, I will bring on Tyre from the
north, Nebuchadnezzar, king of
Babylon, a king of kings, with horses
and with chariots and with a company
of horsemen, even many people.
8 He shall kill your daughters in the
field with the sword. And he shall give
siege walls against you and pour out a
mound against you, and raise a
buckler against you.
9 And he will set the blow of his ram
against your walls, and he will break
down your towers with his axes.
10 From the multitude of his horses
their dust shall cover you. From the
sound of the horsemen, and the
wheels, and the chariots, your walls
shall shake when he goes into your
gates, as they enter a city that is
breached.
11 With the hoofs of the horses, he
will trample all your streets. He shall
kill your people by the sword, and the
pillars of your strength shall go down
to the ground.
12 And they shall strip your wealth
and plunder your merchandise. And
they shall tear down your walls and
destroy your desirable houses. And
they shall set your stones and your
timber and your dust in the midst of
the water.
13 And I will make cease the noise of
your songs. And the sound of your
harps shall not be heard any more.
14 And I will make you like a shining
rock. You shall be a spreading place
for nets, you shall not be built any
more. For I, YAHWEH, have spoken,
declares Adonai YAHWEH.
15 So says Adonai YAHWEH to
Tyre: Shall not the coast lands shake at
the sound of your fall, when the slain
groan, in the slaying of the slaughter
in your midst?
16 And all the rulers of the sea shall
come down from their thrones and lay
aside their robes and strip off their
embroidered garments. They shall be
clothed with trembling. They shall sit
on the ground and shall tremble at
every moment and be appalled at you.
17 And they shall lift up a lament for
you and say to you, How you are
perished, who lived by the seas, the
city well praised, which was strong in
the sea, she and her dwellers, who put
their terrors on all living in her!
18 Now the coastlands shall tremble
in the day of your fall. Yea, the
coastlands by the sea shall be troubled
at your going down.
19 For so says Adonai YAHWEH:
When I shall make you a ruined city,
like the cities that do not have ones

living in them, when I shall bring up on you the deep and great waters shall cover you.

20 And I will make you go down with those going down into the Pit, with the people of old time, and I shall set you in the earth's lowest parts, in places ruined from days of old, with ones who go to the Pit, so that you have no one living in you. But I gave glory in the land of the living.

21 I will give you terrors, and you will not be. Though you are sought, yet you shall not be found any more forever, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 27

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 And you, son of man, lift up a lament in Tyre[1].

3 And say to Tyre, Oh you who dwell at the entrances of the sea, a merchant of the peoples for many coast lands, so says Adonai YAHWEH: O Tyre, you have said, I am perfect of beauty.

4 In the heart of the seas are your borders, your builders have perfected your beauty.

5 They have made for you all your planks of fir trees of Senir[2]. They have taken a cedar from Lebanon to make a mast for you.

6 They have made your oars of the oaks of Bashan. They made your deck with ivory from the coasts of Kittim, daughter of Assyria[3].

7 Your sail was of fine linen with embroidered work from Egypt, an ensign for you, violet and purple from the coasts, of Elishah was your covering.

8 The residents of Sidon and Arvad[4] were rowers to you. Your wise ones, O Tyre, they were your sailors.

9 The elders of Gebal[5] and her wise ones were with you, making strong your seams. All the ships of the sea and their seamen were with you, to exchange your merchandise.

10 Persia and Lud and Lydia were in your army, men of war to you; they hung the shield and the helmet in you. They gave your splendor.

11 The sons of Arvad and your army were on your walls all around, and warriors were in your towers. They hung their weapons on your walls all around, they have perfected your beauty.

12 Tarshish[6] was your trader from the multitude of your wealth. With silver, iron, tin, and lead, they gave for your wares.

13 Javan, Tubal and Meshech, they were your merchants, they gave the souls of men and vessels of copper for your goods.

14 From the house of Togarmah they gave horses and war horses and mules for your wares.

15 The sons of Dedan were your merchants, many coast lands were the traffic of your hand. Tusks of ivory and ebony they brought as your gift.

16 Syria was your trader from the multitude of your works; with jewels, purple, and embroidered work, and fine linen, and coral, and rubies they gave for your wares.

17 Judah and the land of Israel were your merchants; with wheat from

---

1 An ancient trading city between Acre and Sidon located in modern Lebanon.

2 Senir is Mount Hermon

3 Bashan is an area in the Golan Heights and Kittim is modern day Cyprus. Tyre being a great trading city in ancient times is depicted as a magnificent ship.

4 An island city north of Tripoli.

5 "*Gebal*" ancient Byblos where the first bible was bound.

6 Another ancient trading city located on the southern coast of Spain.

Minnith and Pannag, and honey and
oil and balm they gave for your goods.
18 Damascus was your trader in the
multitude of your works, from the
multitude of all your wealth, in the
wine of Helbon, and white wool.
19 And Dan and Javan going about
gave for your wares; smooth iron,
cassia, and cane were among your
goods.
20 Dedan was your merchant in
loose cloths for riding.
21 Arabia and all the rulers of Kedar,
they were traders of your land in
lambs and rams and goats, in them
was your trade.
22 The merchants of Sheba and
Raamah were your merchants; with
the chief of all the spices, and with
every precious stone and gold, they
gave for your wares.
23 Haran[1], and Canneh, and Eden[2],
the merchants of Sheba, Assyria,
Chilmad were your merchants.
24 They were your merchants in
perfect things, in violet cloth and
embroidered work, and in carpets of
many colors, with tightly bound cords,
and cedars among your merchandise.
25 The ships of Tarshish were the
travelers of your goods. And you were
filled and made very glorious in the
heart of the seas.
26 Your rowers made you come into
great waters, the east wind has broken
you in the heart of the seas.
27 Your wealth and your wares and
your goods, your seamen and your
sailors making strong your seams, and
the traders of your goods, and all your
men of war who are in you, and all
your assembly in your midst, shall fall
into the heart of the seas in the day of
your ruin.
28 At the sound of the cry of your
sailors the pasture lands will shake.
29 And all who handle the oar shall
come down from their ships, the
seamen, all the sailors of the sea. They
shall stand on the land,
30 and will make heard their voice
against you, and will cry bitterly, and
will cause dust to go up on their heads;
they will wallow in the ashes.
31 And they shall be bald for you and
gird with sackcloth; and they shall
weep for you with bitterness of soul, a
bitter wailing.
32 And in their wailing they shall lift
up a lamentation and lament over you,
saying, Who is like Tyre, as one
silenced in the midst of the sea?
33 When your wares went out from
the seas, you satisfied many peoples.
With the plenty of your riches and
your goods, you enriched the kings of
the earth.
34 At this time you are broken from
the seas. By the depths of the waters
your goods and all your assembly have
fallen in your midst.
35 All those living in the coastlands
are appalled at you, and their kings are
shivering in the tempest; their faces
tremble.
36 The traders among the peoples
hiss over you; you have become
terrors. And until forever you shall not
be.

Chapter 28

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to
me, saying,
2 Son of man, say to the ruler of

[1] The place of origin of Abraham Gen 11:31.
[2] A district south of Haran not connected with the Garden of Eden in Genesis, 2Kgs 19:12.

Tyre[1], So says Adonai YAHWEH,
Because your heart is lifted up, and
you have said, I am an El, I sit in the
seat of Elohim, in the heart of the seas;
yet you are a man, and not an El,
though you give your heart as the
heart of Elohim. *(Is 14:13-14)*
3 Behold, you are wiser than Daniel.
Every one of the secret things are not
hidden to you.
4 With your wisdom and with your
understanding you have made riches
for yourself, and have worked gold and
silver into your treasuries.
5 By your great wisdom, by your
trade you have multiplied your riches,
and your heart is lifted up because of
your riches[2].
6 So Adonai YAHWEH says this:
Because you have given your heart as
the heart of Elohim,
7 behold, so I will bring on you
awesome strangers of the nations. And
they shall draw their swords against
the beauty of your wisdom and will
profane your splendor.
8 They will cause you to go down to
the Pit, and you shall die the deaths of
the slain in the heart of the seas.
9 Will you still say, I am of the
Elohim before him who strikes you?
But you are a man, and not El, in the
hands of him who kills you. *(Is 14:16)*
10 You shall die the deaths of the
uncircumcised, by the hand of
strangers. For I have spoken, says
Adonai YAHWEH.
11 And the Word of YAHWEH was
to me, saying,
12 Son of man, lift up a lament over
the king of Tyre, and say to him, So
says Adonai YAHWEH: You seal the
measure, full of wisdom and perfect in
beauty.
13 You have been in Eden, the
garden of Elohim. Every precious
stone was your covering; the ruby, the
topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the
onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the
turquoise, and the carbuncle, and
gold[3]; the workmanship of your
tambourines and of your pipes in you.
In the day you were created[4], they
were prepared.
14 You were the cherub that
protected with your outstretched
wings and I had put you in the holy
Mountain of Elohim, where you were.
You walked up and down in the midst
of the stones of fire[5].
15 You were perfect in your ways
from the day you were created, until
iniquity was found in you.
16 By the multitude of your trade,
they filled your midst with violence,
and you sinned. So I cast you profaned
from the mountain of Elohim, and I
destroyed you, O covering cherub,
from among the stones of fire.
17 Your heart was lifted up because
of your beauty; you corrupted your
wisdom because of your splendor. I
have cast you to the earth. I will put
you before kings, that they may see
you.) (Is 14:12-20)

---

[1] In chapter 27 Elohim is showing how the commercial system of trading of Tyre, as also it was in Babylon, is a system of oppression that is being used to create wealth for world dominion. Here in chapter 28, we see that the leader of this system of trade is none other than Satan the devil.

[2] Pride was the instigator with Satan and he used a world trading system to finance his earthly empires throughout antiquity accumulating with end time Babylon, which is the largest most sophisticated trading system of even stock markets and commodities of its kind, ever in history.

[3] All nine stones mentioned are part of the 12 stones on the priestly garment in the sanctuary of YHWH. The Septuagint names all 12 stones in this verse.

[4] Unlike Yahweh and Yahshua who are eternal, Satan is a created being.

[5] Satan had a special job of protecting the throne of YHWH.

18 By the host of your iniquities, by
the iniquity of your trade, you have
defiled your holy places. So I brought a
fire from your midst and it shall
devour you, and I will give you for
ashes on the earth in the sight of all
who see you.
19 All who know you among the
peoples shall be appalled at you. You
shall be terrors, and you will not be
forever.
20 And the Word of YAHWEH was
to me, saying,
21 Son of man, set your face against
Sidon and prophesy against her,
22 and say, So says Adonai
YAHWEH, Behold, I am against you,
O Sidon, and I will be glorified in your
midst. And they shall know that I am
YAHWEH when I have done
judgments in her and shall be
sanctified by her.
23 And I will send a plague into her,
and blood into her streets. And the
slain will fall in her midst by the
sword, on her from all around. And
they shall know that I am YAHWEH.
24 And there will not be a pricking
brier or a painful thorn to the house of
Israel any more from all who surround
them, those who hate them. And they
shall know that I am Adonai
YAHWEH.
25 So says Adonai YAHWEH: When
I have gathered the house of Israel
from the peoples among whom they
are dispersed, and have been
sanctified in them in the sight of the
nations, then they shall dwell on their
land which I have given to My servant
Jacob.
26 And they shall dwell in it securely
and shall build houses and plant
vineyards. Yes, they shall dwell
securely, when I have done judgments
on all those who hate them round
about them. And they shall know that I
am YAHWEH their Elohim[1]. *(Is
65:21)*

Chapter 29

1 In the tenth year, in the tenth
month, in the twelfth of the month,
the Word of YAHWEH was to me,
saying,
2 Son of man, set your face against
Pharaoh king of Egypt[2], and prophesy
against him and against Egypt, all of it.
3 Speak and say, So says Adonai
YAHWEH: Behold, I am against you,
Pharaoh king of Egypt, the great
monster who lies in the midst of his
rivers, who has said, My river is mine,
and I, even I, have made it.
4 But I will put hooks in your jaws,
and I will cause the fish of your rivers
to stick to your scales. And I will bring
you up from the midst of your rivers,
and all the fish of your rivers shall
stick to your scales.
5 And I will leave you to the
wilderness, you and all the fish of your
rivers. You shall fall on the face of the
field, you shall not be removed or
gathered. I have given you to the
beasts of the field and to the birds of
the heavens for food.
6 And all those living in Egypt shall
know that I am YAHWEH, because
they have been a staff of reed to the
house of Israel.
7 When they took hold of you by your
hand, you crushed and tore off all their
shoulder. And when they leaned on
you, you shattered and made all their
loins stand.
8 So Adonai YAHWEH says this:
Behold, I will bring on you a sword
and cut off from you man and beast.
9 And the land of Egypt shall become

[1] Jeremiah chapters 45-49 mentions many of these judgments on the nations around Israel.

[2] The Pharaoh at this time was named Hopra.

for a desolation and a waste, and they shall know that I am YAHWEH, because he has said, The river is mine, and I have made it.

10 So, behold, I am against you and against your rivers, and I will give the land of Egypt for an utter waste and a desolation, from Migdol to Syene, even to the border of Ethiopia[1].

11 The foot of man shall not pass through it, and the foot of beast shall not pass through it, and you shall not dwell forty years[2].

12 And I will make the land of Egypt a desolation in the midst of the lands that are desolate, and her cities shall be desolate among the wasted cities forty years. And I will disperse Egypt among the nations and disperse them among the lands.

13 For so says Adonai YAHWEH: At the end of forty years, I will gather Egypt from the peoples there where they are scattered.

14 And I will return the captivity of Egypt and will make them return to the land of Pathros, to the land of their origin. And they shall be a lowly kingdom there[3].

15 It shall be the lowest of the kingdoms, and it shall not lift itself any more above the nations. And I will diminish them so that they will not rule over the nations.

16 And it shall not be any more as confidence for the house of Israel, recalling the iniquity of their turning after them. And they shall know that I am Adonai YAHWEH.

17 And it happened in the twenty-seventh year, in the first month, in the first of the month, the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

18 Son of man, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon made his army to serve a great service against Tyre. Every head was made bald, and every shoulder was rubbed bare. Yet there was no hire to him or to his army from Tyre, for the service that he had served against it.

19 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Behold, I will give to Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon the land of Egypt. And he shall lift up her host and plunder her plunder, and seize her prey. And it shall be hire for his army.

20 For his labor which he served against it, I have given him the land of Egypt, because they worked for Me, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

21 In that day I will make a horn spring up to the house of Israel, and I will give to you the opening of the mouth in their midst. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 30

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 Son of man, prophesy and say, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Howl, Alas for the day! *(Joel 2:1)*

3 For the day is near, even the Day of YAHWEH is near, a day of clouds; it shall be the time of the nations[4].

4 And the sword shall come on Egypt[5], and anguish shall be in Ethiopia, when the slain shall fall in Egypt. And they shall take her host, and her foundations shall be razed.

5 Ethiopia, and Lydia, and Lud, and

---

1 This is from North to south indicating a full destruction.

2 40 is the number of trial in scripture.

3 Persia allowed them to return after 40 years.

4 As with Jeremiah and also other parts of Ezekiel you can see the current crisis being overlaid with a dual prophecy for the end time.

5 This can both be referring to physical Egypt in an attack, and also at times in scripture in dual fulfillment, Egypt is symbolized as any entity that has enslaved Israel in some way spiritually or physically.

all the mixed people, and Chub, and the sons of the land of the covenant with them, shall fall by the sword.

6 So says YAHWEH: Even those leaning on Egypt shall fall, and the pride of her power shall go down. From Migdol to Syene they shall fall with her by the sword, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

7 And they will be ruined amidst the lands being wasted. And her cities shall be in the midst of the desolated cities.

8 And they shall know that I am YAHWEH when I set a fire in Egypt, and all her helpers shall be crushed.

9 In that day messengers shall go out from before Me in ships, to terrify the confident Ethiopia, and anguish shall be on them as on the day of Egypt. For behold it is coming.

10 So says Adonai YAHWEH: I will make the multitude of Egypt cease by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon.

11 He and his people with him, awesome of the nations, shall be brought to ruin the land. And they shall draw their swords against Egypt and fill the lands with the slain.

12 And I will make the rivers dry and sell the land into the hand of evil ones. And I will waste the land and her fullness by the hand of strangers. I, YAHWEH, have spoken.

13 So says Adonai YAHWEH: I will also destroy the idols, and I will make vanities cease from Noph. And there shall not any longer be a ruler of the land of Egypt. And I will put fear in the land of Egypt.

14 And I will make Pathros desolate, and I will set a fire in Zoan, and I will do judgments in Thebes.

15 And I will pour my fury on Sin, the strength of Egypt. And I will cut off the multitude of Thebes.

16 And I will set a fire in Egypt; Sin agonizing shall agonize, and Thebes shall be broken through, and Noph shall have daily woes.

17 The young men of Aven and Pibeseth shall fall by the sword, and they shall go into captivity.

18 At Tahpanhes, the day has been dark when I shatter there the yokes of Egypt. And the pride of her strength shall cease in her, a cloud shall cover her, and her daughters shall go into captivity.

19 And I will do judgments in Egypt. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

20 And it happened in the eleventh year, in the first month in the seventh of the month, the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

21 Son of man, I have shattered the arm of Pharaoh king of Egypt. And behold, it shall not be bound up to give healing, to set a bandage to bind it, to make it strong to handle the sword.

22 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Behold, I am against Pharaoh king of Egypt, and I will shatter his arms, the strong one, and the shattered one. And I will cause the sword to fall out of his hand.

23 And I will scatter Egypt among the nations, and will sow them through the lands.

24 And I will strengthen the arms of the king of Babylon and put My sword in his hand. But I will shatter the arms of Pharaoh, and he will groan with the groaning of the slain before him.

25 But I will make the arms of the king of Babylon stronger, and the arms of Pharaoh shall fall. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH when I put My sword into the king of Babylon's hand. And he will stretch it against the land of Egypt.

26 And I will scatter Egypt among the nations and disperse them among

the lands. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

Chapter 31

1 And it happened in the eleventh year, in the third month, on the first of the month, the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 Son of man, speak to Pharaoh king of Egypt and to his host: To whom are you like in your greatness?
3 Behold, Assyria was like a cedar in Lebanon with fair branches and forest shade and exalted in height, and his top was among the thick boughs.
4 The waters made him great and the deep made him high with her rivers, going all around her planting, and she sent out her channels to all the trees of the field.
5 On account of this, his height was lifted up above all the trees of the field, and his boughs were multiplied, and his branches became long in his sending, because of the many waters.
6 All the birds of the heavens nested in his boughs, and under his branches all the beasts of the field gave birth, and in his shadow dwelt all great nations.
7 And he was fair in his greatness, in the length of his branches. For his root was to many waters.
8 The cedars did not overshadow him in the garden of Elohim. The fir trees were not like his boughs, and the plane trees were not like his branches. Every tree in the garden of Elohim was not like him in its beauty.
9 I have made him beautiful by his many branches, and all the trees of Eden that were in the garden of Elohim envied him.
10 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Because you were exalted in height, and he has set his top among the thick boughs, and his heart is lifted up in his height,
11 so I have given him into the mighty hand of the nations. Surely, He shall deal with him; I have expelled him for his evil[1].
12 And strangers have cut him off, the fearful of the nations, and have left him. His branches have fallen on the mountains and in all the valleys, and his boughs have been broken in all the ravines of the land. And all the people of the land have gone from his shadow and have left him.
13 All the birds of the heavens shall dwell on his ruin, and on his branches shall be all the beasts of the field,
14 in order that all the trees by the waters may not be exalted in their height, and do not give their top among the thick boughs, and do not stand up in their mighty exaltation, all drinking waters. For all of them are given to death to the earth's lowest parts, in the midst of the sons of men, with those going down into the Pit.
15 So says Adonai YAHWEH: In the day he went down to Sheol, I caused a mourning. I covered the deep over him, and I held back her rivers, and many waters were restrained. And I darkened Lebanon on him, and all the trees of the field wilted away because of him.
16 I made the nations shake at the sound of his fall when I made him go out to Sheol with those going down into the Pit. And all the trees of Eden shall be cheered in the earth's lowest parts, the choice and best of Lebanon, all that drink waters.
17 They also went down with him into Sheol, to the slain of the sword, even his arm, who dwelt in his shadow in the midst of the nations.

---
[1] Elohim is showing that it is He who sets up nations and takes them down, and in the end all pride will be dealt with.

18 To whom are you like in glory and greatness among Eden's trees? Yet you shall go down with the trees of Eden to the earth's lowest parts. You shall lie amidst the uncircumcised with the slain of the sword. He is Pharaoh and all his host, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 32

1 And it happened in the twelfth year, in the twelfth month, on the first of the month, the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 Son of man, lift up a lament over Pharaoh, king of Egypt, and say to him, You were like a young lion of the nations, and you were like the monster in the seas. And you burst forth in your rivers and stirred up the waters with your feet and fouled their rivers[1].
3 So says Adonai YAHWEH: And I will spread out My net over you with an assembly of many peoples, and they will make you go up in My net.
4 Then I will leave you on the land; I will hurl you on the face of the field and will make all the birds of the heavens to dwell on you, And I will fill the beasts of all the earth from you.
5 And I will put your flesh on the mountains and fill the valleys with your heap.
6 And I will water the land with the discharge of your blood, to the mountains, and the ravines shall be full of you.
7 And I will cover the heavens when I quench you, and I will darken their stars. I will cover the sun with a cloud, and the moon shall not give its light.
8 I will darken all the luminaries of light in the heavens over you and will give darkness on your land, declares Adonai YAHWEH[2].
9 I will also vex the heart of many peoples when I bring your breaking among the nations, to the lands which you have not known.
10 And I will make many people appalled at you, and their kings will be horribly afraid at you, when I make My sword fly before their faces. And they shall quake at every moment, each man for his own life, in the day of your fall.
11 For so says Adonai YAHWEH: The sword of the king of Babylon shall come on you.
12 By the swords of the mighty I will make your host fall, by the fearful of the nations, all of them. And they shall spoil the pride of Egypt, and all its host shall be destroyed.
13 I will also destroy all her beasts from on the great waters, and the foot of man shall not stir them any longer, and the hoofs of beasts shall not stir them up.
14 Then I will make their waters sink and cause their rivers to go down like oil, says Adonai YAHWEH.
15 When I shall make the land of Egypt a ruin, and the land shall be wasted of its fullness when I shall strike all those who dwell in it; then they shall know that I am YAHWEH.
16 This is a lamentation, and they shall lament her; the daughters of the nations shall lament her. Over Egypt and over all her multitude, they shall lament her, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
17 And it happened in the twelfth year, in the fifteenth of the month, the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
18 Son of man, wail over the host of

[1] Is 27:1

[2] Verses 2-8 are giving Egypt's judgment. When you compare verse 7-8 it seems to also be a dual, end time fulfillment Joel 2:2, 10, 31 Joel 3:15, Zeph 1:14-15.

Egypt, and bring it down, her and the daughters of the majestic nations, to the earth's lowest parts, with those going down to the Pit.

19 Than whom are you more lovely? Go down and be laid with the uncircumcised.

20 They shall fall in the midst of the slain of the sword. She is given to the sword; they draw her and all her multitudes.

21 The strong of the mighty shall speak to him from the midst of Sheol, they went with his helpers; they, the uncircumcised, lie slain by the sword.

22 There is Assyria and all her assembly. All around him are his graves, all of them are slain, fallen by the sword;

23 of whom are given her graves in the recesses of the Pit, and her assembly is all around her grave, all of them slain, fallen by the sword, because they gave terror in the land of the living.

24 There is Elam and all her multitude around her grave, all of them slain, fallen by the sword, who went down uncircumcised into the earth's lowest parts, who gave their terror in the land of the living. Yet they bore their shame with those going down to the Pit.

25 In the midst of the slain they have put a bed for her, with all her multitude. Her graves are all around him, all of them uncircumcised, slain by the sword. Though their terror was given in the land of the living, yet they have borne their shame with those going down to the Pit; he is put among the slain.

26 There is Meshech, Tubal[1], and all her multitude. All around him are her graves, all of them uncircumcised, slain by the sword, though they gave their terror in the land of the living.

27 And they shall not lie with the mighty of the uncircumcised who are fallen, who have gone down to Sheol with their weapons of war. And they have put their swords under their heads, but their iniquities shall be on their bones, though the terror of the mighty was in the land of the living.

28 And you shall be broken in the midst of the uncircumcised and shall lie with the slain by the sword.

29 There is Edom, her kings, and all her rulers, who in their might are given to be with the slain of the sword. They shall lie with the uncircumcised, and with those going down to the Pit.

30 These are the rulers of the north, all of them, and all the Sidonians, who have gone down with the slain in their terror. They are ashamed of their might. And they lie uncircumcised with those slain by the sword, and bear their shame with those going down to the Pit.

31 Pharaoh shall see them and be cheered over all his multitude, those slain by the sword, Pharaoh and all the army, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

32 For I had put his terror in the land of the living, but he will be laid among the uncircumcised, with those slain by the sword, Pharaoh and all his multitude, declares YAHWEH.

Chapter 33

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 Son of man, speak to the sons of your people and say to them: When I bring the sword on it, on a land, and take one man from the people of the land, their borders, and set him for a watchman to them,

3 and when he sees the sword coming on the land, and he blows the ram's horn and warns the people,

4 and the hearer hearing the sound

[1] Ezek 27:13

of the ram's horn, and does not take warning, and the sword comes and takes him; his blood shall be on his own head.

5 He heard the sound of the ram's horn and took no warning; his blood shall be on himself. But he who took warning, he shall deliver his soul.

6 But if the watchman sees the sword coming and does not blow the ram's horn, and the people are not warned, and the sword comes and takes a soul from them, he is taken in his iniquity. But I will require his blood from the watchman's hand.

7 And you, son of man, I gave you as a watchman to the house of Israel. And you shall hear the Word from My mouth and warn them from Me[1].

8 When I say to the wicked, O wicked one, surely, you shall die! And you do not speak to warn the wicked one from his way, that wicked one shall die in his iniquity, but I will require his blood from your hand.

9 But you, if you warn the wicked from his way, to turn from it, and he does not turn from his way, he shall die in his iniquity; but you have delivered your soul.

10 And you, son of man, say to the house of Israel, This you have spoken, saying, Surely our transgressions and our sins are on us, and we are rotting in them, even then shall we live?

11 Say to them, As I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, I do not have delight in the death of the wicked, except in the wicked turning from his way, and so to live. Turn! Turn from your evil ways! For why will you die, O house of Israel?

12 And you, son of man, say to the sons of your people, The righteousness of the righteous shall not deliver him in the day of his trespass. And the evil of the evil, in the day he turns from his wickedness, he shall not fall by it. And the righteous shall not be able to live by it in the day he sins.

13 Though I say to the righteous, Surely, he shall live, yet he trusts in his own righteousness and commits iniquity, all his righteousness shall not be remembered; but he shall die for his iniquity which he has done.

14 And though I say to the wicked, Surely, you shall die; if he turns from his sin and does justice and righteousness,

15 if the wicked returns the pledge, he repays the thing stolen, he walks in the statutes of life, not doing iniquity, surely, he shall live; he shall not die.

16 All his sins which he has sinned shall not be remembered to him; he has done justice and righteousness, living he shall live.

17 Yet the sons of your people say, The way of YAHWEH, is not fair. But they, even their way is not fair.

18 When the righteous turns from his righteousness and does iniquity, he shall even die by them.

19 But if the wicked turns from his wickedness, and does justice and righteousness, he shall live by them.

20 Yet you say, The way of Adonai is not fair. I shall judge you, each man by his ways, O house of Israel.

21 And it happened in the twelfth year, in the tenth month, on the fifth of the month of our exile, a fugitive out of Jerusalem came to me, saying, The city has been stricken.

22 And the hand of YAHWEH was on me in the evening before the fugitive came. And He opened my mouth until that one came in the morning. And my mouth was opened, and I was no longer dumb.*(Ezek 3:26)*

---

[1] Verses 1-7 shows the believer's responsibility if he sees sin being perpetrated to try to redeem the one sinning, Math (18:15-17, Lev 5:1). If he does not, he will bear his iniquity.

23 And the Word of YAHWEH was
to me, saying,
24 Son of man, the residents of the
ruins are speaking, these in the land of
Israel, saying, Abraham was one, and
he possessed the land; but we are
many, the land is given to us for a
possession[1].
25 So say to them, So says Adonai
YAHWEH: You eat on the blood, and
you lift your eyes up to your idols, and
you shed blood. And shall you possess
the land?
26 You stand on your sword, and
you each do abominations, defiling his
neighbor's wife. And shall you possess
the land?
27 Say this to them, So says Adonai
YAHWEH: As I live, surely, those in
the ruins shall fall by the sword? And I
will give the one who is on the face of
the field to the beasts to be eaten, and
those in the forts and in the caves shall
die by the plague.
28 For I shall make the land desolate
and a waste, and the pride of her
strength shall cease. And the heights
of Israel shall be a waste that none will
go through.
29 And they shall know that I am
YAHWEH, when I have made the
land desolate and a waste because of
all their abominations which they have
done.
30 And you, son of man, the sons of
your people are speaking about you
beside the walls, and in the doors of
the houses. And one speaks to
another, each man with his brother,
saying, Come now and hear what the
Word coming from YAHWEH is.
31 And they come to you as people
come, and they sit before you as My
people. And they hear your words, but
they do not do them. For they produce
much love with their mouth, but their
heart goes after their unjust gain[2].
32 And, behold, you are to them as a
singer of love songs with a beautiful
voice, and playing well on an
instrument. For they hear your words,
but they are not doing them.
33 So when it comes (behold, it is
coming!), then they will know that a
prophet has been in their midst[3].

Chapter 34

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to
me, saying,
2 Son of man, prophesy against the
shepherds of Israel. Prophesy and say
to them, to the shepherds, So says
Adonai YAHWEH: Woe to the
shepherds of Israel who are feeding
themselves! Should not the shepherds
feed the flock?
3 You eat the fat and clothe
yourselves with the wool, you sacrifice
the fat ones, and you do not feed the
flock.
4 You have not strengthened the
weak; and you have not healed the
sick, and you have not bound up the
broken. And the banished have not
been brought back, and you have not
sought the lost, but you rule them with
force and with harshness.
5 And they were scattered for lack of
a shepherd. And they became food to
all the beasts of the field when they
were scattered.
6 My sheep strayed through all the
mountains and on every high hill. And
My sheep were scattered on all the

[1] These were those who survived the siege and remained in Jerusalem. They were boasting "*If Abraham, who was only one person, was promised the land of Israel, how much more than is the promise for them who were many*". Ezekiel goes on to list their sins to them in verses 25-26.

[2] Is 29:13, Ezek 22:13, 27, Ps 78:36-37

[3] Jer 28:9, The word of Yahweh will come to pass exactly as scripture states by His prophets in YHWH's timing Is 55:10-11.

face of the earth, and none searched,
and none sought for them.
7 For this reason, shepherds, hear
the Word of YAHWEH:
8 As I live, declares Adonai
YAHWEH, surely because My sheep
became a prey, and My sheep became
food for all the beasts of the field, from
not having a shepherd, and because
My shepherds did not search for My
sheep, but the shepherds fed
themselves and did not feed the flock,
9 so, O shepherds, hear the Word of
YAHWEH:
10 So says Adonai YAHWEH:
Behold, I am against the shepherds,
and I will require My sheep from their
hand and cause them to cease from
pasturing the flock. And the shepherds
shall no longer feed themselves, for I
will deliver My sheep from their
mouth, and they will not be food to
devour.
11 For so says Adonai YAHWEH:
Behold, I Myself will search for My
sheep, and seek them out.
12 As a shepherd seeks his flock in
the day that he is among his scattered
sheep, so I will seek out My sheep and
will deliver them from all the places
where they were scattered in a day of
cloud, and thick cloud.
13 And I will bring them out from
the peoples, and gather them from the
lands, and I will bring them to their
land and feed them on the mountains
of Israel, by the ravines, and in all the
dwelling places of the land.
14 I, even I, will feed them in a good
pasture, and on the high mountains of
Israel their fold shall be. They shall lie
there in a good fold, and they shall
feed in a fat pasture, all the mountains
of Israel.
15 I will feed My sheep, and I will
make them lie down, declares Adonai
YAHWEH.
16 I will seek the lost, and I will
return the banished. And I will bind
up the broken, and I will make the
weak strong. But I will destroy the fat
and the strong, I will feed them with
judgment.
17 And you, My flock, so says Adonai
YAHWEH: Behold, I judge between
lamb and lamb, between rams and he-
goats.
18 Is it a small thing to you to have
fed on the good pasture, but you must
trample the rest of your pastures with
your feet? And have you drunk of the
clear waters, but the rest you must foul
with your feet?
19 And My sheep, what your feet
have trampled, they must feed on, and
they drink what your feet have fouled.
20 So Adonai YAHWEH says this to
them: Behold, I, even I, will even judge
between the fat lamb and the lean
lamb.
21 Because you have thrust with side
and with shoulder, and have pushed
all the weak with your horns until you
have scattered them to the outside.
22 I also will save My flock, and they
shall no longer be for a prey. And I will
judge between lamb and lamb.
23 And I will raise up over them one
Shepherd. And He shall feed them. My
servant David, He shall feed them, and
He shall be their Shepherd.
24 And I, YAHWEH, will be their
Elohim, and My servant David shall be
a ruler among them. I, YAHWEH,
have spoken.
25 And I will cut a covenant of peace
with them and make evil beasts cease
out of the land. And they shall live in
the wilderness securely and sleep in
the forests.
26 And I will make them and the
places around My hill a blessing. And I
will bring down the shower in its
season, there shall be showers of
blessing.
27 And the tree of the field shall give

its fruit, and the earth shall yield its increase. And they shall be securely on their land. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH when I have broken the staffs of their yoke, and have rescued them from the hand of those who enslaved them.

28 And they shall not any more be a prey to the nations, and the beast of the land shall not eat them. But they shall live securely, and no one shall terrify them.

29 And I will raise up for them a planting place of name, and they shall not any more be of those gathered by famine in the land. And they shall not any more bear the shame of the nations.

30 And they shall know that I, YAHWEH their Elohim, am with them, and they are My people, the house of Israel, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

31 And you, My sheep, the sheep of My pasture, you are men. I am your Elohim, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 35

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 Son of man, set your face against Mount Seir[1], and prophesy against it.

3 And say to it, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I am against you, Mount Seir, and I will stretch My hand against you, and I will make you a ruin and a waste.

4 I will lay your cities waste, and you shall be a ruin. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

5 Because there was to you never-ending hatred, and you poured out the sons of Israel to the hands of the sword in the time of their calamity, in the time of the iniquity of the end.

6 Therefore, As I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, surely for blood I appoint you, and blood shall pursue you. Since you have not hated blood, so blood shall pursue you.

7 And I will make Mount Seir a ruin and a waste, and cut off from it the one passing through, and the one returning.

8 And I will fill his mountains with his slain. In your hills and in your valleys, and in all your torrents, the slain by the sword shall fall in them.

9 I will make you ruins forever, and your cities shall not be inhabited. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

10 Because you have said, These two nations and these two lands will be mine, and we shall possess it (yet YAHWEH was there),

11 Therefore, As I live, declares Adonai YAHWEH, I will act by your anger, and by envy which you have done out of your hatred against them, and I will be known among them when I have judged you.

12 And you shall know that I am YAHWEH. I have heard all your revilings[2] which you have spoken against the mountains of Israel, saying, Desolation! They are given to us for food!

13 And you magnified with your mouth against Me and have multiplied your words against Me; I have heard.

14 So says Adonai YAHWEH: As all the earth rejoices, I will make you a ruin.

15 As you rejoiced at the inheritance of the house of Israel because they were a ruin, so I will do to you. You shall be a ruin, O Mount Seir, and all Edom, all of it! And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

[1] The biblical land of Edom and modern day Jordan.

[2] Can also mean blasphemies.

Chapter 36

1 And you, son of man, prophesy to Israel's mountains and say, O mountains of Israel, hear the Word of YAHWEH[1].

2 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Because the enemy has spoken against you, saying, Aha! Everlasting heights have become a possession to us.

3 So prophesy and say, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Because, yea, because of the wasting and crushing of you from all around, that you might be a possession to the rest of the nations, and you ascended on the tip of the tongue, and the whispering of the people.

4 Therefore, mountains of Israel, hear the Word of Adonai YAHWEH: So says Adonai YAHWEH to the mountains and to the hills, to the ravines and to the valleys, to the wastes of desolation, and to the forsaken cities which became a prey and a mocking to the rest of the nations all around.

5 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Surely I have spoken in the fire of My jealousy against the rest of the nations, and against Edom, all those of her who have given My land to themselves for a possession with all joy of heart, with scorning of soul, in order to make it open land for a prey.

6 So prophesy concerning the land of Israel, and say to the mountains and to the hills, to the ravines and to the valleys, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I have spoken in My jealousy and in My fury, because you have borne the shame of the nations.

7 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: I have lifted up My hand, surely the nations that surround you, they shall bear their shame.

8 But you, O mountains of Israel, you shall put out your branches and your fruit, you shall bear for My people Israel. For they are drawing near to come.

9 For behold, I am for you, and I will turn to you, and you shall be tilled and sown.

10 And I will multiply men on you, all the house of Israel, all of it. And the cities shall be inhabited, and the wastes shall be built.

11 And I will multiply men on you, and beast, and they will increase and be fruitful. And I will make you dwell as you formerly were, and I will do better than at your beginnings. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH.

12 Yea, I will cause men to walk on you, My people Israel; and they shall possess you, and you will be an inheritance to them and will not any more increase their bereavement.

13 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Because they said to you, You are a devourer of men, and you have bereaved your nations;

14 so you shall no longer devour men, and you shall not make your nations fall any more, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

15 And I will not let you bear the shame of the nations any longer, and you shall not bear the disgrace of the peoples any more, and you shall not cause your nations to fall any more, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

16 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

17 Son of man, when the house of Israel dwelt on their land, they even defiled it by their ways and by their doings. As the defilement of woman's impurity, their way was before Me.

18 So I poured out My fury on them, because of the blood that they had

[1] Mountains in scripture indicate large land masses, so here they are showing Ezekiel prophesying to Israelites in many different lands.

poured out on the land, and for their idols by which they defiled it.

19 And I scattered them among the nations, and they were sown among all the earth; I judged them by their way and by their doings.

20 And when they entered into the nations, there where they went, they even profaned My holy name, by saying to them, These are the people of YAHWEH, and they are gone out of His land.

21 But I had pity for My holy name which the house of Israel had profaned among the nations, there where they went[1].

22 Therefore, say to the house of Israel, So says Adonai YAHWEH: I do not do this for your sake, O house of Israel, but only for My holy name which you profaned among the nations, there where you went.

23 And I will sanctify My great name which was profaned among the nations, which you profaned among them. And the nations shall know that I am YAHWEH, declares Adonai YAHWEH, when I am sanctified in you, in their eyes.

24 For I will take you from the nations and gather you out of all the lands and bring you into your land[2].

25 Then I will sprinkle pure waters on you, and you shall be purified. I will cleanse you from all your defilement and from all your idols[3].

26 And I will also give you a new heart, and I will put a new spirit within you. And I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give to you a heart of flesh. *(Jer 31:31-34)*

27 And I will put My Spirit within you and cause you to walk in My statutes, and you shall keep My judgments and do them. *(Joel 2:28)*

28 And you shall dwell in the land that I gave to your fathers. And you shall be a people to Me, and I will be Elohim to you.

29 I will also save you from all your defilements, and I will call for grain and increase it, and I will not put a famine on you. *(Joel 2:23-26)*

30 And I will multiply the fruit of the tree and the produce of the field, in order that you will not any more receive the disgrace of famine among the nations.

31 And you will remember your evil ways and your doings that were not good, and you will despise yourselves in your own eyes for your iniquities and for your abominations.

32 Let it be known to you that I am not doing this for your sake, states Adonai YAHWEH. Be ashamed and confounded for your ways, O house of Israel.

33 So says Adonai YAHWEH: In the day I cleanse you from all your iniquities, I will cause the cities to be inhabited, and the wastes shall be built. *(Lev 16:30, Is 49:8, Is 58:12)*

34 And the desolated land shall be cultivated, rather than being a ruin in the eyes of all passing by.

35 And they shall say, This land that was desolated has become like the garden of Eden. And the wasted and desolated and razed cities are fortified and inhabited. *(Joel 2:3, Is 51:3)*

36 And the nations left all around you shall know that I, YAHWEH, built the razed places and planted that which was desolated. I, YAHWEH have spoken it and will do it.

37 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Yet for this I will be sought by the house of Israel, to act for them. I will increase them with men like a flock.

---

1 The covenant made to Abraham and the House of Israel was by the sacred name Yahweh.

2 Ezek 34:13, Jer 31:8, Jer 3:18, Jer 50:4-5, Mic 4:6-7, Amos 9:14-15

3 Acts 2:37-41, Acts 22:16, Joel 3:21

38 Like a holy flock, like the flock of Jerusalem in her appointed feasts, so the wasted cities shall be filled with flocks of men. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH[1]. *(Ps 122:3-4)*

Chapter 37

1 The hand of YAHWEH was on me. And He brought me by the Spirit of YAHWEH and made me rest in the midst of a valley, and it was full of bones[2].
2 And He made me pass among them all around. And, behold, very many were on the face of the valley. And, behold! They were very dry.
3 And He said to me, Son of man, can these bones live? And I said, O Adonai YAHWEH, You know.
4 And He said to me, Prophesy to these bones and say to them, O dry bones, hear the Word of YAHWEH:
5 So says Adonai YAHWEH to these bones, Behold, I will make breath to enter into you, and you shall live,
6 and I will put on you sinews and will bring flesh on you and spread skin over you and put breath in you, and you shall live. And you shall know that I am YAHWEH[3].
7 So I prophesied as I was commanded. And as I prophesied, there was a noise. And, behold, a shaking! And the bones drew near, a bone to its bone.
8 And I saw. And, behold! The sinews and the flesh came up on them, and the skin spread over them from above. But there was no breath in them.
9 Then He said to me, Prophesy to the Spirit. Prophesy, son of man, and say to the Spirit, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Come from the four winds, O Spirit, and breathe on these slain ones, that they may live[4]. (*Eze 36:27)*
10 So I prophesied as He commanded me, and the Spirit came into them. And they lived and stood on their feet, a very great army. *Dan 12:2*
11 Then He said to me, Son of man, these bones are all the house of Israel. Behold, they say, Our bones are dried, and our hope is perished; we are cut off to ourselves[5].
12 So prophesy and say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I will open your graves and cause you to come up out of your graves, O My people, and I will bring you to the land of Israel[6].
13 And you shall know that I am YAHWEH when I have opened your graves and have brought you up out of your graves, O My people.
14 And I shall put My Spirit within you, and you shall live; and I will put you on your own land. And you shall know that I, YAHWEH, have spoken and have done it, says YAHWEH.
15 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me,
16 saying, And you, son of man, take

---

[1] This is a prophecy that in the end times the tribes of Israel would once again be keeping the feast in Jerusalem in the name of Yahweh.

[2] The fact that this prophecy is so detailed and particular shows it must be literal and is about a physical resurrection of the House of Israel at Messiah's return, Dan 12:1-2.

[3] Clearly a prophesy of a physical resurrection.

[4] At this resurrection Yahweh will give Israel His Ruach H'Chodesh (Holy Spirit) which they refused in ancient times, Acts 7:51.

[5] They have no hope because all of Israel entered a covenant, which they could not keep and each person died with a death penalty of judgment for their sins, Jos 24:19-27.

[6] When Messiah returns He will resurrect the whole house of Israel and give them a chance for salvation through His sacrifice.

one stick to yourself and write on it, For Judah, and for his companions, the sons of Israel. And take another stick and write on it, For Joseph, the stick of Ephraim and all the house of Israel, his companions.

17 And draw them one to one for yourself, into one *(echad)* stick. And they shall become one *(echad)* in your hand[1].

18 And when the sons of your people shall speak to you, saying, Will you not declare to us what these mean to you?

19 Say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I will take the stick of Joseph which is in the hand of Ephraim, and the tribes of Israel, his companions. And I will put them with him, with the stick of Judah, and I will make them one stick, and they shall be one *(echad)* in My hand.

20 And the sticks shall be in your hand, the ones on which you write before their eyes.

21 And say to them, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I will take the sons of Israel from among the nations, there where they have gone, and will gather them from all around, and will bring them into their own land.

22 And I will make them one *(echad)* nation in the land, on the mountains of Israel, and one King shall be for a king to all of them. And they shall not be two nations anymore. And they will not be split into two kingdoms any more.

23 And they will not still be defiled with their idols, even with their filthy idols, nor with all of their transgressions. But I will save them out of all their dwelling places where they have sinned in them, and I will cleanse them. So they shall be for a people to Me and I will be for Elohim to them.

24 And My servant, David, shall be King over them. And there shall be one Shepherd to all of them. And they shall walk in My judgments and keep My statutes, and do them[2].

25 And they shall dwell on the land that I have given to My servant, to Jacob, there where your fathers dwelt in it. And they shall dwell on it, they and their sons, and the sons of their sons, forever. And My servant David shall be a ruler to them forever.

26 And I will cut a covenant of peace with them, an everlasting covenant it shall be with them, And I will place them and multiply them, and I will put (Aleph/Tav) My sanctuary in their midst forever. *(Eze 34:24-25)*

27 And My tabernacle shall be with them, and I will be their Elohim, and they shall be My people. *(Eze 34:30)*

28 And when My sanctuary shall be in their midst forever, the nations shall know that I, YAHWEH, sanctify Israel.

Chapter 38

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

2 Son of man, set your face against Gog, the land of Magog, the prince of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal, and prophesy against him. *(Gen 4:22)*

3 And say, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I am against you, O Gog, the prince of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal.

[1] Not since the days of King Solomon was the whole house of Israel with all 12 tribes united. One major role of King Messiah in the end time is to re-unite the House of Judah with the Northern Tribes of Israel called the House of Ephraim, who was Joseph's son.

[2] King David will be resurrected at this time and ruling under Yahshua Yahweh who will be ruling on earth under the authority of Yahweh the Father from Heaven, 1Cor 15:21-28.

4 And I will turn you back and put hooks into your jaws. And I will bring you and all your army out: horses and horsemen, all of them clothed most perfectly; a great assembly with buckler and shield, all of them swordsmen.

5 Persia, Ethiopia[1], and Libya are with them, all of them with shield and helmet;

6 Gomer and all its bands; the house of Togarmah from the recesses of the north, and all its bands; many peoples are with you.

7 Be prepared; yea, prepared for yourself, you and all your assembly that are assembled to you, and be a guard to them.

8 After many days you shall be visited. In the after years[2] you shall come into the land turned back from the sword, gathered out of many peoples, on the mountains of Israel which have been for a continual waste. But he has been brought out of the peoples, and they shall dwell securely, all of them.

9 And you shall go up, you shall come like a storm; you shall be like a cloud to cover the land, you and all your bands, and many peoples with you.

10 So says Adonai YAHWEH: And it shall be in that day, words shall come up into your heart, and you shall devise an evil plan.

11 And you shall say, I will go up to the land of open spaces. I will go to those at ease, who live securely, all of them living with no walls, and there are no bars and gates to them[3],

12 in order to spoil a spoil, and to steal a prize, to turn your hand on the inhabited waste places, and on the people gathered out of the nations, producing livestock and goods, who dwell in the center of the earth.

13 Sheba and Dedan and the merchants of Tarshish, and all its young lions, shall say to you, Have you come to plunder a plunder? Have you gathered your assembly to steal a prize, to lift up silver and gold, to take away livestock and goods, to spoil a great spoil?

14 So prophesy, son of man, and say to Gog, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Shall you not know in that day when My people Israel dwells securely?

15 And you shall come from your place out of the recesses of the north, you and many peoples with you, all of them riding on horses, a great assembly, a mighty army.

16 And you shall come up on My people Israel like a cloud, to cover the land. It shall be in the after days, and I will bring you against My land so that the nations may know Me, when I shall be sanctified in you before their eyes, Gog. *(Rev 16:12-16)*

17 So says Adonai YAHWEH: Are you he of whom I have spoken in former days by the hand of My servants, the prophets of Israel, who prophesied in those days and years, to bring you against them?

18 And it shall be on that day, when Gog comes against the land of Israel, declares Adonai YAHWEH, My fury shall come up in My face.

19 And in My jealousy, in the fire of My wrath, I have spoken. Surely, in that day there shall be a great quaking in the land of Israel.

20 And the fish of the sea, and the birds of the heavens, and the beasts of

---

1 This is the area of the upper Nile and would include N Sudan.

2 This term "*after years*" seems to be a time after the coming tribulation but before the Millennium kingdom.

3 Lev 25:18-19, 31 This seems to be the time after Yom Teruah when Yahshua returns but before the actual millennium will begin 7 months from then in the month of Aviv.

the field, and all creeping things that creep on the earth, and all men on the face of the earth, shall quake at My face. And the mountains shall be thrown down, and the steep places shall fall, and every wall shall fall to the ground. *(Nah 1:5-6)*

21 And I shall call a sword against him on all My mountains, declares Adonai YAHWEH. Each man's sword shall be against his brother.

22 And I will judge him with a plague and with blood, and an overflowing shower, and hailstones. I will rain fire and brimstone on him, and on his bands, and on the many peoples who are with him.
(Rev 9:7, 16:21)

23 And I will magnify Myself and sanctify Myself. And I will be known in the eyes of the many nations, and they shall know that I am YAHWEH.
(Eze 20:42, Eze 36:23)

Chapter 39

1 And you, son of man, prophesy against Gog and say, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Behold, I am against you, O Gog, the prince of Rosh, Meshech, and Tubal.

2 And I will turn you back and lead you on. And I will bring you up from the recesses of the north, and will bring you on the mountains of Israel.

3 And I will strike your bow out of your left hand, and I will cause your arrows to fall out of your right hand.

4 You shall fall on the mountains of Israel, you and all your bands, and the people with you. I will give you for food to the birds of prey, a bird of every wing, and to the beasts of the field. *(Rev 19:17-18)*

5 You shall fall on the face of the field, for I have spoken, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

6 And I will send a fire on Magog, and on those living securely on the coasts. And they shall know that I am YAHWEH.

7 And I will make My holy name known in the midst of My people Israel[1]. And I will not let My holy name be profaned any more. And the nations shall know that I am YAHWEH, the Holy One of Israel.

8 Behold! It has come, and it has happened, declares Adonai YAHWEH. That is the day of which I have spoken.

9 And those living in the cities of Israel shall go out and shall set afire and burn the weapons, even the shield and the buckler, the bow and the arrows, and the hand staff, and the spears. And they shall burn them with fire seven years. *(Mic 4:3)*

10 And they shall not take wood out of the field and shall not cut down out of the forest. For they shall burn the weapons with fire. And they shall plunder those who plundered them, and rob those who robbed them, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

11 And it will be on that day, I will give to Gog a place there, a grave in Israel, the valley of those who pass by, east of the sea. And it shall stop those who pass by. And they shall bury Gog and all his multitude there, and they shall call it The Valley of the Multitude of Gog.

12 And the house of Israel shall bury them, in order to cleanse the land, seven months.

---

[1] The fact that the people are living securely Eze 38:11, but do not yet know Yahweh shows that this time is most likely after Yahshua returns at Yom Teruah (feast of trumpets) but before the millennium would begin the following Aviv. The Jubilee is announced on Yom Kippur (Lev 25:9) so that there is no planting for the Spring harvest, but the biblical year begins in Aviv (March/April).

13 And the people of the land shall bury. And it shall be for a name to them, the day when I am glorified, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

14 And they shall separate men who continually pass through the land, burying those who passed through, who remain on the face of the earth, to cleanse it. At the end of seven months, they shall make a search.

15 And as they pass, those who pass through the land, and any sees a bone of a man, then he shall build a post beside it until the ones burying have buried it in The Valley of the Multitude of Gog.

16 And also the name of the city is Hamunah[1] *(The Multitude)*. And they shall cleanse the land.

17 And you, son of man, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Say to the bird of every wing, and to every beast of the field: Gather yourselves and come, collect yourselves from all around to My sacrifice which I sacrifice for you, a great sacrifice on the mountains of Israel, so that you may eat flesh and drink blood. *(Rev 19:17-18)*

18 You shall eat the flesh of the mighty, and drink the blood of the rulers of the earth, of rams, lambs, goats, and bulls, all of them fatlings of Bashan.

19 And you shall eat fat until you are full, and drink blood until drunkenness, of My sacrifice which I have sacrificed for you.

20 And you shall be satisfied at My table with horses and chariots, and mighty men, all the men of war, declares Adonai YAHWEH. *(Rev 19:19)*

21 And I will put My glory among the nations, and all the nations shall see My judgments which I have done, and My hand that I have laid on them.

22 So the house of Israel shall know that I am YAHWEH their Elohim, from that day and onward[2].

23 And the nations shall know that the house of Israel was exiled for their iniquity. Because they betrayed Me, so I hid My face from them and gave them into the hand of their enemies. And they fell by the sword, all of them.

24 According to their uncleanness and according to their sins, I have done to them, and have hidden My face from them.

25 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: Now I will return the captivity of Jacob and will have mercy on all the house of Israel. And I will be jealous for My holy name.

26 And also after they have borne their shame, and all their treachery which they have done against Me, when they dwell on their land securely, and no one terrifies;

27 when I have returned them from the peoples, and gathered them out of the hand of their enemies, and am sanctified in them in the sight of many nations,

28 then they shall know that I am YAHWEH their Elohim who exiled them among the nations. But I have gathered them to their own land and have not left any of them there.

29 And I will not any more hide My face from them, for I have poured out My Spirit on the house of Israel, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 40

1 In the twenty fifth year of our exile, in the beginning of the year, in the tenth of the month[3], in the fourteenth year after the city was struck, on that

[1] Hamunah means "*the multitude*"

[2] Clearly end time but before the millennium.

[3] The phrase "*beginning of the year"* is "*Rash Hashaneh"*. The only time Rash Hashaneh is on the 10th day of 7th month is in a Jubilee, Lev 25:9.

same day the hand of YAHWEH was on me, and He brought me there.

2 In the visions of Elohim He brought me into the land of Israel and made me rest on a very high mountain. And it was as the structure of a city on the south.

3 And He brought me there; and, behold, a man whose appearance was as the appearance of copper, and a line of flax and a measuring reed in his hand. And he stood in the gate[1].

4 And the man said to me, Son of man, look with your eyes, and hear with your ears, and set your heart on all that I shall make you see. For in order to make you see, you are brought here. Declare to the house of Israel all that you see[2].

5 And, behold, a wall on the outside of the house all around. And a measuring reed was in the man's hand, six cubits, with a cubit[3] and a span. So he measured the breadth of the building, one reed[4]; and the height, one reed.

6 And he came to the gate which faced eastward, and he went up its steps and measured the threshold of the gate, one reed wide, even the one threshold, one reed wide.

7 And a room, one reed long and one reed wide, and between the rooms were five cubits. And the threshold of the gate from beside the porch of the gate, from the house, was one reed.

8 And he measured the porch of the gate from the house, one reed.

9 And he measured the porch of the gate, eight cubits; and its pillars, two cubits, also the porch of the gate from the house.

10 And the gate rooms eastward were three from here, and three from there, one measure to the three of them; and one measure was to the pillars, from here and from there.

11 And he measured the breadth of the gate opening, ten cubits; the length of the gate was thirteen cubits.

12 And the border in front of the rooms was one cubit; and the border from here, one cubit. And the room was six cubits from here, and six cubits from there.

13 And he measured the gate of the room from roof to roof, twenty five cubits wide, door to door.

14 He also made the pillars, sixty cubits, even to the court pillar, from the gate all around.

15 And on the face of the entrance gate, to the face of the porch of the inner gate, was fifty cubits;

16 and latticed windows were to the rooms and to their pillars inside the gate all around; and so for the porches; and windows were all around inside; and to a pillar were palm trees.

17 And he brought me into the outer court. And, behold, rooms, and a pavement made for the court all around. Thirty rooms were on the pavement.

18 And the pavement by the side of the gates to equal the length of the gates was the lower pavement.

19 And he measured the breadth from the face of the lower gate to the face of the inner court, on the outside, a hundred cubits eastward and northward.

20 And the gate which faces the way of the north of the outer court, he measured its length and its breadth.

21 And its rooms were three from here, and three from there. And its pillars and its porches were as the first measure: its length was fifty cubits and its breadth twenty five cubits.

22 And its windows, and its porches,

[1] Rev 1:15, Rev 11:1

[2] He was now going to see and give measurements for the sanctuary of YHWH.

[3] A cubit was either 18 or 21 inches.

[4] A reed was 10 1/3 feet

and its palm trees were as the measure
of the gate that faces eastward. And
they went up to it by seven steps, and
its porches were before them.
23 And the gate of the inner court
was across from the gate toward the
north and toward the east. And he
measured from gate to gate, a hundred
cubits.
24 And he led me southward. And
behold, a gate southward! And he
measured its pillars and its porches
according to these measures.
25 And windows were in it, and its
porches all around like these windows.
Fifty cubits were the length, and
twenty five cubits the breadth.
26 And seven steps were going up to
it, and its porches were before them.
And palm trees were to it, one from
here and one from there, to its pillars.
27 And a gate was to the inner court
southward. And he measured from
gate to gate, southward, a hundred
cubits.
28 And he brought me to the inner
court by the south gate. And he
measured the south gate by these
measures.
29 And its rooms, and its pillars, and
its porches were as three measures.
And windows were to it, and its
porches all around. It was fifty cubits
long and twenty five cubits wide.
30 And the porches all around were
twenty five cubits long and five cubits
wide.
31 And its porches were toward the
outer court, and palm trees on its
pillars. And its stairway had eight
steps.
32 And he brought me into the inner
court eastward. And he measured the
gate by these measures.
33 And its rooms, and its pillars, and
its porches were as these measures.
And windows were to it and to its
porches all around. It was fifty cubits
long and twenty five cubits wide.
34 And its porches were toward the
outer court. And palm trees were on its
pillars from here and from there. And
its stairway had eight steps.
35 And he brought me to the north
gate and measured by these measures,
36 its rooms, its posts, and its
porches. And windows were to it all
around. It was fifty cubits long and
twenty five cubits wide.
37 And its pillars were toward the
outer court. And palm trees were on its
pillars from here and from there; and
its stairway had eight steps.
38 And the room and its door was by
the pillars of the gates; they washed
the burnt offering there.
39 And in the porch of the gate were
two tables from here, and two tables
from there, to slaughter the burnt
offering on them, and the sin offering,
and the guilt offering.
40 And to the side outside, as one
goes up to the door of the gate
northward were two tables. And on the
other side at the porch of the gate were
two tables.
41 Four tables were from here, and
four tables from there, by the side of
the gate, eight tables. They slaughter
on them.
42 And the four tables for burnt
offering were cut stone, one cubit and
a half long, and one cubit and a half
wide, and one cubit high. They also
rested on them the instruments with
which they slaughtered using them for
the burnt offering and the sacrifice.
43 And the double hooks, one span,
were fastened in the house all around;
and on the tables was the flesh of the
offering.
44 And from the outside to the inner
court were the singers' chambers in
the inner court beside the north gate.
And their face was southward, the one

beside the east gate looked the way of
the north.
45 And he said to me, This chamber
facing southward is for the priests, the
keepers of the charge of the house.
46 And the chamber facing
northward is for the priests, the
keepers of the charge of the altar. They
are the sons of Zadok who come near
to YAHWEH, of the sons of Levi, to
minister to Him.
47 And he measured the court: a
hundred cubits long and a hundred
cubits wide, a square. And the altar
was before the house.
48 And he brought me to the porch
of the house and measured each pillar
of the porch, five cubits from here, and
five cubits from there. And the gate
was three cubits wide from here, and
three cubits from there.
49 The length of the porch was
twenty cubits and eleven cubits wide,
even with the steps by which they went
up to it. And columns were by the
pillars, one from here, and one from
there.

Chapter 41

1 And he brought me to the
sanctuary and measured the pillars,
six cubits wide from here, and six
cubits wide from there, the width of
the tent.
2 And the door was ten cubits wide.
And the sides of the door were five
cubits from here and five cubits from
there. And he measured its length,
forty cubits, and twenty cubits wide.
3 And he went inside and measured
the pillars of the door, two cubits. And
the door was six cubits, and the width
of the door, seven cubits.
4 And he measured its length, twenty
cubits, and the width, twenty cubits, to
the face of the temple. And he said to
me, This is the Holy of Holies.
5 And he measured the wall of the
house, six cubits, and the width of
each side room was four cubits all
around the house.
6 And the side rooms were a side
chamber over a side chamber, three
stories, and thirty times. And they
entered the wall of the house for the
side rooms all around, that they may
be fastened. But they were not
fastened in the wall of the house.
7 And there was a widening and a
winding upwards and upwards for the
side chambers, for the winding around
of the house went upward and upward,
all around the house. On account of
this the width of the house went up,
and so from the lowest it went up to
the highest by the middle story.
8 I also saw the height of the house
all around, the foundations of the side
rooms were a full reed, six cubits by
joining.
9 The width of the wall which was for
the side room to the outside was five
cubits, and that which was left
between the side chambers that were
of the house.
10 And between the rooms was the
width of twenty cubits circling the
house all around.
11 And the door of the side chamber
was toward the open space, one door
northward, and one door southward.
And the width of the place of the open
space was five cubits all around.
12 And the building that was before
the separate area at the end of the way
of the west was seventy cubits wide.
And the wall of the building was five
cubits wide all around; and its length,
ninety cubits.
13 And he measured the house, a
hundred cubits long. And the separate
area and the building and its wall were
a hundred cubits long.
14 And the width of the face of the

house, and the separate area toward
the east, a hundred cubits.
15 And he measured the length of
the building to the face of the separate
area which was on its rear; and its
gallery from here and from there was a
hundred cubits, also the inner
sanctuary, and the porches of the
court,
16 the thresholds, and the latticed
windows, and the galleries all around,
their three stories opposite the
threshold, were paneled with wood all
around, and from the ground up to the
windows, and the windows were
covered
17 to that above the door, even to the
inner house, and outside, and to all the
wall all around inside and outside by
measure.
18 And it was made with cherubs
and palm trees, and a palm tree was
between cherub and cherub. And two
faces were to a cherub,
19 the face of a man toward the palm
tree from here, and a young lion's face
toward the palm tree from there. It
was made to all the house all around.
20 From the ground to above the
door, cherubs and palm trees were
made, and on the wall of the
sanctuary.
21 The sanctuary doorposts were
squared, and the face of the sanctuary,
the appearance of the one as the
appearance of the other.
22 The altar of wood was three
cubits high, and its length two cubits.
And its corners, and its length, and its
walls were wood. And he said to me,
This is the table that is before
YAHWEH.
23 And two doors were to the
sanctuary and the Holy Place.
24 And two doors were to each of the
doors, two turning doors, two for the
one door, and two for the other door.
25 And cherubs and palm trees were
made on them, on the doors of the
sanctuary, like those made on the
walls; and thick wood was on the face
of the porch outside.
26 And latticed windows and palm
trees were from here and from there
on the sides of the porch, and the side
chambers of the house, and wooden
canopies.

Chapter 42

1 And he brought me out into the
outer court northward. And he
brought me into the chamber that was
across from the separate area, which
was in front of the building to the
north.
2 To the face of its length was a
hundred cubits, toward the north
door, and fifty cubits wide.
3 Across from the twenty cubits
which were to the inner court, and
opposite the pavement which was to
the outer court, was gallery on the face
of gallery, in three stories.
4 And before the rooms was a walk
ten cubits wide, to the inside, a way of
one cubit. And their doors were
toward the north.
5 And the upper rooms were shorter,
for the galleries used up more space
than the lower and middle ones in the
building.
6 For they were in three stories, and
there were no columns to them like the
columns of the courts. So the third was
made narrower than the lower and
middle stories from the ground.
7 And the wall that was outside near
the rooms the way of the outer court,
on the face of the rooms, its length was
fifty cubits.
8 For the length of the rooms that
were in the outer court was fifty cubits.
And, behold, in the face of the
sanctuary was a hundred cubits.
9 And under these rooms was the

entrance on the east side as one goes into them from the outer court.
10 In the width of the wall of the court eastward, to the face of the separate area, and to the face of the building were rooms.
11 And the way before them looked like the rooms which were northward, as their length, so their width. And all their exits were as their patterns and as their doors.
12 And as the doors of the rooms that were southward, there was a door in the head of the way, the way directly in the face of the wall, the way of the east, as one enters them.
13 And he said to me, The north chambers, the south chambers which are to the face of the separate area, they are holy chambers, there where the priests shall eat, who approach to YAHWEH in the holy of the holies. There they shall lay the holiest of the holy things, even the food offering and the sin offering, and the guilt offering. For the place is holy.
14 When the priests enter, then they shall not go out of the sanctuary into the outer court, but they shall lay their clothes there by which they minister by them, for they are holy. They shall put on other clothes and shall approach to that which is for the people.
15 And he finished measuring the inner house. And he brought me forth the way of the gate whose face is eastward, and measured all around.
16 He measured the east side with the measuring reed, five hundred reeds with the measuring reed, all around.
17 He measured the north side, five hundred reeds with the measuring reed, all around.
18 He measured the south side, five hundred reeds with the measuring reed.
19 He turned to the west side, measuring five hundred reeds with the measuring reed.
20 By the four sides he measured it. It had a wall all around, five hundred reeds long, and five hundred wide, to separate between the holy and the common.

Chapter 43

1 And he led me to the gate, the gate that faces eastward.
2 And, behold, the glory of the Elohim of Israel came from the way of the east. And His voice was like the voice of many waters. And the earth shone from His glory. *(Eze 11:23)*
3 And the appearance of the vision which I saw was as the appearance which I saw when I came to destroy the city, and as the appearance that I saw by the river Chebar. And I fell on my face.
4 And the glory of YAHWEH came into the house, the way of the gate facing eastward.
5 And the Spirit took me up and brought me into the inner court. And, behold, the glory of YAHWEH filled the house!
6 And I heard one speaking to me from the house. And standing beside me was a Man.
7 And He said to me, Son of man, the place of My throne and the place of the soles of My feet, there where I will dwell among the sons of Israel forever, even the house of Israel shall not defile My holy name any more, they nor their kings, by their fornication, nor by the corpses of their kings in their high places.
8 In their setting of their threshold by My threshold, and their door post beside My door post, and the wall between Me and them, even they have defiled My holy name by their

abominations that they have done. And I consumed them in My anger.

9 Now let them put away their fornication and the corpses of their kings from Me, and I will dwell in their midst forever.

10 You, son of man, declare to the house of Israel, the sanctuary house, and they will blush from their iniquities. And let them measure its size.

11 And if they are ashamed of all that they have done, the form of the house, and its arrangement, and its exits, and its entrances, and all its forms, and all its statutes, and all its forms, and all its laws, make them known to them. And write them in their sight, so that they may observe all its form, and all its statutes, and do them.

12 This is the law of the house: On the top of the mountain is all its border, all around, being most holy. Behold, this is the law of the house.

13 And these are the measures of the altar by the cubit: the cubit is a cubit and a span, even the base shall be a cubit, and the width a cubit, and its border on its edge all around shall be one span. And this is the upper part of the altar.[1]

14 And from the base on the ground to the lower ledge shall be two cubits, and the width one cubit. And from the smaller ledge to the greater ledge shall be four cubits, and the width a cubit.

15 And the altar hearth shall be four cubits, and from the altar hearth and upward shall be four horns.

16 And the altar hearth shall be twelve cubits long, and twelve wide, square in its four sides.

17 And the ledge shall be fourteen long, fourteen wide, in its four sides. And the border around it shall be a half cubit, and the base for it a cubit all around. And its steps shall face the east.

18 And He said to me, Son of man, so says Adonai YAHWEH: These are the statutes of the altar in the day of its being made to offer on it burnt offerings, and to sprinkle on it blood.

19 And you shall give to the priests of the Levites, (they who are from the seed of Zadok, who approach to Me), declares Adonai YAHWEH, to minister to Me, a bull, a son of the herd, for a sin offering.

20 And you shall take of its blood and put it on its four horns, and on the four corners of the ledge, and on the border all around. And you shall cleanse it and atone for it.

21 And you shall take the bull of the sin offering, and he shall burn it at the appointed place of the house outside the sanctuary.

22 And on the second day you shall bring a buck of the goats without blemish for a sin offering. And they shall cleanse the altar, as they cleansed it with the bull.

23 When you have finished cleansing, you shall bring a bull without blemish, a son of the herd, and a ram without blemish out of the flock.

24 And you shall bring them before YAHWEH, and the priests shall throw salt on them, and they shall offer them for a burnt offering to YAHWEH.

25 For seven days you shall daily prepare a he goat for a sin offering. And they shall prepare a bull, a son of the herd, and a ram out of the flock, ones without blemish.

26 They shall atone seven days for the altar, and cleanse it, and consecrate it.

27 And when the days are

---

[1] It is ambiguous whether Ezekiel 40-46 is a prophecy for the millennium or whether these chapters would have occurred during the second temple period if Israel had obeyed the message, which they did not.

completed, it shall be on the eighth day and forward, the priests shall make your burnt offerings, and your peace offerings, on the altar. And I will accept you, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

Chapter 44

1 And he brought me back the way of the gate of the outer sanctuary, facing east. And it was shut.
2 And YAHWEH said to me, This gate shall be shut; it will not be opened. And a man shall not enter by it, because YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, has entered by it; so it shall be shut.
3 As for the prince, as prince he shall sit in it to eat bread before YAHWEH[1]. He shall enter by the way of the porch of the gate, and by his way shall go out.
4 And he brought me by the way of the north gate, to the face of the house. And I looked, and, behold, the glory of YAHWEH filled the house of YAHWEH,! And I fell on my face.
5 And YAHWEH said to me, Son of man, set your heart and see with your eyes, and hear with your ears all that I say to you of all the statutes of the house of YAHWEH, and of all its laws. And set your heart to the entrance of the house, with all the exits of the sanctuary.
6 And you shall say to the rebellious ones, to the house of Israel, So says Adonai YAHWEH: Enough to you, of all your abominations, O house of Israel,
7 when you brought in the sons of strangers, uncircumcised of heart and uncircumcised of flesh, to be in My sanctuary, to profane it, even My house[2], when you bring near My bread, the fat and the blood. And they have broken My covenant by all your abominations.
8 And you have not kept the charge of My holy things, but you have set them as keepers of My charge in My sanctuary, for themselves.
9 So says Adonai YAHWEH: No son of an foreigner, uncircumcised of heart and uncircumcised of flesh, shall enter into My sanctuary, or any son of a foreigner who is among the sons of Israel[3].
10 But the Levites who have gone far from Me, when Israel went astray, who went astray from Me, going after their idols, even they shall bear their iniquity.
11 Yet they shall do the menial tasks in My sanctuary, overseers at the gates of the house, and serving in the house. They shall slaughter the burnt offering and the sacrifice for the people, and

1 Referring to Elohim's presence coming in from this gate from the Mount of Olives. Eze 43:1-2. This is the gate that Yahshua entered when He cleansed the sanctuary right before His crucifixion Luk 19:37-45. Yahshua will also return to the Mount of Olives in the east and enter Mount Zion by the eastern gate Acts 1:11-12, Zech 14:1-4. The prince spoken about in these chapters is not the Messiah, but is King David (Eze 34:23-24. Yahshua Yahweh, the Son is the presence of Yahweh in this sanctuary.

2 This is referring to the Levites bringing into Yahweh's sanctuary gentile, non Israelite slaves as in Jos 9:27, to do the menial tasks of cleaning, sweeping etc. No non Levitical person should have entered Yahweh's sanctuary, never mind gentile slaves.

3 Yahweh is referring to the above offense of the Levites allowing gentile slaves into the sanctuary to do the menial tasks that they did not want to. He is stating in this coming sanctuary that no non-covenant person will enter His sanctuary only those who are qualified as priests. Whenever the term *'uncircumcised'* is used in scripture it is referring to non- covenant Israelites, and not speaking about physical circumcision.

they shall stand before them, to serve them.

12 Because they attended to them before their idols, and became a stumbling-block of iniquity to the house of Israel, therefore I have lifted up My hand against them, declares Adonai YAHWEH. And they shall bear their iniquity.

13 And they shall not come near to Me to serve as priest to Me, nor come near to any of My holy things, to the holiest of the holy things, but they shall bear their shame and their abominations which they have done.

14 But I will give them to be keepers of the charge of the house to be bond-servants for all labour, and for all that shall be done in it[1].

15 But the priests, the Levites, the sons of Zadok[2], who kept the charge of My sanctuary when the sons of Israel went astray from Me, they shall come near to Me to minister to Me. And they shall stand before Me to bring near to Me the fat and the blood, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

16 They shall enter into My sanctuary, and they shall come near to My table, to minister to Me. And they shall keep My charge.

17 And it shall be when they enter in the gates of the inner court, they shall be clothed with linen garments[3]. And wool shall not come upon them while they minister in the gates of the inner court, and in the house. *(Rev 19:8)*

18 Turbans of bleached linen shall be on their heads, and linen under-garments shall be on their loins. They shall not gird with sweat.

19 And when they go out into the outer court, to the outer court to the people, they shall put off their garments by which they ministered and lay them in the holy chambers. And they shall put on other garments, and they shall not sanctify the people with their own garments.

20 And they shall not shave their heads, and they shall not send forth long hair; trimming they shall trim their heads. *(1Cor 11:14)*

21 And every priest shall not drink wine when they enter into the inner court. *(Lev 10:9)*

22 And they shall not take a widow or a divorcee, for wives for themselves, but they shall only take virgins of the seed of the house of Israel, or a widow who is the widow of a priest[4].

23 And they shall teach My people between the holy and the common, and between the unclean and the clean, to make them known[5].

24 And in a dispute, they shall stand to judge, they shall judge it by My judgments. And they shall observe My Torah and My statutes in My

---

1 Verses 10-14, The Levites punishment for bringing gentiles into Yahweh's sanctuary will be that they will be demoted in the future sanctuary to be doing the menial tasks.

2 The regular priests in this sanctuary will be only the sons of "*Zadok*". The high priestly order in the Millennium will be Melchi-Zedek, or king of righteousness. "*Zadok*" means "*righteous*" and this verse is showing the changeover from the Levitical order to the Melchizedek order. See all of Hebrews 7. Also look at what John the baptist, who was the last true Levitical High priest through the line of his father, said to Yahshua who was the eternal Melchizedek priest in John 3:30, "*It is necessary for Him to increase and I must decrease.*"

3 Linen represents righteousness Rev 19:8.

4 The priest was not allowed to take a divorced woman as a wife (Lev 21:6-7). As Melchizedek priests in the New Covenant, Yahshua clearly stated that to divorce a spouse and marry another is adultery, Mk 10:11-12.

5 The Melchizedek priests in this sanctuary will accomplish what the Levites failed to do in the first sanctuary Mal 2:6-9, to teach the people true Holiness.

appointed feasts, and they shall sanctify My Sabbaths[1].
25 And he shall not come to a dead man, to defile himself; but for father, or for mother, or for a son, or for a daughter, for a brother, or for a sister who has not had a husband, they may defile themselves. *(Lev 21:1-3)*
26 And after he is cleansed, they shall count seven days for him.
27 And in the day he goes into the sanctuary, to the inner court, to minister in the sanctuary, he shall bring his sin offering, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
28 And it shall be to them for an inheritance; I am their inheritance; and you shall not give them possession in Israel; I am their possession[2].
29 They shall eat the food offering and the sin offering and the guilt offering. And every devoted thing in Israel shall be theirs. *(Num 18:9, 14)*
30 And the first of all the first-fruits of all, and every one of the heave offerings of all, of all your heave offerings, shall be for the priests. And you shall give to the priest the first of your dough, to cause a blessing to rest on your house[3]. *(Num 18:12-13)*
31 The priests shall not eat of every corpse and torn thing, of birds, or of beasts. *(Lev 7:24)*

1 The priests will be the judges as originally laid out in the Torah in Deut 17:8-13, and the people will honor and listen to Yahweh's set apart leaders at this time. The priests will teach the people how to honor Yahweh's Torah and His plan of salvation through the Holy Days.

2 The priests were not to own property (Num 18:20, 23-24 Deut 10:9), The possession of the priest was Yahweh Himself. In the millennium, the true believers who are the bride of Yahshua will also be His possession (1Cor 6:19-20) and with Him in His sanctuary and cared for, Rev 7:13-17.

3 Firstfirst are Holy to YHWH and His firstborn will partake in the firstfruits.

Chapter 45

1 And when you shall divide the land by lot for an inheritance, you shall offer a heave offering to YAHWEH, a holy portion of the land. The length shall be twenty five thousand cubits long and the width ten thousand[4]. It shall be holy in all its borders all around.
2 Of this there shall be for the sanctuary five hundred by five hundred cubits, square all around, and fifty cubits of open space shall be all around.
3 And from this measure you shall measure the length, twenty five thousand cubits, and the width, ten thousand. And in it shall be the sanctuary, the holy of holies.
4 It is the holy portion of the land for the priests, it shall be for the ministers of the sanctuary who come near to minister to YAHWEH. And it shall be for them a place for their houses, and a holy place for the sanctuary.
5 And twenty five thousand cubits in length, and ten thousand in width shall be for the Levites, the ministers of the house, for them for a possession, twenty rooms.
6 And you shall give the possession of the city, five thousand cubits wide and twenty five thousand long, beside the heave offering of the holy lot. It shall be for the whole house of Israel.
7 And a portion shall be for the prince from here, and from there, for the heave offering of the holy place and of the possession of the city, to the face of the heave offering of the holy place, from the west side westward, and from the east side eastward. And the length shall be alongside one of the

4 Verses 1-8. This is about 8 miles square surrounded by the priests' quarters.

portions, from the west border to the
east border.
8 It shall be for a land to him, for a
possession in Israel, and My rulers
shall not oppress My people any more.
And they shall give the land to the
house of Israel according to their
tribes.
9 So says Adonai YAHWEH:
Enough for you, O rulers of Israel!
Turn away violence and oppression,
and do justice and righteousness. Lift
away your acts of violence from My
people, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
10 Just balances and a just ephah,
and a just bath, let there be to you.
11 The ephah and the bath shall be
one measure, that the bath may
contain the tenth of the homer, and
the tenth of the homer the ephah. Its
measure shall be to the homer[1].
12 And the shekel shall be twenty
gerahs: Twenty shekels, twenty five
shekels, fifteen shekels shall be a
maneh to you.
13 This is the heave offering that you
shall offer: the sixth of an ephah of a
homer of wheat, and the sixth of an
ephah of a homer of barley.
14 And the statute of oil, the bath of
oil, the tenth of the bath out of the cor;
(ten baths, a homer, for ten baths are a
homer);
15 and one lamb out of the flock, out
of two hundred, out of the watered
land of Israel for a food offering, and
for a burnt offering, and for peace
offerings, to atone for them, declares
Adonai YAHWEH[2].
16 All the people of the land shall be
at this heave offering for the prince in
Israel.
17 And responsibility for burnt
offerings shall be on the prince, and a
food offering, and drink offerings, in
the feasts and on the new moons and
on the Sabbaths, in all the appointed
feasts of the house of Israel[3]. He shall
make the sin offering, and the food
offering, and the burnt offering, and
the peace offerings, to atone for the
house of Israel.
18 So says Adonai YAHWEH: In the
first month, on the first of the month,
you shall take a bull without blemish, a
son of the herd, and cleanse the
sanctuary. *(Ex 12:2)*
19 And the priest shall take of the
blood of the sin offering and put it on
the door posts of the house, and on the
four corners of the ledge of the altar,
and on the gateposts of the inner
court.
20 And so you shall do on the
seventh of the month for each man
who goes astray, and for the simple.
And you shall atone for the house.
21 In the first month, in the
fourteenth day of the month, the
Passover shall be to you; a feast of
seven days, unleavened bread is
eaten[4].
22 And the prince shall make ready
on that day for himself and for the

---

1 An ephah is a dry measurement of about 2/3 of a bushel and a bath is a liquid one of about 6 gallons, and a homer is about 6 bushels.

2 If this is happening in the millennial sanctuary there is no contradiction to the believer in Yahshua, as sacrifice and offering of ones wealth and prized possessions was a way to draw near to his creator and was a practice since the days of Adam and Eve (Gen 4:3-4).

3 It should be noted that the Sabbath, Holy Days and New Moons will all be observed in this sanctuary.

4 True believers in Yahshua today observe and keep the Holy days of Lev 23, as some of them such as Passover shows the redemptive work that Yahshua already did and some look forward to the redemptive work that is still ahead. It will be the same here in this sanctuary, as these days will mirror the great redemptive work of Yahweh, through Yahshua His Son.

people of the land, a bull for a sin offering.
23 And seven days of the feast he shall make ready a burnt offering to YAHWEH, seven bulls and seven rams, without blemish, daily for the seven days, and for a sin offering a kid of the he-goats daily.
24 And a food offering of an ephah for a bull, and an ephah for a ram, he shall make ready; also of oil, a hin for an ephah.
25 In the seventh month, in the fifteenth day of the month, at the feast, he shall make ready like these seven days as the sin offering, as the burnt offering, as the food offering, and as the oil. *(Ex 23:16, 34:22, Deut 16:16)*

Chapter 46

1 So says Adonai YAHWEH: The gate of the inner court that faces the east shall be shut the six days of work. But on the Sabbath day it shall be opened, and in the day of the new moon it shall be opened[1].
2 And the prince shall enter by way of the porch of the gate from outside and shall stand by the gatepost. And the priests shall prepare his burnt offering and his peace offerings. And he shall worship at the threshold of the gate. Then he shall go out, but the gate shall not be shut until the evening.
3 And the people of the land shall worship at the door of that gate on the Sabbaths, and on the new moons, before YAHWEH.
4 And the burnt offering that the prince shall bring near to YAHWEH on the Sabbath day shall be six lambs without blemish, and a ram without blemish.
5 And the food offering shall be an ephah for a ram, and a food offering for the lambs, a gift of his hand; and a hin of oil to an ephah.
6 And in the day of the new moon: a bull without blemish, a son of the herd, and six lambs, and a ram, they shall be without blemish,
7 and an ephah for a bull and an ephah for a ram he shall prepare as a food offering; and for the lambs as his hand can reach; and a hin of oil to an ephah.
8 And when the prince shall enter, he shall enter by way of the porch of the gate, and by its way he shall go out.
9 But when the people of the land come before YAHWEH at the appointed feasts, he who enters by way of the north gate to worship shall go out by way of the south gate. And he who enters by way of the south gate shall go out by way of the north gate. He shall not return by way of the gate by which he came in, but shall go out opposite it.[2]
10 And the prince shall go in among them when they go in, and he shall go out when they go out.
11 And in the feast seasons, and in the appointed feasts, the food offering shall be an ephah to a bull, and an ephah to a ram, and to the lambs a gift of his hand; and a hin of oil to an ephah.
12 And when the prince makes a free offering, a burnt offering, or peace offerings as a free offering to YAHWEH, then one shall open to him the gate facing east. And he shall prepare his burnt offering and his peace offerings as he does on the Sabbath day. And he shall go out, and the gate is shut after he goes out.

---

[1] Both Sabbaths and New Moons are being observed during this time Is 66:23.

[2] The ancient Hebrew hieroglyphic word picture for repentance is " *to destroy the path to the house"*, you leave nothing to go back for, and here they cannot go back the way they came but must continue to move forward.

13 And you shall make ready a burnt offering daily to YAHWEH, a lamb without blemish, a son of a year; from dawn to dawn you shall make it ready.

14 And you shall make ready a food offering for it from dawn to dawn, a sixth of an ephah, and a third of a hin of oil to wet the fine flour, a food offering to YAHWEH, perfect statutes forever.

15 So they shall make ready the lamb, and the food offering, and the oil, from dawn to dawn as a burnt offering continually.

16 So says Adonai YAHWEH: If the prince gives a gift to sons of his inheritance, it shall be to his sons; it is their possession by inheritance.

17 But if he gives it as a gift of his inheritance to one of his servants, then it shall be his until the year of liberty[1], then it shall return to the prince. His inheritance is only his sons'; it shall be theirs.

18 And the prince shall not take of the people's inheritance, oppressing them from their possession. He shall give inheritance to his sons from his possession, so that My people shall not be dispersed, each man from his possession.

19 And he brought me through the entry which was at the side of the gate, into the holy rooms for the priests, facing north. And, behold, there was a place on the two sides westward.

20 And he said to me, This is the place, there where the priests shall boil the guilt offering, and the sin offering, where they shall bake the food offering, so as not to bring them out to the outer court to sanctify the people.

21 And he led me out to the outer court. And he made me pass by the four corners of the court. And, behold, a court in each corner of the court, a court in each corner of the court.

22 In the four corners of the court were enclosed courts forty cubits long and thirty wide, one measure to the four of them, being made in corners.

23 And a row was around in them, around the four of them, and boiling places were made under the rows round about.

24 And he said to me, These are the houses of those who boil, there where the servants of the house shall boil the sacrifice of the people.

Chapter 47

1 And he made me turn back to the opening of the house. And, behold, water came out from under the threshold of the house eastward. For the face of the house is east, and the water came down from under the right side of the house, at the south from the altar. *(Rev 22:1-2, Ps 46:4)*

2 And he led me out by way of the north gate, and led me around the way outside to the outer gate, by the way facing east. And, behold, water was dropping out of the right side.

3 When the man went out eastward, and the line in his hand, he measured a thousand cubits. And he passed me through the water, water to the ankles.

4 And he measured a thousand and passed me through the water, water to the knees. And he measured a thousand, and passed me through water to the loins.

5 And he measured a thousand, and there was a torrent which I was not able to pass, for the water had risen, water to swim in, a torrent that could not be passed.

6 And he said to me, Have you seen, son of man? And he led me and made me return to the lip of the torrent.

7 When I returned, then, behold, on the lip of the torrent were many trees on this side and on that side.

[1] This is the Jubilee year (Lev 25:8-14)

8 And he said to me, These waters go out toward the eastern circuit, and go down into the Aravah, and enter the sea. They are brought out into the sea, and the waters shall be healed.

9 And it shall be, every soul that lives, which swarms in every place, there where the two torrents go, that soul shall live. And there shall be very many fish, because these waters shall come there. And they shall be healed. And all shall live there where the torrent goes[1].

10 And it will be, the fishermen shall stand on it; from En-Gedi even to En-Eglaim, a spreading place for nets shall be there; their fish shall be by its kind, like the fish of the Great Sea, very many.

11 Its swamps and its marshes shall not even be healed, they shall be given to salt.

12 And all trees for food shall go up by the torrent, on its lip on this side and on that. Its leaf shall not fade, and its fruit shall not fail; it will bear by its months, because its waters come out from the sanctuary. And its fruit shall be for food, and its leaf for healing medicine[2].

13 So says Adonai YAHWEH: This shall be the border by which you shall inherit the land, by the twelve tribes of Israel. Joseph shall have two portions[3].

14 And you shall inherit it, each man like his brother, that I lifted up My hand to give it to your fathers, even this land shall fall to you for an inheritance.

15 And this is the border of the land to the north side, from the Great Sea, the way of Hethlon to the entrance of Zedad: *(Num 34:1-12)*

16 Hamath, Berothah, Sibraim, which is between the border of Damascus and the border of Hamath; Hazarhatticon, which is by the border of Hauran.

17 And the border shall be from the sea to Hazarenan, at the border of Damascus; and the north northward, even the border of Hamath. And this is the north side.

18 And you shall measure the east side from between Hauran, and Damascus, and Gilead, and the land of Israel; shall be the Jordan, from the border to the Eastern Sea, and this is the east side.

19 And the south side southward from Tamar to the waters of Meriboth-Kadesh, the torrent to the Great Sea. And this is the south side to the Negev.

20 And the west side is the Great Sea from the border until beside the entrance of Hamath; this is the west side.

21 And you shall divide this land for yourselves by the tribes of Israel.

22 And it will be, you shall divide by lot for an inheritance to yourselves, and to the foreigners who reside among you, who shall father sons among you. And they shall be to you as native born among the sons of Israel. They shall have an inheritance fall among the tribes of Israel.

23 And it shall be, in the tribe in which the foreigner resides, there you shall give his inheritance, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

---

[1] Verse 1-9 shows the redeeming force of Yahweh going back to the Garden of Eden type scenario with healing waters to the people. Gen 2:10, Rev 22:1-2, Ps 36:8-9, Ps 46:4, Joel 3:18,

[2] During the millennial reign things will be more naturally set as in the garden of Eden with people using the healing power of extracted oils from the trees that Yahweh has created, Rev 22:2.

[3] Yahweh continues to give the kingdom borders of land for the restored 12 tribes with Joseph getting the double portion as the right of the first born, Deut 21:17.

Chapter 48

1 And these are the names of the tribes: From the north end, at the hand of the way of Hethlon, to the entrance of Hamath, Hazarenan, the border of Damascus northward, at the hand of Hamath; and there shall be to it an east side and a west: To Dan, one part.

2 And by the border of Dan, from the east side to the west side, Asher, one part.

3 And by the border of Asher, from the east side to the west side, Naphtali, one part.

4 And by the border of Naphtali, from the east side even to the west side, Manasseh, one part.

5 And by the border of Manasseh, from the east side to the west side, Ephraim, one part.

6 And by the border of Ephraim, from the east side even to the west side, Reuben, one part.

7 And by the border of Reuben, from the east side even to the west side, Judah, one part.

8 And by the border of Judah, from the east side to the west side, shall be the heave offering which you shall offer, twenty five thousand cubits wide and long, as one of the parts, from the east side to the west side. And the sanctuary shall be in its midst.

9 The heave offering that you shall offer to YAHWEH shall be twenty five thousand cubits long and ten thousand cubits wide.

10 And for these shall be the holy heave offering for the priests: northward, twenty five thousand; and westward, ten thousand cubits wide; and eastward, ten thousand wide; and southward, twenty five thousand cubits long. And the sanctuary of YAHWEH shall be in its midst,

11 for the priests who are sanctified, of the sons of Zadok, who have kept My charge, who did not go astray when the sons of Israel went astray, as the Levites went astray.

12 And the heave offering shall be theirs, from the heave offering of the land, the holiest of the holy places, by the border of the Levites.

13 And the Levites shall have alongside the border of the priests twenty five thousand cubits long and ten thousand wide. All the length shall be twenty five thousand, and the width ten thousand.

14 And they shall not sell any of it, and shall not trade, and shall not cause to pass away the first-fruits of the land. For it is holy to YAHWEH[1].

15 And the five thousand being left in the width in front of the twenty five thousand, it is common for the city, for dwelling and for open land. And the city shall be in its midst.

16 And these shall be its measures: the north side, four thousand and five hundred; and the south side, four thousand and five hundred cubits; and the east side, four thousand and five hundred; and the west side, four thousand and five hundred.

17 And the open land shall be of the city northward, two hundred and fifty cubits; and southward, two hundred and fifty; and eastward, two hundred and fifty; and westward, two hundred and fifty cubits.

18 And the remainder in length alongside the heave offering of the holy parts shall be ten thousand eastward, and ten thousand westward. And it shall be alongside the heave offering of the holy part. And its

[1] Math 10:8, Is 55:1-3, Pr 23:23, Yahweh's truth, word and land are all part of His wonderful gift of blessings and His grace and cannot be bought and should not be sold.

produce shall be for bread to those
who serve the city.
19 And he who serves the city shall
serve it out of all the tribes of Israel.
20 All the heave offering shall be
twenty five thousand by twenty five
thousand cubits, foursquare. You shall
offer the holy heave offering to the
possession of the city.
21 And the remainder is for the
prince, on this side and on that of the
holy heave offering, and of the
possession of the city in the front of
the twenty five thousand of the heave
offering to the east border, and
westward in the front of the twenty
five thousand to the west border;
alongside the parts of the prince. And
it shall be a holy heave offering, and
the sanctuary of the house in its midst.
22 And to the prince shall be from
the possession of the Levites, and from
the city's possession, amidst that for
the prince, between the border of
Judah and the border of Benjamin.
23 And the rest of the tribes: From
the east side to the west side,
Benjamin, one part.
24 And by the border of Benjamin,
from the east side to the west side,
Simeon, one part.
25 And by the border of Simeon,
from the east side to the west side,
Issachar, one part.
26 And by the border of Issachar,
from the east side to the west side,
Zebulun, one part.
27 And by the border of Zebulun,
from the east side to the west side
Gad, one part.
28 And by the border of Gad to the
south side southward, from Tamar to
the waters of Meriboth-Kadesh, to the
torrent to the Great Sea.
29 This is the land which you shall
make fall by lot for an inheritance to
the tribes of Israel, and these their
parts, declares Adonai YAHWEH.
30 And these are the exits of the city
on the north side, four thousand and
five hundred measures.
31 And the gates of the city shall be
by the names of the tribes of Israel:
three gates northward, the gate of
Reuben, one; the gate of Judah, one;
the gate of Levi, one.
32 And at the east side four
thousand five hundred, and three
gates: even the gate of Joseph, one; the
gate of Benjamin, one; the gate of Dan,
one.
33 And the south side, four thousand
and five hundred measures, and three
gates: the gate of Simeon, one; the
gate of Issachar, one; the gate of
Zebulun, one.
34 The west side, four thousand and
five hundred, their gates three: the
gate of Gad, one; the gate of Asher,
one; the gate of Naphtali, one.
35 All around it shall be eighteen
thousand cubits. And the name of the
city from that day shall be YAHWEH
IS THERE[1].

[1] The Hebrew is "*Yahweh Shammah*"

Book of Daniel 537 BC

Chapter 1

1 In the third year of the reign of Jehoiakim king of Judah, Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon came to Jerusalem and besieged it.[1]

2 And YAHWEH gave Jehoiakim, king of Judah, into his hand, with part of the vessels of the house of Elohim, which he carried into the land of Shinar[2] to the house of his god. And he brought the vessels into the treasure house of his god.

3 And the king spoke to Ashpenaz, the chief of his eunuchs that he should bring some of the sons of Israel, and of the king's seed, and of the nobles,

4 young men in whom was no blemish, but who were of good appearance and having understanding in all wisdom, having knowledge and understanding learning, even those with strength in them to stand in the king's palace, and to teach them the writing and the language of the Chaldeans.

5 And the king set to them the portion of a day in its day, from the king's food, and the wine of his drinking, even to rear them three years, so that at their end they may stand before the king.

6 And there were among them of the sons of Judah, Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah,

7 to whom the chief of the eunuchs gave names. For he called Daniel, Belteshazzar; and Hananiah, Shadrach; and Mishael, Meshach; and Azariah, Abednego.

8 And Daniel laid on his heart that he would not defile himself with the king's food, or with the wine of his drinking. So he asked of the chief of the eunuchs that he might not defile himself[3].

9 And the Elohim had given Daniel kindness and compassion before the chief of the eunuchs. *(Gen 39:4,21)*

10 And the chief of the eunuchs said to Daniel, I fear my master the king, who has appointed your food and your drink. For why should he see your faces worse looking than the boys who are in your age group? Then you would forfeit my head to the king.

11 And Daniel said to Melzar, whom the chief of the eunuchs had set over Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah,

12 Please, test your servants ten days. And let vegetables be given to us that we may eat, and water that we may drink.

13 Then let be seen before you, our look and the look of the boys who eat of the king's food. And as you see, do so with your servants.

14 And he listened to them in this matter and tested them for ten days.

15 And at the end of ten days their appearance looked better and fatter of flesh than all the boys who were eating the king's food.

16 So Melzar took away their food and the wine that they were to drink, and he gave them vegetables.

17 As for these four boys, the Elohim gave them knowledge and skill in all writing and wisdom. And Daniel had understanding in all visions and dreams.

18 Now at the end of the days that the king had said to bring them in, the chief of the eunuchs brought them in before Nebuchadnezzar.

19 And the king talked with them. And among them all was found none

[1] This would be about the year 609BC. Jer 25:1-10

[2] Another name for Babylonia

[3] The first portion of the meat was offered to an idol and the drink also poured on a pagan altar. Also some meat would have been unclean according to Lev 11.

like Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. So they stood before the king.
20 And in any matter of wisdom and understanding that the king asked from them, he found them ten times better than all the magicians and the conjurers who were in all his kingdom. *(Ezek 28:3)*
21 And Daniel continued to the first year of King Cyrus[1].

Chapter 2

1 And in the second year of the reign of Nebuchadnezzar, Nebuchadnezzar was dreaming dreams, and his spirit was troubled, and his sleep was finished on him.
2 And the king said to call to the magicians, and to the astrologers, and to the sorcerers and to the Chaldeans, to declare to the king his dreams. And they came and stood before the king.
3 And the king said to them, I have dreamed a dream, and my spirit was troubled to know the dream.
4 And the Chaldeans spoke to the king in Aramaic[2]: O king, live forever! Tell your servants the dream, and we will reveal the meaning.
5 The king answered and said to the Chaldeans, The word is certainly gone from me. If you will not make known the dream and its meaning to me, you will be cut into pieces, and your houses shall be made an outhouse.
6 But if you make known the dream, you shall receive gifts and a present and great honor from before me. Therefore, reveal the dream and its meaning to me.
7 They again replied and said, Let the king tell his servants the dream, and we will reveal its meaning.
8 The king answered and said, For I know that you buy time, that on account of all, you see the thing is certainly gone from me.
9 But if you will not make the dream known to me, there is one law for you. For you have agreed upon lying and deceiving words to speak before me until the time has changed. Therefore, tell me the dream, then I shall know that you can reveal the meaning to me.
10 The Chaldeans replied before the king and said, There is not a man on the earth who can reveal the king's matter, because not any king, master, or ruler has asked such a thing from any magician, or conjurer, or Chaldean.
11 And the thing that the king asks is rare. And there is no other who may reveal it before the king, except the Elohim, whose dwelling is not with flesh. *(Gen 41:38)*
12 Then the king was enraged and angered. And he commanded all the wise men of Babylon to be destroyed.
13 And the law went out that the wise men should be killed. And they looked for Daniel and his companions, to be killed.
14 Then Daniel answered with counsel and insight to Arioch the chief of the king's bodyguard, who had gone out to kill the wise men of Babylon.
15 He answered and said to Arioch, the king's officer, Why is the decree so urgent from before the king? And Arioch made the thing known to Daniel.
16 And Daniel went in and asked of the king that he would give him time, and he would show the king the meaning.
17 Then Daniel went to his house

---

[1] Daniel was alive though in Cyrus's third year of reign Dan 10:1.

[2] Aramaic, which is a dialect of Hebrew, was the common language of the east at this time. Starting here until the end of chapter 7, it is used. From chapters 8-12, Hebrew is used as in chapter 1 and 2:1-3.

and declared the thing to Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah, his companions,
18 that they might pray for the mercies of Eloh in Heaven about this secret, that Daniel and his companions should not perish with the rest of the wise men of Babylon.
19 Then the secret was revealed to Daniel in a night vision, and Daniel blessed the Eloh of Heaven.
20 Daniel answered and said, Blessed be the name of Eloheh forever and ever, for wisdom and might are His.
21 And He changes the times and the seasons; He causes kings to pass away, and sets up kings; He gives wisdom to the wise, and knowledge to those who know understanding.
22 He reveals the deep and secret things; He knows what is in the darkness, and the light dwells in Him[1].
23 I thank You and praise You, O Eloh of my fathers, who has given me wisdom and might, and has made me know what we ask of You. For You have revealed to us the king's matter.
24 Then Daniel went in to Arioch, whom the king had chosen to destroy the wise men of Babylon. He went and said this to him, Do not destroy the wise men of Babylon. Bring me in before the king, and I will show the meaning to the king.
25 Then Arioch quickly brought Daniel in before the king and spoke this to him, I have found a man of the captives of Judah who will make the meaning known to the king.
26 The king answered and said to Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, Are you able to reveal to me the dream which I have seen, and its meaning?
27 Daniel replied before the king and said, The secret which the king has demanded cannot be shown to the king by the wise men, the astrologers, the magicians, or the stargazing ones.
28 But there is a Eloh in Heaven who reveals secrets, and makes known to King Nebuchadnezzar what shall be in the latter days[2]. Your dream, and the visions of your head on your bed, are these: *(Gen 40:8, Dan 8:17, 10:14)*
29 As for you, O king, your thoughts came on your bed, what should happen after this. And the revealer of secrets makes known to you what shall come to pass.
30 But as for me, this secret is not revealed to me for any wisdom that I have more than any living man, but so that the meaning might be made known to the king, and that you might know the thoughts of your heart.
31 You, O king, were seeing. And, behold, a certain great image![3] That great image stood before you with a brilliant brightness, and its form was terrifying.
32 The head of this image was of fine gold, its breast and its arms were of silver, its belly and its thighs were of copper,
33 its legs were of iron, its feet were partly of iron and partly of clay[4].
34 You continued until a stone was cut out without hands, which struck the image on its feet of iron and clay, and broke them to pieces.

---

1 Is 45:7, Ps 139:11-12

2 This dream, (as is most of the book of Daniel), is for the latter days or end time. There may be some dualities in Daniel that had fulfillments in his day to show the parallels of those fulfillments in the end time, but most of the prophecies and dreams in Daniel, clearly state they are for the end time.

3 Many people have wrongly assumed that the primary fulfillment of this dream was a 500 year history from the Babylonian to Romans empires. However, this chapter clearly shows there is only one image (beast) with 4 leaders to it and also that it is for the time of the end , vs 28, 35, 44.

35 Then the iron, the clay, the
copper, the silver, and the gold were
together crushed to pieces, and they
became like the chaff of the summer
threshing floors. And the wind carried
them away so that no place was found
for them. And the stone that struck the
image became a great mountain[1] and
filled the whole earth.
36 This is the dream, and we will tell
the meaning of it before the king.
37 You O king are the king of kings.
For the Eloh of Heaven has given you
the kingdom, the power, and the
strength, and the honor.
38 And wherever the sons of men,
the animals of the field, and the birds
of the sky dwell, He has given them
into your hand, and has made you
ruler over them all. You are the head
of gold[2].
39 And in your place shall arise
another kingdom lower than yours,
and another third kingdom of copper,
which shall rule in all the earth[3].
40 And the fourth kingdom shall be
as strong as iron. Inasmuch as iron
crushes and smashes all things, and as
the iron that shatters all these, it will
crush and shatter[4].
41 And as to that you saw, the feet
and the toes were partly of potters'
clay and partly of iron, the kingdom
shall be divided. But there shall be in it
the strength of iron, because you saw
the iron mixed with clay of the potter.
42 And as the toes of the feet were
partly of iron and partly of clay, so the
kingdom shall be partly strong and
partly fragile.
43 And as you saw the iron mixed
with the clay of the clay, they shall be
mixed with the seed of men. But they
shall not adhere to one another, even
as iron does not mix with clay[5].
44 And in the days of these kings,
the Eloh of Heaven shall set up a
kingdom which shall never be
destroyed. And the kingdom shall not
be left to other people. It shall crush in
pieces and make an end all these
kingdoms, and it shall stand forever[6].
45 Because you saw that the stone

---

[4] There is one image made up of 4 different entities. This is showing that in the end time there will be one global world empire but with 4 different entities leading it at different periods until the end. The fact that the empire will go from gold, to silver, to copper, to iron shows that as the end time will progress things will physically and economically get worse and worse until the end.

[1] Mountains in scripture represent large land masses and power, Rev 17:9, Mic 4:1, Is 11:9, Is 49:6.

[2] End time Babylon is the head of gold. During the 70 years of Babylon's reign in the end time (Jer 25:12) the earth will be the most prosperous in its history and when Babylon falls so will the exuberant lifestyle of living that took place during this time. Also reference Jer chapters 50 & 51, and Rev chapters 17 & 18.

[3] The second kingdom is Medio- Persia (modern Russia and Iran) and the third kingdom Greece (representative of modern European Union) and the fourth kingdom is world empire which was represented by ancient Rome. Dan 8:19-22

[4] This fourth entity of this global government, although not rich with wealth, will be fierce and brutal.

[5] Verses 41-43, When this end time global government was established by the United Nations after WW2, Dwight Eisenhower from the USA, sat with Nikita Khrushchev and divided Europe. The socialist part became strong and the communist part was weak and eventually fell, but they did not mix with each other. Eisenhower means *'iron'* and Khrushchev means *'clay'*.

[6] This verse clearly shows that this beast is a single world empire system in the end times led by 4 different entities. It cannot simply be a historical account from Daniel's day as the Kingdom will clearly be set up during the reign of this beast in Nebuchadnezzar's dream.

was cut out of the mountain without hands, and that it broke the iron, the copper, the clay, the silver, and the gold in pieces. The great Eloh has made known to the king what shall occur after this. And the dream is certain, and the meaning of it is trustworthy[1].

46 Then King Nebuchadnezzar fell on his face and worshiped Daniel. And he commanded an offering, even to offer incense to him.

47 The king answered Daniel and said, Your Elohim truly is a Eloh of Elohim and a master of kings, and a Revealer of secrets, since you could reveal this secret.

48 Then the king made Daniel great and gave many great gifts to him. And he made him ruler over all the province of Babylon, and chief of the prefects over all the wise men of Babylon. *(Gen 41:39-44)*

49 And Daniel asked of the king, and he set Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego over the affairs of the province of Babylon. But Daniel sat in the gate of the king.

Chapter 3

1 Nebuchadnezzar the king made an image of gold whose height was sixty cubits; its breadth, six cubits. He set it up in the plain of Dura, in the province of Babylon[2].

2 Then Nebuchadnezzar the king sent to gather the satraps, the prefects[3], the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the judges and the justices. And all the officials of the provinces were ordered to come to the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

3 Then were gathered the satraps, the prefects, the governors, the counselors, the treasurers, the judges, the justices, and all the officials of the provinces, to the dedication of the image that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up. And they stood before the image that Nebuchadnezzar had set up.

4 Then the herald shouted with strength: To you it is commanded O peoples, nations, and languages,

5 at the time you hear the sound of the horn, the pipe, cornet, the lyre, harp, bagpipe, and all kinds of music, you shall fall down and worship the golden image that Nebuchadnezzar the king has set up.

6 And whoever does not fall down and worship, at that moment they will be thrown into the middle of a burning, fiery furnace.

7 Then at that time when all the people heard the sound of the horn, the pipe, cornet, the lyre, harp, and all kinds of music, all the peoples, the nations, and the languages fell down, worshiping the image of gold that Nebuchadnezzar the king had set up.

8 Then at that time men, Chaldeans, came near and accused and slandered the Jews.

9 They answered and said to king Nebuchadnezzar, O king, live forever!

10 You, O king, have made a decree that every man who shall hear the sound of the horn, the pipe, cornet, the lyre, harp, and the bagpipe, and all kinds of music, shall fall down and worship the golden image.

---

1 When the 70 yrs of Babylon are over there will be a short reign of Medio-Persia and then, Greece and then, world government and then, the Kingdom of YHWH will be established forever.

2 There is much imagery in Daniel of the end time, Rev 13:4-5, 11-15. The image was 90 feet by 9 feet and made to the false god Nabu. Dan 2:38

3 Satraps ruled large areas and perfects where Lieutenant Governors.

11 And whoever does not fall down and worship, he should be thrown into the mist of a burning, fiery furnace.

12 There are men, Jews, whom you have set over the business of the province of Babylon: Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. These men, O king, do not pay attention to you. They do not serve your gods or worship the golden image which you have set up. *(Est 3:12-14)*

13 Then Nebuchadnezzar in anger and wrath commanded to bring Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. Then they brought these men before the king.

14 Nebuchadnezzar spoke and said to them, Is it true, O Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego that you are not serving my gods, nor worshiping the golden image which I have set up?

15 Now if you are ready, at the time you hear the sound of the horn, the pipe, cornet, the lyre, harp, and bagpipe, and all kinds of music, fall down and worship the image which I have made. But if you do not worship, in that moment you shall be thrown into the middle of a burning, fiery furnace. And who is that Eloh who shall deliver you out of my hand?

16 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego answered and said to the king, O Nebuchadnezzar, we have no need to return a word to you on this matter.

17 If it is so that our Elohim whom we serve is able to deliver us from the burning, fiery furnace, then He will deliver out of your hand, O king.

18 And if not, let it be known to you, O king, that we will not serve your gods or worship the golden image which you have set up. [1]

19 Then Nebuchadnezzar was filled with fury, and the expression of his face was changed against Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego. He spoke and directed to heat the furnace seven times more than it was usual to heat it.

20 And he ordered mighty men of valor in his army to tie up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, and to throw them into the burning, fiery furnace.

21 Then these men were tied up in their coats, their gowns, and their hats, and their other clothes, and were thrown into the middle of the burning, fiery furnace.

22 Then, because the king's command was urgent, and the furnace exceedingly hot, the flame of the fire killed those men who took up Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego.

23 And these three men, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, fell down bound into the middle of the burning, fiery furnace.

24 Then Nebuchadnezzar the king was amazed. And he rose up in haste; he spoke and said to his royal officials, Did we not throw three men bound into the mist of the fire? They replied and said to the king, True, O king.

25 He answered and said, Behold! I see four men loose, walking in the middle of the fire, and there is no harm among them. And the form of the fourth is like a son of Elohim[2].

26 Then Nebuchadnezzar came near to the door of the burning, fiery furnace. He answered and said, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, servants of the Most High Eloha, come out and come here. Then Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego came out of the mist of the fire.

27 And the satraps, the prefects, the

[1] Acts 4:18-19, Math 10:28

[2] There is a great lesson that trusting completely in YHWH without compromise will always lead to YHWH sending His messenger to protect the believer, even if they must go through trial. This is also extremely symbolic of YHWH sending His Son to those who trust in His word.

governors, and the king's royal officials assembled. And they saw the fire had no power over the bodies of these men, and the hair of their head was not scorched, nor were their coats changed, nor had the smell of fire clung on them.

28 Nebuchadnezzar spoke and said, Blessed be the Eloha of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, who has sent His Messenger and has delivered His servants who trusted in Him, and have changed the king's words, and have given their bodies that they might not serve nor worship any Eloh except their own Elohin. *(Ps 91:1-16)*

29 And a decree is set out by me, that every people, nation, and language who speak anything amiss about the Eloh of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego, he will be made into mere members and his house shall be made an outhouse. Because there is no other Eloh who is able to deliver like this. *(Ezr 6:10-12)*

30 Then the king made Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego prosper in the province of Babylon.

Chapter 4

1 Nebuchadnezzar the king to all the peoples, the nations, and the languages that dwell in all the earth: May your peace be increased.[1]

2 It seemed good before me to declare the signs and wonders that the Most High Eloha has done with me.

3 How great are His signs! And how mighty are His wonders! His kingdom is an everlasting kingdom, and His dominion is from generation to generation.

4 I, Nebuchadnezzar, was at ease in my house, and flourishing in my palace.

5 I saw a dream, and it terrified me, and the thoughts on my bed and visions of my head troubled me.

6 So I made a decree to bring in all the wise men of Babylon before me, that they might make known to me the meaning of the dream.

7 Then the magicians, the astrologers, the Chaldeans, and the stargazing ones came in. And I told the dream before them, but they did not make its meaning known to me.

8 But at last Daniel came in before me, whose name was Belteshazzar, according to the name of my god, and in whom is the spirit of the holy Elohim. And I told the dream before him, saying,

9 O Belteshazzar, master of the magicians, because I know that the spirit of the holy Elohim is in you, and no secret baffles you, tell me the visions of my dream that I have seen, and its meaning.

10 As to the visions of my head on my bed, I was looking, and, behold, a tree was in the middle of the earth. And its height was great.

11 The tree became great and strong, and its height reached to the heaven, and its appearance to the end of all the earth.

12 Its leaves were beautiful, and its fruit plentiful, and food for all was in it. The beasts of the field sought shade under it, and the birds of the sky dwelt in its branches, and all flesh was fed from it.

13 I was looking in the visions of my head on my bed. And, behold, a watcher, even a holy one, from the heaven came down.

14 He cried with might and said this: Cut down the tree and cut off its branches. Shake off its leaves and scatter its fruit. Let the beasts flee from under it, and the birds leave its branches.

[1] This is the only chapter in the Bible written by a Pagan King.

15 But leave the stump of its roots in the earth, even with a fetter of iron and copper, in the grass of the field. And let it be wet with the dew of the heavens, and his lot be with the beasts in the grass of the earth.

16 Let his heart be changed from man's, and let the heart of the beasts be given to him. And let seven times pass over him.[1]

17 This matter is by the decree of the guarding cherubs, and the command by the word of the holy ones, so that the living may know that the Most High rules in the kingdom of men and gives it to whomever He will. And He sets up over it the lowest of men[2].

18 I, Nebuchadnezzar, have seen this dream. Now you, O Belteshazzar, declare its meaning, since all the wise men of my kingdom are not able to reveal the meaning to me. But you are able, for the spirit of the holy Elohim is in you.

19 Then Daniel, whose name was Belteshazzar, was stunned for one hour, and his thoughts troubled him. The king spoke and said, O Belteshazzar, do not let the dream or its meaning trouble you. Belteshazzar answered and said, My master, the dream is to those who hate you, and its meaning is to your adversaries.

20 The tree that you saw, which became great and strong, whose height reached to the heaven and its appearance to all the earth,

21 and its leaves being beautiful, and its fruit plentiful, and food for all being in it, under which the beasts of the field lived, and in its branches the birds of the sky had their home:

22 It was you, O king, for you have become great and strong. For your greatness has grown and reaches to the sky, and your rule is to the end of the earth.

23 And as the king saw a guarding Cherub and a holy one coming down from the heavens, and saying, Cut the tree down, and destroy it. Yet leave the stump of its roots in the earth, even with a band of iron and copper, in the grass of the field. And let him be wet with the dew of the heavens, and his lot be with the beasts of the field, until seven times pass over him.

24 This is the meaning, O king, and this the decree of the Most High, which has come on my master the king:

25 And you shall be driven from men, and your dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field. And you shall be fed with grass like oxen. And you shall be wet with dew of the heavens; and seven years[3] shall pass over you until you know that the Most High is Ruler in the kingdom of men, and He gives it to whomever He desires.

26 And in that they commanded to leave the stump of the tree roots, Your kingdom shall be enduring to you after you have realized that Heaven rules.

27 So, O king, let my advice be pleasing to you: Even break off your sins by righteousness, and your iniquities by pitying the poor, whether there will be duration to your prosperity.

28 All this came on the king, Nebuchadnezzar.

29 At the end of twelve months, he walked in the palace of the kingdom of Babylon.

30 The king spoke and said, Is this not great Babylon that I have built for the house of the kingdom, by the

[1] As Nebuchadnezzar had made the fire 7 times hotter in 3:19, now he would would be like an animal for 7 years.

[2] This verse shows the supremacy that YHWH has in setting up rulers.

[3] This word can mean 7 literal years or cycles.

might of my power, and for the honor
of my majesty?
31 The word was still in the king's
mouth when a voice fell from the
heavens, saying, O king Nebuchad-
nezzar, to you it is declared: The
kingdom has been taken from you!
32 And you shall be driven from
men, and your dwelling shall be with
the beasts of the field. You shall be fed
with the grass like oxen, and seven
times shall pass over you until you
know that the Most High is Ruler in
the kingdom of men, and that He gives
it to whomever He desires.
33 In that moment, the thing was
fulfilled on Nebuchadnezzar. And he
was driven from men, and he ate the
grass like oxen, and his body was wet
with the dew of the heavens, until his
hair had grown like eagles' feathers,
and his nails like birds' claws.
34 And at the end of the days, I,
Nebuchadnezzar, lifted up my eyes to
the heaven, and my understanding
returned to me, and I blessed the Most
High. And I praised and honored Him
who lives forever, whose kingdom is
an everlasting kingdom, and His rule
from generation to generation.
35 And all those living in the earth
are counted as nothing. And He does
according to His will among the army
of Heaven, and among those living in
the earth. And no one is able to strike
His hand or say to Him, What are You
doing?
36 At that time my reason returned
to me, and the glory of my kingdom,
my majesty, and my brightness
returned to me. And my advisers and
my nobles sought to me. And I was
reestablished in my kingdom, and
excellent greatness was added to me.
37 Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise
and exalt and honor the King of
Heaven, for all His works are truth,
and His ways are justice. And He is
able to humble those who walk in
pride.

Chapter 5

1 Belshazzar[1] the king made a great
feast to a thousand of his nobles. And
he drank wine before the thousand.
2 When tasting the wine, Belshazzar
commanded the golden and silver
vessels brought, those his father
Nebuchadnezzar had taken out of the
sanctuary in Jerusalem, that the king
and his nobles, his wives, and his
concubines might drink with them.
3 Then they brought the golden
vessels that were taken out of the
sanctuary of the house of Eloha in
Jerusalem. And the king, his nobles,
his wives, and his concubines drank
with them.
4 They drank wine and praised the
gods of gold, and of silver, and of
copper, of iron, wood, and stone.
5 At that moment fingers of a man's
hand came out and wrote on the
plaster of the wall of the king's palace
across from the lampstand. And the
king saw the part of the hand that
wrote.
6 Then the king's color was changed,
and his thoughts troubled him, so that
the joints of his loins shook, and his
knees knocked one against the other.
7 The king cried aloud to bring in the
conjurers, the Chaldeans, and the star
gazers. The king spoke and said to the
wise men of Babylon, Any man who
can read this writing and reveal its
meaning shall be clothed with purple,
and have a chain of gold around his
neck. And he shall rule third in the
kingdom.
8 Then all the king's wise men came
in. But they could not read the writing

1 This was the grandson of Nebuchadnezzar, the son of Nabonidus who was 2nd in Kingdom.

or make the meaning known to the king.

9 Then King Belshazzar was greatly terrified, and his face was changing on him, and his nobles were perplexed.

10 The queen came in to the banquet house because of the words of the king and his nobles. The queen spoke and said, O king, live forever, do not let your thoughts terrify you, and do not let your face be changed.

11 There is a man in your kingdom in whom is the spirit of the holy Elohin. And in the days of your father, light and understanding and wisdom was found in him, like the wisdom of the Elohin. Your father, king Nebuchadnezzar, your father the king, appointed him cheif of the magicians, conjurers, Chaldeans and stargazing ones,

12 because an excellent spirit, and knowledge, and understanding, explaining of dreams, and revealing of riddles, and the unraveling of knots, were found in this Daniel, whom the king named Belteshazzar.[1] Now let Daniel be called, and he will reveal the meaning.

13 Then Daniel was thrust in before the king. The king spoke and said to Daniel, Are you that Daniel who is of the sons of the exiled of Judah, whom my father the king brought out of Judah?

14 I have even heard of you, that the spirit of the Elohin is in you, and light, and excellent wisdom, and understanding are found in you.

15 And now the wise men and the conjurers have been thrust in before me, so that they might read this writing and make the meaning known to me. But they were not able to declare the meaning of the thing.

16 And I have heard of you, that you can interpret meanings, and unravel knots. Now if you can read the writing and reveal its meaning to me, you shall be clothed with purple and have a golden chain around your neck, and you will rule third in the kingdom.

17 Then Daniel answered and said before the king, Let your gifts be to yourself, and give your rewards to another. Yet I will read the writing to the king, and make the meaning known to him.

18 O king, the Most High Eloha gave your father Nebuchadnezzar a kingdom, and majesty, and glory, and honor.

19 And for the majesty that He gave him, all peoples, nations, and languages trembled and feared before him. He killed whom he desired, and whom he desired he kept alive. And whom he would, he set up; and whom he desired, he put down.

20 But when his heart was lifted up, and his mind hardened in pride, he was put down from the throne of his kingdom, and they took his glory from him.

21 And he was driven from the sons of men. And his heart was made like the animals, and his home was with the wild donkeys. They fed him with grass like oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of the heavens, until he knew that the Most High Eloha is Ruler in the kingdom of men, and that He appoints over it whomever He desires.

22 And you, his son, O Belshazzar, have not humbled your heart, though you knew all this.

23 But you have exulted yourself up against the Master of Heaven. And they have brought the vessels of His

[1] Daniel taught these stargazers about the prophesied star of the Messiah from Num 24:17 who in turn taught others in each proceeding generation. That is why when Yahshua is born the magi come from the east to see the prophesied King Messiah, Math 2:1-2.

house before you. And you, and your nobles, your wives, and your concubines have drunk wine with them. And you have praised the gods of silver, and gold, copper, iron, wood, and stone, which do not see, nor hear, and do not know. And you have not glorified the Eloha in whose hand your life, breath, and all your ways is.

24 Then the part of the hand was sent from Him, and this writing was written.

25 And this is the writing that was written: A MINA, A MINA, A SHEKEL, AND HALF MINAS[1].

26 This is the meaning of the thing: A MINA: Eloha has numbered your kingdom and finished it.

27 A SHEKEL: You are weighed in the scales and found lacking.

28 HALF MINAS: Your kingdom is divided and given to the Medes and Persians.[2]

29 Then Belshazzar commanded, and they clothed Daniel with purple, and a necklace of gold around his neck. And they made a proclamation concerning him, that he should be the third ruler in the kingdom.

30 In that night Belshazzar, the king of the Chaldeans, was killed.

31 And Darius the Mede took the kingdom, being a son of sixty two years.[3]

[1] Mina means to number or measure, shekel is to weigh and half (*peres)* is to divide. The message was that Babylon was being judged and the kingdom was handed over to the Medes and Persians, which lands translate today to modern Iran and Russia.

[2] Jer 49:39, Jer 51:27-28, Dan 8:19-20

[3] This is an amazing fulfillment of prophecy predicted by Isaiah in 44:28, 45:1. The Medes diverted the waters of Babylon from under the gate and overtook the city in one night. There was no mass murdering or fleeing of Jews,which shows that chapters 50 and 51 of Jeremiah were not fulfilled but are end time scriptures .

Chapter 6

1 It pleased Darius to set over the kingdom a hundred and twenty satraps, that they might be over the kingdom.

2 And over them were three presidents (Daniel was one of them), so that these satraps might give account to them, and the king should have no loss.

3 Then this Daniel was preferred above the presidents and satraps, because an excellent spirit was in him. And the king was planning to set him over all the kingdom.

4 Then the presidents and satraps sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom. But they could find no pretext or fault because he was trustworthy. And no error or fault was found in him.

5 Then these men said, We shall not find any occasion against this Daniel unless we find it against him concerning the Torah of his Eloheh.

6 Then these presidents and satraps gathered together to the king and said this to him, king Darius, live forever.

7 All the presidents of the kingdom, the prefects, and the satraps, the officials and the governors, have took council together to establish a royal statute, and to make a firm decree, that whoever shall ask a petition of any Elah or man for thirty days, except from you, O king, he shall be thrown into the den of lions.

8 Now, O king, establish the decree and sign the document, so that it may not be changed, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which does not pass away.

9 All on account of this, king Darius signed the document and the decree.

10 And when he had learned that the document was signed, Daniel went to his house. And his windows were open

in his roof chamber toward Jerusalem.
He knelt on his knees three times in
the day, and prayed and praised before
his Eloheh, as he did before.*(1Kg 8:33,
Ps 55:17)*
11 Then these men met together and
found Daniel praying and seeking
mercy before his Eloheh.
12 Then they came near and spoke
before the king concerning the king's
decree, saying, Have you not signed a
decree that every man who shall ask of
any Eloha or man within thirty days,
except of you, O king, that he shall be
thrown into the lions' den? The king
answered and said, The thing is
certain, according to the law of the
Medes and Persians, which does not
pass away.
13 Then they answered and said
before the king, Daniel, who is of the
sons of the exile of Judah, has not set
attention on you, O king, or the decree
that you have signed, but he makes his
prayer three times in the day.
14 Then the king, when he heard the
word, was very displeased with
himself, and he set his heart on Daniel,
to deliver him. And until the going of
the sun he was striving to deliver him.
15 Then these men met before the
king and said to the king, O king, know
that the law of the Medes and Persians
is that every decree or law which the
king enacts may not be changed.
16 And the king commanded. And
they brought Daniel, and they threw
him into the lions' den. The king spoke
and said to Daniel, Your Eloheh whom
you constantly serve will deliver you.
17 And a stone was brought and laid
on the mouth of the den. And the king
sealed it with his own signet, and with
the signet of his nobles, that the affair
may not change concerning Daniel.
18 Then the king went to his palace
and spent the night fasting; and
diversions were not brought before
him; and his sleep fled from him.
19 Then the king rose up in the
dawn, in the daylight, and hurried to
the lions' den.
20 And when he came to the den, he
cried with a sorrowful voice to Daniel.
The king spoke and said to Daniel, O
Daniel, servant of the living Eloha,
your Eloha whom you always serve, is
He able to deliver you from the lions?
21 Then Daniel said to the king, O
king, live forever.
22 My Eloha has sent His
Messenger, and He has shut the
mouths of the lions. And they have not
harmed me, because in His sight
innocence was found in me. And also
before you, O king, I have done no
harm.
23 Then the king was exceedingly
glad over him. And he commanded to
bring up Daniel from the den. And
Daniel was brought out of the den, and
no harm was found on him, because
he trusted in his Eloha.
24 And the king commanded, and
they brought those men who had
accused and slandered Daniel. And
they threw them into the lions' den,
them, their sons and their wives. And
the lions overpowered them and
crushed all their bones before they
reached to the bottom of the pit.
25 Then king Darius wrote to all the
peoples, the nations, and the
languages who were living in all the
earth: Peace be multiplied to you.
26 A decree was given from before
me that in all the domain of my
kingdom there shall be trembling and
fear before the Eloheh of Daniel. For
He is the living Eloha and endures
forever, and His kingdom is the one
which shall not be destroyed. And His
dominion shall be to the end.
27 He delivers and rescues, and He
works signs and wonders in the

heavens and in the earth, He who has delivered Daniel from the hand of the lions.

28 And this Daniel was made to prosper in the reign of Darius, and in the reign of Cyrus the Persian.

Chapter 7

1 In the first year of Belshazzar[1], king of Babylon, Daniel saw a dream and visions of his head on his bed. Then he related the dream, giving the sum of the matters.

2 Daniel spoke and said, In my vision by night I was looking. And, behold, the four winds of the heavens were stirring up the Great Sea.

3 And four great beasts came up from the sea, different from one another[2].

4 The first was like a lion and had eagle's wings. I watched until its wings were torn off. And it was lifted up from the earth and made to stand on two feet like a man, and a man's heart was given to it. *(Dan 2:41-43)*

5 And, behold, another beast, a second, like a bear. And it was established on one side, and three ribs were in its mouth between its teeth. And they said this to it, Rise up, eat much flesh.

6 After this I was looking, and, behold, another like a leopard, and to it were four wings of a bird on its side. And also to the beast were four leaders. And rulership was given to it.

7 And after this I was looking in the night visions. And, behold, the fourth beast was frightening and terrifying, and exceedingly strong! And to it were huge iron teeth. It devoured, and crushed, and stamped what was left with its feet. And it was different from all the beasts before it; and it had ten horns. *(Rev 13:1-2, Rev 17:12-13)*

8 I was thinking about the horns. And behold! Another little horn came up among them, and three of the first horns were uprooted before it. And behold! In this horn were eyes like the eyes of the man, and a mouth speaking domineering things. *(Dan 8:8-9)*

9 I was looking until the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of Days sat, whose robe was white as snow and the hair of His head like pure wool. His throne was like flames of fire, its wheels like burning fire[3].

10 A stream of fire went out and came out from before Him. A thousand thousands served Him, and ten thousand by ten thousand stood before Him. The judgment was set and the books were opened.*(Rev 20-11-15)*

11 Then I was looking because of the voice of the great words which the horn spoke. I was looking until the beast was killed, and his body was destroyed and given to the burning flame. *(Rev 19:20)*

12 And the rest of the beasts, their rulership was taken away. Yet length of life was prolonged for them for a season and a time.

13 I was looking in the night visions. And behold! One like the Son of Man came with the clouds of the heavens. And He came to the Ancient of Days. And they brought Him near before Him.[4]

14 And dominion was given to Him, and glory, and a kingdom, that all peoples, nations, and languages should serve Him. His dominion is an everlasting dominion which shall not pass away, and His kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.
(*Ps 72:11, Phil 2:9-11, Dan 2:44)*

15 I, Daniel, was distressed in my

---

[1] This precedes chapter 5.

[2] These are the 4 rulers of the end time global beast from Dan 2:31-40.

[3] Rev 1:14, Eze 1:13-21, 26-27

[4] Showing the duality of the YHWH family.

spirit amidst my body, and the visions of my head alarmed me.

16 And I came near one of those who stood by and asked him the truth of all this. And he told me and made me know the meaning of the things.

17 These great beasts are four, four kings; they shall rise up out of the earth. *(Dan 2:37-40,44)*

18 But the saints of the Most High shall receive the kingdom and possess the kingdom forever, even forever and ever. *(Rev 20:4-6, Rev 5:10, Ro 8:17)*

19 Then I wanted to know the truth of the fourth beast, which was different from all of them, very frightening, whose teeth were of iron and its nails copper; who devoured and crushed, and trampled what was left with its feet,

20 also of the ten horns that were on its head, and the other which came up, and before whom three fell, even that horn that had eyes, and a mouth speaking great things, and its appearance was greater than his fellows.

21 I was looking, and that horn made war with the saints and overcame them, *(Rev 13:7)*

22 until the Ancient of Days came. And judgment was given to the saints of the Most High, and the time came that the saints possessed the kingdom.

23 And he said, The fourth beast shall be the fourth kingdom on earth, which shall be different from all kingdoms, and shall devour all the earth, and shall trample it down and crush it.

24 And the ten horns out of this kingdom are ten kings; they shall rise, and another shall rise after them. And he shall be different from the first, and he shall humble three kings.

25 And he shall speak commands against the Most High, and he shall wear out the saints of the Most High. And he intends to change times and law. And they shall be given into his hand until a time and times and one half time[1].

26 But the court shall sit, and they shall take away his rulership, to exterminate and to destroy until the end.

27 And the kingdom and rulership, and the greatness of the kingdom under all the heavens shall be given to the people of the saints of the Most High, whose kingdom is an everlasting kingdom. And all kingdoms shall serve and obey Him. *(Dan 7:18, 22)*

28 Here is the end of the matter. As for me, Daniel, my thoughts terrified me much, and my face changed on me. But I kept the matter in my heart.

Chapter 8

1 In the third year of the reign of King Belshazzar, a vision appeared to me, Daniel, after that which appeared to me at the first[2].

2 And I looked in the vision, and it happened when I looked that I was at Shushan, the palace, which is in the province of Elam[3]. And in a vision I looked, and I was by the Ulai Canal.

3 Then I lifted up my eyes and looked. And behold! A ram was standing before the canal, having two horns. And the two horns were high, but one was higher than the other, and the higher one came up last[4].

4 I saw the ram butting westward

[1] This is speaking of Anti-messiah in the last days who is given 42 months to reign (Rev 13:4-5). He will greatly persecute believers in Yahshua who will not take his mark nor give him homage, Rev 13:7, 16-17.

[2] Starting in Dan 8:1 till the end of the book it is written again in Hebrew.

[3] This is in modern day Iran.

[4] The 2 Rams are the kings of Media and Persia, Dan 8:20.

and northward and southward, so that no beasts could stand before him, and none could deliver out of his hand. But he did according to his will and became great.

5 And I was considering. And behold! A male of the goats came from the west, over the face of all the earth and did not touch the ground. And the he goat had an outstanding horn between his eyes.

6 And he came to the ram with two horns which I had seen standing before the canal. And he ran to it in the fury of his power.

7 And I saw him touched beside the ram. And he was moved with anger against him. And he struck the ram and shattered his two horns. And there was no power in the ram to stand before him. But he threw him down to the ground and trampled him. And no one could deliver the ram from his hand.

8 Then the he-goat became very great. And when he was mighty, the great horn was shattered. And in its place came up four notable ones toward the four winds of the heavens.

9 And out of one of them came a little horn which became very great, toward the south, and toward the east, and toward the bountiful land[1].

10 And it became great, even to the host of the heavens. And it caused some of the host and of the stars to fall to the ground, and it trampled them[2].

11 Yea, he magnified himself even to the leader of the host. And the continual sacrifice was taken away by him, and the place of his sanctuary was cast down. *(Heb 10:14)*

12 And a massive army was given him against the continual sacrifice because of sin. And it threw the truth down to the ground, and it worked and pushed forward. (*Heb 10:12-14*)[3]

13 Then I heard a certain holy one speaking, and another holy one said to that one who spoke, Until when is the vision, the continual sacrifice and the devastating rebellious revolt, to give both the sanctuary and the massive crowd to be trampled? *(2Thes 2:3-4)*

14 And he said to me, For two thousand, three hundred evenings and mornings, then the sanctuary will be made righteous[4].

15 And it happened when I, Daniel, had seen the vision, then I sought the meaning. And, behold, the form of a man stood before me.

16 And I heard a man's voice between the banks of Ulai, and he called and said, Gabriel, make this one understand the vision.

17 And he came beside my place. And when he came, I feared and fell on my face. But he said to me, O son of man, understand, for the vision is for the time of the end. *(Dan 2:44, 10:14)*

---

1 "*Bountiful land*" is Israel

2 Rev 12:4

3 The daily or continual sacrifice never ceased but continues every day by the blood of Yahshua. His one eternal sacrifice is in perpetuity, it is ongoing and keeps Yahweh's grace active in this evil world. However, at this time, due to sin and wickedness, Yahweh's grace is removed from the world setting up His wrath on the earth called "*The Day of YHWH*" in scripture (Joel 2:1-2).

4 There was 2 daily sacrifices in YHWH's sanctuary (Ex 29:38-42). So 2,300 morning and evening sacrifices would equal 1,150 days. This was fulfilled in type when Antiochus Epiphanies set up a pagan altar for worship in Kislev 25, 168 B.C. And the destroying of that altar and reconstruction of the altar of YHWH by Judas Maccabeus on Kislev 25, 165 B.C., exactly 1,150 days later on what is known as Hanukah. Hanukah means rededication. There will also be a dual fulfillment of this in the end time.

18 And while he was speaking with me, I lay stunned and was on my face toward the ground. But he touched me and made me stand.

19 And he said, Behold, I will make you know what shall happen in the last end of the indignation. For it is for the time appointed for the end[1].

20 The ram which you saw with two horns are the kings of Media and Persia[2].

21 And the shaggy goat is the king of Greece[3]. And the great horn between his eyes is the first king.

22 And as for that which was shattered, and four stood up in its place, four kingdoms shall stand up out of the nation, but not in its power.

23 And in the latter time of their kingdom, when the apostasy has been complete, a king, strong of face and understanding dark sentences, shall stand up.

24 And his power shall be mighty, but not by his own power. And he shall destroy wondrously, and he shall prosper, and work, and destroy the powerful, and the holy people.

25 And also through his policy he will make deceit succeed in his land. And he will lift himself up in his heart, and by peace; he shall destroy many. He shall also stand up against the Prince of Princes, but he shall be shattered without a hand[4]. *(Dan 2:44)*

26 And the morning and evening vision that was told is true. But you shall shut up the vision, for it shall be for many days.

27 And I, Daniel, was faint. And I was sick for days. Afterward, I got up and did the king's business. And I was amazed at the vision. But there was no understanding. *(Is 21:3)*

Chapter 9

1 In the first year of Darius, the son of Ahasuerus, of the seed of the Medes, who was made king over the empire of the Chaldeans,

2 in the first year of his reign, I, Daniel, understood in the books the number of the years, which came as the Word of YAHWEH to Jeremiah the prophet, that He would accomplish seventy years in the desolations of Jerusalem[5].

3 And I set my face toward YAHWEH, the Elohim, to seek by prayer and holy desires, with fasting, and sackcloth, and ashes. *(Neh 1:4)*

4 And I prayed to YAHWEH my Elohim, and made my confession, saying, O YAHWEH, the great and awesome El, keeping the covenant and loving kindness to those who love Him, and to those who keep His commandments, *(Deut 7:9)*

5 we have sinned and have committed iniquity and have done evilly, and we have rebelled, even by departing from Your commandments and from Your judgments.

6 And we have not listened to Your servants the prophets, who spoke in Your name to our kings, our rulers,

1 Although some of Daniel's prophecy had a fulfillment in type to show an example, most of it is clearly stated to be for the end.

2 Modern day Russian provinces and Iran.

3 Greece is the third entity to control the end time global beast power and more than likely represents the European Union. When Greece was a mighty empire under Alexander the Great they controlled almost all of what is called the European Union today.

4 Verses 22-25 is speaking about anti-messiah who will lead the fourth part of this beast, which will be a worldwide global government.

5 70 years was the number given that both Babylon would fall (Jer 25:12) and that Judah would be allowed to return Jer 29:10.

and our fathers, and to all the people of the land.

7 O YAHWEH, righteousness belongs to You, but to us the shame of our faces, as it is this day to the men of Judah, and to those living in Jerusalem, and to all Israel, who are near and who are afar through all the lands where You have driven them for their unfaithfulness which they have done against You.

8 O Adonai YAHWEH, shame of face belongs to us, to our kings, to our rulers and to our fathers, because we have sinned against You.

9 To YAHWEH our Elohim belong mercies and pardons, for we have rebelled against Him.

10 We have not obeyed the voice of YAHWEH our Elohim, to walk in His Torah which He set before us by His servants the prophets.

11 Yea, all Israel has transgressed Your Torah and turned aside that they might not obey Your voice. For this reason the curse[1] has been poured out on us, and the oath that is written in the Torah of Moses the servant of The Elohim, because we have sinned against Him.

12 And He has confirmed His Words which He spoke against us, and against our judges who judge us, by bringing on us a great evil. For under the whole heavens it has not been done as it has been done to Jerusalem.

13 As it is written in the Torah of Moses, all this evil has come on us. Yet we did not make our prayer before YAHWEH our Elohim that we might turn from our perversities and understand Your truth[2].

14 And YAHWEH has watched over the evil and has brought it on us. For YAHWEH our Elohim is righteous in all His works which He does. For we did not obey His voice.

15 And now, O YAHWEH our Elohim, who brought Your people out of the land of Egypt with a mighty hand and made for Yourself a name, as it is this day; we have sinned; we have done evilly.

16 O YAHWEH, I pray to You, according to all Your righteousness, let Your anger and Your fury be turned back from Your city Jerusalem, Your holy mountain. For because of our sins and of our fathers' iniquities, Jerusalem and Your people have become a reproach to all those around us.

17 And now, hear, O our Elohim, the prayer of Your servant and his holy desires, and cause Your face to shine on Your sanctuary that is desolate, for the sake of YAHWEH.

18 O my Elohim, incline Your ear and hear; open Your eyes and see our ruins and the city which is called by Your name. For we do not make our prayers fall before You on account of our righteousness, but because of Your great mercies. *(Eze 36:22)*

19 O YAHWEH, hear! O YAHWEH, forgive! O YAHWEH, listen and act! Do not delay, for Your own sake, O my Elohim. For Your name is called on Your city and on Your people[3].

20 And while I was speaking and praying and confessing my sin and the sin of my people Israel, and making my cry fall before YAHWEH my

---

1 The Hebrew word for curse here is "*Allah*", which is very ironic considering the problems that Israel is having today with the Muslim world.

2 Yahweh gave clear instruction in the Torah of what would be the result of Israel's obedience and what would be the result of their rebellion in both Lev 26 and Deut 28.

3 In order for Yahweh to intervene in the end time to save the sons of Israel from Satan's evil world government, there will have to be a great repentance of the people (Lev 26:40-42).

Elohim for the holy mountain of my Elohim,
21 and while I was setting my prayer in order, then the man Gabriel, whom I had seen in the vision at the beginning, touched me in my severe exhaustion about the time of the evening offering.
22 And he attended to me and talked with me, and said, O Daniel, I have now come out to give you skill in understanding.
23 At the beginning of your prayers the word came forth, and I have come to reveal it. For you are greatly beloved. Then pay attention to the matter and understand the vision:
24 Seventy weeks are decreed as to your people, and as to your holy city[1], to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make atonement for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the Most Holy[2].
25 Know, then, and understand that from the issuing of the word to restore and to rebuild Jerusalem, to Messiah the Prince, shall be seven weeks and sixty two weeks. It shall be built again, with a plaza and a trench, even in times of affliction[3].
26 And after sixty two weeks, Messiah shall be cut off[4], but not for Himself. And the people of a coming ruler shall destroy the city and the sanctuary[5]. And its end shall be with the flood, and ruins are determined, and war shall be until the end.
27 And he shall confirm a covenant with the many for one week[6]. And in the middle of the week he shall cause the sacrifice and the offering to cease. And on the most outer corners, abominations by a desolater, even until the end. And that which was decreed shall pour out on the desolater[7]. *(Rev 16:1)*

Chapter 10

1 In the third year of Cyrus king of Persia, a thing was revealed to Daniel, whose name was called Belteshazzar. And the thing was true, and a great conflict. And he understood the thing and had understanding of the vision.
2 In those days, I, Daniel, was mourning three weeks of days.
3 I ate no food for delight, and no flesh or wine came into my mouth. I

---

1 The Hebrew word indicates seventy weeks of years or 70 x 7 = 490 yrs. The prophecy is about Judah, The Messiah and the city of Jerusalem. Many have erred trying to relate this prophecy about the redemption of the whole land of Israel.

2 Since almost none of these things have happened yet, except for Yahshua atoning for sins, it is evident that the prophecy to follow is not completely fulfilled yet.

3 This command was given by King Artaxerxes in 457 B.C. It states after 62 + 7 yrs or 69 x 7 yrs, which would be 483 yrs, then the Messiah would appear. This equates to the year 27 A.D. (there was no zero yr), the very year Yahshua started His ministry and is one of the strongest proofs of His Messiahship. If Yahshua was not the Messiah, then who was in 27 A.D. according to Daniel's prophecy?

4 The Hebrew word literally means to die. The verse also shows though that He is not dying for His own sins, but others.

5 The ones who destroyed the sanctuary of YHWH were the Romans, so we know that the coming anti-messiah will at least be partly of Roman decent.

6 The "*he*" could be referring to the Messiah or the anti-messiah. From the grammatical stance it is most likely referring to anti-messiah as the pronoun in Hebrew usually refers to the last person mentioned. Also, as we have seen, the Messiah was cut off or killed in verse 26, so it would be grammatically awkward if verse 27 was referring to Him, unless the whole verse is for future context in which it would not fit the Messiah anyway, but the anti-messiah.

did not anoint myself at all until three
weeks of days were fulfilled.
4 And in the twenty fourth day of the
first month, as I was by the side of the
great river, which is Tigris,
5 then I lifted up my eyes and
looked: And behold! A certain man
was clothed in linen, whose loins were
wrapped in fine gold from Uphaz.
6 His body was also like the beryl,
and His face looked like lightning. And
His eyes were like torches of fire; and
His arms and His feet in color like
polished copper; and the sound of His
words were as the noise of a
multitude[1].
7 And I, Daniel, alone saw the vision.
For the men who were with me did not
see the vision. But a great trembling
fell on them so that they fled to hide
themselves.
8 Then I was left alone, and I saw
this great vision, and there remained
no strength in me. For my glory was
turned within me into corruption, and
I kept no strength.
9 Yet I heard the sound of His words.
And when I heard the sound of His
words, then I was on my face, stunned,
and my face was toward the ground.
10 And, behold, a hand touched me
and set me shaking on my knees and
the palms of my hands.
11 And He said to me, O Daniel, a
man greatly beloved, understand the
words that I speak to you and stand
up. For I am now sent to you. And
when He had spoken this to me,
(Aleph/Tav) The Word[2], I stood
trembling.
12 And He said to me, Do not fear,
Daniel. For from the first day that you
set your heart to understand and to
humble yourself before your Elohim,
your words were heard. And I have
come because of your words[3].
13 But the king of the kingdom of
Persia withstood Me twenty one days.
But, lo, Michael, one of the first rulers,
came to help Me. And I stayed there
with the kings of Persia[4].
14 Now I have come to make you
understand what shall happen to your
people in the latter days[5]. For the
vision is yet for many days.
15 And when He had spoken such
words to me, I set my face to the
ground, and I became speechless.
16 And, behold, one in form as the
sons of men touched my lips. And I
opened my mouth and spoke and said
to Him who stood before me, O
Adonai, my pangs have come over me
because of the vision, and I have no
strength left[6].
17 For how can the servant of this my
Adonai speak with this my Adonai?

---

7 There seems to be an indeterminate time between the 69th and 70th week. The 70th week seems to be an end time prophecy of the anti-messiah making a 7 yr agreement with Israel that will be broken in the middle of the accord. The term *"to confirm a covenant with many"* in Hebrew means to establish an already existing agreement with not only the Palestinians but most likely the broader Arab world. It is interesting to note that In the Muslim Hadith it states that the Mahdi (Muslim Messiah) will make a 7 yr peace agreement with Israel.

1 This was Yahshua Rev 1:13-16.

2 Yahshua is both called the First and the Last (aleph/tav) Rev 22:13, and the Word (Joh 1:1-2) in scripture.

3 Humility is a prerequisite for Yahweh's presence in our life, Jac 4:6.

4 Some have falsely claimed that Yahshua is Michael the arch-cherub, but here we can clearly see that they are two totally separate beings and Michael is a ruler under Yahshua.

5 As most of the book of Daniel, the prophecy is for the latter days.

6 Daniel called Yahshua *"Adonai"* a term only used for Yahweh and never a cherub and shows that Yahshua is Elohim with Yahweh the Father Ps 110:1.

For as for me, there is no power left in
me; yea, there is no breath left in me.
18 And He added, and touched me,
one in form as a man, and made me
strong.
19 And He said, O man greatly
beloved, do not fear. Peace to you. Be
strong. Yea, be strong! And when He
had spoken to me I was made strong.
And I said, Speak, my Adonai, for You
have made me strong.
20 And He said, Do you know why I
have come to you? And now I will
return to fight with the ruler of Persia.
And when I have gone out, then, lo,
the ruler of Greece shall come[1].
21 But I will tell you what is recorded
in the Scripture of Truth. And no one
makes himself strong with Me in these
things except Michael your ruler.

Chapter 11

1 And I, in the first year of Darius the
Mede,[2] I was standing for a supporter
and for a fortress for him.
2 And now I will declare the truth to
you: Behold![3] Three kings shall stand
up in Persia; and the fourth shall be
rich in all greater riches. And when he
is strong through his riches, he shall
stir up all against the kingdom of
Greece.
3 And a mighty king shall stand up
and shall rule with great authority and
do according to his will.
4 And when he stands up his
kingdom shall be shattered and shall
be divided to the four winds of the
heavens, and not to his posterity, nor
according to his authority with which
he ruled. For his kingdom shall be
pulled up and given to others besides
these. *(Dan 8:8-9)*
5 And the king of the south shall be
strong. And one of his rulers, even he
will be strong on him, and he will rule.
His rule shall be a great rule.
6 And at the end of the years they
shall join together, and the king of the
south's daughter shall come to the
king of the north to make an
agreement. But she shall not keep the
power of the arm. And he will not
stand, nor his arm. But she and those
who brought her shall be given up,
also her begetter and her supporter in
these times.
7 But the shoots of her roots will
stand in his place, and he shall come
to the army and will enter into the
fortress of the king of the north. And
he will act against them and will show
strength.
8 And he will also bring their gods
with their molten images, with silver
and gold vessels of their possessions,
into exile to Egypt. And for years he
will stand away from the king of the
north.
9 And the king of the south will come
into his kingdom and will return to his
own land.
10 But his sons shall be stirred up
and shall gather a multitude of great
forces. And one certainly shall come
and overflow and pass through. And
he will return to his fortress and be
stirred up.
11 And the king of the south will be
bitter and will go out and fight with
him, with the king of the north. And he
shall raise a great multitude, but the
multitude shall be given into his hand.
12 And having carried away the host,
his heart will be lifted up. And he will
cause myriads to fall, but he shall not
be strong.
13 For the king of the north shall

[1] You can see here that even though these men will be human rulers that Satan and his demons are inspiring them.

[2] This is before chapter 10, but after the fall of Babylon.

[3] Yahshua continues to give Daniel an extreme detailed prophecy for the end time.

return and raise a greater host than the former. And at the end of times, years, coming he shall come with a great army and with much equipment.

14 And in those times many shall stand up against the king of the south. And the sons of the violent ones of your people shall rise up to establish the vision, but they shall stumble.

15 And the king of the north shall come and pour out a siege mound and seize a fortified city. And the arms of the south shall not stand, nor his choice people, for there will be no firmness to stand.

16 But he who comes against him will do as he desires, and none shall stand before him. And he shall stand in the glorious land[1], and destruction shall be in his hand.

17 And he shall set his face to go in with the might of all his kingdom, and upright ones with him; so he shall do. And he shall give the daughter of women to him, to destroy it. But she shall not stand, nor be for him.

18 And he shall turn his face to the coastlands and shall capture many. But a ruler shall make cease his reproach for him, but his reproach shall return to him.

19 And he shall turn his face toward the fortresses of his own land, but he will stumble and fall and shall not be found.

20 And one who passes over a tax exacter shall stand in his place, for the glory of the kingdom. But within a few days he will be shattered, but not in anger and not in battle.

21 And a despised one shall stand up on his place, and they shall not give to him the honor of the king. But he shall enter while at ease and seize the kingdom by intrigues.

22 And the forces of the overflow shall be swept from before his face, and they will be shattered, and also the ruler of a covenant.

23 And after they join themselves to him, he will practice deceit; for he shall come and shall be strong with a few people.

24 He will go in safely, even into the rich places of the province. And he shall do what his fathers have not done, nor his fathers' fathers. He shall plunder and spoil and scatter goods among them. And he shall devise his plots against the strongholds, even for a time[2].

25 And he will stir up his power and his heart against the king of the south with a great army. And the king of the south will be stirred up to battle with a great and very mighty army. But he shall not stand, for they will devise plots against him.

26 Yea, those who eat his food shall destroy him, and his army shall overflow. And many will fall down slain.

27 And both of them, the kings, shall have in their hearts to do evil, and they will speak lies at one table. But it will not prosper, for the end still shall be at the appointed time.

28 And he will return to his land with great wealth. And his heart shall be against the holy covenant. And he will act, and he shall return to his land.

29 At the appointed time he will return and come against the south. But it will not be as the former or as the latter[3].

30 For the ships of Kittim[4] will come against him. And he will be grieved and turn back and be furious against the holy covenant. And he will act, and

---

1 "*Glorious land* " speaking of Israel.

2 "Time"- Hebrew- ayth, for a season, where as vs 29 appointed time is a Holy Day.

3 Here to the end of the chapter is primarily speaking of what the anti-messiah will be doing in the last days.

4 "*Kittim*" is Cyprus

he will return and heed those forsaking of the holy covenant.
31 And forces will stand away from him, and they will profane the sanctuary, the fortress. And they shall remove the continual sacrifice, and they will place the abomination that desolates.*(Math 24:15-16 Dan 8:8-14)*
32 And he will defile by flatteries those who do evil against the covenant. But the people who know their Elohim will be strong and will work[1].
33 And those who understand among the people will instruct many, yet they will stumble by the sword and by flame, by exile and spoil for days[2].
34 And when they shall stumble, they will be helped with a little help. But many will join them with hypocrisy.
35 And many of those who understand shall stumble, to refine and to purge them, and to make white to the time of the end. For it is yet for the appointed time. [3]
36 And the king shall do according to his will. And he shall exalt and magnify himself above every El; he shall even speak marvelous things against the El of Elohim and shall prosper until the fury is completed. For that which is decreed shall be done. *(2Thes 2:3-4, Rev 13:4-8)*
37 He shall not regard the Elohim of his fathers, nor the desire of women; yea, he will not come to any Elohim. For he shall magnify himself above all.
38 But in his place he shall honor the Elohim of forces[4], and he shall honor a Elohim whom his fathers did not know, with gold and silver and with precious stones, and desirable things.
39 And he shall act in the strongholds of the fortresses with a foreign Eloha, whom he shall acknowledge. He shall increase in glory, and he shall cause them to rule over many and shall divide the land for a price.
40 And at the end time, the king of the south will engage in butting with him. And the king of the north shall come against him like a whirlwind, with chariots and with horsemen and with many ships. And he shall go into the lands and shall overflow and pass over.
41 And he shall enter into the glorious land, and many will be stumbled. But these shall escape out of his hand: Edom and Moab, and the chief of the sons of Ammon[5].
42 And his hand will stretch out against the lands, and the land of Egypt shall not escape.
43 But he will rule over the treasures of gold and silver, and over all Egypt's desirable things. And the Libyans and the Ethiopians shall be at his steps.
44 But news shall trouble him from the east and from the north. And he will go out with great fury to destroy and to devote many to destruction.[6]
45 And he shall plant his palace tents between the seas, in the glorious holy mountain[7]. Yet he shall come to his end, and there is not a helper for him. *(Rev 19:19-20)*

---

1 Even though the Anti-messiah will have global world dominion, the true people of Elohim who are walking in faith will be strong and doing great works at this time.

2 There will also be great martyrdom to the true believers, Dan 7:21, Rev 6:9, Rev 13:7.

3 Rev 7:13-17, Dan 11:29

4 This seems to indicate some sort of New Age nature worship.

5 For whatever reason these 3 areas escape the anti-messiah at this time, but we see all three areas are judged before the end, Jeremiah chapters 48 & 49.

6 Rev 16:12

7 The anti-messiah will put his sanctuary in Jerusalem.

Chapter 12

1 And at that time, Michael shall stand up[1], the great ruler who stands for the sons of your people[2]. And there shall be a time of distress, such as has not been from the being of a nation until that time. And at that time, your people shall be delivered, everyone that shall be found written in the Book[3]. (*Ps 9:5)*
2 And many of those sleeping in the earth's dust shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to reproaches and to everlasting loathing[4]. *(Job 14:14, Ezek 37:1-14)*
3 And those who act wisely shall shine as the brightness of the firmament, and those turning many to righteousness as the stars forever and ever.
4 But you, O Daniel, shut up the words and seal the book, to the end time. Many shall travel back and forth, and knowledge shall be increased.
5 And I, Daniel, looked. And, behold! Another two stood there, the one on this side of the edge of the river and one on that side of the river's edge.
6 And one said to the man clothed in linen, who was on the waters of the river, Until when is the end of the wonders[5]? *(Dan 10:5-6)*
7 And I heard the man clothed in linen, who was on the waters of the river, when He held up His right and His left hand to the heavens and swore by Him who lives forever, that it shall be a feast, feasts, and half to the next feast[6]. And when they have made an end of scattering the power of the holy people, all these things shall be finished.
8 And I heard, but I did not understand. And I said, O my master, what shall be the end of these things?
9 And He said, Go, Daniel! For the words are closed up and sealed until the end time[7]. *(Dan 2:44, 8:17, 10:14)*
10 Many shall be purified and made white and refined. But the wicked shall do wickedly. And not one of the wicked shall discern, but the wise shall discern.
11 And from the time the continual sacrifice shall be taken away, and the abomination that desolates set up, there shall be a thousand, two hundred and ninety days[8].
12 Blessed is he who waits and reaches to the thousand, three hundred and thirty five days.
13 But you go on to the end, for you shall rest and stand for your lot at the end of the days. *(Ezek 37:1-14)*

---

1 A Jewish idiom meaning to protect.

2 Michael the arch cherub is a special cherub that protects Israel.

3 This is the wrath of YHWH called *"the Day of YHWH"* in scripture." Joel 2:1-2, Math 24:21.

4 This is a physical resurrection described in Eze 37:1-14, Math 8:11-12, Luk 13:28-29.

5 There are 3 characters portrayed here. The man dressed in linen (Yahshua) on the waters of the river, and 2 cherubs, who are named in Daniel as Michael and Gabriel the two arch cherubs, who are to the left and right of Yahshua. Math 20:20-23

6 The Hebrew word here is "*moed"* which is translated most times as Holy or appointed time.

7 As throughout the whole book of Daniel, The prophesies for the book of Daniel are primarily for the end times.

8 When the daily grace of Yahweh is removed (Dan 8:9-14) there will be 1,290 days of the rule of the end time beast (Rev 13:5) before he sets up the abomination of desolation that brings the wrath of YHWH onto the earth. Math 24:14-22

Book of Hosea 710 BC

Chapter 1

1 The Word of YAHWEH that was to Hosea, the son of Beeri, in the days of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam, the son of Joash, king of Israel.

2 The beginning of the speaking of YAHWEH by Hosea. And YAHWEH said to Hosea, Go, take to yourself a wife of harlotry, and children of harlotry. For the land has utterly gone lusting away from YAHWEH[1].

3 And he went and took Gomer, the daughter of Diblaim, who conceived and bore him a son.

4 And YAHWEH said to him, Call his name Jezreel[2], for yet in a little while I will call to account the blood of Jezreel on the house of Jehu, and will cause the kingdom of the house of Israel to cease.

5 And it shall be in that day, I will break the bow of Israel in the valley of Jezreel.

6 And she conceived again and bore a daughter. And He said to him, Call her name Lo Ruchama[3], for I will not again still have mercy on the house of Israel; but I will completely take them away.

7 And I will have mercy on the house of Judah and will save them by YAHWEH their Elohim. And I will not save them by bow or by sword, or by battle, by horses, or by horsemen.

8 And she having weaned No Mercy, she conceived and bore a son.

9 Then He said, Call his name Lo Amee[4], for you are not My people, and I will not be for you.

10 Yet the number of the sons of Israel shall be as the sand of the sea, which is not measured nor numbered. And it shall be, in the place where it is said to them, You are not My people, it shall be said to them, Sons of the Living El[5]. *(Is 10:22, Ro 9:25-26)*

11 And the sons of Judah and the sons of Israel shall be gathered together, and shall set over themselves one head. And they shall go up out of the land; for great shall be the day of Jezreel. *(Is 11:11-12, Jer 50:4-5)*

Chapter 2

1 Say to your brothers, A people; and to your sisters, Mercy.

2 Strive! Strive with your mother, for she is not My wife, and I am not her husband. Therefore, let her put away her harlotries from her face, and her adulteries from between her breasts,

3 that I not strip her naked and set her out as in the day that she was born, and make her as the wilderness, and place her like a dry land, and kill her with thirst.

4 And I will not have pity for her sons, for they are the sons of harlotries.

5 For their mother has committed

---

1 The book of Hosea is almost exclusively about the falling away of Ephraim (Northern tribes of Israel) and also about their redemption. It is beautifully played out to show Yahweh's everlasting love for His covenant people and verses from Hosea are reiterated many times in other books of the bible. The name *'Hosea'* also means salvation showing Yahweh's purpose of someday calling Ephraim back to covenant relationship and the land of Israel. Here, Hosea is told to take a wife of harlotry portraying Ephraim's harlotry toward YHWH.

2 Jezreel means Elohim will sow or plant.

3 Lo Ruchama means no mercy

4 Lo Amee means not my people

5 This verse is quoted by the Apostle Paul in Romans chapter 9 showing that the audience that Paul is speaking to in Romans chapters 9-11 are displaced Israelites and not gentiles.

adultery; she who conceived them has
acted shamefully. For she said, I will
go after my lovers who give my bread
and my water, my wool and my flax,
my oil and my drink.
6 Therefore, behold, I will hedge
your way with thorns, and I will wall
up her wall, that she shall not find her
paths.
7 And she shall follow after her
lovers, but she shall not overtake
them. And she shall look for them, but
she shall not find them. Then she shall
say, I will go and return to my first
husband, for then it was better with
me than now.
8 For she did not know that I gave
her grain and wine and oil, and I
multiplied her silver and the gold they
made for Baal.
9 So I will return and take My grain
in its time, and My wine in its season.
And I will take back My wool and My
flax she uses to cover her nakedness[1].
10 And now I will reveal her
shamefulness to the eyes of her lovers,
and not a man shall deliver her out of
My hand.
11 I will also cause all her joy to
cease, her feast days, her new moons,
and her Sabbaths, and all her solemn
feasts[2].
12 And I will destroy her vines and
her fig trees, of which she has said,
They are my rewards that my lovers
have given me. And I will set them for
a forest, and the beasts of the field
shall eat them.
13 And I will visit on her the days of
the Baals in which she burned incense
to them. Yea, she adorned herself with
her nose rings, and her jewels, and she
went after her lovers and forgot Me,
says YAHWEH.
14 Therefore, behold, I will lure her
and bring her to the wilderness, and
speak to her heart. *(Eze 20:35)*
15 And from there I will give her
vineyards to her, and the valley of
Achor[3] for a door of hope. And she
shall answer there as in the days of her
youth, and as in the day when she
came up out of the land of Egypt.
16 And at that day, says YAHWEH,
you shall call Me, My husband; and
you shall no more call Me, My Baal[4].
17 For I will take away the names of
the Baals out of her mouth; and they
shall no more be remembered by their
name.
18 And in that day I will cut a
covenant for them with the beasts of
the field, and with the birds of the
heavens, and the creepers of the
ground. And I will break the bow and
the sword, and the battle out of the
earth, and I will make them to lie
down securely.
19 And I will betroth you to Me
forever. Yes, I will betroth you to Me
in righteousness, and in judgment,
and in mercy, and in compassions.
20 I will even betroth you to Me in
faithfulness. And you shall know
(Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH.
21 And it shall be in that day, I will
answer, says YAHWEH. I will answer
the heavens, and they shall answer the
earth.
22 And the earth shall hear the

---

[1] Verses 1-9 are showing Israel's unfaithfulness to YHWH and since she did not recognize the blessings that were given to her by Elohim He would remove them from her.

[2] New Moons, Sabbaths and feast days are many times in scripture put on par together as important set apart time to Yahweh. Is 1:13, Is 66:23, Neh 10:33

[3] "Valley of Achor" is the valley of trouble where Achan died (Jos 7:26).

[4] The Hebrew word Baal can mean husband (Jer 31:32), but most times means lord or master. It is interesting to note that many people today call Elohim '*Lord*' instead of His true personal name of YAHWEH.

grain, and the wine, and the oil; and they shall answer Jezreel.

23 And I will sow her to Me in the land. And I will have mercy on No Mercy. And I will say to Not My People, You are My people! And they shall say, My Elohim[1]! *(Ex 6:7)*

Chapter 3

1 And YAHWEH said to me, Go again, love a woman loved by a friend, yet an adulteress, according to the love of YAHWEH toward the sons of Israel, who turn to other gods, and love raisin cakes of grapes[2].

2 So I bought her for myself with fifteen pieces of silver, and for a homer of barley, and a half of barley[3].

3 And I said to her, You shall remain with me many days. You shall not be a harlot, and not be to a man, and I also will be for you.

4 For the sons of Israel shall remain many days with no king and no ruler, and with no sacrifice, and no pillars, and no ephod or teraphim[4].

5 Afterward the sons of Israel shall return and seek YAHWEH their Elohim and David their king. And they shall fear YAHWEH and His goodness in the end of the days[5].

Chapter 4

1 Sons of Israel, hear the Word of YAHWEH, for YAHWEH has a quarrel with those living in the land; for there is no truth, and no mercy, and no knowledge of Elohim in the land.

2 Swearing, and lying, and killing, and stealing, and the committing of adultery increase. And blood touches against blood.

3 Therefore, the land shall mourn, and every one living in it shall droop, with the beasts of the field and the birds of the heaven; yes, also the fish of the sea shall be removed.

4 Yet let not a man strive with nor reprove a man. For your people are as a priest striven with.

5 And you shall stumble in the day, and the prophet also shall stumble with you at night, and I will cut off your mother.

6 My people perish for lack of knowledge. Because you rejected the knowledge, I also rejected you from being priest to Me[6]. Since you have forgotten the Torah of your Elohim, I will forget your sons, even I.

7 As they were increased, so they sinned against Me. I will change their glory into shame.

8 They eat up the sin of My people, and they lift their soul to their iniquity.

9 And it will be, like people, like priest. And I will visit their ways on them and repay them for their deeds.

10 For they shall eat and not have enough. They shall fornicate and not

---

1 In the end time Yahweh will redeem Israel and sow her in fertile soil where she will be blessed for her repentance in that day.

2 Yahweh told Hosea to love his adulterous wife as He loves Israel. Raisin cakes were offered to Baal in thanksgiving of the harvest.

3 The price of a slave (the lowest cost of life in biblical times) was 30 shekels of silver (Ex 21:32). Hosea gave half in money and half in grain. Yahshua also gave His life for 30 pieces of silver showing He came to redeem all mankind, the rich and poor.

4 Showing the longevity of Israel's captivity that she would have no king nor sanctuary for sacrifice nor ephod (part of the High priests attire) or teraphim, which was a household idol.

5 Eze 34:23-24 Yahshua will be reigning as Elohim and David will be a prince with Him, Eze 37:22-28.

6 Mal 2:4-9

increase, because they have ceased heeding YAHWEH.
11 Fornication and wine and new wine take away the heart.
12 My people seek advice by their wooden idols, and their rod declares to them. For the spirit of harlotry has led them astray, and they fornicated from under their Elohim.
13 They sacrifice on the tops of the mountains and burn incense on the hills, under oak and poplar and terebinth, because its shade is good. On account of this, your daughters shall prostitute, and your brides shall commit adultery.
14 I will not punish your daughters when they fornicate, nor your brides when they commit adultery. For the men themselves go aside with harlots, and they sacrifice with temple prostitutes. The people who do not understand are thrust down.
15 Israel, though you fornicate, do not let Judah become guilty. And do not come to Gilgal, nor go up to Beth-Aven, nor swear, As YAHWEH lives.
16 For Israel is a backslider, like a rebellious heifer. Now YAHWEH will feed them as a lamb in a roomy place.
17 Ephraim is joined to idols. Let him alone.
18 Their drink is sour. They are continually fornicating. Her shields dearly love shame.
19 The wind binds her up in her wings, and they shall be ashamed because of their sacrifices.

Chapter 5

1 Hear this O priests, and attend, house of Israel. And give ear, house of the king. For the judgment is toward you, because you have been a snare to Mizpah, and a net spread on Tabor.
2 And revolters have gone deep in slaughtering, and I chasten all of them.[1]
3 I know Ephraim, and Israel has not hidden from me. For now, O Ephraim, you have fornicated; Israel is defiled.
4 Their deeds will not allow them to turn to their Elohim. For the spirit of fornication is in their midst, and they do not know YAHWEH.
5 And the pride of Israel answers to his face. So Israel and Ephraim shall stumble in their iniquity. Judah shall also stumble with them.
6 They shall go with their flocks and with their herds to seek YAHWEH, but they shall not find Him; He has withdrawn Himself from them.[2]
7 They have acted treacherously against YAHWEH, for they have brought forth strange sons. Now a new moon shall devour them with their portions.
8 Blow a horn in Gibeah, a trumpet in Ramah. Cry aloud, Beth-Aven; after you, O Benjamin.
9 Ephraim shall be desolate in the day of correction. Among the tribes of Israel, I have made known that which is confirmed.
10 The rulers of Judah were as movers of a border; I will pour out My wrath on them like water.
11 Ephraim is oppressed, crushed in judgment; because he was pleased, he walked after the command.
12 Therefore, I am as a moth to Ephraim, and to the house of Judah as rottenness.
13 When Ephraim saw his sickness, and Judah his wound, then Ephraim went to Assyria, and sent to King

[1] The priests were doing idolatrous practices in Mizpah, which is east of the Jordan in Gilead and Mount tabor, which is at the south eastern edge of the Jezreel valley.
[2] Pr 1:24:31

Jareb[3]. Yet he could not heal you, nor
did he cure you of your wound.
14 For I am to Ephraim as the lion,
and as the young lion to the house of
Judah; I, even I, tear and go; I take
away, and no one rescues.
15 I will go; I will return to My place
until they confess their guilt and seek
My face. In their affliction they will
seek Me diligently.

Chapter 6

1 Come and let us return to
YAHWEH. For He has torn, and He
will heal us. He has struck us, and He
will bind us up.
2 After two days He will bring us to
life. In the third day He will raise us
up, and we shall live before Him[1].
3 Then we shall know, we who follow
on to know (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH.
His going forth is established as the
dawn. And He shall come to us as the
rain, as the latter and former rain to
the earth.
4 O Ephraim, what shall I do to you?
O Judah, what shall I do to you? For
your goodness is like a morning cloud,
and it goes away like the early dew.
5 So I have hewn them by the
prophets; I have slain them by the
Words of My mouth; and your
judgments have been as the light that
goes forth.
6 For I desired mercy[2], and not
sacrifice; and the knowledge of Elohim
more than burnt offerings. *(Ps 40:6,
Ps 51:16-17, Jer 7:22-23, 1Sam 15:22-
23, Math 9:13)*
7 But, like Adam, they have
transgressed the covenant; they have
acted like traitors against Me there.
8 Gilead is a city of those who work
iniquity, slippery with blood marks.
9 And as troops of robbers wait for a
man, the company of priests murder
in the way to Shechem; for they have
done wickedness.
10 I have seen a horrible thing in the
house of Israel: the fornication of
Ephraim is there; Israel is defiled.
11 Also, O Judah, a harvest is
appointed to you, when I return the
captivity of My people[3].

Chapter 7

1 When I would have healed Israel,
then the iniquity of Ephraim was
uncovered, and the wickedness of
Samaria[4]. For they have worked
falsehood; and a thief comes; a troop
of robbers plunders outside.
2 And they do not say within their
hearts that I remember all their evil.
Now their own doings have hemmed
them in. They are before My face.
3 They make the king glad with their
evil, and the rulers with their lies.
4 They are all adulterers, like an
oven heated by the baker; he ceases
from stirring, from kneading the
dough until it is leavened.
5 In the day of our king, the rulers
have sickened themselves with the

---

[3] Probably Tiglath Pilesar III.

[1] This scripture foreshadows the resurrection of Yahshua, which was the third day and also the millennial kingdom as a day is as a 1,000 yrs to YHWH (2Pe 3:8) and 6 days (6,000 yrs) have been given to man to rule and then, the 7th day (1,000 yr millennium) will come.

[2] The Hebrew word "*Chesed*" means loyalty and faithfulness, two extremely important requirements in a covenant relationship.

[3] Since 1948 and the making of the modern state of Israel, Judah has went through many sufferings and hardships, but in this day there will be a great harvest for both Judah and Ephraim Jer 31:1.

[4] Samaria was the capital of the northern kingdom of Israel.

heat of wine. He stretches out his hand with scorners[1].

6 For they have brought their heart near like an oven, while they lie in wait. Their baker sleeps all night; in the morning it burns like a flaming fire.

7 They are all hot as an oven, and devour their judges. All their kings have fallen[2]; not one among them calls to Me.

8 Ephraim mixed himself among the peoples. Ephraim is a cake not turned[3].

9 Strangers have eaten up his strength, yet he does not know. Yea, gray hairs are sprinkled here and there on him, yet he does not know.

10 And the pride of Israel testifies to his face. And they do not return to YAHWEH their Elohim, nor seek Him in all this.

11 Ephraim also is like a silly dove without heart; they call to Egypt; they go to Assyria.

12 When they go, I will spread My net over them; I will bring them down like the birds of the heavens; I will chastise them, as a report to their congregation.

13 Woe to them! For they have fled from Me. Ruin to them! For they have transgressed against Me. Though I would redeem them, yet they have spoken lies against Me. *(Math 13:15)*

14 And they have not cried to Me with their heart, when they howled on their beds. They gather themselves for grain and wine; they turn against Me.

15 Though I bound, I made their arms strong; yet they think evil against Me.

16 They return, but not to the Most High. They are like a treacherous bow. Their rulers shall fall by the sword from the rage of the tongue. This shall be their scorn in the land of Egypt.

Chapter 8

1 Put a horn to your mouth. He comes like an eagle against the house of YAHWEH, because they have broken My covenant and have sinned against My Torah[4].

2 Israel shall cry to Me, My Elohim, we know You.

3 Israel has thrown off good; the enemy shall pursue him.

4 They have set up kings, but not by Me. They have made rulers, but I did not know. They made idols for themselves with their silver and their gold, so that they may be cut off.

5 O Samaria, your calf has cast you off. My anger is kindled against them. Until when will they not attain purity?

6 For it also came from Israel. The craftsman made it, but it is not Elohim. For the calf of Samaria shall be splinters.

7 For they sow the wind, and they reap the whirlwind. He has no stalk; the bud shall make no flour. If it does make it, strangers will swallow it up.

8 Israel is swallowed up. They are now among the nations as a vessel in which is no pleasure.

9 For they have gone up to Assyria, a wild donkey alone by himself. Ephraim has hired lovers.

10 Also, though they have hired

[1] Most likely referring to the king's birthday. In scripture, birthdays were days of pride and only bad occurrences seemed to happen on these days Job 1:4, Math 14:9.

[2] 4 out of the last 6 Israel kings at this time were murdered.

[3] Due to her alliances Israel became useless to Elohim. "*Cake half baked*" burned on the bottom and raw on the top, which was good for nothing.

[4] The Torah is the eternal, moral, standard that is actually part of Elohim's character and abides forever Ps 111:7-8.

among the nations, now I will gather them. And they began to be few, from the burden of the king of rulers.

11 Because Ephraim has made many altars to sin, they are altars to him to sin.

12 I will write for him the great things of My Torah. They were counted as a stranger.

13 They sacrifice flesh for the sacrifices of My offerings, and they eat. YAHWEH did not accept them. Now He will remember their iniquity and punish their sins. They shall return to Egypt.

14 For Israel has forgotten (Aleph/Tav) his Maker, and builds temples. And Judah has multiplied fortified cities. But I will send a fire on his cities, and it shall burn up her palaces. *(Joel 2:18-22)*

Chapter 9

1 O Israel, do not rejoice for joy, like the other people. For you have gone lusting away from your Elohim. You have loved a harlot's reward on all threshing-floors of grain[1].

2 The floor and the winepress shall not feed them, and the new wine shall fail in her.

3 They shall not live in the land of YAHWEH. But Ephraim shall return to Egypt, and they shall eat unclean things in Assyria[2].

4 They shall not offer wine to YAHWEH. They shall not be pleasing to Him. Their sacrifices shall be like the bread of sorrows to them; all who eat it shall be defiled, for their bread is for their person; it shall not come into the house of YAHWEH.

5 What will you do in the day of the appointed meeting, and in the day of the feast of YAHWEH[3]?

6 For lo, they have gone from destruction. Egypt shall gather them; Memphis shall bury them. Nettles shall possess the desirable things of their silver; thorns shall be in their tents.

7 The days of her visitation have come; the days of retribution have come. Israel shall know. The prophet is a fool, the spiritual man is insane, because of the greatness of your iniquity and your great hatred.

8 Ephraim is a watchman with my Elohim. The prophet is a snare of a fowler on all his ways; hatred is in the house of his Elohim.

9 They have deeply corrupted, as in days of Gibeah[4]. He will remember their iniquity; He will punish their sins.

10 I found Israel like grapes in the wilderness. I saw your fathers as the first-fruit[5] in the fig tree at her first time. They came to Baal-Peor and set themselves apart to a shameful thing.

---

1 Israel followed the example of her neighbors in practicing pagan fertility rites to false deities.

2 Yahweh's covenant promises are conditional on faith, loyalty and obedience, Disloyalty, habitual sin and idolatry would put them right back into slavery as before.

3 Verses 4-5. It was a great honor and comfort to be able to appear before YHWH at feast time and to offer to Him the joy of ones sacrifice. To be put in Diaspora and not to be able to appear before YAHWEH at feast time (Deut 16:16) was the gravest punishment one could ever imagine (Ps 137). Today, since most have no connection to the wonderful Promised Land of Israel, they do not even see the sorrow in not being able to appear before YHWH in Jerusalem at feast time.

4 A reference to the corruption in Israel during Judges chapters 19-21, which was one of the most wicked periods in all of Israel.

5 The Hebrew word here for first fruit is "*bekorah*" and is a very rare but sweet tasting fig.

And they became hateful like that which they loved.
11 Ephraim is like a bird; their glory shall fly away, from birth, and from the womb, and from conception.
12 Though they multiple their sons, yet I will make them childless, without a man. Yea, woe also to them when I turn away from them!
13 As when I looked toward Tyre, Ephraim was planted in a pleasant place. But Ephraim shall bring forth his sons to the slayer.
14 O YAHWEH, give them. What will you give them? Give them a miscarrying womb and dry breasts.
15 All their wickedness is in Gilgal, for there I hated them. I will drive them out of My house for the evilness of their doings, I will continue to befriend them no more; all their rulers are backsliders.
16 Ephraim is stricken; their root is dried up; they shall bear no fruit. Yea, though they bear, yet I will kill the beloved ones of their womb.
17 My Elohim shall reject them because they did not listen to Him; and they shall be wanderers among the nations[1].

[1] Verses 10-17, Due to Israel's grave sin and idolatry YHWH turned them to captivity among the nations. It was never prophesied that Ephraim (The Northern tribes) would be a great powerful nation outside of Israel, but rather that they would be "*wanderers among the nations*" as they still are today. There are probably more than 1 billion Israelites living around the world in the nations and almost all of them do not even recognize any longer that they are Israelites. Isaiah states that although their descendants will be as the sand of the sea only a remnant will be left (Is 10:22). Although it is prophesied in the end time that Yahweh will gather them and redeem them (Eze 36:24,28), Before Ephraim can be redeemed he must recognize his hateful pride before YHWH and repent.

Chapter 10

1 Israel is a luxuriant vine; he bears fruit for himself. According to the plenty of his fruit he has increased the altars. They have made beautiful memorial pillars according to the goodness of his land[2].
2 Their heart is divided[3]. Now they shall be guilty. He will break down their altars; He will spoil their pillars.
3 For now they shall say, We have no king, because we did not fear YAHWEH. What then should a king do for us?
4 They have spoken words, swearing vanity to cut a covenant. So judgment springs up like hemlock in the furrows of the field.
5 The people of Samaria shall dread because of the calves of Beth-Aven[4]. For its people shall mourn over it; also its priests who rejoiced on it for its glory, because it has departed from it.
6 It shall also be carried to Assyria, a present to King Jareb. Ephraim shall receive shame, and Israel shall be ashamed of his own counsel.
7 Samaria is cut off; her king is as a bough on the face of the water.
8 Also, the high places of Aven, the sin of Israel, shall be destroyed. The thorn and the thistle shall come up on their altars. And they shall say to the mountains, Cover us! And to the hills, Fall on us!

[2] Instead of Ephraim thanking YHWH for their blessings and drawing closer to Elohim, they became even more prideful and self-sufficient and actually even turned to more idolatry.

[3] Jac 1:8, The doubled minded person will be unstable in everything and it will destroy their life.

[4] "*Beth Aven*" Hosea is referring to Bethel where Israel had a golden calf on an altar as it also did in Dan. The alter in Dan has been uncovered in archaeological excavations, but the golden calf has not been found.

9 O Israel, you have sinned from the days of Gibeah. There they stood. The battle against the sons of injustice did not overtake them in Gibeah. *(Jud 19)*

10 When I desire, I shall bind them; and the peoples shall be gathered against them, when they bind themselves to their two perversities.

11 And Ephraim is a trained heifer, loving to tread out. But I passed over on the goodness of her neck; I will make Ephraim to ride; Judah shall plow; Jacob shall break clods for him[1].

12 Sow to yourselves in righteousness, reap as kindness. Break up your fallow ground. For it is time to seek YAHWEH, until He comes and rains righteousness on you.

13 You have plowed wickedness; you have reaped iniquity. You have eaten the fruit of lies because you trusted in your way, in the multitude of your mighty warriors.

14 And an uproar shall rise up among your peoples. And all your strongholds shall be spoiled, as the ruin by Shalman[2] of Beth-Arable in the day of battle. The mother was dashed in pieces on her sons.

15 So He does to you, Bethel, because of your great evil. In the dawn, the king of Israel shall be completely cut off.

Chapter 11

1 When Israel was a child, then I loved him, and out of Egypt, I called My Son. *(Math 2:15, Ex 4:22)*

2 As they called to them, so they went from their face. They sacrifice to the Baals, and burn incense to carved images.

3 I also taught Ephraim to walk; He took them on His arms. But they did not know that I healed them.

4 I drew them with cords of a man, with bands of love. And I was to them as those who lift off the yoke on their jaws; and I extended food to him.

5 He shall not return to the land of Egypt, but he of Assyria shall be his king, because they refused to return.

6 And the sword shall whirl in his cities, and shall bring to an end his bars, and shall consume, because of their own counsels.

7 And My people are bent on backsliding from Me. Though they call him to the Most High; no one at all would exalt Him.

8 How shall I give you up, Ephraim? Shall I deliver you, Israel? How shall I make you like Admah? Shall I set you as Zeboim[3]? My heart has turned within Me; My compassions are kindled together. *(Deut 29:23)*

9 I will not execute the heat of My anger; I will not return to destroy Ephraim. For I am El, and not a man, the Holy One in your midst. And I will not enter into the city.

10 They shall walk after YAHWEH; He shall roar as a lion. When He roars, then the sons from the west shall tremble.

11 They trembled like a bird from Egypt, and like a dove from the land of Assyria. And I will make them live in their houses, says YAHWEH.

12 Ephraim surrounds Me with lies, and the house of Israel with deceit; but Judah still rules with El and is faithful with the Holy Ones.

---

1 Elohim compares Ephraim as at first as a contented heifer who is eating as she is treading out the grain, but now He foreshadows both Ephraim's and Judah's future in captivity.

2 Possible may be Shalmanesser V, who conquered Israel.

3 These were cities also completely destroyed with Sodom and Gomorrah.

Chapter 12

1 Ephraim feeds on wind, and follows after the east wind[1]; all the day he multiplies lies and ruin. And they cut a covenant with Assyria, and oil is carried into Egypt[2].

2 YAHWEH also has a quarrel with Judah, and will punish Jacob according to his ways; He will repay him according to his deeds[3].

3 He took his brother by the heel in the womb, and by his strength he contended with (Aleph/Tav) Elohim.

4 Yes, he contended with the Messenger *(Malak)* and overcame; he wept and pleaded to Him. He found us at Bethel, and He spoke with us there,

5 even YAHWEH, the Elohim of Hosts. YAHWEH is His memorial[4].

6 For this reason, you return to your Elohim; keep kindness and judgment, and call on your Elohim always.

7 He is a merchant; the scales of deceit are in his hand; he loves to oppress[5].

8 And Ephraim said, I am rich; I have found much wealth for myself. In all my labors they shall find in me no iniquity that is sin[6]. *(Rev 3:16-19)*

9 And I am YAHWEH, your Elohim from the land of Egypt; yet I will make you live in tents, as in the days of meeting.

10 I have also spoken by the prophets, and I have multiplied visions; and by the hand of the prophets use parables.

11 Is Gilead evil? Surely they have been vanity. They sacrificed bulls in Gilgal; yea, their altars are as heaps in the furrows of the field.

12 And Jacob fled into the field of Syria, and Israel served for a wife; yea, he shepherded for a wife.

13 And by a prophet YAHWEH brought up Israel out of Egypt, and by a prophet he was kept safe.

14 Ephraim has provoked Me to anger most bitterly. And He shall leave his blood to him, and his Adonai shall turn his reproach to him.

Chapter 13

1 When Ephraim spoke trembling, he was lifted up in Israel. But he offended in Baal, and he died.

2 And now they sin more and more, and they have made themselves a molten image of their silver, idols according to their own understanding, all of it the work of the craftsmen. They say to them, Let men, those who sacrifice, kiss calves.

3 So they shall be as the morning cloud, and as the early dew that passes away, as chaff storm driven from the threshing floor, and as the smoke out of the window.

4 Yet I am YAHWEH, your Elohim from the land of Egypt; and you shall know no other Elohim than Me. For there is no Savior without Me. *(Is 43:11)*

---

[1] The word for "*east wind*" is "*kadima*", the name of a new political party started in 2006 under Ariel Sharon.

[2] This is speaking of olive oil, but the scripture is somewhat prophetic when one thinks of Petroleum oil coming from these regions today.

[3] Judah would also go into captivity about 120 yrs later by the Babylonians.

[4] Verses 4 & 5 shows the duality of the YAHWEH family. Ex 3:15

[5] The word for "*merchant*" is similar to that of "*Canaanite*" and Hosea is using a pun stating that Ephraim was no better than a Canaanite.

[6] The chastisement in these chapters to Ephraim is a stark parallel to the USA today in where probably more than 100 million Israelites are living. They are making the same mistakes of idolatry, pride and arrogance that Ephraim did, due to their wealth, through being a trading nation.

5 I have known you in the wilderness, in the land of great drought.
6 According to their pasture, so they were filled. They were filled, and their heart was lifted up. On account of this they have forgotten Me.
7 Now I am as a lion to them; I will watch by the way like a leopard.
8 I will meet them like a bereaved bear, and I will tear the lining of their heart; and as a lion, I will devour them there; the beast of the field shall tear them.
9 O Israel, you are destroyed, but your help is in Me.
10 Where is your king now, that he may save you in all your cities? And where are your judges of whom you said, Give to me a king and rulers?
11 I gave to you a king in My anger, and took him away in My fury.
12 The iniquity of Ephraim is bound up; his sin is hidden.
13 The pangs of a woman giving birth shall come to him; he is not a wise son, for he cannot stand still in the time of the breaking forth of sons.
14 I will ransom them from the hand of Sheol; I will redeem them from death. O death, where are your plagues? O Sheol, where is your ruin? Repentance is hidden from My eyes[1].
15 Though he is fruitful among brothers, an east wind shall come. The wind of YAHWEH shall come up from the wilderness, and his spring shall be dried, and his fountain shall be dried up. He shall plunder the treasure of all desirable vessels. *(Gen 41:6)*
16 Samaria shall be desolate, for she has rebelled against her Elohim. They shall fall by the sword, their infants shall be dashed in pieces, and their pregnant women shall be ripped up[2].

Chapter 14

1 O Israel, return to YAHWEH your Elohim, for you have fallen by your sin.
2 Take words with you and return to YAHWEH. Say to Him, Lift up all iniquity and receive us well, that we may repay with the calves of our lips.
3 Assyria shall not save us; we will not ride on horses. We shall not say any more to the work of our hands, Our gods! For in You the fatherless finds mercy. *(Hos 1:6, 10)*
4 I will heal their backslidings; I will love them freely; for My anger has turned away from him. *(Jer 31:31-34)*
5 I will be as the dew to Israel; he shall blossom as the lily and cast out his roots like Lebanon.
6 His branches shall go out, and his beauty shall be like the olive tree, and his scent as Lebanon to him.
7 They who live under his shadow shall return; they shall live like the grain, and blossom like the vine; their memorial shall be as the wine of Lebanon.
8 Ephraim shall say, What is it to me any more with idols? I answered him, and I surveyed him. I am as a green cypress tree; your fruit is found from Me. *(Jer 16:19, Eze 17:23)*
9 Who is wise and discerns these things? Who is discerning and knows them? For the ways of YAHWEH are right, and the righteous shall walk in them; but transgressors shall stumble in them.[3]

---

[1] Ephraim's hope would be in the resurrection, 1 Cor 15:54-55, Eze 37:1-4

[2] 2 Kgs 17:5, 2 Kgs 15:16.

[3] Chapter 14- The book started at the end of chapter one with redemption for Ephraim and ends in chapter 14 with the same message of restoration for the future .

Book of Joel 835 BC

Chapter 1

1 The Word of YAHWEH that was to Joel, the son of Pethuel:
2 Hear this, you old men, and give ear, all you people of the land. Has this been in your days, or even in the days of your fathers?
3 Tell your sons about it, and your sons to their sons, and their sons to another generation.
4 What was left by the cutter, the swarming locust ate; and that left of the swarming locust, the locust larvae ate; and that left of the locust larvae, the stripping locust ate.
5 Awake, drunkards, and weep. And wail, all wine drinkers, over the grape must, for it is cut off from your mouth.
6 For a nation has come up on my land, strong and without number; its teeth are the teeth of a lion, and it has the jaw teeth of a lioness.
7 There My vine is desolation, and it has splintered My fig tree[1]. He has stripped it, and thrown it down; its branches grow white.
8 Wail like a virgin girded with sackcloth over the husband of her youth.
9 The food offering and the drink offering have been cut off from the house of YAHWEH; the priests, the ministers of YAHWEH, mourn.
10 The field is wasted; the land mourns, for the grain is wasted. The new wine is dried up, the oil tree droops.
11 Be withered, farmers, howl, vine-dressers, for the wheat and for the barley; because the harvest of the field has perished.
12 The vine is dried up and the fig tree droops, the pomegranate, and the palm tree, and the apple tree; all the trees of the field are dried up, because joy has dried up from the sons of men.
13 Gird up and lament, priests. Howl, ministers of the altar. Come, spend the night in sackcloth, ministers of my Elohim. For the food offering and the drink offering are withheld from the house of your Elohim.
14 Set apart a fast; call a solemn assembly; gather the elders, all those living in the land, into the house of YAHWEH your Elohim, and cry to YAHWEH.
15 Alas for the day! For the day of YAHWEH[2] is at hand. And it shall come as a destruction from the Almighty.
16 Is not the food cut off before our eyes, joy and gladness from the house of our Elohim?
17 The seed shrivels under their clods; the storage bins are laid waste, the granaries are broken down, for the grain has dried up.
18 How the beasts groan! The herds of livestock are vexed, for there is no pasture for them. Even the flocks of sheep are perishing.
19 O YAHWEH, to You I will cry, for the fire has burned up the pastures of the wilderness, and has consumed all the trees of the field.
20 The beasts of the field also long for You, for the rivers of water are dried up, and the fire has eaten up the pastures of the wilderness[3].

---

1 Israel in scripture is depicted as a fig tree Math 24:32, Jer 24.

2 This is the wrath of YHWH on the world in the end time for totally forsaking His Torah and any moral code of conduct for a self centered satanic world system (Is 24:1-6, Joel 2:1-2).

3 In Revelation there are 7 seals that happen on a third of the earth (Rev 6). Then, there are 7 trumpets that happen on a third of the earth (Rev 7-11), and then the wrath of YHWH comes with 7 vials which covers all the earth (Rev 16).

Chapter 2

1 Blow a ram's horn in Zion, and shout an alarm in My holy mountain. Let all those living in the land tremble. For the day of YAHWEH approaches; it is near.[1] *(Zech 14:1, Is 13:6)*
2 It is a day of darkness and gloominess, a day of clouds and thick darkness, as the dawn spread out on the mountains, a great and a strong people. There has never been the like, nor shall there ever be again to the years of generation to generation;
3 a fire devours before it, and a flame burns behind it. The land is the Garden of Eden before them and behind them is a desolate wilderness; yea, also there is no escape to them.
4 Their appearance is like horses; and as war horses, so they run.
5 They shall leap like the noise of chariots on the tops of the mountains, like the noise of flames of fire that devour the chaff, as a strong people set in order for battle.
6 Before their face, the people shall be pained; all faces collect heat.
7 They shall run as mighty ones; they shall go up the wall as men of war. And they each go on his way, and they do not change their paths.
8 And every man does not press his brother; they each go in his own paths. And if they fall behind their weapon, they shall not be cut off.
9 They shall rush on the city; they shall run on the wall; they shall climb up on the houses; they shall enter in by the windows, like a thief.
10 The earth shall quake before them, the heavens shall shake. The sun and moon shall grow dark, and the stars shall gather in their light[2].
11 And YAHWEH shall give His voice before His army, for His camp is very great. For he who does His Word is strong. For the day of YAHWEH is very great and fearful, and who can endure it?
12 Yet even now turn to Me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with wailing, declares YAHWEH.
13 Yea, tear your heart, and not your robes; and turn to YAHWEH your Elohim. For He is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and He pities concerning the evil. *(Jer 18:7-8, Ex 34:6-7, Deut 4:31)*
14 Who knows if He will turn and have pity and leave a blessing behind Him, a food offering and a drink offering for YAHWEH your Elohim?
15 Blow a shofar[3] in Zion, sanctify a fast, call a solemn assembly.
16 Gather the people, sanctify the congregation, gather the elders, gather the children, and those who suck the breasts. Let the bridegroom go out of his room, and the bride out of her bridal chamber[4].
17 Let the priests, ministers of YAHWEH, weep between the porch and the altar; and let them say, Have pity on Your people, O YAHWEH, and do not give Your inheritance to shame, for a proverb among those of the nations. Why should they say among the peoples, Where is their Elohim?[5]
18 Then YAHWEH will be jealous for His land and have pity on His people[6].
19 Yea, YAHWEH will answer and

---

1 Hebrew "Karobe" meaning close in place, kindred or time.

2 Indicating solar and lunar eclipses, Joel 2:31, 3:15, Math 24:29, Is 13:9-10

3 A shofar is a ram's horn

4 There was no part of the society that was exempt from repentance and fasting.

5 One must repent before giving offering and entering sanctuary of YHWH. Math 5:23-4.

6 In the end time when true repentance is made, Yahweh will then start redemption for the land at that time.

say to His people, Behold, I will send you grain, and wine, and oil[1], and you shall be satisfied with it. And I will no more make you a disgrace among the nations.
20 But I will remove the northern army far from you, and I will drive him into a dry and desolated land with his face toward the eastern sea, and his rear toward the western sea. And his stench shall come up, and his ill odor shall come up, because he was doing great things.
21 Fear not, O land, be glad and rejoice, for YAHWEH is doing great things.
22 Fear not, beasts of the field, for the pastures of the wilderness grow green, for the tree bears its fruit, the fig tree and the vine give their strength.
23 Then be glad, sons of Zion, and rejoice in YAHWEH your Elohim. For He has given to you the early rain according to righteousness, and He will cause the rain to come down for you, the early rain and the latter rain in the first month.
24 And the floors shall be full with grain, and the wine vats shall overflow with wine and oil.
25 And I will restore to you the years which the swarming locust has eaten, the locust larvae, and the stripping locust, and the cutting locust, My great army which I sent among you.
26 And you shall eat fully and be satisfied; and you shall praise the name of YAHWEH your Elohim, who has dealt wondrously with you. And My people shall not be ashamed forever.
27 And you shall know that I am in the midst of Israel, and that I am YAHWEH your Elohim, and there is no other. And My people shall not be ashamed forever.
28 And it shall be afterward, I will pour out My Spirit on all flesh. And your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, your old men shall dream dreams, your young men shall see visions.
29 And also I will pour out My Spirit on the slaves and on the slave-girls in those days. *(Acts 2:15-21)*
30 And I will give signs in the heavens and in the earth: blood, and fire, and columns of smoke. *(Ex 14:19)*
31 The sun shall be turned to darkness and the moon to blood, before the coming of the great and awesome day of YAHWEH. *(Is 13:10)*
32 For it shall be, all who shall call on the name of YAHWEH shall be saved. For salvation shall be in Mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, as YAHWEH has said, and among the survivors whom YAHWEH shall call[2].

Chapter 3

1 For, behold, in those days and in that time, when I bring again the exiles of Judah and Jerusalem[3],
2 I will also gather all nations, and will bring them down into the valley of Jehoshaphat. And I will enter into judgment with them there, for My

---

[1] The grain for bread, the oil for healing and light, and the wine for blessing and happiness. All three of these elements in scripture show Yahweh's completeness in caring for His people. In the New Covenant the grain and wine represents the Passover symbols of the bread and wine, and the oil represents the Holy Spirit.

[2] Two points here for the end time that are very portent: 1) Whoever calls on the name **YAHWEH** will be saved, and 2) Salvation is in **Jerusalem**, where Yahweh is dwelling.

[3] "*In those days and at that time*" a Hebrew idiom that means the end times. We are living in this amazing time to see this scripture being fulfilled as Judah is a nation again after more than 2,500 yrs.

people and My inheritance, Israel,
whom they have scattered among the
nations; and they divided My land[1].
3 And they have cast lots for My
people. And they have given a boy for
a prostitute and sold a girl for wine,
and they drank.
4 And also, what are you to Me, Tyre
and Sidon, and all the regions of
Philistia? Are you restoring repayment
to Me? And if you are repaying Me, I
will swiftly and speedily turn your
reward on your own head,
5 in that you have taken My silver
and My gold and have carried My good
treasures to your temples.
6 You have also sold the sons of
Judah and the sons of Jerusalem to
the sons of the Javanites *(Greeks)*,
that you might remove them far from
their border.
7 Behold, I am arousing them from
the place where you have sold them,
and will return your reward on your
own head.
8 And I will sell your sons and your
daughters into the hand of the sons of
Judah, and they shall sell them to the
Sabeans[2], to a nation far off. For
YAHWEH has spoken it.
9 Proclaim this among the nations:
Sanctify a war; awaken the mighty
men; let all the men of war draw near;
let them come up.
10 Beat your plowshares into
swords, and your pruning hooks into
spears. Let the weak say, I am strong[3].
11 Gather yourselves and come, all
you nations; and gather yourselves
together all around. O YAHWEH,
bring down Your mighty ones.
12 Let the nations be awakened and
come up to the Valley of Jehoshaphat.
For there I will sit to judge all the
nations all around. *(Zech 14:1-4)*
13 Put in the sickle, for the harvest is
ripe. Come, go down, for the press is
full, the vats overflow, for their
wickedness is great. *(Rev 14:15-20)*
14 Multitudes, multitudes in valley
of decision! For the day of YAHWEH
is near in the valley of decision[4].
15 The sun and the moon shall be
darkened, and the stars shall gather in
their light. *(Joel 2:10)*
16 And YAHWEH roars from Zion,
and He gives His voice from
Jerusalem. And the heavens and the
earth quake. But YAHWEH is a refuge
for His people and a fortress to the
sons of Israel.
17 And you shall know that I am
YAHWEH your Elohim dwelling in
Zion, My holy mountain. And
Jerusalem shall be a holy thing, and
strangers shall no more pass through
her.
18 And it shall be in that day, the
mountains shall drop down new wine,
and the hills shall flow with milk, and
all the streams of Judah shall flow
with waters. And a fountain shall come
forth from the house of YAHWEH,
and it shall water the Valley of Shittim.
19 Egypt shall be a ruin, and Edom
shall be a desolate wilderness, from
the violence[5] done to the sons of

---

1 "*Valley of Jehoshaphat*", also called the valley of decision. This is the Kidron valley east of the sanctuary of YHWH where King Jehoshaphat showed great faith in YHWH against Sennacherib king of Assyria. The "D*ay of YHWH*" and His wrath is coming due to the nations forcing the dividing of the Holy Land and Jerusalem.

2 "*Sebeans*" are people from Sheba. Their queen visited King Solomon. The area is located in modern day Yemen.

3 Whereas in the kingdom they will be doing the exact opposite (Mic 4:3), here there is a spirit of war that will come on the people.

4 The valley of Jehoshaphat is also called the valley of decision, as deciding on faith in YHWH or the system of the beast will decide ones eternal life.

5 The Hebrew word for violence here is Hamas

Judah, whose innocent blood they
poured out in their land.
20 But Judah will dwell forever, and
Jerusalem to generation and
generation.
21 And I will cleanse their blood
which I did not cleanse. And
YAHWEH is dwelling in Zion.
(2Chron 7:16)

Book of Amos 755 BC

Chapter 1

1 The words of Amos, who was among the herdsmen of Tekoa[1], which he saw concerning Israel in the days of Uzziah, king of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam, the son of Joash, king of Israel, two years before the earthquake.

2 And he said: YAHWEH will roar from Zion and utter His voice from Jerusalem. And the pastures of the shepherds shall mourn, and the top of Carmel shall wither. *(Joel 3:21)*

3 So says YAHWEH: For three transgressions of Damascus, and for four, I will not turn back from it, for they have threshed Gilead with threshing sledges of iron.

4 But I will send a fire against the house of Hazael[2], and it shall devour the palaces of Ben-Hadad.

5 I will also break the bar of Damascus, and cut off the one living in the Valley of Aven, and him who holds the scepter from Beth-Eden. And the people of Syria shall go captive to Kir, says YAHWEH.

6 So says YAHWEH: For three transgressions of Gaza, and for four, I will not turn back from it, for they deported as exiles to deliver up a complete population to Edom.

7 But I will send a fire against the wall of Gaza, and it shall devour its palaces.

8 And I will cut off the inhabitant from Ashdod and him who holds the scepter from Ashkelon; and I will turn My hand against Ekron; and the remnant of the Philistines shall perish, says Adonai YAHWEH.

9 So says YAHWEH: For three transgressions of Tyre, and for four, I will not turn back from it, for they delivered up as exiles a complete population to Edom and did not remember the covenant of brothers.

10 But I will send a fire against the wall of Tyre, and it shall devour its palaces.

11 So says YAHWEH: For three transgressions of Edom, and for four, I will not turn back from it, for he pursued his brother with the sword, and corrupted his compassions, and his anger tore continually, and he kept it, his wrath, forever.

12 But I will send a fire against Teman, and it shall devour the palaces of Bozrah. *(Jer 49:7, Is 63:1-6)*

13 So says YAHWEH: For three transgressions of the sons of Ammon, and for four, I will not turn back from it, for they ripped open the pregnant women of Gilead, to make their border larger. *(2Kgs 8:12, 2Kgs 15:16)*

14 But I will kindle a fire against the wall of Rabbah[3], and it shall devour its palaces, with a war cry in the day of battle, with a tempest in the day of the windstorm.

15 And their king shall go into captivity, he and his rulers together, says YAHWEH.

Chapter 2

1 So says YAHWEH: For three transgressions of Moab, and for four, I will not turn back from it, for he burned the bones of the king of Edom into lime.

2 But I will send a fire against Moab, and it shall devour the palaces of Kerioth. And Moab shall die with

---

[1] Amos was a shepherd who raised sheep and lived about 6 miles south of Bethlehem. The date is about 755 B.C about 35 yrs before Israel's captivity to Assyria and elsewhere.

[2] Hazael is the founder of the Syrian dynasty and ruler during this time. Ben Hadad was his son and successor.

[3] The capital city of the Ammonites

uproar, with a war cry, with the sound
of the ram's horn.
3 And I will cut off the judge in its
midst, and I will kill all his rulers with
him, says YAHWEH.
4 So says YAHWEH: For three
transgressions of Judah, and for four,
I will not turn back from it; for they
despised the Torah of YAHWEH, and
they have not kept His statutes. And
their lies after which their fathers
walked led them astray.
5 And I shall send a fire against
Judah, and it shall devour the palaces
of Jerusalem.
6 So says YAHWEH: For three
transgressions of Israel, and for four, I
will not turn back from it, for they sold
the righteous for silver, and the poor
for a pair of sandals.
7 Those who trample upon the dust
of the earth to be on the head of the
helpless, and they divert the way of the
humble. And a man and his father will
go in to the same girl, in order to
profane the name of My holiness[1].
8 And they will stretch out beside
every altar, and on garments taken in
pledge. And they will drink wine of
those being fined in the house of their
Elohim.
9 Yet I destroyed the Amorite from
before them, whose height was like the
height of the cedars, and he was strong
as the great trees. And I destroyed his
fruit from above and his roots from
below.
10 Also I brought you up from the
land of Egypt and led you in the
wilderness forty years, to possess the
land of the Amorite.
11 And I raised up from your sons for
prophets, and for Nazarites from your
young men. Is this not even so, O sons
of Israel? declares YAHWEH.
12 But you gave the Nazarites wine
to drink, and you commanded the
prophets, saying, Do not prophesy.
13 Behold, I am pressed under you,
as a cart full with produce is pressed.
14 And refuge shall perish from the
swift, and the strong shall not
strengthen his power, nor shall the
mighty deliver his life,
15 and he who handles the bow shall
not stand, and the swift footed shall
not save, and the horse rider shall not
save his life.
16 And the strong in heart among
the mighty shall flee naked in that day,
declares YAHWEH[2].

Chapter 3

1 Hear this Word that YAHWEH has
spoken against you, sons of Israel,
against all the family which I brought
up from the land of Egypt, saying:
2 You only have I known of all the
families of the earth. On account of
this, I will punish you for all your
iniquities. *(1Kgs 8:52-53, Deut 9:29)*
3 Will two walk together except they
are agreed?
4 Will a lion roar in the forest when
there is no prey for him? Will a young
lion cry out of his den except he has
caught something?
5 Will a bird fall into a trap on the
ground, and there is no bait for it? Will
a trap spring up from the ground, and
nothing at all be caught?
6 If a ram's horn is blowing in a city,
will the people not also tremble? If
there is a calamity in a city, has
YAHWEH not even done it?
7 For Adonai YAHWEH will do
nothing unless He reveals His secret
council to His servants the prophets[3].
8 A lion has roared. Who will not

---
[1] For a father and son to have the same girl is strictly forbidden in the Torah, Lev 18:7-8, 15, Lev 20:11-12.

[2] Verses 6-16- YHWH is showing the moral decrepit state that Israel had fallen into and the judgment that was soon to come.

fear? Adonai YAHWEH has spoken, who will not prophesy?

9 Make it heard at the palaces in Ashdod, and at the palaces in the land of Egypt, and say, Gather yourselves on the mountains of Samaria and see many panics in its midst, and oppressions in its midst.

10 For they do not know to do right, declares YAHWEH, those who store up violence and robbery in their palaces.

11 So Adonai YAHWEH says this: An enemy! And he shall be all around the land. And he shall bring you down from your fortress, and your palaces shall be plundered.

12 So says YAHWEH, As the shepherd snatches two legs out of the mouth of the lion, or a piece of an ear, so shall the sons of Israel be snatched, those who dwell in Samaria in a corner of a bed, and in Damascus on a couch.

13 Hear and testify in the house of Jacob, declares Adonai YAHWEH, the Elohim of Hosts.

14 For in the day I punish the transgressions of Israel on him, I will also call to account on the altars of Bethel. And the horns of the altar will be cut off and will fall to the ground[1].

15 And I will strike the winter house with the summer house; and the houses of ivory shall perish, and the great houses shall be swept away, declares YAHWEH.

[3] The pattern by Elohim that we always see in scripture is that before judgment comes YHWH will always send a prophet first to warn the people to either repent or face the coming judgment.

[1] Jeroboam, Israel's first king in the divided kingdom made an altar with a small golden calf in Bethel and Dan. The horns of the altar was where the blood was applied from the sacrifice, Lev 4:30.

Chapter 4

1 Hear this word, cows of Bashan[2] who are in the mountain of Samaria, who are oppressing the helpless, those crushing the poor, who say to their husbands, Bring in, that we may drink.

2 Adonai YAHWEH has sworn by His holiness that the days are coming that He will lift you up with meat hooks, and the last of you with fishhooks. *(Eze 29:4)*

3 And you shall go out at the breaches, each woman before her. And you shall cast yourself to Har-Manea[3], declares YAHWEH.

4 Enter Bethel and rebel; increase transgressing at Gilgal. And bring your sacrifices for the morning, your tithes for three days;

5 and offer a sacrifice of a thanksgiving offering that is leavened. And cry out, call out the voluntary offerings! For so you love to do, sons of Israel, declares Adonai YAHWEH.

6 And I also have given you cleanness of teeth in all your cities, and lack of bread in your places; and you have not returned to Me, declares YAHWEH.

7 And I have also withheld the rain from you when it was yet three months to the harvest. And I caused rain to fall on one city, and caused it not to rain on another city. One piece was rained on, and the piece where it did not rain was dried up.

8 So two or three cities staggered to one city in order to drink water, but

[2] A reference comparing the women to the well fed cows in the northern trans-Jordan.

[3] The Hebrew word translated as Palace is "*Har Manae*", which literally means the mountains of Manae. Interesting enough, when Northern Israel was taken into captivity one of the places they were exiled to was The Manae Mountains in Armenia, fulfilling this most intriguing prophecy.

they were not satisfied; yet you have not returned to Me, declares YAHWEH.

9 I have struck you with blasting and mildew. The multitude of your gardens and your vineyards, and your figs, and your olives are devoured by the creeping locust; yet you have not returned to Me, declares YAHWEH.

10 I have sent a plague among you in the way of Egypt; I have killed your young men with the sword and your horses with captivity. And I have made the stench of your camps to come up even into your nostrils; yet you have not returned to Me, declares YAHWEH.

11 I have overturned among you, as Elohim overthrew Sodom and Gomorrah, and you were like a firebrand plucked out of the burning; yet you have not returned to Me, declares YAHWEH.

12 So I will do this to you, O Israel: Because of this I will do to you, prepare to meet your Elohim, O Israel.

13 For, behold, He who forms mountains and creates the wind and declares to man what His thought is, He who makes the dawn darkness, and treads on the high places of the earth; YAHWEH, the Elohim of Hosts, is His name[1].

Chapter 5

1 Hear this word which I am lifting up against you, a dirge, O house of Israel.

2 The virgin of Israel has fallen, and will not arise again; she lies forsaken on her land; there is no one raising her up.

3 For so says Adonai YAHWEH, The city that goes out by a thousand shall have a hundred left. And that which goes out by a hundred shall have ten left in the house of Israel[2].

4 For so says YAHWEH to the house of Israel, Seek Me, and live.

5 But do not seek Bethel, and do not enter Gilgal, and do not cross over to Beer-Sheba; for Gilgal going shall go into exile, and Bethel shall be for nothing.

6 Seek YAHWEH, and live, that He not break out like a fire on the house of Joseph, and consume, and no one is putting it out for Bethel.

7 He abandoned those who turn justice and righteousness into wormwood on the earth.

8 He who created the Pleiades and Orion, and turns the deep darkness into the morning, and He darkened the day into night; who calls for the waters of the sea and pours them out on the face of the earth, YAHWEH is His name; *(Job 9:9, Ex 3:15, Is 42:8,)*

9 who flashes out with destruction on the strong; yea, destruction comes on the fortress.

10 They hate him who rebukes in the gate, and they despise him who speaks uprightly.

11 So, because of your trampling on the poor, and you take tribute of grain from him; you have built houses of hewn stones, but you shall not dwell in them; you have planted desirable vineyards, but you shall not drink wine from them.

12 For I know your many transgressions, and your many sins: Distressing the just, taking of a bribe, and turning aside the poor in the gate.

13 So the understanding ones shall keep silent in that time, for it is an evil time.

14 Seek good and not evil, that you may live; and so YAHWEH the

---

1 Verse 12-13 Due to Israel's grave sin they would be meeting their maker whose name is YAHWEH, Ex 3:15.

2 Many times in scripture a remnant is 10% or a tithe.

Elohim of Hosts shall be with you, as you have spoken.

15 Hate evil, and love good, and establish justice in the gate. It may be that YAHWEH the Elohim of Hosts will be gracious to the remnant of Joseph. *(Joel 2:12-14)*

16 So YAHWEH, the Elohim of Hosts, YAHWEH, says this: Wailing shall be in all streets, and they shall say in all the highways, Alas! Alas! And they shall call the farmer to the mourning, and those knowing wailing to lamentation.

17 And wailing shall be in all vineyards, for I will pass among you, says YAHWEH.

18 Woe to those desiring the day of YAHWEH! What is this for you? The day of YAHWEH is darkness, and not light.*(Joel 2:2, Is 13:6-9, Rev 16:1-11)*

19 It is as if a man fled before a lion, and the bear met him. Or he goes into the house and leans his hand against the wall, and a snake bites him.

20 Shall not the day of YAHWEH be darkness, and not light; even very dark, and not any brightness in it?

21 I hate, I reject your feast days; and I will not delight in your festive assemblies[1].

22 Though you offer Me burnt offerings and your grain offerings, I will not be pleased; nor will I regard the peace offerings of your fat animals.

23 Take away from Me the noise of your songs; and I will not hear the melody of your stringed instruments.

24 But let justice roll down like waters, and righteousness like an ever-flowing stream.

25 Have you brought near sacrifices and food offerings to Me forty years in the wilderness, O house of Israel?

26 Yea, you have lifted up the booth of your Molech, and Kiyun, your images, the star[2] of your gods which you made for yourselves! *(Acts 7:43)*

27 And I will exile you beyond Damascus, says YAHWEH, the Elohim of Hosts is His name.

Chapter 6

1 Woe to those at ease in Zion, and those trusting in the mountain of Samaria, those noted as the leader of the nations! And the house of Israel came to them.

2 Cross to Calneh and see; and from there go to the great Hamath; then go down to Gath of the Philistines. Are they better than these kingdoms, or their border than your border?

3 You who put the evil day far away, and cause the seat of violence[3] to come near,

4 who lie on beds of ivory and stretch themselves on their couches; and those eating the lambs from the flock, and bull calves from the midst of the stall;

5 those chanting with the mouth of the harp; they invent instruments of song for themselves like David;

6 who drink bowls of wine, and they anoint with the best of oils; but they are not grieved for the breaking of Joseph!

7 So now they shall go into exile with the first of the exiles, and the feast of those who stretch themselves shall cease.

8 Adonai YAHWEH has sworn by Himself, declares YAHWEH, the

[1] The feast days were meant to remind Israel all yr long of YHWH's redemption through His promised Messiah; instead it became nothing more than a ritualistic time for drunkenness and immorality.

[2] Some have tried to equate this with the modern star of David, but the modern Star of David only goes back to medieval times.

[3] The Hebrew word used here for violence is Hamas.

Elohim of Hosts: I abhor the pride of
Jacob, and hate his palaces; and I will
shut up the city and its fullness.
9 And it shall be, if ten men remain
in one house, then they shall die.
10 And his uncle shall lift him up,
and he who burns him, to bring out
the bones from the house; and he shall
say to that one left in the recesses of
the house, Are any still with you? And
he shall say, No. Then he shall say,
Hush! For no one shall mention the
name of YAHWEH.
11 For behold, YAHWEH
commands, and He will strike the
great house into pieces, and the little
house into cracks.
12 Shall horses run on the rock? Or
will one plow there with oxen? For you
have turned justice into poison, and
the fruit of righteousness into
wormwood,
13 those rejoicing for nothing, those
saying, Have we not taken horns to
ourselves by our own strength?
14 For, behold, I will raise a nation
up against you, O house of Israel,
declares YAHWEH, the Elohim of
Hosts. And they shall oppress you
from the entrance of Hamath to the
torrent of the Arabah.

Chapter 7

1 Adonai YAHWEH made me see
this: And, behold, He is forming
locusts at the beginning of the coming
up of the late grass; even behold, the
after crop after the mowings of the
king.
2 And it happened when it had made
an end of eating the vegetation of the
land, then I said, Adonai YAHWEH, I
pray, forgive. How can Jacob stand?
For he is small.
3 YAHWEH changed His mind
concerning this: It shall not be, says
YAHWEH.
4 Adonai YAHWEH made me to see
this: And behold, Adonai YAHWEH
was calling to contend by fire. And it
consumed the great deep, and it was
devouring part of it.
5 Then I said, Adonai YAHWEH, I
beg You, stop. How can Jacob rise up?
For he is small.
6 YAHWEH changed His mind
concerning this: It shall not be, says
Adonai YAHWEH.
7 He made me see this: And behold,
YAHWEH was standing by the plumb
line wall, and a plumb line[1] in His
hand.
8 And YAHWEH said to me, Amos,
what do you see? And I said, A plumb
line. And YAHWEH, said, Behold, I
will set a plumb line in the midst of My
people Israel. I will not again pass over
him any more. *(Is 28:17, 2 Kgs 21:13)*
9 And the high places of Isaac shall
be desolated, and the holy places of
Israel shall be laid waste; and I will
rise against the house of Jeroboam
with the sword.
10 Then Amaziah, the priest of
Bethel, sent to Jeroboam, the king of
Israel, saying, Amos has plotted
against you in the midst of the house
of Israel. The land is not able to
endure all his words.
11 For so Amos says: Jeroboam shall
die by the sword, and Israel going shall
go into exile out of his land.
12 And Amaziah said to Amos,
Prophet, go! Flee for yourself into the
land of Judah, and eat bread there,
and prophesy there.
13 But do not again prophesy at
Bethel any more, for it is the king's
holy place, and it is the royal house.
14 Then Amos answered and said to
Amaziah, I was not a prophet, nor was
I a prophet's son, but I was a

[1] A plumb line is a standard by which a wall's vertical accuracy is tested.

herdsman and a pincher of sycamore trees[1].

15 And YAHWEH took me from behind the flock, and YAHWEH said to me, Go, prophesy to My people Israel.

16 Now then, hear the Word of YAHWEH: You say, Do not prophesy against Israel, and do not drop words against the house of Isaac.

17 So YAHWEH says this, Your wife shall be a harlot in the city, and your sons and your daughters shall fall by the sword, and your land shall be divided by a line. And you shall die in a defiled land. And Israel going shall go into exile from his land.

Chapter 8

1 Adonai YAHWEH showed me this: And behold, a basket of summer fruit[2]!

2 And He said, Amos, what do you see? And I said, A basket of summer fruit. And YAHWEH said to me, The end has come on My people Israel; I will not again pass over him any more[3].

3 And they will howl the songs of the sanctuary in that day, declares Adonai YAHWEH. The dead bodies shall be many; in every place one shall throw them out, saying, Hush!

4 Hear this, you who swallow up the poor, even to make the humble of the earth to cease,

5 saying, When will the new moon have passed, so that we may buy grain? Or the Sabbath, so that we may open the wheat, making smaller the ephah, and making greater the shekel, and to falsify the deceitful balances,[4]

6 in order to buy the helpless with silver, and the poor for a pair of sandals, and sell the chaff of the wheat?

7 YAHWEH has sworn by the Pride of Jacob, Surely I will not ever forget all their works.

8 Shall not the land tremble for this, and all who dwell in it mourn? And all of it shall go up like the light, and it shall overflow and sink like the Nile of Egypt.

9 And it shall be in that day, declares Adonai YAHWEH, that I will cause the sun to go down at noon, and I will darken the earth in light of the day[5].

10 And I will turn your feasts to mourning, and all your songs into a dirge. And I will bring up sackcloth on all loins, and baldness on every head. And I will make it like the mourning for an only one; and the end of it shall be like a bitter day.

11 Behold, the days are coming, declares Adonai YAHWEH, that I will send a famine into the land, not a famine for bread, nor a thirst for water, but rather a famine for hearing the Words of YAHWEH.

12 And they shall stagger from sea to sea, and from the north even to east; they shall roam about to seek the Word of YAHWEH, and they shall not find it.

---

1 Amos was a shepherd and animal herder and in chapter 7 he pleads for Israel with a shepherd's heart. In tending sycamore trees Amos would have had to diligently take each fig like fruit and put a slit in the top to ensure good fruit. The Hebrew word for Sycamore "*Shickma*" means redemption and shows Amos's purpose. See Luk 19:1-10.

2 Probably they were ripe figs.

3 There is a word play here on summer fruit "*kahyitz*" and end "*kahtes*", showing Israel's ripeness for their soon coming destruction.

4 Most store owners lived in their shops and would open for business in the evening after the sun set and the Sabbath was over.

5 Math 27:45, This is one possible explanation for the darkness at the crucifixion of Yahshua.

13 In that day the beautiful virgins and the young men shall faint with thirst.
14 They who swear by the guilt of Samaria, and say, As your Elohim lives, O Dan! And, As the way of Beer-Sheba lives! Even they shall fall, and not rise again[1].

Chapter 9

1 I saw (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH, standing by the altar. And He said, Strike the capital of the door, and the thresholds will shake; and cut them off on the head of all of them. And I will kill the last of them with the sword. Not one of them who flees will flee, and not a fugitive of them will escape.
2 And if they dig through into Sheol, from there My hand will take them. And if they go up to the heavens, from there I will bring them down.
3 And if they hide themselves in the top of Carmel, I will search and take them out from there. And if they hide from My eyes in the bottom of the sea, from there I will command the serpent, and he will bite them.
4 And if they go into exile before their enemies, from there I will command the sword, and it will kill them. And I will set My eyes on them for evil, and not for good.
5 And Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts is He who touches the earth so that it melts, and all dwelling in it shall mourn. And all of it will rise up like the Nile, and sink down like the Nile of Egypt.
6 It is He who builds His staircase in the heavens, and His firmament He has founded, binding the heavens over the earth; He who calls for the sea-waters and pours them out on the face of the earth, YAHWEH is His name.[2]
7 Are you not like the sons of the Ethiopians to Me, O sons of Israel? Declares YAHWEH. Have I not brought Israel up out of the land of Egypt, and the Philistines from Caphtor, and the Syrians from Kir?
8 Behold, the eyes of Adonai YAHWEH are on the sinful kingdom, and I will destroy it from the face of the earth; only that I will not completely destroy the house of Jacob, declares YAHWEH.
9 For behold, I will command, and I will shake the house of Israel among all the nations, as one shakes with a sieve; yet not a grain shall fall to the ground[3].
10 All the sinners of My people shall die by the sword, those who say, The calamity shall not draw near or confront us.
11 In that day I will raise up the Sukkoth of David that has fallen, and I will wall up its breaks. And I will raise up its ruins, and I will build it as the days of old[4]; *(Acts 15:15-17)*
12 so that they may possess the remnant of Edom, and all the nations on whom My name is called, declares YAHWEH who is doing this.
13 Behold, the days are coming, declares YAHWEH, that the plowman shall overtake the reaper, and the treader of grapes him who draws along seed. And the mountains shall drip

---

1 Dan to Beersheva was from north to south all the cultivated land of Israel.

2 Gen 28:12

3 Even though Yahweh prophesied that Israel would be punished and go into captivity, He also prophesied that He would be with them, and ultimately bring them back to the land of Israel.

4 The Messianic dynasty would most certainly come from the loins of King David as promised 2Sam 7:8-13.

new must, and all the hills will be
dissolved[1].
14 And I will bring back the captivity
of My people Israel. And they shall
build the waste cities, and live in them.
And they shall plant vineyards, and
drink the wine of them. They shall also
make gardens, and eat the fruit of
them.
15 And I will plant them on their
land, and they shall never again be
pulled up out of their land which I
have given to them, says YAHWEH
your Elohim[2].

---

1 A beautiful promise of restoration where the plowman and the reaper will be working year round and there will be a continual supply of food and blessing.

2 Amazingly enough this was the Torah reading the very first Sabbath that Israel was a nation again in 1948. Jer 29:14, Jer 33:7, Is 49:8, Is 61:4, Jer 3:18, Jer 30:18, 31:1, 8-12, Eze 34:13-14, Eze 36:24, 28, Hos 1:10-11, Zech 10:6-10, Ps 53:6, Gen 15:18, Gen 17:7-8.

Book of Obadiah 840 BC

Chapter 1

1 The vision of Obadiah: So says Adonai YAHWEH concerning Edom[1]: We have heard a message from YAHWEH, and a messenger is sent among the nations; rise up, and let us rise up against her for battle.

2 Behold, I have given you to be small among the nations; you are greatly despised.

3 The pride[2] of your heart has deceived you, dwelling in the clefts of the rock[3]; his dwelling is lofty, saying in his heart, Who shall bring me down to the ground?

4 Though you rise high as the eagle, and though you set your nest between the stars I will bring you down from there, declares YAHWEH.

5 If thieves came to you, if destroyers by night, how you have been cut off! Would they not have stolen until they had enough? If the grape-gatherers came to you, would they not leave gleanings?

6 How Esau is searched out! His hidden things are sought out!

7 All the men of your covenant have dismissed you to the border. The men who were at peace with you have deceived you and have prevailed over you. They are setting your bread as a snare under you; there is no understanding in him.

8 Shall I not in that day even destroy the wise out of Edom and understanding out of the mount of Esau? declares YAHWEH.

9 And your mighty ones, O Teman, shall be afraid, so that each man from the mountain of Esau may be cut off by slaughter.

10 Shame shall cover you from the violence[4] against your brother Jacob, and you shall be cut off forever.

11 On the day of your standing on the other side, on the day that the strangers took his force captive, and foreigners entered his gates, and cast lots for Jerusalem, even you were like one of them.

12 But you should not have looked on the day of your brother, on the day of his alienation; nor should you have rejoiced over the sons of Judah in the day of their destruction; nor should you have enlarged your mouth in the day of distress.

13 You should not have entered into My people's gate on the day of his calamity; also you should not have looked on his evil on the day of his calamity, nor should you have sent out against his force in the day of his calamity.

14 Nor should you have stood on the crossways to cut off those of him who escaped, nor should you have shut up his survivors in the day of distress.

15 For the day of YAHWEH is near on all the nations[5]: As you have done, it shall be done to you; your reward shall return on your head!

16 For as you have drunk on My holy mountain, so all the nations shall continually drink. Yea, they shall drink and shall swallow; and they will be as if they had not been.

17 But the ones who escaped shall be on Mount Zion, and it shall be holy. And the house of Jacob shall possess their own possessions.

18 And the house of Jacob shall be a

1 Edom are descendents of Esau.

2 "*pride*" comes from the Hebrew word to boil or seethe and is used 3 times in the story of Esau and Jacob.

3 Speaking of the Edomite town of Kaalat Sela, the secure city of rock.

4 The Hebrew word for violence here is Hamas, the same name of the terror group in the Gaza strip today.

5 Showing the time frame of the prophecy is the end time "D*ay of YHWH*".

fire, and the house of Joseph a flame,
and the house of Esau for straw. And
they shall burn among them and
consume them. And no survivor shall
be to the house of Esau, for YAHWEH
has spoken.
19 And those of Negev shall possess
the mountain of Esau, and the low
country of the Philistines. And they
shall possess Ephraim's fields, and
Samaria's fields. And Benjamin shall
possess Gilead.
20 And the exiles of this force shall
go to the sons of Israel who shall
possess the land of the Canaanites to
Zarephath; even the exiles of
Jerusalem who are in Sepharad shall
possess the cities of the Negev.
21 And deliverers shall go up into the
mountain of Zion to judge the
mountain of Esau, and the kingdom
shall be to YAHWEH.

Book of Jonah 760 BC

Chapter 1

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to
Jonah[1], the son of Amittai, saying,
2 Rise up, go to Nineveh, the great
city, and cry out against it; for their
evil has come up before Me.
3 But Jonah rose up to flee to
Tarshish from the face of YAHWEH.
And he went down to Joppa, and he
found a ship going to Tarshish. And he
gave its fare and went down into it in
order to go with them to Tarshish,
from before the face of YAHWEH.
4 But YAHWEH hurled a great wind
into the sea, and there was a great
storm in the sea, and the ship was
thought to be broken.
5 And the sailors were afraid, and
each man cried to his Elohim. And
they threw out the ship's articles into
the sea, to lighten it of them. But
Jonah had gone down into the
recesses of the ship; and he lay down,
and was sound asleep.
6 And the chief of the seamen came
near to him and said to him, What is it
to you, O fast sleeping one? Rise up
and cry out to your Elohim! Perhaps
our Elohim will notice us, and we will
not perish.
7 And they said, each man to his
companion, Come and let us cast lots,
that we may know on whose account
this evil occurred to us. And they cast
lots, and the lot fell on Jonah.
8 And they said to him, Please tell us
on account of whom has this evil
occurred to us? What is your work?
And from where do you come? What is
your country, and of what people are
you?
9 And he said to them, I am a
Hebrew. And I fear YAHWEH, the
Elohim of Heaven, who has made the
sea and the dry land.
10 And the men were terrified with
fear and said to him, What is this you
have done? For the men knew that he
was fleeing from before the face of
YAHWEH, because he had told them.
11 And they said to him, What shall
we do to you that the sea may be calm
from being upon us? For the sea was
going on and being stormy.
12 And he said to them, Take me up
and throw me out into the sea. And the
sea will be calm from being upon you.
For I know that this great storm is
upon you on account of me.
13 But the men rowed to return to
the dry land, but they were not able,
for the sea was going on and being
stormy against them.
14 And they cried out to YAHWEH,
and said, We beseech You, O
YAHWEH, we beseech You, do not let
us perish for this man's life, and do not
lay innocent blood on us. For You, O
YAHWEH, have done as You desired.
15 And they lifted Jonah up and
threw him into the sea. And the sea
stood still from its raging.
16 Then the men feared YAHWEH
with a great fear and offered a sacrifice
to YAHWEH, and vowed vows.
17 And YAHWEH had appointed a
great fish to swallow Jonah. And
Jonah was in the belly of the fish three
days and three nights[2].

Chapter 2

1 And Jonah prayed to YAHWEH
his Elohim out of the belly of the fish.
2 And he said, I cried out to
YAHWEH from my distress. And He
answered me. Out of the belly of Sheol

---

[1] The name "*Jonah*" means dove and is the same symbol as the Holy Spirit.

[2] This story is used as the sign of Yahshua's Messiah-ship in Math 12:40.

I cried for help, and You heard my voice.
3 For You cast me into the deep, into the heart of the seas, and the current surrounded me; all Your breakers and Your waves passed over me.
4 And I said, I am cast off from Your eyes; yet I will again look to Your holy sanctuary.
5 Waters encompassed me, even to my soul; the depth closed around me; seaweed was clinging to my head.
6 I went down to the bases of the mountains; the earth with her bars was about me forever. But You brought up my life from the pit, O YAHWEH my Elohim. *(Ps 88:4-8)*
7 When my soul fainted within me, I remembered YAHWEH; and my prayer came to You, to Your holy sanctuary.
8 Those who observe vanities of idolatry forsake their faithfulness;
9 but I will sacrifice to You with the voice of thanksgiving; I will fulfill that which I have vowed. Salvation (Y'shua*) belongs to YAHWEH!
10 And YAHWEH spoke to the fish, and it vomited Jonah out onto the dry land.

Chapter 3

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to Jonah the second time, saying,
2 Rise up, go to Nineveh, the great city, and cry out to it the proclamation that I am declaring to you.
3 And Jonah rose up and went to Nineveh according to the Word of YAHWEH. And Nineveh was a great city to Elohim, of three days' journey.
4 And Jonah began to enter a day's journey into the city. And he cried out and said, Yet forty days and Nineveh shall be overturned! *(Math 4:2)*
5 And the men of Nineveh believed in Elohim, and they called a fast and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them.
6 And the word touched even to the king of Nineveh, and he arose from his throne, and he took his robe from him and covered himself with sackcloth and sat on the ashes.
7 And he cried and said in Nineveh by the decree of the king and of his great ones, saying, Do not let man or beast, herd or flock, taste anything; do not let them feed nor let them drink water.
8 But let man and beast be covered with sackcloth. And let them call with strength to Elohim. And let them each one turn from his evil way, and from the violence that is in their hands.
9 Who knows? He may turn, and the Elohim may have pity and turn away from the glow of His anger, that we do not perish. *(Joel 2:12-14)*
10 And the Elohim saw their works, that they turned from their evil way. And the Elohim changed His mind over the evil that He had spoken to do to them, and He did not do it.
(Eze 18:21-23)

Chapter 4

1 But it was a great calamity in Jonah's sight, and it kindled anger in him.
2 And he prayed to YAHWEH, and said, Please O YAHWEH, was this not my word while I was on my own land? On account of this, I fled to Tarshish before, for I knew that You are a gracious Elohim and merciful, slow to anger, and of great grace, and One who pities over calamity.
3 And now, O YAHWEH, please take my life from me. For better is my death than my life.
4 And YAHWEH said, Is anger rightly kindled in you?
5 And Jonah went out from the city

and sat on the east of the city. And he
made there a sukkah for himself and
sat under it in the shade until he
should see what would happen in the
city.
6 And YAHWEH Elohim appointed
a plant, and it came up over Jonah to
be shade over his head, in order to
deliver him from his misery. And
Jonah rejoiced over the plant with
great joy.
7 But the Elohim appointed a worm
at the rising of the dawn of the next
day, and it struck the plant, and it
dried up.
8 And it happened when the sun
shone, Elohim had appointed a
scorching east wind; and the sun
struck Jonah's head, so that he
fainted; and he asked for his life to die.
And he said, Better is my death than
my life.
9 And Elohim said to Jonah, Is your
anger rightly kindled over the plant?
And he said, My anger is rightly
kindled, even to death.
10 And YAHWEH said, You have
had pity on the plant for which you
had not labored, nor made it grow,
which was the son of a night and
perished the son of a night,
11 and should I not have pity on
Nineveh, the great city in which are
more than a hundred and twenty
thousand men who do not know
between his right and his left hand,
and many cattle?[1]

---

1 The book of Jonah, which is read each year in the Jewish synagogue on Yom Kippur, is about great mercy and compassion that Yahweh has on all human beings and even animals. It is quite fitting that the example that Yahshua used to be the only sign of his messiahship would come from such a book showing Yahweh's love and compassion on all mankind.

Book of Micah 700 BC

Chapter 1

1 The Word of YAHWEH that was to Micah of Moresheth in the days of Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah, kings of Judah, which he saw on Samaria and Jerusalem[1]:

2 Let the peoples hear, all of them. Pay attention, O earth, and its fullness. And let Adonai YAHWEH be a witness against you, YAHWEH, from His holy sanctuary.

3 For, behold, YAHWEH is coming out of His place, and He will come down and walk on the high places of the earth.

4 And the mountains shall melt under Him, and the valleys shall cleave themselves, as wax before the fire, as waters poured out on a slope.

5 All this is against the transgression of Jacob, and against the sins of the house of Israel. What is the transgression of Jacob? Is it not Samaria? And what are the high places of Judah? Are they not Jerusalem?

6 And I will make Samaria into ruins of the field, planting places for a vineyard. And I will pour down her stones into the valley, and her foundations I will lay bare.

7 And all her carved images shall be beaten to pieces, and all her gifts for harlotry shall be burned with fire. And I will make all her idols a desolation. For she gathered it from the reward of a harlot, and they shall return to the reward of a harlot.

8 Because of this I will wail and howl; I will go stripped and naked; I will make a wailing like the jackal, yea, mourn like the daughters of an ostrich.

9 For her wounds are incurable; for it has come to Judah; it has reached to the gate of my people, to Jerusalem.

10 Do not declare it in Gath; surely, do not weep. In the house of Leaphrah wallow in dust.

11 Pass over to them, O one living in Shaphir, in nakedness of shame. The one living in Zaanan has not gone out; the mourning of Beth-Ezel shall take from you its place of standing.

12 For be grieved for good, the one living in Maroth, for evil came down from YAHWEH to the gate of Jerusalem.

13 One living in Lachish, tie the chariot to the stallion; she is the beginning of sin to the daughter of Zion, for the transgressions of Israel were found in you.

14 So you shall give parting gifts to Moresheth-Gath. The houses of Achzib are for a lying thing to the kings of Israel.

15 I will bring an heir to you again, O one living in Mareshah. The glory of Israel shall come to Adullam[2].

16 Make yourself bald, and cut off your hair for the sons of your delight. Make your baldness increase like the eagle, for they go into exile from you.

Chapter 2

1 Woe to those plotting wickedness and preparing evil on their beds! In the light of the morning they practice it, because it is in the power of their hand.

2 And they covet and seize fields and houses, and carry them away. And

---

1 Whereas Hosea prophesied to Ephraim, the northern tribes of Israel; Micah prophesied to the common people of Judah in around 700 B.C.

2 Verses 10-16, Micah traces the route of the invading army from the coastal plain of the Philistines through the Judean Hills to Jerusalem.

they oppress a man and his household,
even a man and his inheritance.
3 So YAHWEH says this: Behold, I
am plotting an evil against this family,
from which you shall not remove your
necks; nor shall you go exalted, for it is
an evil time.
4 In that day one shall lift up a
parable against you and lament a
lament of lamenting. He says, surely,
we shall be destroyed. He has
exchanged the portion of my people.
How He has removed it for me! To the
apostate He has divided the fields.
5 So there shall not be for you one
casting a line by lot in the
congregation of YAHWEH.
6 Do not drop words as they drop!
They shall not drop words about these;
they shall not draw back reproaches.
7 House of Jacob, it is said, The
Spirit of YAHWEH is limited, if these
are His doings. Do not My Words do
good with the one who walks upright?
8 Even yesterday My people have
risen up like an enemy. You strip off
an inner robe from before an outer
garment, from those who pass by
confidently, those returning from war.
9 You have thrown the wives of My
people out from the house of her
delight; you have taken away My
majesty forever from her children.
10 Arise and go! For this is not your
rest, because of uncleanness, it shall
destroy you, even a painful
destruction.
11 If a man walks with wind, and he
lies in deceit, saying, I will drop words
to you for wine and for fermented
drink, he shall even be a dropper of
words for this people.
12 Surely, I will gather Jacob;Surely,
I will gather all of you, the remnant of
Israel. I will set him together like the
sheep of Bozrah, like a flock in the
midst of its fold. They shall be in
commotion because of men.*(Is 63:1-6)*
13 He breaking up has come before
them; they have broken up and have
passed through the gate and have gone
out of it. And their king shall pass
before them, and YAHWEH at their
head[1].

Chapter 3

1 And I said, Heads of Jacob and
magistrates of the house of Israel,
please hear. Is it not for you to know
justice?
2 Those hating good and loving evil,
who pull their skin off them, and their
flesh from their bones;
3 who also eat the flesh of My
people, and cause their skin to come
off from them; yea, they break their
bones and shatter, like that in the pot,
and as flesh in the midst of the kettle.
4 Then they shall cry out to
YAHWEH, but He will not answer
them. He will even hide His face from
them in that time, as they have done
evil in their doings.
5 Thus says YAHWEH concerning
the prophets those causing My people
to err, who bite with their teeth and
call out, Peace! And whoever does not
give for their mouth, they even
sanctify a war against him.
6 So a night shall be for you apart
from vision; and darkness apart from
divining. And the sun shall go down on
the prophets, and the day shall be dark
over them.
7 And the seers shall be ashamed,
and those divining shall blush, all of
them; yea, they shall cover over their
mustache, for there is no answer from
Elohim.

---
[1] A prophecy predicting the return of the captives by the Messiah.

8 But I am full of power by the Spirit
of YAHWEH and also justice and
might, to declare to Jacob his
transgression, and his sin to Israel.
9 Please hear this, heads of the
house of Jacob, and magistrates of the
house of Israel, those who abhor
justice and pervert all uprightness,
10 those building up Zion with blood
and Jerusalem with iniquity:
11 Her leaders judge for a bribe, and
her priests teach for pay, and her
prophets divine for silver; yet they will
lean on YAHWEH, saying, is not
YAHWEH among us? No evil shall
come on us! *(Mal 2:7-8, Jer 5:31)*
12 Therefore, on account of you,
Zion shall be plowed as a field, and
Jerusalem shall become heaps, and
the mountain of the house into high
places of the forest.

Chapter 4

1 But it shall be in the end of the
days, the mountain of the house of
YAHWEH shall be established on the
top of the mountains; and it shall be
lifted up from the hills; and peoples
shall flow on it.
2 And many nations shall come and
say, Come, and let us go up to the
mountain of YAHWEH, and to the
house of the Elohim of Jacob. And He
will teach us from His ways, and we
will walk in His paths. For the Torah
shall go forth out of Zion, and the
Word of YAHWEH from Jerusalem.
3 And He shall judge between many
peoples, and will decide for strong
nations afar off. And they shall beat
their swords into plowshares, and
their spears into pruning hooks.
Nation shall not lift up a sword against
nation, nor shall they learn war
anymore[1].
4 But they shall each one sit under
his vine and under his fig tree, and
there shall be no trembling. For the
mouth of YAHWEH of Hosts has
spoken. *(Is 65:21)*
5 For all the peoples walk, each one
in the name of his Elohim; but we will
walk in the name of YAHWEH our
Elohim forever and ever.
6 In that day I will gather the lame,
declares YAHWEH, and I will gather
the banished, and the one I have
afflicted. *(Is 35:6, Jer 31:8)*
7 And I will make the lame into a
remnant, and her who was removed
into a strong nation. And YAHWEH
shall reign over them in Mount Zion
from now on, and to forever.
8 And you, tower of the flock, the
hill[2] of the daughter of Zion, it shall
happen to you. And the dominion of
the chief ones shall come, the kingdom
of the daughter of Jerusalem[3].
9 Now why do you cry aloud, an
outcry? Is there not a king among you?

---

1 Verses 1-3, The Torah was an integral part of the covenant of Israel and violation of the Torah brought national destruction (Is 24:1-6). Here in the end time, when the kingdom is set up, it is shown that the Torah will be re-instituted and all people will respect and obey it to have lasting peace. Jerusalem is also YHWH's eternal capital from where the Torah is preached from Ps 132:13-14, Ps 122: 1 Kgs 14:21, Ps 135:21, Joel 2:32, 3:17, 21, Jer 3:17. Is 2:4, Zech 9:10, Ps 46:8,9

2 The Hebrew word is Ophel, the place that Yahweh's sanctuary was built and showing it was on Mount Zion.

3 Verses 1-8 show the millennial blessings that Israel will receive when she is redeemed.

Has your adviser perished? For pangs have seized you like one giving birth.
10 Be in pain and deliver, daughter of Zion, like one giving birth. For now you shall go out from the city, and you shall live in the field. And you shall come to Babylon. There you shall be delivered. There YAHWEH shall redeem you from the hand of your enemies[1].
11 Now also many nations are gathered against you, saying, Let her be defiled, and let our eyes look on Zion.
12 But they do not know the plans of YAHWEH, nor do they understand His counsel. For He has gathered them like the sheaf to the threshing floor.
13 Rise up and thresh, O daughter of Zion, for I will make your horn iron, and I will make your hoofs copper, and you shall crush many peoples. And I will devote their gain to YAHWEH, and their wealth to the Master of all the earth[2].

Chapter 5

1 Now gather yourself in troops, daughter of a troop; one sets a siege against us. They shall strike the Judge of Israel with a rod on the cheek.
2 And you, Bethlehem Ephratah, being least among the thousands of Judah, out of you He shall come forth to Me to become One ruling in Israel; and His goings forth[3] have been from of old, from the days of eternity[4].
3 Therefore, He will give them over until the time the one giving birth has given birth. Then the rest of His brothers shall return to the sons of Israel. *(Ezek 36:24-28, Jer 31:1, 30:3)*
4 And He shall stand and pasture us in the strength of YAHWEH, in the majesty of the name of YAHWEH His Elohim[5]. And they shall dwell securely, for now He is great to the ends of the earth. (*Ezek 38:8)*
5 And this One shall be peace. When Assyria shall come into our land, and when he shall walk in our palaces, then we shall raise against him seven shepherds and eight princes of man.
6 And they shall depasture the land of Assyria with the sword, and the land of Nimrod at her entrances. And He shall deliver us from Assyria, when he comes into our land, and when he treads within our border.
7 And the remnant of Jacob shall be in the midst of many peoples as dew from YAHWEH, as showers on a blade of grass, which does not wait for man, nor delay for the sons of men.
8 And the remnant of Jacob shall be among the nations, in the midst of many peoples, like a lion among the beasts of the forest, like a young lion among the flocks of sheep (who both

---

1 It was prophesied that Israel would go to Babylon (Jere 29:4-10), but also that He would rescue them after 70 yrs.

2 Verses 11-13, Even after YHWH brings Israel back to their homeland in the end time, the nations still will not see YHWH's blessing on them and will be punished for their treatment of Israel in the latter days.

3 The Hebrew here has military connotations.

4 The Messiah is prophesied to be born in Bethlehem, the city of king David and He is Elohim and eternal as "*His goings forth have been from the days of eternity*". In the Hebrew "*H'Olam*", the strongest wording possible to show He has no beginning but is an eternal being. Ps 90:2, Heb 7:3

5 Even though the Messiah is eternal (verse 2) we see that Yahweh is His Elohim; again showing a duality to the one YAHWEH family.

tramples and tears in pieces if he
passes through) and there is no one to
deliver.
9 Your hands shall be high above
your foes, and all your enemies shall
be cut off.
10 And it shall be in that day, I will
cut off your horses out of your midst,
and I will destroy your chariots,
declares YAHWEH.
11 And I will cut off the cities of your
land and pull down all your fortresses.
12 And I will cut off sorceries out of
your hand, and there shall not be
sorcerers among you.
13 And I also will cut off your graven
images and your pillars from your
midst. And you shall not any more
worship the work of your hands.
14 And I will pluck your shrines from
your midst, and I will destroy your
cities.
15 And I will execute vengeance in
anger and in fury on the nations, such
as they have not heard.

Chapter 6

1 Hear now what YAHWEH says:
Rise up, contend with the mountains,
and let the hills hear your voice.
2 Mountains, and you enduring
foundations of the earth, hear the
contention of YAHWEH, for
YAHWEH has a quarrel with His
people, and He will dispute with
Israel.
3 My people, what have I done to
you? And how have I made you weary?
Answer against Me.
4 For I brought you up out of the
land of Egypt and redeemed you out of
the house of slaves; and I sent Moses,
Aaron, and Miriam before you.
5 My people, remember now what
Balak, king of Moab, planned; and
what Balaam, the son of Beor,
answered him from Shittim to Gilgal[1],
so that you may know the
righteousness of YAHWEH.
6 With what shall I come before
YAHWEH, to bow myself before the
loftiness of Elohim? Shall I come
before Him with burnt offerings, with
calves, sons of a year?
7 Will YAHWEH be pleased with
thousands of rams, with ten thousands
of torrents of oil? Shall I give my first-
born for my transgression, the fruit of
my body for the sin of my soul?[2]
8 O man, He has declared to you
what is good. And what does
YAHWEH require of you, but to do
justice, and to love grace, and to walk
humbly with your Elohim? *(Deut
10:12, Jac 4:6-7)*
9 The voice of YAHWEH calls out to
the city; and one of sound wisdom will
see Your name. Hear the rod, and Him
who appointed it.
10 Are there yet in the house of the
wicked the treasures of wickedness,
and a cursed ephah of leanness?
11 Shall I declare wicked balances to
be pure, or a bag of stones of fraud?[3]
12 For her rich ones are full of
violence, and ones living in her speak a
lie, and their tongue is deceit in their
mouth.
13 And I also have made you sick, to
strike you, making you desolate
because of your sins.
14 You shall eat, but not be satisfied,
and your hunger shall be in your
midst; and you will move back, but
shall not keep safe; and that which you

---

[1] Shittim was the last camp of the Israelites east of the Jordan River and Gilgal was the first camp in Israel after passing the Jordan.

[2] It is a rhetorical question but child sacrifice was actually being done at this time.

[3] Pr 20:10, Pr 11:1, Deut 25:13-16

do save, I will give to the sword. *(Hag 1:6)*

15 You shall sow, but you shall not reap. You shall tread the olive, but you shall not anoint with oil; and also new wine, but you shall not drink wine.

16 And one has kept himself as to the statutes of Omri and all the works of the house of Ahab. And you walk in their counsels, so that I may give you for a horror, and her inhabitants for a hissing. And you shall bear the disgrace of My people. *(1Kg 16:25, 30)*

Chapter 7

1 Woe to me! For I am like the gatherings of ripe fruit, like the gleanings of the vintage. There is no cluster to eat; my soul desires the early fig. *(Amos 8:1)*

2 The pious has perished from the earth, and the upright is not among mankind. All of them lie in wait for blood; each one hunts his brother with a net.

3 Both hands are on evil, to do it well. The ruler is asking for a bribe, also the judge. And the great one speaks the lust of his soul; he acts, and they weave it together. *(Amos 5:12 Eze 22:12)*

4 The best of them is like a thorn; the upright more than a hedge of thorns. The day of your watchers, your visitation is coming; now shall be their confusion.

5 Put no faith in a companion; put no trust in a friend; guard the door of your mouth from her who lies in your bosom; *(Jer 9:4)*

6 for a son despises his father; a daughter rises up against her mother; the daughter-in-law against her mother-in-law; a man's enemies are the men of his house. *(Math 10:36)*

7 But I will look to YAHWEH; I will wait for the Elohim of my salvation *(Y'shua*)*. My Elohim will hear me.

8 Rejoice not against me, my enemy; for if I fall, I shall arise. For if I sit in darkness, YAHWEH is a light to me.

9 I will bear the rage of YAHWEH because I have sinned against Him, until He contends my case and brings forth justice for me. He will bring me out to the light; I shall see His righteousness.

10 And my enemy shall see; and shame shall cover her, the one saying to me, Where is He, YAHWEH your Elohim? My eyes shall see her. Now she shall be for a trampling, as the mud of the streets.

11 A day of building your stone walls, that day the limit shall be far removed.

12 That day he shall come even to you from Assyria and the besieged cities, and from the siege even to the River, and from sea to sea, and mountain to mountain.

13 But the land shall become a desolation because of those dwelling in it, from the fruit of their doings.

14 Pasture Your people with Your rod, the flock of Your possession, dwelling alone in the thicket, amidst Carmel. Let them pasture in Bashan and Gilead, as in days of old.

15 As the days of your coming out from the land of Egypt, I will cause him to see extraordinary things.

16 The nations shall see and be ashamed from all their might. They shall set the hand on their mouth; their ears shall be deaf.

17 They shall lick the dust like a snake; they shall tremble out of their holes like crawlers of the earth; they shall dread YAHWEH our Elohim; they shall fear from You.

18 Who is an El like You, forgiving

iniquity and passing by the
transgression of the remnant of His
possession? He does not make strong
His anger forever, for He desires
grace. *(Ps 103:8-12)*
19 He will return to show us mercy;
He will trample our iniquities. Yea,
You will cast all their sins into the
depths of the sea.
20 You will give faithfulness to
Jacob, kindness to Abraham, which
You have sworn to our fathers from
the days of old[1].

---

[1] Verses 18-20 is showing the wonderful redemptive work that Yahweh will always accomplish in spite of mankind's failures.

Book of Nahum 663-612 BC

Chapter 1

1 The burden of Nineveh: The book
of the vision of Nahum the Elkoshite[1].
2 Elohim is jealous, and YAHWEH
is avenging, YAHWEH is avenging
and is a possessor of wrath.
YAHWEH takes vengeance against
His foes, and He keeps wrath against
His enemies.
3 YAHWEH takes long to anger, and
is great of power, and He does not by
any means acquit the guilty[2].
YAHWEH is in the whirlwind and has
His way in the storm, and the clouds
are the dust of His feet.
4 He rebukes the sea and makes it
dry, and dries up the rivers. Bashan
and Carmel wither, and the flower of
Lebanon withers.
5 The mountains quake because of
Him, and the hills melt; and the earth
is lifted up from before Him, even the
world and all who dwell in it.
6 Who can stand before His fury?
And who can rise against the heat of
His anger? His wrath is poured out
like fire, and the rocks are broken
down because of Him.
7 YAHWEH is good for a stronghold
in the day of distress; and He knows
those who trust in Him.
8 But with a flood passing through,
He will make a complete end of its
place, and darkness shall pursue His
enemies.
9 What are you plotting against
YAHWEH? He will make a complete
destruction; distress shall not rise up a
second time.
10 For as thorns are woven together,
and as their drunkards are drunken,
they shall be devoured like fully dried
straw.
11 One who plots evil against
YAHWEH has come forth out from
you, one counseling worthlessness.
12 So says YAHWEH, Though
secure, and so many, yet they will be
cut off and will vanish. And though I
have afflicted you, I will not afflict you
any more.
13 And now I will break his yoke
from on you and will tear away your
bonds.
14 And YAHWEH has commanded
concerning you. Not one of your name
shall be sown any more; I will cut off
the carved image and the molten
image out of the house of your gods; I
will appoint your grave, for you are
despised.
15 Behold! The feet of Him bearing
good news is on the mountains,
making heard, Peace! O Judah,
celebrate your feasts; fulfill your vows;
for the worthless will not continue to
pass through among you; he is
completely cut off. *(Is 52:7, Ro 10:15)*

Chapter 2

1 The one scattering is coming up
against your face. Guard the rampart;
watch the way; make the loins strong,
firm up your power exceedingly.
2 For YAHWEH has turned the
glory of Jacob as the glory of Israel.
For the plunderers have emptied them
and have destroyed their vine
branches.
3 The shield of his mighty ones has
become red, the mighty men are
clothed in scarlet, the chariots will
flame like iron torches in the day of
preparation, and the cypresses are
made to quiver.
4 The chariots run madly in the
streets; they shall rush to and fro in

---

1 The warning sent by the prophet Jonah almost 100 yrs earlier would shortly be taking place due to Nineveh's continued sin.

2 Yahweh has great mercy and compassion, but will not acquit the guilty without true repentance.

the plazas. Their appearance is like
torches; they dart about like the
lightning.
5 He shall remember its nobles; they
shall stumble in their walking; they
shall hurry to its wall, and the covering
shall be set up.
6 The gates of the rivers shall be
opened, and the palace shall be
melted.
7 And she who stood firm is
uncovered and caused to go away; and
her slave-girls are moaning like the
sound of doves, beating on their
breast.
8 And Nineveh is like a pool of water
from her days; yet they are fleeing.
They cry, Stand! Stand! But no one
turns himself.
9 Plunder the silver! Plunder the
gold! For there is no end to the
treasures, riches from all precious
objects.
10 She is empty, even waste, even
devastated. And the heart is melted,
and the knees knocking; and
trembling is in all the loins; and all of
their faces collect heat.
11 Where is the den of the lions and
the feeding place of the young lions,
where the lion, and the lioness, and
the lion's cub walked, and none shall
terrify them?
12 The lion tears in pieces, enough
for his cubs, and strangles for his
lionesses, and has filled his holes with
prey, even his lairs with torn prey.
13 Behold, I am against you, declares
YAHWEH of Hosts; and I will burn
her chariots in the smoke, and the
sword shall devour your young lions.
And I will cut off your prey from the
earth, and the voice of your
messengers shall not be heard any
more.

Chapter 3

1 Woe to the bloody city! All of it is a
lie, all of plunder; the prey is not
withdrawn.
2 The sound of a whip, and the
sound of rattling of a wheel, and a
galloping horse, and of a bounding
chariot.
3 The horseman lifts up both the
gleam of the sword and the lightning
of the spear, and many are slain, and
there are a mass of dead bodies, and
no end of corpses; they stumble on
their dead bodies,
4 because of the many harlotries of
the well favored harlot, the mistress of
sorceries who sells nations by her
harlotries, and families by her
sorceries.
5 Behold, I am against you, declares
YAHWEH of Hosts, and I will
uncover your skirts over your face, and
I will cause the nations to see your
nakedness, and the kingdoms your
shame.
6 And I will cast filth on you and will
disgrace you. And I will set you as a
spectacle.
7 And it shall be that all those who
look on you shall flee from you and
shall say, Nineveh is laid waste; who
shall weep for her? From where shall I
seek comforters for you?
8 Are you better than No Amon that
dwelt among the Nile branches, waters
surrounding her, whose rampart was
the sea, the waters her wall?
9 Ethiopia and Egypt were her
strength, yea, without end; Put and
Lubim were among your helpers.
10 Yet she went into exile; she went
into captivity. Also her young ones
were dashed to pieces at the head of all
the streets, and they cast lots for her
honored ones, and all her great ones
were bound in chains.
11 You also shall be drunken; you

shall be hidden; you also shall seek a
fortress from the enemy.
12 All your fortresses are fig trees
with the first-fruits; if they are shaken,
then they shall fall on the mouth of the
eater.
13 Behold, your people are women in
your midst; the gates of your land shall
surely be opened to your enemies; the
fire shall devour your bars.
14 Draw water of the siege for you!
Strengthen your fortifications! Go into
the clay and tread in the mortar! Make
the mold strong!
15 Fire will completely devour you
there. The sword shall cut you off. It
will eat you up like the locust larvae.
Make yourself as many as the larvae;
multiply yourself like the locusts.
16 You have increased your
merchants above the stars of the
heavens; the locust larvae shall strip
off and fly away.
17 Your princes are like the locusts,
and your officials are a swarm of
locusts that camp in the hedges in the
cold day. The sun rises and they flee,
and the place where they are is not
known.
18 Your shepherds slumber, O king
of Assyria; your nobles are lying down.
Your people are scattered on the
mountains, and no one is gathering.
19 There is no healing for your
fracture; your wound is severe. All
who hear of your report shall clap the
hand over you, for on whom has your
wickedness not continually passed?

Book of Habakkuk 607 BC

Chapter 1

1 The burden which Habakkuk the prophet saw[1]:

2 O YAHWEH, until when shall I cry for help, and You will not hear? I cry out to You, Violence! But You do not save.

3 Why do You make me see evil, and You look upon toil? For destruction and violence are before me; and there is strife, and contention rises up.

4 On account of this the Torah has become helpless, and justice does not continually go forth. For the wicked surrounds the righteous, so justice goes forth, being perverted[2].

5 Look among the nations and behold, and be amazed. Be amazed! For a work is working in your days which you will not believe, though it be told to you[3].

6 For, behold, I raise up the Chaldeans, the bitter and impetuous nation which is going into the broad spaces of the land, to possess dwellings not his own.

7 He is terrible and fearful; his judgment and his glory goes forth from himself.

8 His horses also are swifter than leopards and are fiercer than the evening wolves. And their horsemen spread themselves; yea, their horsemen come from afar; they shall fly as the eagle hurrying to eat.

9 All of him shall come for violence; the gathering of their faces is forward; and they gather captives like the sand[4].

10 And he shall scoff against the kings, and officials shall be a scorn to him. He shall scorn every fortress, and he shall heap up dirt and capture it.

11 Then he sweeps on like a wind; and he passes on and is guilty, crediting this power of his to his god[5].

12 Are You not from of old, YAHWEH our Elohim, my Holy One? We shall not die, YAHWEH, for You have appointed him for judgment. And, my Rock, You have established him for correction.

13 You are of purer eyes than to behold evil, and You are not able to look upon vexation. Why do you look on those who deal deceitfully? Will You be silent when the wicked swallows one more righteous than he?

14 For You make man like the fish of the sea, like creeping things with no ruler over him.

15 He takes up all of him with the hook; he drags him with his net and gathers him with his fishnet. On account of this he rejoices and exults.

16 So he sacrifices to his net, and burns incense to his fishnet; because by them his portion is fat, and his food rich.

17 Shall he therefore empty his net, and shall he not spare to continually slay nations?[6]

---

1 Habakkuk was a contemporary of Jeremiah.

2 Verses 2-4, things have gotten so morally corrupt that the Torah had become irrelevant due to the people ignoring it and no punishment seemed imminent.

3 YHWH's answer is that the people must have patience as YHWH will be doing an amazing work at this time.

4 This happened in the dessert storm war, where 500,000 soldiers where captured.

5 Verses 6-11 is describing end time Babylon who due to their military and economic power they literally mock other world leaders who try to get in their way. On the US dollar it states in "*god we trust*". Gawd was the Babylonian deity of fortune who was relied on for wealth and prosperity.

6 End time Babylon will conquer any nation that she sees as a threat to her and since she is the only world superpower (Jer 50:23) no one can do much to stop her vs 10.

Chapter 2

1 I will stand on my guard and set
myself on the tower, and watch to see
what He will say against me, and what
I shall return on my rebuke.
2 And YAHWEH answered me and
said, Write the vision and engrave it
on the tablets, that he who reads it
may run.
3 For the vision is still for the
appointed time, but it kindles to the
end, and it does not lie. Though it
delays, wait for it, because surely, it
will come; it will not tarry.
4 Behold, the soul of him is puffed
up and is not upright; but the just shall
live by his faith.
5 And also, wine indeed betrays a
proud man, and he dwells not at
home; who widens his soul like Sheol.
And he is like death, and is not
satisfied, but gathers all the nations to
himself, and collects all the peoples to
himself.
6 Shall not all of these lift up a
parable against him, and a mocking
riddle to him, and say, Woe to him
who increases what is not his! Until
when, then, shall he load the pledges
on himself?
7 Shall not those who bite you rise up
suddenly, and those who shake you be
aroused, and you become a prize to
him?
8 Because you have plundered many
nations, all the rest of the people shall
plunder you, because of the blood of
men and the violence of the land, and
the city, and all those dwelling in it.
9 Woe to him who robs evil booty for
his house, to set his nest on high, to be
snatched from the hand of evil!
10 You have advised shame for your
house, to make an end of many
peoples, and are sinning in your soul.
11 For the stone shall cry out from
the wall, and the beam shall answer it
from the wood.
12 Woe to him who builds a town
with blood and establishes a city by
iniquity!
13 Behold, is it not for YAHWEH of
Hosts that the people labor only for
fire? Yea, nations weary themselves
only for vanity.
14 For the earth shall be filled with
the knowledge of the glory of
YAHWEH, as the waters cover the
sea.
(Is 11:9)
15 Woe to him who causes his friend
to drink, pouring out your wineskin,
and also making him drunk, in order
to look upon their nakedness![1]
16 You are filled with shame instead
of glory; you drink also, and will be
seen as uncircumcised. The cup of the
right hand of YAHWEH shall turn on
you, and disgrace shall be your glory[2].
17 For the violence[3] of Lebanon shall
cover you, and the ruin of beasts shall
terrify them because of the blood of
men and the violence of the land, the
city, and all those dwelling in it.
18 What does an image profit, for its
maker has carved it; a molten image,
and a teacher of falsehood? For does
the maker trust in his work on it, to
make mute idols?
19 Woe to him who says to the wood,
Awake! To a mute stone, Rise up, it
shall teach! Behold, it is overlaid with
gold and silver, but no breath is in its
midst.[4]
20 But YAHWEH is in His holy

---

[1] A Hebrew idiom rebuking Babylon for luring her allies into a state of security only to strip them later of their wealth and freedom.

[2] Jer 51:7, Rev 17:4

[3] The Hebrew word for violence here is Hamas.

sanctuary; let all the earth be silent before Him[1].

Chapter 3

1 A prayer of Habakkuk the prophet concerning erring ones[2]:
2 YAHWEH, I have heard Your report; I am afraid, YAHWEH. Give new life to Your work in the midst of years, in the midst of years make known; in anger remember compassion.
3 Elohim comes from Teman, and the Holy One from Mount Paran. Selah. His majesty covers the heavens, and His praise fills the earth. *(Is 63:1)*
4 And His brightness is as the light; rays from His hand are His, and there was a covering of His strength.
5 A plague goes before Him, and lightning went forth at His feet.
6 He stood and measured the earth; He looked and shook nations; and the ancient mountains were shattered; the eternal hills bowed down. The goings of eternity are His. *(Mic 5:2)*
7 I saw the tents of Cushan under iniquity; the curtains of the land of Midian trembled.
8 Did YAHWEH burn against rivers? Or was Your anger against the rivers? Or Your fury against the sea? For You ride on horses; Your chariots of Y'shua*.
9 You bare Your bow, naked according to the oaths of the tribes of Your Word. Selah. You have cut through the earth with rivers.
10 They saw You; mountains whirled. The storm of water gushed. The deep gave its voice and lifted up its hands on high.
11 The sun and moon stood still in their dwelling. At the light of Your arrows they go, at the shining of Your gleaming spear. *(Jos 10:12-13)*
12 You go into the land in fury. You thresh nations in anger.
13 You went forth for the salvation of Your people, for Y'shua* (Aleph/Tav) Your Messiah. You struck the head from the house of the wicked to bare the foundation to the neck. Selah.
14 You pierced the head of his warriors with his shafts. They rush to scatter me; their rejoicing is to devour the humble in a secret place.
15 You trod in the sea with Your horses, the surging of many waters.
16 I heard, and my belly trembled; my lips quivered at the sound. Rottenness entered into my bones, and I trembled within myself that I might rest for the day of distress; to come up against the peoples; he cuts him off.
17 Though the fig tree shall not blossom, and fruit is not on the vines; the work of the olive fails, and the fields make no food; the flock is cut off from the fold, and no herd is in the stalls,
18 yet I will exult in YAHWEH; I will rejoice in the Elohim of Y'shua*.
19 YAHWEH, Adonai is my might,

---

4 Verses 18-19, Babylon has become the land of idolatry (Jer 50:38); not only does she worship idols but the very lifestyle of Babylon has become idolatrous and an abomination to YHWH. For this reason YHWH gives 7 direct commands for His people to leave Babylon before He will totally destroy it (Rev 18:4, Jer 51:45).

1 As where Babylon will be completely destroyed, YHWH's dwelling place is in Jerusalem, Joel 2:32, Joel 3:16-17, 21.

2 Chapter 3 is a prophetic account given by Habakkuk showing the return to earth of Yahshua and the kingdom about to be set up. YHWH starts in verse 1 :5 telling Habakkuk that *"He will work a work in this end time that would be so great he almost could not believe it",* and here He is giving the fruition of that work with the return of Messiah to the earth.

and He sets my feet like hinds' feet, and He will make me to walk on my high places. To the chief singer, on my stringed instruments.

Book of Zephaniah 625 BC

Chapter 1

1 The Word of YAHWEH which was
to Zephaniah the son of Cushi, the son
of Gedaliah, the son of Amariah, the
son of Hezekiah, in the days of Josiah
the son of Amon, king of Judah[1]:
2 I will completely consume all from
on the face of the ground, declares
YAHWEH.
3 I will gather away man and beast: I
will gather away the birds of the
heavens and the fish of the sea, and
the stumbling-blocks, even the wicked.
And I will cut off man from the face of
the ground, declares YAHWEH.
4 I will also stretch out My hand on
Judah and on all those dwelling in
Jerusalem. And I will cut off the
remnant of Baal from this place, the
name of the idol worshipers, with the
priests;
5 and those bowing to the host of the
heavens on the housetops; and those
bowing, swearing to YAHWEH, also
swearing by Malcham,
6 and those drawing back from after
YAHWEH, and who have not sought
YAHWEH, nor asked of Him.
7 Be silent before the face of Adonai
YAHWEH, for the day of YAHWEH
is near.[2] For YAHWEH has appointed
a sacrifice; He has consecrated ones
He called.
8 And it shall be in the day of the
sacrifice of YAHWEH, I will punish
the rulers and the king's sons, and all
those clothed in foreign clothing.
9 And I will punish all those who
leap on the threshold in that day, who
fill their masters' houses with violence
and deceit.
10 And it shall be in that day,
declares YAHWEH, the sound of a cry
from the Fish Gate, and a howling
from the Second, and a great breaking
from the hills.
11 Howl, those living in Maktesh, for
all the people of Canaan have
perished; all those carrying silver are
cut off.
12 And it shall be in that time, I will
search Jerusalem with lamps, and
punish the men being settled on their
lees[3]; who say in their heart,
YAHWEH will not do good, nor will
He do evil.
13 And their goods shall become a
prize, and their houses a waste. They
shall also build houses, but not live
there. And they shall plant vineyards,
but not drink their wine[4].
14 The Great Day of YAHWEH is
near; It is near and rushing greatly,
the sound of the day of YAHWEH.
The mighty man shall cry out bitterly
there.
15 That day is a day of wrath, a day
of trouble and distress, a day of waste
and ruin, a day of darkness and gloom,
a day of clouds and thick darkness[5],
16 a day of the ram's horn and alarm
against the fortified cities, and against
the high towers.

---

1 Zephaniah, which means *" Yahweh will hide"* was a prophet of noble birth and the great grandson of king Hezekiah.

2 Although the book is written about Judah's soon coming captivity, the underlining message throughout the book is the end time period called " *The Day of YHWH"*. Many prophecies are written this way with dual fulfillments.

3 "Lees'- The Hebrew word Shemer means something preserved as the settlings of wine. Meaning they think everything will continue as is without YHWH's intervention for the sin being done.

4 Elohim is showing the great contrast to His wrath in the end time, where there will be famine, pestilence and death everywhere on earth; to the joy of His kingdom when all people will enjoy the fruit of their labor, Is 65:21-24.

5 Verses 14-15, Clearly referencing the end time, Amos 5:18-20, Joel 2:1-2.

17 And I will bring distress to men, and they shall walk like the blind, because they have sinned against YAHWEH. And their blood shall be poured out as dust, and their flesh like dung.
18 Their silver and their gold shall not be able to deliver them in the day of the wrath of YAHWEH. But all the earth shall be consumed by the fire of His jealousy. For He shall make a complete, yea, a speedy end of all those living in the earth. *(Eze 7:19, Jer 25:31)*

Chapter 2

1 Gather yourselves, even gather, O nation not being longed for;
2 before the birth of the decree, the day shall pass like the chaff, yet not before the hot anger of YAHWEH comes on you, yet not before the day of the anger of YAHWEH comes on you.
3 Seek YAHWEH, all the meek of the earth who have done His justice; seek righteousness; seek meekness. It may be you shall be hidden in the day of the anger of YAHWEH.
4 For Gaza shall be forsaken, and Ashkelon a desolation. They shall drive Ashdod out at the noonday, and Ekron shall be rooted up.
5 Woe to those living in the seacoast, the nation of the Cherethites![1] The Word of YAHWEH is against you, Canaan, the land of the Philistines; I will destroy you so there shall not be an inhabitant.
6 And the seacoast shall be pastures, meadows of shepherds, and folds for the flock.
7 And the coast shall be for the remnant of the house of Judah; they shall feed on them. In the houses of Ashkelon, they shall lie down in the evening, for YAHWEH their Elohim shall visit them and return their captivity.
8 I have heard the contempt of Moab, and the curses of the sons of Ammon, with which they have reviled My people and have magnified themselves on their border.
9 Therefore, as I live, declares YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel, surely Moab shall be as Sodom, and the sons of Ammon like Gomorrah, a possession of nettles, and a pit of salt, and a ruin forever. The remnant of My people shall plunder them, and the rest of the nation shall possess them.
10 They shall have this for their pride, because they have cursed and magnified themselves against the people of YAHWEH of Hosts[2].
11 YAHWEH will be frightening to them, for He will famish all the gods of the earth. Each man from his place and all the coastlands of the nations will bow to Him.
12 You also, O Ethiopians, shall be pierced by My sword.
13 And He will stretch out His hand against the north, and destroy Assyria, and will make Nineveh a desolation, dry like the desert.
14 And flocks shall lie down in her midst; all the beasts of a nation; both the pelican and the bittern shall lodge in the capitals of its pillars. A voice shall sing at the window; ruin shall be at the doorsill; for the cedar work He will bare.
15 This is the joyful city, dwelling confidently, who says in her heart, I am, and there is yet no other. How she has become a ruin, a resting place for

[1] These were occupants of the southern coast of the Philistines who had their roots in Crete.

[2] It is a common theme in the end time to see the nations around Israel being cursed for their treatment of her and their continual threat to try to destroy her.

animals! Everyone who passes near
her shall hiss; he shall shake his hand!

Chapter 3

1 Woe to her rebelling and being
defiled, to the oppressing city!
2 She did not listen to the voice; she
did not receive correction; she did not
trust in YAHWEH; she did not draw
near to her Elohim.
3 Her rulers within her are roaring
lions; her judges are evening wolves;
they do not gnaw bones for the
morning.
4 Her prophets are proud, men of
deceit; her priests have profaned the
sanctuary; they have done violence to
the Torah.
5 The righteous YAHWEH is in her
midst; He will not act perversely.
Every morning He gives His justice to
the light; He does not fail, but the
unjust knows no shame.
6 I have cut off nations; their towers
are ruined. I made their streets waste,
so that none passes by. Their cities are
laid waste, without a man, from there
being not one living there.
7 I said, Surely you will fear Me; you
will receive instruction; then her
dwelling shall not be cut off, all that I
appointed for her. But they rose up
early; they corrupted all their doings.
8 Therefore, wait for Me, declares
YAHWEH, for the day I rise up to the
prey. For My judgment is to gather the
nations, for Me to gather the
kingdoms, to pour My fury out on
them, all My hot anger. For all the
earth shall be burned up with the fire
of My jealousy. *(Ps 79:6, Rev 16:1)*
9 For then I will give a clear lip to the
peoples, to call all of them by the name
of YAHWEH, to serve Him with one
shoulder[1].
10 From beyond the rivers of
Ethiopia, My worshipers, the daughter
of My scattered ones, shall bring My
food offering.
11 In that day you shall not be
ashamed from all your doings in which
you have transgressed against Me. For
then I will take away those who rejoice
in your pride out of your midst, and
you shall not again be proud[2] any
more in My holy mountain.
12 I will also leave a people, poor and
weak in your midst, and they shall
trust in the name of YAHWEH.
13 The remnant of Israel shall not do
injustice, nor speak lies. And a
deceitful tongue shall not be found in
their mouth. For they shall feed and lie
down, and no one shall frighten them.
14 Shout for joy, daughter of Zion;
shout, Israel! Be glad and rejoice with
all the heart, daughter of Jerusalem!
15 YAHWEH has turned off your
judgments; He has turned away your
enemy. YAHWEH, the King of Israel,
is in your midst; you shall not fear evil
any more.
16 In that day it shall be said to
Jerusalem, Fear not! Zion, do not let
your hands droop.
17 YAHWEH your Elohim is mighty
in your midst; He will save *(Y'shua*)*,
He will rejoice over you with joy; He is

---

1 "*clear lip*" or a pure language. The original Hebrew language is implied. In the original Hebrew alphabet there are 22 letters and 5 letters that have a different writing if they appear at the end of a word. In verse 9-10, amazingly, all 27 letter variants are listed.

2 Proud- The Hebrew word 'gabah' literally means to mount up or to add height. Interesting enough Mount Zion was lowered by Simon the Hasmonian in the 2nd century BC and has not been raised to date. However, in the millennial kingdom it will once again be the highest mountain in Jerusalem Mic 4:1.

silent in His love. He rejoices over you
with a joyful shout.
18 I will gather the afflicted ones
from the appointed place; they were
from you, a lifting up of reproach over
her.
19 Behold, at that time I will deal
with all those who afflict you. And I
will save her who is lame, and gather
her who was thrust out. And I will give
them for a praise and for a name in all
the land of their shame.
20 In that time I will bring you, even
in the time I gather you. For I will give
you for a name and for a praise among
all the peoples of the earth, when I
turn back your captivity before your
eyes, says YAHWEH[1].

---

1 Verses 8-20 are all about the millennial restoration of the land and people of Israel.

Book of Haggai 520 BC

Chapter 1

1 In the second year of Darius the king, in the sixth month, in the first day of the month, the Word of YAHWEH came by Haggai the prophet to Zerubbabel, the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah; and to Yahoshua, the son of Jehozadak, the high priest, saying:

2 So speaks YAHWEH of Hosts, saying, This people says, The time has not come, the time for the house of YAHWEH to be built.[1]

3 And the Word of YAHWEH was by Haggai the prophet, saying,

4 Is it time for you yourselves to live in your roofed houses, and this house to lie in ruin?

5 And now, so says YAHWEH of Hosts: Set your heart on your ways!

6 You have sown much, and bring in little; you eat, but are not satisfied; you drink, but not to be filled; you dress, but there is no warmth to one. Yea, one earning wages, earns his wages to put it into a bag with holes[2].

7 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: Set your heart on your ways.

8 Go up the mountain and bring wood and build this house. And I will be pleased with it, and I will be glorified, says YAHWEH.

9 You looked for much, and, behold, little! And when you brought it home, then I blew on it. Why, declares YAHWEH of Hosts? Because of My house that is ruined, and you, each man, runs to his own house.

10 On account of this, the heavens above you have held back the dew, and the earth is held back from her produce.

11 And I called for a drought in the land, and on the mountains, and on the grain, and on the new wine, and on the oil, and on that which the ground produces, and on man, and on livestock, and on all the labor of your hands.

12 Then Zerubbabel, the son of Shealtiel, and Yahoshua, the son of Jehozadak, the high priest, and all the remnant of the people, obeyed the voice of YAHWEH their Elohim, and the words of Haggai the prophet, as YAHWEH their Elohim had sent him. And the people feared before YAHWEH.

13 And Haggai, the messenger of YAHWEH, spoke the message of YAHWEH to the people, saying, I am with you, says YAHWEH.

14 And YAHWEH stirred up the spirit of Zerubbabel, the son of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and the spirit of Yahoshua, the son of Jehozadak, the high priest, and the spirit of all the remnant of the people. And they came and worked on the house of YAHWEH of Hosts, their Elohim[3],

15 in the twenty-fourth day of the sixth month, in the second year of Darius the king.

Chapter 2

1 In the seventh month, on the twenty-first of the month, the Word of YAHWEH was by Haggai the prophet, saying,

---

[1] The foundation of the sanctuary had been built but due to oppression the work had stopped and the people were saying it was not time to finish the work on the house of YHWH.

[2] Verses 3-6, Haggai as many of the others prophets, has many parallels with the end time. Here Yahweh is rebuking the people for caring for their own possessions as His sanctuary lays in ruins. Mic 6:14

[3] Yahoshua and Zerubbabel are a type of the 2 end time witnesses of YHWH in Rev 11.

2 Now speak to Zerubbabel, the son
of Shealtiel, governor of Judah, and to
Yahoshua, the son of Jehozadak, the
high priest, and to the remnant of the
people, saying,
3 Who is left among you who saw
this house in her former glory? And
how do you see it now? When
compared to it, is it not as nothing in
your eyes[1]?
4 Yet now be strong, O Zerubbabel,
says YAHWEH. And be strong, O
Yahoshua, son of Jehozadak, the high
priest. And be strong and work, all
people of the land, says YAHWEH.
For I am with you, declares YAHWEH
of Hosts,
5 with the Word by whom I
covenanted with you when you came
out of Egypt, so My Spirit stands
among you; do not fear.
6 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts:
Yet once, it is a little while, and I will
shake the heavens and the earth and
the sea and the dry land.
7 And I will shake all the nations;
and the desire of all nations shall
come. And I will fill this house with
glory, says YAHWEH of Hosts.
8 The silver is Mine, and the gold is
Mine, says YAHWEH of Hosts.[2]
9 The glory of this latter house shall
be greater than that of the former, says
YAHWEH of Hosts. And in this place
I will give peace, says YAHWEH of
Hosts.[3]
10 In the twenty-fourth of the ninth
month, in the second year of Darius,
the Word of YAHWEH came to
Haggai the prophet, saying,
11 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: Now
ask the priests the Torah, saying,
12 Behold, one bears holy flesh in
the wing of his garment, and touches
his wing to the bread, or boiled food,
or wine, or oil, or any food, will it
become holy? And the priests
answered and said, No.
13 And Haggai said, If the unclean of
body touches these, is it unclean? And
the priests answered and said, It is
unclean.
14 And Haggai answered and said,
So is this people, and so is this nation
before Me, declares YAHWEH. And
so is every work of their hands; and
that which they offer there is unclean.[4]
15 And now set your heart on it.
From this day and onward: before the
placing of a stone on a stone in the
sanctuary of YAHWEH;
16 from then onward, one came to a
heap of twenty measures, and there
were but ten. One came to the wine vat
to draw out fifty from the wine trough,
and there were but twenty.
17 I struck you with blight, and with
mildew, and with hail, in all the labors
of your hands; yet you did not turn to
Me, says YAHWEH.
18 Now set your heart from this day
and forward, from the twenty-fourth
day of the ninth month, from the day
that the sanctuary of YAHWEH was
established. Set your heart:[5]
19 Is the seed still in the barn? Yes,
as yet the vine, and the fig tree, and

[1] Solomon's sanctuary had been overtaken by Nebuchadnezzar about 65 years earlier, so some of the people alive here actually saw Solomon's' temple and now they were weeping as they saw this sanctuary that was much smaller and less in grandeur than the previous one.

[2] Ps 24:1

[3] A prophecy of the glory that will be in the Messianic sanctuary.

[4] Verses 11-14, If something is holy or set apart by Elohim it can not make something else that is defiled become holy. However, if something is holy to Elohim and touches something defiled, then the holy item becomes defiled. The parallel was that the set apart nation had mixed with the defiled things of the other nations and now had become completely defiled.

the pomegranate, and the olive tree
have not brought forth. From this day
I will bless them.[1]
20 And a second time the Word of
YAHWEH was to Haggai, in the
twenty-fourth of the month, saying,
21 Speak to Zerubbabel, the
governor of Judah, saying, I will shake
the heavens and the earth.
22 And I will overturn the throne of
the kingdoms, and I will destroy the
strength of the kingdoms of the
nations. And I will overturn the
chariots and their riders, and the
horses and their riders will come
down, each one by the sword of his
brother.
23 In that day, says YAHWEH of
Hosts, I will take you, O Zerubbabel,
My servant, the son of Shealtiel, says
YAHWEH, and will make you like a
signet;[2] for I have chosen you, declares
YAHWEH of Hosts.

---

5 The promise was that if Israel would change their heart in building this sanctuary, then Yahweh would turn their curse into a blessing and provide for them from that day and forward. This also shows Elohim's mercy and forgiveness if one will simply turn from their wicked ways and repent. Eze 18:21-23.

1 The the items mentioned in verse 19 are part of the 7 species for Sukkot. Elohim is stating that it is not too late to turn His curse into a blessing on the nation if they would truly repent and turn back to Him.

2 A signet ring was one that sealed documents and covenants and this phrase is showing Yahweh's lasting promise to one day bring back a king of Israel in the Messianic age.

Book of Zechariah 520-518 BC

Chapter 1

1 In the eighth month, in the second year of Darius, the Word of YAHWEH came to Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet, saying[1],

2 YAHWEH has been angry with your fathers very angry.

3 Therefore, you say to them, So says YAHWEH of Hosts: Turn back to Me, says YAHWEH of Hosts, and I will turn back to you, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

4 Do not be as your fathers, to whom the former prophets have proclaimed to them, saying, So says YAHWEH of Hosts: Turn back now from your evil ways and your evil doings. But they did not hear or pay attention to Me, says YAHWEH.

5 Your fathers, where are they? And the prophets, do they live forever?

6 But My Words and My statutes which I commanded My servants the prophets, did they not overtake your fathers? And they turned back and said, As YAHWEH of Hosts purposes to do to us, according to our ways and according to our doings, so He has done with us.

7 On the twenty-fourth day of the eleventh month, it is the month Shebat, in the second year of Darius, the Word of YAHWEH was to Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet, saying,

8 I saw at night. And, behold! A Man riding on a red horse. And He stood among the myrtle trees in the ravine. And behind Him were red, speckled, and white horses[2].

9 Then I said, My Master, what are these? And the Messenger who was speaking with me said to me, I will show you what these are.[3]

10 And the Man who stood among the myrtle trees answered and said, These are those whom YAHWEH has sent to walk to and fro through the earth.

11 And they answered (Aleph/Tav) the Messenger of YAHWEH who stood among the myrtle trees, and said, We have walked to and fro through the earth, and, behold, all the earth sits still and is at peace.

12 And the Messenger of YAHWEH answered and said, O YAHWEH of Hosts, until when will You not have pity on Jerusalem, and on the cities of Judah, against which You have cursed these seventy years?

13 And YAHWEH answered (Aleph /Tav) the Messenger who was talking with me with good words, words of comfort.

14 So the Messenger who was talking with me said to me, Cry out, saying, So says YAHWEH of Hosts: I am jealous for Jerusalem and for Zion, with a great jealousy.

15 And with great anger I am angered at the haughty nations; in that I was but a little angry, and they gave help for evil[4].

16 So YAHWEH says this: I have returned to Jerusalem with compassions; My house shall be built in it, says YAHWEH of Hosts, and a line shall be stretched over Jerusalem[5].

17 Cry out again, saying, So says

---

1 Zechariah means "*Yahweh remembers*" and is an end time prophetic book about the returning of Jerusalem to Judah and also the Messiah returning.

2 Rev 6:2-4

3 A cherub of YHWH was showing Zechariah the vision.

4 In the end times not only is there rampant immorality in the world, but they added to YHWH's anger by continuing to work toward dividing Jerusalem and making a Palestinian state, Joel 3:1-2.

YAHWEH of Hosts: My cities shall again overflow with goodness, and YAHWEH shall yet comfort Zion, and shall yet choose Jerusalem.

18 Then I lifted up my eyes and looked, and, behold, four horns[1]!

19 And I said to the Messenger who was talking with me, What are these? And He answered me, These are the horns that have scattered Judah, Israel, and Jerusalem.

20 And YAHWEH made me see four craft masons[2].

21 And I said, What are these coming to do? And He spoke, saying, These are the horns which have scattered Judah, so that no man lifts up his head. But these have come to terrify them, to throw down the horns of the nations who lifted up their horn over the land of Judah, to scatter it.

Chapter 2

1 I lifted up my eyes and saw, and, behold, A man, and a measuring line in his hand!

2 And I said, Where are you going? And he said to me, To measure Jerusalem, to see what is its breadth and what is its length. *(Rev 11:1-2)*

3 And, behold, the angel who was talking with me went out, and another angel went out to meet him,

4 and said to him, Run, speak to this young man, saying, Jerusalem will dwell like unwalled villages, for the multitude of men and livestock in her midst.

5 And I will be to her a wall of fire all around, and I will be for glory in her midst, declares YAHWEH[3].

6 Woe! Woe! Flee then from the land of the north, says YAHWEH. For I have scattered you as the four winds of the heavens, declares YAHWEH.

7 Woe, O Zion! Escape, you who live with the daughter of Babylon[4].

8 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts: He has sent Me after glory, to the nations who plundered you; for he who touches you touches the pupil of His eye. *(Deut 32:10)*

9 For, behold, I will shake My hand over them, and they shall be a prize for their servants. And you shall know that YAHWEH has sent Me.

10 Sing and rejoice, O daughter of Zion. For, lo, I come; and I will dwell among you, says YAHWEH.*(Joel 3:17)*

11 And many nations shall be joined to YAHWEH in that day, and they shall be My people. And I will dwell among you; and you shall know that YAHWEH of Hosts has sent Me to you. *(Jer 24:7, Mic 4:2)*

12 And YAHWEH shall possess Judah, His portion in the holy land, and He shall again choose Jerusalem.

13 Be silent all flesh before YAHWEH, For He is raised up out of His holy habitation.[5] *(Deut 26:15)*

---

5 This refers to both the second sanctuary being built and also the millennial sanctuary by the Messiah, Zech 6:12-13.

1 Horns in scripture represent power.

2 Interesting enough, there is a group called the quartet (group of 4) made up of the USA, EU, UN, and Russia that their sole purpose is to divide Jerusalem and make a Palestinian state. This group is made up of men who are free-masons, although craft masons are mentioned, free-masons originate from craft masons and still hold the symbols of the compass and square, signs of a craft worker.

3 "*Unwalled villages"* indicating security from attack, which will happen when Messiah returns, Lev 25:18-19.

4 One of the 7 direct commands for Yahweh's elect to flee end time Babylon before it is completely destroyed for it's immorality and also for being the main instigator for having Jerusalem divided.

Chapter 3

1 And he made me see Yahoshua the high priest standing before the Messenger of YAHWEH, and Satan standing at his right hand to accuse him.[1] *(Ps 109:6, Job 1:6, Rev 12:10)*

2 And YAHWEH said to Satan, YAHWEH rebuke you, Satan! And, YAHWEH who has chosen Jerusalem rebuke you![2] Is this not a brand plucked out of the fire?

3 And Yahoshua was clothed with filthy garments, and he stood before the Messenger of YAHWEH.

4 And He answered and spoke to those who stood before Him, saying, Take away the filthy garments from him. And He said to him, Behold, I have caused your iniquity to pass from you, and I will clothe you with ceremonial robes.[3] (Rev 19:7-9)

5 And I said, Let them set a clean turban on his head.[4] And they set a clean turban on his head and clothed him with clothing. And the Messenger of YAHWEH stood by.

6 And the Messenger of YAHWEH repeated again saying to Yahoshua,

7 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: If you will walk in My ways, and if you will keep My charge, then you shall also judge My house, and shall also keep My courts, and I will give you access to walk among these who stand by. *(Deut 10:12-13)*

8 Hear now, O Yahoshua the high priest, you and your associates who are sitting before you; for they are men of symbol.

9 For, behold, I will bring forth My Servant, THE BRANCH.[5] For behold, the stone which I have given before Yahoshua, on the one stone are seven eyes.I will engrave its engraving, says YAHWEH of Hosts, and I will remove the iniquity of that land in one day.[6]

10 In that day, says YAHWEH of Hosts, you shall invite each man to his neighbor to sit under the vine and under the fig tree. *(Mic 4:4)*

Chapter 4

1 And the angel who was speaking with me returned and awakened me, as a man is awakened out of his sleep.

2 And he said to me, What do you see? And I said, I see, and behold, a Menorah, all of it gold, and a bowl on its top, and its seven lamps on it, and seven spouts each to the seven lamps on its top; *(Rev 1:20)*

3 and two olive trees are beside it, one on the right of the bowl, and one on its left. *(Rev 11:4)*

4 And I answered and spoke to the

---

5 For much of the 6,000 yr history of mankind YHWH has allowed man to make his own decisions and then reap what he has sowed. However, in the end time due to man's wickedness and Satan's intervention of trying to thwart YHWH's plan of redeeming the nation and people of Israel, YHWH is now directly involved in world affairs and His wrath will shortly follow.

1 Satan is the accuser of the brethren and his very name in Hebrew means "*adversary*".

2 It is YHWH who has the power to rebuke Satan not man, and this must be remembered when dealing with the spirit world, Jude 1:9, Acts 19:15-16.

3 All human being have sinned (Ro 3:23), and this is symbolic of those who have washed their garments with the blood of Yahshua being made clean and reigning with Him at His return, Rev 19:7-9, Rev 7:13-17.

4 The crown of the priestly garment, Rev 5:10.

5 The servant of YHWH is Yahshua His Son, Zech 6:12-13, Is 42:1-7, Is 53, Ps 2:7-12, Is 9:6-7 Pr 30:4.

6 "*Seven eyes*" see Rev 4:5. To remove the iniquity of the nation in a day see Is 66:7-10.

angel who was talking with me, saying, What are these, my master?

5 And the angel who was speaking with me answered and said to me, Do you not know what these are? And I said, No, my master.

6 Then he answered and spoke to me, saying, This is the Word of YAHWEH to Zerubbabel, saying, Not by might, nor by power, but by My Spirit, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

7 Who are you, O great mountain? Before Zerubbabel you shall become a plain. And he shall bring forth the capstone with shouts: Grace! Grace to it!

8 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

9 The hands of Zerubbabel have laid the foundation of this house; his hands shall also finish it. And you shall know that YAHWEH of Hosts has sent me to you.

10 For who has despised the day of small things? For they shall rejoice and shall see the plummet stone in the hand of Zerubbabel. These seven are the eyes of YAHWEH; they roam around to and fro throughout all the earth.

11 And I answered and said to him, What are these two olive trees on the right of the menorah, and on its left?

12 And I answered a second time and said to him, What are the two clusters of olive trees beside the two golden pipes, emptying the golden oil from themselves?

13 And he spoke to me, saying, Do you not know what these are? And I said, No, my master.

14 And he said, These are the two sons of fresh oil who stand by the Master of the whole earth.[1]

[1] These two are representative of the two witnesses in Rev 11:1-6.

Chapter 5

1 And I again lifted up my eyes and looked, and, behold, a flying scroll!

2 And he said to me, What do you see? And I answered, I see a flying scroll; its length is twenty cubits, and its width ten cubits.

3 And he said to me, This is the curse[2] that goes forth over the face of the whole earth. For from now on everyone who steals shall be cut off according to it; and everyone who swears from now on shall be cut off according to it.

4 And I will bring it forth, says YAHWEH of Hosts. And it shall go into the house of the thief, and into the house of the one who swears falsely by My name. And it shall remain within his house and shall finish it, and its timber, and its stones.

5 Then the angel who was speaking with me went out, and said to me, Now lift up your eyes and see what this is that goes forth.

6 And I said, What is it? And he said, This is the ephah[3] that goes forth. And he said, This is their form in all the earth.

7 And, behold, a lead cover was lifted up, and a woman was sitting in the middle of the ephah.

8 And he said, This is wickedness. And he threw her into the midst of the ephah; and he threw the lead stone over its opening.

9 And I lifted up my eyes and looked. And, behold, two women came out. And the wind was in their wings; for they had wings like the wings of the stork. And they lifted up the ephah between the earth and the heavens.

[2] The Hebrew word for "*curse*" here is "*Allah*".

[3] An ephah is a measuring basket like a barrel about the size of a small satellite that is orbited into space.

10 And I said to the angel who was speaking with me, Where are they going with the ephah?

11 And he said to me, To build a house for it in the land of Shinar[1]; and it shall be erected and set there on its own base.

Chapter 6

1 And again my eyes lifted up and looked, and, behold, four chariots were coming from between two mountains; and the mountains were mountains of copper. *(Dan 2:39)*

2 With the first chariot were red horses, and with the second chariot black horses, *(Rev 6:4-6)*

3 and with the third chariot white horses, and with the fourth dappled and strong colored horses. *(Rev 6:2,8)*

4 And I answered and said to the angel who was talking with me, What are these, my master?

5 And the angel answered and said to me, These are the four spirits of Heaven who go forth from standing before the Master of all the earth.

6 The black horses in it go into the north country, and the white go after them; and the dappled ones go toward the south country.

7 And the strong colored ones went forth and sought to go, to walk to and fro in the earth. And he said, Go! Walk to and fro in the earth. So they walked to and fro in the earth.

8 And he cried out to me, and spoke to me, saying, Behold, these who go toward the north country have caused My Spirit to rest in the north country.

9 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,

10 Take from the exiles, from Heldai, from Tobijah, and from Jedaiah, and in that day you go and enter into the house of Josiah, the son of Zephaniah who have come from Babylon.

11 And take silver and gold, and make crowns, and set on the head of Yahoshua, the son of Jehozadak, the high priest.

12 And speak to him, saying, So says YAHWEH of Hosts, saying, Behold! The Man whose name is THE BRANCH! And He shall spring up out of His place, and He shall build the sanctuary of YAHWEH.

13 Even He shall build the sanctuary of YAHWEH; and He shall bear the majesty, and shall sit and rule on His throne. And He shall be a priest on His throne; and the counsel of peace shall be between the two of them[2].

14 And the crowns[3] shall be for a memorial in the sanctuary of YAHWEH, to Helem, and to Tobijah, and to Jedaiah, and to Hen, the son of Zephaniah.

15 And the distant ones shall come and build in the sanctuary of YAHWEH[4]. And you shall know that YAHWEH of Hosts has sent me to

1 Shinar is Babylon (Gen 11:2). It is interesting to note that 2 women come out of the ephah and the Hebrew word picture for Babylon is "*when there are two heads of the family*", which brings "*confusion"*, the very definition of Babylon. Judicial order has been mostly forgotten in USA/Babylon in these end times.

2 Verses 12 & 13 are referring to the Messiah returning and building the sanctuary of YHWH. "*Between the two of them*" is referring to the office of king and priest. Whereas in the earthly sanctuary the priests were from the tribe of Levi and the king from Judah in this millennial sanctuary Messiah Yahshua will be both king and priest from the Melchizedek who was a king and priest.

3 Not the word used earlier for turban (3:5), but a kingly crown, Rev 19:12.

4 These would be resurrected Israelites (Eze 37:1-14) who will partake with Messiah in the rebuilding of the sanctuary of YHWH.

you. And this shall be, if diligently, you will listen to the voice of YAHWEH your Elohim.

Chapter 7

1 And in the fourth year of King Darius, the Word of YAHWEH was to Zechariah, in the fourth day of the ninth month, in Chislev.
2 And Sharezer and Regem-Melech, and his men, had sent to Bethel to seek the favor of the face of YAHWEH,
3 to speak to the priests who belong to the house of YAHWEH of Hosts, and to the prophets, saying, Should I weep in the fifth month, consecrating myself as I have done these many years?
4 The Word of YAHWEH of Hosts was to me, saying,
5 Speak to all the people of the land, and to the priests, saying, When you fasted and mourned in the fifth and seventh months, even those seventy years, did you truly fast to Me, even to Me?[1] *(Is 58:3-7)*
6 And when you ate, and when you drank, was it not for those eating, and for those drinking?
7 Are not these the Words which YAHWEH proclaimed by the former prophets, when Jerusalem was inhabited, and prosperous with her cities all around her, and the Negev and the Shefelah were inhabited?
8 And the Word of YAHWEH was to Zechariah, saying,
9 So says YAHWEH of Hosts, saying, Judge true judgment, and practice kindness and pity, each man with his brother.
10 And do not oppress the widow, or the fatherless, the stranger, or the poor. And do not devise evil in your heart, of a man against his brother. *(Jac 1:27)*
11 But they refused to listen, and gave a stubborn shoulder, and they made their ears heavy from hearing.
12 And they made their heart adamant from hearing the Torah and the Words which YAHWEH of Hosts has sent by the former prophets through His Spirit. And great wrath was from YAHWEH of Hosts.
13 And it will be, just as He called, and they did not listen; so they called, and I did not listen, says YAHWEH of Hosts. *(Pr 1:24-31)*
14 And I stormed them away on all the nations whom they did not know. So the land is desolated behind them, from passing and from returning; for they made the land of desire a waste.

Chapter 8

1 And the Word of YAHWEH was to me, saying,
2 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: I was jealous for Zion with great jealousy, and I was jealous for her with great wrath.
3 So says YAHWEH: I have returned to Zion, and will dwell in the midst of Jerusalem. And Jerusalem shall be called a City of Truth, and the mountain of YAHWEH of Hosts, the Holy Mountain. (*Mic 4:2)*
4 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: Again, there shall be old men and old women sitting in the streets of Jerusalem; and each man with his staff in his hand because of their many days.
5 And the streets of the city shall be full of boys and girls playing in its streets.
6 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: If it is

---

[1] During the 70 yrs that Israel was captive in Babylon they fasted on the 9th day of the fifth month of Av when the Sanctuary of YHWH was destroyed and also on Yom Kippur in the 7th month, but there hearts were not truly toward YHWH.

marvelous in the eyes of the remnant
of this people in those days, will it also
be marvelous in My eyes? says
YAHWEH of Hosts.
7 So says YAHWEH of Hosts:
Behold, I will save My people from the
land of the rising sun and from the
land of the setting sun.
8 And I will bring them, and they
shall live in the midst of Jerusalem.
And they shall be for a people to Me,
and I will be their Elohim, in truth and
in righteousness.
9 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: Let
your hands be made strong, you who
hear in these days these words by the
mouth of the prophets, that in the day
the house of YAHWEH of Hosts is
founded, the sanctuary is to be rebuilt.
10 For before those days there was
no payment for man, nor was there
payment for animal; and there was no
peace to him from the adversary who
went out or came in. For I sent every
man, a man against his neighbor[1].
11 But now I will not be to the
remnant of this people as in former
days, says YAHWEH of Hosts.
12 For there shall be peace for the
seed: the vine shall give its fruit, and
the ground shall give its produce, and
the heavens shall give their dew; and I
will cause the remnant of this people
to inherit all these[2].
13 And it shall be, as you were a
curse among the nations, O house of
Judah and house of Israel, so I will
save you, and you shall be a blessing.
Do not fear; let your hands be made
strong.
14 For so says YAHWEH of Hosts,
As I purposed to punish you when
your fathers provoked Me to wrath,
says YAHWEH of Hosts, and I did not
turn back from it,
15 so again I have purposed in these
days to do good to Jerusalem, and the
house of Judah. Do not fear.
16 These are the things that you shall
do. Let each man speak the truth with
his neighbor. Judge with truth and
justice for peace in your gates,
17 and let each devise no evil in your
heart against his neighbor, and do not
love a false oath. For all these I hate,
says YAHWEH.
18 And the Word of YAHWEH of
Hosts was to me, saying,
19 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: The
fast of the fourth month, and the fast
of the fifth, and the fast of the seventh,
and the fast of the tenth, shall become
for joy and gladness and cheerful
feasts to the house of Judah.
Therefore, love truth and peace[3].
20 So says YAHWEH of Hosts:
Again there shall come peoples, and
residents of many cities.
21 And those living in one shall go to
another, saying, Let us go at once to
seek the favor of the face of
YAHWEH, and to seek YAHWEH of
Hosts; I will go also.
22 And many peoples and strong

[1] Verses 1-10, Jerusalem is Yahweh's eternal capital and He will dwell there forever with His people. Yahshua will be reigning during the millennium and then, Yahweh the Father will come to earth after that and be with the people from Jerusalem, 1Cor 15:23-24, Rev 21:1-4. Verse 10, today all of Israel's neighbors are against them, but that spirit will change when Messiah appears, Is 19:23-25.

[2] Whenever you see the millennial covenant blessings laid out in scripture, you always see the blessing of the land and the cyclical harvest of abundance of food, Lev 26:9-11, Joel 2:18-27.

[3] Fast of the 4th month was to commemorate Nebuchadnezzar breaching the walls, the 5th month was for the burning of the sanctuary, the 7th month was Yom Kippur, and the 10th month was to mourn for the beginning of Nebuchadnezzar's first attack. In the millennial kingdom these fasts will be turned into feast days.

nations shall come to seek YAHWEH of Hosts in Jerusalem, and to seek the favor of the face of YAHWEH[1].

23 So says YAHWEH of Hosts: In those days ten men out of all languages of the nations[2] shall take hold, and will seize the wing of the garment of a man, a Jew, saying, Let us go with you, for we have heard that Elohim is with you.

Chapter 9

1 The burden of the Word of YAHWEH against the land of Hadrach, and its resting place, Damascus, (when the eye of man, and all the tribes of Israel shall be toward YAHWEH),

2 and Hamath also borders on it; Tyre and Sidon, though they are very wise.

3 And Tyre shall build a fortress for herself, and shall pile up silver like the dust, and gold like the mud of the streets.

4 Behold! YAHWEH will expel her, and He will strike her wealth in the sea, and she shall be devoured with fire.

5 Ashkelon shall see and fear; Gaza also shall writhe in great pain; and Ekron shall be ashamed for her hope. And the king shall perish from Gaza, and Ashkelon shall not be inhabited.

6 And a bastard shall dwell in Ashdod, and I will cut off the pride of the Philistines.

7 And I will take away his blood out of his mouth, and his abominations from between his teeth. But the remnant, even he, shall be for our Elohim. And he shall be as a governor in Judah, and Ekron, like a Jebusite.

8 And I will camp around My house from an army, from one passing by, and from one returning. And an oppressor shall not pass through them again. For now I have seen with My eyes.

9 Rejoice greatly, O daughter of Zion! Shout, O daughter of Jerusalem! Behold, your King comes to you! He is righteous and being victorious, humble, and riding on a donkey, even on a colt, the son of a donkey[3].

10 And I will cut off the chariot from Ephraim and the horse from Jerusalem. And the battle bow shall be cut off, and He shall speak peace to the nations. And His dominion shall be from sea to sea, and from the River to the ends of the earth[4].

11 Also you, by the blood of your covenant I have freed your prisoners from the pit; no water is in it. *(Is 61:1)*

12 Turn to the stronghold, O prisoners of hope! Even today I declare I will return double to you[5].

13 For I have bent Judah for Me as a bow; I filled it with Ephraim. And I will stir up your sons, O Zion, against your sons, O Yavan, *(Greece)*, and make you as the sword of a mighty man.

14 Then YAHWEH will appear over them, and His arrow shall go out as lightning; and Adonai YAHWEH shall

1 In the millennium all nations will worship YHWH, Is 2:2-3, Ps 86:9, Zech 2:11, Zech 14:16, Mic 4:2

2 Representation of the Northern Tribes of Israel returning with Judah.

3 Some equate chapter 9:1-8 with Alexander the Great who road a large white horse when he went to conquer nations. Here in verse 9 though, the Messiah is reckoned with riding a donkey, a sign of humility. Yahshua fulfilled this scripture in Math 21:4-5.

4 The Messiah's reign would be worldwide with universal peace.

5 Verses 10-11, Through hope in the Messiah both Judah and Ephraim would be saved from the spiritual prison house that their sins had brought them to (Is 61:1, 49:8-9).

blow the ram's horn and shall go forth with the windstorms of the south.

15 YAHWEH of Hosts shall defend them. And they shall devour and trample the slingstones. And they shall drink and be boisterous, as with wine. And they shall be full like a bowl, like the corners of the altar.

16 And YAHWEH their Elohim shall save them in that day as the flock of His people; for they are as stones of a crown, lifted up as a ensign over His land.

17 For how great is its goodness, and how great its beauty! Grain shall make the young men flourish, and new wine the virgins.

Chapter 10

1 Ask rain from YAHWEH in the time of the latter rain. YAHWEH shall make thunder bolts. And He gives them showers of rain, grass to each man in the field. *(Joel 2:23, Ja 5:7)*

2 For the family idols speak iniquity, and the divining ones have seen a lie and have told false dreams. They comfort in vain. On account of this, they wandered like a flock. They were troubled because there was no shepherd.[1]

3 My anger is kindled against the shepherds, and I will punish the he-goats. For YAHWEH of Hosts has visited His flock, the house of Judah, and made them as His splendid horse in battle.

4 From Him came the cornerstone, from Him the nail, from Him came the battle bow, and from Him every ruler together[2].

5 And they shall be like mighty ones who trample the mud of the streets in the battle. And they shall fight because YAHWEH is with them, and they shall make the riders of horses ashamed.

6 And I will make stronger the house of Judah, and I will save the house of Joseph. And I will return to save them, for I have pity on them. And they shall be as though I had not cast them off, for I am YAHWEH their Elohim, and I will answer them.*(Je 31:1, Ez 37:15-19)*

7 And Ephraim shall be like a mighty one, and their heart shall be glad as by wine. And their sons shall see and be glad; their heart shall rejoice in YAHWEH. *(Jer 31:3-9)*

8 I will whistle for them and gather them, for I have redeemed them. And they shall be many as they were many.

9 And I will sow them among the peoples, and they shall remember Me in far countries, and they shall live with their sons and return.

10 And I will return to save them out of the land of Egypt and gather them out of Assyria. And I will bring them into the land of Gilead and Lebanon, for room shall not be found for them.

11 And He shall pass through the sea of distress and strike the waves in the sea, and all the depths of the Nile shall dry up. And the pride of Assyria shall be brought down, and the scepter of Egypt shall go away.

12 And I will make them strong in YAHWEH, and they shall walk in His name, says YAHWEH.

Chapter 11

1 Open your doors, O Lebanon, so that the fire may devour your cedars.

2 Howl, fir tree, for the cedar has fallen, because the majestic trees have been destroyed. Howl, O oaks of

---

[1] This is speaking of household deities called teraphim that were used in divination and strictly forbidden according to the Torah Deut 18:9-14, Hos 3:4-5.

[2] "*From him*" speaking of Judah out of which the messiah would come.

Bashan, for the inaccessible forest has
come down.
3 A voice of the wailing of the
shepherds is heard, for their splendor
is destroyed. A voice of the roaring of
young lions is heard, for the pride of
Jordan is destroyed.
4 For so says YAHWEH my Elohim:
Feed the flock of the slaughter.
5 Those who buy them kill them and
are not held guilty. And those who sell
them say, Blessed be YAHWEH, for I
am rich. And their shepherds do not
have pity upon them.
6 For I will never again pity those
living in the land, says YAHWEH.
But, behold! I will make the men fall,
each one into his neighbor's hand, and
into his king's hand. And they shall
destroy the land, and I will not deliver
out of their hand.
7 And I fed the flock of slaughter, the
truly poor of the flock. And I took two
staffs for Myself: the one I called
Grace, and the other I called Union.
And I fed the flock.
8 I also cut off three shepherds in
one month. And My soul was
impatient with them, and their soul
also detested Me.
9 Then I said, I will not feed you;
that which dies, let it die; and that
which is to be cut off, let it be cut off.
And let the ones remaining, each
woman, eat the flesh of her neighbor[1].
10 And I took My staff Grace and
broke it apart, to break My covenant
which I had cut with all the peoples[2].
11 And it was broken in that day, and
so the poor of the flock who were
watching Me knew that it was the
Word of YAHWEH.
12 And I said to them, If it is good in
your eyes, give My price; and if not, let
it go. And they weighed My price,
thirty pieces of silver.[3] *(Ex 21:32)*
13 And YAHWEH said to Me,
Throw it to the potter, the splendid
price at which I was valued by them.
And I took the thirty pieces of silver
and threw it to the potter in the house
of YAHWEH. *(Math 27:3-10)*
14 Then I broke apart My second
staff Union, that I might break the
brotherhood between Judah and
Israel.[4]
15 And YAHWEH said to me, Again
take to yourself the tools of a foolish
shepherd.
16 For, lo, I will raise up a shepherd
in the land; he shall not visit those
who are cut off, nor will he seek the
young, nor will he heal that which is
broken, nor will he sustain that which
stands. But he shall eat the flesh of the
fat, and tear off their hoofs.
17 Woe to the worthless shepherd
who abandons the flock! The sword
shall be against his arm and against
his right eye. His arm shall be
completely withered, and his right eye
shall be totally darkened.[5]

---

1 Verses 1-9 shows the rejection of the nation of the fulfilling of the covenant when Messiah appears.

2 There are two staffs; one is '*union*', which is the brotherhood of Judah and Ephraim and one is '*grace*' in which the messiah will redeem Israel by His shed blood for the penalty of their sins Lev 17:11.

3 30 pieces of silver was the lowest price of human life in that of a slave and shows that the Messiah did not come for only the rich but for all people who repent of their sins and accept His shed blood as payment for the penalty of their sins (Acts 2:37-39). The priests paid Judas 30 silver pieces for Yahshua, which money was taken out of the treasury in which all the sacrifices of the sanctuary were paid with (Math 27:3-10).

4 Since Judah rejected Yahshua's sacrifice and the New Covenant agreement, He sent His disciples to the lost sheep of Israel (Math 10:6) therefore breaking the brotherhood between Judah and Ephraim.

Chapter 12

1 The burden of the Word of YAHWEH for Israel, says YAHWEH, who stretches forth the heavens[1], and lays the foundation of the earth, and forms the spirit of man in his midst.
2 Behold! I will make Jerusalem a cup of trembling to all the peoples all around, and it shall also be against Judah in the siege against Jerusalem.
3 And in that day I will make Jerusalem a heavy stone for all the peoples; all who lift it shall be cut in pieces. And all the nations of the earth will be gathered against it.[2]
4 In that day I will strike every horse with panic and his rider with madness, says YAHWEH. And I will open My eyes on the house of Judah, and I will strike every horse of the peoples with blindness.
5 And the leaders of Judah, those living in Jerusalem shall say in their heart, in YAHWEH of Hosts shall be my strength, their Elohim.
6 In that day I will make the leaders of Judah like a hearth of fire among the wood, and like a torch of fire among cut grain. And they shall devour all the peoples all around, on the right hand and on the left hand. And Jerusalem shall be inhabited again in her place, in Jerusalem.[3]
7 YAHWEH also shall save the tents of Judah first, so that the glory of the house of David and the glory of those living in Jerusalem may not be magnified above Judah.
8 In that day YAHWEH shall protect around those living in Jerusalem. And it will be, he who is feeble among them in that day shall be like David, and the house of David shall be like Elohim, like the Messenger of YAHWEH before them.
9 And it shall be in that day, I will seek to destroy all the nations that come against Jerusalem. *(Zech 14:3)*
10 And I will pour on the house of David, and on those living in Jerusalem, the Spirit of grace and of prayers. And they shall look on Me whom they have pierced; and they shall mourn for Him, as one mourns for an only son, and they shall be bitter over Him, like the bitterness over the first-born.[4]
11 In that day the mourning in Jerusalem shall be great, like the mourning of Hadad-Rimmon in the valley of Megiddo.[5]
12 And the land shall mourn, each family apart: the family of the house of David apart, and their wives apart; the

---

5 Verses 15-17 references Simon Bar-Kokhba, the man that rabbi Akiva named as messiah in place of Yahshua. Bar-Kokhba was a ruthless man who was brutal to those who were against him.

1 As Albert Einstein proved time is not a continuous and although the earth and creation is only about 6,000 years old, by Yahweh stretching the heavens and diameters of space He also can change the relation to time. Is 40:22, Is 42:5.

2 Verses 1-3 is an end time prophecy about how the nations will look at Jerusalem. It is quite interesting to look at Jerusalem today that produces no commodity such as oil, but yet most will say that not dividing Jerusalem is the cause holding up world peace.

3 Today the tiny nation of Israel is the 4th or 5th most power military might in the world fulfilling this amazing prophecy. Only during the reign of king Solomon did Israel ever have such military prowess.

4 In this glorious day when Yahshua Messiah returns, the House of Judah will accept Him and the sacrifice He made to fulfill the 1st covenant by His shed blood.

5 This is referring to the slaying of good king Josiah by Pharaoh Necco, 2Kgs 23:29.

family of the house of Nathan apart[6], and their wives apart;
13 the family of the house of Levi apart, and their wives apart; the family of Shimei apart, and their wives apart;
14 all the families who remain, each family apart, and their wives apart.

Chapter 13

1 In that day a fountain shall be opened to the house of David and to those living in Jerusalem, for sin and for impurity. *(Eze 47:1-8)*
2 And it shall be in that day, I will cut off the names of the idols out of the land, and they shall be remembered no more, says YAHWEH of Hosts. And I also will cause the prophets and the unclean spirit to pass out of the land. *(Eze 36:25, Hos 2:17)*
3 And it shall be when any shall prophesy again, his father and his mother who gave him birth shall say to him then, You shall not live, for you speak lies in the name of YAHWEH. And his father and his mother who gave him birth shall pierce him when he prophesies.
4 And it shall be in that day, the prophets shall be ashamed, each one of his vision when he prophesies, and they shall not wear a hairy garment to deceive.
5 But he shall say, I am not a prophet; I am a man, a tiller of the ground, for a man caused me to buy from my youth. *(Amos 7:14)*
6 And one shall say to Him, What are these wounds between Your hands? Then He shall answer, Those with which I was struck in the house of those who love Me.
7 O sword, awake against My Shepherd, and against the Mighty Warrior who is My Associate, says YAHWEH of Hosts.[1] Strike the Shepherd and the sheep will be scattered. And I will turn My hand on the little ones. *(Mk 14:27)*
8 And it shall be in all the land, says YAHWEH, two parts in it shall be cut off and perish, but the third shall be left in it.[2]
9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and I will refine them as silver is refined. And I will try them as gold is tried. They shall call on My name, and I will answer them. I will say, It is My people, and they shall say, YAHWEH is my Elohim.[3]

Chapter 14

1 Behold, the day of YAHWEH comes, and your spoil shall be divided among you. *(Joel 2:1-2, Is 13:6)*
2 For I will gather all the nations to battle against Jerusalem. And the city shall be captured, and the houses plundered, and the women raped. And half the city shall go into exile and the rest of the people shall not be cut off from the city[4]. *(Is 13:16, Joel 3:12)*
3 And YAHWEH shall go out and fight against those nations, like the day He fought in the day of battle.[5]
4 And His feet shall stand in that day on the Mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east; and the Mount of Olives shall divide from its middle, from the east even to the west, a very great valley. And half of the

---

6 Notice that the lineage of Nathan and not Solomon is mentioned as Yahshua came from this line, Luk 3:31.

1 The Messiah here is also named the equal or associate of Yahweh, Phil 2:5-11.

2 2/3's of the people will perish at this time and the last third will be purified through tribulation, Ezek 5:2-4, 12.

3 Ezek 34:30, Ezek 21:14

4 This is the battle identified in Joel 3:12 that will happen upon the return of Messiah to the Mount of Olives.

5 Is 31:4-9

mountain shall move toward the north, and half of it toward the south.[1]
5 And you shall flee to the valley of My mountains, for the valley of the mountains shall reach to Azal. And you shall flee as you fled from before the earthquake in the days of Uzziah, king of Judah. And YAHWEH my Elohim shall come, and all the saints with You. *(Math 24:30-31)*
6 And it will be in that day, there shall not be light; the glorious ones will shrink.
7 And it will be one day which shall be known to YAHWEH; not day and not night, but it will be, there will be light at evening time.
8 And it shall be in that day, living waters shall go out from Jerusalem, half of them shall go toward the eastern sea, and half of them toward the western sea; in summer and in winter it shall be. *(Rev 22:1-2, Eze 47:1-9)*
9 And YAHWEH shall be King over all the earth. In that day YAHWEH shall be united *(echad)*, and His name united *(echad)*.[2]
10 All the land shall be turned as a plain from Geba to Rimmon south of Jerusalem. And it shall rise and dwell in its place, from Benjamin's Gate to the place of the First Gate, to the Corner Gate, and from the Tower of Hananeel to the king's winepresses.
11 And they shall live in it. And there shall not again be a shutting in, but Jerusalem shall dwell safely. *(Lev 25:18-19)*
12 And this shall be the plague with which YAHWEH will strike all the peoples who have fought against Jerusalem: Their flesh shall rot while they stand on their feet, and their eyes will rest in their sockets, and their tongues shall rot in their mouths.
13 And it shall be in that day, a great panic of YAHWEH shall be among them; and they shall each one lay hold of his neighbor, and his hand shall rise up against the hand of his neighbor[3].
14 And Judah also shall fight at Jerusalem. And the wealth of the surrounding nations shall be gathered, gold, and silver, and clothing, very much.
15 And so shall be the plague of the horse, the mule, the camel, and the donkey, and all the beasts which shall be in those camps, like this plague.
16 And it shall be, everyone who is left from all the nations which came up against Jerusalem shall go up from year to year to worship the King, YAHWEH of Hosts, and to keep the Feast of The Sukkot.
17 And it shall be, whoever will not go up from the families of the earth to Jerusalem to worship the King, YAHWEH of Hosts, there shall even be no rain on them.
18 And if the family of Egypt does not go up, nor come in, then the rain shall not be on them, but the plague with which YAHWEH shall strike the nations who do not come up to keep the Feast of the Sukkot[4].

---

[1] This is Yahshua Yahweh returning to earth, to the Mount of Olives, from where He ascended from (Acts 1:9-12). Yah Yahweh the Father does not come to earth till after the millennium is over, 1 Cor 15:23-24, Rev 21:1-4.

[2] Yahshua Yahweh the son will be reigning for Yahweh the Father during the 1,000 millennial kingdom. Ps 110:1-5

[3] This is due to the wrath of YHWH on the world for sin and iniquity and their continual oppressing of Israel, Is 24:1-6.

[4] Verses 16-19, During the millennium, representatives from all nations will come up to Jerusalem and worship Yahweh during the feast of Sukkot. This is also called the feast of ingathering (Ex 23:16), and represents the re-gathering of all Israel in the messianic kingdom Jer 16:14-16.

19 This shall be Egypt's offense, and
the offense of all nations who do not
come up to keep the Feast of Sukkot.

20 In that day there shall be on the
bells of the horses, HOLY TO
YAHWEH. And the pots in the house
of YAHWEH shall be like the bowls
before the altar.

21 And every pot in Jerusalem and in
Judah shall be holy to YAHWEH of
Hosts. And all those who sacrifice shall
come and take of them, and boil in
them. And in that day there shall not
be a trader in the house of YAHWEH
of Hosts any more. *(Math 21:12-13, Is
56:6-7)*

Book of Malachi 450-400 BC

Chapter 1

1 The burden of the Word of YAHWEH to Israel by the hand of Malachi[1]:
2 I have loved you, says YAHWEH. But you say, In what way have You loved us? Was not Esau the brother to Jacob? Yet YAHWEH declares, I loved Jacob,
3 and I have hated Esau and have made his mountains a desolation, and his inheritance to be for the jackals of the wilderness.
4 If Edom says, We are beaten down, but we will return and build the ruined places; so says YAHWEH of Hosts: They shall build, but I will tear down. And they shall call them the region of wickedness, and the people whom YAHWEH is enraged with until forever.
5 And your eyes shall see, and you shall say, YAHWEH will be magnified beyond the border of Israel.
6 A son honors his father, and a servant his master. If then I am a father, where is My honor? And if I am a master, where is My fear? says YAHWEH of Hosts to you, O priests who despise My name. But you say, In what have we despised Your name?[2]
7 You are offering defiled food on My altar, and you say, In what have we defiled You? It is in your saying, The table of YAHWEH, it is to be despised.
8 And if you offer the blind for sacrifice, is it not evil? And if you offer the lame and the sick, is it not evil? Bring it now to your governor. Will he accept you or lift up your face? says YAHWEH of Hosts.[3]
9 And now entreat the face of Elohim, that He favor us. This has been by your hands; will He lift up your faces? says YAHWEH of Hosts.
10 Who is even among you that will shut the doors, and you not kindle fire on My altar in vain? There is no delight to Me in you, says YAHWEH of Hosts. I will not accept a food offering from your hand.
11 For from the rising of the sun to its going down, My name shall be great among the nations, and everywhere incense shall be offered to My name; and a pure food offering; for My name shall be great among the nations, says YAHWEH of Hosts.[4]
12 But you are profaning it when you say, The table of YAHWEH, it is polluted; and its fruit, His food is to be despicable.
13 And you have said, Behold, what weariness! And you have sniffed at it, says YAHWEH of Hosts. And you bring the stolen, and the lame, and the sick; and you bring the grain offering. Should I accept it from your hand? says YAHWEH.
14 But cursed be a deceiver and there is a male in his flock, and he vows it, but he sacrifices a blemished one to YAHWEH. For I am a great

---

[1] Malachi means "*my messenger*" and is the last book of the Tanach written around 400-450 B.C. The book starts by telling why YHWH had punished His people but then turns and gives prophesies for the end time including that a second Eliyahu would appear before the messianic kingdom.

[2] The name of **YAHWEH** has been despised in the end times by exchanging the Creator's true name with pagan names such as "*god*". Gawd is the personal name of the Babylonian deity, see Is 65:11.

[3] The priests were promising to Elohim an offering but in the end exchanging it with something defiled. Yahweh states that they would not do this to a worldly leader and it is also unacceptable to Him.

[4] In the millennial kingdom all will worship the Creator by His true family name of **YAHWEH**.

King, says YAHWEH of Hosts, and My name is feared among the nations.[1]

Chapter 2

1 And now, O priests, this command is to you.
2 If you will not hear, and if you will not set it on your heart to give glory to My name, says YAHWEH of Hosts, then I will send the curse[2] on you, and I will curse your blessings. And indeed, I have cursed it, because you are not setting it on your heart.
3 Behold, I am rebuking your seed, and I will spread dung on your faces, the dung of your solemn feasts; and one will lift you up to it.
4 And you shall know that I have sent this command to you, to be My covenant with Levi, says YAHWEH of Hosts.
5 My covenant with him was life and peace, and I gave them to him for fear; and he feared Me, and he is put in awe before My name.
6 The Law of truth was in his mouth, and iniquity was not found in his lips. In peace and in uprightness he walked with Me, and he turned many from iniquity.
7 For the lips of the priest should guard knowledge, and they should seek the Torah from his mouth; for he is the messenger of YAHWEH of Hosts.
8 But you have turned out of the way; you have caused many to stumble at the Torah. You have corrupted the covenant of Levi, says YAHWEH of Hosts.
9 So I have also made you despised and low to all the people, just as you have not kept My ways, but are lifting up faces in the Torah.
10 Is there not one father to us all? Has not one El created us united? Why do we act deceitfully, each man with his brother, to profane the covenant of our fathers?
11 Judah has dealt treacherously, and has done an abomination in Israel and in Jerusalem; for Judah has profaned the holy place of YAHWEH, which He loves and has married a daughter of a heathen god.[3]
12 YAHWEH will cut off from the tents of Jacob the man who does it, he waking and answering, or offering a grain offering to YAHWEH of Hosts.
13 And this is a second thing you have done: covering the altar of YAHWEH with tears, with weeping and groaning; yet not facing toward the grain offering, and taking it with delight from your hand.
14 Yet you say, On what cause? Because YAHWEH has been witness between you and the wife of your youth, against whom you have dealt treacherously; and she is your companion and your covenant wife.
15 And has He not made you one *(echad)*? Yet the remainder of the Spirit is in him. And what of the one? He was seeking a seed of Elohim. Then guard your spirit, and do not deal treacherously with the wife of your youth.
16 YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, says, He hates divorce, and to cover with violence on his garment, says YAHWEH of Hosts.[4] Then guard your spirit and do not act treacherously.

---

1 The people were doing the same as the priests and vowing one thing but in the end bringing another. Once one vows something to Elohim it is then set apart and cannot be changed.

2 The Hebrew word here for curse is "*Allah*".

3 Upon Judah's return to the land under Ezra some were intermarrying with pagan women which was strictly forbidden according to the Torah. Ezra 9:1-2, Neh 13:23-29, Ex 34:15-16, Deut 7:3-4, Jos 23:12-13,1Kgs 11:1-6.

17 You have wearied YAHWEH with your words. Yet you say, In what have we wearied Him? When you say, Every evildoer is good in the eyes of YAHWEH, and He delights in them; or, Where is the Elohim of justice?[1]

Chapter 3

1 Behold, I am sending My messenger, and He will clear the way before Me. And the Master whom you are seeking shall suddenly come to His sanctuary, even the Messenger of the Covenant, in whom You delight. Behold, He comes, says YAHWEH of Hosts.[2]

2 But who can endure the day of His coming? And who will be standing when He appears? For He is like a refiner's fire and like fuller's soap.[3]

3 And He shall sit as a refiner and purifier of silver; and He shall purify the sons of Levi and purge them like gold and like silver, that they may be presenters of a food offering in righteousness to YAHWEH. *(Eze 44:6-14)*

4 Then the food offering of Judah and Jerusalem shall be pleasing to YAHWEH, as in the days of old, and as in former years.

5 And I will draw near to you for judgment; and I will be a swift witness against the sorcerers, and against the adulterers, and against those swearing to a lie; and against those who extort from the hired laborer's pay; and turning away the widow, and the fatherless, and the foreigner, and not fearing Me, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

6 For I am YAHWEH, I do not change. Because of this, you sons of Jacob are not destroyed.

7 From the days of your fathers, you have turned aside from My statutes and have not kept them. Return to Me, and I will return to you, says YAHWEH of Hosts. But you say, In what shall we return?

8 Will a man rob Elohim? Yet you have robbed Me. But you say, In what have we robbed You? In the tithe and the offering![4] *(Gen 28:20-22)*

9 You are cursed with a curse, for the nation, all of it, you are robbing Me,.

10 Bring all the tithe into the storehouse, so that there may be food in My house. And test Me now with this, says YAHWEH of Hosts, whether I will not open the windows of the heavens for you and pour out a

---

4 Verses 14-16, Elohim is also rebuking the people for divorcing their spouses, in which He states that He hates divorce. Marriage is a sacred covenant that once entered into only the death of one partner can dissolve the agreement, Mk 10:2-12, Gen 2:24.

1 Not only were the people exchanging good for evil, but they also said Elohim must be pleased with this since immediate judgment did not come, Is 5:18-20, Eccl 8:11.

2 In ancient times a messenger would go before a kingly delegation and fix the road of any potholes, etc, to make the path smooth for the king. John the Baptist fulfilled this scripture (Math 11:10) by going before Yahshua preaching repentance to make the path to salvation smoother and there will also be a fore-runner before Yahshua's second coming Rev 11:3-4. The Messenger of YHWH was Yahshua, who will rebuild the sanctuary of YHWH at His return, Zech 6:12-13. See not on Mal 1:1.

3 Both water and fire purify and there is a water and fire baptism. Luk 12:49, Rev 19:11-16, Rev 1:7, 13-18

4 The tithe is Holy to Yahweh and set apart for His work. Here, the people were not paying Yahweh's tithe and in essence stealing from Him. Until Yahweh's 10% is given the other 90% does not belong to the person either. Also, offerings were commanded on the pilgrim feasts, (Deut 16:16). Verses 8-10 also show that the tithe should come to the sanctuary for the working of the ministry.

blessing until there is no sufficiency of room to store it.

11 And I will rebuke the devourer for you, and he shall not destroy the fruit of your ground against you; nor shall your vine miscarry against you in the field, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

12 And all nations shall call you blessed, for you shall be a delightful land, says YAHWEH of Hosts.

13 Your words have been strong against Me, says YAHWEH. Yet you say, What have we spoken against you?

14 You have said, It is vanity to serve Elohim. And, What profit is it that we have kept His charge, and that we have walked as mourners before YAHWEH of Hosts?

15 And now we are calling the arrogant blessed. Not only are the doers of wickedness built up, they also test Elohim, and escape.

16 Then those fearing YAHWEH spoke together, each man to his neighbor. And YAHWEH gave attention and heard. And a Book of Remembrance was written before Him[1] for those who feared YAHWEH, and for those esteeming His name.[2]

17 And they shall be Mine, says YAHWEH of Hosts, for the day that I will make up My treasure. And I will pity them as a man has pity on his son who serves him.

18 Then you shall return and see the difference between the righteous and the wicked, between him who serves Elohim and him who does not serve Him.

[1] Rev 20:12, Ex 32:32-33, Yahweh has a book of life.

[2] One of the first things being recognized with the end time remnant is the acknowledgment of the true name of YAHWEH. Deut 28:58.

Chapter 4

1 For, behold, the day is coming, burning like a fire pot; and all the proud and every doer of wickedness shall be chaff. And the coming day will set them ablaze, says YAHWEH of Hosts, which will not leave root or branches to them.

2 But to you who fear My name, the Sun of Righteousness shall rise up, and healing will be on His wings[3]. And you shall go out and frisk like calves of the stall.

3 And you shall tread under the wicked, for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day which I am preparing, says YAHWEH of Hosts. *(Eze 28:18)*

4 Remember the Torah of My servant Moses which I commanded him in Horeb for all Israel, the statutes and judgments.[4]

5 Behold, I am sending you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of YAHWEH.

6 And he shall turn the heart of the fathers to the sons, and the heart of the sons to their fathers, that I not come and strike the earth with utter destruction.[5]

[3] A reference to King Messiah. "*Healing will be on His wings*", this is the most extreme part of His garment or the tassel, Math 9:20-21.

[4] Here in the end time Yahweh is telling His covenant people to remember the Torah that Moses gave on Mount Sinai. Math 5:17-20, Ps 111:.7-10. Yahshua states in Math 7:22-23- that He will reject the lawless who are Torah violators at His return.

[5] There will be another type of John the Baptist who will fulfill this in the end time.

Book of Psalms

Psalm 1

1 Blessed is the man who has not walked in the counsel of the wicked, and has not stood in the way of sinners, and has not sat in the seat of scorners.
2 But his delight is only in the Torah of YAHWEH, and he meditates in His Torah day and night.
3 And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivulets of waters, which will give its fruit in its seasons, and its leaf will not wither, and all which he does will prosper.
4 Not so are the wicked, but they are only as chaff which the wind drives about.
5 On account of this the wicked shall not stand in the judgment, nor sinners in the congregation of the righteous.
6 For YAHWEH is knowing the way of the righteous, and the way of the wicked shall perish.[1]

Psalm 2

1 Why have the nations raged and the peoples are meditating on emptiness?
2 The kings of the earth have placed themselves; yea, the rulers have plotted together against YAHWEH and His Messiah, saying,
3 We will break their bands in two, and throw off their cords from us.
4 He who sits in the heavens shall laugh; YAHWEH shall mock at them.
5 Then He will speak to them in His anger, and in His wrath He will terrify them;
6 Yea, I have set My king on My holy mount on Zion.
7 I will declare concerning the statute of YAHWEH: He said to Me, You are My Son. Today I have begotten You. *(Acts 13:33, Mk 1:11)*
8 Ask of Me, and I will give the nations as Your inheritance; and as Your possession the ends of the earth.
9 You shall break them with a rod of iron; You shall dash them in pieces like a potter's vessel.
10 Now, then, be wise, O kings; be taught, O judges of the earth:
11 Serve YAHWEH with fear; and rejoice with trembling.
12 Kiss the Son, lest He be angry, and you perish from the way, when His wrath is kindled but a little. Oh the blessings of all those who flee to Him for refuge![2]

Psalm 3

1 A Psalm of David, when he fled from his son Absalom.
O YAHWEH, how my adversaries have multiplied! Many are the ones who rise against me.
2 Many are saying of my soul, There is no salvation for him in Elohim. Selah.
3 But You, O YAHWEH, are a shield around me; my glory, and He who lifts up my head.
4 I cried to YAHWEH with my voice, and He heard me out of His holy mountain. Selah.
5 I laid down, and slept. I awoke, for YAHWEH kept me.
6 I am not afraid of myriads of people who have been set against me all around.

---

[1] Psalm 1, as with many of the Psalms gives a clear distinction between the righteous (those keeping the Torah Ps 119:172) and the wicked, those sinning and disobeying Torah. Sin is defined as breaking the Torah 1Joh 3:4.

[2] This second Psalm not only distinguishes the Messiah reigning under Yahweh, but shows that the Messiah is the Son of YAHWEH, Pr 30:4, Ps 89:26-27.

7 Arise, O YAHWEH! Save me, O
my Elohim. For You have struck all my
enemies on the cheekbone. You have
broken the teeth of the wicked.
8 Y'shua* belongs to YAHWEH.
Your blessing is on Your people. Selah.

Psalm 4

1 To the chief musician, for stringed
instruments, A Psalm of David.

Answer me when I call, Elohim of my righteousness. You gave room to me in distress. Have mercy on me and hear my prayer.
2 O sons of men, until when shall My
glory be for a reproach? Will you love
vanity? Will you run after a lie? Selah.
3 But know that YAHWEH has set
apart the righteous for Himself.
YAHWEH hears when I call to Him.
4 Tremble and do not sin. Speak
within your own heart on your bed and
be still. Selah.
5 Offer the sacrifices of righteous-
ness and trust in YAHWEH.
6 Many are saying, Who will make us
see any good? O YAHWEH, lift up the
light of Your face on us.
7 You have given gladness in my
heart, more than in the time their
grain and their wine grew.
8 I will both lie down in peace and
sleep; for You alone, O YAHWEH,
make me dwell in safety.

Psalm 5

1 To the chief musician, for flutes. A
Psalm of David.

Give ear to my words, O YAHWEH; consider my meditation.
2 Attend to the voice of my cry, my
King and my Elohim; for I will pray to
You.
3 You will hear my voice in the
morning, O YAHWEH, I will set
myself for You in the morning, and I
will look up.
4 For You are not a Elohim enjoying
wickedness; nor shall evil live with
You.
5 The boasters shall not set
themselves before Your eyes. You hate
all workers of iniquity.
6 You shall destroy those speaking
lies; YAHWEH will despise the man
of blood and deceit.
7 But I, in the plenty of Your grace, I
will come into Your house. I will
worship in Your fear toward Your holy
sanctuary, O YAHWEH.
8 Lead me in Your righteousness,
because of my enemies; make straight
Your way before me.
9 For there is no faithfulness in their
mouth; their inward part is engulfing
ruin; their throat is an open grave;
they flatter with their tongue.
10 O Elohim, hold them guilty; let
them fall from their own counsels.
Drive them away in the multitude of
their transgressions, for they have
rebelled against You.
11 But let all who put their trust in
You rejoice; let them shout for joy
forever, because You cover them. And
let those who love Your name be joyful
in You.[1]
12 For You, O YAHWEH, will bless
the righteous; You will surround him
with favor, as with a shield.

Psalm 6

1 To the chief musician, for eight-
stringed instruments. A Psalm of
David.

O YAHWEH, do not rebuke me in Your anger; nor chasten me in the heat of Your fury;
2 have mercy on me, O YAHWEH,

[1] David frequently used the sacred name of YAHWEH and glorified it, singing praises it it often.

for I am weak; heal me, O YAHWEH,
for my bones are troubled.
3 My soul also is greatly troubled
and You, O YAHWEH, until when?
4 O YAHWEH, return, deliver my
soul; save me for Your mercy's sake.
5 For there is no memory of You in
death; who shall give thanks to You in
Sheol? *(Eccl 9:5)*
6 I am weary in my groaning; I shall
make my bed swim in all the night; I
melt my couch with my tears.
7 My eye is dim because of grief; it
wastes away because of all those
distressing me.
8 Depart from me, all workers of
iniquity, for YAHWEH has heard the
voice of my weeping.
9 YAHWEH has heard my plea;
YAHWEH will receive my prayer.
10 Let all my enemies be ashamed
and greatly troubled; they shall turn
back, ashamed in a moment.

Psalm 7

1 A song of David, which he sang to
YAHWEH on the words of Cush the
Benjamite.
O YAHWEH my Elohim, I seek
refuge in You; save me from all who
pursue me, and deliver me,
2 lest he tear my soul like a lion,
ripping, and there be no one to deliver.
3 O YAHWEH, my Elohim, if I have
done this, if there is iniquity in my
hands,
4 if I have repaid evil to one at peace
with me or I have plundered one
oppressing me without cause,
5 let the enemy pursue and overtake
my soul; yea, trample down my life to
earth, and lay my honor in the dust.
Selah.
6 Arise, O YAHWEH, in Your anger;
be lifted up at the rage of those
distressing me; and awake for me! You
have commanded judgment.
7 And the assembly of the peoples
shall surround You, and over it You
will return on high.
8 YAHWEH will judge the people. O
YAHWEH, judge me according to my
righteousness, and according to my
integrity on me.
9 Oh let the evil of the wicked come
to an end; and You will establish the
just; for the righteous Elohim is a trier
of hearts and reins.
10 My defense is on Elohim, who
saves the upright of heart.
11 Elohim is a righteous judge; and
El is angry with evildoers every day.
12 If he will not turn, He will whet
His sword; He has trod His bow, He
made it ready;
13 yea, He has fitted for him
instruments of death. He will make
ready His arrows for pursuers.
14 Behold, he is bound with iniquity
and he will conceive mischief; and he
has fathered falsehood.
15 He dug a pit and bored it, and has
fallen into the ditch he made.
16 His mischief shall return on his
own head, and his violence shall
descend on his own crown.
17 I will thank YAHWEH according
to His righteousness, and will praise
the name of YAHWEH Most High.[1]

Psalm 8

1 To the chief musician, on the harp.
A Psalm of David.
O YAHWEH, our Master, how
majestic is Your name in all the earth;
You have set Your glory above the
heavens!
2 Out of the mouth of babes and
sucklings, You have ordained strength,
because of the ones distressing You, to
cause the enemy and the avenger to
cease. *(Math 21:16)*

---

[1] Ex 23:13

3 When I look upon Your heavens,
the work of Your fingers: the moon
and the stars which You have fixed;
4 what is man that You are mindful
of him, and the son of man, that You
visit him?
5 For You have made him lack a little
from Elohim; and have crowned him
with glory and honor.
6 You made him rule over the works
of Your hands; You have put all under
his feet:[1]
7 all flocks and oxen, and also the
animals of the field,
8 the birds of the heavens, and the
fish of the sea, all that pass through
the sea.
9 O YAHWEH, our Master, how
majestic is Your name in all the earth![2]

Psalm 9

1 To the chief musician, to die for the
Son. A Psalm of David.
I will give thanks, O YAHWEH, with
all my heart; I will tell of all Your
wonderful acts;
2 I will be glad and rejoice in You; I
will praise Your name, O Most High.
3 When my enemies turn back, they
will fall and perish before You.
4 For You have maintained my right
and my cause; You sat on the throne
judging right.
5 You have rebuked the nations; You
have destroyed the wicked; You have
put out their name forever and ever.
6 The desolations of the enemy are
ended forever; and You have uprooted
the cities; their memory has perished
with them.
7 But YAHWEH is seated forever;
He has established His throne for
judgment.
8 And He shall judge the world in
righteousness; He shall judge the
peoples in uprightness.
9 YAHWEH also will be a refuge for
the oppressed, a refuge in times of
distress.
10 And those who know Your name
will put their trust in You; for You,
YAHWEH, have not forsaken those
who seek You.
11 Sing praises to YAHWEH who
dwells in Zion;[3] declare His deeds
among the nations.
12 For He remembers them, the
seeker of bloodshed; He does not
forget the cry of the afflicted.
13 Be gracious to me, O YAHWEH;
see my affliction from the ones hating
me, be lifting me up from the gates of
death,
14 so that I may declare all Your
praises in the gates of the daughter of
Zion; I will rejoice in Your salvation
(Y'shua)*.[4]
15 The nations have sunk into the pit
they made; their foot is taken in the
net they hid.
16 YAHWEH has been known, He
has executed judgment; the wicked is
snared in the work of his own hands. A
meditation, Selah.
17 The wicked shall be turned to
Sheol, all the nations forgetting
Elohim.
18 For the needy shall not forever be
forgotten; the hope of the poor shall
not perish forever.
19 Arise, O YAHWEH! Do not let

---

[1] Verses 3-6 are quoted in Heb 2:6-8 showing the great potential that mankind has been created for.

[2] The family name of YAHWEH is the most imperial and superior name in all the universe.

[3] Jerusalem is Yahweh's eternal capital and headquarters, 1 Kgs 14:21, Joel 2:32, Joel 3:17, 21, Mic 4:2, Ps 48:1-3.

[4] The word for salvation in Hebrew is "*Y'shuah*", and shows that the Messiah will be named *"Yah-shua"* or Yahweh's salvation, Ex 23:21.

man have strength; let the nations be judged before Your face.

20 O YAHWEH, put fear in them; let the nations know they are but men. Selah.

Psalm 10

1 Why, O YAHWEH, do You stand far away? Will You hide in times of trouble?

2 The wicked in his pride will pursue the poor; they will be caught in the schemes which they have devised.

3 For the wicked boasts of his soul's desire, and the covetous he has blessed; scorning YAHWEH.

4 Through pride of his face, the wicked will not seek; there is no Elohim in all of his schemes.

5 His ways are perverted at all times. Your judgments are high from his sight; as for all distressing him, he puffs at them.

6 He has said in his heart, I shall not be moved! From generation to generation never will I be in evil.

7 His mouth is full of cursing and deceit and fraud; under his tongue are mischief and vanity.

8 He sits in the hiding places of the villages; in the secret places he murders the innocent; his eyes watch against the poor.

9 He lies in wait secretly like a lion in his den; he lies in ambush to catch the poor; he seizes the poor, drawing him into his net;

10 and the poor being crushed, he bows; yea, the poor have fallen by his strong ones.

11 He has said in his heart, El has forgotten; He hides His face; He will not see forever.

12 Arise, O YAHWEH! O El, lift up your hand; do not forget the lowly ones.

13 Why does the wicked one despise Elohim? He has said in his heart, You will not require it.

14 You have seen, for You take note of mischief and vexation, to pay back with Your hand. The poor leaves himself to You; You are the helper of the orphan.

15 Break the arm of the wicked and evil one; search out his wickedness until You find none.

16 YAHWEH is King forever and ever; the nations have perished out of His land.

17 O YAHWEH, You have heard the desire of the humble; You will fix their heart; Your ear will hear.

18 Judge the orphan and the hurt one. No more shall the man of the earth continue to terrify.

Psalm 11

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.

I sought refuge in YAHWEH; how can you say to my soul, Flee like a bird to your hill.

2 For behold! The wicked will tread the bow; they fixed their arrow on the string, in order to shoot with it at the upright of heart in the dark.

3 When the foundations are destroyed, what can the righteous do?

4 YAHWEH is in His holy sanctuary; YAHWEH, His throne is in the heavens; His eyes see; His eyelids will examine the sons of man.

5 YAHWEH tries the righteous, but His soul hates the wicked and the one loving violence.

6 He shall rain snares on the wicked; fire and brimstone and a scorching wind shall be the portion of their cup.

7 For YAHWEH is righteous; He loves righteous deeds; the upright look upon His face.

Psalm 12

1 To the chief musician, on eight. A Psalm of David.

Help, O YAHWEH, for the righteous ceases to be; for the faithful fail from among the sons of men.

2 They speak vanity, each man with his neighbor; with flattering lips and a double heart they speak. *(Ja 1:8)*

3 YAHWEH shall cut off all with flattering lips and the tongue that speaks great things;[1]

4 who say, We shall be strong by our tongue; our lips are our own; who is lord over us?

5 For the pain of the poor, for the sighing of the needy, I will now rise up, says YAHWEH; I will set in safety; he pants for it.

6 The Words of YAHWEH are pure Words, like silver refined in an earthen furnace, purified seven times.

7 You shall keep them, O YAHWEH; You shall preserve them from this generation forever.

8 The wicked walk around on every side, when evil is exalted by the sons of men.

Psalm 13

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.

Until when will You forget me, O YAHWEH? Forever? Until when will You hide Your face from me?

2 Until when shall I set counsel in my soul, having sorrow in my heart every day? Until when shall my enemy be lifted up over me?

3 Look! Answer me, O YAHWEH, my Elohim! Make my eyes gleam, lest I sleep the death;

4 lest my enemy say, I have overcome him; and my foes rejoice when I am shaken.

5 But I have trusted in Your mercy. My heart shall rejoice in Your salvation *(Y'shua*)*.

6 I will sing to YAHWEH, because He has rewarded me.

Psalm 14

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.

The fool has said in his heart, There is no Elohim! They acted corruptly; they did hatefully in deeds; there is none doing good.

2 YAHWEH looked down from Heaven on the sons of mankind, to see if there were any discerning and seeking Elohim:

3 they have all turned aside; together they have become filthy; there is none doing good, not even one!*(Ro 3:10-12)*

4 Have all doers of iniquity not known, eating My people as they eat bread? They have not called on YAHWEH.

5 There they feared with dread, for Elohim is in the righteous generation.

6 You have shamed the counsel of the afflicted, for YAHWEH is his refuge.

7 Who will give out of Zion the salvation *(Y'shua*)* of Israel? When YAHWEH brings back the captivity of His people, Jacob shall rejoice; Israel shall be glad. *(Is 59:20, Ps 53:6)*

Psalm 15

1 A Psalm of David.

O YAHWEH, who shall sojourn in Your tabernacle? Who shall settle on Your holy mountain?

2 He who walks uprightly and works righteousness, and speaks the truth in his heart.

3 He does not backbite with his

---

[1] Evil men lie with their tongues and manipulate people.

tongue, nor does evil to his friend, nor lifts up a reproach against his neighbor. *(Pr 6:16-19)*

4 In his eyes, the reprobate has been despised, but he honors those who fear YAHWEH: He has sworn to his hurt, and he will not change it.[1]

5 He has not given his silver at interest; nor has he taken a bribe against the innocent; he who does these things shall not be shaken forever. *(Is 33:15)*

Psalm 16

1 A Secret Treasure of David.
Watch over me, O El, for I take refuge in You. *(Ps 91:1-2)*

2 You have said to YAHWEH, You are My goodness and nothing is apart from You.

3 As for the saints in the earth, they are the excellent ones; all my delight is in them.

4 Their sorrows shall multiply if they run after another Elohim. I will not pour out their drink offering of blood; and I will not take their names on my lips.

5 YAHWEH is the portion of my inheritance and of my cup; You shall surely uphold my lot.

6 The lines have fallen to me in pleasant places; yea, I have a beautiful inheritance.

7 I will bless YAHWEH, who advised me. My mind also teaches me in the nights.

8 I have set YAHWEH always before me; for He is at my right hand: I shall not be shaken.

9 So my heart is glad, and my glory rejoices; my flesh shall also rest in hope.

10 For You will not leave My soul in Sheol; You will not give Your Holy One to see corruption.[2] *(Ps 49:15)*

11 You will make Me know the way of life. In Your presence is fullness of joys; at Your right hand are pleasures forever.

Psalm 17

1 A Prayer of David.
O YAHWEH, hear righteousness; listen to my cry; give ear to my prayer, for it is not in lips of deceit.

2 Let my judgment go out from Your face; Your eyes see uprightly.

3 You will test my heart; You will visit in the night; You will refine me; You will find nothing; my thoughts do not pass beyond my mouth.

4 As to the doings of men, by the Words of Your lips I keep from the paths of the violent.

5 My steps have kept in Your tracks so that my strides have not slipped.

6 I have called on You, for You will answer me, O El; bow down Your ear to me and hear my word.

7 Set out your wonderful loving-kindness by Your right hand, O Savior of those who trust in You, by your right hand from those who rise up against you.

8 Keep me as the pupil, the daughter of the eye; hide me in the shadow of Your wings, *(Zech 2:8, Deut 32:10)*

9 from the face of the wicked who stripped me; against my soul my foes encircle me.

10 They are enclosed in their own fat; their mouth speaks proudly;

11 now they have hemmed in our

---

[1] The true person of YHWH is one that has character and keeps his word at all cost and is not double minded, but loyal to Yahweh in all things.

[2] Yahweh the Father raised up Yahshua from the grave on the third day after His death, because by day 4 the body would have been rotting Joh 11:39. Acts 2:25-26, Acts 13:34-35, Math 17:23, Math 20:18-19.

steps; they set their eyes to extending
to the earth;
12 like a lion who longs to tear, and
like a young lion sitting in hidden
dens.
13 Arise, O YAHWEH, go before his
face and bow him down! Deliver my
soul from the wicked, by Your sword,
14 from men, by Your hand, O
YAHWEH, from men of the world
whose portion is in this life, and their
belly You fill with Your treasure; they
are satisfied with sons, and will leave
their riches to their babes.
15 As for me, in righteousness I will
look upon Your face; when I awaken, I
shall be satisfied by Your image.

Psalm 18

1 To the chief musician, A Psalm of
David, the servant of YAHWEH, who
spoke the words of this song to
YAHWEH in the day that YAHWEH
delivered him from the hand of all his
foes, and from the hand of Saul. And
he said:
I love You, O YAHWEH, my
strength.
2 YAHWEH is my rock and my
fortress and my deliverer; He is my El,
my Rock; I seek refuge in Him; He is
my shield and the horn of my
salvation, my high tower. *(Ps 144:1-2)*
3 I will call on YAHWEH, who is to
be praised; and I shall be saved from
my enemies.
4 The cords of death hemmed me in;
yea, the floods of wicked men
overwhelmed me;
5 cords of Sheol surrounded me; the
snares of death confronted me.
6 In my distress I called on
YAHWEH and I cried to my Elohim;
He heard my voice out of His
sanctuary, and my cry went before
Him, into His ears.
7 Then the earth shook and quaked;
and the foundations of the mountains
quaked and were shaken, because it
angered Him. *(Ps 68:8, Is 13:13)*
8 A smoke went up out of His
nostrils, and fire devoured out of His
mouth; coals were kindled from it.
9 He bowed the heavens also and
came down, and darkness was under
His feet;
10 and He rode on a cherub, and He
flew; yea He soared on the wings of the
wind; (*Ps 99:1)*
11 He made darkness His covering,
His pavilion all around Him, darkness
of waters, thick clouds of the skies.
12 Out of the brightness before Him,
His dark clouds passed through,
hailstones and coals of fire.
13 YAHWEH also thundered in the
heavens; and the Highest uttered His
voice, hailstones and coals of fire.
14 Yea, He sent out His arrows and
scattered them; and lightnings He shot
out, and confounded them.
15 Then the stream beds of waters
were seen, and the foundations of the
earth were bared at Your rebuke, O
YAHWEH, at the blast of the breath of
Your nostrils.
16 He sent from on high, He took
me; He drew me out of many waters;
17 He delivered me from my strong
enemy, and from ones hating me; for
they were stronger than I.
18 They prevented me in my day of
calamity, but YAHWEH was my
support.
19 And He brought me out into a
broad place; He delivered me because
He delighted in me;
20 YAHWEH rewarded me
according to my righteousness;
according to the cleanness of my
hands He has repaid me.
21 For I have kept the ways of
YAHWEH, and have not evilly
departed from my Elohim.
22 For all His judgments were before

me, and I did not turn away His
statutes from me.
23 For I was upright with Him and
kept myself from my iniquity.
24 And YAHWEH has returned to
me according to my righteousness,
according to the cleanness of my
hands before His eyes.
25 With the merciful You reveal
Yourself as merciful; with an upright
man You reveal Yourself as upright;
26 with the pure You reveal Yourself
as pure; and with the crooked, You
appear perverse;[1]
27 For You will save an afflicted
people; but You will bring down
haughty eyes. *(Pr 3:34, Pr 6:17)*
28 For You will light my lamp;
YAHWEH my Elohim will make my
darkness light. *(Ps 119:105)*
29 For through You I can rush
through a troop; and through my
Elohim I have leaped over a wall.
30 The El, is perfect in His way; the
Word of YAHWEH is purified; He is a
shield to all who seek refuge in Him.
31 For who is Eloah besides
YAHWEH? Or who is a Rock except
our Elohim?
32 It is El who girds me with
strength and gives my way to be
perfect;
33 setting my feet like the deer, and
making me stand on my high places;
34 teaching my hands to war, so that
a bow of copper is bent by my arms.
35 You have also given me the shield
of Your salvation *(Y'shua*)*; and Your
right hand holds me up; and Your
gentleness has made me great.
36 You have made a wide place
under me for my steps, so that my
ankles have not stumbled.
37 I have pursued my enemies and
have overtaken them; nor did I turn
back until they were consumed.
38 I have shattered them, and they
cannot rise up; they fell under my feet.
39 And You have girded me with
strength for the battle; You have
bowed under me those rising against
me.
40 And you have given me the neck
of my enemies that I might cut off
those hating me.
41 They cried, but no one is there to
save; to YAHWEH, but He did not
answer them.
42 And I crushed them like the dust
before the wind; I emptied them out
like the mire of the streets.
43 You have delivered me from the
strivings of the people; You have made
me head of the nations; a people I
have not known shall serve me.
44 At the hearing of the ear they
listen to me; the sons of foreigners
shall bow down to me.
45 The sons of foreigners shall faint
and come trembling out of their
strongholds.
46 YAHWEH lives! And blessed be
my Rock! And let the Elohim of
Y'shua* be exalted!
47 The El who avenges me, and
orders people under me.
48 He delivers me from my enemies;
yea, You lift me up from among those
rising up against me. You have
delivered me from the violent man.[2]
49 On account of this I will extol
You, O YAHWEH, among the nations,
and I will sing praises to Your name,
50 magnifying Y'shua*, His king,

[1] Verses 25-26, to those with the mind of Elohim they see Yahweh's great mercy and love but to those who are selfish, self-righteous, and corrupt, even the ways of Yahweh, the perfect merciful Elohim, seem corrupt in their warped, perverted eyes.

[2] The Hebrew word used here for violent is Hamas, the same name as the Palestinian terror group.

and working mercy to His Messiah; To David and to his Seed forever.[1]

Psalm 19

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.
The heavens are recording the glory of El, and the works of His hand the expanse is manifesting.
2 Day by day they pour forth speech, and night to night reveals knowledge.
3 There is no speech, nor are there words where their voice is not heard.
4 Their measuring line has gone out throughout all the earth, and their words to the end of the world; in them He has set up a tent for the sun.
5 And he comes forth like a bridegroom from his canopy. He rejoices like a hero to run a race;
6 His going forth from the end of the heavens, and his orbit to their ends; and nothing is hidden from his heat.[2]
7 The Torah of YAHWEH is perfect, converting the soul. The Testimony of YAHWEH is sure, making the simple wise.
8 The precepts of YAHWEH are right, rejoicing the heart. The commandments of YAHWEH are clear, giving light to the eyes.
9 The fear of YAHWEH is clean, enduring forever. The judgments of YAHWEH are true, they are righteous altogether.
10 They are more precious than gold, even much fine gold, and sweeter than honey and drops from the honeycomb[3].
11 Also Your servant is warned by them; in keeping of them is great reward. *(Pr 13:13, Pr 3:1-2, Pr 29:18)*
12 Who can discern errors? Acquit me from secret faults.
13 Also withhold Your servant from arrogant sins; do not let them rule over me; then I shall be complete, and I shall be innocent from great transgression.
14 Let the words of my mouth and the meditation of my heart be pleasing before You, O YAHWEH, my Rock and my Redeemer.

Psalm 20

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.
May YAHWEH answer you in the day of distress; the name of the Elohim of Jacob set you on high.
2 He sends your help from the sanctuary, and upholds you out of Zion.
3 He will remember all your offerings and make fat your burnt sacrifices. Selah.
4 He will give you according to your heart and He will fulfill all your plans.
5 We will rejoice in your Y'shua*, and in the name of our Elohim set up banners; may YAHWEH fulfill all your prayers[4].
6 Now I know that YAHWEH saves *(Hoshua)* His Messiah, He answers

[1] Verses 30-50 are fully messianic and describe the great trust the Messiah has in Yahweh and even names the Messiah as Yahshua in verses 46, and 50.

[2] Verses 1-6 is showing Yahweh's complete might by the circular pattern of the sun's revolution going out and returning each new year from equinox to equinox Ps 74:17.

[3] Verses 7-10 is showing the perfectness of Yahweh's Torah and how obedience to it only brings blessings in life.

[4] They are rejoicing at the presence of Yahshua the Messiah. Setting up banners is a messianic term that the messiah is coming to redeem the 12 tribes of Israel who each had their own banner.

him from His holy Heaven with the
mightiness of Y'shua*, His right hand.[1]
7 These trust in chariots, and these
in horses, but we will make mention in
the name of YAHWEH our Elohim.[2]
8 They have bowed down and have
fallen, but we have risen and stand
upright.
9 O YAHWEH, Hoshua, The King,
answer us in the day of our calling.

Psalm 21

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of
David.
O YAHWEH in Your strength
rejoices the king; and in your Y'shua*,
how he greatly rejoices.
2 You have given him his heart's
desire and have not withheld the
prayer of his lips. Selah.
3 For You will precede him with the
blessings of goodness; You set a crown
of pure gold on his head.
4 He asked life from You: You gave
to him length of days forever and ever.
(Ps 16:10-11)
5 His glory is great in Your Y'shua*;
You have laid honor and majesty on
him. *(Math 27:46)*
6 For You have set blessings for him
forever; You have made him rejoice in
the joy of Your face.
7 For the king trusts in YAHWEH,
and in the mercy of the Most High; he
will not be shaken.
8 Your hand shall find out all Your
enemies; Your right hand shall find
out those who hate You.[3]
9 You shall set them as a fiery
furnace in the time of Your presence;
YAHWEH will swallow them up in
His wrath, and the fire will devour
them.
10 You shall destroy their fruit from
the earth, and their seed from the sons
of men.
11 For they stretched forth evil
against You; they imagined a plot; they
cannot prevail,
12 for You shall make them turn the
back; against their faces You shall
make ready Your arrows on Your
strings.
13 Be exalted, O YAHWEH, in Your
strength; we will sing, and sing psalms
of Your power.

Psalm 22

1 To the Chief Musician, on the deer
of the dawn. A Psalm of David.
My El, My El, why have You forsaken
Me, and are far from My deliverance,
from the words of My groaning?
2 O my Elohim, I cry by day, but You
do not answer; and in the night, and
there is no silence to Me.
3 But You are holy, sitting to judge
the praises of Israel.
4 Our fathers trusted in You; they
trusted, and You delivered them.
5 They cried to You, and were
delivered; they trusted in You, and
were not ashamed.
6 But I am a worm, and no man; a
reproach of mankind, and despised by
the people. *(Is 53:3)*
7 All who see Me scornfully laugh at
Me; they open the lip; they shake the
head, saying,
8 He rolled on YAHWEH, let Him
deliver Him; let Him rescue Him,
since He delights in Him.[4]
9 For You are He who took me out

[1] There is a word play here with "*saves*" which is "*hoshua*" and "*Y'shua*", YHWH's Messiah and right hand man (Ps 110:1, 5)

[2] Yahweh is a family name consisting of Yah Yahweh the Father (Ps 68:4) and Yahshua Yahweh the son.

[3] The right hand in ancient times was the hand of strength and the right hand of Yahweh is His Messiah, Yahshua who will fight for Him against all enemies Ex 15:6, Ps 110:1, 5, Is 63:5, 8-10. Ps 98:1-3.

from the womb; causing Me to trust on
My mother's breasts.
10 I was cast on You from the womb,
from My mother's belly, You are My
El.
11 Be not far from Me; for trouble is
near; because no one is there to help.
12 Many bulls have circled around
Me; strong bulls of Bashan have
surrounded Me.
13 They opened their mouth on Me,
like a lion ripping and roaring.
14 I am poured out like waters, and
all My bones are spread apart; My
heart is like wax; it is melted in the
midst of My bowels.
15 My strength is dried up like a
potsherd; and My tongue clings to My
jaws;[1] *(Joh 19:28)*
16 and You appoint Me to the dust of
death; for dogs have encircled Me; a
band of spoilers have hemmed Me in,
piercing My hands and My feet.[2]
17 I count all My bones; they look,
they stare at Me.
18 They divide My garments among
them, and they made fall a lot for My
clothing. *(Math 27:35)*
19 But You, O YAHWEH, be not far
off; O My Strength, hurry to help Me!

20 Deliver My soul from the sword,
My only one from the paw of the dog.
21 Save Me from the lion's mouth;
and from the horns of the wild oxen.
You have answered Me.
22 I will declare Your name to My
brothers; I will praise You in the midst
of the assembly. *(Ps 35:18, Heb 2:12)*
23 You who fear YAHWEH, praise
Him; all the seed of Jacob, glorify
Him; and all the seed of Israel, fear
Him.
24 For He has not despised nor
hated the affliction of the afflicted; and
He has not hidden His face from Him,
but when He cried to Him, He heard.
25 My praise shall be of You in the
great assembly; I will pay My vows
before those fearing Him.
26 The meek shall eat and be
satisfied; those who seek YAHWEH
shall praise Him; your heart shall live
forever.
27 All the ends of the earth shall
remember and turn back to
YAHWEH; and all the families of the
nations shall worship before You.
28 For the kingdom belongs to
YAHWEH; and He is the ruler among
the nations.
29 All the fat ones of the earth have
eaten, and have worshiped; all those
going down to the dust shall bow
before Him; and He kept not His own
soul alive.
30 A seed shall serve Him; it shall be
spoken of YAHWEH to the coming
generation;
31 they shall come and shall declare
His righteousness to a people that
shall yet be born; for He has done it.

---

4 Verses 6-8 shows the rejection of the Messiah and the blasphemy that He was subject to, even at His death Math, 27:39-43.

1 This condition would have been very common considering the amount of blood that Yahshua lost in 2 scourgings and being crucified.

2 The Masoretic text takes the word for pierced in Psalm 22:16 (a clear crucifixion Psalm) **kaaru** and changes the last letter from a vav to a yud. The change of letter changes the meaning from pierced my hands, and feet, to lion, as in *"as a lion they are at my hands and feet"*. The Septuagint has pierced from the original Hebrew kaaru not kaari. According to the Dead Sea Scrolls dated about 100 BCE, the Hebrew Word in verse 16 is kaaru ***"pierced***" and not lion. Not only that but the Aramaic Peshitta Targum also agrees with the Septuagint.

Psalm 23

1 A Psalm of David.
YAHWEH is my shepherd; I shall not lack.[1]
2 He makes me lie down in green pastures; He leads me to waters of rest;[2]
3 He restores my soul; He guides me in paths of righteousness for His name's sake.
4 Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death I will fear no evil; for You are with me; Your rod and Your staff, they comfort me.[3]
5 You prepare a table for me before ones vexing me; You anoint my head with oil; my cup runs over.[4]
6 Surely, goodness and mercy shall follow me all the days of my life; and I shall dwell in the house of YAHWEH for days without end.

1 This is probably David's most beautiful psalm showing his total trust and appeasement with Yahweh as his shepherd. Being a shepherd himself David knew that in order for a sheep to feel totally content he must have security, food, water, and he must feel safety under the hand of his shepherd. David is showing in this psalm that no matter what else is around him, that his trust and security in YHWH is all that he needs for contentment.

2 This compared to a sheep having no pasture and stagnant water to drink. However with Yahweh as shepherd there will always be abundance of food and water for peaceful living.

3 The rod is to fight off predators and the staff is to gently lead the sheep when they go off track. The rod and staff could also be compared to the Torah in the 1st covenant and Yahweh's grace in the New Covenant.

4 This was customary treatment of an honored guest at a banquet and shows YHWH's abundance to those in covenant relationship with Him.

Psalm 24

1 A Psalm of David.
The earth belongs to YAHWEH, and the fullness of it; the world, and those who live in it.[5]
2 For He has founded it on the seas and established it upon the rivers.
3 Who shall go up into the hill of YAHWEH? And who shall stand in His holy place?
4 He who has clean hands and a pure heart; who has not lifted up his soul to falsehood and has not sworn deceit.
5 He shall lift up the blessing from YAHWEH, and righteousness from the Elohim of Y'shua*.
6 This is the generation of those seeking Him; they seek Your face, O Elohim of Jacob. Selah.
7 Lift up your heads, O gates; and be lifted up, O everlasting doors; and the King of Glory shall come in.
8 Who is this King of Glory? YAHWEH strong and mighty! YAHWEH mighty in battle!
9 Lift up your heads, O gates; even lift up, O everlasting doors; and the King of Glory shall come in.
10 Who is this King of Glory? YAHWEH of Hosts, He is the King of Glory. Selah.[6]

Psalm 25

1 A Psalm of David.
To You, O YAHWEH, I lift up my soul.

5 All material to make any possession on earth belongs to Yahweh the Creator and even the people whom He created. One should not feel guilt by being blessed with mammon but should use all such blessings for the furtherance of the kingdom and not simply for individual gain.

6 Verses 7-10 is a triumphed melody of the coming Messianic King ready to take the kingdom.

2 O my Elohim, I trust in You; do not let me be ashamed; let not my enemies triumph over me.

3 Yea, let no one who waits on You be ashamed; let those be ashamed those deceiving without cause.

4 Make me know Your ways, O YAHWEH; teach me Your paths;

5 lead me in Your truth and teach me; for You are the Elohim of my Y'shua*; on You I wait all the day long.

6 Remember, O YAHWEH, Your compassions and Your mercies; for they are from eternity.

7 Do not remember the sins of my youth, or my transgressions. According to Your mercy, remember me, for Your goodness' sake, O YAHWEH.

8 Good and upright is YAHWEH; therefore He will teach sinners in the way.

9 He will guide the meek in justice; and He will teach the meek His way.

10 All the paths of YAHWEH are mercy and truth to those keeping His covenant and His testimonies.

11 For Your name's sake, O YAHWEH, even pardon my iniquity for it is great.

12 What man is he who fears YAHWEH? He teaches him the way he should choose.

13 His soul shall abide in good, and his seed shall inherit the earth.[1]

14 The secret of YAHWEH is with those who fear Him; and He will make them know His covenant. *(Pr 9:10)*

15 My eyes are ever toward YAHWEH; for He shall bring my feet out of the net.

16 Turn to me and be gracious to me, for I am lonely and afflicted.

17 The straits of my heart are enlarged; O bring me out from my straits.

18 Look on my affliction and my pain, and lift up all my sins.

19 Look on my enemies, for they are many; they hate me with violent[2] hating.

20 Keep my soul and deliver me; let me not be ashamed, for I have sought refuge in You.

21 Let purity and uprightness keep me, for I wait on You.

22 Redeem Israel, O Elohim, out of all his distresses.

Psalm 26

1 A Psalm of David.

Judge me, O YAHWEH, for I have walked in my integrity; I also have trusted in YAHWEH; I shall not slide.

2 Examine me, O YAHWEH, and prove me; purify my reins and my heart.

3 For Your mercy is before my eyes; and I have walked in Your truth.

4 I have not sat with lying men; and I will not go in with hypocrites;

5 I have hated the assembly of evildoers, and I will not sit with the wicked.

6 I will wash my hands in innocence; so I will go around Your altar, O YAHWEH,

7 to cause to hear with the voice of thanksgiving and recount all Your wonderful works.

8 O YAHWEH, I have loved the place of Your house, and the place where Your glory dwells.

9 Do not gather up my soul with sinners, nor my life with men of blood,

10 in whose hand is a plot, and their right hand is full of a bribe.

11 But I will walk in my integrity; redeem me and be gracious to me.

12 My foot stands in an even place;

---

1 Math 5:5

2 The Hebrew word used here for violent is Hamas.

in the assemblies I will bless YAHWEH.

Psalm 27

1 A Psalm of David.
YAHWEH is my light and my salvation; whom shall I fear? YAHWEH is the strength of my life; of whom shall I be afraid?
2 When the evildoers, my enemies and my foes, came upon me to eat my flesh, they stumbled and fell.
3 If an army should camp against me, my heart shall not fear. Though war rises against me, in this I am trusting.
4 One thing I have asked from YAHWEH, it I will seek: my dwelling in the house of YAHWEH all the days of my life, to behold the delight of YAHWEH, and to inquire in His sanctuary.
5 For in the day of evil He shall hide me in His shelter; in the secrecy of His tabernacle He shall hide me; He shall lift me up on a rock.
6 And now my head shall be lifted up above my enemies, my encirclers, and I will offer sacrifices of joy in His tabernacle; I will sing, yea, I will sing praises to YAHWEH.
7 Hear, O YAHWEH, my voice when I call, and favor me, and answer me.
8 My heart said to You, Seek my face; Your face, O YAHWEH, I will seek.
9 Do not hide Your face from me; Do not turn away Your servant in anger; You have been my help, do not leave me nor forsake me, O Elohim of my Y'shua*.
10 When my father and my mother forsake me then YAHWEH will gather me.
11 Teach me Your way, O YAHWEH, and lead me in a level path, because of those who watch me.
12 Do not give me into the soul of my foes; for false witnesses have risen up against me, and the ones breathing out violence.
13 I would have fainted unless I had believed to see the goodness of YAHWEH in the land of the living.
14 Hope in YAHWEH; be strong and He will make strong your heart; yea, hope in YAHWEH!

Psalm 28

1 A Psalm of David.
I will call to You, O YAHWEH; my Rock, be not deaf to me, lest, if You be silent from me I may be compared with those going down into the Pit.
2 Hear the voice of my prayers in my crying to You, when I lift my hands toward Your Holy of Holies.
3 Draw me not away with the wicked, and with the workers of iniquity; who speak peace with their neighbors, yet evil is in their hearts.
4 Give to them according to their deeds and according to the evil of their practices; as is the work of their hands, give to them, repay their deeds to them.
5 Because they pay no attention to the works of YAHWEH, and to the works of His hands, He will destroy them, and not build them up.
6 Blessed be YAHWEH, because He has heard the voice of my prayers.
7 YAHWEH is my strength and my shield; my heart trusted in Him, and I am helped; yea, my heart greatly rejoices; and I will thank Him with my song.
8 YAHWEH is their strength, and He is the fortress of Y'shua*, He is His Messiah.[1]

[1] Clearly David knew Yahshua personally (Ps 110:1) and also that He was the Messiah and salvation of Yahweh's.

9 Save Your people and bless Your inheritance and feed them, and lift them up forever.

Psalm 29

1 A Psalm of David.
Give to YAHWEH, sons of mighty ones; give to YAHWEH glory and strength.
2 Give to YAHWEH the glory of His name;[1] worship YAHWEH in the majesty of holiness.
3 The voice of YAHWEH is on the waters; the Elohim of glory thunders; YAHWEH is above the abundant water.[2]
4 The voice of YAHWEH is in power; the voice of YAHWEH in majesty.
5 The voice of YAHWEH breaks the cedars; yea, YAHWEH breaks Lebanon's cedars.
6 He also makes them skip like a calf; Lebanon and Sirion like a young wild ox.
7 The voice of YAHWEH is cutting through the flame of fire.
8 The voice of YAHWEH shakes the wilderness; YAHWEH shakes the wilderness of Kadesh.
9 The voice of YAHWEH causes the does to calve; and He uncovers the
forests. And in His sanctuary it all is saying, Glory!
10 YAHWEH sits upon the flowing deluge; yea, YAHWEH sits as King forever.[3]
11 YAHWEH will give strength to His people; YAHWEH will bless His people with peace.

Psalm 30

1 A Psalm; a Song of Dedication of the House of David.
I will exalt You, O YAHWEH; for You have lifted me up and have not allowed my foes to rejoice over me.
2 O YAHWEH my Elohim, I cried to You, and You have healed me.
3 O YAHWEH, You have brought up my soul from Sheol; You have kept me alive, from going down into the Pit.
(Ps 16:10, Ps 86:13)
4 Sing praises to YAHWEH, O saints of His; and give thanks to the memory of His holiness.
5 For His anger is only a moment; but in long life is His favor. Weeping may endure in the evening, but joy comes in the morning.
6 And in my prosperity, I said, I shall never be moved forever.
7 O YAHWEH, in Your favor You have made my strong mountain to stand; You hid Your face; I was troubled;
8 I called to You, O YAHWEH; and to my master I will pray.
9 What profit is in my blood, in going down to the Pit? Shall the dust praise You? Shall it tell of Your truth?

---

[1] It is a direct commandment not to take the personal name of YAHWEH in vain (Ex 20:7). In vain means to change, falsify or make common. Taking the personal name of YHWH and changing it to "*lord*" or "*god*" is clearly violating this commandment and we see here in this verse that true covenant believers are also commanded to give glory to the only personal name of the Creator, **YAHWEH.**

[2] Inside the sanctuary of YHWH under the Holy of Holies was a natural spring in which an inexhaustible flow of water always was flowing.

[3] King David moved the Ark of the Covenant from Gibeon to the City of David (2 Sam 6:12-17), and placed a Tent above the Gihon Spring for it to reside. Recent archaeological excavations in the city of David have found this very place with a stone marking where the Ark of Yahweh would have been placed.

10 Hear, O YAHWEH, and favor me; O YAHWEH, be my helper.
11 You have turned my mourning into dancing for me; You have loosed my sackcloth and have clothed me with gladness.
12 So my glory shall praise You, and not be quiet; O YAHWEH, my Elohim, I will give thanks to You forever.

Psalm 31

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.
In You, O YAHWEH, I sought refuge; let me never be ashamed; deliver me in Your righteousness.
2 Bow down Your ear to me; deliver me quickly, be a strong rock to me, for a house of fortresses to save me.
3 For You are my Rock and my Fortress; and for Your name's sake lead me and guide me.
4 Bring me out of the net that they hid for me, for You are my strength.
5 Into Your hand I commit My spirit; You have redeemed Me, O YAHWEH, El of truth. *(Luk 23:46)*
6 I have hated those keeping worthless idols; but I trust in YAHWEH.
7 And I will be glad and rejoice in Your mercy; for You have seen my affliction; You have known the affliction in my soul;
8 and have not shut me up into the hand of the enemy; You have made my feet to stand in a broad place.
9 Give me your grace, O YAHWEH, for I am in trouble; my eye has wasted away with grief, my soul and my belly.
10 For my life is ending with grief, and my years with sighing; my strength fails because of my iniquity, and my bones have wasted away.
11 I was a reproach among all my foes, but exceedingly to my neighbors; and I was a dread to my friends; those seeing me fled outside from me.
12 I am forgotten like one dead from the heart; I am like a perishing vessel.
13 For I have heard the slander of many; fear is all around; because they are plotting together against me, they planned to take away my life.[1]
14 But I trusted in You, O YAHWEH; I said, You are my Elohim.
15 My times are in Your hand; deliver me from the hand of my enemies and from those who pursue me.
16 Make Your face shine on Your servant; save me in Your mercy.
17 Let me not be ashamed, O YAHWEH; for I have called upon You; let the wicked be ashamed; let them be silent in Sheol.
18 Let the lying lips be silenced which speak recklessly against the righteous with pride and scorn.
19 How great is Your goodness which You have laid up for those who fear You; You have worked for those who trust in You before the sons of mankind.
20 In the secrecy of Your presence You shall hide them from man's plots; You shall cover them in a booth, from the strife of tongues.[2]
21 Blessed be YAHWEH, for He has worked His mercy wondrously to me in a besieged city.
22 For I said in my haste, I am cut off from Your eyes; surely You heard the voice of my prayers when I cried to You.
23 O love YAHWEH, all you saints

[1] In this most heartfelt lament David is grieved beyond measure at what has become of his life and how sick he has become. Only YHWH's grace will comfort him.

[2] David's trust is in the eternal promises of Yahweh and His kingdom for protection in His true tabernacle (booth) Rev 7:15-17.

of His; YAHWEH preserves the faithful, and abundantly repays the proud doer. (Ps 50:5, Ps 94:2)
24 Be strong, and He will make your heart stronger, all you who hope in YAHWEH.

Psalm 32

1 Psalm of David. A Contemplation.
Blessed is he whose transgression is lifted, whose sin is covered.
2 Blessed is the man to whom YAHWEH does not charge iniquity, and in whose spirit there is no deceit.[1]
3 When I kept silence, then my bones became old, through my howling all day.
4 For by day and by night Your hand was heavy on me; my sap was turned into the droughts of summer. Selah.
5 I confessed my sin to You, and I have not hidden my iniquity; I said, I will confess over my transgression to YAHWEH; and You forgave the iniquity of my sin. Selah.[2]
6 On account of this let every righteous one pray to You, at a time of finding; surely, when great floods come they will not reach him.
7 You are my hiding place; You preserve me from trouble; You surround me with songs of deliverance. Selah.
8 I will instruct you and teach you in the way which you should go; I will counsel you, My eye shall be on you.
9 Be not like the horse, like the mule, with no understanding; with bit and bridle his gear to be held in, that they do not come near you.
10 Many sorrows are to the wicked; but he who trusts in YAHWEH, mercy embraces him.[3]
11 Be glad in YAHWEH and rejoice, you righteous ones; and all the upright in heart, shout for joy.

Psalm 33

1 Rejoice in YAHWEH, O righteous ones; praise is becoming to the upright.
2 Give thanks to YAHWEH with the lyre; sing to Him with a harp of ten strings.
3 Sing to Him a new song; play skillfully, with shouts of joy.
4 For the Word of YAHWEH is right, and all His works are in truth.
5 He loves righteousness and judgment; the mercy of YAHWEH fills the earth.
6 Through the Word of YAHWEH the heavens were made; and all their host were made by the breath of His mouth. *(Ps 104:29-30)*
7 The waters of the sea were

---

[1] Leviticus 17:11 states there is no forgiveness of sin without the shedding of blood. Eze 18:23 states that Yahweh takes no pleasure in the death of the wicked but that they turn from their way and repent. The problem being since all humans have committed crimes worthy of death, according to the heavenly court only by accepting the shed blood of Yahshua Messiah to pay the penalty of those sins can one have the penalty of those sins paid for and receive eternal life.

[2] There are 2 steps to atonement with YHWH. One is the forgiveness of the sin and the second (according to Torah) is restitution for what was taken by the sin. Since Yahshua magnified the Torah and shows that anger is murder and lust is adultery, He showed all humans have committed sins that carry the death penalty and since Torah shows "*eye for eye*" and "*life for life*", one must accept the shed blood of Yahshua Messiah to redeem their life from the death penalty that their sins have brought them.

[3] Faith is a per-requisite for salvation

gathered like a heap, setting the depths in storehouses.
8 Let all the earth fear YAHWEH; let all those living in the world stand in awe of Him.
9 For He spoke, and it came into being; He commanded, and it stood fast. *(Gen 1:3)*
10 YAHWEH voids the counsel of the nations, He frustrates the plans of the peoples.
11 The counsel of YAHWEH stands forever, the thoughts of His heart from generation to generation.
12 Blessed is the nation whose Elohim is YAHWEH, the people He has chosen for His inheritance.[1]
13 YAHWEH looks down from Heaven; He sees all the sons of mankind.
14 From His dwelling place He looks on all the ones living in the earth.
15 He forms the heart; He understands all their works.
16 The king is not saved by great force; a mighty man is not saved by great strength.
17 A horse is a vain thing for safety; nor does he save by his great strength.
18 Behold the eye of YAHWEH is to those who fear Him, on those who hope in His mercy; *(Pr 9:10)*
19 to deliver their soul from death, and to keep them alive in famine.
20 Our soul waits for YAHWEH; He is our help and shield.
21 For our heart rejoices in Him because we trust in His holy name.[2]
22 Let Your mercy be upon us, O YAHWEH, even as we wait for You.

Psalm 34

1 A Psalm of David, when he changed his behavior before Abimelech; and he drove him away, and he went.

I will bless YAHWEH at all times; His praise shall always be in my mouth.
2 My soul shall make its boast in YAHWEH; the humble shall hear and be glad.
3 O magnify YAHWEH with me; and let us exalt His name together.
4 I sought YAHWEH, and He answered me, and delivered me out of all my fear.
5 They looked to Him and were filled with light; and their faces were not ashamed.
6 This poor man cried; and YAHWEH heard, and saved him out of all his distress.
7 The Messenger of YAHWEH camps around those who fear Him, and He delivers them.[3]
8 Taste and see that YAHWEH is good; blessed is the man seeking refuge in Him.
9 Fear YAHWEH, His Holy ones, for they who fear Him lack nothing.
10 The young lions have lacked and been hungry; but they who seek YAHWEH shall not lack any good thing.
11 My sons, come, listen to Me; I will make known to you the fear of YAHWEH.[4]
12 Who is the man who desires life, who loves days in order to see good?

[1] Israel had the blessing of being the nation out of all the earth that YHWH had chosen for Himself, Amos 3:1-2

[2] To pray to or trust in any other personal name for Elohim than YAHWEH is unacceptable, Ex 22:20, Ex 23:13. Elohim has many titles El Shaddai, El Elyone, but only one personal name. The name "*god*" is the personal name of the Babylonian deity and is NOT Yahweh's name.

[3] The Messenger of YHWH in the Old Testament is the being who became the salvation of YHWH or Yahshua His Son, Ex 23:20-21.

13 Keep your tongue from evil, and your lips from speaking guile;

14 Turn from evil and do good; seek peace and pursue it.

15 The eyes of YAHWEH are on the righteous; and His ears are open to their cry.

16 The face of YAHWEH is against those who do evil, to cut off their memory from the earth.

17 The righteous cry, and YAHWEH hears; and He saves them out of all their distresses.

18 YAHWEH is near to the broken of heart; and He saves the crushed of spirit.

19 Many are the evils of the righteous, but YAHWEH delivers him out of them all,

20 keeping all His bones; not one of them is broken. *(Joh 19:36, Ex 12:46)*

21 Evil shall slay the wicked; yea, those who hate the righteous shall become guilty.

22 YAHWEH is redeeming the soul of His servants; and none of those who seek refuge in Him shall perish.

Psalm 35

1 A Psalm of David.

O YAHWEH, contend with those who strive against me; fight those who fight against me.

2 Take hold of a shield and buckler, and arise as my help.

3 Draw out the spear and close ranks to meet my pursuers; say to my soul, I am your Y'shua*.

4 Let those who seek my soul be ashamed and disgraced; let them be turned back and brought to confusion, those who plot evil to me.

5 Let them be as chaff before the wind, and the Messenger of YAHWEH driving them away.

6 Let their way be dark and slippery, and the Messenger of YAHWEH their pursuer.

7 For they have hidden their pit-net for me without cause; without cause they have dug for my soul.

8 Let destruction come on him; he will not know; and let his net which he concealed catch him; let him fall in it, into destruction.

9 And my soul shall be joyful in YAHWEH; it will rejoice in His Y'shua*.

10 All my bones shall say: O YAHWEH, who is like You, who delivers the poor from those stronger than he; yes, the poor and needy from his plunderer?

11 Witnesses of violence rise up; they asked me what I did not know;

12 they rewarded me evil for good, bereaving my soul.

13 But in their sickness, my clothing was sackcloth; I humbled my soul with fastings; and my prayer returned to my bosom.

14 I walked as a friend, as to my brother; as one who mourns a mother, I was bowed down mourning.

15 But they rejoiced in my limping; and assembling the defamers assembled themselves against me; and I did not know; they tore and were not silent;

16 with the wicked they were mockers for a cake, gnashing their teeth on me.

17 O YAHWEH, how long will You look on? Bring back my soul from their desolations, my only one from the lions.

18 I will thank You in the great

[4] The fear of YHWH is not just simply being afraid but is also being in awe and in reverence to Him and His Torah and also being obedient to His servants that He administers on the earth. It is a total surrender to the will of YAHWEH and dying to our own human nature.

assembly, and I will praise You among a mighty people. *(Ps 22:22, Heb 2:12)*

19 Let not my lying enemies rejoice over me; do not let those who hate me without cause wink the eye.

20 For they do not speak peace; but they devise deceitful things against the quiet ones of the earth.

21 And they open their mouth wide against me; they say, Aha! Aha! Our eyes have seen.

22 You have seen, O YAHWEH; do not keep silence, O YAHWEH do not be far from me.

23 Stir Yourself and awaken to my judgment, to my cause, my Elohim and my Adonai.

24 Judge me, O YAHWEH my Elohim, according to Your righteousness; and do not let them rejoice over me.

25 Let them not say in their hearts, Aha! Our soul! Let them not say, We have swallowed him up.

26 Let them be ashamed and be confounded together, the ones who rejoice at my evil; let them be clothed with shame and dishonor, the ones who magnify themselves against me.

27 Let those who delight in my justification shout and rejoice;[1] and they shall say continually, YAHWEH be magnified, delighting in the peace of His servant.

28 And my tongue will speak of Your righteousness and of Your praise all the day.

Psalm 36

1 To the chief musician; of the servant of YAHWEH; of David.

The oracle utters transgression to the wicked within my heart, There is no fear of Elohim before his eyes.

2 For he flatters himself in his own eyes, to find his iniquity to be hated.

3 The words of his mouth are wickedness and deceit; he ceases to act wisely, to do good.

4 He plots iniquity on his bed; he sets himself on a way that is not good; he does not hate evil.

5 Your mercy, O YAHWEH, is in the heavens, Your faithfulness to the clouds.

6 Your righteousness is like the hills of El; Your judgments are a great deep; O YAHWEH, You preserve animal and man.

7 How precious is Your mercy, O Elohim! And the sons of men take refuge in the shadow of Your wings.

8 They shall be satisfied from the fatness of Your house; and You make them drink the torrent of Your pleasures.

9 For with You is the fountain of life; in Your light we see light.

10 O continue Your mercy to the ones knowing You, and Your righteousness to the upright of heart.

11 Do not let the foot of pride come to me; and let not the hand of the wicked move me.

12 There the workers of evil have fallen; they are cast down and are not able to rise.

Psalm 37

1 A Psalm of David.

Do not inflame yourself with evildoers; and do not be envious against workers of perversity;

2 for they soon wither like grass and fade like the green herb.

3 Trust in YAHWEH and do good; live in the land and feed on faithfulness.

4 And delight yourself in YAHWEH, that He may give you your heart's desire.

[1] Those who accept the sacrifice of YHWH's servant have great reason to rejoice.

5 Roll your way on YAHWEH and trust in Him; and He will work.

6 And He will bring forth your righteousness like the light; and your judgment like the noon day.

7 Rest in YAHWEH and wait patiently for Him; inflame not yourself with him who prospers in his way, with the man practicing evil wiles.

8 Abstain from anger and cease from fury; also do not inflame yourself to do evil.

9 For evildoers shall be cut off; and the ones waiting on YAHWEH, they shall inherit the land.[1]

10 It is but a little while and the wicked shall not be; yea, you shall consider his place, and he is not.

11 But the meek shall inherit the earth;[2] yea, they shall delight themselves in abundant peace.

12 The wicked plots against the righteous and gnashes on him with his teeth;

13 YAHWEH laughs at him, for He sees that his day is coming. *(Ps 2:4)*

14 The wicked have drawn out the sword and they have bent their bow, to cause the poor and needy to fall, to slaughter those who walk uprightly.

15 Their sword shall enter into their heart, and their bows shall be broken.

16 A little to the righteous is better than the abundance of many wicked.

17 For the arms of the wicked shall be broken; but YAHWEH upholds the righteous.

18 YAHWEH knows the days of the upright; yea, their inheritance shall be forever.

19 They shall not be ashamed in an evil time; and they shall be full in days of famine.

20 But the wicked shall perish; yea, the enemies of YAHWEH shall be like the beauty of pastures; they are consumed; like smoke, they vanish.

21 The wicked borrows and never repays, but the righteous is gracious and giving.[3]

22 For His blessed ones inherit the earth; and those cursed by Him shall be cut off.

23 The steps of a good man are established from YAHWEH; and He will delight in his way.

24 Though he falls, he is not cast down; for YAHWEH upholds his hand.

25 I have been young and am old, yet I have not seen the righteous forsaken, or his seed begging bread.

26 All the day he is gracious and lends; and his seed is for a blessing.

27 Turn away from evil and do good and live forever.

28 For YAHWEH loves judgment and does not forsake His saints; they are preserved forever; but the wickeds' seed shall be cut off.

29 The righteous shall inherit the land and live on it forever.

30 The mouth of the righteous utters wisdom, and his tongue speaks judgment.

31 The Torah of his Elohim is in his heart; his steps do not slide.[4]

32 The wicked spies on the righteous and seeks to kill him.

33 YAHWEH does not leave him in his hand; nor does He allow him to be found guilty in his judgment.

34 Wait on YAHWEH and keep His

---

1 Being in the physical land of Israel was synonymous with being in covenant relationship in the Tanach. Even when Israel went into Diaspora there hope was always in being restored to the land of Israel.

2 Math 5:5

3 Good hearted people will always help the poor, but evil people will borrow and give the commitment to repay, but will never do so. Their word is useless.

4 To a righteous man, the Torah is written on his heart, Ps 119:172.

way; and He shall exalt you to inherit the land; you shall see when the wicked are cut off.

35 I have seen the wicked ruthless, even spreading himself out like a luxuriant, native tree;

36 yet he passed away, and, lo, he was not; and I looked for him, but he could not be found.

37 Watch the perfect and behold the upright one; for the end of that man is peace.

38 But the transgressors are destroyed together; the end of the wicked is cut off.

39 But the salvation of the righteous is from YAHWEH; He is their strength in the time of distress.

40 And YAHWEH helps them and delivers them; He shall deliver them from the wicked and saves them, because they take refuge in Him.

Psalm 38

1 A Psalm of David, to bring to remembrance.

O YAHWEH, do not rebuke me in Your wrath, and do not chasten me in Your fury.

2 For Your arrows sink in me, and Your hand presses heavily on me.

3 There is no soundness in my flesh because of Your anger; nor peace in my bones because of my sin.

4 For my iniquities have passed over my head; as a heavy burden too heavy for me.

5 My wounds have putrefied and rotted because of my foolishness.

6 I am bent down, I am bowed down exceedingly; I went mourning all the day.

7 For my loins are filled with a burning, and there is no soundness in my flesh.

8 I am exceedingly benumbed and crushed. I howl from the groanings of my heart.

9 Adonai, all my desire is before You, and my sighing is not hidden from You.

10 My heart throbs; my power forsakes me! And the light of my eyes, they also are not with me.

11 My lovers and my friends stand apart from my stroke, and my neighbors have stood far off.

12 And those seeking my life lay a snare; yea, those seeking my evil speak ruin, and they utter deceits all the day long.

13 But like a deaf one I do not hear; and I am like a dumb one who does not open his mouth. *(Is 42:19-20)*

14 And I am as a man who is not hearing, and who has no rebukes in his mouth.

15 For I hope in You, O YAHWEH; O Adonai my Elohim You will answer.

16 For I said, Lest they rejoice over me in the slipping of my foot; they exalt themselves over me.

17 For I am ready to fall and my pain is before me always.

18 For I will confess my perversity; I am anxious from my sin.

19 And my enemies are living; they are strong; and ones hating me have multiplied; they lie.

20 And those who repay evil for good, they oppose me, because the good follows me.

21 O YAHWEH, do not forsake me! O my Elohim, do not be far from me.

22 Make haste to help me, O my Adonai, my salvation.

Psalm 39

1 To the chief musician, to Jeduthun. A Psalm of David.

I said, I will keep my ways from sinning with my tongue; I will keep my mouth with a muzzle while the wicked

are before me.*(Mat 12;34-37, Pr 10:19)*
2 I became mute and still; from good I was silent, and my pain was stirred.
3 My heart was hot within me; while the fire burned I was meditating; I spoke with my tongue,
4 O YAHWEH, make me to know my end and the limit of my days, what it is. Let me know how lacking I am.[1]
5 Behold, like a handbreadth You gave my days; even my life was nonexistence before You;
6 surely every man walks about in shadow; surely they are in an uproar in vain; he heaps up and does not know who is gathering them.
7 And now what do I await, YAHWEH? My hope is in You.
8 Deliver me from all my transgressions; do not set me forth as the reproach of the fool.
9 I was mute; I did not open my mouth, because You had done it.
10 Turn away Your plague from me; I am consumed by the blow of Your hand.
11 You correct a man with rebukes over perversity; and as a moth You melt away what he desires. Surely every man is vanity. Selah.
12 Hear my prayer, O YAHWEH, and give ear to my cry. Do not be silent at my tears, for I am an alien with You, a pilgrim, as were all my fathers. *(Heb 11:9)*
13 Look away from me and I will be cheerful before I go away and be no more.

Psalm 40

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.
Waiting I have waited on YAHWEH; and He turned to me and heard my cry.
2 And He drew me up from the pit of tumult, out of the miry clay; He lifted my feet on a rock; He directed my steps.
3 And He put a new song of praise to our Elohim in my mouth; many shall see and shall fear and shall trust in YAHWEH.
4 Blessed is the man who sets YAHWEH as his trust, and does not turn to the proud, or to those who turn to a lie.
5 Many things have You done, O YAHWEH my Elohim; Your works of wonder and Your purposes toward us; there is none to set them in order to You; I will declare and I will speak; they are more than can be counted.
6 Sacrifice and offering You did not desire; But a body You have prepared for Me.[2] You have not asked burnt offering and sin offering.
7 Then I said, Lo, I come, in the roll of the Book it is written of Me;
8 I delight to do Your will, O My Elohim; and Your Torah is within My inmost soul.
9 I have announced righteousness in the great assembly; behold, I will not restrain My lips; O YAHWEH You know.
10 I have not concealed Your righteousness in My heart; I speak Your faithfulness and Your salvation *(Y'shua*)*. I have not hidden Your loving-kindness and Your truth from the great assembly.[3]
11 Do not withhold Your tender

---

[1] Ps 90:9-12

[2] Verses 6 -8, verse 6 correctly states that Yahweh did not delight in sacrifices of animals (Jer 7:21-23), but they were a mere shadow of the sacrifice of His servant, the Messiah. Both the Septuagint and New Testament (Heb 10:5-10) have this verse correctly translated as it is here, but the Masoretic text changed this verse to say " *you have opened up my ears*" clearly a mistranslation of the older texts mentioned.

mercies from me, O YAHWEH; let
Your loving kindness and Your truth
always watch over me.
12 For evils have surrounded me
until there is no number; my iniquities
have taken hold on me and I am not
able to look up; they are more than the
hairs of my head, and my heart fails
me.
13 Be pleased to deliver me, O
YAHWEH; hasten to my help.
14 Let those seeking my soul to
destroy it, be ashamed and humbled
together; let those delighting in my
evil be driven back and disgraced.
15 Let them be desolate until it is the
reward for their shame; for they are
saying to me, Aha! Aha!
16 Let all who are seeking You be
glad in You and always say, May
YAHWEH be magnified, those loving
Your salvation.
17 But I am poor and needy;
YAHWEH will take thought for me.
You are my help and my deliverer; O
my Elohim, do not delay.[1]

Psalm 41

1 To the Chief Musician. A Psalm of
David.
Blessed is he who acts wisely toward
the poor; YAHWEH will deliver him
in the day of evil. *(Pr 14:21, Pr 28:27)*
2 YAHWEH will watch over him
and keep him alive; he shall be blessed
on the earth, and You will not deliver
him to the soul of his enemies.
3 YAHWEH will uphold him on the
couch of sickness; You change all his
bed in his sickness.
4 I said, O YAHWEH be gracious to
me; heal my soul, for I have sinned
against You.
5 My enemies speak evil of me,
saying, When will he die and his name
perish?
6 And when he comes to see me he
speaks vanity; his heart gathers
iniquity to itself; he goes outside and
speaks.
7 All those hating me whisper
together against me; they plot evil
against me,
8 saying, a thing of ruin is poured
out on him; and, He who lies down
shall not rise again.
9 Even a man of my peace, I trusted
in him, eating of my bread; this one
has lifted up his heel against me.
10 But You, O YAHWEH, give me
your grace and raise me up, and I will
repay them.
11 By this I know that You delight in
me, because my enemy does not exult
over me.
12 And I, in my integrity You uphold
me, and You set Your face before me
forever.
13 Blessed be YAHWEH Elohim of
Israel, even from everlasting to
everlasting! Amen and Amen!

Psalm 42

1 To the chief musician. A
Contemplation for the sons of Korah.
As the deer pants after the channels
of water, so my soul pants after You, O
Elohim.
2 My soul thirsts for Elohim, for the

[3] Verses 9-10, The servant of Yahweh here is stating that His job will be to speak the truth of Yahweh to the congregation and bring Yahweh's salvation to Israel; that is why His name will be “*Yah-shua*” or *Yah's salvation.*

[1] Verses 6-10- Here are messianic insert scriptures which are common throughout the Tanach. Verses 1-5, and 11-17 David is speaking to YHWH, but verses 6-8, and 9-10, it is not David speaking but a prophecy of the Messiah.

living Elohim; when shall I come and
see the face of Elohim?[1]
3 My tears have been my food by day
and by night, while they say to me all
the day, where is your Elohim?
4 When I remember these things and
I pour out my soul on me (for I crossed
with the throng; I led them to the
house of Elohim with the voice of
rejoicing and praise, a host keeping
the feast).
5 O my soul, why are you cast down
and moan within me? Hope in Elohim,
for I shall yet thank Him Y'shua*, to
His face.
6 O my Elohim, my soul is cast down
within me; on account of this I
remember You from the land of
Jordan, and from the Hermons, from
Mount Mizar.
7 Deep calls to deep through the
voice of Your waterfalls; all Your
waves and Your billows have passed
over me.
8 YAHWEH will command His
loving-kindness by day, and His song
shall be with me in the night, a prayer
to the El of my life.
9 I will say to El my Rock, Why have
You forgotten me? Why do I go
mourning when the enemy oppresses
me?
10 Ones vexing me reproach me with
crushing in my bones, when they say
to me every day, Where is your
Elohim?
11 O my soul, why are you cast
down? And why do you moan within
me? Hope in Elohim, for I yet thank
Him for the Savior of my face and also
He is my Elohim.[2]

Psalm 43

1 Judge me, O Elohim, and strive for
my cause against a nation that is not
righteous. Deliver me from the
deceitful and unjust man.
2 For You are the Elohim of my
strength. Why have You cast me off?
Why do I go mourning when the
enemy oppresses?
3 O send out Your light and Your
truth; let them lead me and bring me
to the mount of Your holiness and to
Your tabernacles.
4 Then I will go to the altar of
Elohim, to El, the joy of my delight,
and I will thank with the lyre, O
Elohim, my El.
5 Why are you cast down, O my soul,
and why do you moan within me?
Hope in Elohim, for I will still thank
Him for the Savior of my face and also
He is my Elohim.[3]

Psalm 44

1 To the chief musician. A
Contemplation for the Sons of Korah.
We have heard with our ears, O
Elohim; our fathers have told us the

---

[1] Verses 1-2, YHWH in scripture is compared to living water as in ancient times water was life. In Israel, the rainy season is from Nov-Mar, and then there is no rain at all for 6-7 months so people had to make cisterns and save every drop of water they could for the long hot summers. Abundant rain meant abundant harvest and blessing from YHWH, no rain meant famine and curses. This is why at the sanctuary of YHWH in Jerusalem there was an inexhaustible natural spring of water right under the Holy of Holies where the priest would gather water for the daily sacrifices and washings (See Ps 29.3, 10-11).

[2] In verse 5 the Psalmist states he will thank Yahshua to His face for the salvation that He will bring and here in verse 11, he is also thanking Elohim for sending the Savior.

[3] Once again the psalmist is yearning for redemption back to the land and knows that this will only come through Elohim sending His messenger, the Messiah.

work You did in their days, in the days of old.

2 You drove out nations with Your hand and planted them. You brought evil on peoples and sent them out.

3 For they did not inherit the land with their own sword; yea, their own arm did not save them. But it was Your right hand and Your arm and the light of Your face, because You favored them.[1]

4 You are He, my King, O Elohim; command deliverances for Jacob.

5 Through You we will push our enemies; through Your name we will trample those who rise up against us.

6 For I will not trust in my bow, and my sword shall not save me.

7 But You have saved us from our enemies and have put to shame those who hate us.

8 We boast in Elohim all the day; and we praise Your name forever. Selah.[2]

9 Now You have cast us off and have shamed us. And You do not go forth with our armies.

10 You make us turn back from the enemy; yea, those hating us plunder for themselves.

11 You have given us like sheep for food and have scattered us among the nations.

12 For no gain You have sold Your people, and You are not increased by their price.

13 You made us a disgrace to our neighbors, a scorn and a mockery to those around us.

14 You make us a byword among the nations, a shaking of the head among the peoples.

15 My humiliation is before me all the day; yea, the shame of my face covers me,

16 because of the slanderer's voice and the blasphemer, before the face of the enemy and avenger.

17 All this has come upon us, and we have not forgotten You nor dealt falsely with Your covenant.

18 Our heart has not turned back, and our steps have not swerved from Your way,

19 though You have crushed us in the place of jackals and covered us over with the death-shade.

20 If we have forgotten the name of our Elohim, and have spread our hands to an alien god,

21 shall not Elohim search this out? For He knows the secrets of the heart.

22 Yea, for Your sake we are slain all the day; we are counted as sheep of slaughter. *(Is 53:6)*

23 Be aroused! Why do You sleep, O YAHWEH? Awake! Do not cast us off forever. *(Ps 7:6, Ps 78:65)*

24 Why do You hide Your face and forget our affliction and distress?

25 For our soul bows down to the dust; our belly holds fast to the earth.

26 Arise for our help and redeem us for the sake of Your mercy.

Psalm 45

1 To the Chief Musician, Concerning the Lilies. For the sons of Korah. A Poem; a Song of the Beloved.

My heart is overflowing with a good matter. I am speaking of my works to the King; my tongue is the pen of a rapid writer.

2 You are the fairest of the sons of man; grace has poured into Your lips; on this account Elohim has blessed You forever.

[1] Even in the Old Covenant, it was the servant or messenger of YHWH who saved for YHWH and not the people redeeming themselves. It was the right hand of Yahweh, the very "*light of His face*" that saved the people for Him. Is 63:5

[2] The name of YAHWEH will be forever praised.

3 Gird Your sword on Your thigh, Mighty One; with Your glory and Your majesty.

4 And ride prosperously in Your majesty, on the matter of truth and meekness and right, and Your right hand shall teach You fearful things.[1]

5 Your arrows are sharp in the heart of the King's enemies; peoples fall under You.

6 Your throne, O Elohim, is forever and ever; the scepter of Your kingdom is a scepter of uprightness.

7 You love righteousness and hate wickedness; therefore, Elohim, Your Elohim, has anointed You with the oil of gladness more than Your fellows.[2]

8 All Your garments smell of myrrh and aloes and cassia out of ivory palaces; by strings of a harp they make You glad.[3]

9 King's daughters are among Your precious ones; the queen stands at Your right hand in gold of Ophir.

10 Listen, O daughter, and look, and incline your ear, and forget your people and your father's house.

11 And the King will desire your beauty, for He is your master, and you shall worship Him.

12 And the daughter of Tyre will stroke Your face with a gift, the rich among the peoples.

13 The king's daughter is all glorious within, her clothing braided gold.

14 She shall be led to the King in embroidered work; her companions, the virgins, shall be brought to You after her.

15 They shall be led with gladness and rejoicing; they shall go in to the King's palace.

16 Your sons shall be in the place of your fathers; You will make them for rulers in all the earth.

17 I will make remembered Your name in every generation and generation; on this account people shall thank You forever and ever.[4]

Psalm 46

1 To the chief musician. For the sons of Korah; A song. For the Virgins.[5]

Elohim is our refuge and strength, very much found to be a help in distresses.

2 On account of this we will not fear when the earth changes and when mountains are slipping into the heart of the seas.

3 Let its waters rage and foam; let the mountains shake in its swelling. Selah.

4 There is a river, its channels gladden the city of Elohim, the holy tabernacles of the Most High.[6]

---

1 Verses 1-4, clearly a messianic Psalm as no king of Israel would exult such praise as this, except the Messiah.

2 Verses 5-7 now reveal that not only is this speaking about the Messiah, but He is also called Elohim. Then in verse 7, The Messiah who is called Elohim also has an Elohim above Him. This is another dogmatic proof that Yahweh is a family name consisting of Yah Yahweh the Father and Yahshua Yahweh the Son, who is the servant and messenger of Yahweh the Father and His very Son, Ps 2:7, Pr 30:4, Mk 1:11.

3 Yahshua was buried with myrrh spices Joh 19:39-40. Myrrh was a spice that could only get the smell of the fragrance by beating it, as He was beaten before His crucifixion.

4 King Messiah will be exulted by YHWH to be the greatest name to be remembered forever (Phil 2:5-11).

5 Ps 46 is all about Elohim being a refuge for the people during the great time of distress on the earth and then, YHWH dwelling with His people during the millennial reign. Mathew 25 speaks about the 10 virgins, and how half were wise and preparing and half were not. Also, Rev 12:13-14 shows the wise virgins being taken to a place of protection during this most turbulent time.

6 Eze 47:1-12, Rev 22:1-2.

5 Elohim is in the midst of her; she shall not be shaken; Elohim will help her at the turning of the morning.
6 The nations roared; kingdoms were shaken; He gave forth His voice and the earth melted.
7 YAHWEH of Hosts is with us; the Elohim of Jacob is a refuge for us. Selah.
8 Come, behold the works of YAHWEH, who sets ruins on the earth,
9 causing wars to cease to the end of the earth; He breaks the bow and cuts apart spears; He burns the chariots in the fire. *(Mic 4:3)*
10 Be still and know that I am Elohim! I will be exalted among the nations; I will be exalted in the earth.
11 YAHWEH of Hosts is with us; the Elohim of Jacob is a refuge for us. Selah.

Psalm 47

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm for the Sons of Korah.

All the peoples clap the hand; shout aloud with a ringing cry of shouting.
2 For YAHWEH Most High is awesome, a great King over all the earth.
3 He shall speak peoples under us, even nations under our feet.
4 He chooses our inheritance for us, the majesty of Jacob whom He loved. Selah.
5 Elohim has gone up with a shout, YAHWEH with the sound of a ram's horn.
6 Sing praise; sing praise; sing praise to our King, sing praise!
7 For Elohim is the King of all the earth; sing a psalm for understanding.
8 Elohim reigns over the nations; Elohim sits on the throne of His holiness.
9 The nobles of peoples gather together, the people of the Elohim of Abraham. For the shields of the earth are Elohim's; He is greatly lifted up.[1]

Psalm 48

1 A Song, A Psalm for the Sons of Korah.
Great is YAHWEH, and exceedingly to be praised in the city of our Elohim, His holy mountain.
2 Beautiful on high, the joy of all the earth, is Mount Zion, in the sides of the north, the city of the great King.[2]
3 Elohim is known in her strongholds for a refuge.
4 For, lo, the kings met together; they passed by together;
5 they saw, so they marveled; they were troubled and fled away.
6 Trembling and pain seized them there, like a woman in labor.
7 You break the ships of Tarshish with an east wind.
8 As we have heard, so we have seen in the city of YAHWEH of Hosts, in the city of our Elohim. Elohim establishes it forever. Selah.
9 We have thought on Your loving-kindness, O Elohim, in the midst of Your sanctuary.
10 According to Your name, O Elohim, so is Your praise to the ends of the earth; Your right hand is full of righteousness.
11 Mount Zion shall be glad; the

---

1 Ps 47 continues with the theme of Ps 45 and 46 of the Messiah being Elohim and coming to earth to reign over Israel and protect them.

2 Now it is even being more specific of Yahweh reigning in Jerusalem in His Holy Mountain, Mount Zion in the city of David (2Chron 5:2). "*The City of the Great King*" Math 5:35, speaking of Jerusalem, where Yahshua also known by the title Melchizedek is called "*King of Jerusalem*", Heb 7:1-2.

daughters of Judah shall shout for joy because of Your judgments.
12 Walk around Zion; yea, go all around it; count its towers;
13 set your heart on its ramparts; pass between its strongholds; in order that you may report to the coming generation.
14 For this Elohim is our Elohim forever and ever; He will be our guide even unto death.

Psalm 49

1 To the chief musician, A Psalm for the Sons of Korah.
Hear this, all peoples, give ear, all those living in the world,
2 both sons of mankind and sons of man together, rich and poor:
3 My mouth shall speak wisdom, and the thoughts of my heart shall be of understanding.
4 I will bow down my ear to a parable; I will open my dark saying on the harp. (Ps 78:1-2, Math 13:34-35)
5 Why should I fear in the days of evil, when the perversity of my ambushers will surround me?
6 Those who trust in their wealth and in their many riches boast themselves.
7 A man cannot at all redeem a brother, nor give to Elohim a ransom for him,
8 for the redemption of their soul is precious, and it ceases forever,[1]
9 for he shall yet live forever; he shall never see corruption.
10 For he sees wise men die; together the fool and the animal-like ones perish and leave their riches to others.
11 Their inward thought is that their houses shall last forever, their dwelling-places to all generations; they call lands after their own names.[2]
12 But man shall not remain high in honor; he is like the animals; they shall be cut off.
13 This way of theirs is folly to them, yet their followers shall be pleased by their mouth. Selah.
14 Like sheep, they are appointed to Sheol. Death shall reign for them. And upright ones shall rule over them in the morning; and their strength is for rotting; Sheol is home for him.
15 But Elohim will redeem my soul from the hand of Sheol, for He will take me. Selah. *(Ps 16:10-11)*
16 Do not be afraid when one becomes rich, when the glory of his house increases;
17 for when he dies he shall take nothing; his glory shall not go down after him.
18 For in his life he blessed his soul; yea, men praise you when you do well for yourself.
19 He shall go to the generation of his fathers; they shall not see light forever.
20 Man, though high in honor, but not understanding, is like the animals; they shall be cut off.[3]

---

1 Yahweh does not take pleasure in the death of the wicked, but rather that they would turn from their wicked way and repent, Eze 18:20-23.

2 Even though all humans that have ever lived have died, man in his vanity somehow avoids the thought of death and gathers mammon on this earth as if he is going to live forever.

3 Verses 16-20, the point being made is there is no need to be jealous of people when they accumulate riches as they will shortly die and cannot take it with them. The much better road is to build righteous character that will follow into the resurrection and eternal life.

Psalm 50

1 A Psalm of Asaph.
El, YAHWEH Elohim, has spoken, and calls to the earth from the rising of the sun to its going in.
2 Out of Zion, the perfection of beauty, Elohim has shone.
3 Our Elohim comes, and He is not silent; a fire shall devour before Him; and it shall be very stormy around Him.
4 He shall call to the heavens from above, and to the earth, to judge His people.
5 Gather My saints together to Me, those who cut My covenant by sacrifice.[1] *(Jer 34:18, Ex 24:8)*
6 And the heavens shall declare His righteousness, for Elohim Himself is judge. Selah.
7 Hear, My people, and I will speak, O Israel, and I will testify against you; I am Elohim, your Elohim.
8 Not for your sacrifices do I reprove you; yea, your burnt offerings are continually before Me;
9 I will take no bull out of your house, nor he-goats out of your folds,
10 for every beast of the forest is Mine; the cattle on a thousand hills;
11 I know all the birds of the mountains; and all moving in My fields are Mine;
12 if I were hungry, I would not tell you, for the world is Mine, and the fullness of it.
13 Will I eat the flesh of bulls, and will I drink the blood of he-goats?
14 Sacrifice thanksgiving to Elohim, and repay your vows to the Most High. *(Ps 22:25, Ps 66:13)*
15 And call on Me in the day of distress, and I will save you; and you shall glorify Me.
16 But to the wicked, Elohim says, What is it to you to proclaim My statutes, and to take up My covenant on your mouth?
17 And you hate discipline and toss My Words behind you. *(Pr 5:12, 12:1)*
18 When you saw a thief, you were pleased with him; and with adulterers is your part.
19 You give your mouth to evil, and your tongue frames deceit.
20 You sit; you speak against your brother; you give fault to the son of your mother.
21 You have done these things, and I have kept silence; you thought that surely I would be like you; but I will rebuke you and set in order before your eyes.
22 Now think of this, you who forget Eloah, lest I tear, and there not be any to deliver:
23 Whoever sacrifices thanks glorifies Me; and he who determines his course of life, I will show him Y'shua* Elohim.[2]

Psalm 51

1 To the chief musician, A Psalm of David when Nathan the prophet came to him, after he had gone in to Bathsheba.
Let your grace be to me, O Elohim, according to Your loving-kindness, according to the multitude of Your tender mercies; blot out my transgressions.

---

[1] The ancient blood covenant had nine steps; the third step was cutting an animal in two and walking through the pieces in a figure eight and then standing face to face to give your vows to your covenant partner, Gen 15:10, 17-18.

[2] It is those who are humble and correctable and give thanksgiving to Elohim that YHWH will reveal Yahshua to in their life. The Septuagint has this verse slightly different as " *"Whoever sacrifices thanks glorifies Me and there/then will I show him a way in Yahshua Elohim"*.

2 Wash me completely from my iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin.

3 For I know my transgressions; and my sin is ever before me.

4 Against You, You only, I have sinned, and done evil in Your eyes; that You might be justified in Your speaking and be clear when You judge.[1]

5 Behold, I was brought forth in iniquity, and in sin my mother conceived me.[2]

6 Behold, You desire truth in the inward parts; and in the hidden parts You teach me wisdom.

7 Purify me with hyssop, and I shall be clean; wash me, and I shall be whiter than snow.

8 Cause me to hear joy and gladness; the bones You have crushed will rejoice.

9 Hide Your face from my sins, and blot out all my iniquities.

10 Create in me a clean heart, O Elohim; and renew a steadfast spirit within me.

11 Do not cast me out from Your presence, and do not take Your Holy Spirit from me.[3]

12 Restore to me the joy of Your salvation (Y'shua*), and uphold me with a willing spirit.

13 Then I will teach transgressors Your ways; and sinners will turn back to You.

14 Deliver me from the guilt of shedding blood, O Elohim, O Elohim of my salvation; my tongue shall sing aloud of Your righteousness.

15 O YAHWEH, open my lips and my mouth shall declare Your praise.

16 For you do not desire sacrifice, or I would give it; You do not delight in burnt offering. *(Jer 7:21-23)*

17 The sacrifices of Elohim are a broken spirit; a broken and a contrite heart, O Elohim, You will not despise.[4]

18 Do good in Your good pleasure to Zion; build the walls of Jerusalem.

19 Then You shall be pleased with the sacrifices of righteousness, with burnt offering and whole offering; then they shall offer bulls on Your altar.[5]

Psalm 52

1 To the chief musician. A Contemplation. A Psalm of David when Doeg the Edomite came and told Saul, and said to him, David has come to the house of Ahimelech.

Why do you boast yourself in evil, O hero? The mercy of El is all the day.

2 Like a sharp razor your tongue devises destruction, working deceit.

3 You love evil more than good, lying more than to speak righteousness. Selah.

4 You love all devouring words, O deceitful tongue!

5 El will likewise break you forever; He shall take you away, even pluck you from your tent and uproot you out of the land of the living. Selah.

6 And the righteous shall see and fear; yea, they will laugh over him, saying,

7 Behold, the man who did not set

[1] Verses 1-4 one can see clear humility and a repentant heart, which is required to receive Elohim's grace and forgiveness.

[2] This is not stating that David's mother committed a particular sin when he was conceived, but rather a reference to the evil human nature of mankind in general.

[3] David had Elohim's spirit.

[4] See note on Jer 7:22.

[5] Verses 18-19- Dan 9:25 states that Messiah will come 483 yrs after the walls and city of Jerusalem are built and then, YHWH will be pleased with sacrifices as Messiah Yahshua will make the ultimate sacrifice by dying Himself for the sins of the people Dan 9:26, Is 53:8, 10-12.

Elohim as his strength; but he trusted in his many riches; he was strong in his destruction.
8 But I am like an olive, greening in the house of Elohim; I trust in the mercy of Elohim forever and ever.
9 I will thank You forever, because You have done it; and I will wait in Your name, for it is good before Your saints.

Psalm 53

1 To the Chief musician on Mahalath. A Contemplation; A Psalm of David.
The fool has said in his heart, There is no Elohim! They have done corruptly; they have committed abominable wickedness; there is none doing good!
2 Elohim looked down from Heaven on the sons of mankind, to see if there was any discerning, who was seeking Elohim:
3 Every one has turned aside, together they are corrupted, not one is doing good, not even one!*(Ro 3:10-12)*
4 Have the workers of evil not known, eating up My people as they eat bread? They have not called on Elohim.
5 There they dreaded with dread, where no dread was; for Elohim has scattered the bones of the one who besieges you; you have put them to shame because Elohim rejects them.
6 Who gives from Zion Y'shua* of Israel? When Elohim brings back the captivity of His people, Jacob shall rejoice; Israel shall be glad.[1]

Psalm 54

1 To the Chief Musician on Neginoth. A Contemplation; A Psalm of David, when the Ziphites came and said to Saul, Does not David hide himself among us?
Save me, O Elohim, by Your name; and judge me by Your strength.
2 Hear my prayer, O Elohim; listen to the words of my mouth.
3 For strangers have risen up against me; and terrifying men seek after my soul; they have not set Elohim before them. Selah.
4 Behold, Elohim is my helper. YAHWEH is with those who uphold my soul.
5 He shall reward evil to my enemies; cut them off in Your truth.
6 I will freely sacrifice to You; I will praise Your name, O YAHWEH, for it is good.
7 For He has delivered me out of all distress; and my eye has seen its desire on my enemies.

Psalm 55

1 To the Chief Musician on Neginoth. A Contemplation. A Psalm of David.
Give ear to my prayer, O Elohim; and do not hide Yourself from my plea.[2]
2 Pay attention to me, and answer me; I wander and I moan in my complaint,
3 from the voice of the enemy, from the oppression of the wicked; for they shake trouble over me, and in anger they hate me.
4 My heart is pained within me, and the terrors of death have fallen on me.
5 Fear and trembling come on me; and horror has covered me.
6 And I said, Who will give to me

[1] When YHWH gives Yahshua to return to Israel there will be great rejoicing. Ps 14:7

[2] This a repeated prayer on the same subject of deliverance from his enemies.

wings like a dove? I would fly away and be at rest.

7 I would rove far away, fleeing; I would lodge in the wilderness. Selah.

8 I would hasten to my escape from the rushing wind, from the tempest.

9 Swallow up, O YAHWEH; divide their tongue; for I see violence[1] and strife in the city.

10 They go around her on her walls by day and night; and trouble and mischief are in her midst.

11 Covetings are in her midst; oppression and guile will not depart from her streets.

12 For it is not an enemy reproaching me, or I could bear it; it is not one who hates me who is magnifying himself against me; or I would hide myself from him.

13 But it is you, a man of my rank, my friend and my acquaintance.

14 We sweetened counsel together; we marched into the house of Elohim with the throng.

15 Desolation be upon them! They go down into Sheol alive, for evils are among them in their dwelling.

16 I, even I, will call to Elohim, and YAHWEH will save me.

17 Evening and morning and at noon I will complain and cry aloud; and He will hear my voice. *(Dan 6:10)*

18 He redeems my soul in peace from the war being waged against me; for they were many with me.

19 Elohim shall hear and answer them, even He who is enthroned of old. Selah. There are no changes to them; yea, they do not fear Elohim.

20 He put out his hand against peaceful ones; he broke his covenant.

21 The words of his mouth were smoother than butter, and war was in his heart; his words were softer than oil, but they were as drawn swords.

22 Cast on YAHWEH what He has given, and He will keep you; He will not give the righteous to waver, forever.

23 But You, O Elohim, will bring them down to the pit of destruction; men of blood and deceit will not live out half their days; but I will trust in You.

Psalm 56

1 To the chief musician. Concerning the silent dove, those far off. Of David, a secret treasure (when the Philistines seized him in Gath).

Give me your grace, O Elohim, for man snuffs me up; all the day fighting oppresses me.

2 My watchers panted for me all the day; for many are proudly fighting against me.

3 The day I am afraid I will trust in You.

4 In Elohim I will praise His Word; in Elohim I have trusted; I will not fear; what will flesh do to me?

5 All the day they pervert my words; all their thoughts are against me for evil.

6 They stir up strife; they hide; they observe my footprints as they wait for my soul.

7 Is escape for them by iniquity? In anger cast down the peoples, O Elohim.

8 You have counted my wandering; O put my tear in Your bottle; are they not in Your Book?[2]

9 Then my enemies will turn back in the day I call; this I know, for Elohim is for me.

10 In Elohim I will praise the Word; in YAHWEH I will praise the Word.

---

1 The Hebrew word for violence here is Hamas.

2 Showing that Elohim cares about each small aspect of our life and nothing goes without His recognition of it.

11 In Elohim I have trusted; I will not fear; what will man do to me?

12 On me, O Elohim, are Your vows; I will render to You thank offerings.

13 For You have delivered my soul from death. Do You not keep my feet from falling, so that I may walk before Elohim in the light of the living?

Psalm 57

1 To the chief musician. Do not destroy. A secret treasure of David, when he fled from Saul in the cave.

Be merciful to me, O Elohim, be merciful to me, for my soul trusts in You; yea, in the shadow of Your wings I will make my hiding place, until the great destruction passes by.

2 I will cry to Elohim Most High, to El who works for me.

3 He shall send from Heaven and save me: and He will shame the one who crushes me. Selah. Elohim shall send His mercy and His truth.

4 My soul is among lions; I lie among those on fire, the sons of men, whose teeth are spears and arrows, and their tongue is a sharp sword.

5 Be praised above the heavens, O Elohim; let Your glory be over the whole earth.

6 They have prepared a net for my steps; my soul is bowed down; they have dug a pit before me; they have fallen into it. Selah. *(Eccl 10:8)*

7 My heart is fixed, O Elohim, my heart is fixed; I will sing and give praise.

8 Wake up my glory! Wake up, harp and lyre! I will stir the morning dawn with praise. *(1Chron 23:30)*

9 I will praise You among the peoples, O YAHWEH, I will sing to You among the nations.

10 For Your mercy is great to the heavens, and Your truth to the clouds.

11 Be exalted above the heavens, O Elohim; Your glory over the whole earth.

Psalm 58

1 To the chief musician. Do not destroy. A secret treasure of David.

Will you indeed speak righteousness in silence? Do you judge uprightly, O sons of men?

2 Yes, in your heart you work wickedness, you weigh the violence of your hands in the land.

3 The wicked are estranged from the womb; they go astray from the belly, speaking lies.[1]

4 Their poison is like the poison of a snake; like the deaf adder he stops his ear,

5 which will not hear the charmer's voice, skillful charmer of charms.

6 O Elohim, break their teeth in their mouth; break out the big teeth of the young lions, O YAHWEH.

7 Let them melt away like waters; they flow off to them; he treads his arrows; let them be as though they were cut off;

8 Let them be as a snail that goes into melting, a miscarriage of a woman; they do not see the sun.

9 Before your pots can discern the thorns, whether green or glowing, He shall sweep it away.

10 The righteous shall rejoice when he sees vengeance; he shall wash his feet in the blood of the wicked.

11 And man will say, Truly, a fruit is to the righteous; Truly, there is an Elohim; They are judging in the earth.[2]

---

1 This shows the importance of child rearing from birth, Pr 22:6.

2 This verse in the Hebrew delineates more than one Elohim judging, showing the plurality of the Elohim family consisting of Yahweh the Father and Yahshua the Son.

Psalm 59

1 To the chief musician. Do not destroy. A secret treasure of David, when Saul sent, and they watched the house to kill him.
Deliver me from my enemies, O my Elohim; set me on high from the ones who rise up against me.
2 Deliver me from the workers of evil, and save me from bloody men.
3 For lo, they lie in wait for my soul, mighty ones gather against me; not for my transgression, and not for my sin, O YAHWEH.
4 Without my fault they run and prepare themselves; awaken to help me, and look on me.
5 And You, O YAHWEH Elohim of Hosts, the Elohim of Israel: Awake to visit all the nations; be not merciful to any slyly plotting evil. Selah.
6 They return at evening; they howl like a dog, and go around the city.
7 Behold, they bellow with their mouth; swords are in their lips; for they say, Who hears?
8 But You, O YAHWEH, shall laugh at them; you shall mock at all the nations.
9 O my Strength, let me look to You; for Elohim is my strong tower.
10 The Elohim of my mercy shall go before me; Elohim shall let me see my desire on my enemies.
11 Do not kill them, lest my people forget; scatter them by Your power and bring them down, O YAHWEH our shield.
12 For the sin of their mouth is the word of their lips, even let them be captured in their pride, and for cursing and the lying which they speak.[1]
13 Consume them that they may not be in Your anger; consume, so that they may not be; and they shall know that Elohim is ruling in Jacob, to the ends of the earth. Selah.
14 Yes, they shall return at evening; let them howl like the dog and go around the city;
15 let them wander up and down for food, and growl if they are not satisfied.
16 But I will sing of Your power; yes, I will sing of Your mercy in the morning. For You have been my strong tower, and my hiding place in the day of my trouble.
17 To You, O my strength, I will sing; for Elohim is my strong tower, the Elohim of my mercy.

Psalm 60

1 To the chief musician. On the Lily of Testimony. A secret treasure of David, to teach; when he struggled with Aram-Naharaim, and with Aram-Zobah; when Joab returned, and struck twelve thousand of Edom in the Valley of Salt. O Elohim! You cast us off; You broke us; You who were angry; take us back.
2 You made the earth tremble; You tore it; heal its breaks, for it is shaking.
3 You have shown Your people hardship; You made us drink the wine of trembling.
4 You have given a banner to those who fear You, to lift it up because of the truth. Selah.
5 Save with Your right hand and answer me, that Your beloved may be delivered.
6 Elohim has spoken in His holiness; I will rejoice, I will divide Shechem, and measure out the valley of Succoth.
7 Gilead is Mine, and Manasseh is Mine; Ephraim is the strength of My head; Judah is My lawgiver;
8 Moab is My washpot; over Edom I

[1] David is asking for punishment for the wicked sins of pride and evil speaking, Math 12:34-37, Ps 39:1, Ja 3:2, 5-10.

will cast out My shoe; Philistia, shout in triumph.
9 Who will bring me into the strong city? Who will lead me into Edom?
10 Have not You, O Elohim, cast us aside? And will You not go forth with our armies, O Elohim?
11 Give us help against our oppressor, for vain is the deliverance of man.
12 Through Elohim we shall do mighty things; for He shall tread on our oppressors.

Psalm 61

1 To the chief musician. On stringed instruments. Of David.
Hear my cry, O Elohim, and attend to my prayer.
2 From the end of the earth I call to You when my heart faints; Oh lead me to the Rock that is higher than I.
3 For You have been my shelter, a strong tower before the enemy.
4 I will dwell in Your tabernacle forever; I will trust in the shelter of Your wings. Selah.
5 For You, O Elohim, have heard my vows; You appointed the inheritance of those who fear Your name.
6 You will add days to the days of the king; his years will be as generations to generations.
7 He shall abide forever before Elohim; appoint mercy and truth to preserve him.
8 So I will sing praise to Your name forever, so that I may pay my vows day by day.

Psalm 62

1 To the chief musician. To Jeduthun. A Psalm of David.
Only to Elohim is my soul silent; from Him comes my Y'shua*.
2 He alone is my rock and my salvation, my strong tower; I shall not be greatly moved.
3 Until when will you break in against a man? You will shatter him, all of you, like a bowing wall, a tottering fence.
4 Surely, they plotted to cast him down from his excellent dignity; they delight in lies; they bless with their mouth, but they curse in their inward parts. Selah. *(Pr 23:6-8)*
5 Only be silent to Elohim, O my soul, for my hope comes from Him.
6 He alone is my rock and my salvation, my strong tower; I shall not be shaken.
7 On Elohim is my salvation and my glory; my strong rock, my refuge is in Elohim.
8 Trust in Him at every time, you people; pour out your heart before Him; Elohim is a refuge for us. Selah.
9 Surely the sons of men are vanity, the sons of man are a lie; they go up in the scales; they are lighter than vanity together.
10 Trust not in oppression, and do not be vain in robbery; if riches increase to you, do not set your heart on them.
11 Elohim has spoken once; twice I have heard this, that power belongs to Elohim;
12 Also mercy belongs to You, O YAHWEH, for You reward a man according to his work.[1]

[1] Eternal life is a free gift of YHWH that is granted by the blood of Yahshua after repentance from sin, but ones position where he will be rewarded depends on the fruit that he will produce in this life Joh 15:1-8, Is 63:11, Math 16:27, Rev 22:12, Math 25:14-29.

Psalm 63

1 A Psalm of David, when he was in the wilderness of Judah.
O Elohim, You are my El; I earnestly seek You; my soul thirsts for You; my flesh longs for You, as in a dry and weary land without water.
2 Therefore I have seen you in the holy place, seeing Your power and Your glory.
3 For Your loving-kindness is better than life; my lips give praise to You.
4 So I will bless You while I live; I will lift up my hands in Your name.
5 My soul shall be satisfied, as with marrow and fatness; and my mouth shall praise You with joyful lips,
6 when I remember You upon my bed. I will meditate on You in the night watches.
7 For You have been a help to me, and I will rejoice under the shadow of Your wings.
8 My soul is cleaved after You; Your right hand upholds me. (Ex 15:6, Ps 18:35)
9 And those who seek to destroy my life shall go into the depths of the earth.
10 They shall pour him out by the sword; they shall be a serving for jackals.
11 But the king shall rejoice in Elohim; everyone who swears by Him shall glory, because the mouth of the one speaking a lie will be stopped.

Psalm 64

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.
O Elohim, hear my voice in my complaint; guard my life from the dread of the enemy.
2 Hide me from the counsel of those who destroy, from the tumult of evildoers,
3 who sharpen their tongue like a sword; they tread their arrows, a bitter word,
4 so that they may shoot at the innocent from a lurking place; suddenly they shoot at him, and fear not.
5 They make themselves strong in an evil plan; they talk of laying snares secretly; they say, Who shall see them?
6 They search into injustice, saying, We have finished a well laid plan. Yea, the inward part of man and the heart are deep!
7 But Elohim shall shoot an arrow at them; their wounds shall suddenly appear.
8 So they shall be confounded; their tongue falls upon themselves; everyone seeing them shall flee.
9 And all men shall fear and shall declare the work of Elohim; yea, they shall in wisdom consider His work.
10 The righteous shall rejoice in YAHWEH, and shall take refuge in Him; and all the upright in heart shall glory. *(Ps 11:1, 25:20, 32:11, 91:1-2)*

Psalm 65

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm and Song of David.
To You silence is praise, O Elohim, in Zion; and to You is a vow paid. *(Ps 22:25)*
2 To You who hears prayer, all flesh comes.
3 Things of iniquity, our transgressions, are mightier than I; You atone for them.[1]
4 Blessed is the one You choose and cause to come near You; he shall dwell in Your courts; we shall be satisfied

---

[1] The Hebrew word used here for atone is "*kappar*". The same word used for Yom Kippur or the day of atonement, showing Yahweh's atoning sacrifice for those seeking Him.

with the goodness of Your house, Your holy sanctuary.

5 You will answer us in righteousness by awesome things, O Elohim of our salvation *(Y'shua*)*;[1] the confidence of all the ends of the earth and the sea, of those afar off.

6 By Your strength the mountains are established, banded together with might.

7 You still the roaring of the sea, the roar of their waves, and the tumult of the peoples. *(Math 8:25-27)*

8 And those living in the uttermost parts are afraid of Your signs; You make the outgoings of the morning and the evening to rejoice.

9 You visit the earth and water it; You greatly enrich it; the river of Elohim is full of water. You provide their grain, for in this way You have prepared it.

10 You fill its terraces with water. You deepen its furrows. You make it soft with showers. You bless the sprouting of it.

11 You crown the year of Your goodness, and Your paths drip with fatness.

12 The pastures of the wilderness drop, and the little hills gird themselves with joy.

13 The meadows are outfitted with flocks; the valleys are also covered with grain; they shout for joy and sing.[2]

Psalm 66

1 To the chief musician. A Song. A Psalm. Make a joyful noise to Elohim, all the earth;

2 Sing out the honor of His name; give glory to His praise.[3]

3 Say to Elohim, How much to be feared are Your works! Through the greatness of Your power, Your enemies pretend obedience to You.

4 All the earth shall worship You; and they sing to You; they shall praise Your name. Selah.

5 Come and see Elohim's works, who is feared in His acts toward the sons of men.

6 He turns the sea into dry land; they go through the river on foot; there we will rejoice with Him.

7 He rules by His power forever; His eyes search out the nations; let not the rebels exalt themselves. Selah.

8 Bless our Elohim, O peoples, and make heard the voice of His praise;

9 Who holds our soul in life and does not allow our foot to slide.

10 For You, O Elohim, have proved us; You have tested us as silver is refined.

11 You have brought us into the net; You laid afflictions on our loins.

12 You have let men ride at our head; we went through fire and through water, but You brought us out to plenty. *(Ps 78:21, Is 43:2)*

13 I will go into Your house with burnt offerings; I will pay You my vows, *(Ps 96:8)*

---

[1] In verse 5 we now see that Yahweh's atonement comes through His salvation or His "*Yahshua* ".

[2] Verses 9-13 show the circular pattern of the presence of Elohim throughout the year. The year begins after the sun makes its complete circle past the equator at the spring equinox and then because of the winter rains from Elohim the grain harvest is ready, and the flower buds turn into the fall fruit. Even the animals are benefiting.

[3] It is a most wonderful honor to sing and give glory to the personal name of **YAHWEH**. How sad that most have been deceived by religious authorities to call the Creator by the name "*god*", which is the personal name of the Babylonian deity. See note on Is 65:11. Yahweh will not give the glory due to His name to pagan deities, Is 42:8, Ps 96:8, Ps 68:4.

14 which my lips have opened, and my mouth has spoken in my trouble.
15 I will offer burnt sacrifices of fatlings to You, with the incense of rams; I will offer bulls with goats. Selah. *(Ps 51:18-19)*
16 Come, hear, and let me recount, all you who fear Elohim, what He has done for my soul.
17 I cried to Him with my mouth, and exaltations were under my tongue.
18 If I had regarded iniquity in my heart, YAHWEH would not have heard.
19 Surely, Elohim has heard; He has attended to the voice of my prayer.
20 Blessed be Elohim, who has not turned away my prayer and His mercy from me! *(Pr 28:9)*

Psalm 67

1 To the chief musician, for stringed instruments. A Psalm. A song.
May Elohim be merciful to us and bless us, and cause His face to shine upon us. Selah.
2 That Your way may be known on earth, Your salvation *(Y'shua*)* among all nations. *(Is 42:6)*
3 Let the peoples thank You, O Elohim; let all the peoples thank You.
4 Oh let the peoples be glad and sing for joy; for You shall judge the peoples uprightly and govern the peoples on earth. Selah.
5 Let the peoples give thanks to You, O Elohim; let all the peoples give thanks to You.
6 The earth has given its increase; Elohim, our own Elohim, shall bless us.
7 Elohim shall bless us; and all the ends of the earth shall fear Him.

Psalm 68

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David. A Song.
Elohim rises up and His enemies are scattered; and those who hate Him flee from His face.
2 As smoke is driven away, You drive them away; as wax melts before the fire, the wicked perish in Elohim's presence.
3 But the righteous are glad; they shout for joy before Elohim; yea, they exult with gladness.
4 Sing to Elohim, sing praise to His name; lift up a song for Him who rides in the deserts, by His name Yah; yea, exult in His presence.
5 In His holy dwelling Elohim is a father of the fatherless, and a judge of the widows. *(Ja 1:27, Deut 10:18)*
6 Elohim causes the lonely to live at home; He brings out those who are bound with chains, while the rebellious dwell in a dry land. *(Is 61:1)*
7 O Elohim, when You went out before Your people, when You walked on through the wilderness. Selah.
8 The earth shook, and the heavens dropped before Elohim, this Sinai before Elohim, the Elohim of Israel.
9 O Elohim, You sent down a shower of plenty, by which You upheld Your inheritance when it was weary.
10 Your flock lived in it. You, O Elohim, have prepared for the poor in Your goodness.
11 YAHWEH gave the Word; the bearers of it were a great army.
12 Kings of armies fled, they ran away; yea, she who stayed home has divided the plunder.
13 When you lie among the sheepfolds, the wings of a dove are covered with silver, and its feathers with gleaming gold.

14 When the Almighty scatters kings
in it, it snows on Mount Salmon.[1]
15 Elohim's mountain is The
mountain of Bashan; the Bashan range
is a mountain of peaks.
16 Why do you gaze in envy, O
mountain range, at the mountain
Elohim desired for His dwelling? Yea,
YAHWEH will dwell in it forever.[2]
17 The chariots of Elohim are twenty
thousand, thousands of the same,
YAHWEH is among them, in Sinai, in
the holy place.
18 You have gone up on high; You
have led captivity captive; You have
received gifts among men; yea, to
dwell among the rebellious, O Yah
Elohim. *(Eph 4:8)*
19 Blessed be YAHWEH: day by day
He carries a load for us, the El of our
salvation *(Y'shua*)*. Selah.
20 Our El is to us the El of
deliverance; and to YAHWEH Adonai
are the issues of death.
21 Surely, Elohim will crush the head
of His enemies, the hairy crown of him
who walks on in his guilt.
22 YAHWEH said, I will bring back
from Bashan; I will bring back My
people from the depths of the sea;
23 so that your foot may be dashed
in the blood of your enemies, the
tongue of your dogs in it.
24 They have seen Your processions,
O Elohim, the caravans of my Elohim,
my King, in the holy place.
25 The singers went before, then the
musicians came; among them were the
virgins playing the timbrels.
26 O bless Elohim in the
congregations, YAHWEH, from the
fountain of Israel.
27 There is little Benjamin ruling
them; the leaders of Judah in their
crowd, and the leaders of Zebulun, the
leaders of Naphtali.
28 Your Elohim has commanded
your strength; O Elohim, be strong, in
this that You have worked out for us.
29 Because of Your sanctuary over
Jerusalem, kings shall bring a present
to You.
30 Rebuke the wild beasts of the
reeds, the herd of bulls, with the calves
of the peoples, trampling down with
pieces of silver. He scatters the people
who delight in war.
31 Let nobles be brought out of
Egypt; Ethiopia shall run up her hands
to Elohim.
32 Sing to Elohim, kingdoms of the
earth, praises to YAHWEH. Selah.
33 To Him who rides on the heavens
of heavens of old; lo, He gives forth
His voice, a mighty voice.
34 Give might to Elohim over Israel;
His majesty and His strength in the
skies.
35 O Elohim, You are awesome out
of Your holy places; the Elohim of
Israel is He who gives strength and
power to the people. Blessed be
Elohim!

Psalm 69

1 To the chief musician. Concerning
the Lilies. Of David.
Save me, O Elohim, for the waters
have come in to my soul.
2 I sink in deep mire, and there is no
standing; I have come into deep
waters where the floods overflow me.
3 I am weary from my crying, my
throat is scorched; my eyes fail while I
wait for my Elohim.
4 They who hate me without a cause
are more than the hairs of my head;
they who would destroy me are
mighty, my lying enemies; then I must
restore what I did not rob. *(Joh 15:25)*
5 O Elohim, You know my

---

[1] A hill near Shechem.
[2] VS 15-16- The northern mountain range in Israel is poetically said to be jealous that YHWH has chosen Mount Zion, which is much smaller to dwell in for eternity.

foolishness, and my guiltiness is not hidden from You.

6 O Adonai YAHWEH of Hosts, do not let those who wait on You be ashamed for my sake; let not the ones who seek You be ashamed for my sake, O Elohim of Israel.

7 Because I suffered reproach for Your sake, shame has covered My face.

8 I have become a stranger to My brothers and a foreigner to My mother's children.

9 For the zeal of Your house has consumed Me; and the reproaches of the ones who reproach You have fallen on Me. *(Joh 2:17, Ro 15:3)*

10 And I wept with fasting, my soul it also was a reproach to me;

11 I also made sackcloth my clothing, and I became a mockery to them.

12 They who sit in the gate spoke of me; and I was the song of drunkards.

13 But as for me, my prayer is to You, O YAHWEH, at a time of favor, O Elohim! In the plenitude of Your mercy answer me, in the truth of Your Y'shua*.

14 Deliver me out of the mire, that I may not sink; let me be delivered from those who hate me, and out of the deep waters.

15 Let not the flood waters overflow me, nor let the deep swallow me up; and let not the pit shut its mouth on me.

16 Hear me, O YAHWEH, for Your mercy is good; in the plenitude of Your tender mercies, turn toward me.

17 And do not hide Your face from Your servant; for it is distressing to Me; answer Me quickly;

18 draw near My soul; redeem it; ransom Me because of My enemies.

19 You have known My reproach, and My shame, and My dishonor; and you are before all my enemies.

20 Reproach has broken My heart, and I am full of heaviness; and I waited for one to show pity, but there was none; and for comforters, but I found none.

21 They also gave Me gall in My food; and in My thirst they gave Me vinegar to drink. *(Math 27:34,48)*

22 Let their table be a trap before them, and to those at ease a snare.

23 Let their eyes be darkened from seeing, and cause their loins to quiver continually.

24 Pour out Your wrath on them; and let the glow of Your anger overtake them.

25 Let their home be made desolate; let no one dwell in their tents.

26 For whom You have given stripes, they have persecuted; and they gossip to the pain of those You pierced.

27 Put iniquity to their iniquity, and do not let them enter into Your righteousness.

28 Blot them out from the Book of Life; yea, let them not be written with the righteous. [1]

29 But I am poor and in pain; O Elohim, Your salvation *(Y'shua*)* shall set me on high.

30 I will praise Elohim's name in a song; and I will magnify Him with thanks. *(Ps 66:2, Ps 28:7)*

31 And it shall please YAHWEH more than an ox, horned or hoofed bull.

32 The humble have seen and are glad; you who seek Elohim, your heart shall live.

33 For YAHWEH hears the needy, and He does not despise His prisoners.

34 Let the heavens and the earth praise Him, the seas, and everything that moves in them.

35 For Elohim will save Zion; and He will build the cities of Judah, and they shall live there and possess it.[2]

36 And His servants' seed shall

---

1 Rev 13:8, Rev 20:12, 15, Ex 32:33,

2 Zech 1:12-17

inherit; and they who love His name shall live in it.[1]

Psalm 70

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David, to bring to remembrance.
O Elohim, deliver me! O YAHWEH, Hurry to help me!
2 Let those who seek after my soul be ashamed and turned pale; let them be turned backward and shamed, those who desire my evil.
3 Let them be turned back for a reward of their shame, those who say, Aha, aha!
4 Let all those who seek You rejoice, and be glad in You; and let them say continually, let be magnified, Elohim, lovers of Your Y'shua*.
5 But I am poor and needy, come quickly to me, O Elohim; You are my help and my deliverer; O YAHWEH, do not wait any longer.

Psalm 71[2]

1 In you, O YAHWEH, I seek refuge, O, let me not be put to shame forever.
2 In Your righteousness deliver me and rescue me; bow down Your ear to me and save me.
3 Be a rock of strength for me, to which I may always go; You have given a command to save me; for You are my rock and my fortress.
4 O my Elohim, deliver me out of the hand of the wicked, and out of the hand of the unjust and the ruthless.
5 For You are my hope, O Adonai YAHWEH, my trust from my youth.
6 I have rested on You from the belly; You are He who took me out of my mother's womb; my praise shall be always of You.
7 I am like a wonder to many, but You are my strong tower.
8 My mouth is filled with Your praise, with your glory all the day long.
9 Do not cast me off now at the time of my old age. Do not forsake me when my strength fails.
10 For my enemies speak against me; and those who lurk for my soul plot together.
11 And they say, Elohim has forsaken him; pursue him and take him, for there is no one to deliver.
12 O Elohim, do not be far from me; my Elohim come quickly to help me.
13 Let them be ashamed; let those who are enemies of my soul be consumed; let them be covered with reproach, and let those seeking evil for me be dishonored;
14 and I will hope without ceasing, and I will add more on all Your praise.
15 My mouth shall tell of Your righteousness and Your salvation all the day; for I do not know the numbers.
16 I will come in the strength of Adonai YAHWEH; I will remember Your righteousness, that belongs to you alone.
17 O Elohim, You have taught me from my youth; and until now I have declared Your wonders.
18 And even when I am old and gray headed, O Elohim, do not leave me until I declare Your arm to this generation, Your power to everyone who is to come.
19 And, Your righteousness, O Elohim, is to the heights, You who have done great things. O Elohim, who is like You,

[1] Dan 7:18, Ps 5:11, Is 56:6, Those who love the set apart name of YAHWEH will inherit the land of Israel and dwell in it forever. Mal 3:16

[2] The Septuagint has here "By David, A psalm sung by the sons of Jonadab and the first taken captive." Jonadab was a Rechabite.

20 who has shown me great and evil distresses. You will turn me; You will make me live; and You will bring me up from the depths of the earth.
21 You will multiply my greatness and surround and comfort me.
22 I will also thank You with a harp, O my Elohim; I will sing Your truth; I will sing to You with the lyre, O Holy One of Israel.
23 My lips shall shout for joy, for I will sing praise to You; also my soul which you have redeemed.
24 And my tongue shall muse on Your righteousness all the day; because those seeking my evil are disgraced; they are put to shame.

Psalm 72

1 A psalm of Solomon.
Give the king Your judgments, O Elohim; and Your righteousness to the king's son.
2 Your people He shall judge in righteousness, and Your poor in justice.
3 The mountains will lift up peace to the people, and the little hills through righteousness.
4 He shall judge the poor of the people; and He shall save the sons of the needy; and He shall crush the oppressor.
5 They shall fear You with the sun, and before the moon in all generations.
6 He shall descend like rain on the mown grass, like showers that water the earth.
7 In His days the righteous shall flourish, and plenty of peace, till the moon is not.
8 He shall also rule from sea to sea, and from the River to the ends of the earth.[1]
9 Those dwelling in the desert will bow before Him, and His enemies will lick the dust.
10 The kings of Tarshish and of the isles shall bring presents; the kings of Sheba and Seba shall offer gifts.
11 Yea, all kings shall fall down before Him; all nations shall serve Him.
12 For He shall save the needy who cries, and the poor with no helper.
13 He shall have pity on the poor and needy; and the souls of the needy ones He saves.
14 He shall redeem their souls from oppression and violence; and their blood shall be precious in His eyes.[2] *(Ps 116:15)*
15 And He shall live, and the gold of Sheba shall be given to Him; and prayer shall be made for Him continually; He shall bless Him all the day.
16 A fullness of grain shall be in the earth on top of the mountains; its fruit shall shake like Lebanon; and they of the city shall flourish like the grass of the earth.
17 His name shall be forever; His name shall continue before the sun; and they shall bless themselves by Him; all nations shall call Him blessed.
18 Blessed is YAHWEH Elohim, the Elohim of Israel, who alone does wonderful things.
19 And blessed is His glorious name

---

1 In this messianic psalm, it is looking forward to King Messiah reigning over all the earth. The term from *"the River"* is referring to the Euphrates River Gen 15:18.

2 Verses 11-14- In a kingdom setting a king owns everything, but he also provides for all his citizens and it is a shame for a king to have even one citizen who is poor or lacking.

forever; and the whole earth is filled with His glory! Amen and amen!
20 The prayers of David the son of Jesse have ended.

Psalm 73

1 A Psalm of Asaph.
Truly Elohim is good to Israel, to those who are of a pure heart.
2 And as for me, my feet had almost stumbled, my steps nearly made to slip.
3 For I was jealous of the proud; I looked upon the peace of the wicked.
4 For there are no pangs to their death; but their body is fat.
5 They are not in the trouble of mortal man; and with men they are not touched.
6 So pride enchains them; violence covers them like a robe.
7 Their eyes go out with fatness; they have passed the imaginations of the heart.
8 They scoff and speak in evil; from on high they speak oppression.
9 They set their mouth in the heavens; and their tongues walk through the earth.
10 Because of this His people shall return here; and waters of a full cup is drained by them.
11 And they say, How does El know? And, Is there knowledge in the Most High?
12 Behold! These are the wicked who are always at ease; they increase their riches.
13 Surely I have purified my heart in vain; and I have washed my hands in innocence.
14 For all the day I was touched; and my chastening is at the mornings.[1]
15 If I say, This is the way I will speak; behold, I would deceive a generation of Your sons.
16 And I thought to know this; it was painful in my eyes,
17 until I went into the sanctuary of El and I discerned their end.
18 Surely, You will set their feet in slippery places; You will make them fall into ruin.
19 How they are destroyed in a moment, swept away with terrors!
20 Like a dream when being aroused from dreaming, O YAHWEH in awaking You will despise their image.
21 For my heart was in a ferment, and I was pierced in my reins.
22 And I was brutish and did not know; I was like animals with You.
23 Yet I was continually with You; You have taken hold of my right hand.
24 You shall guide me by Your counsel; and afterward You will take me to glory.
25 Whom is to me in Heaven? And I have no desire on earth besides You.
26 My flesh and my heart waste away; Elohim is the rock of my heart and my portion forever.
27 For, lo, those who are far from You shall be lost; You have cut off all who go whoring away from You.
28 As for me, it is good for me to draw near to Elohim; I have made my refuge in Adonai YAHWEH, to declare all Your works.

Psalm 74

1 A Lesson, of Asaph.
O Elohim, have You cast us off forever; will Your anger smoke against the sheep of Your pasture?
2 Remember Your congregation; You bought them in days before; You redeemed us as the rod of Your inheritance, this Mount Zion in which You have dwelt in.

[1] Verses 3-14 could be misleading until Elohim's word is taken into account, which assures the destruction of the wicked in verses 18-20, 27.

3 Lift up Your steps to the perpetual desolations, the enemy who has done all evil in the sanctuary.
4 Those distressing You have roared in the middle of Your congregation; they set up their own signs for signs.
5 He is known as one bringing axes in on high, against the thick trees.
6 And now together they break down its carved work with the axe and hammers.
7 They have cast fire in Your sanctuary; they have polluted the place where Your name dwells on the earth.
8 They said in their hearts, Let us rage against them together; they have burned up all the meeting-places of El in the land.
9 We did not see our signs; there is no longer a prophet; nor any among us who knows until when.
10 O Elohim, until when shall the enemy speak evil of You? Shall the enemy scorn Your name forever?
11 Why do You withdraw Your hand, even Your right hand? From out of Your bosom, consume them.
12 For Elohim is my King of old, who works salvation in the midst of the land.
13 You broke the sea by Your strength; You burst the heads of sea-monsters in the waters. *(Is 51:9)*
14 You cracked open the heads of leviathan; You gave him to be food for the people of the wilderness. *(Job 3:8)*
15 You divided the fountain and the torrent; You dried up mighty rivers.
16 The day is Yours, the night is also Yours. You have established the light[1] and the sun.
17 You have fixed the boundaries of the earth; You have formed the summer and winter.[2]
18 Remember this: the enemy has blasphemed, O YAHWEH; and a foolish people have despised Your name.
19 Do not give the soul of Your turtledove to the wild beasts; You will not forever forget the life of Your afflicted ones.
20 Look to Your covenant; for the dark places of the earth are full, the abodes of violence.
21 O let not the ill-treated ones turn back ashamed; let the poor and needy praise Your name.
22 Arise, O Elohim, contend for Your cause; remember Your reproach from the fool all the day.
23 Do not forget the voice of your enemies, the noise of your foes is going up continually.

Psalm 75

1 To the chief musician. Do not destroy. A Psalm of Asaph. A Song.
We have given thanks to You, O Elohim; we have given thanks; for Your name is near; Your wonderful works have been told.
2 When I take the appointed time, I shall judge in uprightness.
3 The earth and all those living in it are melting away; I set firm its pillars. Selah.
4 I said to the boastful, Do not boast; and to the wicked, Do not lift up the horn.

[1] The Hebrew here is referring to a small light or the moon.

[2] In Scripture there are only 2 seasons, winter and summer (Gen 8:22). The seasons are separated by the sun revolving around the earth and passing the equator on the day of the vernal equinox Ps 19:1-6. In Hebrew the word for equinox is "*Tekufah*" and is the turning of the year, Ex 34:22. The agricultural year comes in at the spring equinox (tekufah) and goes out at the fall equinox at harvest time before Sukkot. The first day of Aviv and also Passover could not be before the spring equinox and the fall Holy days had to be after the fall equinox.

5 Do not lift up your horn on high; do not speak with a stiff neck.
6 For exaltations are not from the east, nor from the west, nor from the desert;
7 but Elohim is the judge; He puts down this one and lifts up this other.
8 For a cup is in the hand of YAHWEH; and the wine foams; it is fully mixed, and He pours out from it; surely all the wicked of the earth must drain its dregs and drink. *(Rev 17:4)*
9 But I will witness forever; I will sing praises to the Elohim of Jacob.
10 And I will cut off all the horns of the wicked; but the horns of the righteous shall be lifted up.

Psalm 76

1 To the chief musician. For stringed instruments. A Psalm of Asaph. A Song of Praise.
Elohim is known in Judah; His name is great in Israel.
2 And His abode is in Salem; and His dwelling-place in Zion. *(Ps 48:1-2, Joel 2:32, 3:17, 21)*
3 There He broke the fiery arrows of the bow, the shield, and the sword, and the battle. Selah.
4 You are glorious, more excellent than the mountains of prey.
5 The stouthearted have been stripped; they slept their sleep; and none of the men of might have found their hands.
6 By Your rebuke, O Elohim of Jacob, both the horse and chariot have sunk into a sleep.
7 You, even You, are terrifying; and who can stand before You when You are angry?
8 You have caused judgment to be heard from Heaven; the earth feared and was stilled;
9 when Elohim arose to judgment, to save all the meek of the earth. Selah.
10 For the wrath of man thank You; You encircle Yourself with the wrath left over.
11 Vow and pay to YAHWEH your Elohim; let all that are around Him bring presents to the Fearful One.
12 He shall cut off the spirit of princes; He is feared by the kings of the earth. *(Ps 2:1-4)*

Psalm 77

1 To the chief musician. On Jeduthun. A Psalm of Asaph.
My voice is to Elohim, and I cry; my voice is to Elohim, and He gave ear to me.
2 In the day of my distress I sought YAHWEH; my hand was open in the night and did not grow numb; my soul refused to be comforted.
3 I remember Elohim and am troubled; I meditate and my spirit faints. Selah.
4 You seized the watches of my eyes; I am troubled and I cannot speak.
5 I thought upon the days of old, the years of bygone ages.
6 I will remember my song in the night; I will speak with my own heart, and my spirit carefully searches.
7 Will YAHWEH cast off forever; and will He not add, to be pleased any more?
8 Is His mercy gone forever? Has His Word failed for all generations?
9 Has El forgotten to be gracious; has He in anger shut up His tender mercies? Selah.
10 And I said, This is my sickness, the years of the right hand of the Most High;
11 I will remember the works of Yah; surely I will remember Your wonders of old.
12 I will also meditate on all Your works and muse of Your doings.

13 O Elohim, your way is in holiness; who is a El, great like Elohim?
14 You are the El who does wonders; You have revealed Your strength among the peoples.
15 You have redeemed Your people with Your arm, the sons of Jacob and Joseph. Selah.
16 The waters saw You, O Elohim, the waters saw You; they were afraid; yea, the deeps trembled.
17 The clouds poured out water; the skies uttered a voice; and Your arrows flew out.
18 The voice of Your thunder in the tempest; lightnings lit up the world; the earth trembled and quaked!
19 Your way is in the sea; and Your path is in the great waters; and Your footsteps are not known.
20 You led Your people like a flock by the hand of Moses and Aaron.

Psalm 78

1 A Lesson of Asaph.
O my people, give ear to my Torah; bow your ears to the words of my mouth.
2 I will open my mouth in a parable; I will pour forth dark sayings of old,
3 those which we have heard and known, and our fathers have told us.[1]
4 We will not hide them from their sons; to declare to the coming generation the praises of YAHWEH; yea, His strength and His wonderful works that He has done.
5 For He raised a Testimony in Jacob, and He set the Torah in Israel; which He commanded our fathers to make them known to their sons;
6 so that a coming generation may know; sons shall be born; they shall rise up and tell their sons,
7 so that they might set their hope in Elohim, and not forget the works of El, but keep His commandments.
8 And they shall not be like their fathers, a stubborn and rebellious generation, a generation that prepared not its heart; yea, whose spirit was not faithful with El.[2]
9 The sons of Ephraim, armed shooters of bows, turned back in the day of battle.
10 They did not keep the covenant of Elohim and refused to walk in His Torah.
11 And they forgot His works and His wonders which He had shown them;
12 He did wonders before their fathers in the land of Egypt, the field of Zoan.
13 He divided the sea and passed them through; and He caused the waters to stand in a heap.
14 And He led them by a cloud in the day, and all the night with a light of fire.
15 He split the rocks in the wilderness and made them drink, as from great depths.
16 And He brought streams out of the rock, and caused waters to go down like rivers.
17 Yet they sinned still more against Him, to provoke the Most High in the desert.[3]
18 And they tested El in their heart, by asking food for their souls.
19 And they spoke against Elohim, saying, Shall El be able to set a table in the wilderness?
20 Behold! He struck the rock and

---

1 Verses 2-3 are quoted in Mathew 13:35

2 Verses 5-8- The Torah is a moral code of conduct and the very character of Elohim. The people were commanded to teach it to their children from birth (Pr 22:6, Deut 6:5-7) to keep their faith in Yahweh for all generations. Turning from the Torah in rebellion is what got Israel destroyed and kicked out of the Promised Land of Yahweh.

3 Sin is the breaking of the Torah 1 Joh 3:4.

the waters gushed out, and the
torrents were overflowing. Can He also
give bread? Will He provide flesh for
His people?
21 So YAHWEH heard and He
passed over, and a fire was kindled
against Jacob, and also anger went up
against Israel,
22 because they did not believe in
Elohim and trusted not in His
salvation *(Y'shua*)*.
23 And He commanded the fine
clouds above; and He opened the
doors of the heavens;
24 and He rained on them manna to
eat; yea, He gave the grain of the
heavens to them.
25 Man ate the bread of the mighty;
He sent them food to the full.[1]
26 He made an east wind blow in the
heavens; and He led out the south
wind by His power.
27 Yea, He rained flesh on them like
dust, and winged birds as the sand of
the seas.
28 And He made them fall amidst
their camp, all around to their tents.
29 They ate and were filled full; for
their own lust He brought to them.
30 They were not estranged from
their lust; their food was still in their
mouths,
31 and Elohim's wrath came on them
and killed the fattest of them; and He
struck down the choice ones of Israel.
32 In all this they sinned still; and
they did not believe in His wonderful
works;[2]
33 and He ended their days in
vanity, and their years in sudden
terror.
34 When He killed them, then they
sought Him; and they turned and
searched for El.
35 So they remembered that Elohim
was their Rock, and the Most High
Elohim their Redeemer.
36 But they deceived Him with their
mouths, and with their tongues lied to
Him.
37 For their heart was not steadfast
with Him; and they were not faithful
in His covenant.
38 But He being merciful, atoned for
their iniquity and did not destroy; and
He added to turn away His anger, and
did not stir up all his wrath.
39 For He remembered that they
were flesh, a breath passing away, and
not returning.
40 How often they disobeyed Him in
the wilderness, angering Him in the
desert!
41 Yea, they turned back and tested
El, and pained the Holy One of Israel.
42 They did not remember His hand,
on the day He redeemed them from
the enemy;
43 who set His signs in Egypt, and
His wonders in the field of Zoan.
44 He turned their rivers into blood,
also their streams that they might not
drink.
45 He sent swarms of flies against
them, and they devoured them; also
frogs, and they destroyed them.
46 He also gave their crops to the
stripping locust, and their labor to the
locust.
47 He killed their vines with hail,
and their sycamore trees with sleet.
48 He gave their cattle up to the hail,
and their flocks to bolts of fire.
49 He sent the heat of His anger on

[1] Verses 24-25- Some translations put "*man ate the food of angels*", but the Hebrew word "*abiyr"* means mighty ones and the verses are simply stating the manna was not normal food but food coming directly from heavenly intervention.

[2] The keeping of the Torah is an act of faith for belief in the word of Yahweh and a requirement for eternal life (Math 19:17). In a kingdom setting the law of the king is binding and eternal and is for the well being and protection of the king's citizens.

them, fury and indignation and distress, a sending of messengers of evils.

50 He leveled a path for His anger; He did not keep back their soul from death, but gave their life over to the plague.

51 And he struck all the first-born in Egypt, the first-fruits of strength in the tents of Ham;

52 and He led His people forth like sheep; and He led them like a flock in the wilderness.

53 And he led them on safely, and they did not fear; but the sea flooded over their enemies.

54 He brought them to the border of His holy place; this mountain that His right hand had gained.

55 And He cast out the nations before them; and by a line He made a possession fall to them; and He made the tribes of Israel to live in their tents.

56 Yet they tested and provoked the Most High Elohim; and they did not keep His testimonies;

57 but they turned back and betrayed, like their fathers; they veered aside like a deceitful bow.

58 For they enraged Him with their high places; and they provoked Him to jealousy with their molten images.

59 When Elohim heard, and He was provoked to anger, and He utterly rejected Israel. *(Nu 32:14, Deut 32:19)*

60 And He left the tabernacle of Shiloh, the tent He dwelt in among men; *(Jos 18:1, 1 Sam 4:2-4, 10-11)*

61 and delivered His strength into captivity, and His glory into the enemy's hands.

62 And He gave His people to the sword, and was angry with His inheritance.

63 The fire burned up their young men; and their virgins were not praised.

64 Their priests fell by the sword; and their widows were not able to weep.

65 Then YAHWEH awoke, as one asleep, like a mighty man rejoicing with wine.

66 And He beat His enemies backward; He put them to a never-ending shame.

67 And He refused the tabernacle of Joseph, and He did not choose the tribe of Ephraim;

68 but He elected the tribe of Judah, the Mount Zion which He loved.

69 And He built His sanctuary like high places, like the earth He has founded it forever.

70 He also chose His servant David, and took him from the folds of the flock;

71 He brought him in from the suckling ewes; He brought him to feed His people Jacob, and His inheritance, Israel.

72 And he fed them in the integrity of his heart; and guided them in the skillfulness of his hands.

Psalm 79

1 A Psalm of Asaph.
O Elohim, the nations have come into Your inheritance; they have defiled Your holy sanctuary; they have laid Jerusalem in heaps.[1]

2 They have given the bodies of Your servants as food for the birds of the heavens; the flesh of Your saints to the beasts of the earth.

3 They have shed their blood like water all around Jerusalem, and there is no one burying.

4 We have become a shame to our neighbors a scorn and a mockery to those who are around us.

5 Until when, O YAHWEH? Will

[1] This psalm is depicting the invasion by Babylon.

You be angry with us forever? Shall Your jealousy burn like fire?
6 Pour out Your wrath on the nations who have not known You, and on the kingdoms who have not called on Your name.
7 For they have eaten up Jacob, and laid waste to his dwelling-place.
8 Do not remember for us the former sins of our fathers; let Your tender mercies meet us speedily, for we have been brought very low.
9 Help us, O Elohim of our salvation *(Y'shua*)*, for the matter of the glory of Your name; and deliver us and atone for our sins, for Your name's sake.[1]
10 Why should the nations say, Where is their Elohim? Let Him be known among the nations before our eyes, the avenging of the blood of Your servants that has been poured out.
11 Let the groaning of the prisoner come before You. According to the greatness of Your arm, preserve the sons of death.
12 And reward our neighbors seven-fold. Give into their bosom their curse with which they have cursed You, O YAHWEH.[2]
13 Then we Your people, and the sheep of Your pasture, will give thanks to You forever; we will declare Your praise from generation to generation.[3]

1 The plea here is not because of the righteousness of Israel to intervene for help, but because of the promises that Yahweh made to Abraham to intervene for His Holy name sake, Eze 36:16-24. It also shows that only Yahshua (Yah's salvation) can qualify to atone for the people's sins and redeem them.

2 Due to Israel's sins they were cursed 7 fold (Lev 26:18), the plea is to turn this curse on their enemies. In the end time Israel's punishment is put on Babylon for her treachery and destruction (Rev 18:20).

3 Clearly an end time fulfillment when Messiah returns and gathers Israel back to their land, Eze 37:15-28, Amos 9:14-15.

Psalm 80

1 To the chief musician. A Testimony. Concerning the Lilies. A Psalm of Asaph.
Give ear, O Shepherd of Israel, You leading Joseph like a flock; shine forth, You dwelling between the cherubs.
2 Stir up Your might before Ephraim, and Benjamin, and Manasseh, and come to us for salvation.
3 O Elohim, turn us again, and make Your face shine, and we will be saved![4]
4 O YAHWEH Elohim of Hosts, until when will You smoke against the prayer of Your people?
5 You made them eat with the bread of tears; yea, You made them drink with tears a third time.
6 You make us a strife for our neighbors, and our enemies laugh to themselves.
7 O Elohim of Hosts, turn us again, and cause Your face to shine, and we will be saved.
8 You have led a vine out of Egypt; You have cast out the nations, and have planted it.
9 You cleared before it, and You have rooted its roots, and it has filled the land.
10 The hills were covered with its shadow, and its boughs were as the cedars of El.
11 It was sending its boughs out to the sea, and its branches to the River.[5]
12 Why have You broken down its walls, so that it is plucked by all who pass by the way?

4 Verses 1-3 are an end time plea for YHWH to revive the tribes of Israel that have been scattered worldwide due to their sin and rebellion. Verse 3 also gives the indication of a plea for spiritual revival as well as physical revival.

13 A boar out of the forest wastes it, and the beast of the field feeds on it.
14 O Elohim of Hosts, we beg You, return! Look down from Heaven and see and visit this vine,
15 and the vineyard which Your right hand has planted, and on the son You made strong for Yourself.[1]
16 It is burned with fire, cut down; they perish at the rebuke of Your face.
17 Let Your hand be on the man of Your right hand; on the son of man whom You have made strong for Yourself. *(Ps 110:1, Heb 1:3, 10:10-13)*
18 So we will not backslide from You; make us live, and we will call on Your name.
19 O YAHWEH, Elohim of Hosts, turn us again! Cause Your face to shine, and we will be saved.[2]

Psalm 81

1 To the chief musician. On Gittith. Of Asaph.
Sing aloud to Elohim our strength; shout for joy to the Elohim of Jacob.
2 Lift up a song, and the timbrel, the pleasing lyre with the harp.
3 Blow the ram's horn in the new moon, on the covered moon, on our feast day.[3]
4 For this was a statute for Israel, an ordinance of the Elohim of Jacob.
5 This He ordained as a testimony in Joseph, when He went out over the land of Egypt; I heard a lip I did not understand.
6 I removed his shoulder from the burden; his hands were freed from the basket.
7 You called in distress, and I rescued you; I answered you in the secret place of thunder; I tested you at the waters of Meribah. Selah.
8 My people, listen, and I will testify against you, whether you will listen to Me:
9 There shall be no strange El among you; and you shall not worship a foreign god. *(Is 42:8, Ex 22:20, 23:13)*
10 I am YAHWEH your Elohim who brought you out from the land of Egypt; open your mouth wide, and I will fill it. *(Ex 20:2)*
11 But My people would not listen to My voice, and Israel did not consent to Me.
12 So I gave them up to the stubbornness of their own hearts; they walked in their own counsels.
13 Oh if My people were hearing me! If Israel would walk in My ways,
14 I would subdue their enemies in a little while; and I would turn My hand against their foes.
15 Those who hate YAHWEH will be found untrue to Him, and their time is forever.
16 And, He would make them to eat from the fat of the wheat; and I would satisfy you with honey out of the rock.

---

[5] The Sea is the Mediterranean and the River is the Euphrates, both constitute the millennial boundaries promised to Abraham (Gen 15:18).

[1] Verses 14-15- Israel quite often in scripture is pictured as a vine with a vineyard owner being Elohim. Is 5:1-7, Is 27:2-3, Jer 2:21, Jer 12:10, Eze 17:5-10, 19:10-14, Hos 10:1, 14:7, Mk 12:1-9, Joh 15:1-8.

[2] Verses 17-19- A clear plea for Messiah to come and resurrect not only their physical life, but also their spiritual one (Hos 6:1-3, Eze 37:1-14).

[3] The Hebrew word used for covered moon is "*kesah*" and literally means to be covered. This would make this verse speaking about the feast of Trumpets (Yom Teruah), which would start the month at the conjunction (covered or dark moon) and not at the crescent sighting, which came from Babylon and paganism.

Psalm 82

1 A Psalm of Asaph.
Elohim stands in the company of the
Almighty El; He judges in the midst of
Elohim.[1]
2 Until when will you judge unjustly,
and lift up the faces of the wicked?
Selah.
3 Vindicate the poor and fatherless;
do justice to the afflicted and needy.
4 Deliver the poor and needy; and
save out of the hand of the wicked.
5 They neither know nor will
understand; they walk in darkness; all
the foundations of the earth are
shaken.
6 I have said, You are Elohim, and all
of you are sons of the Most High.[2]
7 But you shall die as men, and fall
like one of the rulers.
8 Rise, O Elohim, judge the earth;
for You shall inherit in all the nations.

Psalm 83

1 A Song. A Psalm of Asaph.
O Elohim do not keep silence to
Yourself; do not be speechless; yea, do
not be still, O El
2 For lo, Your enemies are roaring;
and those who hate You have lifted up
their head.
3 They take shrewd counsel against
Your people; they plot against Your
hidden ones.
4 They have said, Come, and we will
cut them off from being a nation; and
that The name of Israel will not be
recalled again.[3]
5 For they conspired together with
one heart; they have cut a covenant
against You;
6 even the tents of Edom, and of the
Ishmaelites; Moab and the Hagarites;
7 Gebal and Ammon, and Amalek;
Philistia and those living in Tyre.
8 Also Assyria has joined with them;
they were an arm to the sons of Lot.
Selah.[4]
9 Do to them as to Midian, as to
Sisera, as to Jabin at the torrent
Kishon.
10 At Endor they were destroyed;
they became dung for the ground.
11 Make their nobles as Oreb and
Zeeb, and all their rulers like Zebah
and Zalmunna;
12 who said, Let us take possession
of Elohim's pastures for ourselves.
13 O my Elohim, make them as
whirling dust, as the stubble before the
wind.
14 As the fire burns a forest, and as
the flame sets the mountains on fire,
15 so pursue them with Your

1 A clear description showing the plurality of the Elohim family and Yahweh judging in the heavenly court.

2 It is the wonderful potential of human beings to repent of their sins and be baptized in the family name of YHWH and have an elder lay hands on them for the receiving of the Ruach H'Chodesh (Holy Spirit) and become a literal child of Elohim, Joh 10:34, Rom 8:14-17.

3 Today in modern Israel their enemies have said that they will push Israel into the sea and blot out their memory forever. Yahweh will recompense Israel's enemies in the end time for their treatment on His called out nation, Eze 36:1-7.

4 Verses 6-8- These are the modern nations of Saudi Arabia, Jordan, Turkey, The Palestinian areas, with Iraq, Iran, Syria and Lebanon. All of these nations mentioned were part of the Ottomen Turkish empire that ended in 1917 with the end of WW1. It seems from prophetic scriptures that this empire may rise again in the last days and that Turkey may be a leader in attacking Israel. This war has never taken place in antiquity and in modern times Egypt has always been at the fore-front of war with Israel. However, here they are not mentioned.

tempest, and frighten them with Your storm.
16 Fill their faces with shame so that they will seek Your name, O YAHWEH.
17 Let them be ashamed and terrified for ever; yea, let them be pale and perish.
18 And let them know you; that Your name is YAHWEH, and all life comes from you, the Most High over all the earth. *(Ps 24:1, Is 45:21)*

Psalm 84

1 To the chief musician. On Gittith. A Psalm for the sons of Korah.
How lovely are Your dwellings, O YAHWEH of Hosts!
2 My soul longs and even faints for the courts of YAHWEH; my heart and my flesh cry out for the living El.
3 Even the bird has found a house, and the swallow a nest for herself, where she may lay her young, even on Your altars, O YAHWEH of Hosts, my King and my Elohim.
4 Blessed are they who dwell in Your house; they will always be praising You.
5 Blessed is the man whose strength is in You; Your ways are in their hearts.
6 Passing through the valley of weeping, they will make it a fountain; even the early rain covers with blessings.
7 They go from strength to strength, being seen in Zion before Elohim.
8 O YAHWEH Elohim of Hosts, hear my prayer; listen, O Elohim of Jacob. Selah.
9 Behold, O Elohim, our shield; and look upon the face of Your Messiah.
10 For a day in Your courts is better than a thousand without; I have chosen to stand at the threshold in the house of my Elohim rather than to dwell in the tents of wickedness.[1]
11 For YAHWEH Elohim is a sun and shield; YAHWEH will give grace and glory; He will withhold nothing good from those who walk in integrity.
12 O YAHWEH of Hosts, blessed is the man who trusts in You!

Psalm 85

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm for the sons of Korah.
O YAHWEH, You have been gracious to Your land; You have turned back the captivity of Jacob.
2 You have taken away the iniquity of Your people; You covered all of their sins. Selah.
3 You gathered all of Your wrath; You turned from the heat of Your anger.
4 O Elohim of our salvation *(Y'shua*),* turn us and break up Your anger with us.
5 Will You be angry with us forever? Will You draw out Your anger to all generations?
6 Will You revive us, so that Your people may rejoice in You?*(Hos 6:1-2)*
7 Show us Your mercy, O YAHWEH, and give us Your salvation.
8 I will hear what YAHWEH Elohim will say; for He will speak peace to His people, and His saints; but let them not turn again to folly.
9 Surely His salvation *(Y'shua*)* is near to the ones fearing Him, for glory to dwell in our land.
10 Mercy and truth have met together; righteousness and peace kissed each other.
11 Truth shall sprout out of the earth,

---
1 The psalmist sees that being a doorkeeper in the House of YHWH is much greater than being exulted in the tent of the wicked Ps 27:4, Ps 90:4, 1Chron 23:5.

and righteousness looks down from Heaven.

12 Yea, YAHWEH shall give good, and our land shall give its produce.

13 Righteousness shall go before Him and shall make a way for His footsteps.

Psalm 86

1 A Prayer of David.

O YAHWEH, bow down Your ear, answer me, for I am poor and needy.

2 Guard my soul, for I am righteous; O You, my Elohim, save Your servant who trusts in You.

3 Give your grace to Me, O YAHWEH, for I cry to You daily.

4 Give joy to the soul of Your servant; for to You, O YAHWEH, I lift up my soul.

5 For You, O YAHWEH, are good and ready to forgive, and rich in mercy to all who call on You.

6 O YAHWEH, give ear to my prayer; listen to my voice of supplications.

7 I will call on You in the day of my trouble, for You will answer me.

8 None among the Elohim is like You, O YAHWEH and none are like Your works.

9 All nations whom You have made shall come and worship before You; yea, YAHWEH they shall glorify Your name.

10 For You are great and do wonderful things; You are Elohim all comes from you.

11 Teach me Your way, O YAHWEH; I will walk in your truth; unite my heart to fear Your name.

12 With all my heart I will thank You, O YAHWEH my Elohim; and I will glorify Your name forevermore.[1]

13 For Your mercy toward me is great; and You have delivered my soul from the lowest Sheol.

14 O Elohim, the proud have risen against me; and the troop of the violent have sought after my life, and have not set You before their eyes.

15 But You, O YAHWEH, our El, full of pity; and gracious, longsuffering and rich in mercy and truth.

16 O turn to me and be gracious to me; give Your strength to Your servant, and save the son of Your handmaid.

17 Make me a sign for good, that those who hate me may see and be ashamed, O YAHWEH, because You have helped me and comforted me.

Psalm 87

1 For the Sons of Korah. A Psalm. A Song.

His foundation is in the mountains of holiness.

2 YAHWEH loves the gates of Zion more than all the tents of Jacob.

3 Glorious things are spoken of you, O city of The Elohim. Selah.

4 I will mention Rahab and Babylon to those who know me; behold, Philistia and Tyre with Ethiopia; this man was born there.

5 And it shall be said to Zion, This man and that man was born in her; and the Highest Himself shall establish her.

6 In recording the peoples YAHWEH shall mark down, This man was born there. Selah.[2]

7 And the singers, the players of the pipe: all my springs are in You.

---

1 All those in scripture who were servants of Yahweh and had a humble heart gave glory to His name YAHWEH.

Psalm 88

1 A Song. A Psalm for the Sons of Korah, to the chief musician on Mahalath, to make humble. A Poem of Heman the Ezrahite.

O YAHWEH Elohim of my Y'shua*, I have cried in the day, in the night before You.
2 Let my prayer come before You; bow down Your ear to my cry.
3 For my soul is full with evils, and my life touches Sheol.
4 I am counted with those who go down to the Pit; I have been like a man without strength,
5 free among the dead, as pierced ones lying in the grave, whom You remember no more; yea by Your hand they are cut off.
6 You have laid me in the lowest pit, in dark places, in the deeps.
7 Your fury has lain hard upon me, and You afflict me with all Your waves. Selah.
8 You have taken ones knowing me away from me; You have made me a hateful thing to them; I am shut up, I will not go out.
9 My eye mourns because of affliction; O YAHWEH, I have called on You every day; I have spread out my hands to You.
10 For will You do wonders for those dying? Or shall the departed spirits rise and thank You? Selah.
11 Shall Your mercy be declared in the grave, Your faithfulness amidst ruin?
12 Shall Your wonders be known in the dark, and Your righteousness in the land of forgetfulness?
13 But to You I have cried, O YAHWEH; and in the morning my prayer shall go before You.
14 O YAHWEH, why do You cast off my soul; why do You hide Your face from me?
15 I am afflicted and dying from childhood; I suffer Your terrors; I am distracted.
16 Your fierce wrath goes over me; Your terrors have cut me off.
17 They surrounded me like waters all the day; they have come together around me.
18 You have taken lover and friend far from me, he who knows me, into darkness.

Psalm 89

1 A Poem of Ethan the Ezrahite.

I will sing of the mercies of YAHWEH forever; I will speak with my mouth Your faithfulness to all generations.
2 For I have said, Mercy shall be built up forever; You shall establish Your faithfulness in the heavens.
3 I have cut a covenant with My elect; I have sworn to David My servant,
4 I will establish your Seed forever, and build up your throne to all generations. Selah. (2Sam 7:16, 1Kgs 8:16)
5 And the heavens shall thank Your wonders, O YAHWEH; also Your faithfulness in the assembly of the saints.
6 For who in the sky shall be ranked with YAHWEH, who among the sons of Elohim is like YAHWEH? *(Job 5:1)*
7 El is greatly to be feared in the council of the Holy ones, and to be adored by all around Him.
8 O YAHWEH Elohim of Hosts,

[2] Verses 5-6- In this most royal psalm of Yahweh's eternal inheritance being Mount Zion, He states that those who are blessed to be citizens of this royal city will be enjoying all the blessings and privileges that go along with the security of such an honor to be named to an eternal standing.

who is a strong Yah like You? And
Your faithfulness is all around You.
9 You rule the pride of the sea; when
its waves rise high, You still them.
10 You have crushed Rahab in
pieces, as one slain; You have
scattered Your enemies with Your
mighty arm. *(Is 51:9)*
11 The heavens are Yours, and the
earth is Yours; the world and its
fullness, You founded them. *(Is 24:1)*
12 You have created the north and
the south; Tabor and Hermon rejoice
in Your name.
13 You have a mighty arm; Your
hand is strong, Your right hand is
high.
14 Justice and righteousness are
Your throne's foundation; mercy and
truth go before Your face.
15 Blessed is the people knowing the
joyful sound; O YAHWEH, they shall
walk in the light of Your face.
16 They shall rejoice in Your name
always; and they are exalted in Your
righteousness.
17 For You are the glory of their
strength; and by Your favor You lift up
our horn.
18 For YAHWEH is our shield, yea,
the Holy One of Israel our King.
19 Then You spoke in a vision to
Your holy one; and You said, I have
laid help on a mighty one. I have
exalted a chosen one from the people.
20 I have found My servant David; I
have anointed him with My holy oil.
21 My hand shall be fixed with him;
and My arm shall make him strong.
22 An enemy will not exact against
him; nor the son of iniquity afflict him.
23 And I will beat down his foes
before him, and plague those hating
him.
24 But My faithfulness and My
mercy is with him; and his horn shall
be exalted in My name.
25 And I will set his hand in the sea,
and his right hand in the rivers.
26 He shall cry to Me, My Father,
You are my El, and the rock of my
salvation *(Y'shua*)*.
27 And I will make Him My first-
born, higher than the kings of the
earth.[1]
28 I will keep My mercy for him
forever, and My covenant shall hold
fast with him.
29 And I have established his Seed
forever, and His throne as the days of
the heavens.
30 If his sons forsake My Torah, and
do not walk in My judgments;
31 if they profane My statutes and do
not keep My commandments;
32 then I will visit their
transgressions with the rod, and their
sins with stripes.
33 But I will not annul My mercy
from him, and I will not be false in My
faithfulness.
34 I will not profane My covenant,
nor change what goes from My lips.
35 Once I have sworn by My
holiness; I will not lie to David.
36 His Seed shall be forever, and his
throne as the sun before Me.[2]
37 Like the moon, it shall be forever;
and a faithful witness in the sky. Selah.
38 But You have cast off and rejected
us; You have passed over on Your
anointed.
39 You have turned away from the
covenant of Your servant; You have
defiled his crown on the ground.
40 You have broken down all his
hedges; You have brought his
strongholds to ruin.

---

1 The Psalm is mostly messianic, and verses 26-27 clearly show that YHWH is speaking of His firstborn, Yahshua.

2 The covenant is with the seed of David and fulfilled in Yahshua, who is a descendant of King David.

41 All who pass by the way plunder him; he is a curse to his neighbors.

42 You have set up the right hand of his enemies; You have made all his enemies rejoice.

43 And you have turned back the edge of his sword, and have not held him up in battle.

44 You have made his glory to cease and have hurled his throne to the ground.

45 You have shortened the days of his youth; You have covered him with shame. Selah.

46 O YAHWEH, until when will You hide Yourself? Shall Your wrath burn like fire forever?

47 Remember, I pray, the time of life; for what vanity have you created all the sons of men?

48 What man lives and never sees death? Shall he deliver his soul from the hand of Sheol? Selah.

49 YAHWEH where are Your former kindnesses that You swore to David in Your faithfulness?

50 Remember, O YAHWEH, the reproach of Your servants, my bearing in my bosom the insults of the many peoples

51 with which Your enemies have cursed, O YAHWEH; with which they have cursed the footsteps of Your anointed.

52 Blessed be YAHWEH forever. Amen and Amen!

Psalm 90

1 A Prayer of Moses, the Man of The Elohim.

O YAHWEH, You have been our dwelling-place in all generations.

2 Before the mountains were born, or ever You had formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting You are El.

3 You turn man to dust, and say, return, O sons of men.

4 For a thousand years in Your eyes are as a day, yesterday, when it passes, and as a watch in the night. *(2Pe 3:8)*

5 You flooded them away; they are as a sleep; in the morning they are like grass growing;

6 in the morning it sprouts and shoots up; in the evening it is cut off and dries up.

7 For we are consumed by Your anger, and we are troubled by Your wrath.

8 You have set our iniquities before You, our secret sins in the light of Your face.

9 For all our days pass away in Your wrath; we finish our years like a sigh.

10 The days of our years are seventy; and if any by strength live eighty years, yet their pride is labor and vanity; for it soon passes, and we fly away.

11 Who knows the power of Your anger? And as Your fear is, so is Your fury.

12 So teach us to number our days, so that we may bring a heart of wisdom.[1]

13 Return, O YAHWEH! Until when? And give pity to Your servants.

14 O satisfy us in the morning with Your mercy, and we will be glad and rejoice all our days.

15 Make us glad according to the days of our affliction, the years in which we have seen evil.

16 Let Your work be seen in Your servants, and Your majesty to their sons.

17 And let the delight of YAHWEH our Elohim be upon us; and establish the works of our hands upon us; yea, the work of our hands, establish it!

---

[1] Verses 9-12- Moses pointedly shows here the vanity of life and that since it passes so quick that all effort by man should be to serve Elohim (Ps 49:11-14, Eccl 1:1-4,14).

Psalm 91

1 He who dwells in the secret place of
the Most High shall abide in the shade
of the Almighty.[1] *(Ps 57:1)*
2 I will say to YAHWEH: My Refuge
and my Fortress, my Elohim; I will
trust in Him.
3 For He delivers you from the
fowlers snare, from destruction's
plague.
4 With His feathers He will cover
you, and under His wings you shall
seek refuge; His truth is a shield and
buckler.
5 You shall not fear the terror of
night, nor of the arrow that flies by
day;
6 of the plague that walks in
darkness, nor of the destruction laying
waste at noon.
7 A thousand shall fall by your side,
and ten thousand at your right hand; it
shall not come near you.
8 Only with your eyes you shall look,
and see the reward of the wicked.
9 Because You, O YAHWEH, are My
refuge; You make the Most High Your
habitation,
10 no evil shall happen to You, nor
shall any plague come near Your tent.
11 For He shall give His cherubs
charge over You, to keep You in all
Your ways.
12 They shall bear You up in their
hands, that You not dash Your foot on
a stone.[2] *(Math 4:6, Luk 4:10-11)*
13 You shall tread on the lion and
adder; the young lion and the serpent
You shall trample under foot.
14 Because He has set His love on
Me, therefore I will deliver Him; I will
set Him on high because He has
known My name.
15 He shall call on Me and I will
answer Him; I will be with Him in
distress; I will rescue Him and honor
Him.[3]
16 I will satisfy him with length of
days, and will make Him see My
Y'shua*.

Psalm 92

1 A Psalm, A Song for the Sabbath
Day.
It is good to give thanks to
YAHWEH, and to sing praises to Your
name, O Most High;
2 to make Your mercy known in the
morning, and Your faithfulness every
night;
3 on the ten strings, and on the harp;
on the lyre with sounding music.[4]
4 For You have rejoiced me with
Your work, O YAHWEH; I will shout
in the works of Your hands.
5 How great are Your works! O
YAHWEH, Your intentions are very
deep.
6 An animal-like man does not
know; a fool does not understand this.
7 When the wicked flourish like
grass, and all the evildoers blossom, it
is for them to be destroyed forever.
8 But You, O YAHWEH, are exalted
forever.
9 For, lo, Your enemies, O
YAHWEH; for, lo, Your enemies shall
perish; all the evildoers shall be
scattered.
10 But You will lift up my horn[5] as

---

[1] Psalm 91 is a wonderful testimony to those who fully trust in YHWH in times of trouble.

[2] Verses 11-12- Yahshua used this Psalm as well as other scriptures to fight Satan who twisted scripture to try to pervert his view on Yahshua, Math 4:6.

[3] Verses 14-15- The protection of the believer comes by calling on the name of YAHWEH.

[4] The mention of such instruments shows that this is speaking about congregational worship on the Sabbath day.

the wild ox, and I will be anointed with fresh oil.
11 And my eye shall look on my enemies; my ears shall hear the evildoers who rise up against me.
12 The righteous shall flourish as the palm tree; he shall grow like a cedar in Lebanon.
13 Those planted in the house of YAHWEH, in the courts of our Elohim, shall flourish.
14 They shall bear fruit in old age; they shall be fat and fresh,
15 to declare that YAHWEH is upright, my Rock! And in Him is no evil.

Psalm 93

1 YAHWEH reigns! He is clothed with majesty; YAHWEH is clothed with strength; He girded Himself; and the world is established; it shall not be shaken.
2 Your throne is established from then; You are from everlasting.
3 The floods have lifted up; O YAHWEH, the floods have lifted up their voice; the floods have lifted their roaring waves.
4 YAHWEH on high is mightier than the noise of many waters, than the mighty waves of the sea.
5 Your testimonies are very sure; holiness becomes Your house to length of days, O YAHWEH.

Psalm 94

1 O, El of vengeance; O YAHWEH, El of vengeance, shine forth!
2 Lift up Yourself, O Judge of the earth; give a just recompense on the proud.
3 Until when shall the wicked, O YAHWEH, until when shall the wicked exult?
4 They sputter, they speak impudent things; all the workers of evil speak proudly.
5 O YAHWEH, they crush Your people and afflict Your inheritance.
6 They kill the widow and the stranger, and murder the orphan.[1]
7 Yet they say, YAHWEH shall not see, nor shall the Elohim of Jacob observe.
8 Understand you beastly ones among the people; yea, you fools, when will you be wise?
9 He who planted the ear, shall He not hear? He who formed the eye, shall He not see?
10 He who chastises the nations, shall He not punish, He who teaches man knowledge?
11 YAHWEH knows the thoughts of man, that they are vain.
12 Blessed is the man You chasten, O Yah, You teach him out of Your Torah;[2] *(Ps 19:7-11, Ps 111:7-10)*
13 to give him rest from troubled days, until the pit is dug for the wicked.
14 For YAHWEH will not leave His

---

5 The Hebrew word for horn 'keren' indicates a horn like a shofar that oil would be held in. This word is also used to radiate as the rays of the sun radiate up to heaven.

1 Jac 1:27

2 The Torah is a lamp to ones feet (Ps 119:105) and a guide to righteous living. It was never meant to give salvation as man has a fallen nature and can only be redeemed by having their sins paid for by the blood of Yahshua. However, after immersion and entering the New Covenant, Yahweh also gives His set apart spirit to the believer so that he can perform the righteous demand of the Torah in the everyday decisions that are made to serve Elohim and his fellow man (Ro 8:1-10). Apart from Yahweh's spirit and the Torah it is mans vain attempt to do good instead of being good (Math 19:17).

people; nor will He forsake His inheritance.
15 For judgment shall turn to righteousness; and all the upright in heart shall follow after it.[1]
16 Who will rise up for Me against the evildoers? Who will stand up for Me against the workers of evil?
17 Unless YAHWEH had been my help, my soul would almost have dwelt in silence.
18 If I said, My foot slides, O YAHWEH, Your mercy has held me up.[2]
19 In the multitude of my inward thoughts, Your comforts delight my soul.
20 Shall the throne of iniquity have fellowship with You, forming mischief for a statute?
21 They crowd themselves together against the soul of the righteous, and condemn the blood of the innocent.
22 But YAHWEH is my tower of defense; and my Elohim is the rock of my refuge.
23 And He shall turn their own iniquity upon them; and He shall destroy them in their own evil, YAHWEH our Elohim shall cut them off![3] *(Hab 1:1-5)*

[1] Judgment simply means giving a just recompense for actions committed. So where in times past that decision was punishment due to sin, here it will be reward due to obedience to the Torah.

[2] Even though one will reap what he sows, ultimately all humans need the grace of YHWH for eternal life as all have sinned and fallen short of the glory of YHWH, Rom 3:23.

[3] The psalm starts by crying for justice against evil men, and then shows that the righteous who obey Torah will be rewarded and then shows Yahweh's judgment on the wicked. In the end, one will reap what he sows and there is a day of judgment for all.

Psalm 95

1 O come, let us sing to YAHWEH; let us shout to the Rock of our salvation *(Y'shua*). (1Cor 10:4)*
2 Let us come before His face with praise; let us shout for joy to Him with songs. *(Ps 100:2, Mic 6:6, Eph 5:19)*
3 For YAHWEH is a great El, and a great King above all elohim.
4 The deep places of the earth are in His hand; the summits of the mountains also are His.
5 The sea is His, and He made it, and His hands formed the dry land.
6 O come, let us worship and bow down; let us kneel before YAHWEH our Maker. *(Dan 6:10-11, 2Sam 12:16)*
7 For He is our Elohim; and we are the people of His pasture, and the sheep of His hand. Today, if you will hear His voice,
8 do not harden your heart as in the day of strife, as in the day of testing in the wilderness.
9 When your fathers tried Me, they tested Me and they saw My work.
10 For forty years I was disgusted with that generation; and I said, They are a people who err in heart; and they do not know My ways,
11 to whom I swore in My anger, They shall not enter into My rest.[4]

Psalm 96

1 O sing to YAHWEH a new song; sing to YAHWEH, all the earth.
2 Sing to YAHWEH; bless His name, bear news of His salvation *(Y'shua*)* day by day.
3 Tell of His glory among the nations, His wonders among all people.

[4] Verses 7-11- These verses are quoted verbatim in Hebrews 3:7-11 showing that without faith one cannot enter the kingdom of YHWH (Heb 11:6).

4 For YAHWEH is great and greatly
to be praised; He is to be feared above
all gods.
5 For all the gods of the peoples are
idols; but YAHWEH made the
heavens.
6 Honor and majesty are before
Him; strength and beauty are in His
sanctuary.
7 Give to YAHWEH, O families of
the people; give to YAHWEH glory
and might.
8 Give to YAHWEH the glory due
His name; bring an offering and come
into His courts.[1] *(Ps 100:4)*
9 Oh worship YAHWEH in the
beauty of holiness; tremble before
Him, all the earth.
10 Say among the nations,
YAHWEH reigns; and, The world
shall be established, it shall not be
moved; He shall judge the peoples in
uprightness.
11 Let the heavens be glad, and let
the earth rejoice; let the sea roar, and
the fullness of it.
12 Let the field be joyful, and all that
is in it; then the trees of the forest
shall rejoice
13 before YAHWEH; for He comes;
for He comes to judge the earth; He
shall judge the world with
righteousness, and the people with His
truth.

Psalm 97

1 YAHWEH reigns! Let the earth
rejoice; let the multitude of islands be
glad.
2 Clouds and darkness are all around
Him; righteousness and judgment are
the foundation of His throne.
3 A fire goes before Him and burns
up His enemies all around.
4 His lightnings lit up the world; the
earth saw and trembled.
5 The mountains melted like wax
before the face of YAHWEH, before
the face of YAHWEH of the whole
earth.
6 The heavens declare His
righteousness and all the people see
His glory.
7 All who serve graven images are
shamed, those who boast themselves
in idols; all gods bow down before
Him.
8 Zion heard and was glad; yea, the
daughters of Judah rejoiced because of
Your judgments, O YAHWEH.
9 For You, YAHWEH, are exalted
above all the earth; You are lifted on
high far above all gods.
10 You who love YAHWEH, hate
evil. He keeps the souls of His saints;
He delivers them out of the hand of
the wicked.
11 Light is sown for the righteous,
and gladness for the upright in heart.
12 Be glad in YAHWEH, O
righteous ones; give thanks to the
memory of His holiness.

Psalm 98

1 A Psalm.
O sing to YAHWEH a new song, for
He has done wondrous things; His
right hand and His holy arm has saved
for Him.
2 YAHWEH has revealed His
Y'shua* to the eyes of the nations.; He
unveiled His righteousness
3 He has remembered His mercy and
His faithfulness to the house of Israel;
all the ends of the earth have seen
(Aleph/Tav) Y'shua* from our Elohim.
4 Shout joyfully to YAHWEH, all the
earth; break out and rejoice and sing
praise.
5 Sing praise to YAHWEH with the

[1] The praise of our lips to give glory to the true name of YAHWEH is our offering.

lyre; with the lyre and the voice of a song.
6 With trumpets and the sound of a horn, shout joyfully before YAHWEH the King.
7 Let the sea roar, and the fullness of it; the world, and those who live in it.
8 Let the rivers clap their hands; let the heights shout for joy together,
9 before YAHWEH; for He comes to judge the earth; with righteousness He shall judge the world, and the peoples in uprightness.

Psalm 99

1 YAHWEH reigns; let the peoples tremble; He sits between the cherubs; let the earth quake. *(Ps 80:1)*
2 YAHWEH is great in Zion; and He is high above all the peoples. *(Ps 48:1)*
3 They shall thank Your great and fearful name; it is holy.[1]
4 The king's strength also loves judgment; You establish uprightness; You worked judgment and righteousness in Jacob.
5 Exalt YAHWEH our Elohim and worship at His footstool; He is holy.[2]
6 Moses and Aaron were among His priests, and Samuel was among those who called on His name; they called to YAHWEH, and He answered them.[3]
7 He spoke to them in the cloudy pillar; they kept His testimonies and the Law that He gave to them.
8 You answered them, O YAHWEH our Elohim; to them You were an El who forgives them, but taking vengeance on their works.
9 Exalt YAHWEH our Elohim and worship at His holy hill; for YAHWEH our Elohim is holy.

Psalm 100

1 A Psalm of Thanksgiving.
Shout joyfully to YAHWEH, all the land.
2 Worship YAHWEH with gladness; come before His face with joyful singing.
3 Know that YAHWEH, He is Elohim; He has made us, and not we ourselves, His people and the sheep of His pasture. *(Gen 1:26-27)*
4 Enter into His gates with thanksgiving, into His courts with praise; be thankful to Him; bless His name. *(Ps 96:8)*
5 For YAHWEH is good; His mercy is everlasting, and His faithfulness to generation and generation.

Psalm 101

1 A Psalm of David.
I will sing of mercy and judgment; to You O YAHWEH, I will sing praise.
2 I will behave myself wisely in a perfect way; O when will You come to me? I will walk in the integrity of my heart in the midst of my house.
3 I will set no worthless thing before my eyes; I have hated the work of those who turn aside; it shall not fasten upon me.
4 A perverse heart shall depart from me; I will not know evil.
5 Whoever secretly slanders his neighbor, I will cut him off; I will not endure him who has high eyes and a proud heart.
6 My eyes shall be on the faithful of the land, so that they may dwell with

---

1. The name YAHWEH alone is to be praised, Ps 96:8, Deut 28:58, Jer 16:21, Is 6:3.
2. Is 66:1
3. Every true prophet of scripture called on the true name of the Creator, YAHWEH. Today many false prophets are rampant (Math 24:24), declaring false prophecies in the name of the Babylonian deity “god”. See note on Is 65:11.

me; he who walks in a perfect way shall serve me.
7 He who works deceit shall not live inside my house; he who speaks lies shall not be established before my eyes.[1]
8 In the mornings I will cut off all the wicked of the land, so that I may cut off all the evil workers from the city of YAHWEH.

Psalm 102

1 A Prayer of the afflicted, when he is faint and pours out his complaint before YAHWEH.[2]
Hear my prayer, O YAHWEH, and let my cry come to You.
2 Do not hide Your face from me in the day of my trouble; bow down Your ear to me in the day I call; answer me quickly.
3 For my days are finished in smoke, and my bones are burned like a hearth.[3]
4 My heart is stricken and dried like grass, so that I forget to eat my bread.
5 Because of the voice of my sighing, my bones cleave to my flesh.[4]
6 I am like a pelican of the wilderness; I am like an owl of the desert.
7 I watch and am like a sparrow alone on the housetop.
8 My enemies curse me all the day long; my very name has been used as curse against me.[5]
9 For I have eaten ashes like bread, and have mixed my drink with weeping,[6]
10 because of Your anger and Your wrath; for You have lifted me and cast me down.
11 My days are like a shadow stretched out, and I wither like grass.
12 But You, O YAHWEH, shall dwell forever, and Your memory to generation and generation.
13 You shall arise; have mercy on Zion, for the time to pity her, yea, the appointed time *(mo'ed)* has come.[7]
14 For Your servants take pleasure in its stones, and pity its dust.[8]
15 So nations shall fear the name of YAHWEH, and all the kings of the earth Your glory.[9]
16 When YAHWEH shall build up Zion, He shall appear in His glory.[10]
17 He will turn to the prayer of the destitute, and will not despise their prayer.
18 This shall be written for the last generation[11], and people to be created shall praise YAHWEH. *(Deut 29:22)*

---

1 Verses 1-7 parallel Psalm 15.
2 This psalm starts by foretelling the horrific experience that Judah will undertake in the Holocaust and then finishes with showing that after the Holocaust that Israel will be a nation again at the appointed time in the last days and then, the Messiah will appear.
3 This is exactly what happened in the crematoriums.
4 Verses 4-5-The prisoners in the concentration camps were so deprived of food that many were skin and bones and one could not even tell if it were a man or woman.
5 Jews were given yellow arm bands to wear and they were persecuted for doing no apparent wrong, only simply because they were Jewish.
6 When the wind blew in a certain direction people would literally have ashes of the burned bodies flying in their mouth.
7 "*Appointed time*" The Hebrew word *"moed"* which is the word for set apart or Holy time. At the precise time that Israel's punishment ended Yahweh made them a nation again.
8 A fore-look to archeology, which is a science of only about 140 yrs old.
9 1Kgs 8:43, Is 2:2, Ps 138:4, Ps 148:5,11.
10 Mount Zion, which is The original city of David (2Chron 5:2) was Jerusalem. Today Jerusalem has more than 1 million inhabitants and is more built up than ever before in its history.

19 For He has looked down from the
height of His sanctuary; YAHWEH
looked from Heaven to the earth,
20 to hear the groaning of the
prisoner, to set free the sons of death,[1]
21 to declare the name of YAHWEH
in Zion, and His praise in Jerusalem,
22 when the peoples and the
kingdoms are gathered together to
serve YAHWEH.[2]
23 He diminished my strength in the
way; He shortened my days.
24 I said, O my Elohim, do not take
me up in the half of my days; Your
years are through the generation of
generations.
25 Before time You founded the
earth, and the heavens are the work of
Your hands.
26 They shall perish, but You shall
endure; yea, all of them shall wear out
like a garment; You shall change them
like clothing, and they shall be
changed. *(Job 40:10)*
27 But You are He, and Your years
shall not be ended.
28 The sons of Your servants shall
dwell, and their seed shall be
established before You.

Psalm 103

1 By David.
Bless YAHWEH, O my soul, and all
within me, bless His holy name.
2 Bless YAHWEH, O my soul, and
forget not all His rewards;
3 He who forgives all your iniquities;
who heals all your diseases;
4 who redeems your life from
destruction; who crowns you with
kindness and tender mercies;[3]
5 who satisfies your desire with
good; your youth is renewed like the
eagle's.
6 YAHWEH works righteous deeds
and judgments for all the oppressed.
7 He made known His ways to
Moses, His acts to the sons of Israel.
8 YAHWEH is merciful and
gracious, slow to anger, and of
abundant mercy.
9 He will not always strive, nor will
He keep His anger forever.
10 He has not done to us according
to our sins, nor rewarded us according
to our iniquities.
11 For as the heavens are above the
earth, so is His mercy mighty over
those who fear Him.
12 As far as the east is from the west,
so far has He removed our
transgressions from us.
13 As the pity of a father over his
sons, so YAHWEH pities those who
fear Him.
14 For He knows how we are made,
remembering that we are dust.
15 As for man, his days are as grass;
as the flower of the field, so he
flourishes.[4]
16 For the wind passes over it, and it
is not; and its place never knows it
again.

---

11 Clearly, the prophecy is written for the last generation (Math 24:32-34) and some from this generation that saw the Holocaust will see the Messiah appear. How many Holocaust survivors would have to be present at this glorious event is not mentioned, but only 2 people in Yahoshua's time entered the promised land who were 20 and over who left Egypt.

1 Is 61:1-2

2 Verses 21-22 - When Messiah returns all on earth will worship the glorious name of **YAHWEH**.

3 Verses 1-4- This is a beautiful psalm of YHWH's grace and mercy and healing power. Verse 3- Yahweh promises to heal His chosen and forgives upon repentance, but when He takes away the human sickness as a result of the sin is fully His prerogative, whether it is immediate, later or even when the Kingdom arrives. This is where faith for healing comes in.

17 But the mercy of YAHWEH is from everlasting, even to everlasting, on those who fear Him; yea, His righteousness is to the sons of sons;
18 to those who keep His covenant, and to those who remember His commandments, to do them.[1]
19 YAHWEH has prepared His throne in Heaven, and His kingdom rules over all.
20 Bless YAHWEH, O angels of His; mighty in strength; doing His Word; listening to the voice of His Word.
21 Bless YAHWEH, all His hosts, ministers of His, doing His will.[2]
22 Bless YAHWEH, all His works in all the places of His dominion; bless YAHWEH, O my soul.

Psalm 104

1 Bless YAHWEH, O my soul! O YAHWEH my Elohim, You are very great; You have put on honor and majesty,
2 covering Yourself with light like a cloak, and stretching out the heavens like a curtain;
3 who lays beams in the waters of His upper rooms; setting thick clouds as His chariots; walking on the wings of the wind.
4 He makes His cherubs spirits, His ministers a flaming fire.
5 He founded the earth on its foundations; it shall not be shaken forever and ever.
6 You have covered the deep as with a robe; the waters stood above the mountains.
7 From Your rebuke, they flee; from the sound of Your thunder, they hurry away.
8 They go up the mountains; they go down the valleys to the place which You founded for them.
9 You have set a boundary that they may not pass over; they shall not return to cover the earth.
10 He sends springs into the valleys; they flow between the hills;
11 they give drink to every animal of the field; wild donkeys break their thirst;
12 over them the birds of the heavens dwell; they give voice from between the branches.
13 He waters the hills from His upper rooms; the earth is satisfied from the fruit of Your works.
14 He causes the grass to grow for the livestock and plants for the service of man, to bring food out of the earth.
15 And wine cheers the heart of man; oil makes his face shine, and bread sustains the heart of man.[3]
16 The trees of YAHWEH are satisfied, the cedars of Lebanon that He planted;
17 there where the birds nest; the fir trees are the house of the stork;
18 high hills are for the wild goats; rocks are a refuge for the badgers.
19 He made the moon for seasons[4]; the sun knows its going down.

---

4 Verses 8-13- Show the beautiful mercy and grace of a most loving Creator even in man's inability to be righteous in the flesh. Yahshua came to earth as a human to know the exact feelings and weaknesses that humans go through to be a most merciful High Priest to us, Heb 2:16-18, 4:14-16.

1 The promise is to those who not only believe in His commandments but to those who keep them. To say that one loves YHWH, but they do not keep His commandments scripture calls them a liar 1Joh 2:3-5.

2 Both the cherubs of heaven and the true ministers of Yahshua on earth bless only the name of YAHWEH and not the name of pagan deities, Is 42:8.

3 These three things are needed to sustain for life. The bread for sustenance, the oil for food and healing and the wine for blessing and joy, Num 18:12, Deut 11:14, 12:17, 18:4, Neh 10:39, 13:5.

20 You put darkness, and it is night; in it all the forest animals creep.
21 The young lions roar for prey, and to seek their food from El.
22 The sun rises; they are gathered, and go to their dens to lie down.
23 Man goes out to his work, and to his labor until the evening.
24 O YAHWEH, how many are Your works! You have made all of them in wisdom; the earth is full of Your riches.
25 This is the sea, great and wide on both hands; there are creeping things even without number; living things, small and great.
26 There the ships go; You formed this great sea-animal to play in it.
27 All of them wait for You to give them their food in due season.
28 You give to them; they gather; You open Your hand, and they are filled with good.
29 You hide Your face, and they are troubled; You gather their breath, and they expire and return to their dust.
30 You send out Your Spirit, and they are created; and You renew the face of the earth. *(Gen 1:1-2)*
31 The glory of YAHWEH shall be forever; YAHWEH shall rejoice in His works.
32 He looks to the earth, and it trembles; He touches the hills, and they smoke.
33 I will sing to YAHWEH during my life; I will sing praise to my Elohim while I still exist.
34 My meditation on Him shall be sweet; I will be glad in YAHWEH.
35 Let sinners be consumed out of the earth and let the wicked be no more; bless YAHWEH, O my soul; praise YAHWEH!

Psalm 105

1 O give thanks to YAHWEH; call on His name; make His deeds known among the peoples.
2 Sing to Him; sing praises to Him; tell of all His wonders.
3 Glory in His holy name; let the heart of those who seek YAHWEH rejoice.
4 Seek YAHWEH and His strength; seek His face without ceasing.
5 Remember His wonders that He has done, His miracles, and the judgments of His mouth,
6 O seed of His servant Abraham; O sons of Jacob, His chosen ones.
7 He is YAHWEH our Elohim; His judgments are in all the earth;
8 He has remembered His covenant forever; the Word He commanded to a thousand generations;
9 which He cut with Abraham, and His oath to Isaac;
10 and He confirmed it to Jacob for a statute, to Israel for a perpetual covenant;
11 saying, to you I will give the land of Canaan, the portion of your inheritance;[1]
12 when they were a few men of number; very few, and aliens in it.
13 And they went about from nation to nation; from one kingdom to another people.
14 He allowed no man to oppress

4 The Hebrew word for season here is "*moedim*" the word for Holy day. The moon also rules the month as the month starts by the new moon conjunction and the day is ruled by the sun. When the sun is down (the absence of the sun) the day begins. In like manner at the dark of the moon the month begins. Yahweh would not have His people seek a crescent moon each month as many pagans worshiped the moon, sun and stars, (Deut 4:19).

1 Verses 8-11- Gen 13:14-5, 15:18, 17:7-8

them; yea, He reproved kings for their sakes;
15 saying, Touch not My anointed; and do My prophets no harm.
16 And He called a famine on the land; He broke the whole staff of bread.[1]
17 He sent a man before them, Joseph, being sold for a slave;
18 they hurt his feet with chains; his soul came into iron;
19 until the time His Word came, the Word of YAHWEH refined him;
20 the king, the ruler of peoples, sent and released him and even set him free;
21 he made him master of his house, and ruler over all he owned;
22 to bind his leaders at his will, and to teach his elders wisdom.
23 Israel also came into Egypt, and Jacob sojourned in the land of Ham.
24 And He increased His people greatly and made them stronger than their enemies.
25 He turned their heart to hate His people, to deal craftily with His servants.
26 He sent His servant Moses and Aaron whom He had chosen.
27 They put things of His signs among them; yea, miracles in the land of Ham.
28 He sent darkness and made it dark; and they did not rebel against His Word.
29 He turned their waters into blood and killed their fish.
30 Their land swarmed with frogs in the rooms of their kings.
31 He spoke, and fly swarms came; gnats in all their borders.
32 He gave hail for their rain, flaming fire in their land.
33 He struck their vines also, and their fig trees; and He broke the trees of their borders.
34 He spoke, and locusts came; and larvae without number;
35 and they ate up all the plants in the land; yea, ate the fruit of their ground.
36 He also struck all the first-born in their land, the first-fruit of all their vigor.
37 And He led them out with silver and gold; and among their tribes, not one was weak in their legs.
38 Egypt was glad when they went out, for their dread had fallen on them.
39 He spread a cloud for a covering; and fire to give light in the night.
40 He asked, and He brought quail; and satisfied them with the food from the heavens.
41 He opened the rock, and waters gushed out; they went in the dry places like a river.
42 For He remembered His holy promise and His servant Abraham;
43 and He brought His people out with joy; His chosen ones with gladness.
44 And He gave to them the lands of the nations; and they inherited the labor of the peoples;
45 so that they might observe His statutes and keep His Torah. Praise YAHWEH!

Psalm 106

1 Halleluyah! Give thanks to YAHWEH, for He is good; for His mercy endures forever.
2 Who can express the mighty works of YAHWEH, or cause all His praise to be heard?
3 Blessed are those keeping judgment, he who does righteousness at all times.
4 Remember me, YAHWEH, with the favor of Your people; O visit me with Your Y'Shua*,
5 to see the good of Your chosen, to

[1] Verses 13:16- Gen 12:10-20, 20:1-18, 26:11

rejoice in the joy of Your nation, to glory with Your inheritance.

6 We have sinned with our fathers; we did iniquity; we did evil.

7 Our fathers did not ponder Your wonders in Egypt; they did not remember Your many mercies, and they rebelled at the sea, at the Red Sea.

8 But He saved them for His name's sake, to make known His might.

9 And He rebuked the Red Sea; and it dried up; and He made them go through the depths as through the wilderness.

10 And He saved them from the hand of the one hating, and ransomed him from the hand of the enemy;

11 and waters covered their enemies; not one of them was left.

12 Then they believed His Words; they sang His praise.

13 They hurried and forgot His works; they did not wait for His counsel;

14 and they greedily lusted in the wilderness, and tested El in the desert.

15 And He gave their request to them, but sent wasting into their soul.

16 And they were jealous of Moses the holy one of YAHWEH in the camp of Aaron;

17 the earth opened up and swallowed Dathan; and covered the company of Abiram.

18 And a fire burned in their company; the flame burned up the wicked.

19 They made a calf in Horeb, and fell down before the casted image;

20 and they changed their Glory into the image of an ox eating grass.[1]

21 They forgot El their deliverer, who was doing great things in Egypt;

22 wonders in the land of Ham, awesome things by the Red Sea.

23 And He said to destroy them; except Moses His chosen had stood before Him in the breach, to turn away His wrath from destroying them.

24 They despised the pleasant land; they did not believe His Word.

25 And they murmured in their tents, not listening to the voice of YAHWEH; *(Num 14:2)*

26 and He lifted up His hand to them, to make them fall in the wilderness;

27 to make their seed fall also among the nations, and to scatter them in the lands.

28 They also were joined to Baal-Peor, and ate the sacrifices of the ones who died;

29 and provoked Him with their deeds; and a plague broke out among them.

30 Then Phinehas stood and intervened, and the plague was stayed;

31 and it was counted to him for righteousness to generation and generation, forever.

32 And they angered Him at The Waters of Provocation, and it went ill for Moses because of them;

33 for they provoked his spirit, and he spoke rashly with his lips.

34 They did not destroy the peoples, as YAHWEH said to them,

35 but mixed with the nations, and learned their works.

36 And they served their idols, and they became a snare to them.

37 Yea, they sacrificed their sons and their daughters to the demons;

38 and they shed innocent blood, the blood of their sons and of their daughters, whom they sacrificed to the idols of Canaan. And the land was polluted with the blood. *(2Kg 21:6, 16)*

39 And they were unclean with their works, and went whoring in their acts.

40 And the anger of YAHWEH burned against His people; and He detested His inheritance.

[1] Rom 1:21-25

41 And He gave them into the hand
of the nations; and those who hated
them ruled over them.
42 And their enemies oppressed
them and they were humbled under
their hand.
43 Many times He delivered them,
but they rebelled in their plans, and
sank in their iniquities.
44 And He looked on their affliction
when He heard their shout;
45 He remembered His covenant for
them, and breathed a sigh, according
to His many mercies.
46 And He gave them to tender
mercies before all their captors.
47 Save us, O YAHWEH our
Elohim, and gather us from the
nations, to give thanks to Your holy
name, to exult in Your praise.
48 Blessed is YAHWEH Elohim of
Israel, from everlasting even to
everlasting. And let all the people say,
Amen! Halleluyah![1]

Psalm 107

1 Give thanks to YAHWEH, for He is
good; for His mercy endures forever.
2 Let the redeemed of YAHWEH say
so, whom He redeemed from the hand
of the foe;
3 and gathered them from the lands;
from east and from west; from north
and from south.
4 They wandered in the wilderness,
in a desert way; they found no city of
dwelling;
5 hungry and thirsty, their soul
fainted in them;
6 and they cried to YAHWEH in
their distress; He delivered them from
their straits.
7 And He guided them in the right
way; to go to a city of dwelling.
8 Let them thank YAHWEH for His
mercy, and His wonders to the sons of
man.
9 He satisfies the thirsty soul, and
He fills the hungry soul with good.
10 Those who live in the darkness,
and in the shadow of death, being
prisoners in affliction and iron,
11 because they rebelled against the
Words of El, and despised the counsel
of the Most High;
12 and He humbled their heart by
toil; they stumbled, and none were
helping;
13 and they cried to YAHWEH in
their distress; He saved them out of
their distresses;
14 He brought them out from
darkness and the shadow of death;
and He broke their bonds apart.
15 Let them thank YAHWEH for His
mercy, and His wonders to the sons of
man.
16 For He has broken the gates of
copper; and He cut bars of iron in two.
17 Fools are afflicted from the way of
their rebellion, and from their
iniquities;
18 their soul hates every food; and
they touch the gates of death;
19 and they cried to YAHWEH in
their distress; He saved them from
their straits;
20 He sent His Word and healed
them; and delivered them from all
their pitfalls.
21 Let them thank YAHWEH for
His mercy, and His wonders to the
sons of man.

[1] Ps 106 is a brief history of how Israel continually rebelled and forsook Yahweh, but also about His great mercy, love and patience to still work with them even in their Diaspora due to His Holy name and promise made to Abraham. There are well over 100 scriptures of Israel's redemption as a nation in the end time in the Old and New Testament and we are living in the days to see Yahweh's great redemptive work in Israel being a nation again.

22 And let them sacrifice the sacrifices of thanksgiving, and recount His works with rejoicing.
23 They who go down to the sea in ships, who work in the great waters;
24 these see the works of YAHWEH, and His wonders in the deep.
25 For He speaks, and He raises stormy wind, and makes its waves high;
26 they go up to the heavens; they go down to the depths; their soul is melted because they are in evil;
27 they reel and stagger like a drunken man, and all their wisdom is swallowed up;
28 and they cry to YAHWEH in their distress, and from their straits He brings them out.
29 He settles the storm to a whisper, so that its waves are still;
30 and they are glad, because they are quiet; and He led them to their desired haven.
31 Let them thank YAHWEH for His mercy, and His wonders to the sons of mankind;
32 and exalt Him in the congregation of the people; and praise Him in the seat of the elders.
33 He sets rivers to a wilderness, and water springs to thirsty ground;
34 a fruitful land to a salty desert; because of the wickedness of those who live in it.
35 He puts the wilderness into pools of water; and dry land into water springs;
36 and He makes the hungry live there, and they may prepare a city of dwelling.
37 And they sow the fields, and plant vineyards, and make fruits of produce.
38 He also blesses them, so that they multiply greatly; and He does not allow their cattle to diminish;
39 but they are diminished and bowed down from coercion, evil and grief.
40 He pours scorn on nobles, and causes them to wander in a desert; there is no path.
41 But He raises the poor up from affliction, and He sets families like a flock.
42 The upright shall see and be glad; and all iniquity shuts its mouth.
43 Whoever is wise and will observe these things, they shall discern the mercies of YAHWEH.

Psalm 108

1 A Song. A Psalm of David.
O Elohim, my heart is fixed; I will sing; yea, I will sing songs even with my glory.
2 Awake, harp and lyre! I will awake early;
3 I will thank You, O YAHWEH, among the peoples; and I will sing to You among the nations.
4 For Your mercy is great above the heavens; and Your truth reaches to the clouds.
5 Be lifted up, O Elohim, above the heavens; and Your glory above all the earth;
6 O that Your beloved may be delivered; save by Your right hand and answer me.
7 Elohim has spoken in His holiness; I will rejoice; I will portion out Shechem; and I will measure out the valley of Succoth.
8 Gilead is Mine; and Manasseh is Mine; and Ephraim is the refuge of My head; Judah is My lawgiver;
9 Moab is My washpot; I will throw My shoe out over Edom; I will shout in triumph over Philistia.[1]
10 Who will lead me into the

[1] Verses 7-9- Compare Psalm 60:6-8 showing the supremacy of Israel compared to their neighbors.

fortified city? Who will lead me over Edom?
11 O Elohim, have You not cast us off? And, O Elohim, will You not go out with our armies?
12 Give help to us from distress; for the deliverance of man is vanity.
13 In Elohim we shall do mighty things, for He shall trample ones oppressing us.

Psalm 109

1 To the chief musician, A Psalm of David.
O Elohim of my praise, do not be silent;
2 for the mouth of the wicked, and the deceitful mouth, are opened against me; they spoke against me with a lying tongue. *(Pr 6:16-19)*
3 And they hemmed me in with words of hating; and they fought against me without a cause. *(Ps 69:4)*
4 In return for my love, they are my enemies; but I am in prayer.
5 And they put on me evil for good, and hating for my love. *(Joh 7:7)*
6 Set a wicked man over him; and let an adversary stand at his right hand;
7 when he is judged, let him go out wicked; and let his prayer become sin;
8 let his days be few; and let another take his office;
9 his sons be orphans, and his wife a widow;
10 and let his sons always beg and wander, and seek food out of their ruins;
11 let the moneylender lay a snare for all that is his; and let strangers plunder his labor;
12 let there be none giving mercy to him; nor any to have pity on his orphans;
13 let his posterity be cut off; let their name be blotted out in the following generation;
14 let the iniquity of his fathers be remembered to YAHWEH; and let not the sin of his mother be blotted out;
15 let them be always before YAHWEH, so that He may cut off the memory of them from the earth;
16 because he did not remember to do mercy; and he persecuted the poor and needy man, even to kill the broken of heart.
17 Yea, he loved cursing, and it came to him; he also had no pleasure in blessing, and it was far from him.
18 And he put on cursing as his robe, and it came like water in his inward parts, and like oil into his bones.
19 Let it be to him as a garment he wraps in, and for a girdle that he always girds on.
20 This is the reward of my foes from YAHWEH, and of those who speak evil against my soul.[1]
21 But You, O YAHWEH Adonai, work with me for Your name's sake; deliver me because Your mercy is good.
22 For I am poor and needy, and my heart is pierced within me.
23 As a shadow when it stretches out, I am gone; I am shaken off like the locust.
24 My knees stumble from fasting, and my flesh grows lean from fatness.
25 And I have become a reproach to them; they looked at me; they shook their heads. *(Math 27:39)*
26 O YAHWEH my Elohim, save me; save me according to Your mercy;
27 and they will know that this is Your hand; that You, O YAHWEH, have done it.
28 They will curse, but You will bless; they rise up and are ashamed; but Your servant will be glad.

---
[1] Verses 2-20 show that Yahweh although has great mercy for those who turn from their evil, and repent will not acquit the guilty who remain evil in their ways, Nah 1:3.

29 Let those who accuse me be clothed with shame; and cover themselves in their shame as with a robe.
30 I will greatly thank YAHWEH with my mouth; yea, I will praise Him in the midst of the multitude.
31 For He shall stand at the right hand of the needy; to save from those judging his soul.

Psalm 110

1 A Psalm of David.
A declaration of YAHWEH to my Adonai: Sit at My right hand, until I place Your enemies as Your footstool.[1]
2 YAHWEH shall send the rod of Your strength out of Zion to rule in the midst of Your enemies.
3 Your people shall have willingness in the day of Your might; in the majesties of holiness; from the womb of the dawn, to You is the dew of Your youth.
4 YAHWEH has sworn and will not repent: You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek.[2]
5 YAHWEH at Your right hand shatters kings in the day of His anger.[3]
6 He shall judge among the nations; He shall fill with dead bodies; He shall shatter heads over much land.[4]
7 He shall drink out of the torrent on the way; therefore, He shall lift up the head.

Psalm 111

1 HalleluYah![5] I will thank YAHWEH with all my heart; in the council of the upright, and of the assembly.
2 The works of YAHWEH are great, sought out by all those desiring them.
3 His work is honorable and glorious; and His righteousness is standing forever.
4 He has made a memorial for His wonders; YAHWEH is gracious and full of pity.
5 He has given food to those who fear Him; He will always remember His covenant.
6 He has shown to His people the power of His works, to give to them the inheritance of the nations.
7 The works of His hands are truth and judgment all His commandments are true,
8 standing firm forever and ever;

---

1 The word for master in Hebrew is "*Adon*". However, when it is pluralized and vowel pointed as "**ADONAI**" this only can be referring to Elohim and here the Messiah is referred to by Adonai. It also shows that there are two Elohim beings. One being Yahweh the Father sitting on His throne in heaven and Yahshua the Son sitting off to His right hand showing equality with the Father (Phil 2:6). Math 26:64, Acts 2:33, Acts 7:55-56, Heb 1:3, 8:1, 10:10-13, 12:2, 1 Pe 3:22, Ro 8:34.

2 The Levitical order was an added temporary measure to bridge the people from their sin of the golden calf at Mount Sinai to the appearing of Messiah and the Melchizedek order. See notes on Hebrews chapter 7 and also Galatians chapter 3. See also lesson 12 of the bible study course at www.coyhwh.com **.**

3 Whereas in verse 1, the Messiah sitting at Yahweh's right hand is called Adonai, now He is called Yahweh, showing Yahweh to be a family name consisting of Yah Yahweh the Father (Ps 68:4) and Yahshua Yahweh the Son (Acts 2:38).

4 At Messiah's return there will be great war and He will conquer all enemies, Zech 14:1-5, 12, Is 66:24, Eze 39:11-21, Rev 19:11-20.

5 "*Hallel*" in Hebrew means praise and Yah is the personal name of Yahweh the Father (Ps 68:4). So Hallelu- Yah means to give Praise to Yah Yahweh the Father.

they are done in truth and
uprightness.[1]
9 He sent redemption to His people;
He has commanded His covenant
forever; holy and awesome is His
name.
10 The fear of YAHWEH is the
beginning of wisdom; a good
understanding to all those who are
practicing them;[2] His praise is
standing forever!

Psalm 112

1 HalleluYah! Blessed is the man
who fears YAHWEH, delighting
greatly in His commandments.[3]
2 His seed shall be mighty on the
earth; the generation of the upright
shall be blessed;
3 wealth and riches are in his house;
and his righteousness is standing
forever.
4 Light rises in the darkness to the
upright; he is gracious and full of pity,
and of righteousness.
5 Good is a man showing favor and
lending; he will measure his matters
with justice.
6 For he shall not be shaken forever;
the righteous shall be for a memorial
forever.
7 He shall not be afraid of evil news;
his heart is fixed, trusting in
YAHWEH.
8 His heart is upheld; he shall not be
afraid though he looks on his foes.
9 He has scattered; he has given to
the needy; his righteousness is
standing forever; his horn shall be
lifted up with honor.
10 The wicked shall see and be
vexed; he shall gnash his teeth and
melt; the desire of the wicked shall
perish.

Psalm 113

1 HalleluYah! Praise, O servants of
YAHWEH; praise the name of
YAHWEH.
2 Blessed is the name of YAHWEH
from now on and forevermore.
3 From the rising of the sun to its
going, the name of YAHWEH is to be
praised.[4]
4 YAHWEH is high above all
nations; His glory above the heavens.
5 Who is like YAHWEH our Elohim,
who sit on high to dwell;
6 Who humbles Himself to consider
all in the earth and the heavens!
7 He raises up the poor from the
dust; He lifts the needy out of the
dunghill, *(1Sam 2:8, Ps 35:10, 107:41)*
8 in order to make him sit with
nobles, with the nobles of his people.
9 He causes the barren to live in the
house as the joyful mother of sons.
HalleluYah! *(1Sam 2:5, 2Kgs 4:14-17)*

---

1 YHWH's commandments are part of His character and stand forever.

2 The fear of YHWH leads one to obedience and reverence to the name of YAHWEH and the keeping of His commandments. The prideful and rebellious will neither recognize the name above every name "**YAHWEH**" nor keep His commandments, as the third commandment requires us to give reverence to the family name of **YAHWEH.**

3 Ps 19:7-11

4 It is one of the most amazing enigmas in all the scriptures that the personal name of YAHWEH, which is in scripture almost 7,000 times and it is commanded to praise this name, glorify this name and honor this name that almost every translator since the printing press has taken out the personal name of YAHWEH and replaced it with the personal name of the Babylonian deity called "*god*". Please see note on Ex 3:15 and Is 65:11.

Psalm 114

1 When Israel came out of Egypt, the house of Jacob from a people of strange language; *(Is 28:11, Zeph 3:9)*
2 Judah became His sanctuary, Israel His kingdom.
3 The sea looked and fled; the Jordan turned back;
4 the mountains skipped like rams; the little hills like lambs!
5 What ails you, O sea, that you flee? O Jordan, that you turn back?
6 O mountains, that you skip like rams? O little hills, like lambs?
7 Tremble, O earth, from the face of the master, from the face of the Elohim of Jacob;
8 who turned the rock into a pool of water, the flint into a fountain of waters.

Psalm 115

1 Not to us, O YAHWEH, not to us, but to Your name give glory; on account of Your mercy, on account of Your truth.
2 Why do the nations say, Where is their Elohim now?
3 But our Elohim is in Heaven; He has done all that He has pleased.
4 Their idols are silver and gold, the work of man's hands;
5 they have mouths, but they do not speak; they have eyes, but they do not see;
6 they have ears, but they do not hear; they have a nose, but they do not smell;
7 their hands do not feel; their feet do not walk; they do not mutter through their throat.
8 The ones who make them are like them, and everyone trusting in them.
9 O Israel, trust in YAHWEH; He is their help and their shield.
10 O house of Aaron, trust in YAHWEH; He is their help and their shield.
11 Ones fearing YAHWEH, trust in YAHWEH; He is their help and their shield.
12 YAHWEH remembers us; He will bless; He will bless the house of Israel; He will bless the house of Aaron;
13 He will bless those who fear YAHWEH, the small and the great.
14 YAHWEH will add on to you; on you and on your sons.
15 You are blessed to YAHWEH, He who makes heavens and earth.
16 The heavens; the heavens belong to YAHWEH, but He has given the earth to the sons of men. *(Is 66:1, Gen 1:26-27)*
17 The dying do not praise YAHWEH, nor all those who go down into silence;[1] *(Eccl 9:5, Ps 88:10-12)*
18 but we will bless YAHWEH, from now on and forever. HalleluYah![2]

Psalm 116

1 I love YAHWEH because He hears my voice, my earnest prayers.
2 Because He has bowed His ear to me, I will also call in my days.
3 The cords of death encompassed me; and the pains of Sheol found me; I find distress and sorrow; *(Ps 18:4-5)*
4 then I call on the name of YAHWEH: O YAHWEH, I beseech You, deliver my soul! *(Ps 18:6)*
5 YAHWEH is gracious and righteous; yea, our Elohim is merciful.
6 YAHWEH watches over the simple; I was low, but He saved me.
7 Return to your rest, O soul; for

---

1 In scripture the dead are equated as sleeping in the earth (1Thes 4:15, Acts 7:60). No where in scripture is it ever stated that the reward of the dead is heaven; heaven is Yahweh's throne, Is 66:1.

2 Indicating hope in a resurrection.

YAHWEH has dealt bountifully with you.
8 For You have delivered my soul from death, my eye from tears, my feet from stumbling.
9 I will walk before the face of YAHWEH in the lands of the living. *(Ps 27:13)*
10 I believed; so I speak; I was greatly afflicted;
11 I said in my alarm, Every man is a liar. *(Ro 3:4, Num 23:19)*
12 What shall I return to YAHWEH for His benefits to me?
13 I will lift up the cup of (Y'shua*) salvation, and I will call on the name of YAHWEH.[1]
14 I will pay my vows to YAHWEH now in the presence of all His people. *(Ps 22:25)*
15 Precious in the eyes of YAHWEH is the death of His saints. *(Ps 72:14)*
16 O YAHWEH, truly I am Your servant now; I am Your servant, the son of Your handmaid; You have loosed my bonds. *(Is 42:1-4)*
17 I will sacrifice to You the sacrifice of thanks and will call on the name of YAHWEH.
18 I will pay my vows to YAHWEH now in the presence of all His people,
19 in the courts of the house of YAHWEH; in your midst, O Jerusalem. HalleluYah! *(Luk 13:33)*

Psalm 117

1 Praise (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH, all nations; praise Him, all peoples;
2 for His mercy is mighty over us, and the truth of YAHWEH is forever. HalleluYah!

Psalm 118

1 Give thanks to YAHWEH, for He is good; because His mercy endures forever.
2 Let Israel say now that His mercy endures forever.
3 Let the house of Aaron say now that His mercy endures forever.
4 Let those who fear YAHWEH say now that His mercy endures forever.
5 I called YAHWEH from the distress;[2] He answered me in the large place of YAHWEH.
6 YAHWEH is for me; I will not fear; what can man do to me?
7 YAHWEH is for me among those who help me, and I shall look on those who hate me.
8 It is better to take refuge in YAHWEH than to trust in man;
9 it is better to trust in YAHWEH than to trust in nobles.
10 All the nations surround me; but surely I will destroy them in the name of YAHWEH.
11 They surround me; yea, they surround me; I surely will cut them off in the name of YAHWEH.
12 They surround me like bees; they are quenched like the fire of thorns;

---

1 Ps 113-118 is called the "*great hallel*" or praise and is sung each Passover by Jews for more than 2,000 yrs. Much of these verses are also messianic as here in Psalm 116. There were 4 wine cups that were drunk on Passover. The first was the cup of blessing when the meal started (Luk 22:17), then was the 2nd cup with the meal, then the third cup was called the cup of Grace, this is the cup that represented Messiah's blood (Luk 22:20) and then the fourth cup was called the cup of salvation (Yahshua) that only the Messiah could drink because it was the cup of His martyrdom, which is mentioned here. Also see Math 20:22, Joh 19:28:30.

2 The Hebrew word here for distress is metsar and literally means a tight place. It is the same root as Mitzraim (Egypt) meaning narrow.

for surely I will cut them off in the
name of YAHWEH.
13 Pushing, you pushed me to fall;
but YAHWEH helped me.
14 YAHWEH is my strength and my
song; and He is to me Y'shua*.
15 The voice of rejoicing and
shouting and Y'shua* in the tents of
the righteous; YAHWEH 's right hand
works mightily.
16 The right hand of YAHWEH is
exalted; the right hand of YAHWEH
acts mightily.
17 I shall not die, but I shall live and
declare the works of Yah.[1]
18 Surely, Yah has chastened me, but
He has not given me to death.
19 Open the gates of righteousness
to me, I will enter into them; I will
thank YAHWEH.
20 This is the gate of YAHWEH, the
righteous shall enter into it.
21 I will thank You, for You
answered me, and You are to me
Y'shua*.
22 The Stone which the builders
rejected has become the Head of the
Corner. *(Math 21:42)*
23 This is from YAHWEH, it is
marvelous in our eyes.[2]
24 This is the day YAHWEH has
made; we will rejoice and be glad in it.
25 O YAHWEH, I beg You, save
now; I beg You, O YAHWEH, cause us
to prosper now.
26 Blessed is he who comes in the
name of YAHWEH; we blessed you
from the house of YAHWEH. *(Math
21:9)*
27 El YAHWEH, and He gives light
to us. Tie the sacrifice with cords, to
the horns of the altar. *(Ps 40:6-8)*
28 You are my El, and I will thank
You; My Elohim, I will exalt You!
29 O give thanks to YAHWEH, for
He is good; for His mercy endures
forever.

Psalm 119

ALEPH:[3]
1 Blessed are the upright in the way,
who walk in the Torah of YAHWEH.
2 Blessed are those keeping His
Testimonies, who seek Him with the
whole heart. *(Ps 1:1-2)*
3 They also do not work evil; they
walk in His way.
4 You have commanded to carefully
keep Your Precepts.
5 O that my ways were fixed to keep
Your Statutes!
6 Then I shall not be ashamed, when
I look to all Your Commandments.
7 I will thank You with integrity of
heart, in my learning the judgments of
Your righteousness.
8 I will keep Your Statutes; do not
forsake me utterly.

BETH:
9 By what shall a young man purify
his path? To keep it according to Your
Word.
10 I have sought You with my whole

---

1 Ps 16:10-11- Showing power of the resurrection and every believers hope through Messiah.

2 It was the will of Yahweh that He would send His only Son down to earth from heaven to pay the penalty of the sins of man (Joh 3:16).

3 This beautiful psalm which is written about the Torah is in the Hebrew alphabetical order in which each stanza is represented by 8 verses in which each verse starts with the same letter. The psalm is meant to show how all inclusive the Torah is for righteous instruction on living, however man is not righteous (Ro 7:7, 12-14) and that is why Messiah had to come to pay the penalty for the sins of breaking Yahweh's Torah. The Torah stands forever and is the very character of YHWH, Ps 11:7-11.

heart; do not let me wander from Your
Commandments.
11 I have hidden Your Word in my
heart, that I might not sin against You.
12 Blessed are you, O YAHWEH;
teach me Your Statutes.
13 I have declared all the judgments
of Your mouth with my lips;
14 I have rejoiced in the way of Your
Testimonies as over all riches.
15 I will meditate in Your Precepts
and I will regard Your paths.
16 I will delight myself in Your
Statutes. I will not forget Your Word.

GIMEL:

17 Deal bountifully with Your
servant that I may live, and I will keep
Your Word.
18 Open my eyes and I will see
wonderful things from Your Torah.
19 I am a sojourner in the earth; hide
not Your Commandments from me.
20 My soul is crushed for the
longing to Your judgments in every
season.
21 You have rebuked the proud, the
cursed ones who wander from Your
Commandments.*(Pr 28:9, Math 7:23)*
22 Roll from me reproach and scorn;
for I have kept Your Testimonies.
23 Princes also sat, speaking against
me; but Your servant meditates on
Your laws.
24 Your Testimonies also are my
delight and are men of my counsel.

DALETH:

25 My soul clings to the dust; give
me life according to Your Word.
26 I have declared my ways, and You
answered me; teach me Your Statutes.
27 Make me understand the way of
Your Precepts, and I will meditate on
Your wonders.
28 My soul drops with grief; Lift me
up according to Your Word.
29 Remove from me the way of
lying, and give me grace with Your
Torah.
30 I have chosen the way of truth; I
have held Your judgments level;
31 I have clung to Your Testimonies;
O YAHWEH, do not shame me.
32 I will run the way of Your
Commandments, for You shall enlarge
my heart.

HEY:

33 O YAHWEH, teach me the way
of Your Statutes, and I will keep it to
the end.
34 Make me understand and I will
keep Your Torah, and observe it with
the whole heart.
35 Make me walk in the way of Your
Commandments, for in it I delight.
36 Bow my heart to Your
Testimonies, and not to unjust gain.
37 Turn my eyes from seeing vanity;
in Your way give me life.
38 Make Your Word sure to Your
servant, who is devoted to Your fear.
39 Turn away my shame which I
fear; for Your judgments are good.
40 Behold, I have longed for Your
Precepts; grant to me life in Your
righteousness.

VAV:

41 By Your Word, according to Your
salvation, let Your mercies come to
me, O YAHWEH.
42 And I will answer the one
reproving me a word; for I trust in
Your Word.
43 And do not take the Word of
Truth completely out of my mouth; for
I have hoped in Your judgments.
44 And I shall keep Your Torah
continually, forever and ever.
45 And I will walk in the wilderness,
for I seek Your Commandments.
46 And I will speak of Your
Testimonies before kings, and will not
be ashamed.

47 And I will delight myself in Your Commandments, which I have loved.
48 And I will lift up my hands to Your Commandments that I love; and I will meditate on Your Statutes.[1]

ZAYIN:
49 Remember the Word to Your servant, on which You made me hope.
50 This is my comfort in my affliction; for Your Word has given me life.
51 The proud have scorned me utterly; I have not veered from Your Torah.
52 I remembered Your judgments from of old, O YAHWEH, and I take comfort.
53 Hot zeal has seized me because of the wicked forsaking Your Torah.
54 Your Statutes have been my songs in the house of my pilgrimages.
55 O YAHWEH, I have remembered Your name in the night and have kept Your Torah.
56 This was done to me, because I kept Your Commandments.

CHETH:
57 YAHWEH is my portion; I have said to keep Your Words.
58 I entreated Your face with all my heart; be merciful to me according to Your Word.
59 I thought on my ways and turned my feet to Your Testimonies.
60 I hurried and delayed not to keep Your Commandments.
61 The cords of the wicked encircle me; I have not forgotten Your Torah.
62 At halves of the night I will rise to give thanks to You because of Your righteous judgments.
63 I am a companion of all who fear You; yea, of those who keep Your Precepts.
64 O YAHWEH, Your mercy fills the earth; teach me Your Statutes.[2]

TETH:
65 You have done good with Your servant, O YAHWEH, by Your Word.
66 Teach me good judgment and knowledge, for I have believed Your Commandments.
67 Before I was afflicted I went astray; but now I have kept Your Word.
68 You are good and do good; teach me Your Statutes.
69 The proud have forged a lie against me; I will keep Your Precepts with all my heart.
70 Their heart is like fat, without feeling; I delight in Your Torah.
71 It is good for me that I was afflicted, to learn Your Statutes.
72 The Law of Your mouth is better to me than thousands of gold and silver.

YOD:
73 Your hands made me and fixed me; give me understanding that I may learn Your Commandments.
74 The ones fearing You will see me and rejoice; for I hoped in Your Word.
75 I know, O YAHWEH, Your judgments are right; and in faithfulness You afflicted me.
76 Please let Your mercy be for my comfort, according to Your Word to Your servant.

[1] Verses 41-48- It is unimaginable that someone can read this psalm and ever think that Yahweh's perfect eternal law of love would be abolished. It is wicked, sinful men who teach such heresy and the end result is a sinful nation that will lose salvation (1Joh 3:4, Ro 6:23)

[2] The statutes and judgments of the Torah are meant to teach mankind how to love and serve YHWH and his fellow man. When the Torah is removed mankind will follow his own human heart, which is wicked and evil (Jer 17:9).

77 Let Your mercies come to me that I may live; for Your Torah is my delight.
78 Let the proud be ashamed, for with lies they perverted me; I will meditate on Your Precepts.[1]
79 Let those fearing You turn to me, and knowers of Your Testimonies.
80 Let my heart be blameless in Your Statutes, that I may not be ashamed.

KAPH:
81 My soul is being consumed for Your salvation; I hope in Your Word.
82 My eyes faint for Your Word, saying, When will You comfort me?
83 For I am like a wineskin in the smoke; I do not forget Your Statutes.
84 As what are the days of Your servant? When will You execute judgment on my persecutors?
85 The proud have dug pits for me which are not according to Your Torah. *(Jer 18:20, 22)*
86 All Your Commandments are faithful; they persecute me with lying; help me!
87 In a little while they had almost finished me on earth; but I did not forsake Your Precepts.
88 Give me life according to Your mercy, and I will keep the Testimonies of Your mouth.

LAMED:
89 Your Word is settled in Heaven forever, O YAHWEH.
90 Your faithfulness endures to generation and generation; You founded the earth, and it stands.
91 They stand by Your judgments to this day, for all are Your servants.
92 Unless Your Torah was my delight, then I had perished in my grief.
93 I will never forget Your Precepts; for with them You gave me life.
94 I am Yours save me; for I have sought Your Precepts.
95 The wicked waited for me, to destroy me; I will consider Your Testimonies.
96 I have seen an end to all perfection; Your commandment is exceedingly broad.[2]

MEM:
97 Oh how I love Your Torah! It is my meditation all the day.
98 You make me wiser than my enemies by Your Commandments; for they are forever mine.
99 I have more understanding than all my teachers; for Your Testimonies are a meditation to me.
100 I understand more than the ancients, for I keep Your Precepts.
101 I have kept my feet from every evil way, to keep Your Word.

102 I turned not from Your judgments; for You have taught me.
103 How sweet are Your Words to my palate! More than honey to my mouth!
104 By Your Precepts I know; so then I hate every false way.[3]

NUN:
105 Your Word is a lamp to my feet and a light to my path.[4]

---

1 It is pride that stops lawless preachers today from repenting of their sin and turning back to YHWH's perfect Torah.

2 The Torah has all the answers of wisdom for wise counsel to any problem in life.

3 Verses 97-104 show how keeping YHWH's Torah will make one spiritually wise and protect him from many evils in Satan's world.

4 Just as a lighted runway will give direction in the dark of night, the Torah of YHWH if followed will lead one to any answer in life.

106 I have sworn and I rise to it, to keep Your righteous judgments.
107 I am greatly afflicted; O YAHWEH, give me life according to Your Word.
108 Please, O YAHWEH, accept the free offering of my mouth, and teach me Your judgments.
109 My life is in my hand continually, yet I do not forget Your Torah.
110 The wicked have laid a snare for me; yet I do not wander from Your Precepts.
111 I have inherited Your Testimonies forever; for they are the rejoicing of my heart.
112 I have bowed my heart to do Your Statutes always to the end.

SAMECH:
113 I hate the halfhearted; but I love Your Torah.[1]
114 You are my covert and my shield; I hope in Your Word.
115 Depart from me, O evildoers, for I will keep my Elohim's Commandments.[2]
116 Uphold me by Your Word, that I may live; and let me not be ashamed of my hope.
117 Hold me up and I will be saved; and I will always look to Your Statutes.
118 You have trampled all who go astray from Your Statutes, for their deceit is falsehood.
119 As dross You have made all the wicked of the earth to cease; so I love Your Testimonies.
120 My flesh has shivered because of Your fear; and I have feared Your judgments.

AYIN:
121 I have done judgment and righteousness; leave me not to those who oppress me.
122 Be surety for Your servant for good; let not the proud oppress me.
123 My eyes faint for Your Y'shua*, and for the Word of Your righteousness.
124 Deal with Your servant by Your mercy; and teach me Your Statutes.
125 I am Your servant; make me consider, and I will know Your Testimonies.
126 It is time for YAHWEH to work; they have broken Your Torah.[3]
127 Therefore, I have loved Your Commandments, more than gold, even fine gold.
128 Therefore, I count wholly right all the Precepts; I have hated every false way.[4]

PAY:
129 Your Testimonies are wonderful; so my soul keeps them.
130 The entering of Your Word gives light, giving instruction to the simple.
131 I opened my mouth and panted; for I longed for Your Commandments.
132 Turn to me and give me your grace, as is the way to those who love Your name.
133 Fix my steps in Your Word; and let no evil rule over me.
134 Redeem me from the oppression of man; and I will keep Your Precepts.

---

1 Neutrality is of the devil, Yahweh's way is a clear path of right and wrong and the true believer should always take a stand against evil based on the word of the Torah.

2 This is a phrase that any true believer should tell any teacher trying to say the Torah is done away with.

3 Yahweh will repay all those who have rebelliously disobeyed Him in the judgment day (Num 14:31, Is 24:1-6, Rev 20:11-15).

4 Due to the coming judgment, the psalmist loves the Torah of Yahweh because obedience to it leads to eternal life, Deut 10:12-13.

135 Make Your face shine on Your servant, and teach me Your Statutes.
136 Rivers of waters run down my eyes, for they do not keep Your Torah.[1]

TZADDI:
137 O YAHWEH, You are righteous, and Your judgments upright.
138 You have enjoined Your Testimonies as righteous and very faithful.
139 My zeal has eaten me up, for my enemies have forgotten Your Word.
140 Your Word is pure and Your servant loves it.
141 I am small and despised; I do not forget Your Precepts.

142 Your righteousness is forever, and Your Torah is truth.
143 Distress and anguish have found me; Your Commandments are my delight.
144 The righteousness of Your Testimonies is everlasting; make me understand and I will live.

QOPH:
145 I cried with my whole heart; O YAHWEH, answer me; I will keep Your Statutes.
146 I cried to You; save me, and I will keep Your Testimonies.
147 I go before the dawn of day and cry; I hope in Your Word.
148 My eyes go before the night watches, to meditate on Your Word.
149 Hear my voice by Your mercy, O YAHWEH; give me life by Your judgment.
150 The pursuers of mischief draw near; they are far from Your Torah.
151 You are near, O YAHWEH, and all Your Commandments are truth.
152 Of old I have known from Your Testimonies, for You have founded them forever.

RESH:
153 Look on my affliction and deliver me; for I do not forget Your Torah.
154 Contend for my cause and redeem me; give me life according to Your Word.
155 Salvation is far from the wicked, for they do not seek Your Statutes.[2]
156 O YAHWEH, Your tender mercies are great; give me life according to Your judgments.
157 My persecutors and enemies are many; I do not turn from Your Testimonies.
158 I saw the traitors and was grieved, because they did not keep Your Word.[3]
159 See how I love Your Precepts, O YAHWEH; give me life according to Your mercy.
160 The sum of Your Word is true; every one of Your righteous judgments endures forever.

---

1 The psalmist is saddened at the penalties being brought due to the people breaking the Torah. If you just think for one moment how different the world would be if all people even kept one commandment, such as "*do not steal*". There would be no locks on doors, their would be no robberies of homes or children kidnapped. There would be no one stealing the spouse of another person. Does this sound like freedom or bondage? Shame on any false teacher who has ever said that Yahweh's Torah is irrelevant and done away with. They are false teachers and liars and there is no truth in them (Is 8:20).

2 Sin is the transgression of the Torah (I Joh 3:4). If one does not recognize the Torah, then how will they recognize that they are a sinner in need of salvation?

3 Those who purposely break the Torah and teach men to do so are called traitors and will not be in the kingdom of YHWH. See note on Math 5:19.

SHIN:
161 Princes have persecuted me without cause; but my heart has feared at Your Word.
162 I rejoice at Your Word, as one who finds great spoil.
163 I hate and despise lying; but I love Your Torah.
164 I praise You seven times a day because of Your righteous judgments.
165 Great peace is to those who love Your Torah, and there is no stumbling block to them.[1]
166 O YAHWEH, I have hoped for Your salvation *(Y'shua*)*, and have done Your Precepts.
167 My soul has kept Your Testimonies, and I love them very much.
168 I have kept Your Commandments and Your Testimonies, for all my ways are before You.

TAV:
169 Let my cry come near You, O YAHWEH; give me wisdom according to Your Word.
170 Let my prayer come before You; deliver me according to Your Word.
171 My lips shall pour forth praise when You have taught me Your Statutes.
172 My tongue shall answer Your Word, for all Your Commandments are righteousness.[2]
173 Let Your hand help me; for I have chosen Your Precepts.
174 I have longed for Your salvation *(Y'shua*)*, O YAHWEH; and Your Torah is my delight.
175 Let my soul live and it will praise You; and let Your judgments help me.
176 I have gone astray like a lost sheep; seek for Your servant; for I do not forget Your Commandments.

Psalm 120

1 A Song of Ascents.
In my distress I cried to YAHWEH, and He answered me.
2 O YAHWEH, deliver my soul from lying lips, from a deceitful tongue.
3 What shall be given to you, or what shall one add to you, O deceitful tongue? *(Ps 31:18)*
4 Sharp arrows of the mighty with coals of broom!
5 Woe is me that I sojourned in Meshech; I dwell with the tents of Kedar!
6 My soul has long dwelt to itself, with him who hates peace.
7 I am for peace; but when I speak, they are for war.

Psalm 121

1 A Song of Ascents.
I will lift up my eyes to the hills; from where shall my help come?
2 My help comes from YAHWEH, the Maker of the heavens and the earth.
3 He will not give your foot to slip; He who keeps you will not slumber.
4 Behold, He who keeps Israel will not slumber nor sleep.
5 YAHWEH is the One keeping you; YAHWEH is your shade on your right hand.
6 The sun shall not strike you by day, nor the moon by night;
7 YAHWEH shall keep you from all evil; He shall keep your soul.
8 YAHWEH shall keep your going out, and your coming in, from now on and till forever.

---

1 To those who truly love the Torah they will not be offended very easily, except by injustice and sin.
2 Righteous living before Yahweh is to keep His commandments.

Psalm 122

1 A Song of Ascents; of David.
I was glad when they said to me, Let us go into the house of YAHWEH.
2 Our feet shall stand within your gates, O Jerusalem.
3 Jerusalem is built like a city that is joined to itself, together.[1]
4 There the tribes go up, the tribes of Yah; to the testimony of Israel; to give thanks to the name of YAHWEH.[2]
5 For the thrones of judgment were established there, the thrones of the house of David.
6 Pray for the peace of Jerusalem; those who love you shall prosper.[3]
7 Peace be within your walls; prosperity in your towers.
8 Because of my brothers and my companions, I will now say, Peace be in you.
9 Because of the house of YAHWEH, our Elohim, I will seek your good.

Psalm 123

1 A Song of Ascents.
I will lift up my eyes on You, O Dweller in Heaven.
2 Behold, as the eyes of servants look to the hand of their masters; as the eyes of a maiden to the hand of her mistress; so our eyes wait on YAHWEH our Elohim, until He shows us His grace.
3 Give us your grace, O YAHWEH; Give us your grace! For we are exceedingly filled with scorn.
4 Our soul is exceedingly filled for itself with the contempt of those who are at ease, the scorn of the proud.

Psalm 124

1 A Song of Ascents, of David.
Except that it was YAHWEH who was for us, O may Israel say;
2 except that it was YAHWEH who was for us when men rose up against us,
3 then they would have swallowed us alive, when their anger glowed against us.
4 Then the waters would have flowed over us; the torrent would have covered our soul;
5 then the raging waters would have passed over our soul.
6 Blessed be YAHWEH, who did not give us as a prey to their teeth.
7 Our soul has escaped like a bird out of the fowlers' snare; the snare is broken, and we have escaped.
8 Our help is in the name of YAHWEH, the Maker of the heavens and earth.

Psalm 125

1 A Song of Ascents.
They who trust in YAHWEH shall be like Mount Zion; it is not shaken; it remains forever.
2 The mountains are all around Jerusalem; and YAHWEH is all

---

1 Jerusalem is made up of two hills. One is called the Akra where the city of David lies and the other is the Ophel in which the sanctuary was built. Solomon connected these two hills by filling up the gap between them called Millo (1Kgs 11:27), therefore connecting Jerusalem to be one Plateau consisting of the Akra and Ophel.

2 All 12 tribes of Israel were commanded to go up to Jerusalem 3 times in the year at Pesach, Shavuot, and Sukkot, Deut 16:16, Is 33:20.

3 Jerusalem comes from the Hebrew word for peace, "*shalom*".

around His people, from this time and forever.[1]

3 For the scepter of wickedness shall not rest on the lot of the righteous; that the righteous not put forth their hands to evil.

4 Do good, O YAHWEH, to the good, and to the upright in their heart.

5 And those who turn aside to their devious ways, YAHWEH shall lead them forth with doers of evil. Peace be upon Israel.

Psalm 126

1 A Song of Ascents.
When YAHWEH turned back the captivity of Zion, we were like those who dream.

2 Then our mouth was full of laughter, and our tongue with joyful shouting; then they said among the nations, YAHWEH will work great things with these.

3 YAHWEH did great things to work with us; we are glad.

4 Turn again our captivity, O YAHWEH, like the south streams.

5 Those who sow in tears shall reap with joyful shouting. *(Ps 30:5)*

6 Surely he who walks and weeps, bearing a bag of seed, shall come again with joyful shouting, bearing his sheaves. *(Gal 6:9)*

Psalm 127

1 A Song of Ascents, for Solomon.
If YAHWEH does not build the house, they who build it labor in vain; if YAHWEH does not keep the city, the one keeping it stays awake in vain.

2 It is in vain for you to rise early, sit up late, to eat the bread of toils; for so He gives His beloved sleep.

3 Behold! Children are the inheritance of YAHWEH; the fruit of the womb is His reward.

4 As arrows in the hand of a mighty man, so are the sons of the young.

5 Blessed is the man who has filled his quiver with them; they shall not be ashamed, for they shall speak with their enemies in the gate.

Psalm 128

1 A Song of Ascents.
Blessed is everyone who fears YAHWEH, who walks in His ways.

2 For you shall surely eat the labor of your hands; you shall be happy, and all is good to you.

3 Your wife shall be like a fruitful vine by the sides of your house; your sons shall be like olive plants around your table.[2]

4 Behold! So shall the man be blessed who fears YAHWEH.

5 YAHWEH shall bless you out of Zion; and you shall see the good of Jerusalem all the days of your life.

6 Yes, you shall see the sons of your sons.[3] Peace be upon Israel!

---

[1] Verses 1-2- Jerusalem is the eternal capital and headquarters of Yahweh where He dwells and where His kingdom will be forever, 2 Chron 12:13, Is 33:20, Mic 4:2, Math 5:35, Ps 48:1-2, Ps 132:12-13, Ps 135:21.

[2] A beautiful metaphoric analogy of blessing to those who fear YHWH, he will have a wife who will be like a vine bearing much fruit and being home by her house, compared to the wayward woman who is never guarding her home and children. Then, his children will be like olive plants, which are the most productive fruit as it gives food for eating, wood for burning and oil for medicinal purposes and also for light. Both grape vines and olive trees had very long life spans and produced the oil and wine that symbolized long life and happiness around the home.

[3] Just as the longevity of the grape vine and olive tree, the man who fears YHWH will also have long life and prosperity.

Psalm 129

1 A Song of Ascents.
Many times they have distressed me from my youth, let Israel now say;
2 they have distressed me from my youth many times, yet they have not prevailed over me.
3 The plowers plowed on my back; they made their furrows long.
4 YAHWEH is righteous; He cuts the cords of the wicked.
5 Let them be ashamed and turned back, all those who hate Zion;
6 let them be like the grass on the rooftops, which dries up before it draws out;
7 with which the reaper does not fill his hand, nor the binder of sheaves his bosom.
8 And those who pass by have never said, The blessing of YAHWEH be on you; we bless you in the name of YAHWEH.[1]

Psalm 130

1 A Song of Ascents.
Out of the depths I have called You, O YAHWEH.
2 YAHWEH, hear my voice, and let Your ears attend to the voice of my prayers.
3 If You will keep iniquities, O Yah, who shall stand?
4 But forgiveness is with You that You may be feared.
5 I wait for YAHWEH; my soul waits, and I hope for His Word.
6 My soul waits for YAHWEH more than those watching for the morning.
7 Let Israel hope to YAHWEH, for with YAHWEH is mercy, and with Him is abundant redemption;
8 and He shall redeem Israel from all his iniquities.

Psalm 131

1 A Song of Ascents. Of David.
O YAHWEH, my heart is not proud, nor have my eyes been lofty; nor have I walked in great things, nor in things too wondrous for me.
2 Surely I have set myself and have quieted my soul, like one weaned by its mother; my soul on me is like one weaned.
3 Let Israel hope in YAHWEH, from now and till forever.

Psalm 132

1 A Song of Ascents.
O YAHWEH, remember David with all his afflictions;
2 how he swore to YAHWEH; he vowed to the Mighty One of Jacob,
3 If I will go into the tent of my house, if I go up on the couch of my bed,
4 if I give sleep to my eyes, slumber to my eyelids,
5 until I search out a place for YAHWEH, dwellings for the Mighty One of Jacob.
6 Lo, we have heard of it at Ephratah; we found it in the fields of the forest;
7 we will enter into His tabernacles; we will worship at His footstool.
8 Arise, O YAHWEH, into Your rest; You, and the ark of Your strength.
9 Let Your priests be clothed with righteousness, and let Your saints shout for joy.
10 For Your servant David's sake do not turn away the face of Your anointed.
11 YAHWEH has sworn to David in

[1] What a great honor and blessing to be blessed in the name of "**Yahweh**". Something that the wicked will never see the blessing of.

truth; He will not turn from it; I will set one of the fruit of your body on the throne for you.

12 If your sons will keep My covenant and My testimonies which I will teach them, their sons shall also sit on the throne for You forever.

13 YAHWEH has chosen Zion; He has desired it for His dwelling-place.

14 This is My rest till forever; I will dwell here; I have desired it.[1]

15 Surely, I will bless her poor with provisions; I will satisfy her poor with food.

16 And I will clothe her priests; Y'shua* and her saints shall surely shout.[2] *(Rev 19:7-9)*

17 I will make the horn of David to sprout; I have arranged a lamp for My Messiah.

18 I will clothe his enemies with shame, but His crown shall flourish upon him.

Psalm 133

1 A Song of Ascents. Of David.

Behold! How good and how pleasant it is, for brethren living together, even in unity.

2 It is like the precious oil on the head that ran down on the beard, Aaron's beard, going down to the mouth of his garments; *(Lev 8:12)*

3 like the dew of Hermon coming down on the mountains of Zion; for there YAHWEH commanded the blessing: life forevermore.[3]

Psalm 134

1 A Song of Ascents.

Behold, bless YAHWEH, all servants of YAHWEH; who stand in the house of YAHWEH at night.

2 Lift up your hands in the holy place, and bless YAHWEH.

3 May YAHWEH bless you out of Zion, He who made the heavens and earth.

Psalm 135

1 HalleluYah! Praise the name of YAHWEH; give praise, servants of YAHWEH;

2 those who stand in the house of YAHWEH in the courts of the house of our Elohim;

3 praise YAHWEH! For YAHWEH is good! Sing praises to His name, for it is delightful.

4 For Yah has chosen Jacob to Himself, Israel for His special treasure.

5 For I know that YAHWEH is great, and our Adonai is above all Elohim.

---

1 Jerusalem is the eternal capital and headquarters of YAHWEH. Ps 125:1-2, Ps 48:1-2, Ps 122:1-2, Mic 4:2, Jer 3:17, 2 Chron 12:13, and Is 33:20.

2 Those who are fruitfirsts to Yahweh and Yahshua will reign with Him during the millennium as kings and priests under His rule (Rev 14:4, Rev 5:10, Rev 20:4-6).

3 Verses 1-3- In a prideful, selfish world how wonderful it is for true brethren with YHWH's Ruach H'Chodesh (Holy Spirit) to surrender themselves to Yahweh and submit to each other in harmony and unity of each others spiritual gifts. This is true judicial order. Verse 2- It is like the anointing oil of YHWH that ran down the head to the beard and priestly garments of Aaron. This signifies that his whole body was blessed as the whole body of Messiah is blessed when they submit to Yahweh's judicial order and receive His blessing.
Verse 3- Mount Hermon at the Northern border of Israel is an almost 10,000 ft mountain that is like a sponge and soaks rain water and snow all winter and then, the water drains into 3 tributaries that make up the water, flowing into the Jordan River.

6 Every thing which YAHWEH was pleased to do, He did, in the heavens and in the earth, and in the seas and all deep places.
7 He causes the mists to rise from the end of the earth; He makes lightnings for the rain; He brings the wind out of His storehouses;
8 He who struck the first-born of Egypt, from man to animal;
9 who sent signs and wonders into your midst, O Egypt, on Pharaoh and on all his servants;
10 who struck great nations, and killed mighty kings;
11 Sihon, king Of the Amorites, and Og, king of Bashan, and all the kingdoms of Canaan.
12 And He gave their land as an inheritance, an inheritance to His people Israel.
13 O YAHWEH, Your name endures forever; O YAHWEH, Your memorial is from generation to generation.[1] *(Ex 3:15)*
14 For YAHWEH will judge His people; and He will have pity on His servants.
15 The idols of the nations are silver and gold, the work of men's hands;
16 they have mouths, but they say nothing; they have eyes, but they see nothing;
17 they have ears, but they hear nothing; yea, there is no breath in their mouths.
18 Those who make them are like them, everyone who is trusting in them.[2]
19 Bless (Aleph/Tav)[3] YAHWEH, O house of Israel; bless (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH, O house of Aaron;
20 Bless (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH, O house of Levi; you who fear YAHWEH, bless (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH.
21 Blessed be YAHWEH out of Zion, He who dwells at Jerusalem. HalleluYah!

Psalm 136

1 O give thanks to YAHWEH, for He is good; for His mercy endures forever.
2 O give thanks to the Elohim of The Elohim; for His mercy endures forever.
3 O give thanks to the Master of Masters; for His mercy endures forever;
4 All great wonders come from Him; for His mercy endures forever;
5 to Him who by wisdom made the heavens; for His mercy endures forever;
6 to Him who spread the earth on the waters; for His mercy endures forever;
7 to Him who made great lights; for His mercy endures forever;
8 the sun to rule by day; for His mercy endures forever;
9 the moon and the stars to rule by night; for His mercy endures forever;
10 to Him who struck Egypt in her first-born; for His mercy endures forever;
11 and brought Israel out from

[1] Verses 1-13- Gives us direct command to praise the name of YAHWEH. It is forbidden in scripture to praise any other name but Yahweh and Yahshua (Ex 22:20, 23:13).

[2] Verses 16-18- This is not just speaking of false idols of deities, but anything such as a car, a home or even a job or person that someone puts above Elohim or gives undue reverence toward, is an idol.

[3] Aleph/Tav is the first and last letters in the Hebrew alphabet and in a grammatical sense in Hebrew they are not translatable but point toward the direct object of the sentence. However, in this translation we have left them in place because in a spiritual sense they also point to the Savior of Israel, Rev 22:13.

among them; for His mercy endures
forever;
12 with a strong hand and a
stretched out arm; for His mercy
endures forever;
13 to Him who divided the Sea of
Reeds into parts; for His mercy
endures forever;
14 and made Israel pass through the
middle of it; for His mercy endures
forever;
15 but shook Pharaoh and his army
off in the Red Sea; for His mercy
endures forever;
16 to Him who led His people in the
wilderness; for His mercy endures
forever;
17 to Him who struck great kings; for
His mercy endures forever;
18 and killed majestic kings; for His
mercy endures forever;
19 Sihon, king of the Amorites; for
His mercy endures forever;
20 and Og, the king of Bashan; for
His mercy endures forever;
21 and gave their land for an
inheritance; for His mercy endures
forever;
22 an inheritance to His servant
Israel; for His mercy endures forever;
23 who remembered us in our low
estate; for His mercy endures forever;
24 and has rescued us from our
enemies; for His mercy endures
forever;
25 who gives food to all flesh; for His
mercy endures forever.
26 O give thanks to the Elohim of
Heaven; for His mercy endures
forever.

Psalm 137

1 There by the rivers of Babylon we
sat down; also we wept when we
remembered Zion.
2 We hung our lyres on the willows
in its midst.
3 For there our captors asked us the
words of a song; yea, our plunderers
asked joy, saying, Sing to us a song of
Zion.
4 How shall we sing the song of
YAHWEH on a foreign soil?
5 If I forget you, O Jerusalem, let my
right hand forget;
6 let my tongue cleave to my palate,
if I do not remember you, if I do not
bring up Jerusalem above the head of
my joy.[1]
7 O YAHWEH, remember for the
sons of Edom the day of Jerusalem;
who said, Make it bare! Make it bare
even to its foundation!
8 O daughter of Babylon, O
destroyed one! Blessed is he who shall
repay to you your recompense which
you dealt to us.
9 Blessed is he who seizes your little
ones and dashes them against the
stone![2]

Psalm 138

1 A Psalm of David.
I will thank You with my whole
heart; I will sing praise to You before
the Elohim;
2 I will worship toward Your holy
sanctuary, and give thanks to Your

---

[1] Verses 1-6- This is a very poetic psalm describing the agony of the people being away from Jerusalem, the very place that is YAHWEH's eternal headquarters and where He dwells (1Kgs 14:21, Ps 135:21). Today in western society the special relationship that Jerusalem has to the true believer has all but been forgotten and this psalm should be read every feast by those in Diaspora with tears for the returning to Yahweh's eternal capital and dwelling place.

[2] Verses 8-9 is a prayer of cursing of Babylon for destroying YHWH's heritage. Today in modern Babylon (USA) Yahweh's people are being spiritually destroyed, (Jer 50:28) and this will bring the destruction of end time Babylon.

name for Your mercy, and for Your
truth; for You have magnified Your
Word above all Your name.
3 You answered me in the day that I
called out; You made me bold in my
soul with strength.
4 All the kings of the earth shall
thank You, O YAHWEH, because they
have heard the Words of Your mouth.
5 Yes, they shall sing in the ways of
YAHWEH; for the glory of YAHWEH
is great.
6 Though YAHWEH is exalted, yet
He looks upon the lowly; but the
proud He knows from afar.
7 If I walk in the midst of distress,
You give me life; You send out Your
hand against the wrath of my enemies,
and Your right hand delivers me.
8 YAHWEH will perfect His work in
me; O YAHWEH, Your mercy endures
forever; You will not forsake the works
of Your hands.

Psalm 139

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of
David.
O YAHWEH, You have searched me
and known me.
2 You know my sitting down, and my
rising up; You understand my thought
from afar off.
3 You sift my path and my lying
down, and are acquainted with all my
ways.
4 For not a word is on my tongue,
but, lo, O YAHWEH, You know it all.
5 You have closed me in behind, and
in front, and Your hand is laid on me.
6 Such knowledge is too wonderful
for me; it is set on high; I am not able
to reach it.
7 Where shall I go from Your Spirit?
Or where shall I flee from Your face?
8 If I go up to Heaven, You are there;
if I make my bed in Sheol, behold, You
are there!
9 If I take the wings of the morning,
dwelling in the uttermost part of the
sea,
10 even there Your hand shall lead
me; and Your right hand shall seize
me.
11 If I say: Surely the darkness shall
cover me; even the night shall be light
around me.
12 Even the darkness will not be
dark from You, but the night shines as
the day; as is the darkness, so is the
light.
13 For You have possessed my
inward parts; You wove me in the
womb of my mother.
14 I will thank You, for with fearful
things I am wonderful; Your works are
marvelous, and my soul knows it very
well.
15 My bones were not hidden from
You when I was made in secret; when I
was woven in the depths of the earth.
16 Your eyes saw me *as an* embryo;
and in Your book all my members
were written the days they were
formed, and not one was yet among
them.[1]
17 And how precious are Your
thoughts to me, O El! How great is the
sum of them!
18 If I should count them, they are
more than the sand; when I awake I
am still with You.
19 Surely You will slay the wicked, O
Elohim; and men of blood will turn
away from me.
20 Who will maliciously speak
against You? Your enemies are lifted
up with vanity.
21 O YAHWEH, do not I hate those
hating You? And am I not detesting
those rising against You?

---
[1] Verse 13, 15-16- Clearly shows that life starts at conception and can only come from YHWH.

22 I hate them with a perfect hatred; they have become my enemies.[2]

23 Search me, O El, and know my heart; try me, and know my thoughts;

24 and see if any wicked way is in me; and lead me in the way everlasting.

Psalm 140

1 To the chief musician. A Psalm of David.

O YAHWEH, deliver me from the evil man; keep me from the violent man[2],

2 who devises evil things in the heart; all the day they stir up wars.

3 They sharpen their tongues like a snake; adders' poison is under their lips. Selah.

4 O YAHWEH, keep me from the hands of the wicked; keep me from the violent man who plots to trip up my steps.

5 The proud have hidden cords and set a trap for me; they have spread a net by the wayside; they have set snares for me. Selah.

6 I said to YAHWEH, You are my El; O YAHWEH, give ear to the voice of my prayers.

7 O YAHWEH Adonai, the strength of my salvation *(Y'shua*)*, You have covered my head in the day of armor.

8 O YAHWEH, do not grant the desires of the wicked; do not promote his plan, lest they be exalted. Selah.

9 As for the leaders of those around me, let the evil of their own lips cover them.

10 Let burning coals fall on them; let them fall on coals of fire; make them fall into deep pits so that they do not rise again.

11 Do not let a man of tongue be established in the earth; evil shall hunt the violent man, thrust upon thrust.

12 I know that YAHWEH will maintain the cause of the afflicted, the justice of the poor.

13 Surely the righteous shall give thanks to Your name; the upright shall dwell in Your presence.

Psalm 141

1 A Psalm of David.

O YAHWEH, I cry to You; hasten to me; give ear to my voice when I cry to You.

2 Let my prayer be established before You as incense; the lifting up of my hands as the evening sacrifice.[3]

3 O YAHWEH, set a guard to my mouth; keep watch on the door of my lips.

4 Do not let my heart turn aside to any evil thing, to practice deeds in wickedness with men who practice wickedness; and do not let me eat of their delicacies.

5 Let the righteous strike me; it is a mercy; and he rebuking me, it is oil of the head, let not my head refuse it; for yet my prayer also shall be against their evils.

6 Their judges have been dashed against the rock; they shall hear my words for they are pleasant.

7 As when one plows and rips the earth, so our bones are scattered at the mouth of Sheol.

8 But my eyes are on You, O YAHWEH, my Adonai; in You I take refuge; do not make my soul naked.

9 Keep me from the hands of the

[2] Verses 19-22- Those who are against the good news message of the bible are enemies of YHWH and should be avoided. Loyalty to Yahweh is of most importance to those who will receive eternal life.

[2] The Hebrew word for violent here is Hamas.

[3] The prayers of the saints are as incense to YHWH (Rev 5:8, Rev 8:3-4, Luk 1:10).

trap they laid for me, and from the snares of the workers of evil.
10 Let the wicked fall into their own nets at the same time; I even shall pass by.

Psalm 142

1 An Instruction of David, a Prayer, in his being in the cave.
I cry to YAHWEH with my voice; I pray to YAHWEH with my voice.
2 I pour out my utterance before Him; I declare my distress before Him.
3 When my spirit faints within me, then You have known my path; they have hidden a snare for me in the path in which I walk.
4 I look to the right hand and see, and no one recognizes me; every escape is hidden from me; no one cares for my soul.
5 I cried to You, O YAHWEH; I said, You are my refuge, my portion in the land of the living.
6 Attend to my cry; for I am brought very low; deliver me from those who pursue me; for they are stronger than I.
7 Bring my soul out from prison to give thanks to Your name; the righteous shall gather around me; for You shall reward me.

Psalm 143

1 A Psalm of David.
Hear my prayer, O YAHWEH give ear to my supplications; answer me in Your faithfulness, in Your righteousness;
2 and do not enter into judgment with Your servant; for not anyone living is just in Your sight.
3 For the enemy has pursued my soul; he has beaten my life to the ground; he has made me dwell in darkness like those who died long ago.[1]
4 And my spirit within me has fainted; my heart within me is stunned.
5 I remember the days of old. I meditate on all Your works; I think upon the work of Your hands.
6 I spread out my hands to You; my soul is to You like a weary land. Selah.
7 O YAHWEH, answer me quickly; my spirit is spent; do not hide Your face from me lest I be like the ones who go down to the Pit.
8 Cause me to hear Your mercy in the morning, for I do trust in You; cause me to know the way I should walk, for I lift up my soul to You.
9 O YAHWEH, deliver me from my enemies; by You I am covered.
10 Teach me to do Your will; for You are my Elohim; Your Spirit is good; lead me into the land of uprightness.
11 O YAHWEH, because of Your name, make me live; in Your righteousness, bring my soul out of distress.
12 And in Your mercy cut off my enemies; and destroy all those who distress my soul; for I am Your servant.

Psalm 144

1 A Psalm of David.
Blessed be YAHWEH my Rock, who teaches my hands for war, my fingers for battle.
2 He is my mercy and my fortress, my high tower and my deliverer, my shield, and in Him I take refuge, in Him who subdues my people under me.
3 O YAHWEH, what is man that You know him; the son of man, that you esteem him? *(Ps 8:4)*

---
[1] Lam 3:6

4 Man is like to vanity; his days are like a shadow that passes.
5 Bow down Your heavens, O YAHWEH; and come down; touch the mountains and they shall smoke.
6 Flash out lightning and scatter them; send out Your arrows and confound them.
7 Send Your hand from above; rescue me and deliver me out of great waters, from the hand of a foreigner's sons,
8 whose mouths have spoken vanity; and their right hand is a right hand of lies.
9 I will sing a new song to You, O Elohim; I will sing praises to You on a harp of ten strings
10 You who gives salvation to kings, who delivers His servant David from the evil sword.
11 Rescue me and deliver me from the foreigner's sons, those whose mouths have spoken vanity; and their right hand is a right hand of lies;
12 so that our sons may be like plants grown up in their youth; and our daughters like corner-stones, hewn like a palace building;
13 and our storehouses may be full, furnishing kind to kind; our flocks may breed thousands and ten thousands outside,
14 our oxen laden; there is no break and no going out, and no crying in our plazas.
15 Blessed are the peoples that are so; blessed are the peoples whose Elohim is YAHWEH!

Psalm 145

1 A Psalm of Praise, of David.
I will exalt you, my Elohim, O King; and bless Your name forever and ever.
2 I will bless You every day; and I will praise Your name forever and ever.
3 YAHWEH is great and to be greatly praised; and to His greatness there is no finding out.
4 Generation to generation shall praise Your works; and shall declare Your mighty acts.
5 I will muse on the glorious honor of Your majesty, and the things of Your wonderful works.
6 And they shall speak of the might of Your awesome works, and I will declare Your greatness.
7 They shall express the memory of Your great goodness, and they shall sing of Your righteousness.
8 YAHWEH is gracious and merciful, slow to anger and of great mercy; *(Ps 103:8, Ps 86:15)*
9 YAHWEH is good to all; and His tender mercies are over all His works.
10 All Your works shall thank You, O YAHWEH; and Your saints shall bless You.
11 They shall speak of the glory of Your kingdom, and talk of Your might;
12 to make Your might known to the sons of men; yea, the glorious majesty of His kingdom.
13 Your kingdom is a kingdom to all eternities; and Your rule in all generations.
14 YAHWEH upholds all who fall, and raises up all who are bowed down.
15 The eyes of all hope to You; and You give them their food in due time.
16 You open Your hand and satisfy the desire of every living thing.
17 YAHWEH is righteous in all His ways, and kind in all His works.
18 YAHWEH is near to all who call on Him, to all those who call on Him in truth.
19 He will fulfill the desire of the ones who fear Him; and He will hear their cry and save them.
20 YAHWEH watches over all who love Him; but He destroys all the wicked.
21 My mouth shall speak the praise

of YAHWEH; and all flesh shall bless His holy name forever and ever.

Psalm 146

1 HalleluYah; praise (Aleph/Tav) YAHWEH, O my soul.
2 While I live I will praise YAHWEH; I will sing praises to my Elohim while I have being.
3 Put not your trust in nobles, in a son of man, for there is no salvation in him.
4 His breath will go out, he returns to the earth; his thoughts perish in that day. *(Gen 3:19, Eccl 9:5)*
5 Blessed is he who has the Elohim of Jacob in his help; his hope is on YAHWEH his Elohim,
6 who made the heavens and the earth, the seas and all that is in them; who keeps truth forever;
7 who executes judgment for the oppressed; who gives food to the hungry; YAHWEH sets free the prisoners;
8 YAHWEH opens the eyes of the blind; YAHWEH raises those bowed down; YAHWEH loves the righteous;
9 YAHWEH guards the strangers; He relieves the orphan and the widow, but He warps the way of the wicked.
10 YAHWEH shall reign forever, O Zion, your Elohim from generation and generation. HalleluYah.

Psalm 147

1 HalleluYah; for it is good to sing praise to our Elohim; because praise is delightful and becoming.
2 YAHWEH builds up Jerusalem; He gathers the outcasts of Israel. *(Is 56:8)*
3 He heals the brokenhearted and binds up their sorrows.
4 He appoints the number of the stars; He calls to them all by names.[1]
5 Our Master is great and of great might; there is no limit to His understanding.
6 YAHWEH relieves the meek; He throws the wicked down to the ground.
7 Sing to YAHWEH with thanksgiving; sing praise on the lyre to our Elohim,
8 who covers the heavens with clouds; who prepares rain for the earth; who makes grass to grow on the mountains.
9 He gives the animals their food, to the young ravens that cry.
10 He takes no delight in the strength of the horse, nor any pleasure in the legs of a man.
11 YAHWEH takes pleasure in those who fear Him, those who hope in His mercy.
12 Shout Praise O, Jerusalem Praise YAHWEH,; praise your Elohim, O Zion.
13 For He has made strong the bars of your gates; He has blessed your sons within you.
14 He sets up peace in your border, He satisfies you with the fat of the wheat.
15 He sends His command out on the earth; His Word runs very swiftly;
16 He gives snow like wool; He scatters the white frost like ashes;
17 He casts out His ice like crumbs; who can stand before His cold?
18 He sends out His Word and melts them; He causes His wind to blow, and the waters flow.
19 He declares His Word to Jacob, His statutes and His judgments to Israel.
20 He has not done so with any other nation; and they have not known His judgments. HalleluYah!

---

[1] Gen 15:5

Psalm 148

1 HalleluYah! Praise (Aleph/Tav)
YAHWEH from the heavens; praise
Him in the heights.
2 Praise Him, all His angels; praise
Him, all His hosts.
3 Praise Him, sun and moon; praise
Him, all you stars of light.
4 Praise Him, O heavens of heavens;
and O waters that are above the
heavens.
5 Let them praise the name of
YAHWEH; for He commanded, and
they were created.
6 And He established them forever
and ever; He gave a decree that they
not pass away.
7 Let the sea-monsters and all deeps
praise YAHWEH from the earth,
8 fire and hail, snow and smoke,
stormy wind fulfilling His Word,
9 mountains and all hills, fruitful
trees and all cedars,
10 beasts and all livestock, creeping
things and birds of the wing,
11 kings of the earth and all people,
princes and all judges of the earth,
12 young men and virgins too, old
men and youths:
13 Let them praise the name of
YAHWEH; for His name alone is
exalted; His glory is above the earth
and heavens.
14 He also lifts up the horn of His
people, the praise of all His saints, of
the sons of Israel, a people near to
Him, HalleluYah.[1]

Psalm 149

1 HalleluYah! Sing to YAHWEH a
new song, His praise in the
congregation of the saints.
2 Let Israel rejoice in his Creators;[2]
let the sons of Zion be joyful in their
Kings.
3 Let them praise His name in the
dance; let them sing praise to Him
with the timbrel and lyre.
4 For YAHWEH takes pleasure in
His people; He adorns the humble in
Y'shua*. *(Jac 4:6)*
5 Let the saints be joyful in glory; let
them sing aloud on their beds.
6 Let the exaltation of El be in their
throat, and a two-edged sword in their
hand,
7 to execute vengeance on the
nations, punishment on the peoples;
8 to bind their kings with chains and
their nobles with iron bands;
9 to execute on them the judgment
written; this is an honor for all His
saints. HalleluYah!

Psalm 150

1 HalleluYah! Praise El in His holy
place; praise Him in the expanse of
His might.
2 Praise Him in His mighty acts;
praise Him according to His excellent
greatness.
3 Praise Him with the sound of the
trumpet; praise Him with the harp and
lyre.
4 Praise Him with the timbrel and
dance; praise Him with strings and
pipes.
5 Praise Him on the sounding
cymbals; praise Him with the
resounding cymbals.
6 Let everything that breathes praise
Yah. HalleluYah![3]

---

[1] Ps 149 shows the great creative power of YAHWEH and why His name alone is to be praised as Creator of the universe.

[2] The word creators in Hebrew is plural and shows that both Yahweh the Father and Yahshua the Son were co-creators, Gen 1:26-27, Eccl 12:1.

Book of Proverbs

Chapter 1

1 The Proverbs of Solomon, son of

[3] The 150th psalm ends with praising Yahweh in song and dance. The fact that the different musical instruments are mentioned in verse 4 shows that this is referring to congregational and not just private worship.

David, king of Israel:[1]
2 To know wisdom and instruction;
to discern the words of understanding;
3 to receive instruction in prudence,
justice, and judgment, and
uprightness;
4 to give sense to the simple,
knowledge and discretion to the young
man.
5 The wise hears and increases
learning, and the understanding ones
gets wise counsel,
6 to understand a proverb and an
enigma; the words of the wise, and
their riddles.
7 The fear of YAHWEH is the
beginning of knowledge; fools despise
wisdom and instruction.[2]
8 My son, hear your father's
instruction, and do not forsake the
Torah of your mother;
9 for they shall be an ornament of
grace to your head, and necklaces for
your neck.[3]
10 My son, if sinners lure you, do not
be willing.
11 If they say, Walk with us, let us lie
in wait for blood, let us secretly lurk
for the innocent without cause,
12 let us swallow them up alive as
Sheol, and whole, as those who go
down into the Pit,
13 we shall find all precious goods,
we shall fill our houses with spoil,
14 Let your lot fall among us, one
purse shall be to all of us.
15 My son, do not walk in the way
with them! Hold back your foot from
their path;[4]
16 for their feet run to evil and they
haste to shed blood. *(Pr 6:16-19)*
17 For in vain the net is spread in the
sight of every owner of the wing.
18 And they lie in wait for their own
blood; they lurk secretly for their own
souls.
19 So are the ways of everyone who
gets unjust gain; it takes away its
owner's soul. *(Pr 15:27)*
20 Wisdom cries aloud outside; she
gives her voice in the square;
21 she calls at the head of places of
commotion; in the opening of the
gates, in the city she utters her words;
22 Until when will you love to be
simple, you simple ones? And will
scorners desire scorn for themselves?
And will fools hate knowledge?
23 Turn back at my warning; behold,
I will pour out my spirit to you; I will
make my words known to you.
24 Because I called, and you refused;
I extended a hand, and none inclines,
25 and you have ignored all my
counsel, and you did not desire my
warning.
26 I also will laugh in your calamity,
I will mock when your dread comes;
27 when your dread comes like a
storm; and your calamity arrives like a
tempest, when distress and anguish
come on you.
28 Then they shall call on me, and I
will not answer; they shall seek me
early, but they shall not find me.[5]
29 Instead they hated knowledge
and chose not the fear of YAHWEH.[6]
30 They did not desire my counsel;
they despised all my reproof,

[1] Proverbs are the art of skillful living. This can only be accomplished in ones life if they fully submit to YHWH's spirit for discernment.

[2] The fear of YHWH is the starting point to repentance and a true relationship with YAHWEH and YAHSHUA, the Creators of the universe.(Pr 9:10, Pr 15:33, Job 28:28).

[3] The Torah is YHWH's eternal moral code and His very character. Grace is His mercy to forgive when we inadvertently violate His Holy Torah. To live by the Torah is to keep His mercy and grace around our neck on a daily basis.

[4] Verse 10-15- Bad companionships ruin good habits, 1 Cor 15:33.

[5] Zech 7:12-13

31 and they shall eat of the fruit of their own way and be filled with their own lusts.
32 For the going astray of the simple kills them, and the ease of fools destroys them.
33 But he who listens to me shall live securely and shall be at ease from the fear of evil.[1] *(Pr 3:24-26, Ps 91:1-2)*

Chapter 2

1 My son, if you will receive my words, and shall protect my commandments with you,
2 so that you attend to wisdom, you shall extend your heart to understanding.
3 For if you cry for discernment, lifting up your voice for understanding;
4 if you seek her as silver, and search for her as hidden treasures,
5 then you shall understand the fear of YAHWEH and find knowledge of Elohim.[2]
6 For YAHWEH gives wisdom; out of His mouth are knowledge and understanding.
7 He lays up sound wisdom for the upright; He is a shield to the ones who walk in integrity,
8 to guard the paths of judgment, and He protects the way of His saints.
9 Then you shall understand righteousness and judgment and honesty, and every good path.
10 When wisdom enters into your heart, and knowledge is pleasant to your soul,
11 discretion shall keep you, understanding shall watch over you,
12 to deliver you from the evil way, from the man who speaks perverse things,
13 those who leave the paths of uprightness to walk in the ways of darkness,
14 who rejoice to do evil, they delight in the perversities of the wicked,
15 whose paths are crooked, who are devious in their tracks;
16 these will deliver you from the strange woman, from the foreigner who flatters with her words,
17 who forsakes the friend of her youth and forgets the covenant of her Elohim.
18 For her house leads down to death, and her tracks to the departed spirits.
19 All going in to her do not return, nor do they reach the ways of life.
20 In order that you may walk in the ways of the good and keep the paths of the righteous.
21 For the upright shall live in the land, and the blameless shall remain in it.
22 But the wicked shall be cut off from the earth, and the transgressors, who try to hide their sins, shall be rooted out of it. *(Pr 10:30, Ps 37:38)*

Chapter 3

1 My son, do not forget my Torah, but let your heart guard and keep my commandments,

---

6 Proverbs consistently calls those who hate instruction and Yahweh's judicial order as *"fools"*. Pr 12:15, 15:5.

1 Whereas the fool is not willing to take instruction and only relies on his own pride, the humble of heart who trust in Yahweh as their refuge will always be protected.

2 Verses 1-5- The fear of YHWH comes from obedience to His commandments. Those who accept a lawless false grace are prideful and don't have the fear of YHWH. However, they will not escape His judgment, 2Cor 5:10.

2 for they shall add length of days
and long life and peace to you.[3]
3 Mercy and truth will not forsake
you, tie them on your neck, write them
on the tablet of your heart,
4 and you shall find favor and good
understanding in the sight of Elohim
and man.
5 Trust in YAHWEH with all your
heart, and lean not to your own
understanding.
6 In all your ways acknowledge Him,
and He shall direct your paths.
7 Do not be wise in your own eyes;
fear YAHWEH and depart from evil.
8 Healing shall be to your navel and
marrow to your bones.
9 Honor YAHWEH with your
substance, and with the first-fruits of
all your increase,
10 and your barns shall be filled with
plenty, and your wine vats shall burst
with new wine.[2]
11 My son, do not reject the
chastening of YAHWEH, and do not
hate His correction; *(Heb 12:5-6)*
12 for whom YAHWEH loves He
corrects, even as a father corrects the
son with whom he is pleased.
13 Happy is the man who finds
wisdom, and the man who gets
understanding.
14 For its profit is better than the
gain from silver, and its increase more
than fine gold;
15 she is more precious than rubies,
and all the things you can desire are
not to be compared with her.
16 Length of days is in her right
hand, riches and honor in her left
hand. *(Pr 8:18, 22:4)*
17 Her ways are ways of
pleasantness, and all her paths peace.
18 She is a tree of life to the ones
who lay hold on her, and happy are the
ones holding her fast.
19 YAHWEH founded the earth by
wisdom; He founded the heavens by
understanding;
20 the depths were broken up by His
knowledge, and the clouds dropped
down the dew.
21 My son, do not let them depart
from your eyes; keep sound wisdom
and judgment,
22 and they shall be life to your soul,
and grace to your neck;
23 then you shall walk in your way
safely, and your foot shall not stumble.
24 When you lie down, you shall not
dread; yea, you shall lie down and your
sleep shall be sweet.
25 Do not be afraid of sudden terror,
nor of the destruction of the wicked
when it comes.
26 For YAHWEH shall be at your
side, and He shall keep your foot from
being caught.
27 Do not withhold good from those
to whom it is due, when it is in the
power of your hand to do it.
28 Do not say to your neighbor, Go
and come back again, or, Tomorrow I
will give, when you have it beside you.
29 Do not plot evil against your
neighbor, since he dwells securely with
you.
30 Do not strive with a man without
cause, if he has done you no harm.
31 Do not be envious of the violent
man, and choose not among all his
ways.
32 For the perverse one is hateful to

[3] In life each person will reap what he sows and by keeping Yahweh's commandments they will lead to long life and protection from evil.

[2] Verses 9-10- The tithe (first 10%) of ones increase belongs to YHWH (Gen 28:20-22). If someone does not tithe to YHWH he is robbing from YHWH (Mal 3:8) and will not be blessed. YHWH challenges the skeptic to test Him and see if by being faithful with the tithe he will not be blessed abundantly (Mal 3:9-10).

YAHWEH, but His intimacy is with the righteous.
33 The curse of YAHWEH is in the house of the wicked, but He blesses the abode of the righteous.
34 Surely He scorns the scorners, but He gives grace to the lowly.
35 The wise inherit honor, but fools exalt shame.

Chapter 4

1 Sons, hear the instruction of a father, pay attention to know understanding, *(Pr 19:20)*
2 for I give you good teaching; do not forsake my Torah.
3 For I was my father's son, tender and an only one in the sight of my mother.
4 And he taught me and said to me, Let your heart cling to my words; keep my commandments and live.
5 Get wisdom, get understanding; do not forsake and do not turn away from the words of my mouth.
6 Do not forsake her, and she will preserve you; love her, and she will guard you.[1]
7 Wisdom is the first thing; get wisdom, and with all your getting, get understanding. *(Pr 8:23, 23:23)*
8 Exalt her, and she will lift you up; she shall bring you to honor when you embrace her.
9 She shall give a wreath of grace to your head; she shall shield you with a crown of glory.
10 Oh my son, hear and receive my sayings, and the years of your life shall be many. *(Ps 34:11-16, Deut 30:15-20)*
11 I have taught you in the way of wisdom; I have led you in the right tracks;
12 when you go, your tracks shall not be narrowed, and when you run, you shall not stumble.
13 Take fast hold of instruction, do not let her go; keep her, for she is your life.
14 Do not enter the path of the wicked, and do not go in the way of evildoers. *(Pr 1:15, Ps 1:1)*
15 Avoid it, do not pass by it; turn from it and pass on.
16 For they do not sleep if they have done no evil, and their sleep is taken away unless they cause some to fall.
17 For they eat the bread of wickedness, and drink the wine of violence.
18 But the path of the righteous is as a bright light going on and shining till the day is established. *(Dan 12:3, Math 5:14, Joh 8:12, Phil, 2:15)*
19 The way of the wicked is as darkness; they do not know at what they stumble.
20 My son, pay attention to my words; stretch your ear to what I say;
21 let them not depart from your eyes; keep them in the center of your heart;
22 for they are life to those who find them, and healing to all his flesh.[2]
23 Keep your heart with all diligence, for out of it are the issues of life.
24 Turn away from you the crooked mouth, and put perverse lips far from you.
25 Let your eyes look straight ahead, and let your eyelids look straight before you.
26 Ponder, the track of your feet, then all your ways will be established.
27 Do not bend to the right hand or to the left; turn your foot aside from evil. *(Deut 5:32)*

[1] Verses 1-6- As any good father would give sound advice to their children, here the most sound advice is to keep the Torah of YHWH for happiness, wisdom and life, (Deut 10:12- 13, Pr 3:1, Ps 119).

[2] Verses 20:22- Deut 30:15-20

Chapter 5

1 My son, listen carefully to my wisdom; stretch your ear to my understanding;[1]
2 so that you may keep discretion, and your lips may guard knowledge.
3 For the lips of a strange woman drip honey, and her palate is smoother than oil,[2]
4 but afterwards, she is bitter as wormwood, sharp as a sword of mouths;
5 her feet go down to death; her steps take hold on Sheol,
6 lest you should meditate on the path of life, her tracks are movable, you cannot know them.
7 Hear me now, O sons, and do not turn away from the words of my mouth.
8 Remove your ways far from her, and do not come near to the door of her house,
9 lest you give your honor to others, and your years to the cruel;
10 that strangers not be filled with your strength, and your labors be in the house of an alien,
11 and you moan when your end comes, when your flesh and muscle are eaten away;
12 and say, How I have hated instruction, and my heart despised correction;
13 and I have not heard the voice of my teachers, nor stretched my ear to those instructing me.
14 I was almost in all evil in the midst of the congregation and assembly.
15 Drink waters out of your own cistern, and running waters out of your own well.
16 Should your overflowing springs be scattered outside, like rivers of waters in the streets?
17 Let them be only your own, and not to strangers with you;
18 let your fountains be blessed, and rejoice with the wife of your youth;[3]
19 she is a loving deer, a graceful doe; let her breasts satisfy you every time, and always be ravished in her love.
20 And my son, why will you be ravished with a strange woman, and embrace a foreigner's bosom?
21 For the ways of a man are before the eyes of YAHWEH, and He ponders all his tracks.
22 His own iniquities shall take the wicked himself, and he shall be held with the cords of his sin.
23 He shall die without instruction, and in the greatness of his foolishness he shall go astray.

Chapter 6

1 My son, if you are surety for your friend, if you struck your hands with a stranger,
2 you are snared with the words of your mouth; you are captured with the words of your own mouth.
3 My son, do this then, and deliver yourself when you come into the hand

[1] Over and over again in the proverbs is the theme of seeking and listening to the wisdom of YHWH. Although wisdom is poetically acclaimed at times, these are simply metaphors and wisdom is something to be acquired but is not a person or being.

[2] This is showing that although the adulterous woman may be sweet as honey and slick as oil in the end her ways will bring suffering and death. This chapter is a stark warning to all (Mk 10:11-12).

[3] Verses 15-18 are not speaking about not allowing people to drink water from your home, but is poetically stating for men to stay close to their own wife and let her alone satisfy his desires.

of your friend: go humble yourself and be bold to your friend.[1]
4 Do not give sleep to your eyes, or slumber to your eyelids.
5 Deliver yourself like a gazelle from a hand of a hunter, and as a bird from the fowlers hand.
6 Go to the ant, lazy man; consider her ways and be wise;
7 who, having no guide, overseer or ruler,
8 provides her bread in the summer, and gathers her food in the harvest.
9 How long will you lie down, O lazy man? When will you arise out of your sleep?
10 A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to lie down;
11 so shall your poverty come as one walking, and your need like an armed man.[2]
12 A worthless person, a wicked man, walks with a perverse mouth,
13 winking with his eyes, speaking with his feet, teaching with his fingers.
14 Perversity is in his heart; he is plotting evil at every time, he sends out strife.*(Ps 140:1-5, Pr 17:20, 16:28)*
15 On account of this, calamity shall come suddenly; he is broken quickly and there is no healing.
16 These six things YAHWEH hates; yea, seven are hateful to his soul;
17 High eyes, a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood,
18 a heart that plots evil plans, feet hurrying to run to mischief, *(Pr 24:2)*
19 a false witness who breathes lies, and he sending out strife among brothers.[3] *(Pr 12:17, 19:5,9, 21:28)*
20 My son, keep your father's commandments, and do not forsake the Torah of your mother. *(Pr 3:21)*
21 Bind them to your heart forever; tie them around your neck. *(Deut 6:8)*
22 When you go, it shall lead you; when you sleep, it shall watch over you; and when you awaken, it will meditate with you.
23 For the commandment is a lamp, and the law a light; and reproofs of instruction are a way of life,[4] *(Ps 119:165, Pr 7:1-2)*
24 to keep you from the evil woman, from the smooth tongue of the strange woman.
25 Do not lust after her beauty in your heart, and do not let her take you with her eyelids.
26 For on account of a woman, a harlot, a man comes to the last loaf of bread, and another man's wife hunts for the precious soul.
27 Can a man take fire into his bosom and his clothes not be burned?
28 Or can a man walk on hot coals and his feet not be burned?
29 So is he who goes in to his neighbor's wife; everyone touching her shall not be innocent.
30 They do not despise a thief, if he

[1] This is speaking about the danger of being a co-signer for another and warning against it. If you lend money to someone and they do not repay you, you will simply lose the money that you lent, but if you co-sign a loan and it is defaulted, then your credit and reputation will be destroyed.

[2] Verses 4-11- Although good rest is a must for good health, these scriptures show that to the lazy man who hibernates the better part of the day in bed will end up without work and in poverty.

[3] Verses 16-19- Two words that are rarely seen in scripture are "*YHWH*" with the word "*hate*". This shows how much YAHWEH despises pride, gossip, and a false accusing spirit.

[4] Verses 20-23-Shows that the commandments were never meant to forgive sin, but are meant to show one the way to walk in life and stay on the straight and narrow path. The word Torah is better translated as "*instruction*" instead of "*law*". It is instruction for life, as sin (the breaking of the Torah, 1Joh 3:4) is instruction for death (Rom 6:23).

steals to fill his appetite when he is hungry.
31 But if he is found, he shall restore sevenfold; he shall give all the goods of his house.
32 He who commits adultery with a woman lacks heart; he who does it is a destroyer of his own soul.
33 He shall find a wound and dishonor, and his shame shall not be wiped away.
34 For jealousy is the rage of a man, and he will not spare in the day of vengeance.
35 He will not lift up the face of every ransom, nor will he consent if you multiply the bribes.

Chapter 7

1 My son, keep my words and store up my commandments within you.
2 Keep my commandments and live, and my Torah as the pupil of your eye.
3 Tie them on your fingers; write them on the tablet of your heart.[1]
4 Say to wisdom, You are my sister, and call understanding your kinsman,
5 so that they may keep you from the strange woman, from the alien with her flattering words.
6 For I looked through my lattice, at the window of my house,
7 and I saw among the simple ones, I observed among the sons a young man lacking heart,
8 passing through the street near her corner; and he went the way to her house,
9 in the twilight, in the evening, in the black and darkness of night.
10 And, behold, a woman came to meet him, with a harlot's dress, and a guarded heart;
11 she is loud and stubborn; her feet do not rest in her own house.
12 At this time she is outside, now in the streets, and she lies in wait at every corner;
13 and she seizes him and kisses him; she hardens her face and says to him,
14 Sacrifices of peace offerings are on me, today I have completed my vows;
15 so I came out to meet you, earnestly to seek your face, and I have found you.
16 I have spread my couch with coverings, with striped cloths of Egyptian linen.
17 I have sprinkled my bed with myrrh, aloes and cinnamon.
18 Come, let us take our fill of love until the morning, let us delight ourselves with caresses.
19 For my husband is not at his house; he is going in the way, far away.
20 He has taken a bag of silver in his hand; at the day of the full moon he will enter his house.
21 With the sum of her persuasion she turned him aside; with the flattering of her lips she forced him.
22 He goes after her immediately, as an ox goes to the slaughter; or as one in chains goes to the chastisement of a fool,
23 until an arrow strikes through his liver, as a bird hastens to the snare, and not knowing that it is for his soul.
24 Now, then, listen to me, O sons, and attend to the words of my mouth:
25 Do not let your heart turn aside to her ways; do not go astray in her paths.
26 For many are the wounded she has caused to fall; and plentiful all her slain ones.
27 The ways of Sheol are in her

[1] Verses 1-3- Keeping YHWH's commandments and His Torah are always equated with keeping one's life or soul, Math 19:17, Pr 4:4, Ps 19:7-11, Deut 32:46-47, Deut 30:15-20.

house, leading down to the rooms of death.

Chapter 8

1 Does not wisdom call? And does not understanding speak?[1]
2 She stands in the top of high places, by the wayside, in the houses of the paths,
3 beside the gates; at the mouth of the city, at the doors, she cries.
4 I call to you, O men, and my voice is to the sons of men.
5 Understand wisdom, simple ones; and fools, be of an understanding heart. (Pr 1:4, 22, 32)
6 Hear, for I will speak of excellent things, and from the opening of my lips shall be right things.
7 For my mouth shall speak of truth, and wickedness is hateful to my lips.
8 All the words of my mouth are in righteousness; nothing crooked or perverse is in them;
9 they are all plain to the understanding one; and right to those who find knowledge.
10 Receive my instruction, and not silver; and knowledge, rather than choice gold.
11 For wisdom is better than jewels, and all delights cannot be compared to it.
12 I, wisdom, dwell with sense, and I find knowledge of discretions.
13 The fear of YAHWEH is to hate evil; I hate pride and loftiness, and the evil way, and the perverse mouth. *(Pr 3:7, Pr 6:12, Pr 15:9, Pr 16:18)*
14 Counsel and sound wisdom are mine; I am understanding; I have strength.
15 By me kings reign, and leaders decree righteousness.
16 Rulers and nobles rule by me, and all the judges of the earth.
17 I love those who love me, and those who seek me early find me.
18 Riches and honor are with me; enduring wealth and righteousness.
19 My fruit is better than gold, yea, than fine gold; and my increase is better than the best silver.
20 I walk in the path of righteousness, in the midst of the paths of justice;
21 to cause those who love me to inherit wealth, and I will fill up their storehouses.
22 YAHWEH possessed me in the beginning of His way, from then, before His works.
23 I was set up from everlasting, from that which was before the earth.[2]
24 When there were no depths, I was brought forth; when there were no springs heavy with water.
25 Before the mountains were settled, before the hills, I was brought forth;
26 before He had made the earth and the fields, or the highest part of the dust of the world.
27 When He prepared the heavens, I was there; when He set a circle on the face of the deep,
28 when He formed the clouds above, when He made the strong fountains of the deep,
29 when He gave to the sea its limit,

[1] Over and over again in the proverbs is the theme of seeking and listening to the wisdom of YHWH. Although wisdom is poetically acclaimed at times these are simply metaphors and wisdom is something to be acquired but is not a person or being.

[2] Verses 22-23- Some have wrongly taken these scriptures out of context to pertain them to Yahshua and that He is a created being. However, wisdom is in the feminine gender and is being spoken about over the last 5 chapters and never personified as the Messiah. Also, Yahshua is eternal and not a created being, Mic 5:2, 1Joh 1:1, Joh 8:58.

that the waters should not pass beyond His command; when He decreed the foundations of the earth,
30 then I was at His side, like a master workman; and I was His delights day by day, rejoicing before Him at every time;
31 rejoicing in the world, His earth; and my delight was with the sons of men.
32 And now listen to me, O sons, for blessed are those who keep my ways.
33 Hear instruction, and be wise, and do not refuse it.
34 Blessed is the man listening to me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors.
35 For whoever finds me finds life, and he shall obtain favor from YAHWEH.
36 But he who sins against me does violence to his own soul; all who hate me love death.[1]

Chapter 9

1 Wisdom has built her house; she has carved out her seven pillars;[2]
2 she has slaughtered her slaughter; she has mixed her wine; she has also set her table.
3 She has sent out her maidens; she cries on the highest places of the city;
4 The simple one, turn in here; and to one lacking heart, she says to him,
5 Come, eat of my bread, and drink of the wine I have mixed.
6 Forsake the foolish, and live, and go in the way of understanding.
7 He who reproves a scorner gets shame to himself; and he who rebukes a wicked man gets his own blemish.
8 Do not reprove a scorner, that he not hate you; rebuke a wise man, and he will love you. *(Pr 15:12, 10:8)*
9 Give to a wise one, and he will be more wise; teach a just one, and he will increase in learning. *(Pr 12:15)*
10 The fear of YAHWEH is the beginning of wisdom; and the knowledge of the Holy One is understanding.[3] *(Pr 1:7, 15:33)*
11 For by me your days shall be multiplied, and the years of your life shall be increased.
12 If you are wise, you shall be wise for yourself, but if you scorn, you alone shall bear it.
13 A foolish woman is noisy; she is thoughtless, and she knows not what.
14 And she sits at the door of her house, in a seat in the high places of the city,
15 to call those who pass by, who are going straight on their ways,
16 The simple one, let him turn in here; and to the one lacking heart, she says to him,
17 Stolen waters are sweet, and bread eaten in secret is pleasant.
18 But he does not know that the departed spirits are there; her guests are in the depths of hell.

Chapter 10

1 The proverbs of Solomon: A wise son makes a father rejoice, but the

---

1 Verses 27-36- Wisdom is spoken of poetically that to find it you will find life. How true this is as in this world you can find such great, smart people who can invent computers, space crafts that can go to the moon and every type of telecommunication, yet how many of these men with worldly education have the wisdom to seek YHWH and His grace in their lives?

2 Rev 1:20, Zech 4:2

3 It is the fear of YHWH that will lead one to heartfelt repentance that will in turn lead to knowledge, wisdom understanding and instruction. Without the fear of YHWH, the pride of man will rule in his heart, Pr 16:18, Pr 29:23.

foolish son is sorrow and depression to his mother.[1]

2 Treasures of wickedness profit nothing, but righteousness delivers from death.

3 YAHWEH will not allow the soul of the righteous to go hungry, but He pushes away the desire of the wicked.[2]

4 He who works with a lazy hand becomes poor, but the hand of the hard worker makes him rich. *(Pr 6:6-8)*

5 He who gathers in summer is a prudent son; he who sleeps in harvest is a son who causes shame. *(Pr 24:30-34)*

6 Blessings are on the head of the just, but violence covers the mouth of the wicked.

7 The memory of the just is blessed, but the name of the wicked shall rot.

8 The wise in heart accepts commandments, but the foolish of lips shall be thrust away.

9 He who walks in integrity walks securely, but he who perverts his ways shall be found out.

10 He who winks the eye causes sorrow, but the foolish of lips shall be thrust away.

11 The mouth of the righteous is a fountain of life, but violence covers the mouth of the wicked.

12 Hatred stirs up fights, but love covers over all transgressions. *(Pr 17:9, 1 Cor 13:4-7, 1 Pe 4:8)*

13 Wisdom is found in the lips of him who has understanding, but a rod is waiting for the back of him who lacks heart. *(Pr 26:3, 19:29, 10:31)*

14 The wise store up knowledge, but the mouth of the foolish is near ruin.

15 The rich man's wealth is his strong city; the ruin of the poor is their poverty. *(Pr 18:11, Pr 19:7)*

16 The labor of the righteous is for life; the gain of the wicked is for sin.

17 On the way of life is He who heeds instruction, but he who refuses reproof is going astray. *(Pr 6:23, 15:5, 5:12)*

18 He who hides hatred with lying lips, and he who sends out slander, he is a fool. *(Ps 31:18, Pr 26:24)*

19 In the abundance of words sin does not cease, but one restraining his lips is prudent.[3] (*Eccl 5:2, Pr 18:21)*

20 The tongue of the just is as choice silver; the heart of the wicked is as a little.

21 The lips of the righteous feed many, but fools die for lack of heart.

22 The blessing of YAHWEH, it makes rich, and he adds no pain with it.

23 To work out evil devices is as laughter to the foolish; so wisdom is to a man of understanding.

24 That which the wicked fears shall come upon him, but the desire of the righteous is granted.

25 As the storm passes, so the wicked is not; but the righteous is an everlasting foundation.

26 Like vinegar to the teeth, and like smoke to the eyes, so is the lazy man to those who send him.[4]

27 The fear of YAHWEH prolongs

---

1 This is referencing YHWH's judicial order, for a son who respects his father will listen to his mother while the father is away working on a daily basis. However, the son who has no respect for his father will have less respect for his mother while the father is away and will be most uncorrectable and impossible for a mother to handle.

2 Pr 13:25, Pr 28:25

3 The wise are commanded to be quick to hear and slow to speak (Ja 1:19). Due to the evil nature of man, those who continually are talkers, usually will be saying negative things and gossiping, Math 12:33-37.

4 As bitterness and pain is from vinegar and smoke so is the result of a lazy man that is sent with no good results.

days, but the years of the wicked shall be cut short. *(Pr 3:2, 9:11, Deut 11:9)*

28 The hope of the righteous is joy, but the hope of the wicked shall perish.

29 The way of YAHWEH is strength to the upright, but ruin is to doers of iniquity.

30 The righteous shall never be moved, and the wicked shall not dwell in the land. *(Ps 37:9, 28, Pr 2:21-22)*

31 The mouth of the righteous flourishes with wisdom, but the perverse tongue shall be cut off.

32 The lips of the righteous know what is pleasing, but the mouth of the wicked knows only perversities.

Chapter 11

1 False balances are hateful to YAHWEH, but a perfect stone is His delight.*(Pr 20:10, 16:11, Deut 25:13-16)*

2 Pride comes, then shame comes, but with the humble is wisdom. *(Pr 16:18, Pr 18:12, Pr 29:23)*

3 The integrity of the upright guides them, but the perversity of traitors will destroy them.

4 Riches do not profit in the day of wrath, but righteousness delivers from death. *(Pr 10:2, Eze 7:19, Ja 5:1-6)*

5 The righteousness of the perfect shall make his way right, but the wicked shall fall by his own wickedness.

6 The righteousness of the upright shall deliver them, but traitors shall be taken in their lust.

7 In the death of a wicked man, his expectation shall perish, and the hope of the evil shall be lost.

8 The righteous is delivered from distress, and the wicked goes in instead of him.

9 The wicked are corrupting his neighbor with his mouth, but the just is delivered by knowledge.

10 When the righteous prospers, the city rejoices; and at the wicked's perishing is singing.

11 A city is lifted up by the blessing of the upright, but by the wicked's mouth it is overthrown.

12 One despising his friend lacks heart, but an understanding man remains silent.

13 One going with slander is a revealer of secrets, but the faithful of spirit keeps a matter hidden. *(Pr 20:19)*

14 In the absence of wise counsels the people fall, but safety is in abundance of counselors. *(Pr 15:22)*

15 One suffers evil when he is surety for a stranger, but one hating strikers of hands is trusted. *(Pr 6:1-3)*

16 A gracious woman holds to honor, and terrifying men hold to riches.

17 A merciful man does good to his own soul, but the cruel troubles his own flesh.

18 The wicked makes a deceitful wage, but one sowing righteousness has a reward of truth.

19 So righteousness leads to life, but one pursuing evil, to his death.

20 Hateful to YAHWEH are the perverse hearted, but His delight is the upright in way.

21 Though hand join to hand, the evil shall not be innocent, but the righteous seed escapes.

22 As a ring of gold in a swine's snout, so is a woman who is beautiful, yet turning aside discretion.

23 The desire of the righteous is only good, the hope of the wicked is wrath.

24 There is one who scatters yet increases more; but a withholder of just due comes only to poverty.[1]

---

[1] The more one gives from the heart, the more he will be blessed by Elohim, Eccl 11:1-2, 2Cor 9:7.

25 The blessed soul will be made fat; he who waters will also drink fully.

26 One holding back grain, the people curse him; but a blessing is to the head of one selling grain.

27 He who early is seeking good seeks favor; but one pursuing evil, it shall come to him.

28 One trusting in his riches, he shall fall; but like a green leaf the righteous shall sprout.

29 One troubling his house inherits the wind; and the fool is servant to the wise of heart.

30 The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life; and he who takes hold of souls is wise. *(Ps 1:1-3)*

31 Behold, the righteous shall be rewarded in the earth; much more the wicked and the sinner.[1]

Chapter 12

1 Whoever loves instruction loves knowledge, but he who hates correction is like a brute animal. *(Pr 5:11-13, 9:7-9, 13:1, 18, 15:5)*

2 The good obtain grace from YAHWEH, but He will condemn a man of wicked devices.

3 A man shall not be established by wickedness, but the root of the righteous shall not be dislodged.

4 A woman of virtue is a crown to her husband, but one causing shame is like rottenness in his bones.

5 The thoughts of the righteous are right; the counsels of the wicked are deceit.

6 The words of the wicked lie in ambush for blood, but the mouth of the upright shall deliver them.

7 Overthrow the wicked, and they are not; but the house of the righteous stands.

8 A man shall be praised according to his wisdom, but he who is of a perverse heart shall be despised.

9 He who is despised, and has a servant, is better than one honoring himself and lacking bread.

10 The righteous knows the life of his animal, but the mercies of the wicked are cruel.[2]

11 He who tills his land shall be satisfied with bread, but he chasing vanities lacks heart. *(Pr 28:19)*

12 The wicked desires the net of evils, but the root of the righteous gives fruit.

13 In the transgression of the lips is the snare of evil, but the righteous will come out from distress.

14 A man shall be satisfied with good by the fruit of the mouth, and the dealing of a man's hand shall be given back to him.

15 The way of a fool is upright in his own eyes, but he who listens to advice is wise. *(Pr 14:12, Pr 16:25)*

16 A fool's vexation is known in a day, but the astute one covers shame.

17 He who breathes faithfulness reveals righteousness, but a false witness deceit.

18 There is a rash speaking like thrusts of a sword, but the tongue of the wise is healing.

19 The lips of truth are established forever, but a lying tongue lasts only while I wink.[3]

---

[1] The reward of the saved is eternal life on the earth not in heaven, There is a judgment day on earth when Messiah returns and the righteous will be rewarded eternal life and the sinner will burn up completely in the Lake of Fire. (Rev 20:4-6, 13, Rev 5:10, Gen 17:7-8, Heb 9:27, Jer 32:19, 2Cor 5:10).

[2] A merciful person will even care for his animals but an unloving person would not even care for human beings who are close to them.

[3] Honestly, loyalty and truth will lead to eternal life, but a false witness and liar will be judged in the Lake of fire, Rev 22:15.

20 Deceit is in the heart of those who plot evil, but to counselors of peace is joy.
21 No trouble shall be sent to the righteous, but the wicked shall be filled with evil.
22 Lying lips are an abomination to YAHWEH, but those who deal with faithfulness are His delight. *(Pr 6:19)*
23 A wise man conceals knowledge, but the heart of fools calls out their folly.
24 The hand of the hard worker shall rule, but the lazy ones will become forced labor. *(Gen 49:15, Pr 10:4)*
25 Heaviness in a man's heart makes it droop, but a good word makes it glad. *(Pr 15:13)*
26 The righteous searches out with his friend, but the way of the wicked misleads them.
27 A person of laziness does not start after his prey, but the wealth of a working man is precious.
28 In the way of righteousness is life, and in that pathway is no death.

Chapter 13

1 A wise son hears his father's instruction, but a scorner does not hear rebuke. *(Pr 10:1, 12:1, 15:5, 20)*
2 From the fruit of his mouth a man eats good, but the desire of the treacherous is violence. *(Pr 12:14)*
3 He who guards his mouth keeps his life; he who opens his lips wide is ruined. *(Pr 18:21, 21:23, 18:7, Ja 3:2)*
4 The sluggard's soul is craving, but is not getting, but the soul of the hard workers shall be made fat.
5 The righteous hates even a word of falsehood, but the wicked is odious and acts shamefully.
6 Righteousness keeps the upright one in the way, but wickedness perverts a sinner.
7 There are those who act rich, yet have nothing at all; and those who act poor, yet have great wealth.
8 The ransom of a man's life is his riches, but the poor man does not hear rebuke.
9 The light of the righteous rejoices, but the lamp of the wicked shall be put out. *(Pr 4:18, 24:20, Math 5:14-16)*
10 Arguing only comes by pride, but wisdom is with those who take advice.[1]
11 Wealth from vanity shall dwindle away, but he who gathers by labor shall increase.
12 Hope deferred makes the heart sick, but a tree of life is desire fulfilled.[2]
13 He who despises the Word shall be destroyed, but he who fears the Commandment shall be rewarded. *(Num 15:31, Ps 19:7-11)*
14 The Torah to the wise is a fountain of life, to turn away from the snares of death. *(Pr 10:11, 14:27)*
15 Good sense gives grace, but the way of traitors is continual.
16 Every prudent one deals with knowledge, but a fool lays open his folly.
17 A wicked messenger falls into evil, but a faithful ambassador is healing.
18 Poverty and shame shall be to him who refuses instruction, but he who keeps to correction shall be honored.
19 The desire coming to pass is sweet to the soul, but to depart from evil is hateful to fools.
20 He who walks with the wise shall be wise, but a companion of fools shall be broken. *(1Cor 15:33, 2 Chron 10:8)*
21 Evil pursues sinners, but the righteous shall be rewarded with good.
22 A good man leaves an inheritance

---

1 Arguments come many times by those who are not willing to be corrected, Pr 9:9

2 It takes great faith in the word of YHWH to stay focused and not get discouraged in this present wicked, end time, generation.

to his son's sons, but the wealth of the sinner is laid up for the just. (Job 27:16-17, Eccl 2:26)

23 The tilled ground of the poor yields much food, but without justice, it is swept away.

24 He who holds back his rod hates his son, but he who loves him seeks him with correction.[1]

25 The righteous eats to the satisfying of his soul, but the belly of the wicked shall lack.

Chapter 14

1 A wise woman builds her house, but the foolish pulls it down with her own hands.

2 He who walks in his uprightness fears YAHWEH, but the perverse in his ways despises Him.

3 A rod of pride is in the mouth of a fool, but the lips of the wise shall keep them.

4 The stall is clean where there are no cattle, but much gain is by the strength of an ox.

5 A faithful witness will not lie, but a false witness breathes lies. *(Pr 12:17)*

6 A scorner seeks wisdom, but finds it not, yet knowledge is swift to the discerning.

7 Go from before a foolish man, or you will not know the lips of knowledge. *(Pr 23:9)*

8 The wisdom of the wise is to understand his way, but the foolishness of fools is deceit.

9 Fools laugh at guilt offering, but among the righteous is favor.

10 The heart knows the bitterness of its own soul, and a stranger does not mix in its joy.[2]

11 The wicked's house shall be thrown down, but the tent of the upright will flourish.

12 There is a way that seems upright to a man, but the end of it is the ways of death. *(Pr 16:25, Pr 12:15)*

13 Even in laughter the heart is sorrowful, and the end of that joy is grief. *(Eccl 2:1-2, Eccl 7:3)*

14 The backslider in heart shall be filled with his own ways, but a good man from himself.

15 The simple believes every word, but the wise considers his step.[3]

16 The wise fears and departs from evil, but the fool rages and is sure.

17 He who is short of temper acts foolishly; and a man of evil plots is hated.[4]

18 The simple inherit foolishness, but the wise are crowned with knowledge.

19 The evil bow before the good; yea, the wicked at the gates of the just.

20 The poor is hated even by his own neighbor, but the rich has many friends.

21 He who despises his neighbor sins, but he who has mercy on the poor, Oh how happy is he!

22 Do not those who think evil go astray? But mercy and truth will be to those who think of good.

---

[1] Correction to a child is showing love teaching them discipline (Heb 12:5-8), but the parent that does not take the time to correct his child is not showing love, (Pr 19:18, Pr 22:15, 23:13,14, 29:15, 7, Pr 3:12)

[2] No one can really understand the sorrow or joy that an individual is going through throughout their life, 1 Sam 1:10.

[3] Naïve people many times will rashly believe something without proving it to be true and then, later, change to something else. The prudent person will prove the truth to himself and then, hold on to it forever, 1Thes 5:21.

[4] Self control is evidence of the Holy Spirit (Gal 5:23) and someone who bursts with anger is no better than a demon possessed person (Pr 16:32, Pr 14:29).

23 In all labor there is profit, but the talk of the lips tends only to poverty.

24 The crown of the wise is their riches; the foolishness of fools is folly.

25 A true witness delivers souls, but a deceitful witness speaks lies.

26 In the fear of YAHWEH is strong trust, and His sons shall have a hiding place.

27 The fear of YAHWEH is a fountain of life, to turn away from snares of death.

28 In the multitude of people is the king's glory, but in the lack of people is the ruin of a prince.

29 One slow to anger is of great understanding, but he who is short of spirit exalts folly. *(Pr 16:32, Eccl 7:9)*

30 A healthy heart is the life of the flesh, but envy is the rottenness of the bones. *(Pr 17:22, Pr 12:4)*

31 He who oppresses the poor curses his Maker, but he who honors Him gives grace to the needy. *(Pr 19:17)*

32 The wicked is thrust out in his wickedness, but the righteous has hope in his death.

33 Wisdom rests in the heart of the intelligent, but among fools it is revealed.

34 Righteousness exalts a nation, but sin is a shame to any people.

35 The king's favor is toward a servant who acts prudently, but his wrath takes place on one causing shame.

Chapter 15

1 A soft answer turns away wrath, but a hurtful word stirs up anger.[1]

2 The tongue of the wise uses knowledge rightly, but the mouth of fools pours out foolishness.

3 The eyes of YAHWEH are in every place watching the evil and the good.

4 A tongue that can heal is a tree of life, but perverseness in it is a break of the spirit. *(Pr 10:11, Pr 18:21)*

5 A fool despises his father's instruction, but he keeping correction is sensible. *(Pr 10:17, Pr 12:1, Pr 13:1)*

6 In the house of the righteous is much treasure, but in the gain of the wicked is tumult.

7 The lips of the wise disperse knowledge, but the heart of the fool is not so.

8 The sacrifice of the wicked is a hateful thing to YAHWEH, but the prayer of the upright is His delight. *(Ps 51:17, Pr 21:27, 29, Job 35:12-13)*

9 The way of the wicked is hateful to YAHWEH, but He loves him who pursues righteousness.

10 Correction is grievous to him who forsakes the way, he who hates reproof shall die.*(Pr 1:30-32, 10:17, 13:1, 15:5*)

11 Sheol and destruction are before YAHWEH; even more the hearts of the sons of men!

12 A scorner does not love one who corrects him, nor will he go to the wise. *(Amos 5:10, Pr 9:8)*

13 A joyful heart makes a good face, but by grief of heart the spirit is stricken.

14 The heart of the wise one seeks knowledge, but the mouth of fools feeds on folly.

15 All the days of the depressed are evil, but gladness of heart is a continual feast.

16 Better is a little with the fear of YAHWEH than great treasure and destruction with it. *(Pr 16:8, Ps 37:16)*

17 Better is a dinner of vegetables where love is, than a stalled ox and hatred with it. *(Pr 17:1)*

18 A furious man stirs up strife, but

[1] A spirit led individual will ponder his words and season them with salt before answering even in dire conditions. However, rash harsh words will only cause more contention, Pr 15:28.

he who is slow to anger calms fighting. *(Pr 14:17, 16:28, 26:21, 29:22)*
19 The way of the lazy one is like a hedge of thorns, but the path of the righteous is exalted. *(Pr 20:4, 22:5)*
20 A wise son makes a glad father, but a foolish man despises his mother. *(Pr 10:1, Pr 29;3, Pr 30:17)*
21 Foolishness is joy to him who lacks understanding, but a man of understanding walks a straight path.
22 Without counsel plans are broken, but by many counselors they rise.[1] *(Pr 12:15, Pr 20:18, 1 Kg 1:11-12)*
23 A man has joy by the answer of his mouth, and how good is a word in its right timing!
24 The path of life is upward to the prudent, that he may turn away from Sheol downward.
25 YAHWEH will tear down the house of the proud, but He will set up the widow's border. *(Pr 14:11, Ps 68:5)*
26 The thoughts of the wicked are very hateful to YAHWEH, but the words of pleasantness are pure.
27 He who is greedy for gain troubles his own house, but he who hates bribes shall live. *(Pr 1:19)*
28 The heart of the righteous ponders how to answer, but the mouth of the wicked pours out evil things.
29 YAHWEH is far from the wicked, but He hears the prayer of the righteous. *(Pr 28:9, Ps 145:18-19)*
30 The light of the eyes rejoices the heart, a good report makes the bones fat.
31 The ear that hears the reproof of life shall remain among the wise.
32 He who ignores correction despises his own soul, but he who hears reproof gets a sound heart. (*Pr 10:1, 12:1, 13:1, 15:5, 20)*
33 The fear of YAHWEH is instruction in wisdom, and before honor is humility. *(Pr 1:7, Pr 9:10)*

Chapter 16

1 The orderings of the heart are for man, and the answer of the tongue is from YAHWEH. *(Pr 16:9, 19:21)*
2 All the ways of a man are pure in his own eyes, but YAHWEH weighs the spirits.*(Pr 14:12, 16:25, Luk 16:15)*
3 Roll your works on YAHWEH, and your thoughts shall be established.
4 YAHWEH has made all for His purpose, yea, even the wicked for the day of evil. *(Ro 9:21-22)*
5 Everyone proud in heart is an abomination to YAHWEH; though hand join in hand he shall not be innocent.[2] *(Pr 6:16-19, Ps 40:4)*
6 Iniquity is covered by mercy and truth, and in the fear of YAHWEH, men turn aside from evil.[3] *(Pr 8:13)*
7 When a man's ways please YAHWEH, He makes even his enemies to be at peace with him.
8 Better is a little with righteousness than great increase without justice. *(Ps 37:16, Pr 15:16)*
9 A man's heart plans his way, but YAHWEH fixes his step.[4] *(Pr 16:1)*
10 A righteous decision is on the lips

---

1 By getting a multitude of options for a problem will give a multitude of decisions and be able to render wisdom in rendering judgment.

2 Many times people are persuaded by a mob mentality not to go against the majority, but a person is responsible for his decision in supporting an injustice or not standing up for the truth, Lev 5:1.

3 The fear is YHWH leads one to repentance and is the beginning point for a true relationship with Him and humility.

4 This scripture is clear proof why ones heart and soul must be toward YHWH continually, as if we are making our plans based on His will, He will fix our path in the same manner, but if not, we will go through trial in our walk.

of the king, his mouth is not treacherous in judgment. *(Pr 17:7)*
11 A just scale and balances are to YAHWEH, all the stones of the bag are His work.*(Pr 20:10, Deut 25:13-16)*
12 It is an abomination for kings to commit wickedness, for the throne is made firm by righteousness.
13 Righteous lips are the king's delight, and he speaking uprightly is loved.
14 A king's fury is as messengers of death, but a wise man will cover it.
15 In the light of the face of the king is life, and his favor is like a cloud of the latter rain.
16 How much better to get wisdom than gold! And to get understanding is to be chosen above silver.
17 The highway of the upright is to turn away from evil, he keeping his soul watches his way.
18 Pride goes before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall. *(Pr 11:2)*
19 It is better to be of a lowly spirit with the poor than to divide the spoil with the proud.
20 He who acts prudently shall find good, and he who trusts in YAHWEH, Oh how happy is he!*(Ps 34:8, Pr 13:13)*
21 The wise in heart shall be called prudent, and sweetness of lips increases learning.
22 Prudence is a fountain of life to those who own it, but the teaching of fools is folly.
23 The heart of the wise makes his mouth prudent, and he adds learning on his lips.
24 Pleasant words are an overflowing of honey, sweetness to the soul and healing to the bones. *(Pr 25:11)*
25 There is a way that seems right to a man, but the end of it is the ways of death. *(Pr 14:12)*
26 A laboring one labors for himself, for his mouth urges him on.
27 A worthless man digs up evil, and on his lips it is like a burning fire.
28 A perverse man causes strife, and a talebearer separates close friends. *(Pr 17:9, 20:19, Pr 26:20-22)*
29 A violent man[1] lures his neighbor, and causes him to go in a way that is not good.
30 He who shuts his eyes to plan perverse things, compressing his lips, he brings evil to pass.
31 The gray head is a crown of glory; it is found in the way of righteousness. *(Pr 20:29, Lev 19:32)*
32 One slow to anger is better than the mighty, and he who rules his spirit than he who takes a city. *(Pr 15:1, 28)*
33 The lot is cast into the lap, but all ordering of it is from YAHWEH.

Chapter 17

1 Better is a dry piece of bread, and quietness with it, than a house full of sacrifices with fighting. *(Pr 15:17)*
2 A servant who acts prudently shall rule over a son who causes shame, and he shall have part of the inheritance among the brothers.
3 The refining pot is for silver, and the furnace for gold, but YAHWEH tries the hearts. *(Pr 27:21)*
4 An evildoer gives heed to lips of iniquity; a liar listens to a tongue of evil desire.
5 He who mocks the poor reviles his Maker, he who rejoices at calamity shall not be innocent.*(Pr 14:31, 24:17)*
6 Grandsons are the crown of old men, and the glory of sons are their fathers. *(Pr 13:22)*
7 An arrogant lip is not fitting for a fool, much less are lying lips for a noble. *(Pr 24:7, 12:22, Ps 31:18)*

---
1 The Hebrew word for violent here is Hamas, the same name as the terror group.

8 A reward is a precious stone in the eyes of his owner; everywhere he turns, he is prudent.

9 He who covers a transgression seeks love, but he who repeats a matter separates friends. *(Pr 16:28, 18:8, 20:19, 26:20-22)*

10 A reproof enters more into one discerning than a hundred stripes into a fool.

11 Rebellion seeks evil, so a cruel messenger is sent against him.

12 Let a bear bereaved of her cubs meet a man, rather than a fool in his foolishness.

13 Whoever returns evil for good, evil shall not depart from his house. *(Pr 13:21, Ps 35:12, 1Sam 19:4)*

14 The beginning of strife is like the releasing of water, therefore leave off fighting before it breaks out.

15 He who justifies the wicked, and he who condemns the just, even both of them are hateful to YAHWEH.

16 Why is there hire in a fool's hand to get wisdom, and there is no heart for it?

17 A friend loves at all times, but a brother is born for distress. *(Pr 18:24)*

18 A man lacking heart strikes the hand, he pledges in the presence of his friend.

19 He loving strife loves rebellion, he who exalts his gate seeks destruction.

20 One crooked of heart does not find good, and he who is perverse in his tongue falls into evil.

21 He who fathers a fool has sorrow for it; yea, the father of a fool has no joy. *(Pr 10:1, Pr 13:1, Pr 19:23)*

22 A cheerful heart makes good healing, but a stricken spirit dries the bone. *(Pr 15:13, Pr 14:30)*

23 The wicked takes a bribe out of the bosom to pervert the paths of justice.

24 With the face of the wise is wisdom, but a fool's eyes are in the ends of the earth.

25 A foolish son is a vexation to his father, and bitterness to her who bore him. *(Pr 10:1, Pr 13:1, Pr 19:23)*

26 And it is not good to punish the just, to strike leaders for uprightness.

27 He who restrains his words knows knowledge, and of a rare spirit is a man of understanding.

28 Even a fool who is silent is counted wise, he who shuts his lips is counted as discerning.[1]

Chapter 18

1 He who separates himself seeks his own desire, he breaks out against all sound wisdom.[2]

2 A fool has no delight in understanding, but only in uncovering his heart. *(Pr 12:23, 13:16, Eccl 10:3)*

3 When the wicked comes, scorn also comes, and with shame comes reproach.

4 The words of a man's mouth are like deep waters, the fountain of wisdom like a flowing stream.

5 To lift up the face of the wicked is not good, nor to turn aside the righteous in judgment.

6 A fool's lips enter into strife, and his mouth calls for strokes. *(Pr 26:3)*

7 A fool's mouth is his destruction, and his lips are a snare of his soul.

8 The words of a slanderer are as wounds; yea, they go down into the innermost chambers of the belly. *(Pr 16:28, 18:8, 26:20-22, 19:9)*

---

1 Better to stay quiet and be thought the fool, then to open the mouth and remove all doubt.

2 The body of Messiah is a unified effort with judicial order and accountability to YHWH and each other. Those who set themselves up outside of YHWH's judicial order do so with pride and self interest.

9 And he who is slack in his work, he is a brother to a master destroyer.
10 The name of YAHWEH is a tower of strength, the righteous runs into it and is set on high.
11 The rich man's wealth is his strong city, and as a high wall in his imagination.
12 Before shattering, a man's heart is haughty, but humility goes before honor. *(Pr 15:33, 11:2, 16:18)*
13 If one turns back a matter before he hears, it is folly and shame to him. *(Pr 20:25, 18:17, Joh 7:24)*
14 The spirit of a man will endure his sickness, but who can bear a wounded spirit? *(Pr 15:13)*
15 The heart of the prudent gets knowledge, and the ear of the wise seeks knowledge.
16 A man's gift makes room for him and brings him before great men.
17 He who is first in his cause seems just, but his neighbor comes and searches him. *(Pr 18:13)*
18 The lot[1] causes arguments to cease, and divides between the mighty.
19 An offended brother is worse than a fortified city; yea, their contentions are like the bars of a castle.
20 A man's belly shall be satisfied with the fruit of his mouth; he shall be satisfied with the produce of his lips.
21 Death and life are in the hand of the tongue, and those who love it shall eat its fruit.*(Pr 12:13, 13:3, Mat 12:37)*
22 Whoever finds a wife finds a good thing, and gets favor from YAHWEH.
23 The poor speak with entreaties, but the rich answer fiercely.
24 A man of friends may be broken up, but there is a Lover who sticks closer than a brother.[2]

[1] Speaking of casting a lot to decide a matter, (Pr 16:33)

[2] Safety is not in the quantity of friends, but the quality.

Chapter 19

1 Better is the poor who walks in his integrity, than he who is crooked in his lips, and he is a fool.
2 Also, without knowledge the soul is not good, and he who hurries with his feet sins. *(Pr 29:20)*
3 The foolishness of man overturns his way, and his heart rages against YAHWEH.
4 Wealth adds many friends, but the poor is separated from his neighbor.
5 A false witness shall not be blameless; yea, a breather of lies shall not escape. *(Pr 19:9, 21:28, Ex 23:1)*
6 Many will beg the favor of a noble, and all are friends to him who gives gifts.
7 All the poor man's brothers hate him, and his friends also surely leave him; he pursues them with words, yet they are not.
8 He who gets wisdom loves his own soul, he who keeps understanding finds good.
9 A false witness shall not be blameless; yea, he who speaks lies shall perish. *(Deut 19:16-19, Pr 19:5)*
10 Luxury is not becoming for a fool, much less for a servant to rule over princes.
11 A man's discretion makes his anger slow, and his glory is to pass over a transgression.[3]*(Pr 14:29, 16:32)*
12 The king's wrath is like a lion's roar, but his favor is like dew on the grass.
13 A foolish son is a ruin to his father, and a wife's quarreling a never ending dripping. *(Pr 21:9,19, 27:15)*
14 House and riches are the legacy of

[3] Discernment is a great gift to know when to pursue a matter and when not to. If one does not have the gift of discernment then it is prudent to get advice from those who do (Pr 11:14, Pr 15:22).

fathers, but a prudent wife is from YAHWEH. *(Pr 31:30)*
15 Laziness makes one fall into a deep sleep, and an idle soul shall suffer hunger. *(Pr 6:9-11, 24:33-34)*
16 He who keeps the Commandment keeps his own soul, he who despises His ways shall die. *(Deut 30:15-20)*
17 He who has pity on the poor lends to YAHWEH, and He will repay his dealing to him.*(Pr 14:31, Math 25:40)*
18 Chasten your son, for there is hope, and do not set your soul on making him die.(*Pr 13:24, 22:6, 29:17*)
19 A man great of fury will bear the penalty, for if you deliver him, then you must do it again.
20 Hear advice and receive instruction, that you may be wise in your latter end. *(Pr 4:1, Pr 12:15)*
21 Many purposes are in a man's heart, but the counsel of YAHWEH shall stand. *(Pr 16:9)*
22 The desirableness of a man is his kindness, and a poor man is better than a liar.
23 The fear of YAHWEH tends to life, and he shall rest satisfied, he shall not be visited with evil. *(Pr 14:27)*
24 A lazy one puts his hand in a dish, and he will not return it to his mouth.
25 Strike a scorner and the simple will be shrewd; reprove a discerner, and he will discern knowledge.
26 He who assaults his father and chases his mother away, he is a son who causes shame and brings reproach. *(Pr 28:24, Deut 21:18-21)*
27 My son, cease to hear the discipline, and you will stray from the words of knowledge.
28 A worthless witness scorns justice, and the mouth of the wicked devours evil. *(Job 20:12-13)*
29 Judgments are prepared for scorners, and blows for the backs of fools. *(Pr 26:3, Pr 10:13, Pr 18:6)*

Chapter 20

1 Wine is a mocker, strong drink is noisy, and each one straying by it is not wise. *(Pr 23:29-32, Gen 9:21)*
2 The fear of a king is as the roar of a lion, he who stirs him up to anger wrongs his own soul. *(Pr 19:12)*
3 For a man to cease from strife is an honor, but every fool exposes himself.
4 The lazy man will not plow, after winter he begs at harvest, and nothing is there. *(Pr 6:6, Eccl 10:18)*
5 Counsel in a man's heart is like deep water, and a man of understanding will draw it out.
6 Most men will proclaim each his own kindness, but who can find a faithful man?
7 The just one walks in his integrity, blessed are his sons after him!
8 A king who sits on the throne of judgment does not look upon any evil with his eyes.[1]
9 Who can say, I have made my heart clean, I am pure from my sin? (*Ps 32:1-2)*
10 A stone and a smaller stone, an ephah and an unequal ephah, both are hateful to YAHWEH. (*Deut 25:23-26)*
11 Even a child is known by his acts, whether his work is pure, or upright.
12 The hearing ear and the seeing eye, YAHWEH has even made both of them. *(Ex 4:11, Joh 9:1-3)*
13 Do not love sleep, lest you become poor; open your eyes, be satisfied with bread. *(Pr 6:9-11, 19:15)*
14 Bad! Bad! says the buyer, but when it is left to him, then he boasts.
15 There is gold and a multitude of gems, but the lips of knowledge are a rare vessel.
16 Take the garment of the one who

[1] If this was said of an ancient king how much more for the covenant believer in Yahshua, including TV and Internet.

is surety for a stranger, and take a pledge from one who guarantees for strangers. *(Ex 22:26-27)*
17 Bread of deceit is sweet to a man, but afterwards his mouth shall be filled with gravel. *(Pr 9:17)*
18 Purposes are established in counsel; yea, make war with wise guidance. *(Pr 12:15, 15:22, Luk 14:31)*
19 A revealer of secrets walks about as a gossip, so do not meddle with him who opens his lips wide. *(Pr 17:9, 18:8, Pr 26:20-22)*
20 Whoever curses his father or his mother, his lamp shall be put out in deep darkness. *(Pr 30:11, 13:9, 24:20)*
21 An inheritance may be gotten quickly in the beginning, but the end of it shall not be blessed.
22 Do not say, I will repay evil; wait on YAHWEH, and He will save you.
23 A stone and a stone are hateful to YAHWEH; and a false balance is not good.*(Pr 11:1, Deut 25:23-26)*
24 The steps of a man are from YAHWEH, and what can man discern of his way? *(Pr 16:9)*
25 It is a snare to a man to say rashly, a holy thing, and after he vows to inquire about it. *(Eccl 5:4-5, Num 30:2)*
26 A wise king scatters the wicked and turns the wheel over them.
27 The spirit of man is the lamp of YAHWEH, searching all the inward parts of the heart.
28 Mercy and truth preserve the king, and his throne is upheld by mercy.
29 The glory of young men is their vigor, and the honor of old men is the gray head. *(Pr 16:31, Lev 19:32)*
30 The stripes of a wound cleanse away evil, and strokes the inward parts of the heart.

Chapter 21

1 As streams of waters, the king's heart is in the hand of YAHWEH; He inclines it wherever He desires.
2 Every way of a man is upright in his own eyes, but YAHWEH weighs the hearts. *(Pr 16:25, Pr 24:12)*
3 For YAHWEH, to do righteousness and justice is to be chosen more than sacrifice. *(1Sam 15:22, Mic 6:6-8)*
4 High eyes, a proud heart, and the plowing of the wicked, is sin.
5 The plans of the diligent tend only to plenty, but those of every hasty one only to poverty.
6 The getting of treasures by a lying tongue is a vapor driven by those who seek death.
7 The violence of the wicked destroys them, because they refuse to do justice.
8 The way of a guilty man is perverted; but the pure, his way is upright.
9 It is better to dwell on a corner of a housetop, than to share the house with a contentious woman.*(Pr 19:13,25:24)*
10 The soul of the wicked desires evil, his neighbor finds no favor in his eyes.
11 The simple is made wise when the scorner is punished, and when the wise is instructed, he receives knowledge.
12 The Righteous One wisely considers the house of the wicked: He overthrows the wicked for his evil.
13 Whoever stops his ears at the cry of the poor, he himself shall also call, and shall not be answered. *(1Joh 3:17)*
14 A gift in secret subdues anger; yea, a bribe in the bosom quiets strong wrath. *(Pr 18:16, Pr 19:6)*
15 It is joy to the just to do justice, but ruin shall come to the workers of iniquity.

16 The man who wanders out of the way of understanding shall rest in the congregation of departed spirits.

17 A man who loves pleasure shall be poor, he who loves wine and oil shall not be rich.

18 The wicked shall be a ransom for the just, and the treacherous in the place of the upright.

19 It is better to live in a land of the wilderness than with a woman of strivings and anger. *(Pr 19:13,25:24)*

20 A desirable treasure and oil are in the dwelling of the wise, but a foolish man devours it.

21 He who pursues righteousness and mercy finds life, righteousness and honor.

22 A wise one ascends the city of the mighty and topples the strength in which it trusts.

23 Whoever keeps his mouth and his tongue keeps his soul from distresses. *(Pr 10:19, 16:32, 25:28, 18:21, Ja 3:2)*

24 Proud, arrogant scorner is his name, he who deals in proud wrath.

25 The lust of the lazy man kills him, for his hands have refused to work.

26 He lusts with lust all the day long, but the righteous gives and does not withhold.

27 The sacrifice of the wicked is hateful, how much more when he brings it with an evil intent!

28 A false witness shall perish, but the man who hears will speak forever.

29 A wicked man hardens his face, but the upright establishes his way.

30 There is no wisdom nor understanding nor counsel before YAHWEH.

31 The horse is made ready for the day of battle, but the victory belongs to YAHWEH. *(Ps 20:7, Ps 33:17-18)*

Chapter 22

1 A good name is to be chosen rather than great riches; better is grace, rather than silver or gold. *(Eccl 7:1)*

2 The rich and poor meet together, YAHWEH is the Maker of all of them.

3 A prudent one sees the evil coming and hides himself, but the foolish go on and are punished. (*Pr 14:16, 27:12)*

4 The reward of humility is the fear of YAHWEH, riches, and honor, and life. *(Pr 15:33, Pr 10:27)*

5 Thorns and snares are in the way of the perverse, he who keeps his soul shall be far from them.

6 Train up a child on the opening of his way, even when he is old, he will not turn aside from it.[1]

7 The rich rules over the poor, and the borrower is servant to the lender.

8 He who sows injustice will reap evil, and the rod of his wrath shall fail.

9 He who has a good eye, he is blessed, for he gives of his bread to the poor. *(Pr 19:17, 2 Cor 9:6)*

10 Drive away the scorner and strife shall go out; yea, quarrels and shame shall cease.[2] *(Pr 26:20)*

11 He who loves pureness of heart, grace is on his lips; the king shall be his friend.

12 The eyes of YAHWEH keep knowledge, and He overthrows the words of the treacherous.

13 The lazy one says, A lion is outside! I will be killed in the streets!

14 The mouth of alien women is a deep pit; those despised by YAHWEH shall fall there. *(Pr 5:3)*

15 Foolishness is bound up in the

[1] The point to this scripture is that if you train a child from *"The opening of the way"* or the very beginning of his life, when he is older he will never leave the truths that have been ingrained into him. (Deut 6:7, Pr 13:24, 19:18, 23:13, 29:17)

[2] Being a true believer does not mean that you must keep negative, people with false accusing spirits around in the congregation.

heart of a child, the rod of correction
shall drive it far from him. *(Pr 23:13)*
16 One oppresses the poor to
multiply for himself, another gives to
the rich, only to come to poverty.
17 Stretch your ear and hear the
words of the wise, and set your heart
to my knowledge,
18 for they are pleasant when you
keep them within you; they shall all be
fixed together on your lips,
19 so that your trust may be in
YAHWEH. I caused you to know
today, even you.
20 Have I not written to you
yesterday and the day before with
counsels and knowledge,
21 to cause you to know the certainty
of the words of truth, to return the
words of truth to those who send to
you?
22 Rob not the poor because he is
poor, and oppress not the afflicted in
the gate.
23 For YAHWEH will contend for
their cause, and will plunder the soul
of their plunderers. *(Ps 12:5)*
24 Do not feed an owner of anger,
and do not go in with a man of fury,
25 lest you learn his paths and take a
snare for your soul.
26 Do not be one of those who strike
the hand, those who are sureties for
loans.[1] *(Pr 6:1-5)*
27 If you have nothing to repay, why
should he take away your bed from
under you?
28 Do not move the old landmark
which your fathers have set.*(Pr 23:10)*
29 Do you see a man who is diligent
in his business? He shall stand before
kings, he shall not stand before
obscure men.

Chapter 23

1 When you sit down to eat with a
ruler, look carefully at what is before
you,
2 and put a knife to your throat if
you are an owner of an appetite.
3 Do not desire his delicacies, for it is
the bread of lies.
4 Do not labor to be rich, cease from
your own understanding.
5 Will your eyes fly on it? And it is
not! For surely it makes wings for
itself, it flies into the heavens like an
eagle. *(Hag 1:6, Pr 27:24)*
6 Do not eat the bread of one having
an evil eye, and do not desire his
delicacies,
7 for as he thinks in his heart, so is
he! He says to you, Eat and drink, but
his heart is not with you.
8 You shall vomit the bit you have
eaten and spoil your pleasant words.
9 Do not speak in the ears of a fool,
for he will despise the good sense of
your words. *(Pr 14:7)*
10 Do not move the old landmark,
and do not enter into the fields of the
fatherless, *(Deut 19:14, Pr 22:28)*
11 for their Redeemer is mighty, He
will contend for their cause with you.
12 Bring your heart in for
instruction, and your ears to the words
of knowledge.
13 Do not withhold correction from a
child, for if you strike him with the
rod, he will not die. *(Pr 19:18, 22:15)*
14 You shall strike him with the rod,
and you shall deliver his soul from
Sheol.
15 My son, if your heart is wise, my
heart shall rejoice, even mine.
16 And my reins shall rejoice when
your lips speak right things.
17 Do not let your heart envy
sinners, but only be in the fear of
YAHWEH all the day.[2] *(Pr 1:7)*

---

[1] See note on Proverbs 6:3.

[2] A true believer should have more fear of YHWH, than fear of wanting to please man.

18 For surely there is a hereafter,
and your hope shall not be cut off.[3]
19 My son, hear, you, and be wise,
and advance your heart in the way.
20 Be not among heavy drinkers of
wine, with gluttons, flesh to
themselves,
21 for the drunkard and the glutton
lose all, and sleepiness shall clothe one
with rags. *(Pr 23:29-20)*
22 Listen to your father, this one
fathered you, and do not despise your
mother when she is old. *(Ex 20:12)*
23 Obtain the truth, and sell it not,
also wisdom, and instruction and
understanding.[2] *(Math 10:8)*
24 The father of the righteous shall
greatly rejoice, and he who fathers a
wise one shall even be glad in him.
25 Your father and your mother shall
be glad, and she who bore you shall
rejoice.
26 My son, give me your heart, and
let your eyes watch my ways.
27 For a harlot is a deep pit, and a
strange woman is a narrow well.
28 Surely she lies in wait, as for
prey, and she increases the
treacherous among men.
29 Who has woe, who sorrow? Who
has contentions, who has babbling?
Who has wounds without cause? Who
has dullness of eyes?
30 Those who stay long at the wine,
those who go to seek mixed wine.
31 Do not look at the wine when it is
red, when it gives its color in the cup,
when it goes down smoothly,
32 at its last it bites like a snake, and
it stings like an adder.
33 Your eyes shall look on strange
women, and your heart shall speak
perverse things;
34 yes, you shall be as one who lies
down in the middle of the sea, or as he
who lies on the top of a mast,
35 saying, They struck me! I was not
sick! They beat me, yet I did not know.
When I awaken I will add to it, I will
still seek it.[3]

Chapter 24

1 Do not envy evil men, nor desire to
be with them.
2 For their heart meditates on
violence, and their lips talk of
mischief.
3 Through wisdom a house is built,
and it is established by understanding,
4 and by knowledge the rooms shall
be filled with precious and pleasant
riches.
5 A wise warrior is in strength: yes, a
man of knowledge firms up power.
6 For you shall make war for yourself
by wise advice, and deliverance is in
the great counselor.
7 Wisdom is too high for a fool, he
does not open his mouth in the gate.
8 He who plots to do evil shall be
called a master of evil plots.
9 The plot of foolishness is sin, and
the scorner is hateful to men.
10 Your strength is narrow if you
faint in the day of distress,
11 if you hold back to deliver those
being taken to death, and those
stumbling for killing.
12 For you say, Behold, we did not
know this. Does not He who weighs
the heart consider it? And the One
who keeps your soul, does He not

[3] A true believer's hope is in the resurrection, Ps 16:9-11

[2] YHWH's truth is freely provided by His true servants throughout the world. Anyone selling the word of YHWH is committing a grave sin.

[3] The drunkard is so inebriated that he does not even realize that he is being abused, and yet when he awakens the next day he will go right back to his drunken stupor, (Pr 26:11, 2Pe 2:22).

know? Yea, He repays to a man according to his work.
13 My son, eat honey because it is good, and the honeycomb is sweet to your palate;
14 so shall knowledge of wisdom be to your soul when you have found there is a future reward and your hope is not cut off.
15 Oh wicked one, do not lie in wait against the dwelling of the righteous; do not violate his resting place,
16 for a righteous one falls seven times and rises up again, but the wicked shall stumble into evil.[1]
17 Do not rejoice when your enemy falls, and do not let your heart be glad when he stumbles, *(Pr 17:5, Ps 35:15)*
18 that YAHWEH not see and it be evil in His eyes, and He turn away His anger from him.
19 Do not burn in anger because of evildoers, and do not envy the wicked;
20 for no reward shall be to the wicked; the lamp of the wicked will be put out.
21 My son, fear YAHWEH and the king; do not meddle with those who change, *(Ro 13:1-2)*
22 for their calamity shall rise suddenly, and who knows the ruin of both of them?
23 These also are for the wise: to respect persons in judgment is not good.
24 He who says to the wicked, You are righteous; the peoples shall curse him; nations shall abhor him.
25 But to those who rebuke, it is pleasant, and a good blessing comes to them.
26 He kisses the lips of one who returns right words.
27 Prepare your work outside, and make it fit for yourself in the field, and afterwards build your house.
28 Do not be a witness against your neighbor without cause, or deceive with your lips. *(Pr 25:18, Lev 6:2-5)*
29 Do not say, I will do to him as he has done to me; I will repay each according to his work. *(Math 5:39, Rev 20:12)*
30 I went over the field of the lazy man, and by the vineyard of the man lacking heart,
31 and, lo, it was all risen up with thistles; nettles had covered its surface, and its stone wall was broken down.
32 And I beheld, I set my heart on it, I looked, I received instruction.
33 A little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to lie down;
34 so shall your poverty come stalking, and your want like a man with a shield. *(Pr 10:4, Pr 6:9-11)*

Chapter 25

1 These are the proverbs of Solomon which the men of Hezekiah king of Judah copied out:
2 The glory of Elohim is to conceal a matter, but the glory of kings is to search out a matter. *(Deut 29:29)*
3 The heavens for height, and the earth for depth, but the heart of kings is unsearchable. *(Ro 11:33)*
4 Take away the dross from the silver, and a vessel of the refiner's shall appear.
5 Take away the wicked from before the king, and his throne is established in righteousness.
6 Do not honor yourself before a king, and do not stand in the place of the great.
7 For it is better that he shall say to you, Come up here! Than that you should be put lower before a noble

[1] The true spirit led believer never quits, even if he falters, he will repent and move on, Mic 7:8.

whom your eyes have seen. *(Luk 14:7-11)*

8 Do not go out to fight hastily, lest you know not what to do in the end of it, when your neighbor has put you to shame. *(Pr 17:14, Luk 14:31-32)*

9 Contend for your cause with your neighbor, and do not uncover the secret of another, *(Pr 11:13)*

10 lest he who hears put you to shame, and your evil report not turn back.

11 A word rightly spoken is like apples of gold in settings of silver. *(Pr 16:24)*

12 As a ring of gold, and an ornament of fine gold, so is a wise reprover on an obedient ear.

13 Like the cold of snow in harvest time, so is a faithful messenger to those sending him, for he refreshes the soul of his masters. *(Pr 10:26, 13:17)*

14 A man boasting himself of a false gift is like clouds and wind, but with no rain. *(Jer 5:13, Mic 2:11)*

15 In being slow to anger, a ruler is persuaded; and a soft tongue shatters the bone. *(Pr 15:1, Eccl 10:4)*

16 Have you found honey? Eat only your fill lest you be satiated and vomit it out.

17 Make your foot rare from your neighbor's house, lest he be full of you and hate you.

18 A man who gives false witness against his neighbor is a maul, and a sword and a sharp arrow. *(Pr 12:18)*

19 Confidence in a traitor in time of distress is like a bad tooth and a slipping foot.

20 As he who takes away a garment in cold weather, and as vinegar on soda, so is he who sings songs on a heart in misery.

21 If your enemy is hungry, give him bread to eat, and if he is thirsty, give him water to drink,

22 for you shall heap coals of fire on his head, and YAHWEH shall reward you.[1]

23 The north wind brings rain, so does a secret tongue an angry face.

24 It is better to dwell in the corner of the housetop than to share a house with a contentious woman. *(Pr 21:9)*

25 Like cold waters to a weary soul, so is a good report from a far country. *(Ro 10:18)*

26 The righteous falling down before the wicked is like a fouled fountain and a ruined spring.

27 It is not good to eat much honey, and to search out their own honor is not honor. *(Pr 25:16, Pr 27:2)*

28 A man to whom there is no control to his spirit is like a broken down city without a wall. *(Pr 16:32)*

Chapter 26

1 As snow in summer, and as rain in harvest, so honor is not right for a fool.

2 As the wandering bird, as the swallow in its flying, so the causeless curse shall never come. *(Pr 27:8)*

3 A whip for the horse, a bridle for the donkey, and a rod for the back of fools. *(Pr 10:13, 19:29)*

4 Answer not a fool according to his foolishness, lest you become like him, even you.

5 Answer a fool according to his foolishness, that he not be wise in his own eyes.[2]

6 He that sends a message by a fool's hand cuts off his own feet and drinks violence. *(Pr 10;26)*

7 As the legs of the lame are weak, so is a proverb in the mouth of fools.

---

1 By showing kindness to an enemy will shame him and bring blessing to the giving person, (Math 5:44, Ro 12:20).

2 Verses 4-5- It takes wisdom to know whether to answer a fool, to quiet him or to ignore him if his intention is too merely entice a circular argument.

8 As he binding a stone on a sling, so is he giving honor to a fool.

9 As a thorn goes up into the drunkard's hand, so is a proverb in the mouth of fools.

10 Great is the Former of all things, but he who hires a fool is like one who hires those passing by.

11 As a dog that returns to his own vomit, so a fool repeats his foolishness. *(2 Pe 2:22)*

12 Do you see a man wise in his own eyes? There is more hope for a fool than for him.[1]

13 The lazy one says, A lion is in the way, a lion is between the streets!

14 As the door turns on its hinge, so is the lazy one on his bed. *(Pr 6:9, 20:13)*

15 The lazy one buries his hand in the dish; he is weary to bring it back to his mouth.[2]

16 The lazy one is wiser in his own eyes than seven that return a wise answer. *(Pr 26:12)*

17 One passing by, crossing himself over strife that is not his own, is like one who grabs a dog's ears.[3] *(Pr 3:30)*

18 Like a madman throwing sparks, arrows, and death,

19 so is a man who deceives his neighbor and says, Am I not joking?

20 The fire goes out where there is no wood, so the strife ceases where there is no gossiper.

21 As coal to burning embers, and wood to fire, so is a contentious man to kindle strife. *(Pr 14:17)*

22 The words of a gossiper are as delicacies, and they go down into the chambers of the heart.[4]

23 As with silver dross spread over an earthen vessel, so are burning lips and a wicked heart.

24 He who hates, dissembles with his lips, for he lays up deceit in his inner being;

25 when his voice is gracious, do not believe him, for he has seven hateful things in his heart.

26 Though his hatred is covered by guile, his evil shall be revealed in the assembly.

27 He who digs a pit shall fall into it, and he who rolls a stone shall have it turn back on him.[5]

28 A lying tongue hates the ones it crushes, and a flattering mouth works stumbling.

Chapter 27

1 Do not boast in the day of tomorrow, for you do not know what a day may bring forth. *(Math 6:31-33, Jac 4:13-16)*

2 Let another praise you, and not your own mouth; let it be a stranger, and not your own lips.*(Pr 25:27)*

3 A stone is heavy, and sand a burden, but a fool's anger is heavier than both.

4 Fury is fierce, and anger overflows, but who can stand before jealousy?

5 Better is degrading chastisement in the open than concealed love.

6 Faithful are the wounds of a lover, and plentiful are the kisses of a hated one.[6]

7 One who is full tramples a honeycomb, but to a hungry soul every bitter thing is sweet.

8 A man wandering from his place is

---

1 Pride will stop one from seeking wise counsel and give false self-assurance, Rev 3:17.

2 Lazy people lack any ambition whatsoever.

3 It is gossip to get involved and give opinion in matters that don't pertain to you.

4 Verses 20-22, 24-26 (Pr 16:28, 17:9, 18:8, 20:19)

5 In the end one will reap what he sows.

6 A faithful friend may give constructive criticism, which mends will heal, as where the false flattery of a hated one is endless and unhelpful.

like a bird that wanders from the nest. *(Pr 26:2)*
9 Ointment and perfume rejoice the heart, and one's friend is sweet from the counsel of the soul.
10 Do not forsake your friend, nor your father's friend, and do not go into your brother's house in the day of your calamity, for a near neighbor is better than a brother far away.
11 My son, become wise and give joy to my heart, so that I may return a word to him that taunts me.
12 A prudent man sees the evil and hides himself; the simple go on and are punished. *(Pr 22:3)*

13 Take the garment of him who is surety for a stranger, and hold him in pledge who is surety for a strange woman. *(Pr 20:16)*
14 He who rises early in the morning and blesses his friend with a loud voice, it is counted as cursing to him.
15 Drops that never cease on a rainy day, and a contentious woman are alike;
16 he who hides her hides the wind, and the ointment of his right hand cries out.
17 Iron sharpens iron, so a man sharpens his friend's face.[1]
18 The keeper of the fig tree eats its fruit, so he keeping his master is honored.
19 As the face reflects the face in the water, so the heart of man reflects a man.
20 Sheol and destruction are never satisfied, so the eyes of man are never satisfied. *(Eccl 1:8, 6:7, Pr 15:11)*
21 The refining pot tries silver, and the furnace tries gold, but a man is tried by the mouth of his praise.
22 If you pound a fool in the mortar with a pestle amidst grain, his foolishness will not turn away from him.
23 Know well the face of your flock; set your heart on your herds,
24 for wealth is not forever, nor the crown from generation to generation.
25 When the hay is revealed, and the new grass is seen, and the mountain plants are taken up,
26 the lambs will be for your clothing, and the he-goats the price for a field,
27 and there will be goat's milk enough for your food, for the food of your household, and for the life of your maidens.[2]

Chapter 28

1 The wicked flee though no one is pursuing, but the righteous are as bold as a lion. *(Lev 26:17, 36, 2 Kgs 7:6-7)*
2 Because of transgression in a land, many are its rulers, but it is prolonged by a man who has understanding, who knows right.
3 A poor man that oppresses the weak is like a sweeping rain that leaves no food.
4 Those who forsake the Torah praise the wicked, but those who keep the Torah strive with them.[3]
5 Evil men do not understand justice, but those seeking YAHWEH understand all.
6 Better is the poor walking in his integrity than the crooked of two ways, even if he is rich. *(Ja 1:8)*
7 He who keeps the Torah is a wise son, but he who is one feeding gluttons shames his father. *(Pr 3:1-4, 1Cor 15:33)*
8 He who multiplies his wealth by

1 Good friends help to make each other spiritually stronger, 1 Cor 15:33.

2 Verses 23-27- If you care for your flock it will produce all your needs.

3 The lawless will praise the wicked because there are no moral absolutes in their lives, Ro 1:28-32.

interest and usury, he shall gather it for him who pities the weak. *(Ex 22:25)*

9 Whoever turns aside his ear from hearing the Torah, even his prayer is an abomination.[1] *(Pr 15:8, Ps 109:7)*

10 He who causes the upright to go astray in an evil way shall fall into his own pit, and the blameless shall inherit good. *(Pr 26:27, Ps 57:6)*

11 A rich man is wise in his own eyes, but the discerning poor searches him out.

12 When the righteous rejoice, great is the glory, but when the wicked rise, a man will be sought for.

13 He who covers his sins will not fare well, but he who confesses and forsakes them shall have pity. (*Ps 32:1-2,5, ps 51:1-4, 1 Joh 1:9)*

14 Blessed is a man who fears YAHWEH always! But he who hardens his heart falls into evil. *(Pr 23:17)*

15 The wicked ruler is a roaring lion and a charging bear over a poor people.

16 The ruler that lacks understanding even adds oppressions, but he who hates unjust gain prolongs his days.

17 Any man oppressed with the blood of a soul shall flee to the pit; let them not uphold him.

18 He who walks uprightly shall be saved, but he who is perverse in his ways shall fall at once.

19 He who tills his ground shall have plenty of bread, but one pursuing vanities shall have much poverty. *(Pr 12:11)*

20 A faithful man shall be full of blessings, but he rushing to be rich shall not be innocent.

21 To respect faces is not good, yea, for a man will transgress for a piece of bread.

22 A man with an evil eye hastens after wealth, but he does not know that poverty will come on him.

23 He who reproves a man afterwards finds grace, more than he who flatters with the tongue.

24 He who robs his father or his mother, and says, It is not a transgression, he shall be a partner to a man who corrupts.

25 The proud in soul stirs up strife, but he who is trusting on YAHWEH shall be abundantly satisfied.

26 He who trusts in his own heart is a fool, but he who walks in wisdom shall be delivered. *(Pr 3:5)*

27 He who gives to the poor shall not lack, but he who hides his eyes shall have plenty of curses. *(Pr 11:24, 19:17)*

28 When the wicked rise, a man hides himself; but when they perish, the righteous multiply.

Chapter 29

1 A man who hardens his neck when reproved shall be suddenly broken, and there will be no healing. *(Ex 32:9)*

2 When the righteous increase, the people rejoice; when the wicked rule, the people sigh.

3 He who loves wisdom gladdens his father, but a feeder of harlots wastes wealth.

4 A king establishes a land by justice, but a man taking bribes tears it down.

5 A man who flatters his neighbor spreads a net for his steps.

6 A snare is in the transgression of an evil man, but the righteous sing and rejoice.

7 The righteous attends to the cause

---

[1] The Torah is the moral code of conduct in life and breaking the Torah is sin (1 Joh 3:4). Those who rebelliously turn away from hearing the Torah, even their prayer becomes an abomination.

of the poor; the wicked does not discern knowledge. *(Pr 31:8-9)*
8 Scornful men blast a city, but the wise turn away anger.
9 If a wise man disputes with a foolish man, either he shakes, or laughs, and there is no rest.
10 Men of blood hate the blameless, but the upright seek his soul.
11 A fool brings out all of his spirit, but holding back, the wise quiets it.
12 To a ruler who listens to lying words, all his ministers are wicked.
13 The poor and the injurious man meet together. YAHWEH enlightens the eyes of both.
14 A king that truly judges the weak shall have his throne established forever. *(2Sam 12:1-6, 2 Sam 7:11-13)*
15 The rod and reproof give wisdom, but a boy let loose causes shame to his mother. *(Pr 13:14, 22:15)*
16 When the wicked are multiplied, transgression increases; but the righteous shall see their fall.
17 Discipline your son, and you will get rest, and it will give delight to your soul.
18 Where there is no vision, the people are unrestrained. But blessed is he, the one keeping the Torah.
19 A servant is not corrected by words; though he discerns, there is no answer.
20 Do you see a man hasty in his words? There is more hope for a fool than of him. *(Pr 26;12)*
21 He who pampers his servant from youth, even afterwards in his days he shall be his successor.
22 An angry man stirs up contention, and a furious one abounds in transgression. *(Pr 14:17)*
23 The pride of man brings him low, but the humble of spirit takes hold of honor.
24 He who shares with a thief hates his soul; he hears a curse, but does not tell it. *(Lev 5:1)*
25 The fear of man brings a snare, but he trusting YAHWEH is set on high. *(Pr 18;10, 28:25)*
26 Many seek the face of the ruler, but the judgment of each man is from YAHWEH.
27 An unjust man is an abomination to the righteous, and the upright of way are an abomination to the wicked.

Chapter 30

1 The words of Agur the son of Jakeh, the burden: The man spoke to Ithiel, even to Ithiel and Ucal, saying,
2 Surely I am more brutish than anyone, and I do not have the understanding of a man.
3 I have not learned wisdom, but I do know the knowledge of holiness.
4 Who has gone up to Heaven, and come down? Who has gathered the wind in His fists? Who has bound the waters in His garments? Who has made all the ends of the earth to rise? What is His name, and what is His Son's name? Surely you know.[1]
5 Every Word of Elohim is refined, He is a shield to those who seek refuge in Him.
6 Do not add to His Words, that He not reprove you, and you be found a liar. *(Deut 4:2, 12:32, Rev 22:18)*
7 I have asked two things from You: Do not hold back from me before I die:
8 Remove vanity and a lying word far from me, do not give me poverty or riches; tear for me my portion of bread,
9 that I not become satisfied and deceive, and say, Who is YAHWEH?

[1] This proverb demonstrates the creative power of Yahweh the Father and Yahweh the Son. (Gen 1:26, Eccl 12:1, Ps 2:7, Acts 13:33, Ps 89:26).

Or that I not become poor and steal,
and violate the name of my Elohim.
10 Do not slander a servant to his
master, that he not curse you, and you
be found guilty.
11 A generation curses its father, and
does not bless its mother,
12 a generation that is pure in its
own eyes, and yet not washed from its
own filth.
13 There is a generation, Oh how
lofty are its eyes! And its eyelids are
lifted up,
14 a generation whose teeth are like
swords, and its jaw teeth like knives, to
devour the poor from the earth, and
the needy from among men.
15 The leech has two daughters
crying, Give! Give! Three things are
not satisfied, four never have said,
Enough!
16 Sheol, and the barren womb, the
earth not filled with water, and the
fire, these never said, Enough!
17 The eye that mocks its father and
despises to obey its mother, the ravens
of the valley shall pick it out, the sons
of the eagle shall eat it.
18 Three things are too wonderful
for me; yea, I do not know the way of
four:
19 The way of an eagle in the
heavens, the way of a snake on a rock,
the way of a ship in the heart of the
sea, and the way of a man with a
virgin.
20 So is the way of an adulterous
woman: she eats, and wipes her
mouth, and says, I have done no evil.
21 The earth quakes under three
things; yea, it is not able to bear up
under four:
22 Under a servant when he reigns,
and a fool when he is filled with food,
23 under a hated one when she is
married, under a slave-girl when she is
heir to her mistress.
24 Four things are little on the earth,
but they are the wise ones of those
made wise:
25 The ants are a people not strong,
yet they prepare their food in summer;
(Pr 6:6-8)
26 rock badgers are not a powerful
people, yet they make their houses in
the rock;
27 the locusts have no king, yet they
go out in a swarm, all of them;
28 the lizard you can take with the
hands, yet it is in king's palaces.
29 There are three things that do
good in a march; yea, four that do
good in walking:
30 A lion is mighty among beasts,
and he does not turn away from facing
all;
31 one girded in loins, and a he-goat,
and a king - there is no rising up with
him.
32 If you have been foolish in lifting
yourself up, or if you have plotted evil,
lay your hand on your mouth!
33 Surely, the squeezing of milk
brings curds, and the squeezing of the
nose brings blood, so the squeezing of
wrath brings out strife.[1]

Chapter 31

1 The words of King Lemuel, the
burden that his mother taught him:
2 What, my son? And what, the son
of my womb? And what, the son of my
vows?
3 Do not give your strength to
women, or your ways to that which
wipes out kings.
4 It is not for kings, O Lemuel, it is
not for kings to drink wine, nor for
princes to lust for fermented drink,
(Eccl 10:17, Pr 20:1)
5 that they not drink and forget what
is decreed, and pervert the right of the

[1] Someone prone to anger must show self-control or pay the consequences.

sons of affliction. *(Lev 10:8-11, Deut 16:19)*
6 Give fermented drink to one perishing, and wine to the bitter of soul,
7 let him drink and forget his poverty, and remember his misery no more.
8 Open your mouth for the dumb, in the cause of all the sons of those passing away.
9 Open your mouth, judge righteously, and defend the poor and needy. *(Lev 19:15, Pr 29:7)*
10 Who can find a woman of virtue? For her value is far above jewels.[1] *(Pr 12:4)*
11 The heart of her husband trusts in her, so that he has no lack of gain.
12 She deals good with him, and not evil, all the days of her life.
13 She seeks wool and flax, and she works with her hands with delight.[2]
14 She is like the merchant ships, she brings in her food from afar.[3]
15 She also rises while it is still night and gives game to her household, and a portion to her maidens.[4]
16 She has examined a field and takes it; she plants a vineyard from the fruit of her hands.[5]
17 She has girded her loins with strength, and has made her arms strong.[6]
18 She tastes whether her gain is good, her lamp is not put out by night.[7]
19 She has sent forth her hands on the distaff, and her hands have held the spindle.[8]
20 She spreads out her hands to the poor, yea, she stretches out her hands to the needy.[9]
21 She is not afraid of the snow for her household, for all her household are clothed with scarlet.
22 She makes herself coverings of tapestry; her clothing is fine linen and purple.[10]
23 Her husband is known in the gates, when he sits with the elders of the land.[11]
24 She makes fine linen garments, and sells, and she delivers belts to the merchant.[12]
25 Strength and dignity are her clothing, and she shall rejoice at the day to come.[13]
26 She opens her mouth in wisdom, and the law of kindness is on her tongue.

---

1 Verses 10-29 speaks about the true biblical woman. She is one that takes care of her home, including her husband and children. This does not restrict her from running businesses from her home, preparing for the future and making household goods.

2 The proverbs 31 woman is not afraid to work with her hands and get them dirty.

3 She is one that diligently finds the best deals on daily provisions and knows how to get them.

4 She is an early riser and even has household servants that she cares for.

5 Preparing a field was an extremely hard task. Not only does she know how to negotiate the price of purchase but she also knows how to prepare it to produce fruit.

6 Strength comes internally from knowing what one wants to accomplish and externally from hard work and exercise.

7 She not only talks the talk, but she walks the walk.

8 She has many talents and one is knowing how to make her own clothes for the family.

9 Even though she is extremely busy and successful she still has a heart for the poor.

10 Fine linen and purple, showing the dignity and honor that she has earned, Rev 19:8.

11 You cannot have a proverbs 31 woman without having a Proverb 31 man.

12 She not only makes the clothing for the household, but even sells these quality clothes for income.

13 The proverbs 31 woman has no anxiety for the future because she is living a righteous life and can only have anticipation of her reward in the kingdom to come.

27 She watches the ways of her household, and does not eat the bread of idleness.[1]
28 Her children rise up and call her blessed, her husband also, for he praises her:[2]
29 Many are the daughters who work with virtue, but you rise above them all!
30 Charm may be deceitful, and beauty vain, but a woman who fears YAHWEH, she shall be praised.[3]
31 Give her of the fruit of her hands, and let her works praise her in the gates.

---

1 The proverbs 31 woman is many things, but one of them is NOT idle.

2 We reap what we sow and a woman of such dignity is upheld by her family members.

3 Charm many times is simply false flattery and beauty passes one's life quickly, but the woman who fears YHWH will have an eternal reward.

Book of Job

Chapter 1

1 There was a man in the land of Uz[1],
his name was Job.[2] And this man was
perfect and upright, and fearing
Elohim, and turning away from evil.
2 And seven sons and three
daughters were born to him.
3 And his possessions were seven
thousand sheep, and three thousand
camels, and five hundred yoke of oxen,
and five hundred she-donkeys, and a
very great household, so that this man
was greater than all the sons of the
east.
4 And his sons feasted in the house
of each one on his day[3]. And they sent
and called their three sisters to eat and
to drink with them.
5 And it happened, when the day of
feasting had gone around, Job would
send and sanctify them. And he would
rise early in the morning and offer
burnt sacrifices according to all their
number. For Job said, It may be that
my sons have sinned, and cursed
Elohim in their hearts. This, Job
always did.[4] *(Job 42:8)*
6 And a day came when the sons of
The Elohim came to present them-
selves before YAHWEH. And Satan
also came among them.[5]
7 And YAHWEH said to Satan,
From where have you come? And
Satan answered YAHWEH and said,
From going to and fro in the earth,
and from walking up and down in it.[6]
8 And YAHWEH said to Satan,
Have you set your heart on My servant
Job because there is none like him in
the earth, a perfect and upright man,
fearing Elohim and turning away from
evil?[7]
9 And Satan answered YAHWEH
and said, Does Job fear Elohim for
nothing?
10 Have You not made a hedge for
him, and for his house, and for all that
is his all around? You have blessed the
work of his hands, and his livestock
have increased in the land.
11 But put out Your hand now, and
touch against all that is his, and see if
he will not then curse You to Your
face.
12 And YAHWEH said to Satan,
Behold, all that is his is in your hand!
Only, do not lay your hand on him.
And Satan went out from the face of
YAHWEH.[8]
13 And a day came when his sons

---

[1] Uz was in modern day Jordan. Gen 36:28, Jer 25:20, Lam 4:21

[2] The book of Job is somewhat of a mystery as it is evident that Job was a historical character and even mentioned in Eze 14:14, and Jac 5:11. It is uncertain who wrote the book. The time frame seems to indicate that the historical setting is during the time of the patriarch Abraham as there is not a mention of the nation of Israel. Also, Job lived more than 140 yrs (42:16), his wealth was measured in cattle (1:3) and he acted as priest for his family (1:5). The fact that the Hebrew word "*kesitah*" is used for silver in 42:11, also fits with the patriarch time period of the second millennium B.C. (Gen 33:19). The land of "*Uz*" is modern day Jordan and ancient Edom.

[3] Speaking of each ones birthday.

[4] Celebrating birthdays was mostly a pagan custom in ancient days and usually only kings and the very wealthy did so, Eccl 7:1.

[5] Cherubs here are called "*sons of Elohim*" as also in Job 38:7 and gen 6:2. It is not known why Satan would be allowed to be with them.

[6] Satan is called the " *god of this world*" (2Cor 4:4)and has access to roam the earth. However, when Yahshua returns, then Satan will be bound during the millennium (Rev 20:2) and afterward punished for good.

[7] It is the fear of YAHWEH that leads to repentance and righteousness.

[8] This shows that Satan can only perform what Yahweh allows and true believers must realize the spirit in them is stronger than the spirit of Satan (1 Joh 4:4).

and his daughters were eating and drinking wine in their brother's house, the first-born.

14 And a messenger came to Job and said, The oxen were plowing, and the donkeys were feeding beside them.

15 And the Sabeans[1] fell on them and took them away. And they killed the young men with the mouth of the sword; and I, I alone have escaped to tell you.

16 While this one was still speaking, this other also came and said, The fire of Elohim has fallen from the heavens and has burned up the sheep and the young men. And it has consumed them; and I, I alone have escaped to tell you.

17 While this one was still speaking, this other also came and said, The Chaldeans made out three bands and swooped down on the camels. And they have taken them away. And they have killed the young men with the mouth of the sword; and I, I alone have escaped to tell you.

18 While this one was still speaking, this other came and said, Your sons and your daughters were eating and drinking wine in the house of their brother, the first-born.

19 And, behold! A great wind came from the wilderness and touched the four corners of the house. And it fell on the young men and they died; and I, I alone have escaped to tell you.

20 And Job rose up and tore his robe, and shaved his head. And he fell down on the ground and worshiped.

21 And he said, I came naked out of my mother's womb, and naked I shall return there. YAHWEH gave, and YAHWEH has taken away. Blessed be the name of YAHWEH. *(Gen 3:19, Eccl 5:15, 1 Sam 2:7-8)*

22 In all this Job did not sin, nor charge wrong to Elohim.

Chapter 2

1 And it happened that a day came when the sons of The Elohim came to present themselves before YAHWEH. And Satan also came among them to present himself before YAHWEH.

2 And YAHWEH said to Satan, From where have you come? And Satan answered YAHWEH and said, From going to and fro in the earth, and walking up and down in it.

3 And YAHWEH said to Satan, Have you set your heart on My servant Job, that there is none like him in the earth, a perfect and upright man, fearing Elohim, and turning away from evil? And he is still holding to his integrity, although you incited Me against him, to swallow him for nothing.

4 And Satan answered YAHWEH and said, Skin for skin. Yea, all that a man has he will give for his life.

5 But indeed put out Your hand now and touch his bone and his flesh, and he will curse You to Your face.

6 And YAHWEH said to Satan, Behold, he is in your hand; but preserve his life.

7 And Satan went out from before the face of YAHWEH. And he struck Job with bad burning ulcers from the sole of his foot to the top of his head.

8 And he took a broken piece of pottery with which to scrape himself. And he sat down among the ashes.

9 And his wife said to him, Are you still holding fast to your integrity? Curse Elohim and die!

10 But he said to her, You speak like

---

1 Sabeans were a nomadic tribe that fits the time-frame of the patriarchs. Job 6:19 called them traveling merchants and their descendents later made up the spice trade routes coming from Sheba in south Arabia. Also see 1Kgs 10:1-13, Ps 72:10-15, Is 60:6, Eze 27:22, Joel 3:8.

the foolish ones speak. Also, shall we receive good at the hand of The Elohim, and shall we not receive evil? In all this Job did not sin with his lips.

11 And three friends of Job heard of all this evil that had come on him. And they each one came from his own place: Eliphaz the Temanite[1]; Bildad the Shuhite; and Zophar the Naamathite. And they had met together to come to lament with him, and to comfort him.

12 And when they lifted up their eyes from a distance and did not recognize him, they lifted up their voice and wept then. And each one tore his robe. And they sprinkled dust on their heads toward the heavens.

13 And they sat down with him on the ground seven days and seven nights. And no one was speaking a word to him, for they saw that his pain was very great.

Chapter 3

1 After this Job opened his mouth and cursed the day of his birth. *(Eccl 7:1)*

2 And Job answered and said:

3 Let the day perish in which I was born, and the night which said, A man-child has been conceived.

4 Let that day be darkness! Let not Elohim look on it from above, nor let the light shine on it.

5 Let darkness and the shadow of death seize upon it. Let a cloud dwell on it. Let all that blackens the day terrify it.

6 As for that night, let darkness seize it! Let it not be joined to the days of the year. Let it not come into the number of the months.

7 Behold, let that night be barren; let no joyful voice come in it.

8 Let those curse it who curse the day, those ready to stir up Leviathan.[2]

9 Let the stars of its twilight be dark; let it look for light, but have none, let it wait for eyelids of the dawn.

10 For it did not shut up the doors of my mother's womb; nor did it hide toil from my eyes.

11 Why did I not die from the womb, come from the womb and give up the spirit?

12 Why did the knees go before me; or why the breasts, that I should suck?

13 For now I would have lain down and have been quiet; I would have slept. Then I would have been at rest,

14 with kings and wise men of the earth, who built ruins for themselves;

15 or with chiefs; they had gold, they filled their houses with silver;

16 or as a hidden miscarriage, I would not have been, like infants who never saw light.

17 There the wicked cease from turmoil, and there the weary are at rest;

18 the prisoners are at ease together, they hear not the voice of the slave driver;

19 the small and the great, he is there, and the slave free from his master.

20 Why is light given to the miserable one, and life to him who is bitter in soul;

21 who is waiting for death, but it is not; and they dig for it more than for treasures?

22 They are rejoicing to exultation. They are glad when they find the grave.

23 To a man whose way is hidden, Elohim has made a hedge about him.

24 For my sighing comes before my

[1] A descendant of Esau Gen 36:10,15.

[2] Leviathan is a sea creature created by YHWH. (Ps 74:14, Ps 104:26, Job 41:1, Is 27:1)

food; and my groanings are poured out like the waters.
25 For the dreadful thing I dreaded has come on me; and that which I feared has come to me.
26 I am not at ease, nor am I at rest; nor am I quiet; yet turmoil comes.

Chapter 4

1 And Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said:
2 Shall one try a word with you, you who are weary? But who can hold back with words?
3 Behold, you have instructed many; and you have made weak hands strong.
4 Your words have upheld him who was stumbling, and you have made feeble knees strong.
5 But now it has come upon you, and you faint. It touches you, and you are dismayed.
6 Is not your fear of Elohim your confidence; your hope the integrity of your ways?
7 I beg you, remember, he who was being innocent, perished? Or where were the righteous cut off?
8 As I have seen, the ones who plow iniquity and sow misery reap the same.
9 They perish from the breath of Elohim, and by the blast of His anger they are consumed.
10 The lion roars; and the voice of the lion and the teeth of the young lions are broken;
11 the old lion is perishing for lack of prey; and the lioness' offspring are scattered.
12 Now a word was stolen to me, and my ear received a whisper of it.
13 In thoughts from the visions of the night, when deep sleep falls on men,
14 fear and trembling met me, and made my many bones dread.
15 Then a spirit passed before my face; the hair of my flesh stood up;
16 it stood still, but I could not discern its form; an image was before my eyes; there was silence; then I heard a voice:
17 Is man more righteous than Elohim? Or a strong man more pure than his Maker?
18 Behold, He puts no trust in His servants; and He charges His messengers with error!
19 How much more those that dwell in houses of clay; whose foundation is in the dust; they crush them before the moth!
20 They are shattered from morning till evening; they perish forever with no one regarding.
21 Is not their tent cord pulled up within them? They die, but not with wisdom.

Chapter 5

1 Call now. Is there anyone answering you? And to which of the Holy ones will you turn?
2 For vexation kills the fool, and passion causes the simple to die.
3 I have seen the fool taking root, but suddenly I cursed his dwelling place.
4 His sons are far from safety; yea, they are crushed in the gate; nor is there any deliverer.
5 The hungry eat his harvest, and take him to the thorns, and the snare snuffs up their wealth.
6 For affliction does not come forth from the dust, nor does trouble spring up out of the ground;
7 for man is born to trouble, and the sons of the flame rise, flying upward.
8 Truly, I would seek El, and to Elohim I would put my plea,
9 who is doing great things, and

there is no searching them; marvelous
things to which is no numbering,
10 giving rain on the face of the
earth and sending water on the face of
the field;
11 to set the lowly on high; yea, the
mourners become very high in safety;
12 breaking the plots of the crafty,
nor did their hands perform the
undertaking.
13 He takes the wise in their
craftiness, and the counsel of the wily
ones is hastened.
14 They meet with darkness by day,
and grope in the noonday as in the
night.
15 But He saves the needy from the
sword, from their mouth, and from the
hand of the mighty.
16 And there is hope for the weak;
and injustice shuts her mouth.
17 Behold, happy is the man whom
Elohim corrects; and despise not the
chastisement of the Almighty. *(Heb
12:5-11, Ps 94:12, Pr 3:11)*
18 For He wounds, and He binds up.
He shatters, and His hands heal.
19 He will deliver you in six troubles;
yea, in seven no evil shall touch you.
20 In famine He will redeem you
from death; and in war from the hand
of the sword.
21 You shall be hidden from the
whip of the tongue; and you shall not
be afraid of violence when it comes.
22 You shall laugh at violence and at
famine; and you shall not be afraid of
the beasts of the earth.
23 For you shall be in covenant with
the stones of the field; and the beasts
of the field will be at peace with you.
24 And you shall know that your tent
is in peace; and you shall visit your
home and shall miss nothing.
25 And you shall know that your
seed will be numerous, and your
offspring as the grass of the earth.
26 You shall come to the grave in full
vigor, like a stack of grain comes up in
its season.
27 Consider this. We have searched
it out; it is so. Hear it, and know it for
yourself.

Chapter 6

1 And Job answered and said:
2 Oh that my vexation were carefully
weighed, and my ruin lifted in the
balances together!
3 For now it would be heavier than
the sand of the seas; on account of this
my words have been rash.
4 For the arrows of the Almighty are
within me; their fury is drinking my
spirit; the terrors of Elohim are set
against me.
5 Does the wild donkey bray over
tender grass? Or does the ox low over
his fodder?
6 Are tasteless things eaten without
salt? Or is there taste in the slime of an
egg?
7 My soul refuses to touch them;
they are sickening food to me.
8 Who will give it that my desire
might come, and Elohim would grant
my longing;
9 and Elohim would be willing and
crush me; let loose His hand and cut
me off?
10 And it is yet my comfort; and I
would exult in pain not spared; for I
have not hidden the words of the Holy
One.
11 What is my strength that I should
wait? And what is my end that I
should prolong my life?
12 Is my strength the strength of
stones? Or is my flesh copper?
13 Is not my help within me? And is
wisdom driven from me?
14 To the faint, mercy is due from
his friend; for he forsakes the fear of
the Almighty.
15 My brothers have dealt

deceitfully, like the torrent, like the streams of torrents, they pass away;

16 those darkened from ice, in which the snow hides itself.

17 At the time they are warmed, they are cut off; when it is hot they dry up.

18 The paths of their way bend; they go to nothing and are lost.

19 The troops of Tema looked; the travelers of Sheba hoped for them;

20 they were ashamed because they had hoped; they came there and were ashamed.

21 Surely now you have become like it; you see my dismay, and are afraid.

22 Did I indeed say, Give to me? Or, Offer a bribe for me from your wealth?

23 Or, Deliver me from a foe's hand? Or, Redeem me from the oppressors hand?

24 Teach me and I will be silent; and cause me to understand in what I have erred.

25 Right words are powerful, but what does your arguing argue?

26 Do you intend to criticize words, and the speeches of one who is caused to despair, that are as wind?

27 Yea, you cause even an orphan to fall; and you bargain over your friend.

28 And now, please look on me. For if I lie, it is before your face.

29 Turn back, I beseech you; let there be no wrong. Yea, return again, for my righteousness is in it.

30 Is there wrong in my tongue? Cannot my palate discern desirable things?

Chapter 7

1 Is there not a warfare to man on earth? And his days like the days of a hireling?

2 As a servant pants for the shade, and as a hireling looks for his wages,

3 so I am caused to inherit months of emptiness; and weary nights are appointed to me.

4 When I lie down, I say, When shall I rise up? But the night is long, and I am full of tossings, until the twilight of the dawn.

5 My flesh is clothed with worms and clods of dust; my skin is broken and is loathed.

6 My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle and are ended without hope.

7 Remember that my life is a breath; my eyes shall not return to see good.

8 The eye of him who sees me shall gaze at me no more; Your eyes are on me, and I am not.

9 As the cloud fades, it goes, so he who goes down to Sheol shall not come up.

10 He shall return no more to his house; nor shall his place know him any more.

11 Therefore, I will not hold my mouth; I will speak in the distress of my spirit; I will complain in the bitterness of my soul.

12 Am I a sea, or a sea-monster, that You set a watch over me?

13 When I say, My bed shall comfort me; my couch shall bear my complaining,

14 then You scare me with dreams and terrify me with visions;

15 so that my soul chooses strangling and death rather than my bones.

16 I despise them; I will not live always. Let me alone, for my days are vanity.

17 What is man that You should magnify him, and that You should set Your heart on him,

18 and visit him every morning, trying him every moment?

19 How long will You not look away from me, nor leave me alone until I swallow down my spittle?

20 I have sinned; what do I do to You, O Watcher of man? Why have

You set me as a target for You so that I am a burden on myself?

21 And why do You not lift up my transgression, and make my iniquity pass away? For now I shall lie down in the dust, and You shall seek me; but I will not be.

Chapter 8

1 And Bildad the Shuhite answered, saying:

2 Until when will you speak these things, since the words of your mouth are like a mighty wind?

3 Or does The El pervert judgment? Or does the Almighty pervert the right?

4 If your sons have sinned against Him, and if He has sent them away in the hand of their transgression,

5 if you would seek earnestly to El, and make your prayer to the Almighty,

6 if you were pure and upright, surely now He would rise for you, and make whole the abode of your righteousness.

7 And your beginning was small, yet your end would greatly increase.

8 For now ask of the former generation, and prepare to the search of their fathers;

9 for we are but of yesterday, and we know nothing because our days on earth are a shadow.

10 Shall they not teach you, speak to you, and bring forth words out of their heart?

11 Can the rush grow up without mire? Can the reed grass grow without water?

12 While it is yet in its greenness, and not cut down, it dries out before every plant.

13 So are the paths of all those forgetting El; yea, the hope of the unrighteous shall perish,

14 whose hope is cut off, and his trust as a spider's house.

15 He shall lean on his house, but it shall not stand; he shall hold fast to it, but it shall not endure.

16 He is moist before the sun, and his tender plants shoot forth on his garden.

17 His roots are wrapped around a heap; he sees a house of stones.

18 If one swallows him from his place, then it shall deny him, saying I have not seen you!

19 Behold this is the joy of His way, and out of the earth others shall grow.

20 Behold, El will not cast away the innocent, and He will not help the evildoers,

21 until He fills your mouth with laughter and your lips with rejoicing.

22 Those who hate you shall be clothed with shame; and the tent of the wicked shall not be.

Chapter 9

1 And Job answered and said:

2 Truly I know it is so; but how can man be just with El?

3 If he would argue with Him, he cannot answer Him one of a thousand.

4 He is wise in heart and mighty in strength; who has been hard against Him and been at peace?

5 He who moves the mountains, and they do not know; when He overturns them in His anger;

6 who shakes the earth out of its place, and its pillars tremble;

7 the One speaking to the sun and it does not rise; and He sets a seal around the stars;

8 stretching out the heavens by Himself, and walking on the waves of the sea;

9 who made the Bear, Orion, and Pleiades, and the chambers of the south;

10 who is doing great things past finding out; yea, marvelous things without number?
11 Behold, He goes by me, and I do not see Him; and He passes on, but I do not perceive Him.
12 Behold, He takes away; who can turn Him back? Who will say to Him, What are You doing?
13 Eloah, will not withdraw His anger; the helpers of pride stoop under Him.
14 How much less shall I answer Him, and choose my words with Him!
15 Though I were righteous, I could not answer Him; I seek mercy for my judgment.
16 If I had called and He had answered me; I would not believe that He had listened to my voice;
17 who breaks me with a tempest, and adds to my wounds without cause;
18 who will not allow me to bring back my breath, but fills me with bitterness.
19 If I speak of strength, behold, He is mighty; and if of judgment, who can summon me?
20 If I justify myself, my mouth will condemn me; though I am perfect, He shall declare me perverse;[1]
21 though I were perfect, I would not know my own soul; I despise my life.
22 It is One; so then I said, He is consuming the perfect and the wicked.
23 If the whip kills suddenly, He will mock at the testing of the innocent.
24 The earth is given into the hand of the wicked; He covers the faces of its judges. If it is not He, then who is it?[2]
25 Now my days are swifter than a runner; they flee away; they see no good;
26 they have passed away like the ships made of reed; as an eagle swoops on food.
27 If I say, I will forget my complaint, I will loosen my face and be cheerful,
28 I am afraid of all my sorrows; I know that You will not hold me innocent;
29 I have been condemned; why should I labor in vain?
30 If I wash myself with snow, and make my hands clean with soap,
31 yet You will plunge me into the ditch, and my own clothes would abhor me.
32 For He is not a man, as I am, that I should answer Him; that we should come together in judgment;
33 there is no mediator between us, who might lay his hand on both of us.
34 Let Him take His rod away from me, and let not His dread make me afraid;
35 then I would speak, and not fear Him; for I am not so in myself.[3]

Chapter 10

1 My soul loathes my life; I will leave my complaint on myself; I will speak in the bitterness of my soul.
2 I will say to Eloah, Do not condemn me; make me know why You contend with me.
3 Is it good to You that You should

---

1 Job's true problem of self-righteousness is now coming out.

2 Job rejects his friends interpretation of life as many times the wicked do prosper for a season.

3 Verses 32-35 clearly show Job's self-righteousness as he makes allegations of YHWH being unconnected and inaccessible to His creation and pleads for an intercessor. Although Job's statements were inaccurate as sin does separate man from his creator (Is 59:1-2), Yahweh did send a mediator for man to pay the penalty of his sins and reconcile with Elohim in His Son Yahshua.

crush, that You should despise the work of Your hands, and You shine on the counsel of the wicked?
4 Have You eyes of flesh; or do You see as a man sees?
5 Are Your days as the days of man? Or Your years like the days of man,
6 that You seek out my iniquity, and search for my sin?
7 You know that I am not wicked; and there is no one delivering out of Your hand.
8 Your hands have made me and shaped me together all around; yet You engulf me.
9 Remember, I beseech You, that You have formed me as clay; and will You bring me to dust again?
10 Did You not pour me out like milk; yea, curdled me like cheese?
11 You clothed me with skin and flesh, and knitted me with bones and sinews.
12 You have made me have life and favor, and Your providence has kept my spirit.
13 And these You have hidden in Your heart; I know that this was with You.
14 If I sin, then You watch me; and You will not acquit me from my guilt.[1]
15 If I am wrong, woe to me! And if I am righteous, I will not lift up my head, being filled with shame and seeing my pain.
16 And if it rise, You would hunt me as a lion; and again You show Yourself wonderful in me.
17 You renew Your witnesses against me, and increase Your anger with me; changes and warfare are with me.
18 Why then did You bring me from the womb? I would have died, and no eye seen me.
19 I would have been as though I had never been, carried from the womb to the grave.
20 Are not my days few? Then cease and let me alone, that I may take a little comfort
21 before I go; and I shall not return; to the land of darkness, and the shadow of death;
22 a land of obscurity, the darkness of the shadow of death, and without any order; even the shining is as darkness.[2]

Chapter 11

1 And Zophar the Naamathite answered and said:
2 Should not a flood of words be answered? And should a man of lips be justified?
3 Should your lies make men silent? And will you mock, and no one make you ashamed?
4 For you have said, My doctrine is pure; and, I am clean in Your eyes.
5 But who will grant that Eloah, would speak and open His lips against you,
6 and would tell you the secrets of wisdom, that counsel is double? Know then that Eloah, forgets some of your iniquity for you.
7 Can you find out Eloah, by searching? Or can you find out the end of the Almighty?
8 Heights of the heavens! What can you do? It is deeper than Sheol; what can you know?
9 Its measure is longer than the earth, broader than the sea.
10 If He passes through and shuts

[1] It is not justice for YHWH to acquit the guilty (Nah 1:3), that is why one must humbly recognize his pathetic, sinful state and ask YHWH to allow the sacrifice of the blood of Yahshua to pay the penalty for his sins.

[2] Verses 16-22- Many times self-righteousness will lead one into a pity party as it did with Job.

up, or gathers together, then who can
turn Him back?
11 For He knows the vanity of men;
and He sees deceit, and will He not
consider?
12 For a foolish man takes heart, and
man is born a wild donkey 's colt.
13 If you prepare your heart, and
stretch out your hands toward Him;
14 if iniquity is in your hand, put it
far away and do not let wickedness
dwell in your tents;
15 surely then you shall lift up your
face without blemish; and you will be
steadfast, and you will not fear;
16 for you shall forget your misery,
and shall remember it as waters that
have passed;
17 and your lifetime shall rise more
than the noonday; you shall fly; you
shall be as the morning.
18 And you shall trust, because there
is hope. Yea, you shall look about and
you shall lie down in safety.
19 You shall recline, and no one will
be frightening; yea, many shall seek
your favor.
20 But the eyes of the wicked shall
be consumed, and escape shall perish
from them; and their hope shall be like
the breathing out of the soul.

Chapter 12

1 And Job answered and said:
2 For truly you are the people, and
wisdom will die with you.
3 I also have a heart as well as you; I
do not fall short of you. And with
whom are not things like these?
4 I am a laughingstock to his friend;
he calls on Eloah, and He answers
him; the just, the upright one is a
mockery;
5 a torch is despised in the thoughts
of him who feels secure; it is ready for
those with slipping feet.
6 The tents of plunderers and those
provoking El are at ease, to whomever
Eloah, brings into his hand.
7 But now please ask the animals,
and they will teach you; and the birds
of the heavens, and they will tell you;
8 or speak to the earth, and it will
teach you; and the fish of the sea will
recount to you;
9 who of all these does not know that
the hand of YAHWEH has done this,
10 in whose hand is the soul of every
living thing, and the breath of all flesh,
even of man?
11 Does the ear not try words, and
the mouth taste food for itself?
12 With the aged is wisdom, and
understanding is in the length of days.
13 With Him is wisdom and
strength; He has forethought and
understanding.
14 Behold, He breaks down, and no
one builds; He shuts against a man,
and no one opens.
15 Behold, He holds back the waters,
and they dry up; and He sends them
out, and they overflow the earth.
16 With Him is strength and sound
wisdom; the deceived and the deceiver
are His.
17 He causes wise men to go
stripped; and He makes judges fools.
18 He loosens the bonds of kings,
and He binds their loins with a girdle;
19 making priests walk away
stripped; and He overthrows the
mighty;
20 turning aside the lip of the
trusted men; and He takes away the
reason of the aged.
21 He pours scorn on nobles, and He
loosens the girdle of the mighty;
22 revealing deep things out of
darkness; and He brings the shadow of
death to light.
23 He gives greatness to the nations,
and He destroys them; spreading out
the nations, and He leads them out.
24 He takes away the heart of the

heads of the people of the land; and He causes them to wander in a waste in which is no path.
25 They grope in the dark, and there is no light; and He makes them stagger like a drunkard.

Chapter 13

1 Behold, my eye has seen all this; my ear has heard and understood it.
2 As you know, I know, even I; I do not fall short of you.
3 Surely I would speak to the Almighty, and I desire to argue with El.
4 But you are imputers of lies; you are all worthless healers.
5 Oh that you would stop speaking entirely; and it would be your wisdom!
6 Hear now my reasoning, and listen to the arguments of my lips.
7 Would you speak unrighteously for El and speak deceitfully for Him?
8 Will you lift up His face, or will you contend for El?
9 Or as one man mocks another, do you mock Him? Is it good that He should search you out?
10 Reproving He will reprove you if you secretly lift up faces.
11 Shall not His highness make you afraid, and His dread fall on you?
12 Your remembered sayings are like ashes; surely your backs are backs of clay.
13 Be silent from me, that I may speak; and let what will, pass over me.
14 Why do I take my flesh in my teeth and put my life in my hand?
15 Behold, He will cut me off; I will not wait, but I will justify my ways before His face.
16 He will also be to me salvation *(Yahshua*)*, for an unrighteous one shall not come before Him.
17 Listen, hear my word, and let what I say be in your ears.
18 Behold now, I have set my cause in order; I know that I shall be justified.
19 Who is he who will strive with me? For then I would be quiet and die.
20 Only two things do not do to me, O Elohim, then I will not hide myself from Your face:
21 Remove Your hand from me, and let not Your terror make me afraid.
22 Then call, and I will answer; or let me speak, and reply to me.
23 How many are my iniquities and sins? Make me know my transgressions and my sin.
24 Why do You hide Your face and count me for Your enemy?
25 Will You terrify a leaf driven to and fro? Will you pursue the dry stubble?
26 For You write bitter things against me and make me inherit the sins of my youth.
27 You also put my feet in the stocks, and watch all my paths; You set a limit on the soles of my feet.
28 And he wears out like a rotten thing, like a garment which a moth eats.

Chapter 14

1 Man born of woman is short of days, and full of turmoil.
2 He comes forth like a flower and withers; he also flees like a shadow and does not stand.
3 Also do You open Your eyes on such a one and bring me into judgment with You?
4 Who gives a clean thing out of an unclean? No one!
5 Since his days are fixed, the number of his months is with You, and You have appointed his bounds, and he cannot pass over;
6 look away from him, so that he may rest, till he shall enjoy his day as a hireling.

7 For there is hope of a tree, if it is cut down, that it will sprout again, and its shoot will not cease.
8 Though its root becomes old in the earth, and its stump dies in the dust,
9 at the scent of water it will bud and bring forth branches like a plant.
10 But man dies and is cut off, and man expires; and where is he?
11 As the waters go away from the sea, and a river wastes away and dries up,
12 even so man lies down and does not rise until the heavens are no more, they shall not awake, nor be roused out of their sleep.
13 Who will grant that You would hide me in Sheol; You would conceal me until Your anger turns back; that You would set a limit for me and remember me?
14 If a man dies, shall he revive? All the days of my warfare I will wait, until my change comes.[1]
15 You shall call, and I will answer You; You shall long to do the work of Your hands.
16 For now You number my steps; do You not watch over my sin?
17 My transgression is sealed up in a bag, and You cover over my iniquity.
18 And surely a falling mountain crumbles away, and the rock moves out of its place.
19 The waters wear away stones; its outpouring washes the dust of the earth; and You cause the hope of man to perish.
20 You overpower him forever, and he goes. You change his face and send him away.
21 His sons come to honor, and he does not know; they fail, but he does not mark it.
22 But his flesh is pained within him; and his soul mourns over him.

Chapter 15

1 And Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said:
2 Should a wise man answer with windy knowledge, and fill his belly with the east wind?
3 Should he reason with speech that is not useful, or with words having no profit in them?
4 Yea, you do away with fear, and take away devotion before El.
5 For your iniquity teaches your mouth; and you choose the tongue of the crafty.
6 Your mouth condemns you, and not I; yea, your own lips testify against you.
7 Were you the first man born? Or were you made before the hills?
8 Have you heard the secret counsel of Eloah? And do you limit wisdom to yourself?
9 What do you know that we do not know? Or understand, that is not with us?
10 With us are both the gray headed and very aged men, mightier than your father as to days.
11 Are the comforts of El small with you, and a word that deals gently with you?
12 Why does your heart carry you away? And why do your eyes flash,
13 that you turn your spirit against El and let such words go out of your mouth?
14 What is man that he should be clean? And he born of a woman, that he should be righteous?
15 Behold, He puts no trust in His holy ones; yea, the heavens are not clean in His eyes.

[1] Verses 13-14 clearly show that in the ancient world people knew the dead were sleeping in the earth without conscienceness (Eccl 9:5), and believed in a resurrection from the dead.

16 How much more loathed and corrupted is man who drinks injustice like water!

17 I will tell you; hear me, and I will declare this that I have seen;
18 that which wise men have told and have not hidden from their fathers;
19 to them alone the land was given; and no alien passed among them.
20 All the days of the wicked he is laboring in pain; a number of years are stored up for the ruthless.
21 A dreadful sound of things is in his ears; the one devastating shall come on him in peace.
22 He does not believe in a return from darkness, but he is awaited by the sword.
23 He is wandering, for he seeks for bread. Where is it? He knows that the day of darkness is at his hand.
24 Distress and pain terrify him; they shall overpower him, as a king ready for the attack;
25 because he stretched out his hand against El; and he acts mighty against the Almighty.
26 He runs at Him with a stiff neck, with the thick layers of his shields,
27 because he has covered his face with fat; yea, he has put fat on his loins.
28 And he dwells in cut off cities; houses, none lives in them, which are ready to become heaps.
29 He shall not be rich, nor shall his wealth hold out; nor shall he stretch out their gain on the earth.
30 He shall not escape from darkness; the flame shall dry up his branches; and he shall turn at the breath of His mouth.
31 Let not he being deceived trust in vanity; for his reward shall be vanity.
32 Before his day it shall be fulfilled, and his branch shall not be green;
33 he shall shake off its unripe grape as the vine; and he shall cast its flower like the olive.
34 For the company of the unrighteous shall be bleak; and fire shall devour the tents of bribery;
35 they conceive mischief and generate evil; and their belly prepares deceit.

Chapter 16

1 And Job answered and said:
2 I have heard many such things. You are all miserable comforters.
3 Is there an end to windy words? Or what provokes you that you answer?
4 I also could speak as you. If your soul were in the place of my soul, I could bind words against you and shake at you with my head.
5 I might make you strong with my mouth, and the moving of my lips could spare you.
6 If I speak, my pain is not held back; and though I forbear, what goes from me?
7 But now He has made me weary. You have made all my company desolate.
8 And You have plucked me; for it is a witness, and my failure rises up against me; and it answers to my face.
9 His anger has torn, and hated me; He gnashes at me with His teeth; my enemy sharpens His eyes at me.
10 They have gaped at me with their mouth, and scornfully struck my cheek; they gather themselves together against me.
11 El has delivered me to the perverse; and He has cast me down into the hands of the wicked.
12 I was at ease, but He has shattered me; yea, He has also seized my neck and broken me to bits; and He has set me up as a target for Him.
13 His archers surround me; He

splits my inward parts and has no pity; He pours out my gall on the ground.
14 He breaks me with break on top of break; He runs on me like a warrior.
15 I have sewed sackcloth on my skin, and I have thrust my horn in the dust.
16 My face is reddened from weeping; and the shadow of death is on my eyelids,
17 though no violence is in my hand, and my prayer is pure.
18 O earth, do not cover my blood, and let not my cry have a place.
19 Even now, behold! My witness is in Heaven; and He who testifies of me is on high.
20 My scorners are my friends; my eye pours out tears to Eloah.
21 O that one might plead for a man with Eloah, as a man pleads for his friend!
22 For years few in number will come; and I shall not return the way I shall go.

Chapter 17

1 My spirit writhes in pain; my days are extinct; graves are for me.
2 Are not mockers with me? And my eye rests on their insults.
3 Please lay down a pledge for me with Yourself; who is he who will strike my hand with me?
4 For You have hidden their heart from understanding; therefore You shall not exalt them.
5 He informs against friends for a share; even his son's eyes shall be consumed.
6 He has also set me as a byword of the peoples, and I am a spitting to the faces.
7 And my eye is dim from grief; and all my members are like a shadow.
8 Upright ones shall be amazed at this; and the innocent shall stir himself against the ungodly.
9 And the righteous shall hold firmly on his way; and he of clean hands adds strength.
10 And now all of them, go back and please come again; and I shall not find among you a wise man.
11 My days have passed; my plans are broken off, the desires of my heart.
12 They set night for day; light is near in the face of darkness.
13 If I wait for Sheol as my house, I have spread out my bed in the darkness;
14 I have said to corruption, You are my father; to the worm, My mother and my sister.
15 And where then is my hope? And as for my hope, who shall see it?
16 They shall go down to the bars of Sheol, when our descent together is in the dust.

Chapter 18

1 And Bildad the Shuhite answered and said:
2 Until when will you set perversion to words? Consider, and afterwards we will speak.
3 Why are we counted as animals? Are we stupid in your eyes?
4 One tearing himself in his anger, shall the earth be forsaken for your sake? Or shall the rock move from its place?
5 Yes, the light of the wicked shall be put out; and the spark of his fire shall not blaze.
6 The light shall be dark in his tent; and his lamp shall be put out above him;
7 the steps of his strength shall be hampered; and his own counsel shall throw him down.
8 For he is sent into a net by his own feet; and he is walking on a snare;

9 the trap shall take him by the heel; a noose shall prevail over him;

10 the pitfall is hid for him in the ground, and a trap for him on the way.

11 Terrors frighten him on every side and shall dash him at his feet.

12 His strength shall be hunger-bitten, and calamity shall be ready at his side.

13 It devours parts of his skin; the first-born of death eats his parts.

14 His hope shall be rooted out of his tent, and you marched to the king of terrors.

15 What is not his shall dwell in his tent; brimstone is scattered on his home.

16 His roots are dried up beneath, and his branch shall wither above.

17 His memory perishes from the earth, and there is no name to him on the face of the street.

18 They push him from light to darkness, and they make him flee from the world.

19 He shall have no son nor kinsman among his people, nor any remnant in his dwellings.

20 Those after him shall be amazed at his day; and those before were seized with horror.

21 Surely these are the tents of the perverse, and this the place that has not known El.

Chapter 19

1 And Job answered and said:

2 How long will you torment my soul and break me in pieces with words?

3 This ten times you have shamed me; you are not ashamed that you have wronged me.

4 And if indeed I have erred, my error remains with me.

5 If truly you magnify yourself against me, and plead my misery against me,

6 know now that Eloah has overthrown me and His net has closed on me.

7 Behold, I cry out, Violence! And I am not answered; I cry aloud, but there is no justice.

8 He has fenced up my path so that I cannot pass; and He has set darkness on my paths.

9 He has stripped me of my honor, and He has taken the crown from my head.

10 He has broken me on every side, and I go; and He has uprooted my hope like a tree.

11 And also His wrath glows against me, and to Himself He counts me as His foe.

12 His troops come together and they heap up their way against me; and they camp around my tent.

13 He has put my brothers from me; and ones knowing me are truly alienated from me.

14 My near ones have fallen away, and ones knowing me have forgotten me.

15 The sojourners in my house, even my slave-girls, count me as a foreigner; I am an alien in their eyes.

16 I called my servant, but he does not answer; I must beg him with my mouth.

17 My breath is strange to my wife, and I must beg to the sons of my mother's womb.

18 Even young children despise me; I rise, and they speak against me.

19 All the men of my counsel detest me; even this one I loved has turned against me.

20 My bone clings on my skin and on my flesh; and I have escaped by the skin of my teeth.

21 Have pity on me! Have pity on me, you my friends! For the hand of Eloah has touched me.

22 Why do you pursue me, as El

does, and are not satisfied with my
flesh?
23 Oh that my words were now
written! Oh that they were engraved in
a book!
24 Oh that they were cut with an
iron pen and lead in the rock forever!
25 For I know my Redeemer is
living, and He shall rise on the earth at
the last;
26 and after my skin has been struck
off from my flesh, yet this, I shall see
Eloah[1], *(1Cor 15:50-53)*
27 whom I shall see for myself, and
my eyes shall behold, and no stranger;
though my reins be exhausted in my
bosom.
28 For you may say, Why do we
persecute him? And the root of the
matter is found in me.
29 Fear for yourselves because of the
sword; for fury brings punishments of
the sword, that you may know there is
a judgment.

Chapter 20

1 And Zophar the Naamathite
answered and said:
2 So my thoughts cause me to
answer, even because of my haste in
me.
3 I have heard the instruction of my
chastisement; and the spirit from my
understanding makes me reply.
4 Do you know this from of old, from
the setting of man on earth,
5 that the exulting of the wicked is
near an end, and the joy of the
unrighteous is for a moment?
6 Though his height mounts up to
the heavens, and his head touches to
the clouds,
7 he shall perish forever like his
dung; they who see him shall say,
Where is he?
8 He flies off like a dream, and is not
found; and is driven away like a night
vision.
9 An eye glimpsed him, but will not
again; yea, his place shall not again see
him.
10 His sons seek the poor's favors;
and his hands shall restore his wealth.
11 His bones are full of his youthful
vigor, but it lies down on the dust with
him.
12 Even if evil is sweet in his mouth
(he hides it under his tongue,
13 he spares it, and he will not leave
it; yea, he keeps holding it in his
mouth);
14 yet his food in his belly shall be
turned; the gall of asps is within him.
15 He swallows wealth, but vomits it;
El drives it out from his belly.
16 He shall suck the poison of asps;
the viper's tongue shall slay him.
17 He shall not see the rivers, the
flowing of torrents of honey and curd;
18 giving back his gain, and he will
now swallow. In the wealth of his
trading he will not enjoy it.
19 For he crushed and forsook the
poor; he stole a house, but he had not
built it.
20 Surely he shall not know ease in
his belly; he will not escape with his
things of desire.
21 There is no residue for his eating;
because of this, his good will not last.
22 In the fullness of his scorn, it is
strait for him; the hand of every
wretched one shall come upon him.
23 It shall happen at the filling of his
belly, He shall cast on him the fury of
His wrath, and He shall rain on him
while he is eating.
24 He may flee from the iron
weapon, a bow of copper shall pierce
him.
25 One draws it, and treads it from

[1] Verses 25-26 shows that Job knew about Yahshua as redeemer and also that at the resurrection that there will be a new spiritual body given.

behind, even lightning from his gall; terrors come upon him.
26 All darkness is hidden for secret treasuring; fire not blown shall consume him; those left in his tent shall be broken.
27 The heavens shall expose his iniquity; and the earth shall be raising up itself against him.
28 The fruit of his house shall move, flowing away in the day of His wrath.
29 This is the evil man's portion from Elohim, and the inheritance of his word from El.

Chapter 21

1 And Job answered and said:
2 Listen carefully to my speech, and let this be your comfort.
3 Bear with me and I shall speak; then after I have spoken, you may mock.
4 As for me, is my complaint to man? And why should not my spirit be short?
5 Turn toward me and be astonished, and put your hand on your mouth.
6 And if I remember, I am dismayed; and trembling seizes on my flesh.
7 Why do the wicked live? They grow old, and become mighty in power.
8 Their seed is established with them before their face, and their offspring before their eyes.
9 Their houses are in peace, without fear; nor is the rod of Eloah on them.
10 His bull passes semen and does not fail; his cow calves and does not miscarry.
11 They send their little ones out as a flock; and their children dance.
12 They lift up a voice at the timbrel and lyre, and rejoice at the sound of the flute.
13 They spend their days in good, and in a moment go down to Sheol.
14 And they say to El, Depart from us, for we do not desire the knowledge of Your ways.
15 What is the Almighty, that we should serve Him? And what do we profit if we entreat Him?
16 Behold, their good is not in their hand! The counsel of the wicked is far from me.
17 How often is the lamp of the wicked put out, and their calamity comes on them! He shares out pangs in His anger;
18 they are as straw before the wind, and as chaff that the tempest steals away.
19 Eloah stores up his iniquity for his sons; He repays him, and he knows.
20 His eyes shall see his destruction, and he shall drink of the wrath of the Almighty.
21 For what is his delight in his house after him, and his number of months is cut off.
22 Shall any teach knowledge to The El, since He shall judge those exalted?
23 One dies in his full strength, wholly secure and at ease;
24 his sides are full of milk, and his bones are wet with marrow.
25 And another dies with bitter soul, and never eats with pleasure;
26 they lie down together on the dust, and the worms shall cover over them.
27 Behold, I know your thoughts, and the plots you would wrongfully do against me;
28 for you say, Where is the house of the noble, and where is the tent, the dwellings of the wicked?
29 Did you not ask those who pass along the highway; and do you not know their signs?
30 For the wicked is kept for the day of calamity; they shall be brought to the day of wrath.
31 Who shall declare his way to his

face? And who repays him for what he has done?
32 Yet he shall be brought to the grave, and watch shall be kept over his tomb.
33 And the clods of the valley shall be sweet to him; and every man shall draw after him; and there is not any number before him.
34 How then do you comfort me with vanity? Yea, in your answers remains treachery.

Chapter 22

1 And Eliphaz the Temanite answered and said:
2 Can a man be useful to The El? For can a wise man be useful to himself?
3 Is it any pleasure to the Almighty that you are righteous? Or is it gain to Him that you make your ways perfect?
4 Will He reprove you because of your reverence, or enter into judgment with you?
5 Is not your wickedness great, and is there no end to your iniquities?
6 For you have taken a pledge from your brother for nothing, and you have stripped the naked of their clothing.
7 You have not given water to the faint to drink, and you withheld food from the hungry.
8 And the earth is to him, to the armed man; and the honored one lives in it.
9 You have sent widows away empty, and have crushed the arms of orphans.
10 On account of this snares are all around you, and suddenly dread troubles you;
11 or darkness, so that you cannot see, and a flood of waters covers you.
12 Is not Eloah high in Heaven? Also behold the leading stars, for they are high.
13 And you say, What does El know? Can He judge through the dark cloud?
14 Clouds are a covering for Him, and He does not see; and He walks the circuit of the heavens.
15 Do you keep to the old way which evil men have trod?
16 They were taken, but there was not time; their foundation was poured out by a flood;
17 who said to El, Depart from us; and, What can the Almighty do to them?
18 Yet He filled their houses with substance; and the counsel of the wicked is far from me.
19 The righteous see it and are glad; and the innocent scornfully laugh;
20 truly our adversary is not cut down, and fire has eaten their wealth.
21 Now be of service with Him, and be at peace; good shall come to you by them.
22 Now receive the Torah from His mouth and put His words in your heart.
23 If you return to the Almighty you shall be built up; you shall put injustice far from your tents.
24 Then you shall lay gold on the dust, even among the rocks of the torrents of Ophir.
25 Yea, the Almighty shall be your gold and silver, a tower to you,
26 for then you will delight over the Almighty, and you will lift up your face to Eloah.
27 You shall make your prayer to Him, and He will hear you; and you shall pay your vows.
28 You shall also decide a thing, and it will stand for you; and light shall shine on your ways.
29 For they have humiliated you; and you shall say, Pride! And He shall save the lowly of eyes.
30 He shall deliver one not innocent and will deliver by the cleanness of your hands.

Chapter 23

1 And Job answered and said:
2 Even today my complaint is bitter; my hand is heavy over my groaning.
3 Oh that I knew where I might find Him, I would come into His seat;
4 I would order my cause before Him, and I would fill my mouth with arguments.
5 I would know the words He would answer me, and understand what He would say to me.
6 Would He plead against me with greatness of strength? No, surely He would put it in me.
7 There the righteous might reason with Him; and I would be forever delivered from my Judge.
8 Behold, I go forward, but He is not there; and backward, but I do not see Him;
9 to the left where He works, but I cannot see; He turns to the right, but I do not see Him.
10 But He knows the way with me. When I am tried, I shall come forth as gold.
11 My foot has held fast in His steps; I have kept His way and have not turned;
12 nor have I departed from the command of His lips; I treasured the Words of His mouth more than my portion.
13 But He is in one mind, and who can turn Him? Yea, His soul desires, and He does it.
14 For He fulfilled my lot, and many like these are with Him.
15 On account of this I am troubled from His presence; I consider, and am in dread of Him.
16 For EL makes my heart weak, and the Almighty troubles me.
17 In this I was not cut off by darkness; yea, He covered the thick darkness from my face.

Chapter 24

1 Why since times are not hidden from the Almighty, do even those knowing Him not see His days?
2 They move the landmarks; they seize and pasture flocks;
3 they drive away the donkey of orphans; they take the widow's ox for a pledge;
4 they turn the needy out of the way; the poor of the earth have hidden together.
5 Behold, like wild donkeys in the desert, they go out in their work, seeking early for prey; the desert yields food for him for their young.
6 They reap his fodder in the field, and they glean the wicked's vineyard.
7 They lodge naked ones without clothing, and they give no cover against the cold.
8 They are wet with the showers of hills, and embrace the rock for lack of shelter.
9 They seize the orphan from the breast, and lay a pledge on the poor.
10 They make them go without clothing, and are hungry; they lift up the sheaves.
11 They press out oil between their walls; they tread winepresses, but are thirsty.
12 Men groan from out of the city, and the soul of the wounded cries for help; yet Eloah does not charge unseemliness.
13 They are among rebellers against light; they do not recognize His ways, nor do they stay in His paths.
14 The murderer rising with the light kills the poor and needy, and in the night he is a thief.
15 And the adulterer's eye keeps watch for twilight, saying, No eye will see me; and he puts a covering on his face.

16 In the dark he digs through houses; they shut themselves up by day; they do not know the light.
17 For alike are morning and the shadow of death to them; for he knows the terrors of death shadow.
18 He is swift on the waters; their part is cursed in the earth; he does not face the way of the vineyards.
19 Drought and heat eat up the snow waters, and Sheol those who have sinned.
20 The womb shall forget him; the worm shall suck on him; he shall be remembered no more; and injustice shall be broken like a tree.
21 He ill treats the barren that bear not, and does no good to the widow.
22 He also draws the mighty with his strength; He rises up, and no one is sure of life.
23 He gives security to him, and he leans on it; yet His eyes are on their ways.
24 They are lifted up for a little while, but they are not; and they are brought low; they are gathered in like all others, and wither like the heads of ears of grain.
25 And if not, then who will prove me a liar, and make my speech into nothing?

Chapter 25

1 And Bildad the Shuhite answered and said:
2 Rule and fear are with Him. He makes peace in His high places.
3 Is there any number of His armies? And on whom does His light not rise?
4 How then can man be justified with El? Or how can one who is born of a woman be pure?
5 Behold, even the moon, and it is not bright; and the stars are not pure in His eyes;
6 how much less man who is a maggot; and the son of man who is a worm![1] *(Ps 22:6)*

Chapter 26

1 And Job answered and said:
2 How have you helped the powerless, or saved the arm with no strength?
3 How have you advised the ones not wise or fully declared wise plans?
4 With whom have you spoken words? And whose breath came forth from you?
5 The departed spirits are made to writhe from beneath the waters, and their inhabitants.
6 Sheol is naked before Him, and the Pit has no covering.
7 He stretched out the north over the empty place; and He hung the earth on nothing.
8 He binds up the waters in His thick clouds; and the cloud does not burst under them.
9 He covers the face of His throne, spreading His cloud over it.
10 He has described a circle on the surface of the waters to the boundary of light with darkness.
11 The pillars of the heavens tremble and are stunned at His rebuke.
12 With His power He quiets the sea, and by His understanding He shatters pride.
13 By His Spirit the heavens were beautiful; His hand pierced the fleeing snake.
14 Lo, these are the edges of His ways; yea, what a whisper of a word we hear of Him! And the thunder of His might who can understand?[2]

---

[1] Verses 4-6- These scriptures are showing that man being evil in nature does not have the ability to redeem himself (Ro 3:10-23) and needs the Son of YHWH for payment of sin and redemption.

Chapter 27

1 And Job continued the uplifting of his discourse, and said:
2 As El lives, He has taken away my judgment; yea, the Almighty has made my soul bitter.
3 As long as my breath is in me, and the Spirit of Eloah is in my nostrils,
4 my lips shall not speak wickedness, nor my tongue utter deceit.
5 Far be it from me that I should justify you. Until I die, I shall not retract my integrity from me.
6 I hold fast by my righteousness, and I will not abandon it; my heart shall not shame me any of my days.[1]
7 Let my enemy be like the wicked and he who rises against me as the perverse.
8 For what is the hope of the unrighteous when He cuts off, when Eloah pulls out his soul?
9 Will El hear his cry when distress comes upon him?
10 Will he delight in the Almighty? Will he call on Eloah at every time?[2]
11 I will teach you by the hand of El; that which is with the Almighty I will not hide.
12 Behold, all of you have seen it yourselves; when then do you become vain with this vanity?
13 This is the portion of a wicked man with El, and the inheritance of ruthless men that they shall receive from the Almighty.
14 If his sons become numerous, the sword is for them; and his offspring shall not be satisfied with bread.
15 Those remaining of him shall be buried in death, and his widows shall not weep.
16 Though he heaps up silver like the dust, and prepares clothing like the clay;
17 he may prepare, but the just shall put it on; and the innocent shall divide the silver.
18 He builds his house like a moth, and like a booth that a watchman makes.
19 The rich man shall lie down, but he shall not be gathered; he opens his eyes, and he is not.
20 Fears shall overtake him like waters; a tempest steals him away in the night.
21 The east wind lifts him up and he is gone; for it whirls him out of his place.
22 For it will hurl at him, and will not spare; from its hand fleeing he will flee.
23 He shall clap His hands at him, and shall hiss him from his place.

Chapter 28

1 Surely there is a mine for the silver, and a place where they refine gold.
2 Iron is taken out of the earth, and copper is smelted from stone.
3 He sets an end to darkness, and to every extremity He searches out a stone of darkness and death-shade.
4 He opens a shaft far from the visitor; they are forgotten by man's foot; they hang far from men; they swing to and fro.
5 As to the earth, out of it comes bread; and underneath it, it is turned up like fire.
6 The place of sapphires is in its stones, and it has dust of gold.

---

[2] Job rightly concludes that in fleshly form no human can truly understand the greatness and amazing creative power of YHWH.

[1] Job did not see yet that his dire conditions was not penance for his being good, but he was merely reaping the reward for his self-righteousness.

[2] Verses 8-11- See Pr 1:24-33, the wicked will also reap what they sow for not repenting and seeking YHWH while they had a chance.

7 There is a path not known to birds of prey, nor has a falcon's eye caught sight of it;
8 the sons of pride have not trodden on it; the lion has not passed by it.
9 He places his hand on the flint places; He overturns mountains by the roots.
10 He cuts out rivers among the rocks, and His eye sees every precious thing.
11 He restrains the floods from overflowing; and He brings the hidden thing to light.
12 But where shall wisdom be found? And where is the place of understanding?
13 Man does not know its value, nor is it found in the land of the living.
14 The deep says, It is not in me; and the sea says, It is not with me.
15 Pure gold cannot be given instead of it, and silver cannot be weighed as its price.
16 It cannot be weighed against the gold of Ophir, against precious onyx, or sapphire;
17 gold and crystal cannot be ranked with it, nor its exchange a vessel of fine gold.
18 Coral and rock crystal cannot be mentioned; yea, the getting of wisdom is above jewels.
19 The topaz of Ethiopia cannot be ranked with it; it cannot be weighed against pure gold.
20 Where then does wisdom come from, and where is the place of understanding?
21 Yea, it is hidden from the eyes of all living, and concealed from the birds of the heavens;
22 the Place of Ruin and Death say, We have heard its fame with our ears.
23 Elohim understands its way, and He knows its place.
24 For He looks to the ends of the earth, and sees under all the heavens;
25 making a weight for the winds and measuring out the waters by measure.
26 When He made a decree for the rain, and a way for the flash, the thunderclap,
27 then He saw it, and declared it; He prepared it, and He also searched it out.
28 And to man He said, Behold, the fear of Adonai, that is wisdom! And to turn from evil is understanding.

Chapter 29

1 And Job continued the lifting up of his discourse, and said:
2 Oh that I were as in months past, as in the days when Eloah watched over me;
3 when His lamp shone on my head, when I walked through darkness by His light;
4 as I was in the days of my winter, when the intimacy with Eloah was over my tent;
5 when the Almighty was yet with me and my children were around me;
6 when I washed my steps with curds, and the rock poured out rivers of oil for me;
7 when I went out to the gate by the city; when I prepared my seat in the street.
8 The young men saw me and hid themselves; the aged rose up, stood up;
9 the rulers held back with words, and they laid a hand on their mouth;
10 the leaders' voice was hidden; yea, their tongue clung to the roof of their mouth.
11 For the ear heard, and blessed me; and the eye saw, and witnessed for me.
12 For I delivered the poor who cried for help and the orphan who had no helper to him.
13 The blessing of the perishing

came on me; and I made the widow's
heart to sing.
14 I put on righteousness and it
clothed me; my judgment was like a
robe and a diadem.
15 I was eyes to the blind and feet to
the lame.
16 I was father to the poor, and the
cause which I did not know, I searched
out.
17 I broke the fangs of the perverse,
and cast the prey out of his teeth.
18 Then I said, I shall die in my nest,
and I shall multiply days like the sand.
19 My root was open to the waters,
and the dew lay all night on my
branch.
20 My glory was fresh with me, and
my bow was renewed in my hand.
21 They listened to me and waited,
and kept silence for my counsel.
22 After my words, they did not go
on, and my speech dropped on them.
23 And they waited for me like the
rain; and they opened their mouth
wide as for the latter rain.
24 I laughed on those when they did
not believe, and they did not make the
light of my face to fall.
25 I chose out their way, and sat as
chief; and I lived as king among the
troops; as the mourners, and he who
comforts.[1] *(Job 31:28)*

Chapter 30

1 But now the young in days laugh at
me; those whose fathers I would have
refused to set with the dogs of my
flock.
2 Also, what profit for me was the
strength of their hands; for full vigor
had perished from them?
3 They are lifeless with want and
hunger, those who gnaw the dry
ground which was formerly waste and
desolation;
4 those plucking mallow by the
bushes, and broom roots for their
food;
5 they are driven from the midst;
they shouted against them as a thief;
6 they dwell in the chasms of the
torrents, in the holes of the earth, and
in rocks.
7 They bray among the bushes; they
huddle together under the nettles;
8 sons of fools; yea, sons without a
name; they have been whipped out of
the land.
9 And now I am their song; yea, I am
their byword.
10 They despise me, and they keep
away from me; they do not spare spit
from my face.
11 Because He has loosed His
bowstring and afflicted me, they also
have thrown off the bridle in my
presence.
12 On my right hand a brood rises;
they push away my feet and raise their
destructive ways against me.
13 They have broken down my path;
they profit by my ruin; they have no
helper.
14 They come on, as through a
break; they roll on under ruin.
15 Terrors are turned on me; they
pursue my soul like the wind, and my
goods pass away like a cloud.
16 And now my soul is poured out
within me; days of affliction have
seized me.
17 The night pierces my bones on
me, and my gnawings never lie down.
18 By the great force of my disease
my garment is disfigured; it chokes me
like the mouth of my coat.
19 He has cast me into the mire; and
I have become like dust and ashes.
20 I cried to You, but You did not
answer me. I stood up, and You looked
at me.
21 You changed to be cruel to me;

[1] Job was a judge and King in Edom.

You assault me with the might of Your
hand;
22 You lift me up to the wind; You
cause me to ride on it; and You melt
me in a storm.
23 For I know that You will bring me
to death, and to the house appointed
for all living.
24 Surely He will not stretch out His
hand to the ruin heap; behold, they cry
for help in their misfortune.
25 Did I not weep for him whose day
is hard; and my soul grieved for the
poor?
26 When I looked for good, then evil
came; and when I waited for light,
then darkness came.
27 My bowels have boiled, and they
have not rested; the days of affliction
confront me.
28 I go in mourning with no sun; I
stood up in the assembly, and I cried
out.
29 I am a brother to jackals, and a
companion to daughters of the ostrich.
30 My skin is blackened on me, and
my bones are burned with heat.
31 And my lyre has turned to
mourning, and my flute vibrates to the
sound of weeping.

Chapter 31

1 I made a covenant with my eyes;
how then could I look intently on a
virgin?
2 For what is the portion from Eloah
above? And what is the legacy from
the Almighty on high?
3 Is it not disaster to the perverse,
and calamity to the workers of
iniquity?
4 Does He not see my ways and
count all my steps?
5 If I have walked with vanity, or my
foot has hurried to deceit,
6 let me be weighed in a just balance
so that Eloah may know my integrity.
7 If my step has turned aside out of
the way, or my heart has walked after
my eyes, and if any blot has held fast
to my hands,
8 let me sow, and let another eat;
and let my harvests be rooted out.
9 If my heart has been enticed by a
woman; or I have laid wait at my
neighbor's door,
10 let my wife grind to another, and
let others crouch over her.
11 For that would be an evil scheme,
and is iniquity for judges.
12 For it is a fire that devours to the
place of ruin, and it would root up all
my gain.
13 If I despised the cause of my male
slave or my slave-girl when they
contended with me,
14 what then shall I do when El rises
up? And when He calls me to account,
what shall I answer Him?
15 Did not He who made me in the
belly make him? And did not One
shape us in the womb?
16 If I have withheld from the desire
of the poor, or I have consumed the
widow's eyes,
17 or have eaten my bit alone, and
the orphan has not eaten it,
18 for from my youth he grew up
with me as with a father, and from my
mother's womb I guided her.
19 If I have seen any perish for lack
of clothing, or there was no covering
for the needy;
20 if his loins have not blessed me,
and he warmed himself with the fleece
of my flock;
21 if I have lifted up my hand against
the orphan, when I watched over my
help in the gate;
22 let my shoulder fall from the
back, and let my arm be broken from
the elbow.
23 For trouble from El is a terror to
me, and I could not do the thing
because of His majesty.

24 If I have made gold my hope or have called fine gold my trust;
25 if I rejoiced because my wealth was great; or because my hand had gotten much;
26 if I looked to the light when it shone, or the splendid moon marching,
27 and my heart was secretly enticed, or my mouth has kissed my hand;
28 this also would be an iniquity for the judges; for I would have denied El above.
29 If I rejoiced at the ruin of one hating me, and I was excited when evil found him;
30 also I have not given my mouth to sin by asking his life with a curse;
31 if the men of my tent did not say, Who can give one not satisfied from his flesh?
32 The stranger did not sleep in the street, for I opened my doors to the traveler;
33 if I covered my transgressions like Adam, by hiding my iniquity in my bosom,
34 then let me fear before a great multitude, and let the scorn of families frighten me and I will be silent, and not go out the door.
35 Oh that I had one to hear me! See, my mark![1] Let the Almighty answer me, and let my Accuser write an indictment.
36 Surely I would carry it on my shoulder, and bind it like crowns to me.
37 I would tell Him the number of my steps. Like a prince[2] I would go near Him.
38 If my land cries out against me, or its furrows weep together;
39 if I have eaten its strength without silver, or have caused its owner to expire;
40 let thorns come forth instead of wheat, and a weed instead of barley. The words of Job are finished.

Chapter 32

1 And these three men rested from answering Job, because he was righteous in his own eyes.
2 And then burned the anger of Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite, of the family of Ram; his wrath burned against Job, because he had justified himself rather than Elohim.[3]
3 Also his wrath burned against his three friends, because they had not found any answer, yet they had condemned Job.
4 And Elihu had waited for Job with words, because they were older than he in days.
5 When Elihu saw that there was no answer in the mouth of the three men, then his anger burned.
6 And Elihu the son of Barachel the Buzite answered and said, I am young, and you are very aged; so I held back and was afraid to make my knowledge known to you.
7 I said, Days will speak, and many years will make wisdom known.
8 But it is a spirit in man giving them perception, even the breath of the Almighty.
9 It is not the great that are wise, nor the aged who perceive justice;
10 so then I say, Listen to me; I will declare my opinion, I also.
11 Behold, I waited for your words; I listened to your reasons while you searched out words;
12 yea, I paid attention to you, and

[1] The Kenites or Kainites were descendants of Kain and had a mark Gen 4:13-15.
[2] The Hebrew word here for prince is 'neged' and implies a religious leader or governor.
[3] It is almost impossible to get through to a person who is self-righteous and blinded in his own eyes.

behold, not one of you proved Job
wrong, nor answered his sayings;
13 that you not say, We have
discovered wisdom. It is El who will
scatter him, not man.
14 And he has not ordered words
against me, and I will not answer him
with your words.
15 They are broken; they do not
reply again; words have been removed
from them.
16 Shall I wait because they do not
speak, because they stand, not
answering again?
17 I also will answer my share; I also
will declare what I know.
18 For I am full of words; the spirit
inside me pressed on me;
19 behold my belly is like wine that
has no vent; it bursts like new wine-
skins.
20 I will speak so that I may be
relieved; I will open my lips and
answer.
21 I will not now lift up the face of a
man, nor do I give flattering titles to
any man.
22 For I do not know how to give
flattering titles; else after a little my
Maker will take me away.

Chapter 33

1 However, Job, now hear my speech
and listen to all my words.
2 Behold, now I have opened my
mouth; my tongue has spoken in my
mouth.
3 My words shall be from my upright
heart; and my lips will clearly speak
knowledge.
4 The Spirit of El made me, and the
breath of the Almighty gives me life.
5 If you are able, answer me; set
yourself in order before me. Stand up!
6 Behold, I am toward El as you; I
also was formed from the clay.
7 Behold, my terror shall not frighten
you; and my burden shall not be heavy
on you.
8 Surely you have spoken in my ears,
and I have heard the sound of words.
9 You said, I am pure, without
transgression; I am clean and no
iniquity is in me;
10 behold, He finds alienation on
me; He considers me His enemy;
11 He puts my feet in the stocks; He
watches all my paths.
12 Behold, you are not right in this. I
will answer you, for Eloah is greater
than man.
13 Why do you contend against Him,
since He does not give account to you
for any of His matters?
14 For in one way El may speak, and
in a second, but one does not regard it.
15 In a dream, a vision of the night,
when deep sleep falls on men; while
they slumber on the bed,
16 then He opens the ear of men and
seals their instruction,
17 that He may turn man from his
deed; that He might conceal pride
from man.
18 He holds back his soul from the
Pit, and his life from passing by the
sword.
19 He is also chastened with pain on
his bed, and enduring strife in his
bones;
20 so that his life loathes bread, and
his soul desirable food.
21 His flesh wastes away from his
sight; and his bones laid bare, they
that were not seen.
22 Yea, his soul draws near to the
Pit, and his life to the causers of death.
23 If there is a messenger for him, a
mediator, one among a thousand, to
declare for man his uprightness,
24 then let Him be gracious to him
and say, Deliver him from going down
to the Pit, for I have found a ransom!
25 His flesh shall be fresher than in

vigor; let him return to the days of his youth.
26 He will pray to Eloah, and He will accept him, and he will see His face with exultation; for He will restore to man his righteousness.
27 He will observe to men and say, I have sinned, and I have perverted uprightness; and it was not equally repaid to me;
28 He has redeemed my soul from passing over into the Pit, and my life shall see the light.
29 Lo, all these El does two or three times with a man,
30 to bring back his soul from the Pit, to be illuminated with the light of the living.
31 Pay attention, O Job; listen to me; be silent, and I will speak.
32 If you have anything to say, answer me; speak, for I desire to justify you.
33 If not, you listen to me; be silent, and I will teach you wisdom.

Chapter 34

1 And Elihu answered and said:
2 O wise men, hear my words; and you who know, listen to me;
3 for the ear tries words as the palate tastes food.
4 Let us choose for ourselves what is right; let us know among ourselves what is good.
5 For Job has said, I am righteous; also, El has taken away my right;
6 should I lie against my right? My wound is incurable, yet I am without rebellion.
7 What man is like Job, who drinks up derision like water;
8 Who goes in company with those who work iniquity, and walks with wicked men?
9 For he has said, It is no benefit for a man when he is accepted with Elohim.
10 So, O man of heart, listen to me; far be it from El to do wickedness; and the Almighty, to do evilly.
11 For He repays man's work to him; and according to a man's way, He causes him to find.
12 Yea, surely El will not do evilly, nor will the Almighty pervert justice.
13 Who has given the earth as in deposit with Him? Or who has laid the whole world?
14 If He sets His heart on him, if He gathers his Spirit and his breath to Himself,
15 all flesh shall perish together, and man shall return to dust. *(Gen 3:19)*
16 But if you have understanding, hear this; listen to the sound of my words:
17 Shall one who hates justice restrain it? Or will you condemn a righteous, mighty one;
18 who says to a king, O worthless one; to nobles, O evil one?
19 How much less to Him who does not lift up the face of rulers, nor regard the rich before the poor; for all of them are the work of His hands.
20 In a moment they die, and a people are shaken at midnight; yea, they pass away, and the mighty will be taken without a hand.
21 For His eyes are on the ways of a man, and He sees all his steps.
22 There is no darkness nor shadow of death, to hide there those who work iniquity.
23 For He does not still impose on man to go before El in judgment.
24 He will break mighty men in pieces without inquiry, and make others stand in their place.
25 So He knows their works; and He overturns in the night, so that they are crushed.

26 He strikes them for evil deeds in the place of the spectators,
27 for so they turned from following Him, and they did not consider all His ways so as
28 to cause the cry of the poor to come to Him. For He hears the cry of the afflicted.
29 And He gives rest; who then can condemn? And when He hides His face, who then can see Him? Even it may be against a nation and a man together,
30 from the reigning of unrighteous men, from being snares for the people.
31 For has any said to El, I have taken away; I will not pervert?
32 Besides what I see, You teach me; if I have done iniquity, I will not do it again.
33 Must He repay you because you rejected it? For you must choose, and not I; therefore, speak what you know.
34 Men of heart will say to me, and a wise man who hears me will say,
35 Job has spoken without knowledge, and his words are not with insight.
36 Would that Job may be tried to the end, because his answers are like men of iniquity.
37 For he adds rebellion to his sin; he claps his hands among us, and multiplies his words against El.[1]

Chapter 35

1 And Elihu answered and said:
2 Do you think this to be just, you that say, I am more just than El?
3 For you say, What will it benefit you? What shall I profit more than if I had sinned?
4 I will answer your words, and your friends with you.
5 Observe the heavens, and see; and behold the clouds, they are higher than you.
6 If you sin, what do you do against Him? Or if your transgressions are multiplied, what do you do to Him?
7 If you are righteous, what do you give to Him? Or what does He receive from your hand?
8 Your wickedness is for a man like yourself; and your righteousness may profit a son of man.
9 From the host of oppressions, they cry out; they cry because of the arm of the multitude.
10 But no one says, Where is Eloah my Maker, who gives songs in the night,
11 teaching us more than the animals of the earth, and makes us wiser than the birds of the heavens?
12 There they cry, but He does not answer, because of the pride of evildoers.
13 Surely, El will not hear vanity, nor will the Almighty look upon it.
14 How much less when you say you do not regard Him! Judgment is before Him, and you are waiting for Him.
15 And now, because He has not visited His anger, and He does not recognize great stupidity,
16 So Job vainly opens his mouth; he multiplies words without knowledge.

Chapter 36

1 And Elihu continued, and said:
2 Wait for me a little, and I will show you that there are yet words for Eloah.
3 I will bring my knowledge from afar, and I will credit righteousness to my Maker.
4 For truly my words are not false;

[1] Verses 33-37- The danger of self-righteousness is that if it is not repented of the person will eventually start to even blame YHWH instead of themselves.

the perfect One in knowledge is with you.
5 Behold, El is mighty, and He does not despise. He is mighty in strength of heart.
6 He will not keep the wicked alive, but He gives justice to the afflicted.
7 He does not withdraw His eyes from the righteous, but they are like kings on the throne; yea, He causes them to sit forever, and they are very high.
8 And if they are bound in chains, or caught in cords of affliction,
9 then He declares to them their work and their transgressions, that they have behaved proudly.
10 He also opens their ear to instruction, and commands that they turn back from iniquity.
11 If they hear and serve, they shall spend their days in good, and their years in pleasures.
12 But if they do not hear, they shall pass away by the sword, and they shall die without knowledge.
13 But the unrighteous in heart heap up anger; they cry not when He has bound them.
14 Their soul dies in youth, and their life ends among the sodomites.
15 He delivers the afflicted by his affliction, and He opens their ears by oppression.
16 And also He lured you from the mouth of distress to a wide place not cramped under; and the setting of your table would be full of fatness.
17 But you have filled up the judgment of the wicked; judgment and justice take hold.
18 For beware wrath, that He not lure you with His scorn; then a great ransom cannot turn you aside.
19 If your cry for help is set in order, then it will not be in gold, but with all the strong forces.
20 Do not desire the night when people are cut off in their stead.
21 Beware! Do not turn to iniquity; for you have chosen this rather than affliction.
22 Behold, El is exalted in His power. Who is a teacher like Him?
23 Who has appointed Him His way; or who can say, You have done wrong?
24 Remember that you magnify His work, of which men have sung;
25 every man has seen it; man beholds it from afar.
26 Behold, El is great, and we do not know; the number of His years cannot be searched out.
27 For He draws up the drops of water; they distill rain into mist,
28 which the clouds drip down, and drop upon men plentifully.
29 Also can any understand the spreading of the clouds, the crashing of His canopy?
30 Behold, He spreads His light about Him, and He covers the bottom of the sea.
31 For He judges the people by them; He gives plenty of food.
32 He covers His hands with the lightning, and commands it to strike the mark;
33 its thunder tells about Him; also the cattle, as to what is coming.

Chapter 37

1 My heart also trembles at this, and it leaps from its place.
2 Listen carefully to the thunder of His voice, and the rumbling that comes out from His mouth.
3 He lets it loose under the whole heavens, and His lightning to the wings of the earth.
4 After it, a voice roars; He thunders with His majestic voice; and He will not hold them back when His voice is heard.

5 El thunders wondrously with His voice; He does great things, and we do not know.
6 For He says to the snow, Fall on the earth; also to the shower of rain, and the shower of heavy rains.
7 He seals up the hand of every man so that all men may know His work.
8 Then the beast goes into its lair, and they stay in their dens.
9 Out of the storeroom comes the tempest, and cold from scattering winds.
10 Ice is given by El's breath, and the expanse of waters is frozen.
11 Yea, He loads the cloud with moisture; He scatters His lightning cloud;
12 and it is turned around by His guidance, so that they may do whatever He commands them on the face of the world of the earth.
13 Whether as a whip, or for His land, or for mercy, He finds it.
14 Listen to this, O Job; stand still and consider the wonderful works of El.
15 Do you know when Eloah placed them, and caused the lightning of His cloud to shine?
16 Do you know the balance of the clouds, the wonderful works of Him who is perfect in knowledge,
17 you whose garments are warm when the earth is still from the south wind?
18 Can you beat out the expanse with Him, hard like a cast mirror?
19 Make us know what we shall say to Him; for we cannot arrange our case because of darkness.
20 Shall it be told to Him that I would speak? If a man speaks, surely he will be swallowed up.
21 And now men cannot look upon the light when it is bright in the clouds; when the wind has passed and cleared them.
22 Golden splendor comes out of the north; Eloah is awesome in His majesty.
23 We cannot find Him, the Almighty; He is exalted in power; and He does not violate justice and abundant righteousness.
24 So, men, fear Him; He does not see any who are wise of heart.

Chapter 38

1 And YAHWEH answered Job out of the whirlwind and said:[1]
2 Who is this that darkens counsel by words without knowledge?
3 Now gird up your loins like a man, for I will question you; and you teach Me.
4 Where were you when I founded the earth? Declare if you know understanding. *(Gen 1:1, Pr 30:4)*
5 Who has set its dimensions, for you know? Or who has stretched a line on it? *(Pr 8:29)*
6 On what were its bases sunk? Or who cast its cornerstone,
7 when the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of Elohim shouted for joy? *(Job 1:6, Gen 6:2)*
8 Or who shut up the sea with doors, when it burst out; it came forth from the womb?
9 When I made the clouds for a garment, and darkness its navel-band;
10 and I broke My limit on it and set bars and doors;
11 and I said, You shall come to here, but no further; and here your proud waves shall be set?
12 Have you commanded the morning from your days, and caused the dawn to know its place,
13 that it might take hold of the

[1] Now YHWH will answer Job in a most pointed way.

wings of the earth; that the wicked might be shaken out of it?

14 It is turned like clay under a seal; and they stand out like a garment.

15 And their light is withheld from the wicked, and the high arm shall be broken.

16 Have you gone to the springs of the sea; or have you walked in searching of the deep?

17 Have death's gates been opened to you; or have you seen the gates of the shadow of death?

18 Have you comprehended the breadth of the earth? Declare, if you know it all!

19 Where is this, the way light dwells; and where is the place of darkness,

20 that you should take it to its boundary, and that you should perceive the paths to its house?

21 You know, for then you were born, and the number of your days is great.

22 Have you entered into the storehouses of the snow, or have you seen the storehouses of the hail,

23 which I have reserved for the time of distress for the day of battle and war?

24 How is it, the way the light is distributed; and how does the east wind spread itself on the earth?

25 Who has cut a channel for the flood; or a way for the thunderclaps,

26 to make it rain on the earth where no man is, a wilderness and no man in it;

27 to satisfy the waste and desolation, and to cause the source of grass to sprout?

28 Is there a father for the rain? Or who has given birth to the drops of dew?

29 From whose womb comes forth the ice; and the frost of the heavens, who fathered it;

30 the waters hidden like stone, and the face of the deep is captured?

31 Can you bind the bands of the Pleiades, or loosen the cords of Orion?

32 Can you bring out the constellations[1] in their season; or can you guide the Bear with its sons?

33 Do you know the limits of the heavens; can you establish their rulership on the earth?

34 Can you lift your voice to the clouds, so that floods of water may cover you?

35 Can you send lightnings, that they may go and say to you, Here we are?

36 Who has put wisdom in the inward parts; or who has given understanding to the mind?

37 Who can by wisdom number the clouds or who can lay down the jars of the heavens,

38 when the dust is melted into hardness, and the clods stick together?

39 Will you hunt the prey for the lion, or fill the appetite of the young lions,

40 when they crouch in dens, and sit in the cover of their hiding place?

41 Who provides food for the raven, when its young ones cry to El and wander about without food?

Chapter 39

1 Do you know the time when the wild goats of the rock bear? Do you observe the delivering of deer?

2 Can you tell the months they fulfill; or do you know the time for their bearing,

3 when they crouch and bring forth; they send out their pangs?[2]

4 Their sons are strong; they

[1] The Hebrew word for constellation is 'mazzaroth'. Yahweh put the 12 constellations of the mazzaroth in the sky to show the plan of salvation through the twelve tribes of Israel.

multiply with grain; they go forth and
do not return to them.
5 Who has sent out the wild donkey
free, or who has loosened the bands of
the wild donkey ?
6 To whom I have assigned the
desert for his home, and the salt land
for his dwellings?
7 He laughs at the roar of the city; he
does not hear the driver's shouts;
8 he seeks out mountains for his
pasture; and he searches after every
green thing.
9 Will the wild ox consent to be your
servant, or spend the night by your
feed-trough?
10 Can you tie the wild ox in the
furrow with his rope? Or will he
harrow the valleys for you?
11 Will you trust him because his
strength is great; or will you leave your
labor to him?
12 Or will you have faith in him, that
he will return your seed, and gather it
to your grain-floor?
13 The wing of the ostriches flap
joyously, though not like the stork's
pinions for flight.
14 For she leaves her eggs to the
earth, and lets them warm on the dust;
15 and forgets that a foot may crush
it, or the beast of the field may trample
it;
16 she treats her young roughly, as if
they are not hers; for her labor is
vanity without fear;
17 because Eloah has made her
forget wisdom; and He has not given
to her a share in understanding.
18 At the time she lifts up on high,
she laughs at the horse and its rider.
19 Have you given the horse its
strength: have you clothed its neck
with a mane?
20 Can you make him leap like a
locust; the majesty of his snorting is
terrifying?
21 He paws in the valley and he
rejoices in his strength; he goes out to
meet the weapons;
22 he mocks at fear and is not
terrified; and he does not turn back
from the sword.
23 The quiver rattles against him,
the flashing spear and the javelin.
24 He swallows the ground with
quivering and trembling, and he does
not stand still for the sound of the
ram's horn.
25 When the ram's horn sounds, he
says, Aha! And he smells the battle
from a distance, the thunder of the
captains, and the shouting.
26 Does the hawk soar from your
understanding? Will he spread his
wings toward the south?
27 Or does the eagle mount up at
your mouth, and make his nest on
high?
28 He lives and stays on the rock, on
the crag of the rock and the
stronghold.
29 From there he seeks food; his
eyes see afar off.
30 And his young brood also sucks
up blood; and where the pierced ones
are, there he is.

Chapter 40

1 And YAHWEH answered Job and
said:
2 Shall a reprover contend with the
Almighty? He who reproves Eloah, let
him answer it.
3 Then Job answered YAHWEH and
said:
4 Behold, I am vile! What shall I

[2] Verses 2-3- Elohim is challenging Job asking if he controls the pattern of the heavens as the moving of the constellations in chapter 38:31-32, or the procession of the cyclical pattern of the equinox here in these verses, which determine the months and the beginning of the new year.

answer You? I will put my hand to my
mouth.
5 Once I have spoken, but I will not
answer; yea, twice, but I will go no
further.[1]
6 And YAHWEH answered Job out
of the whirlwind and said:
7 Now gird up your loins like a man,
and I will question you; and you make
Me to know.
8 Will you also set aside My
judgment; will you condemn Me so
that you may be justified?
9 And have you an arm like El; or
can you thunder with a voice like His?
10 Adorn yourself with majesty now,
and with grandeur, and clothe yourself
with glory and honor;
11 pour forth the outbursts of your
anger; yea, look on everyone who is
proud, and bring him down low;
12 look on everyone who is proud,
and humble him, and trample the
wicked in their place;
13 hide them in the dust together;
bind their faces in darkness.
14 Then I also will confess to you
that your right hand can save you.
15 Now behold Behemoth[2], which I
made along with you; he eats grass like
an ox;
16 see, now, his strength is in his
loins, and his force in the muscles of
his belly;
17 he hangs his tail like a cedar; the
sinews of his thighs are knit together;
18 his bones are like tubes of copper;
his bones like bars of iron;
19 he is the first in the ways of El; his
Maker brings near his sword.
20 For the mountains yield food for
him, and all the beasts of the field play
there.
21 He lies under the lotus, in the
hiding-place of the reed and the
marsh;
22 the lotus trees cover him in its
shadow; the willows of the torrent
circle him.
23 Behold, he is confident, even if
Jordan burst forth against his mouth.
24 Shall any take him before his
eyes, or pierce his nose with snares?

Chapter 41

1 Can you draw out the leviathan
with a hook, or hold down his tongue
with a cord?
2 Can you put a reed rope into his
nose, or pierce his jaw with a thorn?
3 Will he multiply pleas for help to
you; or will he speak soft words to
you?
4 Will he cut a covenant with you;
will you take him for a slave forever?
5 Will you play with him as with a
bird; or will you tie him up for your
maidens?
6 Shall your partners bargain over
him; shall they divide him among the
merchants?
7 Can you fill his skin with barbs, or
his head with fishing spears?
8 Put your hand on him; remember
the battle; you will not do it again!
9 Behold, his hope has been made
false; will he not be cast down at the
sight of him?
10 None is so fierce as to dare to stir
him up. Who then is able to stand
before Me?
11 Who has gone before Me that I
should repay? All under the heavens, it
is Mine!
12 I will not keep silent as to his

[1] Verses 3-5- Finally Job gets it that all men are vile and evil compared to the great eternal, perfect, loving, Creator. He shuts his mouth in shame, which fully contrasts the self-righteous person who always has an answer no matter what, due to their pride and self righteousness. (Ro 3:10-23)

[2] This word means *"an excellent beast*" and it is mostly believed to be a dinosaur.

limbs, or the matter of his powers, or the grace of his frame.
13 Who can take off the face of his covering; who can come with his double bridle?
14 Who can pry open the doors of his face? Terror is all around his teeth.
15 The rows of shields are his pride, shut up with a tight seal;
16 one is so near to another that no air can come between them;
17 they are joined to one another; they clasp each other, so that they cannot be separated.
18 His sneezings flash forth light, and his eyes are as the eyelids of the dawn.
19 Out of his mouth go burning torches; sparks of fire fly out.
20 Smoke goes out of his nostrils like a boiling pot fired by reeds.
21 His breath kindles coals and the flame goes out from his mouth.
22 Strength abides in his neck and terror dances before him.
23 The folds of flesh cleave together, cast firm on him; he cannot be moved.
24 His heart is cast hard as a stone, even cast hard as a piece of a lower millstone.
25 The mighty are afraid from his arising; from the crashings they miss the way.
26 The sword overtakes him, but will not hold firm, nor the spear, the dart, or the javelin.
27 He counts iron as straw, copper as rotten wood.
28 A son of a bow cannot make him flee; slingstones are turned to stubble by him;
29 darts are counted as stubble; he laughs at the shaking of a javelin.
30 Points of potsherds are under him; he spreads sharp marks on the mire.
31 He makes the deep boil like a pot; he makes the sea like a pot of ointment;
32 he makes a path to shine after him; one would think the deep to be gray headed.
33 There is nothing like him on earth, one made without fear.
34 He beholds all high things; he is king over all the sons of pride.

Chapter 42

1 And Job answered YAHWEH and said:
2 I know that You can do all, and no purpose is withheld from You.
3 Who is this hiding counsel without knowledge? So I declared, but did not understand things too wonderful for me; yea, I did not know.
4 I pray, Listen, and I will speak; I will ask You, and You will make me know.
5 I have heard of You by hearing of the ear, but now my eye has seen You;
6 Therefore, I despise myself, and I have repented on dust and ashes.[1]
7 And it happened, after YAHWEH spoke these words to Job, YAHWEH said to Eliphaz the Temanite, My anger glows against you and your two friends. For You have not spoken the right about Me, as My servant Job.
8 And now take for you seven young bulls and seven rams and go to My servant Job, and offer a burnt offering for yourselves. And My servant Job will pray for you. Surely I will lift up his face so as not to do with you according to your folly, in that you have not spoken the right about Me, as My servant Job. *(Job 1:5)*
9 And Eliphaz the Temanite, and Bildad the Shuhite, and Zophar the Naamathite went and did as

[1] Job finally realizes that only humility and repentance will lead to a true relationship with YAHWEH. Our self-justification is simply filthy rage to Him (Is 64:6).

YAHWEH spoke to them. And YAHWEH lifted the face of Job.
10 And when he prayed for his friends, YAHWEH turned the captivity of Job; and YAHWEH added to Job all which had been his, to double.
11 And all his brothers and all his sisters came to him; and all knowing him before. And they ate bread with him in his house and consoled him and comforted him as to all the evil that YAHWEH had brought on him. And they each gave him a piece of money, and each one a ring of gold.
12 And YAHWEH blessed the latter days of Job more than the earlier days. And to him were fourteen thousand sheep and six thousand camels, and a thousand yoke of oxen, and a thousand she-donkeys.
13 And he had seven sons and three daughters.
14 And he called the name of the first, Jemima; and the name of the second, Keziah[1]; and the name of the third, Keren-Happuch.
15 And in all the land there were not found women as beautiful as Job's daughters. And their father gave them inheritance among their brothers.
16 After this Job lived a hundred and forty years. And he saw his sons, and his grandsons, even four generations.
17 And Job died, being old and full of days.

[1] The name means to peel off or harvest.

Book of Song of Solomon

Chapter 1

1 The song of songs which is Solomon's.[1]
2 Let Him kiss me with the kisses of His mouth; for Your love is better than wine.
3 For Your ointments have a lovely fragrance; Your name is as ointment poured out; on account of this the virgins love You. *(Eccl 7:1)*
4 Draw me; we will run after You. The King has brought me into His chambers. We will be glad and rejoice in You; we will remember Your loves more than wine; the upright love You.
5 I am black, but comely, O daughters of Jerusalem, like the tents of Kedar, like the curtains of Solomon. *(Ex 36:8)*
6 Do not look at me, that I am black, that the sun has looked on me. My mother's sons were angry with me; they made me the keeper of the vineyards; but my own vineyard I have not kept.[2]
7 Tell me, You whom my soul loves, where do You feed; where do You lie down at noon? For why should I be as one who is veiled[3] beside the flocks of Your companions?
8 If you yourself do not know, most beautiful among women, go in the footsteps of the flock. And feed your kids beside the tents of the shepherds.
9 O My love, I have compared you to My mares in Pharaoh's chariots.
10 Your cheeks are lovely with ornaments, your neck with strings of beads.
11 We will make you ornaments of gold with studs of silver.
12 While the King is in His circle, my spikenard gives its fragrance.[4]
13 A bundle of myrrh is my Beloved to me.[5] He shall lie between my breasts.
14 My Beloved is to me like a cluster of henna in the vineyards of En-Gedi.
15 Behold, you are beautiful, My love. Behold, you are beautiful; your eyes as doves'.
16 Behold, You are beautiful, My Beloved; yea, pleasant. Also our couch is green.
17 The beams of our house are cedars; our rafters are of firs.

Chapter 2

1 I am a rose of the plain of Sharon, a lily of the valleys.
2 As a lily among thorns, so is My love among the daughters.
3 As the apple among the trees of the forest, so is my Beloved among the sons. I delighted in His shadow, and I sat down; and His fruit was sweet to my taste.
4 He brought me to the house of wine, and His banner over me was love.[6]
5 Feed me with raisin cakes, refresh

---

1 The Song of Solomon is a poetic book about the bride and the bridegroom. Solomon is a representative of the Messiah and the bride here is representative of the bride of Messiah.

2 The vineyard is a sign of protection (Is 5:1-7) but also productivity (Luk 20:9-16). The bride here has not been totally productive with the work given to her.

3 Prostitutes were veiled and the bride here does not want to be like one of them.

4 Spikenard was used for kings and had a very special fragrance. Mary used this to prepare Yahshua for His burial (Mk 14:3).

5 Myrrh had to be beaten to bring out the sweet aroma, and was used to anoint royal nuptial robes. It was also given to Yahshua at His birth (Math 2:11), used in the wine when He died (Mak 15:23) and also used in the spices for His burial (Joh 19:39).

6 The term "*banner*" signifies messianic overtures, (Is 11:10).

me with apples, for I am sick with love.
(Gen 30:15)
6 His left hand is under my head,
and His right hand embraces me.[1]
7 I charge you by the gazelles, and by
the does of the field, O daughters of
Jerusalem, that you do not stir up and
do not awaken (Aleph/Tav) the
Beloved until it pleases.[2] *(Zech 1:13-
17, Amos 5:18-20, Luk 21:8)*
8 The voice of my Beloved! Behold,
He comes leaping on the mountains,
skipping on the hills.
9 My Beloved is likened to a gazelle,
or to a young deer, the stag. Behold,
He stands behind our wall, looking
from the windows, peering from the
lattice.
10 My Beloved answered and said to
me, rise up yourself, My love, My
beautiful one, and come away yourself.
11 For, behold, the winter has
passed, the rain has passed, it goes to
itself.[3]
12 The flowers are seen on the earth;
the time of singing has come, and the
voice of the turtledove is heard in our
land.
13 The fig tree spices her unripe figs
and the vines give a fragrance by the
blossom. Arise, My love; come, My
beautiful one, and come yourself.
(Math 24:32-35)
14 O, My dove, in the clefts of the
rock, in the secrecy of the steep place,
let Me see your form. Let Me hear your
voice; for your voice is sweet, and your
form is beautiful.[4]
15 Take for us the foxes, the little
foxes that spoil the vineyards, even our
vineyards with blossoms.
16 My Beloved is mine, and I am
His. He feeds among the lilies.[5]
17 Until when does the day blow, and
the shadows flee away? Turn, my
Beloved, and be like a gazelle, or a
young deer, the stag, on the cleft
mountains.

Chapter 3

1 By night on my bed I sought Him
(Aleph/Tav) whom my soul loves. I
sought Him, but I did not find Him.
2 I will rise now and go about in the
city, in the streets and in the broad
places. I will seek Him whom my soul
loves. I sought Him, but I did not find
Him.
3 The one watching going about in
the city found me. I said, Have you
seen Him whom my soul loves?
4 When I had passed on from them,
it was a little while until I found Him
whom my soul loves. I seized Him, and
I did not let Him go until I had
brought Him into my mother's house,
and into the room of her who
conceived me.
5 O daughters of Jerusalem, swear
the oath, swear it seven times, by the
gazelles or by the does of the field, that
you do not stir up, even that you not
awaken (Aleph/Tav) the Beloved until
it pleases.
6 Who is this who comes up out of
the wilderness like columns of smoke,
sacrificing as incense myrrh and
frankincense, from all powders of the
merchant?[6] *(Ex 13:21-22)*
7 Behold his bed, Solomon's! Sixty
mighty men are around it, of the
mighty men of Israel.

---

1 Showing full security in her bridegroom.

2 This is symbolic of not seeking Yahshua's return before it's time.

3 This is spring and Passover time.

4 The bride is hidden in the rocks, Is 33:14-17, Is 26:1, 20-21.

5 This shows the closeness of the bride and bridegroom. They are found in the *"lilies"* because the name comes from it's whiteness from it's purity.

6 The bride comes out of the wilderness, (Rev 12:14, Ex 20:34-35).

8 They all hold the sword, instructed
in war; each man has his sword on his
thigh from dread in the night.
9 King Solomon made himself a
litter bed of the trees of Lebanon.
10 He made its poles of silver; its
back of gold; its seat of purple; its
middle was paved with love by the
daughters of Jerusalem.
11 Go forth, O daughters of Zion, and
see The King of Peace with the crown
with which his mother crowned him
on his wedding day, even on the day of
the gladness of his heart.[1]

Chapter 4

1 Behold, you are beautiful, My love.
Behold, you are beautiful;[2] your eyes
are as doves' from behind your veil.
Your hair is like a flock of goats which
lie down from Mount Gilead.
2 Your teeth are like a flock of shorn
sheep which come up from the
washing place; of which they all are
bearing twins; and a bereaved one is
not among them.
3 Your lips are like a cord of scarlet,
and your speech is becoming; your
temples are like a piece of
pomegranate behind your veil.
4 Your neck is like the tower of
David, built for an armory; a thousand
bucklers hang on it, all the shields of
the mighty men.
5 Your two breasts are like two
fawns, twins of a gazelle, feeding
among the lilies.
6 Until when the day blows, and the
shadows flee away, I myself will go to
the mountain of myrrh, and to the hills
of frankincense.
7 You are all beautiful, My love.
There is no blemish on you.
8 Come with Me from Lebanon, My
spouse; with Me from Lebanon. Look
from the top of Amana, from the top of
Shenir and Hermon, from the lions'
dens, from the mountains of the
leopards.
9 You have ravished My heart, My
sister, My spouse; you have ravished
My heart with one of your eyes, with
one chain of your neck.
10 How beautiful are your loves, My
sister, My spouse! How much better
are your loves than wine, and the scent
of your ointments than all spices!
11 Your lips, My spouse, drip like the
honeycomb; honey and milk are under
your tongue. And the scent of your
garments is like the scent of Lebanon.
12 A locked garden is My sister, My
spouse; a spring locked up, a sealed
fountain.
13 Your plants are an orchard of
pomegranates with excellent fruits,
with henna and spikenard;
14 spikenard and saffron, calamus
and cinnamon; with all trees of
frankincense, myrrh and aloes; with
all the chief balsam spices;
15 a fountain of gardens, a well of
living waters; even flowings from
Lebanon.[3] *(Rev 22:1-2)*
16 Awake, north wind; yea, come,
south wind; blow on my garden; let its
spices flow out. Let my Beloved come
into His garden and eat its excellent
fruits.[4]

Chapter 5

1 I have come into My garden, My
sister, My spouse; I have gathered My
myrrh with My spice. I have eaten My
honeycomb with My honey; I have
drunk My wine with My milk. Eat and

1 The bride is marrying the King of Peace, Is 9:6-7, Math 5:35, Heb 7:1-2.

2 Verses 1-15 show how much the bridegroom is in love with His bride.

3 Verses 12-15- Showing imagery like the Garden of Eden.

4 Verse 16 the bride calls out to her bridegroom to come.

drink, O friends; yea, drink fully, beloved ones.

2 I sleep, but my heart is awake. It is the sound of my Beloved that knocks, saying, Open to Me, My sister, My love, My dove, My undefiled. For My head is filled with dew, My locks with the drops of the night. *(Math 25:1-13)*

3 I have put off My coat; how shall I put it on? I have washed My feet; how shall I defile them?

4 My Beloved sent His hand from the opening, and my inner being sighed for Him.

5 I rose up to open to my Beloved, and my hands dripped with myrrh; yea, my fingers flowing with myrrh on the handles of the bolt.[1]

6 I opened to my Beloved, but my Beloved had left; He passed on. My soul went out when He spoke; I sought Him, but I could not find Him. I called Him, but He did not answer me.[2]

7 The watchmen who went about the city found me and struck me; they wounded me; those keeping the walls lifted my veil from me.

8 I charge you, O daughters of Jerusalem, if you find my Beloved, what do you tell Him? That I am sick with love.

9 What is your Beloved more than another beloved, most beautiful among women? What is your Beloved more than another beloved, that you adjure us so?

10 My Beloved is bright and rosy, standing out among ten thousand.

11 His head is like refined gold; His locks are bushy and black as a raven.

12 His eyes are as the eyes of doves on the rivers of waters, washed with milk, sitting on a setting.

13 His cheeks are like a bed of spices, a raised bed of aromatic herbs. His lips are like lilies dropping flowing myrrh.

14 His hands are like rings of gold filled with jewels; His body an ivory plate overlaid with sapphires.

15 His legs are like pillars of marble founded on bases of fine gold; His appearance is like Lebanon, excellent as the cedars.

16 His mouth is most sweet, and He is altogether lovely. This is my Beloved, and this is my Friend, O daughters of Jerusalem.

Chapter 6

1 Where has your Beloved gone, most beautiful among women? Where has your Beloved turned? For we seek Him along with you.

2 My Beloved has gone down to His garden, to the terraces of spices, to feed in the gardens and to gather lilies.

3 I am my Beloved's, and my Beloved is mine. He feeds among the lilies. *(SoS 2:16, 7:10)*

4 O My love, you are as beautiful as Tirzah, as lovely as Jerusalem, awesome as bannered armies.

5 Turn away your eyes from Me, because they have overcome Me. Your hair is like a flock of goats that lie down from Gilead.

6 Your teeth are like a flock of ewes which come up from the washing place, of which they all are bearing twins, and a bereaved one is not among them.

7 Your temples behind your veil are like a piece of pomegranate.

8 Sixty of them are queens, and eighty concubines, and virgins without number.

9 But My dove, My perfect one is united *(echad)*. She is the only one to her mother; she is the choice of the one who bore her. The daughters saw her and called her blessed; the queens

---

1 The myrrh is showing the sacrifice and suffering it took for His bride.

2 The bridegroom is here but not visible yet.

and the concubines saw her, and they
praised her. *(Joh 17:23)*
10 Who is she who looks down like
the dawn, beautiful as the moon, clear
as the sun, awesome as bannered
armies?
11 I went down to the garden of nut
trees, to see the greenery of the ravine,
to see whether the vine flowered and
the pomegranates budded.
12 I did not know, but My soul set
Me on the chariots of My princely
people.
13 Return, return, O Peaceful one!
Return, return, that we may gaze upon
you. What will you see in the
Shulamite? As it were the dance of two
army camps.

Chapter 7

1 How beautiful are your feet in
sandals,[1] O prince's daughter! The
curves of your thighs are like jewels,
the work of the hands of an artisan.
2 Your navel is like a round goblet; it
never lacks mixed wine. Your belly is
like a heap of wheat set about with
lilies.
3 Your two breasts are like two
fawns, twins of a gazelle.
4 Your neck is like an ivory tower;
your eyes like the fishpools in
Heshbon, by the gate of Bath-Rabbim.
Your nose is like a tower of Lebanon,
peering toward the face of Damascus.
5 Your head is like Carmel, and the
hair of your head like purple cloth; the
King is held captive in its tresses.
6 How beautiful and how pleasant
you are in delights, O love!
7 Your stature compares to a palm
tree, and your breasts to clusters of
grapes.
8 I said, I will go up in the palm tree;
I will take hold of its stalk. And please
let your breasts be like clusters of the
vine, and the scent of your nose like
apples,
9 and your palate like the best wine
going down for my Beloved in
smoothness, flowing softly over the
lips of sleeping ones.
10 I am my Beloved's, and His desire
is toward me. *(SoS 2:16, 6:3)*
11 Come, my Beloved, let us go forth
into the field; let us stay in the villages.
12 Let us rise up early to the
vineyards; let us see if the vine flowers
and the blossom opens, and the
pomegranates bud forth. There I will
give my loves to You.[2]
13 The love apples give a scent, and
over our doors are all excellent fruits;
new, also old, I have laid up for You,
my Beloved.

Chapter 8

1 Who can give You to me, as my
brother, who sucked the breasts of my
mother? When I find You outside, I
would kiss You. They also would not
despise me.
2 I would lead You; I would bring
You into my mother's house, that You
might instruct me; I would cause You
to drink the spiced wine from the juice
of my pomegranate.
3 His left hand would be under my
head, and His right hand embraces
me.
4 I adjure you, O daughters of
Jerusalem; why do you awaken; yea,
why do you awaken (Aleph/Tav) my
Love until it pleases?
5 Who is this that comes up from the
wilderness, leaning on her Beloved?[3] I
awakened you under the apple tree;
there your mother travailed with you;
there she travailed; she bore you.
6 Set me as a seal on Your heart, as a

---

1 Rom 10:15

2 Comparing the agriculture of this verse with SOS 2:12, we can see that ½ a year has passed.

seal on Your arm. For love is strong as
death; jealousy is cruel as Sheol; its
flames are flames of fire, a flame of
Yah.
7 Many waters cannot quench love,
nor will the rivers overflow it. If a man
would give all the wealth of his house
for love, they surely would despise
him.[1]
8 We have a little sister, and she has
no breasts. What shall we do for our
sister in the day she shall be spoken
for?[2]
9 If she is a wall, we will build a
turret of silver on her. And if she is a
door, we will enclose her with boards
of cedar.
10 I was a wall, and my breasts like
towers; then I was in His eyes as one
finding peace.
11 Solomon had a vineyard in Baal-
Hamon. He leased the vineyard to
keepers; for its fruit everyone was to
bring a thousand of silver.[3]
12 My vineyard which is mine is
before me; the thousand is for you, O
Solomon, and two hundred for the
keepers of its fruit.
13 You who dwell in the gardens, the
companions are listening to your
voice; cause me to hear it.
14 Hurry, my Beloved, and be like a
gazelle, or a young deer, the stag, on
the mountains of spices.

---

[3] The bride although unprepared and not ready in chapter one, now comes out of the wilderness ready for the bridegroom and the wedding supper, (Rev 19:7-8, Rev 12:1-2,14).

[1] Verses 6-7 Now, the bride is ready to give 100% of herself to the bridegroom and knows her whole existence is only for Him, (Ro 12:1-2, 1 Cor 6:20).

[2] Speaking of Judah and their inclusion into the family of the bridegroom.

[3] Is 5:1, Eccl 2:4, Math 21:33-45

Book of Ruth

Chapter 1

1 And it happened in the days that the judges judged, there was a famine in the land. And a man from Bethlehem, Judah, went to live in the fields of Moab, he and his wife, and his two sons.
2 And the name of the man was Elimelech; and the name of his wife Naomi. And the name of his two sons were Mahlon and Chilion[1], Ephrathites from Bethlehem, Judah. And they came into the plains of Moab[2], and remained there.
3 And Naomi's husband Elimelech died; And she was left, and her two sons.
4 And they took wives to themselves, women of Moab. The name of the one was Orpah, and the name of the second, Ruth[3]. And they lived there about ten years.
5 And they also died, both of them, Mahlon and Chilion. And the woman was bereaved of her two children and of her husband.
6 And she rose up, she and her daughters-in-law, and turned back from the fields of Moab. For she had heard in the fields of Moab that YAHWEH had visited His people, to give food to them.
7 And she went out from the place where she had been, and her two daughters-in-law with her. And they went in the way to return to the land of Judah.
8 And Naomi said to her two daughters-in-law, Go, each return to the house of her mother. May YAHWEH deal kindly with you, as you have done with the dead, and with me.
9 May YAHWEH grant to you that you find rest, each in the house of her husband. And she kissed them, and they lifted up their voice and wept.
10 And they said to her, Nevertheless, we will go back with you to your people.
11 And Naomi said, Turn back, my daughters. Why should you go with me? Are there yet sons to me in my belly that they should be husbands for you?
12 Turn back, my daughters, go. For I am too old to belong to a husband. Though I should say, There is hope for me, and I should be tonight with a husband, and also I should bear sons;
13 will you wait for them, that they might grow up? Will you shut yourselves up for them, not to belong to a husband? No, my daughters, for it is much more bitter for me than for you, for the hand of YAHWEH has gone out against me.
14 And they lifted up their voice and wept again. And Orpah kissed her mother in law, but Ruth clung to her.
15 And she said, See, your sister-in-law has turned back to her tribe, and to her Elohim. You turn back after your sister-in-law.
16 And Ruth said, Do not beg me to leave you, to turn back from following you. For where you go, I will go. And where you stay, I will stay. Your people are my people, and your Elohim my Elohim. *(2Kgs 3:7, 1 Kgs 22:4)*
17 Where you die, I will die, and there I will be buried. May YAHWEH do to me, and more so, if anything but death part you and me.[4]

---

[1] Mahon means "*sickness*" and Chilion means "*weakness*".

[2] The plains of Moab was an area located within the land of the tribe of Reuben Num 26:3, Num 35:1.

[3] Ruth means "*friend*". "W*omen of Moab*", see note on Deut 23:4.

[4] This verse shows the great commitment Ruth had to her mother-in law and dead husband and family and is an example to every true covenant believer.

18 And she saw that she had made herself strong to go with her; and she ceased to speak to her.

19 And they went, both of them, until they came into Bethlehem. And it happened as they came into Bethlehem, all the city was moved at them. And they said, Is this Naomi?

20 And she said to them, Do not call me Naomi. Call me Bitterness, for the Almighty *(Shaddai)* has dealt bitterly with me.

21 I went out full, and YAHWEH has brought me back empty. Why do you call me Naomi, since YAHWEH has set His eye against me, and the Almighty *(Shaddai)* has done evil to me?

22 And Naomi returned, and Ruth the Moabitess, her daughter-in-law with her, who returned from the fields of Moab. And they came to Bethlehem at the beginning of barley harvest.[1]

Chapter 2

1 And Naomi had a kinsman of her husband, a mighty man of the family of Elimelech. And his name was Boaz.

2 And Ruth of Moab said to Naomi, Let me now go to the field and glean among the ears of grain after him in whose sight I shall find favor.[2] And she said to her, Go, my daughter.

3 And she went. And she came and gleaned in the field after the reapers. And she happened by chance on the part of the field belonging to Boaz, who was of Elimelech's family.

4 And, behold, Boaz came from Bethlehem, and said to the reapers, YAHWEH be with you. And they answered him, YAHWEH bless you.

[1] This started at Passover and continued until Shavuot.

[2] The word used here can also mean grace, and Ruth in this story is typical of the bride and Boaz the Bridegroom.

5 And Boaz said to his young man who had been set over the reapers, Whose is this young woman?

6 And the young man who had been set over the reapers replied and said, She is a young woman of Moab who came with Naomi from the fields of Moab.

7 And she said, Please let me glean, and I shall gather among the sheaves after the reapers. And she came and has remained since morning, even until now. She sat in the house a little while.

8 And Boaz said to Ruth, Do you not hear, my daughter? Do not go to glean another field, and also do not pass through this. And you shall stay close to my young women.

9 Your eyes shall be on the field which they shall reap, and you shall go after them. Have I not commanded the young men not to touch you? When you are thirsty, then you shall go to the vessels and shall drink from that which the young men draw.

10 And she fell on her face and bowed to the earth, and said to him, Why have I found grace in your eyes, that you should notice me, and I a stranger?

11 And Boaz answered and said to her, It has been fully revealed to me all that you have done with your mother-in-law after the death of your husband. And you left your father and your mother, and the land of your birth, and came to a people which you had not known before.

12 May YAHWEH repay your work, and your wages shall be complete[3] from YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, under whose wings you have come to take refuge.

13 And she said, Let me find grace in your eyes, my master, because you

[3] The son of Boaz and Ruth was named Obed, which means one who works/serves.

have comforted me, and because you have spoken to the heart of your handmaid. And I surely am not as one of your handmaids.
14 And Boaz said to her, At mealtime
come here, and you shall eat of the bread and dip your morsel in the vinegar. And she sat at the side of the reapers, and he reached out roasted grain to her. And she ate and was satisfied, and had some left over.
15 And she rose up to glean. And
Boaz commanded his young men, saying, She shall glean even between the sheaves, and you shall not cause her to be ashamed.
16 And pulling you shall also pull out
for her of the bundles, and shall leave; and she shall glean, and you shall not rebuke her.
17 And she gleaned in the field until
the evening, and beat out that which she had gleaned. And it was about an ephah of barley. *(Is 28:27)*
18 And she took it up and went to
the city. And her mother-in-law saw that which she had gleaned. And she brought out and gave to her that which she had reserved after she was satisfied.
19 And her mother-in-law said to
her, Where have you gleaned today? And where have you worked? May he who noticed you be blessed. And she told her mother-in-law with whom she had worked, and said, The name of the man with whom I have worked today is Boaz.
20 And Naomi said to her daughter-
in-law, Blessed is he of YAHWEH who has not forsaken his kindness with the living and with the dead. And Naomi said to her, The man is near of kin to us; he is of our kinsmen redeemers[1].
21 And Ruth of Moab said, And he
surely said to me, You shall stay close, near to the young men whom I have, until they have completed the whole harvest which I have.
22 And Naomi said to her daughter-
in-law Ruth, Good, my daughter, that you go out with his young women, and that men may not attack you in another field.
23 And she stayed close to the young
women of Boaz to glean, until the end of the barley harvest, and of the wheat harvest. And she lived with her mother-in-law.

Chapter 3

1 And her mother-in-law Naomi said
to her, My daughter, do I not seek rest for you, that it may be well with you?
2 And now, is not Boaz of our
kindred, with whose young women you have been? Behold, he is winnowing the threshing floor of barley tonight.
3 And you shall bathe, and anoint
yourself, and put your garments on you, and go down to the threshing floor. Do not let yourself be known to the man until he has finished eating and drinking.
4 And it shall be, when he lies down,
you shall know the place where he lies down. And you shall go in and uncover

[1] This word indicates the rightful next of kin who would redeem his relative who has fallen into bondage, and lost their inheritance, and is indicative in scripture of the Messiah who redeems those who seek Him of the bondage of the debt of their sins, which according to the Torah would be punishable by death. This is why it is very clear the Messiah must return directly before the Jubilee year of redemption (Is 60: 16, Is 59:19-21, Ruth 3:9, 4:1-10, Lev 25:25).

his feet, and lie down. And he will tell
you that which you are to do.
5 And she said to her, All that you
say, I will do.
6 And she went down to the
threshing floor and did according to all
that her mother-in-law commanded
her.
7 And Boaz ate and drank, and his
heart felt good. And he went to lie
down at the end of the heap. And she
came secretly and uncovered his feet,
and lay down.
8 And it happened in the middle of
the night, that the man trembled and
turned himself. And, behold, a woman
was lying at his feet!
9 And he said, Who are you? And she
said, I am your handmaid Ruth, and
you shall spread your skirt over your
handmaid,[1] for you are a kinsman
redeemer.*(Ezek 5:3, 16:8, Rev 7:15)*
10 And he said, Blessed be you of
YAHWEH, my daughter. You have
dealt more kindly at the latter end
than at the beginning, not to go after
the young men, either poor or rich.
11 And now, my daughter, do not
fear. All that you say I will do to you,
for all the gate of my people know that
you are a woman of virtue. *(Rev 14:4)*
12 And now, surely it is true that I
am a kinsman redeemer. But there
also is a redeemer closer to you than I.
13 Stay tonight, and it shall be in the
morning, if he will redeem you, well;
he will redeem. And if he does not
delight to redeem you, as YAHWEH
lives, then I will redeem you. Lie down
until the morning.
14 And she lay at his feet until the
morning, and rose up before anyone
could discern a man with his neighbor.
And he said, Let it not be known that a
woman has come to the grain floor.
15 And he said, Give me the covering
which is on you, and hold on to it. And
she kept hold on it, and he measured
six measures of barley, and lay it on
her. And she went in to the city.
16 And she came in to her mother-
in-law. And she said, Who are you, my
daughter? And she told her all that the
man had done to her.
17 And she said, He gave me these
six measures of barley, for he said, You
shall not go empty to your mother-in-
law.
18 And she said, Sit, my daughter,
until you shall know how the matter
falls, for the man shall not rest until he
has completed the matter today.

Chapter 4

1 And Boaz went up to the gate and
sat there.[2] And, behold, the near
kinsman of whom Boaz had spoken
was passing by. And he said, Such a
one, turn aside, sit down. And he
turned aside and sat down.
2 And he took ten men of the elders
of the city, and said, Sit down here.
And they sat down.
3 And he said to the near kinsman,
Naomi, who has returned from the
fields of Moab, will sell a portion of the
field which belonged to our brother, to
Elimelech.
4 And I said I would uncover your

[1] Spreading the skirt over one was a symbolic act of stating they were under their protection. In a Jewish traditional wedding the couple is married under a tallit with the tassels hanging down on all four sides showing that the woman is coming under the covering of her bridegroom. It would be totally outside of judicial order and an act of rebellion for a woman to wear the tassel on her own and it would show that she refuses the covering of her true bridegroom (Yahshua).

[2] The city gate in ancient times was the most important point in the city where Kings sat, and official business was conducted as well as judges ruling on important legal matters, Deut 22:15, 2 Sam 19:8.

ear, saying, Buy it before those sitting, and before the elders of my people. If you will redeem, redeem. But if you will not redeem, tell me so that I may know. For there is no one besides you to redeem, and I after you. And he said, I will redeem it.

5 And Boaz said, In the day you buy the field from Naomi's hand, even you have bought from Ruth of Moab, the wife of the dead, to raise up the name of him who died over his inheritance.

6 And the near kinsman said, I am not able to redeem for myself, that I not ruin my own inheritance. You redeem for yourself my right of redemption, for I am not able to redeem.

7 And this formerly was done in Israel for redemption, and as for an exchange, to confirm every matter. A man would draw off his sandal and gave to his neighbor. And this was the attestation in Israel.

8 And the near kinsman said to Boaz, Buy for yourself, and drew off his sandal.

9 And Boaz said to the elders, and all the people, You are witnesses today that I have bought all that belonged to Elimelech, and all that was to Chilion and Mahlon, from the hand of Naomi.

10 And also Ruth of Moab, the wife of Mahlon, I have bought for myself for a wife, to raise up the name of him who died over his inheritance. And the name of him who died shall not be cut off from among his brothers, and from the gate of his place. You are witnesses today.

11 And all the people who were in the gate and the elders, said, We are witnesses. May YAHWEH make the woman who is coming into your house to be as Rachel and as Leah, both of whom built the house of Israel. And may you do worthily in Ephratah, and proclaim the Name in Bethlehem.

12 And let your house be as the house of Pharez, whom Tamar bore to Judah, of the Seed which YAHWEH shall give to you of this young woman.

13 And Boaz took Ruth, and she became his wife. And he went in to her, and YAHWEH gave her conception, and she bore a son.

14 And the women said to Naomi, Blessed be YAHWEH, who has not left you this day without a kinsman-redeemer; and may his name be called in Israel.

15 And may he be to you a restorer of life, and a nourisher of your old age, for your daughter-in-law who loves you has borne him, who is better to you than seven sons.

16 And Naomi took the child, and laid him in her bosom, and became nurse to him.

17 And the neighboring women gave him a name, saying, This is a son born to Naomi; and they called his name Obed[1]. He is the father of Jesse, the father of David.

18 And these are the generations of Pharez: Pharez fathered Hezron;

19 and Hezron fathered Ram; and Ram fathered Amminadab;

20 and Amminadab fathered Nahshon; and Nahshon fathered Salmon;

21 and Salmon fathered Boaz; and Boaz fathered Obed;

22 and Obed fathered Jesse; and Jesse fathered David.

---

[1] Obed means *"one serving"*

Book of Lamentations

Chapter 1

1 How alone sits the city that was full of people! She has become like a widow, once great among the nations; a noblewoman among the provinces has become a payer of tribute.[1]
2 She bitterly weeps in the night, and her tears are on her cheeks. She has no comforter among all her lovers. All her friends dealt deceitfully with her; they became enemies to her.
3 Judah went captive from affliction, and from great slavery. She dwells among the nations; she finds no rest. All her pursuers have overtaken her between the straits.
4 The roads of Zion are in mourning without any going to the appointed feasts. All her gates are deserted; her priests sigh, her virgins are afflicted; and she is in bitterness.
5 Her foes have become as chief; her enemies are at ease. For YAHWEH has afflicted her for the multitude of her trespasses. Her children have gone captive before the foe.
6 And from the daughter of Zion all her splendor has departed. Her rulers have become like bucks; they find no pasture; and they have gone without strength before the pursuer.
7 In the days of her affliction and her wandering, Jerusalem remembers all her desirable things from previous days, when her people fell into the hand of the foe; and there is no ally for her. The foes saw her; they laughed at her annihilations.
8 Jerusalem has grievously sinned; on account of this, she has been removed. All the ones knowing her despise her, for they saw her nakedness. Also, she groans and turns backward.
9 Her uncleanness is in her skirts. She did not remember her end and has gone down astoundingly. She had no comforter. O YAHWEH, behold my affliction, for the enemy has magnified himself.
10 The enemy has spread out his hand on all her desirable things. Indeed, she has seen the nations enter into her holy place, whom You commanded that they not enter into Your congregation.
11 All her people sigh from seeking bread. They gave their desirable things for food to revive the soul. See, O YAHWEH, and look on me, for I have become vile.
12 Is it nothing to you, all you who pass by? Behold, and see if there is any sorrow like my sorrow which is done to me, with which YAHWEH has afflicted me in the day of His burning anger.
13 From on high He has sent fire into my bones and subdued them. He spread a net for my feet; He has turned me back; He gave me desolation. All the days I faint.
14 The yoke of my transgressions is bound by His hand, they intertwine, they rise on my neck. He caused my strength to falter. YAHWEH gave me into their hands. I am not able to rise up.
15 YAHWEH has trampled all my mighty ones in my midst. He called a gathering against me to crush my young men. As a winepress, YAHWEH trod the virgin daughter of Judah.
16 I weep for these; my eye, my eye runs down with water, because a comforter who could be reviving my soul is far from me. My sons are desolated because the enemy prevails.
17 Zion spreads forth her hands;

---

[1] The book of lamentations is a book of the grieving over the destruction of Yahweh's set apart city Jerusalem. The authorship of the book is attributed to the weeping prophet, Jeremiah.

there is not one comforting to her; YAHWEH has commanded concerning Jacob that his enemies should be all around him. Jerusalem has become as an impure thing among them.
18 YAHWEH is righteous, for I rebelled against His mouth. I beseech you, all peoples, hear and see my sorrow. My virgins and my young men went into exile.
19 I called for my lovers; they deceived me. My priests and my elders expired in the city, while they sought food for them to bring back their life.
20 Behold, O YAHWEH, for I am distressed. My inward parts ferment; my heart is overturned within me; for I have grievously rebelled. On the outside the sword bereaves; in the house it is as death.
21 They hear that I sigh; there is no comforter to me. All my enemies have heard my evil; they rejoice that You have done it. You will bring the day that You have called, and they shall be like me.
22 Let all their evil come before You; and do to them as You have done to me for all my transgressions. For my sighs are many, and my heart is faint.

Chapter 2

1 How YAHWEH has clouded over the daughter of Zion in His anger! He cast the beauty of Israel down from the heavens to the earth, and did not remember His footstool in the day of His wrath.
2 YAHWEH swallowed up all of Jacob's dwelling-places, and did not pity. In His wrath He has thrown down the strongholds of the daughter of Judah. He made them touch to the earth. He has defiled the kingdom and its rulers.
3 He cut off all the horn of Israel in hot anger. He has turned back His right hand from the face of the enemies, and He burned in Jacob as a flaming fire; it consumes all around.
4 He trod His bow like an enemy, and set His right hand like a foe; and killed all who were desirable to the eye in the tent of the daughter of Zion. He poured out His fury like fire.
5 YAHWEH was like an enemy; He swallowed up Israel; He swallowed up all his palaces and destroyed his strongholds; and He increased mourning and weeping in the daughter of Judah.
6 And He violated his booth like a garden and destroyed his set apart meetings. YAHWEH made Holy Days and Sabbaths forgotten in Zion, and He rejected king and priest in the fury of His anger.
7 YAHWEH has cast off His altar; He rejected His holy place. He has delivered the walls of her palaces into the hand of the enemy. They gave a noise in the house of YAHWEH, as a day of meeting.
8 YAHWEH willed to destroy the wall of the daughter of Zion; He has stretched out a line. He has not withdrawn His hand from swallowing; and He made rampart and wall lament; they languish together.
9 Her gates have sunk in the ground; He has dispersed and shattered her bars. Her kings and her rulers are among the nations. The Torah is not. Also her prophets have not found a vision from YAHWEH.
10 They sit on the ground; the elders of Zion's daughters are silent. They make dust go up on their heads, they gird on sack cloths. The virgins of Jerusalem let their heads go down to the ground.
11 And my eyes are at an end with tears, my inward parts ferment; my liver is poured on the ground for the

ruin of the daughter of my people; in
the fainting of children and sucklings
in the city's plazas. *(Is 22:4)*
12 They say to their mothers, Where
are grain and wine? In their fainting,
they are like the wounded in the plazas
of the city, in their pouring out their
lives to their mothers' bosom.
13 What can I testify for you? To
what will I compare you, O daughter of
Jerusalem? To what shall I liken you
that I may comfort you, O virgin
daughter of Zion? For your crushing is
great like the sea! Who can heal you?
14 Your prophets have seen false and
foolish things for you; and they have
not revealed your iniquity in order to
turn back your captivity. Yea, they
perceived for you burdens of falsehood
and seductions.
15 All who pass by clap their hands
at you. They hiss and wag their head at
the daughter of Jerusalem, saying, Is
this the city which they called the
perfection of beauty, the joy of all the
earth?
16 All your enemies have opened
their mouth against you; they hiss and
gnash the teeth; they say, We have
swallowed up. Surely this is the day for
which we waited; we have found; we
have seen.
17 YAHWEH has done what He
purposed; He fulfilled His Word which
He commanded from days of old. He
has dashed and not pitied. And He
made the enemy to rejoice over you;
He raised the horn of your foes.
18 Their heart cried to YAHWEH. O
wall of the daughter of Zion, let tears
go down like a torrent by day and by
night; do not give relief to yourself; let
not the daughter of your eye rest.
19 Rise up, cry out in the night at the
head of the watches; pour out your
heart like waters before the face of
YAHWEH. Lift up your hands to Him
for the life of your children faint with
hunger at the head of every open
place.
20 Behold, O YAHWEH, and look!
To whom have you done this? Should
women eat their fruit, children of
tender care? Should priest and
prophet be killed in the holy place of
YAHWEH?
21 Young and old lie on the ground
of the plazas. My virgins and my young
men have fallen by the sword. You
have killed in the day of Your anger.
You have killed, You have not pitied.
22 You have called my terrors all
around, as in a day of appointment;
and there was not an escaped one or a
survivor in the day of the anger of
YAHWEH. Those whom I have
nursed and multiplied, my enemy has
consumed.

Chapter 3

1 I, the man, have seen affliction by
the rod of His wrath.
2 He led me and made me go in
darkness and not light.
3 Surely He turned against me; He
turns His hand all the day.
4 He has wasted my flesh and my
skin. He has shattered my bones.
5 He built against me and has put
around me bitterness and hardship.
6 He has made me live in dark places
like the dead of old.
7 He walled around me and I cannot
go out; He has made heavy my copper
chain.
8 Also, when I cry out and shout for
help, He shuts out my prayer.
9 He walled up my ways with cut
stone; my paths are crooked.
10 He was a bear lying in wait for
me, a lion in secret places.
11 He has deflected my ways and
torn me to pieces; He made me
desolate.

12 He has trod His bow and set me
up as a mark for the arrow.
13 He caused the sons of His quiver
to enter into my inward parts.
14 I was a mockery to all my people,
their song all the day.
15 He has filled me with bitterness
and made me drunk with wormwood.
16 And He broke my teeth with
gravel; He has covered me in the
ashes.
17 And You cast off my soul from
peace; I have forgotten goodness.
18 And I said, my strength and my
hope have perished from YAHWEH.
19 Remember my affliction and my
roaming, as wormwood and bitterness.
20 My soul vividly remembers and
bows down on me.
21 I bring back this to my heart. On
account of this I hope.
22 It is by the kindnesses of
YAHWEH that we are not consumed,
for His mercies are not ended.
23 They are new by mornings; great
is Your faithfulness.
24 YAHWEH is my portion, says my
soul. On account of this I shall hope to
Him.
25 YAHWEH is good to those
waiting on Him, to the soul seeking
Him.[1]
26 It is good that a man hopes for
the salvation *(Y'shua*)* of YAHWEH,
even in silence.[2]
27 It is good for a man that he bear a
yoke in his youth.
28 He sits alone and is silent, for He
laid it on him.
29 He puts his mouth in the dust, if
perhaps there is hope.
30 He gives his cheek to Him who
strikes him; he is filled with reproach.
(Is 50:6)
31 For YAHWEH will not cast off
forever.
32 For though He causes grief, He
will have pity according to His many
kindnesses.
33 For He does not afflict from His
heart, nor does He grieve the sons of
man,
34 to crush all the prisoners of earth
under His feet,
35 to turn aside the justice of a man
before the face of the Most High,
36 to wrong a man in his cause. This,
YAHWEH does not see.
37 Who is this speaking, and it
happens when YAHWEH does not
command it?
38 Both the evil and the good do not
go out from the mouth of the Most
High.
39 What? Should mankind
complain, living warriors, because of
his sins?
40 Let us search and examine our
ways, and turn again to YAHWEH.
41 Let us lift up our heart and hands
to El in Heaven.
42 We have transgressed and
rebelled; You, You have not forgiven.
43 You have wrapped Yourself with
anger and pursued us; You have slain;
You have not pitied.
44 You have covered for You with a
cloud, from any prayer passing
through.
45 You have made us sweepings and
garbage in the midst of the peoples.
46 All our enemies have opened
their mouths against us.
47 Dread and a pit is ours,
devastation and ruin.
48 Streams of water go down from
my eye for the ruin of the daughter of
my people.
49 My eye flows out and does not

---

1 Faith is constituted in one's patience that he has to wait on YHWH even in times of long trials or distress.

2 The only true hope of any grave trial is the appearance of Yahshua and the Kingdom of YHWH being established on the earth.

cease, from there not being any relaxing,
50 until YAHWEH shall look down and see from Heaven.
51 My eye deals severely with my soul, from all the daughters of my city.
52 My enemies have hunted me like a bird without cause.
53 They have cut off my life in the pit, and they threw a stone at me.
54 Waters flowed over on my head; I said, I am cut off.
55 I called on Your name, O YAHWEH, from the lowest pit.
56 You have heard my voice; do not hide Your ear at my relief, at my cry for help.
57 You came near in the day I called You; You said, Do not fear!
58 O YAHWEH, You contended for the causes of my soul; You redeemed my life.
59 You have seen my wrong, O YAHWEH; judge my cause.
60 You have seen all their vengeance, all their plots against me.
61 You have heard their reproach, O YAHWEH, all their plots against me,
62 the lips of those rising up against me, and their scheming against me all the day.
63 Look at their sitting and their rising up. I am their song.
64 You will give back a recompense to them, O YAHWEH, according to the work of their hands.
65 You will give them insolence of heart as Your curse to them.
66 Pursue and destroy them in anger from under the heavens of YAHWEH.

Chapter 4

1 How the gold dims, the good gold is changed! The stones of the sanctuary are poured out at the head of every street.
2 The precious sons of Zion are weighed against pure gold. How they are counted as earthen vessels, the work of a potter's hand!
3 Even the jackals draw out the breast; they suckle their young. But the daughter of my people is cruel, like the ostriches in the wilderness.
4 The tongue of the nursling cleaves to his palate in thirst. The young children ask bread, but there is no breaking for them.
5 Those who ate delicacies are desolate in the streets; those reared on scarlet embrace dunghills.
6 And the iniquity of the daughter of my people is heaped more than the sin of Sodom, which was overthrown as in a moment, and no hands were whirled on her.
7 Her Nazarites were purer than snow, whiter than milk; they were redder of bone than rubies, their polishing was of sapphire.
8 Their appearance is darker than soot; they are not recognized in the open places. Their skin has shriveled on their bones; it is dried up, it has become like wood.
9 Better are the ones slain by the sword than the ones slain by famine, those who flow away, pierced because the produce of my fields failed.
10 The hands of the compassionate women have boiled their own children; they became food to them in the ruin of the daughter of my people.
11 YAHWEH has fulfilled His fury; He has poured out His fierce anger and has kindled a fire in Zion; and it has devoured its foundations.
12 The kings of the earth and all those living in the world would not have believed that the foe and the hater would go into the gates of Jerusalem.
13 Because of the sins of her prophets and the iniquities of her

priests, pouring out the blood of the righteous in her midst,
14 they reeled blind in the open places. They are defiled with blood, so that not any are able to touch their garments.
15 They cried out to them, Turn away! It is defiled! Turn away! It is defiled! Touch not! Indeed they fled and reeled. They said among the nations, they will not continue to live there.
16 The face of YAHWEH has divided them out; He will not continue to look on them. They did not lift up the face of the priests, they did not favor the elders.
17 While we are here, our eyes fail for our vain help. In our watching, we have watched for a nation; it does not save.
18 They hunted our steps from going in our open places. Our end came near, our days were fulfilled, for our end had come.
19 Our pursuers were swifter than the eagles of the heavens; they hotly pursued us on the mountains; they lay in wait for us in the wilderness.
20 The breath of our nostrils, the anointed of YAHWEH, was captured in their pits; of whom we said, in His shadow we will live among the nations.
21 Rejoice and be glad, O daughter of Edom, living in the land of Uz. The cup also shall pass through to you; you shall be drunken and stripped naked.
22 Your perversity is complete, daughter of Zion; He will not continue to exile you.[1] He will visit your perversity, daughter of Edom; He will expose your sins.

Chapter 5

1 O YAHWEH, remember what has been to us; look upon and see our reproach.
2 Our inheritance has been turned to strangers, our houses to foreigners.
3 We are orphans. There is no father; our mothers are like widows.
4 We have drunk our water for silver; our wood comes for a price.
5 We are pursued; we grow weary; rest is not given to us.
6 We have given the hand to the Egyptians, to the Assyrian, in order to be satisfied with bread.
7 Our fathers have sinned, and are not; we have borne their iniquities.
8 Slaves rule over us; there is no rescuer from their hand.
9 We bring in our bread with our souls, from the face of the sword of the wilderness.
10 Our skin is burned black like an oven, because of the fever heat of famine.
11 They raped the women in Zion, virgins in the cities of Judah.
12 Rulers were hanged by their hands; the faces of the elders were not honored.
13 They lifted the young men to the hand mill, and the youths stumbled at the wood.
14 The elders have ceased from the gate, the young men from their music.
15 The joy of our heart has ceased; our dance has turned to mourning.
16 The crown has fallen from our head. Woe now to us, for we have sinned!
17 For this our heart is faint; our eyes are dim for these things.
18 Zion is laid waste on the mountain; foxes walk about on it.
19 O YAHWEH, You remain forever; Your throne from generation to generation.

[1] This cannot be referring to the Babylonian captivity as Judah went into captivity again under the Romans in 70 A.D.

20 Why do You forget us forever,
forsake us the length of days?
21 Return us to You, O YAHWEH,
and we shall return. Renew our days
as of old,
22 for You have utterly rejected us;
You are exceedingly angry against us.

Book of Ecclesiastes

Chapter 1

1 The words of the Preacher, the son of David, king in Jerusalem:
2 Vanity of vanities, says the Preacher, vanity of vanities! All is vanity![1]
3 What is the profit to a man in all his labor which he labors under the sun?
4 A generation passes away, and another generation comes; but the earth stands forever.
5 The sun also arises, and the sun goes even panting to its place; it arises there again.
6 The wind goes toward the south, and turning around to the north; the wind is going around and around. And the wind returns on its circuits.
7 All the rivers are going to the sea; yet the sea is not full. To the place where the rivers are going, there they are returning to go again.[2]
8 All words are wearisome; a man is not able to say it. The eye is not satisfied to see, nor is the ear filled from hearing.
9 That which has been, it is that which shall be. And that which has been done, it is that which will be done. And there is no new thing under the sun.[3]
10 Is there a thing of which one might say, See this, it is new? It has already been for the ages which were before us.
11 There is no memory of former things; yea, nor is there any memory for them of things which will be afterward, with those who will be at the last.[4]
12 I, the Preacher, was king over Israel in Jerusalem.
13 And I gave my heart to seek and to investigate by wisdom concerning all which is done under the heavens. It is an evil task Elohim has given to the sons of men, to be afflicted by it.
14 I have seen all the works which are done under the sun; and, behold, all is vanity and striving after wind!
15 What is crooked cannot be made straight, and that lacking cannot be weighed out.
16 I spoke with my heart, saying, Lo, I have become great and have increased wisdom over all that have been over Jerusalem before me. Yea, my heart has seen much wisdom and knowledge.
17 And I gave my heart to know wisdom, and to know madness, and folly. I know that this also, it is striving after wind.
18 For in much wisdom is much grief; and he who increases knowledge increases pain.

Chapter 2

1 I said in my heart, Come now, I will test you with mirth. Therefore,

---

[1] The book of Ecclesiastes was written by Solomon at the end of his life and shows the great lesson that if your life goals are only focused on fleshly wealth and pleasure seeking, then in the end it will be quite empty with no lasting spiritual fulfillment.

[2] Verses 4-7 show YHWH's circular pattern to life. Solomon took this pattern as vanity, but in reality it shows the Eternal Creator's unending cycle of life and stability to His creation.

[3] Verses 8-9- To most people, human, secular goals will keep one busy a lifetime, but to Solomon who has done and accomplished all secular pleasures, yet had no spiritual goals or accomplishments, he sees life as pure vanity.

[4] To one who merely seeks physical pleasure in this life, there is no future hope, but for those who are seeking first the Kingdom of YHWH there is hope for eternity, Math 6:33.

consider with goodness. And behold, this also is vanity.
2 I said of laughter, It is madness, and of mirth, What does it accomplish?
3 I explored with my heart how to drag my flesh with wine, and leading my heart in wisdom; and to lay hold on folly, until I might see where the good for the sons of men is, that which they should do under the heavens the number of days of their life.
4 I made my works great; I built houses for myself; I planted vineyards for myself;
5 I made gardens and parks for myself; and I planted trees in them of every fruit;
6 I made pools of water for myself; to water from them the forest shooting forth trees;
7 I bought slaves and slave girls, and the sons of the house were mine. Also livestock, a herd and a great flock were mine, above all that were before me in Jerusalem.
8 I also gathered to me silver and gold, and the treasure of kings and of provinces. I made ready male singers and female singers for myself; and the delights of the sons of men, a concubine, and concubines.
9 And I became great and increased more than all who were before me in Jerusalem; also my wisdom stayed with me.
10 And all that my eyes desired, I did not set aside from them. I withheld not my heart from all joy; for my heart rejoiced from all my labor; and this was my part from all my labor.
11 Then I faced on all my works that my hands had done, and on the labor that I had labored to do. And, lo, all of it was vanity and striving after wind, and there is no profit under the sun.[1]
12 And I turned to behold wisdom, and madness, and folly. For what can a man do who comes after the king, when they have already done it?
13 Then I saw that there is advantage to wisdom above folly, even as light has advantage over darkness.
14 The wise man's eyes are in his head, but the fool walks in darkness; and I also know that one event happens with all of them.
15 And I said in my heart, As the event of the foolish one, even so it will happen to me; and why then was I more wise? Then I said in my heart that this also is vanity.
16 For there is not a memory of the wise more than with the fool forever, in that already the days to come will be forgotten. And how does the wise die above the fool?
17 So then I hated life; because the work that is done under the sun is evil to me; for all is vanity and striving after wind.
18 Thus, I hated all my labor, that I labored under the sun, that I must leave it to the man who will be after me. *(Pr 13:22)*
19 And who knows if he will be wise or a fool? Yet he shall rule among all my labor in which I labored, and acted wisely under the sun. This is also vanity.[2]
20 And I turned to make my heart

---

1 Verses 1-11- Solomon felt this way because all he did and all his goals were only of self interest. There was nothing toward the glory of YHWH nor His Kingdom. Happiness can only come by serving our Creator and other people, (Acts 20:35).

2 Verses 18-19- It shows Solomon's selfish motivation as most loving fathers at the end of their life are happy to leave their accomplishments and resources that they diligently worked for to their children, (Pr 13:1, Pr 13:22, Pr 19:14).

despair over all the labor which I labored under the sun.
21 When there is a man whose labor is with wisdom, and with knowledge, and with success; yet he shall give it to a man who has not labored with it, for his share; this also is vanity and a great evil.
22 For what is there for man in all his labor, and in striving of his heart, which he labored under the sun?
23 For all his days are sorrows, and his task is grief; yea, his heart does not even take rest in the night. This is also vanity to him.
24 Is it not good that he should eat and drink, and that he should make his soul see good in his labor. This also I saw, that it was from the hand of The Elohim.
25 For who can eat, or who else can enjoy apart from me?
26 For Elohim gives wisdom, and knowledge, and joy to a man that is good in his sight: but to the sinner he gives the task of gathering and collecting, that he may give to the one who is good before The Elohim. This also is vanity and striving after wind. *(Pr 2:6, Eccl 1:18, Job 15:20)*

Chapter 3

1 To all there is an appointed time, even a time for every purpose under the heavens:
2 a time to be born, and a time to die; a time to plant, and a time to pull up what is planted;
3 a time to kill, and a time to heal; a time to tear down, and a time to build up;
4 a time to weep, and a time to laugh; a time to mourn, and a time to dance;
5 a time to throw away stones, and a time to gather stones; a time to embrace, and a time to refrain from embracing;
6 a time to seek, and a time to let wander away; a time to keep, and a time to throw away;
7 a time to tear, and a time to sew together; a time to keep silence, and a time to speak;
8 a time to love, and a time to hate; a time of war, and a time of peace.[1]
9 What advantage has he who works in that which he did as a laborer?
10 I have seen the task which Elohim has given to the sons of men, to be humbled by it.
11 He has made everything beautiful in its time. Also, He has set eternity in their heart, without which man cannot find out the work that The Elohim makes from the beginning even to the end. *(Joh 6:44, Job 11:7)*
12 I know that there is no good in them, but for a man to rejoice to do good in his life.
13 And also every man that eats and drinks, and sees good in his labor, it is the gift of Elohim.
14 I know that whatever The Elohim does, it shall be forever; nothing is to be added to it, and nothing is to diminish from it. And The Elohim does it so that they fear before Him.
15 That which has been, it already is; and that which is to be, it already has been. And The Elohim seeks what has gone by.
16 And again I saw under the sun at the place of justice: wickedness is there; and at the place of righteousness, wickedness is there.
17 I said in my heart, The Elohim shall judge the righteous and the wicked; for there is a time there for

[1] Verses 1-8- Emotions are trigger points and there is a time for each emotion in its proper setting. Self-control and temperance helps one to be stable through life and each time setting given.

every good purpose and for every work. *(Eccl 11:9)*
18 I said in my heart concerning the issue of the sons of men, that the Elohim may test them and see that they by themselves are beasts.
19 For that which happens to the sons of men, and that which happens to beasts, even one event is to them. As this one dies, so that one dies; yea, one breath is to all; so that there is to the man no advantage over the beast; for all is vanity.
20 All go to one place; all are of the dust, and all return to the dust.[1]
21 Who knows the spirit of the sons of the man, whether it goes upward; and the spirit of the beast, whether it goes downward to the earth?[2]
22 And I have seen that nothing is better than that the man should rejoice in his works; for that is his portion; for who can bring him to see what shall be after him?

Chapter 4

1 So I returned and considered all the oppressions that are done under the sun. And behold the tears of those who were oppressed, and they had no comforter! And at the hand of those who oppressed them was power; but there was no comforter to them.
2 And I commended the dead who already have died, more than the living who are alive until now.
3 But, better than both is he who has not yet been, who has not seen the evil work that is done under the sun.
4 And I saw every labor, and every success of the work, that it is the envy of a man against his neighbor; this is also vanity and striving after wind.
5 The fool folds his hands together and eats his own flesh.
6 Better is a hand filled with rest, than two fists with labor and striving after wind.
7 Then I returned and saw vanity under the sun.
8 There is one alone, and there is not a second; yea, he has neither son nor brother; and there is no end to all his labor; even his eyes are not satisfied with riches; and he says, For whom do I labor, and deprive my soul? This is also vanity. Yes, it is an evil task.
9 Two are better than one; because they have a good reward for their labor. *(Pr 18:1, Pr 17:17, Pr 18:24)*
10 For if they fall, the one will lift up his companion. But woe to him, the one that falls, and there is not another to lift him up.
11 Also if two lie together, then they have warmth; but for one, how is he warm?
12 And if one overthrows him, two shall withstand him; and a threefold cord is not quickly torn apart.[3]
13 A poor and a wise child is better than the old and foolish king who does not know to be warned any more.
14 For from the house of the imprisoned he goes forth to reign, although in his kingdom he was born poor.
15 I saw all the living who walk about

---

1 Verses 19-20- The word in the bible used for "soul" is "*nephesh*" and both animals and humans have a *nephesh*, which is not immortal but upon death the body goes back to the dust that it came from (Gen 3:19).

2 The breath of Yahweh's spirit made man a living soul (Gen 2:7), so when man dies the spirit, which is one and belongs to YHWH goes back to Him. Please reference Lesson 6 in the correspondence course called 'T*he Reward of the Saved*' at www.coyhwh.com in the study section.

3 Verses 9-12- Show the great benefit of the law of synergy. Yahweh made His elect to be fully dependent on Him and co-dependent on each other.

under the sun, with the second child who shall stand up in his place.

16 There is no end to all the people, to all who have been before them; they also who come after shall not rejoice with him. Surely this is also vanity and striving after wind.

Chapter 5

1 Guard your feet when you go to the house of The Elohim, and draw near to hear, more than to give a sacrifice, as do the fools. For they do not know that they are doing evil. *(Ps 51:17)*

2 Do not be hasty with your mouth, and do not let your heart hurry to bring forth a word before The Elohim. For The Elohim is in Heaven, and you are on earth; on account of this, let your words be few. *(Pr 10:19, Ja 1:19)*

3 For the dream comes through the greatness of the task; and the voice of the fool is known by the many words.

4 When you vow a vow to Elohim, do not wait to fulfill it. For He has no pleasure in fools. Fulfill that which you have vowed. *(Num 30:2)*

5 It is better that you should not vow, than that you should vow and not fulfill it. *(Pr 20:25)*

6 Do not allow your mouth to cause your flesh to sin; do not say before the Messenger of YAHWEH, that it was an error. Why should The Elohim be angry over your voice, and destroy the work of your hands?

7 For in the multitude of dreams, both words and vanities abound; but fear The Elohim.

8 If you see the oppression of the poor, or the removing of justice and righteousness in the province, do not be amazed at the purpose. For a high one over a high one is watching; and high ones are over them.

9 And the advantage of a land, it is among all; even a king has a field being tilled.

10 He who loves silver will not be satisfied with silver; and he who loves wealth does not gain. This is also vanity. [1]

11 When the good thing increases, those who devour it increase; then what profit is it to its owners, except to see it with his eyes?

12 The sleep of the laboring man is sweet, whether he eats little or much. But the abundance of the rich will not allow him to sleep. *(Pr 3:24)*

13 There is a painful evil which I have seen under the sun: riches being kept for their owner to his evil;

14 but those riches perish by an evil use; and he fathers a son, and nothing is in his hand.

15 As he came forth from his mother's womb naked, he shall return to go as he came. And from his labor he may not carry anything that may go in his hand. *(Job 1:21)*

16 And this also is a painful evil, that in all, as he came, so shall he go. And what profit is to him who has labored for the wind?

17 Also all his days he eats in darkness, and with much grief, along with his sickness and wrath.

18 See what I have seen: It is good and beautiful to eat and to drink and to see good in all his labor, which a laborer does under the sun, the number of the days of his life which The Elohim gives to him, for it is his portion.

19 Also every man to whom The Elohim has given riches and treasures, and gives him power to eat of it, and to

---

[1] Whatever one focuses on becomes most real to him (Pr 23:7), and those whose focus is only on wealth will never be satisfied with what they have but will always being striving for more, and hoarding what they have.

take his share, and to rejoice in his labor; this is the gift of Elohim.

20 For he shall not much remember the days of his life, because the Elohim answers him in the joy of his heart.

Chapter 6

1 There is an evil that I have seen under the sun, and it is great among men:

2 A man to whom The Elohim has given riches, and wealth, and honor, so that he lacks nothing for his soul of all that he desires; yet The Elohim does not give him the power to eat of it, but a stranger eats it; this is vanity, and it is an evil disease.

3 If a man fathers a hundred children, and lives many years, and the days of his years are many, and his soul is not satisfied from the good, and also there is no burial for him; I say, a miscarriage is better than he.[1]

4 For he comes in with vanity, and goes out in darkness; his name shall be covered in darkness.

5 Also he has not seen nor known the sun; this one has more rest than that one.

6 Yea, though he lives twice a thousand years, yet he has seen no good. Do not all go to one place?

7 All the labor of man is for his mouth, and yet the soul is not filled.

8 For what is the advantage to the wise more than the fool? What advantage is to the poor who knows how to walk before the living?

9 Better is the sight of the eyes than the wandering of the soul. This is also vanity and striving after wind.

10 That which has been is named already, and it is known that he is man; and he is not able to contend with Him who is stronger than he.

11 For there are many things that increase vanity, and what is the advantage to man?

12 For who knows what is good for man in this life, the number of the days of his life of vanity? Even he makes them like the shadow. For who can tell a man what shall be after him under the sun?

Chapter 7

1 A good name is better than good oil; and the day of death than the day of one's birth. *(Pr 22;1, Eccl 7:8)*

2 It is better to go to the house of mourning than to go to the house of feasting; for it is the end of every man; and the living will lay it to his heart.

3 Sorrow is better than laughter; for by the sadness of the face the heart is made good. *(Pr 14:13, Ja 4:9)*

4 The heart of the wise is in the house of mourning; but the heart of the foolish one is in the house of mirth.

5 It is better to hear the rebuke of the wise, than for a man to hear the song of fools.

6 For as the crackling of thorns under a pot, so is the laughter of the stupid one. And this also is vanity.

7 For oppression makes a wise man mad; and a bribe destroys the heart.

8 Better is the end of a thing than its beginning; the patient in spirit is better than the proud in spirit.

9 Do not be hasty in your spirit to be angry; for sorrow rests in the bosom of fools. *(Ja 1:19)*

10 Do not say, Why was it that the former days were better than these?

---

[1] Solomon fathered hundreds of children and yet he did not feel confident that even one would give him a proper burial. This shows the complete failure that he had in child rearing and is proven when his son Rehoboam takes over the throne, 1Kgs 12:1-18.

For you do not ask from wisdom concerning this.
11 Wisdom is good with an inheritance; yea, a gain to those who see the sun.
12 For wisdom is in a shadow; and silver is in a shadow; but the excellency of knowledge is that wisdom gives life to those who have it.
13 Consider at the work of The Elohim; for who can make that straight which He has bent?*(Eccl 1:15)*
14 In the good day, be in good spirit, but also see in the evil day, that The Elohim has made one along with the other, so that man should not find anything after him.
15 All things I have seen in the days of my vanity; there is a just man who perishes in his righteousness, and there is a wicked one who prolongs his life in his evil. *(Job 21:7, Hab 1:4)*
16 Do not be too much righteous, nor make yourself overly wise; why destroy yourself?[1]
17 Do not be very evil, and do not be a fool; why should you die and it is not your time?
18 It is good that you should take hold of this; yea, also from this do not let your hand rest; for he who fears Elohim shall come forth with all of them.
19 Wisdom makes the wise stronger than ten rulers who are in the city.
20 For there is not a just man on the earth who does good, and does not sin. *(Ro 3:23, Math 19:17)*
21 Also, do not give your heart to all the words they speak, that you not hear your servant cursing you.
22 For also your own heart knows that you yourself have also cursed others many times.
23 All this I have tested by wisdom: I said, I will be wise; but it was far from me.
24 That which is far off and exceeding deep, who can find it out?
25 And I turned my heart about, to know, and to search, and to seek out wisdom, and the reason of things, and to know the wickedness of folly, and the foolishness of madness:
26 and I found more bitter than death the woman whose heart is snares and nets; her hands are bonds. He who is good before The Elohim shall escape from her; but the sinner shall be captured by her.
27 Behold, I have found this, says the Preacher, counting one by one to find out the sum,
28 that my soul still seeks, but I have not found; one man among a thousand I have found, but a woman among all those I have not found.[2] *(1Kgs 11:1-3)*
29 See, this only I have found, that The Elohim has made man upright, but they have sought out many inventions.

Chapter 8

1 Who is as the wise? And who knows the interpretation of a thing? A man's wisdom makes his face shine, and the strength of his face is changed.
2 I say, Keep the king's word, even on the matter of the oath of Elohim;
3 do not be hasty to go from before him. Do not take a stand in an evil thing, for he does whatever he pleases.
4 Because the king's word is that which has power; who then will say to him, What are you doing?
5 Whoever keeps the commandment

---

[1] Speaking of either self-righteousness or worldly wisdom. One cannot be too righteous in obedience to YHWH.

[2] Solomon directly disobeyed YHWH by not only heaping up for himself hundred's of wives and concubines (Deut 17:17), but also many of these women were foreign women who pulled him away from YAHWEH.

shall know no evil thing. A wise man's heart knows both time and judgment.
6 Because there is a time and judgment to every purpose, in this the evil of man is great upon him.
7 For he does not know what shall be. For who can tell him when it shall be?
8 Man is not a ruler over the spirit, to restrain the spirit; nor has he power in the day of death. And there is no discharge in that war, nor shall wickedness deliver its masters.
9 All this I have seen. I gave my heart to every work that is done under the sun. There is a time in which a man rules over a man for his evil.
10 And so I saw the wicked buried; and they came and went from the holy place, and were forgotten in the city, these things that they had done. This is also vanity.
11 When sentence on an evil work is not executed speedily, on account of this the heart of the sons of men is fully set in them to do evil.[1]
12 Though a sinner does evil a hundred times, and his days are prolonged to him, yet surely I know that it shall be well to those who fear The Elohim, who fear before Him.
13 But it shall not be well for the wicked; and he shall not lengthen his days like a shadow, because he does not fear before Elohim.
14 There is a vanity which is done on the earth: There are just ones to whom it happens according to the work of the wicked; and there are wicked men to whom it happens according to the work of the righteous. I said that this also is vanity.
15 Then I praised mirth, because nothing is good for man under the sun except to eat and to drink and to be glad. For that shall go with him in his labor for the days of his life which The Elohim gives him under the sun.
16 When I gave my heart to know wisdom, and to see the business that is done on the earth; for even by day and by night he does not see sleep in his eyes.
17 Then I looked at all the work of The Elohim, that a man cannot find out the work that is done under the sun; because though a man labors to seek it out, yet he shall not find it. And even if the wise speaks of knowing, he shall not be able to find it.

Chapter 9

1 For all this I gave to heart, even to explain all this, that the righteous and the wise and their works are in the hand of The Elohim. Whether love or hatred, man does not know all that is before them.
2 All happens alike to all; one event to the righteous, and to the wicked; to the good, and to the clean, and to the unclean; to him who sacrifices, and to him who does not sacrifice. As is the good, so is the sinner; he who swears is as he that fears an oath.
3 This is an evil among all things that are done under the sun, that there is one event to all. Yea, also the heart of the sons of men is full of evil, and madness is in their heart while they are alive, and after that they go to the dead.
4 For one who is chosen to be among all the living, there is hope. For a living dog is better than a dead lion.
5 For the living know that they shall die; but the dead do not know anything; nor do they have any more a

[1] When punishment for a wicked act is not given quick retribution, then the person who did the evil act thinks he got away with something and will do more evil, Deut 17:8-13.

reward, for their memory is forgotten.[1] *(Ps 115:17, Ps 146:3-4)*

6 Also their love, their hatred, and their envy has now perished; nor do they any longer have a part forever in all that is done under the sun.

7 Go, eat your bread with joy, and drink your wine with a merry heart, for The Elohim is already pleased with your works.

8 Let your garments be white at every time; and let not oil lack upon your head.[2]

9 Look upon life with the wife whom you love all the days of the life of your vanity, which He gave you under the sun, all the days of your vanity. For that is your share in this life, and in your labor which you as a laborer do under the sun.

10 All that your hand finds to do, do it with your strength. For there is no work, or planning, or knowledge, or wisdom, in Sheol, there where you go.

11 I returned and saw under the sun that the race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the mighty; nor even bread to the wise; nor even riches to the men of discernment; nor even favor to knowing men. For time and chance happens to them all.

12 For man also does not know his time. As the fish that are taken in the evil net, and as the birds that are caught in the trap, like them are the sons of men snared in an evil time, when it falls upon them suddenly.

13 This wisdom I saw also under the sun, and it is great to me:

14 There was a little city, and few men in it. And a great king came against it, and besieged it, and built huge siege works against it.

15 And there was found in it a poor wise man, and he by his wisdom saved the city. Yet no man remembered that poor man!

16 And I said, Wisdom is better than strength; but the poor man's wisdom is despised, and his words are not heard.

17 The words of wise men are heard in quiet, more than the cry of one who rules among fools.

18 Wisdom is better than weapons of war; but one sinner destroys much good.[3]

Chapter 10

1 As dead flies cause the perfumer's ointment to stink and ferment; so does a little foolishness to him of reputation more than his wisdom and his honor.

2 The heart of the wise is toward his right, but the fool's heart toward his left.

3 And also, in the way in which a fool walks, his heart fails, and he says to all that he is a fool.

4 If the spirit of the ruler rises up against you, do not leave your place; for composure quiets great offenses.

5 There is an evil I have seen under the sun, sins which come from the face of the ruler:

6 folly is set in many high positions, and many rich men sit in low situations.

7 I have seen slaves on horses, and rulers walking as slaves on the earth.

8 He who digs a pit may fall into it; and one breaking a wall, a snake may bite him.[4] *(Pr 26:27)*

9 Whoever quarries stones may be hurt with them; he who splits trees may be endangered by them.

---

1 The dead are sleeping in the grave with no consciousness, (Acts 7:60, Joh 11:11, 1Thes 4:15, 1 Cor 15:51, Ps 146:3-4).

2 Showing purity and Yahweh's spirit.

3 The old expression one bad apple will rot the bunch has much truth to it, and one bad spirit in a congregation will bring much grief.

4 You reap what you sow.

10 If the iron is blunt, and he does not sharpen the edges, then he must put more strength to it. But wisdom is an advantage giving success.[1]

11 If the snake will bite without charming, then there is no advantage to a master of tongue.[2]

12 The words of a wise mouth give grace, but the lips of a stupid one swallow him;

13 the beginning of the words of his mouth is foolishness; and the end of his mouth is evil madness.

14 Yet the stupid one makes many promises; a man knows not what they shall be; and what shall be after him, who can tell him?

15 The labor of fools wearies him, because he does not know how to go to the city.

16 Woe to you, O land, when your king is a boy, and your leaders eat in the morning.

17 Blessed are you, O land, when your king is the son of nobles, and your leaders eat in due time, in strength, and not in drinking.

18 The framework tumbles through laziness; and through lowering of hands, the house leaks. *(Pr 24:30-34)*

19 Bread is made for laughter, and wine gladdens life; but silver answers all things.

20 Also, do not curse a king in your thought; and do not curse the rich in your bedrooms; for a bird of the heavens may carry the voice; yea, the master of wings may tell the matter.[3]

1 Many times wisdom gets better results than brute strength.

2 A true leader is one that wants his pupils to excel his wisdom and knowledge, but a self motivated teacher will simply want to keep his pupils dependent on him.

3 Watch what you say as you never know who may be listening.

Chapter 11

1 Send out your bread on the face of the waters, for in many days you shall find it.[4]

2 Give a share to seven, or even to eight; for you do not know what evil may be on the earth.[5]

3 If the clouds are full of rain, they empty on the earth. And if the tree falls in the south, or in the north, in the place where the tree falls, there it shall be.

4 He who watches the wind shall not sow. And he who looks at the clouds shall not reap.

5 As you do not know what is the way of the wind, as the bones in the pregnant woman's womb, even so you do not know the works of The Elohim who makes all things.

6 Sow your seed in the morning, and do not rest your hand until evening; for you do not know what shall be blessed, this or that; or whether they both shall be good as one.

7 Also the light is sweet; yea, it is good for the eyes to behold the sun.

8 But if the man lives many years, let him rejoice in them all, and remember the days of darkness, for they shall be many. All that may come is vanity.

9 Rejoice, O young man, in your youth. And make your heart glad in the days of your youth, and walk in the ways of your heart, and in the sight of your eyes; but know that for all these things The Elohim will bring you into judgment.

10 So then remove vexation from your heart, and put away evil from your flesh. For childhood and youth are vanity.

4 The more seeds you plant the better chance you have of one of them sprouting.

5 Diversity in investment is sound wisdom.

Chapter 12

1 Remember now your Creators[1] in the days of your youth, while the evil days do not come, or the years strike when you shall say, I have no pleasure in them; *(Gen 1:26-27, Is 54:5)*
2 while not yet the sun, or the light, or the moon, or the stars, are darkened, or the clouds return after rain;
3 in the day when those guarding the house shall tremble, and the strong men are bowed, and the grinders cease because they are few; and those looking out the windows are darkened;
4 and the doors shall be shut in the streets, when the sound of the mill is low, and one rises up at the voice of a bird, and all the daughters of music are silenced;
5 also they shall be afraid of a high place, and terrors in the way; and the almond tree shall blossom, and the locust makes himself a burden; and desire breaks, because man goes to his eternal home, and the mourners go about in the street;
6 while the silver cord is not yet loosed, or the golden bowl is crushed, or the pitcher is shattered at the fountain, or the wheel broken at the cistern;
7 then the dust shall return to the earth as it was, and the spirit shall return to The Elohim who gave it.
8 Vanity of vanities, says the Preacher, all is vanity.
9 And more than that, the Preacher was wise; he still taught the people knowledge. Yes, he listened, and looked, and set in order many proverbs.
10 The Preacher sought to find out words of delight, and words of truth written on uprightness.
11 The words of the wise are as goads; yea, as nails driven by the masters of collections, they are given from one Shepherd.
12 And more than these, my son, be warned: The making of many books has no end, and much study is the weariness of the flesh.
13 Let us hear the conclusion of the whole matter: Fear The Elohim, and keep His commandments; for this applies to every man.[2]
14 For The Elohim shall bring every work into judgment, with all that is hidden, whether it is good, or whether it is evil. *(Heb 9:27, 2 Cor 5:10. 1Cor 3:13)*

---

1 The word for "*Creators*" here is in the plural, indicating the creation by the Father and Son, and one should seek Yahweh young in life to avoid much grief.

2 After a life of seeking his own self interests Solomon finally realized the true meaning of happiness to life is fear of YAHWEH and obedience to His commandments. This applies to all people as the 10 commandments are a moral code that is the very character of YAHWEH and they have been used to institute civil statutes in society from time immemorial.

Book of Esther

Chapter 1

1 And it happened, in the days of Ahasuerus (he is Ahasuerus who reigned from India even to Ethiopia, over a hundred and twenty seven provinces)

2 in those days when King Ahasuerus sat on the throne of his kingdom in Shushan the palace,

3 in the third year of his reign, he made a banquet for all his rulers and his servants. The power of Persia and Media, the nobles and the rulers of the provinces, were before him,

4 when he made known the riches of his glorious kingdom, and the honor of his excellent greatness many days, even a hundred and eighty days.

5 And when these days were fulfilled, the king made a banquet for all the people who were found in Shushan the palace, both to great and to small, for seven days in the court of the garden of the king's palace.

6 There was overlaying with white linen and violet, with cords of fine linen and purple to silver rings and pillars of white marble. The couches were of gold and silver, on a red and white and pearl and black marble pavement.

7 And they gave out drink in vessels of gold, the vessels differing from one another, and royal wine in abundance, according to the hand of the king.

8 And the drinking was according to the law, no one compelling; for so the king had ordered every chief of his house that they should do according to every man's pleasure.

9 Also Vashti the queen made a banquet for the women in the royal house which King Ahasuerus owned.

10 In the seventh day, when the heart of the king was merry with wine, he said to Mehuman, Biztha, Harbona, Bigtha, and Abagtha, Zethar, and Carcas, the seven eunuchs who ministered in the presence of Ahasuerus the king,

11 to bring Vashti the queen before the king with the royal crown, in order for the people and the princes to look upon her beauty. For she was beautiful to look upon.

12 But Vashti the queen refused to come at the king's command by his enuchs. And the king was very angry, and his fury burned within him.

13 And the king said to the wise men who knew the times (for so was the king's manner toward all who knew law and judgment;

14 and the ones next to him were Carshena, Shethar, Admatha, Tarshish, Meres, Marsena, and Memucan, the seven rulers of Persia and Media who saw the king's face, the ones sitting in the chief place in the kingdom),

15 What shall be done with Queen Vashti according to law, because she has not done the command of King Ahasuerus by the eunuchs?

16 And Memucan answered before the king and rulers, Vashti the queen has not only done wrong to the king, but also to all the rulers, and to all the people who are in all the provinces of Ahasuerus the king.

17 For the matter of the queen shall go out to all women, to make their husbands despised in their eyes, in their saying that King Ahasuerus said to bring in Vashti the queen before him, but she did not come.

18 And this day the princesses of Persia and Media who have heard the queen's word shall say the same to all the king's rulers and there shall be contempt and strife.

19 If it please the king, let there be a royal decree from him, and let it be written among the laws of Persia and Media so that it shall not pass away,

that Vashti come no more before King Ahasuerus. And let the king give her royal estate to another one, who is better than she is.[1]

20 And when the king's decree which he shall make shall be published throughout all his empire, for it is great, all the wives shall give their husbands honor, both the small and the great.

21 And the saying pleased the king, and the rulers. And the king did according to the word of Memucan.

22 And he sent letters into all the kings provinces, into every province according to its writing, and to peoples and peoples according to language. So that every man should be ruling in his house, and speaking according to the language of his people.

Chapter 2

1 After these things, when King Ahasuerus' anger had calmed down, he remembered Vashti, and what she had done, and what he had decreed against her.

2 And the king's servants who served him said, Let beautiful young virgins be sought for the king.

3 And let the king appoint overseers in all the provinces of his kingdom, so that they may gather together every beautiful young virgin to Shushan the palace, to the house of the women, to the hand of Hegai the king's eunuch, keeper of the women, to give their purifications.

4 And let the young woman who pleases the king rule instead of Vashti. And the thing pleased the king, and he did so.

5 In Shushan the palace there was a certain Jew, and his name was Mordecai, the son of Jair, the son of Shimei, the son of Kish, a Benjamite,

6 who had been exiled from Jerusalem with the captivity which had been led away with Jeconiah king of Judah, whom Nebuchadnezzar king of Babylon had exiled.

7 And he was rearing Hadassah (she is Esther) his uncle's daughter, for she had no father nor mother. And the young woman was fair of appearance and beautiful of form. And at the death of her father and mother, Mordecai took her for his daughter.

8 And it happened, when the king's command and his order was heard, and when many young women had been gathered to Shushan the palace, into the hand of Hegai, Esther was taken into the king's house, into the hand of Hegai, keeper of the women.

9 And the young woman was good in his eyes, and she rose in favor before him. And he hastened her purifiers, and her portions, to give them to her. And seven young women were seen to be given to her out of the king's house. And he moved her and her maids to the best place in the house of the women.

10 Esther had not revealed her people or her kindred, for Mordecai had commanded her that she should not tell of it.

11 And Mordecai walked to and fro every day in front of the court of the women's house in order to know Esther's welfare, and what would be done with her.

12 And when the turn of each young woman had come to go in to King Ahasuerus, at the end of her being purified twelve months according to the law of the women, for so were fulfilled the days of their cleansing; six months with oil of myrrh, and six months with fragrances and with perfumes of the women.

---

1 Vashti's lack of judicial order lost her the kingdom.

13 And in this way the young woman goes in to the king. All she says is given to her to go with her out of the house of the women to the king's house.

14 She goes in the evening, and on the morning she returns to the second house of the women, into the hand of Shaashgaz the king's eunuch who kept the concubines. She does not come in to the king any more, unless the king delights in her, and she is called by name.

15 And when the turn of Esther had come (she being the daughter of Abihail, Mordecai's uncle, whom he had taken to himself for his daughter) to go in to the king, she did not seek a thing except what Hegai the king's eunuch, the keeper of the women, said. And Esther had favor in the sight of all who saw her.

16 And Esther was taken to King Ahasuerus into his royal house in the tenth month, which is the month Tebeth, in the seventh year of his reign.

17 And the king loved Esther above all the women, and she rose in grace and favor in his sight more than all the virgins. And he set the royal crown on her head, and made her to rule instead of Vashti.

18 And the king made a great banquet for all his rulers and his servants, Esther's banquet. And he ordered a rest for the provinces, and gave gifts, according to the state of the king.

19 And when the virgins were gathered together the second time, then Mordecai sat in the king's gate.

20 Esther had not revealed her kindred or her people, as Mordecai had commanded her. For Esther obeyed Mordecai's command, as she did when she was brought up by him.

21 In those days, while Mordecai sat in the king's gate, two of the king's eunuchs, Bigthan and Teresh, of those who guarded the threshold, were angry, and sought to stretch out a hand against King Ahasuerus.

22 And the thing was known to Mordecai, who told it to Esther the queen. And Esther told the king in the name of Mordecai.

23 And when the matter was searched into, it was found out; and the two of them were hanged on a tree. And it was written in the Book of the Matters of the Days before the king.

Chapter 3

1 After these things King Ahasuerus promoted Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, and raised him, and set his seat above all the rulers with him.

2 And all the king's servants who were in the king's gate were bowing and worshiping Haman, for the king had so commanded for him. But Mordecai did not bow nor worship.

3 And the king's servants who were at the gate of the king said to Mordecai, Why do you disobey the king's command?

4 And it happened, when they spoke daily to him, and he did not listen to them, they told Haman, to see if Mordecai's matters would stand. For he had told them that he was a Jew.

5 And when Haman saw that Mordecai did not bow nor worship him, then Haman was filled with fury.

6 And it was light in his eyes to reach forth a hand against Mordecai alone; for they had revealed to him Mordecai's people. And Haman sought to destroy all the Jews in all the kingdom of Ahasuerus, the people of Mordecai.

7 In the first month, it is the month Nisan, in the twelfth year of King

Ahasuerus, they made fall Pur, that is, the lot, before Haman day by day, and from month to month, to the twelfth month, the month Adar.
8 And Haman said to King Ahasuerus, There is a people scattered abroad and dispersed among the people in all the provinces of your kingdom. And their laws are different from every people, and they are not doing the king's laws. And it is not for the king's gain to let them alone.
9 If it pleases the king, let it be written to destroy them; and I will pay ten thousand talents of silver to the hands of those who do the work, to bring it into the king's treasuries.
10 And the king took his ring from his hand, and gave it to Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, the one distressing the Jews.
11 And the king said to Haman, The silver is given to you, also the people, to do with them as seems good to you.
12 Then the king's scribes were called on the thirteenth day of the first month, and it was written according to all that Haman had commanded to the king's satraps, and to the governors who were over every province, and to the rulers of every people of every province, according to its writing, and to every people according to their language. It was written in the name of King Ahasuerus, and sealed with the king's ring.
13 And the documents were sent by the runners into all the king's provinces, to destroy, to kill, and to cause to perish, all Jews, both young and old, little children and women, in one day, on the thirteenth of the twelfth month, which is the month Adar, and to take what they owned for a prize.
14 A copy of the writing to be given as law in every province was published to all people to be ready for that day.
15 The runners went out, being burned by the king's word. And the decree was given in Shushan the palace. And the king and Haman sat down to drink. But the city, Shushan, was perplexed.

Chapter 4

1 And Mordecai understood all that was done, and Mordecai tore his clothes and put on sackcloth with ashes, and went out into the middle of the city, and cried with a loud and bitter cry.
2 And he came until he was before the king's gate; for there was no entering into the king's gate in clothing of sackcloth.
3 And in every province, wherever the king's word and his decree came, there was great mourning among the Jews, and fasting, and weeping and wailing. Sackcloth and ash were spread on many.
4 And Esther's maids and her eunuchs came and told her. And the queen was exceedingly writhed in pain. And she sent clothing to clothe Mordecai, and to take away his sackcloth from him. But he did not accept.
5 And Esther called for Hathach, of the king's eunuchs, who was made to stand before her. And she charged him as to Mordecai, to know what this was and why this was.
6 And Hathach went out to Mordecai, to the city street in front of the king's gate.
7 And Mordecai told him of all that had happened to him, and of the sum of the silver which Haman had said to weigh into the king's treasuries for the Jews in order to destroy them.
8 Also he gave him a copy of the writing of the law which was given at Shushan in order to destroy them, to

show it to Esther, and to reveal to her,
and to command her that she should
go in to the king to make supplication
to him, and to seek from him help for
her people.
9 And Hathach came and told Esther
the words of Mordecai.
10 Again Esther spoke to Hathach,
and ordered him to go to Mordecai,
11 for all the king's servants and the
people of the king's provinces know
that whoever, whether man or woman,
shall come to the king into the inner
court, who is not called, there is one
law of his, to die; except such to whom
the king shall hold out the golden
scepter so that he may live. But I have
not been called to come into the king
these thirty days.
12 And they told Mordecai Esther's
words.
13 And Mordecai said to take back to
Esther, Do not imagine within yourself
to deliver yourself in the king's house
more than all the Jews.
14 For if you are completely silent at
this time, relief and deliverance shall
rise up to the Jews from another place,
but you and your father's house shall
perish. And who knows if you have
attained to the kingdom for such a
time as this?
15 And Esther said to take back to
Mordecai,
16 Go, gather all the Jews being
found in Shushan, and fast for me.
And do not eat or drink three days,
night or day. My maidens and I will
also fast in this way. And so I will go in
to the king, which is not according to
the law. And if I have perished, I have
perished.
17 And Mordecai passed over and
did according all that Esther had
commanded him.

Chapter 5

1 And it happened on the third day
that Esther put on royal clothing and
stood in the inner court of the king's
house, before the king's inner house.
And the king was sitting on his royal
throne in the royal house, in front of
the gate of the house.
2 And it happened, when the king
saw Esther the queen standing in the
court, she was lifted up in grace in his
eyes. And the king held out the golden
scepter that was in his hand to Esther.
And Esther drew near and touched the
top of the scepter.
3 And the king said to her. What
shall be done to you, O Queen Esther,
and what is your request? It will be
given to you also, even up to half of the
kingdom.
4 And Esther answered, If it seems
good to the king, let the king and
Haman come today to the banquet
which I have prepared for him.
5 And the king said, Cause Haman to
hurry to do the word of Esther. And
the king and Haman came to the
banquet which Esther had prepared.
6 And the king said to Esther at the
banquet of wine, What is your
petition, and it shall be granted to
you? And what is your wish? And it
will be done, even up to half of the
kingdom.
7 And Esther replied and said, As to
my petition and my request,
8 if I have found grace in the eyes of
the king, and if it pleases the king to
grant my petition and to perform my
request, let the king and Haman come
to the banquet which I shall prepare
for them, and I will do tomorrow
according to the word of the king.
9 And Haman went out that day
joyful and good of heart. But when
Haman saw Mordecai in the gate of
the king, that he did not stand up or

move for him, he was full of fury against Mordecai.
10 But Haman restrained himself, and came to his house, and sent for and brought in his friends, and his wife Zeresh.
11 And Haman told them of the glory of his riches, and his many sons, and all to which the king had promoted him, and how he lifted him up above the rulers and the servants of the king.
12 And Haman said, Also, Esther the queen did not let anyone come in with the king to the banquet that she had prepared, except me. And also tomorrow I am called to it with the king.
13 Yet all this is no gain to me as long as I am seeing Mordecai the Jew sitting at the king's gate.
14 And his wife Zeresh and all his friends said to him, Make a wooden gallows fifty cubits high, and tomorrow speak to the king and let them hang Mordecai on it; and go rejoicing in with the king to the banquet. And the thing was good in Haman's eyes. And he caused the wooden gallows to be made.

Chapter 6

1 On that night the king's sleep fled, and he said to bring in the Book of the Records of the Matter of the Days. And they were being read before the king.
2 And it was found written that Mordecai had told of Bigthana and Teresh, two of the king's eunuchs, the guards of the threshold, who sought to send forth a hand against King Ahasuerus.
3 And the king said, What honor and dignity was done to Mordecai for this? And the king's young servants of his ministers said, Nothing has been done for him.
4 And the king said, Who is in the court? And Haman had come into the outer court of the king's house to speak to the king to hang Mordecai on the wooden gallows which he had prepared for him.
5 And the king's servants said to him, Behold, Haman stands in the court. And the king said, Let him come in.
6 And Haman came in. And the king said to him, What shall be done to the man whom the king delights to honor? And Haman thought in his heart, To whom would the king delight to do honor more than to myself?
7 And Haman answered the king, For the man whom the king delights to honor,
8 let the royal clothing be brought, which the king puts on himself, and the horse on which the king rides, and the royal crown which is set on his head;
9 and let this clothing and horse be given into the hand of men, one of the king's most noble rulers, and let them dress the man whom the king delights to honor, and cause him to ride on the horse through the street of the city, and call out before him, In this way shall be done to the man whom the king delights, in honoring him!
10 And the king said to Haman, Hurry! Take the clothing and the horse, as you have said, and do so to Mordecai the Jew, who sits at the king's gate. Do not fail to do any of all the things you have spoken.
11 And Haman took the clothing and the horse, and dressed Mordecai, and caused him to ride through the street of the city, and called out before him, In this way shall be done to the man whom the king delights, in honoring him!
12 And Mordecai came again to the king's gate, but Haman hurried to his

house mourning, and his head covered.

13 And Haman told his wife Zeresh and all his friends everything that had happened to him. Then his wise men and his wife Zeresh said to him, If Mordecai is of the seed of the Jews, before whom you have begun to fall, you shall not prevail against him, but shall surely fall before him.

14 And while they were still talking with him, the king's eunuchs arrived, and they hurried to bring Haman to the banquet which Esther had prepared.

Chapter 7

1 And the king and Haman came to the banquet of Queen Esther.

2 And the king said again to Esther on the second day of the banquet of wine, What is your petition, Queen Esther, and it shall be given to you. And what is your request? It shall be done, to the half of the kingdom.

3 And Esther the queen answered and said, If I have found grace in your eyes, O king, and it pleases the king, let my life be given me at my petition, and my people at my request.

4 For we are sold, my people and I, for destruction, for murder and for perishing. But if we had been sold for male slaves and slave-girls, I would have kept silent, though the adversary could not make up for the king's loss.

5 And King Ahasuerus answered and said to Esther the queen, Who is he, this one? And where is this one, he who is filled with pride in his heart to do so?

6 And Esther said, A man, an enemy, and a hating one, Haman! This evil one! And Haman was afraid before the king and the queen.

7 And the king, rising from the banquet of wine in his wrath, went into the palace garden. And Haman stood to beg for his life from Esther the queen, for he saw that evil was determined against him by the king.

8 And the king returned out of the garden to the place of the banquet of wine. And Haman had fallen on the couch on which Esther was laying upon. And the king said, Will he also ravish the queen with me in the house? The word went from the king's mouth, and they covered Haman's face.

9 And Harbonah, one of the eunuchs, said before the king, Also, look! The wooden gallows which Haman made for Mordecai, who had spoken good toward the king, is standing at Haman's house. And the king said, Hang him on it!

10 And they hanged Haman on the wooden gallows which he had prepared for Mordecai. And the king's wrath was ceased.

Chapter 8

1 On that day King Ahasuerus gave the house of Haman, the adversary of the Jews, to Esther the queen. And Mordecai came before the king, for Esther had told what he was to her.

2 And the king took off his ring, which he had taken from Haman, and gave it to Mordecai. And Esther set Mordecai over the house of Haman.

3 And Esther spoke yet again before the king and fell down at his feet. And she begged him with tears to put away the evil of Haman the Agagite, and his purpose which he had plotted against the Jews.

4 Then the king held out the golden scepter to Esther, and Esther rose up and stood before the king,

5 and said, If it pleases the king, and if I have found grace before him, and the thing is right before the king, and I

am pleasing in his eyes, let it be written to bring back the documents (a sly plot by Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite) which he wrote to destroy the Jews who are in all the king's provinces.

6 For how shall I be able to look on the evil that shall find my people? Or how shall I be able to look on the slaughter of my kindred?

7 And King Ahasuerus said to Esther the queen and to Mordecai the Jew, Behold, I have given Haman's house to Esther, and they have hanged him on the wooden gallows because he put forth his hand against the Jews.

8 And you write to the Jews according to the good in your eyes, in the king's name, and seal it with the king's ring. For the writing which is written in the king's name, and sealed with the king's ring, there is no taking back.

9 And the king's scribes were called at that time, in the third month, that is, the month Sivan, on the twenty third of it. And it was written according to all that Mordecai commanded to the Jews, and to the satraps, and the governors, and the rulers of the provinces which were from India to Ethiopia, a hundred and twenty seven provinces, to every province according to its writing, and to every people in their language, and to the Jews; according to their writing and according to their language.

10 And he wrote in the name of King Ahasuerus, and sealed with the king's ring. And he sent letters by riders on horses, riders on stallions, mules, even sons of mares.

11 In them the king gave to the Jews in every single city the right to be assembled, and to stand for their life, to destroy, to kill, and to cause to perish, all the power of the people and province, the ones compressing them, little ones and women, and to take what they owned for a prize,

12 on one day in all the provinces of King Ahasuerus, on the thirteenth of the twelfth month, which is the month Adar.

13 The copy of the writing to be made law in every province was openly revealed to all people, even to the Jews being ready for this day, to avenge themselves on their enemies.

14 The runners, riders on stallions, mules, went out, being hurried and pressed on by the king's command. And the order was given at Shushan the palace.

15 And Mordecai went out from before the king in apparel of the kingdom, of blue and white, and with a great crown of gold, and with a garment of fine linen and purple. And the city of Shushan rejoiced and was glad.

16 For the Jews it was light and gladness and joy and honor.

17 And in every province and in every city, the place wherever the word of the king and his law touched, the Jews had joy and gladness, a feast and a good day. And many of the people of the land became Jews, for the fear of the Jews fell on them.

Chapter 9

1 And in the twelfth month, that is the month Adar, on the thirteenth day of the same, when the king's command and his order came to be done, in the day that the enemies of the Jews hoped to take power over them (though it was turned around, so that the Jews ruled, they over the ones hating them),

2 the Jews assembled in their cities in all the provinces of King Ahasuerus to stretch out a hand against those seeking their evil. And no man stood

in their presence, for their fear fell on
all the people.
3 And all the rulers of the provinces,
and the satraps, and the governors,
and those doing the king' business,
were lifting up the Jews, because the
fear of Mordecai fell on them.
4 For Mordecai was great in the
king's house and his fame went out
into all the provinces, for this man
Mordecai was going on and growing
greater.
5 And the Jews struck against all
their enemies with a stroke of the
sword, and slaughter, and destruction,
and did what they desired to those
who hated them.
6 And in Shushan the palace the
Jews killed and destroyed five
hundred men.
7 And they killed Parshandatha, and
Dalphon, and Aspatha,
8 and Poratha, and Adalia, and
Aridatha,
9 and Parmashta, and Arisai, and
Aridai, and Vajezatha,
10 the ten sons of Haman the son of
Hammedatha, the one distressing the
Jews. But they did not lay their hands
on the spoil.
11 On that day the number of those
who were killed in Shushan the palace
was brought before the king.
12 And the king said to Esther the
queen, The Jews have killed and
destroyed five hundred men in
Shushan the palace, and the ten sons
of Haman. What have they done in the
rest of the provinces of the king? And
what is your petition, and it is given to
you? And what further request, and it
will be done?
13 And Esther said, If it pleases the
king, let it be given to the Jews in
Shushan to do tomorrow also
according to this day's decree; and let
Haman's ten sons be hanged on the
wooden gallows.
14 And the king commanded it to be
done so. And the order was given at
Shushan, and they hanged Haman's
ten sons.
15 And the Jews in Shushan also
assembled on the fourteenth day of the
month Adar and killed three hundred
men at Shushan; but they did not lay
their hands on the spoil.
16 But the rest of the Jews in the
king's provinces gathered and stood
for their lives, and a rest from their
enemies, and to kill seventy five
thousand of their foes. But they did
not lay their hands on the spoil.
17 On the thirteenth day of the
month Adar, and on the fourteenth
day of the same, they rested and made
it a day of feasting and gladness.
18 And the Jews at Shushan
assembled on the thirteenth day of it,
and on the fourteenth day of it, and to
rest on the fifteenth of the same, and
to make it a day of feasting and
gladness.
19 On account of this the Jews of the
villages who lived in the unwalled
villages made the fourteenth day of the
month Adar a day of gladness and
feasting, and a good day, and a day of
sending portions to one another.
20 And Mordecai wrote these things,
and sent letters to all the Jews in all
the provinces of King Ahasuerus, near
and far,
21 to cause to rise among them to
make a feast the fourteenth day of the
month Adar, and the fifteenth day of
the same, yearly;
22 as the days in which the Jews
rested from their enemies, and the
month which was turned to them from
sorrow to joy, and from mourning into
a good day, to make them days of
feasting and joy, and of sending
portions to one another, and gifts to
the poor.
23 And the Jews undertook to do as

they had begun, and as Mordecai had written to them,
24 because Haman the son of Hammedatha the Agagite, the adversary of all the Jews, had plotted against the Jews to destroy them, and had cast Pur, that is, the lot, to torment them and to destroy them.
25 But when Esther came to the king, he commanded by the letter, Let this evil plot which he plotted against the Jews return on his own head; and they hanged him and his sons on the wooden gallows.
26 On account of this they called these days Purim, after the name of Pur. For on account of this all the words of this letter, and what they saw concerning this matter, and what had touched them,
27 the Jews rose up and took on themselves and on their seed, and on all joining themselves to them, even not to pass, to be keeping those two days according to their writing, and according to their time every year;
28 and that these days should be remembered and kept in every generation, every family, every province, and every city; and that these days of Purim should not pass from among the Jews, and their memory not perish from their seed.
29 And Esther the queen, the daughter of Abihail, and Mordecai the Jew, wrote with all authority to confirm this second letter of Purim.
30 And he sent the letters to all the Jews, to the hundred and twenty seven provinces of the kingdom of Ahasuerus words of peace and truth,
31 in order to confirm these days of Purim in their set times, according as Mordecai the Jew and Esther the queen had caused to rise up on them, and as they caused to rise up on themselves and on their seed, the matters of the fastings and of their cry.
32 And the decree of Esther made rise these matters of Purim. And it was written in the book.

Chapter 10

1 And King Ahasuerus laid a tax on the land and on the isles of the sea.
2 And all the acts of his authority and of his might, and the declaration of the greatness of Mordecai, with which the king made him great, are they not written in the Book of the Matters of the Days of the Kings of Media and Persia?
3 For Mordecai the Jew was second to King Ahasuerus, and great among the Jews, and pleasing to the multitude of his brothers, seeking the welfare of his people, and speaking peace to all his seed.

Book of Ezra

Chapter 1

1 And in the first year of Cyrus King
of Persia, so that the Word of
YAHWEH by the mouth of Jeremiah
might be fulfilled, YAHWEH stirred
up the spirit of Cyrus king of Persia,
and he caused a voice to pass in all his
kingdom, and also in writing, saying,
2 so says Cyrus king of Persia,
YAHWEH Elohim of Heaven has
given me all the kingdoms of the earth.
And He has appointed me to build
Him a house at Jerusalem, which is in
Judah.[1]
3 Who is there among you of all His
people? His Elohim is with him, and
let him go up to Jerusalem, which is in
Judah, and build the house of
YAHWEH, Elohim of Israel. He is The
Elohim, which is in Jerusalem.
4 And all who remain in any of the
places where he sojourns, let the men
assist Him of that place and lift him up
with silver, and with gold, and with
property, and with animals, besides
the freewill offering for the house of
The Elohim that is in Jerusalem.
5 Then the chiefs of the fathers of
Judah and Benjamin, and the priests,
and the Levites, and everyone whose
spirit The Elohim had awakened, rose
up to go up to build the house of
YAHWEH, which is in Jerusalem.
6 And all those who were around
them made their hands strong with
vessels of silver, with gold, with
property, and with animals, and with
precious things, besides all that was
freely offered.
7 Also Cyrus the king brought forth
the vessels of the house of YAHWEH,
which Nebuchadnezzar had brought
out of Jerusalem and had put them in
the house of his gods.
8 Even those, Cyrus king of Persia
brought forth by the hand of
Mithredath the treasurer, and
numbered them to Sheshbazzar, the
prince of Judah.
9 And this is the number of them:
thirty platters of gold, a thousand
platters of silver, twenty one knives,
10 thirty basins of gold, four
hundred and ten silver basins of a
second kind, and a thousand other
vessels.
11 All the vessels of gold and of silver
(five thousand and four hundred)
Sheshbazzar made to go up, all, when
the exiled were caused to go up from
Babylon to Jerusalem.

Chapter 2

1 Now these are the sons of the
province who went up out of the
captivity, of those who had been
exiled, whom Nebuchadnezzar the
king of Babylon had exiled to Babylon.
And they came again to Jerusalem and
Judah, each one to his own city,
2 who came with Zerubbabel:
Yeshua, Nehemiah, Seraiah, Reelaiah,
Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispar, Bigvai,
Rehum, Baanah. This is the number of
the men of the people of Israel:
3 The sons of Parosh, two thousand,
one hundred and seventy two.
4 The sons of Shephatiah, three
hundred and seventy two.
5 The sons of Arah, seven hundred
and seventy five.
6 The sons of Pahathmoab, of the
sons of Jeshua and Joab, two
thousand, eight hundred and twelve.
7 The sons of Elam, a thousand two
hundred and fifty four.

[1] Verses 1-2- See 2 Chron 36:22-23. The action of Cyrus to rebuild the sanctuary of YHWH was predicted almost 200 yrs before this decree went out in Is 44:21-28, and 45:1, 5. Yahweh even gave the name of King Cyrus in the prophecy.

8 The sons of Zattu, nine hundred and forty five.
9 The sons of Zaccai, seven hundred and sixty.
10 The sons of Bani, six hundred and forty two.
11 The sons of Bebai, six hundred and twenty three.
12 The sons of Azgad, a thousand, two hundred and twenty two.
13 The sons of Adonikam, six hundred and sixty six.
14 The sons of Bigvai, two thousand and fifty six.
15 The sons of Adin, four hundred and fifty four.
16 The sons of Ater of Hezekiah, ninety eight.
17 The sons of Bezai, three hundred and twenty three.
18 The sons of Jorah, a hundred and twelve.
19 The sons of Hashum, two hundred and twenty three.
20 The sons of Gibbar, ninety five.
21 The sons of Bethlehem, a hundred and twenty three.
22 The men of Netophah, fifty six.
23 The men of Anathoth, a hundred and twenty eight.
24 The sons of Azmaveth, forty two.
25 The sons of Kirjath-Arim, Chephirah, and Beeroth, seven hundred and forty three.
26 The sons of Ramah and Geba, six hundred and twenty one.
27 The men of Michmas, a hundred and twenty two.
28 The men of Bethel and Ai, two hundred and twenty three.
29 The men of Nebo, fifty two.
30 The men of Magbish, a hundred and fifty six.
31 The sons of the other Elam, a thousand, two hundred and fifty four.
32 The sons of Harim, three hundred and twenty.
33 The sons of Lod, Hadid and Ono, seven hundred and twenty five.
34 The sons of Jericho, three hundred and forty five.
35 The sons of Senaah, three thousand, six hundred and thirty.
36 The priests: The sons of Jedaiah, of the house of Jeshua, nine hundred and seventy three.
37 The sons of Immer, a thousand and fifty two.
38 The sons of Pashur, a thousand, two hundred and forty seven.
39 The sons of Harim, a thousand and seventeen.
40 The Levites: The sons of Jeshua and Kadmiel, of the sons of Hodaviah, seventy four.
41 The singers: The sons of Asaph, a hundred and twenty eight.
42 The sons of the porters: The sons of Shallum, the sons of Ater, the sons of Talmon, the sons of Akkub, the sons of Hatita, the sons of Shobai, a hundred and thirty nine.
43 The temple-slaves: The sons of Ziha, the sons of Hasupha, the sons of Tabbaoth,
44 the sons of Keros, the sons of Siaha, the sons of Padon,
45 the sons of Lebanah, the sons of Hagabah, the sons of Akkub,
46 the sons of Hagab, the sons of Shalmai, the sons of Hanan,
47 the sons of Giddel, the sons of Gahar, the sons of Reaiah,
48 the sons of Rezin, the sons of Nekoda, the sons of Gazzam,
49 the sons of Uzza, the sons of Paseah, the sons of Besai,
50 the sons of Asnah, the sons of Mehunim, the sons of Nephusim,
51 the sons of Bakbuk, the sons of Hakupha, the sons of Harhur,
52 the sons of Bazluth, the sons of Mehida, the sons of Harsha,
53 the sons of Barkos, the sons of Sisera, the sons of Thamah,

54 the sons of Neziah, the sons of
Hatipha.
55 The sons of Solomon's servants:
The sons of Sotai, the sons of
Sophereth, the sons of Peruda,
56 the sons of Jaalah, the sons of
Darkon, the sons of Giddel,
57 the sons of Shephatiah, the sons
of Hattil, the sons of Pochereth of
Zebaim, the sons of Ami.
58 All the temple-slaves, and the
sons of Solomon's servants were three
hundred and ninety two.
59 And these were they who went up
from Telmelah, Telharsa, Cherub,
Addan and Immer (but they were not
able to declare their father's house and
their seed, whether they were of
Israel):
60 The sons of Delaiah, the sons of
Tobiah, the sons of Nekoda, six
hundred and fifty two.
61 And of the sons of the priests
were the sons of Habaiah, the sons of
Koz, the sons of Barzillai who took a
wife of the daughters of Barzillai the
Gileadite, and was called after their
name.
62 These looked for their register
among those who were counted by
genealogy, but they were not found.
And they were defiled from the
priesthood.
63 And the governor said to them
that they should not eat of the most
holy things until a priest stood up with
Urim and Thummim.
64 The whole congregation together
was forty two thousand, three hundred
and sixty,
65 besides their male slaves and
their slave-girls, these were seven
thousand, three hundred and thirty
seven; and among them two hundred
singing men and singing women.
66 Their horses were seven hundred
and thirty six, their mules two
hundred and forty five,
67 their camels four hundred and
thirty five, their donkeys six thousand,
seven hundred and twenty.
68 And some of the heads of the
fathers, when they came to the house
of YAHWEH at Jerusalem, offered
freely for the house of The Elohim to
set it up in its place.
69 They gave according to their
ability to the treasury of the ministry,
sixty one thousand drachmas of gold,
and five thousand minas of silver, and
one hundred garments for the priests.
70 And the priests, and the Levites,
and many of the people, and the
singers, and the gatekeepers, and the
temple-slaves lived in their cities, and
all Israel in their cities.

Chapter 3

1 And when the seventh month had
come, and the sons of Israel were in
the cities, the people assembled as one
man to Jerusalem.
2 Then Yeshua the son of Jozadak
stood up, and his brothers the priests,
and Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel,
and his brothers, and built the altar of
the Elohim of Israel in order to offer
burnt offerings on it, as it is written in
the Torah of Moses the man of The
Elohim.
3 And they set the altar on its bases,
for fear was on them because of the
people of those lands. And he offered
burnt offerings on it to YAHWEH,
burnt offerings morning and evening.
4 They also performed the Feast of
Sukkot, as it is written, and the burnt
offerings by number, days by days,
according to the ordinance, the thing
of days in its day.
5 And afterward the continual burnt
offering, both of the new moons, and
of all the set feasts of YAHWEH that
were set apart, and of everyone who

willingly offered a freewill offering to
YAHWEH. (*Num 28:11, 14)*
6 From the first day of the seventh
month they began to offer burnt
offerings to YAHWEH. But the
foundation of the sanctuary of
YAHWEH was not laid.
7 They also gave silver to the hewers
and to the craftsmen; and food and
drink and oil to the Sidonians and to
the Tyrians, to bring cedar trees from
Lebanon to the sea of Joppa,
according to the grant which they had
from Cyrus king of Persia.
8 Now in the second year of their
coming to the house of The Elohim at
Jerusalem, in the second month,
Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and
Yeshua the son of Jozadak, and the
rest of their brothers the priests, and
the Levites, and all they who had come
out of the captivity to Jerusalem
began. And they made to stand the
Levites from a son of twenty years and
over, to watch over the work of the
house of YAHWEH.
9 Then Yeshua stood up together
with his sons and his brothers,
Kadmiel and his sons, the sons of
Judah, to oversee the workmen in the
house of The Elohim, the sons of
Henadad with their sons, and their
brothers the Levites.
10 And when the builders laid the
foundation of the sanctuary of
YAHWEH, they made stand the
priests in their robes with trumpets,
and the Levites, the sons of Asaph,
with cymbals to praise YAHWEH,
according to the ordinance of David
king of Israel.
11 And they sang, praising and giving
thanks to YAHWEH, because He is
good, for His mercy endures forever
toward Israel. And all the people
shouted with a great shout when they
praised YAHWEH because the
foundation of the house of YAHWEH
was laid.
12 But many of the priests and
Levites, and heads of the fathers, the
aged men who had seen the first
house, when the foundation of this
house was laid before their eyes, wept
with a loud voice. And many shouted
aloud for joy,
13 so that the people could not
recognize the sound of the shout of joy
from the sound of the weeping of the
people. For the people shouted with a
loud shout and the noise was heard
afar off.

Chapter 4

1 And when the enemies of Judah
and Benjamin heard that the sons of
the exile built the sanctuary to
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel,
2 then they came to Zerubbabel and
to the head of the fathers and said to
them, Let us build with you, for we
seek your Elohim, as you. And we have
not sacrificed to Him since the days of
Esarhaddon king of Assyria, who
brought us up here.
3 But Zerubbabel, and Yeshua, and
the rest of the heads of the fathers of
Israel said to them, It is not for you
and for us to build a house to our
Elohim. But we ourselves will together
build to YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel, as King Cyrus the king of Persia
has commanded us.
4 Then the people of the land
weakened the hands of the people of
Judah and frightened them in
building.
5 And they hired counselors against
them to break their purpose all the
days of Cyrus king of Persia, even until
the reign of Darius king of Persia.
6 And in the reign of Ahasuerus, in
the beginning of his reign, they wrote

an accusation against the people of Judah and Jerusalem.
7 And in the days of Artaxerxes, Bishlam, Mithredath, Tabeel, and the rest of their companions wrote to Artaxerxes the king of Persia. And the letter was written in Aramaic, and translated from Aramaic.
8 Rehum, the master of counsel in charge, and Shimshai the scribe, wrote a letter against Jerusalem to Artaxerxes the king, thus:
9 Then Rehum the master of counsel, and Shimshai the scribe, and the rest of their associates, the judges and the emissaries, the consuls, the officials, the Erechites, the Babylonians, the men of Susa, (that is, the Elamites),
10 and the rest of the nations whom the great and noble Asnappar exiled and set in the cities of Samaria, and the rest of the province Beyond the River, and now,
11 this is the copy of the letter which they sent to him, to Artaxerxes the king: Your servants, the men of the province Beyond the River, and now,
12 let it be known to the king that the Jews who came up from you to us have come to Jerusalem. They are rebuilding the rebellious and the evil city and are completing its walls, and have joined the foundations.
13 Now let it be known to the king that if this city is rebuilt, and the walls completed, they will not give tax, tribute, and forced labor, and it will cause the king's revenue to suffer.
14 Now because we have eaten of the palace salt, and it is not right for us to see the king's dishonor, therefore we have sent and notified the king,
15 so that he may search in the book of the records of your fathers, and you shall discover in the book of the records and shall know that this city is a rebellious city, and hurtful to kings and to provinces; and insurrection was stirred up in it in the past; for which reason this city was destroyed.
16 We notify the king that if that city is built, and its walls completed, then you shall have no portion Beyond the River.
17 The message the king sent to Rehum the master of counsel, and to Shimshai the scribe, and to the rest of their associates who dwell in Samaria, and to the rest Beyond the River: Peace! And now,
18 the letter which you sent to us has been plainly read before me.
19 And I gave a decree, and search has been made, and it is found that this city has lifted up itself against kings in the past, and rebellion and revolt have been made in it.
20 There have been mighty kings also over Jerusalem, who have ruled over all Beyond the River. And tax, tribute, and forced labor were paid to them.
21 Now make a decree to cause these men to cease, and that this city not be rebuilt until the decree shall be given from me.
22 And beware of being negligent, to act on this. Why increase damage to the injury of the kings?
23 Then as soon as the copy of the letter of Artaxerxes the king was read before Rehum, and Shimshai the scribe, and their associates, they hurried to Jerusalem to the Jews, and made them stop working by force and power.
24 Then the work of the house of Elohoi in Jerusalem stopped. So it ceased until the second year of the reign of Darius king of Persia.

Chapter 5

1 And the prophets, Haggai the prophet, and Zechariah the son of

Iddo, prophesied to the Jews in Judah
and Jerusalem in the name of the Elah
of Israel who was over them.
2 Then Zerubbabel the son of
Shealtiel, and Yeshua the son of
Jozadak rose up and began to build
the house of Elohoi in Jerusalem. And
with them were the prophets of
Elohim helping them.
3 At that time Tatnai, governor of the
province Beyond the River, and
Shethar-Boznai, and their associates,
came to them, and said this to them:
Who has commanded you to build this
house and to complete this structure?
4 Then we spoke to them in this way,
What are they, the names of the men
building this building?
5 But the eye of their Elohoi was on
the elders of the Jews, and they could
not cause them to stop until the matter
came to Darius. And then they sent
back a letter concerning this.
6 The copy of the letter which Tatnai,
governor of the province Beyond the
River, and Shethar-Boznai, and his
associates the officials who were
Beyond the River, sent to Darius the
king:
7 They sent a letter to him, and this
was written in it: To Darius the king,
all peace.
8 Let it be known to the king that we
went into the province of Judah, to the
house of the great Elohoi, and it is
being built with rolling stones, and
timber is being laid in the walls, and
that work is being done perfectly, and
is prospering in their hands.
9 Then we asked those elders, saying
this to them, Who commanded you to
rebuild this house, and to complete
this structure?
10 And we also asked their names in
order to inform you so that we might
write the names of the men who are at
their heads.
11 And they returned the answer to
us this way, saying, We are servants of
the Elah of Heaven and earth. And we
are rebuilding the house that was built
many years before this, and the great
king of Israel built it and finished it.
12 But because our fathers had
provoked to wrath the Elohoi of
Heaven, He gave them into the hand
of Nebuchadnezzar the king of
Babylon, the Chaldean, and he tore
down this house, and he exiled its
people to Babylon.
13 But in the first year of Cyrus the
king of Babylon, King Cyrus placed an
order to build this house of Elohoi.
14 And also the vessels of gold and
silver from the house of Elohoi, which
Nebuchadnezzar took out of the
sanctuary in Jerusalem, and brought
them into the temple of Babylon, those
Cyrus the king took out of the temple
of Babylon, and they were delivered to
one whose name was Sheshbazzar,
whom he had made governor.
15 And he said to him, Take these
vessels and go. Deposit them in the
temple in Jerusalem, and let the house
of Elohoi be built on its place.
16 Then that Sheshbazzar came and
laid the foundation of the house of
Elohoi in Jerusalem. And from then
even until now it has been building,
but is not finished.
17 Now, therefore, if it is good to the
king, let there be a search made in the
king's treasure house which is there at
Babylon, whether it is so that a decree
was given from Cyrus the king to build
this house of Elohoi at Jerusalem. And
let the will of the king concerning this
be sent to us.

Chapter 6

1 Then Darius the king made a
decree, and they searched in the house
of the scrolls, where the treasures were
laid up in Babylon.

2 And there was found in Achmetha,
in the palace that is in the province of
the Medes, a scroll. And in it was a
record written thus:
3 In the first year of Cyrus the king,
Cyrus the king placed a decree
concerning the house of Elohoi in
Jerusalem: Let the house be built, the
place where they offered sacrifices and
let the foundations of it be strongly
laid. Its height shall be sixty cubits; its
breadth sixty cubits;
4 with three layers of rolling stones,
and a layer of new timber. And let the
expenses be given out of the king's
house.
5 And also let the gold and silver
vessels of the house of Elohoi, that
Nebuchadnezzar took out of the
temple in Jerusalem, and brought to
Babylon, be given back and go to the
temple in Jerusalem, to their place.
And put them in the house of Elohoi.
6 Now, Tatnai, governor of the
province Beyond the River, Shethar-
Boznai, and your associates, the
officials who are Beyond the River, you
be far from there.
7 Let the work of this house of Elohoi
alone. Let the governor of the Jews,
and the elders of the Jews, build this
house of Elohoi in its place.
8 Also I make a decree as to what
you shall do to the elders of these Jews
for the building of that house of
Elohoi, that the exact expense be given
to these men from the king's property,
out of the tax Beyond the River, so that
they may not have to cease working.
9 And that which they need, both
young bulls and rams and lambs, for
the burnt offerings of the Elah of
Heaven; wheat, salt, wine, and oil, as
say the priests in Jerusalem, let it be
given them day by day without fail,
10 so that they may offer sacrifices of
sweet odor to the Elah of Heaven, and
pray for the life of the king and of his
sons.
11 Also I have given a decree that
whoever shall change this word, let
timber be torn out from his house, and
let him be impaled and hanged on it.
And let his house be made an
outhouse for this.
12 And may the Elohoi who has
caused His name to dwell there
destroy any kings and people who
shall put their hand to change or to
destroy this house of Elohoi in
Jerusalem. I, Darius, have placed a
decree. Let it be done exactly.
13 Then Tatnai, governor of the
province Beyond the River, Shethar-
Boznai, and their associates exactly
did so, according to that which Darius
the king had sent.
14 And the elders of the Jews were
building. And they were succeeding
through the prophesying of Haggai the
prophet, and Zechariah the son of
Iddo. And they built, and finished,
according to the commandment of the
Elah of Israel and according to the
command of Cyrus, and Darius, and
Artaxerxes the king of Persia.
15 And this house was finished on
the third day of the month Adar, which
was in the sixth year of the reign of
Darius the king.
16 And the sons of Israel, the priests,
and the Levites, and the rest of the
sons of the captivity, kept the
dedication of this house of Elohoi with
joy.
17 And they offered at the dedication
of this house of Elohoi a hundred
bulls, two hundred rams, four hundred
lambs, and twelve male goats, for a sin
offering for all Israel, according to the
number of the tribes of Israel.
18 And they raised up the priests in
their sections, and the Levites in their
divisions, for the service of Elohoi

which is in Jerusalem, as it is written
in the book of Moses.
19 And the sons of the exile
performed the Passover on the
fourteenth of the first month.[1]
20 For the priests and the Levites
were purified together; all of them
were pure. And they slaughtered the
Passover lamb for all the sons of the
exile, and for their brothers the
priests, and for themselves.
21 And the sons of Israel ate, those
who had returned from the captivity,
and who had all separated themselves
to them from the impurity of the
nations of the land, to seek YAHWEH
the Elohim of Israel.
22 And they performed the Feast of
Unleavened Bread seven days with joy.
For YAHWEH had made them joyful,
and had turned the heart of the king of
Assyria to them, to make their hands
strong in the work of the house of
Elohim, the Elohim of Israel.

Chapter 7

1 And after these things, in the reign
of Artaxerxes the king of Persia, Ezra
the son of Seraiah, the son of Azariah,
the son of Hilkiah,
2 the son of Shallum, the son of
Zadok, the son of Ahitub,
3 the son of Amariah, the son of
Azariah, the son of Meraioth,
4 the son of Zerahiah, the son of
Uzzi, the son of Bukki,
5 the son of Abishua, the son of
Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son
of Aaron the head priest:
6 This Ezra went up from Babylon.
And he was a skilled scribe in the
Torah of Moses, which YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel had given. And the
king granted him all he asked,
according to the hand of YAHWEH
his Elohim on him.
7 And of the sons of Israel went up
some of the priests, and the Levites,
and the singers, and the gatekeepers,
and the temple-slaves to Jerusalem in
the seventh year of Artaxerxes the
king.
8 And he came to Jerusalem in the
fifth month, in the seventh year of the
king.
9 For on the first of the first month,
he laid the foundation in order to go
up from Babylon, and on the first of
the fifth month he came to Jerusalem,
for the good hand of his Elohim was
on him.
10 For Ezra had prepared his heart
to seek the Torah of YAHWEH, and to
do it, and to teach statutes and
judgments in Israel.[2]
11 And this is the copy of the letter
which the king, Artaxerxes, gave to
Ezra the priest, the scribe, a scribe of
the words of the commandments of
YAHWEH, and of His statutes to
Israel:
12 Artaxerxes, king of kings, to Ezra
the priest, a scribe of the Torah of the
Elohim of Heaven, perfect peace, and
now:
13 From me was made a decree that
any one of the people of Israel, and
their priests and Levites in my
kingdom who volunteers to go up to
Jerusalem, may go with you;
14 since you have been sent by the
king, and by his seven counselors to
ask about Judah and Jerusalem,
according to the Law of your Elohim in
your hand;
15 and to carry the silver and gold
which the king and his counselors

[1] The Passover is to be eaten on the 14th day of the month and the 15th day is the feast of unleavened bread.

[2] Ezra knew that the forsaking of the Torah and YHWH's Sabbaths was what sent the Israelites into captivity Eze 20:13, 16. He had planned to instill the Torah in the hearts of the people.

have freely offered to the Elohim of Israel, whose house is in Jerusalem:
16 Even all the silver and gold which you can find in all the province of Babylon, with the free offering of the people, and of the priests, freely offering for the house of their Elohim in Jerusalem.
17 Therefore of this you shall diligently buy with this silver: Bulls, rams, lambs, with their food offerings, and their drink offerings, and offer them on the altar of the house of your Elohim in Jerusalem.
18 And whatever shall seem good to you and to your brothers to do with the rest of the silver and the gold, do that after the will of your Elohim.
19 Also the vessels which are given to you for the service of the house of your Elohim, deliver before the Elah of Jerusalem.
20 And the rest of the needs of the house of your Elohim which falls to you to give, give it out of the king's treasure house.
21 And I, Artaxerxes the king, made a decree to all the treasurers who are Beyond the River, that whatever Ezra the priest, the scribe of the Law of the Elah of Heaven, shall ask of you, it shall be done exactly,
22 to a hundred talents of silver, and to a hundred kors of wheat, and to a hundred baths of wine, and to a hundred baths of oil, and salt without stipulation.
23 Whatever is commanded by the Elah of Heaven, let it be carefully done for the house of the Elah of Heaven. For why should there be wrath against the realm of the king and his sons?
24 Also, we notify you that in regard to any of the priests and the Levites, singers, gatekeepers, temple-slaves, or ministers of this house of Elohoi, it shall not be lawful to impose toll, taxes, or forced labor on them.
25 And you, Ezra, according to the wisdom of your Elohoi in your hand, you appoint judges and magistrates who may judge all the people who are Beyond the River; all who know the laws of your Elohoi; and those who do not know, you cause to know.
26 And whoever will not do the Law of your Elohoi, and the law of the king, let judgment be executed diligently on him, whether to death, or for banishment, or to confiscation of goods, or imprisonment.
27 Blessed be YAHWEH, the Elohim of our fathers, who has put this in the king's heart, to beautify the house of YAHWEH in Jerusalem.
28 And He has extended mercy to me before the king and his counselors, and before all the king's mighty leaders. And I was made strong, as the hand of YAHWEH my Elohim was on me. And I gathered out of Israel chief men to go up with me.

Chapter 8

1 Now these are the heads of the fathers, and the genealogy of those who went up with me from Babylon, in the reign of Artaxerxes the king:
2 From the sons of Phinehas, Gershom. From the sons of Ithamar, Daniel. From the sons of David, Hattush.
3 From the sons of Shechaniah, from the sons of Parosh, Zechariah. And with him were counted by genealogy a hundred and fifty of the males.
4 From the sons of Pahathmoab, Elihoenai the son of Zerahiah, and two hundred males with him.
5 From the sons of Shechaniah, the son of Jahaziel, and three hundred males with him.
6 And from the sons of Adin, Ebed the son of Jonathan, and with him fifty males.

7 And from the sons of Elam,
Jeshaiah the son of Athaliah, and
seventy males with him.
8 And from the sons of Shephatiah,
Zebadiah the son of Michael, and
eighty males with him.
9 From the sons of Joab, Obadiah
the son of Jehiel, and two hundred
and eighteen males with him.
10 And from the sons of Shelomith,
the son of Josiphiah, and a hundred
and sixty males with him.
11 And from the sons of Bebai,
Zechariah the son of Bebai, and twenty
eight males with him.
12 And from the sons of Azgad,
Johanan the son of Hakkatan, and a
hundred and ten males with him.
13 And from the last sons of
Adonikam, these: Eliphelet, Jeiel, and
Shemaiah, and sixty males with them.
14 And from the sons of Bigvai,
Uthai, Zabbud, and seventy males with
them.
15 And I gathered them to the river
which runs to Ahava. And we camped
there in tents three days. And I
considered the people and the priests,
and did not find there any of the sons
of Levi.
16 Then I sent for Eliezer, for Ariel,
for Shemaiah, and for Elnathan, and
for Jarib, and for Elnathan, and for
Nathan, and for Zechariah, and for
Meshullam, chief men; also for Joiarib
and for Elnathan, men of
understanding.
17 And I sent them with command to
Iddo, the chief of the place Casiphia,
and I put in their mouth words to say
to Iddo, to his brothers the temple-
slaves, at the place Casiphia; that they
should bring to us ministers for the
house of our Elohim.
18 And by the good hand of our
Elohim on us, they brought us a man
of understanding from the sons of
Mahli, the son of Levi, the son of
Israel, and Sherebiah, with his sons
and his brothers, eighteen.
19 Also came Hashabiah, and with
him Jeshaiah from the sons of Merari,
his brothers and their sons, twenty.
20 Also came of the temple-slaves
whom David and the leaders had
chosen for the service of the Levites,
two hundred and twenty temple-
slaves. All of them were called by
name.
21 Then I called a fast there at the
river Ahava, so that we might humble
ourselves before our Elohim, in order
to seek from Him a right way for us,
and for our little ones, and for all our
goods.
22 For I was ashamed to ask of the
king troops and horsemen to help us
against the enemy of the way, because
we had spoken to the king, saying, The
hand of our Elohim is on all those who
seek Him for good; but His power and
His wrath are against all those who
forsake Him.
23 So we fasted and prayed to our
Elohim for good. And He was pleased
to hear us.
24 Then I separated twelve of the
chiefs of the priests, Sherebiah,
Hashabiah, and ten of their brothers
with them.
25 And I weighed to them the silver,
and the gold, and the vessels, the
offering of the house of our Elohim,
which the king and his counselors, and
his officials, and all Israel who were
there had lifted up.
26 I even weighed into their hands
six hundred and fifty talents of silver,
and silver vessels of a hundred talents,
a hundred talents of gold,
27 also twenty basins of gold of a
thousand drams, and two vessels of
shining copper as precious as gold.
28 And I said to them, You are holy
to YAHWEH, and the articles also are
holy. And the silver and the gold are a

free gift to YAHWEH, the Elohim of your fathers.

29 Watch and keep them until you weigh before the chief of the priests and the Levites, and the chief of the fathers of Israel in Jerusalem, in the rooms of the house of YAHWEH.

30 So the priests and the Levites accepted the weight of the silver, and the gold, and the articles, to bring them to Jerusalem, to the house of our Elohim.

31 And we departed from the river Ahava on the twelfth of the first month, to go to Jerusalem. And the hand of our Elohim was on us, and He delivered us from the hand of the enemy, and ambushers along the way.

32 And we came to Jerusalem, and remained there three days.

33 And on the fourth day the silver and the gold and the articles were weighed in the house of our Elohim by the hand of Meremoth the son of Uriah the priest. And with him was Eleazar the son of Phinehas, and with them was Jozabad the son of Yeshua, and Noadiah the son of Binnui, the Levites.

34 By number, or by weight of all, and all the weight was written at that time.

35 Those who came out of the captivity of the sons of exile offered burnt offerings to the Elohim of Israel: Twelve young bulls for all Israel, ninety six rams, seventy seven lambs, twelve he-goats for a sin offering. All was a burnt offering to YAHWEH.

36 And they delivered the king's edicts to the king's satraps, and to the governors of the province Beyond the River. And they supported the people and the house of Elohim.

Chapter 9

1 And at the end of these things, the leaders came near to me, saying, The people of Israel, and the priests, and the Levites, have not separated themselves from the people of the lands, as to their abomination, even the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Perizzites, the Jebusites, the Ammonites, the Moabites, the Egyptians, and the Amorites.

2 For they have taken from their daughters for themselves, and for their sons. So the holy seed have mixed themselves with the people of the lands. Yes, the hand of the leaders and the overseers has been foremost in this treachery.

3 And when I heard this thing, I tore my garments and my robe, and pulled off the hair of my head and of my beard, and sat down stunned.

4 Then were gathered to me everyone who trembled at the Words of the Elohim of Israel because of the treachery of the exiles. And I remained stunned until the evening sacrifice.

5 And at the evening offering I rose up from my fasting, and with my garment and my robe torn, I even fell on my knees and spread out my hands to YAHWEH my Elohim.

6 And I said, O my Elohim, I am ashamed and wounded to lift up my face to You, O my Elohim. For our iniquities have increased over our head, and our guiltiness has grown to the heavens.

7 Since the days of our fathers we have been in great guilt until this day. And for our iniquities we, our kings, our priests, have been delivered into the hand of the kings of the lands, to the sword, to captivity, and to plunder, and to shame of faces to this day.

8 And now, for a little time grace has been shown from YAHWEH our Elohim to leave us a remnant to escape, and to give us a nail in His holy place, so that our Elohim may

enlighten our eyes and give us a little reviving in our bondage.
9 For we were slaves, yet our Elohim has not left us in our bondage, but has given mercy to us in the sight of the kings of Persia, to give us a reviving, to raise up the house of our Elohim, and to make stand its ruins, and to give to us a wall in Judah and in Jerusalem.
10 And now, O our Elohim, what shall we say after this? For we have forsaken Your commandments
11 which You have commanded by Your servants the prophets, saying, The land into which you go, to possess it, it is an unclean land with the impurity of the people of the lands, with their abominations with which they have filled it, from mouth to mouth with their uncleanness.
12 And now do not give your daughters to their sons, and do not take their daughters to your sons, or seek their peace, or their wealth forever, so that you may be strong and eat the good of the land, and leave it for an inheritance to your sons forever.
13 And after all that has come on us for our evil deeds, and for our great guilt, since You our Elohim have held back the rod on our iniquities, and have given us such an escape as this,
14 shall we again turn back to break Your commandments and intermarry with the people of these abominations? Would You not be angry with us until You had destroyed us, until there is no remnant or survivor?
15 O YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, You are righteous. For we are left as a survivor, as it is this day. Behold, we are before You in our guilt, for none is able to stand before You because of this.

Chapter 10

1 And while Ezra was praying and making his confession, weeping and casting himself down before the house of The Elohim, a very great congregation of men and women and children gathered to him out of Israel. For the people wept with a great weeping.
2 And Shechaniah the son of Jehiel, of the sons of Elam, answered and said to Ezra, We have sinned against our Elohim, and have dwelt with foreign women from the peoples of the land. Yet now there is hope in Israel concerning this thing.
3 And now let us cut a covenant with our Elohim to put away and cause to leave all the women, and those born of them, according to the counsel of YAHWEH and of those who tremble at the commandment of our Elohim. And let it be done according to the Torah.
4 Rise up, for the matter is on you. We also will be with you. Be strong and act.
5 Then Ezra rose up and made the chief priests, the Levites, and all Israel to swear that they would do according to this word. And they swore.
6 Then Ezra rose up from before the house of The Elohim and went into the room of Johanan the son of Eliashib. And he went there, and he did not eat food, nor did he drink, for he mourned for the transgression of the exiles.
7 And they passed a call throughout Judah and Jerusalem to all the sons of the exile, to assemble at Jerusalem;
8 and that whoever would not come within three days according to the counsel of the leaders and the elders, all his property would be forfeited, and he would be excluded from the congregation of the exiles.
9 Then all the men of Judah and

Benjamin gathered to Jerusalem
within three days. It was the ninth
month, on the twentieth of the month.
And all the people sat in the plaza of
the house of The Elohim, trembling
because of the matter, and because of
the heavy rain.
10 And Ezra the priest stood up and
said to them, You have trespassed and
have dwelt with foreign women, to
increase the guilt of Israel.
11 And now make confession to
YAHWEH, Elohim of your fathers
and do His will. And separate
yourselves from the peoples of the
land and from the foreign women.
12 Then all the congregation
answered and said with a loud voice,
Right! According to your word it is on
us to do.
13 But the people are many, and it is
a time of heavy rain. And we are not
able to stand outside. And the work is
not of one or two days. For we have
greatly sinned in this thing.
14 Please let our rulers for all the
congregation stand, and let all those
who have dwelt with foreign women in
our cities come at a set time, and with
them the elders of every city, and its
judges, until the fierce wrath of our
Elohim for this matter has turned
from us.
15 Only Jonathan the son of Asahel,
and Jahaziah the son of Tikvah made a
stand against this. And Meshullam
and Shabbethai the Levite supported
them.
16 And the sons of the exile did so.
And Ezra the priest with men, heads of
the fathers, according to the house of
their fathers, and all of them by
names, were separated. And they sat
down in the first day of the tenth
month to examine the matter.
17 And they finished with all the men
who had dwelt with foreign women by
the first day of the first month.
18 And among the sons of the
priests, these were found who had
dwelt with foreign women: From the
sons of Yeshua the son of Jozadak and
his brothers: Maaseiah, and Eliezer,
and Jarib, and Gedaliah.
19 And they gave their hands that
they would put away their women.
And being guilty they offered a ram of
the flock for their sin.
20 And from the sons of Immer were
Hanani and Zebadiah.
21 And from the sons of Harim:
Maaseiah, and Elijah, and Shemaiah,
and Jehiel, and Uzziah.
22 And from the sons of Pashur:
Elioenai, Maaseiah, Ishmael,
Nethaneel, Jozabad, and Elasah.
23 Also from the Levites: Jozabad,
and Shimei, and Kelaiah (he was
Kelita), Pethahiah, Judah, and Eliezer.
24 From the singers also were
Eliashib; and from the gatekeepers,
Shallum, and Telem, and Uri.
25 And from Israel: From the sons of
Parosh: Ramiah, and Jeziah, and
Malchiah, and Miamin, and Eleazar,
and Malchijah, and Benaiah.
26 And from the sons of Elam:
Mattaniah, Zechariah, and Jehiel, and
Abdi, and Jeremoth, and Eliah.
27 And from the sons of Zattu:
Elioenai, Eliashib, Mattaniah and
Jeremoth, and Zabad, and Aziza.
28 And from the sons of Bebai:
Jehohanan, Hananiah, Zabbai, Athlai.
29 And from the sons of Bani:
Meshullam, Malluch, and Adaiah,
Jashub, and Sheal, Jeremoth.
30 And from the sons of Pahath-
Moab: Adna, and Chelal, Benaiah,
Maaseiah, Mattaniah, Bezaleel, and
Binnui, and Manasseh.
31 And from the sons of Harim:
Eliezer, Ishijah, Malchiah, Shemaiah,
Shimeon,
32 Benjamin, Malluch, and
Shemariah.

33 From the sons of Hashum:
Mattenai, Mattathah, Zabad, Eliphelet,
Jeremai, Manasseh, and Shimei.
34 From the sons of Bani: Maadai,
Amram, and Uel,
35 Benaiah, Bedeiah, Chelluh,
36 Vaniah, Meremoth, Eliashib,
37 Mattaniah, Mattenai, and Jaasau,
38 and Bani, and Binnui, Shimei,
39 and Shelemiah, Nathan, and
Adaiah,
40 Machnadebai, Shashai, Sharai,
41 Azareel, Shelemiah, Shemariah,
42 Shallum, Amariah, and Joseph.
43 From the sons of Nebo: Jeiel,
Mattithiah, Zabad, Zebina, Jadau, and
Joel, Benaiah.
44 All these had risen with foreign
women; and there were some of them
of the women, and gave them sons.

Book of Nehemiah

Chapter 1

1 The words of Nehemiah the son of
Hachaliah. And it happened in the
month Chisleu, in the twentieth year,
as I was in Shushan the palace,
2 Hanani came, one of my brothers,
he and men of Judah. And I asked
them about the Jews who had escaped,
who were left of the captivity, and
about Jerusalem.
3 And they said to me, the remnant
that are left of the captivity there in
the province are in great evil and
shame. The wall of Jerusalem also is
broken down, and its gates are burned
with fire.
4 And it happened, when I heard
these words, I sat down and wept, and
mourned for days, and fasted, and
prayed before the Elohim of Heaven.
5 And I said, I beseech You,
YAHWEH Elohim of Heaven, the
great and awesome El, keeping the
covenant and mercy to those loving
Him, and to keepers of His
commandments, *(Deut 7:9, Dan 9:4,
Rev 22:14)*
6 let Your ear now be open, and Your
eyes open, so that You may hear the
prayer of Your servant which I pray
before You today, day and night, for
Your servants the sons of Israel; and
confessing the sins of the sons of Israel
which we have sinned against You.
Both I and my father's house have
sinned.
7 Utterly we have acted wickedly
against You, and have not kept the
commandments and the statutes and
the judgments which You commanded
Your servant Moses.
8 I beseech You, remember the Word
that You commanded Your servant
Moses, saying, If you act unfaithfully, I
will scatter you among the peoples.
9 But if you will turn to Me and keep
My commandments, and do them,
though you were cast out to the
outermost part of the heavens, yet I
will gather them from there, and will
bring them to the place that I have
chosen, to set My name there.[1]
10 And these are Your servants and
Your people whom You have
redeemed by Your great power and by
Your strong hand.
11 O YAHWEH, I beg You, let Your
ear be open to the prayer of Your
servant, and to the prayer of Your
servants who delight to fear Your
name. And I beg You, bless Your
servant today and grant him mercy
before this man. For I was cupbearer
to the king.[2]

Chapter 2

1 And it happened in the month
Nisan, in the twentieth year of
Artaxerxes the king, that wine was
before him. And I took the wine and
gave to the king. And I had never been
sad to his face.
2 And the king said to me, Why is
your face sad, since you are not sick?
This is nothing but sorrow of heart.
Then I was very much afraid.
3 And I said to the king, let the king
live forever. Why should not my face
be sad when the place of my fathers'
tombs, the city, lies waste and its gates
are consumed with fire?
4 Then the king said to me, For what
do you ask? So I prayed to the Elohim
of Heaven,
5 and I said to the king, If it please
the king, and if your servant has found
favor in your sight, that you would

---

1 This is Jerusalem Yahweh's eternal capital.

2 Chapter 1 shows that Nehemiah knew as Ezra also did that disobedience to the Torah is what caused Israel's captivity and repentance and turning back to the Torah is what would bring them back to the Promised Land.

send me to Judah to the city of my fathers' tombs, so that I might build it.

6 And the king said to me, the queen also sitting beside him, For until when shall your journey be? And when will you return? So it pleased the king, and he sent me; and I set him a time.

7 And I said to the king, If it is good to the king, let letters be given me to the governors Beyond the River, so that they may let me go through until I come to Judah;

8 also a letter to Asaph the keeper of the king's forest, so that he may give me timber to make beams for the gates of the temple which is for the house, and for the city wall, and for the house into which I shall enter. And the king granted it to me, according to the good hand of my Elohim on me.

9 Then I came to the governors of the province Beyond the River, and gave them the king's letters. And the king had sent army commanders and horsemen with me.[1]

10 And Sanballat the Horonite and Tobiah the servant, the Ammonite, heard. And it grieved them greatly that a man had come to seek the good of the sons of Israel.

11 So I came to Jerusalem and was there three days.

12 And I rose up in the night, I and a few men with me. And I told no man what my Elohim had put in my heart to do at Jerusalem. And there was no animal with me except the animal that I rode on.

13 And I went out by night by the Valley Gate, even before the Jackal Fountain, and to the Dung Gate. And I examined the walls of Jerusalem which were broken down, and its gates which were burned with fire.

14 Then I passed on to the Fountain Gate, and to the King's Pool. But there was no place for the animal that was under me to pass.[2] *(Jer 39:8)*

15 Then I went up in the night by the torrent, and examined the wall, and turned back, and entered by the Valley Gate, and returned.[3]

16 And the rulers did not know where I had gone, or what I was doing. Nor had I told it yet to the Jews, or to the priests, or to the nobles, or to the rulers, or to the rest that did the work.

17 Then I said to them, You see the evil that we are in, how Jerusalem is wasted, and its gates are burned with fire. Come and let us build up the wall of Jerusalem, so that we may no longer be a reproach.

18 Then I told them of the hand of my Elohim which was good on me, and also the king's words that he had spoken to me. And they said, Let us rise up and build. So they made their hands strong for good.

19 But when Sanballat the Horonite, and Tobiah the servant, the Ammonite, and Geshem the Arabian, heard, then they mocked us and despised us. And they said, What is this that you are doing? Will you rebel against the king?

20 Then I answered them and said to them, The Elohim of Heaven, He will prosper us, and we, His servants, will arise and build. But you have no portion or right or memorial in Jerusalem.

Chapter 3

1 And Eliashib the high priest rose up with his brothers the priests. And they built the Sheep Gate. They sanctified it and made stand its doors.

---

1 These letters given to Nehemiah concerning Jerusalem form the decree of Daniel 9:25.

2 This is the result of Jer 39:8.

3 Verses 11-15- show that Nehemiah went around the city of David and the pool of Siloam.

Even to the Tower of Meah they
sanctified it, to the Tower of Hananeel.
2 And next to his hand the men of
Jericho built. And next to his hand
Zaccur the son of Imri built.
3 But the sons of Hassenaah built the
Fish Gate, who laid its beams, and
made stand its doors, its locks and its
bars.
4 And next to their hand Meremoth
the son of Urijah, the son of Koz made
strong. And next to their hand
Meshullam the son of Berechiah, the
son of Meshezabeel made strong. And
next to their hand Zadok the son of
Baana made strong.
5 And next to their hand the Tekoites
made strong. But their nobles did not
put their necks to the work of their
master.
6 And the Old Gate was made strong
by Jehoiada the son of Paseah, and
Meshullam the son of Besodeiah. They
laid its beams, and made stand its
doors, and its locks, and its bars.
7 And next to their hand Melatiah of
Gibeon made strong, and Jadon of
Meron, the men of Gibeon and of
Mizpah, to the throne of the governor
Beyond the River.
8 And next to his hand Uzziel the son
of Harhaiah, of the goldsmiths, made
strong. And next to his hand Hananiah
the son of one of the perfumers made
strong. And they left Jerusalem safe to
the Broad Wall.
9 And next to their hand Rephaiah
the son of Hur, the ruler of the half
part of Jerusalem, made strong.
10 And next to their hand Jedaiah
the son of Harumaph made strong,
even across from his house. And next
to his hand Hattush the son of
Hashabniah made strong.
11 Malchijah the son of Harim, and
Hashub the son of Pahath-Moab made
strong the other section, and the
Tower of the Furnaces.
12 And next to his hand Shallum the
son of Halohesh, the ruler of the half
part of Jerusalem, he and his
daughters made strong.
13 Hanun, and the dwellers of
Zanoah, made strong the Valley Gate.
They built it and made stand its doors,
its locks, and its bars, and a thousand
cubits on the wall to the Dung Gate.[1]
14 And the Dung Gate was made
strong by Malchiah the son of Rechab,
the ruler of part of Beth-Haccerem. He
built it, and made stand its doors, its
locks, and its bars.
15 And the Fountain Gate was made
strong by Shallun the son of Colhozeh,
the ruler of part of Mizpah. He built it
and covered it, and made stand its
doors, its locks, and its bars, and the
wall of the Pool of Shiloah by the
King's Garden, and to the stairs that
go down from the City of David.
16 After him Nehemiah the son of
Azbuk, the ruler of the half part of
Beth-Zur, made strong in front of the
Tombs of David, and to the pool that
was made, and to the house of the
mighty men.
17 After him the Levites, Rehum the
son of Bani made strong. On his hand
Hashabiah the ruler of the half part of
Keilah made strong in his part.
18 After him their brothers Bavai the
son of Henadad, the ruler of the half
part of Keilah, made strong.
19 And next to his hand Ezer the son
of Yeshua, the ruler of Mizpah, made
strong another section before the
going up to the armory at the corner.
20 After him Baruch the son of
Zabbai earnestly made strong the
other section from the corner to the

1 This is not the area of the modern Dung Gate today. The original Dung gate was near the entrance to the valley of Gehenna where the garbage used to be burned on the south western corner of the Kidron valley.

door of the house of Eliashib the high priest.

21 After him Meremoth the son of Urijah the son of Koz made strong another section, from the door of the house of Eliashib even to the end of the house of Eliashib.

22 And after him the priests, the men of the plain, made strong.

23 After them Benjamin and Hashub made strong across from their house. After them Azariah the son of Maaseiah the son of Ananiah made strong by his house.

24 After him Binnui the son of Henadad made strong another section, from the house of Azariah to the corner, even to the tower.

25 Palal the son of Uzai made strong across from the corner, and the tower which sticks out from the king's high house, that was by the court of the prison. After him Pedaiah the son of Parosh made strong.

26 And the temple-slaves lived in Ophel, across from the Water Gate toward the east, and the tower that sticks out.

27 After him the Tekoites made strong another section, opposite the great tower that sticks out, even to the wall of Ophel.

28 The priests made strong from above the Horse Gate, each before his house.

29 After them Zadok the son of Immer made strong across from his house. After him Shemaiah the son of Shechaniah, the keeper of the East Gate, strengthened.

30 After him Hananiah the son of Shelemiah, and Hanun the sixth son of Zalaph made strong another section. After him Meshullam the son of Berechiah made strong across from his room.

31 After him Malchiah the goldsmith's son made strong the place of the temple-slaves, and of the merchants, before the Miphkad Gate[1], and to the going up of the corner.

32 And between the going up of the corner to the Sheep Gate, the goldsmiths and the merchants made strong.

Chapter 4

1 And it happened, when Sanballat heard that we built the wall, he was angry, and it was greatly enraging to him, and he mocked the Jews.

2 And he spoke before his brothers and the army of Samaria and said, What are these feeble Jews doing? Will they fortify themselves? Will they sacrifice? Will they make an end in a day? Will they bring to life the stones out of the heaps of the rubbish which are burned?

3 And Tobiah the Ammonite was beside him, and he said, Even that which they build, if a fox goes up, he will even break down their stone wall.

4 O our Elohim, hear. For we are despised. And turn their curse on their own head, and give them for a prey in the land of captivity.

5 And do not cover their iniquity, and do not let their sin be blotted out from before You. For they have provoked You to anger before the builders.

6 So we built the wall, and all the wall was joined together to the half of it. For the people had a heart to work.

7 And it happened, when Sanballat and Tobiah, and the Arabians, and the Ammonites, and the Ashdodites, heard that repairing of the walls of Jerusalem had gone up, that the

[1] This gate on the eastern side of the sanctuary led across the Kidron Valley to the Miphkad Altar where the Red heifer was sacrificed.

breaks were being closed up, it was very angering to them.
8 And all of them conspired together to come and fight against Jerusalem, and do harm to it.
9 But we made our prayer to our Elohim, and set a watch against them day and night, because of them.
10 And Judah said, The strength of the load carriers is weakening, and there is much rubbish, so that we are not able to build the wall.
11 And our foes have said, They shall not know or see until we come in the middle of them and kill them, and cause the work to cease.
12 And it happened when the Jews who lived near them came in, they said to us ten times, From all places where you shall return, they will be against us.
13 So I stationed from the lowest parts of the place, from the back of the wall, in the higher places; even, I stationed the people according to their families, with their swords, their spears, and their bows.
14 And I saw. And I rose up and said to the nobles and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, Do not be afraid of them. Remember YAHWEH, who is great and fearful, and fight for your brothers, your sons, and your daughters, your wives, and your houses.
15 And it happened, when our enemies heard that it was known to us, and that The Elohim had broken their counsel, all of us returned to the wall, each one to his work.
16 And it happened, from that time on, half of my servants worked in the work, and the other half of them were holding the spears, the shields, and the bows, and the scale-armor. And the rulers were behind all the house of Judah,
17 the ones who built on the wall, and the ones who carried a load; bearing with one of his hands, a worker in the work, and one, a holder of the weapon.
18 For each man of the builders had his sword tied by his side, and built. And he who sounded the ram's horn was beside me.
19 And I said to the nobles and to the rulers, and to the rest of the people, The work is great and large, and we are separated on the wall, far from one another.
20 In whatever place you hear the sound of the ram's horn, gather there to us. Our Elohim will fight for us.
21 So we worked in the work. And half of them held the spears from the rising of the morning until the stars came out.
22 Likewise at the same time I said to the people, Let each man with his servant stay inside Jerusalem, so that in the night they may be a guard to us, and labor in the day.
23 So neither I, nor my brothers, nor my servants, nor the men of the guard who followed me, none of us put off our clothes, though each had his vessel of water.

Chapter 5

1 And there was a great cry of the people, and of their wives, against their brothers the Jews.
2 For some were saying, With our sons and our daughters, we are many. Let us take up grain for them, so that we may eat and live.
3 Some also were saying, We have mortgaged our fields, and our vineyards, and our houses; let us take up grain because of the famine.
4 And some were saying, We have borrowed silver for the king's tax, on our fields, and our vineyards,
5 yet now our flesh is like the flesh of

our brothers; as their sons, so are our
sons; and, behold, we are bringing our
sons and our daughters into bondage,
to be slaves; yea, there are some of our
daughters brought into bondage. And
there is no power for our hand, and
our fields and our vineyards are in the
possession of other men.
6 And when I heard their cry, and
these words, I was very angry.
7 Then my heart ruled within myself,
and I contended with the nobles and
the magistrates. And I said to them,
You are each man lending at interest,
from his brother. And I held a great
assembly against them.
8 And I said to them, According to
our ability we have redeemed our
brothers, the Jews who were sold to
the nations. And will you yet sell your
brothers? Or shall they be sold to us?
Then they were silent, and did not find
a word.
9 Also I said, The thing you do is not
good. Should you not walk in the fear
of our Elohim because of the reproach
of the nations, our enemies?
10 Likewise, my brothers and my
servants are lending them silver and
grain. Now let us leave off this interest.
11 Now even today give back to them
their lands, their vineyards, their olive
yards, and their houses; also the
hundredth part of their silver, and of
the grain, the wine, and the oil, that
you have taken from them.
12 And they said, We will restore,
and will ask nothing from them. So we
will do as you say. Then I called the
priests and took an oath from them
that they would do according to this
word.
13 Also I shook my lap, and I said, So
may The Elohim shake out every man
from his house and from his labor,
who does not lift up this thing; even
may he be shaken out this way and
emptied. And all the congregation
said, Amen, and praised YAHWEH.
And the people did according to this
thing.
14 And from the time that I was
chosen to be their governor in the land
of Judah, from the twentieth year even
to the thirty second year of Artaxerxes
the king, twelve years, I and my
brothers did not eat the bread of the
governor.
15 The former governors that had
been before me were too heavy on the
people, and had taken bread and wine
from them, besides forty shekels of
silver. Yes, even their servants bore
rule over the people. But I did not do
this, because of the fear of Elohim.
16 Yea, I also worked strongly in the
work of this wall, nor did we buy a
field. And all my servants were
gathered there to the work.
17 And at my table were a hundred
and fifty of the Jews and rulers,
besides those who came to us from
among the nations around us.
18 And that which was prepared for
me daily was one ox, six fat sheep.
Also birds were prepared for me; and
between ten days, in all of the wine
plentifully. And with this I did not seek
the bread of the governor, for the
bondage was heavy on this people.
19 Remember me for good, my
Elohim, according to all that I have
done for this people.

Chapter 6

1 And it happened, when it was
heard by Sanballat, and Tobiah, and
Geshem the Arabian, and to the rest of
our enemies, that I had built the wall,
and that no break was left in it though
at that time I had not set up doors on
the gates,
2 Sanballat and Geshem sent to me,
saying, Come, let us meet together in

the villages in the plain of Ono. But
they thought to do evil to me.
3 And I sent messengers to them,
saying, I am doing a great work, and I
cannot come down. Why should the
work cease while I leave it and come
down to you?
4 And they sent to me four times in
this way. And I answered them in the
same way.
5 Then Sanballat sent his servant to
me in the same way the fifth time with
an open letter in his hand, in which
was written,
6 It is reported among the nations,
and Gashmu says that you and the
Jews plan to rebel; for which reason
you are building the wall, so that you
may be a king to them, according to
these words.
7 And you have also set up prophets
to preach about you at Jerusalem,
saying, A king in Judah! And now it
shall be reported to the king according
to these words. Therefore, come now
and let us talk it over together.
8 And I sent to him, saying, These
things which you are saying are not
happening, for you pretend them out
of your own heart.
9 For they all made us fear, saying,
Their hands shall be weakened from
the work, and it will not be done. And
now, make my hands strong.
10 And I came to the house of
Shemaiah the son of Delaiah the son of
Mehetabeel, who was shut up. And he
said, Let us meet together in the house
of The Elohim, inside the sanctuary,
and let us shut the doors of the
sanctuary. For they will come to kill
you. Yea, in the night they will come to
kill you.
11 And I said, Should such a man as I
flee? And who being as I am would go
into the sanctuary and live? I will not
go in.
12 And I understood that, behold,
Elohim had not sent him. For he spoke
the prophecy against me, and Tobiah
and Sanballat had hired him.
13 So he was hired, that I should be
afraid, and do so, and I should sin, and
become for them for an evil name with
which they might reproach me.
14 O Elohim, remember Tobiah and
Sanballat according to these works of
theirs, and also to the prophetess
Noadiah, and the rest of the prophets
who are fear mongers of me.
15 So the wall was restored in the
twenty fifth of Elul, on the fifty second
day.[1] (*Neh 4:1-2)*
16 And it happened when all our
enemies heard, and all the nations
who were around us saw, they were
very much lowered in their own eyes.
For they saw that this work was done
by our Elohim.
17 And in those days the nobles of
Judah were increasing their letters
going to Tobiah, and those of Tobiah
came to them.
18 For many in Judah were sworn to
him because he was the son-in-law of
Shechaniah the son of Arah, and his
son Jehohanan had taken the daughter
of Meshullam the son of Berechiah.
19 Also they reported his good deeds
before me, and my words were going
to him. Tobiah sent letters to make me
afraid.

Chapter 7

1 And it happened when the wall was
built, I set up the doors, and the
gatekeepers and the singers and the
Levites were chosen.

[1] To finish the entire wall around the city in 52 days was an amazing feat and shows that the walls did not encompass the size that they are currently today. Although there are some remains from the time of King Herod much of the wall around Jerusalem today was built by Suleiman the Great in 1538.

2 I commanded that my brother Hanani, and Hananiah the ruler of the fortress be over Jerusalem. For he was as a man of truth and feared The Elohim above many.
3 And I said to them, Do not let the gates of Jerusalem be opened until the sun is hot. And while they are standing, let them shut and bar the doors. And make stand guards from the people of Jerusalem, each one in his watch, and each one to be across from his house.
4 And the city was wide on both hands, and great, but the people in it few, and the houses not being built. *(Neh 11:1)*
5 And my Elohim put into my heart to gather together the nobles, and the rulers, and the people, so that they might be counted by genealogy. And I found a register of genealogy of those who came up at the first. And I found written in it:
6 These are the sons of the province who went up of the exiles, of the captivity, whom Nebuchadnezzar the king of Babylon had removed. And they came again to Jerusalem and to Judah, each man to his city.
7 The ones coming with Zerubbabel: Yeshua, Nehemiah, Azariah, Raamiah, Nahamani, Mordecai, Bilshan, Mispereth, Bigvai, Nehum, Baanah. The number of the men of the people of Israel was:
8 The sons of Parosh were two thousand, one hundred and seventy two.
9 The sons of Shephatiah were three hundred and seventy two.
10 The sons of Arah were six hundred and fifty two.
11 The sons of Pahath-Moab, of the sons of Jeshua and Joab, were two thousand, eight hundred and eighteen.
12 The sons of Elam were a thousand, two hundred and fifty four.
13 The sons of Zattu were eight hundred and forty five.
14 The sons of Zaccai were seven hundred and sixty.
15 The sons of Binnui were six hundred and forty eight.
16 The sons of Bebai were six hundred and twenty eight.
17 The sons of Azgad were two thousand, three hundred and twenty two.
18 The sons of Adonikam were six hundred and sixty seven.
19 The sons of Bigvai were two thousand and sixty seven.
20 The sons of Adin were six hundred and fifty five.
21 The sons of Ater of Hezekiah were ninety eight.
22 The sons of Hashum were three hundred and twenty eight.
23 The sons of Bezai were three hundred and twenty four.
24 The sons of Hariph were a hundred and twelve.
25 The sons of Gibeon were ninety five.
26 The men of Bethlehem and Netophah were a hundred and eighty eight.
27 The men of Anathoth were a hundred and twenty eight.
28 The men of Beth-Azmaveth were forty two.
29 The men of Kirjathjearim, Chephirah, and Beeroth were seven hundred and forty three.
30 The men of Ramah and Gaba were six hundred and twenty one.
31 The men of Michmas were a hundred and twenty two.
32 The men of Bethel and Ai were a hundred and twenty three.
33 The men of the other Nebo were fifty two.
34 The sons of the other Elam were a thousand, two hundred and fifty four.

35 The sons of Harim were three
hundred and twenty.
36 The sons of Jericho were three
hundred and forty five.
37 The sons of Lod, Hadid, and Ono
were seven hundred and twenty one.
38 The sons of Senaah were three
thousand, nine hundred and thirty.
39 The priests: The sons of Jedaiah,
of the house of Jeshua: Nine hundred
and seventy three.
40 The sons of Immer were a
thousand and fifty two.
41 The sons of Pashur were a
thousand, two hundred and forty
seven.
42 The sons of Harim were a
thousand and seventeen.
43 The Levites: The sons of Jeshua,
of Kadmiel, and of the sons of
Hodevah, were seventy four.
44 The singers: The sons of Asaph
were a hundred and forty eight.
45 The gatekeepers: The sons of
Shallum, the sons of Ater, the sons of
Talmon, the sons of Akkub, the sons of
Hatita, the sons of Shobai were a
hundred and thirty eight.
46 The temple-slaves: The sons of
Ziha, the sons of Hashupha, the sons
of Tabbaoth,
47 the sons of Keros, the sons of Sia,
the sons of Padon,
48 the sons of Lebana, the sons of
Hagaba, the sons of Shalmai,
49 the sons of Hanan, the sons of
Giddel, the sons of Gahar,
50 the sons of Reaiah, the sons of
Rezin, the sons of Nekoda,
51 the sons of Gazzam, the sons of
Uzza, the sons of Paseah,
52 the sons of Besai, the sons of
Meunim, the sons of Nephishesim,
53 the sons of Bakbuk, the sons of
Hakupha, the sons of Harhur,
54 the sons of Bazlith, the sons of
Mehida, the sons of Harsha,
55 the sons of Barkos, the sons of
Sisera, the sons of Tamah,
56 the sons of Neziah, the sons of
Hatipha.
57 The sons of Solomon's servants,
the sons of Sotai, the sons of
Sophereth, the sons of Perida,
58 the sons of Jaala, the sons of
Darkon, the sons of Giddel,
59 the sons of Shephatiah, the sons
of Hattil, the sons of Pochereth of
Zebaim, the sons of Amon.
60 All the temple slaves and the sons
of Solomon's servants were three
hundred and ninety two.
61 And these were they who went up
from Tel-Melah, Tel-Haresha, Cherub,
Addon, and Immer. But they were not
able to manifest their father's house,
nor their seed, whether they were of
Israel:
62 The sons of Delaiah, the sons of
Tobiah, the sons of Nekoda, six
hundred and forty two;
63 and of the priests, the sons of
Habaiah, the sons of Koz, the sons of
Barzillai, who took one of the
daughters of Barzillai the Gileadite to
wife, and was called after their name.
64 These sought their register
among those who were reckoned by
genealogy, but it was not found. And
they were polluted from the
priesthood.
65 And the governor said to them
that they should not eat of the most
holy things until there stood up a
priest with Urim and Thummim.
66 All the congregation together was
forty thousand, three hundred and
sixty.
67 Besides the male slaves and their
slave-girls, these were seven thousand,
three hundred and thirty seven. And
they had two hundred and forty-five
singing men and singing women.
68 Their horses were seven hundred

and thirty six. Their mules were two hundred and forty five;

69 their camels, four hundred and thirty five; their donkeys, six thousand, seven hundred and twenty.

70 And some of the heads of the fathers gave to the work. The governor gave to the treasury a thousand darics of gold, fifty basins, five hundred and thirty priests' garments.

71 And some of the heads of the fathers gave to the treasury of the work twenty thousand drachmas of gold, and two thousand, two hundred pieces of silver.

72 And what the rest of the people gave was twenty thousand drachmas of gold, and two thousand pieces of silver, and sixty seven priests' garments.

73 So the priests, and the Levites, and the gatekeepers, and the singers, and some of the people, and the temple-slaves, and all Israel, lived in their cities. And when the seventh month came, the sons of Israel were in their cities.

Chapter 8

1 And all the people gathered as one man into the plaza of the sanctuary before the Water Gate.[1] And they spoke to Ezra the scribe to bring the Book of the Torah of Moses, which YAHWEH had commanded to Israel.

2 And Ezra the priest brought the Torah before the congregation, both of men and women, and all that could hear with understanding, on the first day of the seventh month.

3 And he read in it before the wide sanctuary plaza, before the Water Gate, from the morning until noon, before the men and the women, and those who could understand. And the ears of all the people listened to the Book of the Torah.[2]

4 And Ezra the scribe stood on a pulpit of wood which they had made for the purpose. And beside him stood Mattithiah, and Shema, and Anaiah, and Urijah, and Hilkiah, and Maaseiah, on his right hand; and on his left hand were Pedaiah, and Mishael, and Malchiah, and Hashum, and Hash-Badana, Zechariah, and Meshullam.

5 And Ezra opened the book to the eyes of all the people, for he was above all the people. And when he opened it, all the people stood up.

6 And Ezra blessed YAHWEH, the great Elohim. And all the people answered, Amen, Amen, lifting up their hands. And they bowed and worshiped to YAHWEH with their noses to the ground.[3]

7 And Yeshua, and Bani, and Sherebiah, Jamin, Akkub, Shabbethai, Hodijah, Maaseiah, Kelita, Azariah, Jozabad, Hanan, Pelaiah, and the Levites, caused the people to understand the Torah. And the people were in their place.

8 And they read aloud clearly in the Book, in the Torah of The Elohim, and they gave the sense, and caused them to discern the reading.

---

1 This gate was above the Gihon Spring in the city of David, Neh 12:37.

2 Ezra and Nehemiah knew that it was the breaking of the Torah that sent them into exile and they were determined now that they were back in the land to teach the people the Torah and to obey it. In doing so they actually put many fences around the Torah that later became known as the oral law.

3 The people knew that it was YAHWEH the only true Elohim who redeemed them back to the Promised Land. However, in not wanting to over use the name, later Judaism stopped using the name YAHWEH altogether and started calling the Creator *"Ha Shem*", which simply means "*The name* ".

9 And Nehemiah the governor, and
Ezra the priest, the scribe, and the
Levites who taught the people, said to
all the people, This day is holy to
YAHWEH your Elohim. Do not
mourn or weep, For all the people
wept when they heard the Words of
the Torah.
10 Then he said to them, Go eat the
fat, and drink of the sweet, and send
portions to him for whom nothing is
prepared. For this day is holy to our
Master. And do not be grieved for the
joy of YAHWEH, for He is your
fortress.
11 And the Levites were silencing all
the people, saying, Be quiet, for today
is holy, and do not be grieved.
12 And all the people went to eat,
and to drink, and to send portions,
and to make great rejoicing, because
they had understood the Words which
were made known to them.
13 And on the second day the chief of
the fathers of all the people, the
priests, and the Levites, were gathered
to Ezra the scribe even to intelligently
understand and draw near to the
Words of the Torah.
14 And they found written in the
Torah which YAHWEH had
commanded by Moses, that the sons of
Israel should dwell in booths in the
feast of the seventh month: *(Lev
23:34, 40-42)*
15 And that they should make heard
and cause to pass the call in all their
cities, and in Jerusalem, saying, Go
forth to the mountain and bring olive
leaves and wild olive leaves, and
myrtle leaves, and leaves of palm, and
leaves of thick trees, to make booths,
as it is written.
16 And the people went out and
brought in, and made booths for
themselves, each man on his roof and
in their courts, and in the courts of the
house of The Elohim, and in the plaza
of the Water Gate, and in the plaza of
the Ephraim Gate.
17 And all the congregation of those
who had come again out of the
captivity made Sukkoths, and sat
under the Sukkoths. For since the days
of Yahoshua the son of Nun until that
day, the sons of Israel had not done so.
And there was very great gladness.
18 Also day by day, from the first day
until the last day, he read in the Book
of the Torah of The Elohim. And they
performed the feast seven days, and on
the eighth day was an assembly
according to the Torah. *(Lev 23:36)*

Chapter 9

1 And on the twenty fourth day of
this month the sons of Israel were
gathered with fasting and with
sackcloth, and with earth on them.
2 And the seed of Israel separated
themselves from all the sons of aliens,
and they stood and confessed their
sins and the sins of their fathers.
3 And they stood up in their place
and read in the Book of the Torah of
YAHWEH their Elohim a fourth part
of the day. And a fourth part they
confessed and worshiped YAHWEH
their Elohim.
4 Then Yeshua, and Bani, Kadmiel,
Shebaniah, Bunni, Sherebiah, Bani
and Chenani, of the Levites stood on
the stairs and cried with a loud voice
to YAHWEH their Elohim.
5 Then the Levites, Yeshua, and
Kadmiel, Bani, Hashabniah,
Sherebiah, Hodijah, Shebaniah, and
Pethahiah said, Stand up! Bless
YAHWEH your Elohim forever and
ever. And blessed be the Name of Your

Glory, even He being exalted above all blessing and praise.[1]

6 All life comes from you, O YAHWEH; You are He, who has made the heavens, and Heaven of the heavens, and all their host; the earth and all which is on it; the seas, and all that is in them; and You preserve all of them alive. And the host of the heavens bows down to You.

7 You are YAHWEH, the Elohim who chose Abram, and brought him forth out of Ur of the Chaldees, and appointed his name, Abraham.

8 And You found his heart faithful before You, and cut with him the covenant to give the land of the Canaanite, the Hittite, the Amorite, and the Perizzite, and the Jebusite, and the Girgashite, to give it to his seed. And You have performed Your Words, for You are righteous. *(Gen 17:1-8)*

9 And You saw the affliction of our fathers in Egypt, and heard their cry by the Red Sea.

10 And You gave signs and wonders on Pharaoh, and on all his servants, and on all the people of the land. For You knew that they were seething against them. And You made a name for Yourself, as it is this day.

11 And You divided the Sea before them, so that they went through the midst of the Sea on the dry land. And their pursuers You threw into the depths, like a stone into the mighty waters. *(Ex 14:21, Rev 18:21)*

12 And You led them in the day by a cloudy pillar, and in the night by a pillar of fire, to give them light in the way in which they should go. *(Ex 14:19)*

13 And You came down on Mount Sinai and spoke with them from the heavens, and gave them the true Torah with right judgments and good statutes and commandments.

14 And You made Your holy Sabbath known to them, and You commanded commandments, statutes, and laws, to them by the hand of Your servant Moses.

15 And You gave them bread from the heavens for their hunger, and brought forth water for them out of the rock for their thirst. And You said to them that they should go in to possess the land which You raised Your hand to give them.

16 But they and our fathers were insolent, and hardened their necks, and did not listen to Your commandments. *(Eze 20:13, 21, Math 7:23)*

17 And they refused to hear, and did not remember Your wonders which You did among them. But they hardened their necks, and in their rebellion appointed a leader to return them to their bondage. But You are a Elohim ready to pardon, gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and did not forsake them.

18 Yea, when they had made a cast calf for themselves, and said, This is your Elohim who brought you up out of Egypt, and had worked great blasphemies, *(Ex 32:3-4)*

19 yet You in Your great mercies did not forsake them in the wilderness. The pillar of cloud did not depart from them by day to lead them in the way, nor the pillar of fire by night, to show them light, and the way in which they should go.

20 You also gave Your good Spirit to teach them, and did not withhold Your

[1] Verses 3-6 clearly show that the people would have thought it blasphemy to praise and glorify any other name but the true name of YAHWEH, (Ex 22:20).

manna from their mouth, and gave them water for their thirst.[1] *(Act 7:51)*

21 And forty years You sustained them in the wilderness. They lacked nothing; their clothes did not wear out, and their feet did not swell.

22 And You gave them kingdoms and peoples, and divided them into corners. And they possessed the land of Sihon, and the land of the king of Heshbon, and the land of Og king of Bashan.

23 You also multiplied their sons like the stars of the heavens and brought them into the land which You had promised to their fathers, that they should go in and possess it.

24 And the sons went in and possessed the land, and You humbled the people of the land before them, the Canaanites. And You gave them into their hands, with their kings and the people of the land, to do with them as they desired.

25 And they seized strong cities and a rich land, and occupied houses full of all goods, wells already dug, vineyards and oliveyards and fruit trees in abundance. And they ate, and were filled, and became fat, and lived luxuriously in Your great goodness.

26 But they were disobedient, and rebelled against You, and cast Your Torah behind their backs. And they killed Your prophets who testified against them, to turn them to You. And they worked great blasphemies.

27 And You gave them into the hand of their enemies, who distressed them. And in the time of their distress, they cried to You; and You heard from Heaven. And according to Your abundant mercies, You gave them deliverers, who saved them out of the hand of their enemies.

28 But after a rest to them, they turned to doing evil before You. And You left them in the hand of their enemies, and they ruled over them. But they came back and cried to You, and You heard them from Heaven, and You saved them according to Your mercies.

29 And You testified against them to bring them again to Your Torah, but they acted proudly, and did not listen to Your commandments, but were against Your judgments; they sinned in them, which if a man does, he shall live in them. And they gave a rebellious shoulder, and hardened their neck, and would not hear.[2]

30 But many years You had patience with them, and testified against them by Your Spirit, by Your prophets. Yet they would not give ear. And You gave them into the hand of the peoples of the lands.

31 But for Your great mercies, You did not consume nor forsake them; for You are a gracious and merciful Elohim.

32 And now our Elohim, the great, the mighty and the fearful Elohim, keeping the covenant and the mercy, let it not seem little before You, all the trouble which has found us, to our kings, to our rulers, and to our priests, and to our prophets, and to our fathers, and to all Your people, since the time of the kings of Assyria to this day.

33 And You are just as to all that came on us, for You have done right; but we have done evilly.

34 And our kings, our rulers, our priests, and our fathers have not kept Your Torah, nor attended to Your commandments and Your testimonies with which You testified against them.

35 And they have not served You in

---

[1] The Holy Spirit was available to ancient Israel but they refused it by their disobedience, Acts 7:51.

[2] One must adhere to obedience to the Torah for eternal life, Math 19:17.

their kingdom, and in Your great goodness which You gave to them, and in the large and rich land which You gave before them. And they did not turn from their evil works.
36 Behold, we are slaves today, even in the land that You gave to our fathers to eat its fruit and its good, behold, we are slaves in it.
37 And it yields much increase to the kings whom You have given to be over us because of our sinning. And they rule over our bodies, and over our cattle, at their pleasure; and we are in great distress.
38 And because of all this, we are cutting a sure covenant and writing it, and upon the sealing of it are our rulers, Levites, and the priests.[1]

Chapter 10

1 And the ones being sealed[2] were Nehemiah the governor, the son of Hachaliah, and Zidkijah,
2 Seraiah, Azariah, Jeremiah,
3 Pashur, Amariah, Malchijah,
4 Hattush, Shebaniah, Malluch,
5 Harim, Meremoth, Obadiah,
6 Daniel, Ginnethon, Baruch,
7 Meshullam, Abijah, Mijamin,
8 Maaziah, Bilgai, Shemaiah. These were the priests.
9 And the Levites were both Yeshua the son of Azaniah, Binnui, of the sons of Henadad, Kadmiel,
10 and their brothers, Shebaniah, Hodijah, Kelita, Pelaiah, Hanan,
11 Micha, Rehob, Hashabiah,
12 Zaccur, Sherebiah, Shebaniah,
13 Hodijah, Bani, Beninu.
14 The rulers of the people were Parosh, Pahath-Moab, Elam, Zatthu, Bani,
15 Bunni, Azgad, Bebai,
16 Adonijah, Bigvai, Adin,
17 Ater, Hizkijah, Azzur,
18 Hodijah, Hashum, Bezai,
19 Hariph, Anathoth, Nebai,
20 Magpiash, Meshullam, Hezir,
21 Meshezabeel, Zadok, Jaddua,
22 Pelatiah, Hanan, Anaiah,
23 Hoshea, Hananiah, Hashub,
24 Hallohesh, Pileha, Shobek,
25 Rehum, Hashabnah, Maaseiah,
26 and Ahijah, Hanan, Anan,
27 Malluch, Harim, Baanah.
28 And the rest of the people, the priests, the Levites, the gatekeepers, the singers, the temple-slaves, and all those who separated from the people of the lands to the Torah of The Elohim, their wives, their sons, and their daughters, all knowing and discerning ones,
29 making strong their brothers, their honored ones; and were entering into a curse[3] and into an oath, to walk in The Elohim's Torah which was given by Moses the servant of The Elohim, and to keep and to do all the commandments of YAHWEH our Master, and His judgments and His statutes.
30 And we swore that we would not give our daughters to the people of the land nor take their daughters for our sons.
31 And if the people of the land should bring goods or any food to sell

[1] The people were rededicating covenant relationship with Yahweh and they knew that the Torah was the very moral code and character of YHWH and was an integral part of the covenant and a fence of protection around the lives of the people.

[2] It is acceptance in the shed blood of Yahshua for forgiveness of sins that will seal a person and then the obedience to the Torah will keep one sealed. (Rev 7:3, Rev 14:12, Joh 6:27, Luk 6:46).

[3] The curse was disobedience to the Torah (Deut 27:26), and their inability to obey it. There are only blessings for obedience (Ps 19:7-11).

on the Sabbath, we would not take from them on the Sabbath, or on the holy day.[1] And they would forego the seventh year, and the interest of every hand.

32 Also, we made stand on ourselves, to charge ourselves yearly with the third part of a shekel for the service of the house of our Elohim,

33 for the showbread, and for the continual food offering, and for the continual burnt offering, of the Sabbaths, of the new moons, for the set feasts, and for the holy things, and for the sin offerings to make atonement for Israel, and all the work of the house of our Elohim.

34 And we made fall the lots among the priests, and the Levites, and the people, for the wood offering, to bring it into the house of our Elohim, according to the houses of our fathers, at times appointed year by year, to burn on the altar of YAHWEH our Elohim, as it is written in the Torah;

35 also to bring the first-fruits of our ground, and the first-fruits of all fruit of all trees, year by year, to the house of YAHWEH; *(Ex 23:19)*

36 also to bring the first-born of our sons, and of our cattle, as it is written in the Torah; and the firstlings of our herds and of our flocks to the house of our Elohim, to the priests who minister in the house of our Elohim.

37 And that we should bring the first-fruits of our dough, and our offerings, and the fruit of all kinds of trees, of wine, and of oil, to the priests, to the rooms of the house of our Elohim; and the tithes of our ground to the Levites; and they, the Levites, might have the tithes in all the cities we worked. *(Lev 23:17, Lev 27:30)*

38 And the priest, the son of Aaron, shall be with the Levites, tithing the Levites; and the Levites shall bring up the tithes of the tithes to the house of our Elohim to the rooms, into the treasure house. *(Deut 14:27-29)*

39 For the sons of Israel, and the sons of Levi, shall bring the offering of the grain, of the new wine, and the oil, to the rooms, and there shall be the vessels of the sanctuary, and the priests ministering, and the gate-keepers and the singers. And we will not forsake the house of our Elohim. *(Deut 14:23)*

Chapter 11

1 And the rulers of the people lived at Jerusalem. The rest of the people also cast lots, to bring one of the ten to live in Jerusalem, the holy city, and nine parts in other cities.

2 And the people blessed all the men who willingly offered themselves to live in Jerusalem.

3 And these are the rulers of the province who lived in Jerusalem; but in the cities of Judah, a man lived in his possession in their cities; Israel, the priests, and the Levites, and the temple-slaves, and the sons of Solomon's servants.

4 And in Jerusalem lived some of the sons of Judah, and of the sons of Benjamin. From the sons of Judah were Athaiah the son of Uzziah, the son of Zechariah, the son of Amariah, the son of Shephatiah, the son of Mahalaleel, of the sons of Perez;

5 and Maaseiah the son of Baruch, the son of Colhozeh, the son of Hazaiah, the son of Adaiah, the son of Jolarib, the son of Zechariah, the son of Shiloni.

6 All the sons of Perez who lived in Jerusalem were four hundred and sixty eight mighty men.

[1] There should be no buying or selling on the Sabbath or Holy Day, as the true believer is blessed to be free of the barter system of Babylon on these set apart days.

7 And these are the sons of Benjamin: Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Joed, the son of Pedaiah, the son of Kolaiah, the son of Maaseiah, the son of Ithiel, the son of Jesaiah.

8 And after him were Gabbai, Sallai, nine hundred and twenty eight.

9 And Joel the son of Zichri was their overseer. And Judah the son of Hassenaah was second over the city.

10 From the priests were Jedaiah the son of Joiarib, Jachin,

11 Seraiah the son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraiah, the son of Ahitub, the ruler of the house of Elohim.

12 And their brothers who did the work of the house were eight hundred and twenty two. And Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pelaliah, the son of Amzi, the son of Zechariah, the son of Pashur, the son of Malchiah,

13 and his brothers, rulers of the fathers, two hundred and forty two. And Amashai the son of Azareel, the son of Ahasai, the son of Meshillemoth, the son of Immer,

14 and their brothers, mighty men, were a hundred and twenty-eight. And their overseer was Zabdiel, a son of one of the great men.

15 Also from the Levites were Shemaiah the son of Hashub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Bunni.

16 And Shabbethai and Jozabad, of the rulers of the Levites, had the oversight of the outward work of the house of Elohim.

17 And Mattaniah the son of Micha, the son of Zabdi, the son of Asaph, was the leader of the beginning, he gave thanks with prayer. And Bakbukiah the second from his brothers, and Abda the son of Shammua, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun.

18 All the Levites in the holy city were two hundred and eighty four.

19 And the gatekeepers: Akkub, Talmon, and their brothers who kept the gates, a hundred and seventy two.

20 And the rest of Israel, of the priests, the Levites, were in all the cities of Judah, each one in his inheritance.

21 But the temple-slaves lived in Ophel; and Ziha and Gispa were over the temple-slaves.

22 And the overseer of the Levites at Jerusalem was Uzzi the son of Bani, the son of Hashabiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Micha. Of the sons of Asaph, the singers were over the work of the house of The Elohim.

23 For it was the king's command concerning them, that a certain portion should be for the singers, the matter of the day in his day.

24 And Pethahiah the son of Meshezabeel, of the sons of Zerah the son of Judah, was at the king's hand in all matters concerning the people.

25 And for the villages, with their fields some of the sons of Judah lived at Kirjath-Arba, and in its villages; and at Dibon, and in its villages; and at Jekabzeel, and its villages;

26 and at Yeshua, and at Moladah, and at Beth-Palet;

27 and at Hazar-Shual, and at Beer-Sheba, and its daughter-villages;

28 and at Ziklag; and at Mekonah, and in its daughter-villages;

29 and at Enrimmon; and at Zareah; and at Jarmuth;

30 Zanoah; Adullam, and their villages; at Lachish, and its fields; at Azekah, and its daughter-villages. And they camped from Beer-Sheba to the valley of Hinnom.

31 And the sons of Benjamin from Geba were at Michmash; and Aija; and Bethel, and their daughter-villages;

32 and at Anathoth; Nob; Ananiah;

33 Hazor; Ramah; Gittaim;
34 Hadid; Zeboim; Neballat;
35 Lod and Ono, the Valley of Craftsmen.
36 And of the Levites, the divisions of Judah were for Benjamin.

Chapter 12

1 And these are the priests and the Levites who went up with Zerubbabel the son of Shealtiel, and Jeshua: Seraiah, Jeremiah, Ezra,[1]
2 Amariah, Malluch, Hattush,
3 Shechaniah, Rehum, Meremoth,
4 Iddo, Ginnetho, Abijah,
5 Miamin, Maadiah, Bilgah,
6 Shemaiah, and Joiarib, Jedaiah,
7 Sallu, Amok, Hilkiah, Jedaiah. These were the rulers of the priests and their brothers in the days of Yeshua.
8 And the Levites were Yeshua, Binnui, Kadmiel, Sherebiah, Judah. Mattaniah was over the thanksgiving, he and his brothers.
9 And Bakbukiah and Unni, their brothers, were next to them in the watches.
10 And Jeshua fathered Joiakim, and Joiakim fathered Eliashib; and Eliashib fathered Joiada;
11 and Joiada fathered Jonathan; and Jonathan fathered Jaddua.
12 And in the days of Joiakim were priests, the rulers of the fathers, from the house of Seraiah was Meraiah; from Jeremiah was Hananiah;
13 from Ezra was Meshullam; from Amariah was Jehohanan;
14 from Melicu was Jonathan; from Shebaniah was Joseph;
15 from Harim was Adna; from Meraioth was Helkai;
16 from Iddo was Zechariah; from Ginnethon was Meshullam;
17 from Abijah was Zichri; from Miniamin, of Moadiah was Piltai;
18 from Bilgah was Shammua; from Shemaiah was Jehonathan;
19 and from Joiarib was Mattenai; from Jedaiah was Uzzi;
20 from Sallai was Kallai; from Amok was Eber;
21 from Hilkiah was Hashabiah; from Jedaiah was Nethaneel.
22 The Levites in the days of Eliashib, Joiada, and Johanan, and Jaddua, were written rulers of the fathers and the priests until the reign of Darius the Persian.
23 The sons of the Levites, the rulers of the fathers, are written in the Book of the Matters of the Days, even until the days of Johanan the son of Eliashib.
24 And the rulers of the Levites were Hashabiah, Sherebiah, and Yeshua the son of Kadmiel, with their brothers next to them, to praise, to give thanks according to the command of David the man of The Elohim, watch by watch.
25 Mattaniah, and Bakbukiah, Obadiah, Meshullam, Talmon, and Akkub were guards of the gates, the guard at the thresholds of the gates.
26 These were in the days of Joiakim the son of Yeshua, the son of Jozadak, and in the days of Nehemiah the governor, and of Ezra the priest, the scribe.
27 And at the dedication of the wall of Jerusalem, they sought the Levites out of all their places to bring them to Jerusalem, to keep the dedication with gladness, and with thanksgiving, and with singing, with cymbals, harps, and with lyres.
28 And the sons of the singers gathered themselves, both out of the plain country around Jerusalem, and from the villages of the inhabitants of Netophah,

---
[1] 1 Chron 3:17-19

29 and from the house of Gilgal, and out of the fields of Geba and Azmaveth (for the singers had built themselves villages all around Jerusalem).

30 And the priests and the Levites purified themselves. And they purified the people, and the gates, and the wall.

31 Then I brought up the rulers of Judah on the wall, and chose two great thanksgiving choirs. One went to the right on the wall toward the Dung Gate,

32 and after them went Hoshaiah, and half the rulers of Judah;

33 even Azariah, Ezra, and Meshullam,

34 Judah, and Benjamin, and Shemaiah, and Jeremiah;

35 and many of the priests' sons with trumpets, Zechariah the son of Jonathan, the son of Shemaiah, the son of Mattaniah, the son of Michaiah, the son of Zaccur, the son of Asaph,

36 and his brothers, Shemaiah, and Azareel, Milalai, Gilalai, Maai, Nethaneel, and Judah, Hanani, with the musical instruments of David the man of The Elohim. And Ezra the scribe was before them.

37 And at the Fountain Gate across from them, they went up by the stairs of the city of David, at the going up of the wall above the house of David, even to the Water Gate eastward.[1]

38 And the other thanksgiving choir was going to the opposite side, and I after them, and half of the people on the wall, from beyond the Tower of Furnaces, even to the Broad Wall;[2]

39 and from above the Ephraim Gate, and above the Old Gate, and above the Fish Gate, and the Tower of Hananeel, and the Tower of Meah, even to the Sheep Gate. And they stood still in the Prison Gate.

40 So the two thanksgiving choirs stood in the house of The Elohim, and I, and half of the rulers with me.

41 And the priests, Eliakim, Maaseiah, Miniamin, Michaiah, Elioenai, Zechariah and Hananiah were with trumpets.

42 And Maaseiah, and Shemaiah, and Eleazar, and Uzzi, and Jehohanan, and Malchijah, and Elam, and Ezer; and the singers sang aloud with Jezrahiah as their overseer.

43 And that day they offered great sacrifices, and rejoiced. For The Elohim had made them rejoice with great joy. And the wives, and the children rejoiced so that the joy of Jerusalem was heard even at a distance.

44 And at that day some were chosen over the rooms for the treasuries, for the offerings for the first-fruits, and for the tithes, to gather to them out of the fields of the cities the portions of the Torah for the priests and the Levites. For Judah rejoiced for the priests, and for the Levites who waited.

45 And both the singers and the gatekeepers kept the watch of their Elohim, and the watch of the cleansing, according to the command of David, of his son Solomon.

46 For in the past days of David and Asaph, there were heads of the singers, and songs of praise and thanksgiving to Elohim.

47 And all Israel gave the portions of the singers and the gatekeepers, everyday its portion, in the days of Zerubbabel, and in the days of Nehemiah. And they set the holy things apart for the Levites; and the

---

[1] Yahweh's sanctuary was clearly in the city of David, Neh 8:1, Neh 3:26.

[2] In ancient times during the Holy Days and special occasions the priests would proceed around in a circular procession in praise of Yahweh, who like a circle has no beginning and no end. A circular path like this was found at Gilgal.

Levites set them apart for the sons of
Aaron.

Chapter 13

1 On that day they read in the Book
of Moses in the ears of the people. And
it was found written in it that the
Ammonite and the Moabite should not
come into the congregation of The
Elohim forever,
2 because they did not meet the sons
of Israel with bread and water, but
hired Balaam against them to curse
them. But our Elohim turned the curse
to a blessing.
3 And it happened, when they had
heard the Torah, they separated all the
mixed multitude from Israel.
4 And before this, Eliashib the priest,
who was set over the rooms of the
house of our Elohim, who was related
to Tobiah,
5 (and he had prepared for himself a
large room and there before they were
giving the food offering, the
frankincense, and the vessels, and the
tithes of the grain, the new wine, and
the oil, which was commanded to be
given to the Levites, and the singers,
and the gatekeepers, and the offerings
of the priests).
6 But in all this time I was not at
Jerusalem. For in the thirty second
year of Artaxerxes the king of Babylon,
I came to the king. And after some
days I asked leave from the king.
7 And I came to Jerusalem, and
understood the evil which Eliashib did
for Tobiah, in preparing a room for
him in the courts of the house of The
Elohim.
8 And it was evil to me very much.
And I threw all the household stuff of
Tobiah out of the room.
9 Then I commanded, and they
purified the rooms. And I returned
there the vessels of the house of The
Elohim, with the food offering and the
frankincense.
10 And I was aware that the portions
of the Levites had not been given, for
the Levites and the singers who did the
work had each one fled to his field.
11 Then I contended with the rulers,
and said, Why is the house of The
Elohim forsaken? And I gathered them
and stood them in their place.
12 Then all Judah brought the tithe
of the grain, and the new wine, and the
oil, into the treasuries.
13 And I made treasurers over the
treasuries: Shelemiah the priest, and
Zadok the scribe, and of the Levites,
Pedaiah. And next to them was Hanan
the son of Zaccur, the son of
Mattaniah. For they were counted
faithful, and on them was the duty to
distribute to their brothers.
14 Remember me, O my Elohim,
concerning this, and do not wipe out
my good deeds which I have done for
the house of my Elohim, and in its
keeping.
15 In those days I saw in Judah ones
treading wine presses on the Sabbath,
and bringing in sheaves and loading
donkeys; and also wine, grapes, and
figs, and all burdens, which they
brought into Jerusalem on the
Sabbath day. And I testified against
them on the day they sold food.
16 Men of Tyre also lived in it, who
brought fish and all wares, and were
selling on the Sabbath to the sons of
Judah, even in Jerusalem.
17 And I contended with the nobles
of Judah and said to them, What is
this evil thing that you do, defiling the
Sabbath day?
18 Did not your fathers do this, and
did not our Elohim bring all this evil
on us and on this city? Yet you are
adding more wrath on Israel by
defiling the Sabbath.
19 And it happened, when the gates

of Jerusalem began to be shaded as the sun was setting, just before the Sabbath began, I commanded that the gates should be shut, and commanded that they should not be opened until after the Sabbath. And I stationed some of my servants at the gates, so that there should be no merchandise brought in on the Sabbath day.

20 And the merchants and sellers of all the wares stayed the night outside Jerusalem once or twice.

21 Then I testified against them and said to them, Why are you staying around the wall? If you do it again, I will send a hand against you. From that time they did not come on the Sabbath.[1]

22 And I said to the Levites that they should be cleansing themselves, and they should come guarding the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day. O my Elohim, remember me for this also and spare me according to the greatness of Your mercy.

23 In those days I also saw Jews who had dwelt with women from Ashdod, Ammon and Moab.

24 And their children spoke half in the speech of Ashdod, and to them there was no respecting to speak the Jewish language, but according to the language of each people.[2]

25 And I contended with them, and put a curse on them, and struck some of them, and I plucked their hair. And I made them swear by the name of Elohim, saying, You shall not give your daughter to their sons, nor take their daughters to your sons, or for yourselves.

26 Did not Solomon king of Israel sin by these things? Yet among many nations there was no king like him, who was beloved by his Elohim; and Elohim made him king over Israel. But women from other lands caused even him to sin. *(1Kg 11:1-2)*

27 Shall we then listen to you, to do this great evil, to sin against our Elohim in living with foreign women?

28 And one of the sons of Joiada, the son of Eliashib the high priest, was son-in-law to Sanballat the Horonite. And I chased him from me.

29 Remember them, O my Elohim, because they have defiled the priesthood, and the covenant of the priesthood and of the Levites.

30 And I cleansed them from all aliens, and appointed watches to the priests and the Levites, each one in his work,

31 and for the wood offering, at appointed times, and for the first-fruits. Remember me, O my Elohim, for good!

---

[1] Verses 15-21- These verses clearly show that no buying or selling or normal bartering should be taking place on the Sabbath day and Nehemiah was even threatening to physically harm them if they came with their wares on the Sabbath again. Today you have many preachers selling their wares and false doctrines on the Sabbath day and even selling DVD's, books and other material on the Sabbath day, which is a direct violation of the commandment.

[2] As YHWH in the end time is calling back Israel to the Promise Land the people should be training their children in speaking the restored Hebrew language, instead of the languages of the nations that they are coming from.

Book of 1 Chronicles

Chapter 1

1 Adam, Seth, Enos,
2 Cainan, Mahalaleel, Jared,
3 Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech,
4 Noah, Shem, Ham, and Japheth.
5 The sons of Japheth: Gomer, and
Magog, and Madai, and Javan, and
Tubal, and Meshech, and Tiras.
6 And the sons of Gomer were
Ashchenaz, and Riphath, and
Togarmah.
7 And the sons of Javan: Elishah,
and Tarshish, Kittim, and Dodanim.
8 The sons of Ham: Cush, and
Mizraim, Put, and Canaan,
9 and the sons of Cush: Seba, and
Havilah, and Sabta, and Raamah and
Sabtecha. And the sons of Raamah:
Sheba and Dedan.
10 And Cush fathered Nimrod: he
began to be mighty on the earth.
11 And Mizraim fathered Ludim, and
Anamim, and Lehabim, and
Naphtuhim,
12 and Pathrusim, and Casluhim,
from whom came the Philistines and
the Caphthorim.
13 And Canaan fathered Zidon his
first-born, and Heth,
14 the Jebusite also, and the
Amorite, and the Girgashite,
15 and the Hivite, and the Arkite,
and the Sinite,
16 and the Arvadite, and the
Zemarite, and the Hamathite.
17 The sons of Shem were Elam, and
Asshur, and Arphaxad, and Lud, and
Aram, and Uz, and Hul, and Gether,
and Meshech.
18 And Arphaxad fathered Shelah,
and Shelah fathered Eber.
19 And to Eber were born two sons.
The name of the one was Peleg,
because in his days the earth was
divided; and his brother's name was
Joktan.
20 And Joktan fathered Almodad,
and Sheleph, and Hazar-Maveth, and
Jerah,
21 and Hadoram, and Uzal, and
Diklah,
22 and Ebal, and Abimael, and
Sheba,
23 and Ophir, and Havilah, and
Jobab. All these were the sons of
Joktan.
24 Shem, Arphaxad, Shelah,
25 Eber, Peleg, Reu,
26 Serug, Nahor, Terah,
27 Abram (he was Abraham).
28 The sons of Abraham: Isaac and
Ishmael.
29 These are their generations. The
first-born of Ishmael was Nebaioth,
then Kedar, and Adbeel, and Mibsam,
30 Mishma, and Dumah, Massa,
Hadad, and Tema,
31 Jetur, Naphish, and Kedemah.
These are they, the sons of Ishmael.
32 And the sons of Keturah,
Abraham's concubine: she bore
Zimran, and Jokshan, and Medan, and
Midian, and Ishbak, and Shuah. And
the sons of Jokshan were Sheba and
Dedan.
33 And the sons of Midian: Ephah
and Epher, and Henoch, and Abida,
and Eldaah. All these are the sons of
Keturah.
34 And Abraham fathered Isaac. The
sons of Isaac were Esau and Israel.
35 The sons of Esau: Eliphaz, Reuel,
and Jeush, and Jaalam, and Korah.
36 The sons of Eliphaz: Teman, and
Omar, Zephi, and Gatam; Kenaz, and
Timna, and Amalek.
37 The sons of Reuel: Nahath, Zerah,
Shammah, and Mizzah.
38 And the sons of Seir: Lotan, and
Shobal, and Zibeon, and Anah, and
Dishon, and Ezer, and Dishan.
39 And the sons of Lotan: Hori and
Homam. And Timna was Lotan's
sister.
40 The sons of Shobal: Alian and

Manahath, and Ebal, Shephi, and Onam. And the sons of Zibeon: Aiah and Anah.
41 The son of Anah was Dishon. And the sons of Dishon: Amram, and Eshban and Ithran, and Cheran.
42 The sons of Ezer: Bilhan and Zaavan and Jakan. The sons of Dishan: Uz and Aran.
43 Now these are the kings who reigned in the land of Edom before any kings reigned over the sons of Israel: Bela the son of Beor, and his city's name: Dinhabah.
44 And Bela died; and Jobab the son of Zerah reigned in his place from Bozrah.
45 And Jobab died; and Husham of the land of the Temanites reigned in his place.
46 And Husham died; and Hadad the son of Bedad reigned in his place, who struck Midian in the field of Moab; and the name of his city was Avith.
47 And Hadad died; and Samlah from Masrekah reigned in his place.
48 And Samlah died; and Shaul from Rehoboth by the river reigned in his place.
49 And Shaul died, and Baal-Hanan, the son of Achbor, reigned in his place.
50 And Baal-Hanan died; and Hadad reigned in his place; and his city's name, Pai, and his wife's name, Mehetabel the daughter of Matred, the daughter of Mezahab.
51 And Hadad died; and the chiefs of Edom: chief Timnah, chief Aliah, chief Jetheth,
52 chief Aholibamah, chief Elah, chief Pinon,
53 chief Kenaz, chief Teman, chief Mibzar,
54 chief Magdiel, chief Iram. These are the princes of Edom.

Chapter 2

1 These are the sons of Israel: Reuben, Simeon, Levi, and Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun,
2 Dan, Joseph, and Benjamin, Naphtali, Gad and Asher.
3 The sons of Judah: Er, and Onan, and Shelah. These three were born to him from the daughter of Shua the Canaanitess. And Er, the first-born of Judah, was evil in the sight of YAHWEH, and He killed him.
4 And Tamar his daughter-in-law bore him Pharez and Zerah. All Judah's sons were five.
5 The sons of Pharez: Hezron and Hamul.
6 And the sons of Zerah: Zimri, and Ethan, and Heman, and Calcol, and Dara; all of them were five.
7 And the sons of Carmi: Achan, the troubler of Israel, who sinned in the cursed thing.
8 And the son of Ethan was Azariah.
9 And the sons of Hezron, who were born to him, were Jerahmeel, and Ram, and Chelubai.
10 And Ram fathered Amminadab; and Amminadab fathered Nahshon, chief of the sons of Judah.
11 And Nahshon fathered Salma, and Salma fathered Boaz,
12 and Boaz fathered Obed, and Obed fathered Jesse.
13 And Jesse fathered his first-born Eliab, and Abinadab the second, and Shimea the third,
14 Nethaneel the fourth, and Raddai the fifth,
15 Ozem the sixth, David the seventh.
16 Their sisters: Zeruiah and Abigail. And the sons of Zeruiah were Abishai, and Joab and Asahel, three.
17 And Abigail bore Amasa: And the father of Amasa was Jether the Ishmaelite. *(2 Sam 17:25)*

18 And Caleb the son of Hezron
fathered sons by his wife Azubah, and
by Jerioth; and these are her sons:
Jesher, and Shobab and Ardon.
19 And Azubah died; and Caleb took
to himself Ephrath, and she bore to
him Hur.
20 And Hur fathered Uri, and Uri
fathered Bezaleel.
21 And afterward Hezron went in to
the daughter of Machir the father of
Gilead, and he took her when he was a
son of sixty years. And she bore him
Segub.
22 And Segub fathered Jair, who had
twenty three cities in the land of
Gilead.
23 And he took Geshur and Aram
with the towns of Jair from them, with
Kenath and its towns, sixty cities. All
these belonged to the sons of Machir,
the father of Gilead.
24 And after the death of Hezron in
Caleb-Ephratah, then Abiah, Hezron's
wife bore to him Ashur the father of
Tekoa.
25 And the sons of Jerahmeel the
first-born of Hezron: Ram the first-
born, and Bunah, and Oren, and
Ozem, Ahijah.
26 Jerahmeel also had another wife
and her name was Atarah. She was the
mother of Onam.
27 And the sons of Ram, the
firstborn of Jerahmeel: Maaz, and
Jamin, and Eker.
28 And the sons of Onam: Shammai
and Jada. And the sons of Shammai:
Nadab and Abishur.
29 And the name of Abishur's wife
was Abihail; and she bore to him
Ahban and Molid.
30 And Nadab's sons: Seled and
Appaim. But Seled died without sons.
31 And the son of Appaim was Ishi.
And the son of Ishi was Sheshan. And
the son of Sheshan: Ahlai.
32 And the sons of Jada the brother
of Shammai: Jether and Jonathan;
and Jether died without sons.
33 And the sons of Jonathan: Peleth
and Zaza. These were the sons of
Jerahmeel.
34 And Sheshan had no sons, but
daughters. And Sheshan had an
Egyptian servant, and his name was
Jarha.
35 And Sheshan gave his daughter to
his servant Jarha for a wife, and she
bore him Attai.
36 And Attai fathered Nathan, and
Nathan fathered Zabad.
37 And Zabad fathered Ephlal, and
Ephlal fathered Obed.
38 And Obed fathered Jehu, and
Jehu fathered Azariah.
39 And Azariah fathered Helez, and
Helez fathered Eleasah.
40 And Eleasah fathered Sisamai
and Sisamai fathered Shallum.
41 And Shallum fathered Jekamiah,
and Jekamiah fathered Elishama.
42 And the sons of Caleb the brother
of Jerahmeel were his first-born
Mesha, who was the father of Ziph;
and the sons of Mareshah the father of
Hebron.
43 And the sons of Hebron: Korah,
and Tappuah, and Rekem, and Shema.
44 And Shema fathered Raham, the
father of Jorkoam. And Rekem
fathered Shammai.
45 And the son of Shammai was
Maon; and Maon was the father of
Beth-Zur.
46 And Ephah, Caleb's concubine,
bore Haran, and Moza, and Gazez.
And Haran fathered Gazez.
47 And the sons of Jahdai: Regem,
and Jotham, and Geshan, and Pelet,
and Ephah, and Shaaph.
48 Caleb's concubine Maachah bore
Sheber and Tirhanah.
49 She also bore Shaaph the father
of Madmannah, Sheva the father of

Machbenah, and the father of Gibea. And Caleb's daughter was Achsah.
50 These were the sons of Caleb the son of Hur: the first-born of Ephratah was Shobal, the father of Kirjath-Jearim;
51 Salma the father of Bethlehem; Hareph the father of Beth-Gader.
52 And Shobal the father of Kirjath-Jearim had sons: Haroeh, and half of the Manahethites.
53 And the families of Kirjath-Jearim were the Ithrites, and the Puhites, and the Shumathites, and the Mishraites. From them came the Zareathites, and the Eshtaulites.
54 The sons of Salma: Bethlehem, and the Netophathites, Ataroth, the house of Joab; and half the Manahethites; the Zorites.
55 And the families of the scribes who lived at Jabez: the Tirathites; the Shimeathites; the Suchathites. These are the Kenites who came from Hemath, the father of the house of Rechab.

Chapter 3

1 And these were the sons of David who were born to him in Hebron: the first-born, Amnon, born to Ahinoam the Jezreelitess; the second, Daniel, to Abigail of Carmel;
2 the third, Absalom, the son of Maachah, the daughter of Talmai, king of Geshur; the fourth, Adonijah the son of Haggith;
3 the fifth, Shephatiah, to Abital. The sixth, Ithream, to his wife Eglah.
4 These six were born to him in Hebron. And he reigned there seven years and six months. And he reigned in Jerusalem thirty three years.
5 And these were born to him in Jerusalem: Shimea, and Shobab, and Nathan, and Solomon, four to Bathsheba the daughter of Ammiel;
6 also Ibhar, and Elishama, and Eliphelet;
7 also Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia;
8 and Elishama, and Eliada, and Eliphelet, nine.
9 These were all the sons of David, besides the sons of the concubines, and Tamar their sister.
10 And Solomon's son was Rehoboam; Abijah his son; Asa his son; Jehoshaphat his son;
11 Joram his son; Ahaziah his son; Joash his son;
12 Amaziah his son; Azariah his son; Jotham his son;
13 Ahaz his son; Hezekiah his son; Manasseh his son;
14 Amon his son; Josiah his son.
15 And the sons of Josiah were the first-born Johanan; the second, Jehoiakim; the third, Zedekiah; the fourth, Shallum.
16 And the sons of Jehoiakim were his son Jeconiah, and his son Zedekiah.
17 And the sons of Jeconiah were Assir, and Shealtiel his son,
18 and Malchiram, and Pedaiah, and Shenazar, Jecamiah, Hoshama, and Nedabiah.
19 And the sons of Pedaiah: Zerubbabel and Shimei. And the sons of Zerubbabel: Meshullam and Hananiah, and their sister Shelomith;
20 and Hashubah, and Ohel, and Berechiah, and Hasadiah, Jushabhesed, five.
21 And the sons of Hananiah: Pelatiah and Jesaiah; the sons of Rephaiah, the sons of Arnan, the sons of Obadiah, the sons of Shechaniah.
22 And the sons of Shechaniah: Shemaiah. And the sons of Shemaiah: Hattush, and Igeal, and Bariah, and Neariah, and Shaphat, six.
23 And the sons of Neariah:

Elioenai, and Hezekiah, and Azrikam, three.
24 And the sons of Elioenai: Hodaiah, and Eliashib, and Pelaiah, and Akkub, and Johanan, and Dalaiah, and Anani, seven.

Chapter 4

1 The sons of Judah were Pharez, Hezron, and Carmi, and Hur, and Shobal.
2 And Reaiah the son of Shobal fathered Jahath. And Jahath fathered Ahumai, and Lahad. These are the families of the Zorathites.
3 And these were of the father of Etam: Jezreel, and Ishma, and Idbash; and their sister's name was Hazelelponi;
4 and Penuel the father of Gedor; and Ezer the father of Hushah; these are the sons of Hur, the first-born of Ephratah, the father of Bethlehem.
5 And Ashur the father of Tekoa had two wives, Helah and Naarah.
6 And Naarah bore to him Ahuzam, and Hepher, and Temeni, and Haahashtari. These were the sons of Naarah.
7 And the sons of Helah: Zereth, and Jezoar, and Ethnan.
8 And Coz fathered Anub, and Zobebah, and the families of Aharhel, the son of Harum.[1]
9 And Jabez was more honorable than his brothers. And his mother called his name Jabez, saying, Because I bore with sorrow.
10 And Jabez called to the Elohim of Israel, saying, If indeed You would bless me, and make my border larger, and Your hand would be with me, and that You would keep me from evil so that it may not grieve me! And Elohim gave him what he asked.
11 And Chelub the brother of Shuah fathered Mahir; he was the father of Eshton.
12 And Eshton fathered Beth-Rapha, and Paseah, and Tehinnah the father of Irnahash. These are the men of Rechah.
13 And the sons of Kenaz: Othniel and Seraiah. And the son of Othniel was Hathath.
14 And Meonothai fathered Ophrah. And Seraiah fathered Joab, the father of the Valley of the Craftsmen; for they were craftsmen.
15 And the sons of Caleb the son of Jephunneh: Iru, Elah, and Naam. And Elah's son was Kenaz.
16 And the sons of Jehaleleel were Ziph and Ziphah; Tiria and Asareel.
17 And the sons of Ezra: Jether, and Mered, and Epher, and Jalon. And she conceived Miriam, and Shammai, and Ishbah, Eshtemoa's father.
18 And his wife Jehudijah bore Jered the father of Gedor, and Heber the father of Socho, and Jekuthiel the father of Zanoah. And these are the sons of Bithiah the daughter of Pharaoh[2], whom Mered took.
19 And the sons of his wife were Hodiah the sister of Naham, the father of Keilah the Garmite, and Eshtemoa the Maachathite.
20 And the sons of Shimon were Amnon, and Rinnah, Benhanan, and Tilon. And the sons of Ishi: Zoheth and Benzoheth.
21 The sons of Shelah the son of Judah: Er, the father of Lecah; and Laadah the father of Mareshah; and the families of the house of those who worked fine linen, from the house of Ashbea;
22 and Jokim; and the men of Chozeba; and Joash, and Saraph; who

[1] The Septuagint has at the end of verse 8 for Jabez "and the progeny of the brother of Rechab, the son of Jarin" showing Jabez was from the Tribe of the Rechabites.

[2] Bithiah was Moses stepmother.

ruled over Moab; and Jashubilehem.
And these are ancient things.
23 These were the potters, and those
who lived among plants and hedges.
They lived there with the king for his
work.
24 The sons of Simeon: Nemuel, and
Jamin, Jarib, Zerah, Shaul;
25 Shallum was his son; Mibsam, his
son; Mishma, his son.
26 And the sons of Mishma: Hamuel
his son; Zacchur, his son; Shimei, his
son.
27 And Shimei had sixteen sons and
six daughters. But his brothers did not
have many sons, nor did all their
family multiply like the sons of Judah.
28 And they lived at Beer-Sheba,
and Moladah, and Hazar-Shual,
29 and at Bilhah, and at Ezem, and
at Tolad,
30 and at Bethuel, and at Hormah,
and at Ziklag,
31 and at Beth-Marcaboth, and at
Hazar-Susim, and at Beth-Birei, and at
Shaaraim. These were their cities until
the reign of David.
32 And their villages were Etam, and
Ain, Rimmon, and Tochen, and Ashan,
five cities.
33 And all their villages were all
around these cities, to Baal. This is
their family line and their dwellings,
34 and Meshobab; and Jamlech; and
Joshah, the son of Amaziah;
35 and Joel; and Jehu the son of
Josibiah, the son of Seraiah, the son of
Asiel;
36 and Elioenai; and Jaakobah; and
Jeshohaiah; and Asaiah; and Adiel;
and Jesimiel; and Benaiah;
37 and Ziza the son of Shiphi, the
son of Allon, the son of Jedaiah, the
son of Shimri, the son of Shemaiah;
38 these going by name were rulers
in their families. And the house of
their fathers increased to a multitude.
39 And they went to the entrance of
Gedor, to the east side of the valley to
look for pasture for their flocks.
40 And they found pasture, fertile
and good, for the land was wide, and
quiet, and peaceable; for those of Ham
who lived there were of old.
41 And these written by name came
in the days of Hezekiah king of Judah,
and struck their tents, and the homes
found there, and completely destroyed
them until this day. And they lived in
their places, because there was pasture
there for their flocks.
42 And some of them, five hundred
men of the sons of Simeon, went to
Mount Seir. And they had as their
commanders, Pelatiah, and Neariah,
and Rephaiah, and Uzziel, the son of
Ishi.
43 And they struck the rest which
escaped to Amalek, and lived there
until this day.

Chapter 5

1 And the sons of Reuben the
firstborn of Israel (for he was the
firstborn; but since he defiled his
father's bed, his birthright was given
to the sons of Joseph, the son of Israel;
and the genealogy is not to be counted
according to the birthright;
2 for Judah prevailed among his
brothers, and the chief ruler comes
from him, but the birthright belongs to
Joseph);[1]
3 the sons of Reuben the firstborn of
Israel: Hanoch, and Pallu, Hezron,
and Carmi.
4 The sons of Joel: Shemaiah, his
son; Gog, his son; Shimei, his son;

[1] Verses 1-2- There were 2 great promise blessings in Yahweh's covenant relationship. One was the birthright in which the firstborn had predominance and double blessing (Deut 21:17), and the second was the scepter, which was where the kingly line would come from.

5 Micah, his son; Reaiah, his son;
Baal, his son;
6 Beerah, his son, whom Tilgath-
Pilneser king of Assyria exiled. He was
ruler of the men of Reuben.
7 And his brothers by their families,
in the genealogy of their generations:
Jeiel the chief; also Zechariah;
8 and Bela, the son of Azaz, the son
of Shema, the son of Joel, who lived in
Aroer, even to Nebo and Baal-Meon.
9 And he lived as far to the east as to
the entrance of the wilderness from
the Euphrates River, because their
cattle were multiplied in the land of
Gilead.
10 And in the days of Saul they made
war with the Hagarites, and they fell
by their hand. And they lived in their
tents, to all the face of the east of
Gilead.
11 And the sons of Gad lived across
from them, in the land of Bashan, to
Salchah:
12 Joel the chief; and Shapham, the
next; and Jaanai; and Shaphat in
Bashan.
13 And their brothers from the house
of their fathers were Michael, and
Meshullam, and Sheba, and Jorai, and
Jachan, and Zia, and Heber, seven.
14 These are the sons of Abihail, the
son of Huri, the son of Jaroah, the son
of Gilead, the son of Michael, the son
of Jeshishai, the son of Jahdo, the son
of Buz;
15 Ahi, the son of Abdiel, the son of
Guni, chief of the house of their
fathers.
16 And they lived in Gilead in
Bashan, and in her daughter-villages,
and in all the open lands of Sharon, on
their borders.
17 All these were enrolled by
genealogy in the days of King Jotham
of Judah, and in the days of Jeroboam
king of Israel.
18 The sons of Reuben, and the sons
of Gad, and half the tribe of Manasseh,
even sons of valor, men lifting up
shield and sword, and shooting with
bow, and skillful in war were forty four
thousand, seven hundred and sixty,
going out to war.
19 And they made war with the
Hagarites, and Jetur, and Nephish,
and Nodab.
20 And they were helped against
them. And the Hagarites were given
into their hand, and all who were with
them. For they cried to Elohim in the
battle, and He was entreated for them,
because they trusted in Him.
21 And they took away their
livestock: their camels, fifty thousand;
and sheep, two hundred and fifty
thousand; and donkeys, two thousand;
and souls of men, a hundred thousand.
22 For many fell down slain, because
the war was of Elohim. And they lived
in their places until the exile.
23 And the sons of the half tribe of
Manasseh lived in the land. They
increased from Bashan to Baal-
Hermon, and Senir, and Mount
Hermon.
24 And these were the heads of the
house of their fathers, even Epher, and
Ishi, and Eliel, and Azriel, and
Jeremiah, and Hodaviah, and Jahdiel,
mighty men of war, famous men,
heads of their fathers' house.
25 And they sinned against the
Elohim of their fathers, and went
lusting after the gods of the people of
the land, whom Elohim destroyed
before them.
26 And the Elohim of Israel stirred
up the spirit of Pul king of Assyria, and
the spirit of Tilgath-Pilneser, king of
Assyria, and he exiled them; even the
Reubenites; and the Gadites; and the
half tribe of Manasseh. And he
brought them to Halah, and Habor,
and Hara, and to the Gozan River, to
this day.

Chapter 6

1 The sons of Levi were Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.
2 And the sons of Kohath: Amram, Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel.
3 And Amram's sons: Aaron and Moses; also Miriam. And the sons of Aaron: Nadab, and Abihu, Eleazar, and Ithamar.
4 Eleazar fathered Phinehas; Phinehas fathered Abishua;
5 and Abishua fathered Bukki; and Bukki fathered Uzzi;
6 and Uzzi fathered Zerahiah; and Zerahiah fathered Meraioth;
7 Meraioth fathered Amariah; and Amariah fathered Ahitub;
8 and Ahitub fathered Zadok; and Zadok fathered Ahimaaz;
9 and Ahimaaz fathered Azariah; and Azariah fathered Johanan;
10 and Johanan fathered Azariah, he who acted in the priest's office in the temple that Solomon built in Jerusalem.
11 And Azariah fathered Amariah; and Amariah fathered Ahitub;
12 and Ahitub fathered Zadok; and Zadok fathered Shallum;
13 and Shallum fathered Hilkiah; and Hilkiah fathered Azariah;
14 and Azariah fathered Seraiah; and Seraiah fathered Jehozadak;
15 and Jehozadak went away when YAHWEH exiled Judah and Jerusalem by the hand of Nebuchadnezzar.
16 The sons of Levi: Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.
17 And these are the names of the sons of Gershon: Libni and Shimei.
18 And the sons of Kohath: Amram, and Izhar, and Hebron, and Uzziel.
19 The sons of Merari: Mahli and Mushi. And these are the families of the Levites according to their fathers:
20 to Gershon: his son Libni; Jahath, his son; Zimmah, his son;
21 Joah, his son; Iddo, his son; Zerah, his son; Jeaterai, his son.
22 The sons of Kohath: his son Amminadab; Korah, his son; Assir, his son;
23 Elkanah, his son; Ebiasaph, his son; and Assir, his son;
24 Tahath, his son; Uriel, his son; Uzziah, his son; Shaul, his son.
25 And the sons of Elkanah: Amasai and Ahimoth.
26 Elkanah; the sons of Elkanah: Zophai, his son; and Nahath, his son;
27 Eliab, his son; Jeroham, his son; Elkanah, his son.
28 And the sons of Samuel: Joel, the firstborn; and the second, even Abijah.
29 The sons of Merari were Mahli; Libni, his son; Shimei, his son; Uzza, his son;
30 Shimea, his son; Haggiah, his son; Asaiah, his son.
31 And these are they whom David set over the service of song in the house of YAHWEH, after the ark had rested.
32 And they ministered with singing before the resting place of the tabernacle of the congregation, until Solomon had built the house of YAHWEH in Jerusalem. And they waited on their office according to their ordinance.
33 And these are those who stood, and their sons: Of the sons of the Kohathites, Heman, a singer, the son of Joel, the son of Samuel,
34 the son of Elkanah, the son of Jeroham, the son of Eliel, the son of Toah,
35 the son of Zuph, the son of Elkanah, the son of Mahath, the son of Amasai,
36 the son of Elkanah, the son of Joel, the son of Azariah, the son of Zephaniah,

37 the son of Tahath, the son of
Assir, the son of Ebiasaph, the son of
Korah,
38 the son of Izhar, the son of
Kohath, the son of Levi, the son of
Israel.
39 And his kinsman Asaph who
stood on his right hand: Asaph, the
son of Berachiah, the son of Shimea,
40 the son of Michael, the son of
Baaseiah, the son of Malchiah,
41 the son of Ethni, the son of Zerah,
the son of Adaiah,
42 the son of Ethan, the son of
Zimmah, the son of Shimei,
43 the son of Jahath, the son of
Gershom, the son of Levi.
44 And their brothers, the sons of
Merari stood on the left: Ethan, the
son of Kishi, the son of Abdi, the son
of Malluch,
45 the son of Hashabiah, the son of
Amaziah, the son of Hilkiah,
46 the son of Amzi, the son of Bani,
the son of Shemer,
47 the son of Mahli, the son of
Mushi, the son of Merari, the son of
Levi.
48 Also their brothers, the Levites,
were appointed for every service of the
tabernacle of the house of The Elohim.
49 But Aaron and his sons offered
on the altar of burnt offering, and on
the altar of incense, for all the work of
the Most Holy Place, and to make
atonement for Israel, according to all
that Moses the servant of Elohim had
commanded.
50 And these were the sons of
Aaron: Eleazar, his son; Phinehas, his
son; Abishua, his son;
51 Bukki, his son; Uzzi, his son;
Zerahiah, his son;
52 Meraioth, his son; Amariah, his
son; Ahitub, his son;
53 Zadok, his son; Ahimaaz, his son.
54 And these are their dwelling
places by their camps, within their
borders, of the sons of Aaron, of the
families of the Kohathites, for the lot
was theirs.
55 And they gave them Hebron in
the land of Judah, and its open lands
all around it.
56 But the fields of the city, and its
villages, they gave to Caleb the son of
Jephunneh.
57 And to the sons of Aaron, they
gave the cities of refuge: Hebron, and
Libnah and its open lands; and Jattir,
and Eshtemoa and its open lands;
58 and Hilen and its open lands;
Debir and its open lands;
59 and Ashan and its open lands;
and Beth-Shemesh and its open lands.
60 And out of the tribe of Benjamin
was Geba and its open lands; and
Alemeth and its open lands; and
Anathoth and its open lands. All their
cities in their families were thirteen
cities.
61 And to the sons of Kohath, left of
the family of that tribe, ten cities out of
the half tribe, the half of Manasseh by
lot.
62 And to the sons of Gershom for
their families: Out of the tribe of
Issachar, and out of the tribe of Asher,
and out of the tribe of Naphtali, and
out of the tribe of Manasseh in
Bashan, thirteen cities.
63 To the sons of Merari by the lot,
for their families: out of the tribe of
Reuben, and out of the tribe of Gad,
and out of the tribe of Zebulun, twelve
cities.
64 And the sons of Israel gave the
cities to the Levites, and their open
lands.
65 And they gave by the lot these
cities which they call by their names:
out of the tribe of the sons of Judah,
and out of the tribe of the sons of
Simeon, and out of the tribe of the
sons of Benjamin.
66 And some of the families of the

sons of Kohath had cities of their
borders out of the tribe of Ephraim.
67 And they gave to them for cities of
refuge: Shechem in Mount Ephraim
and its open lands; and Gezer and its
open lands;
68 and Jokmeam and its open lands;
and Beth-Horon and its open lands;
69 and Aijalon and its open lands;
and Gathrimmon and its open lands.
70 And out of the half tribe of
Manasseh: Aner and its open lands;
and Bileam and its open lands for the
family of the rest of the sons of
Kohath.
71 To the sons of Gershom: out of
the family of the half tribe of
Manasseh, Golan in Bashan and its
open lands; and Ashtaroth and its
open lands.
72 And out of the tribe of Issachar,
Kedesh and its open lands; Daberath
and its open lands;
73 and Ramoth and its open lands;
and Anem and its open lands.
74 And out of the tribe of Asher,
Mashal and its open lands; and Abdon
and its open lands;
75 and Hukok and its open lands;
and Rehob and its open lands.
76 And out of the tribe of Naphtali,
Kedesh in Galilee and its open lands;
and Hammon and its open lands; and
Kirjath-Aim and its open lands.
77 To the rest of the sons of Merari:
out of the tribe of Zebulun, Rimmon
and its open lands; Tabor and its open
lands.
78 And beyond Jordan, by Jericho,
on the east of the Jordan: out of the
tribe of Reuben, Bezer in the
wilderness, and its open lands; and
Jahzah and its open lands;
79 and Kedemoth and its open
lands; and Mephaath and its open
lands.
80 And out of the tribe of Gad:
Ramoth in Gilead and its open lands;
and Mahanaim and its open lands;
81 and Heshbon and its open lands;
and Jazer and its open lands.

Chapter 7

1 And to the sons of Issachar were
Tola, and Puah, and Jashub, and
Shimron, four.
2 And the sons of Tola: Uzzi, and
Rephaiah, and Jeriel, and Jahmai, and
Jibsam, and Shemuel, heads of their
father's house, these to Tola, great
men of might to their generations.
Their number in the days of David was
twenty two thousand, six hundred.
3 And the sons of Uzzi: Izrahiah, the
sons of Izrahiah: Michael, and
Obadiah, and Joel, Ishiah; all five of
them chiefs.
4 And with them, by their
generations, according to their fathers'
house, were bands of soldiers for war,
thirty six thousand; for they multiplied
wives and sons.
5 And their brothers among all the
families of Issachar were mighty men
of war, being in all, by their
genealogies, eighty seven thousand.
6 Of Benjamin: Bela and Becher, and
Jediael, three.
7 And the sons of Bela: Ezbon, and
Uzzi, and Uzziel, and Jerimoth, and
Iri, five; heads of their fathers' house,
mighty warriors; and their genealogy,
twenty two thousand, and thirty four.
8 And the sons of Becher: Zemira,
and Joash, and Eliezer, and Elioenai,
and Omri, and Jerimoth, and Abiah,
and Anathoth, and Alameth. All these
are the sons of Becher.
9 And their genealogy, by their
generations, heads of their fathers'
house, mighty warriors, twenty
thousand and two hundred.
10 And the sons of Jediael: Bilhan.
And the sons of Bilhan: Jeush, and

Benjamin, and Ehud, and Chenaanah,
and Zethan, and Tarshish, and
Ahishahar;
11 all these are sons of Jediael, even
heads of their fathers, mighty
warriors, seventeen thousand and two
hundred going out to war for battle.
12 And Shuppim and Huppim, the
sons of Ir; Hushim the son of Aner.
13 The sons of Naphtali: Jahziel, and
Guni, and Jezer, and Shallum, the
sons of Bilhah.
14 The sons of Manasseh: Ashriel,
the child born to his Syrian concubine
with Machir the father of Gilead.
15 And Machir took a wife for
Huppim and for Shuppim; and the
name of his sister was Maachah; and
the name of the second was
Zelophehad. And Zelophehad had
daughters.
16 And Maachah the wife of Machir
bore a son, and she called his name
Peresh. And the name of his brother
was Sheresh; and his sons were Ulam
and Rakem.
17 And the sons of Ulam: Bedan.
These were the sons of Gilead the son
of Machir, the son of Manasseh.
18 And his sister Hammoleketh bore
Ishod, and Abiezer, and Mahalah.
19 And the sons of Shemida: Ahian,
and Shechem, and Likhi, and Aniam.
20 And the sons of Ephraim:
Shuthelah, and Bered, his son, and
Tahath, his son, and Eladah, his son;
and Tahath, his son;
21 and Zabad, his son; and
Shuthelah, his son; and Ezer, and
Elead, and the men of Gath, natives in
the land, killed them, because they
came down to take away their cattle.
22 And their father Ephraim
mourned many days, and his brothers
came to comfort him.
23 And he went in to his wife. And
she conceived and bore a son. And he
called his name Beriah, because his
house was in evil.
24 And his daughter was Sherah;
and she built Beth-Horon the lower
and the upper, and Uzzensherah.
25 And Rephah was his son; also
Resheph, and Telah, his son; and
Tahan, his son;
26 Laadan, his son; Ammihud, his
son; Elishama, his son;
27 Non, his son; Yahoshua, his son.
28 And their possessions and
dwelling places: Bethel and its towns;
and eastward to Naaran; and
westward to Gezer and its towns; and
Shechem and its towns; to Gaza and
its towns.
29 And by the borders of the sons of
Manasseh: Beth-Shean and its towns;
Taanach and its towns; Megiddo and
its towns; Dor and its towns. In these
lived the sons of Joseph, the son of
Israel.
30 The sons of Asher: Imnah, and
Ishuah, and Ishuai, and Beriah, and
Serah their sister.
31 And the sons of Beriah: Heber
and Malchiel; he is the father of
Birzavith.
32 And Heber fathered Japhlet, and
Shomer, and Hotham, and Shua their
sister.
33 And the sons of Japhlet: Pasach,
and Bimhal, and Ashvath; these are
the sons of Japhlet.
34 And the sons of Shamer: Ahi, and
Rohgah, Jehubbah, and Aram.
35 And the sons of his brother
Helem: Zophah, and Imna, and
Shelesh, and Amal.
36 The sons of Zophah: Suah, and
Harnepher, and Shual, and Beri, and
Imrah,
37 Bezer, and Hod, and Shamma,
and Shilshah, and Ithran, and Beera.
38 And the sons of Jether:
Jephunneh and Pispah, and Ara.

39 And the sons of Ulla: Arah, Haniel, and Rezia.
40 All these were the sons of Asher, heads of their fathers' house, choice, mighty warriors, heads of the rulers. And their enrollment in the warfare in the battle, their number was twenty six thousand men.

Chapter 8

1 And Benjamin fathered his firstborn, Bela; Ashbel, the second; and Aharah, the third;
2 Nohah, the fourth; and Rapha, the fifth.
3 And sons were born to Bela: Addar, and Gera, and Abihud,
4 and Abishua, and Naaman, and Ahoah,
5 and Gera, and Shephuphan, and Huram.
6 And these are the sons of Ehud; these are they, the heads of the fathers to the dwellers of Geba; and they exiled them to Manahath.
7 And Naaman, and Ahiah, and Gera, he exiled them. And Ehud fathered Uzza and Ahihud.
8 And Shaharaim fathered sons in the country of Moab after he had sent them away. Hushim and Baara were his wives.
9 And by his wife Hodesh were Jobab, and Zibia, and Mesha, and Malcham,
10 and Jeuz, and Shachia, and Mirma. These were his sons, heads of the fathers.
11 And by Hushim, he had Abitub, and Elpaal.
12 The sons of Elpaal: Eber, and Misham, and Shamed, who built Ono and Lod, with their towns.
13 And Beriah and Shema were heads of the fathers to the dwellers of Aijalon, who drove away the dwellers of Gath;
14 and Ahio, Shashak, and Jeremoth,
15 and Zebadiah, and Arad, and Ader,
16 and Michael, and Ispah, and Joha, the sons of Beriah,
17 and Zebadiah, and Meshullam, and Hezeki, and Heber,
18 and Ishmerai, and Jezliah, and Jobab, the sons of Elpaal;
19 and Jakim, and Zichri, and Zabdi,
20 and Elienai, and Zilthai, and Eliel,
21 and Adaiah, and Beraiah, and Shimrath, the sons of Shimhi,
22 and Ishpan, and Eber, and Eliel,
23 and Abdon, and Zichri, and Hanan,
24 and Hananiah, and Elam, and Antothijah,
25 and Iphedeiah, and Penuel, the sons of Shashak;
26 and Shamsherai, and Shehariah, and Athaliah,
27 and Jaresiah, and Eliah, and Zichri, the sons of Jeroham.
28 These were heads of the fathers, by their generations, chiefs. These lived in Jerusalem.
29 And the father of Gibeon lived at Gibeon, whose wife's name was Maachah.
30 And his first-born son was Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Nadab,
31 and Gedor, and Ahio, and Zacher.
32 And Mikloth fathered Shimeah. And these also lived with their brothers in Jerusalem, across from them.
33 And Ner fathered Kish, and Kish fathered Saul. And Saul fathered Jonathan, and Malchishua, and Abinadab, and Eshbaal.
34 And the son of Jonathan was Meribbaal. And Meribbaal fathered Micah.

35 And the sons of Micah: Pithon, and Melech, and Tarea, and Ahaz.
36 And Ahaz fathered Jehoadah. And Jehoadah fathered Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri. And Zimri fathered Moza.
37 And Moza fathered Binea; Rapha was his son; Eleasah, his son; Azel, his son.
38 And to Azel were born six sons, and these are their names: Azrikam, Bocheru, and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan. All these were the sons of Azel.
39 And the sons of Eshek his brother: his first-born Ulam; Jeush, the second; and Eliphelet, the third.
40 And the sons of Ulam were mighty men, treaders of the bow, and had many sons, and grandsons, a hundred and fifty. All these were the sons of Benjamin.

Chapter 9

1 So all Israel enrolled themselves. And, behold, they were written in the Book of the Kings of Israel. And Judah was exiled to Babylon for their transgressions.
2 And the first dwellers who lived in their possessions in their cities were the Israelites, the priests, Levites, and the temple slaves. *(Ez 6:21)*
3 And in Jerusalem lived of the sons of Judah, and of the sons of Benjamin, and of the sons of Ephraim and Manasseh: *(2 Chron 10:1)*
4 Uthai, the son of Ammihud, the son of Omri, the son of Imri, the son of Bani, the sons of Pharez, the son of Judah.
5 And of the Shilonites, Asaiah the first-born and his sons.
6 And of the sons of Zerah: Jeuel and their brothers, six hundred and ninety.
7 And of the sons of Benjamin: Sallu the son of Meshullam, the son of Hodaviah, the son of Hasenuah,
8 and Ibneiah the son of Jeroham; and Elah the son of Uzzi, the son of Michri; and Meshullam the son of Shephatiah, the son of Reuel, the son of Ibnijah;
9 and their brothers, according to their generations, nine hundred and fifty six. All these men were the heads of the fathers to their fathers' house.
10 And the priests, Jedaiah, and Jehoiarib, and Jachin,
11 and Azariah the son of Hilkiah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Zadok, the son of Meraioth, the son of Ahitub, the ruler of the house of Elohim;
12 and Adaiah the son of Jeroham, the son of Pashur, the son of Malchijah; and Maasiai the son of Adiel, the son of Jahzerah, the son of Meshullam, the son of Meshillemith, the son of Immer;
13 and their brothers, heads to their fathers' house, seventeen hundred and sixty, very able men for the work of the service of the house of Elohim.
14 And of the Levites: Shemaiah the son of Hashub, the son of Azrikam, the son of Hashabiah, of the sons of Merari;
15 and Bakbakkar, Heresh, and Galal, and Mattaniah the son of Micah, the son of Zichri, the son of Asaph;
16 and Obadiah the son of Shemaiah, the son of Galal, the son of Jeduthun; and Berechiah the son of Asa, the son of Elkanah, who lived in the villages of the Netophathites.
17 And the gatekeepers were Shallum, and Akkub, and Talmon, and Ahiman, and their brothers; Shallum being the head.
18 And until they were at the king's gate eastward; they were gatekeepers in the companies of the sons of Levi.
19 And Shallum the son of Kore, the

son of Ebiasaph, the son of Korah, and his brothers, of his father's house, the Korahites, were over the work of the service, keepers of the gates of the tabernacle. And their fathers were over the camp of YAHWEH, keepers of the entry.
20 And Phinehas the son of Eleazar was ruler over them in time past, and YAHWEH was with him.
21 Zechariah of Meshelemiah was gatekeeper at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.
22 All these who were chosen for gatekeepers in the gates were two hundred and twelve. They were in their villages, by their genealogy; they whom David and Samuel the seer had appointed in their faithfulness.
23 And they and their sons were over the gates of the house of YAHWEH, even of the house of the tabernacle, by watches.
24 The gatekeepers were to the four winds: east, west, north, and south.
25 And their brothers in their villages were to come in for seven days from time to time with them.
26 For they were in faithfulness, the four chiefs of the gatekeepers; they were Levites and were over the rooms, and over the treasuries of the house of Elohim.
27 And they lived around the house of Elohim, for the watch duty was on them; and they were to open it morning by morning.
28 And certain of them were over the vessels of service, for they brought them by number; and they took them out by number.
29 And certain of them were appointed over the vessels, even over all the vessels of the sanctuary, and over the fine flour, and the wine, and the oil, and the frankincense, and the spices.
30 And certain of the sons of the priests blended the mixture for spices.
31 And Mattithiah of the Levites (he is the first-born to Shallum the Korahite) was first over the work of the pans.
32 And others of the sons of the Kohathites, from among their brothers, were over the Bread of Arrangement, to prepare Sabbath by Sabbath.
33 And these are the singers, heads of fathers to the Levites in the chambers; they were free for they were employed day and night in the work.
34 These heads of the fathers of the Levites were heads throughout their generation; these lived at Jerusalem.
35 And in Gibeon lived the father of Gibeon, Jeiel. And his wife's name was Maachah;
36 and his first-born son was Abdon, and Zur, and Kish, and Baal, and Ner, and Nadab,
37 and Gedor, and Ahio, and Zechariah, and Mikloth.
38 And Mikloth fathered Shimeam; and they also lived with their brothers in Jerusalem, across from their brothers.
39 And Ner fathered Kish, and Kish fathered Saul, and Saul fathered Jonathan, and Malchishua, and Abinadab, and Eshbaal.
40 And the son of Jonathan was Meribbaal; and Meribbaal fathered Micah.
41 And the sons of Micah: Pithon, and Melech, and Tahrea,
42 and Ahaz fathered Jarah, and Jarah fathered Alemeth, and Azmaveth, and Zimri; and Zimri fathered Moza;
43 and Moza fathered Binea; and Rephaiah was his son; Eleasah, his son; Azel, his son.
44 And to Azel were six sons, and these their names: Azrikam, Bocheru,

and Ishmael, and Sheariah, and Obadiah, and Hanan. These were the sons of Azel.

Chapter 10

1 And the Philistines fought with Israel. And the men of Israel fled from the face of the Philistines, and fell wounded in Mount Gilboa.
2 And the Philistines pursued Saul and his sons; and the Philistines struck Jonathan, and Abinadab, and Malchishua, the sons of Saul.
3 And the battle was heavy on Saul, and the archers found him with the bow; and he was wounded by the archers.
4 And Saul said to his armor-bearer, Draw your sword and pierce me with it, that these uncircumcised ones not come and abuse me. And the armor-bearer was not willing, for he exceedingly feared. And Saul took the sword and fell on it.
5 And the armor-bearer saw that Saul was dead, and he also fell on the sword and died.
6 And Saul and his three sons died, and all his house; they died together.
7 And all the men of Israel in the valley saw that they had fled, and that Saul and his sons had died. And they forsook their cities and ran away. And the Philistines came and lived in them.
8 And it happened on the next day, the Philistines came to strip those pierced. And they found Saul and his sons fallen in Mount Gilboa.
9 And they stripped him, and carried his head and his weapons, and sent into the land of the Philistines all around to proclaim the news to their idols and the people.
10 And they put his weapons in the house of their gods; and they fastened his skull in the house of Dagon.
11 And all Jabesh-Gilead heard of all that the Philistines had done to Saul.
12 And all the valiant men arose and carried away Saul's body, and the bodies of his sons, and brought them to Jabesh. And they buried their bones under the oak in Jabesh; and fasted seven days.
13 And Saul died because of his trespass that he trespassed against YAHWEH, against the Word of YAHWEH that he did not keep, and also for asking of a medium, to inquire;
14 and did not inquire of YAHWEH. And He caused him to die, and turned the kingdom to David the son of Jesse.

Chapter 11

1 And all Israel gathered to David, to Hebron, saying, Behold, we are your bone and your flesh.
2 And also in time past, even when Saul was king, you were he that led out and brought in Israel. And YAHWEH your Elohim said to you, You shall feed My people Israel, and you shall be ruler over My people Israel.
3 And all the elders of Israel came in to the king at Hebron. And David cut a covenant with them in Hebron before YAHWEH. And they anointed David as king over Israel, according to the Word of YAHWEH, by the hand of Samuel.
4 And David and all Israel went to Jerusalem (it is Jebus) and the Jebusites the ones living in the land, were there. *(2 Sam 5:6-7)*
5 And the ones living in Jebus said to David, You shall not come in here. But David captured the fortress of Zion; it is the city of David.[1]
6 And David said, Whoever strikes

[1] Mount Zion where the sanctuary of YHWH dwelt was the City of David.

the Jebusites first shall become head
and commander. And Joab the son of
Zeruiah went up first and became
head.
7 And David lived in the fortress; on
this account they called it the City of
David.
8 And he built the city all around,
from Millo even all around. And Joab
restored the rest of the city.
9 And David was going on and
increasing, for YAHWEH of Hosts
was with him.
10 And these were the heads of the
mighty men who were to David,
making themselves strong with him in
his kingdom, with all Israel, to cause
him to reign over Israel, according to
the Word of YAHWEH.
11 And this is the number of the
mighty men who were to David:
Jashobeam the son of a Hachmonite,
the head of the thirty; he lifted up his
spear against three hundred, killing
them at one time.
12 And after him was Eleazar the son
of Dodo, the Ahohite; he was among
the three mighty ones;
13 he was with David in
Pasdammim, and the Philistines had
gathered there to battle; and a portion
of the field was full of barley, and the
people had fled from before the
Philistines;
14 and they set themselves in the
midst of that portion, and delivered it,
and struck the Philistines, and
YAHWEH saved by a great
deliverance.
15 And three of the thirty heads went
down to the rock to David, to the cave
of Adullam. And the army of the
Philistines was pitched in the Valley of
the Giants.
16 And David was then in the
stronghold, and the command post of
the Philistines was then in Bethlehem.
17 And David longed, and said, Who
shall give me drink, water from the
well of Bethlehem that is by the gate?
18 And the three broke through the
army of the Philistines, and drew
water out of the well of Bethlehem at
the gate, and took it and brought to
David. But David was not willing to
drink it, and poured it out to
YAHWEH,
19 and said, Far be it from me by my
Elohim, to do this. Shall I drink the
blood of these men with their lives?
For they have brought it with their
lives. And he was not willing to drink
it. The three mighty ones did these
things.
20 And Abishai the brother of Joab,
he was the chief of the three. And he
lifted up his spear against three
hundred, and killed, and had a name
among the three.
21 Of the three, he was honored by
the two, and became their head. But
he did not come to the first three.
22 Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, the
son of a valiant man of great deeds,
from Kabzeel, he killed the two lion-
like Moabites. And he went down and
killed a lion in the midst of a pit in the
snowy day.
23 And he killed an Egyptian man, a
man of five cubits stature; and in the
Egyptian's hand was a spear like the
weaver's beam; and he went down to
him with a staff and wrenched the
spear out of the Egyptian's hand; and
killed him with his own spear.
24 These things Benaiah the son of
Jehoiada did, and had a name among
the three mighty ones.
25 Behold, he was honored by the
thirty, but to the first three he did not
come. And David set him over his
court.
26 And the mighty ones of the army
were Asahel the brother of Joab,
Elhanan the son of Dodo of
Bethlehem,

27 Shammoth the Harorite, Helez the Pelonite,
28 Ira the son of Ikkesh the Tekoite, Abiezer the Anethothite,
29 Sibbecai the Hushathite, Ilai the Ahohite,
30 Maharai the Netophathite, Heled the son of Baanah the Netophathite,
31 Ithai the son of Ribai of Gibeah of sons of Benjamin, Benaiah the Pirathonite,
32 Hurai of the torrents of Gaash, Abiel the Arbathite,
33 Azmaveth the Baharumite, Eliahba the Shaalbonite,
34 the sons of Hashem the Gizonite, Jonathan the son of Shage the Hararite,
35 Ahiam the son of Sacar the Hararite, Eliphal the son of Ur,
36 Hepher the Mecherathite, Ahijah the Pelonite,
37 Hezro the Carmelite, Naarai the son of Ezbai,
38 Joel the brother of Nathan, Mibhar the son of Haggi,
39 Zelek the Ammonite, Naharai the Berothite, the armor-bearer of Joab the son of Zeruiah,
40 Ira the Ithrite, Gareb the Ithrite,
41 Uriah the Hittite, Zabad the son of Ahlai,
42 Adina the son of Shiza the Reubenite, the head of the Reubenites, and thirty with him;
43 Hanan the son of Maachah, and Joshaphat the Mithnite,
44 Uzzia the Ashterathite, Shamma and Jehiel the sons of Hotham the Aroerite,
45 Jediael the son of Shimri, and Joha his brother, the Tizite,
46 Eliel the Mahavite, and Jeribai and Joshaviah, sons of Elnaam, and Ithmah the Moabite,
47 Eliel, and Obed, and Jasiel the Mesobaite.

Chapter 12

1 And these were those coming to David to Ziklag, while banned from the face of Saul the son of Kish. And they were among the mighty ones, helping the battle;
2 right and left-handed, armed with bows, with stones, and with arrows, with the bow from the brothers of Saul, of Benjamin.
3 The head was Ahiezer, and Joash, the sons of Shemaah the Gibeathite and Jeziel, and Pelet, the sons of Azmaveth; and Berachah, and Jehu the Anethothite;
4 Ishmaiah the Gibeonite, a mighty one among the thirty, and over the thirty; and Jeremiah, and Jahaziel, and Johanan, and Jozabad the Gederathite;
5 Eluzai, and Jerimoth, and Bealiah, and Shemariah, and Shephatiah the Haruphite;
6 Elkanah, and Jesaiah, and Azarael, and Joezer, and Jashobeam the Korhites;
7 and Joelah and Zebadiah, the sons of Jeroham of Gedor.
8 And of the Gadites, there were separated to David, to the stronghold in the wilderness, valiant warriors, men of the army for battle, setting shield and spear in order, and their faces as the face of a lion, and as gazelles on the heights for swiftness:
9 Ezer the chief, Obadiah, the second; Eliab, the third;
10 Mishmannah, the fourth; Jeremiah, the fifth;
11 Attai, the sixth; Eliel, the seventh;
12 Johanan, the eighth; Elzabad, the ninth;
13 Jeremiah, the tenth; Machbanai, the eleventh.
14 These were of the sons of Gad, heads of the army. The least was equal

to a hundred, and the greatest as a thousand.

15 These were they who crossed over the Jordan in the first month; and it was full, over all its banks; and put to flight all those of the valleys, to the east and to the west.

16 And some of the sons of Benjamin and Judah came to the stronghold of David.

17 And David went out before them, and answered and said to them, If you have come to me for peace, to help me, I have a heart to unite with yours. But if to betray me to my foe, there is no violence in my hand; the Elohim of our fathers shall see and reprove.

18 And the Spirit enwrapped Amasai, the head of the thirty: To you, O David, and with you, O son of Jesse, peace! Peace to you, and peace to your helpers, for your Elohim has helped you. And David received them, and put them among the heads of the band.

19 And some from Manasseh fell to David as he came with the Philistines to battle against Saul. And they did not help them, for by counsel the rulers of the Philistines sent them away, saying, He will fall to his master Saul with our heads.

20 As he went to Ziklag, there fell to him from Manasseh, Adnah, and Jozabad, and Jediael, and Michael, and Jozabad, and Elihu, and Zillethai, heads of the thousands that were of Manasseh.

21 And they helped David against the raiding band, for they all were valiant warriors; and they were commanders in the army;

22 for at the time they came daily to David, to help him, until it was a great army, like an army of Elohim.

23 And these were the numbers of the heads of those that were armed for war, who came to David to Hebron, to turn the kingdom of Saul to him, according to the mouth of YAHWEH.

24 The sons of Judah, bearing shield and spear, were six thousand, eight hundred, armed for war.

25 Of the sons of Simeon, mighty ones of valor for the war, seven thousand, one hundred.

26 Of the sons of Levi were four thousand, six hundred.

27 And Jehoiada was the leader of the Aaronites and with him three thousand, seven hundred;

28 and Zadok, a young man mighty in valor; and of the house of his father were twenty two leaders.

29 And of the sons of Benjamin, Saul's brothers, were three thousand. For before, the most of them had kept their allegiance to the house of Saul.

30 And of the sons of Ephraim were twenty thousand, eight hundred, mighty men of valor, famous men to the house of their fathers.

31 And of the half tribe of Manasseh were eighteen thousand who were designated by name, to come to make David king.

32 And of the sons of Issachar, having understanding of the times, to know what Israel should do. Their heads were two hundred, and all their brothers were at their command.

33 Of Zebulun, going forth to the army, that could set the battle in array with all kinds of weapons of war, fifty thousand; and keeping rank without a double heart.

34 And of Naphtali, a thousand chiefs; and with them with shield and spear were thirty seven thousand.

35 And of the Danites arraying the battle were twenty eight thousand, six hundred.

36 And of Asher, going out to the army to set in order the battle were forty thousand.

37 And from beyond the Jordan: of

the Reubenites, and of the Gadites, and of the half tribe of Manasseh, with all of the weapons of war for battle were a hundred and twenty thousand.
38 All these were men of war, keeping rank; they came to Hebron with a perfect heart, to make David king over all Israel. And also all the rest of Israel was of one heart, to make David king.
39 And they were there with David three days, eating and drinking. For their brothers had prepared for them.
40 And also those near to them, to Issachar, and Zebulun, and Naphtali, brought in bread on donkeys, and on camels, and on mules, and on oxen; food of fine flour, fig cakes, and raisin cakes, and wine, and oil, and oxen, and sheep, to great plenty. For joy was in Israel.

Chapter 13

1 And David consulted the chiefs of the thousands and of the hundreds, to every leader.
2 And David said to all the congregation of Israel, If it is good to you, and it has broken forth from YAHWEH our Elohim, we shall send to our brothers those remaining in all the lands of Israel, and with them the priests and the Levites in the cities of their open lands; and they shall be gathered to us.
3 And we shall bring around to us the ark of our Elohim, for we did not seek Him in the days of Saul.
4 And all the congregation said to do so, for the thing was right in the eyes of all the people.
5 And David gathered all Israel, from Shihor of Egypt even to the entering in of Hamath, to bring in the ark of The Elohim from Kirjath-Jearim.
6 And David and all Israel went up to Baalah, to Kirjath-Jearim of Judah, to bring up from there the ark of The Elohim called YAHWEH, who dwells among the cherubs, where the Name was called on.
7 And they made the ark of The Elohim to ride on a new cart from the house of Abinadab. And Uzza and Ahio were leading the cart.
8 And David and all Israel were playing before The Elohim with all their might, and with songs, and with lyres, and with harps, and with timbrels, and with cymbals, and with trumpets.
9 And when they came to the threshing-floor of Chidon, then Uzza put out his hand to take hold of the ark, for the oxen stumbled.
10 And the anger of YAHWEH burned against Uzza, and He struck him, because he had put out his hand on the ark; and he died there before Elohim.
11 And it burned to David, for YAHWEH had broken a breach against Uzza; and he called that place, The Breach of Uzza to this day.
12 And David feared (Aleph/Tav) The Elohim on that day, saying, How shall I bring the ark of The Elohim to me?
13 And David did not bring the ark to himself, to the City of David, but carried it aside to the house of Obed-Edom the Gittite.
14 And the ark of The Elohim remained with the household of Obed-Edom in his house three months. And YAHWEH blessed the house of Obed-Edom and all that he had.

Chapter 14

1 And Hiram the king of Tyre sent messengers to David, and cedar trees, and masons, and carpenters, to build a house for him.
2 And David saw that YAHWEH

had established him king over Israel, for his kingdom was exalted to a height, for the sake of His people Israel.

3 And David again took wives in Jerusalem. And David again fathered sons and daughters.

4 And these were the names of the children who were to him in Jerusalem: Shammua, and Shobab, Nathan, and Solomon,

5 and Ibhar, and Elishua, and Elpalet,

6 and Nogah, and Nepheg, and Japhia,

7 and Elishama, and Beeliada, and Eliphalet.

8 And the Philistines heard that David had been anointed king over all Israel. And all the Philistines went up to seek David. And David heard, and went out before them.

9 And the Philistines came and made a raid in the Valley of the Giants.

10 And David asked of Elohim, saying, Shall I go up against the Philistines; and, Have You given them into my hand? And YAHWEH said to him, Go up, and I will give them into your hand.

11 And they went up to Baal-Perzim[1], and David struck them there. And David said, The Elohim has broken my enemies by my hand, like the breaking of the waters; so they called the name of that place The Breach of Baal.

12 And they forsook their gods there. And David commanded, and they were burned with fire.

13 And yet again the Philistines raided in the valley.

14 And David again inquired of Elohim. And The Elohim spoke to him, You shall not go up after them; turn away from them and come to them across from the weeping trees.

15 And it shall be, when you hear the sound of marching in the tops of the weeping trees, then you shall go out in the battle; for Elohim has gone out before you to strike the army of the Philistines.

16 And David did as The Elohim commanded him. And they struck the army of the Philistines from Gibeon even to Gezer.

17 And the name of David went out into all the lands; and YAHWEH put the dread of him on all the nations.

Chapter 15

1 And he built houses for himself in the City of David, and prepared a place for the ark of The Elohim, and pitched a tent for it.

2 Then David said, None should bear the ark of The Elohim except the Levites, for YAHWEH had chosen them to bear the ark of The Elohim, and to serve Him forever.

3 And David gathered all Israel to Jerusalem, to bring up the ark of YAHWEH to its place that he had prepared for it.

4 And David gathered the sons of Aaron and the Levites.

5 Of the sons of Kohath, Uriel the chief, and his brothers, a hundred and twenty.

6 Of the sons of Merari, Asaiah the chief, and his brothers, two hundred and twenty.

7 Of the sons of Gershom: Joel the chief, and his brothers, a hundred and thirty.

8 Of the sons of Elizaphan, Shemaiah the chief, and his brothers, two hundred.

9 Of the sons of Hebron, Eliel the chief, and his brothers, eighty.

10 Of the sons of Uzziel, Amminadab the chief, and his brothers, a hundred and twelve.

1 Baal Perzim- "The Lord of breaking through". 2 Sam 5:20, Is 28:21

11 And David called to Zadok and to Abiathar the priests, and to the Levites, to Uriel, Asaiah, and Joel, Shemaiah, and Eliel, and Amminadab,

12 and said to them, You are the heads of your fathers of the Levites; sanctify yourselves, you and your brothers, and you shall bring up the ark of YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, to the place I have prepared for it.

13 Because you did not do so at the first, YAHWEH our Elohim broke in against us, for we did not seek Him according to the ordinance.

14 And the priests and the Levites sanctified themselves to bring up the ark of YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel.

15 And the sons of the Levites carried the ark of The Elohim, as Moses commanded, according to the Word of YAHWEH, by staves above on the shoulders.

16 And David commanded the chiefs of the Levites to appoint their brothers the singers with instruments of song, psalteries, and harps, and sounding cymbals, to lift up the voice for joy.

17 And the Levites appointed Heman the son of Joel; and of his brothers, Asaph the son of Berechiah; and of the sons of Merari, their brothers, Ethan the son of Kushaiah.

18 And with them were their brothers of the second rank, Zechariah, Ben, and Jaaziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, Eliab, and Benaiah, and Maaseiah, and Mattithiah, and Elipheleh, and Mikneiah, and Obed-Edom, and Jeiel, the gatekeepers.

19 And the singers were Heman, Asaph, and Ethan, to sound with cymbals of copper;

20 and Zechariah, and Aziel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehiel, and Unni, and Eliab, and Maaseiah, and Benaiah, with harps set to Alamoth;

21 and Mattithiah, and Elipheleh, and Mikneiah, and Obed-Edom, and Jeiel, and Azaziah with lyres on the octave, to oversee.

22 And Chenaniah the chief of the Levites led in the song, instructing in the song, because he was skillful.

23 And Berechiah and Elkanah were gatekeepers for the ark.

24 And Shebaniah, and Jehoshaphat, and Nethaneel, and Amasai, and Zechariah, and Benaiah, and Eliezer the priests were blowing with the trumpets before the ark of The Elohim. And Obed-Edom and Jehiah were gatekeepers for the ark.

25 And it was David, and the elders of Israel, and the commanders of the thousands, who were going to bring up the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH from the house of Obed-Edom with joy.

26 And it happened, as The Elohim helped the Levites carrying the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH, they sacrificed seven bulls and seven rams.

27 And David was clothed with a robe of fine linen, and all the Levites that carried the ark, and the singers, and Chenaniah, the master of the song with the singers. David also had an ephod of linen on him.

28 And all Israel was bringing up the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH with shouting, and with the sound of a horn, and with trumpets, and cymbals, sounding aloud with lyres and harps.

29 And it happened, as the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH came to the City of David, Michal the daughter of Saul looked out through the window and saw King David dancing and laughing. And she despised him in her heart.

Chapter 16

1 And they brought in the ark of The Elohim, and set it down in the middle

of the tent that David had pitched for
it. And they offered burnt offerings
and peace offerings before The
Elohim.
2 And when David finished offering
the burnt offering and the peace
offering, and he blessed the people in
the name of YAHWEH;
3 even he passed out to every one of
Israel, both man and woman, to each a
loaf of bread, a portion, and a raisin
cake.
4 And he set before the ark of
YAHWEH ministers from the Levites,
even to celebrate and to thank and to
give praise to YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel:
5 Asaph the head, and Zechariah his
second; Jeiel, and Shemiramoth, and
Jehiel, and Mattithiah, and Eliab, and
Benaiah, and Obed-Edom, and Jeiel,
with instruments of harps, and with
lyres; and Asaph was sounding with
the cymbals.
6 And Benaiah and Jahaziel the
priests were continually with trumpets
before the ark of the covenant of The
Elohim.
7 Then on that day David first gave
by the hand of Asaph and his brothers
to give thanks to YAHWEH.
8 O give thanks to YAHWEH; call
on His name; make known His deeds
among the peoples.
9 Sing to Him, sing psalms to Him;
tell of all His marvelous works.
10 Glory in His holy name; let the
heart of those seeking YAHWEH
rejoice.[1]
11 Seek YAHWEH and His strength,
seek His face continually.
12 Remember His wonders that He
has done, His signs, and the
judgments of His mouth,
13 O seed of Israel, His servant; O
sons of Jacob, His chosen ones.

14 He is YAHWEH our Elohim, His
judgments are in all the earth.
15 Remember His covenant forever,
the Word He gave to a thousand
generations,
16 which He has cut with Abraham,
and His oath to Isaac;
17 and He established it to Jacob for
a statute, to Israel as a covenant
forever,
18 saying, I will give you the land of
Canaan, the portion of your
inheritance; *(Gen 13:14-17)*
19 when you were few in number,
even very few, and sojourners in it,
20 and they went up and down, from
nation to nation, and from one
kingdom to another people.
21 He has not allowed any to oppress
them; yea, for their sake He has
reproved kings:
22 Touch not My anointed ones, and
do My prophets no evil. *(Gen 20:7)*
23 Sing to YAHWEH, all the earth,
proclaim the news from day to day of
His salvation *(Y'shua*)*.
24 Declare His glory among the
nations, His wonders among all the
peoples.
25 For great is YAHWEH, and
greatly to be praised; and He is to be
feared above all the Elohim.
26 For all the gods of the peoples are
worthless; yea, YAHWEH has made
the heavens.
27 Splendor and majesty are before
Him; strength and joy are in His place.
28 Give to YAHWEH, O families of
the people, give to YAHWEH glory
and strength.
29 Give to YAHWEH the glory of
His name; bring an offering and come
before Him; worship YAHWEH in the
adornment of holiness.
30 Tremble before Him, all the
earth; yea, the earth is established, it
shall not be moved!
31 Let the heavens be glad, and let

1 We are commanded to sing praise to the name of YAHWEH.

the earth rejoice; and let them say
among nations, YAHWEH[1] reigns.
32 Let the sea roar, and the fullness
of it; let the fields rejoice, and all in
them.
33 Then the trees of the forest will
sing out before YAHWEH, for He has
come to judge the earth.
34 O Give thanks to YAHWEH, for
He is good; for His mercy endures
forever.
35 And say, O save us, Elohim of our
*Y'shua**; and gather us, and deliver us
from the nations, that we may give
thanks to Your holy name, that we
may glory in Your praise.[2]
36 Blessed be YAHWEH, the
Elohim of Israel, from everlasting even
to everlasting. And all the people said,
Amen, and gave praise to YAHWEH.
37 And he left there before the ark of
the covenant of YAHWEH, for Asaph
and for his brothers, to minister before
the ark continually to the matter of a
day in its day;
38 also, Obed-Edom and their
brothers, sixty-eight; and Obed-Edom
the son of Jeduthun, and Hosah, as
gatekeepers;
39 and Zadok the priest, and his
brothers the priests, before the
tabernacle of YAHWEH, in the high
place that was in Gibeon;[3]
40 to offer the burnt offerings to
YAHWEH on the altar of the burnt
offering continually, to the morning,
and to evening, even to all that was
written in the Torah of YAHWEH,
which He commanded Israel;
41 and with them Heman and
Jeduthun, and the rest that were
chosen, who were designated by name,
to give thanks to YAHWEH, because
His mercy endures forever;
42 and with them Heman and
Jeduthun with trumpets and cymbals
for those making a sound, and
instruments of the song of The
Elohim; and the sons of Jeduthun
were at the gate.
43 And all the people departed, each
to his house; and David returned to
bless his house.

Chapter 17

1 And it happened, as David sat in
his house, that David said to Nathan
the prophet, Behold, I am living in a
house of cedars, and the ark of the
covenant of YAHWEH is under
curtains.
2 And Nathan said to David, Do all
that is in your heart, for The Elohim is
with you.
3 And it happened on that night, the
Word of Elohim came to Nathan,
saying,
4 Go, and you shall say to My servant
David, So says YAHWEH, You shall
not build a house for Me to dwell in;
5 for I have not dwelt in a house
from the day that I brought Israel up
until this day, but I have gone from
tent to tent, and from one tabernacle
to another.
6 Wherever I have walked up and
down among all Israel, have I spoken a
word with any of the judges of Israel,
whom I commanded to feed My
people, saying, Why have you not built
a house of cedars for Me?
7 And now you shall say this to My

1 The family name of **YAHWEH** is the most glorious name in all the universe (Deut 28:58) and all true covenant believers should be glorifying Yahweh's name that is listed almost 7,000 times in the Old Testament or Tanach alone.

2 In the end times as YHWH gathers His elect from the 4 corners of the earth back to the Promised Land (Math 24:31) they will be praising Yahshua, the salvation of YHWH.

3 Although the Ark of the Covenant was moved to Jerusalem, the tabernacle was still in Gibeon.

servant, to David, So says YAHWEH
of Hosts, I have taken you from the
pasture from following the sheep, to
be ruler over My people Israel;
8 and I have been with you wherever
you have walked; and I have cut off all
your enemies from before you; and
have made for you a name like the
name of the great ones in the earth.
9 And I will prepare a place for My
people Israel, and he will plant, and he
will dwell in his place, and shall not be
made to tremble any more; nor shall
the sons of wickedness waste him any
more, as at the first;
10 yea, even from the day that I
appointed judges over My people
Israel. And I will humble all your
enemies; and I declare to you that
YAHWEH shall build a house for you;
11 and it shall be, when your days
have been fulfilled to go away with
your fathers, that I shall raise up your
seed after you, who shall be of your
sons, and I shall establish his
kingdom.[1] *(2 Sam 7:12-13)*
12 He shall build a house for Me, and
I shall establish his throne forever;
13 I shall become a Father to him,
and he shall become a son to Me; and I
will not take My mercy away from
him, as I took it away from him who
was before you; *(Math 3:17)*
14 and I will establish Him in My
house and in My kingdom forever; and
his throne shall be made to stand
forever.[2]
15 According to all these words, and
according to all this vision, so Nathan
spoke to David.
16 And David the king came in and
sat before YAHWEH, and said, Who
am I, O YAHWEH, Elohim, and what
is my house, that You have brought me
thus far?
17 And this was a small thing in Your
eyes, O Elohim; but You have spoken
to Your servant's house for a great
while to come, and have looked upon
me as a type of the Man who is on
high, O YAHWEH Elohim!*(Ps 110:1-2)*
18 What can David add still more to
You concerning the honor being put
on Your servant? For You know Your
servant.
19 O YAHWEH, for Your servant's
sake, and according to Your own heart,
You have done all this greatness, to
make known all these great things.
20 O YAHWEH, there is none like
You; and there is no Elohim except
You, according to all that we have
heard with our ears.
21 And what one nation in the earth
is as Your people Israel, whom The
Elohim has brought out to ransom to
Himself for a people, to make for
Yourself a great and fearful name, to
cast out the nations from before Your
people, whom You have ransomed out
of Egypt.
22 Yea, You have chosen Your
people Israel for Yourself, for a people
forever, and You, O YAHWEH, have
been Elohim to them.
23 And now, O YAHWEH, the Word
that You have spoken as to Your
servant, and as to his house, let it be
established forever, and do as You
have spoken;
24 let it even be established, and
Your name be great forever, saying,
YAHWEH of Hosts, the Elohim of
Israel is Elohim to Israel; and the

---

1 The promise of an eternal king in the messianic kingdom is not that king David would be that king Messiah spoken of here, but that the King Messiah would be someone who was born from his very loins and was a physical descendant of his.

2 Verses 12-14- It is King Messiah that will build the sanctuary of YHWH (Zech 6:12-13) and He (Yahshua) will be established on His throne forever (Ps 110:1-5).

house of Your servant David shall be
made to stand before You.
25 For You, O my Elohim, You have
uncovered the ear of Your servant, to
build a house for him; on this account
Your servant has found to pray before
You.
26 And now, O YAHWEH, You are
Elohim Himself, and You speak this
goodness concerning Your servant.
27 And now, You have been pleased
to bless the house of Your servant, to
be forever before You; for You, O
YAHWEH, have blessed; yea, it is
blessed forever!

Chapter 18

1 And it happened, after this, that
David struck the Philistines, and
humbled them, and took Gath and its
towns out of the hand of the
Philistines.
2 And he struck Moab, and the
Moabites became servants to David,
bringing a tribute.
3 And David struck Hadarezer the
king of Zobah at Hamath, as he went
to establish his hand by the Euphrates
River;
4 and David captured from him a
thousand chariots, and seven
thousand horsemen, and twenty
thousand footmen; and David
hamstrung all the chariot horses, but
left of them a hundred chariots.
5 And when the Syrians of Damascus
came to help Hadarezer the king of
Zobah, then David struck twenty two
thousand men of the Syrians.
6 And David placed men in Syria of
Damascus, and the Syrians became
servants to David, bringing a tribute.
And YAHWEH preserved David
wherever he went.
7 And David took the shields of gold
that were on the servants of
Hadarezer, and brought them to
Jerusalem.
8 And from Tibhath and from Chun,
cities of Hadarezer, David brought
very much copper (with it Solomon
made the copper sea, and the pillars,
and the vessels of copper).
9 And Tou the king of Hamath heard
that David had struck the whole army
of Hadarezer the king of Zobah,
10 and he sent his son Hadoram to
King David, to ask peace of him, and
to bless him because he had fought
against Hadarezer, and had struck
him; for Hadarezer had been a man of
war with Tou; and he sent all vessels of
gold and silver and copper.
11 Also these King David sanctified
to YAHWEH, with the silver and the
gold that he had taken from all the
nations, from Edom, and from Moab,
and from the Ammonites, and from
the Philistines, and from Amalek.
12 And Abishai the son of Zeruiah
had killed eighteen thousand of the
Edomites in the Valley of Salt;
13 and he put command posts in
Edom, and all the Edomites were
servants to David. And YAHWEH
preserved David wherever he went.
14 And David reigned over all Israel,
and he executed justice and
righteousness among all his people.
15 And Joab the son of Zeruiah was
over the army; and Jehoshaphat the
son of Ahilud was recorder;
16 and Zadok the son of Ahitub, and
Abimelech the son of Abiathar, were
priests; and Shavsha was scribe;
17 and Benaiah the son of Jehoiada
was over the Cherethites and the
Pelethites; and the sons of David were
first in power at the hand of the king.

Chapter 19

1 And it happened after this, that

King Nahash of the Ammonites died,
and his son reigned in his place.
2 And David said, I will show
kindness to Hanun the son of Nahash,
for his father acted with kindness
toward me; and David sent
messengers to comfort him concerning
his father. And the servants of David
came to the land of the Ammonites, to
Hanun, to comfort him.
3 And the chiefs of the sons of
Ammon said to Hanun, Is David
honoring your father, in your eyes,
because he has sent comforters to you?
Have not his servants come in to you
in order to search out and to
overthrow, and to spy out the land?
4 And Hanun took David's servants,
and shaved them, and cut their long
robes in half, to the buttocks, and sent
them away.
5 And some went and told David
about the men; and he sent to meet
them, for the men were greatly
humiliated. And the king said, Remain
in Jericho until your beard has grown,
then return.
6 And the Ammonites saw that they
had made themselves odious to David;
and Hanun and the Ammonites sent a
thousand talents of silver in order to
hire to themselves chariots and
horsemen from Syria of Naharaim and
Syria of Maachah and from Zobah.
7 And they hired thirty two thousand
chariots to themselves, and the king of
Maachah and his people. And they
came in and pitched before Medeba;
and the Ammonites had gathered out
of their cities and had come to the
battle.
8 And David heard, and sent Joab
and all the army of the mighty men.
9 And the Ammonites came out and
set the battle in order at the entrance
to the city; and the kings who had
come were by themselves in the field.
10 And Joab saw that the face of the
battle was against him before and
behind; and he chose out all the choice
ones in Israel, and set in order to meet
Syria;
11 and the rest of the people he gave
into the hand of his brother Abishai;
and they set in order to meet the sons
of Ammon.
12 And he said, If Syria is stronger
than I, then you shall help me; but if
the Ammonites are too strong for you,
then I will help you.
13 Be strong, even let us take
courage for our people and for the
cities of our Elohim; and YAHWEH
will do that which is good in His eyes.
14 And Joab and the people with
him drew near before Syria to do
battle; and they fled before him.
15 And the Ammonites saw that
Syria had fled, and they ran away, they
also, from before his brother Abishai,
and went into the city. And Joab came
to Jerusalem.
16 And Syria saw that they had been
stricken before Israel, and sent
messengers and brought out Syria that
was beyond the river; and Shophach,
Hadarezer's army commander, was
before them.
17 And it was told to David, and he
gathered all Israel and crossed the
Jordan, and came to them and set in
order against them; yea, David set the
battle in order to meet Syria, and they
fought with him;
18 and Syria fled before Israel, and
David killed seven thousand
charioteers of Syria, and forty
thousand footmen, and he killed
Shophach, the army commander.
19 And the servants of Hadarezer
saw that they had been stricken before
Israel, and they made peace with
David and served him; and Syria was
not willing to help the Ammonites any
more.

Chapter 20

1 And it happened, at the time of the
return of the year, at the time when
kings go forth, that Joab led out the
power of the army and wasted the
country of the Ammonites and came
and besieged Rabbah. But David
remained at Jerusalem. And Joab
struck Rabbah and overthrew it.
2 And David took the crown of their
king from his head, and found it a
talent of gold in weight, and a precious
stone in it; and it was set on David's
head. And he also brought out the
spoil of the city, a very great amount.
3 And he brought out the people in
it; and they sawed with saws, and with
sharp tools of iron, and with the axes.
And so David did to all the cities of the
Ammonites. And David and all the
people returned to Jerusalem.
4 And it happened after this, that
there stood a battle again with the
Philistines in Gezer; then Sibbechai
the Hushathite killed Sippai of the
children of the giant, and they were
humbled.
5 And there was a battle again with
the Philistines; and Elhanan the son of
Jair killed Lahmi, the brother of
Goliath, the Gittite, the wood of whose
spear was like the weavers' beam.[1]
6 And there was a battle again in
Gath; and a man of stature was there,
and his fingers and toes were six and
six, twenty four; and also he had been
born to the giant.
7 And he taunted Israel. And
Jonathan the son of Shimea, the
brother of David, killed him.
8 These were born to the giant in
Gath, and they fell by the hand of
David, and by the hand of his servants.

Chapter 21

1 And Satan stood up against Israel
and moved David to number Israel.
2 And David said to Joab and to the
rulers of the people, Go, number Israel
from Beer-Sheba even to Dan; and
bring to me, and I will know their
number.
3 And Joab said, May YAHWEH
add to His people as if they were a
hundred times; my master, O king, are
they not all of them servants to my
master? Why does my master desire
this? Why will he be a cause of guilt to
Israel?
4 But the word of the king was
strong against Joab; and Joab went
out and went up and down all Israel,
and came to Jerusalem.
5 And Joab gave the tally of the
census of the people to David; and all
Israel was a million and one hundred
thousand men drawing sword; and
Judah was four hundred and seventy
thousand drawing sword.
6 And Levi and Benjamin he did not
number among them, for the word of
the king was loathsome to Joab.
7 And it was evil in the eyes of
Elohim as to this thing, and He struck
Israel.
8 And David said to The Elohim, I
have sinned exceedingly in that I have
done this thing; and now, I pray You
to cause the iniquity of Your servant to
pass away, for I have acted very
foolishly.
9 And YAHWEH spoke to Gad, the
seer of David, saying,
10 Go; and you shall speak to David,
saying, So says YAHWEH, I am
extending to you three things; choose
one of these for yourself, that I may do
to you.
11 And Gad came to David and said
to him, So says YAHWEH, Choose for
yourself:

[1] See 2 Sam 21:19

12 either for three years of famine, or
three months to be wasted before your
adversaries, even to be overtaken by
the sword of your enemies; or the
sword of YAHWEH three days, even
pestilence in the land, and the
Messenger of YAHWEH destroying
throughout all the borders of Israel.
And now, see what answer I shall
return to Him that sent me.
13 And David said to Gad, It is great
distressing to me; now let me fall into
the hand of YAHWEH, for His
mercies are very many; but do not let
me fall into the hand of man.
14 And YAHWEH sent a pestilence
into Israel, and seventy thousand men
of Israel fell.
15 And The Elohim sent a messenger
to Jerusalem to destroy it. And as he
was destroying, YAHWEH saw, and
had pity as to the evil, and said to the
destroying Messenger, Enough! Now
let your hand drop. And the
Messenger of YAHWEH stood by the
threshing-floor of Ornan the Jebusite.
16 And David lifted up his eyes and
saw the Messenger of YAHWEH
standing between the earth and the
heavens, and his sword drawn in his
hand, stretched out over Jerusalem;
and David and the elders fell on their
faces, covered with sackcloth.
17 And David said to The Elohim,
Was it not I, I who said to number the
people? Yea, it was I who sinned, and
truly have done evil; and these, the
flock, what have they done? O
YAHWEH, my Elohim, I pray You, let
Your hand be on me and on my
father's house, and not on Your
people, to be plagued.
18 And the Messenger of YAHWEH
spoke to Gad, saying to David, Surely
David shall go up to raise an altar to
YAHWEH in the threshing-floor of
Ornan the Jebusite.
19 And David went up by the word of
Gad, that which he spoke in the name
of YAHWEH.
20 And Ornan turned back, and saw
the Messenger; and his four sons with
him hid themselves; and Ornan was
threshing wheat.
21 And as David came to Ornan,
Ornan looked and saw David, and
went out of the threshing-floor and
bowed down to David, with his face to
the ground.
22 And David said to Ornan, Give
me the site of the threshing-floor, and
I will build an altar to YAHWEH in it;
for full silver give it to me, and the
plague will be restrained from the
people.
23 And Ornan said to David, Take it
for yourself, and my master the king
do that which is good in his eyes; see, I
have given the oxen for burnt
offerings, and the threshing
instruments for wood, and the wheat
for the food offering; I give it all.
24 And King David said to Ornan,
No, for surely I will buy it for full
silver, for I will not lift up what is
yours to YAHWEH, so as to offer a
burnt offering without cost.
25 And David gave to Ornan six
hundred shekels of gold in weight for
the place.
26 And David built an altar there to
YAHWEH, and offered burnt
offerings and peace offerings, and
called to YAHWEH; and He answered
him with fire from the heavens on the
altar of the burnt offering.
27 And YAHWEH commanded the
Messenger, and he returned his sword
to its sheath.
28 At that time, when David saw
that YAHWEH had answered him in
the threshing-floor of Ornan the
Jebusite, then he sacrificed there.
29 And the tabernacle of YAHWEH
that Moses had made in the
wilderness, and the altar of the burnt

offering, were at that time in the high
place in Gibeon;
30 and David was not able to go
before it to seek Elohim, for he was
terrified from the face of the sword of
The Messenger of YAHWEH.

Chapter 22

1 And David said, This is the house of
YAHWEH The Elohim, and this altar
for burnt offering for Israel.
2 And David commanded the aliens
in the land of Israel to be gathered,
and appointed masons to cut stones to
build the house of The Elohim.
3 And David prepared iron in
abundance for nails, for leaves of the
gates, and for couplings and very
much copper; there was no weighing
it,
4 and also cedar trees without
number, for the Sidonians and the
Tyrians brought in cedar trees in
abundance to David.
5 And David said, My son Solomon is
a youth and tender, and the house to
be built to YAHWEH is to be made
great, to a height, for a name and for
beauty to all the land; I pray You, let
me prepare for it. And David prepared
in abundance before his death.
6 And he called for his son Solomon,
and commanded him to build a house
to YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel.
7 And David said to his son Solomon,
As for me, it has been in my heart to
build a house to the name of
YAHWEH my Elohim.
8 But the Word of YAHWEH was
against me, saying, You have shed
blood in abundance, and you have
made great wars; you shall not build a
house to My name, for you have shed
much blood to the earth before Me.
9 Behold, a son shall be born to you;
he shall be a man of rest, and I will
give him rest from all his enemies all
around, for Solomon shall be his
name, and I will give peace and
quietness to Israel in his days;
10 he shall build a house to My
name, and he shall become a son to
Me, and I a Father to him; and I will
establish the throne of his kingdom
over Israel forever.
11 Now, my son, may YAHWEH be
with you, and may you prosper and
build the house of YAHWEH your
Elohim, as He spoke concerning you.
12 Only, may YAHWEH give
wisdom and understanding to you and
command you as to Israel, even to
keep the Torah of YAHWEH your
Elohim;
13 then you shall prosper, if you
observe to do the statutes and the
judgments that YAHWEH
commanded Moses as to Israel; be
strong and courageous; do not fear,
nor be cast down.
14 And, behold, in my affliction I
have prepared a hundred thousand
gold talents for the house of
YAHWEH, and a million talents of
silver; and there is no weighing of the
copper and iron, for it is in abundance;
and I have prepared wood and stones,
and you shall add to them.
15 And there are many workmen
with you, masons and carvers in stone,
and of wood, and every skillful man
for every work.
16 No number is to the gold, and to
the silver, and to the copper, and to
the iron; rise up and act, for
YAHWEH is with you.
17 And David commanded all the
chiefs of Israel to give help to his son
Solomon:
18 Is not YAHWEH your Elohim
with you? Yea, He has given you rest
all around, for He has given into my
hand the inhabitants of the land, and
has subdued the land before
YAHWEH and before His people.

19 Now give your heart and your soul to seek to YAHWEH your Elohim, and rise up and build the sanctuary of YAHWEH Elohim, to bring in the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH, and the holy vessels of Elohim, to the house that is to be built in the name of YAHWEH.

Chapter 23

1 And David was old, and satisfied with days, and caused his son Solomon to reign over Israel.
2 And he gathered all Israel's chiefs, and the priests, and the Levites.
3 And the Levites were counted from a son of thirty years and upward; and their number by their heads, as to men, thirty eight thousand.
4 Of these, twenty four thousand to be overseers over the work of the house of YAHWEH; and six thousand were officers and judges;
5 and four thousand were gatekeepers, and four thousand giving praise to YAHWEH with instruments which I made, said David, for praising.
6 And David divided them into divisions of the sons of Levi, of Gershon, Kohath, and Merari.
7 Of the Gershonites: Laadan and Shimei.
8 The sons of Laadan were Jehiel the head, and Zetham, and Joel, three.
9 The sons of Shimei: Shelomith, and Haziel, and Haran, three. These were the heads of the fathers of Laadan.
10 And the sons of Shimei: Jahath, Zina, and Jeush and Beriah; these four the sons of Shimei.
11 And Jahath was the head, and Zizah the second. But Jeush and Beriah did not have many sons. And they were in one roster, a father's house.
12 The sons of Kohath were Amram, Izhar, Hebron, and Uzziel, four.
13 The sons of Amram: Aaron and Moses. And Aaron was separated so that he should sanctify the most holy things, he and his sons perpetually to burn incense before YAHWEH, to minister to Him and to bless in His name perpetually.
14 And as to Moses the man of The Elohim, his sons were named of the tribe of Levi.
15 The sons of Moses were Gershom and Eliezer.
16 Of the sons of Gershom, Shebuel was the head.
17 And the sons of Eliezer: Rehabiah the head. And Eliezer had no other sons, but the sons of Rehabiah were very many.
18 Of the sons of Izhar, Shelomith was the head.
19 Of the sons of Hebron, Jeriah was the first, Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third and Jekameam the fourth.
20 Of the sons of Uzziel, Michah was the first and Jesiah the second.
21 Mushi and Mahli were the sons of Merari. The sons of Mahli: Eleazar and Kish.
22 And Eleazar died. And he had no sons, but he had daughters. And their brothers, the sons of Kish, took them.
23 The sons of Mushi: Mahli, and Eder, and Jeremoth, three.
24 These were the sons of Levi to the house of their fathers, the heads of the fathers, to their rosters, by number of names, by their heads, who did the work for the service of the house of YAHWEH from the son of twenty years and over.
25 For David said, YAHWEH Elohim of Israel has given rest to His people so that they may dwell in Jerusalem perpetually,
26 and also to the Levites; there was

no need to carry the tabernacle nor all
its vessels for its service.
27 For by the last words of David,
the Levites were numbered from a son
of twenty years and above,
28 because their office was to wait
on the sons of Aaron for the service of
the house of YAHWEH, in the courts,
and in the chambers, and in the
purifying of all holy things, and the
work of the service of The Elohim's
house,
29 both for the Bread of
Arrangement, and for the fine flour for
food offering, and for the unleavened
cakes, and for the pan, and for what is
well mixed, and for every measure and
size,
30 even to stand every morning to
thank and praise YAHWEH, and
likewise at evening.[1]
31 And they were to offer all burnt
sacrifices to YAHWEH in the
Sabbath, in the new moons, and on the
set feasts, by number, according to the
order commanded to them,
continually before the face of
YAHWEH,
32 and that they should keep the
charge of the tent of the meeting, and
the charge of the Holy Place, and the
charge of Aaron's sons, their brothers,
in the service of the house of
YAHWEH.

Chapter 24

1 And these are the divisions of the
sons of Aaron. The sons of Aaron were
Nadab and Abihu, Eleazar and
Ithamar.
2 But Nadab and Abihu died before
their father, and they had no sons.
And Eleazar and Ithamar were priests.
3 And David divided them according
to their offices in their service, even
Zadok of the sons of Eleazar, and
Ahimelech of the sons of Ithamar.
4 And more sons of Eleazar were
found than the sons of Ithamar, for
heads of the men. And they divided
them. For the sons of Eleazar were:
sixteen chiefs to their father's house;
and eight to the sons of Ithamar, to the
house of their fathers.
5 So they divided them by lots, these
with these. For these were the rulers of
the sanctuary and rulers of the
Elohim, of Eleazar's sons and
Ithamar's sons.
6 And Shemaiah the son of
Nethaneel the scribe, of the Levites,
wrote them before the king, and the
rulers, and Zadok the priest, and
Ahimelech the son of Abiathar, and
the rulers of the fathers of the priests
and Levites. One father's house was
taken for Eleazar, and one taken for
Ithamar.
7 And the first lot came out for
Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah,
8 the third to Harim, the fourth to
Seorim,
9 the fifth to Malchijah, the sixth to
Mijamin,
10 the seventh to Hakkoz, the eighth
to Abijah,
11 the ninth to Yeshua, the tenth to
Shecaniah,
12 the eleventh to Eliashib, the
twelfth to Jakim,
13 the thirteenth to Huppah, the
fourteenth to Jeshebeab,
14 the fifteenth to Bilgah, the
sixteenth to Immer,
15 the seventeenth to Hezir, the
eighteenth to Aphses,
16 the nineteenth to Pethahiah, the
twentieth to Jehezekel,
17 the twenty first to Jachin, the
twenty second to Gamul,
18 the twenty third to Delaiah, the
twenty fourth to Maaziah.

[1] The daily sacrifice was turned into a prayer sacrifice and ultimately a living sacrifice of each true covenant believer (Ro 12;1-2).

19 These were the orderings of them in their service to come into the house of YAHWEH, according to their ordinance, to Aaron their father, as YAHWEH Elohim of Israel had commanded him.
20 And the rest of the sons of Levi: of the sons of Amram, Shubael; of the sons of Shubael, Jehdeiah.
21 For Rehabiah, of the sons of Rehabiah, the first was Isshiah.
22 Of the Izharites, Shelomoth; of the sons of Shelomoth, Jahath.
23 And the sons of Hebron were Jeriah. Amariah the second, Jahaziel the third, Jekameam the fourth.
24 Of the sons of Uzziel, Michah. Of the sons of Michah, Shamir.
25 The brother of Michah was Isshiah. Of the sons of Isshiah, Zechariah.
26 The sons of Merari were Mahli and Mushi. The sons of Jaaziah: Beno.
27 The sons of Merari by Jaaziah: Beno, and Shoham, and Zaccur, and Ibri.
28 Of Mahli, Eleazar, and no sons were to him.
29 Of Kish, Jerahmeel the son of Kish.
30 The sons of Mushi: Mahli, and Eder, and Jerimoth. These were the sons of the Levites according to their father's house.
31 And they also made fall lots just as their brothers the sons of Aaron did before the face of David the king, and Zadok, and Ahimelech, and the heads of the fathers, for the priests and Levites, even the head of the fathers, as well as his younger brother.

Chapter 25

1 And David and the commanders of the army separated some to the service of the sons of Asaph and Heman and Jeduthun, who were prophets with harps, with lyres and with cymbals. And their number, of the workmen according to their service, was,
2 of the sons of Asaph: Zaccur, and Joseph, and Nethaniah, and Asarelah, the sons of Asaph at the hands of Asaph, who prophesied at the hands of the king.
3 Of Jeduthun, the sons of Jeduthun: Gedaliah, and Zeri, and Jeshaiah, Hashabiah and Mattithiah, and Shimei, six, under the hands of their father Jeduthun who prophesied with the lyre to give thanks and to praise YAHWEH.
4 Of Heman were the sons of Heman: Bukkiah, Mattaniah, Uzziel, Shebuel, and Jerimoth, Hananiah, Hanani, Eliathah, Giddalti, and Romam-Tiezer, Joshbekashah, Mallothi, Hothir, Mahazioth.
5 All these were the sons of Heman the king's seer in the Words of The Elohim, to lift up the horn. And The Elohim gave to Heman fourteen sons and three daughters.
6 All these were at the hands of their father for song in the house of YAHWEH, with cymbals, harps, and lyres, for the service of the house of The Elohim, at the hands of the king: Asaph, Jeduthun and Heman.
7 So was their number, with their brothers who were instructed in singing to YAHWEH, all that were discerning: two hundred, eighty eight.
8 And they made fall lots for duty, as in the rule, as the small, so the great, the one teaching with the pupil.
9 And the first lot came out for Asaph, to Joseph: Gedaliah, he was the second; and his brothers and sons, twelve men.
10 The third was Zaccur, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
11 The fourth was to Izri, his sons and his brothers, twelve.

12 The fifth was to Nethaniah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
13 The sixth was to Bukkiah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
14 The seventh was to Jesharelah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
15 The eighth was to Jeshaiah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
16 The ninth was to Mattaniah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
17 The tenth was to Shimei, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
18 The eleventh was Azareel his sons and his brothers, twelve.
19 The twelfth to Hashabiah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
20 The thirteenth to Shubael his sons and his brothers twelve.
21 The fourteenth to Mattithiah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
22 The fifteenth to Jeremoth, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
23 The sixteenth to Hananiah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
24 The seventeenth to Joshbekashah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
25 The eighteenth to Hanani, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
26 The nineteenth to Mallothi, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
27 The twentieth to Eliathah, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
28 The twenty first to Hothir, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
29 The twenty second to Giddalti, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
30 The twenty third to Mahazioth, his sons and his brothers, twelve.
31 The twenty fourth to Romamtiezer, his sons and his brothers, twelve.

Chapter 26

1 For the divisions of the gatekeepers: of the Korhites was Meshelemiah the son of Kore, of the sons of Asaph.
2 And to Meshelemiah were sons: Zechariah the first-born, Jediael the second, Zebadiah the third, Jathniel the fourth,
3 Elam the fifth, Jehohanan the sixth, Elioenai the seventh.
4 And to Obed-Edom were sons: Shemaiah the first-born, Jehozabad the second, Joah the third, and Sacar the fourth, and Nethaneel the fifth,
5 Ammiel the sixth, Issachar the seventh, Peulthai the eighth (for Elohim blessed him).
6 Also sons were born to Shemaiah, who ruled for the house of their father; for they were mighty warriors.
7 The sons of Shemaiah: Othni, and Rephael, and Obed, Elzabad, whose brothers, mighty sons, were Elihu and Semachiah.
8 All these were the sons of Obed-Edom. They and their sons and their brothers were mighty men with strength for service. Sixty two were of Obed-Edom.
9 And to Meshelemiah were sons and brothers, mighty sons: eighteen.
10 Also to Hosah, of the sons of Merari, were sons: Simri the head, though not the first-born, yet his father made him the head;
11 Hilkiah the second, Tebaliah the third, Zechariah the fourth. All the sons and brothers of Hosah: thirteen.
12 To these were the divisions of the gatekeepers for the heads of the men, having charges like their brothers, to minister in the house of YAHWEH.
13 And he made fall lots; as the small, as the great, for the house of their fathers, for gate and gate.
14 And the lot eastward fell to Shelemiah. And for his son Zechariah, a wise counselor, they made fall lots; and his lot came out northward;

15 and to Obed-Edom, southward; and to his sons the house of the stores;
16 Shuppim and Hosah westward, with the gate of Shallecheth, going up by the highway, guard corresponding to guard.
17 Eastward were six Levites, northward, four a day; southward, four a day, and toward the storehouse, two by two.
18 At the Parbar, westward, four at the highway; two at the Parbar.
19 These are the divisions of the gatekeepers among the sons of Kore and among the sons of Merari.
20 And of the Levites, Ahijah was over the treasures of the house of Elohim, and to the treasures of the dedicated things.
21 The sons of Laadan, sons of the Gershonites; heads of the fathers of Laadan the Gershonite: Jehieli;
22 the sons of Jehieli: Zetham, and his brother Joel, who were over the treasures of the house of YAHWEH,
23 for the Amramites, for the Izharites, for the Hebronites, for the Uzzielites.
24 And Shebuel the son of Gershom, the son of Moses was ruler over the treasures.
25 And his brothers by Eliezer were his son Rehabiah, and his son Jeshaiah, and his son Joram, and his son Zichri, and his son Shelomith.
26 Of Shelomith, he and his brothers were over all the treasures of the holy things that David the king, and the heads of the fathers, the commanders over thousands and hundreds, and the commanders of the army had dedicated.
27 They dedicated from the battles and the plunder, to maintain the house of YAHWEH,
28 and all that Samuel the seer, and Saul the son of Kish, and Abner the son of Ner, and Joab the son of Zeruiah, all who dedicated, was at the hand of Shelomith and his brothers.
29 Of the Izharites, Chenaniah and his sons were for the outward business over Israel, for officers and for judges.
30 Of the Hebronites: Hashabiah and his brothers, sons of might; a thousand and seven hundred over the oversight of Israel beyond the Jordan westward, for all the work of YAHWEH, and for the king's service.
31 Of Hebron: Jerijah the head of the Hebronites, for his generations to his fathers. In the fortieth year of David's reign, they were sought, and were found among them mighty warriors at Jazer of Gilead.
32 And his brothers, mighty sons, were two thousand, seven hundred heads of the fathers. And King David made them overseers over the Reubenites, the Gadites, and the half tribe of Manasseh for every matter of The Elohim and matter of the king.

Chapter 27

1 And the sons of Israel, according to their number, the heads of the fathers, and commanders of thousands and hundreds, and their scribes who served the king in every matter of the divisions which came in and went out month by month for all the months of the year, the one division had twenty four thousand.
2 Over the first division for the first month was Jashobeam the son of Zabdiel. And over his division, twenty four thousand.
3 The head of all the commanders of the army for the first month was of the sons of Perez.
4 And over the division of the second month was Eleazar the son of Dodo of Ahoah, and of his division, Mikloth was also the ruler; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

5 The third commander of the army for the third month was Benaiah the son of Jehoiada, a head priest; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

6 He was that Benaiah who was mighty among the thirty, and above the thirty; and in his division was his son Ammizabad.

7 The fourth for the fourth month was Asahel the brother of Joab, and Zebadiah his son after him; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

8 The fifth for the fifth month was chief Shamhuth the Izrahite; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

9 The sixth for the sixth month was Ira the son of Ikkesh of Tekoa; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

10 The seventh for the seventh month was Helez the Pelonite, of the sons of Ephraim; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

11 The eighth for the eighth month was Sibbechai of Husah, of the Zarchites; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

12 The ninth for the ninth month was Abiezer of Anethoth, of Benjamin; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

13 The tenth for the tenth month was Maharai of Netophah, of the Zarchites; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

14 The eleventh for the eleventh month was Benaiah the Pirathonite, of the sons of Ephraim; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

15 The twelfth for the twelfth month was Heldai of Netophah, of Othniel; and in his division were twenty four thousand.

16 And over the tribes of Israel, the ruler of the Reubenites was Eliezer the son of Zichri. Shephatiah the son of Maachah was over the Simeonites.

17 Hashabiah the son of Kemuel was over the Levites; Zadok over the Aaronites.

18 Elihu, of the brothers of David, was over Judah. Omri the son of Michael was over Issachar.

19 Ishmaiah the son of Obadiah was over Zebulun. Jerimoth the son of Azriel was over Naphtali.

20 Hoshea the son of Azaziah was over the sons of Ephraim. Joel the son of Pedaiah was over the half tribe of Manasseh.

21 Iddo the son of Zechariah was over the half tribe of Manasseh in Gilead. Jaasiel the son of Abner was over Benjamin.

22 Azareel the son of Jeroham was over Dan. These were the leaders of the tribes of Israel.

23 But David did not take the number of them from the son of twenty years and under, because YAHWEH had said He would increase Israel like the stars of the heavens.

24 Joab the son of Zeruiah began to number, but he did not finish. And wrath was on Israel for this. And the number did not go up in the account of the Matters of the Days of King David.

25 And over the king's treasures was Azmaveth the son of Adiel. And Jehonathan the son of Uzziah was over the storehouses in the fields, in the cities, and in the villages, and in the strongholds.

26 Ezri the son of Chelub was over those who did the work of the field for working the ground.

27 Shimei of Ramah was over the vineyards. Zabdi the Shiphmite was over the increase of the vineyards for the wine cellars.

28 And Baal-Hanan of Geder was over the olive trees and sycamore trees

in the lowlands. And Joash was over
the oil cellars.
29 And Shitrai of Sharon was over
the herds that fed in Sharon. And
Shaphat the son of Adlai was over the
herds in the valleys.
30 And Obil the Ishmaelite was over
the camels. And Jehdeiah the
Meronothite was over the donkeys.
31 And Jaziz the Hagerite was over
the flocks. All these were the rulers of
the possessions which King David had.
32 And Jonathan, David's uncle, was
an adviser, a wise man and a scribe.
And Jehiel the son of Hachmoni was
with the king's sons.
33 And Ahithophel was the king's
counselor. And Hushai the Archite was
the king's companion.
34 And after Ahithophel was
Jehoiada the son of Benaiah, and
Abiathar. And the general of the king's
army was Joab.

Chapter 28

1 And David assembled all the chiefs
of Israel; the chiefs of the tribes and
chiefs of the divisions who were
serving the king, and commanders of
the thousands, and commanders of the
hundreds, and heads of all property
and possessions of the king, and of his
sons, with the eunuchs and the mighty
ones, even to every mighty one of
valor, to Jerusalem.
2 And David the king rose up on his
feet and said, Hear me, my brothers
and my people. With my heart I
desired to build a house of rest for the
ark of the covenant of YAHWEH, and
for the footstool of our Elohim. And I
made preparations to build.
3 But The Elohim said to me, You
shall not build a house to My name,
for you are a man of battles, and you
have shed blood.
4 But YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel chose me out of all my father's
house to be king over Israel forever.
For He chose Judah as the ruler, and
my father's house in the house of
Judah; and among the sons of my
father He was pleased to make me
king over all Israel.
5 And of all my sons, for YAHWEH
has given me many sons, He has
chosen my son Solomon to sit on the
throne of the kingdom of YAHWEH,
over Israel.
6 And He said to me, Your son
Solomon shall build My house and My
courts, for I have chosen him as a son
to Me, and I surely will be a Father to
him.
7 And I will establish his kingdom
forever, if he will be strong to do My
commandments and My ordinances,
as at this day.
8 And now in the sight of all Israel,
the congregation of YAHWEH[1], and
in the hearing of our Elohim, observe
and seek out all the commandments of
YAHWEH your Elohim that you may
possess this good land, and cause your
sons to inherit after you forever.
9 And you, my son Solomon, know
the Elohim of your father, and serve
Him with a perfect heart, and with a
willing mind. For YAHWEH searches
out all hearts, and He understands
every imagination of thoughts. If you
shall seek Him, He shall be found by
you. But if you forsake Him, He will
reject you forever. *(1Kgs 11:9-10)*
10 Watch, now, for YAHWEH has
chosen you to build a house for a
sanctuary. Be strong and act.
11 And David gave his son Solomon
the pattern of the porch, and of its
houses, and of its treasuries, and of its
upper rooms, and of its innermost

---

1 Even in the first covenant the congregation was named "*Congregation of YHWH*" after the Father (Eph 3:15, Joh 17:11, 2Chron 6:33).

rooms, and of the house of the mercy-seat;

12 and the pattern of all that he had by the Spirit, for the courts of the house of YAHWEH, and for all the rooms all around, for the treasuries of the house of The Elohim, and for the treasuries of the things dedicated;

13 and for the divisions of the priests and of the Levites, and for all the work of the service of the house of YAHWEH; and for all the vessels of service of the house of YAHWEH;

14 even for the gold, by the weight of the gold, for all vessels of service and service; and for all the vessels of silver by weight for all vessels of service and service;

15 and by weight, for the menorahs of gold, and their lamps of gold, with the weight of each menorah and its lamps. Also for the menorahs of silver by weight, with the weight of each menorah, and its lamps, according to the service of each menorah.

16 And he gave by weight gold for the tables of the Bread of Arrangement, for table and table; silver for the tables of silver;

17 and pure gold for the fleshhooks, and the bowls, and the cups; and for the golden basins by weight for every basin; for the silver basins by weight for basin and basin;

18 and for the altar of incense, refined gold by weight, and for the pattern of the chariot of the cherubs of gold, spreading out and covering over the ark of the covenant of YAHWEH.

19 All was in writing from the hand of YAHWEH. He caused me to understand all the work of the pattern.

20 And David said to his son Solomon, Be strong and brave, and act. Do not fear, nor be afraid, for YAHWEH Elohim, my Elohim, shall be with you. He will not fail you nor forsake you until you have finished all the work of the service of the house of YAHWEH.

21 And behold, the courses of the priests and the Levites shall be for all the service of the house of The Elohim. And with you in all work shall be every willing one with wisdom, for every service. And the rulers and all the people shall be according to all your words.

Chapter 29

1 And David the king said to all the congregation, My son Solomon, the one whom Elohim has chosen, is young and tender. And the work is great, for the magnificent house is not for man, but for YAHWEH Elohim.

2 And with all my power I have prepared for the house of my Elohim, the gold for things of gold, and the silver for silver, and the copper for copper, the iron for iron things, and the wood for wood, onyx stones, and settings, and also stones of antimony and of different colors, and every precious stone, and stones of alabaster, in abundance.

3 And also, because I delighted in the house of my Elohim, I have treasure of gold and silver which I give for the house of my Elohim, even more than all that I have prepared for the house of the sanctuary:

4 three thousand talents of gold, of the gold of Ophir; and seven thousand talents of refined silver, to overlay the walls of the houses;

5 even gold for things of gold, and silver for silver, and for all the work of the hands of the skilled workers. And who is he that will willingly offer to consecrate his hand today to YAHWEH?

6 And the chiefs of the fathers, and the chiefs of the tribes of Israel, and the commanders of the thousands, and

the hundreds, even the chiefs of the king's work, offered willingly,

7 and gave for the service of the house of The Elohim of gold five thousand talents, and a myriad of darics; and ten thousand talents of silver, and eighteen thousand talents of copper, and one hundred thousand talents of iron.

8 And he having stones gave them to the treasury of the house of YAHWEH, by the hand of Jehiel the Gershonite.

9 And the people rejoiced because of their willing offering, for they offered willingly to YAHWEH with a perfect heart; and David the king also rejoiced with great joy.

10 And David blessed YAHWEH before the eyes of all the congregation; and David said, Blessed are You, O YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, our father, for ever and ever.

11 To you, O YAHWEH, be the greatness, and the power, and the glory, and the victory, and the majesty; for all in the heavens and in the earth belongs to You, O YAHWEH; Yours is the kingdom, and You lift up Yourself to all as Head;

12 and the riches, and the honor come from before You, and You rule over all; and in Your hand is power and might; and it is in Your hand to make great, and to give strength to all.

13 And now, our Elohim, we are giving thanks to You, and giving praise to Your glorious name;

14 yea, for who am I, and who are my people, that we should be able to offer willingly in this way? For all is of You, and we have given to You out of Your hand;

15 for we are strangers before You, and settlers, like all our fathers; our days on the land are like a shadow, and there is none abiding. *(Heb 11:9)*

16 O YAHWEH our Elohim, all this store that we have prepared to build a house to You, for Your holy name, is out of Your hand, and all is of You.

17 And I know, my Elohim, that You try the heart and are pleased with uprightness; I, in the uprightness of my heart, have offered willingly all these things; and now I have watched with joy Your people who are present here offering willingly to You.

18 O YAHWEH, the Elohim of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, our fathers, keep this forever for the intent of the thoughts of the heart of your people, and prepare their heart toward You;

19 and give a perfect heart to my son Solomon, to keep Your commandments, Your testimonies, and Your statutes, and to do all, even to build this magnificent house, for which I have prepared.

20 And David said to all the congregation, Now bless YAHWEH your Elohim. And all the congregation blessed YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers, and worshiped YAHWEH, and bowed to the king.

21 And they sacrificed sacrifices to YAHWEH, and offered burnt offerings to YAHWEH, on the next day after that day: a thousand bulls, a thousand rams, a thousand lambs, with their drink offerings, and sacrifices in great plenty for all Israel.

22 And they ate and drank before YAHWEH on that day with great joy, and made Solomon the son of David king a second time, and anointed him before YAHWEH as ruler, and Zadok as priest.

23 And Solomon sat on the throne of YAHWEH as king instead of his father David, and prospered; and all Israel obeyed him.

24 And all the rulers, and the mighty men, and also all the sons of King

David, submitted themselves to
Solomon the king.
25 And YAHWEH magnified
Solomon to a height in the eyes of all
Israel, and gave to be on him the
majesty of the kingdom, such as had
not been on any king over Israel before
him.
26 And David the son of Jesse had
reigned over all Israel;
27 and the days that he reigned over
Israel were forty years; he reigned
seven years in Hebron, and he reigned
thirty three years in Jerusalem.
28 And he died in a good old age,
satisfied with days, riches, and honor.
And his son Solomon reigned in his
place.
29 And the acts of David the king,
the first and the last, behold, they are
written in the book of Samuel the seer,
and in the book of Nathan the prophet,
and in the book of Gad the seer,
30 with all his reign and his might,
and the times that passed over him,
and over Israel, and over all the
kingdoms of the lands.

Book of 2 Chronicles

Chapter 1

1 And Solomon the son of David made himself strong over his kingdom, and YAHWEH his Elohim was with him, and made him exceedingly great.

2 And Solomon spoke to all Israel, to the commanders of the thousands, and of the hundreds, and to judges, and to every honorable one of all Israel, heads of the fathers;

3 and they went, Solomon and all the congregation with him, to the high place that was in Gibeon, for there was The Elohim's tent of meeting that Moses, the servant of YAHWEH, had made in the wilderness.

4 But David had brought up the ark of The Elohim from Kirjath-Jearim, when David made ready for it, for he had stretched out a tent for it in Jerusalem;

5 and the altar of copper that Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, had made, he put it before the tabernacle of YAHWEH; and Solomon and the congregation sought to it.

6 And Solomon went up there on the copper altar before YAHWEH, that was at the tabernacle of the congregation, and offered on it a thousand burnt offerings.

7 In that night Elohim appeared to Solomon and said to him, Ask what I shall give to you.

8 And Solomon said to Elohim, You have acted with great kindness with my father David, and have made me king in his place.

9 Now, O YAHWEH Elohim, Your Word with my father David is confirmed, for You have made me to reign over a people as many as the dust of the earth.

10 Now give to me wisdom and knowledge, that I may go out and come in before this people; for who can judge this, Your great people?

11 And Elohim said to Solomon, Because this has been in your heart, that you have not asked riches, wealth, and honor, and the life of those who hate you, and also have not asked many days, but have asked wisdom and knowledge for yourself that you may judge My people, over whom I have made you reign;

12 the wisdom and the knowledge are given to you, and riches, and wealth, and honor I will give to you, such as none of the kings who were before you has had, and after you it shall not be so.

13 And Solomon came to Jerusalem from the high place in Gibeon, from before the tent of meeting, and reigned over Israel.

14 And Solomon gathered chariots and horsemen; and he had a thousand, four hundred chariots, and twelve thousand horsemen; and he placed them in the chariot cities, and with the king in Jerusalem.

15 And the king made the silver and the gold in Jerusalem as stones, and he made the cedars as sycamores that are in the low country for abundance.

16 And the horses which Solomon had were brought out of Egypt and out of Kue, the king's merchants took them from Kue at a price;

17 and they came up and brought out from Egypt a chariot for six hundred silver pieces, and a horse for a hundred and fifty; and so for all the kings of the Hittites, and the kings of Syria, they brought them out by their hand.

Chapter 2

1 And Solomon said to build a house for the name of YAHWEH, and a house for his kingdom.

2 And Solomon numbered seventy
thousand men, bearers of burden, and
eighty thousand men hewing in the
mountains; and overseers over them
three thousand, six hundred.
3 And Solomon sent to Hiram the
king of Tyre, saying, As you dealt with
my father David, and sent him cedars
to build a house to live in, also
4 behold, I am building a house to
the name of YAHWEH my Elohim, to
dedicate to Him, to burn incense of
sweet spices before Him, and for the
continual showbread, and for burnt
offerings morning and evening, on the
Sabbath, and on the new moons, and
at the set feasts of YAHWEH our
Elohim. This shall be upon Israel
forever.
5 And the house which I am building
shall be great, for our Elohim is
greater than all the Elohim.
6 But who has strength to build a
house for Him, since the heavens and
the heaven of heavens cannot contain
Him? And who am I that I should
build Him a house, except to offer
before Him?
7 And now, send to me a skilled man
to work in gold, and in silver, and in
copper, and in iron, and in purple, and
crimson, and violet, and knowing how
to engrave all kinds of engravings with
the skilled men who are with me in
Judah and in Jerusalem, whom my
father David has prepared.
8 And send to me cedar trees, firs,
and algums from Lebanon, for I know
that your servants know how to cut
down the trees of Lebanon; and
behold, my servants shall be with your
servants,
9 even to prepare trees in abundance
for me, for the house that I am
building will be great and wonderful.
10 And behold, I shall give beaten
wheat to the hewers, to those cutting
down the trees, to your servants,
twenty thousand kors of beaten wheat
and twenty thousand kors of barley,
and twenty thousand baths of wine,
and twenty thousand baths of oil.
11 And Hiram the king of Tyre
answered in writing, and sent to
Solomon, Because YAHWEH loves
His people, He has given you as king
over them.
12 And Hiram said, Blessed be
YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, who
has made the heavens and the earth,
who has given to David the king a wise
son, knowing discretion and under-
standing, who will build a house for
YAHWEH, and a house for his
kingdom.
13 And now I have sent a skilled man
having understanding, of Hiram my
father,
14 the son of a woman of the
daughters of Dan, and his father a
man of Tyre, who knows how to work
in gold, and in silver, in copper, in
iron, in stone, and in wood, in purple,
and violet, and in fine linen, and in
crimson, and to engrave any
engraving, and to invent any device
that is given to him, with your skilled
men, and the skilled men of my master
David, your father.
15 And now the wheat and the
barley, the oil and the wine, as my
master said, let him send to his
servants.
16 And we will cut trees out of
Lebanon, according to all your need,
and bring them to you by floats by sea
to Joppa; and you shall bring them up
to Jerusalem.
17 And Solomon numbered all the
men, the aliens who were in the land
of Israel, according to the numbering
with which his father David numbered
them; and they were found a hundred
and fifty three thousand, six hundred;
18 and he made seventy thousand of
them burden bearers, and eighty

thousand hewers in the mountain, and three thousand, six hundred to oversee to cause the people to work.

Chapter 3

1 And Solomon began to build the house of YAHWEH at Jerusalem, in Mount Moriyah, where He appeared to his father David, in the place that David had prepared, in the grain floor of Ornan the Jebusite.[1]

2 And he began to build on the second, in the second month, in the fourth year of his reign.

3 And these are the foundations Solomon laid, to build the house of The Elohim: the length by cubits according to the ancient measure, sixty cubits; and the breadth twenty cubits.

4 As to the porch on the front, the length, according to the breadth of the house in front, was twenty cubits, and the height a hundred and twenty; and he overlaid it inside with pure gold.

5 And the greater house he covered with cypress wood, and he covered it with good gold, and caused to go on it palms and chains.

6 And he overlaid the house with precious stones for beauty, and the gold was gold from Parvaim.

7 And he covered the house, the beams, the threshold, and the walls, and its doors with gold; and engraved cherubs on the walls.

8 And he built the Most Holy House, its length was the same as the front, as of the breadth of the house, twenty cubits, and its breadth twenty cubits; and he covered it with good gold, to six hundred talents;

9 and the weight of the nails was fifty shekels of gold, and he covered the upper rooms with gold.

10 And in the Most Holy House he made two cherubs of image work, and he overlaid them with gold.

11 And the wings of the cherubs, their length was twenty cubits: the wing of the one was five cubits, touching the wall of the house, and the other wing was five cubits, touching the wing of the other cherub;

12 and the wing of the other cherub was five cubits, touching the wall of the house, and the other wing was five cubits, touching the wing of the other cherub.

13 The wings of these cherubs spread out twenty cubits, and they were standing on their feet, and their faces were inward.

14 And he made the veil of violet, and purple, and crimson, and fine linen, and caused to go on it cherubs.

15 And at the front of the house, he made two pillars thirty five cubits high, and the capital on their tops was five cubits.

16 And he made chains, as in the oracle, and put them on the capitals of the pillars; and made a hundred pomegranates and put them on the chains.

17 And he set up the pillars before the sanctuary, one on the right, and one on the left, and called the name of that on the right Yachin, and the name of that on the left Boaz.[2]

Chapter 4

1 And he made an altar of copper, its length twenty cubits and its breadth twenty cubits, and its height ten cubits.

2 And he made the molten sea of ten cubits from its brim to its brim, circular all around; and its height was five cubits; and a line of thirty cubits compassed it all around.

---

[1] Gen 22:1, 1 Chron 21:18, 1 Chron 22:1

[2] Yachin means "*He establishes*" and Boaz means "*in Him is strength*".

3 And under it was the shape of oxen, under it and all around it for ten cubits, compassing the sea all around. Two rows of oxen were cast when it was cast.

4 It stood on twelve oxen, three facing the north, and three facing the west, and three facing the south, and three facing the east; and the sea was upon them above, and all their hinder parts inside.

5 And its thickness was a handbreadth, and its lip like the work of the lip of a cup, like a lily blossom. It received and held three thousand baths.

6 He also made ten lavers, and put five on the right hand, and five on the left, to wash in them; they washed what pertains to the burnt offering with them; and the sea was for the priests to wash in.

7 And he made ten lamp stands of gold, according to their ordinance, and placed them in the sanctuary, five on the right, and five on the left.

8 He also made ten tables, and placed them in the sanctuary, five on the right, and five on the left; and he made a hundred basins of gold.

9 And he made the court of the priests, and the great court, and doors for the court; and he overlaid their doors with copper.

10 And he placed the sea on the right side eastward, across from the south.

11 And Hiram made the pots, and the shovels, and the basins. And Hiram finished the work that he was to make for King Solomon in the house of The Elohim:

12 the two pillars, and the bowls, and the capitals on the top of the two pillars, and the two gratings to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the tops of the pillars;

13 and the pomegranates (four hundred to the two networks, two rows of pomegranates to the one grating) to cover the two bowls of the capitals that were on the face of the pillars.

14 He also made the bases; and he made lavers on the bases;

15 the one sea, and twelve oxen under it,

16 and the pots, and the shovels, and the forks, and all their vessels did his master Hiram make for King Solomon for the house of YAHWEH, of burnished copper.

17 In the plain of Jordan the king cast them, in the clay ground between Succoth and Zeredathah.

18 And Solomon made all these vessels in great abundance, so that the weight of the copper could not be searched out.

19 And Solomon made all the vessels that were for the house of The Elohim, and the golden altar, and the tables on which the Bread of the Presence rested;

20 and the lamp stands, and their lamps, for their burning was according to the ordinance, before the holy place, of refined gold;

21 and the flowers, and the lamps, and the tongs of gold (it was perfect gold);

22 and the snuffers, and the bowls, and the spoons, and the fire pans, of pure gold; and the entrance to the house, its innermost doors to the Holy of Holies, and the doors of the house to the sanctuary, of gold.

Chapter 5

1 And all the work that Solomon made for the house of YAHWEH was finished. And Solomon brought in the dedicated things of his father David, and the silver, and the gold, and all the vessels he had put among the treasures of the house of The Elohim.

2 Then Solomon gathered the elders
of Israel, and all the heads of the
tribes, rulers of the fathers of the sons
of Israel, to Jerusalem, to bring up the
ark of the covenant of YAHWEH from
the city of David; that is Mount Zion.[1]
3 And all the men of Israel were
gathered to the king in the feast; it was
the seventh month.
4 And all the elders of Israel came in,
and the Levites lifted up the ark,
5 and they brought up the ark, and
the tabernacle of the congregation,
and all the holy utensils that were in
the tabernacle; the Levitical priests
brought them up.
6 And King Solomon and all the
company of Israel who were
assembled to him before the ark were
sacrificing sheep and oxen, that could
not be counted nor numbered for
multitude.
7 And the priest brought in the ark of
the covenant of YAHWEH to its place,
to the sanctuary of the house, to the
Holy of Holies, to the place of the
wings of the cherubs;
8 and the cherubs spread out wings
over the place under the ark, and the
cherubs covered the ark and its staves
from above;
9 and so long were the staves, that
the heads of the staves could be seen
from the ark before the oracle; but
they were not seen outside. And there
it is to this day.
10 Nothing was in the ark but the
two tablets that Moses gave in Horeb,
where YAHWEH cut a covenant with
the sons of Israel when they came out
from Egypt.
11 And it happened as the priests
were going from the sanctuary (for all
the priests who were present had
sanctified themselves without
observing divisions),
12 and the Levitical singers to all of
them, to Asaph, to Heman, to
Jeduthun, and to their sons and to
their brothers, clothed in fine linen,
with cymbals, and with harps and
lyres, were standing on the east of the
altar, and with them a hundred and
twenty priests blowing with trumpets.
13 And they were as one to the
trumpeters, and to the singers to cause
one sound to be heard to praise and to
thank YAHWEH. And when they
lifted up their voice with the trumpets
and cymbals and instruments of
music, and praised YAHWEH, saying,
For He is good; for his mercy endures
forever; and a cloud filled the house,
the house of YAHWEH;
14 so that the priests could not stand
to minister because of the cloud; for
the glory of YAHWEH had filled the
house of The Elohim.

Chapter 6

1 Then Solomon spoke, YAHWEH
has said that He would dwell in the
thick darkness of the clouds.
2 And I have surely built an exalted
house for You, and a place for You to
dwell forever.
3 And the king turned his face and
blessed all the congregation of Israel.
And all the congregation of Israel was
standing.
4 And he said, Blessed be
YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, who
has spoken with His mouth to my
father David, and with His hands has
fulfilled it, saying,
5 From the day that I brought My
people out of the land of Egypt, I have
not chosen a city out of any of the
tribes of Israel to build a house for My
name to be there, and I have not

[1] Mount Zion or the Temple Mount is synonymous with the City of David, (2 Sam 5:7, 1 Kgs 8:1, Ps 48:1-3).

chosen a man to be leader over My
people Israel.
6 But I have chosen Jerusalem for
My name to be there, and I have
chosen David to be over My people
Israel.
7 And it was in the heart of my father
to build a house for the name of
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel.
8 And YAHWEH said to my father
David, Because it has been in your
heart to build a house for My name,
you have done well that it has been in
your heart.
9 But you shall not build the house,
for your son who comes forth out of
your loins, he shall build the house for
My name.
10 And YAHWEH has lifted up His
Word that He spoke, for I have risen
up in the place of my father David, and
sit on the throne of Israel, as
YAHWEH spoke. And I have built the
house for the name of YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel.
11 And I have placed the ark there,
where the covenant of YAHWEH is,
that He cut with the sons of Israel.
12 And he stood before the altar of
YAHWEH, before the congregation of
Israel, and spread out his hands.
13 Solomon had made a copper
scaffold, and put it in the middle of the
court, five cubits long, and five cubits
broad, and three cubits high; and he
stood on it, and knelt on his knees
before all the congregation of Israel,
and spread out his hands toward
Heaven.
14 And said, O YAHWEH, Elohim of
Israel, there is no Elohim like You in
the heavens and in the earth, keeping
covenant and mercy with Your
servants, who walk before You with all
their hearts;
15 who has kept with Your servant
David, my father, that which You
spoke to him; yea, You spoke with
Your mouth, and You have fulfilled
with Your hand, as at this day.
16 And now, O YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel, keep with Your
servant David, my father, that which
You spoke to him, saying, There shall
not be cut off to you a man from before
Me, sitting on the throne of Israel.
Only, if your sons watch their way to
walk in My Torah, as you have walked
before Me.
17 And now, O YAHWEH the
Elohim of Israel, let Your Word be
verified, which you spoke to Your
servant David.
18 For is it true that Elohim shall
dwell with men on the earth? Behold,
the heavens, and the Heaven of
heavens, do not contain You. How
much less this house that I have built!
19 And You have turned toward the
prayer of Your servant, and to his
supplication, O YAHWEH my Elohim,
to listen to the cry and to the prayer
that Your servant is praying before
You;
20 for Your eyes shall be open
toward this house by day and by night,
toward the place that You have said to
put Your name there, to listen to the
prayer that Your servant prays toward
this place.
21 And You shall listen to the
supplications of Your servant, and of
Your people Israel, that they pray
toward this place; and You shall hear
from Your place of dwelling, from
Heaven, and shall hear and forgive.
22 If a man shall sin against his
neighbor, and he shall lift up an oath
on him, to cause him to swear, and he
shall come and swear before Your altar
in this house,
23 You shall hear from Heaven, and
shall act, and shall judge Your
servants, to repay the wicked, to bring
his way on his own head; and to justify

the righteous, to give him according to his righteousness.

24 And if Your people Israel shall be beaten before an enemy, because they have sinned against You; and they shall return and confess Your name, and shall pray and make supplication before You in this house,

25 then You shall hear from Heaven, and shall forgive the sin of Your people Israel, and shall cause them to return to the land which You have given to them and to their fathers.

26 When the heavens shall be shut up, and there is no rain, because they have sinned against You, and they shall pray toward this place, and confess Your name, turning back from their sin because You have afflicted them,

27 then You shall hear from Heaven, and shall forgive the sin of Your servants, and of Your people Israel, because You have taught them the good way in which they should walk, and have given rain on Your land that You have given to Your people for an inheritance.

28 When there shall be famine in the land, when there is pestilence, scorching, or mildew; when there are locusts or ravagers when its enemies have distressed it in the land, in its gates, with any plague and any sickness;

29 whatever supplication, whatever prayer shall be made for any man, and for all Your people Israel, when they know each one his own plague, and his own grief, and he shall spread out his hands toward this house;

30 then You shall hear from Heaven, Your dwelling place, and shall forgive, and shall give to each according to all his ways, because You know his heart; for You, You only, have known the heart of the sons of men;

31 so that they shall fear You, to walk in Your ways all the days that they shall live on the face of the land that You have given to our fathers.

32 And, also, to the foreigner who is not of Your people Israel, and he has come from a distant land for Your great name's sake, and Your mighty hand, and Your stretched out arm; and they shall come and pray toward this house,

33 then You shall hear from Heaven, from Your dwelling place, and shall do according to all that the stranger calls to You; so that all the people of the earth shall know Your name, so as to fear You, as Your people Israel, and to know that Your name is called on this house that I have built.[1] *(Eph 3:15)*

34 When Your people shall go out to battle against its enemies in the way that You shall send them, and they shall pray to You toward this city that You have chosen, and the house that I have built for Your name;

35 then You shall hear from Heaven their prayer and their supplication, and shall maintain their cause.

36 When they sin against You (for there is not a man who does not sin) and You shall be angry with them and shall give them up before an enemy, and their captors shall take them captive, to a land distant or near;

37 and they shall return to their heart in the land from which they have been taken captive, and shall turn back and make supplication to You in the land of their captivity, saying, We have sinned, we have acted perversely and have done wickedly;

38 yea, they shall turn back to You with all their heart, and with all their soul, in the land of their captivity,

[1] Just as the physical House of YAHWEH was called by His name, the spiritual House of Yahweh (His congregation) is also called by His name,(Eph 3:15, Joh 17:11, 1 Chron 28:8).

where they have been taken captive, and they shall pray toward their land that You have given to their fathers, and toward the city that You have chosen, and toward the house that I have built for Your name;
39 then You shall hear from Heaven, from Your dwelling place their prayer and their supplications, and shall maintain their cause, and forgive Your people who have sinned against You.[1]
40 Now, My Elohim, I beseech You, let Your eyes be open and Your ears attentive to the prayer of this place;
41 and now, O YAHWEH Elohim, rise to Your rest; You, and the ark of Your strength; O YAHWEH Elohim, Your priests are clothed with salvation (Y'shua*), and Your saints rejoice in goodness.
42 O YAHWEH Elohim, do not turn away the face of Your Messiah; remember the good deeds of Your servant David.

Chapter 7

1 And when Solomon finished praying, then fire came down from Heaven and consumed the burnt offering and the sacrifices; and the glory of YAHWEH filled the house;[2]
2 and the priests were not able to go into the house of YAHWEH, because the glory of YAHWEH had filled the house of YAHWEH.
3 And all the sons of Israel were watching, when the fire came down, and the glory of YAHWEH was on the house and they bowed their noses to the earth, on the pavement, and worshiped, and gave thanks to YAHWEH: for He is good, for His mercy endures forever.
4 And the king and all the people were offering a sacrifice before YAHWEH;
5 and King Solomon offered the sacrifice from the herd, twenty two thousand, and from the flock, a hundred and twenty thousand; all the people dedicated the house of The Elohim. *(1Kgs 8:54-62)*
6 And the priests were standing over their charges, and the Levites with instruments of music to YAHWEH, that David the king had made to give thanks to YAHWEH (for His mercy endures forever) when David praised by their hand; and the priests were blowing trumpets before them, and all Israel was standing.
7 And Solomon dedicated the middle of the court that was before the house of YAHWEH; for he had offered there the burnt offerings, and the fat of the peace offerings; for the copper altar that Solomon had made was not able to contain the burnt offering, and the food offering, and the fat.
8 And Solomon at that time kept the feast seven days, and all Israel with him, a great company, from the entering in of Hamath to the river of Egypt.
9 And they made a solemn assembly on the eighth day, because they kept the dedication of the altar seven days, and the feast seven days.[3]
10 And on the twenty third day of the seventh month, he sent the people to their tents, rejoicing and glad of heart, for the goodness that

[1] Verses 36-39- The land of Israel is always the land of Israel. Because they went into Diaspora it does not make the land of their captivity the new land of Israel. Some today have a false perception that America is the new land of Israel, which is not grounded anywhere in scripture.

[2] Lev 9:23-24- A similar occurrence happened with Moses and Aaron. Also, the house was finished in the 8th month, but dedicated in the 7th at Sukkot 1 Kgs 6:38.

[3] This is the feast of Sukkot and The Last Great Day.

YAHWEH had done to David, and to Solomon, and to His people Israel.

11 And Solomon finished the house of YAHWEH, and the king's house;[1] and all that came to the heart of Solomon to do in the house of YAHWEH, and in his own house, he was caused to prosper.

12 And YAHWEH appeared to Solomon by night,[2] and said to him, I have heard your prayer, and have chosen this place to Myself for a house of sacrifice.

13 If I shut up the heavens and there is no rain, and if I command the locusts to consume the land, and if I send pestilence among My people,

14 and My people, on whom My name is called, shall be humbled[3], and shall pray, and shall seek My face, and shall turn back from their evil ways, then I will hear from Heaven, and will forgive their sin, and will heal their land. *(Lev 26:40-42)*

15 Now My eyes shall be open, and My ears attentive to the prayer of this place;

16 and now I have chosen and sanctified this house for My name to be there forever; yea, My eyes and My heart shall be there all the days.

17 And you, if you shall walk before Me as your father David walked, even to do according to all that I have commanded you, and shall keep My statutes and My judgments,

18 then I shall establish the throne of your kingdom, as I covenanted with your father David, saying, There shall not be cut off a man to you who rules in Israel.

19 And if you turn away, and you shall forsake My commandments and My statutes that I have placed before you, and shall go and serve other gods and shall bow yourselves to them,

20 then I shall uproot them up from off My land[4] that I have given them, and this house that I have sanctified for My name I shall cast away from before My face, and I shall give it for a proverb and a byword among all the nations.

21 And this house that was exalted to everyone who pass by it, they shall shudder and say, Why has YAHWEH done this to this land and to this house?

22 And they shall say, Because they have forsaken YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers, who brought them out from the land of Egypt, and have laid hold on other gods and have bowed themselves to them, and served them; for this He has brought on them all this evil.

Chapter 8

1 And it happened, at the end of twenty years, Solomon built the house of YAHWEH, and his own house.

2 As to the cities that Hiram had given to Solomon, Solomon had built them, and he caused the sons of Israel to live there.

3 And Solomon went to Hamath-Zobah and prevailed over it.

4 And he built Tadmor in the wilderness, and all the store cities that he built in Hamath.

5 And he built Beth-Horon the upper, and Beth-Horon the lower, as fortified cities, with walls, two leaved doors, and bars;

6 and Baalath, and all the store cities that Solomon had, and all the chariot cities, and the cities of the horsemen,

---

1 This is 13 yrs from start to finish 1Kgs 7:1, 9:10, 1 Kgs 6:37-38.

2 This is Yahweh's 2nd appearance 1Kgs 9:2.

3 The Hebrew literally means to bend the knee and is why kneeling when praying is a sign of humility.

4 The land of Israel belongs to YHWH, Lev 25:23.

and all the desire of Solomon that he wanted to build in Jerusalem, and in Lebanon, and in all the land of his dominion.
7 All the people who were left of the Hittites, and the Amorites, and the Perizzites, and the Hivites, and the Jebusites, who were not of Israel,
8 (they were of their sons who were left after them in the land, whom the sons of Israel had not exterminated) Solomon caused them to go for forced labor to this day.
9 And none of the sons of Israel did Solomon make slaves for his work, but they were men of war, and commanders of his officers, and commanders of his chariots, and his horsemen.
10 And these were the commanders of the deputies King Solomon had, two hundred and fifty who were rulers among the people.
11 And Solomon had brought up Pharaoh's daughter from the city of David to the house that he had built for her. For he said, My wife shall not live in the house of David, the king of Israel, for they are holy, to whom the ark of YAHWEH has come.[1]
12 Then Solomon offered burnt offerings to YAHWEH on the altar of YAHWEH that he had built before the porch,
13 even as the matter of every day required, offering according to the commandment of Moses, on the Sabbaths, and on the new moons, and on the appointed feasts three times in the year, in the Feast of Unleavened Bread, and in the Feast of Weeks, and in the Feast of Booths.
14 And according to the decree of his father David, he made the divisions of the priests stand over their service, and of the Levites over their charges, to praise and to minister before the priests, according to the matter of every day, and the gatekeepers in their courses at every gate, for so was the command of David the man of The Elohim.
15 And they did not turn aside from the king's command as to the priests and the Levites in regard to any matter, and to the treasures.
16 And all the work of Solomon was prepared to the day of the foundation of the house of YAHWEH, and until its completion. The house of YAHWEH was finished.
17 And Solomon went to Ezion-Geber, and to Eloth on the seacoast, in the land of Edom.
18 And Hiram sent ships to him by the hand of his servants, and servants who knew the sea. And they went with the servants of Solomon to Ophir, and took from there four hundred and fifty talents of gold, and brought it to King Solomon.

Chapter 9

1 And the queen of Sheba had heard of Solomon's fame. And she came to test Solomon with sharp questions at Jerusalem, with a very great train, and camels bearing spices, and gold in abundance, and precious stones. And she came in to Solomon and spoke with him all that was in her heart.
2 And Solomon told her all her matters; and there was nothing hidden from Solomon that he did not declare to her.
3 And the queen of Sheba saw the wisdom of Solomon, and the house that he had built,
4 and the food of his table, and the sitting of his servants, and the standing of his ministers, and their clothing, and his cupbearers, and their

[1] The ark of YHWH and sanctuary was in the City of David, which was called Mount Zion, 2 Sam 5:7, 2 Chron 5:2.

clothing, and his burnt offerings that he offered up in the house of YAHWEH; and there was no more spirit in her.
5 And she said to the king, The word that I heard in my land concerning your matters and concerning your wisdom is true.
6 But I had given no credence to their words, until I had come and my eyes had seen. And, behold, there was not declared to me half of the greatness of your wisdom. You exceeded the report that I heard.
7 Oh the happiness of your men, and the happiness of your servants, these who stand before you continually and hear your wisdom!
8 May YAHWEH your Elohim be blessed, who has delighted in you, to put you on His throne to be king for YAHWEH your Elohim. In the love of your Elohim toward Israel, to make it stand forever, He has put you over them as king, to do judgment and righteousness.
9 And she gave to the king a hundred and twenty talents of gold, and spices in great plenty, and precious stones. And there has not been any spice as that which the queen of Sheba gave to King Solomon.
10 And also the servants of Hiram and the servants of Solomon, who brought in gold from Ophir, brought in algum trees and precious stones.
11 And the king fashioned the algum trees into steps for the house of YAHWEH, and for the king's house, and lyres and harps for singers. And there was none like these before in the land of Judah.
12 And King Solomon gave to the queen of Sheba all her desire that she asked, besides that which she had brought to the king. And she turned and went to her land, she and her servants.
13 And the weight of the gold that came to Solomon in one year was six hundred and sixty six talents of gold,
14 besides that from the traders, and that the merchants were bringing in. And all the kings of Arabia, and the rulers of the land, were bringing in gold and silver to Solomon.
15 And King Solomon made two hundred bucklers of beaten gold; he put six hundred shekels of beaten gold on the one buckler;
16 and three hundred shields of beaten gold; he put three hundred shekels of gold on the one shield. And the king put them in the house of the forest of Lebanon.
17 And the king made a great throne of ivory and overlaid it with pure gold;
18 and there were six steps to the throne, and a footstool of gold was fastened to the throne; and hands were on this side and on that, at the place of the sitting; and two lions were standing near the hands;
19 and twelve lions were standing there on the six steps on this side and on that. There was not any such made for any kingdom.
20 And all the drinking vessels of King Solomon were gold, and all the vessels of the house of the forest of Lebanon of refined gold. Silver was not counted for anything in the days of Solomon.
21 For the ships of the king were going to Tarshish with the servants of Hiram. Once in three years the ships came from Tarshish bearing gold, and silver, ivory, and apes, and peacocks.
22 And King Solomon increased more than any of the kings of the earth for riches and wisdom.
23 And all the kings of the earth were seeking the face of Solomon, to hear his wisdom that The Elohim had put in his heart.
24 And they were each bringing his

present, vessels of silver and vessels of
gold, and garments, weapons, and
spices, horses and mules, a rate year
by year.
25 And Solomon had four thousand
stalls for horses and chariots, and
twelve thousand horsemen. And he
put them in the chariot cities, and with
the king in Jerusalem.
26 And he ruled over all the kings
from the River even to the land of the
Philistines, and to the border of Egypt.
27 And the king made silver in
Jerusalem as the stones. And he made
the cedars as the sycamores in the
Shefelah for abundance.
28 And they brought out horses
from Egypt to Solomon, and from all
the lands.
29 And the rest of the acts of
Solomon, the first and the last, are
they not written in the words of
Nathan the prophet, and in the
prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and
in the visions of Iddo the seer
concerning Jeroboam the son of
Nebat?
30 And Solomon reigned in
Jerusalem over all Israel forty years.
31 And Solomon lay with his fathers,
and they buried him in the city of his
father David. And his son Rehoboam
reigned in his place.

Chapter 10

1 And Rehoboam went to Shechem,
for all Israel had come to Shechem to
make him king.
2 And it happened, when Jeroboam
the son of Nebat heard in Egypt,
because he had fled from the face of
Solomon the king, Jeroboam returned
from Egypt.
3 And they sent and called for him.
And Jeroboam and all Israel came and
spoke to Rehoboam, saying,
4 Your father made our yoke hard;
and now lighten the hard service of
your father, and his heavy yoke that he
put on us, and we shall serve you.
5 And he said to them, Come again
to me in three days; and the people
went away.
6 And King Rehoboam consulted
with the aged men who had stood
before his father Solomon when he
was alive, saying, How do you advise
to answer this people a word?
7 And they spoke to him, saying, If
you will be good to this people, and
will please them, and will speak good
words to them, then they will be your
servants forever.
8 But he left the counsel of the aged
men who had advised him, and
consulted with the young men who
had grown up with him, those
standing before him.
9 And he said to them, What do you
advise that we shall answer this people
that have spoken to me, saying,
Lighten the yoke that your father put
on us?
10 And the young men who had
grown up with him spoke to him,
saying, You shall say this to the people
who have spoken to you, saying, Your
father made our yoke heavy, and you
lighten our yoke, this you shall say to
them, My little finger is thicker than
the loins of my father;
11 and now, my father laid a heavy
yoke on you, and I will surely add to
your yoke; my father chastised you
with whips, and I with scorpions.
12 And Jeroboam and all the people
came to Rehoboam on the third day,
as the king commanded, saying,
Return to me on the third day.
13 And the king answered them
sharply, and King Rehoboam left the
counsel of the aged men,
14 and spoke to them according to
the counsel of the young men, saying,
My father made your yoke heavy, and I

will surely add to it; my father chastised you with whips, and I with scorpions.
15 And the king did not listen to the
people, for the revolution was from The Elohim, so that YAHWEH might lift up His Word that He spoke by the hand of Ahijah the Shilonite to Jeroboam the son of Nebat.
16 And all Israel saw that the king
did not listen to them, and the people sent back to the king, saying, What part do we have in David? Yea, there is no inheritance in the son of Jesse. Each to your tents, O Israel! Now see to your house, David! And all Israel went to their tents.
17 As to the sons of Israel who lived
in the cities of Judah, Rehoboam reigned over them.
18 And King Rehoboam sent
Hadoram who was over the forced labor. And the sons of Israel threw stones at him, and he died. And King Rehoboam was alerted to mount up into a chariot to flee to Jerusalem.
19 And Israel rebelled against the
house of David to this day.

Chapter 11

1 And Rehoboam came to Jerusalem
and called up the house of Judah and Benjamin, a hundred and eighty thousand chosen warriors, to fight with Israel, to bring back the kingdom to Rehoboam.
2 And the Word of YAHWEH came
to Shemaiah, a man of The Elohim, saying,
3 Speak to Rehoboam the son of
Solomon the king of Judah, and to all Israel in Judah and Benjamin, saying,
4 So says YAHWEH, You shall not
go up, nor fight with your brothers. Each return to his house, for this thing has come from Me. And they heard the Words of YAHWEH, and turned back from going against Jeroboam.
5 And Rehoboam lived in Jerusalem,
and built cities for defense in Judah.
6 And he built Bethlehem, and Etam,
and Tekoa,
7 and Beth-Zur, and Shoco, and
Adullam,
8 and Gath, and Mareshah, and
Ziph,
9 and Adoraim, and Lachish, and
Azekah,
10 and Zorah, and Aijalon, and
Hebron. These were in Judah and in Benjamin as cities of defense.
11 And he made the strengthened the
fortifications, and put commanders in them, and treasures of food and oil and wine.
12 And he put in every single city
shields and spears, and made them exceedingly strong. And Judah and Benjamin were his.
13 And the priests and the Levites in
all Israel stationed themselves by him, out of all their territory.
14 For the Levites had abandoned
their pasture land and their property. And they came to Judah and to Jerusalem; for Jeroboam and his sons had cast them out from acting as priests to YAHWEH.
15 And he made stand priests for
himself for the high places, and for the demon he-goats, and for the calves that he made.[1]
16 And after them, out of all the
tribes of Israel, those who gave their heart to seek YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, came to Jerusalem to sacrifice

[1] It was a cultic practice to worship devil-like he-goats and there was even a half/man half/goat deity called Pan. This is why YHWH restricted the Israelites from shaving the corner of their beards and having a devil-like goat tee, as He did not want Israel to resemble false pagan deities. (Lev 17:1-7, Lev 19:27, 21:5, Jer 9:25-26).

to YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers.

17 And they made the kingdom of Judah stronger, and made Rehoboam the son of Solomon stronger, for three years, because they walked in the way of David and Solomon for three years.

18 And Rehoboam took a wife for himself, Mahalath, the daughter of Jerimoth, the son of David, and Abihail the daughter of Eliab, the son of Jesse.

19 And she bore to him sons: Jeush, and Shamariah, and Zaham.

20 And after her, he took Maachah the daughter of Absalom, and she bore to him Abijah, and Attai, and Ziza, and Shelomith.

21 And Rehoboam loved Maachah the daughter of Absalom above all his wives and his concubines (for he had taken eighteen wives, and sixty concubines; and he fathered twenty eight sons and sixty daughters).

22 And Rehoboam appointed Abijah the son of Maachah the head, as ruler among his brothers, in order to cause him to reign.

23 And he had understanding, and spread out all his sons to all the lands of Judah and Benjamin, to all the cities of defense, and gave them provision in abundance. And he demanded a multitude of wives.

Chapter 12

1 And it happened, when the kingdom of Rehoboam was settled, and when he was strong, he forsook the Torah of YAHWEH, and all Israel with him.

2 And it happened in the fifth year of King Rehoboam, Shishak the king of Egypt came against Jerusalem because they had acted unfaithfully against YAHWEH.

3 He came with a thousand and two hundred chariots, and with sixty thousand horsemen. And there was no counting the people who came with him out of Egypt: Lubim, Sukkiim, and Ethiopians.

4 And he captured the cities of defense in Judah and came to Jerusalem.

5 And Shemaiah the prophet came to Rehoboam and the leaders of Judah who had gathered to Jerusalem from the face of Shishak. And he said to them, So says YAHWEH, You have forsaken Me; and I also have forsaken you in the hand of Shishak.

6 And the leaders of Israel and the king were humbled. And they said, YAHWEH is righteous.

7 And when YAHWEH saw that they were humbled, the Word of YAHWEH came to Shemaiah, saying, They have been humbled. I will not destroy them, and I will give to them a little deliverance. And I will not pour out My fury on Jerusalem by the hand of Shishak.

8 But they shall become his servants, and they shall know My service, and the service of the kingdoms of the lands.

9 And Shishak the king of Egypt came up against Jerusalem, and took the treasures of the house of YAHWEH, and the treasures of the king's house. He took all, and he took the golden shields that Solomon had made.

10 And King Rehoboam made copper shields in their place, and deposited them into the hand of the chiefs of the runners who kept the gate of the king's house.

11 And it happened, from the time the king went to the house of YAHWEH, the runners came in and lifted them up, and brought them back to the guard room.

12 And when he was humbled, the

wrath of YAHWEH turned away from him, so as not to destroy him completely. And also good things were found in Judah.

13 And King Rehoboam made himself strong in Jerusalem, and reigned. For Rehoboam was a son of forty one years when he began to reign, and he reigned seventeen years in Jerusalem, the city that YAHWEH had chosen to put His name there,[1] out of all the tribes of Israel. And his mother's name was Naamah the Ammonitess.

14 And he did the evil, for he had not resolved in his heart to seek YAHWEH.

15 And the acts of Rehoboam, the first and the last, are they not written in the records of Shemaiah the prophet, and of Iddo the seer as to genealogy? And the wars of Rehoboam and Jeroboam lasted all their days.

16 And Rehoboam lay with his fathers, and was buried in the city of David. And his son Abijah reigned in his place.

Chapter 13

1 In the eighteenth year of King Jeroboam, Abijah began to reign over Judah.

2 He reigned three years in Jerusalem. And the name of his mother was Michaiah the daughter of Uriel, from Gibeah. And there was war between Abijah and Jeroboam.

3 And Abijah joined the battle with an army of mighty men of war, four hundred thousand chosen men. And Jeroboam had set the battle in order with him, with eight hundred thousand chosen men, mighty men of valor.

4 And Abijah stood up on Mount Zemaraim in the hills of Ephraim, and said, Hear me, Jeroboam and all Israel.

5 Do you not know that YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel has given the kingdom to David over Israel forever, to him and to his sons, a covenant of salt?

6 And Jeroboam the son of Nebat, the servant of Solomon, the son of David has risen up and rebelled against his master.

7 And vain men gathered to him, sons of worthlessness, and they made themselves strong against Rehoboam the son of Solomon; and Rehoboam was a youth and tender of heart, and could not be strong against them.

8 And now you think to be strong against the kingdom of YAHWEH in the hand of the sons of David. And you are a great host; yea, with you are calves of gold that Jeroboam has made as gods to you.

9 Have you not thrown out the priests of YAHWEH, the sons of Aaron, and the Levites, and have made priests to yourselves like the peoples of the lands? Whoever comes to consecrate himself with a bull, a son of the herd, and seven rams, even he becomes a priest to no Elohim.

10 As for us, YAHWEH is our Elohim, and we have not forsaken Him; yea, priests are serving YAHWEH, the sons of Aaron and the Levites, in the work,

11 and are offering to YAHWEH burnt offerings morning by morning, and evening by evening, and sweet incense, and the Showbread on the pure table, and the golden lamp stand and its lamps, to burn evening by evening. For we are keeping the charge of YAHWEH our Elohim. And surely you have forsaken Him.

12 And, behold, Elohim is with us at our head, and His priests, and the

[1] YAHWEH's name was to dwell in Jerusalem forever, His eternal headquarters.

trumpets, the signal to sound for battle against you. O sons of Israel, do not fight with YAHWEH, the Elohim of your fathers, for you shall not prosper.

13 But Jeroboam had made the ambush circle to come in behind them, and they were before Judah, and the ambush was behind them.

14 And Judah turned. And, behold, the battle was against them before and behind. And they cried to YAHWEH, and the priests were blowing with trumpets.

15 And the men of Judah shouted. And it was, at the shouting of the men of Judah, and The Elohim struck Jeroboam and all Israel before Abijah and Judah.

16 And the sons of Israel fled from the face of Judah, and Elohim gave them into their hand.

17 And Abijah and his people struck them with a great blow, and five hundred thousand chosen men of Israel fell slain.

18 And the sons of Israel were humbled at that time, and the sons of Judah were strong. For they leaned on YAHWEH the Elohim of their fathers.

19 And Abijah pursued Jeroboam and captured cities from him: Bethel and its villages, and Jeshanah and its villages, and Ephrain and its villages.

20 And Jeroboam did not regain power any more in Abijah's days. And YAHWEH struck him, and he died.

21 And Abijah became mighty, and he took fourteen wives to himself. And he fathered twenty two sons and sixteen daughters.

22 And the rest of the acts of Abijah, and his ways, and his words, are written in the inquiry of the prophet Iddo.

Chapter 14

1 And Abijah lay with his fathers, and they buried him in the city of David. And his son Asa reigned in his place. In his days the land was quiet ten years.

2 And Asa did the good and the right in the eyes of YAHWEH his Elohim.

3 And he removed the altars of the alien, and the high places, and broke down the pillars, and cut down the Asherahs.

4 And he commanded Judah to seek YAHWEH the Elohim of their fathers, and to do the Torah and the commandment.

5 And he removed the high places and the images out of all the cities of Judah. And the kingdom was quiet before him.

6 And he built fenced cities in Judah, for the land had quiet. And there was no war with him in these years, because YAHWEH had given him rest.

7 And he said to Judah, Let us build these cities, and walls around them, and towers, two leaved gates, and bars, while the land is before us, because we have sought YAHWEH our Elohim. We have sought, and He has given rest to us all around. And they built and prospered.

8 And Asa had an army bearing shields and spears three hundred thousand out of Judah, and two hundred eighty thousand out of Benjamin, bearing shields and drawing bows; all these were mighty men of valor.

9 And Zerah the Ethiopian came out against them with an army of a thousand thousands, and three hundred chariots. And he came to Mareshah.

10 And Asa went out before him and they set the battle in the valley of Zephathah at Mareshah.

11 And Asa called to YAHWEH his Elohim, and said, O YAHWEH, it is

nothing to You to help between the mighty and him with no strength. Help us, O YAHWEH our Elohim; for we rest on You, and in Your name we come against this host. O YAHWEH, You are our Elohim. Do not let man hold out against You.

12 And YAHWEH struck the Ethiopians before Asa and before Judah. And the Ethiopians fled.

13 And Asa and the people with him pursued them even to Gerar. And all of the Ethiopians fell, for there was not one left alive to them; because they had broken before YAHWEH, and before His army. And they carried away very much plunder.

14 And they struck all the cities around Gerar, for the fear of YAHWEH had come on them. And they plundered all the cities, for there was much booty in them.

15 And also they struck the tents of cattle, and they captured sheep and camels in abundance. And they returned to Jerusalem.

Chapter 15

1 And the Spirit of Elohim came on Azariah the son of Oded.

2 And he went out before Asa, and said to him, Hear me, Asa, and all Judah and Benjamin. YAHWEH is with you while you are with Him. And if you seek Him, He will be found by you. But if you forsake Him, He will forsake you.[1]

3 Yea, Israel has been without a true Elohim many days, and without a teaching priest, and without The Torah.

4 And they turned in their distress to YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, and they sought Him, and He was found by them.

5 And in those days there was no peace to him going out, or to him coming in, for much tumult was on all those living in the lands.

6 And they were broken in pieces, nation against nation, and city against city. For Elohim troubled them with every distress.

7 But you, you be strong, and do not let your hands be feeble, for there is a reward for your work.

8 And when Asa heard these words, and the prophecy of Oded the prophet, he made himself strong and removed the hateful idols out of the land of Judah and Benjamin; and out of the cities that he had captured from the hills of Ephraim. And he restored the altar of YAHWEH that was before the porch of YAHWEH.

9 And he gathered all Judah and Benjamin, and the strangers with them out of Ephraim, and Manasseh, and out of Simeon. For they had fallen to him in abundance from Israel when they saw that YAHWEH his Elohim was with him.

10 And they were gathered to Jerusalem in the third month of the fifteenth year of the reign of Asa.

11 And they sacrificed to YAHWEH on that day, from the plunder they had brought in, seven hundred oxen and seven thousand sheep.

12 And they entered into the covenant to seek YAHWEH the Elohim of their fathers with all their heart and with all their soul.

13 And everyone who did not seek after YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel was put to death, from the small to the great, from man and to woman.

14 And they swore to YAHWEH with a loud voice, and with shouting, and with trumpets, and with rams' horns.

[1] As long as someone is obedient and trusting in YHWH, He will be with them, but if they pridefully forsake His Torah and way, then He will also forsake them.

15 And all Judah rejoiced on the oath, for they had sworn with all their heart; and they sought Him with all their desire. And He was found by them. And YAHWEH gave rest to them all around.

16 And also Maachah the mother of Asa the king, he removed her from being queen, because she had made a horrible image for an Asherah[1]. And Asa cut down her horrible image, and crushed and burned it by the torrent Kidron.

17 Yet the high places were not removed from Israel. Only, the heart of Asa was perfect all his days.

18 And he brought the dedicated things of his father, and his own dedicated things, into the house of The Elohim, silver and gold and vessels.

19 And there was no war until the thirty fifth year of the reign of Asa.

Chapter 16

1 In the thirty sixth year of the reign of Asa, Baasha the king of Israel came up against Judah. And he built Ramah, so as not to allow any going out and coming in to Asa the king of Judah.

2 And Asa brought out silver and gold from the treasures of the house of YAHWEH, and from the king's house; and he sent to Ben-Hadad the king of Syria, who lived in Damascus, saying,

3 A covenant shall be between me and you, and between my father and your father. Behold, I have sent you silver and gold. Go, break your covenant with Baasha the king of Israel, and he shall go away from me.

4 And Ben-Hadad listened to King Asa, and sent the commanders of his armies to the cities of Israel. And they struck Ijon, and Dan, and Abel-Maim, and all the store cities of Naphtali.

[1] Asherah was a Phonetician goddess.

5 And it happened, when Baasha heard, he stopped building Ramah and let his work rest.

6 And Asa the king took all Judah; and they carried away the stones of Ramah, and its wood, with which Baasha had built. And he built Geba and Mizpah with them.

7 And at that time Hanani the seer came to Asa the king of Judah and said to him, Because you leaned on the king of Syria, and you have not leaned on YAHWEH your Elohim, therefore the army of the king of Syria has escaped from your hand.

8 Did not the Ethiopians and the Lubim become a very great army for multitude, for chariots and for horsemen? And when you leaned on YAHWEH, He gave them into your hand.

9 For the eyes of YAHWEH run to and fro in all the earth in order to be strong for those with their heart perfect toward Him. You have acted foolishly in this. For this reason, from now on there shall be wars with you.

10 And Asa was angry with the seer; and he gave him up to the house of stocks. For he was in a rage with him for this. And Asa oppressed some of the people at that time.

11 And, behold, the acts of Asa, the first and the last, behold, they are written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel.

12 And Asa was diseased in his feet in the thirty ninth year of his reign, until his disease was severe. And also in his disease he did not seek YAHWEH, but among the healers.[2]

13 And Asa lay with his fathers, and died in the forty first year of his reign.

14 And they buried him in his grave which he had made for himself in the city of David, and laid him in the bed

[2] Asa put his trust in doctors for healing instead of Yahweh.

which he had filled with sweet perfumes and kinds of aromatic herbs, with a mixture of ointments by art. And they burned a great burning for him.

Chapter 17

1 And his son Jehoshaphat reigned in his place. And he made himself strong against Israel.

2 And he put an army in all the fortified cities in Judah, and placed command posts in the land of Judah, and in the cities of Ephraim which his father Asa had captured.

3 And YAHWEH was with Jehoshaphat, for he walked in the first ways of his father David; and he did not seek to the Baals.

4 For he sought to the Elohim of his father, and he walked in His commandments, and not according to the deeds of Israel.

5 And YAHWEH confirmed the kingdom in his hand. And all of Judah gave a present to Jehoshaphat. And he had riches and honor in abundance.

6 And his heart was exalted in the ways of YAHWEH. And he again removed the high places and the Asherahs out of Judah.

7 And in the third year of his reign, he sent for his leaders, for Ben-Hail, and for Obadiah, and for Zechariah, and for Nethaneel, and for Michaiah, in order to teach in the cities of Judah.

8 And with them were the Levites: Shemaiah, and Nethaniah, and Zebadiah, and Asahel, and Shemiramoth, and Jehonathan, and Adonijah, and Tobijah, and Tobadonijah, the Levites. And with them were Elishama and Jehoram, the priests.

9 And they taught in Judah; and with them was the book of the Torah of YAHWEH. And they went around to all the cities of Judah, and taught among the people.

10 And the fear of YAHWEH was on all the kingdoms of the lands around Judah; and they did not fight with Jehoshaphat.

11 And from the Philistines, they were bringing in a present to Jehoshaphat, and silver as tribute. Also, the Arabians were bringing flocks to him, seven thousand, seven hundred rams; and seven thousand, seven hundred he-goats.

12 And Jehoshaphat went on to be greater, exceedingly. And he built fortresses and store cities in Judah.

13 And there was much work for him in the cities of Judah. And the men of war, mighty men of valor, resided in Jerusalem.

14 And these were their numbers, for the house of their fathers: Of Judah, the commanders of thousands, Adnah the chief, and with him three hundred thousand mighty men of valor.

15 And on his hand, Jehohanan the chief, and two hundred and eighty thousand with him.

16 And on his hand, Amasiah the son of Zichri, who volunteered himself to YAHWEH; and with him two hundred thousand mighty men of valor.

17 And of Benjamin, Eliada a mighty man, and two hundred thousand armed men with bow and shield with him.

18 And on his hand, Jehozabad; and with him a hundred and eighty thousand ready for war.

19 These waited on the king, besides those whom the king put in the fortified cities in all Judah.

Chapter 18

1 And Jehoshaphat had riches and honor in abundance, and contracted a marriage with Ahab.

2 And at the end of years, he went down to Ahab, to Samaria. And Ahab sacrificed sheep and oxen in abundance for him, and for the people with him. And he persuaded him to go up to Ramoth-Gilead.

3 And Ahab the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, Will you go with me to Ramoth-Gilead? And he said to him, As I am, so are you; and as your people, so my people, even with you in battle.

4 And Jehoshaphat said to the king of Israel, Please seek the Word of YAHWEH today.

5 And the king of Israel gathered the prophets, four hundred men. And he said to them, Shall we go to Ramoth-Gilead to battle, or shall I forbear? And they said, Go up, and The Elohim will give it into the king's hand.

6 And Jehoshaphat said, Is there not a prophet of YAHWEH still here, and we shall seek from him?

7 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, One man is still here, to seek YAHWEH from him. But I hate him, for he does not prophesy good about me, but evil all his days. He is Micaiah the son of Imla. And Jehoshaphat said, Let not the king say so.

8 And the king of Israel called to a certain eunuch and said, Bring Micaiah the son of Imla quickly.

9 And the king of Israel and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah were sitting, each on his throne, clothed with robes. And they were sitting in a grain floor at the entrance of the gate of Samaria. And all the prophets were prophesying before them.

10 And Zedekiah the son of Chenaanah made horns of iron for himself, and said, So says YAHWEH, With these you shall push Syria until they are crushed.

11 And all the prophets were prophesying so, saying, Go up to Ramoth-Gilead and prosper. And, YAHWEH has given it into the king's hand.

12 And the messenger who had gone to call Micaiah spoke to him, saying, Behold, the words of the prophets speak with one mouth, good toward the king. And, please let your word be like one of theirs, and you shall speak good.

13 And Micaiah said, As YAHWEH lives, surely that which my Elohim says, that I shall speak.

14 And he came to the king. And the king said to him, Micaiah, shall we go up to Ramoth-Gilead to battle or shall I forbear? And he said, Go up and prosper, for they will be given into your hand.

15 And the king said to him, Until how many times must I put you on oath that you speak nothing to me but the truth in the name of YAHWEH?

16 And he said, I have seen all Israel scattered on the mountains, as sheep with no shepherd for them; and YAHWEH said, For there is no master to these. Let them return, each man to his own house in peace.

17 And the king of Israel said to Jehoshaphat, Did I not say to you that he does not prophesy good concerning me, but rather evil?

18 And he said, Then hear the Word of YAHWEH: I have seen YAHWEH sitting on His throne, and all the host of the heavens standing on His right and His left.

19 And YAHWEH said, Who shall entice Ahab the king of Israel, and he shall go and fall in Ramoth-Gilead? And saying, this one said one thing, and saying, this one said one thing.

20 And a spirit went out and stood before YAHWEH, and said, I will entice him. And YAHWEH said, With what?

21 And he said, I will go out and
become a lying spirit in the mouth of
all his prophets. And He said, You
shall entice, and also, you are able. Go
out and do so.
22 And now, behold, YAHWEH has
put a lying spirit in the mouth of these
your prophets. And YAHWEH has
spoken evil against you.
23 And Zedekiah the son of
Chenaanah came near and struck
Micaiah on the cheek, and said, Which
way did the Spirit of YAHWEH cross
from me to speak to you?
24 And Micaiah said, Behold, you
shall see in that day when you go from
one room into another to hide.
25 And the king of Israel said, Take
Micaiah and return him to Amon the
ruler of the city, and to Joash the
king's son.
26 And you shall say, So says the
king. Put this one in prison and cause
him to eat the bread of pain, and the
water of pain, until my return in
peace.
27 And Micaiah said, If you indeed
return in peace, YAHWEH has not
spoken by me. And he said, Hear, O
peoples, all of them!
28 And the king of Israel went up,
and Jehoshaphat the king of Judah, to
Ramoth-Gilead.
29 And the king of Israel said to
Jehoshaphat, I will disguise myself,
and go into battle; and you put on your
robes. And the king of Israel disguised
himself. And they went into battle.
30 And the king of Syria
commanded the commanders of the
chariots that he had, saying, You shall
not fight with small or great, only with
the king of Israel by himself.
31 And it happened, when the
commanders of the chariots saw
Jehoshaphat, they said, He is the king
of Israel. And they turned around to
fight against him. And Jehoshaphat
cried out. And YAHWEH helped him.
And Elohim drew them away from
him.
32 And it happened, when the
commanders of the chariots saw that it
was not the king of Israel, they turned
away from following him.
33 And a man drew with a bow in his
simplicity, and struck the king of
Israel between the joints and the
breastplate. And he said to the
charioteer, Turn your hand, and you
shall bring me out of the battle, for I
have been wounded.
34 And the battle increased on that
day, and the king of Israel was made to
stand in the chariot before Syria until
the evening. And he died at the time of
the going of the sun.

Chapter 19

1 And Jehoshaphat the king of Judah
returned to his house in peace to
Jerusalem.
2 And Jehu the son of Hanani, the
seer, went out before him and said to
King Jehoshaphat, Do you love to help
the bad one, and those who hate
YAHWEH, and by this bring wrath on
you from before the face of
YAHWEH?
3 But good things have been found
with you, for you have burned the
Asherahs out of the land, and have
fixed your heart to seek The Elohim.
4 And Jehoshaphat lived in
Jerusalem, and he went out again
among the people, from Beer-Sheba to
the hills of Ephraim, and brought
them back to YAHWEH the Elohim of
their fathers.
5 And he placed judges in the land,
in all the fortified cities of Judah, for
every city;
6 and said to the judges, Watch what
you are doing, for you shall not judge

for man, but for YAHWEH, and He is
with you in the matter of judgment;
7 and now, let the fear of YAHWEH
be upon you; watch and act, for there
is no perverseness with YAHWEH our
Elohim, nor lifting up of faces, nor
taking of a bribe.
8 And also in Jerusalem
Jehoshaphat caused to stand from the
Levites and from the priests, and from
the heads of the fathers of Israel, for
the judgment of YAHWEH, and for
strife; and they returned to Jerusalem.
9 And he charged them, saying, So
shall you do in the fear of YAHWEH,
faithfully, and with a perfect heart.
10 And when any contention shall
come to you from your brothers who
are living in their cities, between blood
and blood, between law and
commandment, statutes and
judgments, then you shall warn them,
and they shall not be guilty before
YAHWEH; and wrath shall not be on
you and on your brothers; so you shall
do, and you shall not be guilty.
11 And, behold, Amariah the chief
priest shall be over you for every
matter of YAHWEH, and Zebadiah
the son of Ishmael, the ruler of the
house of Judah, shall be for every
matter of the king; and the Levites
shall be officers before you. Be strong
and act; and YAHWEH shall be with
the good.

Chapter 20

1 And after this it happened that the
sons of Moab and the sons of Ammon
came in, and with them from the
Ammonites, to battle against
Jehoshaphat.
2 And they came in and spoke to
Jehoshaphat, saying, A great
multitude has come against you from
beyond the sea, from Syria; and,
behold, they are in Hazazon-Tamar,
which is En-Gedi.
3 And Jehoshaphat feared, and set
his face to seek to YAHWEH, and
proclaimed a fast over all Judah.
4 And Judah was gathered to inquire
of YAHWEH; also they came in to
seek YAHWEH from all the cities of
Judah.
5 And Jehoshaphat stood in the
congregation of Judah and Jerusalem,
in the house of YAHWEH, at the front
of the new court,
6 and said, O YAHWEH, the Elohim
of our fathers, are not You the Elohim
in Heaven? Yea, You rule over all the
kingdoms of the nations, and in Your
hand is power and might; and there is
none able to withstand You.
7 Are You not our Elohim? You have
driven out the inhabitants of this land
from before Your people Israel, and
have given it to the seed of Abraham,
Your friend, forever;
8 and they have lived in it, and have
built in it a sanctuary to You for Your
name, saying,
9 If evil shall come upon us, whether
sword, judgment, or pestilence and
famine, we shall stand before this
house and before You, for Your name
is in this house, and shall cry to You
out of our distress, and You shall hear
and save.
10 And now, behold, the sons of
Ammon and Moab and Mount Seir,
whom You did not allow Israel to go
against when they came out of the land
of Egypt, (for they turned away from
them and did not destroy them)
11 yea, behold, they are repaying us
by coming in to drive us out of Your
possession, that You have caused us to
possess.
12 O our Elohim, shall You not
execute judgment upon them? For
there is no power in us before this
great multitude that has come against

us, and we do not know what we shall do; but our eyes are on You.

13 And all Judah was standing before YAHWEH, and their infants and their wives and their sons.

14 And on Jahaziel the son of Zechariah, the son of Benaiah, the son of Jeiel, the son of Mattaniah, the Levite, of the sons of Asaph, the Spirit of YAHWEH came on him in the midst of the assembly;

15 and He said, Listen, all Judah, and you living in Jerusalem, and King Jehoshaphat; so says YAHWEH to you, You shall not fear nor be terrified of the face of this great multitude, for the battle is not yours, but Elohim's.

16 Tomorrow, go down against them; behold, they are coming up by the ascent of Ziz, and you shall find them in the end of the valley, at the front of the wilderness of Jeruel.

17 You shall not fight in this: station yourselves; stand and see the Y'shua* of YAHWEH with you, O Judah and Jerusalem; do not be terrified nor fear; tomorrow go out before them, and YAHWEH shall be with you.

18 And Jehoshaphat bowed his nose to the earth, and all Judah and the ones living in Jerusalem fell down before YAHWEH, to bow themselves to YAHWEH.

19 And the Levites, of the sons of the Kohathites, and of the sons of the Korahites, rose to give praise to YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel with a loud voice on high.

20 And they rose early in the morning and went out to the wilderness of Tekoa; and as they went out Jehoshaphat stood and said, Hear me, O Judah and the inhabitants of Jerusalem. Trust in YAHWEH, stand firm; trust in His prophets and prosper.

21 And he consulted with the people, and appointed singers to YAHWEH, and those giving praise to the glory of holiness, when going out before those armed, and said, Give thanks to YAHWEH, for His mercy endures forever.

22 And at the time they began with rejoicing and praise, YAHWEH set ambushes against the sons of Ammon, Moab, and Mount Seir, that had come against Judah; and they were beaten.

23 And the sons of Ammon stood up, and Moab, against the people of Mount Seir, to devote and destroy; and when they finished with the ones living in Seir, they helped, each man against his neighbor, to destroy.

24 And when Judah had come to the watchtower, to the wilderness, then they looked toward the multitude; and behold, they were dead bodies fallen to the earth, and there was no survivor.

25 And Jehoshaphat and his people came to seize their plunder; and they found among them in abundance both riches and valuable things on the dead bodies; and they stripped off for themselves until there was no carrying it; and they were three days plundering the spoil; for it was much.

26 And on the fourth day they gathered at the Valley of Blessing, for they blessed YAHWEH there; on account of this they have called the name of that place the Valley of Blessing to this day.

27 And they returned, every man of Judah and Jerusalem, and Jehoshaphat at their head, to go back to Jerusalem with joy; for YAHWEH had made them rejoice over their enemies.

28 And they entered Jerusalem with harps and with lyres, and with trumpets, to the house of YAHWEH.

29 And there was a fear of Elohim on all kingdoms of the lands when they heard that YAHWEH had fought with the enemies of Israel.

30 And the kingdom of Jehoshaphat was quiet, and his Elohim gave him rest all around.

31 And Jehoshaphat was king over Judah, a son of thirty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty five years in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Azubah the daughter of Shilhi.

32 And he walked in the way of his father Asa, and did not turn aside from it, to do the right in the eyes of YAHWEH.

33 Only, the high places were not removed, and the people still had not settled their hearts for the Elohim of their fathers.

34 And the rest of the acts of Jehoshaphat, the first and the last, behold, they are written in the words of Jehu the son of Hanani, which were taken up in the Book of the Kings of Israel.

35 And after this Jehoshaphat the king of Judah joined himself with Ahaziah the king of Israel; he did wickedly to do so. *(1 Cor 15:33)*

36 And he joined himself with him to make ships to go to Tarshish; and they made the ships in Ezion-Geber.

37 And Eliezer the son of Dodavah of Mareshah prophesied against Jehoshaphat, saying, Because you have joined yourself with Ahaziah, YAHWEH has broken your works. And the ships were broken, so that they did not hold to go to Tarshish.

Chapter 21

1 And Jehoshaphat lay with his fathers and was buried with his fathers in the city of David. And his son Jehoram reigned in his place.

2 And he had brothers, the sons of Jehoshaphat: Azariah, and Jehiel, and Zechariah, and Azariah, and Michael, and Shephatiah; all these were the sons of Jehoshaphat the king of Israel.

3 And their father gave to them many gifts of silver and gold, and of precious things, with fortified cities of Judah; but he gave the kingdom to Jehoram, for he was the first-born.

4 And Jehoram rose up over the kingdom of his father and made himself strong. And he killed all his brothers with the sword, and also of the leaders of Israel.

5 Jehoram was a son of thirty two years when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem eight years.

6 And he walked in the way of the kings of Israel, as did the house of Ahab, for a daughter of Ahab was his wife; and he did the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH.

7 And YAHWEH was not willing to destroy the house of David, for the sake of the covenant that He made with David, and as He had spoken, to give a lamp to him and to his sons forever.

8 In his days Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah, and made a king to reign over them.

9 And Jehoram passed over with his chiefs, and all the chariots with him; and it happened that he rose up by night and struck the Edomites who were coming all around him; and the commanders of the chariots.

10 And Edom revolted from under the hand of Judah to this day. Then Libnah revolted at that time from under his hand, because he had forsaken YAHWEH, the Elohim of his fathers.

11 Also, he had made high places in the mountains of Judah, and caused the people of Jerusalem to commit fornication, and led astray Judah.

12 And a writing came to him from

Elijah the prophet[1], saying, So says YAHWEH, the Elohim of your father David, Because you have not walked in the ways of your father Jehoshaphat, and in the ways of Asa the king of Judah,
13 and you walk in the way of the kings of Israel, and caused Judah and the people of Jerusalem to commit fornication like the fornications of the house of Ahab; and also you have killed your brothers, the house of your father, who were better than yourself;
14 behold, YAHWEH shall strike with a great destruction among your people, and among your sons, and among your wives, and among all your goods;
15 and you, with many sicknesses, with disease in your bowels, until your bowels come out because of the sickness, day by day.
16 And YAHWEH awakened the spirit of the Philistines against Jehoram, and of the Arabians who were beside the Ethiopians;
17 and they came up into Judah and broke into it, and captured all the substance that was found at the king's house, and also his sons, and his wives; and there was not left to him a son except Jehoahaz the youngest of his sons.
18 And after this, YAHWEH struck him in his bowels by disease for which there was no healing;
19 and it happened, from days to days, and as the time went out, the end of two years of days, his bowels fell out because of his sickness; so he died of painful diseases. And his people made no burning for him, like the burning of his fathers.
20 He was a son of thirty two years when he began to reign, and he reigned eight years in Jerusalem; and he left without being desired, and they buried him in the city of David, but not in the graves of the kings.

Chapter 22

1 And the inhabitants of Jerusalem made his youngest son Ahaziah king in his place (for all the first ones had been slain by the troop of men that came in with the Arabians to the battle) and Ahaziah the son of Jehoram the king of Judah reigned.
2 Ahaziah was a son of forty two years when he began to reign, and he reigned one year in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Athaliah the daughter of Omri.
3 He also walked in the ways of the house of Ahab, for his mother was his counselor to do wickedly.
4 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, like the house of Ahab, for they were his counselors after the death of his father, for his destruction.
5 He also walked in their counsel, and went with Jehoram the son of Ahab the king of Israel to battle against Hazael the king of Syria, in Ramoth-Gilead; and the Syrians struck Jehoram;
6 and he returned to be healed in Jezreel, because of the wounds with which they had stricken him in Ramah, when fighting with Hazael the king of Syria. And Ahaziah the son of Jehoram the king of Judah, went down to see Jehoram the son of Ahab in Jezreel, for he was ill.
7 Now, the destruction of Ahaziah was from Elohim, for coming to Jehoram; and when he had come he went out with Jehoram to Jehu the son of Nimshi, whom YAHWEH had anointed to cut off the house of Ahab.
8 And it happened, when Jehu was executing judgment on the house of

[1] This was after Elijah had been translated and proves that he was not in heaven but still on the earth.

Ahab, that he found the leaders of Judah, and the sons of the brothers of Ahaziah, the servants of Ahaziah, and killed them.
9 And he sought out Ahaziah, and they captured him (and he was hiding himself in Samaria) and brought him to Jehu, and put him to death, and buried him; for they said, He is the son of Jehoshaphat, who sought YAHWEH with all his heart. And there was none in the house of Ahaziah to retain power for the kingdom.
10 And Athaliah the mother of Ahaziah saw that her son was dead, and she rose up and spoke to destroy all the seed of the kingdom of the house of Judah.
11 And Jehoshabeath the daughter of the king took Joash the son of Ahaziah and stole him from among the sons of the king who were put to death, and put him and his nurse into the store room of the bedroom. And Jehoshabeath, the daughter of king Jehoram, the wife of Jehoiada the priest, because she was the sister of Ahaziah, hid him from the face of Athaliah; and she did not put him to death.
12 And he was with them in the house of The Elohim hiding himself six years, and Athaliah reigned over the land.

Chapter 23

1 And in the seventh year Jehoiada made himself strong and took the commanders of the hundreds, even Azariah the son of Jeroham, and Ishmael the son of Jehohanan, and Azariah the son of Obed, and Maaseiah the son of Adaiah, and Elishaphat the son of Zichri, into covenant with him.
2 And they went around in Judah and gathered the Levites out of all the cities of Judah, and the chiefs of the fathers of Israel, and came to Jerusalem.
3 And all the congregation made a covenant in the house of The Elohim with the king, and he said to them, Behold, the king's son shall reign, as YAHWEH has spoken of the sons of David.
4 This is what you shall do: the third of you going in on the Sabbath, of the priests, and of the Levites, shall be keepers of the doors;
5 and a third shall be at the king's house, and a third at the gate of the foundation; and all the people shall be in the courts of the house of YAHWEH.
6 And no one shall enter the house of YAHWEH except the priests and those ministering of the Levites; they may go in, for they are holy; and all the people shall keep the watch of YAHWEH.
7 And the Levites shall surround the king, each with his weapon in his hand; and he who goes into the house shall be caused to die; and you be with the king in his coming in and in his going out.
8 And the Levites and all Judah did according to all things that Jehoiada the priest had commanded. And every man took his men who were to come in on the Sabbath, the ones who were to go out on the Sabbath. For Jehoiada the priest did not dismiss the divisions.
9 And Jehoiada the priest gave to the commanders of the hundreds the spears, and the shields, and the bucklers that were King David's, that were in the house of The Elohim.
10 And he stationed all of the people, and each had his weapon in his hand, from the right side of the house to the

left side of the house, at the altar, and by the king at the house all around.

11 And they brought out the son of the king, and put the crown on him, and the testimony, and made him king; and Jehoiada and his sons anointed him, and cried, Let the king live!

12 And Athaliah heard the sound of the people who were running and who were praising the king; and she came to the people in the house of YAHWEH,

13 and looked; and behold, the king was standing by his pillar in the entrance, and the commanders and the trumpets were by the king; and all the people of the land were rejoicing and sounding with trumpets; and the singers with instruments of song, and giving signals to praise; and Athaliah tore her garments and cried, Conspiracy! Conspiracy!

14 And Jehoiada the priest brought out the commanders of the hundreds, those over the army, and said to them, Bring her out from inside the ranks, and he coming after her shall be caused to die by the sword; for the priest said, Do not put her to death in the house of YAHWEH.

15 And they put hands on her, and she came into the entrance of the Gate of Horses, beside the king's house, and they caused her to die there.

16 And Jehoiada made a covenant between himself and between all the people, and between the king, to be a people to YAHWEH;

17 and all the people went into the house of Baal and broke it down; yea, they broke down his altars and his images; and they killed Mattan the priest of Baal before the altars.

18 And Jehoiada put the offices of the house of YAHWEH into the hand of the Levitical priests, whom David had allotted over the house of YAHWEH, to offer the burnt offerings of YAHWEH, as it is written in the Torah of Moses; with joy, and with singing, by the hands of David.

19 And he stationed the keepers at the gates of the house of YAHWEH; and the unclean could not in any way go in.

20 And he took the captains of the hundreds, and the nobles, and the rulers among the people, and all the people of the land, and brought the king down from the house of YAHWEH; and they came in through the Upper Gate to the king's house, and made the king sit on the throne of the kingdom.

21 And all the people of the land rejoiced, and the city was quiet. And they executed Athaliah by the sword.

Chapter 24

1 Joash was a son of seven years when he became king, and he reigned forty years in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Zibiah of Beer-Sheba.

2 And Joash did the right in the eyes of YAHWEH all the days of Jehoiada the priest.

3 And Jehoiada took two wives for him, and he fathered sons and daughters.

4 And after this it happened; it had been in the heart of Joash to renew the house of YAHWEH;

5 and he gathered the priests and the Levites, and said to them, Go out to the cities of Judah, and gather from all Israel money to repair the house of your Elohim fully from year to year; and you shall do the matter quickly. But the Levites did not act quickly.

6 And the king called for Jehoiada the head, and said to him, Why have you not required the Levites to bring in out of Judah and out of Jerusalem

the offering of Moses, the servant of YAHWEH, and of the congregation of Israel, for the tabernacle of the testimony?

7 For the sons of Athaliah, the wicked one, have broken up the house of The Elohim, and also they have prepared all the holy things of the house of YAHWEH for the Baals.

8 And the king commanded, and they made one chest, and put it at the gate of the house of YAHWEH outside;

9 and they gave a call in Judah and in Jerusalem to bring in to YAHWEH the tribute of Moses, the servant of The Elohim, laid on Israel in the wilderness.

10 And all the leaders, and all the people rejoiced; and they brought in and threw into the chest until it was finished.

11 And it happened, at the time one brought in the chest to the king's overseers, by the hand of the Levites, and when they saw that the silver was much a scribe of the king came in, and an officer of the head priest, and they emptied the chest and took it up and returned it to its place; so they did day by day, and gathered much silver.

12 And the king and Jehoiada gave it to those who did the work of the service of the house of YAHWEH; and they hired stone cutters and carpenters to repair the house of YAHWEH; and also skilled workers in iron and copper to strengthen the house of YAHWEH.

13 And the workmen did the work and the repair work prospered in their hands; and they set up the house of The Elohim by its proper measure, and made it strong.

14 And when they had finished, they brought the rest of the silver in before the king and Jehoiada; and they made vessels of it for the house of YAHWEH, vessels of serving, and of offering, and spoons, even vessels of gold and silver; and they offered burnt offerings in the house of YAHWEH continually all the days of Jehoiada.

15 And Jehoiada was old and satisfied with days, and died, a son of a hundred and thirty years at his death.

16 And they buried him in the city of David with the kings, for he had done good in Israel, and with The Elohim, and his house.

17 And after the death of Jehoiada, the leaders of Judah came in and bowed themselves to the king; then the king listened to them.

18 And they forsook the house of YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers, and served the Asherahs and the idols; and there was wrath on Judah and Jerusalem because of this guilt.

19 And He sent prophets among them to bring them back to YAHWEH; and they testified against them, but they did not give ear.

20 And the Spirit of Elohim came upon Zechariah the son of Jehoiada the priest, and he stood before the people and said to them, So says The Elohim, Why do you transgress the commandments of YAHWEH, and do not prosper? Because you have forsaken YAHWEH, He has forsaken you.

21 And they conspired against him, and stoned him with stones by the command of the king, in the court of the house of YAHWEH.

22 And Joash the king did not remember the kindness that Jehoiada his father had done to him, and killed his son. And at his death he said, May YAHWEH see to it, and seek you out.

23 And it happened, at the turn of the year, that the army of Syria came up against him; and they came into Judah and Jerusalem and destroyed

all the leaders of the people from among the people; and they sent all their spoil to the king of Damascus.

24 For with few men the army of Syria came in, and YAHWEH gave into their hand an army for great multitude, because they left YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers. And they executed judgment against Joash.

25 And when they departed from him (they left him with many diseases) his own servants conspired against him, because of the blood of the sons of Jehoiada the priest, and killed him on his bed; and he died. And they buried him in the city of David, and did not bury him in the graves of the kings.

26 And these are those who conspired against him: Zabad the son of Shimeath the Ammonitess, and Jehozabad the son of Shimrith the Moabitess.

27 As to his sons, and the greatness of the burdens upon him, and the foundation of the house of The Elohim, behold, they are written in the inquiry of the Book of the Kings. And his son Amaziah reigned in his place.

Chapter 25

1 Amaziah was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty nine years in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Jehoaddan of Jerusalem.

2 And he did the right in the eyes of YAHWEH; only, not with a perfect heart.

3 And it happened, when the kingdom had been made strong to him, he killed his servants, those who had struck the king, his father.

4 But he did not kill their sons, but did as is written in the Torah, in the Book of Moses, whom YAHWEH commanded, saying, The fathers shall not die for the sons, and the sons shall not die for the fathers; but they each shall die for his own sin.

5 And Amaziah gathered Judah, and made them stand, according to the house of their fathers, for captains of the thousands, and for captains of the hundreds, for all Judah and Benjamin. And he numbered them from a son of twenty years and above, and found them to be three hundred thousand chosen ones, going forth to battle, holding spear and shield.

6 And he hired a hundred thousand mighty men of war out of Israel for a hundred talents of silver.

7 But a man of The Elohim came to him, saying, O king, do not let the army of Israel go with you, for YAHWEH is not with Israel, with all the sons of Ephraim.

8 But if you will go, do it! Be strong for the battle, for The Elohim will cause you to stumble before the enemy; for there is power in The Elohim to help, and also to cause to stumble.

9 And Amaziah said to the man of The Elohim, But what shall I do for the hundred talents that I have given to the army of Israel? And the man of The Elohim said, YAHWEH has more than this to give to you.

10 And Amaziah separated them, the army that had come to him from Ephraim, to go to their own place. And their anger burned fiercely against Judah, and they returned to their place in the heat of anger.

11 And Amaziah made himself strong and led his people, and went to the Valley of Salt, and killed ten thousand of the sons of Seir.

12 And the sons of Judah captured ten thousand alive, and they brought them to the top of the rock and threw

them from the top of the rock; and all of them were broken.

13 And the sons of the army that Amaziah had sent back from going with him to battle, these raided against the cities of Judah, from Samaria even to Beth-Horon, and killed three thousand of them, and seized much prey.

14 And it happened, after Amaziah came in from smiting the Edomites, that he brought in the gods of the sons of Seir and made them stand as gods for himself; and bowed himself before them, and burned incense to them.

15 And the anger of YAHWEH glowed against Amaziah, and he sent a prophet to him; and he said to him, Why have you sought the gods of the people that have not delivered their people out of your hand?

16 And it happened, as he spoke with him, that he said to him, as an advisor to the king we have chosen you? Stop yourself! Why should they strike you? And the prophet stopped, and said, I know that Elohim has counseled to destroy you because you have done this, and have not listened to my counsel.

17 And Amaziah the king of Judah took counsel and sent to Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz, the son of Jehu, the king of Israel, saying, Come, let us look one another in the face.

18 And Jehoash the king of Israel sent to Amaziah the king of Judah, saying, The thorn that was in Lebanon sent to the cedar in Lebanon, saying, Give your daughter to my son for a wife; and a beast of the field that was in Lebanon passed by and trampled down the thorn.

19 You have said, behold, I have struck Edom, and your heart has lifted you up to boast; now, stay in your house; why should you stir yourself up to evil, that you should fall, you and Judah with you?

20 And Amaziah would not listen, for it was from The Elohim, in order to give them into their hand, because they had sought to the gods of Edom.

21 And Jehoash the king of Israel went up, and they looked one another in the face, he and Amaziah the king of Judah, at Beth-Shemesh that was Judah's.

22 And Judah was beaten before Israel; and they fled, each to his tent.

23 And Amaziah the king of Judah, the son of Joash, was captured by Jehoash, the son of Jehoahaz, the king of Israel in Beth-Shemesh; and he carried him to Jerusalem, and broke down the wall of Jerusalem from the gate of Ephraim to the Corner Gate, four hundred cubits.

24 And he took all the gold, and the silver, and all the vessels that were found in the house of The Elohim with Obed-Edom, and the treasures of the king's house, and the hostages, and returned to Samaria.

25 And Amaziah the son of Joash, the king of Judah, lived fifteen years after the death of Jehoash the son of Jehoahaz, the king of Israel.

26 And the rest of the acts of Amaziah, the first and the last, behold, are they not written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel?

27 And after the time that Amaziah had turned aside from following YAHWEH, they made a conspiracy against him in Jerusalem; and he fled to Lachish, but they sent after him to Lachish and killed him there.

28 And they lifted him up on the horses, and buried him with his fathers in the city of Judah.

Chapter 26

1 And all the people of Judah took

Uzziah; and he was a son of sixteen years; and made him king instead of his father Amaziah.
2 He built Eloth, and restored it to Judah, after the king lay with his fathers.
3 Uzziah was a son of sixteen years when he began to reign, and he reigned fifty two years in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Jecoliah of Jerusalem.
4 And he did the right in the eyes of YAHWEH, according to all that his father Amaziah did.
5 And he sought Elohim in the days of Zechariah, who had understanding in the visions of The Elohim; and in the days he sought YAHWEH, The Elohim made him prosper.
6 And he went out and fought with the Philistines, and broke down the wall of Gath, and the wall of Jabneh, and the wall of Ashdod, and built cities around Ashdod, and among the Philistines.
7 And The Elohim helped him against the Philistines and against the Arabians who lived in Gurbaal, and the Meunim.
8 And the Ammonites paid tribute to Uzziah; and his name spread abroad to the entrance of Egypt; for he became exceedingly strong.
9 And Uzziah built towers in Jerusalem at the Corner Gate, and at the Valley Gate, and at the Turning, and fortified them.
10 And he built towers in the wilderness, and dug many wells, for he had many cattle, both in the low country and in the plain; also he had farmers and vinedressers in the mountains, and in Carmel; for he was a lover of the earth.
11 And Uzziah had an army making war, going out to the battle by troops, according to the number of their account by the hand of Jeiel the scribe, and Maaseiah the superintendent under the hand of Hananiah, of the king's leaders.
12 The whole number of the heads of the fathers of the mighty men was two thousand, six hundred.
13 And under their hand was a strong arm, three hundred and seven thousand, five hundred, that made war with mighty power, to help the king against the enemy.
14 And Uzziah prepared for them, for all the army, shields and spears and helmets, and breastplates, and bows, even to stones for the slings.
15 And he made engines in Jerusalem, the inventions of skillful men, to be on the towers and on the corners, with which to shoot arrows and great stones. And his name spread far abroad; for he was wonderfully helped until he was strong.
16 And when he became strong, his heart was lifted up to act corruptly; and he trespassed against YAHWEH his Elohim, and went in to the sanctuary of YAHWEH to burn incense on the altar of incense.
17 And Azariah the priest went in after him, and eighty priests of YAHWEH with him, sons of valor;
18 and they stood up against Uzziah the king, and said to him, It is not for you, O Uzziah, to burn incense to YAHWEH, but to the priests, the sons of Aaron, who are sanctified to burn incense; go out of the sanctuary, for you have trespassed; and it is not to your honor from YAHWEH Elohim.
19 And Uzziah was angry, and in his hand was a censer to burn incense; and when he was angry with the priests, the leprosy rose in his forehead, before the priests, in the house of YAHWEH, beside the altar of incense.
20 And Azariah the head priest and all the priests turned toward him, and

behold, he was leprous in his forehead. And they hurried him from there, and he also himself hurried to leave, for YAHWEH had touched him.

21 And Uzziah the king was a leper to the day of his death, and lived in a separate house as a leper, for he had been cut off from the house of YAHWEH; and his son Jotham was over the king's house, judging the people of the land.

22 And the rest of the acts of Uzziah, the first and the last, Isaiah the son of Amoz, the prophet, has written.

23 And Uzziah lay with his fathers, and they buried him with his fathers in the field of the burying place that the kings had; for they said, He is a leper. And his son Jotham reigned in his place.

Chapter 27

1 Jotham was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem; and the name of his mother was Jerushah, the daughter of Zadok.

2 And he did the right in the eyes of YAHWEH, according to all that his father Uzziah did; only, he did not come into the sanctuary of YAHWEH; and the people continued to do wickedly.

3 He built the Upper Gate of the house of YAHWEH, and he built very much in the wall of Ophel;

4 and he built cities in the hills of Judah, and in the forests he built palaces and towers.

5 He also fought with the king of the sons of Ammon, and prevailed over them. And the sons of Ammon gave to him in that year a hundred talents of silver, and ten thousand kors of wheat, and ten thousand of barley; this the sons of Ammon turned over to him in the second year and in the third.

6 And Jotham made himself strong, for he had prepared his ways before YAHWEH his Elohim.

7 And the rest of the acts of Jotham, and all his battles, and his ways, behold, they are written in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah.

8 He was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem.

9 And Jotham lay with his fathers and they buried him in the city of David. And his son Ahaz reigned in his place.

Chapter 28

1 Ahaz was a son of twenty years when he began to reign, and he reigned sixteen years in Jerusalem; and he did not do the right in the eyes of YAHWEH, as his father David,

2 but walked in the ways of the kings of Israel, and also made casted images for the Baals.

3 And he himself burned incense in the valley of the son of Hinnom, and burned his sons in the fire, according to the abominations of the nations that YAHWEH drove out from before the sons of Israel;

4 and sacrificed and burned incense in the high places, and on the hills, and under every green tree.

5 And YAHWEH his Elohim gave him into the hand of the king of Syria, and they struck him, and captured from him a great captivity, and brought them to Damascus. And he also was given into the hand of the king of Israel, and he struck him with a great destruction.

6 And Pekah the son of Remaliah killed a hundred and twenty thousand in Judah in one day, all sons of valor, because they had forsaken YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers.

7 And Zichri, a mighty one of

Ephraim, killed Maaseiah the son of the king, and Azrikam the leader of the house, and Elkanah, second to the king.
8 And the sons of Israel captured two hundred thousand of their brothers, wives, sons and daughters, and also they seized from them much spoil, and they brought the spoil to Samaria.
9 And a prophet of YAHWEH was there, Oded his name; and he went out before the army that had come in to Samaria, and said to them, Behold, in the fury of YAHWEH, the Elohim of your fathers, against Judah, He has given them into your hand, and you have slain among them in rage. It has touched to the heavens.
10 And now you are planning to tread down the sons of Judah and Jerusalem for male slaves, and for girl slaves to yourselves; but are not with you causes of guilt, solely yours, before YAHWEH your Elohim?
11 And now, hear me, and return the captives you have seized from your brothers, for the heat of the anger of YAHWEH is on you.
12 And men of the leaders of the Ephraimites: Azariah the son of Johanan, Berechiah, Meshillemoth's son, and Jehizkiah the son of Shallum, and Amasa the son of Hadlai, rose up against those coming in from the army.
13 And they said to them, You shall not bring the captives here, for guilt against YAHWEH is on us; you are planning to add to our sin and to our guilt, for plenty of guilt is ours, and the glow of anger on Israel.
14 And the armed men left the captives and the spoil before the leaders and all the congregation.
15 And the men who had been called by name rose and took the captives, and they clothed all the naked ones from the plunder; yea, they clothed them and shod them, and made them eat and drink, and anointed them, and led them out on donkeys, even every feeble one, and brought them to Jericho, the city of palms, near their brothers, and returned to Samaria.
16 At that time King Ahaz sent to the king of Assyria to help him.
17 And again the Edomites had come and struck Judah, and had seized a captivity.
18 And the Philistines had raided against the cities of the low country, and of the south of Judah, and captured Beth-Shemesh and Aijalon, and Gederoth, and Shocho and its daughter villages, and Timnah and its daughter villages, and Gimzo and its daughter villages, and dwelt there.
19 For YAHWEH had humbled Judah because of Ahaz the king of Israel, for he loosed immorality in Judah, and dealt slyly and betrayed YAHWEH.
20 And Tilgath-Pilneser the king of Assyria came against him and distressed him, but did not help him,
21 though Ahaz had taken a lot from the house of YAHWEH and from the house of the king, and from the rulers, and had given to the king of Assyria, and it was not for help to him.
22 And in the time of his distress, he added to act more slyly against YAHWEH, this King Ahaz.
23 And he sacrificed to the gods of Damascus who had struck him, and said, Because the gods of the kings of Syria are helping them, I will sacrifice to them that they may help me. But they were to cause him and all Israel to stumble.
24 And Ahaz gathered all the utensils of the house of The Elohim, and he cut up the utensils of the house of The Elohim and shut the doors of the house of YAHWEH. And he made

altars for himself in every corner of Jerusalem.
25 And in every city, even the cities of Judah, he made high places to burn incense to other gods, and angered YAHWEH the Elohim of his fathers.
26 And the rest of his acts, and all his ways, the first and the last, behold, they are written in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel.
27 And Ahaz lay with his fathers, and they buried him in the city, in Jerusalem, but did not bring him to the graves of the kings of Israel. And his son Hezekiah reigned in his place.

Chapter 29

1 Hezekiah was a son of twenty five years when he began to reign, and he reigned twenty nine years in Jerusalem. And the name of his mother was Abijah, the daughter of Zechariah.
2 And he did the right in the eyes of YAHWEH, according to all that his father David did.
3 In the first year of his reign, in the first month, he opened the doors of the house of YAHWEH and repaired them.
4 And he brought in the priests and the Levites, and he gathered them to the plaza on the east.
5 And he said to them, Hear me, O Levites, now consecrate yourselves. And consecrate the house of YAHWEH, the Elohim of your fathers, and bring out the uncleanness from the holy place.
6 For our fathers have acted slyly and did the evil in the eyes of YAHWEH our Elohim, and they have forsaken Him and turned their faces away from the sanctuary of YAHWEH, and have given their backs.
7 And they have shut the doors of the porch, and put out the lamps, and they have not burned incense, and burnt offering has not ascended in the sanctuary to the Elohim of Israel.
8 And the wrath of YAHWEH is on Judah and Jerusalem, and He has given them for a trembling, for a horror, and for hissing, as you see with your eyes.
9 For, behold, our fathers have fallen by the sword, and our sons and our daughters and our wives are in exile for this.
10 Now it is in my heart to cut a covenant with YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, and the glow of His anger shall turn back from us.
11 Now, my sons, do not be negligent, for YAHWEH has chosen you to stand before His face, to serve Him and to be ministers and incense burners for Him.
12 And the Levites rose up: Mahath the son of Amasai, and Joel the son of Azariah, of the sons of the Kohathites; and of the sons of Merari, Kish the son of Abdi, and Azariah the son of Jehalelel; and of the Gershonites, Joah the son of Zimmah, and Eden the son of Joah;
13 and of the sons of Elizaphan, Shimri and Jeiel; and of the sons of Asaph, Zechariah and Mattaniah;
14 and of the sons of Heman, Jehiel and Shimei; and of the sons of Jeduthun, Shemaiah and Uzziel.
15 And they gathered their brothers and sanctified themselves, and came in, according to the commandment of the king in the matters of YAHWEH, to cleanse the house of YAHWEH.
16 And the priests went into the inner part of the house of YAHWEH to clean, and brought out all the uncleanness that they found in the sanctuary of YAHWEH to the court of the house of YAHWEH; and the

Levites received and took it out to the
torrent Kidron outside.
17 And they began to sanctify on the
first of the first month, and on the
eighth day of the month they came to
the porch of YAHWEH; and they
sanctified the house of YAHWEH in
eight days, and on the sixteenth day of
the first month they had finished.
18 And they came inside to Hezekiah
the king, and said, We have cleansed
all the house of YAHWEH, and the
altar of the burnt offering, and all its
vessels, and the table of the
showbread, and all its utensils;
19 and all the utensils that King Ahaz
cast aside in his reign, in his treachery,
we have prepared and sanctified; and
behold, they are before the altar of
YAHWEH.
20 And Hezekiah the king rose early
and gathered the heads of the city, and
went up to the house of YAHWEH.
21 And they brought in seven bulls,
and seven rams, and seven lambs, and
seven young he-goats for a sin offering
for the kingdom, and for the holy
place, and for Judah. And he
commanded the sons of Aaron, the
priests, to offer on the altar of
YAHWEH.
22 And they killed the oxen, and the
priests received the blood, and
sprinkled the blood on the altar. And
they killed the rams, and sprinkled the
blood on the altar. And they killed the
lambs and sprinkled the blood on the
altar.
23 And they brought the he-goats of
the sin offering before the king and the
congregation, and they laid their
hands on them;
24 and the priests slaughtered them,
and made a sin offering with their
blood on the altar, to atone for all
Israel; for the king said, The burnt
offering and the sin offering are for all
Israel.
25 And he made the Levites stand in
the house of YAHWEH with cymbals,
with harps, and with lyres, by the
command of David, and of Gad, the
seer of the king, and of Nathan the
prophet; for the command was by the
hand of YAHWEH, by the hand of His
prophets.
26 And the Levites stood with the
instruments of David, and the priests
with the trumpets.
27 And Hezekiah commanded to
offer burnt offering on the altar; and at
the time the burnt offering began, the
song of YAHWEH began, and of the
trumpets, even by the hand of the
instruments of David the king of
Israel.
28 And all the congregation were
bowing, and the singers singing, and
the trumpeters blowing; all until the
completion of the burnt offering.
29 And at the completion of the
offering the king and all those found
with him bowed and worshiped.
30 And Hezekiah the king and the
leaders commanded the Levites to give
praise to YAHWEH in the words of
David, and of Asaph the seer; and they
praised with joy, and they bowed and
worshiped.
31 And Hezekiah answered and said,
Now you have consecrated your hand
to YAHWEH; come near and bring
sacrifices and thank offerings to the
house of YAHWEH. And the
congregation brought in sacrifices and
thank offerings, and every willing
hearted one brought burnt offerings.
32 And the number of the burnt
offerings that the congregation
brought was seventy oxen, a hundred
rams, two hundred lambs; all these for
a burnt offering to YAHWEH.
33 And the dedicated things were six
hundred oxen and three thousand
sheep.
34 Only, the priests had become few,

and were not able to skin all of the burnt offerings; and their brothers the Levites strengthened them until the work was ended, and until the priests sanctified themselves; for the Levites were more upright of heart to sanctify themselves than the priests.

35 And also, there were many burnt offerings with fat of the peace offerings, and with drink offerings for the burnt offering; and the service of the house of YAHWEH was established.

36 And Hezekiah and all the people rejoiced, because The Elohim had given preparation to the people; for the thing had happened suddenly.

Chapter 30

1 And Hezekiah sent to all Israel and Judah, and he also wrote letters to Ephraim and Manasseh, to come to the house of YAHWEH in Jerusalem, to make a Passover to YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel.

2 And the king and his leaders, and all the congregation in Jerusalem, took counsel to keep the Passover in the second month;

3 since they could not do it at that time, for the priests had not cleansed themselves enough. And the people had not been gathered to Jerusalem.

4 And the thing was right in the eyes of the king, and in the eyes of the congregation.

5 And they established a decree to pass through a call to all Israel, from Beer-Sheba even to Dan, to come to make a Passover to YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel in Jerusalem. For not many of them had done it as it is written.

6 And the runners went with letters from the king's hand, and his leaders, to all Israel and Judah; even by the king's command, saying, O sons of Israel return to YAHWEH, the Elohim of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel. And He shall return to the remnant left of you from the hand of the king of Assyria.

7 And do not be like your fathers, and like your brothers, who trespassed against YAHWEH the Elohim of their fathers; and He made them for a horror, as you see.

8 Now do not stiffen your necks like your fathers. Give a hand to YAHWEH and come to His holy place that He has sanctified forever; and serve YAHWEH your Elohim. And the fierceness of His anger will turn away from you.

9 For when you return to YAHWEH, your brothers and your sons will have mercies before their captors, even to return to this land. For YAHWEH your Elohim is gracious and merciful, and He will not turn His face away from you, if you turn back to Him.

10 And the runners passed from city to city in the land of Ephraim, and Manasseh, even to Zebulun. And they were laughing at them, and mocking them.

11 However, certain men from Asher, and Manasseh, and from Zebulun were humbled, and came to Jerusalem.

12 Also, in Judah the hand of The Elohim was to give to them one heart to do the king's command, and of the leaders, by the Word of YAHWEH.

13 And many people gathered to Jerusalem, to keep the Feast of Unleavened Bread in the second month, a very great multitude.

14 And they rose up and took away the altars in Jerusalem, and all the incense altars they removed, and threw them into the torrent Kidron.

15 And they killed the Passover offering on the fourteenth of the second month. And the priests and the

Levites were ashamed, and sanctified themselves, and brought in burnt offerings to the house of YAHWEH.
16 And they stood in their place according to their ordinance, according to the Law of Moses the man of The Elohim. The priests were sprinkling the blood out of the hand of the Levites.
17 For many in the assembly had not sanctified themselves, and the Levites were over the slaughtering of the Passover offerings for everyone not clean, to sanctify them to YAHWEH.
18 For many of the people, many from Ephraim, and Manasseh, Issachar, and Zebulun had not been cleansed, but ate the Passover not as it was written. But Hezekiah prayed for them, saying, O good YAHWEH, atone for
19 everyone who has prepared his heart to seek YAHWEH Elohim, the Elohim of his fathers, yet not according to the cleansing of the sanctuary.
20 And YAHWEH listened to Hezekiah, and healed the people.
21 And the sons of Israel, those found in Jerusalem, kept the Feast of Unleavened Bread seven days with great joy. And the Levites praised YAHWEH day to day, and the priests, with instruments of praise before YAHWEH.
22 And Hezekiah spoke to the heart of all the Levites, those possessing good understanding as to YAHWEH. And they ate the appointed feast seven days, offering sacrifices of peace offerings, and making confession to YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers.
23 And all the congregation took counsel to keep another seven days. And they kept seven days joyfully.
24 And Hezekiah the king of Judah had lifted up to the congregation a thousand young bulls, and seven thousand sheep. And the leaders had lifted up to the congregation a thousand young bulls, and ten thousand sheep. And the priests had sanctified themselves in abundance.
25 And all the congregation of Judah rejoiced, and the priests and the Levites, and all the congregation that came from the land of Israel, and the aliens who came from the land of Israel, and those who lived in Judah.
26 And there was great joy in Jerusalem, for from the days of Solomon the son of David the king of Israel, there was nothing like this in Jerusalem.
27 And the priests, the Levites, rose up and blessed the people, and their voice was heard, and their prayer came to His holy dwelling place, to Heaven.

Chapter 31

1 And when all this was finished, all Israel who were found went out to the cities of Judah and smashed the standing pillars, and cut down the Asherahs, and broke down the high places and the altars out of all Judah, and Benjamin, and in Ephraim, and Manasseh, even to the end. And all the sons of Israel returned, each to his possession, to their cities.
2 And Hezekiah made stand the courses of the priests and of the Levites, by their divisions, each according to his service, of the priests and of the Levites, for burnt offerings, and for peace offerings, to serve and to give thanks, and to give praise in the gates of the camps of YAHWEH.
3 And the king's portion from his substance was for burnt offerings, for burnt offerings of the morning and the evening; and the burnt offerings of the Sabbaths, and of the new moons, and

of the appointed seasons, as it was
written in the Torah of YAHWEH.
4 And he commanded the people,
those who lived in Jerusalem, to give
the portion of the priests and of the
Levites, in order that they might be
made strong in the Law of YAHWEH.
5 And as the word spread, the sons of
Israel brought abundantly the first-
fruits of grain, new wine, and oil, and
honey, and of all the produce of the
field, and the tithe of all; they brought
very much.
6 And the sons of Israel and Judah,
those living in the cities of Judah, also
they tithed of the herd and the flock,
even a tithe of the holy things that
were sanctified to YAHWEH their
Elohim, were brought in. And they
gave heaps of heaps.
7 They began to lay the foundation of
the heaps in the third month, and in
the seventh month they finished.
8 And Hezekiah and the leaders
came in and saw the heaps, and
blessed YAHWEH and His people
Israel.
9 And Hezekiah asked the priests
and the Levites about the heaps.
10 And Azariah the chief priest, of
the house of Zadok, spoke to him and
said, From the beginning of the
bringing of the heave offering to the
house of YAHWEH, it was eaten, and
it satisfied, and abundance was left;
for YAHWEH has blessed His people,
and this abundance is left.
11 And Hezekiah ordered them to
build rooms in the house of
YAHWEH; and they prepared,
12 and they brought in the heave
offering, and the tithes, and the holy
things, faithfully. And over them was a
leader, the Levite Cononiah, and his
second brother, Shimei;
13 and Jehiel, and Azaziah, and
Nahath, and Asahel, and Jerimoth,
and Jozabad, and Eliel, and
Ismachiah, and Mahath, and Benaiah,
were overseers under the hand of
Cononiah and his brother Shimei, by
the appointment of Hezekiah the king,
and Azariah the ruler of the house of
Elohim.
14 And Kore the son of Imnah the
Levite, the gatekeeper at the east, was
over the freewill offerings of The
Elohim, to distribute the heave
offerings of YAHWEH, and the most
holy things.
15 And by his hand, Eden, and
Miniamin, and Yeshua, and Shemaiah,
Amariah, and Shecaniah, in the cities
of the priests, acted faithfully to give to
their brothers by divisions, as to the
great, so to the small;
16 apart from their genealogy, to
males from a son of three years and
upward, to everyone who had gone
into the house of YAHWEH, the
proper portion of a day in its day, for
their service in their duties, according
to their divisions;
17 and enrolled genealogically the
priests by the house of their fathers,
and of the Levites from a son of twenty
years and upward, and their duties,
and their divisions;
18 and the enrollment by genealogy
with all their infants, their wives, and
their sons and their daughters, to all
the assembly, for in their faithfulness
they sanctified themselves in holiness.
19 And to the sons of Aaron, the
priests, in the fields of the suburbs of
their cities in every separate city, were
men who were called by name to give
portions to every male among the
priests, and to all enrolled
genealogically among the Levites.
20 And Hezekiah did this in all
Judah, and did the good and the right
and true before YAHWEH his Elohim.
21 And in every work that he began
for the service of the house of The
Elohim, and in the Torah, and in the

commandment, to seek his Elohim with all his heart, he worked and prospered.

Chapter 32

1 After these things and this faithfulness, Sennacherib the king of Assyria came; yea, he came into Judah and camped against the cities of defense, and commanded to break them open to himself.
2 And Hezekiah saw that Sennacherib had come, and his face was set to battle against Jerusalem;
3 and he took counsel with his leaders and his mighty ones, to stop the waters of the fountains that were on the outside of the city; and they helped him.
4 And many people were gathered, and they stopped all the fountains, and the torrent that was rushing through the land, saying, Why should the kings of Assyria come and find much water?
5 And he made himself strong and built all the wall that was broken, and raised on it the towers; and outside, another wall; and strengthened Millo, *in* the city of David[1], and made darts in abundance, and shields.
6 And he set officers of war over the people, and gathered them to him, to the street of the gate of the city, and spoke to their heart, saying,
7 Be strong and courageous; do not be afraid nor be cast down before the face of the king of Assyria, and before the face of all the multitude with him, for with us are more than with him.
8 With him is an arm of flesh, and with us is YAHWEH our Elohim to help us, and to fight our battles. And the people were supported by the words of Hezekiah the king of Judah.
9 After this Sennacherib the king of Assyria sent his servants to Jerusalem, (and he was by Lachish, and all his power with him) against Hezekiah the king of Judah, and against all Judah in Jerusalem, saying,
10 So says Sennacherib the king of Assyria, On what are you trusting that you sit under siege in Jerusalem?
11 Is not Hezekiah misleading you to give you up to die by famine, and by thirst, saying, YAHWEH our Elohim will deliver us from the hand of the king of Assyria?
12 Has not Hezekiah himself removed His high places, and His altars, and commanded Judah and Jerusalem, saying, Before one altar you shall worship, and on it you shall burn incense. *(2 Chron 31:1)*
13 Do you not know what I have done, my fathers and I, to all the people of the lands? Were the gods of the nations of the lands at all able to deliver their land out of my hand?
14 Who among all the gods of these nations whom my fathers have devoted to destruction is he who has been able to deliver his people out of my hand, that your Elohim may be able to deliver you out of my hand?
15 And now, do not let Hezekiah deceive you, nor persuade you in this way, nor believe him, for no Elohim of any nation or kingdom has been able to deliver his people from my hand, from the hand of my fathers; also, surely your Elohim shall not deliver you from my hand.
16 And again his servants spoke against YAHWEH The Elohim, and against His servant Hezekiah.
17 And he had written letters to blaspheme YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, and to speak against Him,

[1] He had repaired the Millo fill between the city of David and the Ophel hill where the Sanctuary of Yahweh was built, showing Yahweh's sanctuary was in the City of David and not 1/3 of a mile away where many wrongly place it today.

saying, As the Elohims of the nations of the lands have not delivered their people from my hand, so the Elohim of Hezekiah shall not deliver His people from my hand.

18 And they called with a great voice in Jewish, against the people of Jerusalem who were on the wall, to frighten them and to terrify them, that they might capture the city.

19 And they spoke against the Elohim of Jerusalem as against the gods of the peoples of the land, the work of the hands of man.

20 And Hezekiah the king and Isaiah the son of Amoz, the prophet, prayed about this, and they cried to Heaven.

21 And YAHWEH sent a Messenger, and destroyed every mighty one of valor, both the leader, and the officer in the camp of the king of Assyria; and he returned with shame of face to his land. And he entered the house of his god, and those from his bowels caused him to fall there by the sword.

22 And YAHWEH saved Hezekiah and the people of Jerusalem from the hand of Sennacherib the king of Assyria, and from the hand of all; and He guided them on every side.

23 And many brought an offering to YAHWEH, to Jerusalem, and precious things to Hezekiah the king of Judah; and he was lifted up before the eyes of all the nations after this.

24 In those days Hezekiah was sick even to death, and he prayed to YAHWEH, and He spoke to him, and gave a sign for him.

25 And Hezekiah did not return according to the benefit done to him, for his heart had been lifted up, and there was wrath on him and on Judah and Jerusalem.

26 And Hezekiah was humbled for the pride of his heart, he and the people of Jerusalem, and the wrath of YAHWEH did not come on them in the days of Hezekiah.

27 And Hezekiah had great riches and honor, and he had very many treasures of silver for himself, and of gold, and of precious stones, and of spices, and of shields, and of all desirable vessels,

28 and storehouses for the increase of grain, and new wine, and oil, and stalls for all kinds of animals, and flocks for the stalls;

29 and he made cities for himself, and had stocks of flocks and very many herds, for Elohim had given him very much property.

30 And Hezekiah himself had stopped the outlet of the upper water-course of Gihon, and had directed them beneath the west of the city of David; and Hezekiah prospered in all his work. *(2 Kgs 20:20, Is 22:11)*

31 Even so with the envoys of the rulers of Babylon, those sent to him to inquire of the wonder that had been in the land, The Elohim left him to test him, to know all his heart.

32 And the rest of the acts of Hezekiah, and his good deeds toward Elohim, behold, they are written in the vision of Isaiah the son of Amoz, the prophet, and in the Book of the Kings of Judah and Israel.

33 And Hezekiah lay with his fathers, and they buried him in the uppermost of the graves of the sons of David; and all Judah and the people of Jerusalem honored him at his death. And his son Manasseh reigned in his place.

Chapter 33

1 Manasseh was a son of twelve years when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem fifty five years.

2 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, like the filthy acts of the

nations that YAHWEH had driven out
from before the sons of Israel.
3 For again he rebuilt the high places
that his father Hezekiah had broken
down, and raised up altars for the
Baals, and made Asherahs and bowed
himself to all the host of the heavens,
and served them.
4 And he built altars in the house of
YAHWEH, of which YAHWEH had
said, In Jerusalem shall be My name
forever.
5 And he built altars to all the host of
the heavens in the two courts of the
house of YAHWEH.
6 And he made his sons to pass
through the fire in the valley of the son
of Hinnom, and did magic and
divined, and used sorcery, and used
mediums and soothsayers; he
multiplied the doing of the evil in the
eyes of YAHWEH, to provoke Him to
anger.
7 And he placed the engraved image
of the idol that he had made in the
house of The Elohim, of which Elohim
had said to David, and to his son
Solomon, In this house, and in
Jerusalem that I have chosen out of all
the tribes of Israel, I will put My name
forever.
8 And I will not again remove the
foot of Israel from off the ground that I
appointed to your fathers; only, if they
take heed to do all that I have
commanded them toward all the
Torah, and the statutes, and the
ordinances by the hand of Moses.
9 And Manasseh caused Judah and
the people of Jerusalem to sin, to do
evil above the nations that YAHWEH
destroyed before the sons of Israel.
10 And YAHWEH spoke to
Manasseh and to his people, and they
did not listen.
11 And YAHWEH brought against
them the king of Assyria's army
commanders, and they captured
Manasseh with hooks, and bound him
with copper fetters, and made him go
to Babylon.
12 And when he was distressed, he
sought the face of YAHWEH his
Elohim, and was humbled exceedingly
before the face of the Elohim of his
fathers;
13 and prayed to Him, and He was
entreated of him and heard his
supplication, and returned him to
Jerusalem to his kingdom; and
Manasseh knew that YAHWEH, He is
The Elohim.
14 And after this he built an outer
wall to the city of David, on the west of
Gihon, in the valley, and at the
entrance of the Fish Gate. And it went
around to the tower and he made it
exceedingly high, and he put
commanders of the army in all the
cities of defense in Judah.
15 And he removed the foreign gods,
and the idol out of the house of
YAHWEH, and all the altars that he
had built in the mount of the house of
YAHWEH and in Jerusalem, and
threw them outside the city.
16 And he built the altar of
YAHWEH, and sacrificed on it
sacrifices of peace offerings and thank
offerings, and commanded Judah to
serve YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel.
17 But the people still sacrificed in
the high places, only to YAHWEH
their Elohim.
18 And the rest of the acts of
Manasseh, and his prayer to his
Elohim, and the things of the seers,
who spoke to him in the name of
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel,
behold, they are in the Book of the
Kings of Israel;
19 and his prayer, and his entreaty,
and all his sin, and his treachery, and
the places in which he had built high
places and set up the Asherahs and the
graven images before he was humbled,

behold, they are written in the Matters of the Seers.
20 And Manasseh lay with his fathers, and they buried him in his own house. And his son Amon reigned in his place.
21 Amon was a son of twenty two years when he began to reign, and he reigned two years in Jerusalem.
22 And he did evil in the eyes of YAHWEH, as his father Manasseh did; and Amon sacrificed to all the graven images that his father Manasseh had made, and served them.
23 And he did not humble himself before YAHWEH, like the humbling of his father Manasseh, for Amon himself multiplied guilt.
24 And his servants conspired against him and killed him in his own house;
25 and the people of the land killed all those who conspired against King Amon and the people of the land made his son Josiah to reign in his place.

Chapter 34

1 Josiah was a son of eight years when he began to reign, and he reigned in Jerusalem thirty one years.
2 And he did the right in the eyes of YAHWEH, and walked in the ways of his father David, and did not turn aside to the right or to the left.
3 And in the eighth year of his reign, and he was still a boy, he began to seek to the Elohim of his father David; and in the twelfth year he began to cleanse Judah and Jerusalem from the high places, and the Asherahs, and the graven images, and the casted images.
4 And they broke down before him the altars of the Baals, and the images that were on high above them, and he cut down the Asherahs, and the graven images, and the molten images he broke down and beat small, and scattered on the surface of the grave of those who sacrificed to them.
5 And he burned the bones of the priests on their altars, and cleansed Judah and Jerusalem,
6 and in the cities of Manasseh, and Ephraim, and Simeon, even to Naphtali, with their tools all around.
7 And he broke down the altars and the Asherahs, and he had beaten down the graven images very small; and he had cut down all the images in all the land of Israel, and returned to Jerusalem.
8 And in the eighteenth year of his reign, when he had purified the land and the House, he sent Shaphan the son of Azaliah, and Maaseiah the head of the city, and Joah the son of Joahaz the recorder, to repair the house of YAHWEH his Elohim.
9 And they came to Hilkiah the high priest, and they gave the silver brought into the house of Elohim, that the Levites who guarded the threshold had gathered from the hand of Manasseh and Ephraim, and from all the remnant of Israel, and from all Judah and Benjamin, and the ones living in Jerusalem.
10 And they gave it into the hand of the ones doing the work, those called out in the house of YAHWEH; and they gave it to the doers of the work who were working in the house of YAHWEH to repair and to make strong the house.
11 And they gave to skilled workers, and to builders, to buy quarried stones and wood for couplings, to make beams for the houses that the kings of Judah had destroyed.
12 And the men were working faithfully in the work. And over them were given the oversight: Jahath and Obadiah, the Levites, of the sons of Merari, and Zechariah, and Meshullam, of the sons of the

Kohathites; and of the Levites all who
were skilled in musical instruments;
13 and over the load carriers and
overseers of everyone doing work for
each separate service; and of the
Levites were scribes and officers and
gatekeepers.
14 And when they brought out the
silver brought into the house of
YAHWEH, Hilkiah the priest found
the Book of the Torah of YAHWEH by
the hand of Moses.
15 And Hilkiah answered and said to
Shaphan the scribe, I have found the
Book of the Torah in the house of
YAHWEH. And Hilkiah gave the book
to Shaphan.
16 And Shaphan brought the Book in
to the king, and brought the king back
word again, saying, All that has been
given into the hand of your servants,
they are doing.
17 And they poured out the silver
found in the house of YAHWEH, and
gave it into the hands of those
appointed, and into the hands of those
doing the work.
18 And Shaphan the scribe told the
king, saying, Hilkiah the priest has
given a book to me; and Shaphan read
it before the king.
19 And it happened, when the king
heard the Words of the Torah, that he
tore his garments.
20 And the king commanded
Hilkiah, and Ahikam the son of
Shaphan, and Abdon the son of Micah,
and Shaphan the scribe, and Asaiah
the servant of the king, saying,
21 Go, seek YAHWEH for me and
for him who is left in Israel and in
Judah, as to the Words of the book
that has been found, for great is the
wrath of YAHWEH that is poured out
on us, because our fathers have not
kept the Word of YAHWEH, to do
according to all that is written in this
book.
22 And Hilkiah and those of the king
went to Huldah the prophetess, the
wife of Shallum the son of Tikvath, the
son of Hasrah, the keeper of the robes;
and she was living in Jerusalem in the
Second. And they spoke to her about
this.
23 And she said to them, So says
YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, Say
to the man who has sent you to Me,
24 So says YAHWEH, Behold, I will
bring evil on this place, and on the
ones living in it, all the curses that are
written in the Book that they have read
before the king of Judah;
25 because they have forsaken Me
and have burned incense to other gods
so as to anger Me with all the works of
their hands; and My wrath shall be
poured out on this place, and it shall
not be quenched.
26 And to the king of Judah who is
sending you to inquire of YAHWEH,
you shall say this to him, So says
YAHWEH the Elohim of Israel, whose
Words you have heard,
27 Because your heart is tender, and
you were humbled before Elohim
when you heard His Words concerning
this place, and concerning the ones
living in it, and were humbled before
Me, and have torn your garments and
wept before Me; I have even heard
also, says YAHWEH.
28 Behold I will gather you to your
fathers, and you shall be gathered to
your grave in peace, and your eyes will
not look upon all the evil I shall bring
upon this place, and on the ones living
in it. And they brought the king word
again.
29 And the king sent and gathered
all the elders of Judah and Jerusalem.
30 And the king went up to the
house of YAHWEH and every man of
Judah, and the people of Jerusalem,
and the priests, and the Levites, and
all the ones living there from the great

to the small; and he read in their ears all the Words of the Book of the Covenant found in the house of YAHWEH.
31 And the king stood in his place and cut the covenant before YAHWEH, to walk after YAHWEH, and to keep His commandments and His testimonies and His statutes with all his heart, and with all his soul, to do the Words of the covenant that were written in this book.
32 And he made everyone who was found in Jerusalem and in Benjamin, and the ones living in Jerusalem, to stand to the covenant of Elohim, the Elohim of their fathers.
33 And Josiah removed all the idols out of all the lands that belonged to the sons of Israel, and caused everyone who was found in Israel to serve, to serve YAHWEH their Elohim; all his days they did not turn away from following YAHWEH, the Elohim of their fathers.

Chapter 35

1 And Josiah performed a Passover in Jerusalem to YAHWEH, and they killed the Passover offering on the fourteenth of the first month.
2 And he made the priests stand over their charges, and made them strong for the service of the house of YAHWEH,
3 and said to the Levites who were teaching all Israel, who were sanctified to YAHWEH, Put the holy ark in the house that Solomon the son of David the king of Israel built; it shall not be a burden on your shoulders. Now serve YAHWEH your Elohim, and His people Israel,
4 and prepare by the house of your fathers, according to your courses, by the writing of David the king of Israel, and by the writing of his son Solomon,
5 and stand in the place of holiness, by the divisions of the house of the fathers of your brothers, the sons of the people, and the portion of the house of the father of the Levites;
6 and kill the Passover offering and sanctify yourselves, and prepare for your brothers, to do according to the Word of YAHWEH, by the hand of Moses.
7 And Josiah lifted up to the sons of the people a flock of lambs and young goats, all for Passover offerings, for everyone who was found, to the number of thirty thousand, and three thousand oxen; these were from the king's substance.
8 And his leaders lifted up for a freewill offering to the people, to the priests, and to the Levites: Hilkiah, and Zechariah, and Jehiel, rulers in the house of The Elohim, gave to the priest two thousand and six hundred for Passover offerings, and three hundred oxen.
9 And Conaniah, and Shemaiah, and Nethaneel, his brothers; and Hashabiah, and Jeiel, and Jozabad, chiefs of the Levites, lifted up to the Levites five thousand for Passover offerings, and five hundred oxen.
10 And the service was prepared, and the priests stood in their place, and the Levites in their courses, according to the command of the king.
11 And they slaughtered the Passover offering and the priests sprinkled out of their hand, and the Levites were stripping;
12 and they removed the burnt offering, to distribute them by the divisions of the house of the fathers of the sons of the people, to offer to YAHWEH, as it is written in the book of Moses, and so to the oxen.
13 And they cooked the Passover with fire, according to the ordinance; and they cooked the holy things in

pots, and in kettles, and in pans, and carried to all the sons of the people.

14 And afterward they prepared for themselves, and for the priests; for the priests, the sons of Aaron, were offering up the burnt offering and the fat until nightfall; and the Levites prepared for themselves and for the priests; the sons of Aaron.

15 And the singers, the sons of Asaph, were in their place, according to David's command, and Asaph, and Heman, and Jeduthun the seer of the king; and the gatekeepers were at each gate; it was not for them to depart from their service, for their brothers the Levites prepared for them.

16 And all the service of YAHWEH was prepared on that day, to perform the Passover, and to offer burnt offerings on the altar of YAHWEH, according to the command of King Josiah.

17 And the sons of Israel who were found performed the Passover at that time, and the Feast of Unleavened Bread, seven days.

18 And there had not been a Passover performed like it in Israel from the days of Samuel the prophet; yea, none of the kings of Israel performed such a Passover as Josiah performed, and the priests, and the Levites and all Judah and Israel who were found, and the inhabitants of Jerusalem.

19 In the eighteenth year of the reign of Josiah, this Passover was performed.

20 After all this, when Josiah had prepared the house, Necho the king of Egypt came up to fight against Carchemish by the Euphrates; and Josiah went out to meet him.

21 And he sent messengers to him, saying, What do I have to do with you, O king of Judah? I am not coming against you today, but toward the house with which I have war; and Elohim said for me to hasten; stop yourself from opposing Elohim, who is with me, and He shall not destroy you.

22 Josiah would not turn his face from him, but disguised himself to fight against him, and did not listen to the words of Necho from the mouth of Elohim; and came to fight in the valley of Megiddo.

23 And the archers shot at King Josiah. And the king said to his servants, Carry me out, for I am severely wounded.

24 And his servants carried him out from the chariot, and caused him to ride in a second chariot of his, and brought him to Jerusalem. And he died and was buried in the graves of his fathers. And all Judah and Jerusalem were mourning for Josiah.

25 And Jeremiah lamented for Josiah; and all the singers and the songstresses speak in their lamentations of Josiah to this day, and gave them as a statute in Israel; and behold, they are written in the Lamentations.

26 And the rest of the acts of Josiah, and his goodly deeds to Elohim, are according as it is written in the Torah of YAHWEH.

27 And his acts, the first and the last, behold, they are written in the Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah.

Chapter 36

1 And the people of the land took Jehoahaz the son of Josiah and made him king instead of his father in Jerusalem.

2 Jehoahaz was a son of twenty three years when he began to reign, and he reigned three months in Jerusalem.

3 And the king of Egypt deposed him in Jerusalem, and fined the land a

hundred talents of silver, and a talent
of gold.
4 And the king of Egypt made his
brother Eliakim king over Judah and
Jerusalem, and turned about his name
to Jehoiakim; and Necho took his
brother Jehoahaz and brought him to
Egypt.
5 Jehoiakim was a son of twenty five
years when he began to reign, and he
reigned eleven years in Jerusalem.
And he did the evil in the eyes of
YAHWEH his Elohim.
6 Nebuchadnezzar the king of
Babylon came up against him, and
bound him in copper fetters to take
him away to Babylon.
7 And Nebuchadnezzar brought
some of the vessels of the house of
YAHWEH to Babylon, and put them
in his temple in Babylon.
8 And the rest of the acts of
Jehoiakim, and his evil deeds that he
did, and that which was found against
him, behold, they are written in the
Book of the Kings of Israel and Judah.
And his son Jehoiachin reigned in his
place.
9 Jehoiachin was a son of eight years
when he began to reign, and he
reigned in Jerusalem three months
and ten days; and he did the evil in the
eyes of YAHWEH.
10 And at the turn of the year, King
Nebuchadnezzar sent and brought him
to Babylon, with the valuable vessels
of the house of YAHWEH, and made
his kinsman Zedekiah king over Judah
and Jerusalem.
11 Zedekiah was a son of twenty one
years when he began to reign, and he
reigned eleven years in Jerusalem.
12 And he did the evil in the eyes of
YAHWEH his Elohim; he was not
humbled before Jeremiah the prophet,
from the mouth of YAHWEH.
13 And also he rebelled against King
Nebuchadnezzar, who had made him
swear by Elohim; and he stiffened his
neck and hardened his heart from
turning to YAHWEH the Elohim of
Israel.
14 Also, all the heads of the priests,
and the people were continually acting
unfaithfully according to all the
abominable idols of the nations; and
they defiled the house of YAHWEH
that He had sanctified in Jerusalem.
15 And YAHWEH, the Elohim of
their fathers, sent to them by the hand
of His messengers, rising early and
sending, for He had pity on his people
and on His dwelling place.
16 But they mocked the messengers
of The Elohim, and despised His
Words, and scoffed at His prophets
until the wrath of YAHWEH went up
against His people, until there was no
healing.
17 And He brought up against them
the king of the Chaldeans; and he
killed their choice ones by the sword in
the house of their holy place, and had
no pity on the young man and the
virgin, the old man and the very aged;
He gave all into his hand.
18 And all the utensils of the house
of The Elohim, the large and the small,
and the treasures of the house of
YAHWEH, and the treasures of the
king and his leaders, he brought all to
Babylon.
19 And they burned the house of The
Elohim, and broke down the wall of
Jerusalem; and they burned all its
palaces with fire, and destroyed all its
valuable vessels.
20 And he exiled to Babylon those
who had escaped the sword; and they
were slaves to him and to his sons
until the reign of the kingdom of
Persia;
21 in order to fulfill the Word of
YAHWEH in the mouth of Jeremiah,
until the land had enjoyed its
Sabbaths; all the days of the desolation

it kept the Sabbath, to the full measure
of seventy years.
22 And in the first year of Cyrus the
king of Persia, in order to accomplish
the Word of YAHWEH in the mouth
of Jeremiah, YAHWEH awakened the
spirit of Cyrus the king of Persia, and
he caused a voice to pass throughout
all his kingdom, and also in writing,
saying,
23 So says Cyrus the king of Persia,
YAHWEH the Elohim of the heavens
has given to me all the kingdoms of
the earth, and He has laid a charge on
me to build a house in Jerusalem to
Him, that is in Judah. Who is among
you of all His people? May YAHWEH
his Elohim be with him, and let him go
up.

The

Brit

Chadashah

(New Covenant or Testament)

Book of Matthew

Chapter 1

1 The Book of the genealogy of Yahshua Messiah the Son of David, the son of Abraham.

2 Abraham fathered Isaac, and Isaac fathered Jacob, and Jacob fathered Judah and his brothers.

3 And Judah fathered Pharez and Zarah out of Tamar, and Pharez fathered Hezron, and Hezron fathered Aram,

4 and Aram fathered Amminadab, and Amminadab fathered Nahshon, and Nahshon fathered Salmon,

5 and Salmon fathered Boaz out of Rahab, and Boaz fathered Obed out of Ruth, and Obed fathered Jesse,

6 and Jesse fathered David the king. And David the king fathered Solomon out of her who had been the wife of Uriah,

7 and Solomon fathered Rehoboam, and Rehoboam fathered Abijah, and Abijah fathered Asa,

8 and Asa fathered Jehoshaphat, and Jehoshaphat fathered Jehoram, and Jehoram fathered Uzziah,

9 and Uzziah fathered Jotham, and Jotham fathered Ahaz, and Ahaz fathered Hezekiah,

10 and Hezekiah fathered Manasseh, and Manasseh fathered Amon, and Amon fathered Josiah,

11 and Josiah fathered Jehoiachin and his brothers, at the deportation of Babylon.

12 And after the deportation of Babylon, Jehoiachin[1] fathered Shealtiel, and Shealtiel fathered Zerubbabel[2], *(1 Chron 3:17-19)*

[1] This genealogy is Joseph's and shows why Joseph could not be Yahshua's father as Jehoiachin was cursed (Jer 22:30) and the Messiah could not come from his genealogy.

[2] No children of Shealtiel are recorded. He probably adopted his brother Pedaiah's son.

13 and Zerubbabel fathered Abiud, and Abiud fathered Eliakim, and Eliakim fathered Azor,

14 and Azor fathered Sadoc, and Sadoc fathered Achim, and Achim fathered Eliud,

15 and Eliud fathered Eleazar, and Eleazar fathered Matthan, and Matthan fathered Jacob,

16 and Jacob fathered Joseph, the kinsman-redeemer[3] of Mariam, out of whom[4] Yahshua was born, the One called Messiah.

17 So all the generations from Abraham to David were fourteen generations, and from David[5] to the deportation to Babylon, fourteen generations, and from the deportation to Babylon until the Messiah, fourteen generations.

18 And the birth of Yahshua Messiah was this way (for His mother Mariam had been betrothed to Joseph) before the coming together of them, she was found having babe in womb by the Holy Spirit.

19 But her husband[6], Joseph, being just, and not willing to make her a public example, he purposed to divorce her secretly. *(Deut 22:23-24)*

[3] This is Joseph's genealogy. In the original Aramaic the word used is not husband here but protectorate or redeemer such as Boaz was to Ruth. (Ruth 4:1-6) Num 36:1-9

[4] "*of whom*" is in the feminine singular showing there was an earthly mother but no earthly father.

[5] The word value for the name "David" is 14.

[6] Here the word husband is used and since we see from verse 18 that they were only engaged, we clearly see the intent of the ancient marriage covenant where at the signing of the marriage covenant at engagement the agreement was binding and only could be broken during the betrothal period for unfaithfulness and after the marriage vows were consummated, then, only death could separate the two from their marriage vow.

20 And as he was thinking about
these things, behold, a Cherub of
YAHWEH was seen by him in a
dream, saying, Joseph, son of David,
do not be afraid to take Mariam as
your wife. For that in her is generated
by the Holy Spirit.
21 And she will bear a son, and you
shall call His name Yahshua, for He
shall save His people from their sins[1].
(Ex 23:21, Acts 4:12)
22 And all this happened so that
might be fulfilled that which was
spoken by YAHWEH through the
prophet, saying,
23 "Behold! The virgin will conceive
in her womb and will bear a son, and
they will call His name Emmanuel,"
which is interpreted, our Elohim is
with us. *(Isa. 7:14)*
24 And being aroused from sleep,
Joseph did as the cherub of YAHWEH
commanded him, and took his wife,
25 and did not know her until she
bore her son, the Firstborn. And he
called His name Yahshua[2].

Chapter 2

1 And when Yahshua had been born
in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of
Herod the king, behold, magi arrived
from the east to Jerusalem,
2 saying, where is He born King of
the Jews? For we saw His star in the
east and have come to worship Him.[3]
3 But Herod the king having heard
this, he was troubled and all
Jerusalem with him.
4 And having gathered all the chief
priests and scribes of the people, he
asked of them where the Messiah was
to be born.
5 And they said to him, In
Bethlehem of Judea, for so it has been
written by the prophet,
6 "And you, Bethlehem, in the land
of Judea, in no way are you least
among the governors of Judah, for out
of you shall come out One ruling, who
shall shepherd My people Israel."
(Mic. 5:2)
7 Then secretly calling the magi,
Herod asked of them exactly the time
of the star appearing.
8 And sending them to Bethlehem,
he said, having gone, exactly inquire
about the child. And when you find
Him, bring me word again so that
coming I may also worship Him.
9 And having heard the king, they
departed. And, behold! The star which
they saw in the east went before them
until it had come and stood over where
the child was.
10 And seeing the star, they rejoiced
exceedingly with a great joy.
11 And having come into the house,
they saw the child with His mother
Mariam. And falling down, they
worshiped Him. And opening their
treasures, they presented gifts to Him,
gold and frankincense and myrrh.
12 And having been warned by a
dream not to return to Herod, they
went back into their own country by
another way.
13 And they having departed, a
Cherub of YAHWEH appeared to
Joseph by a dream, saying, Rise up!
Take the child and His mother with
you, and flee into Egypt. And be there
until I shall tell you. For Herod is

---

[1] The name Yahshua means Yahweh's salvation, so by stating His name and then showing what the name means "*He will save His people from their sins*" clearly shows an Aramaic writing style that does not exist in Greek. The name "*Jesus*" has no such entomology in Greek and comes from "*Ieasous*" which is the masculine form of the pagan goddess of healing Ieasa.

[2] Mariam had other children after Yahshua (Math 13:55-56)

[3] See note on Rev 12:1

about to look for the child in order to
destroy Him.
14 And rising up, Joseph took along
the child and His mother by night and
withdrew into Egypt.
15 And he was there until the end of
Herod, that might be fulfilled that
spoken by YAHWEH through the
prophet, saying, "Out of Egypt I have
called My Son." *(Hos. 11:1)*
16 Then seeing that he was mocked
by the magi, Herod was greatly
enraged, and having sent, he killed all
the boys in Bethlehem and in all its
districts, from two years old and
under, according to the time which he
exactly asked from the magi.
17 Then was fulfilled that spoken by
Jeremiah the prophet, saying
18 "A voice was heard in Ramah,
lamenting and bitter wailing, and
great mourning, Rachel weeping for
her children and would not be
comforted, because they were not."
(Jer. 31:15)
19 But when King Herod was dead,
behold, a Cherub of YAHWEH
appeared to Joseph by a dream in
Egypt,
20 saying, rising up, take along the
child and His mother and pass over
into the land of Israel; for those
seeking the life of the child have died.
21 And rising up, Joseph took along
the child and His mother and came
into the land of Israel.
22 But hearing that Archelaus
reigned over Judea in place of his
father Herod, he feared to go there.
And being warned by a dream, he
departed into the land of Galilee.
23 And coming, he lived in a city
called Nazareth[1], so as to fulfill that
spoken by the prophet, He shall be
called a Nazarene.[2] *(Isa. 11:1)*

Chapter 3

1 Now in those days John the Baptist
came preaching in the deserted places
of Judea,
2 and saying, Repent! For the
kingdom of Heaven has drawn near.
3 For this is He spoken of by Isaiah
the prophet, saying "The voice of one
crying in the wilderness, Prepare the
way of YAHWEH! Make smooth His
paths!" *(Isa. 40:3)*
4 And John himself had his clothing
from hairs of a camel, and a belt of
leather about his loin. And his food
was locusts and wild honey.
5 Then Jerusalem and all Judea went
out to him, and all the neighborhood
of the Jordan,
6 and were baptized by him in the
Jordan, confessing their sins.
7 But seeing many of the Pharisees
and Sadducees coming to his baptism,
he said to them, Offspring of vipers!
Who has informed you to flee from the
wrath to come?
8 Therefore, bring forth fruits
worthy of repentance.
9 And do not suppose to say within
yourselves, we have a father,
Abraham. For I say to you that
YAHWEH is able to raise up children
to Abraham from these stones.
10 But already the ax is even laid at
the root of the trees; therefore, any
tree not bringing forth good fruit is cut
off and is thrown into fire.
11 I indeed baptize you in water to

[1] Nazareth was not an Old Testament town, but only established in the 2nd century BC. The Rabbis claim that a priestly family from Bethlehem migrated to Nazareth to keep their lineage pure.

[2] This verse is most likely referring to Is 11:1 where the Hebrew word for branch "*netzar*" is very similar to the word for Nazarene. Showing that the Messiah would come from the lineage of King David. Please see note on Is 11:1.

repentance; but He who is coming after me is stronger than me, of whom I am not worthy to remove the sandals. He will baptize you in the Holy Spirit and fire,
12 whose winnowing fork is in His hand, and He will cleanse His threshing-floor and will gather His wheat into the storehouse. But He will burn up the chaff with unquenchable fire.
13 Then Yahshua arrives from Galilee to the Jordan, to John, to be baptized by him.
14 But John refused Him, saying, I have need to be baptized by You, and do You come to me?
15 But answering, Yahshua said to him, Allow it now, for it is proper to us this way to fulfill all righteousness. Then he allowed Him.
16 And having been, Yahshua went up immediately from the water. And, behold! The heavens were opened to Him, and He saw the Spirit of YAHWEH coming down as a dove, and coming upon Him.
17 And behold! A voice out of the heaven saying, This is My Son, the Beloved, in whom I am well pleased. *(Psa. 2:7; Gen. 22; Isa. 42:1, Pr 30:4)*

Chapter 4

1 Then Yahshua was led up into the wilderness by the Spirit, to be tempted by the Devil.
2 And having fasted forty days and forty nights, afterward He hungered.
3 And coming near to Him, the accuser said, If You are the Son of Elohim, speak that these stones may become loaves.
4 But answering, He said, It has been written "Man shall not live by bread alone, but on every Word that proceeds out of the mouth of YAHWEH[1]." *(Deut. 8:3)*
5 Then the accuser takes Him to the holy city, and he set Him on the pinnacle of the sanctuary.
6 And he said to Him, If You are the Son of Elohim, throw Yourself down; for it has been written "He shall give His cherubs charge concerning You, and they shall bear You on their hands, lest You strike Your foot against a stone." *(Psa. 91:11, 12)*
7 Yahshua said to him, Again it has been written "You shall not test YAHWEH your Elohim." *(Deut. 6:16)*
8 Again the Devil takes Him to a very high mountain, and shows to Him all the kingdoms of the world and their glory.
9 And said to Him. I will give all these things to You if falling down, You will worship me[2].
10 Then Yahshua said to him, Go, Satan! For it has been written "You shall worship YAHWEH your Elohim, and Him only shall you serve." *(Deut. 6:13)*
11 Then the accuser left Him. And behold! Cherubs came near and ministered to Him.
12 But Yahshua hearing that John was arrested, He withdrew into Galilee.
13 And having left Nazareth, having come He lived at Capernaum, beside

---

[1] In many translations you see an anti-Torah bias that was never actually written into the manuscripts. The very opposite; what we see over and over again is the fact of the Torah and commandments of YHWH being binding on the life of true covenant believers today and the message that Yahshua taught His disciples. (Math 5:17-20, 1 Joh 2:3-6, 1Joh 5:2-3)

[2] Yahshua did not argue the fact that Satan is the ruler of this world, and that is why true believers are commanded to stay separate and sanctified from the ways of the world (1Joh 2:15-18)

the sea in the districts of Zebulun and
Naphtali,
14 so that might be fulfilled that
spoken by Isaiah the prophet, saying
15 "Land of Zebulun and land of
Naphtali, way of the sea, the crossings
of the Jordan, Galilee of the nations
16 the people sitting in darkness saw
a great Light; and to those sitting in
the land and shadow of death, Light
sprang up to them." *(Isa. 9:1,2)*
17 From that time Yahshua began to
preach and to say, Repent! For the
kingdom of Heaven has drawn near.
18 And walking beside the Sea of
Galilee, Yahshua saw two brothers,
Simon being called Peter and his
brother Andrew, casting a net into the
sea; for they were fishers.
19 And He says to them, Come after
Me, and I will make you fishers of the
sons of men.
20 And leaving the nets, they
immediately followed Him.
21 And going on from there, He saw
two other brothers, Jacob the son of
Zebedee and his brother John in the
boat with their father Zebedee,
mending their nets. And He called
them.
22 And at once leaving the boat and
their father, they followed Him.
23 And Yahshua went around all
Galilee teaching in their synagogues
and proclaiming the good news of the
kingdom, and healing every disease
and every sickness among the people.
24 And the report of Him went out
into all Syria. And they brought to
Him all the ones being badly ill,
suffering various diseases and
torments, also those being demon-
possessed, and those being lunatics,
and paralytics; and He healed them.
25 And many crowds followed Him
from Galilee and Decapolis, and
Jerusalem, and Judea, and beyond the
Jordan.

Chapter 5

1 But seeing the crowds, He went up
into the mountain, and seating
Himself, His disciples came near to
Him.
2 And opening His mouth, He taught
them, saying
3 Blessed are the poor in spirit! For
theirs is the kingdom of the Heavens.
4 Blessed are the ones mourning!
For they shall be comforted.
5 Blessed are the meek! For they
shall inherit the earth. *(Jac 4:6,10)*
6 Blessed are they who hunger and
thirst after righteousness! For they
shall be satisfied.
7 Blessed are the merciful! For they
shall obtain mercy.
8 Blessed are the pure in heart! For
they shall see YAHWEH.
9 Blessed are the peacemakers! For
they shall be called sons of YAHWEH.
10 Blessed are they who have been
persecuted for righteousness' sake!
For theirs is the kingdom of Heaven.
11 Blessed are you when they shall
curse you, and persecute you, and
shall say every evil word against you,
lying, on account of Me.
12 Rejoice and leap for joy, for your
reward is great in Heaven; for in this
way they persecuted the prophets who
were before you.
13 You are the salt of the earth[1], but
if the salt becomes tasteless, with what
shall it be salted? For it has strength
for nothing any more but to be thrown
out and to be trampled under by men.
14 You are the light of the world. It is
not possible to hide a city that is built
on a mountain.

[1] In ancient times salt had great value due to its ability to preserve food for long periods and even keep the animals healthy. At times in history salt was even used to pay employees and that is where the term *"he is worth his weight in salt"* comes from.

15 Nor do they light a lamp and put it under the bushel, but on the lamp stand; and it shines for all those in the house.
16 So let your light shine before men, so that they may see your good works, and may glorify your Father in Heaven.
17 Do not think that I came to annul the Torah or the Prophets; I did not come to annul, but to fulfill[1].
18 Truly I say to you, Until the heaven and the earth pass away, in no way shall one yod or one stroke[2] pass away from the Torah until all comes to pass.
19 Therefore, whoever loosens one of these commandments, the least, and shall teach men so, he shall be called the worst in the kingdom of Heaven[3]. But whoever does and teaches them, this one shall be called great in the kingdom of Heaven.
20 For I say to you, If your righteousness shall not exceed that of the scribes and Pharisees, you shall not enter into the kingdom of YAHWEH, never[4]!
21 You have heard that it was said to the ancients "Do not commit murder!" And, whoever commits murder shall be condemned to the Judgment. *(Ex. 21; Deut. 5:17)*
22 But I say to you that anyone who provokes to anger his brother without cause, is condemned to judgment and anyone who should say to his brother, I spit on you is condemned to the assembly, and anyone who should say, you are a coward, is condemned to the Gehenna of fire.
23 Then if you offer your gift on the altar, and remember there that your brother has a grudge against you,
24 leave your gift there before the altar, and go. First, be reconciled to your brother, and then coming, offer your gift.
25 Be in agreement with your adversary at law while you are with him on the way, lest your adversary at law deliver you to the judge and the judge deliver you to the officer and you be thrown into the prison.
26 Truly, I say to you, In no way shall you come out from there until you pay the last coin.
27 You have heard that it was said to the ancients "Do not commit adultery." *(Ex. 20:14; Deut. 5:18)*
28 But I say to you, Everyone looking at a woman to lust after her has already committed adultery with her in his heart.
29 But if your right eye offends you, take it out and throw it from you, for it is profitable to you that one of your members should perish and all your body not be thrown into Hell.
30 And if your right hand causes you to offend, cut it off and throw it from you, for it is profitable to you that one

[1] Verses 17-20 are extremely clear that Yahshua's intention was NEVER to abolish the eternal Torah of YHWH, but to magnify the intent.

[2] To write the name Yahshua in Aramaic it begins with the letter 'Yod' and a stroke or line. It is interesting today that most have abolished the true name of our Savior Yahshua for a hybrid Greek name.

[3] Some have wrongly thought this verse simply means that the ones who teach that it is permissible to break the Torah will be in the Kingdom but will have the lowest position, but this verse is stating to teach against the Torah in the Kingdom is the absolute worst thing that could be thought of, and those who did so would NOT be there (Math 7:23)

[4] The Pharisees strictly kept their oral traditions above the Torah and unless a true believer not only keeps the letter of the Torah but the true intent of the spirit he will not be in the Kingdom of YHWH.

of your members should perish and all
your body not be thrown into Hell[1].
31 It was also said, Whoever puts
away his wife, "let him give her a bill of
divorce." *(Deut. 24:1)*
32 But I say to you, Whoever
divorces his wife, even in a matter of
fornication[2], causes her to commit
adultery. And whoever shall marry a
divorced one commits adultery[3].
33 Again, you have heard that it was
said to the ancients "You shall not lie
in your oaths, but shall give your oaths
to YAHWEH.[4]" *(Lev. 19:12; Num.
30:12)*
34 But I say to you, Do not swear at
all, neither by Heaven, because it is
the throne of Elohim; *(Isa. 66:1)*
35 nor by the earth, because it is the
footstool of His feet; nor by Jerusalem,
because it is the city of the great King.
(Ps. 48:2)
36 Nor shall you swear by your head,
because you are not able to make one
hair white or black. (Jac 5:12)
37 But let your word be Yes, yes; No,
no. Anything more than these is from
evil.[5]
38 You have heard that it was said
"An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a
tooth;" *(Ex. 21:24; Lev. 24:20; Deut.
19:21)*
39 but I say to you, Do not stand
against the evil; but whoever strikes
you on the right cheek, turn the other
to him also[6].
40 And to him desiring to sue you,
and to take your coat, allow him also
to have the cloak.
41 And whoever shall compel you to
go one mile, go two with him.
42 He asking you to give, and he
wishing to borrow from you, do not
turn away.
43 You have heard that it was said,
"You shall love your neighbor" and
hate your enemy; *(Lev. 19:18)*
44 but I say to you, Love your
enemies; bless those cursing you, do
well to those hating you[7]; and pray for
those who take you by force and
persecute you,
45 so that you may become sons of

---

1 This is an Aramaic idiomatic phrase which means whatever is causing you to sin you must put it out of your life.

2 This phrase can be inclusive or exclusive but taking into consideration the context and that nowhere in scripture does YHWH ever condone divorce"*even in a matter of fornication*" would be the correct rendering.

3 Nowhere in scripture does YHWH condone divorce and Yahshua clearly states that if one leaves their covenant spouse and marries another it is considered adultery and if someone marries a divorced person both parties are committing adultery.

4 What was happening was that people in this time period felt that if they swore by the name of YHWH that they were bound to keep their word, but if they did not swear using the name of YHWH, then they were not bound to keep their commitment. What Yahshua is saying is that one does not need to swear at all, but should always keep their word; period!

5 Verse 34-37, Swearing and taking a vow are two separate issues (Nu 30:2). If one could not take vows, then how could one get married to a spouse or even take the baptism vow to join the New Covenant? In essence what Yahshua is saying is that every word out of our mouth is a vow and should be accomplished as we say.

6 This Aramaic idiomatic phrase is not condoning evil, but is saying if someone hurts you and repents, then forgive them and in doing so and restoring the relationship you are giving opportunity to hurt you again in the future. When one shows true Elohim guided love and forgiveness they make themselves vulnerable to being hurt.

7 A believer does this by obeying the commandments to all people even their enemies. A believer will not lie or steal from his enemy and this is how he is showing love for him.

your Father in Heaven. Because He causes the sun to rise on the evil and the good, and sends rain on the just and unjust.

46 For if you love those loving you, what reward do you have? Do not even the tax-collectors do the same?

47 And if you only greet your brothers, what exceptional thing do you do? Do not the tax-collectors do so?

48 Therefore, you become perfect *(complete)*, even as your Father in Heaven is perfect.

Chapter 6

1 Take care not to do your alms giving before men in order to be seen by them. But if not, you have no reward from your Father in Heaven.

2 Therefore, when you do your alms giving, do not trumpet before you as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, so that they may be glorified by men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward.

3 But you doing your alms giving, do not let your left know what your right hand does,

4 so that your merciful deeds may be in secret. And your Father seeing in secret Himself will repay you in the open.

5 And when you pray, you shall not be as the hypocrites, for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the open streets so that they may be seen of men. Truly I say to you, they have their reward.

6 But you, when you pray, enter into your room and shutting your door, pray to your Father in secret. And your Father seeing in secret will repay you in the open.

7 And when you pray, you should not be chatterers like the pagans for they hope that by many words they will be heard.[1]

8 Then do not be like them, for your Father knows what things you have need of before you ask Him.

9 So, then, you should pray this way, Our Father who is in Heaven, Hallowed be Your name[2].

10 Your kingdom come; Your will be done, as it is in Heaven, also on the earth.

11 Give us the bread of our need this day,

12 and forgive us our offenses as we also have forgiven those who have offended us.

13 And do not lead us into trial, but deliver us from the evil one, for Yours is the kingdom and the power and the glory forever and ever.

14 For if you forgive men their transgressions, your heavenly Father will also forgive you.

15 But if you will not forgive men their transgressions, neither will your Father forgive your transgressions.

16 And when you fast, do not be as the hypocrites, with sullen face, for they disfigure their faces so that they may appear to men to be fasting. Truly I say to you that they have their reward.

17 But you in fasting, anoint your head and wash your face,

18 so as not to appear to men to be fasting, but to your Father in secret. And your Father seeing in secret will repay you in the open.

19 Do not treasure up for you

---

1 Prayer is meant to be a solemn dialogue from the heart, not a memorized repetitious chanting that many still do today.

2 Again, we see the importance of the name of the Heavenly Father, Yahweh, and that every prayer should start by glorifying His name. What Yahshua outlines in verses 9-15 is not a repetitious prayer to recite word for word but an outline to be used in prayer

treasures on the earth, where moth and rust cause to corrupt, and where thieves dig through and steal.

20 But treasure up for you treasures in Heaven, where neither moth nor rust cause to corrupt, and where thieves do not dig through and steal.

21 For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.

22 The lamp of the body is the eye. Then if your eye is pure, all your body is light.

23 But if your eye is evil, all your body is dark. If, then, the light in you is darkness, how great is the darkness!

24 No one is able to serve two masters; for either he will hate the one, and he will love the other; or he will cleave to the one, and he will despise the other. You are not able to serve YAHWEH and wealth.

25 Because of this, I say to you, Do not be anxious for your soul, what you eat and what you drink, nor for your body, what you put on. Is not life more than the food and the body than the clothing?

26 Observe the birds of the heaven, that they do not sow, nor do they reap, nor do they gather into barns, yet your heavenly Father feeds them. Do you not rather excel them?

27 But who of you by being anxious is able to add one cubit onto his stature?

28 And why are you anxious about clothing? Consider the lilies of the field, how they grow. They do not labor nor do they spin,

29 but I say to you that not even Solomon in all his glory was clothed as one of these.

30 If YAHWEH so enrobes the grass of the field, which is today, and is thrown into a furnace tomorrow, will He not much rather you, little-faiths?

31 Then do not be anxious, saying, What may we eat? Or, what may we drink? Or, what may clothe us?

32 For after all these things the nations seek. For your heavenly Father knows that you have need of all these things.

33 But seek first the kingdom of YAHWEH and His righteousness, and all these things will be added to you.

34 Then do not be anxious for tomorrow. For the morrow will be anxious of itself. Sufficient to each day is its own trouble.

Chapter 7

1 Do not condemn, that you may not be condemned[1];

2 for with whatever condemnation you judge, you will be judged; and with whatever measure you measure, it will be measured again to you.

3 But why do you see the twig that is in the eye of your brother, but do not see the log in your own eye?

4 Or how will you say to your brother, Allow me to cast out the twig from your eye; and behold, the log is in your eye!

5 Hypocrite, first remove the log out of your own eye, and then you will see clearly to remove the twig out of the eye of your brother.

6 Do not hang earrings on dogs, nor throw your pearls before the pigs, that they should not trample them with their feet, and turning they charge you.

7 Ask, and it will be given to you; seek, and you will find; knock, and it will be opened to you.

8 For each one that asks receives,

1 Most translations put the word judge which is improper as we make 100's of judgments every day of life. A judgment is simply a decision, as where this verse is stating not to condemn, which is the position of Yahweh alone. We merely make our judgments based on His written Torah.

and the one that seeks finds; and to
the one knocking, it will be opened.
9 Or what man of you is there, if his
son should ask of him for bread, will
he give him a stone?
10 And if he should ask a fish from
him, why would he hold out a snake?
11 Therefore, if you, who are
imperfect, know how to give good gifts
to your children, how much more will
your Father in Heaven give good
things to those that ask Him?
12 Therefore, all things, whatever
you desire that men should do to you,
so also you should do to them; for this
is the Torah and the Prophets.
13 Go in through the narrow gate;
for wide is the gate and broad is the
way that leads to destruction, and
many are the ones entering in through
it.
14 For narrow is the gate, and
constricted is the way that leads away
into life, and few are the ones finding
it.
15 But beware of the false prophets
who come to you in sheep's clothing,
but inside they are plundering wolves.
16 From their fruits you shall know
them. Do they gather grapes from
thorns, or figs from thistles?
17 So every good tree produces good
fruits, but the corrupt tree produces
evil fruits.
18 A good tree cannot produce evil
fruits, nor a corrupt tree produce good
fruits.
19 Every tree not producing good
fruit is cut down and is thrown into
fire.
20 Then surely from their fruits you
shall know them.
21 It will not be that just everyone
who says to Me, Master, Master, will
enter into the kingdom of Heaven, but
the ones who do the will of My Father
in Heaven.
22 Many will say to Me in that day,
Master, Master, did we not prophesy
in Your name, and in Your name cast
out demons, and in Your name do
many works of power?
23 And then I will declare to them,
from everlasting, I never knew you;
"depart from Me, those working
lawlessness!"[1] *(Psa. 6:8)*
24 Then everyone who hears these
Words from Me, and does them, I will
compare him to a wise man who built
his house on the rock;
25 and the rain came down, and the
floods came up, and the winds blew,
and fell against that house; but it did
not fall, for it had been founded on the
rock.
26 And everyone who hears these
Words of Mine, and who does not do
them, he shall be compared to a
foolish man who built his house on the
sand;
27 and the rain came down, and the
floods came up, and the winds blew
and beat against that house; and it fell,
and great was the collapse of it.
28 And it happened, when Yahshua
had finished these words, the crowds
were astonished at His doctrine.
29 For He was teaching them as
having authority, and not as the
scribes.

Chapter 8

1 And He having come down from
the mountain, great crowds followed
Him.
2 And behold, coming up, a leper
worshiped Him, saying, Master, If You
will, You are able to cleanse me.
3 And stretching out His hand,
Yahshua touched him, saying, I will!

[1] The lawless gospel message that Christianity is teaching did not originate from the bible and when Yahshua returns all those who have been practicing lawlessness will be cast into the lake of Fire.

Be cleansed! And instantly his leprosy
was cleansed.
4 And Yahshua said to him, Why do
you look to telling a man, but rather
go, show yourself to the priest and
offer the gift which Moses
commanded, for a testimony to them.
5 And Yahshua, entering into
Capernaum, a centurion came near to
Him, begging Him,
6 and saying, Master, my child has
been laid in the house, paralyzed and
seriously in pain.
7 And Yahshua said to him, I will
come and heal him.
8 And answering, the centurion said,
Master, I am not worthy that You
should enter under my roof, but only
speak a word and my child will be
healed.
9 For I am also a man under
authority, having soldiers under my
hand. And I say to this one, Go; and he
goes; and to another, Come; and he
comes; and to my slave, do this; and
he does it.
10 And hearing, Yahshua marveled,
and said to those following, Truly I say
to you, not even in Israel did I find
such faith.
11 But I say to you that many will
come from east and west, and will
recline with Abraham and Isaac and
Jacob in the kingdom of Heaven,
12 but the sons of the kingdom shall
be cast out into the outer darkness.
There shall be weeping and gnashing
of the teeth.
13 And Yahshua said to the
centurion, Go, and as you have
believed, so let it be to you. And his
child was healed in that moment.
14 And coming into the house of
Peter, Yahshua saw his mother-in-law
laid out and burning with fever.
15 And He touched her hand, and
her fever left her. And she rose up and
served them.
16 And evening having come on,
they brought to Him many having
been possessed by demons. And He
cast out the spirits by a word, and He
healed all those having illness,
17 so that it might be fulfilled that
spoken through Isaiah the prophet,
saying, "He took upon Himself our
sorrows, and bore our sicknesses."
(Isa. 53:4)
18 And seeing great crowds around
Him, Yahshua gave orders to go away
to the other side.
19 And one scribe, coming near, said
to Him, Rabboni, I will follow You
wherever you may go.
20 And Yahshua said to him, The
foxes have holes, and the birds of the
heaven have nests, but the Son of Man
has nowhere He may lay His head.
21 And another of His disciples said
to Him, Master, allow me first to go
away and bury my father.
22 But Yahshua said to him, Follow
Me, and leave the dead to bury their
dead.
23 And He entering into the boat,
His disciples followed Him.
24 And, behold, a whirlwind
occurred in the sea, so that the boat
was covered by the waves; but He was
sleeping.
25 And coming near, His disciples
aroused Him, saying, Master, save us!
We are perishing.
26 And He said to them, Why are
you afraid, you of little-faith? Then
rising up, He rebuked the winds and
the sea. And a great calm occurred.[1]
27 And the men marveled, saying,
What kind of man is this, that even the
winds and the sea obey Him?
28 And He coming to the other side,
into the country of the Gadarenes. Two
very evil possessed ones met him who
were coming out from the cemetery, so

[1] Ps 65:7

that no man was able to cross over by
that way.
29 And, behold! They cried out,
saying, what is to us and to You,
Yahshua, Son of Elohim? Have You
come here before the time to torment
us?
30 And far off from them there was a
herd of many pigs feeding.
31 And the demons begged Him,
saying, If You cast us out, allow us to
go away into the herd of pigs.
32 And He said to them, Go! And
coming out, these went away into the
herd of pigs. And all that herd went
straight over a cliff and fell into the
sea, and they died in the sea.
33 But those who fed them fled, and
going into the city, they told all the
things of the ones who had been
demon-possessed.
34 And, behold, all the city went out
to meet with Yahshua. And seeing
Him, they begged that He depart from
their borders.

Chapter 9

1 And entering into the boat, He
passed over and came to His own city.
2 And, behold! They were bringing a
paralytic lying on a cot to Him. And
seeing their faith, Yahshua said to the
paralyzed one, Be comforted, child.
Your sins are forgiven you.
3 And, behold, some of the scribes
said within themselves, This One
blasphemes.
4 And seeing their thoughts,
Yahshua said, Why do you think evil in
your hearts?
5 For what is easier, to say, Your sins
are forgiven, or to say, Rise up and
walk?
6 But that you may know that the
Son of Man has authority on earth to
forgive sins then He said to the
paralytic, Rising up, lift up your cot
and go to your house.
7 And rising up, he went away to his
house.
8 And seeing, the crowds marveled,
and they glorified YAHWEH, the One
giving such authority to the sons of
men.
9 And passing from there, Yahshua
saw a man named Matthew sitting at
the tax office. And He said to him,
Follow Me. And rising up, he followed
Him.
10 And it happened as He reclined in
the house, behold, many tax collectors
and sinners having come, these were
reclining with Yahshua and His
disciples.
11 And seeing, the Pharisees said to
His disciples, Why does your teacher
eat with tax collectors and sinners?
12 But Yahshua hearing, He said to
them, The healthy are not in need of a
doctor, rather those that are sick.
13 But going, learn what this is, "I
desire mercy and not sacrifice." For I
did not come to call righteous ones but
sinners to repentance. *(Hos. 6:6)*
14 Then the disciples of John came
to Him, saying, Why do we and the
Pharisees fast much, and Your
disciples do not fast?
15 And Yahshua said to them, Can
the sons of the bride chamber mourn
as long as the bridegroom is with
them? But the days will come when
the bridegroom will have been taken
from them, and then they will fast.
16 No man places a new patch on a
worn out garment lest its seam should
tear away from the garment, and the
hole will be greater.
17 And they do not place new wine in
worn-out wineskins lest the wineskins
should rip and the wineskins are
destroyed and the wine should pour
out. Rather, they place new wine in

new wineskins, and both of them are preserved.[1]

18 As He was speaking these things to them, behold, one ruler coming worshiped before Him, saying, My daughter has just now died; but coming lay Your hand on her, and she will live.

19 And rising up, Yahshua and His disciples followed him.

20 And behold, a woman who had a flow of blood for twelve years came near behind Him, and touched the fringe[2] of His robe.

21 For she said within herself, If only I shall touch His robe, I will be cured.

22 But turning and seeing her, Yahshua said, Be comforted, daughter; your faith has healed you. And the woman was healed from that moment.

23 And Yahshua coming into the house of the ruler, and seeing the flute-players and the crowd causing a tumult,

24 He says to them, Go back, for the little girl has not died, but she sleeps. And they laughed at Him.

25 But when the crowd had been put out, entering He took hold of her hand, and the little girl rose up.

26 And this report went out into all that land.

27 And Yahshua passing on from there, two blind ones followed Him, crying and saying, Have pity on us, Son of David.

28 And coming into the house, the blind ones came near to Him. And Yahshua says to them, Do you believe that I am able to do this? And they said to Him, Yes, Master.

29 Then He touched their eyes, saying, According to your faith let it be to you.

30 And their eyes were opened. And Yahshua strictly ordered them, saying, see that no man should know.

31 But going out, they made Him known in all that land.

32 And as they were going out, behold, they brought to Him a dumb man having been possessed by a demon.

33 And the demon being cast out, the dumb one spoke. And the crowds marveled, saying, Never was it seen this way in Israel.

34 But the Pharisees said, He casts out the demons by the ruler of the demons.

35 And Yahshua went about all the cities and the villages teaching in their synagogues, and proclaiming the good news of the kingdom, and healing every sickness and every weakness of body among the people.

36 And seeing the crowds, He was moved with pity concerning them, because they were weary and scattered, like sheep having no shepherd.

37 Then He said to His disciples, The harvest truly is great, but the workers few.

38 Pray then that The Master of the harvest may send out workers into His harvest.

Chapter 10

1 And having called His twelve disciples, He gave them authority over unclean spirits, so as to cast out, and to heal every affliction and disease.

2 And the names of the twelve apostles are these First, Simon who is called Peter and his brother Andrew,

---

1 Old wineskins have lost their elasticity, which represents the ability of a person to stretch his belief system to learn more. The analogy is stating that due to the Rabbis being filled with the man-made oral law, there is no elasticity to learn the truth.

2 The outer edge or *tassel*. The tassel was an identity mark to an Israelite and only worn by males. The blue thread was a sign of the Messiah to come.

Jacob the son of Zebedee and his brother John,
3 Philip, and Bartholomew, Thomas, and Matthew the tax-collector, Jacob the son of Alpheus, and Lebbaeus, whose last name was Thaddaeus,
4 Simon the Canaanite, and Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed Him.
5 Yahshua sent these twelve out, charging them, saying do not go into the way of the heathen, and do not go into a Samaritan city.
6 But rather go to the lost sheep of the house of Israel[1].
7 And going on, proclaim, saying, the kingdom of Heaven has drawn near.
8 Heal sick ones, cleanse lepers, raise dead ones, cast out demons. Freely you have received, freely give[2].
9 Do not accumulate gold, nor silver, nor copper in your belts,
10 nor a wallet for the road, nor two coats, nor sandals, nor staff, for the worker is worthy of his food.
11 And into whatever city or village you enter, search out who in it is worthy; and remain there until you go out.
12 But entering into the house, greet it;
13 and if the house truly is worthy, let your peace come upon it. But if it is not worthy, let your peace return to you.
14 And whoever will not receive you, nor will hear your words, having gone out of that house or city, shake off the dust from your feet.
15 Truly I say to you, It will be more tranquil to the land of Sodom and Gomorrah in Judgment Day than for that city.
16 Behold, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves. Therefore, be wise as serpents and harmless as doves.
17 But beware of men; for they will deliver you to the house of judgment, and they will scourge you in their assemblies.
18 And also you will be brought before governors and kings for My sake, for a testimony to them and to the gentiles.
19 But when they deliver you up, do not be anxious how or what you should say, for it is given to you in that hour what you should say.
20 For you are not the ones speaking, but the Spirit of your Father who speaks in you.
21 But brother will betray brother to death, and the father his child. And children will rise up against parents and will put them to death.
22 And you will be hated by all on account of My name, but the one enduring to the end shall be saved.
23 But when they persecute you in this city, flee to another. For truly I say to you, In no way will you have finished all the cities of the House of Israel until the Son of Man will come.
24 A disciple is not above the teacher, nor a slave above his Master.
25 It is enough for the disciple to become as his teacher, and the slave as his Master. If they called the master of the house Beelzebub, how much more those of his household?
26 Therefore, you should not fear them, for nothing is covered which will not be uncovered; and hidden, which will not be made known.

---

1 The disciples were sent to The House of Israel and after when the Apostles were going worldwide looking for the tribes of Israel in Diaspora, then also gentiles were able to join the covenant of YHWH with Israel. There is no separate covenant in scripture with only gentiles. That was a false doctrine made up later by the Apostate church.

2 The good news message of the Kingdom of YHWH did not have a price tag on it and was entirely different than the commercial, money making message of today. Pr 23:23, Eze 48:14 Zech 14:21, 2 Kgs 5:15-16,26-27

27 What I say to you in the darkness, speak in the light. And what you hear in the ear, proclaim on the housetops.

28 And you should not fear the ones killing the body, but not being able to kill the soul. But rather fear Him being able to destroy both soul and body in Gehenna.

29 Are[1] not two sparrows sold for an assarion? Yet not one of them shall fall to the ground without your Father.

30 But even the hairs of your head are all numbered.

31 Then do not fear; you are better than many sparrows.

32 Then everyone who shall confess Me before men, I will also confess him before My Father in Heaven.

33 But whoever denies Me before men, I also will deny him before My Father in Heaven.

34 Do not think that I came to bring calm on the earth. I did not come to bring calm, but a sword.

35 I came to divide a man against his father, and a daughter against her mother, and a bride against her mother-in-law.

36 And the adversaries of a man shall be those of his own house. *(Mic. 7:6)*

37 The one loving father or mother more than Me is not worthy of Me. And the one loving son or daughter more than Me is not worthy of Me.

38 And whoever does not take up his staff[2] and follow after Me is not worthy of Me.

39 The one finding his life shall lose it. And the one losing his life on account of Me shall find it.

40 The one receiving you receives Me, and the one receiving Me receives Him who sent Me.

41 The one receiving a prophet in the name of a prophet will receive a prophet's reward, and the one receiving a just one in the name of a just one will receive a just one's reward.

42 And whoever gives only a cup of cold water to drink to one of these little ones in the name of a disciple, truly I say to you, In no way will he lose his reward.

Chapter 11

1 And it happened when Yahshua finished commanding His twelve disciples, He left there to teach and to proclaim in their cities.

2 But hearing in the prison of the works of Messiah, sending two of his disciples,

3 John said to Him, Are You the One coming, or are we to look for another?

4 And answering, Yahshua said to them, Going, relate to John what you hear and have seen

5 The blind receive sight, and the lame walk; lepers are cleansed, and the deaf hear; the dead are raised, and the poor are given hope[3]. *(Isa. 60:1)*

6 And blessed is the one, whoever shall not be offended in Me.

7 But as these were going, Yahshua began to say to the crowds about John, What did you go out into the wilderness to see? A reed being shaken with the wind?

8 But what did you go out to see? A man being clothed in soft robes?

---

1 The soul is not immortal and can be destroyed. The wages of sin are death (Ro 6:23, Ezek 18:4, Ps 37:22)

2 This shows personal responsibility as the staff is a sign of mobility and protection.

3 In the Jewish oral tradition it was stated that when the Messiah would come He would open the eyes of someone blind from birth. He would heal the deaf and cleanse the leper. Yahshua's answer is functionally showing what '*He does'*, not just what '*He says'*.

Behold, those wearing soft things are among kings.
9 But what did you go out to see? A prophet? Yes, I say to you, and one more excellent than a prophet.
10 For this is the one about whom it has been written, Behold, I send out My messenger before Your face, who shall prepare Your way before You. *(Mal. 3:1)*
11 Truly I say to you, There has not arisen among those born of a woman any greater than John the Baptist. But the least in the kingdom of Heaven is greater than he is.
12 But from the days of John the Baptist until now, the kingdom of Heaven suffers violence, and the violent are robbing it.[1]
13 For all the Prophets and the Law prophesied until John.
14 And if you are willing to receive, this is Elijah, who was to come.
15 The one having ears to hear, let him hear.
16 But to what shall I compare this generation? It is like little children sitting in the markets, and calling to their mates,
17 and saying, We sang to you, and you did not dance; we mourned to you, and you did not lament.
18 For John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say, He has a demon.
19 The Son of Man came eating and drinking, and they say, Behold, a gluttonous man and a wine drinker, and a friend of tax collectors, and of sinners; but wisdom is justified by its works[2].
20 Then He began to reproach the cities in which most of His powerful acts had occurred, for they did not repent.
21 Woe to you, Korazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the powerful acts which have taken place in you had happened in Tyre and Sidon, perhaps they would have repented in sackcloth and ashes.
22 But I say to you, It shall be more tranquil for Tyre and Sidon in Judgment Day than for you.
23 And you, Capernaum, who "have been exalted to the heaven, you will be thrown down to Hades." For if the powerful acts happening in you had taken place in Sodom, it would remain until today. *(Isa. 14:13, 15)*
24 But I say to you, It will be more tranquil for the land of Sodom in Judgment Day than for you.
25 Answering at that time, Yahshua said, I praise You, Father, Master of Heaven and of earth, because You hid these things from the sophisticated and intelligent and revealed them to babes.
26 Yes, Father, for so it was pleasing before You.
27 All things were yielded up to Me by My Father; and no one knows the Son except the Father; nor does anyone know the Father, except the Son, and the one to whom the Son purposes to reveal Him.
28 Come to Me, all those laboring and being burdened, and I will give you rest.
29 Bear my yoke upon you and learn from me. That I am tranquil and I am meek, and in my heart you will find tranquility in your souls. *(Jer. 6:16)*
30 For My yoke is pleasant, and My burden is light.

Chapter 12

1 At that time on the Sabbath,

[1] The Pharisees in Yahshua's day and Emperor Constantine later tried to hijack the Good News of Yahshua and deceive the people using violent methods.

[2] The Greek mistranslates this word as children

Yahshua went through the grain fields. And His disciples were hungry, and began to pluck heads of grain and to eat.
2 But seeing, the Pharisees said to Him, Behold, your disciples are doing what it is not lawful to do on the Sabbath.[1]
3 But He said to them, Have you not read what David did, when he and those with him hungered?
4 How he entered into the house of Elohim, and he ate the bread of the altar of YAHWEH, which it was not lawful for him to eat, nor for those with him, but for the priests only?
5 Or have you not read in the Torah that on the Sabbaths the priests in the sanctuary disregard the Sabbath and are without blame?
6 But I say to you, One greater than the sanctuary is here.
7 But if you had known what this is, "I desire mercy and not sacrifice," you would not have condemned those without blame. *(Hos. 6:6)*
8 For the Son of Man is also Master of the Sabbath.
9 And moving from there, He came into their synagogue.
10 And, behold, a man having a withered hand was there. And they asked Him, saying, Is it lawful to heal on the Sabbaths? (That they might accuse Him).
11 But He said to them, What man of you who will have one sheep, and if this one fall into a pit on the day of the Sabbath, that he would not grab it and raise it out?
12 How much more, then, does a man excel a sheep! So that it is lawful to do well on the Sabbaths.
13 Then He said to the man, Stretch out your hand! And he stretched out. And it was restored sound as the other.
14 But as they were leaving, the Pharisees took up a council against Him, how they might destroy Him.
15 But knowing, Yahshua withdrew from there. And great crowds followed Him, and He healed them all
16 and warned them that they should not reveal Him.
17 So that might be fulfilled that spoken through Isaiah the prophet, saying,
18 "Behold, My servant with whom I am pleased, My beloved one in whom My soul rejoices, I will place My spirit upon Him, and He will preach judgment to the nations.
19 He will not argue nor cry out and no man will hear His voice in the street.
20 A bruised reed He will not break, and He will not quench a flickering lamp, until He bring forth judgment to victory.
21 And the nations will hope in His name[2]." *(Isa. 42:1-4)*
22 Then one having been demon-possessed was brought to Him, blind and dumb. And He healed him, so that the blind and dumb one could both speak and see.
23 And all the crowds were amazed, and said, Is this not the Son of David?
24 But hearing, the Pharisees said, This One does not cast out demons except by Beelzebub, ruler of the demons.
25 But Yahshua, knowing their thoughts, He said to them, Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to ruin. And every city or house divided against itself will not stand.
26 And if Satan throws out Satan, he

---

[1] It was lawful to pick grain if hungry, but not lawful to be harvesting your grain on Shabbat (Deut 23:25).

[2] Over and over in the New Covenant the personal name of the Messiah (*Yahshua-Yahweh's salvation*) is emphasized.

was divided against himself. How then will his kingdom stand?

27 And if I throw out the demons by Beelzebub, by whom do your sons cast them out? Because of this, they shall be your judges.

28 But if I cast out the demons by the Spirit of YAHWEH, then the kingdom of YAHWEH has come near to you.

29 Or how is anyone able to enter the house of the strong one and plunder his goods, if he does not first bind the strong one; and then he will plunder his house?

30 The one who is not with Me is against Me, and the one who does not gather with Me scatters.

31 Because of this, I say to you, Every sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven to men, but the blasphemy concerning the Spirit shall not be forgiven to men.

32 And whoever speaks a word against the Son of Man, it shall be forgiven him. But whoever speaks against the Holy Spirit, it shall not be forgiven him, not in this age nor in the coming one.

33 Either make the tree good and its fruit good, or make the tree corrupt and its fruit corrupt; for the tree is known by the fruit.

34 Generation of vipers! How can you, being evil, speak good things? For out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks.

35 The good man out of the good treasure of the heart puts forth good things. And the evil man out of the evil treasure puts forth evil things.

36 But I say to you, that every vain word, whatever men may speak, they shall give an account of it in Judgment Day.

37 For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned. (Pr 18:21)

38 Then some of the scribes and Pharisees answered, saying, Teacher, we desire to see a sign from You.

39 But answering, He said to them, An evil and adulterous generation seeks a sign, and a sign shall not be given to it, except the sign of Jonah the prophet.

40 And even as "Jonah was in the belly of the huge fish three days and three nights," so shall the Son of Man be in the heart of the earth three days and three nights. *(Jon. 1:17)*

41 Men, Ninevites, will stand up in the Judgment with this generation and will condemn it. For they repented at the preaching of Jonah, and, behold, one Greater than Jonah is here.

42 The queen of the south will be raised in the Judgment with this generation and will condemn it. For she came from the ends of the earth to hear the wisdom of Solomon, and, behold, one more than Solomon is here.

43 Now when an unclean spirit goes out from a man, it wanders in places that have no water in them, and seeks rest, but does not find it.

44 Then it says, "I will return to my house from where I came out." And it finds that it is empty and swept, and orderly.

45 Then it will go and lead seven other spirits with it who are worse than it, and they will enter and dwell in it, and the end of the man will be worse than his beginning. This evil generation will be like this.

46 But while He was yet speaking to the crowds, behold, His mother and brothers were standing outside, seeking to speak to Him.

47 Then one said to Him, Behold, Your mother and Your brothers are standing outside, seeking to speak to You.

48 But answering, He said to the one

speaking to Him, Who is My mother? And who are My brothers?
49 And stretching out His hand to His disciples, He said, Behold, My mother and My brothers.
50 For whoever does the will of My Father in Heaven, that one is My brother and my sister and mother.

Chapter 13

1 And going out from the house in that day, Yahshua sat down by the sea.
2 And great crowds were gathered to Him, so that having entered the boat, He sat down. And all the crowd stood on the shore.
3 And He spoke to them many things in parables, saying, Behold the sower went out to sow.
4 And in his sowing, some fell by the roadside, and the birds came and ate them.
5 And other fell on the stony places where they did not have much earth, and it immediately sprang up because it had no deepness of earth.
6 And the sun rising, it was scorched; and because of having no root, it was dried up.
7 And other fell on the thorn-bushes, and the thorn-bushes grew up and choked them.
8 And other fell on the good ground and yielded fruit; indeed, one a hundredfold, and one sixty, and one thirty.
9 The one having ears to hear, let him hear.
10 And coming near, the disciples said to Him, Why do You speak to them in parables?
11 And answering, He said to them, Because it has been given to you to know the mysteries of the kingdom of Heaven, but it has not been given to those.
12 For whoever has, to him will be given, and he will have overabundance. But whoever does not have, even what he has will be taken from him.
13 Because of this, I speak to them in parables, because seeing they do not see, and hearing they do not hear, nor do they understand.
14 And the prophecy of Isaiah is fulfilled on them, which says, "In hearing you will hear and in no way understand, and seeing you will see yet in no way perceive.
15 For hardened is the heart of this people, and with their ears they were hard of hearing, and their eyes are blinded that they should not see with their eyes and hear with their ears and should understand in their heart and return and I heal them. *(Isa. 6:9, 10, Isa. 29:11)*
16 But your eyes are blessed because they see; and your ears because they hear.
17 For truly I tell you that many prophets and righteous ones desired to see what you see and did not see, and to hear what you hear and did not hear.
18 But you hear the parable of the seed,
19 everyone hearing the Word of the kingdom, and not understanding, then the evil one comes and catches away that which was sown in his heart. This is that sown by the roadside.
20 And that sown on the stony places is this, the one hearing the Word, and immediately receiving it with joy,
21 But he has no root in him but is temporal. And when trouble or persecution comes, he is quickly offended because of the word.
22 And that sown into the thorn bushes[1] is this the one hearing the Word, and the cares of this world, and

[1] Jer 4:3, Hos 10:12-13

the deceit of riches, choke the Word, and it becomes unfruitful.
23 But that sown on the good ground is this the one hearing the Word, and understanding it, who indeed bears and yields fruit, one truly a hundredfold, and one sixty, and one thirty.
24 He put before them another parable, saying The kingdom of Heaven is compared to a man sowing good seed in his fields.
25 But while the men were sleeping, an enemy came and sowed tares in the midst of the wheat, and went away.
26 And when the blade sprouted and produced fruit, then the tare also appeared.
27 And coming near, the slaves of the house Master said to him, Sir, did you not sow good seed in your field? Then from where does it have the tares?
28 And he said to them, A man, an enemy did this. And the slaves said to him, do you desire, then, that going out we should gather them?
29 But he said, No, lest gathering the tares you should uproot the wheat with them.
30 Allow both to grow together until the harvest. And in the time of the harvest I will say to the reapers, First gather the tares, and bind them into bundles to burn them, but gather the wheat into my granary.
31 He spoke another parable figuratively to them and said. The kingdom of Heaven is compared to a grain of mustard, which taking, a man sowed in his field; *(Is 60:22)*
32 And it is smaller than all the small seeds, but when it grows, it is greater than all the small herbs, and becomes a tree so that the birds of heaven come and nest in its branches.
33 He spoke another parable to them, The kingdom of Heaven is compared to leaven, which taking, a woman hid in three measures of meal until the whole was leavened.
34 Yahshua spoke all these things in parables to the crowds, and He did not speak to them without a parable,
35 So might be fulfilled the thing which was spoken through the prophet who said. "I will open my mouth with parables and will bring out secrets that were from before the foundation of the world." *(Psa. 78:2,3)*
36 Then sending away the crowds, Yahshua came into the house. And His disciples came to Him saying, Explain to us the parable of the tares of the field.
37 And answering, He said to them, The One sowing the good seed is the Son of Man.
38 And the field is the world; and the good seed, these are the sons of the kingdom; but the tares are the sons of the evil one.
39 And the enemy who sowed them is the Devil, and the harvest is the end of the age, and the cherubs are the reapers.
40 Then as the tares[1] are gathered and are consumed in the fire, so it will be in the completion of this age.
41 The Son of Man will send forth His cherubs, and they will gather out of His kingdom all stumbling blocks, and those who practice lawlessness[2].
42 And they will throw them into the furnace of fire; there will be weeping and gnashing of the teeth.
43 Then the righteous will shine out

---

1 Wheat and tares look alike when they are small but when they come to maturity the stalk filled with grain will bow in reference, where the empty tare will stand straight up, showing the difference of humility and pride.

2 All those who are against the Torah and practice lawlessness will be removed from the Kingdom and thrown into the Lake of Fire.

like the sun in the kingdom of their Father. The one having ears to hear, let him hear. *(Mal 4:2)*
44 Again, the kingdom of Heaven is compared to treasure being hidden in the field, which finding, a man hid; and for the joy of it, he goes and sells all things, as many as he has, and buys that field.
45 Again, the kingdom of Heaven is compared to a man, a merchant seeking excellent pearls;
46 who finding one very precious pearl, going away has sold all things, as many as he had, and bought it.
47 Again, the kingdom of Heaven is compared to a net thrown into the sea, and gathering together of every kind;
48 which, when it was filled, drawing it up on the shore, and sitting down, they gathered the good into bags, and the bad they threw away.
49 So it will be in the completion of the age the cherubs will go out and will separate the evil from the midst of the righteous,
50 and will throw them into the furnace of fire; there will be weeping and gnashing of the teeth.
51 Yahshua said to them, Have you understood all these things? They said to Him, Yes, Master.
52 And He said to them, Because of this, every scribe schooled to the kingdom of Heaven is like a man, a Master of a house, who puts forth out of his treasure new and old.
53 And it happened, when Yahshua had finished these parables, He moved from there.
54 And coming into His own country, He taught them in their synagogue, so that they were astonished, and said, Where did this One get this wisdom, and the powerful works?
55 Is this not the son of the carpenter, his mother is called Mariam, and his brothers Jacob and Joseph and Simon and Judah?"
56 And are not His sisters all with us? From where then did this One get all these things?
57 And they were offended in Him. But Yahshua said to them, There is no prophet who is mocked, except in his own city and his own home.
58 And He did not do many works of power there because of their unbelief.

Chapter 14

1 At that time Herod the tetrarch heard the fame of Yahshua.
2 And he said to his servants, This is John the Baptist. He has risen from the dead, and because of this, powerful works are working in him.
3 For seizing John, Herod bound him and put him into prison, because of Herodias, the wife of his brother Philip.
4 For John said to him, It is not lawful that she be a wife for you.
5 And desiring to kill him, he feared the multitude, because they held him as a prophet.
6 But a birthday feast for Herod being held, the daughter of Herodias danced before the guests and pleased Herod.
7 So then he promised with an oath to give her whatever she should ask.
8 But she being urged on by her mother, she says, Give me here on a platter the head of John the Baptist.
9 And the king was grieved, but because of the oaths, and those who reclined with him, he ordered it to be given.
10 And sending, he beheaded John in the prison.
11 And his head was brought on a platter and was given to the girl, and she brought it to her mother.
12 And having come, his disciples

took the body and buried it; and coming, they reported to Yahshua.

13 And having heard, Yahshua withdrew privately from there in a boat, into a deserted place. And hearing, the crowds followed Him on foot out of the cities.

14 And going out, Yahshua saw a great crowd and was filled with pity toward them. And He healed their diseases.

15 And evening coming, His disciples came near to Him saying, The place is deserted, and the hour is already gone by. Dismiss the crowds, that going away into the villages they may buy food for themselves.

16 But Yahshua said to them, They have no need to go away. You give them food to eat.

17 But they said to Him, We have nothing here except five loaves and two fish.

18 And He said, Bring them here to Me.

19 And commanding the crowds to recline on the grass, and taking the five loaves and two fish, gazing up to Heaven, He blessed. And breaking, He gave the loaves to the disciples, and the disciples gave to the crowds.

20 And all ate and were satisfied. And they took up the remnant of the fragments, twelve baskets full.

21 And the ones eating were about five thousand men, besides women and children.

22 And immediately Yahshua made His disciples get into a boat and to go before Him to the other side until He should dismiss the crowds.

23 And having dismissed the crowds, He went up into the mountain alone to pray. And evening coming on, He was there alone.

24 But the boat was now in the middle of the sea, tossed by the waves, for the wind was against it.

25 But in the fourth watch of the night, Yahshua went out to them, walking on the sea.

26 And seeing Him walking on the sea, the disciples were troubled, saying, It is a false vision! And they cried out from the fear.

27 But immediately Yahshua spoke to them, saying, Be comforted! **I AM**! Do not fear.

28 And answering Him, Peter said, Master, if it is You, command me to come to You on the waters.

29 And He said, Come! And going down from the boat, Peter walked on the waters to go to Yahshua.

30 But seeing the wind strong, he was afraid, and beginning to sink, he cried out, saying, Master, save me!

31 And immediately stretching out the hand, Yahshua took hold of him, and said to him, Oh you of little-faith, why did you doubt me?

32 And coming into the boat, the wind quieted down.

33 And those in the boat came and worshiped Him, saying, Truly, You are the Son of Elohim.

34 And having passed over, they came to the land of Gennesar.

35 And recognizing Him, the men of that place sent to all that region, and brought to Him all those badly ill.

36 And they begged Him that they might touch the fringe *(tassel)* of His robe. And as many as touched were cured.

Chapter 15

1 Then the scribes and Pharisees came to Yahshua from Jerusalem, saying,

2 Why do Your disciples transgress the tradition of the elders? For they do

not wash their hands when they eat
bread[1].
3 But answering He said to them,
Why do you also transgress the
commandment of YAHWEH on
account of your tradition?
4 For YAHWEH commanded,
saying, "Honor your father and
mother," *(Ex. 20:12; Deut. 5:16)* and,
"The one speaking evil of father or
mother, let him be put to death." *(Ex.
21:17)*
5 But you say any one who says to a
father or to a mother, "My offering is
what ever you have gained by me,"
then he does not need to honor his
father or mother[2].
6 And in no way he honors his father
or his mother. And you annulled the
command of YAHWEH on account of
your tradition.
7 Hypocrites! Well did Isaiah
prophesy concerning you, saying
8 "This people draws near to Me
with their mouth, and with their lips
honor Me; but their heart holds far off
from Me.
9 But in vain they worship Me,
teaching as doctrines the command-
ments of men." *(Isa. 29:13)*
10 And calling the crowd near, He
said to them, Hear and understand
11 It is not the thing entering into the
mouth that defiles the man, but the
thing coming forth out of the mouth,
this defiles the man.
12 Then coming, the disciples said to
Him, You know that hearing the Word,
the Pharisees were offended?
13 But answering, He said, Every
plant which My heavenly Father has
not planted shall be rooted up.
14 Leave them alone. They are blind
leaders of the blind; and if the blind
lead the blind, both will fall into a pit.
15 And answering, Simon Peter said
to Him, Explain this parable to us.
16 But Yahshua said, until now, even
you do not understand?
17 Do you not yet perceive that
everything entering into the mouth
goes into the belly, and is thrown out
into the waste bowl?
18 But whatever that proceeds from
the mouth proceeds from the heart
and becomes a defilement to a man[3].
19 For from the heart go out evil
thoughts Murder, fornication, theft,
false witness, blasphemy.
20 These things are the things
defiling the man. But eating with
unwashed hands does not defile the
man.
21 And going out from there,
Yahshua withdrew to the parts of Tyre
and Sidon.
22 And, behold, a woman of Canaan
coming forth from those borders cried
out to Him, saying, Have pity on me,
Master, Son of David! My daughter is
badly demon-possessed.
23 But He did not answer her a
word. And coming near, His disciples
asked Him, saying, Send her away, for
she cries out after us.
24 But he answered and said to
them, Have I not been sent except to
the sheep which went astray from the
house of Israel?
25 But coming, she worshiped Him,
saying, Master, help me!
26 But answering, He said, It is not
good to take the bread of the children
to throw it to the little dogs.
27 But she said, Yes, Master; for

---

1 The Pharisees had a specific way of washing the hands up to the elbow that was merely a tradition.

2 There was a Pharisaical rule that if someone dedicated money to the temple then they did not have to care for their parents. The hypocrisy was heightened in the fact that they never actually had to give the money dedicated.

3 Math 12:34

even the little dogs eat of the crumbs falling from the table of their Masters.
28 Then answering, Yahshua said to her, O woman, great is your faith; let it be to you as you desire. And her daughter was healed from that moment.
29 And moving from there, Yahshua came beside the Sea of Galilee. And going up into the mountain, He sat there.
30 And great crowds came to Him, having with them lame ones, blind, dumb, maimed, and many others. And they flung them down at the feet of Yahshua. And He healed them;
31 so that the crowds marveled, seeing dumb ones speaking, maimed ones sound, lame ones walking, and blind ones seeing. And they glorified the Elohim of Israel.
32 But having called His disciples near, Yahshua said, I am filled with pity on the crowd, because they already have remained with Me three days and have nothing they may eat. And I do not desire to send them away fasting, that they may not faint in the way.
33 And His disciples said to Him, From where in a deserted place will come to us so many loaves as to satisfy so great a crowd?
34 And Yahshua said to them, How many loaves do you have? And they said, Seven, and a few small fish.
35 And He ordered the crowds to recline on the ground.
36 And taking the seven loaves and the fish, giving thanks, He broke and gave to His disciples, and the disciples to the crowd.
37 And all ate and were satisfied. And they took up the left over pieces, seven lunch baskets full.
38 And the ones eating were four thousand men, apart from women and children. *(Joh 6:5-14, 2Kgs 4:42-44)*
39 And sending away the crowds He went into the boat and came to the borders of Magdala.

Chapter 16

1 And having come the Pharisees and Sadducees tempting, asked Him to show them a sign out of the heaven.
2 But answering, He said to them, Evening coming on, you say, Clear sky, for the sky is red.
3 And in the morning you say, "Today it is winter for the sky is a gloomy red." Hypocrites! You know how to observe the appearance of the sky. The signs of this time you do not know how to discern.
4 An evil and adulterous generation seeks a sign, and a sign will not be given to it, except the sign of Jonah the prophet. And leaving them, He went away.
5 And His disciples coming to the other side, they forgot to take loaves.
6 And Yahshua said to them, Watch and take heed from the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees.
7 And they reasoned among themselves, saying, Because we did not take loaves.
8 And knowing, Yahshua said to them, Why do you reason among yourselves because you took no loaves, little-faiths?
9 Do you not perceive nor recall the five loaves of the five thousand, and how many hand baskets you took up?
10 Nor the seven loaves of the four thousand, and how many lunch baskets you took up?
11 How do you not perceive that it was not about loaves that I said to you to take heed from the leaven of the Pharisees and Sadducees?
12 Then they knew that He did not say to take heed from the leaven of

bread, but from the doctrine of the Pharisees and Sadducees.
13 And coming into the parts of Caesarea of Philip, Yahshua questioned His disciples, saying, Whom do men say Me the Son of Man to be?
14 And they said, Some say John the Baptist, and others Elijah, and others Jeremiah, or one of the prophets.
15 He said to them, But you, whom do you say Me to be?
16 And answering, Simon Peter said, You are the Messiah, the Son of the living Elohim.
17 And answering, Yahshua said to him, Blessed are you, Simon, son of Jonah, for flesh and blood did not reveal it to you, but My Father in Heaven.
18 And I also say to you that you are Peter[1], and on this rock I will build My assembly, and the gates of Hades will not prevail against her.
19 And I will give to you the keys of the kingdom of Heaven. And whatever you bind on earth shall occur, having been bound in Heaven. And whatever you may loose on the earth shall be, having been loosed in Heaven.
20 Then He warned His disciples that they should tell no one that He is Yahshua the Messiah.
21 From that time onward, Yahshua began to show to His disciples that it was necessary for Him to go away to Jerusalem, and to suffer many things from the elders and chief priests and scribes, and to be killed, and to be raised on the third day.
22 And having taken Him near, Peter began to rebuke Him, saying, Far be it from you, my Master that this should happen to you.
23 But turning He said to Peter, Go behind Me, Satan! You are an offense to Me, for you do not think of the things of YAHWEH, but the things of men.
24 Then Yahshua said to His disciples, If anyone desires to come after Me, let him deny himself, and let him bear his torture stake, and let him follow Me.
25 For whoever may desire to save his life will lose it. But whoever may lose his life for My sake will find it.
26 For what will a man be benefited if he should gain the whole world, but forfeits his soul? Or what will a man give as an exchange for his soul?
27 For it is necessary for the Son of man to come in the glory of his Father. And then with his holy cherubs he will reward each man according to his work. *(Psa. 62:12)*
28 Truly I say to you, There are men standing here who will not taste of death, never, until they see the Son of Man coming in His kingdom[2].

Chapter 17

1 And after six days, Yahshua took Peter and Jacob, and his brother John, and brought them up into a high mountain[3] privately. *(Mk 9:1-9)*
2 And He was transfigured before them, and His face shone like the sun, and His clothing became white as the light.
3 And, behold! Moses and Elijah appeared to them, talking with Him.

---

1 Peter means small pebble and Petra means rock. The rock referred to is Yahshua and the assembly is built on the belief of Him being the Messiah and Son of YHWH.

2 The very next thing that happens is the the transfiguration where the disciples got to see a vision of Yahshua coming in The Kingdom of YHWH.

3 This story is told right after coming from Caesarea Phillipi, which is in the northern border, so the High mountain for the transfiguration is most likely Mount Hermon.

4 And answering, Peter said to
Yahshua, Master, it is good for us to be
here. If You desire, let us make three
shelters here, one for You, one for
Moses, and one for Elijah.
5 While he was yet speaking, behold,
a radiant cloud overshadowed them.
And, behold, a voice out of the cloud
saying, This is My Son, the Beloved, in
whom I have been delighting; hear
Him. *(Psa. 2:7; Gen. 22:2; Isa. 42:1;
Deut. 18:15)*
6 And hearing, the disciples fell on
their face and were greatly terrified.
7 And coming near, Yahshua touched
them and said, Rise up, and do not be
terrified.
8 And lifting up their eyes, they did
not see anyone except Yahshua alone.
9 And as they were coming down
from the mountain, Yahshua charged
them, saying, Tell the vision[1] to no one
until the Son of Man is raised from the
dead.
10 And His disciples asked Him,
saying, Why then do the scribes say
that Elijah must come first?
11 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, Elijah indeed will come first so
that all things might be fulfilled[2].
12 But I say to you, behold, Elijah
has come, and they did not know him,
but did to him whatever they desired.
So also the Son of Man is about to
suffer by them.
13 Then the disciples understood
that He spoke to them about John the
Baptist.
14 And they having come toward the
crowd, a man came near to Him,
kneeling down to Him, and saying,
15 Master, pity my son. For he has a
demon and is afflicted. For he often
falls into the fire, and often into the
water.
16 And I brought him to Your
disciples, and they were not able to
heal him.
17 And answering, Yahshua said, O
faithless and crooked generation!
Until when shall I be with you? Until
when shall I bear with you? Bring him
here to Me.
18 And Yahshua rebuked it, and the
demon came out from him; and the
boy was healed from that moment.
19 Then coming up to Yahshua
privately, the disciples said, Why were
we not able to cast him out?
20 And Yahshua said to them,
Because of your unbelief. For truly I
say to you, If you have faith as a grain
of mustard, you will say to this
mountain, Move from here to there!
And it will move. And not a thing shall
prevail over you.
21 But this kind does not go out
except by prayer and fasting.
22 And while they were walking in
Galilee, Yahshua said to them, The
Son of Man is about to be delivered
into the hands of men.
23 And they will kill Him, and on the
third day He will be raised. And they
grieved exceedingly. *(Math 20:18-19)*
24 And when they came to
Capernaum, those who were collecting
two coins for each head for the head
tax said to Peter, Your master did not
give his two coins.
25 He said, Yes. And when he
entered into the house, Yahshua
anticipated him, saying, What do you
think, Simon? From whom do the
kings of the earth receive tribute and
head tax? From their sons or from
strangers?
26 Peter said to Him, From

---

[1] Clearly this was only a vision and Moses and Eliyah were not really with Yahshua.

[2] Yahshua both confirms that someone later in the end times will come in the power and spirit of Eliyah (Mal 4:5) and also that John the Baptist also fulfilled being the forrunner for Yahshua's first coming.

strangers. Yahshua said to him, Then truly the sons are free.
27 But that we may not offend them, going to the sea, throw in a hook and take the first fish coming up. And opening its mouth, you will find a coin. Taking that, give to them for you and Me.

Chapter 18

1 In that hour the disciples came to Yahshua, saying, Who then is greater in the kingdom of Heaven?
2 And having called forward a little child, Yahshua set him in their midst.
3 And He said, Truly I say to you, Unless you are converted and become as the little children, not at all can you enter into the kingdom of Heaven.
4 Then whoever will humble himself as this little child, this one is the greater in the kingdom of Heaven.
5 And whoever will receive one such little child in My name receives Me.
6 But whoever causes one of these little ones believing in Me to offend, it is better for him that a millstone of a donkey[1] be hung on his neck, and he be sunk in the depth of the sea.
7 Woe to the world from its offenses! It is a necessity for the offenses to come, yet woe to that man through whom the offense comes!
8 And if your hand or your foot cause to stumble, cut it off and cast it away from you. For it is better to enter into life lame, or while you are maimed, than while you have two hands or two feet to fall into the fire that is everlasting.
9 And if your eye causes you to stumble, pluck it out and cast it away from you, for it is better for you that with one eye you enter into life than while you have two eyes to fall into the fire of Gehenna.
10 See that you do not despise one of these little ones, for I tell you that their cherubs in Heaven continually look on the face of My Father in Heaven.
11 For the Son of Man has come to save that which was lost.
12 What do you think? If there be to any man a hundred sheep, and one of them strays away, will he not leave the ninety-nine on the mountains, and having gone he seeks the one having strayed?
13 And if he happens to find it, truly I say to you that he rejoices over it more than over the ninety-nine not having gone astray.
14 So it is not the will before your Father in Heaven that one of these little ones should perish.
15 And if your brother with you is at fault, go rebuke him, between you and him alone. If he listens to you, you have won your brother. *(Lev 5:1)*
16 But if he does not hear, take one or two more with you, "so that on the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established[2]." *(Deut. 19:15)*
17 But if he fails to hear them, tell it to the congregation. And if he also fails to hear the congregation, let him be to you as a tax collector and a heathen[3].
18 Truly I say to you, Whatever you bind on the earth will be, having been bound in Heaven. And whatever you loose on the earth will be, having been loosed in Heaven.
19 Again I say to you, If two of you agree[4] on earth as to anything, whatever they shall ask, it shall be to them from My Father in Heaven.

---

1 Donkeys were used to turn millstones for crushing grain as well as olives for oil.

2 The witnesses are people who have actually witnessed the fault. If we have not physically witnessed something, then we should not give idle opinions as this is gossip and condemned in scripture.

20 For where two or three are assembled together in My name, there I am also among them.

21 Then, Peter drew near to him and said, My Master, how many times should I forgive my brother with me who is at fault. Should I forgive him up to seven times?

22 Yahshua said to him, I do not say to you, until seven times, but rather until seventy times seventy seven.

23 Because of this the kingdom of Heaven has been compared to a man, a king, who desired to take account with his slaves.

24 And he having begun to reckon, one debtor of ten thousand talents was brought near to him.

25 But he not having any to repay, his master commanded him to be sold, also his wife and children, and all things, as much as he had, even to pay back.

26 Then having fallen down, the slave bowed the knee to him, saying, Master, have patience with me, and I will pay all to you.

27 And being filled with pity, The Master of that slave released him and forgave him the loan.

28 But having gone out, that slave found one of his fellow slaves who owed him a hundred denarii. And seizing him, he choked him, saying, Pay me whatever you owe.

29 Then having fallen down at his feet, his fellow slave begged him, saying, Have patience with me, and I will pay all to you.

30 But he would not, but having gone away he threw him into prison until he should pay back the amount owed.

31 But his fellow slaves, seeing the things happening, they were greatly grieved. And having come they reported to their Master all the things happening.

32 Then having called him near, his Master said to him, Wicked slave! I forgave you all that debt, since you begged me.

33 Ought you not also to have mercy on your fellow slave, as I also had mercy?

34 And being angry, his Master delivered him up to the tormentors until he pay back all that debt to him.

35 So also My heavenly Father will do to you unless each of you from your hearts forgive his brother their offenses.

Chapter 19

1 And it happened when Yahshua had finished these words, He moved from Galilee and came into the borders of Judea beyond the Jordan.

2 And great crowds followed Him, and He healed them there.

3 And the Pharisees came near to Him, tempting Him, and saying to Him, Is it lawful for a man to put away his wife for every reason?

4 But answering, He said to them, Have you not read that He who created them from the beginning "created them male and female?" *(Gen. 1:27)*

5 And He said, "For this reason a man shall leave father and mother, and shall be joined to his wife, and the

3 This is not a democratic process, but since the person has refused to listen to the first person and also the witnesses, now it is simply the formality to inform the congregation that the person has been separated until repentance is made. The separation is both to protect the congregation from the sinful, unrepentant person, and also an act of love toward the sinner, as if he is not held accountable for the sin and does not repent, then he is in danger of losing his eternal life.

4 In Aramaic this word can also mean to be worthy.

two shall become one flesh." *(Gen. 2: 24)*
6 So that they are no longer two, but one flesh. Therefore, what YAHWEH has united together, man cannot separate[1].
7 They said to Him, Why then did Moses command to "give a letter of divorce, and to put her away?"
8 He said to them, In view of your hardheartedness, Moses allowed you to put away your wives. But from the beginning it was not so.
9 And I say to you, Whoever shall put away his wife, even if there is a charge of adultery, and shall marry another, that one commits adultery. And the one who marries the divorced woman commits adultery[2].
10 His disciples said to him, "If such is the difficulty between husband and wife, it is not worthwhile to take a wife[3].
11 But He said to them, Not every man can apply this Word to himself, but only he to whom it is given.
12 For there are eunuchs who were born thus from their mother's womb, and there are eunuchs who were made eunuchs by men, and there are eunuchs who made eunuchs of themselves for the sake of the kingdom of Heaven. He who is able to understand, let him understand it.
13 Then little children were brought to Him, that He might lay hands on them and might pray. But the disciples rebuked them.
14 But Yahshua said, Allow the little children and do not hinder them to come to Me, for of such is the kingdom of Heaven.
15 And laying hands on them, He went away from there.
16 And, behold, coming near, one said to Him, Good Teacher, what good thing shall I do that I may have eternal life?
17 And He said to him, Why do you call Me good? No one is good except One, YAHWEH! But if you desire to enter into life, keep the commandments[4].
18 He said to Him, Which? And Yahshua said, "You shall not commit murder, nor commit adultery, nor steal, nor give false witness,
19 honor your father and your mother," and, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself." *(Ex. 20:12-16; Lev. 19:18; Deut. 5:16-20)*
20 The young man said to Him, All these things I have kept from my youth. What do I still lack?
21 Yahshua said to him, If you desire to be perfect, go sell your property and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in Heaven; and come, follow Me[5].
22 But having heard the Word, being grieved, the young man went away, for he had many possessions.
23 And Yahshua said to His disciples, Truly I say to you that a rich

1 A miracle happens at the consummation of the wedding covenant where Yahweh has supernaturally joined these 2 people into one. No judge or piece of paper can change that, which is why the marriage covenant ceremony is still the oldest and only covenant ceremony in the world that still exists. Please study lesson 18 of the bible course on line at www.coyhwh.com.

2 Nowhere in scripture does YHWH condone divorce and Yahshua clearly states that if one leaves their covenant spouse and marries another it is considered adultery and if someone marries a divorced person both parties are committing adultery.

3 To the disciples, Yahshua's view was so rigid that they thought it better not to marry. This clearly shows that He was not teaching a watered down, easy out divorce policy.

4 The question and answer are very simple: in order to receive eternal life one is required to keep and obey the 10 commandments.

man will with great difficulty enter
into the kingdom of Heaven.
24 And again I say to you, It is easier
for a heavy rope[1] to pass through a
needle's eye, than for a rich man to
enter the kingdom of YAHWEH.
25 And His disciples were
exceedingly astonished when they
heard this, saying, Who then is able to
gain eternal life?
26 But having looked at them,
Yahshua said to them, With men this
is impossible, but with YAHWEH all
things are possible.
27 Then answering, Peter said to
Him, Behold, we left all things and
followed You. What indeed will we
have?
28 And Yahshua said to them, Truly
I say to you, You who have followed
Me in this world, when the Son of Man
sits on the throne of His glory, you
also will sit on twelve thrones, judging
the twelve tribes of Israel.
29 And everyone who left houses, or
brothers, or sisters, or father, or
mother, or wife, or children, or lands,
for the sake of My name, shall receive
a hundredfold, and shall inherit
everlasting life.
30 But many who are first will be
last, and the last first.

---

[5] In a Kingdom, the King owns everything and although someone need not have guilt for being blessed with physical possessions, they must also realize that those possessions are not theirs and are only in their possession for the furtherance of the Kingdom of YHWH. (Ps 24:1)

[1] In Aramaic the word for camel and heavy rope are similar "*Gamla*" and "*Gamala*", only differentiated by a vowel point which the Greek translator missed. Yahshua was making the point that a heavy rope could not go through the needle but if you took it apart strand by strand one strand could go through, showing the rich man that he needed to distribute his possessions for the Kingdom.

Chapter 20

1 For the kingdom of Heaven is like a
man, a house Master, who went out
when it was early to hire workers into
his vineyard.
2 And he bargained with the laborers
for a denarius per day. And he sent
them to his vineyard.
3 And going out about the third
hour, he saw others standing idle in
the market.
4 And he said to them, You also go
into the vineyard, and I will give you
whatever is just. And they went.
5 Again, going out about the sixth
and ninth hour, he did the same.
6 And going out about the eleventh
hour, he found others standing idle,
and said to them, Why do you stand
here idle all day?
7 They said to him, Because no one
has hired us. He said to them, You also
go into the vineyard, and you will
receive whatever is just.
8 But evening having come, the
master of the vineyard said to his
manager, Call the workers and pay
them the wage, beginning from the
last to the first.
9 And the ones having come the
eleventh hour each received a
denarius.
10 And having come, the first
supposed that they would receive
more. And they also each received a
denarius.
11 And having received it, they
murmured against the house Master,
12 saying, These last have performed
one hour, and you have made them
equal to us who have borne the burden
and the heat of the day.
13 But answering, he said to one of
them, Friend, I did you no wrong. Did
you not agree to a denarius with me?

14 Take yours and go. But I desire to give to this last as also to you.
15 Or is it not lawful for me to do what I desire with my things? Or is your eye evil because I am good?
16 So the last shall be first, and the first last; for many are called, but few chosen.
17 And going up to Jerusalem, Yahshua took the twelve disciples aside in the way, and said to them,
18 Behold! We are going up to Jerusalem, and the Son of Man will be betrayed to the chief priests and scribes. And they will condemn Him to death.
19 And they will deliver Him up to the gentiles to mock, and to scourge, and to crucify. And on the third day He will rise again.
20 Then the mother of the sons of Zebedee came near to Him, along with her sons, And she and her sons worshiped him and was asking him something.
21 And He said to her, What do you desire? She said to Him, Say that these two sons of mine may sit one on Your right, and one on Your left in Your Kingdom.
22 But answering, Yahshua said, You do not know what you ask. Are you able to drink the cup[1] which I am about to drink, and to be baptized with the baptism with which I am to be baptized? They said to Him, We are able.
23 And He said to them, Indeed you shall drink My cup, and you shall be baptized with the baptism with which I am baptized; but to sit off My right and off My left hand is not Mine to give, but to those for whom it was prepared by My Father.
24 And hearing, the ten were angry at the two brothers.
25 And Yahshua called to them and said to them, You know that the rulers of the gentiles are their masters and their nobles are in authority over them.
26 But it will not be so among you. But whoever desires to become great among you, let him be your servant.
27 And whoever desires to be first among you, let him be your servant;
28 Even as the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life a ransom for many.
29 And as they were going out from Jericho, a great crowd followed Him.
30 And behold! Two blind ones sitting beside the way, hearing that Yahshua was passing by, they cried out, saying, Have pity on us, Master, Son of David!
31 But the crowd rebuked them, that they be quiet. But they cried out the more, saying, Have pity on us, Master, Son of David!
32 And stopping, Yahshua called them, and said, What do you desire that I do to you?
33 They said to Him, Master, that our eyes may be opened.
34 And being moved with pity, Yahshua touched their eyes. And instantly their eyes received sight, and they followed Him.

Chapter 21

1 And when they drew near to Jerusalem and came into Bethphage[2], toward the Mount of Olives, then Yahshua sent two disciples,
2 saying to them, Go into the village opposite you, and immediately you

---

1 In Jewish tradition people drank 4 cups of wine on Passover with each cup having special symbolism. The 4th cup was called the cup of salvation (Ps 116:13) in which only the Messiah could drink (Joh 18:28-30), Yahshua symbolically drank this cup before giving up His spirit.

2 Bethphage means House of Figs

will find a donkey tied, and a colt with
her. Loosening, lead them to Me.
3 And if anyone says anything to you,
you shall say, our Master has need of
them. And he will send them at once.
4 But all this happened that might be
fulfilled that spoken by the prophet,
saying
5 "Say to the daughter of Tsion,
behold your king comes to you meek
and mounted upon a donkey, and
upon a colt the foal of a donkey." *(Isa.
62:11; Zech. 9:9)*
6 And the disciples, having gone and
having done as Yahshua ordered them,
7 they led the donkey and the colt.
And they put on them their garments,
and set Him on them.
8 And the very great crowd strewed
their garments in the road. And others
were cutting branches from the trees
and were spreading them in the way.
9 And the crowd, the ones going
before and the ones following, were
crying out, saying, Hosanna to the Son
of David! "Blessed is He coming in the
name of YAHWEH!" Hosanna in the
highest! *(Psa. 118:26)*
10 And as He entered into
Jerusalem, all the city was shaken,
saying, Who is this?
11 And the crowds said, This is
Yahshua, the Prophet, the One from
Nazareth of Galilee.
12 And Yahshua entered into the
sanctuary of YAHWEH and threw out
all those selling and buying in the
sanctuary. And He overthrew the
tables of the money changers and the
seats of those selling the doves.
13 And He said to them, It has been
written, "My house shall be called a
house of prayer, but you have made it
a cave of bandits." *(Isa. 56:7; Jer 7:11)*
14 And blind and lame ones came to
Him in the sanctuary, and He healed
them.
15 But the chief priests and the
scribes, seeing the wonders which He
did, and the children crying out in the
sanctuary, and saying, Hosanna to the
Son of David, they were incensed.
16 And they said to Him, Do you
hear what these say? And Yahshua
said to them, Yes. Did you never read,
"Out of the mouth of children and
infants You have fashioned praise?"
(Psa. 8:2)
17 And leaving them, He went out of
the city to Bethany, and lodged there.
18 And returning early to the city,
He hungered.
19 And seeing one fig tree by the
road, He went up to it, and found
nothing on it except leaves only. And
He said to it, Let there be no more
fruit from you forever. And the fig tree
immediately dried up[1].
20 And seeing, the disciples
marveled, saying, How quickly the fig
tree is dried up!
21 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, Truly I say to you, If you have
faith and do not doubt, not only will
you do the miracle of the fig tree, but
even if you should say to this
mountain, Be taken up and thrown
into the sea, it will be so.
22 And all things, whatever you may
ask in prayer, believing, you shall
receive.
23 And He having come into the
sanctuary, the chief priests and elders
of the people came near to Him as He
was teaching, saying, By what
authority do You do these things? And
who gave this authority to You?

---

[1] You can see a clear correlation to the fig tree in the garden of Eden to Yahshua cursing the fig tree here and stating *"let there be no more fruit to you*". The fruit of the fig tree in Eden was disobedience due to lack of faith and expulsion from the Garden, where Yahshua as the second Adam was about to redeem man back to Yahweh by paying the penalty for rebellion and sin.

24 And answering, Yahshua said to them, I also will ask you one thing, which if you tell Me, I also will tell you by what authority I do these things.

25 The baptism of John, from where was it? From Heaven, or from men? And they reasoned among themselves, saying, If we shall say, from Heaven, He will say to us, why then did you not believe him?

26 But if we should say, From men, we fear the people. For all hold John to be a prophet.

27 And answering Yahshua, they said, We do not know. And He said to them, Neither do I tell you by what authority I do these things.

28 But what do you think? A man had two children, and coming to the first he said, Child, go today; work in my vineyard.

29 And answering, he said, I will not. But afterward, having regretted, he went.

30 And having come to the second, he said the same. And answering, he said, I go, sir; but he did not leave.

31 Which of the two did the will of the father? They said to Him, The first. Yahshua said to them, Truly I say to you, the tax collectors and the harlots go before you into the kingdom of YAHWEH.

32 For John came to you in the way of righteousness, and you did not believe him. But the tax-collectors and the harlots believed him. And having seen you did not repent afterward to believe him.

33 Hear another parable, There was a certain man, a house Master, who planted a vineyard and placed a hedge around it; and He dug a winepress in it, and built a tower. And He rented it to vinedressers and left the country. *(Isa. 5:1- 2)*

34 And when the season of the fruits came, He sent His slaves to the vinedressers to receive His fruits.

35 And the vinedressers, taking His slaves, they beat this one, and they killed one, and they stoned another.

36 Again He sent other slaves, more than the first. And they did the same to them.

37 And lastly, He sent His Son to them saying perhaps they might be ashamed before my Son.

38 But seeing the Son, the vinedressers said among themselves, This is the heir. Come, let us kill Him and possess His inheritance.

39 And taking Him, they threw Him out of the vineyard and killed Him.

40 Therefore, when the Master of the vineyard comes, what will He do to those vinedressers?

41 They were saying to Him, "He will savagely destroy them and He will lease the vineyard to other laborers, those who will give to Him the fruit in its season."

42 Yahshua said to them, Did you never read in the Scriptures, "the Stone which the builders rejected, this One became the Head of the Corner? This was from YAHWEH, and it is a wonder in our eyes?" *(Psa. 118:22, 23)*

43 Because of this I say to you, The kingdom of YAHWEH will be taken from you, and it will be given to a people who produce fruits. (Joh 15:8)

44 And he who falls on this Stone will be broken; but on whomever It falls, It will destroy him. (Dan 2:44)

45 And hearing His parables, the chief priests and the Pharisees knew that He was speaking about them.

46 And seeking to lay hold of Him, they feared the crowds, because they held Him as a prophet.

Chapter 22

1 And answering, Yahshua again
spoke to them in parables, saying
2 The kingdom of Heaven is
compared to a man, a king, who made
a wedding feast for his son.
3 And he sent his slaves to call those
being invited to the wedding feast, but
they did not desire to come.
4 Again, he sent other slaves, saying,
Tell the ones invited, behold, I have
prepared my supper; my oxen, and the
fatlings are killed, and all things ready;
come to the wedding feast.
5 But they sneered at it and they
went away, one to his own field, and
one to his trading.
6 And the rest, seizing his slaves,
mocked and killed them.
7 And hearing the king became
angry. And sending his armies, he
destroyed those murderers and
burned their city.
8 Then he said to his slaves, Indeed,
the wedding feast is ready, but those
invited were not worthy.
9 Then go onto the exits of the
highways and call to the wedding feast
as many as you may find.
10 And going out into the highways,
those slaves gathered all, as many as
they found, both evil and good. And
the wedding feast was filled with
reclining guests.
11 And the king coming in to look
over those reclining, he saw a man
there not having been dressed in a
wedding garment.
12 And he said to him, Friend, how
did you come in here, not having a
wedding garment? But he was
speechless. (Rev 19:7-8)
13 Then the king said to the servants,
Binding his feet and hands, take him
away and throw him out into the outer
darkness. There shall be weeping and
gnashing of the teeth.
14 For many are called, but few
chosen.
15 Then going, the Pharisees took
counsel so as they might trap Him in
words.
16 And they sent to Him their
disciples with the Herodians, saying,
Teacher, we know that You are true,
and teach the way of YAHWEH in
truth, and it does not concern You
about anyone, for You do not look to
the face of men.
17 Then tell us, what do You think?
Is it lawful to give the head tax to
Caesar, or not?
18 But knowing their wickedness,
Yahshua said, Why do you tempt Me,
hypocrites[1]?
19 Show Me the tribute coin. And
they brought a denarius to Him.
20 And He said to them, Whose
image and inscription is this?
21 They said to Him, Caesar's. Then
He said to them, then give to Caesar
the things of Caesar, and to Elohim the
things of Elohim.
22 And hearing, they marveled. And
leaving Him, they went away.
23 On that day, Sadducees, who say
there is no resurrection, came to Him.
And they questioned Him,
24 saying, Teacher, Moses said, if
any should die not having children, his
brother shall marry his wife, and shall
raise up seed to his brother. *(Deut.
25:5)*
25 Now there were among us seven
brothers. The first took a wife and
died. And because he had no sons, he
left his wife to his brother.

---

[1] This was a trick question that seemed to condemn Yahshua with any answer, for if He said to pay Caesar, then the Jews would have condemned Him for paying to aid the fight against fellow Jews. As where if He said do not pay Caesar, then he is being set up to be causing insurrection against the state. His answer was the perfect answer.

26 In the same way also the second,
and the third, until the seven.
27 And last of all, the woman also
died.
28 Then in the resurrection, of
which of the seven will she be wife?
For all had her.
29 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, You err, not knowing the
Scriptures nor the power of
YAHWEH.
30 For in the resurrection of the
dead, men do not marry women, nor
are women given to husbands. Rather,
they are as the cherubs of YAHWEH
in Heaven.
31 But concerning the resurrection
of the dead, have you not read that
spoken to you by YAHWEH, saying
32 "I am the Elohim of Abraham,
and the Elohim of Isaac, and the
Elohim of Jacob?" YAHWEH is not
Elohim of the dead, but of the living.
(Ex. 3: 6)
33 And hearing, the crowds were
astonished at His teaching.
34 But hearing that He had silenced
the Sadducees, the Pharisees were
gathered together.
35 And one of them, a lawyer,
questioned Him, testing Him, and
saying,
36 Teacher, which is the great
commandment in the Torah?
37 And Yahshua said to him, "You
shall love YAHWEH your Elohim with
all your heart, and with all your soul,
and with all your mind." *(Deut. 6:5)*
38 This is the first and great
commandment.
39 And the second is like it "You
shall love your neighbor as yourself."
(Lev. 19:18)
40 On these two commandments all
the Torah and the Prophets hang.
41 But the Pharisees having been
gathered, Yahshua questioned them,
42 saying, What do you think about
the Messiah? Whose son is He? They
say to Him, David's.
43 He said to them, Then how does
David in Spirit call Him Adonai,
saying,
44 "YAHWEH said to my Adonai,
sit off My right until I should put Your
enemies as a footstool under Your
feet?" *(Psa. 110:1)*
45 Then if David calls Him Adonai,
how is He, His Son?
46 And no one was able to answer
Him a word, nor did anyone dare from
that day to question Him any more.

Chapter 23

1 Then Yahshua spoke to the crowd
and to His disciples,
2 saying, The scribes and the
Pharisees have sat down on Moses'
seat.
3 Then all things, whatever he
(Moses) tells you to keep, keep and do.
But do not do according to their
works, for they talk, and do not do[1].
4 For they bind heavy and hard to
bear burdens, and lay them on the
shoulders of men, but they do not
desire to move them with their finger.
5 And they do all their works to be
seen by men. And they widen their
tefillin[2] and lengthen the tekhelet
(blue string in the tassel) of their
robes.
6 And they love the chief places at

[1] The seat of Moses was a chair that was stationed in the center of the Synagogue and used by the person who was teaching from the Torah. What Yahshua is saying is when the scribes and Pharisees sit in Moses seat and read the Torah, listen to Moses, whom they are reading, but do not follow their actions as they do not practice what they are teaching. They have actually uncovered a seat of Moses from ancient times in the Synagogue in Korazim.

festivals and the chief seats at the synagogue.
7 And the greetings in the markets, and to be called by men, Rabboni, Rabboni.
8 But do not you be called Rabboni[1] for One is your Great One, the Messiah, and you are all brothers.
9 And call no one your father on earth, for One is your Father, the One in Heaven.
10 Nor be called master, for One is your Master, the Messiah.
11 But he who is greater of you, let him be your servant.
12 And whoever will exalt himself shall be humbled, and whoever will humble himself shall be exalted.
13 But woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you shut up the kingdom of Heaven before men; for you do not enter, nor do you allow those entering to go in.
14 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you devour the houses of widows, and pray at length as a pretext. Because of this you will receive more abundant judgment.
15 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you go about the sea and the dry land to make one proselyte; and when he has become so, you make him twofold more a son of Gehenna than yourselves.
16 Woe to you, blind guides, who say, Whoever swears by the Holy Place, it is nothing; but whoever swears by the gold of the Holy Place is a debtor.
17 Fools and blind! For which is greater, the gold, or the Holy Place that sanctifies the gold?
18 And you say, Whoever swears by the altar, it is nothing; but whoever swears by the gift on it, he is a debtor.
19 Fools and blind! For which is greater, the gift, or the altar that sanctifies the gift?
20 Then the one swearing by the altar swears by it, and by all things on it.
21 And the one swearing by the Holy Place swears by it, and by the One dwelling in it.
22 And the one swearing by Heaven swears by the throne of YAHWEH, and by the One sitting on it.
23 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you pay tithes of mint and dill and cumin, and you have left aside the weightier matters of the Torah judgment, and mercy, and faith. And these things were necessary for you to have done, and these things you should not have forgotten.
24 Blind guides, straining out the gnat, but swallowing the camel!
25 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you cleanse the outside of the cup and of the dish, but within they are full of extortion and iniquity.
26 Blind Pharisee! First cleanse the inside of the cup and of the dish, that the outside of them may become clean also.
27 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you are like whitened graves which outwardly indeed appear beautiful, but within are full of bones of the dead, and of all uncleanness.
28 So you also indeed outwardly

[2] The Hebrew root of this word is prayer. In the Greek translation they use the word Phylactery, which became a borrowed word from Greek to Hebrew about the 3rd to 4th century. By the Aramaic using this word here proves the Aramaic must have been written before the Greek translation.

[1] In Hebrew Rabbi means teacher, but in Aramaic Raboni means "*my great one*".

appear righteous to men, but within are full of hypocrisy and lawlessness.

29 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! For you build the tombs of the prophets, and adorn the tombs of the righteous.

30 And you say, If we had been in the days of our fathers, we would not have been partakers with them in the blood of the prophets.

31 So you witness to yourselves that you are the sons of those who murdered the prophets.

32 And you fill up the measure of your fathers.

33 Serpents! Offspring of vipers! How shall you escape the judgment of Gehenna?

34 Because of this, behold, I send to you prophets and wise ones and scribes. And some of them you will kill and crucify, and some of them you will scourge in your synagogues and will persecute from city to city;

35 so that should come on you all the righteous blood poured out on the earth, from the blood of righteous Abel to the blood of Zechariah the son of Berechiah whom you murdered between the Holy Place and the altar[1].

36 Truly I say to you, All these things will come on this generation.

37 Jerusalem, Jerusalem, the one killing the prophets and stoning those sent to her. How often I desired to gather your children in the way a bird gathers her chicks under her wings! And you did not desire it.

38 Behold, "your house is left to you desolate." *(Jer. 22:5)*

39 For I say to you, In no way shall you see Me from now on, until you say, "Blessed is He who comes in the name of YAHWEH." *(Psa. 118:26)*

Chapter 24

1 And going out, Yahshua left the sanctuary. And His disciples came to show Him the construction of the sanctuary.

2 But Yahshua said to them, Do you not see all these things? Truly I say to you, There will not at all be left one stone on a stone which in no way will not be thrown down.

3 And as He was sitting on the Mount of Olives, the disciples came to Him privately, saying, Tell us, when will these things be? And, what is the sign of Your coming and of the end of the age?

4 And answering, Yahshua said to them, See that no man deceives you.

5 For many will come in My name, saying, I am the Messiah. And they will cause many to be deceived.

6 For you are bound to hear of revolutions and rumor of wars. Watch out and do not be disturbed, for it is necessary that all these things happen, but it is not yet the end.

7 For nation will be raised against nation and kingdom against kingdom; and there will be famines and plagues and earthquakes against many places.

8 But all these are a beginning of sorrows.

9 Then they will deliver you up to affliction, and will kill you, and you will be hated by all nations because of My name.

10 And then many will be offended, and they will deliver up one another and will hate one another.

11 And many false prophets will be raised and will deceive many.

12 And because lawlessness shall have been multiplied, the love of the many will grow cold.

13 But the one who endures to the end, that one will have eternal life.

---

1 This is a reference from Genesis, the first book of the bible to 2 Chronicles, the last book of the Old Testament in the original order.

14 And this good news of the Kingdom shall be published in all the earth for a testimony to all the nations, and then the end will come.
15 And when you see the sign of uncleanness and desolation, that was spoken of by Daniel the prophet, which will stand in the holy place. He that reads let him understand. *(Dan. 11:31; Dan. 12:11)*
16 Then let those in Judea flee into the mountains;
17 the one on the roof, let him not go down to take anything out of his house;
18 and the one in the field, let him not turn back to take his garment.
19 But woe to the ones having a child in womb, and to those nursing in those days!
20 And pray that your flight will not occur in winter nor on the Sabbath.
21 For there will be great suffering, such as has not happened from the beginning of the world until now, no, nor ever will be.
22 And except those days were shortened, not any flesh would live. But on account of the chosen, those days will be shortened.
23 Then if anyone says to you, Behold, here is the Messiah! Or, Here! Do not believe.
24 For false Messiahs and false prophets will rise up. And they will give great signs and wonders, so as to lead astray, if possible, even the chosen.
25 Behold, I tell you beforehand.
26 Then if they say to you, Behold, He is in the wilderness; do not go out. Behold, He is in the inner rooms; do not believe.
27 For as the lightning comes forth from the east and shines as far as the west, so also will be the coming of the Son of Man. *(Is 63:1-6)*
28 For wherever the dead body may be, there the eagles will be gathered.
29 And immediately after the suffering of those days the sun will be darkened and the moon will not give her light, and the stars will fall from the heaven, and the powers of the heavens will be shaken.
30 And then the sign of the Son of Man will appear in the heavens.[1] And then all the tribes of the land will wail. And they will see the Son of Man coming on the clouds of heaven with power and much glory. *(Dan. 7:13)*
31 And He will send His cherubs with a great sound of a large trumpet, and they will gather His chosen ones from the four winds, from one end of the sky to the other. [2]
32 But learn the parable of the fig tree[3] when its branch becomes tender and it puts out leaves, you know that the summer is near;[4]
33 so also you, when you see all these things, know that it is near at the doors.
34 Truly I say to you, In no way will this generation pass away until all these things have occurred.
35 The heaven and the earth will pass away, but My Words will not pass away, never!
36 But as to that day and that hour, no one knows, neither the cherubs of Heaven, except My Father only.
37 But as the days of Noah, so also will be the coming of the Son of Man.
38 For as they were in the days

1 Rev 12:1
2 1 Cor 15:52, Rev 11:15, 1Thes 4:16, Lev 23:24
3 Israel is the fig tree (Jer 24:1-8, 29:17) The creating of a sovereign nation of Israel would mark the beginning of the end times and all would happen in one generation, verse 34.
4 See note on Amos 8:1-2

before the flood eating, and drinking, marrying, and giving in marriage, until the day when Noah went into the ark[1].
39 And they did not know until the flood came and took all away. So also will be the coming of the Son of Man.
40 At that time two will be out in the field; the one is taken away, and the one is left;
41 two grinding at the mill; one is taken away, and one is left[2].
42 Be alert, then, for you do not know in what hour your Master comes.
43 But know this, that if the house Master had known in what watch the thief comes, he would have watched and not have allowed his house to be dug through.
44 Because of this, you also be ready, for in that hour you think not, the Son of Man comes.
45 Who then is the faithful and wise servant whom his Master has set over His household, to give to them the food in season?
46 Blessed is that servant whom his Master shall find so doing when He comes.
47 Truly I say to you, He will set him over all He owns.
48 But if that wicked slave says in his heart, My Master delays to come,
49 and begins to beat his fellow servants, and to eat and to drink with the ones drinking,
50 The master of that slave will come in a day in which he does not expect and in an hour which he does not know,
51 and will cut him in two, and will appoint his portion with the hypocrites. There will be weeping and gnashing of the teeth.

Chapter 25

1 Then the kingdom of Heaven shall be compared to ten virgins who taking their lamps, went out to a meeting of the bridegroom and the bride.
2 And five of them were wise, and five foolish.
3 Those being foolish, taking their lamps, did not take oil with them.
4 But the wise took oil in their vessels with their lamps.
5 But the bridegroom delaying all nodded and slept.
6 And at midnight, a cry occurred, Behold, the bridegroom comes! Go out to meet him.
7 Then all those virgins were aroused and prepared their lamps.
8 And the foolish said to the wise, Give us some of your oil, for our lamps are gone out.
9 But the wise answered, saying, No, lest there not be enough for us and you. But rather, go to those who sell and buy for yourselves.
10 But they going away to buy, the bridegroom came[3]. And those ready went in with him to the wedding feast, and the door was shut.
11 And afterwards, the rest of the virgins also came, saying, Master, Master, open to us.

---

1 This is indicating that there is a time in the end when true believers need to separate completely from the world and sanctify themselves as Noah did when he entered the ark 7 days before the rains came.

2 If you cross reference this verse with Math 13:37-42, it is evident that the ones who are being taken are taken out of the Kingdom to the Lake of Fire.

3 Today, many have gotten entangled with religious commercialism and have missed the true good news message of Yahshua. It is interesting to note while the virgins with no oil (Holy Spirit) are going out to buy from the marketers, the Bridegroom comes and shuts them out.

12 But answering, he said, Truly I
say to you, I do not know you.
13 Therefore, be alert, for you do not
know the day nor the hour in which
the Son of Man comes.
14 For it is like a man who went on a
journey. He called his servants and
delivered his possessions to them.
15 And to one indeed he gave five
talents, and to another, two, and to
another, one, to each according to his
ability. And he went immediately on
his journey.
16 And going, the one who received
the five talents worked with them and
made another five talents.
17 In the same way, the one with the
two also did; he also gained another
two.
18 But going away, the one who
received the one dug in the earth and
hid his Master's silver.
19 And after much time, the master
of those slaves came and took account
with them.
20 And coming up, the one who
received five talents brought another
five talents near, saying, Master, you
delivered five talents to me. Behold, I
gained another five talents above
them.
21 And his Master said to him, Well
done, good and faithful slave. You
were faithful over a few things; I will
set you over many. Enter into the joy
of your Master.
22 And the one who received two
talents also coming up, he said,
Master, you delivered two talents to
me. Behold, I have gained two other
talents above them.
23 His Master said to him, Well
done, good and faithful slave. You
were faithful over a few things, I will
set you over many. Enter into the joy
of your Master.
24 And the one who received the one
talent also coming up, he said, Master,
I knew you, that you are a hard man,
reaping where you did not sow, and
gathering where you did not scatter;
25 and being afraid, going away, I
hid your talent in the earth[1]. Behold,
you have yours.
26 And answering, his Master said to
him, Evil and lazy slave! You knew
that I reap where I did not sow, and I
gather where I did not scatter.
27 Then you ought to have put my
silver to the bankers, and coming I
would have received my own with
interest.
28 Therefore, take the talent from
him and give it to him who has the ten
talents.
29 For to each who has, more will be
given, and he will abound. But from
him who does not have, even that
which he has will be taken from him.
30 And throw the worthless slave
out into the outer darkness. There will
be weeping and gnashing of the teeth.
31 But when the Son of Man comes
in His glory, and all the holy cherubs
with Him, then He will sit on the
throne of His glory.
32 And before Him shall be gathered
all the nations; and He will separate
them from one another, as the
shepherd separates the sheep from the
goats.
33 And indeed He will set the sheep
off His right, but the goats off the left
hand.
34 Then the King will say to those on
His right, Come, the blessed of My
Father, inherit the kingdom prepared

[1] Each true believer has been endowed with spiritual gifts that must be used to produce fruit for the Kingdom of YHWH. Man is created from the earth and this is a clever Hebrew idiom showing the man who was made from the earth had hidden his talents from YHWH within himself and never used them to bear fruit for His Kingdom.

for you from the foundation of the
world.
35 For I hungered, and you gave Me
food to eat; I thirsted, and you gave
Me drink; I was a stranger, and you
took Me in;
36 naked, and you clothed Me; I was
sick, and you visited Me; I was in
prison, and you came to Me.
37 Then the righteous will answer,
saying, Master, when did we see You
hungry, and fed You; or thirsting, and
gave You drink?
38 And when did we see You a
stranger, and took You in; or naked,
and clothed You?
39 And when did we see You sick, or
in prison, and came to You?
40 And answering, the King will say
to them, Truly I say to you, In so far as
you did it to one of these, the least of
My brothers[1], you did it to Me.
41 Then He will also say to those on
His left, Go away from Me, cursed
ones, into the everlasting fire having
been prepared for the Devil and his
cherubs.
42 For I hungered, and you did not
give Me a thing to eat. I thirsted and
you did not give Me a thing to drink;
43 I was a stranger, and you did not
take Me in; naked, and you did not
clothe Me; sick, and in prison, and you
did not visit Me.
44 Then they also will answer Him,
saying, Master, when did we see You
hungering, or thirsting, or a stranger,
or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did
not minister to You?
45 Then He will answer them,
saying, Truly I say to you, in so far as
you did not do it to one of these, the
least, neither did you do it to Me.
46 And these shall go away into
everlasting punishment, but the
righteous into everlasting life.

Chapter 26

1 And it happened, when Yahshua
finished all these sayings, He said to
His disciples,
2 You know that the Passover is
coming after two days, and the Son of
Man is betrayed to be crucified.
3 Then the chief priests and the
scribes and the elders of the people
were assembled to the court of the
high priest, the one named Caiaphas.
4 And they plotted together in order
that they might seize Yahshua by guile
and kill Him.
5 But they said, Not during the Feast,
that there be no turmoil among the
people.
6 And Yahshua being in Bethany, in
Simon the potter's house[2],
7 a woman came to Him having an
alabaster vial of ointment, very
precious. And she poured it on His
head as He reclined.
8 But seeing, His disciples were
indignant, saying, For what is this
waste?
9 For this ointment could have been
sold for much and be given to the
poor.
10 But knowing, Yahshua said to
them, Why do you cause trouble to the
woman? For she worked a good work
toward Me.

[1] Judah is the only brother currently who has not embraced the New Covenant and can be considered at present the least of the brothers. So Yahshua is judging these people in the end time by how much love and help they showed to our brother Judah. It stands to reason that Judah would have to be known to have such judgment and clearly debunks the false notion that Jews living in Israel today are not truly from Judah but are Czars.

[2] The Aramaic word for potter is mistranslated for leper in the Greek, but a leper could not own property, live in Jerusalem, or have guests at his house.

11 For you always have the poor with
you, but you do not always have Me.
12 For in putting this ointment on
My body, she did it in order to bury
Me.
13 Truly I say to you, Wherever this
good news is proclaimed in all the
world, what she did will be spoken of
for a memorial of her.
14 Then one of the twelve going to
the chief priests, the one called Judas
Iscariot
15 said, What will you give to me,
and I will deliver Him up to you? "And
they weighed to him thirty silver
pieces." *(Zech. 11:12)*
16 And from then he sought
opportunity that he might betray Him.
17 And on the first day of the Feast of
Unleavened, the disciples came to
Yahshua, saying to Him, Where do you
desire we should prepare for You to
eat the Passover?
18 And He said, Go into the city to a
certain one and say to him, our Master
says, My time has arrived; with you I
will prepare the Passover with My
disciples.
19 And the disciples did as Yahshua
ordered them, and prepared the
Passover.
20 And evening having come, He
reclined with the Twelve.
21 And as they were eating, He said,
Truly I say to you that one of you will
betray Me.
22 And grieving exceedingly, they
began to say to Him, each of them,
Master, is it I?
23 But answering, He said, The one
dipping the hand with Me in the dish
will betray Me.
24 Indeed, the Son of Man goes, as it
has been written about Him. But woe
to that man by whom the Son of Man
is betrayed. It were good for him if
that man was never born.
25 And answering, the traitor, Judas,
said, is it I, Rabbi? He said to him, You
have said it.
26 And as they ate, taking the bread
and blessing it, Yahshua broke and
gave to the disciples, and said, Take,
eat; this is My body.
27 And taking the cup, and giving
thanks, He gave to them, saying, Drink
all of it.
28 For this represents My blood of
the New Covenant which concerning
many is being poured out for
remission of sins.
29 But I say to you, I will not at all
drink of this fruit of the vine after this
until that day when I drink it new with
you in the kingdom of YAHWEH.
30 And offering praise, they went to
the Mount of Olives.
31 Then Yahshua said to them, You
all will be offended in Me during this
night. For it has been written, "I will
smite the Shepherd, and the sheep of
the flock will be scattered." *(Zech.
13:7)*
32 But after My resurrection I will go
before you into Galilee.
33 And answering, Peter said to
Him, Even if all will be offended in
You, I will never be offended.
34 Yahshua said to him, Truly I say
to you, During this night, before a cock
crows, you will deny Me three times.
35 Peter said to Him, Even if it were
necessary for me to die with You, I will
not deny You, never! And all the
disciples said the same.
36 Then Yahshua came with them to
a place called Gethsemane. And He
said to the disciples, Sit here, while I
go and pray.
37 And taking along Peter and the
two sons of Zebedee, He began to
grieve and to be deeply troubled.
38 Then He said to them, My soul is
deeply grieved, even unto death. Stay
here and watch with Me.
39 And going forward a little, He fell

on His face, praying, and saying, My
Father, if it is possible, let this cup
pass from Me; yet not as I will, but as
You will[1].
40 And He came to the disciples and
found them sleeping. And He said to
Peter, So! Were you not able to watch
one hour with Me?
41 Watch and pray, that you do not
enter into temptation. The spirit
indeed is ready, but the flesh is weak.
42 Again, going away a second time,
He prayed, saying, My Father, if it is
not possible for this cup to pass away
except I drink it, let Your will be done.
43 And coming, He again found
them sleeping, for their eyes were
heavy.
44 And leaving them, going away
again, He prayed a third time, saying
the same word.
45 Then He came to His disciples
and said to them, Sleep on, and rest
for what time remains. Behold, the
hour draws near, and the Son of Man
is betrayed into the hands of sinners.
46 Rise up, let us go. Behold, the one
betraying Me draws near.
47 And as He was yet speaking,
behold, Judas the traitor came, one of
the Twelve. And with him was a
numerous crowd with swords and
clubs, from the chief priests and elders
of the people.
48 And the traitor gave them a sign,
saying, Whomever I may kiss, it is He;
seize Him.
49 And coming up at once to
Yahshua, he said, Hail, Rabbi. And he
ardently kissed Him.
50 But Yahshua said to him, Is it for
this reason you have come my friend?
Then coming up, they laid hands on
Yahshua and seized Him.
51 And, behold, one of those with
Yahshua, stretching out the hand,
drew his sword and struck the slave of
the high priest and took off his ear[2].
52 Then Yahshua said to him, Put
your sword back into its place. For all
who take the sword shall perish by a
sword.
53 Or do you think that I am not able
now to call on My Father, and He will
place beside Me more than twelve
legions of cherubs?
54 How then should the Scriptures
be fulfilled, that it must happen this
way?
55 In that hour, Yahshua said to the
crowds, Have you come out to take Me
with swords and clubs, as against a
bandit? I sat with you daily teaching in
the sanctuary, and you did not lay
hands on Me.
56 But all this is happening that the
Scriptures of the prophets may be
fulfilled. Then all the disciples ran
away, forsaking Him.
57 And those who had seized
Yahshua led Him away to Caiaphas the
high priest, where the scribes and the
elders were assembled.
58 And Peter followed Him from a
distance, even to the court of the high
priest. And going inside, he sat with
the under-officers to see the end.
59 And the chief priests and the
elders and the whole Sanhedrin looked
for false testimony against Yahshua, so
that they might put Him to death,
60 but did not find any, even though
there were many false witnesses
coming forward, they did not find any.
But at last, coming up two false
witnesses
61 said, This One said, I am able to

---

1 The cup He mentions is the 4th cup according to the passover ceremony, which is the cup of salvation that only the Messiah can drink from (Ps 116:13). This verse also clearly shows that the Father Yahweh and His son Yahshua are two separate beings with 2 separate wills that they have freely submitted to each other in love and purpose.

2 Joh 18:10 tells us this was Simon Peter

destroy the sanctuary of Elohim, and
in three days to rebuild it.
62 And standing up, the high priest
said to Him, Do you answer nothing?
What do these witness against you?
63 But Yahshua kept silent. And
answering, the high priest said to Him,
I put You on oath by the living Elohim
that You tell us if You are the Messiah,
the Son of Elohim.
64 Yahshua said to him, You said it.
I tell you more. From this time you
shall see the Son of Man sitting off the
right hand of YAHWEH in power, and
coming on the clouds of the heaven[1].
(Psa. 110:1; Dan. 7:13)
65 Then the high priest tore his
garments, saying, He blasphemed!
Why do we have any more need of
witnesses? Behold, now you have
heard His blasphemy.
66 What does it seem to you? And
answering, they said, He is deserving
of death[2].
67 Then they spat upon his face and
they were striking him on his head,
and others were beating him.
68 saying, Prophesy to us, Messiah.
Who is the one striking You?
69 And Peter sat outside in the
courtyard. And one girl came near to
him, saying, And you were with
Yahshua the Galilean.
70 But he denied before all, saying, I
do not know what you say.
71 And he, going out into the porch,
another saw him and said to those
there, And this one was with Yahshua
the Nazarene.
72 And again he denied with an oath,
I do not know the man.
73 And after a little, coming near,
those standing by said to Peter, Truly
you also are of them, for even your
speech makes you known.
74 Then he began to curse and to
swear, I do not know the man. And
immediately a cock crowed.
75 And Peter recalled the word of
Yahshua, saying to him, Before a cock
crows, you will deny Me three times.
And going out, he wept bitterly.

Chapter 27

1 And early morning occurring, all
the chief priests and the elders of the
people took counsel together against
Yahshua, so as to put Him to death.
2 And binding Him, they led Him
away and delivered Him to Pontius
Pilate the governor.
3 Then Judas, the traitor, seeing that
He was condemned, repenting,
returned the thirty pieces of silver to
the chief priests and the elders,
4 saying, I sinned, betraying
innocent blood. But they said, What is
it to us? You see to it.
5 And tossing the silver pieces into
the sanctuary, he left. And going away
he hanged himself.
6 And taking the pieces of silver, the
chief priests said, It is not lawful to put
them into the treasury, since it is the
price of blood.
7 And taking counsel, they bought of
them the field of a potter, for burial for
strangers.
8 So that field was called Field of
Blood until today.

---

1 This verse also proves the duality of the Yahweh family, as Yahshua right now today is seated in heaven at the right hand of Yahweh the Father. Clearly, there are 2 thrones with each sitting on a separate throne. (Acts 2:33, 1Pe 3:22, Acts 7:55-56, Heb 1:3. Heb 8:1, Heb 10:12, Eph 1:19-20)

2 According to the Oral laws of the Jews if Yahshua had blasphemed, then the penalty would have been scourging, but if He blasphemed using the sacred name YHWH, then the penalty would be death. The fact that they quickly said He deserves death shows the sacred name was uttered by Yahshua in verse 64.

9 Then was fulfilled that spoken through the prophet[1], saying, And I took the thirty pieces of silver, the price of Him who had been priced, on whom they of the sons of Israel set a price,
10 and gave them for the field of a potter, as YAHWEH directed me. *(Zech. 11: 12, 13)*
11 And Yahshua stood before the governor. And the governor questioned Him, saying, Are You the King of the Jews? And Yahshua said to him, You have said it.
12 And when He was accused by the chief priests and the elders, He answered nothing.
13 Then Pilate said to Him, Do You not hear how many things they testify against You?
14 And He did not answer him, not even to one word, so that the governor greatly marveled.
15 And at a feast, the governor customarily released one prisoner to the crowd, whom they wished.
16 And they had then a notable prisoner, Bar-Abba.[2]
17 Then they, having been assembled, Pilate said to them, Whom do you wish I may release to you, Barabbas, or Yahshua being called Messiah?
18 For he knew they delivered Him up through envy.
19 But as he was sitting on the judgment seat, his wife sent to him, saying, Let nothing be to you and that just one. For I have suffered many things today by a dream because of Him.
20 But the chief priests and the elders persuaded the crowds, that they should ask for Barabbas, and to destroy Yahshua.
21 And answering, the governor said to them, From the two, which do you wish that I release to you? And they said, Barabbas.
22 Pilate said to them, What then should I do to Yahshua being called Messiah? They all say to him, Crucify Him!
23 But the governor said, For what badness did He do? But they the more cried out, saying, Crucify!
24 And seeing that nothing is gained, but rather an uproar occurs, taking water, Pilate washed his hands before the crowd, saying, I am innocent of the blood of this righteous one; you do as you please.
25 And answering, all the people said, let His blood be on us and on our children.
26 Then he released Barabbas to them. But having scourged Yahshua with whips, he delivered Him up that He might be crucified.
27 Then taking Yahshua into the praetorium, the soldiers of the governor gathered all the cohort against Him.
28 And stripping Him, they put a scarlet cloak around Him.
29 And they wove a crown of thorns and put it on His head, and a reed in His right hand. And they bowed down upon their knees before Him and they were mocking at Him and saying, "Peace, King of the Jews."
30 And spitting at Him, they took the reed and struck at His head.
31 And when they had mocked Him, they stripped off His cloak, and they

1 The Greek translation inadvertently puts the name of the prophet as Jeremiah, but the Aramaic original simply says *"the prophet"* as this verse comes from Zechariah 11:12-13.

2 Bar-Abbas means son of the father and he was an earthly insurrectionist who wanted to take the kingdom by force. Interesting enough his first name was also Yeshua and the crowd those him over Yahshua, the true Son of the Father Yahweh.

put His garments on Him and led Him away to crucify Him.
32 And going out, they found a man, a Cyrenean, named Simon. They compelled this one, that he carry His cross beam.
33 And coming to a place called Golgotha, which is called, the Skull *(head)*,
34 they gave Him vinegar mingled with gall to drink. And having tasted, He would not drink.
35 And having crucified Him, they divided His garments, casting a lot, that might be fulfilled that spoken by the prophet, "They divided My garments to themselves, and they cast a lot over My clothing." *(Psa. 22:18)*
36 And sitting down, they guarded Him there.
37 And they placed over His head the reason for His death in writing:
THIS IS YAHSHUA, THE KING OF THE YEHUDIM.
38 Then two bandits were crucified with Him, one off the right, and one off the left of Him.
39 But those passing by, blasphemed Him, shaking their heads,
40 and saying, You the one razing the sanctuary and building it in three days, if You are the Son of Elohim, come down from the torture stake.
41 And in the same way, the chief priests with the scribes and elders, mocking, said,
42 He saved others; He is not able to save Himself. If He is the King of Israel, let Him come down now from the torture stake and we will believe Him.
43 He trusted on Elohim. Let Him rescue Him now, if He desires Him. For He said, I am Son of Elohim.
44 And also the bandits crucified with Him defamed Him, saying the same.
45 And from the sixth hour there was darkness over all the land until the ninth hour.
46 And about the ninth hour, Yahshua cried out with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama shabakthani; that is, My El, My El, why did You honor Me to be here[1]?
47 And hearing, some of those standing there said, This one calls Elijah.
48 And at once, one of them running and taking a sponge, and filling it with "vinegar," put it on a reed and "gave drink to Him." *(Psa. 69:21)*
49 But the rest said, Let it be; let us see if Elijah is coming to save Him.
50 And crying again with a loud voice, Yahshua released His spirit.
51 And, behold! The veil of the sanctuary was torn into two from above as far as below[2]. And the earth quaked, and the rocks were sheared!
52 And the tombs were opened, and many bodies of the saints who had fallen asleep were raised.
53 And coming forth out of the tombs after His resurrection, they

---

1 This verse has been greatly misquoted as the original Aramaic can mean to forsake in a bad way, but also can mean to leave in a good way, such as if you were an owner of a company and had to go away and left someone very trusted to care for your business while you were gone. From Isaiah 63:1-9, we see that only Messiah qualified to redeem Israel and it is stating here the honor given to Him for His perfect life and sacrifice.

2 In the first covenant only Levi was able to enter the sanctuary of Yahweh as they were priests representing the other tribes, but now by the death of Messiah and fulfilling the payment of sin in the first covenant, it opened the way for the new covenant where all are training to be Melchizedek priests and now have access to the throne of YHWH by their prayers, which are represented by the altar of incense Rev 8:3-4.

entered into the holy city and were
seen by many[1].
54 But the centurion and those with
him guarding Yahshua, seeing the
earthquake and the things taking
place, they feared exceedingly, saying,
Truly this One was Son of Elohim.
55 And many women were there,
watching from afar off, those who
followed Yahshua from Galilee,
ministering to Him;
56 among whom was Mariam
Magdalene, and Mariam the mother of
Jacob and Hosea, and the mother of
the sons of Zebedee.
57 And late afternoon having come, a
rich man from Arimathea (Joseph by
name) who also himself was a disciple
of Yahshua,
58 coming up to Pilate, this one
asked for the body of Yahshua. Then
Pilate commanded the body to be
given.
59 And taking the body, Joseph
wrapped it in a shroud of fine linen,
60 and he laid it in his new tomb
which was hewn in rock. And they
rolled a large boulder and they placed
it upon the entrance of the tomb. And
they departed.
61 And there was Mariam
Magdalene and the other Mariam,
sitting across from the grave.
62 And on the next day, which was
after the sunset, the chief priests and
the Pharisees were gathered with
Pilate,
63 saying, Sir, we have recalled that
that deceiver while living said, After
three days I will rise.
64 Therefore, command that the
grave be secured until the third day,
that His disciples may not come by
night and steal Him away, and may
say to the people, He is raised from the
dead. And the last deception will be
worse than the first.
65 And Pilate said to them, You have
the guards. Go and take precautions as
you know.
66 And they departed and took
precautions by the grave and set a seal
upon that stone together with the
guards.

Chapter 28

1 But after the Sabbaths[2], at the
dawning into the first of the
Sabbaths[3], Mariam of Magdalene and
the other Mariam came to look upon
the grave.
2 And, behold! A great earthquake
occurred! For descending from
Heaven and coming near, a cherub of
YAHWEH rolled away the stone from
the door and was sitting on it.
3 And his face was as lightning and
his clothing white as snow.
4 And those keeping guard were
shaken from the fear of him, and they
became as dead.
5 But answering, the cherub said to
the women, You must not fear, for I
know that you seek Yahshua who has
been crucified.
6 He is not here, for He was raised,

[1] These were people who believed in Yahshua as the Messiah but died during His 3 year ministry. Since only those who have the spirit of YHWH will be firstfruits in the first resurrection (Ro 8:9-11) and the Holy Spirit had not been given yet, these people were simply resurrected the same as Lazarus was as a physical being so they could receive the Holy Spirit on Shavuot and then, they died later(Heb 9:27) and are waiting the Resurrection as all other true believers.

[2] There was the set apart first day of unleavened bread and then, the weekly Sabbath that followed it back to back.

[3] This is the first day of the week during unleavened bread, which is called the feast of firstfruits or resurrection and the start of the 7 week count to Shavuot.

as He said. Come see the place where
He was lying.
7 And going quickly say to His
disciples that He was raised from the
dead. And behold! He goes before you
into Galilee. You will see Him there.
Behold! I told you.
8 And going away from the tomb
quickly, with fear and great joy, they
ran to report to His disciples.
9 But as they were going to report to
His disciples, behold, Yahshua also
met them, saying, Peace unto you! And
coming near, they grabbed His feet
and worshiped Him.
10 Then Yahshua said to them, Do
not fear. Go tell your brothers that
they may go into Galilee, and there
they will see Me.
11 And they, having gone, behold,
some of the guard coming into the city
reported to the chief priests all things
that occurred.
12 And being assembled with the
elders, and taking counsel, they gave
enough silver to the soldiers,
13 saying, Say that his disciples came
and stole him by night, while we slept.
14 And if this is heard by the
governor, we will persuade him and he
will not make trouble for you.
15 And taking the silver, they did as
they were instructed. And this report
was spread by the Jews until today.
16 But the eleven disciples went into
Galilee, to the mount where Yahshua
appointed them.
17 And seeing Him, they worshiped
Him. But some of them doubted.[1]
18 And coming up Yahshua talked
with them, saying, All authority in
Heaven and on earth was given to Me.
And as my Father sent Me, I send you.
19 Then having gone, disciple all
nations, baptizing them into the
name[2] of the Father and of the Son,
20 and the Holy Spirit teaching
them to observe all things, whatever I
commanded you. And, behold, I am
with you all the days until the
completion of the age. Amen.

[1] They were not doubting His resurrection, as they clearly saw Him, but they doubted why He was not setting up the restored Kingdom then. (Acts 1:6)

[2] The family name of the Father and the Son is Yahweh. In the original Aramaic the word "*name*" is singular, so it is not referring to baptizing in multiple names, but simply to baptize in the one family name of Yahweh. The name of the son (Yahshua) has the name of Yahweh in it. '*Yah-shua'* is Yahweh's salvation.

Book of Mark

Chapter 1

1 The beginning of the good news of Yahshua Messiah, *the* Son of YAHWEH,
2 as it has been written in the Prophets, "Behold, I send My messenger before Your face, who will prepare Your way before You;
3 *the* voice of one crying in the wilderness. Prepare the way of YAHWEH, make His paths straight[1]." *(Mal. 3:1; Isa. 40:3)*
4 John came baptizing in the wilderness and proclaiming a baptism of repentance for remission of sins.
5 And all the Judean country and those of Jerusalem went out to him, and were all baptized by him in the Jordan River, confessing their sins.
6 And John was clothed in camel's hair, a leather girdle about his loin, and eating locusts and wild honey.
7 And he proclaimed, saying, He who comes after me is mightier than I, of whom I am not fit to stoop down to loosen the thong of His sandals.
8 I indeed baptized you in water, but He will baptize you in *the* Holy Spirit.
9 And it happened in those days, Yahshua came from Nazareth of Galilee and was baptized by John in the Jordan.
10 And going up from the water, immediately He saw the heavens being torn, and the Spirit coming down as a dove upon Him.
11 And there was a voice out of the heavens, You are My Son, the Beloved, in whom I am well pleased. (*Psa. 2:7; Gen. 22:2; Isa. 42:1)*
12 And the Spirit at once drove Him out into the wilderness.
13 And He was there in the wilderness forty days, being tempted by Satan, and was with the wild beasts. And the cherubs ministered to Him.
14 And after John was delivered up, Yahshua came into Galilee proclaiming the good news of the kingdom of YAHWEH,
15 And he said, The time is complete and the Kingdom of YAHWEH has arrived. Repent and believe in the good news.
16 And walking along beside the Sea of Galilee, He saw Simon and his brother Andrew casting a small net in the sea; for they were fishers.
17 And Yahshua said to them, Come after Me, and I will make you to become fishers of men.
18 And they abandoned their nets at once and followed Him.
19 And going forward from there a little, He saw Jacob the *son* of Zebedee, and his brother John. And they were in the boat mending the nets.
20 And at once He called them. And leaving their father Zebedee in the boat with the hired servants, they went after Him.
21 And they passed along into Capernaum. And entering into the synagogue, at once He taught on the Sabbaths.
22 And they were astounded at His doctrine, for He was teaching them as having authority, and not as the scribes.
23 And a man with an unclean spirit was in their synagogue. And he cried out,
24 saying, What *is* to us and to You, Yahshua, Nazarene? Have You come to destroy us? I know who You are, the Holy One of Elohim.
25 And Yahshua rebuked him, saying, shut your mouth, and come out of him.

---
[1] In ancient times whenever a king was going on a trip he would send a herald first to fix the road and replace any missing stones and prepare his way for a smooth trip to follow. (See Malachi 3:1)

26 And the unclean spirit threw him
down, and crying out with a loud
voice, came out of him.
27 And all of them were astonished
and were asking each other and
saying, And what is this new teaching?
For with authority He even commands
unclean spirits, and they obey Him.
28 And His fame went out at once
into all the Galilean neighborhood.
29 And at once going out of the
synagogue, they came into the house
of Simon and Andrew, with Jacob and
John.
30 And the mother-in-law of Simon
was ill with a fever. And at once they
spoke to Him about her.
31 And coming near, He raised her
up, holding her hand. And the fever
left her instantly, and she served them.
32 And evening coming, when the
sun set[1], they brought to Him all those
having illness and those having been
demon-possessed.
33 And the whole city was gathered
at the door.
34 And He healed many who had
illness of various diseases. And He cast
out many demons, and *He* did not
allow the demons to speak, because
they knew Him.
35 And rising up quite early in *the*
night, He went out and went away into
a deserted place. And *He* was praying
there.
36 And Simon and those with Him
searched for Him.
37 And finding Him, they said to
Him, All are seeking You.
38 And when they found Him they
said to Him, All the people are looking
for you. He said to them, Walk into the
villages and into the cities that are
nearby, for I will also preach there. I
have come for this reason.
39 And He was proclaiming in their
synagogues in all Galilee, and casting
out the demons.
40 And a leper came to Him,
begging Him, and falling on *his* knees
to Him, and saying to Him, If You
desire, You are able to make me clean.
41 And being moved with pity,
reaching out the hand, Yahshua
touched him, and said to him, I am
willing. Be made clean!
42 And *He* having spoken, instantly
the leprosy departed from him, and he
was made clean.
43 And strictly warning him, He at
once put him out,
44 and said to him, See, tell no one a
thing, but go show yourself to the
priest, and offer what Moses directed
concerning your cleansing, for a
testimony to them.
45 But going out he began to
proclaim much, and to spread about
the matter, so that He no longer could
openly enter into a city. But He was
outside in deserted places. And they
came to Him from every place.

Chapter 2

1 And again He entered into
Capernaum after *some* days. And it
was heard that He was in the house.
2 And at once many were gathered,
so as none any longer had room, not
even to the door. And He spoke the
Word to them.
3 And they came to Him carrying a
paralytic, being carried by four.
4 And not being able to draw near to
Him, due to the crowd, they unroofed
the roof where He was. And digging
through, they lowered the cot on
which the paralytic was lying.
5 And seeing their faith, Yahshua

[1] The biblical day is from sunset to sunset (Lev 23:32), so since the Pharisees were rebuking the people for being healed on the Sabbath day, they waited till after sunset, which would have been the beginning of the first day of the week.

said to the paralytic, Child, your sins
are forgiven to you.
6 But some of the scribes were
sitting there and reasoning in their
hearts,
7 Why does this one speak
blasphemies this way? Who is able to
forgive sins, except One, Elohim?
8 And instantly knowing in His spirit
that they reasoned this way within
themselves, Yahshua said to them,
Why do you reason these things in
your hearts?
9 Which is easier? To say to the
paralytic, Your sins are forgiven to
you, or to say, Rise up and take your
cot and walk?
10 But that you may know that it is
lawful for the Son of Man to forgive
sins on the earth, He said to the
paralytic,
11 I say to you, Rise up and take up
your cot and go to your house.[1]
12 And at once he rose up. And
taking his cot, he went out before all,
so as all to be astonished and glorified
YAHWEH, saying, Never did we see *it*
this way.
13 And He went out by the sea again.
And all the crowd came to Him, and
He taught them.
14 And passing on, He saw Levi the
son of Alpheus sitting at the tax office.
And *He* said to him, Follow Me. And
rising up, he followed Him.
15 And it happened as He reclined in
his house, even many tax collectors
and sinners reclined with Yahshua and
His disciples, for they were many. And
they followed Him.
16 And the scribes and Pharisees
seeing Him eating with tax collectors
and sinners, *they* said to His disciples,
Why *is it* that He eats and drinks with
the tax collectors and sinners?
17 But when Yahshua heard, He said
to them, The healthy have no need for
a physician, rather those who are very
ill. I have not come to call the
righteous, rather the sinners.
18 And John's disciples, and those of
the Pharisees, were fasting. And they
came and said to Him, Why do John's
disciples and those of the Pharisees
fast, but your disciples do not fast?
19 Yahshua said to them, As long as
the bridegroom is among them, the
sons of the wedding feast are able not
to fast.
20 But the days will come when the
groom will be taken away from them,
and then they will fast in those days.
21 No man places a new patch onto
an old garment and sews it, lest the
new patch be taken away from the old
and the tear becomes larger.
22 And no man puts new wine into
old wineskins lest the wine burst the
wineskins, and the wineskins are
destroyed and the wine is poured out.
Rather, they put new wine into new
wineskins[2].
23 And it happened, He went along
through the grain fields on the
Sabbath. And His disciples began to
make way, plucking the heads of
grain[3].
24 And the Pharisees said to Him,
Behold, why do they do that which is
not lawful to do on the Sabbath?
25 And He said to them, Did you
never read what David did when he
had need and hungered, he and those
with him,
26 How he entered the house of

1 Luk 5:20-24

2 The questions at hand is why Yahshua's disciples do not follow the tradition of the Pharisees. The point that Yahshua is making is that if we are going to be led into new truth by the Holy Spirit, then we must be pliable to be able to stretch our thinking. The Pharisees, due to their oral traditions, were already completely expanded to their limit of thinking and could not grasp any further ideas.

3 Deut 23:25

YAHWEH while Abiathar was the high priest and he ate of the bread of the table of YAHWEH which was not lawful to eat except for the priests.[1] And he even gave to those who were with him?

27 And He said to them, The Sabbath came into being for man's sake, not man for the Sabbath's sake.

28 So then the Son of Man is Master of the Sabbath also.

Chapter 3

1 And again He entered into the synagogue. And there was a man who had a withered hand.

2 And they watched Him, whether He will heal him on the Sabbath, that they might accuse Him.

3 And He said to the man who had the withered hand, Rise up into the middle.

4 And He said to them, *Is it* lawful to do good on the Sabbath or to destroy that which is evil or to give life to a soul? But they were silent.

5 And having looked around on them with anger, being greatly grieved over the hardness of their heart, He said to the man, Stretch out your hand! And he stretched out, and his hand was restored sound as the other.

6 And going out, the Pharisees at once took counsel with the Herodians against Him, how they might destroy Him.

7 And Yahshua withdrew to the sea with His disciples; and a great multitude from Galilee and from Judea followed Him,

8 also *some* from Jerusalem, and from Edom, and beyond the Jordan, also those around Tyre and Sidon. A great multitude came to Him, hearing how much He was doing.

9 And He spoke to His disciples that a small boat should stay near to Him because of the crowd that they might not press upon Him.

10 For He healed many, so that they fell on Him, that they might touch Him, as many as had plagues.

11 And when the unclean spirits saw Him, *they* fell down before Him, and cried out, saying, You are the Son of Elohim!

12 And He warned them very much that they should not reveal Him.

13 And He went up into the mountain, and He called near whom He desired. And they went to Him.

14 And He ordained twelve, that they might be with Him; and that He might send them to proclaim,

15 and to have authority to heal diseases, and to cast out the demons.

16 And He put on Simon *the* name Peter.

17 And on Jacob the *son* of Zebedee, and John the brother of Jacob, He put on them *the* names B'nai Raghshee[2], which is, Sons of Thunder.

18 Also *He appointed* Andrew, and Philip, and Bartholomew, and Matthew, and Thomas, and Jacob the *son* of Alpheus, and Thaddaeus, and Simon the zealot,

19 and Judas Iscariot, who also betrayed Him. And He came into a house.

20 And again a crowd came together, so as they were not able even to eat bread.

21 And when His own family heard, they went out to take hold *of* Him; for they said, He is crazy.

---

[1] David was a Melchizedek priest (Ps 110:1,4) He also wore an ephod and sacrificed animals 2 Sam 6:14-17.

[2] The Greek transliterates *'B'nai Ragshee'* an Aramaic term as *'Boaner'ges'*, which is a word that does not exist in Greek, which clearly shows the Aramaic had to be the original.

22 And coming down from
Jerusalem, the scribes said, He has
Beelzebub; and He casts out demons
by the ruler of the demons.
23 And calling them near, He spoke
to them in parables, *saying*, How can
Satan cast out Satan?
24 And if a kingdom is divided
against itself, that kingdom cannot
stand.
25 And if a house is divided against
itself, that house is not able to stand.
26 And if Satan rises upon himself,
and has been divided, he is not able to
stand, but he has an end.
27 No one, not *any*, having entered
into his house, is able to plunder the
vessels of the strong one, unless he
first tie up the strong one; and then he
will plunder his house.
28 Truly I say to you, All the sins will
be forgiven to the sons of men, and
whatever blasphemies they have
blasphemed;
29 but whoever blasphemes against
the Holy Spirit has no forgiveness unto
the age, but is liable to eternal
judgment
30 (because they said, He has an
unclean spirit).
31 Then His mother and brothers
came. And standing outside, *they* sent
to Him, calling Him.
32 And a crowd sat around Him.
And they said to Him, Behold, Your
mother and Your brothers seek You
outside.
33 And He answered them, saying,
Who is My mother or My brothers?
34 And having looked around on
those sitting around Him in a circle,
He said, Behold, My mother and My
brothers!
35 For whoever does the will of
Elohim, this one is My brother, and
My sister, and My mother.

Chapter 4

1 And again He began to teach by the
sea. And a large crowd was gathered to
Him, so that He entered into the boat
in order to sit in the sea. And all the
crowd were on the land toward the
sea.
2 And He taught them many things
in parables, and said to them in His
teaching:
3 Listen! Behold, the sower went out
to sow.
4 And as he sowed, it happened that
one indeed fell by the side of the road;
and the birds of the heaven came and
devoured it.
5 And another fell on the stony place
where it did not have much earth. And
it sprang up at once, due to not having
deepness of earth.
6 And *the* sun rising, it was scorched.
And through not having root, it was
dried out.
7 And another fell into the thorn-
bushes, and the thorn-bushes grew up
and choked it; and it did not yield
fruit.
8 And another fell into the good
ground, and yielded fruit, going up
and increasing; and one bore thirty,
and one sixty, and one a hundredfold.
9 And He said to them, The *one*
having ears to hear, let him hear.
10 And when He was alone, those
around Him, with the Twelve, asked
Him *as to* the parable.
11 And He said to them, To you *it* has
been given to know the mystery of the
kingdom of YAHWEH. But to these,
those outside, all things are being
given in parables,
12 that seeing they may see and not
perceive; and hearing they may hear,
and not understand, lest they should
be converted, and the sins be forgiven
to them. (*Isa. 6:9, 10)*
13 And He said to them, Do you not

know this parable? And how will you know all parables?
14 The sower sows the Word[1].
15 And these are those by the wayside where the Word is sown. And when they hear, Satan comes at once and takes away the Word having been sown in their hearts.
16 And likewise, these are the ones having been sown on the rocky places, who, when they hear the Word, *they* immediately receive it with joy,
17 And they have no roots in themselves, rather are of a short time and when affliction happens, or persecutions because of the word, they are quickly offended.
18 And those which were sown into a thorny place are they who hear the word,
19 And the cares of the world and the deception of riches and the rest of the other lusts enter in and choke the word and it becomes without fruit.
20 And these are those being sown on the good ground, who hear and welcome the Word and bring forth fruit, one thirty, and one sixty, and one a hundredfold.
21 And He said to them, Does the lamp come that it may be put under the grain measure, or under the bed? *Is it* not also that it may be put on the lamp stand?
22 For there is not anything which is hidden that will not be revealed, and not anything existing in secret that won't be revealed.
23 If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear.
24 And He said to them, Watch what you hear with that measure that you measure. It will be measured to you and it is increased to you, those who hear
25 for whoever may have, *more* will be given to him; and the *one* who does not have, even what he has will be taken from him.
26 And He said, So is the kingdom of YAHWEH, as if a man should cast seed on the earth,
27 and should sleep, and rise night and day; and the seed should sprout and lengthen of itself, as he does not know.
28 For of itself the earth bears fruit: first greenery, then an ear, then full grain in the ear.
29 And when the fruit is ripe, immediately he "sends forth the sickle, for the harvest has come[2]."
30 And He said, To what shall we compare the kingdom of YAHWEH? Or with what parable shall we compare it?
31 It is as a grain of mustard which when it is planted in the earth, is the smallest of all the seeds that are upon the earth.
32 And when it is planted, it grows and it becomes greater than all the herbs, and produces great branches so that it is able in its shade to nest the bird.
33 And with many such parables He spoke the Word to them, even as they were able to hear.
34 But He did not speak to them without a parable. And He explained all things to His disciples privately.
35 And evening having come, He said to them on that day, Let us pass over to the other side.
36 And dismissing the crowd they took Him along in the boat as He was. And other small boats also were with Him.
37 And a great windstorm occurred, and the waves beat into the boat so that it was filled already.
38 And Yahshua was sleeping on a blanket in the stern of the boat. And they came and woke Him and were

[1] The seed is the word of YHWH.

[2] Rev 14:14-20, Joel 3:13

saying to Him, Master don’t you care
that we are perishing!
39 And being awakened, He rebuked
the wind, and said to the sea, Silence!
Be still! And the wind ceased, and
there was a great calm.
40 And He said to them, Why are
you fearful in this manner? And why is
there no faith in you?
41 And they feared a great fear and
said to one another, Who then is this,
that even the wind and the sea obey
Him?

Chapter 5

1 And they came to the other side of
the sea, to the region of the Gadarenes.
2 And He coming out from the boat,
immediately out of the cemetery a
man with an unclean spirit met Him,
3 who had *his* abode among the
tombs; and no one was able to bind
him, not even with chains.
4 Because he had often been bound
with fetters and chains, and the chains
had been torn by him, and the fetters
had been shattered. And no one was
able to subdue him.
5 And continually night and day in
the hills, and in the tombs, he was
crying and cutting himself with stones.
6 And seeing Yahshua from afar, he
ran and bowed the knee to Him.
7 And crying with a loud voice, he
said, What *is* to me and to You,
Yahshua, Son of the most high El? I
adjure You by YAHWEH, do not
torment me.
8 For He said to him, Unclean spirit,
come out of the man!
9 And He asked him, What *is* your
name? And he answered, saying, My
name *is* Legion, because we are many.
10 And he begged Him very much
that He would not send them outside
the country.
11 And a great herd of pigs were
feeding there near the mountain.
12 And those devils were entreating
Him and saying, Send us upon those
pigs that we might attack them.
13 And He permitted them, and
those unclean spirits departed and
attacked the pigs. And that herd ran to
a steep place and fell into the sea, and
about two thousand were drowned in
the water.
14 And those who fed the pigs fled,
and *they* told *it* to the city, and to the
fields. And they came out to see what
was happening.
15 And they came to Yahshua, and
stared at the one who had been demon
possessed, sitting and being clothed,
and being in his senses, the one who
had the legion. And they feared.
16 And those seeing *it* related to
them how it happened to the one who
had been demon possessed, and about
the pigs.
17 And they began to beg Him to go
away from their borders.
18 And He having entered into the
boat, the *former* demoniac begged
Him, that he be with Him.
19 But He did not allow him, rather
He said to him, Go to your house to
your people and relate to them what
YAHWEH did for you and how He
had mercy on you.
20 And he went and began to
proclaim in Decapolis what Yahshua
did to Him. And all marveled.
21 And Yahshua having crossed over
in the boat again to the other side, a
large crowd gathered upon Him; and
He was by the sea.
22 And, behold, one of the
synagogue rulers named Yoarash
came. And seeing Him, *he* fell at His
feet.
23 And he begged Him very much,
saying, My daughter is at the last end.
I pray that You will come *and* lay

hands on her, that she may be cured
and live.
24 And He went with him. And a
large crowd was following, and they
were pressing on Him.
25 And a certain woman being with
an issue of blood twelve years,
26 who had suffered much from the
many doctors and had spent
everything she had and was not helped
at all, but was even more afflicted.
27 Hearing about Yahshua, coming
in the crowd behind *Him*, she touched
His garment.
28 For she said, If I may but touch
His garment, I will be cured.
29 And instantly the fountain of her
blood was dried up, and she knew in
her body that she was healed of the
plague.
30 And knowing instantly within
Himself that power had gone forth out
of Him, turning in the crowd, Yahshua
said, Who touched My garments?
31 And His disciples said to Him,
You see the crowd pressing on You,
and do You say, who touched Me?
32 And He looked around to see the
one who had done this.
33 And the woman, being afraid and
trembling, knowing what had
happened on her, she came and fell
down before Him and told Him all the
truth.
34 And He said to her, Daughter,
your faith has healed you. Go in peace
and be healed from your plague.
35 As He was speaking, they came
from the synagogue ruler saying, Your
daughter has died. Why do you still
trouble the Teacher?
36 But hearing the word spoken,
Yahshua said to the synagogue ruler at
once, Do not fear, only believe.
37 And He did not allow anyone to
go with Him except Peter and Jacob
and John, the brother of Jacob.
38 And they came into the
synagogue ruler's house. And He saw
that they were troubled, and weeping
and wailing much.
39 And going in, He said to them,
Why are you troubled and weeping?
The child has not died, but is sleeping.
40 And they laughed at Him. But
having put all out, He took along the
father and the mother of the child, and
those with Him, and passed on into
where the child was lying.
41 And taking hold of the child's
hand, He said to her, Talitha kumi[1];
which is, being translated, Little girl, I
say to you, Rise up!
42 And at once the girl arose and
was walking, for she was a daughter of
twelve years. And they were amazed
with great amazement.
43 And He much commanded them
to tell no man, and He said that they
should give her something to eat.

Chapter 6

1 And He went out from there and
came to His fatherland. And His
disciples followed Him.
2 And a Sabbath having come, He
began to teach in the synagogue. And
hearing, many were amazed, saying,
From where *came* these things to this
One? And what *is* the wisdom given to
Him that even such works of power
come about through His hands?
3 Is this One not the carpenter, the
son of Mariam, and brother of Jacob
and Joseph and Judas and Simon?
And are not His sisters here with us?
And they were offended in Him.
4 And Yahshua said to them, There
is no prophet who is dishonored
except in his own city and with his
own kinsmen and in his own house.

[1] In the Greek translation the words "*which is being translated* " are added, but are not in the original Aramaic, clearly showing which was the translation of the original.

5 And He could do no work of power there, except He performed healing on a few infirm ones laying on *His* hands.

6 And He marveled because of their unbelief. And He went around the villages in a circuit, teaching.

7 And He called the Twelve near and began to send them out two by two. And He gave them authority over the unclean spirits,

8 and charged them that they take nothing in *the* way, except only a staff; no bag, no bread, no copper in the belt;

9 but having tied on sandals, and not putting on two tunics.

10 And He said to them, Wherever you enter into a house, remain there until you go out from there.

11 And as many as will not receive you, nor hear from you, having gone out from there, shake off the dust under your feet for a testimony to them[1]. Truly I say to you, It will be more tranquil for Sodom or Gomorrah in Judgment Day than for that city.

12 And going out, they proclaimed that *men* should repent.

13 And they cast out many demons, and anointed with oil and healed many sick ones.

14 And Herod the king heard, for His name became publicly known. And he said, John the Baptist has been raised from the dead, and because of this the miracle works of power are done in Him.

15 Others said, He is Elijah; and others said, He is a prophet or as one of the prophets.

16 But hearing, Herod said, This one is John whom I beheaded. He has risen from the dead.

17 For having sent, Herod himself had seized John and bound him in the prison, because of Herodias the wife of his brother Philip, because he had married her.

18 For John had said to Herod, It is not lawful for you to have the wife of your brother[2].

19 And Herodias held it against him, and desired to kill him, but was not able.

20 For Herod feared John, knowing him *to be* a holy and just man, And he would protect him in many things, and would listen and did these things, and gladly heard him.

21 And a suitable day having come, when Herod made a dinner for his nobles on his birthday, also the captains, and the heads of Galilee.

22 And the daughter of Herodias herself entering, and having danced, she also pleased Herod and those reclining with *him*. The king said to the girl, Ask me whatever you wish, and I will give it to you.

23 And he swore to her, Whatever you ask me, I will give to you, up to half of my kingdom.

24 And going out, she said to her mother, What shall I ask? And she said, The head of John the Baptist.

25 And immediately going in with haste to the king, she asked, saying, I desire that at once you give to me the head of John the Baptist on a platter.

26 And having become deeply grieved, *but* because of the oaths and those reclining together, the king did not wish to reject her.

27 Rather immediately the king sent the executioner and commanded that they should bring the head of John, and he went and cut off the head of John in prison,

28 and brought his head on a platter

---

1 An idiom meaning a complete break in fellowship and any renunciation of further responsibility.

2 Josephus states this was after their divorce showing that John considered divorce and remarriage as adultery.

and gave it to the girl. And the girl gave it to her mother.

29 And having heard, his disciples went and took his corpse and placed it in a tomb.

30 And the apostles gathered to Yahshua. And *they* told Him all things, even what they did and what they taught.

31 And He said to them, *You* yourselves come apart into a deserted place, and rest a little. For those coming and those going were many, and they did not even have opportunity to eat.

32 And they departed by boat into a deserted place apart.

33 And the crowds saw them going, and many recognized Him. And *they* ran together on foot there, from all the cities, and came before them, and came together to Him.

34 And going out, Yahshua saw a large crowd, and had pity on them, because they were as sheep having no shepherd. And He began to teach them many things.

35 And now a late hour occurring, drawing near to Him, the disciples said, The place is deserted, and *it is* now a late hour.

36 Send them away, that going away to the surrounding fields and villages they may buy bread for themselves. For they do not have what they may eat.

37 And answering, He said to them, You give them *food* to eat. And they said to Him, Going, should we buy two hundred denarii[1] of bread and give them to eat?

38 And He said to them, How many loaves do you have? Go and see. And knowing, they said, Five and two fish.

39 And He ordered them all to recline, group *by* group on the green grass.

40 And they sat, group *by* group, by hundred and by fifty.

41 And taking the five loaves and the two fish, looking up to Heaven, He blessed, and broke the loaves, and giving out to His disciples, that they might set before them. And He divided the two fish to all.

42 And all ate, and were satisfied.

43 And they took up twelve hand baskets full *of* fragments, also from the fish.

44 And those eating the loaves were about five thousand men.

45 And at once He constrained His disciples to enter into the boat, and to go before to the other side, to Bethsaida, until He should dismiss the crowd.

46 And taking leave *of* them, He went away to the mountain to pray.

47 And *it* becoming evening, the boat was in *the* middle of the sea, and He alone on the land.

48 And he saw them straining while rowing, for the wind was against them. And in the fourth watch[2] of the night, Yahshua came to them while walking on the water. And He had desired to pass by them.

49 But seeing Him walking on the sea, they thought *it* to be a false vision. And *they* cried out.

50 For all saw Him, and were troubled. And immediately He spoke to them and said to them, Have courage. **I AM**! Do not fear.

51 And He went up to them into the boat, and the wind was cut off. And they were amazed, exceedingly beyond measure within themselves, and marveled.

52 For they had neither gained insight from the miracle of the bread because that their heart was confused.

53 And crossing over, they came into

---

[1] A denarii was an average workers day wage

[2] Between 3 am to 6 am

the land of Gennesar and drew to shore.
54 And they, coming out of the boat, at once knowing Him,
55 they ran around all that neighborhood. And they began to carry about those badly having *illness* on cots to where they heard that He was.
56 And wherever He went into villages or cities or fields, they laid the ailing *ones* in the markets and begged Him if only they may touch the tassel[1] of His garment. And as many as touched Him were healed.

Chapter 7

1 And the Pharisees and scribes who came from Jerusalem gathered around Him.
2 And seeing some of His disciples eating bread with unclean, that is unwashed hands, they complained.
3 For the Pharisees and all the Jews do not eat unless they carefully wash the hands with *the* fist, holding the tradition of the elders.
4 And goods from the marketplace, unless they are washed, they would not eat. And there are many other traditions that they have received to keep washings of cups and of pots and of brass vessels and of beds.
5 Then the Pharisees and scribes questioned Him, Why do your disciples not walk according to the tradition of the elders, but eat bread with unwashed hands?
6 And answering, He said to them, Well did Isaiah prophesy concerning you, hypocrites; as it has been written: "This people honors Me with the lips, but their heart is far away from Me;
7 and in vain they worship Me, teaching *as* doctrines the commandments of men." (*Isa. 29:13)*
8 For forsaking the commandment of YAHWEH, you hold the tradition of men: washing of utensils and cups, and many other such like things you do.
9 And He said to them, Well do you to set aside the commandment of YAHWEH so that you may establish your own tradition?
10 For Moses said, "Honor your father and your mother;" and, "The one speaking evil of father or mother, let him expire by death." (*Ex. 20:12; Deut. 5:16; Ex. 21:17, Lev 20:9)*
11 But you say, If a man says to his father or to his mother. Korban[2], which is to say, My offering is what you have gained from me.
12 And you no longer allow him to do anything for *his* father or mother,
13 making the Word of YAHWEH of no effect by your tradition which you delivered. And many such like things you do.
14 And calling all the crowd near, He said to them, All hear Me and understand.
15 There is nothing from outside the man, having entered into him, which is able to defile *him*. But the things going out from him, those are the things defiling the man.
16 If anyone has ears to hear, let him hear.
17 And when He entered into a house from the crowd, His disciples questioned Him about the parable.
18 And He said to them, Are you also so undiscerning? Do you not perceive

[1] The tassel was a sign of identity and authority to a male. The blue thread worn in the tassel represented the Messiah. Tassels were only worn by males not females.

[2] Korban was something devoted to Elohim, so the person is saying that he can't help his parents because the money has been devoted to Elohim. The hypocrisy is heightened as the person never actually had to give the donated money away.

that all that enters from the outside
into the man is not able to defile him?
19 *This is* because it does not enter
into his heart, but into the belly, and
goes out into the waste-bowl, purging
the food[1].
20 And He said, That passing out of
the man, it is the thing that defiles the
man.
21 For from within, out of the heart
of men, pass out the evil thoughts,
adulteries, fornications, murders,
22 thefts, greedy desires, iniquities,
deceit, lustful desires, a wicked eye,
blasphemy, pride, recklessness.
23 All these evil things pass out from
within and defile the man. (Math
15:16-20)
24 And rising up from there, he went
away into the borders of Tyre and
Sidon. And entering into the house, He
desired no one to know, but He could
not be hidden.
25 For hearing about Him, a woman
came up, *one* whose daughter had an
unclean spirit. *And she* fell down at
His feet.
26 And the woman was a heathen,
from Phoenicia in Syria. And she
asked Him, that He would cast out the
demon from her daughter.
27 And Yahshua said to her, First,
allow the children to be satisfied, for it
is not good to take the childrens' bread
and to throw *it* to the dogs[2].
28 But she answered and said to
Him, Yes, Master; for even the dogs
under the table eat from the crumbs of
the children.
29 And He said to her, Because of
this word, go. The demon has gone out
from your daughter.
30 And going away to her house, she
found the demon had gone out, and
her daughter was laid on the couch.
31 And again going out from the
borders of Tyre and Sidon, He came to
the Sea of Galilee, in the midst of the
borders of Decapolis.
32 And they brought a deaf one to
Him, hardly speaking. And they
begged Him, that He put *His* hand on
him.
33 And taking him away from the
crowd privately, He put His fingers
into his ears; and spitting, He touched
his tongue;
34 and looking up into Heaven, He
groaned and said to him, Ephphatha[3]!
(which is, Be opened!)
35 And instantly his ears were
opened, and the bond of his tongue
was loosened, and he spoke correctly.
36 And He ordered them that they
should tell no one. But as much as He
ordered them, much more abundantly
they proclaimed.
37 And they were most exceedingly
amazed, saying, He has done all things
well. He makes even the deaf to hear,
and the dumb to speak.

---

[1] Some English translation have added the words "*making all foods clean*", which are **NOT** in any original manuscript, Aramaic or Greek. In the first century pork was not even considered food, and it is unthinkable in a completely Jewish environment to think that Yahshua is telling His disciples that they can eat pork and the Pharisees would simply let it pass and not even condemn Him for it. It is clear from the context and also the cross reference of Math 15:16-20 that the subject is eating without washing according to Rabbinical tradition and not even about meat at all.

[2] There is judicial order to salvation. Right now Yahweh is redeeming His covenant with Israel and anyone who is a gentile must join the covenant of Israel, but in the Millennium Yahshua will make covenant with all nations. (Is 42:1-4, Zech 14:16)

[3] This is another Aramaic word showing the original origin of the New Testament.

Chapter 8

1 The crowd being very great in those
days, and not having anything they
may eat, Yahshua, calling His disciples
near, said to them,
2 I have compassion on the crowd
because now three days they remain
with Me and they do not have what
they may eat.
3 And if I send them away fasting to
their house, they will faint in the way,
for some of them come from afar.
4 And His disciples answered Him,
From where will anyone here be able
to satisfy these *with* loaves in the
wilderness?
5 And He asked them, How many
loaves do you have? And they said,
Seven.
6 And He ordered the crowd to
recline on the ground. And taking the
seven loaves, giving thanks, He broke
and gave to His disciples that they
might serve. And they served the
crowd.
7 And they had a few fish. And
blessing, He said for these also to be
served.
8 And they ate, and were satisfied.
And *they* took up over and above
seven lunch-baskets *of* fragments.
9 And those eating were about four
thousand. And He sent them away.
10 And at once entering into the boat
with His disciples, He came into the
region of Dalmanutha.
11 And the Pharisees went out and
began to argue with Him, seeking from
Him a sign from Heaven, tempting
Him.
12 And groaning in His spirit, He
said, Why does this generation seek a
sign? Truly I say to you, *As* if this
generation will be given a sign?
13 And leaving them, again entering
into the boat, He went away to the
other side.
14 And *the disciples* forgot to take
loaves. And they did not have *any* with
them, except one cake in the boat.
15 And He charged them, saying,
See! Beware of the leaven of the
Pharisees, and *of* the leaven of Herod.
16 And they reasoned with one
another, saying, Because we have no
bread.
17 And knowing, Yahshua said to
them, Why do you reason because you
have no bread? Do you not yet
perceive nor realize? Have you still
hardened your heart?
18 Having eyes, do you not see? And
having ears, do you not hear? And do
you not remember?
19 When I broke the five loaves to
the five thousand, how many full
baskets of fragments did you take up?
They said to Him, Twelve.
20 And when the seven to the four
thousand, how many lunch baskets did
you take up *with the* fillings of
fragments? And they said, Seven.
21 And He said to them, How do you
not understand?
22 And He came to Bethsaida. And
they carried a blind one to Him, and
begged Him that He would touch him.
23 And having taken hold of the
blind one's hand, He led him forth
outside the village. And spitting into
his eyes, laying *His* hands on him, He
asked him if he saw anything.
24 And having looked up, he said, I
see men as trees walking.
25 Then He placed *His* hands on his
eyes again, and made him look up.
And he was restored and saw all
clearly.
26 And He sent him to his house,
saying, You may not go into the
village, nor may tell anyone in the
village.
27 And Yahshua and His disciples
went out to the villages of Caesarea of
Philip. And in the way, He questioned

His disciples, saying to them, Whom do men say Me to be?
28 And they answered, John the Baptist, and others *say* Elijah; but others, one of the prophets.
29 And He said to them, And you, whom do you say Me to be? And answering, Peter said to Him, You are the Messiah.
30 And He warned them that they may tell no one about Him.
31 And He began to teach them that it is necessary for the Son of Man to suffer many things and to be rejected of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and to be killed, and within three days to rise again.
32 And He spoke the Word openly. And taking Him aside, Peter began to rebuke Him.
33 But turning around and seeing His disciples, He rebuked Peter, saying, Go behind Me, Satan, because you do not mind the things of YAHWEH, but the things of men.
34 And calling near the crowd with His disciples, He said to them, Whoever desires to come after Me, let him deny himself and take his torture stake, and let him follow Me.
35 For whoever desires to save his life, *he* shall lose it. But whoever shall lose his soul for My sake and the good news, that one shall save it.
36 For what shall it profit a man if he gain the whole world, yet forfeit his soul?
37 Or what shall a man give *as* an exchange *for* his soul?
38 For whoever may be ashamed of Me and My Words in this adulterous and sinful generation, the Son of Man will also be ashamed of him when He comes in the glory of His Father, along with the holy angels.

Chapter 9

1 And He said to them, Truly I say to you, There are some of those standing here who in no way shall taste of death until they see the kingdom of YAHWEH coming in power.
2 And after six days Yahshua takes along Peter and Jacob and John, and leads them into a high mount apart, alone. And He was transfigured before their eyes.
3 And His clothes became shining, very white like snow, so much that the sons of men are not able to make this white.
4 And Elijah with Moses was seen by them, and they were speaking with Yahshua.
5 And answering, Peter said to Yahshua, Rabbi, it is good *for* us to be here; and, Let us make three booths, one for You, and one for Moses, and one for Elijah.
6 For he did not know what he was saying, for they were in fear.
7 And a cloud was overshadowing them, and a voice came out of the cloud, saying, This is My Son, the Beloved; [1] hear Him. (*Psa. 2:7; Gen. 22:2; Deut. 18:15)*
8 And suddenly, having looked around, they saw no one any longer, but Yahshua alone with themselves.
9 And as they were coming down from the mount, He commanded them that they should tell no one what they saw, except when the Son of Man should rise from *the* dead.
10 And they held the saying in themselves, and were inquiring what this saying is "when He is raised from the dead."
11 And they asked Him, saying, Why Do the scribes say that Eliyahu must come first?

---

[1] The beloved in Hebrew is "*H'Daveed",* the name of David the King

12 And answering, He said to them, Indeed, Eliyahu coming first prepares all things. And how it has been written of the Son of Man that He must suffer many things and be despised!

13 But I say to you, Eliyahu also has come and they did to him whatever they desired, even as it has been written of him.

14 And coming to the disciples, He saw a great crowd around them, and scribes arguing with them.

15 And at once all the crowd seeing Him were greatly amazed. And running up, *they* greeted Him.

16 And He questioned the scribes, What are you arguing with them?

17 And one answered out of the crowd, saying, Teacher, I brought my son to You, having a spirit that does not speak.

18 And whenever it overtakes him, it knocks him down and he foams at the mouth and gnashes his teeth and becomes paralyzed. And I asked your disciples to cast him out, and they were not able to.

19 And answering them, He said, O generation that is unfaithful! How long will I be with you? How long shall I endure you? Bring him to Me.

20 And they brought him to him and when the spirit saw him, it knocked him down at once, and he fell on the ground and violently shaken and he was foamed at the mouth.

21 And He questioned his father, How long a time is it while this has happened to him? And he said, From childhood.

22 And often it threw him both into fire and into water, that it might destroy him. But if You are able to do anything, help us, having pity on us.

23 And Yahshua said to him, If you are able to believe, all things *are* possible to the *ones* believing.

24 And at once the father of the boy cried out while mourning and said, I believe my Master. Help the lack of my faith!

25 And seeing that a crowd is running together, Yahshua rebuked the unclean spirit, saying to it, Dumb and deaf spirit, I command you, Come out from him, and you may no more go into him!

26 And crying out, and convulsing him very much, it came out. And he became as if dead, so as *for* many to say that he died.

27 But taking hold of his hand, Yahshua raised him up, and he stood up.

28 And He entering into a house, His disciples questioned Him privately, *Why* were we not able to cast it out?

29 And He said to them, This kind can go out by nothing except by prayer and fasting.

30 And going forth from there, they passed by through Galilee. And He desired that no one know.

31 For He taught His disciples, and said to them, The Son of Man is betrayed into *the* hands of men, and they will kill Him. And being killed, He will rise up on the third day.

32 But they did not realize the meaning of it, and feared to question Him.

33 And they came to Capernaum. And having come into the house, He questioned them, What were you disputing to yourselves on the road?

34 And they were silent, for they argued with one another on the road *as to* who *was* greater among them.

35 And sitting, He called the Twelve and said to them, If anyone desires to be first, he shall be last of all and servant of all.

36 And taking a child, He set it in their midst, and having embraced it, He said to them,

37 Whoever receives one of such children on My name receives Me. And whoever receives Me does not receive Me, but the One having sent Me.

38 And John answered Him, saying, Rabbi, we saw someone casting out demons in Your name, who does not follow us. And we stopped him, because he does not follow us.

39 But Yahshua said, Do not stop him. For there is no one who shall do a miracle in My name, yet be able to speak evil of Me quickly.

40 For who is not against us is for us.

41 For whoever gives you a cup of cold water to drink in My name, because you are of the Messiah, truly I say to you, In no way he will lose his reward.

42 And whoever causes one of *these* little ones that believe in Me to stumble, it is good for him if rather a millstone of a donkey be laid about his neck, and he be thrown into the sea.

43 And if your hand offend you, cut it off. For it is better for you to enter into life maimed, than having two hands to go away into Gehenna, into the unquenchable fire, (*Matt 5:29-30)*

44 where their worm does not die, and the fire is not put out.

45 And if your foot causes you to offend, cut it off, for it is profitable for you to enter into life lame, than having two feet to be thrown into Hell, into the unquenchable fire,

46 where their worm does not die, and the fire is not quenched.

47 And if your eye offends you, cast it out. For it is better for you to enter into the kingdom of YAHWEH one-eyed, than having two eyes to be thrown into the fire of Gehenna,

48 "where their worm does not die and the fire is not quenched." (*Isa. 66:24, Rev 19:3*)

49 For with fire everything will be vaporized and every sacrifice will be seasoned with salt.

50 Salt is good, but if the salt should become bland, with what will it be seasoned? Let salt be in you and be in harmony among each other.[1]

Chapter 10

1 And rising up from there, He came into the borders of Judea by the other side of the Jordan. And again crowds came together to Him, and He again taught them as they were accustomed.

2 And coming near, the Pharisees asked Him if it is lawful for a man to put away a wife, tempting Him.

3 But answering, He said to them, What did Moses command you?

4 And they said, Moses allowed to write a bill of divorce, and to put away. (*Deut. 24:1*)

5 And answering, Yahshua said to them, With respect to your hardheartedness he wrote this command to you.

6 But from the beginning of creation YAHWEH made them male and female. (*Gen. 1:27*)

7 "Because of this, a man shall leave his father and mother and shall be joined to his wife,

8 and the two shall be one flesh;" so that they no longer are two, but one flesh. (*Gen. 2:24)*

9 Therefore, what YAHWEH has yoked together, man cannot put apart.

10 And again, in the house His disciples asked Him about the same.

11 And He said to them, Whoever divorces his wife and marries another commits adultery against her.

12 And if a woman divorces her husband and marries another, she commits adultery[2].

13 And they brought children to Him, that He might touch them. But

[1] See note on Mathew 5:13

the disciples rebuked those carrying *them*.
14 And Yahshua saw it and was offended and He said to them, Allow the children to come to me and do not hinder them. For because of those who are as these, the Kingdom of YAHWEH exists.
15 Truly I say to you, Whoever does not receive the kingdom of YAHWEH as a child will not enter into it, never[1].
16 And having taken them in *His* arms, laying hands on them, He blessed them.
17 And He having gone out into *the* highway, running up and kneeling down to Him, one questioned Him, Good Teacher, what shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?
18 But Yahshua said to him, Why do you call Me good? No one is good except One, YAHWEH.
19 You know the commandments: Do not commit adultery, do not commit murder, do not steal, do not bear false witness, do not defraud, honor your father and mother. (*Ex. 20:12-16)*
20 And answering, he said to Him, Teacher, I observed all these from my youth.
21 And looking at him, Yahshua loved him, and said to him, One *thing* is lacking to you. Go, sell what things you have, and give to the poor. And you will have treasure in Heaven. And come follow Me, taking up the torture stake.
22 But being sad at the Word, he went away grieving; for he had many possessions.
23 And having looked around, Yahshua said to His disciples, How hardly those having riches will enter into the kingdom of YAHWEH!
24 And the disciples were astonished at His Words. And answering again, Yahshua said to them, Children, how hard it is for those trusting on riches to enter into the kingdom of YAHWEH!
25 It is easier *for* a heavy rope to pass through the eye of the needle, than *for* a rich one to enter into the kingdom of YAHWEH.
26 And they were all the more wondering and saying among themselves, Who is able to gain life?
27 But looking at them, Yahshua said, From men *it is* impossible, but not from YAHWEH. For all things are possible from YAHWEH.
28 And Peter began to say to Him, Behold, we left all and followed You.
29 But answering, Yahshua said, Truly I say to you, There is no one who forsook house, or brothers, or sisters, or father, or mother, or wife, or children, or lands, for My sake and the good news,
30 that will not receive a hundred-fold now in this time, houses and brothers and sisters and mothers and children, and lands, with persecutions; and in the coming age, eternal life.
31 But many first shall be last, and the last *shall be* first.
32 And they were in the highway, going up to Jerusalem. And Yahshua was going before them, and following they were astonished and were afraid. And taking the Twelve again, He began to tell them the things about to happen to Him:
33 Behold, we are going up to Jerusalem. And the Son of Man will be betrayed to the chief priests and to the

---

2 Nowhere in scripture does YHWH condone divorce and Yahshua clearly states that if one leaves their covenant spouse and marries another it is considered adultery and if someone marries a divorced person both parties are committing adultery.

1 Children are innocent, teachable, forgiving, believing, and have pureness of heart.

scribes. And they will condemn Him to death and will betray Him to the gentiles.

34 And they will mock Him and will flog Him and will spit at Him, and will kill Him. And on the third day He will rise again.

35 And coming up to Him, Jacob and John, the sons of Zebedee, said, Teacher, we desire that whatever we may ask You would do for us.

36 And He said to them, What do you desire for Me to do for you?

37 And they said to Him, Give us that we may sit one off *the* right of You and one off *the* left of You in Your glory.

38 But Yahshua said to them, You do not know what you ask. Are you able to drink the cup which I drink, and to be baptized *with* the baptism I am baptized *with*?

39 And they said to Him, We are able. But Yahshua said to them, Indeed you will drink the cup which I drink, and you will be baptized *with* the baptism *with* which I am baptized.

40 But to sit off My right and off My left is not Mine to give, but for whom it has been prepared.

41 And hearing, the ten began murmuring about Jacob and John.

42 But having called them near, Yahshua said to them, You know that those who are reckoned as chiefs of nations are their masters and their great men are in authority over them.

43 But it shall not be so among you, but whoever desires to become great among you shall be your servant.

44 And whoever of you desires to become first, *he* shall be slave of all.

45 For even the Son of Man did not come to be served, but to serve, and to give His life *as* a ransom for the sake of many.

46 And they came into Jericho. And He and His disciples and a large crowd having gone out from Jericho, a son of Timaeus, Bartimaeus the blind sat beside the highway begging.

47 And hearing that it was Yahshua the Nazarene, he began to cry out and to say, Son of David, Yahshua, have mercy on me!

48 And many warned him that he be quiet. But he much more cried out, Son of David, have mercy on me!

49 And standing still, Yahshua said for him to be called. And they called the blind *one*, saying to him, have courage, rise up, He calls you.

50 And the blind man, throwing away his garment[1], rising up, he came to Yahshua.

51 And answering, Yahshua said to him, What do you desire I should do to you? And the blind *one* said to Him, My Rabboni that I may see again.

52 And Yahshua said to him, Go, your faith has healed you. And instantly he saw again, and followed Yahshua in the highway.

Chapter 11

1 And when they drew near to Jerusalem, to Bethphage[2]and Bethany, toward the Mount of Olives, He sent two of His disciples,

2 and said to them, Go to that village that is opposite to us, and at once when you enter it you will find a colt that is tied up which no man has ridden. Loose it and bring it to me.

3 And if anyone should say to you, Why are you doing this? say to him that Our Master requires it. And immediately he will send him here.

4 And they departed and found the colt tied at the door outside, by the crossway; and they untied it.

[1] Throwing away his beggar's coat before being healed was a true act of faith as he was not legally able to beg without it.

[2] Bethphage means '*House of Figs'*

5 And some of those standing there
said to them, What are you doing,
untying the colt?
6 And they said to them as Yahshua
commanded, and they let them go.
7 And they led the colt to Yahshua.
And they threw their garments on it,
and He sat on it.
8 And many spread their garments
on the highway, and others were
cutting branches from the trees and
were spreading *them* on the highway.
9 And those going before, and those
following after, were crying out,
saying, Hosanna! "Blessed *is* the *One*
coming in *the* name of YAHWEH!"
(*Psa. 118:26*)
10 Blessed *is* the coming kingdom of
our father David! Hosanna in the
highest!
11 And Yahshua entered into
Jerusalem, and into the sanctuary.
And having looked around at all
things, the hour already being late, He
went out to Bethany with the Twelve.
12 And on the morrow, they going
out from Bethany, He hungered.
13 And He saw a certain fig tree from
afar that had leaves on it. And He
came towards it to see if he could find
anything on it. And when He arrived,
He did not find anything on it except
leaves. For the time of figs had not yet
arrived.
14 And answering, Yahshua said to
it, Let no one eat fruit of you any more
forever. And His disciples heard.
15 And they came to Jerusalem. And
entering into the sanctuary, Yahshua
began to throw out those selling and
buying in the sanctuary; also He
overturned the tables of the money
changers and the seats of those selling
the doves.
16 And *He* did not allow any to carry
possessions through the sanctuary.
17 And *He* taught, saying to them,
Has it not been written, "My house
shall be called a house of prayer for all
the nations." "But you have made it a
den of robbers?" (*Isa. 56:7; Jer. 7:11*)
18 And the scribes and the chief
priests heard. And they sought how
they might destroy Him, for they
feared Him, because all the crowd was
astonished at His doctrine.
19 And when evening came, He went
outside the city.
20 And passing along early, they saw
the fig tree withered from *the* roots.
21 And remembering, Simon Peter
said to Him, Rabbi, behold, the fig tree
which You cursed has withered.
22 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, Let the faith of YAHWEH be in
you.
23 For truly I say to you, that he who
says to this mountain, "Be lifted up
and fall into the sea." And does not
become divided in his heart but
believes that it will happen. That thing
which he said it will happen.
24 Therefore I say to you, All things,
whatever you ask, praying, believe that
you will receive, and it will be to you.
25 And when you stand praying, if
you have anything against anyone,
forgive *it*, so that your Father in
Heaven may also forgive your
transgressions.
26 But if you do not forgive, neither
will your Father in Heaven forgive
your deviations.
27 And they come again to
Jerusalem. And as He was walking in
the sanctuary, the chief priests and the
scribes and the elders came to Him.
28 And they said to Him, By what
authority do You do these things? And
who gave You this authority that You
do these things?
29 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, I will also ask you one thing,
and answer Me, and I will tell you by
what authority I do these things:
30 The baptism of John, From

where is it from, heaven or from the sons of man[1]? Tell me!
31 And they argued to themselves, saying, If we say, From Heaven, He will say, Why then did you not believe him?
32 But if we say, From men, they feared the people. For all held that John really was a prophet.
33 And answering, they said to Yahshua, We do not know. And answering, Yahshua said to them, Neither do I tell you by what authority I do these things.

Chapter 12

1 And He began to speak to them in parables: "A man planted a vineyard, and set a fence around *it*, and dug a wine vat, and built a tower." And *He* rented it to vinedressers and went away. (*Isa. 5:1, 2)*
2 And at the season, He sent a slave to the vinedressers, that he might receive from the vinedressers the fruit of the vineyard.
3 But taking him, they beat *him*, and sent *him* away empty.
4 And again He sent to them another slave; stoning that one, they struck *him* in the head and sent *him* away, insulting him.
5 And again, He sent another, and they killed that one; also many others, indeed beating these, and killing these.
6 And afterwards He had one beloved son, and He sent Him to them at the end. For He said, "Perhaps they might be ashamed in front of My Son.
7 But these vinedressers said to themselves, This is the heir; come, let us kill Him and the inheritance will be ours.
8 And taking *Him*, they killed Him and threw *Him* outside the vineyard.
9 What, then, will the Master of the vineyard do? He will come and will destroy the vinedressers and will give the vineyard to others.
10 Have you not even read this Scripture: "*The* Stone which the builders rejected, this One came to be Head of *the* Corner;
11 this came about from YAHWEH, and it is marvelous in our eyes?" (*Psa. 118:22, 23)*
12 And they sought to seize Him, yet feared the crowd. For they knew that He spoke the parable against them. And leaving Him, they went away.
13 And they sent some of the Pharisees and of the Herodians to Him, that they might catch Him in a word.
14 And they came and asked him. Teacher, we realize that you are true, and do not show favoritism to men, for you do not look on the faces of the sons of men, rather in truth you teach the way of Elohim. Is it lawful to give the head tax to Caesar or not? Should we give or not?
15 But knowing their trickery, He said to them, Why do you tempt Me? Bring Me a denarius that I may see.
16 And they brought *one*. And He said to them, Whose image and inscription is this? And they said to Him, Caesar's.
17 And answering, Yahshua said to them, Give back the things of Caesar to Caesar, and the things of Elohim to Elohim. And they marveled at Him[2].
18 And Sadducees came to Him, who say there is no resurrection. And they questioned Him, saying,
19 Teacher, Moses wrote for us that

[1] John was actually in line to be high priest but left his position for the wilderness, whereas some of the priests at that time were not even Levites, but bought into the priesthood. So if they condemned John, they feared the people would maul them for their hypocrisy.

[2] See note on Math 22:21

if a brother of anyone should die and
leave behind a wife, and leave no
children, that his brother should take
his wife and raise up seed to his
brother. (*Deut. 25:5)*
20 Then there were seven brothers.
And the first took a wife, and dying, *he*
left no seed.
21 And the second took her, and
died, and neither did he leave seed;
and the third likewise.
22 And all seven took her and left no
seed. Last of all, the woman also died.
23 Then in the resurrection, when
they rise again, of which of them will
she be the wife? For the seven had her
as wife.
24 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, Do you not err because of this,
not knowing the Scriptures nor the
power of YAHWEH?
25 For when they rise again from *the*
dead, they neither marry nor are given
in marriage, but are as the angels in
Heaven.
26 But concerning the dead, that
they are raised, have you not read in
the book of Moses, as YAHWEH
spoke to him at the Bush, saying, "I am
the Elohim of Abraham, and the
Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of
Jacob?" (*Ex. 3:6)*
27 He is not the Elohim of *the* dead,
but Elohim of *the* living. Therefore,
you greatly err.
28 And coming up, one of the
scribes, hearing them arguing,
knowing that He answered them well,
he questioned Him, What is *the* first
commandment of all?
29 And Yahshua answered him, The
first of all the commandments *is*:
"Hear Israel. YAHWEH our Elohim is
YAHWEH echad *(united).*
30 and you shall love YAHWEH
your Elohim with all your heart, and
with all your soul and with all your
mind, and with all your strength." This
is the first commandment. (*Deut. 6:4,
5)*
31 And *the* second *is* like this, "You
shall love your neighbor as yourself."
There is not another commandment
greater than these. (*Lev. 19:18)*
32 And the scribe said to Him, You
say well, Teacher. You have spoken
according to truth, "that YAHWEH is
echad, and there is no other besides
Him;" (*Deut. 4:35)*
33 "and to love Him from all the
heart, and from all the understanding,
and from all the soul, and from all the
strength; and to love one's neighbor as
oneself" is more than all the burnt
offerings and the sacrifices. (*Lev.
19:18)*
34 And seeing that he answered
intelligently, Yahshua said to him, You
are not far from the kingdom of
YAHWEH. And no one dared to
question Him any more.
35 And teaching in the sanctuary,
answering, Yahshua said, How do the
scribes say that Messiah is the son of
David?
36 For David himself said by the
Holy Spirit, "YAHWEH said to my
Adonai, Sit off My right until I place
Your enemies as a footstool under
Your feet." *(Psa. 110:1)*
37 Then David himself calls Him
Adonai. And from where is He his
son? And the large crowd heard Him
gladly.
38 And He said to them in His
teaching, Beware of the scribes, those
desiring to walk about in long robes,
and greetings in the markets,
39 and chief seats in the synagogues,
and chief places in the banquets,
40 those devouring the houses of
widows, and for a pretense praying at
length. These will receive more
abundant judgment.
41 And sitting down opposite the
treasury, Yahshua watched how the

crowd threw copper coins into the treasury. And many rich ones threw in much.
42 And coming, one poor widow threw in two lepta (which is a kodrantes).
43 And having called His disciples near, He said to them, Truly I say to you that this poor widow has thrown *in* more than all of those casting into the treasury.
44 For all of them gave from their abundance, but this one cast in from her need. She had cast in everything that she had, all her goods!

Chapter 13

1 And as He was going out of the sanctuary, one of His disciples said to Him, Teacher, Behold! What kind of stones and what kind of buildings!
2 And answering, Yahshua said to him, Do you see these great buildings? Not one stone shall be left upon a stone which shall not be thrown down.
3 And *as* He *was* sitting in the Mount of Olives opposite the sanctuary, Peter and Jacob and John and Andrew questioned Him privately:
4 Tell us when these things will happen? and what is the sign when all these things are near to being fulfilled?
5 And answering, Yahshua began to say to them, Be careful that no one deceives you.
6 For many will come in My name, saying, I AM! And they will lead many astray.
7 But when you hear *of* wars and rumors of revolutions, do not be disturbed, for it must occur; but the end *is* not yet.
8 For nation will be raised against nation, and kingdom against kingdom. And there shall be earthquakes in many places. And there shall be famines and uprisings. These things *are* the beginnings of sorrows.
9 But you yourselves be careful, for they will deliver you up to Sanhedrin's and to synagogues. You will be scourged, and you will be led before governors and kings for My sake, for a testimony to them.
10 But first it is necessary that my Hope[1] be published among all nations.
11 But whenever they lead *you* away, delivering *you*, do not worry beforehand, what you should say, nor think about it. But whatever may be given to you in that hour, speak that. For you are not those speaking, but the Holy Spirit.
12 And a brother will deliver up a brother to death, and a father the child. And children will rise up on parents and will put them to death.
13 And you will be hated by all on account of My name. But the *one* who endures to the end, that *one* will be kept safe.
14 And when you see that which was spoken of by Daniel the prophet, the sign of unclean desolation that was standing where it should not be, then let him who reads understand, then let those in Judea flee into the mountains. (*Dan. 11:31; 12:11)*
15 And he on the housetop, let him not go down into the house, nor go in to take a thing out of his house.
16 And the one in the field, let him not return to the things behind to take his garment.
17 But woe to those pregnant, and to those nursing in those days!
18 And pray that your flight will not be in winter[2];
19 for there will be affliction *in* those days, such as has not been the like

---
1 The word in Aramaic used for the Good News is "*Sevartha*" which means hope.
2 This shows that winters will be more severe in the end time.

from *the* beginning of creation which
Elohim created until now, and never
will be.
20 And if YAHWEH had not
shortened the days, not any flesh
would live; but because of the elect
whom He chose, He has shortened the
days.
21 And then if anyone says to you,
Behold, here *is* the Messiah! Or,
Behold, there! You shall not believe.
22 For false Messiahs and false
prophets will be raised, and they will
give signs and wonders in order to
lead astray, if possible, even the elect.
23 But you be careful. Behold, I have
told you everything beforehand.
24 But in those days, after that
suffering, the sun will be darkened,
and the moon will not give her light[1];
25 and the stars of the heaven will be
falling, and the powers in the heavens
will be shaken.
26 And then they will see the Son of
Man coming in clouds with much
power and glory.
27 And then He will send His angels
and will gather His elect from the four
winds, from *the* beginning of the earth
up to *the* beginning of heaven.
28 And from the fig tree learn the
parable: When its branch becomes
tender and puts out leaves, you know
the summer is near.
29 So you also, when you see these
things happening, know that it is near,
at *the* door.
30 Truly I say to you, Not at all will
this generation pass away until all
these things occur.
31 The heaven and the earth will
pass away, but My Words will not pass
away, never!
32 But concerning that day and the
hour, no one knows, not the angels,
those in Heaven, nor the Son, except
the Father[2].
33 Watch! Be alert, and pray. For
you do not know when is the time.
34 As a man going away, leaving his
house, and giving his slaves authority,
and to each his work and he
commanded the doorkeeper, that he
be vigilant,
35 then you watch, for you do not
know when the Master of the house is
coming, *at* evening, or at midnight, or
at cock crowing, or morning;
36 so that he may not come suddenly
and find you sleeping.
37 And what I say to you, I say to all.
Watch!

Chapter 14

1 And after two days was the
Passover of unleavened bread, and the
chief priests and scribes were seeking
with deception how they might seize
him and kill him.
2 But they said, Not during the
Feast, lest there will be a tumult of the
people.
3 And He being in Bethany in the
house of Simon the potter, as He
reclined, a woman came, having an
alabaster vial of pure, costly ointment
of nard. And breaking the alabaster
vial, she poured *it* down His head.
4 And some were being offended
within themselves, and saying, To
what has this waste of the ointment
occurred?
5 For this could be sold *for* over
three hundred denarii, and to be given
to the poor. And they were angry with
her.
6 But Yahshua said, Let her alone.
Why do you cause her troubles? She
worked a good work toward Me.
7 For you have the poor with you

[1] Indicating some form of an eclipse

[2] This verse clearly shows that Yahshua and the Father are two separate beings.

always, and when you wish, you can do well *toward* them. But you do not have Me always.
8 What this one held, she did. She took beforehand to anoint My body for the burial.
9 Truly I say to you, Wherever this good news is proclaimed in all the world, what this *one* did will also be spoken of for a memorial of her.
10 And Judas Iscariot, one of the Twelve, went away to the chief priests, that he might betray Him to them.
11 And hearing, they rejoiced and promised to give him silver. And he sought how he might opportunely betray Him.
12 And on the first day of the Unleavened *Bread*, when they killed the Passover, His disciples said to Him, Where do You desire *that* going we may prepare that You may eat the Passover?
13 And He sent two of His disciples, and said to them, Go into the city. And you will meet a man carrying a vessel of water. Follow him[1].
14 And wherever he goes in, say to the housemaster, The Master says, Where is the guest room where I may eat the Passover with My disciples?
15 And behold he will show you a large upper room that is furnished. Make ready and prepare that place for us.
16 And His disciples went out and came into the city and found *it* as He told them. And they prepared the Passover.
17 And evening having come, He came with the Twelve.
18 And as they were reclining and eating, Yahshua said, Truly I say to you, One of you will betray Me, the *one* eating with Me.
19 And they began to be grieved, and to say to Him one by one, Not at all I, *is it*? And another, Not at all I, *is it*?
20 But answering, He said to them, *It is* one from the Twelve, the *one* dipping in the dish with Me.
21 Truly the Son of Man goes as it has been written concerning Him, but woe to that man through whom the Son of Man is betrayed! It were good for him if that man had never been born.
22 And *as* they *were* eating, Yahshua took bread, and blessed it and broke and gave to them. And He said, Take, eat, this is My body.
23 And taking the cup, giving thanks, He gave to them. And they all drank out of it.
24 And He said to them, This is My blood, that of the New Covenant, which is poured out concerning many.
25 I say truly to you that I will not drink from the fruit of the vine again until that day in which I will drink it anew in the Kingdom of YAHWEH.
26 And singing a hymn, they went to the Mount of Olives.
27 And Yahshua said to them, All of you will be made to stumble at me in this night. For it is written that, "I will strike the shepherd and His lambs will be scattered." *(Zech. 13:7)*
28 But after My rising up, I will go before you into Galilee.
29 But Peter said to Him, Even if all of them are being stumbled, I will not stumble.
30 And Yahshua said to him, Truly I say to you that today, in this night, before a cock crows twice, you will deny Me three times.
31 But he said more fervently, If *I* must die with You, I will not deny You,

[1] Since women were the bearers of water pots this could only be in the Essene quarter, where men carried pots due to the restriction of women being in that area, due to them being priests. In Jerusalem today, the traditional spot of the Last Supper room is in the Essene quarter.

my Master, never! And all said likewise.
32 And they came to a place which *was* named Gethsemane[1]. And He said to His disciples, Sit here while I pray.
33 And He took along Peter and Jacob and John with Him. And He began to be much amazed and to be deeply troubled.
34 And he said to them, Grievous, even unto death is this situation to my soul. Remain here and be alert.
35 And going forward a little, He fell on the ground and prayed that if it were possible, the hour might pass from Him.
36 And He said, Abba, Father, all things *are* possible to You; take this cup from Me. Yet not what I will, but what You *will*.
37 And He came and found them sleeping. And *He* said to Peter, Simon, do you sleep? Were you not strong enough to watch one hour?
38 Watch and pray, that you may not enter into temptation. The spirit truly *is* willing, but the flesh *is* weak.
39 And going away again, He prayed, saying the same thing.
40 And returning, He found them sleeping again, for their eyes were heavy. And they did not know what to answer Him.
41 And He came a third time, and said to them, Sleep on now, and rest. It is enough. The hour has come. Behold, the Son of Man is betrayed into the hands of sinners.
42 Rise up, let us go. Behold, the *one* betraying Me has drawn near.
43 And at once, He yet speaking, Judas comes up, being one of the Twelve. And with him *was* a great crowd with swords and clubs, from the chief priests and the scribes and the elders.
44 And the *one* traitor, betraying Him had given them a sign, saying, Whomever I kiss, *it* is He; seize Him and lead *Him* away safely.
45 And coming, at once drawing near to Him, he said, Rabbi, Rabbi! And *he* kissed Him.
46 And they laid their hands on Him and seized Him.
47 But a certain one of those standing by, drawing a sword, struck the slave of the high priest and took off his ear.
48 And answering, Yahshua said to them, Have you come out with swords and clubs to take Me, as against a robber?
49 I was with you daily teaching in the sanctuary, and you did not seize Me. But *it is* that the Scriptures may be fulfilled.
50 And leaving Him, all fled.
51 And one, a certain young man, was following Him, having thrown a linen cloth about *his* naked *body*. And the young men seized him.
52 But forsaking the linen cloth, he fled from them naked.
53 And they led Yahshua away to Caiaphas, the high priest. And all the chief priests and the elders and the scribes came together to him.
54 And Peter followed Him from a distance, to the inside of the courtyard of the high priest. And he was sitting with the under-officers, also warming himself toward the light.
55 And the chief priests and the whole Sanhedrin sought testimony against Yahshua, to put Him to death. And *they* found none.
56 For many falsely testified against Him, but the testimonies were not identical.
57 And standing up, some falsely testified against Him, saying,
58 We heard Him saying, I will throw down this sanctuary made with

---

[1] Gethsemane means olive oil press

hands, and in three days I will build
another not made with hands.
59 And neither in this was their
testimony identical.
60 And standing in the middle, the
high priest questioned Yahshua,
saying, Do you not answer? Nothing?
What *do* these testify against you?
61 But He was silent and answered
nothing. Again the high priest
questioned Him, and said to Him, Are
you the Messiah, the Son of the
Blessed?
62 And Yahshua said, **I AM**! And
you will see the Son of Man sitting off
the right *hand* of power, and coming
with the clouds of the heaven. (*Psa.
110:1; Dan. 7:13)*
63 And tearing his garments, the
high priest said, Why do we still have
need of witnesses?
64 You heard the blasphemy. What
does it seem to you? And all of them
judged that He deserved death.
65 And some began to spit at Him,
and to cover His face, and to beat Him
with the fist, and to say to Him,
Prophesy! And the under-officers
struck Him with slaps.
66 And Peter being in the court
below, one of the high priest's female
slaves comes.
67 And seeing Peter warming
himself, looking at him, she said, And
you were with Yahshua the Nazarene.
68 But he denied, saying, I do not
know nor understand what you say.
And he went out into the forecourt.
And a cock crowed.
69 And seeing him again, the female
slave began to say to those standing
by, This *one* is of them.
70 And again he denied. And after a
little, those standing by again said to
Peter, Truly you are from them, for
you are both a Galilean and your
speech agrees.
71 But he began to curse and to
swear, I do not know this man of
whom you speak.
72 And a second time a cock crowed.
And Peter remembered the word
Yahshua said to him, Before a cock
crows twice, you will deny Me three
times. And thinking on *it*, he wept.

Chapter 15

1 And immediately in the morning,
the chief priests with the elders and
scribes and all the Sanhedrin having
made a council, and having bound
Yahshua, *they* led *Him* away and
delivered *Him* to Pilate.
2 And Pilate questioned Him, Are
you the king of the Jews? And
answering, He said to him, You have
said it.
3 And the chief priests urgently
accused Him *of* many things. But He
answered nothing.
4 But Pilate again questioned Him,
saying, Do You answer nothing?
Behold, how many things they testify
against You.
5 But Yahshua answered no more,
nothing, so as *for* Pilate to marvel.
6 And at a feast, he released to them
one prisoner, whomever they asked.
7 And there was *one* called Barabbas,
having been bound with the
insurgents, who in the insurrection
had committed murder.
8 And crying aloud, the crowd began
to beg *him to do* as he always did to
them.
9 But Pilate answered them, saying,
Do you desire I should release to you
the king of the Jews?
10 For he knew that the chief priests
had delivered Him up through envy.
11 But the chief priests stirred up the
crowd, that rather he should release
Barabbas to them.
12 But answering again, Pilate said
to them, What then do you desire I do

to *him* whom you call king of the
Jews?
13 And again they cried out, Crucify
Him!
14 But Pilate said to them, For what
evil did He do? But they much more
cried out, Crucify Him!
15 And having decided to do the
easiest *to* the crowd, Pilate released
Bar-Abba to them. And having flogged
Him, he delivered up Yahshua, that He
might be crucified.
16 And the soldiers led Him away
inside the court, which is *the*
praetorium. And they called together
all the cohort.
17 And they put purple on Him, and
they plaited and placed a crown of
thorns on Him.
18 And they began to salute Him,
Hail, king of the Jews!
19 And they struck His head with a
reed, and spat at Him. And placing the
knees, *they* bowed to Him.
20 And when they had mocked Him,
they took the purple off Him, and put
His own garments on Him. And they
led Him out, that they might crucify
Him.
21 And they compelled one passing
by, Simon, a Cyrenian, coming from a
field, the father of Alexander and
Rufus, that he might carry His cross
beam.
22 And they brought Him to
Golgotha Place, which is, being
translated, Place of a Skull *(head)*.
23 And they gave Him wine spiced
with myrrh to drink. But He did not
take *it*.
24 And having crucified Him, they
divided His garments, casting a lot on
them, who and what *each* should take.
(*Psa. 22:18)*
25 And it was *the* third hour and
they crucified Him.
26 And the inscription of His charge
was written over *Him*, THE KING OF
THE YEHUDIM.
27 And they crucified two robbers
with Him, one off *the* right, and one
off *the* left of Him.
28 And the Scripture was fulfilled
which says, "He was numbered with
the lawless." (*Isa. 53:12)*
29 And also those who were passing
by were blaspheming against Him and
nodding their heads and saying, "He
will tear down the temple and build it
in three days. Indeed!
30 Save Yourself and come down
from the torture stake.
31 And also the chief priests and the
scribes mocking to one another said
likewise, He saved others; He is not
able to save Himself.
32 The Messiah, the king of Israel?
Let Him now come down from the
torture stake that we may see and
believe. And the ones crucified with
Him defamed Him.
33 And *it* being *the* sixth hour,
darkness came over all the land until
the ninth hour.
34 And at the ninth hour Yahshua
cried with a loud voice, saying, Eloi,
Eloi, lama sabachthani? (Which being
translated is, "My El, My El, why did
You honor Me to be here?" (*Psa. 22:1)*
35 And hearing, some of those
standing by said, Behold, He calls
Elijah.
36 And one running up, and filling a
sponge with "vinegar," and putting *it*
on a reed, "gave Him to drink." But
they said, Leave alone, let us see if
Elijah comes to take Him down. (*Psa.
69:21)*
37 And letting out a great cry,
Yahshua died.
38 And the veil of the Holy Place was
torn into two, from top to bottom.
39 And standing off across from
Him, seeing that *He* had cried out so,

and He died, the centurion said, Truly, this Man was Son of Elohim.
40 And also women were watching from a distance, among whom also was Mariam Magdalene; also Mariam the mother of Jacob the less, and of Hosea, and Salome
41 who also followed Him and ministered to Him when He was in Galilee; and many *other* women who came up to Jerusalem with Him.
42 And it becoming late afternoon already, since it was *the* preparation, that is, *the* day before a Sabbath,
43 Joseph of Arimathea came, an honorable councilor, who himself was also waiting for the kingdom of YAHWEH. *And* taking courage, he went in to Pilate and begged the body of Yahshua.
44 And Pilate marveled if He had already died. And calling the centurion near, he asked him if He died already.
45 And knowing from the centurion, he granted the body to Joseph.
46 And having bought a linen cloth, and having taken Him down, he wrapped *Him* in the linen, and laid Him in a tomb which was cut out of rock. And *he* rolled a stone against the mouth of the tomb.
47 And Mariam Magdalene, and Mariam of Hosea, saw where He was laid.

Chapter 16

1 And the Sabbath having passed, Mariam Magdalene and Mariam the *mother* of Jacob and Salome, bought spices, so that coming they might anoint Him.
2 And at early morning on the first of the week, they came to the cemetery as the sun was rising.
3 And they said to themselves, Who will roll away the stone from the door of the tomb for us?
4 And looking up, they saw that the stone had been rolled back; for it was very large.
5 And having entered into the tomb, they saw a young man sitting on the right, having been clothed *in* a white robe. And they were much amazed.
6 But he said to them, Do not be amazed. You seek Yahshua the Nazarene who has been crucified. He was raised. He is not here. See the place where they put Him?
7 But go, say to the disciples and to Peter, He goes before you into Galilee. You will see Him there, even as He told you.
8 And going out quickly, they fled from the tomb. And trembling and amazement took hold of them. And they told no one, not a thing, for they were afraid.
9 And having risen and now early on the first of the Sabbaths[1]. He first appeared to Mariam Magdalene, from whom He had cast out seven demons.
10 Going, that *one* reported to those having been with Him, mourning and weeping.
11 And those having heard that He lives, and was seen by her, they did not believe.
12 And after these things, He was revealed in a different form to two of them walking *and* going into the country.
13 And going, those reported to the rest; not even did they believe those.
14 And finally He appeared to the eleven while they were reclining, and He reviled the lack of their faith and the hardness of their hearts, since those who had seen Him, that He had risen, they did not believe.
15 And He said to them, Going into

---
1 This was the first day of the week and the day of firstfruits or resurrection day when they started the 7 week count to Shavuot.

all the world, preach the good news to
all the creation.
16 The *one* believing and being
baptized will be saved. And the *one*
not believing will be condemned.
17 And *miraculous* signs will follow
to those believing these things: they
will cast out demons in My name; they
will speak new languages;
18 they will take up snakes; and if
they drink anything deadly, it will in
no way hurt them; they will lay hands
on *the* sick, and they will be healed.
19 Then indeed, after speaking to
them, the Master Yahshua was taken
up into Heaven, and sat off *the* right of
YAHWEH. (*Psa. 110:1)*
20 And they went out and preached
in all places. And our Master was
helping them and establishing their
words by the signs that they were
doing.

Book of Luke

Chapter 1

1 Since many took in hand to draw up an account concerning the matters having been borne out among us,
2 as those from the beginning delivered to us, becoming eye-witnesses and ministers of the Word.
3 It seemed good also to me, having traced out all things accurately from the first, to write in order to you, most excellent Theophilus
4 that you may know the certainty concerning the words which you were taught.
5 In the days of Herod the king of Judea, there was a certain priest named Zacharias, of the daily course of Abijah[1]. And his wife was of the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (*1 Chron 24:10)*
6 And they were both righteous before Elohim, walking blameless in all the commandments and ordinances of YAHWEH.
7 And no child was born to them, because Elizabeth was barren. And both were advanced in their days.
8 And it happened in his serving as priest in the order of his course before Elohim,
9 according to the custom of the priests, entering into the Holy Place of YAHWEH, it was Zachariahs' lot to burn incense.
10 And all the multitude of the people was praying outside at the hour of incense.
11 And a cherub of YAHWEH appeared to him, standing on the right of the altar of incense.
12 And seeing this, Zachariah was troubled, and fear fell on him.
13 But the cherub of YAHWEH said to him, Do not fear, Zachariah, because your prayer was heard, and your wife Elizabeth will bear a son to you, and you shall call his name Yokhannan.
14 And he will be joy and exultation to you, and many will rejoice over his birth.
15 For he shall be great in the eyes of YAHWEH, and he shall not drink wine or strong drink. And he will be filled of the Holy Spirit, even from his mother's womb.
16 And he will turn many of the sons of Israel to YAHWEH their Elohim.
17 And he will go out before Him in the spirit and power of Elijah "to turn the hearts of fathers to their children," and disobedient ones to the knowledge of the just, to make ready a people having been prepared for YAHWEH. *(Mal. 4:5, 6)*
18 And Zacharias said to the cherub, By what shall I know this? For I am old and my wife is advanced in her days.
19 And answering, the cherub said to him, I am Gabriel, who stands before YAHWEH, and I was sent to speak to you and to announce to you the good news of these things. *(Rev 11:4)*
20 And behold, you shall be silent and not able to speak until the day these things take place, because you did not believe my words which shall be fulfilled in their season.
21 And the people were expecting Zachariah, and they wondered at his delay in the sanctuary.
22 But coming out, he was not able

[1] 1 Chron 23:13 shows that the course of Abijah worked toward the later end of June. If Zachariah returned and Elisabeth got pregnant in early July, then Miriam the mother of Yahshua would have been impregnated 6 months later or early January, making Yahshua's birth 9 months later at the feast of Trumpets in 3BC. December 25 as the birth of Yahshua only came much later in 325 AD by the pagan emperor Constantine in honor of the winter solstice pagan festival.

to speak to them, and they recognized
that he had seen a vision in the
sanctuary. And he was making signs to
them and continued dumb.
23 And it happened when the days of
his service were fulfilled, he went away
to his house.
24 And after these days his wife
Elizabeth conceived. And she hid
herself five months, saying,
25 So has YAHWEH done to me in
the days in which He looked on me to
take away my reproach among men.
26 And in the sixth month, the
cherub Gabriel was sent from the
presence of Elohim to Galilee to the
city whose name is Nazareth,
27 to a virgin who had been
betrothed to a man whose name was
Joseph, of the house of David and the
virgin's name was Mariam.
28 And entering, the cherub said to
her, Peace to you full of grace! Our
Adonai is with you. You are blessed
among women!
29 And seeing this, she was
disturbed at his word, and considered
what kind of greeting this might be.
30 And the cherub said to her, Do
not fear, Mariam, for you have found
grace from YAHWEH.
31 For behold you will receive
conception and bear a son and you will
call His name Yahshua.
32 This One will be great and will be
called Son of the Most High. And
YAHWEH Elohim will give Him the
throne of His father David.
33 And He will reign over the house
of Jacob to the ages, and of His
kingdom there will be no end.
34 But Mariam said to the cherub,
How will this be since I do not know a
man?
35 And the cherub answered and
said to her, The Holy Spirit will come
and the power of the Highest will rest
upon you. Because of this, He who is
to be born of you is holy and will be
called the Son of YAHWEH.
36 And behold, your kinswoman
Elizabeth! She also conceived a son in
her old age, and this is the sixth month
to her who was called barren;
37 for nothing shall be impossible
with YAHWEH.
38 Mariam said, Behold I am the
handmaid of YAHWEH. Let it be to
me according to your word! And the
cherub departed from her presence.
39 And rising up in these days,
Mariam went into the hill country with
haste to a city of Judah.
40 And she entered into the house of
Zacharias and greeted Elizabeth.
41 And it happened, as Elizabeth
heard Mariam's greeting, the babe in
her womb leaped, and Elizabeth was
filled of the Holy Spirit.
42 And she cried out with a loud
voice and said, You are being blessed
among women and blessed is the fruit
of your womb!
43 And why is this to me that the
mother of my Adonai comes to me?
44 For behold, as the sound of your
greeting came to my ears, the babe in
my womb leaped in exultation.
45 And blessed is she believing,
because there will be a fulfillment to
the things spoken to her from
YAHWEH.
46 And Mariam said, My soul
magnifies YAHWEH,
47 and my spirit exulted in Elohim
My Savior.
48 Because He has looked at the
meekness of His handmaid for behold
from now on He will give me blessings
to all generations. *(1 Sam. 1:11)*
49 Because He has done great things
for me, He who is mighty and Holy is
His Name.
50 And His mercy is to generations
of generations to those fearing Him.
(Psa. 103:17)

51 He performed mightily with His arm; He scattered proud ones in the thought of their heart.
52 He put down powerful ones from thrones, and exalted lowly ones.
53 He filled the hungry with good things, and He sent the rich away empty.
54 He helped His servant Israel in order to remember mercy,
55 even as He spoke to our fathers, to Abraham, and to his seed to the age.
56 And Mariam remained with her about three months, and returned to her house.
57 And the time was fulfilled to Elizabeth for her to bear, and she bore a son.
58 And the neighbors and her relatives heard that Elohim magnified His mercy with her, and they rejoiced with her.
59 And it happened on the eighth day, they came to circumcise the child and were calling it by his father's name, Zachariah.
60 And his mother answered, saying, Not so, but he shall be called Yochanan[1].
61 And they said to her, No one is among your kindred who is called by this name.
62 And they signaled to his father, what he might desire him to be called.
63 And asking for a writing tablet, he wrote, saying, Yochanan is his name. And all marveled.
64 And instantly his mouth was opened and his tongue loosed, and he spoke, blessing Elohim.
65 And fear came on all those living around them. And in all the hill country of Judea all these things were talked about.
66 And all who heard laid them up in their hearts, saying, What then will this child be? And the hand of YAHWEH was with him.
67 And his father Zachariah was filled of the Holy Spirit and prophesied, saying,
68 Blessed be YAHWEH, the Elohim of Israel, because He visited and worked salvation for His people.
69 And He raised up a Horn of salvation for us in the house of His servant David;
70 even as He spoke through the mouth of His holy prophets from the age before:
71 That He would save us from our enemies and from the hand of all who hate us,
72 to execute mercy with our fathers, and to remember His holy covenant,
73 the oath which He swore to our father Abraham,
74 that we would be delivered from the hand of our enemies. And we might serve before Him without fear.
75 In holiness and righteousness before Him all the days of our life.
76 And you, child, will be called Prophet of the Most High, for you will go before the face of YAHWEH to prepare His way, *(Mal. 3:1)*
77 to give a knowledge of salvation *(Yahshua)* to His people by the removing of their sins,
78 through the tender heart of mercy of our Elohim, in which the Dayspring from on high will visit us,
79 to appear to those sitting in darkness and in shadow of death, to direct our feet into the way of peace. *(Isa. 9:2)*
80 And the child grew, and became strong in spirit. And he was in the wilderness until the day of his showing to Israel.

Chapter 2

1 Now it happened in those days that

[1] Means grace of Yahweh

a decree went out from Augustus Caesar that the names of all the people of his dominion should be written down.
2 This registration first occurred under the governing of Syria by Cyrenius.
3 And all went to be registered, each to his own city.
4 And Joseph also went from Galilee, out of the city of Nazareth to Judea, to the city of David which is called Bethlehem, because of his being of the house and family of David,
5 to be registered with Mariam the one having been betrothed to him as wife, she being pregnant.
6 And it happened as they were there the days were fulfilled for her to bear.
7 And she bore her son, the Firstborn. And she wrapped Him in swaddling clothes and laid Him in the manger[1], because there was no room where they could lodge.
8 And shepherds were in the same region living in the fields and keeping guard over their flock by night.
9 And, behold, a cherub of Elohim came on them. And the glory of YAHWEH shone around them. And they feared with a great fear.
10 And the cherub said to them, Do not fear. For, behold, I proclaim good news to you, a great joy, which will be to all the world,
11 For today is born to you in the city of David, the Savior, who is YAHWEH[2], the Messiah.
12 And this is a sign to you: You will find an infant having been wrapped in swaddling clothes, lying in the manger.
13 And suddenly there was with the cherub a multitude of the heavenly host, praising YAHWEH and saying,
14 Glory to YAHWEH in the highest, and peace on earth, good will among men.
15 And it happened as the cherubs departed from them into the heaven, even the men, the shepherds, said to one another, Indeed, let us go over to Bethlehem, and let us see this thing occurring, which YAHWEH made known to us.
16 And hurrying, they came and sought out both Mariam and Joseph, and the Babe lying in the manger.
17 And seeing, they publicly told about the word spoken to them about this Child.
18 And all those hearing marveled about the things spoken to them by the shepherds.
19 And Mariam kept all these words, meditating in her heart.
20 And the shepherds returned, glorifying and praising YAHWEH for all things which they heard and saw, even as was spoken to them.
21 And when eight days had passed to circumcise the Child, His name was called Yahshua, the name called by the cherub before He was conceived in the womb.
22 And when the days of her cleansing according to the Law of Moses were fulfilled, they took Him up to Jerusalem to present Him to YAHWEH,

---

[1] A manger is a feeding trough cut out of stone and looked like a Jewish burial place. In the Jewish custom the dead person is also wrapped in burial clothes. When Luke states that Yahshua was wrapped in swaddling clothes and laid in a manger he is telling us that He was born to die. Tradition states Yahshua was born in a cave which would also parallel the same setting as when He died and was placed in a tomb in a cave.

[2] Yahweh is a family name consisting of Yah Yahweh the Father and Yahshua Yahweh the Son. The Aramaic very clearly brings out this point.

23 as it has been written in the Torah of YAHWEH: Every male opening a womb shall be called a holy one to YAHWEH; *(Ex. 13:2)*
24 and to offer a sacrifice according to that said in the Torah of YAHWEH, a pair of turtledoves, or two nestlings of doves[1]. *(Lev. 12:8)*
25 And behold, there was a man in Jerusalem whose name was Simeon. And this man was righteous and devout, eagerly expecting the Consolation of Israel. And the Holy Spirit was upon him.
26 And it happened to him, having been divinely instructed by the Holy Spirit, he was not to see death before he would see the Messiah of YAHWEH.
27 And by the Spirit he came into the sanctuary. And as the parents were bringing in the Child Yahshua for them to do according to the custom of the Torah concerning Him,
28 even Simeon received Him into his arms. And he blessed YAHWEH and said,
29 Now dismiss your servant in peace, Adonai, according to your word.
30 Because my eyes saw Your Salvation[2],
31 which You prepared before the face of all the peoples;
32 a Light for revelation to the nations, and the Glory of Your people Israel. *(Is 49:6)*
33 And Joseph was marveling, also His mother, at the things being said concerning Him.
34 And Simeon blessed them and said to His mother Mariam, Behold, this One is set for the fall and rising up of many in Israel, and for a sign spoken against;
35 yea, a sword also will pierce your own soul, so that the thoughts of many hearts may be revealed.
36 And there was Anna, a prophetess, a daughter of Phanuel, of the tribe of Asher. She was advanced in many days, having lived seven years with a husband from her virginity;
37 and she was a widow of eighty four years, who did not depart from the sanctuary, serving night and day with fastings and prayers.
38 And coming on at the very hour, she gave thanks to YAHWEH, and spoke concerning Him to all those in Jerusalem eagerly expecting redemption.
39 And as they completed all things according to the Torah of YAHWEH, they returned to Galilee, to Nazareth their city.
40 And the Child grew, and became strong in spirit, being filled with wisdom. And the grace of YAHWEH was upon Him.
41 And His parents went into Jerusalem year by year at the Feast of the Passover.
42 And when He was twelve years old[3], they, going up to Jerusalem according to the custom of the Feast,
43 and fulfilling the days, in their returning, the Boy Yahshua stayed in Jerusalem. And Joseph and His mother did not know.
44 But supposing Him to be in the company, they went a day on the way. And they looked for Him among the relatives and friends.
45 And not finding Him, they

1 This showed the poverty of the family as they were not able to afford a lamb (Lev 12:8).

2 The name Yahshua means Yahweh's salvation and clearly in the Aramaic this is a play on the name Yahshua with the word salvation.

3 At 13 a boy had his bar-mitzvah and became a full member of the religious community. In ancient times this would have been considered His 13th year.

returned to Jerusalem, looking for
Him.
46 And it happened after three days
they found Him in the sanctuary
sitting in the midst of the teachers,
even hearing them and questioning
them.
47 And all those hearing Him were
amazed at His intelligence and His
answers.
48 And seeing Him, they were
astounded. And His mother said to
Him, Child, why did You do so to us?
Behold, Your father and I were looking
for You, greatly distressed.
49 And He said to them, Why did
you look for me? Did you not know
that I must be busy in the affairs of My
Father?
50 And they did not understand the
word which He spoke to them.
51 And He went with them and came
to Nazareth and was being subject to
them. And His mother carefully kept
all these words in her heart.
52 And Yahshua progressed in
wisdom and stature and favor before
YAHWEH and men. *(1 Sam. 2:26)*

Chapter 3

1 And in the fifteenth year of the
government of Tiberius Caesar[1],
Pontius Pilate governing Judea, and
Herod ruling as tetrarch of Galilee,
and his brother Philip ruling as
tetrarch of Iturea and the Trachonitis
country, and Lysanias ruling as
tetrarch of Abilene,
2 upon the high priesthood of Annas
and Caiaphas, the Word of Elohim
came on John the son of Zachariah in
the desert.
3 And he came into all the regions of
the Jordan proclaiming a baptism of
repentance for remission of sins,
4 as it has been written in the scroll
of the Words of Isaiah the prophet,
saying: "The voice of one crying in the
wilderness, Prepare the way of
YAHWEH, make His paths straight.
5 All the valleys will be filled and all
the mountains and heights will be
leveled. And the rough will become
smooth, and the difficult land a plain
6 and all flesh shall see the Salvation
of YAHWEH." *(Isa. 40:3-5)*
7 Then he said to the crowds going
out to be baptized by him, Offspring of
vipers! Who warned you to flee from
the coming wrath?
8 Then bring forth fruits worthy of
repentance, and do not begin to say
within yourselves, We have Abraham
as father. For I say to you that
YAHWEH is able to raise up children
to Abraham out of these stones.
9 And also the axe is already laid to
the root of the trees; therefore, every
tree not producing good fruit is being
cut down and being thrown into the
fire.
10 And the crowd asked him, saying,
What then shall we do?
11 And answering, he said to them,
The one that has two tunics, let him
give to him that has not. And the one
that has food, let him do the same.
12 And tax collectors also came to be
baptized. And they said to him,
Teacher, what shall we do?
13 And he said to them, Continue to
do no more than that commanded to
you.
14 And also ones serving as soldiers
asked him, saying, And we, what shall
we do? And he said to them, Do no
violence to anyone nor accuse falsely,
and be satisfied with your wages.
15 But the people were expecting,
and all reasoning in their hearts about
John, lest perhaps he is the Messiah,
16 John answered all, saying, I
indeed baptize you with water; but He
stronger than I comes, of whom I am

[1] This equates to 27 AD

not fit to loosen the thong of His
sandals. He will baptize you in the
Holy Spirit and fire,
17 He who holds a winnowing fan in
His hand and has cleansed His
threshing floor, He will gather the
wheat into His granaries, but the chaff
He will burn in the fire that can not be
put out.
18 And then indeed exhorting many
different things, he preached the good
news to the people.
19 But Herod the tetrarch, being
reproved by him concerning Herodias,
the wife of his brother Philip and
concerning all the evil things Herod
did,
20 he also added this above all, he
even shut up John in the prison.
21 And it happened, in the baptizing
of all the people, Yahshua also being
baptized, and praying, the heaven was
opened;
22 and the Holy Spirit descended
upon Him in the likeness of the form
of a dove. And there was a voice out of
Heaven, saying, You are My Son, the
Beloved, in whom I am pleased. *(Psa.
2:7; Gen. 22:2; Isa. 42:1)*
23 And Yahshua Himself was
beginning to be about thirty years old,
being (who was thought to be Son of
Joseph), the son of Heli[1],
24 the son of Matthat, the son of
Levi, the son of Melchi, the son of
Janna, the son of Joseph,
25 the son of Mattathias, the son of
Amos, the son of Nahum, the son of
Esli, the son of Naggai,
26 the son of Maath, the son of
Mattathias, the son of Semei, the son
of Joseph, the son of Judah,
27 the son of Joannas, the son of
Rhesa, the son of Zerubbabel, the son
of Shealtiel, the son of Neri,
28 the son of Melchi, the son of
Addi, the son of Cosam, the son of
Elmodam, the son of Er,
29 the son of Joses, the son of
Eliezer, the son of Jorim, the son of
Matthat, the son of Levi,
30 the son of Simeon, the son of
Judah, the son of Joseph, the son of
Jonan, the son of Eliakim,
31 the son of Melea, the son of
Menan, the son of Mattatha, the son of
Nathan[2], the son of David,
32 the son of Jesse, the son of Obed,
the son of Boaz, the son of Salmon, the
son of Nahshon,
33 the son of Amminadab, the son of
Aram, the son of Hezron, the son of
Pharez, the son of Judah,
34 the son of Jacob, the son of Isaac,
the son of Abraham, the son of Terah,
the son of Nahor,
35 the son of Serug, the son of Reu,
the son of Peleg, the son of Eber, the
son of Salah,
36 the son of Cainan, the son of
Arphaxad, the son of Shem, the son of
Noah, the son of Lamech,
37 the son of Methuselah, the son of
Enoch, the son of Jared, the son of
Mahalaleel, the son of Cainan;
38 son of Enos, the son of Seth, the
son of Adam, the son of YAHWEH.

Chapter 4

1 And full of the Holy Spirit, Yahshua
returned from the Jordan, and was led
by the Spirit into the wilderness,
2 forty days being tempted by the
Devil. And He ate nothing in those

[1] This is Miriam's genealogy as the Talmud tells us that Heli or Eli was Miriam's father. Since women are not named in a legal genealogy, Yahshua goes next to son of Heli as father of Miriam and His grandfather.

[2] Yahshua's true lineage through His mother Miriam is through King David to his son Nathan, as where Joseph's genealogy in the book of Mathew is through King Solomon. This was prophesied in 1 Kg 5:5.

days, and they being ended, He
afterwards hungered.
3 And the Devil said to Him, If You
are Son of Elohim, speak to this stone
that it become bread.
4 And Yahshua answered to him,
saying, It has been written: "Man shall
not live by bread alone, but by every
Word of YAHWEH." *(Deut. 8:3)*
5 And leading Him up into a high
mountain, Satan showed Him all the
kingdoms of the world in a moment of
time.
6 And the Devil said to Him, I will
give all this authority and their glory
to You, because it has been delivered
to me, and I give it to whomever I
wish.
7 Then if You worship before me, all
will be Yours.
8 And answering, to him, Yahshua
said, Go behind Me, Satan! For it has
been written: You shall worship
YAHWEH your Elohim, and Him only
you shall serve. *(Deut. 6:13)*
9 And he led Him to Jerusalem, and
stood Him on the wing of the
sanctuary, and said to Him, If You are
the Son of Elohim, throw Yourself
down from here;
10 for it has been written: "He will
command His cherubs about You,
even to protect You,
11 that on their hands they shall bear
You, that You not strike Your foot
against a stone." *(Psa. 91:11, 12)*
12 And answering, Yahshua said to
him, It has been said: "You shall not
tempt YAHWEH your Elohim[1]."
(Deut. 6:16)
13 And when the accuser had
finished all his temptations, he
departed from His presence for a
while.
14 And Yahshua returned in the
power of the Spirit to Galilee. And a
report went out through the entire
neighborhood about Him.
15 And He taught in their
synagogues, being glorified by all.
16 And He came to Nazareth where
He was brought up. And as was His
custom, He went in on the day of the
Sabbath, into the synagogue, and He
stood up to read.
17 And the scroll of Isaiah the
prophet was handed to Him. And
unrolling the book, He found the place
where it was written:
18 "The Spirit of YAHWEH is upon
me and because of this, He has
anointed me to declare the good news
to the poor. And He has sent me to
heal the brokenhearted and to preach
release to the captives and sight to the
blind. And to free those who are
oppressed with forgiveness,
19 to preach the acceptable year of
YAHWEH." *(Isa. 61:1, 2)*
20 And rolling up the scroll,
returning it to the attendant, He sat
down. And the eyes of all in the
synagogue were fixed on Him.
21 And He began to say to them,
Today this Scripture has been fulfilled
in your ears.
22 And all bore witness to Him, and
marveled at the gracious words
coming out of His mouth. And they
said, Is this not the son of Joseph?
23 And He said to them,
Undoubtedly you will speak this
parable to Me, Physician, heal
yourself. What things we heard were
happening in Capernaum, do also here
in your city.
24 But He said, Truly I say to you
that no prophet is accepted in his own
city.
25 But truthfully I say to you, Many
widows were in Israel in the days of
Elijah when the heaven was shut up
over three years and six months, when
a great famine came on all the land;

[1] Each time Yahshua fought Satan by quoting the Torah.

26 and yet Elijah was sent to none of them except to Zarephath of Sidon, to a widow woman.

27 And many lepers were in Israel during the time of Elisha the prophet, and none of them was made clean except Naaman the Syrian.

28 And all were filled with anger, hearing these things in the synagogue.

29 And they rose up and cast Him outside of the city and they brought Him up to the ridge of a mountain that which their city was built upon to cast Him down from a cliff.

30 But He passed between them and departed.

31 And He went down to Capernaum, a city of Galilee. And He was teaching them on the Sabbaths.

32 And they were astonished at His doctrine, because His message was with authority.

33 And in the synagogue was a man who had a spirit of an unclean demon. And he cried out with a loud voice,

34 saying, Aha! What is to us and to You, Yahshua, Nazarene? Did You come to destroy us? I know You, who You are, the Holy One of Elohim.

35 And Yahshua rebuked him, saying, Shut your mouth, and come out from him! And throwing him into the midst, the demon came out from him, not harming him.

36 And astonishment came on all. And they spoke with one another, saying, What word is this, that He commands the unclean spirits with authority and power, and they come out?

37 And a report about Him went out into every place of the neighborhood.

38 And rising up from the synagogue, He went into the house of Simon. And the mother-in-law of Simon was being seized with a great fever. And they asked Him concerning her.

39 And standing over her, He rebuked the fever; and it left her. And rising up instantly, she served them.

40 And the sun sinking, all, as many as had sick ones with various diseases, brought them to Him. And laying hands on each one of them, He healed them.

41 And also demons came out from many, crying out and saying, You are the Messiah, the Son of Elohim! And rebuking them, He did not allow them to speak, for they knew Him to be the Messiah.

42 And day having come, going out, He went into a deserted place. And the crowds looked for Him, and came up to Him, and held Him fast, not to pass away from them.

43 And Yahshua said to them that, It is necessary for me to preach to other cities the kingdom of YAHWEH, for because of this reason, I have been sent.

44 And He was proclaiming in the synagogues of Galilee.

Chapter 5

1 And it happened that the crowd was pressing on Him to hear the Word of YAHWEH. And He was standing by Lake Gennesar.

2 And He saw two boats standing by the lake, but the fishermen had left them and were washing the nets.

3 And entering into one of the boats, which was Simon Peter's, He asked him to put out a little from the land. And sitting down, He taught the crowd from the boat.

4 And as He quit speaking, He said to Simon, row out into the deep water and let down your nets for a haul.

5 And answering, Simon said to Him, Rabbi, laboring all through the night we took nothing. But at Your word I will let down the net.

6 And doing this, they netted a great multitude of fish; and their net was being torn.
7 And they signaled the partners, those in the other boat, to come and help them. And they came and filled both the boats, so that they were sinking.
8 And seeing, Simon Peter fell at the knees of Yahshua, saying, Depart from me, for I am a sinful man, Master.
9 For astonishment took hold of him, and all those with him, at the haul of fish which they took;
10 and in the same way also, Jacob and John, the sons of Zebedee, who were partners with Simon. And Yahshua said to Simon, Do not fear. From now on you will be catching men alive.
11 And bringing the boats down onto the land, forsaking all things, they followed Him[1].
12 And it happened, in His being in one of the cities, even behold, a man full of leprosy! And seeing Yahshua, falling on his face, he begged Him, saying, Master, if You be willing, You are able to cleanse me.
13 And stretching out the hand, He touched him, saying, I will! Be cleansed! And instantly the leprosy departed from him.
14 And He commanded him, Do not tell to anyone, rather go show yourself to the priests and offer an offering for your purification, as Moshe commanded for their testimony.
15 But the word about Him spread even more. And large crowds were coming to hear and to be healed from their infirmities by Him.
16 But He was drawing back in a deserted place, and praying.
17 And it happened on one of the days, even He was teaching. And Pharisees and teachers of the torah were sitting by, who were coming out of every village of Galilee and Judea, and Jerusalem. And the power of YAHWEH was there, to heal them.
18 And, behold, men carrying on a cot a man who was paralyzed. And they sought to bring him in, and to lay him before Him.
19 And not finding a way through which they might bring him in through the crowd, going up on the housetop, they let him down through the tiles with the cot, into the midst, in front of Yahshua.
20 And seeing their faith, He said to him, Man, your sins have been forgiven you.
21 And the scribes and Pharisees began to reason, saying, Who is this who speaks blasphemies? Who is able to forgive sins except Elohim alone?
22 But knowing their thoughts, answering Yahshua said to them, Why do you reason in your hearts?
23 Which is easier, to say, Your sins have been forgiven you, or to say, Rise up and walk? *(Ex 23:21)*
24 But that you may know that the Son of Man has the authority on the earth to forgive sins, He said to the paralytic, I say to you, Rise up, and take your cot and go to your house.
25 And rising up at once before them, taking up that on which he was lying, he went to his house glorifying YAHWEH.
26 And amazement seized all, and they glorified Elohim, and were filled with fear, saying, We saw wonderful things today.
27 And after these things, He went out and saw a tax collector named

[1] Amazingly enough a 2,000 year old fishing boat was found in 1986 in this very spot on the Sea of Galilee, showing us that the same faith that Peter, Jacob and John had to show back then, we also have to show today.

Levi, sitting at the tax office. And He
said to him, Follow Me!
28 And leaving all, rising up he
followed Him.
29 And Levi made a great feast for
Him in his house. And there was a
crowd of many tax collectors reclining,
and of others who were with them.
30 And the scribes and the Pharisees
murmured at His disciples, saying,
Why do you eat and drink with tax
collectors and sinners?
31 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, The physician is not needed by
the healthy, rather by those who are
severely ill.
32 I did not come to call the
righteous, but sinners to repentance.
33 But they said to Him, Why do
John's disciples fast often, and make
prayers, and likewise those of the
Pharisees, but those close to You eat
and drink?
34 But He said to them, You are not
able to make the sons of the bride-
chamber fast while the bridegroom is
with them.
35 But days will come, even when
the bridegroom is taken away from
them, then in those days they will fast.
36 And He also told a parable to
them: No man tears a piece of cloth
from a new garment and places it on a
used garment lest the new is torn from
the used and makes a worse hole in
the used.
37 And no one puts new wine into
old skins; otherwise, the new wine will
burst the skins, and it will be poured
out, and the skins will be destroyed.
38 But new wine is to be put into
new skins, and both are preserved
together. (Mk 2:21-22, Math 9:16-17)
39 And no one drinking old wine
immediately desires new; for he says,
The old is delicious.

Chapter 6

1 And it happened on the second
chief Sabbath[1], He passed along
through the grain fields. And His
disciples plucked the heads and were
eating, rubbing with the hands.
2 But some of the Pharisees said to
them, Why do you do that which is not
lawful to do on the Sabbath?[2]
3 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, And have you not read the
thing, which David did when he
hungered, and those who were with
him?
4 How he entered into the house of
YAHWEH and he took the bread on
the table of YAHWEH and ate it and
he gave to those who were with him
that which was not lawful for anyone
to eat except only the priests.
5 And He said to them, The Son of
Man is Master of the Sabbath also.
6 And it also happened on another
Sabbath, He going into the synagogue
and teaching. And a man was there,
and his right hand was withered.
7 And the scribes and the Pharisees
kept close by Him, to see if He would
heal on the Sabbath, so that they
might accuse Him.
8 But He knew their reasoning. And
He said to the man having the
withered hand, Rise up and stand in
the middle! And rising up, he stood.
9 Then Yahshua said to them, I will

---

1 There were 24 orders of priests who served 2 weeks a year in the sanctuary. One week starting after Passover and then, after all 24 orders served one week each, they would start over, this is the first sabbath of the second rotation of that order. All 24 orders served at the 3 pilgrim feasts of Passover, Shavuot and Sukkot.

2 This was according to the oral law of the Rabbis, as according to the Torah one could pick a head of grain and eat if he was hungry (Deut 23:25).

ask you one thing, Is it lawful to do
good on the Sabbaths, or to do evil, to
save a life, or to destroy it?
10 And having looked around at
them all, He said to the man, Stretch
out your hand! And he did so. And his
hand was restored sound as the other.
11 But they were filled with
bitterness and talked to one another as
to what they might do to Yahshua.
12 And it happened in these days, He
went out into the mountain to pray.
And He was spending the night in
prayer to YAHWEH.
13 And when it became day, He
called His disciples, also choosing out
twelve from them, whom He also
named apostles:
14 Simon, whom He also named
Keefa *(Peter);* and his brother
Andrew; Jacob and John; Philip and
Bartholomew;
15 Matthew and Thomas; Jacob the
son of Alpheus, and Simon, the one
being called Zealot;
16 Judas brother of Jacob; and
Judas Iscariot, who also became the
betrayer.
17 And coming down with them, He
stood on a level place. And a crowd of
His disciples and a great multitude of
the people were there from all Judea
and Jerusalem, and from the coast
country of Tyre and Sidon. These came
to hear Him, and to be healed from
their diseases,
18 also those who had been
tormented by unclean spirits. And they
were healed.
19 And all the crowd sought to touch
Him, because power went out from
Him and healed all.
20 And lifting up His eyes to His
disciples, He said: Blessed are the
poor, for the kingdom of YAHWEH is
yours.
21 Blessed are those hungering now,
for you will be satisfied. Blessed are
those weeping now, for you will laugh.
22 Blessed are you when men hate
you, and when they cut you off, and
will reproach you, and will cast out
your name as evil, on account of the
Son of Man;
23 rejoice in that day, and leap for
joy; for, behold, your reward is much
in Heaven! For their fathers did
according to these things to the
prophets.
24 But woe to you, rich ones, for you
have your comfort!
25 Woe to you, those having been
filled, for you will hunger! Woe to you,
those laughing now, for you will weep
and mourn!
26 Woe to you when all men speak
well of you, for their fathers did
according to these things to the false
prophets.
27 But I say to you, Those hearing:
Love your enemies, do good to those
hating you,
28 bless those cursing you and pray
for those insulting you.
29 To those striking you on the
cheek, turn the other also. And from
those taking your garment, do not
keep back the coat also.
30 And to everyone asking you, give.
And from him who takes your
property, do not demand your
property back.
31 And according as you desire that
men should do to you, you also do the
same to them.
32 And if you love those who love
you, what thanks is there to you? For
even sinners love those who love them.
33 And if you do good to those who
do good to you, what is your blessing?
For even the sinners do the same.
34 And if you lend to those from
whom you hope to receive, what is
your blessing? For the sinners lend to

sinners so that they may receive the
equal things.
35 But love your enemies, and do
good, and lend, and do not cut off the
hope of man; and your reward will be
great; and you will be sons of the Most
High, for He is kind to the evil and the
cruel ones.
36 Therefore, be merciful, even as
your Father also is merciful.
37 Judge not, and in no way be
judged. Do not condemn, and in no
way you will be condemned. Forgive,
and you will be forgiven.
38 Give and it will be given to you in
good measure and pressed down and
abundant it will pour into your robe in
that measure. For the measure with
which you measure, it will be
measured to you.
39 And He spoke a parable to them:
Why are the blind not able to lead the
blind? Because both of them would fall
into a ditch.
40 There is no disciple that is
greater than his master. For everyone
who is perfect should be as his master.
41 And why do you see the straw that
is in the eye of your brother, but the
beam that is in your eye is not seen by
you?
42 Or how can you say to your
brother, Brother, allow me to take out
the straw in your eye, not yourself
seeing the beam in your eye?
Hypocrite! First take the beam out of
your eye, and then you will see clearly
to take out the straw in your brother's
eye.
43 For there is not a good tree that
produces bad fruit, nor a bad tree that
produces good fruit.
44 For each tree is known from its
own fruit. For they do not gather figs
from thorns, nor do they gather grapes
from a thorn bush.
45 The good man brings forth good
out of the good treasure of his heart.
And the evil man brings forth evil out
of the evil treasure of his heart, for his
mouth speaks out of the abundance of
his heart.
46 And why do you call Me Master,
Master, and do not do what I say?
47 Everyone coming to Me and
hearing My Words, and doing them, I
will show you to whom he is like:
48 He is likened to a man who built
a house and dug and went deep and
placed its foundations upon rock. And
when a flood occurred, the flood beat
against that house and was not able to
shake it. For its foundations were
placed on rock.
49 And he who hears but does not is
likened to a man who built his house
on soil without a foundation. And
when the river beat upon it, it fell at
once and great was the fall of that
house.

Chapter 7

1 And when He completed all the
sayings for the hearing of the people,
Yahshua entered Capernaum.
2 And the servant of a certain
centurion was badly ill, one who was
dear to him and he was close to dying.[1]
3 And having heard about Yahshua,
he sent elders of the Jews to Him,
asking Him that He might come to
restore his servant.
4 And coming to Yahshua, they
earnestly begged Him, saying, He to
whom You give this is worthy.
5 For he loves our nation and he
built the synagogue for us.
6 And Yahshua went with them. But
He being yet not far away from the
house, the centurion sent friends to
Him, saying to Him, Master, do not
trouble yourself, for I am not worthy
that You come under my roof.
7 For this reason I did not count

[1] Math 8:5

myself worthy to come to You. But
speak with a word, and my boy will be
healed.
8 For I also am a man having been
set under authority, having soldiers
under myself. And I say to this one,
Go! And he goes. And to another,
Come! And he comes. And to my slave,
Do this! And he does it.
9 And hearing these things, Yahshua
marveled at him. And turning to the
crowd following Him, He said, I say to
you, I did not find such faith in Israel.
10 And those sent, returning to the
house, found the servant who was ill
made whole.
11 And it happened on the next day,
He went into a city being called Nain.
And many of His disciples went with
Him; also a great crowd.
12 And when He approached the
gate of the city He saw a dead man
while being escorted, who was the only
son of his mother, and his mother was
a widow. And a large crowd of the sons
of the city was with her.
13 And Yahshua saw her and had
compassion on her and said to her, Do
not cry.
14 And coming up, He touched the
coffin; and those carrying it stood still.
And He said, Young man, I say to you,
Arise!
15 And the dead one sat up and
began to speak. And He gave him to
his mother.
16 And fear took hold of all; and they
glorified YAHWEH, saying, A great
prophet has risen up among us; and,
YAHWEH has visited His people.
17 And this word about Him went
out in all Judea, and in all the
neighborhood.
18 And his disciples reported to
John about all these things.
19 And having called near a certain
two of his disciples, John sent to
Yahshua, saying, Are You the One
coming? Or should we expect another?
20 And having come to Him, the
men said, John the Baptist sent us to
You, saying, Are You the One coming,
or should we expect another?
21 And in the same hour He healed
many from diseases and plagues and
evil spirits. And He gave to many blind
ones ability to see.
22 And answering, Yahshua said to
them, Going, report to John what you
saw and heard; that the blind see
again, the lame walk, the lepers are
cleansed, the deaf hear, the dead are
raised, and the poor are preached the
Good news. *(Isa. 35:5, 6; 61:1)*
23 And blessed is he who is not
offended in Me.
24 And John's messengers going
away, He began to speak to the crowds
about John: What did you go out to
the deserted places to see? A reed
being shaken by the wind?
25 But what did you go out to see? A
man who had been dressed in soft
garments? Behold, those in expensive
clothing and being in luxury are in the
house of king's.
26 But what did you go out to see? A
prophet? Yes, I say to you, Even more
than a prophet.
27 This is he about whom it has been
written: "Behold, I send My messenger
before Your face, who will prepare
Your way before You." *(Mal. 3:1)*
28 For I say to you, Among those
born of a woman, no prophet is greater
than John the Baptist. But the least
one in the kingdom of YAHWEH is
greater than he is.
29 And all the people who heard,
even the publicans, Elohim declared to
be just for they had been baptized.
30 But the Pharisees and the scribes
rejected in themselves the will of
Elohim because they were not
immersed by him.

31 And the Master said, Then to
what shall I compare the men of this
generation? And to what are they like?
32 They are like children sitting in a
market and calling to one another, and
saying, We sung to you, and you did
not dance; we mourned to you, and
you did not weep.
33 For John the Baptist has come
neither eating bread nor drinking
wine, and you say, He has a demon.
34 The Son of Man came eating and
drinking and you say, Behold a
gluttonous man and one drinking wine
and a friend of publicans and sinners.
35 But wisdom is justified by all its
works.
36 And a certain one of the Pharisees
asked Him that He eat with him. And
going into the Pharisee's house, He
reclined.
37 And, behold, a woman who was a
sinner in the city, knowing that He
reclined in the Pharisee's house, taking
an alabaster vial of ointment,
38 And stood behind Him and was
crying at His feet. And she began
washing His feet with her tears and
then wiping with the hair of her head.
And she was kissing His feet and
anointing them with ointment.[1]
39 And when that Pharisee who had
invited Him saw that, he reasoned
within himself and said that if this
man was a prophet, He would realize
who she is and what her reputation is.
That woman, she is a sinner that who
touched Him.
40 And answering, Yahshua said to
the man, Simon, I have a thing to say
to you. And he said, speak, Rabbi.
41 There were two debtors to a
certain creditor: the one owed five
hundred denarii and the other fifty.
42 But because they did not have a
thing to pay, he freely forgave them
both. Then which of them do you say
will love him most?
43 And answering, Simon said, I
suppose the one to whom he freely
forgave the most. And He said to him,
You have judged rightly.
44 And turning to the woman, He
said to Simon, Do you see this
woman? I came into your house. You
did not give water for My feet, but she
washed My feet with tears and wiped
off with the hairs of her head.
45 You gave Me no kiss, but she
from when I entered did not stop
fervently kissing My feet.
46 You did not anoint My head with
oil, but this woman has anointed My
feet with oil of incense.
47 For I say this to you. Because her
sins that are forgiven her are many,
she has loved much. But he that is
forgiven little loves Him little.
48 And He said to her, Your sins are
forgiven.
49 And those reclining with Him
began to say within themselves, Who
is this who even forgives sins?
50 But Yahshua said to the woman,
Your faith has given you life. Go in
peace.

Chapter 8

1 And it happened afterwards, even
He traveled in every city and village,
preaching and announcing the good
news of the kingdom of YAHWEH[2].
And the Twelve were with Him;
2 also certain women who were
healed from evil spirits and
infirmities: Mariam, having been
called Magdalene, from whom seven
demons had gone out
3 and Joanna wife of Chuza, Herod's

[1] 2 Kgs 4:27, Joh 12:3

[2] Christianity today has replaced the message of Yahshua about the Kingdom of Yahweh, but we can clearly see that this was the message that Yahshua always preached.

steward, and Susanna, and many
others, who were ministering to Him
of their wealth.
4 And a great crowd coming together
and those in each city coming to Him,
He spoke through a parable:
5 A sower went out to sow his seed,
and as he sowed there were some that
fell on the side of the road and was
trampled and a bird ate it.
6 And other fell on the rock; and
growing, it dried up because of not
having moisture.
7 And other fell in the middle of the
thorn bushes, and growing up with the
thorn bushes, they choked it.
8 And other fell on the good earth,
and growing it produced fruit a
hundredfold. Saying these things, He
cried out, The one having ears to hear,
let him hear.
9 And His disciples questioned Him,
saying, What might this parable be?
10 And He said, To you it has been
given to know the mysteries of the
kingdom of YAHWEH, but to the rest
of them it is spoken in parables, that
seeing they might not see, and
hearing, they might not understand.
(Isa. 6:9)
11 And this is the parable: The seed
is the Word of YAHWEH.
12 And those by the roadside are
those who hear, then the Devil comes
and takes away the Word from their
heart, lest believing they may be saved.
13 And those on the rock are those
who, when they hear, receive the Word
with joy; and these have no root, who
believe for a time, and in time of trial
draw back.
14 And those falling in the thorn
bushes, these are those hearing, but
under cares and riches and pleasures
of life, moving along, they are choked,
and do not produce fruit to maturity.
15 And that seed which fell on good
ground, they are those who with an
honest and good heart hear the Word
and retain it and bear fruit with
patience.
16 No man lights a lamp and covers
it with a vessel or places it under the
bed, rather he places it on a lamp
stand so that all who enter will see its
light.
17 For nothing is hidden which will
not be revealed, nor secret which will
not be known and come to be revealed.
18 Then take heed how you hear; for
whoever may have, it will be given to
him; and whoever may not have, even
what he seems to have will be taken
from him.
19 And His mother and His brothers
came to Him, and were not able to
come up with Him through the crowd.
20 And it was told to Him, saying
Your mother and Your brothers are
standing outside wishing to see You.
21 And answering, He said to them,
My mother and My brothers are these:
the ones hearing the Word of Elohim,
and doing it.
22 And it happened on one of the
days that He and His disciples entered
into a boat. And He said to them, Let
us go over to the other side of the lake.
And they put out to sea.
23 And as they sailed He fell asleep.
And a storm of wind came onto the
lake, and they were being filled and
were in danger.
24 And coming up they awakened
Him, saying, Master! Master! We are
perishing! And being aroused, He
rebuked the wind and the roughness of
the water; and they ceased, and there
was a calm.
25 And He said to them, Where is
your faith? And being afraid, they
marveled, saying to one another, Who
then is this One, that He commands
even the wind and the water, and they
obey Him?
26 And they sailed down to the

country of the Gadarenes[1], which is across from Galilee.
27 And when He went out onto land, a certain man from the city caught up to Him. In him had been a demon a long time. And he would not wear clothing and he would not dwell in a house, but would be in a cemetery.
28 And seeing Yahshua, and crying out, he fell down before Him, and with a loud voice said, What have we to do with each other, Yahshua, the Son of the Most High Elohim? I beseech you, do not torment me.
29 For He charged the unclean spirit to come out of the man. For many times it had seized him, and he was bound with chains and bonds, being guarded. And tearing apart the bonds, he was driven by the demons into the desert.
30 And Yahshua asked him, saying, What is your name? And he answered, Legion (because many demons entered into him).
31 And they begged Him that He not order them to go away into the abyss.
32 And there was a herd of many pigs feeding there in the mount. And they begged Him that He would allow them to enter into those. And He allowed them.
33 And out went the devils from the man and entered into the swine. And that whole herd rushed to a cliff and fell into the lake and they drowned.
34 And seeing the thing, those feeding the pigs fled. And leaving, they reported to the city and to the villages.
35 And they went out to see the thing happening, and came to Yahshua. And they found the man from whom the demons had gone out, sitting at the feet of Yahshua, clothed and of sound mind. And they were afraid.
36 And also those who had seen related to them how the one having been demon-possessed was healed.
37 And all the multitude of the neighborhood of the Gadarenes were seized with a great fear. And they asked Him to depart from them. And entering into the boat, He returned.
38 And the man from whom the demons had gone out begged Him, desiring to be with Him. But Yahshua sent him away, saying,
39 Go back to your house and report what Elohim has done for you. And he went away proclaiming through all the city what things Yahshua did to him.
40 And it happened as Yahshua returned, the crowd gladly received Him, for they were all waiting for Him.
41 And, behold, a man named Jairus came, and this one was a synagogue ruler. And falling at the feet of Yahshua, he begged Him to come into his house,
42 because an only daughter was born to him, about twelve years old; and she was dying. And in His going, the crowd pressed on Him.
43 And a woman being in a flow of blood from twelve years, who had spent her whole living on physicians, and could not be cured by anyone,
44 coming up behind she touched the tassel of His garment. And instantly the flow of her blood stopped.
45 And Yahshua said, Who was touching Me? And all denying it, Peter and those with Him said, Master, the crowds press and push on You. And do You say, Who was touching Me?
46 But Yahshua said, Someone touched Me, for I knew power went out from Me.
47 And seeing that she was not hidden, the woman came trembling and kneeled down before Him and told Him before all the people for what

[1] On the eastern shore of the Sea of Galilee

reason she touched Him, and how she
was instantly cured.
48 And He said to her, Daughter, be
comforted. Your faith has given you
life. Go in peace.
49 As He was yet speaking, someone
came from the synagogue ruler, saying
to him, Your daughter has died. Do
not trouble the Teacher.
50 But hearing, Yahshua answered
him, saying, Do not fear; only believe
and she will be healed.
51 And coming into the house, He
did not allow anyone to enter, except
Peter and Jacob and John, and the
father and mother of the girl.
52 And all were weeping and
bewailing her. But He said, Stop
weeping. She has not died, but is
sleeping.
53 And they scoffed at Him, knowing
that she died.
54 But putting all outside, and
taking hold of her hand, He called out,
saying, young girl rise up!
55 And her spirit returned, and she
rose up immediately. And He ordered
something to eat be given to her.
56 And her parents were amazed.
But He charged them to tell no one of
that which occurred.

Chapter 9

1 And having called together His
twelve disciples, He gave them power
and authority over all the demons, and
to heal all sicknesses.
2 And He sent them to proclaim the
kingdom of YAHWEH, and to heal
the ones being sick.
3 And he said to them, Do not take
anything with you on the road, neither
a staff nor a wallet not bread nor
money nor should you have two coats.
4 And into whatever house you
enter, remain there, and go out from
there.
5 And as many as may not receive
you, going out from that city even
shake off the dust from your feet, for a
testimony against them.
6 And going out, the apostles passed
through the villages, having
announced the good news, and healing
everywhere.
7 And Herod the tetrarch heard all
the things happening by Him, and was
puzzled, because of the saying by some
that John had been raised from the
dead
8 and by some that Elijah had
appeared. And others said, A prophet
of the ancients rose again.
9 And Herod said, I beheaded John,
but who is this about whom I hear
such things? And he sought to see
Him.
10 And having returned, the
disciples told Him what things they
did. And taking them, He went out
privately to a deserted place of a city
called Bethsaida.
11 But knowing this, the crowds
followed Him. And having received
them, He spoke to them about the
kingdom of YAHWEH. And He cured
those having need of healing.
12 But the day began to decline. And
coming up, the Twelve said to Him,
Let the crowd go that going to the
surrounding villages and farms they
may lodge and find food supplies,
because here we are in a deserted
place.
13 But He said to them, You give
them to eat. But they said, there are
not to us more than five loaves and
two fish, unless we go and buy food for
all this people.
14 For they were about five thousand
men. But He said to His disciples;
Make them recline in groups, by
fifties.
15 And they did so, and made all
recline.

16 And taking the five loaves and the two fish, looking up to Heaven, He blessed them, and broke, and gave to the disciples to set before the crowd.

17 And they ate and were all filled. And twelve hand-baskets of fragments of that left over to them were taken up.

18 And it happened as He was praying alone, the disciples were with Him. And He questioned them, saying, Whom do the crowds say Me to be?

19 And answering, they said, John the Baptist; and others, Elijah; and others that some prophet of the ancients has risen again.

20 And He said to them, But whom do you say Me to be? And answering, Peter said, The Messiah of YAHWEH.

21 And strictly warning them, He ordered to tell this to no one,

22 saying, The Son of Man must suffer many things and be rejected by the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised on the third day.

23 And He said to all, If anyone desires to come after Me, let him deny himself and take up his torture stake daily. And let him follow Me.

24 For whoever desires to save his life[1], he will destroy it. But whoever loses his life for My sake, this one will save it.

25 For what is a man profited gaining the whole world but destroying himself or suffering loss?

26 For whoever is ashamed of Me and My Words, the Son of Man will be ashamed of that one when He comes in His glory, and that of the Father, and of the holy cherubs.

27 Truly I say to you that there are men who stand here who will not taste death until they see the Kingdom of Elohim.

28 And about eight days after these sayings, it happened, also taking Peter and John and Jacob, He went into the mountain to pray.

29 And in His praying, the appearance of His face became different, and His clothing was dazzling white.

30 And, behold, two men talked with Him, who were Moses and Elijah.

31 Appearing in glory, they spoke of His departure, which He was about to accomplish in Jerusalem.

32 Simon and those with Him were heavy with sleep and barely awake. And they saw His glory and those two men who were standing with Him.

33 And when they began to leave, Simon said to Yahshua, "Rabbi, it is good for us that we stay here and we make three shelters: one for You, one for Moshe and one for Elijah," and he did not know what he was saying!

34 And he saying these things, a cloud came and overshadowed them. And they were afraid when they saw Moshe and Eliyah enter into the cloud.

35 And a Voice came out of the cloud, saying, This is My Son, the Beloved; hear Him! *(Psa. 2:7; Isa. 42:1; Deut. 18:15)*

36 And as the Voice came, Yahshua was found alone. And they were quiet. And they reported to no one in those days, nothing which they had seen.[2]

37 And it happened on the next day, they coming down from the mountain, a huge crowd met Him.

38 And, behold, a man called aloud from the crowd, saying, Teacher, I beg You to look at my son, because he is my only child.

39 And a spirit seizes him and suddenly he cries out and gnashes his teeth and foams and with difficulty it

[1] This is the same word used at times for soul and again shows the soul is not immortal but can die (Ezek 18:4)

[2] Verses 29-36- Mathew 17:9 tells us this was a vision.

departs from him when it has
tormented him.
40 And I begged Your disciples, that
they cast it out. And they were not
able.
41 And Yahshua answered and said,
Oh generation that is not faithful and
is perverse! How long must I be
among you and endure you? Bring
your son here.
42 But as he was yet coming up, the
demon cast him down and violently
convulsed him. But Yahshua rebuked
the unclean spirit and healed the child,
and gave him back to his father.
43 And all were astonished at the
majesty of Elohim. And as all were
marveling at all things which He did,
Yahshua said to His disciples,
44 You lay into your ears these
sayings, for the Son of Man is about to
be betrayed into the hands of men.
45 And they did not comprehend
these words because it was hidden
from them so that they would not
know it. And they were afraid to ask
Him about this word.
46 But a reasoning came in among
them, who might be the greater of
them.
47 And seeing the argument of their
heart, taking a child, Yahshua stood it
beside Himself,
48 and said to them, Whoever
receives this child on My name
receives Me. And whoever receives Me
receives Him who sent Me. For the one
being least among you all, this one
shall be great.
49 And answering, John said,
Master, we saw someone casting out
demons in Your name, and we stopped
him because he does not follow with
us.
50 And Yahshua said to them, Do
not forbid, for whoever is not against
us is for us.
51 And it happened in the fulfilling
of the days of His taking up, even He
set His face to go to Jerusalem.
52 And He sent messengers before
His face. And going they went into a
village of Samaritans, so as to make
ready for Him.
53 And they did not receive Him,
because His face was going toward
Jerusalem.
54 And seeing, His disciples, Jacob
and John, said Master, do You desire
that we tell fire to come down from
Heaven, and to destroy them even as
Elijah did? *(2 Kin. 1:10)*
55 But turning He rebuked them.
And He said, You do not know of what
spirit you are.
56 For the Son of Man did not come
to destroy men's souls, but to make
them live. And they went to another
village.
57 And it happened as they were
going in the way, one said to Him, I
will follow You everywhere You may
go, Master.
58 And Yahshua said to him, The
foxes have holes, and the birds of the
heaven have nests, but the Son of Man
has nowhere He may lay His head.
59 And He said to another, Follow
Me. But he said, Master, allow me to
go first to bury my father.
60 But Yahshua said to him, Leave
the dead to bury their dead, but going
out, you announce the kingdom of
YAHWEH.
61 And also another said, I will
follow You, Master, but first allow me
to take leave of those in my house.
62 But Yahshua said to him, No man
places his hand upon the handle of a
plough and looks backwards and is
useful to the kingdom of Elohim[1].

---

[1] If one looked back while ploughing, the ox would take him in all directions and so is the person who constantly doubts his calling, he is unstable in all his ways Jac 1:8.

Chapter 10

1 And after these things, Yahshua also appointed seventy others from His disciples, and sent them two by two before His face into every city and region, where He was about to go.
2 Therefore He said to them, Indeed, the harvest is much but the laborers are few. Therefore, pray to the Master of the harvest, that He send out workers into His harvest.
3 Go! Behold, I send you out as sheep in the midst of wolves.
4 Do not take purses with you, nor wallets, nor shoes, and do not ask a greeting of a man on the road.
5 And into whatever house you may enter, first say, Peace to this house.
6 And if a son of peace is truly there, your peace shall rest on it; but if not so, it shall return to you.
7 And remain in the same house, eating and drinking the things shared by them; for the laborer is worthy of his hire. Do not move from house to house.
8 And into whatever city you enter, and they receive you, eat the things set before you.
9 And heal the sick in it, and say to them, The kingdom of YAHWEH has drawn near to you.
10 But into whatever city you enter, and they do not receive you, going out into its streets, say,
11 Even the dust clinging to our feet, out of your city, we shake off against you! Yet know this that the kingdom of YAHWEH has drawn near to you!
12 And I say to you that it shall be more peaceful for Sodom in that day than for that city!
13 Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the works of power which have been occurring in you had occurred in Tyre and Sidon, maybe they would have repented long ago sitting in sackcloth and ashes!
14 But it will be more tranquil for Tyre and Sidon in the Judgment than for you.
15 And you, Capernaum, who are exalted up to heaven, you will be lowered down to Sheol.
16 The one listening to you listens to Me, and the one rejecting you also rejects Me, and the one rejecting Me also rejects the One having sent Me.
17 And the seventy returned with joy, saying, Master, even the demons are subject to us through Your Name.
18 And He said to them, I saw Satan falling out of Heaven as lightning!
19 Behold I give authority to you to tread on snakes and scorpions and all the power of the enemy, and nothing will harm you.
20 Nevertheless, do not rejoice in this, that the demons submit to you. But rather rejoice that your names are written in Heaven.
21 In the same hour Yahshua rejoiced in the Spirit, and said, I praise You, Father, Master of Heaven and of earth, that You hid these things from the wise and prudent and revealed them to children; yes, Father, because so it was pleasing before You.
22 All things were delivered to Me by My Father, and no one knows who the Son is except the Father; and who is the Father, except the Son, and he to whom the Son may desire to reveal Him.
23 And having turned to the disciples alone, He said, Blessed are the eyes seeing what you see.
24 For I say to you that many prophets and kings desired to see what you see, and did not see, and to hear what you hear, and did not hear.
25 And behold, a certain scribe stood up, tempting Him and saying,

Teacher, What shall I do that I may inherit eternal life?

26 And He said to him, What has been written in the Torah? How do you read it?

27 And answering, he said, "You shall love YAHWEH your Elohim with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your strength, and with all your mind," and "your neighbor as yourself." *(Deut. 6:5; Lev. 19:18)*

28 And He said to him, You have answered rightly; do this, and you shall live.

29 But desiring to justify himself, he said to Yahshua, And who is my neighbor?

30 And taking it up, Yahshua said, A certain man was going down from Jerusalem to Jericho, and fell in with robbers, who both stripping him and beating him, leaving him being barely alive, and they left.

31 And it so happened, a certain priest was going on that road; and seeing him, he passed on the opposite side.

32 And in the same way, a Levite, also being at the place, coming and seeing him, he passed on the opposite side[1].

33 But a certain traveling Samaritan came upon him, and seeing him, he had compassion on him.

34 And coming near, he bound up his wounds, pouring on oil and wine. And putting him on his donkey, he brought him to an inn and cared for him.

35 And on the dawn of the day he departed, taking out two denarii, he gave them to the innkeeper, and said to him, Care for him, and whatever more you spend, on my return I will repay to you.

36 Who, then, of these three seems to you to have become a neighbor to the one having fallen among the bandits?

37 And he said, The one doing the deed of mercy with him. Then Yahshua said to him, Go, and you do likewise.

38 And as they went on, it happened, He also entered into a certain village. And a certain woman, Martha by name, received Him into her house.

39 And to this one was a sister being called Mariam, who also was sitting alongside, at the feet of Yahshua, and heard His Word.

40 But Martha was distracted about much serving. And coming on she said, Master, is it not a care to You that my sister left me alone to serve? Then tell her that she should help me.

41 But answering Yahshua said to her, Martha, Martha, you are anxious and troubled about many things,

42 But there is need of only one; and Mariam chose the good part, which shall not be taken from her.

Chapter 11

1 And it happened as He was praying in a certain place, when He finished, one of His disciples said to Him, Master teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples.

2 And He said to them: When you pray, say, Our Father who is in Heaven, hallowed be Your name, let Your kingdom come, let Your will be done on earth as it also is in Heaven.

3 Give us our needed bread day by day;

4 and forgive us our sins, for we ourselves also forgive everyone who offended us. And lead us not into trial, but save us from the evil one.

[1] The priest and the Levite feared that if the man were dead they would be ceremonially unclean by coming near him, instead of being encouraged to try to save his life.

5 And He said to them, Who of you
shall have a friend, and will come to
him at midnight and say to him,
Friend, lend me three loaves.
6 For a friend of mine arrived to me
from a journey, and I do not have what
I may set before him.
7 And answering from within that
one may say, Do not cause me
troubles. The door has already been
shut, and my children are in bed with
me. I cannot rise up to give to you.
8 I say to you, Even if rising up he
will not give to him because he is a
friend, yet because of his urgent
insisting, rising up he will give him as
many as he needs.
9 And I say to you, Ask, and it will be
given to you; seek, and you will find;
knock, and it will be opened to you.
10 For everyone asking receives, and
the one seeking finds, and to the one
knocking, it will be opened.
11 And who among you if he is a
father, if his son asks for bread, will he
give him a stone? And if he asks a fish,
will he give him a snake instead of a
fish?
12 And if he should ask an egg, will
he give him a scorpion?
13 And if you who are evil, you know
to give good gifts to your children, how
much more your Father from Heaven
will give the Holy Spirit to those who
ask Him.
14 And He was casting out a demon,
and it was mute. And it happened as
the demon was going out, the mute
one spoke. And the crowds marveled.
15 But some of them said, He casts
out the demons by Beelzebub the chief
of the demons.
16 And tempting Him, others were
seeking a sign from Heaven from Him.
17 But Yahshua who was aware of
their thoughts said to them, Every
kingdom that is divided against itself
will become desolate, and a house that
is against its own nature will fail.
18 And also if Satan is divided
against himself, how shall his kingdom
stand? Because you say I cast out the
demons by Beelzebub.
19 And if I cast out the demons by
Beelzebub, by whom do your sons cast
them out? Because of this they shall be
your judges.
20 But if I cast out the demons by
the finger of Elohim, then the
Kingdom of YAHWEH is drawing
near to you.
21 When a strong man while armed
keeps watch over his courtyard, his
property is in peace.
22 But if one comes who is stronger
than him and overcomes him, he will
take away all his armor, that which he
had trusted in. And he will divide his
spoil.
23 The one not being with Me is
against Me. And the one not gathering
with Me scatters.
24 When the unclean spirit goes out
from the man, he goes through places
without water seeking rest. And not
finding, he says, I will return to my
house from where I came out.
25 And coming, he finds it having
been swept and having been
decorated.
26 Then he goes and takes seven
other spirits more wicked than
himself, and entering he dwells there.
And the last things of that man
become worse than the first.
27 And it happened in His saying
these things, lifting up her voice out of
the crowd a certain woman said to
Him, Blessed is the womb having
borne You and the breasts which
nursed you.
28 But He said, No; rather, blessed
are those hearing the Word of Elohim,
and keeping it.
29 And when the crowds were

gathered He began to say, This evil
generation seeks a sign, and a sign will
not be given to it except the sign of the
prophet Jonah.
30 For as Jonah was a sign to the
Ninevites, thus will also be the Son of
Man be a sign to this tribe.
31 The queen of the south will be
raised in the Judgment with the men
of this generation and will condemn
them because she came from the ends
of the earth to hear the wisdom of
Solomon. And, behold, a Greater than
Solomon is here.
32 The men of Nineveh will rise up
in the Judgment with this generation,
and will condemn it, because they
repented at the preaching of Jonah.
And, behold, a Greater than Jonah is
here.
33 No man lights a lamp and sets it
in a hidden place, or under a basket,
rather upon a lampstand so that those
who enter may see its light.
34 Your eye is the lamp of your body.
Therefore, when your eye is true, all
your body will also be bright. But if it
should be evil, your body will also be
dark.
35 Watch, then, that the light in you
is not darkness.
36 And if all your body is light and
does not have any dark portion, it will
be enlightened. All of it as a lamp by
its flame enlightens you.
37 And as He was speaking, a certain
Pharisee asked Him that He would
dine with him. And going in, He
reclined.
38 But watching, the Pharisee was
amazed that He did not first wash
before the dinner.[1]
39 But Yahshua said to him, Now
you Pharisees cleanse the outside of
the cup and of the dish, but your
inside is full of extortion and iniquity.
40 Fools! Did not He who made the
outside also make the inside?
41 But give alms of the things which
are within, and behold, all things are
clean to you.
42 But woe to you Pharisees,
because you tithe mint and dill and
every herb, and you pass over justice
and the love of Elohim. Now these
things were necessary for you to have
done, while not forsaking these other
things[2].
43 Woe to you, Pharisees! For you
love the chief seat in the synagogues
and the greetings in the marketplaces.
44 Woe to you scribes and Pharisees.
Hypocrites! For you are like graves
that are not known, and men walk
over them and do not realize it.
45 And answering, one of the
scribes[3] said to Him, Teacher, saying
these things you also insult us.
46 And He said, Woe to you also,
scribes! Because you burden men with
burdens hard to bear, and you
yourselves do not touch the burdens
with one of your fingers.
47 Woe to you! Because you build
the tombs of the prophets, and your
fathers killed them.
48 So you bear witness and consent
to the works of your fathers; for they
indeed killed them, and you build their
tombs.
49 Also because of this the wisdom
of Elohim said, Behold that I will send
prophets to them, and apostles of
whom they will persecute and kill
some,
50 that the blood of all the prophets
which has been shed from the

[1] Not that He did not wash at all but that He did not wash according to the oral tradition of the rabbis.

[2] Although justice and love take precedence, tithing is not to be neglected or one is stealing from YHWH, Mal 3:8-10

[3] Some translations use lawyers

foundation of the world may be required from this generation,
51 from the blood of Abel until the blood of Zechariah who perished between the altar and the House. Yea, I say to you, It will be required from this generation.
52 Woe to you, scribes[1]! Because you took the key of knowledge; you yourselves did not enter, and you kept out the ones entering.
53 And while He was speaking these things to them, the scribes and the Pharisees began to be displeased and they were enraged and criticized His words.
54 And they plotted against Him in many ways while seeking to seize something from His mouth in order to be able to accuse Him[2].

Chapter 12

1 At which time a multitude of many crowds being gathered together, so as to trample on one another, He began to say to His disciples First of all be wary inside yourselves of the leaven of the Pharisees which is hypocrisy.
2 And there is not anything that is covered that will not be revealed, or that is hidden that will not be known.
3 Therefore, whatever you said in the darkness will be heard in the light; and whatever you whispered in the ear in the closets will be proclaimed on the housetops
4 But I say to you, My friends, stop being afraid of the ones killing the body, and after these things not having anything more they can do.
5 But I will warn you whom you should fear; fear the One who after the killing has authority to cast into Gehenna; yea, I say to you, Fear that One! *(Math 10:28)*
6 Are not five sparrows sold for two coins? And not one of them has been forgotten before YAHWEH.
7 But even the hairs of your head have all been numbered. Then stop being afraid; you are more valuable than many sparrows.
8 But I say to you, Everyone who may confess Me before men, the Son of Man will also confess him before the cherubs of Elohim.
9 But he that denies Me before man shall be denied before the cherubs of Elohim.
10 And everyone who shall say a word against the Son of Man, it shall be forgiven Him; but the ones blaspheming against the Holy Spirit, it will not be forgiven.
11 And when they bring you into the assemblies before chiefs and authorities, do not be anxious about how your breath should depart, or what you should say.
12 for the Holy Spirit will teach you in that moment what is worthy that you should say.
13 And one from the crowd said to Him, Teacher, tell my brother to divide the inheritance with me.
14 But He said to him, Man, who appointed Me a judge or a divider over you?
15 And He said to his disciples, Beware of all the greediness, because life is not in the abundance of wealth.
16 And He spoke a parable to them, saying, A certain rich man produced well from the land.
17 And he reasoned within himself, saying, What may I do, for I have nowhere I may gather my fruits?
18 And he said, I will do this; I will tear down my barns and I will build larger; and I will gather there all my produce and my goods.

1 Some translations use lawyers
2 More than almost anything else YHWH hates people with a false accusing spirit. Pr 6:16-19

19 And I will say to my soul, Soul, you have many goods laid up for many years; take rest, eat, drink, and be glad.
20 But Elohim said to him, Fool! Your soul will be required from you in this night; and that which you prepared, to whom will it be?
21 Such is he who lays up treasures for himself, and does not abound in Elohim.
22 And He said to His disciples, Because of this I say to you, Do not be anxious as to your life, what you should eat; nor as to the body, what you should put on.
23 The life is more than the food and the body than the clothing.
24 Consider the ravens, for they do not sow, nor do they reap; to which there is no storehouse or barn, and YAHWEH feeds them. How much rather you differ from the birds!
25 And who of you by being anxious is able to add one cubit to his stature?
26 Then if you are not able to do even the least, why are you anxious about the rest?
27 Consider the lilies, how they grow, they do not labor, nor do they spin, but I say to you, Not even Solomon in all his glory was clothed as one of these.
28 But if Elohim so dresses the grass, which today is in the field and tomorrow is thrown into the oven, how much rather you, of little-faith?
29 And you, do not seek what you shall eat, or what you shall drink, nor let your mind be disturbed[1] by these things.
30 For all the nations of the world seek after these things, and your Father knows that you need these things.
31 But seek the kingdom of YAHWEH and all these things will be added to you.
32 Stop being afraid, little flock, because your Father was pleased to give you the kingdom.
33 Sell your possessions and give alms. Make for yourselves purses that do not grow old, an unfailing treasure in Heaven, where a thief cannot come near nor moth can corrupt.
34 For where your treasure is, there your heart will be also.
35 Let your loins be girded about, and the lamps burning,
36 and you be like men awaiting their Master when He returns from the wedding ceremony, so that He coming and knocking, they will at once open to Him.
37 Blessed are those slaves whom the Master will find when He comes to be awake. Truly I say to you that He will gird Himself and will make them recline, and coming up He will serve them.
38 And if He comes in the second watch, or He comes in the third watch, and finds it so, blessed are those slaves.
39 But know this, that if the housemaster had known the hour the thief is coming, he would have watched and would not have allowed his house to be dug through.
40 And you, then, be ready; for in that moment that you don't expect it, the Son of Man comes.
41 And Peter said to Him, Master, do You speak this parable to us, or also to all?
42 And the Master said, Who then is the faithful and wise steward whom the Master will set over His house servants, to give the portion of food in season?
43 Blessed is that slave when His Master comes and will find him so doing.

[1] Can also mean doubtful

44 Truly I say to you, He will set him over all His possessions.

45 But if that slave should say in his heart, My Master delays to come, and should begin to beat the men servants and the female servants, and to eat and to drink and be drunk,

46 the Master of that slave will come in the day in which he does not expect, and in an hour which he does not know. And He will divide him and will put his portion with the unfaithful.

47 But that slave knowing the will of His Master, and not preparing, nor doing according to His will, will be beaten with many stripes.

48 But he who does not know and does the thing that is worthy of stripes will be beaten with fewer stripes. For anyone who is given much to him, much is required from him. And to he whom they have committed much to him, much more they will require by his hand.

49 I came to hurl fire into the earth, and I desire it has been lit, if not already,?

50 But I have a baptism to be immersed in, and I am greatly afflicted until it is fulfilled.

51 Do you think that I came to give tranquility in the earth? No, I say to you, But rather division.

52 For from now on five in one house will have been divided, three against two, and two against three.

53 Father will be divided against son, and son against father; mother against daughter, and daughter against mother; mother-in-law against her bride, "and the bride against her mother-in-law." *(Mic. 7:6)*

54And He also said to the crowd, When you see the cloud rising up from the west, you immediately say, A storm is coming; and it happens so.

55 And when a south wind is blowing, you say, There will be heat; and it occurs.

56 Hypocrites! You know to discern the face of the earth and of the heaven, but how is it you do not discern this time?

57 And why do you not judge what is right even of yourselves?

58 For when you go with your accuser to the ruler while on your way, you barter with him and settle with him lest he take you to the judge and the judge will deliver you to the warden and cast you into prison.

59 I say to you, In no way may you leave there until you pay even the last coin.

Chapter 13

1 And some were present at the same time reporting to Him about the Galileans, whose blood Pilate mixed with their sacrifices.

2 And answering, Yahshua said to them, Do you think that these Galileans were sinners beyond all the Galileans, because they were killed this way?

3 No, I say to you, But if you do not repent[1], you will all likewise be destroyed.

4 Or those eighteen on whom the tower in Siloam fell, and killed them, do you think that these were sinners beyond all men who lived in Jerusalem?

5 No, I say to you, But if you do not repent, you will all likewise be destroyed.

6 And He spoke this parable: A man had planted a fig tree in his vineyard. And he came looking for fruit on it and did not find any.

7 And he said to the workers, Behold, three years I come looking for fruit on

---

[1] Repentance is always a prerequisite for forgiveness.

this fig tree, and found none. Cut it
down, and why should the ground be
wasted?
8 And a worker said to him, master,
leave it also this year until I shall dig
around it and throw manure;
9 Maybe it will produce fruit, and if
not, next year you may cut it down.
10 And He was teaching in one of the
synagogues on one of the Sabbaths.
11 And, behold, there was a woman
having a spirit of infirmity[1] eighteen
years, and was bent together and was
not able to straighten herself at all.
12 And seeing her, Yahshua called
her near and said to her, Woman, you
have been freed from your infirmity.
13 And He laid hands on her. And
instantly she straightened herself and
glorified Elohim.
14 But answering, being angry that
Yahshua healed on the Sabbath, the
synagogue ruler said to the crowd,
There are six days in which it is right
to work. Therefore, coming in these,
be healed, and not on the Sabbath day.
15 Then the Master answered him
and said, Hypocrite! Each one of you
on the Sabbath, does he not untie his
ox or his donkey from the manger, and
goes and waters it?
16 And this one being a daughter of
Abraham, whom Satan has bound, lo,
eighteen years, ought she not to be
freed from this bond on the Sabbath
day?
17 And on His saying these things, all
who were opposed to Him were
ashamed. And all the crowd rejoiced
over all the glorious things taking
place by Him.
18 And Yahshua said, What is the
kingdom of Elohim like? And what
shall I compare it to?
19 It is like a grain of mustard seed
that which a man took and cast it into
his garden and it grew and became a
large tree, and a bird of heaven nested
in its branches.
20 And again He said, To what shall
I compare the Kingdom of Elohim?
21 It is like leaven, which taking, a
woman buried in three measures of
flour until all was leavened.
22 And He would travel in the
villages and cities while teaching. And
He went to Jerusalem.
23 And a man asked Him, Master,
are the ones being saved few? But
Yahshua said to them,
24 Labor to enter in through the
narrow gate, for I say to you that many
will seek to enter in and will not have
strength.
25 From the hour that the Master of
the house rises and secures the door,
then they will stand outside and knock
on the door and begin to say, Our
Master! Our Master! Open to us! And
He will answer and He will say, I say
to you that I do not know you from
where you are.
26 Then you will begin to say, We ate
and drank in Your presence, and You
taught in our streets.
27 And He will say, I tell you I do not
know you, from where you are.
"Depart from Me all workers of
falsehood[2]!" *(Psa. 6:8)*
28 There will be weeping and
gnashing of the teeth when you see
Abraham and Isaac and Jacob and all
the prophets in the kingdom of
Elohim, but yourselves being thrust
outside[3].
29 And they will come from east and
west, and from north and south, and
will recline in the kingdom of
YAHWEH.
30 And, behold, there are last ones
who will be first, and there are first
ones who will be last. *(Luk 16:25)*

---

[1] From the Aramaic it seems she had rheumatism.

[2] Can also mean iniquity

[3] Dan 12:1-2, Math 8:11-12

31 In the same day, certain Pharisees came saying to Him, Go out and go on from here, for Herod desires to kill You.

32 And He said to them, Going, say to that fox, Behold, today and tomorrow I cast out demons and I complete cures, and the third day I will be finished.

33 Nevertheless, it is necessary for Me that today and tomorrow I work, and the day following I will go, because it is not possible that a prophet perish outside of Jerusalem.

34 Jerusalem! Jerusalem! The one killing the prophets, and stoning those having been sent to her, how often I desired to gather your children in the way a hen gathers her chicks under her wings, and you did not want it.

35 Behold, "your house is left to you desolate." And truly I say to you, You shall not at all see Me again until it you say, "Blessed is He who comes in the name of YAHWEH.[1]" *(Jer. 22:5; Psa. 118:26)*

Chapter 14

1 And it occurred, on His going into a house of one of the Pharisee leaders on a Sabbath to eat bread, even they were closely observing Him.

2 And behold, a certain man who had dropsy was before Him.

3 And answering, Yahshua spoke to the scribes and Pharisees, asking whether it is lawful to heal on the Sabbath.

4 And they were silent. And taking the man, He cured him and let him go.

5 And answering to them He said, Which of you if his son or his ox shall fall into a pit, and he will not at once pull it up on the Sabbath day?

6 And they were not able to reply to Him against these things.

7 And He was speaking a parable to them who were invited there, because He was seeing those who were choosing places among the front seats.

8 When you are invited by anyone to wedding feasts, do not recline at the chief seat lest one more honorable than you be invited by him,

9 and coming, he who invited you will say to you, Give this one place. And then you begin with shame to take the last place.

10 But when you are invited, going in, recline at the last place, so that when he who has invited you may come, he may say to you, Friend, go up higher. Then glory will be to you before those reclining with you.

11 For everyone exalting himself will be humbled, and the one humbling himself will be exalted.

12 And He also said to him who had invited Him, When you make a dinner or supper, do not call your friends, nor your brothers, nor your relatives, nor rich neighbors, lest they also should invite you in return, and it become a repayment to you.

13 But when you make a banquet, call the poor, the crippled, the lame, the blind;

14 and then you will be blessed, for they have nothing to repay you. For it will be repaid to you in the resurrection of the just.

15 And one of those reclining with Him, hearing these things, he said to Him, Blessed are those eating bread in the kingdom of Elohim.

16 But He said to him, A certain man made a great supper and invited many.

17 And he sent his slave at the supper hour to say to those who had

1 The good news today is primarily to the Northern tribes of Israel (Math 10-5-6), but in the end time YHWH will also work with Judah again, Zech 12:10.

been invited, Come, for now all is ready.

18 And all with one mind began to beg off. The first said to him, I have bought a field, and I have need to go out and see it; I ask you, have me excused.

19 And another said, I bought five yoke of oxen and I am going to try them out; I ask you, have me excused.

20 And another said, I married a wife, and for this reason I am not able to come.

21 And having come up that slave reported these things to his Master. Then being angry, the housemaster said to his slave, Go out quickly into the streets and lanes of the city, and bring in here the poor and maimed and lame and blind ones.

22 And the slave said, Sir, it has been done as you ordered, and still there is room.

23 And the Master said to the slave, Go out into the highways and hedges and compel them to come in, so that my house may be filled.

24 For I say to you that not one of those men who had been invited shall taste of my supper.

25 And great crowds came together to Him. And turning, He said to them,

26 If anyone comes to Me and does not love less than Me, his father, and mother, and wife, and children, and brothers and sisters, and besides, even his own life, he cannot be My disciple.

27 And whoever does not bear his torture stake and come after Me, he cannot be My disciple.

28 For who of you desiring to build a tower does not first sit down and count the cost, whether he has the things to finish;

29 that having laid a foundation, and not having strength to finish, all those seeing begin to mock him,

30 saying, This man began to build, and did not have strength to finish.

31 Or what king going to attack another king in war does not first sit down and take counsel whether he is able with ten thousand to meet those coming upon him with twenty thousands?

32 But if not, he being still far off, sending a delegation, he asks the things for peace.

33 So then every one of you who does not forsake all his possessions is not able to be My disciple[1].

34 Salt is good, but if the salt becomes bland, with what will it be seasoned?

35 It is not fit for soil nor for manure; they throw it out. The one having ears to hear, let him hear.

Chapter 15

1 And all the tax collectors and sinners were coming near to Him, to hear Him.

2 And the Pharisees and the scribes murmured, saying, This one receives sinners and eats with them.

3 And He spoke to them this parable, saying,

4 What man of you having a hundred sheep, and losing one of them, does not leave the ninety nine in the open and go after the lost one until he finds it?

5 And finding it, he puts it on his shoulders, rejoicing.

6 And coming to the house, he calls together the friends and neighbors, saying to them, Rejoice with me, for I

[1] There is a great cost to discipleship that has been mostly lost in the watered down false gospel message being preached today. This verse is not saying that you cannot have physical things in your possession, but that you must realize all belongs to YHWH and use anything you have for the Kingdom.

have found my sheep that had been lost.
7 I say to you that so is joy in Heaven over one sinner repenting, than over ninety nine righteous ones who have no need of repentance.
8 Or what woman having ten drachmas, if she loses one drachma does not light a lamp and sweep the house, and look carefully until she finds it?
9 And finding it, she calls together the friends and neighbors, saying, Rejoice with me, for I have found the drachma which I lost.
10 I say to you, So there is joy before the cherubs of Elohim over one sinner repenting.
11 And Yahshua would say to them again, A certain man had two sons.
12 And his younger son said to him, My father, give to me the portion that is coming to me from your estate. And he divided to them his possessions.
13 And not many days after, gathering up all things, the younger son went away to a distant country. And there he wasted his property, living lavishly.
14 But having spent all his things, a severe famine came throughout that country, and he began to be in need.
15 And going, he was joined to one of the citizens of that country. And he sent him into his fields to feed pigs.
16 And he longed to fill his stomach from the husks which the pigs ate, but no one gave to him.
17 But coming to himself he said, How many servants of my father have plenty of bread, and I am perishing with famine.
18 Rising up, I will go to my father, and I will say to him, Father, I sinned against Heaven and before you,
19 and I am no longer worthy to be called your son. Make me as one of your hired servants.
20 And rising up, he came to his father. But he yet being far away, his father saw him and was moved with compassion. And running, he fell on his neck and kissed him.
21 And the son said to him, Father, I have sinned against Heaven and before you, and no longer am I worthy to be called your son.
22 But the father said to his slaves, Bring out the best robe and clothe him, and give a ring for his hand and sandals for his feet.
23 And bring the fattened calf, slaughter and let us eat and be merry;
24 for this son of mine was dead, and lives again, and was lost, yet was found. And they began to be merry.
25 But the older son was in a field. And having come, as he drew near to the house, he heard the sound of singing of many.
26 And having called one of the boys, he inquired what this may be.
27 And he said to him, Your brother came, and your father killed the fattened calf, because he received him back in health.
28 But he was angry and did not desire to go in. Then coming out, his father begged him.
29 But answering, he said to the father, Behold, so many years I have served you, and I have never transgressed your commandments. And you never gave a goat to me, so that I might be merry with my friends.
30 But when this son of yours came, the one devouring your living with harlots, you killed the fattened calf for him.
31 But he said to him, My son, you are with me at all times, and everything that is mine is yours.
32 But to be merry and to rejoice was right, for this brother of yours was dead, and lives again; and being lost, also he was found.

Chapter 16

1 And He also said to His disciples, A certain man was rich; and he had a steward, and this one was accused to him as squandering his wealth.
2 And his master called him and said to him, What is this that I hear concerning you? Give to me an account of your stewardship, for you are not able any longer to be a steward for me.
3 And the steward said within himself, What shall I do, for my Master is taking away the stewardship from me? I am not able to dig, and I am ashamed to beg.
4 I know what I will do, that when I am removed from the stewardship, they will receive me into their houses.
5 And having called to him each one of the debtors of his Master, he said to the first, How much do you owe my Master?
6 And he said, A hundred baths of oil. And he said to him, Take your statements and sitting quickly write fifty.
7 Then he said to another, And you, how much do you owe? And he said, a hundred bushels of wheat. And he said to him, Take your statement and write eighty.
8 And the Master applauded the unrighteous steward, because he acted prudently. For the sons of this age are more prudent than the sons of light themselves are in their generation.
9 And I also say to you, if you make for yourself friends from their wealth of injustice, when it is consumed, they will receive you into their everlasting habitations.
10 He faithful in the least is also faithful in much. And he unrighteous in the least is also unrighteous in much.
11 Then if you were not faithful in the unrighteous mammon, who will entrust the true to you?
12 And if you were not faithful in that of another, who will give to you that which is yours?
13 No servant is able to serve two Masters; for either he will hate the one, and he will love the other; or he will cling to one, and he will despise the other. You are unable to serve YAHWEH and wealth.
14 And being lovers of money, the Pharisees also heard all these things; and they mocked Him.
15 And Yahshua said to them, You are those justifying yourselves before men, but YAHWEH knows your hearts; for the thing highly prized among men is abominable before Elohim.
16 The Law and the Prophets were until John; from then the Kingdom of YAHWEH is being preached, and everyone is pressing into it to enter.
17 But it is easier for the heaven and the earth to pass away than one letter of the Torah to pass away[1].
18 Everyone divorcing his wife, and marrying another, commits adultery. And everyone marrying her who has been divorced from a husband commits adultery.
19 And there was a certain rich man; and he was accustomed to don a purple robe and fine linen, making merry in luxury day by day. *(Rev 17:4)*
20 And there was a certain poor one named Eliazar[2] and he would lay at the

---

1 It is stunning with verses as clear as this that Christian ministers can still try to claim the the Torah is done away with.

2 Eliazar was the servant of Abraham (Gen 15:1-2) and this parable is about gentiles having the same covenant promises as Israelites. The Greek calls this man Lazarus which means "*without help*" wherefore the Aramaic calls him Eliazar meaning *"my help is El."*

gate of that rich man, while being
afflicted with sores. *(1 Thes 1:4-6)*
21 and longing to be filled from the
crumbs that were falling from the
table of the rich one. But coming, even
the dogs licked his sores.
22 And it happened, the poor one
died and was carried away by the
cherubs into the bosom of Abraham.
And the rich one also died and was
buried[1].
23 And being in torments[2] in
sheyul[3], lifting up his eyes, he sees
Abraham afar off and Eliazar in his
bosom.
24 And calling he said, Father
Abraham, have pity on me and send
Eliazar that he may dip the tip of his
finger in water and moisten my
tongue, for I am tormented by this
flame[4].
25 But Abraham said, My Son,
remember that you fully received your
good things in your lifetime, and
Eliazar likewise the bad things. But
now he is comforted, and you are
tormented. *(Luk 16:9, Luk 13:30)*
26 And besides all these things, a
great chasm has been fixed between us
and you, so that those desiring to pass
from here to you are not able, nor can
they pass from there to us[5].
27 And he said, Then I beg you,
father, that you send him to my
father's house;
28 (for I have five brothers, so that
he may witness to them, that they not
also come to this place of torment).
29 Abraham said to him, They have
Moses and the Prophets, let them hear
them.[6]
30 But he said, No, father Abraham,
but if one should go from the dead to
them[7], they will repent.
31 And he said to him, "If they do
not listen to Moses and the prophets,
they would also not listen and believe
him if a man from the dead should rise
they still would not believe him.[8]"

Chapter 17

1 And Yahshua said to the disciples,
It is impossible that the offenses
should not come, but woe to him by
whose hand they come!

---

1 Neither of these men were taken to heaven upon death, but both were buried. Being in Abraham's bosom simply meant to be in his protection and have the same covenant promises that he did. Num 11:12 shows Moses using the same terminology to Israel. Also see Joh 1:18. Abraham did not go to heaven upon his death (Gen 25:8), but is still lying in the tomb of Machpelah in Hebron.

2 The Aramaic word means mental anguish and comes from the root word to pace.

3 This word sheyul simply means the grave or dirt that he was buried in. When he lifts his eyes, there is no time element explained but clearly this is the second resurrection (Rev 20:11-13).

4 He is having mental anguish as he realizes that he is not in Yahweh's Kingdom and is about to be thrown into the Lake of Fire. If he was already burning in the fire, then it would be most odd that he is only asking for Eliazar to give him a drop of water and not buckets to put the fire out. The analogy is the water is representing the Holy Spirit and the rich man was not seeking the Holy Spirit from Yahweh. The Judgment is final.

5 Since there is no consciousness in death, the rich man has no idea that thousands of years has passed since he died to the resurrection, and he has no idea the great gulf that is mentioned is the people inside the Kingdom to those who were cast out. (Luk 13:27-28, Rev 22:14-15, Math 25:46, Ps 36:5-6)

6 Rev 20:11-12, Eccl 12:13, Joh 5:42-47

7 The parable is about the resurrection

8 Another strong verse giving the authority to receive eternal life based on obeying the Torah. Clearly, if one is not prepared to obey the Torah and prophets, then they are not a true believer in Messiah who rose from the dead. (Joh 14:15, 21. Mal 4:4-6. Luk 24:13-16, 24-27).

2 It is better for him if a millstone turned by a donkey is put around his neck, and he be thrown into the sea, than that he should cause to stumble one of these little ones.

3 Take heed to yourselves. And if your brother sins against you, rebuke him; and if he repents, forgive him.

4 And if seven times of the day he sins against you, and seven times of the day turns to you saying, I repent, you shall forgive him.

5 And the apostles said to our Master, Give us more faith.

6 He said to them, If you had faith as a grain of mustard, you may say to this sycamore tree, Be rooted up and be planted in the sea! And it would obey you.

7 But which of you having a servant plowing or tending a flock will immediately say to him coming out of the field, Come, recline?

8 But will he not say to him, Prepare something what I may eat, and having girded yourself, serve me until I eat and drink, and after these things you shall eat and drink?

9 What thanks does he receive, that servant, because he did the thing that he was commanded? I don't think so!

10 Likewise even you, when you have done all the things that are commanded, you say that we are idle servants because we have done only what we ought to do.

11 And it happened in His going to Jerusalem even He passed through the midst of Samaria and Galilee.

12 And He entering into a certain village, ten leprous men met Him, who stood from a distance.

13 And they lifted their voice, saying, Yahshua, our Master, have mercy on us.

14 And when He saw them He said to them, Go show yourselves to the priests, and they were cleansed while they were going.

15 But one of them, when he saw that he was cleansed returned and with a loud voice was giving praise to YAHWEH.

16 And he fell on his face at His feet, thanking Him. And he was a Samaritan.

17 And answering, Yahshua said, Were not the ten cleansed? But where are the nine?

18 For what did they separate that they should come and give praise to Elohim? Only this man did, who is from a foreign people.

19 And He said to him, Rising up, go! Your faith has given you life.

20 And being questioned by the Pharisees as to when the kingdom of YAHWEH comes, He answered them and said, The kingdom of YAHWEH does not come with observation;

21 nor will they say, Lo, here! Or, Lo, there! For behold the kingdom of YAHWEH is in your midst.

22 And He said to the disciples, Days will come when you will long to see one of the days of the Son of Man, and will not see.

23 And they will say to you, Lo, here! Or, Lo, there! Do not go away, nor follow.

24 As for flashes lightning from heaven, and all that is under heaven is lit. Such will be the Son of Man in His day.

25 But first it is necessary that He suffer many things and be rejected by that generation.

26 And as it was in the days of Noah, so also it will be in the days of the Son of Man.

27 They were eating, drinking, marrying, giving in marriage, until the day Noah went into the ark. And the flood came and destroyed all.

28 And likewise, as it was in the days

of Lot, they were eating, drinking,
buying, selling, planting, building;
29 but on the day Lot went out from
Sodom, YAHWEH rained down fire
and brimstone from the heaven and
destroyed all of them.
30 According to those things, it will
be in the day the Son of Man is
revealed.
31 In that day, he who will be on the
housetop, let him not go down to take
his goods from the house. And
likewise, he in the field, let him not
return to the things behind.
32 Remember Lot's wife.
33 Whoever seeks to save his life, he
will lose it. And whoever will lose it, he
will preserve it.
34 I say to you, In that night two will
be on one bed; the one will be taken
and the other will be left.
35 Two will be grinding together;
one will be taken and the other will be
left.
36 Two will be in the field, the one
will be taken and the other will be left.
37 And answering, they said to Him,
To Where our Master? And He said to
them, Where the carcass is, there the
eagles will be gathered together.

Chapter 18

1 And He also spoke a parable to
them to teach it is always right to pray,
and not become weary,
2 saying, A certain judge was in a
certain city, who did not fear Elohim
and who did not regard the sons of
man.
3 And a widow was in that city, and
she came to him, saying, Avenge me
from my accuser.
4 And for a time he would not. But
after these things he said to himself,
Even if I do not fear Elohim, and do
not respect man,
5 Yet, because this widow troubles
me, I will avenge her that it should not
at all occur that she comes at times
and wears me down.
6 And our Master said, Hear what
the unjust judge says;
7 Will not Elohim do all the more
vengeance for His elect who call on
Him by day and by night? And He will
be long-suffering with them.
8 I say to you that He will do their
vengeance quickly. Nevertheless, the
Son of Man will indeed come, and will
He find faith on earth[1]?
9 And He also spoke this parable to
some of those relying on themselves,
that they are righteous, and despising
the rest:
10 Two men went up into the
sanctuary to pray, the one a Pharisee,
and the other a tax collector.
11 The Pharisee was standing,
praying these things to himself:
Elohim, I thank You that I am not as
the rest of men, extortioners, covetous,
adulterers, or even as this tax
collector.
12 I fast twice in the week; I tithe all
things, as many as I get.
13 And standing at a distance, the
tax collector would not even lift up his
eyes to Heaven, but smote on his
breast, saying, Elohim, be merciful to
me, a sinner!
14 I say to you, This one went down
to his house having been justified,
rather than that one. For everyone
exalting himself will be humbled. And
the one humbling himself will be
exalted.
15 And they brought infants to Him
also, that He might touch them. But
seeing, the disciples rebuked them.
16 But Yahshua called them near,
saying, Allow the children to come to

[1] A rhetorical question that can only be understood truly in these faithless end times that we live in.

Me, and do not prevent them. For of
such is the kingdom of YAHWEH.
17 Truly I say to you, Whoever does
not receive the kingdom of YAHWEH
like a child, not at all will enter into it.
18 And a certain ruler asked Him
saying, Good Teacher, what may I do
to inherit eternal life?
19 But Yahshua said to him, Why do
you say Me to be good? No one is
good, except One: YAHWEH.
20 You know the commandments:
"Do not commit adultery, do not
murder, do not steal, do not bear false
witness, honor your father and your
mother." *(Ex. 20:12-16)*
21 And he said, I have kept all these
from my youth.
22 And hearing these things,
Yahshua said to him, Yet one thing is
lacking to you: sell all, as much as you
have, and give to the poor; and you
will have treasure in Heaven. And
come, follow Me.
23 But having heard these things, he
became very sad, for he was
exceedingly rich.
24 And having seen him becoming
very sad, Yahshua said, How hardly
those having riches shall enter into the
kingdom of YAHWEH!
25 For it is easier for a heavy rope to
go in through a needle's eye than for a
rich one to enter into the kingdom of
YAHWEH.[1]
26 And those hearing said, And who
is able to be saved?
27 But He said, The things
impossible with men are possible with
YAHWEH.
28 And Peter said, Behold, we left all
and followed You.
29 And He said to them, Truly I say
to you, There is no one who has left
house, or parents, or brothers, or wife,
or children, for the sake of the
kingdom of YAHWEH,
30 who shall not receive many times
more in this time, and in the age that
is coming, everlasting life.
31 And having taken aside the
Twelve, Yahshua said to them, Behold,
we are going up to Jerusalem, and all
things will be fulfilled which have been
written through the prophets to the
Son of Man.
32 For He will be delivered up to the
Gentiles, and will be mocked, and will
be insulted, and will be spat upon.
33 And scourging Him, they will kill
Him. And on the third day He will rise
again.
34 And they did not comprehend
these things, nothing! And this saying
had been hidden from them, and they
did not know the things being said.
35 And it happened as He drew near
to Jericho, a certain blind one sat by
the highway, begging.
36 And a crowd passing through, he
asked what this might be.
37 And they reported to him that
Yahshua the Nazarene is passing by.
38 And he cried out, saying,
Yahshua, Son of David, have mercy on
me!
39 And those going before rebuked
him, that he be quiet. But he much
more cried out, Son of David, have
mercy on me!
40 And Yahshua stood still and
commanded that they bring him to
Him. And when He was near to him,
He asked him
41 saying, What do you desire I do to
you? And he said, Master that I may
see again.
42 And Yahshua said to him, See
again! Your faith has healed you.
43 And instantly he saw again. And
he followed Him, glorifying
YAHWEH. And seeing, all the people
gave praise to YAHWEH.

---
1 See note on Math 19:24

Chapter 19

1 And going in, He passed through Jericho.
2 And, behold, a man called by name Zaccheus; and he was a chief tax collector, and he was rich.
3 And he was seeking to see Yahshua, who He is. And he was not able, because of the crowd, and he was little in stature.
4 And running ahead, he went up onto a sycamore tree[1], so that he might see Him; for He was going to pass through that way.
5 And as He came to the place, looking up, Yahshua saw him, and said to him, Zaccheus, hurry, come down, for today I must stay in your house.
6 And having hastened, he came down and welcomed Him, rejoicing.
7 And having seen, all murmured, saying, He has gone in to stay with a sinful man.
8 But standing, Zaccheus said to the Master, Behold, Master, half of my possessions I give to the poor. And if in anything I accused anyone falsely, I restore it fourfold.
9 And Yahshua said to him, Today salvation has come to this house, for he also is a son of Abraham.
10 For the Son of Man came to seek and to save the one being lost.
11 But as they were hearing these things, He spoke, adding a parable, because He was near to Jerusalem, and they thought that the kingdom of Elohim was immediately to be revealed.
12 Then He said: A certain well-born man went to a distant country to receive a kingdom for himself, and to return.
13 And calling ten of his slaves, he gave to them ten minas and said to them, Trade and keep busy until I come.
14 But the citizens of his city hated him and sent ambassadors after him. And they were saying, "We do not want this man to rule over us."
15 And it happened as he returned, having received the kingdom, he even said for those servants to be called to him, those to whom he gave the silver, that he might know what each had gained by trading.
16 And the first came, saying, Master, your mina has gained ten minas.
17 And he said to him, Well done, good slave! Because you were faithful in a least thing, have authority over ten cities.
18 And the second came, saying, Master, your mina has made five minas.
19 And he said to this one also, And you be over five cities.
20 And another came, saying, Master, behold your mina which I have stored up in a facecloth.
21 For I feared you, because you are a harsh man, taking what you did not lay down, and reaping what you did not sow.
22 But he said to him, I will judge you out of your own mouth, wicked slave. You knew that I am a harsh man, taking what I did not lay down, and reaping what I did not sow.
23 And why did you not give my silver on the bank table? And coming, I might have exacted it with interest.
24 And to those standing by, he said, Take the mina from him, and give it to him who has ten minas.
25 And they said to him, Master, he has ten minas.
26 For I say to you, To everyone who has, it will be given. And from the one

[1] The Hebrew word for Sycamore is *'Shickma' a*nd means redemption, showing about the change that was to come.

who does not have, even what he has will be taken from him.
27 But to those my enemies who did not desire that I rule over them, bring them and execute them before me!"
28 And saying these things, He went in front, going up to Jerusalem.
29 And it happened as He drew near to Bethphage and Bethany toward the Mount called of Olives, He sent two of the disciples,
30 saying, Go into the village opposite you, in which having entered you will find a colt having been tied up, on which no one of men ever yet sat. Untying it, bring it.
31 And if anyone asks, Why do you untie it? You shall say to them, our Master has need of it.
32 And going, those having been sent found as He told them.
33 And as they were untying the colt, its owners said to them, Why do you untie the colt?
34 And they said, The Master has need of it.
35 And they led it to Yahshua. And throwing their garments on the colt, they put Yahshua on it.
36 And as He went, they were spreading their garments in the highway.
37 And as He was already drawing near to the descent of the Mount of Olives, all the multitude of the disciples began rejoicing, to praise YAHWEH with a loud voice concerning all the works of power which they saw,
38 saying, "Blessed is the One coming in the name of YAHWEH," the King. Peace in Heaven, and glory in the highest! *(Psa. 118:26)*
39 And some of the Pharisees from the crowd said to Him, Rabbi, rebuke your disciples.
40 And answering, He said to them, I say to you, If these should be silent, the stones will cry out.
41 And as He drew near, seeing the city, He wept over it,
42 saying, If you had known, even you, even at least in this day of yours, the things for your peace! But now they were hidden from your eyes.
43 But to you will come the days when your enemies will surround you, and will oppress you from all sides.
44 And will overthrow you and your children within you, and they will not leave in you a stone upon another, because you did not know the time of your visitation.
45 And entering into the sanctuary, He began to throw out those selling and buying in it,
46 saying to them, It has been written, 'My house is a house of prayer," but you made it "a den of robbers." *(Isa. 56:7; Jer. 7:11)*
47 And He was teaching day by day in the sanctuary. But the chief priests and the scribes and the chief men of the people sought to kill Him.
48 And they did not find what they might do; for all the people were clinging to hear Him.

Chapter 20

1 And it happened on one of those days, as He was teaching the people and proclaiming the good news in the sanctuary, the chief priests and the scribes rose against Him,
2 and spoke to Him, saying, Tell us by what authority You do these things, or who is it who gave to You this authority?
3 And answering, He said to them, I will also ask you one thing, and you tell me:
4 The baptism of John, was it from Heaven, or from men?
5 And they reasoned with

themselves, saying, If we say, From
Heaven, He will say, Then why did you
not believe him?
6 But if we say, From men, all the
people will stone us, for they are being
convinced that John was a prophet.
7 And they answered; they did not
know from where it is.
8 And Yahshua said to them, Neither
do I tell you by what authority I do
these things.
9 And He began to speak this
parable to the people: A certain man
planted a vineyard and let it out to
vinedressers. And He left the country
for long periods of time. *(Isa. 5:1, 2)*
10 And in season, He sent a servant
to the vinedressers, that they might
give him the fruit of the vineyard. But
the vinedressers sent him away empty,
beating him.
11 And He again sent another
servant. But they also sent that one
away empty, beating and insulting
him.
12 And He again sent a third. But
they also threw this one out, wounding
him.
13 And the Master of the vineyard
said, What shall I do? I will send My
beloved Son. Perhaps they will see
Him and be ashamed.
14 And having seen Him, the vine-
dressers reasoned with themselves,
saying, This is the heir. Come let us
kill Him so that the inheritance may
become ours.
15 And throwing Him out of the
vineyard, they killed Him. Therefore,
what will the Master of the vineyard
do to them?
16 He will come and will destroy
these vinedressers and will give the
vineyard to others. And hearing this,
they said, This will not happen!
17 But He stared at them and said,
And what is that which is written, "The
stone that the builders rejected has
become the cornerstone." *(Psa.
118:22)*
18 Everyone falling on that Stone
will be broken in pieces but on
whomever It falls, It will destroy him.
(Dan. 2:44)
19 And the chief priests and the
scribes sought to lay hands on Him in
that hour. And they feared the people,
for they knew that He told this parable
against them.
20 And they sent spies to Him who
appeared to be righteous men to catch
Him in discourse and to deliver Him
to the judge and to the authority of the
governor.
21 And they asked Him and said to
Him, Teacher we know that you speak
and teach rightly, and You are not a
hypocrite. Rather, You teach the way
of Elohim in truth.
22 Is it lawful to give the head tax to
Caesar, or not?
23 But perceiving their slyness, He
said to them, Why do you tempt Me?
24 Show Me a denarius. Whose
image and superscription does it have?
And answering, they said, Caesar's.
25 And He said to them, Then give
back the things of Caesar to Caesar,
and the things of Elohim to Elohim.
26 And they were not able to get one
word from Him before the people. And
they marveled at His answer, and they
kept silent.
27 And some of the Sadducees
coming up, those speaking against a
resurrection, that it was not to be, they
questioned Him,
28 saying, Teacher, Moses wrote to
us, If anyone's brother dies having a
wife, and this one should die childless,
that his brother should take the wife
and raise up seed to his brother.
(Deut. 25:5)
29 Then there were seven brothers.
And having taken a wife, the first died
childless.

30 And the second took the wife, and this one died childless.
31 And the third took her, and likewise also the seven did not leave children, and died.
32 And last of all the woman died.
33 Then in the resurrection, of which of them does she become wife? For the seven had her as wife.
34 And answering, Yahshua said to them, The sons of this world marry and are given in marriage.
35 But those counted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry nor are given in marriage.
36 For they are not able to die any more; they are as to the cherubs, and are sons of YAHWEH, being sons of the resurrection.
37 But that the dead are raised, even Moses pointed out at the Bush, when he calls YAHWEH "the Elohim of Abraham, the Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of Jacob." *(Ex. 3:6)*
38 But He is not Elohim of the dead, but of the living, for all live to Him.
39 And answering, some of the scribes said, Teacher, You speak well.
40 And they did not dare to question Him any more, not a thing.
41 And He said to them, How do they say the Messiah is David's son?
42 Even David himself said in the Book of Psalms, "YAHWEH said to my Adonai, Sit at My right hand
43 until I place the enemies to You as a footstool under Your feet." *(Psa. 110:1)*
44 Then David calls Him Adonai. And how is He His son?
45 And as all the people were listening, He said to His disciples,
46 Beware of the scribes, those desiring to walk about in long robes, and liking greetings in the markets, and chief seats in the synagogues, and chief places at banquets.
47 Those who devour the houses of widows with the pretense of prolonging their prayers, they will receive a greater judgment.

Chapter 21

1 And having looked up, He saw the rich ones putting their gifts into the treasury.
2 And He also saw a certain poor widow putting two lepta there.
3 And He said, Truly I say to you, This poor widow put in more than all.
4 For all of them have cast into the house of offering of Elohim from what was in excess to them, but this one from her poverty. She has cast in all that she had owned.
5 And as some were speaking about the sanctuary, that it had been adorned with beautiful stones and gifts, He said,
6 These things that you see, the days will come in which not one stone will be spared. There will not be one stone upon another that is not pulled down.
7 And they asked Him, saying, Teacher, then when will these things be? And what will be the sign when these things are about to happen?
8 And He said, Watch that you are not deceived. For many will come on My name, saying, I AM the Messiah! Also, the time has come! Do not go after them.
9 And when you hear of wars and revolutions, do not have fear, for they are necessary first to happen, but the end is not at once.
10 Then He said to them, Nation will be lifted up against nation, and kingdom against kingdom.
11 And there will be severe earthquakes from place to place and famine and plagues. And there will be fears and terrorist acts and great signs

will be seen from Heaven. And the
winters will be severe.
12 But before these things, they will
lay hands upon you and persecute you.
And they will deliver you to the
assemblies and to the prisons. And
they will bring you before kings and
governors because of My name.
13 But it will return to you for a
testimony.
14 Then put into your hearts not to
premeditate to make a defense.
15 For I will give you a mouth and
wisdom which all those opposing you
will not be able to withstand or
contradict.
16 And your parents and your
brothers and your relatives and your
friends will betray you. And they will
kill some of you.
17 And you will be hated by all
because of My name.
18 And a hair of your head shall in
no way perish.
19 By your patience[1] you will gain
your souls.
20 And when you see Jerusalem
being encircled by armies, then
recognize that its destruction has come
near.
21 Then let those in Judea flee into
the mountains; and those in its midst,
let them go out. And those in the
villages let them not go into her.
22 For these are days of vengeance
when all things that have been written
are to be fulfilled.
23 But woe to the pregnant women,
and the ones nursing in those days; for
great distress will be on the earth and
wrath on this people.
24 And they will fall by the mouth of
the sword and will be led captive to all
the nations. And Jerusalem will be
trodden down by nations, until the
times of the nations are fulfilled.

[1] This word means cheerful endurance, constancy.

25 And there will be signs in the sun
and moon and stars. And on the earth
will be anxiety of nations with
bewilderment, roaring of sea and of
surf,
26 men fainting from fear, and
expectation of the things coming on
the earth. For the powers of the
heavens will be shaken.
27 And then they will see the Son of
Man coming in a cloud with power and
much glory. *(Dan. 7:13)*
28 But when these things begin to
happen, have courage and lift up your
heads, because your salvation draws
near.
29 And He spoke a parable to them:
You see the fig tree and all the trees.
30 Now when they sprout leaves,
seeing it, you will know from
yourselves that now the summer is
near.
31 So also when you see these things
happening, you know that the
kingdom of YAHWEH is near.
32 Truly I say to you, In no way will
this generation pass away until all
these things shall occur.
33 The heaven and the earth will
pass away, but My Words will not pass
away, never!
34 But beware in yourselves that
your hearts never become heavy by
extravagance and by drunkenness and
by distress of the world, and that day
should come suddenly upon you
35 as a snare, for it will come in on
all those sitting on the face of all the
earth. *(Isa. 24:17)*
36 Then be watchful at every time,
begging that you be counted worthy to
escape all these things, the things
being about to happen, and to stand
before the Son of Man.
37 And in the days, He was teaching
in the sanctuary. And going out in the
nights, He lodged in the Mountain
called House of Olives.

38 And all the people came early to Him in the sanctuary, to hear Him.

Chapter 22

1 And the Feast of Unleavened Bread, being called Passover, drew near.
2 And the chief priests and the scribes sought how to destroy Him; for they feared the people.
3 And Satan entered into Judas, the one having been called Iscariot, being of the number of the Twelve.
4 And going, he talked with the chief priests and the commanders as to how he might deliver Him up.
5 And they exulted, and they agreed to give him silver.
6 And he fully consented and sought opportunity to betray Him to them, away from the crowd.
7 And the day of the Unleavened came, on which the Passover must be slaughtered[1].
8 And He sent Peter and John, saying, Having gone, prepare for us the Passover, that we may eat.
9 And they said to Him, Where do You desire that we prepare?
10 And He said to them, Behold when you enter into the city you will meet up with a man who is bearing a skin of water. Go after him and where he enters,
11 And you will say to the housemaster of that house, Our Master says to you, Where is the guest room where I may eat the Passover with My disciples?
12 And that one will show you a large upper room which he has furnished. Prepare there.
13 And having gone, they found as He had told them, and they prepared the Passover[2].
14 And when the hour came, He reclined, and the twelve apostles with Him.
15 And He said to them, I have greatly desired that I eat this Passover with you before I suffer.
16 For I say to you that from now on, I will not eat of it again until when it is fulfilled in the kingdom of YAHWEH!
17 And taking a cup, giving thanks, He said, Take this and divide it among yourselves.
18 For I say to you that I will not drink from the produce of the vine again until the kingdom of YAHWEH comes!
19 And He took bread and gave thanks and broke it and gave it to them and said, This is My body, which for your sake is given. Do this for My memorial.
20 And in like manner the cup, after having supped, saying, This cup is the New Covenant in My blood, which is being shed for your sakes.
21 But, behold, the hand of My betrayer is on the table with Me!
22 And, indeed, the Son of Man goes according as was determined, but woe to that man by whom He is betrayed!
23 And they began to inquire among themselves who then it may be of them, the one being about to do this.
24 And there was also a dispute among them, who of them seems to be greater.

---

1 This verse clearly shows that the Passover was killed on the beginning portion of the 14th of Aviv. Some have falsely assumed that Yahshua died at the same time the lambs were being killed, however scripture never states this, and while Yahshua is being crucified, the chief priests were there mocking him (Mk 15:31-32). If the Passover lambs were being killed at the same time that Yahshua is being crucified, It is highly unlikely that the priests wouldn't have been at the temple.

2 Yahshua ate the Passover on the beginning of the 14th of Aviv according to scripture Ex 12:6.

25 And Yahshua said to them, The
kings of the Gentiles are their masters
and those who are authorities over
them are called doers of good.
26 But you be not so, but the greater
among you, let him be as the lesser;
and the one governing as the one
serving.
27 For who is greater, the one
reclining, or the one serving? Is it not
the one reclining? But I am in your
midst as One serving.
28 But you are those continuing with
Me during my trial.
29 And I appoint a kingdom to you,
as My Father appointed to Me,
30 that you may eat and drink at My
table in My kingdom; and you will sit
on thrones judging the twelve tribes of
Israel.
31 And the Master said, Simon,
Simon, behold! Satan wants to sift all
of you like wheat.
32 And I have prayed over you that
your faith may not weaken. Also in
time you will turn and strengthen your
brothers.
33 And he said to Him, Master, I am
ready to go both to prison and to death
with You.
34 And He said, Peter, I say to you,
A cock will not crow today before you
will deny knowing Me three times.
35 And He said to them, When I sent
you without a purse, or a wallet, or
sandals, did you lack anything? And
they said, Nothing.
36 Then He said to them, But now,
the one having a purse, let him take it;
likewise also a wallet. And the one not
having, let him sell his garment, and
let him buy a sword.
37 For I say to you that this that has
been written must yet be fulfilled in
Me: "And He was numbered with the
wicked." For the things concerning Me
will be fulfilled. *(Isa. 53:12)*
38 And they said, Master, behold,
here are two swords. And He said to
them, It is sufficient.
39 And going out, according to His
custom, He went to the Mount of
Olives; and His disciples also followed
Him.
40 And having come on the place,
He said to them, Pray that you do not
enter into temptation.
41 And He was withdrawn from
them, about a stone's throw. And
having placed the knees, He prayed,
42 saying, Father, if You purpose it,
take away this cup from Me; but not
My will be done, but let Yours be done.
43 And a cherub from Heaven
appeared to Him, strengthening Him.
44 And being in an agony, He prayed
more intently. And His sweat became
as drops of blood falling down onto the
earth.
45 And rising up from the prayer,
coming to His disciples, He found
them sleeping from grief.
46 And He said to them, Why do you
sleep? Rising up, pray that you do not
enter into temptation.
47 And as He was yet speaking,
behold, a crowd! And the one called
Judas, one of the Twelve, came in
front of them and drew near to
Yahshua in order to kiss Him.
48 And Yahshua said to him, Judas,
do you betray the Son of Man with a
kiss?
49 And those around Him seeing
that about to occur, they said to Him,
Master, shall we strike with the sword?
50 And a certain one of them struck
the slave of the high priest and cut off
his right ear.
51 And answering, Yahshua said,
Allow it until this. And touching his
ear, He healed him.
52 And Yahshua said to those
coming upon Him, chief priests, and
commanders of the sanctuary, and

elders, Have you come out with swords and clubs as against a robber?
53 I was among you everyday in the sanctuary, and you did not lay hands upon Me, but this is your hour and the power of darkness.
54 And laying hold of Him, they led Him away and led Him into the house of the high priest. And Peter followed at a distance.
55 And lighting a fire in the middle of the courtyard, and they sitting down, Peter sat in their midst.
56 And a certain female slave seeing him sitting near the light, and looking intently at him, she said, And this one was with Him.
57 But he denied Him, saying, Woman, I do not know Him.
58 And after a while, another seeing him said, You also are of them. But Peter said, Man, I am not.
59 And about an hour intervening, a certain other one boldly charged, saying, Truly this one also was with Him, for he also is a Galilean.
60 And Peter said, Man, I do not know what you say. And immediately, while he yet spoke, the cock crowed.
61 And turning, Yahshua looked at Peter. And Peter remembered the Word of our Master, how He told him, Before a cock would crow, you will deny Me three times.
62 And going outside, Peter wept bitterly.
63 And the men who were holding Yahshua mocked Him, beating Him.
64 And blindfolding Him, they were striking His face and questioning Him, saying, Prophesy, who is the one who struck You?
65 And blaspheming, many other things they said to Him.
66 And when day came, the body of elders of the people, the chief priests and scribes, were gathered. And they led Him away into their Sanhedrin, saying,
67 If you are the Messiah, tell us. And He said to them, If I tell you, you will in no way believe.
68 And also if I ask, in no way will you answer Me, or let Me go.
69 From now on the Son of Man will be sitting at the right of the power of YAHWEH. *(Psa. 110:1)*
70 And they all said, Then are you the Son of Elohim? And He said to them, You say it, because **I AM**!
71 And they said, Why do we yet have need of witness? For we ourselves heard it from His mouth.

Chapter 23

1 And rising up, all the multitude of them led Him before Pilate.
2 And they began to accuse Him, saying, We found this One perverting the nation, and forbidding to give the head tax to Caesar, saying Himself to be a king, Messiah.
3 And Pilate questioned Him, saying, Are you the king of the Jews? And answering, him, He said, You say it.
4 And Pilate said to the chief priests and the crowds, I find nothing blamable in this man.
5 But they insisted, saying, He stirs up the people, teaching throughout all Judea, beginning from Galilee to here.
6 And hearing Galilee, Pilate asked if the man is a Galilean.
7 And knowing that He is from Herod's jurisdiction, he sent Him up to Herod, he also being in Jerusalem in these days.
8 And seeing Yahshua, Herod greatly rejoiced, for he was wishing to see Him for a long time, because of hearing many things about Him. And he hoped to see some miraculous sign being brought about by Him.
9 And he questioned Him in many

words. But He answered him not a
thing.
10 And the chief priests and the
scribes stood fiercely accusing Him.
11 And Herod insulted him, and
when he had mocked Him, his soldiers
clothed Him with garments of purple
and sent Him to Pilate.
12 And on that same day, both Pilate
and Herod became friends with each
other, for before they were at enmity
between themselves.
13 And having called together the
chief priests and the rulers and the
people,
14 Pilate said to them, You brought
this Man to me as perverting the
people. And, behold, examining Him
before you, I found nothing blamable
in this Man regarding that which you
charge against Him.
15 But neither did Herod, for I sent
you up to him; and, behold, nothing
worthy of death is done by Him.
16 Therefore chastising Him, I will
release Him.
17 And he had to release to them one
at the Feast.
18 And they all together shouted,
saying, Take this one, and release
Barabbas to us
19 (he who was thrown into prison
due to some revolt and murder
occurring in the city.)
20 Then Pilate again called out,
desiring to release Yahshua.
21 But they shouted, saying, Crucify!
Crucify Him!
22 And a third time he said to them,
For what evil did this One do? I found
no cause of death in Him. Therefore,
chastising Him, I will release Him.
23 But with loud voices they
insisted, asking for Him to be
crucified. And their voices, and that of
the chief priests, prevailed.
24 And Pilate commanded their
request to be granted.
25 And he released to them the one
thrown into prison due to revolt and
murder, whom they asked. But he
delivered Yahshua to their will.
26 And as they led Him away, having
laid hold on a certain Simon, a
Cyrenian, coming from a field, they
put the cross beam on him, to bear it
behind Yahshua.
27 And a great multitude of people
were following Him, and of women
who also were bewailing and
lamenting Him.
28 And turning to them, Yahshua
said, Daughters of Jerusalem, do not
weep over Me, but weep over
yourselves and over your children.
29 For behold, days will come in
which they will say, Blessed are the
barren, and the wombs that did not
bear, and breasts that did not nurse.
30 "Then they will begin to say to the
mountains, Fall on us! And to the hills,
Cover us!" *(Hos. 10:8)*
31 For if they do these things in a live
green tree, what may take place in the
dry[1]? *(Acts 5:30, 1 Pe 2:24)*
32 And coming with him were two
others, doers of evil to be killed.
33 And when they came to a certain
place, which is called "Skull", they
crucified Him there and those doers of
evil, one at His right and one at His
left.
34 And Yahshua said, Father, forgive
them, for they do not know what they

[1] Yahshua was crucified in a living tree, not on a dead piece of wood. The wood He carried to the crucifixion was the cross beam in which the sentence of the criminal was written and hung above him. Crucifixions on crosses were done in Rome, but Jerusalem had no hard wood forests for such death sentences as Josephus tells us at times there were up to 500 Jews a day being crucified during this time. The crucifixions took place on trees and actually several trees were found in Israel that were used for ancient crucifixions at this time period.

are doing. And dividing His garments,
they cast a lot. *(Psa. 22:18)*
35 And the people stood watching.
And the rulers with them also scoffed,
saying He saved others; let Him save
Himself, if this One is the Messiah, the
chosen of Elohim.
36 And coming near, the soldiers
also mocked Him and were offering
vinegar to Him,
37 and saying, If You are the king of
the Jews, save Yourself.
38 And also an inscription was
written over Him, in Greek, Latin and
Hebrew letters:
THIS IS THE KING OF THE JEWS.
39 And one of the hanged criminals
blasphemed Him, saying, If You are
the Messiah, save Yourself and us.
40 And his companion rebuked him
and said to him, You are not even
afraid of Elohim, because even you are
in that judgment.
41 And we are deserving justly, for as
we have done we have been repaid.
But that which is hateful has not been
done by this man.
42 And he said to Yahshua, Master,
remember me when You come in Your
Kingdom.
43 And Yahshua said to him, Truly,
today, I say to you, you will be with Me
in Paradise[1].
44 And it was about the sixth hour,
and darkness came over all the land
until the ninth hour.
45 And the sun was darkened, and
the veil of the sanctuary was torn in
the middle.
46 And crying with a loud voice,
Yahshua said, Father, "into Your
hands I place My spirit." And saying
this, He breathed out the spirit. *(Psa.
31:5)*
47 And seeing the thing happening,
the centurion glorified YAHWEH,
saying, Truly, this Man was righteous.
48 And all the crowd arriving
together at this sight, watching the
thing happening, beating their breasts,
they returned.
49 And all those known to Him
stood at a distance, and the women,
those who accompanied Him from
Galilee, were seeing these things.
50 And, behold, a man named
Joseph, being a councilor, a good and
righteous man.
51 This one was not assenting to
their counsel and deed (he was from
Arimathea, a city of the Jews), and
who himself was eagerly expecting the
kingdom of YAHWEH,
52 coming near to Pilate, this one
asked for the body of Yahshua.
53 And he took it down and wrapped
it in a shroud of linen and laid it in a
hewn tomb that which no man had yet
been placed.
54 And the day was setting and the
Sabbath was approaching[2].
55 And having followed, also the
women who were accompanying Him
out of Galilee, watched the tomb, and
how His body was placed.
56 And returning, they prepared
spices and perfume. And indeed they
rested on the Sabbath, according to
the commandment[3].

Chapter 24

1 And the first of the Sabbaths [4] at
dawn, while still dark[5], they came on
the tomb, carrying spices which they
prepared; and some were with them.

---

[1] The timing of the verse is that Yahshua was speaking to the thief on that day, and promising him that sometime in the future he would be in paradise with Yahshua. Yahshua could not have been promising the thief to be in paradise that day as He Himself would be 3 days and 3 nights in the grave.

[2] This was the Holyday of Unleavened bread, not the weekly Sabbath (Joh 19:31)

2 And they found the stone having been rolled away from the tomb.
3 And going in, they did not find the body of the Master Yahshua.
4 And it happened, as they were astonished about this, even behold, two men in shining clothing stood above them.
5 And they becoming terrified, and bowing their faces to the earth, they said to them, Why do you seek the living with the dead?
6 He is not here, but was raised. Remember how He spoke to you, yet being in Galilee,
7 saying, The Son of Man must be delivered into the hands of sinful men, and to be crucified, and on the third day He will rise again.
8 And they remembered His Words.
9 And returning from the tomb, they reported all these things to the Eleven, and to all the rest.
10 And they were Mariam Magdalene, Joanna, and Mariam mother of Jacob, and the rest with them, who told these things to the apostles.
11 And their words seemed like foolishness to them, and they did not believe them.
12 But rising up, Peter ran to the tomb, and stooping down he saw the linen lying alone. And he went away wondering to himself at what had happened.
13 And, behold, two of them were going on the same day to a village being sixty stadia distant from Jerusalem, which was named Emmaus.
14 And they talked to each other about all these things taking place.
15 And it happened, as they talked and reasoned, coming near, Yahshua Himself traveled with them.
16 But their eyes were held so as not to recognize Him.
17 And He said to them, What are these words that you speak one with the other while you are walking and you are sad?
18 And answering, one of them whose name was Cleopas, said to Him, Are You the only One who resides in Jerusalem and do not know the things happening in it in these days?
19 And He said to them, What things? And they said to Him, The things concerning Yahshua the Nazarene, who was a man, a prophet mighty in deed and word before Elohim and all the people;
20 and how the chief priests and our rulers delivered Him to the judgment of death, and crucified Him.
21 But we were hoping that He is the One going to redeem Israel. But then with all these things, this third day

---

3 Another clear proof that the Sabbath commandment was still binding after the death of Yahshua. One must remember that this good news message was written by Luke some 30 years after the crucifixion and if the Sabbath was no longer binding it would make no sense to make such a strong statement in support of it.

4 The seven week Sabbath count to Shavuot

5 This shows that Yahshua was resurrected sometime the night before, "*as it was still dark*", and he was already gone. The sunrise service resurrection theory is adopted from pagan sun worship and not scriptural.

comes today since these things happened[1].
22 And also some of our women astounded us, having been early at the tomb,
23 and not finding His body, they came saying to have seen a vision of cherubs also, who say Him to be alive.
24 And some of those with us went to the tomb, and found it so, even as the women also said; but they did not see Him.
25 And He said to them, O foolish ones, and slow of heart to believe on all things which the prophets spoke!
26 Was it not necessary for the Messiah to suffer these things, and to enter into His glory?
27 And beginning from Moses, and from all the prophets, He explained to them the things about Himself in all the Scriptures.
28 And they drew near to the village where they were going, and He seemed to be going further.
29 And they constrained Him, saying, Stay with us, for it is toward evening, and the day has declined. And He went in to stay with them.
30 And it happened as He reclined with them, having taken bread, He blessed, and having broken He gave to them.
31 And their eyes were opened, and they knew Him. And He became invisible from them.
32 And they said to one another, Was not our heart burning in us as He spoke to us in the highway, and as He opened up to us the Scriptures?
33 And rising up in the same hour, they went back to Jerusalem, and they found the Eleven, and those with them, having been gathered,
34 saying, The Master really was raised and appeared to Simon.
35 And they related the things in the highway, and how He was known to them in the breaking of the bread.
36 And as they were telling these things, Yahshua Himself stood in their midst, and said to them, Peace to you!
37 But being terrified, and being filled with fear, they thought they saw a ghost.
38 And He said to them, Why are you troubled? And why do doubts come up in your hearts.
39 See My hands and My feet, that I am He? Feel Me and see, because a ghost does not have flesh and bones, as you see Me having.
40 And saying this, He showed them His hands and feet.
41 But yet they not believing from the joy, and marveling, He said to them, Have you any food here?
42 And they handed a broiled part of a fish to Him, and from a honeycomb.
43 And taking these before them, He ate.
44 And He said to them, These are the Words which I spoke to you yet being with you, that all the things must be fulfilled having been written in the Torah of Moses, and the Prophets, and the Psalms, concerning Me.

---

1 If this is the third day since the crucifixion, then it would be impossible for the crucifixion to be on a Friday. Counting back 3 days from the afternoon of the first day of the week brings us to a crucifixion on week day 5 (Thursday) afternoon and then, there was a Holy day on Friday and then, the Sabbath to follow and Yahshua was resurrected on Saturday evening, the beginning of the first day of the week and the feast of fruit fruits as He was the first of the first fruits (1 Cor 15:23). He perfectly fulfilled the first-fruit ceremony and that is why He could not be touched by Mary Magdalene until He ascended to heaven to officially be accepted as the first-fruit offering for Israel. (Joh 20:17)

45 Then He opened up their mind to
understand the Scriptures,
46 and said to them, So it is written,
and so the Messiah must suffer, and to
rise from the dead on the third day.
47 And repentance and remission of
sins must be preached on His name to
all the nations, beginning from
Jerusalem.
48 And you are witnesses of these
things.
49 And, behold, I send forth the
promise of My Father on you. But you
sit in the city of Jerusalem until you
are clothed with power from on high.
50 He led them out as far as to
Bethany. And lifting up His hands, He
blessed them.
51 And it happened that while He
blessed them, He was separated from
them and ascended into Heaven.
52 And worshiping Him, they
returned to Jerusalem with great joy,
53 and were continually in the
sanctuary, praising and blessing
YAHWEH. Amen.

Book of John

Chapter 1

1 In the beginning[1] was the Word, and the Word was with Elohim, and the Word was Elohim.
2 He was in the beginning with Elohim.
3 Everything existed through His hands, and without Him, not even one thing existed of the things, which have existed[2].
4 In Him was life, and the life was the light of men;
5 and the light shines in the darkness, and the darkness did not overtake it.
6 There was a man sent from Elohim; his name was John.
7 He came for a witness, that he might witness concerning the Light, that all might believe through Him.
8 He was not that Light, but that he might witness concerning the Light.
9 He was the true Light; He enlightens every man coming into the world.
10 He was in the world, and the world came into being through His hand[3], yet the world did not know Him.
11 He came to His own, and His own did not receive Him.
12 But as many as received Him, to them He gave authority to become sons of Elohim, to the ones believing into His name[4],
13 Those who neither by blood nor by the will of the flesh nor by the will of a man, rather were begotten by Elohim[5].
14 And the Word became flesh and tabernacled among us[6]. And we beheld His glory, glory as of an only begotten one from the Father, full of grace and of truth.
15 John witnessed concerning Him, and has cried out, saying, This One was He of whom I said, He coming after me has been before me, for He was preceding me.
16 And out of His fullness we all received, and grace on top of grace.
17 For the Torah was given through Moses, but grace and truth came through Yahshua Messiah[7].

---

1 In the beginning in Hebrew is "*B'resheet*" and John is paralleling the book of Genesis and showing Yahshua being a part of the creation process with Yahweh the Father. The Aramaic word for "*word*" is miltha and is not easily translated but can also be manifestation or substance.

2 John is clearly pointing to Yahshua's preexistence with the Father and also that Yahshua was with the Father creating all things. If you look at all creation accounts in scripture there is always a duality to Elohim in creation consisting of Yah Yahweh the father and Yahshua Yahweh His son. Yahweh is a family name. Elohim is a plural word also. (Gen 1:26, Eccl 12:1, Ps 149:1, Is 54:5)

3 Again, showing Yahshua being a part of the creation process in Genesis.

4 This clearly shows mans' wonderful potential from Yahweh to become a literal child of His (Ro 8:11-17). It also shows that to reach this potential one must surrender his will to YHWH and accept the sacrifice of Yahshua and enter covenant through His name (acts 4:12).

5 Showing that this sonship process does not come through physical birth, but through joining covenant with YHWH.

6 John wrote this last good news message in the mid 90's AD. At this time Gnostics were claiming that all flesh is evil and the Messiah could not have been born in a human body. That is why John starts by showing the divinity and eternal existence of Yahshua with the Father, and then, also shows that He put aside His divinity (Phil 2:5-8) and was born in human form.

7 The purpose of the Torah was never to give salvation but to teach us how to live (Ps 119:105). Only the shed blood of Yahshua can justify someone and pay the penalty of their sins.

18 No one has seen YAHWEH at any time; the only begotten Son, who is in the bosom of the Father, that One declares Him[1].
19 And this is the witness of John, when the Jews sent priests and Levites that they might ask him, Who are you?
20 And he confessed and did not deny; yea, he acknowledged, I am not the Messiah.
21 And they asked him, What, then? Are you Elijah? And he said, I am not. Are you the Prophet[2]? And he answered, No.
22 Then they said to him, Who are you, that we may give an answer to those sending us? What do you say about yourself?
23 He said, "I am a voice crying in the wilderness: Make straight the way of YAHWEH," as Isaiah the prophet said. *(Isa. 40:3)*
24 And those who had been sent were of the Pharisees.
25 And they asked him and said to him, Why then do you baptize, if you are not the Messiah, nor Elijah, nor the Prophet?
26 John answered them, saying, I baptize in water, but One stands in your midst whom you do not know;
27 This One it is who has come after me, who has existed before me[3], of whom I am not worthy that I should loosen the strap of His sandal.
28 These things took place in Bethabara at the crossing of the Jordan, where John was baptizing.
29 On the morrow, John saw Yahshua coming toward him and said, Behold! The Lamb of Elohim[4], who takes away the sin of the world!
30 This is He whom I spoke concerning that, After me will come a man, yet He was before me[5] because He is earlier than me.
31 And I did not know Him except that He be made known first to Israel. Because of this, I have come that I might baptize with water.
32 And John witnessed, saying, I have seen the Spirit coming down as a dove[6] out of Heaven, and He rested on Him.
33 And I did not know Him, but the One sending me to baptize in water, that One said to me, On whomever you see the Spirit coming down and abiding on Him, this is the One baptizing in the Holy Spirit.
34 And I have seen and have witnessed that this One is the Son of YAHWEH.
35 Again on another day, John and two from his disciples stood.
36 And looking at Yahshua walking, he said, Behold, the Lamb of YAHWEH!
37 And the two disciples heard him speaking, and they followed Yahshua.
38 But having seen them following, Yahshua said to them, What do you seek? And they said to Him, Rabbi

[1] Clearly showing that the Father Yahweh and the Son Yahshua are two different beings, but are united by the one spirit of Yahweh. They have fully submitted their wills to one another in love, goal and purpose. This also shows that the one whom Moses saw in Exodus was Yahshua, the Messenger of YHWH (Exo 3:2), but not the Father Himself. (Joh 3:13, 5:37, 6:46, 1Joh 4:12)

[2] Deut 18:17-19

[3] Another clear scripture showing the preexistence of Yahshua.

[4] This term, which is almost used exclusively in Revelation is also used by John the baptist here.

[5] This comes from the Hebrew verb "*hayah*" which means "*to exist*" and John is clearly making a connection to Yahshua being the "*I am*" of Exodus.

[6] In Hebrew Jonah means dove and Yahshua also stated the only sign that He was the Messiah was the sign of Jonah (Math 12:39-40)

(which being translated is called
Teacher), where do You live?
39 He said to them, Come and see.
They went and saw where He stayed,
and they remained with Him that day.
And the hour was about the tenth.
40 Andrew the brother of Simon
Peter was one of the two who heard
from John and was following Him.
41 This one first found his own
brother Simon and tells him, We have
found the Messiah[1].
42 And he led him to Yahshua. And
looking at him, Yahshua said, You are
Simon the son of Jonah; you shall be
called Kepha (which translated is
rock).
43 And on the morrow, Yahshua
desired to go out into Galilee. And He
found Philip, and says to him, Follow
Me!
44 And Philip was from Bethsaida[2],
of the city of Andrew and Peter.
45 Philip finds Nathaniel and said to
him, We have found the One of whom
Moses wrote in the Torah and the
Prophets, Yahshua the son of Joseph,
from Nazareth.
46 And Nathaniel said to him, Can
any good thing be out of Nazareth?
Philip said to him, Come and see.
47 Yahshua saw Nathaniel coming
toward Him and said concerning him,
Behold, truly an Israelite in whom is
no guile!
48 Nathaniel said to Him, from
where do You know me? Yahshua
answered and said to him, Before
Philip called, you being under the fig
tree, I saw you.
49 Nathaniel answered and said to
Him, Rabbi, You are the Son of
YAHWEH; You are the King of Israel.
50 Yahshua answered and said to
him, Because I said to you I saw you
under the fig tree, do you believe? You
will see greater things than these.
51 And He says to him, Truly, truly, I
say to you, From now on you will see
Heaven opened, and "The cherubs of
Elohim ascending and descending" on
the Son of Man. *(Gen. 28:12)*

Chapter 2

1 And on the third day a marriage
took place in Cana of Galilee, and the
mother of Yahshua was there.
2 And Yahshua and His disciples also
were invited to the marriage.
3 And being short of wine, the
mother of Yahshua said to Him, They
have no wine[3].
4 Yahshua said to her, What do you
want from Me to you, woman? My
hour has not yet come.
5 His mother said to the servants,
Whatever He says to you, do.
6 And there were six stone waterpots
standing, according to the purification
of the Jews, each containing two or
three measures[4].
7 Yahshua said to them, Fill the
waterpots with water. And they filled
them to the top.
8 And He said to them, Now draw

1 The Greek manuscript then has the words, "*which is being interpreted the Christ*". This clearly shows that the Aramaic was written first and the Greek translated from it.

2 In Hebrew Bethsaida means House of the fishermen.

3 Wine was a part of every day life in ancient Israel as mixing water with some wine would kill the bacteria in the water. Also, in scripture it is also a sign of happiness and joy and blessing and was used in the daily temple rituals. Of course over indulgence and drunkenness were forbidden by scripture.

4 Accordingly to the priestly rule only stone water-pots could be used for religious washings as they are natural, whereas clay were man-made and would not be able to be used in religious ceremony.

out and take it to the master of the feast. And they took it.
9 But when the master of the feast tasted the water that had become wine, and did not know from where it was (but the servants drawing the water knew), the master of the feast called the bridegroom,
10 and he said to him, Every man first sets on the good wine, and when they have drunk freely, then the inferior one. You have kept the good wine until now.
11 This beginning of the miraculous signs Yahshua did in Cana of Galilee[1]. And it revealed His glory, and His disciples believed into Him.
12 After this He went down to Capernaum, He and His mother and His brothers and His disciples. And He remained there a few days.
13 And the Passover of the Jews was near. And Yahshua went up to Jerusalem[2].
14 And He found those selling oxen and sheep and doves in the sanctuary, and the money changers sitting.
15 And making a whip out of ropes, He threw all out of the sanctuary, both the sheep, and the oxen, and the money changers, pouring out the money and overturning the tables.
16 And to the ones selling the doves, He said, Take these things from here! Do not make My Father's house a house of merchandise[3].
17 And His disciples remembered that it was written, "The zeal of Your house has consumed Me." *(Psa. 69:9)*
18 Then the Jews answered and said to Him, What sign do You show to us, since You do these things?
19 Yahshua said to them, tear down this sanctuary, and in three days I will raise it up.
20 Then the Jews said, This sanctuary was forty six years being built, and do You raise it up in three days?
21 But He spoke about the sanctuary of His body.
22 Then when He was raised from the dead, His disciples recalled that He said this to them. And they believed the Scripture, even the Word that Yahshua spoke.
23 And as He was in Jerusalem, at the Passover, at the Feast, many believed into His name, seeing the miracles which He did.
24 But Yahshua did not entrust Himself to them, because He understood every man.
25 And He did not rely on men to testify to Him concerning anyone, for He knew what was in man.

Chapter 3

1 But there was a man from the Pharisees, Nicodemus his name, a ruler of the Jews.
2 This one came to Yahshua by night and said to Him, Rabbi, we know that You have come as a teacher from Elohim. For no one is able to do these miraculous signs which You do, except Elohim be with Him[4].
3 Yahshua answered and said to him, Truly, truly I say to you, that if a man

[1] A small village just north of Nazareth and known for pomegranates. This wine could have been pomegranate wine.

[2] Yahshua always went to Jerusalem at feast time according to scripture (Deut 16:16).

[3] If Yahshua were here today He would be appalled at the marketing of the good news message by Babylonian greedy ministries today.

[4] The Pharisees knew that Yahshua had come from YHWH, but due to their selfish ambitions to keep power they totally rejected His authority from YHWH. Many so-called ministers are doing like-wise today. Is 8:20 is a clear litmus test to who is a true servant of YHWH.

is not born again, he is not able to see
the Kingdom of YAHWEH[1].
4 Nicodemus said to Him, "How is it
possible to enter the womb of his
mother the second time and be born?"
5 Yahshua answered, Truly, truly I
say to you, that if a man is not born
from water and spirit, he is not able to
enter into the kingdom of YAHWEH.
6 The thing, which is born from
flesh, is flesh, and the thing, which is
born from spirit, is spirit[2].
7 Do not wonder because I said to
you, You must be born from above.
8 The wind will blow where it
desires, and you hear its voice. But you
do not know from where it comes or to
where it goes. Likewise is everyone
who is born from spirit[3].
9 Nicodemus answered and said to
Him, How are these things able to
occur?
10 Yahshua answered and said to
him, You are the teacher of Israel, and
you do not know these things?
11 Truly, truly, I say to you, That
which we know, we speak; and that
which we have seen, we testify. And
you do not receive our testimony.
12 If I tell you earthly things, and
you do not believe, how will you
believe if I tell you heavenly things?
13 And no one has gone up into
Heaven, except He having come down
out of Heaven, The Son of Man is He
who is in Heaven[4].
14 And even as Moses lifted up the
serpent in the wilderness, so must the
Son of Man be lifted up,
15 that everyone believing into Him
should not be destroyed, but have
everlasting life.
16 For YAHWEH so loved the world
that He gave His only begotten Son,
that everyone believing into Him
should not perish, but have everlasting
life[5].
17 For YAHWEH did not send His
Son into the world that He might
condemn the world, but that the world
might have life through Him.
18 The one believing into Him is not
condemned; but the one not believing
has already been condemned, for he
has not believed into the name of the
only begotten Son of YAHWEH[6].
19 And this is the judgment, that the
Light has come into the world, and
men loved the darkness more than the
Light, for their works were evil.
20 For everyone practicing
wickedness hates the Light, and does
not come to the Light, that his works
may not be exposed.
21 But the one doing the truth comes
to the Light, that his works may be
revealed, that they exist, having been
worked in Elohim.
22 After these things Yahshua and
His disciples came into the land of
Judea. And He continued there with
them and baptized.

---

1 This is referring to being born again from the dead into a glorified spiritual body as Yahshua was when He was the firstborn resurrected from the dead. Being baptized into covenant relationship is merely when we are begotten and is the beginning of this process, but one is not truly born again till the resurrection. (1 Cor 15:48-53, 1Joh 3:2 Col 1:18).

2 This clearly proves point 5 above.

3 When one is born of the Ruach Ha Chodesh (Spirit) then he would not be bound by the degenerating human body or the wicked nature that it personifies.

4 The dead are not in heaven but are sleeping in the grave waiting the resurrection. Joh 1:18 Acts 2:29, 34, 1Cor 15:50-52, Acts 7:60, Joh 11:11, 1 Thes 4:13-15 Job 14:13-14

5 The way to receive this everlasting life is to fully surrender one's life to Messiah as King of the universe and master over our lives.

6 This name is Yahshua meaning Yahweh's salvation.

23 And John was also baptizing in Ain-Yon, near Salim[1], for many waters were there. And they came and were being baptized.
24 For John had not yet been thrown into the prison.
25 Then a question from John's disciples arose with the Jews about purification.
26 And they came to John and said to him, Teacher, the One who was with you beyond the Jordan, to whom you have witnessed, behold, this One baptizes, and all are coming to Him.
27 John answered and said, A man is able to receive nothing unless it has been given to him from Heaven.
28 You yourselves witness to me that I said, I am not the Messiah, but that having been sent, I am going before that One.
29 The one having the bride is the bridegroom. But the friend of the bridegroom, standing and hearing him, rejoices with joy because of the bridegroom's voice. Then by this my joy has been fulfilled[2].
30 It is necessary for Him to increase, and for me to decrease.
31 For He who has come from above is higher than all, and he who is from the earth, is from the earth he speaks. He who has come from Heaven is higher than all.
32 And what He has seen and heard, this He testifies, and no one receives His testimony.
33 The one receiving His testimony has verified that YAHWEH is true.
34 For the One whom Elohim sent speaks the Words of Elohim, for Elohim does not give the Spirit by measure.
35 The Father loves the Son and has given all things into His hand.
36 He who believes in the Son has life that is eternal, and he who does not obey the Son will not see life, rather the wrath of YAHWEH will rise up against him.

Chapter 4

1 Now the Pharisees had heard that Yahshua made many disciples and was baptizing more than John
2 (though truly Yahshua Himself did not baptize, but His disciples),
3 He left Judea and went away into Galilee again.
4 And it was needful for Him to pass through Samaria.
5 And He came to a Samaritan city called Sychar, near the piece of land Jacob gave to his son Joseph.
6 And there was there a spring of water that had belonged to Jacob, and Yahshua was tired from the fatigue of the journey. And He sat on the well, and it was the sixth hour.
7 A woman came out of Samaria to draw water. Yahshua said to her, Give Me some to drink.
8 For His disciples had gone away into the city that they might buy provisions.
9 Then the Samaritan woman said to Him, How do You, being a Jew, ask to drink from me, I being a Samaritan woman? For Jews do not have social dealings with Samaritans.
10 Yahshua answered and said to her, If you knew the gift of YAHWEH, and who is the One saying to you, Give Me to drink, you would have asked Him, and He would give you living water.
11 The woman said to Him, Sir, You have no bucket, and the well is deep. From where then do You have living water?
12 Are You greater than our father Jacob who gave us the well, and he

[1] This is just south-east of Beth-Shean
[2] John was the last Old Testament prophet, but not part of the bride.

and his sons and his sheep drank out
of it?
13 Yahshua answered and said to
her, Everyone drinking of this water
will thirst again;
14 But everyone who drinks from the
waters that I give to him will not thirst
forever. But those waters that I give to
him will become in him a spring of
water that will spring up into life that
is eternal.
15 The woman said to Him, Sir, give
me this water, that I may not thirst,
nor come here to draw.
16 Yahshua said to her, Go, call your
husband and come here.
17 And the woman answered and
said, I have no husband. Yahshua said
to her, Well did you say, I have no
husband.
18 For you have had five husbands!
And the one that you have now is not
your husband. This you have spoken is
true.
19 The woman said to Him, my
Master, I perceive that You are a
prophet.
20 Our fathers have bowed down
and worshiped in this mountain, and
you say that in Jerusalem is the place
where it is necessary to worship.
21 Yahshua said to her, Woman,
believe Me that an hour is coming
when you will worship the Father
neither in this mountain nor in
Jerusalem.
22 You worship what you do not
know; we worship what we know, for
life is of the Jews.
23 But an hour is coming, and now
is, when the true worshipers will
worship the Father in spirit and in
truth. For the Father also seeks such,
the ones worshiping Him.
24 Elohim is spirit, and the ones
worshiping Him must worship in spirit
and truth.[1]
25 The woman said to Him, I know
that Messiah is coming, When that
One comes, He will teach us all things.
26 Yahshua said to her, **I AM**! The
One speaking to you.
27 And on this, His disciples came
and marveled that He was speaking
with a woman. However, no one said,
What do You want? Or, why do You
speak with her?
28 Then the woman left her water-
pot and went away into the city and
said to the men,
29 Come, see a Man who told me all
things, whatever I did. Is this One not
the Messiah?
30 Therefore, they went out of the
city and came to Him.
31 But in the meantime the disciples
asked Him, saying, Rabbi, eat?
32 But He said to them, I have food
to eat which you do not know.
33 Then the disciples said to one
another, No one brought Him food to
eat?
34 Yahshua said to them, My food is
that I should do the will of Him who
sent Me, and that I may finish His
work.
35 Do you not say that after four
months comes the harvest? Behold I
say to you, lift up your eyes and see the

---

[1] The reference here is about animal sacrifice. Samaritans had an altar in Mount Gerazim for sacrificing animals and the Jews had theirs in Jerusalem. The word in Hebrew for sacrifice is "*Korban*" and means "t*o draw closer to through relationship*". Giving your precious animal to YHWH was an act to draw closer to Him. The context has nothing to do with appearing before Yahweh at feast time in Jerusalem as Yahshua Himself goes up to Jerusalem for the feast in chapter 5:1. Even in the millennial kingdom all nations will appear before Yahweh in Jerusalem at feast time (Zech 14:16). Also see note on 1Kgs 8:33.

fields that are white and have ripened
for the harvest already[1].
36 And he that reaps receives a wage
and gathers fruit unto life that is
eternal. And the sower and the reaper
together will rejoice.
37 For in this the word is true, that
another is the one sowing, and another
the one reaping.
38 I sent you to reap what you have
not labored over. Others have labored,
and you have entered into their labor.
39 And many of the Samaritans out
of that city believed into Him, because
of the word of the woman testifying,
He told me all things, whatever I did.
40 Then as the Samaritans came to
Him, they asked Him to remain with
them. And He remained there two
days.
41 And many more believed through
His Word.
42 And they said to the woman, We
no longer believe because of your
saying; for we ourselves have heard,
and we know that this One is truly the
Messiah, the Life-Giver of the world.
43 But after the two days, He went
out from there, and went away into
Galilee.
44 For Yahshua Himself testified
that a prophet has no honor in his own
fatherland.
45 Therefore, when He came into
Galilee, the Galileans received Him,
seeing all things which He did in
Jerusalem at the Feast. For they also
went to the Feast.
46 Then Yahshua came again to
Cana of Galilee where He made the
water, wine. And there was a servant
of a certain king, whose son was sick
in Capernaum.
47 Hearing that Yahshua was
coming from Judea into Galilee, this
one went out to Him and asked Him
that He would come and heal his son,
for he was about to die.
48 Then Yahshua said to him, If you
do not see miracles and wonders, you
will not believe!
49 That servant of the king said to
him, My Master come down before the
boy dies.
50 Yahshua said to him, Go! Your
son lives. And the man believed the
word which Yahshua said to him, and
went away.
51 And while he was going down, his
servants met up with him and brought
him hope, and said to him, Your son
lives!
52 He then asked from them the
hour in which he had gotten better.
And they said to him, Yesterday, at the
seventh hour, the fever left him.
53 Then the father knew that it was
at that hour in which Yahshua said to
him, Your son lives. And he himself,
and his whole house, believed.
54 Again, this second miracle
Yahshua did, coming from Judea into
Galilee.

Chapter 5

1 After these things, there was a feast
of the Jews, and Yahshua went up to
Jerusalem.
2 Now there was a certain place of
immersion there in Jerusalem, which
is called Bethesda, and there were five
porches in it.
3 In these was a great multitude of
the infirm lying, blind ones, lame ones,
crippled ones, awaiting the stirring of
the water.
4 For from time to time a cherub
would descend to it, to the place of
immersion and would stir them the
waters, and whoever would first

[1] The only time that the fields would be white (harvest ready) at summer and yet not harvest-able still for 4 months would be in a Sabbatical year. 27 Ad to 28 Ad was a sabbatical year.

descend after the movement of the waters would be made whole of every pain, which he had.
5 But a certain man was there, being in infirmity thirty eight years.
6 Seeing him lying, and knowing that he had already spent much time, Yahshua said to him, Do you desire to become whole?
7 The sick one answered Him, Master, I do not have a man, that when the water is agitated he may throw me into the pool; but while I am coming, another goes down before me.
8 Yahshua said to him, Rise up, Take up your cot and walk!
9 And instantly the man became well, and took up his cot and walked. And it was the Sabbath that day.
10 Then the Jews said to the one having been healed, It is the Sabbath. It is not lawful for you to lift up the cot[1].
11 He answered them, The One making me well, that One said to me, Lift up your cot and walk.
12 Then they asked him, Who is the man who told you, Lift up your cot and walk?
13 But he did not know the One who cured him, for a crowd being in that place, Yahshua had withdrawn.
14 After these things, Yahshua found him in the sanctuary and said to him, Behold you are whole again. Do not sin no more, lest something that is worse than before should happen to you.
15 The man went away and told the Jews that Yahshua is the One making him whole.
16 And because of this, the Jews persecuted Yahshua and lusted to kill Him, because He did these things on the Sabbath.
17 But Yahshua answered them, My Father works until now, and I work.
18 Because of this, therefore, the Jews lusted the more to kill Him, for not only did He break the Sabbath, but also called YAHWEH His own Father, making Himself equal to Elohim.
19 Then Yahshua answered and said to them, Truly, truly I say to you that the Son is not able to do anything by his desire, but what he sees that the Father does. For these things that the Father does, the Son also likewise does.
20 For the Father loves the Son and shows to Him all things which He does. And He will show Him greater works than these in order that you may marvel.
21 For even as the Father raises the dead, and gives life, so also the Son gives life to whomever He wills.
22 For the Father judges no one, but has given all judgment to the Son,
23 so that all may honor the Son, even as they honor the Father[2]. The one not honoring the Son does not honor the Father who has sent Him.
24 Truly, truly, I say to you, The one who hears My Word, and believes the One who has sent Me, has everlasting life, and does not come into judgment, but has removed himself out of death into life.
25 Truly, truly, I say to you that an hour is coming, and now is, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of YAHWEH, and the ones hearing will live.
26 For even as the Father has life in Himself, so He gave also to the Son to have life in Himself[3].
27 And He also gave authority to

1 This was according to the Pharisaical law not the Torah.

2 If Yahshua was not also Elohim this would be idolatry.

3 All life comes from Yahweh and this verse is stating that Yahweh also gave Yahshua the authority to give eternal life to others.

Him to execute judgment, for He is the Son of Man.
28 Do not marvel at this, for an hour is coming in which all those in the tombs will hear His voice.
29 And they will come out, the ones having done good into a resurrection of life; and the ones having practiced evil into a resurrection of judgment.
30 I am not able to do anything of my desire, but as I hear I judge and my judgment is just, for I don't seek my will, rather the will of He who sent me.
31 If I witness concerning Myself, My witness is not true;
32 it is Another that witnesses concerning Me, and I know that the witness which He witnesses concerning Me is true.
33 You have sent to John, and he has testified to the truth.
34 But I do not receive witness from man, but I say these things that you may be saved.
35 That one was the burning and shining lamp, and you were willing to delight in his light for an hour.
36 But I have the greater witness than John's, for the works which the Father has given Me, that I should finish them, the works which I do, themselves, witness concerning Me, that the Father has sent Me.
37 And the Father, the One sending Me, has Himself borne witness concerning Me. You have neither heard His voice at any time, nor have you seen His appearance.[1] *(Joh 1:18)*
38 And His Word does not dwell in you because you do not believe in Him whom He sent.
39 You search[2] the Scriptures, for you think in them you have everlasting life. And they are the ones witnessing concerning Me.
40 And you are not willing to come to Me that you may have life.
41 I do not receive glory from men;
42 but I have known you, that you do not have the love of YAHWEH in yourselves.
43 I have come in the name of My Father[3], and you do not receive Me. If another comes in his own name, you will receive that one.
44 How are you able to believe, you who receive glory from one another, and the glory which is from the only Elohim you do not seek?
45 Do not think that I will accuse you to the Father; there is one accusing you, Moses, in whom you have hoped.
46 For if you were believing Moses, you would then believe Me; for that one wrote concerning Me.
47 But if you do not believe his writings, how will you believe My Words?

Chapter 6

1 After these things, Yahshua went away over the Sea of Galilee, of Tiberius.
2 And a great crowd followed Him, for they saw His miracles which He did on the sick ones.
3 And Yahshua went up into the mountain and sat there with His disciples.

---

1 The word for *"heard"* can also mean *"to listen or be attentive to"* and in context is a better rendering. The Israelites physically heard YHWH speak (Ex 20:1) but never listened to His commands.

2 This word can also mean to trace. It is like a connect the dots picture, when you connect all 300 messianic scriptures together there is only one person in the history of the world who accomplished fulfilling them all, **Yahshua H'Masheach.**

3 Yahshua means Yahweh's salvation. Jesus has no entomology and in Hebrew there is no letter *'J'*.

4 And the Passover was near, the
feast of the Jews. (*Joh 2:13)*
5 Then Yahshua lifting up His eyes
and seeing that a great crowd is
coming to Him, He said to Philip,
From where may we buy bread that
these may eat?
6 But He said this to test him, for He
knew what He was about to do.
7 Philip answered Him, bread for
two hundred denarii are not enough
for them, that each of them may
receive a little.
8 One of His disciples said to Him,
Andrew the brother of Simon Peter,
9 A little boy is here who has five
loaves of barley and two fish[1]; but
what are these for so many?
10 And Yahshua said, Make the men
to recline. And much grass was in the
place. Then the men reclined, the
number was about five thousand.
11 And Yahshua took the loaves, and
giving thanks distributed to the
disciples, and the disciples to those
reclining. And in the same way the
fish, as much as they desired.
12 And when they were filled, He
said to His disciples, Gather up the
fragments left over, that not anything
be lost. *(Matt 15:32-38)*
13 Then they gathered and filled
twelve hand-baskets[2] with fragments
of the five barley loaves which were
left over to those who had eaten.
14 Then seeing what miraculous sign
Yahshua did, the men said, This is
truly the Prophet, the One coming into
the world. *(2 Kgs4:42-44)*
15 Then knowing that they were
about to come and seize Him, that
they might make Him king, Yahshua
withdrew again to the mountain alone
by Himself.
16 And when it became evening, His
disciples went down on the sea.
17 And entering into the boat, they
were going across the sea to
Capernaum. And darkness had already
occurred, and Yahshua had not come
to them.
18 And the sea was aroused by a
great wind blowing.
19 Then having rowed about twenty
five or thirty furlongs, they saw
Yahshua walking on the sea. And He
having come near the boat, they were
afraid.
20 But He said to them, **I AM**! Do
not fear.
21 Then they desired to take Him
into the boat. And the boat was
instantly at the land to which they
were going.
22 On the morrow, the crowd
standing on the other side of the sea
had seen that no other little boat was
there except one, that one into which
His disciples entered, and that
Yahshua did not go with His disciples
into the small boat, but that the
disciples went away alone.
23 But other small boats came from
Tiberius near the place where they ate
the loaves, the Master having given
thanks.
24 Therefore, when the crowd saw
that Yahshua was not there nor His
disciples, they themselves also entered
into the boats and came to Capernaum
seeking Yahshua.
25 And finding Him across the sea,
they said to Him, Rabbi, when did you
come here?
26 Yahshua answered them and
said, Truly, truly, I say to you, You
seek Me not because you saw
miraculous signs, but because you ate
of the loaves and were satisfied.
27 Do not labor for the food which

[1] 5 is the number of grace and when you add the 2 fish you have 7 the number of perfection or completion.

[2] A reference to the 12 tribes of Israel and 12 being the number of complete government.

perishes, but for the food which endures to everlasting life, which the Son of Man will give to you; for YAHWEH the Father sealed[1] this One.

28 Then they said to Him, What may we do that we may work the works of Elohim?

29 Yahshua answered and said to them, This is the work of Elohim, that you believe into Him whom that One sent.

30 Then they said to Him, Then what miraculous sign do You do that we may see and may believe You? What do You work?

31 Our fathers ate the manna in the wilderness, as it is written "He gave them bread out of Heaven to eat." *(Psa. 78:24)*

32 Then Yahshua said to them, Truly, truly, I say to you, Moses has not given you the bread out of Heaven, but My Father gives you the true bread out of Heaven.

33 For His bread, that of Elohim, is He who has come down from heaven and gives life to the world.

34 Then they said to Him, Master, always give us this bread.

35 Yahshua said to them, **I AM** the Bread of life; the one coming to Me will not at all hunger, and the one believing into Me will not thirst, never!

36 But I said to you that you also have seen Me and did not believe.

37 All that the Father gives to Me shall come to Me, and the one coming to Me I will in no way cast out.

38 For I have come down out of Heaven, not that I should do My will, but the will of Him who sent Me.

39 And this is the will of the Father sending Me, that of all that He has given Me, I shall not lose any from it, but shall raise him up in the last day.

40 And this is the will of the One sending Me, that everyone seeing the Son and believing into Him should have everlasting life; and I will raise him up at the last day.

41 Then the Jews murmured about Him, because He said, I am the Bread coming down out of Heaven.

42 And they said, Is this not Yahshua the son of Joseph, of whom we know the father and the mother? How does this One now say, I have come down out of Heaven?

43 Then Yahshua answered and said to them, Do not murmur with one another.

44 No one is able to come to Me unless the Father who sent Me draws him, and I will raise him up in the last day.

45 For it is written in the prophets that all of them will be taught of Elohim. Everyone who hears therefore and learns from the Father comes to me. *(Isa. 54:13)*

46 It is not that man can see the Father, rather He who is from Elohim is He who sees the Father.

47 Truly, truly, I say to you, The one believing into Me has everlasting life.

48 **I AM** the Bread of life[2].

49 Your fathers ate the manna in the wilderness and died.

50 This is the Bread coming down out of Heaven that anyone may eat of it and not die.

51 **I AM** the Living Bread that came down from Heaven. If anyone eats of this Bread, he will live forever. And indeed the bread which I will give is My flesh, which I will give for the life of the world.

52 Then the Jews argued with one another, saying, How can this One give us His flesh to eat?

53 Then Yahshua said to them,

[1] This word means to give a mark of preservation (Rev 7:3).

[2] Yahshua is the I AM. He was also born in *Beth/lechem* meaning "*House of bread*".

Truly, truly, I say to you, Except you
eat the flesh of the Son of Man, and
drink His blood, you do not have life in
yourselves[1].
54 The one partaking of My flesh
and drinking of My blood has
everlasting life, and I will raise him up
at the last day.
55 For My body is truly food, and My
blood is truly drink.
56 He who eats my body and drinks
my blood abides in me and I in him.
57 Even as the living Father sent Me,
and I live through the Father; also the
one partaking Me, even that one will
live through Me.
58 This is the Bread which came
down out of Heaven, not as your
fathers ate the manna and died; the
one partaking of this Bread will live
forever.
59 He said these things teaching in a
synagogue in Capernaum.
60 Then many of His disciples
having heard, they said, This Word is
hard; who is able to hear it?
61 But knowing in Himself that His
disciples were murmuring about this,
Yahshua said to them, Does this
offend you?
62 What if you see the Son of Man
ascending to the place where He was
before?
63 It is the Spirit that gives life. The
flesh does not profit, nothing! The
Words which I speak to you are spirit
and are life.
64 But there are some of you who
are not believing. For Yahshua knew
from the beginning who they were, the
ones not believing, and who was the
one betraying Him.
65 And He said, Because of this, I
have told you that no one is able to
come to Me except it is given to him
from My Father.
66 Because of this saying, many of
His disciples turned their backs and
did not walk with Him.
67 Therefore, Yahshua said to the
Twelve, Do you also wish to go?
68 Then Simon Peter answered Him,
Master, to whom shall we go? You
have the Words of everlasting life.
69 And we have believed and have
known that You are the Messiah, the
Son of the living Elohim.
70 Yahshua answered them, Did I
not choose you, the Twelve? Yet one of
you is a devil!
71 But He spoke of Judas Iscariot,
Simon's son, for this one was about to
betray Him, being one of the Twelve.

Chapter 7

1 And after these things Yahshua was
walking in Galilee; for He did not
desire to walk in Judea, because the
Jews were lusting to kill Him.
2 And the Feast of Sukkot in Judea
was near.
3 Then His brothers said to Him,
Move away from here and go to Judea,
that Your disciples will also see Your
works which You do,
4 for no one does anything in secret
and himself seeks to be in public. If
You do these things, reveal Yourself to
the world.
5 For His brothers did not believe
into Him.
6 Then Yahshua said to them, My
time is not yet here, but your time is
always ready.
7 The world cannot hate you; but it
hates Me because I witness about it,
that its works are evil.
8 You go up to this feast. I will not go
up to this feast now because my time is
not yet finished.

---

[1] Taking the passover symbols of the bread and the wine once a year on passover is required to continue on covenant relationship.(Ex 13:10 Luk 22:19-20)

9 And saying these things to them, He remained in Galilee.

10 But when His brothers went up, then He also went up to the feast, not openly, but as in secret.

11 Then the Jews sought Him in the feast, and said, Where is that One?

12 And much murmuring about Him was in the crowds. Some said, He is a good one; but others said, No, but He deceives the crowd.

13 However, no one publicly spoke about Him, because of the fear of the Jews.

14 But the feast now being half over, Yahshua went up to the sanctuary and taught.

15 And the Jews were marveling and saying, How does this man know the scrolls, since he has not learned them?

16 Yahshua answered them and said, My doctrine is not Mine, but of the One who sent Me.

17 He who desires to do His will can comprehend my teaching, if it is from Elohim, or if from my own will I speak.

18 He who speaks from his own mind seeks glory for himself, but he who seeks the glory of He who sent him is true and there is no iniquity in his heart.

19 Has not Moses given you the Torah, and not a man among you kept the Torah? Why do you lust to kill Me?

20 The crowd answered and said, You have a demon. Who seeks to kill You?

21 Yahshua answered and said to them, I did one work, and you all marvel.

22 Because of this Moses gave circumcision to you. It was not because it was from him, Moses, but from the patriarchs, yet you circumcise a man on the day of the Sabbath.

23 If a man is circumcised on the day of the Sabbath so that the Torah of Moses should not be loosed, why do you murmur against me because the man who was created whole, I have made whole on this day of the Sabbath[1]?

24 Do not be judging by hypocrisy, rather judge with a just judgment.

25 Then some of the Jerusalemites said, Is it not this One the One whom they are seeking to kill?

26 And, behold, He speaks publicly, and they say nothing to Him. Do our Elders know that this is indeed the Messiah?

27 But we know this One, from where He is. But when the Messiah comes, no one knows from where He is.

28 Then teaching, Yahshua cried out in the sanctuary, even saying, You both know Me, and you know from where I am. And I have not come from Myself, but He is true, the One having sent Me, whom you do not know.

29 But I know Him because I am from His presence and He sent me!

30 Then they sought to seize Him; yet no one laid a hand on Him, because His hour had not yet come.

31 But many of the crowd believed into Him, and said, The Messiah, when He comes will He do more miracles than these which this One did?

32 The Pharisees heard the crowd murmuring these things about Him, and the Pharisees and the chief priests sent officers, that they might seize Him.

33 Then Yahshua said to them, Yet a

---

1 In the Aramaic this is written in the active participle form indicating that this was a Sabbath and Joh 7:14, shows that this was ½ way through the feast proving that Holy day Sabbaths do not always fall on the day of the weekly Sabbath, which lunar worshipers wrongly assume.

little while I am with you, and I go to Him who sent Me.
34 You will seek Me, and will not find Me; and where I am, you are not able to come.
35 Then the Jews said amongst themselves, Where is this One about to go that we will not find Him? Why, indeed, is He about to go to the countries of the Gentiles and teach the pagans?
36 What is this teaching which He said, You will seek Me and will not find Me, and, Where I am, you are not able to come?
37 Now on the High day, which is the last of the feast[1], Yahshua was standing and He cried out and said, If a man thirsts, let him come to Me and drink.
38 Anyone who believes in me as the scriptures have said, rivers of living water will flow from his belly.
39 But He said this concerning the Spirit, whom the ones believing into Him were about to receive; for the Holy Spirit was not yet given, because Yahshua was not yet glorified.
40 Then hearing the Word, many of the crowd said, This is truly the Prophet.
41 Others said, This is the Messiah. But others said, No! For does the Messiah come out of Galilee?
42 Has not the Scripture said that the Messiah comes from the seed of David, and from Bethlehem, the village where David was? *(Mic. 5:2)*
43 Then a division occurred in the crowd because of Him.
44 And some of them desired to seize Him, but no one laid hands on Him.
45 Then the officers came to the chief priests and Pharisees. And they said to them, Why did you not bring Him?
46 The officers answered, Never did a man so speak as does this man.
47 Then the Pharisees answered them, Have you not also been deceived?
48 Not any from the rulers or from the Pharisees believed into Him have they? *(Is 53:1, 3)*
49 But not knowing the Torah, this crowd is cursed.
50 Nicodemus said to them, the one coming by night to Him, being one of themselves,
51 Does our Law judge the man unless it hear from him first, and know what he has done?
52 And they answered and said to him, Why are you also from Galilee? You search and see; the Prophet will not rise out of Galilee.
53 And they each one went to his house.

Chapter 8

1 But Yahshua went to the Mount of Olives.
2 And at dawn, He again arrived into the sanctuary; and all the people came to Him. And sitting down, He taught them.
3 And the scribes and the Pharisees brought to Him a woman having been taken in adultery. And standing her in the middle,
4 they said to Him, Teacher, this woman was taken in the very act, committing adultery.
5 And in the Torah, Moses commanded that such should be stoned. You, then, what do You say?
6 But they said this, tempting Him, that they may have reason to accuse Him. But bending down, Yahshua wrote with the finger in the earth, not appearing to hear.
7 But as they continued questioning Him, bending back up, He said to

[1] The eighth day, which is a Holy Day.

them, The one among you without that
sin, let him cast the first stone at her.
8 And bending down again, He wrote
in the earth.
9 But hearing, and being convicted
by the conscience, they went out one
by one, beginning from the older ones,
until the last. And Yahshua was left
alone, and the woman standing in the
middle.
10 And Yahshua bending back up,
and having seen no one but the
woman, He said to her, Woman, where
are those, the accusers of you? Did not
one give judgment against you?
11 And she said, No one, Master. And
Yahshua said to her, Neither do I
judge you. Go, and sin no more.[1]
12 Then Yahshua again spoke to
them, saying, I am the Light of the
world. The one following Me will in no
way walk in the darkness, but will have
the light of life. *(Is 53:11)*
13 Then the Pharisees said to Him,
You witnessed concerning Yourself;
Your witness is not true.
14 Yahshua answered and said to
them, Even if I witness concerning
Myself, My witness is true; for I know
from where I came, and where I go.
But you do not know from where I
came, and where I go.
15 You judge according to the flesh. I
judge no one.
16 But even if I judge, My judgment
is true, because I am not alone, but I
and the Father who sent Me.
17 And in the Torah it has been
written that the witness of two men is
true. *(Deut. 19:15)*
18 I am the One witnessing
concerning Myself, and He who sent
Me, the Father, witnesses concerning
Me.
19 Then they said to Him, Where is
your father? Yahshua answered, You
neither know Me, nor My Father. If
you had known Me, then you also
would have known My Father.
20 Yahshua spoke these words in the
treasury, teaching in the sanctuary;
and no one seized Him, for His hour
had not yet come.
21 Then Yahshua said to them again,
I go, and you will seek Me. And you
will die in your sin. Where I go, you
are not able to come.
22 Then the Jews said, Will He kill
Himself, because He says, Where I go,
you are not able to come?
23 And He said to them, You are
from below; I am from above. You are
from this world; I am not from this
world.
24 Therefore, I said to you that you
will die in your sins. For if you do not
believe that **I AM**, you will die in your
sins[2].
25 Then they said to Him, Who are
You? And Yahshua said to them, Even
if I should begin to speak with you,
26 I have many things to say and to
judge concerning you; but the One
sending Me is true, and what I heard
from Him, these things I say to the
world.
27 They did not know that He spoke
to them of the Father.
28 Then Yahshua said to them,
When you lift up the Son of Man, then
you will know that **I AM**; and from
Myself I do nothing; but as My Father
taught Me, these things I speak.
29 And He who sent me is with me
and does not leave me alone, because

[1] Chapter 8:1-11 is not in the Aramaic Peshitta nor the earliest Greek manuscripts.

[2] A man cannot die for your sins, as the Torah states eye for eye, tooth for tooth, and life for life. One person can only save his own life by being sinless (Ezek 14:14). Only by being the eternal Co-Creator of everything (Joh 1:3) can His life be worth more than all that he created. Unless one believes in Yahshua's preexistence, eternal state as Elohim he/she will die in their sins.

my Father is pleased at all times with
the things that I do.
30 As He spoke these things, many
believed into Him.
31 Then Yahshua said to the Jews
who had believed in Him, If you
continue in My Word, you are truly My
disciples.
32 And you will know the truth, and
the truth will set you free.
33 They answered Him, We are
Abraham's seed, and we have never
been servants[1] owing debt to anyone,
never! How do You say, You will
become free?
34 Yahshua answered them, Truly,
truly, I say to you, Everyone practicing
sin is a servant of sin.
35 But the servant does not remain
in the house forever; the son remains
forever.
36 Therefore, if the Son sets you
free, you are free indeed.
37 I know that you are Abraham's
seed, but you seek to kill Me, because
My Word is not given room in you.
38 I speak what I have seen with My
Father. And you therefore do what you
have seen with your father.
39 They answered and said to Him,
Abraham is our father. Yahshua said
to them, If you were children of
Abraham, you would do the works of
Abraham.
40 But now you seek to kill Me, a
man who has spoken the truth to you,
which I heard alongside of Elohim[2].
Abraham did not do this.
41 You do the works of your father.
They said to Him, We were not born of
fornication; we have one father,
Elohim.
42 Then Yahshua said to them, If
YAHWEH were your Father, you
would love Me, for I went forth and
have come from YAHWEH. For I have
not come from Myself, but that One
sent Me.
43 Why do you not know My
speech? It is because you are not able
to hear My Word.
44 You are of the Devil as father, and
the lusts of your father you desire to
do. That one was a murderer from the
beginning, and he has not stood in the
truth, because there is no truth in him.
When he speaks a lie, he speaks from
his own, because he is a liar, and the
father of it.
45 And because I speak the truth,
you do not believe Me.
46 Who of you rebukes Me
concerning sin? But if I speak truth,
why do you not believe Me?
47 The one who is of Elohim hears
the Words of Elohim; for this reason
you do not hear, because you are not
of Elohim.
48 Then the Jews answered and said
to Him, Do we not say well that You
are a Samaritan and have a demon?
49 There is no demon in me, but I do
honor my Father and you curse me!
50 But I do not seek My glory; there
is One who seeks and judges.
51 Truly, truly, I say to you, If
anyone watches over My Word, he will
not see death forever, never!
52 Then the Jews said to Him, Now
we know that You have a demon.
Abraham died, and the prophets, and
You say, If anyone keeps My Word, he
will not taste of death forever!
53 Are You greater than our father
Abraham who died? And the prophets
who died! Who do You make Yourself?
54 Yahshua answered, If I glorify
Myself, My glory is nothing; it is My

---

1 Speaking of being an indentured servant not a slave.

2 John more than any other book of the New testament shows Yahshua's preexistence with Yahweh the Father as a heresy was already surfacing at that time that He did not preexist.

Father who glorifies Me, whom you
say is your Elohim.
55 And you have not known Him;
but I know Him, And if I say that I do
not know Him, I shall be like you, a
liar. But I know Him, and I keep His
Word.
56 Your father Abraham leaped for
joy that he should see My day, and he
saw, and rejoiced.
57 Then the Jews said to Him, You
do not yet have fifty years, and have
You seen Abraham?
58 Yahshua said to them, Truly,
truly, I say to you, Before Abraham
existed, **I AM[1]!**
59 Because of this, they took up
stones that they might throw them on
Him. But Yahshua was hidden, and
went forth out of the sanctuary, going
through the midst of them, and so
passed by.

Chapter 9

1 And passing by, He saw a man
blind from his mother's womb.
2 And His disciples asked Him,
saying, Our Master, who sinned, this
one, or his parents, that he was born
blind?
3 Yahshua answered, Neither this
one nor his parents sinned, but that
the works of Elohim might be revealed
in him.
4 It is necessary for Me to work the
works of Him who sent Me while it is
day. Night comes when no one is able
to work.
5 While I am in the world, I am the
Light of the world.
6 And when He said these things He
spat upon the ground and mixed clay
with His saliva and He rubbed it upon
the eyes of that blind man.
7 And He said to him, Go, purify
yourself in the baptismal of Siloam,
which translated is Sent. Then he went
and washed, and came seeing.
8 Now his neighbors and those who
had seen from the beginning that he
would beg were saying, Is it not he,
this man who would sit and beg?
9 Some said, This is he; and others
said, No, but he closely resembles him.
That one said, I am the one.
10 Then they said to him, How were
your eyes opened?
11 He answered and said, A man
being called Yahshua made clay and
anointed my eyes, and told me, Go to
the water of Siloam and wash. And
going and washing I saw anew.
12 Then they said to him, Where is
that One? He said, I do not know.
13 They brought him to the
Pharisees, the one once blind.
14 And it was the Sabbath when
Yahshua made the clay and opened his
eyes.
15 Then also the Pharisees again
asked him how he saw anew. And he
said to them, He put clay on my eyes,
and I washed, and I see.
16 Then some of the Pharisees said,
This man is not from Elohim, because
He does not keep the Sabbath. Others
said, How can a man, a sinner, do such
miracles? And there was a division
among them.
17 They said to the blind one again,
What do you say about Him, because
He opened your eyes? And he said, He
is a prophet.
18 Then the Jews did not believe
concerning him, that he was blind and
saw anew, until they called the parents
of him seeing anew.
19 And they asked them, saying, Is
this your son, whom you say that he
was born blind? Then how does he
now see?
20 His parents answered them and

[1] The clearest text given that Yahshua claimed to be the pre-existent "*I AM*" of Creation with Yahweh the Father.

said, We know that this is our son, and
that he was born blind.
21 But how he now sees, we do not
know; or who opened his eyes, we do
not know. He is of age, ask him. He
will speak about himself.
22 His parents said these things
because they feared the Jews; for the
Jews had already agreed that if anyone
should confess Him as Messiah, he
would be expelled from the synagogue.
23 Because of this, his parents said,
He is of age, ask him.
24 Then a second time they called
the man who was blind, and they said
to him, Give glory to Elohim. We know
that this man is a sinner.
25 Then he answered and said,
Whether He is a sinner, I do not know.
One thing I do know; that being blind,
now I see.
26 And they said to him again, What
did He do to you? How did He open
your eyes?
27 He answered them, I told you
already, and you did not hear. Why do
you wish to hear again? Do you also
desire to become disciples of Him?
28 Then they reviled him and said,
You are a disciple of that One, but we
are disciples of Moses.
29 We know that YAHWEH has
spoken by Moses, but this One, we do
not know from where He is.
30 The man answered and said to
them, For there is a marvel in this,
that you do not know from where He
is, and He opened my eyes.
31 But we know that YAHWEH does
not hear sinful ones, but if anyone is
Elohim fearing, and does His will, He
hears that one.
32 From eternity it was never heard
that anyone opened the eyes of one
having been born blind.
33 If this One was not from Elohim,
He could not do anything.
34 They answered and said to him,
You were born wholly in sins, and do
you teach us? And they threw him
outside.
35 Yahshua heard that they threw
him outside, and finding him, He said
to him, Do you believe into the Son of
Elohim?
36 And he answered and said, Who
is He, Master, that I may believe into
Him?
37 And Yahshua said to him, Even
you have seen Him, and He speaking
with you is that One.
38 And he said, I believe, My
Master! And he bowed and worshiped
Him.
39 And Yahshua said, I came into
this world for judgment that the ones
not seeing may see, and the ones
seeing may become blind.
40 And those of the Pharisees who
were with Him heard these things, and
said to Him, Are we also blind?
41 Yahshua said to them, If you were
only blind you would have no sin, but
now you say that, We see. Because of
this your sin is unmovable.

Chapter 10

1 Truly, truly I say to you that he who
does not enter into the sheepfold of
the flock by the gate but climbs up by
another place; he is a thief and a
robber[1].
2 But the one entering through the
gate is the shepherd of the sheep.

---

[1] An ancient sheepfold was enclosed with one opening were the shepherd would sleep in the doorway to protect the sheep. The top was opened to the sky but usually had thorns on the top of the wall so that foxes and other animals could not jump on the wall to come and attack the sheep. The shepherd at the end of each day would have each sheep pass under his staff and count and make sure all were there, as they passed into the sheep pen he would check for bugs on their skin and overall health.

3 The doorkeeper opens to him, and the sheep hear his voice, and he calls his own sheep by name, and leads them out.

4 And when he puts forth his own sheep, he goes in front of them, and the sheep follow him because they know his voice[1].

5 But they will not follow a foreigner, never[2]! But they will flee from him, because they do not know the voice of the strangers.

6 Yahshua spoke this parable to them, but they did not know what it was which He spoke to them.

7 Then Yahshua again said to them, Truly, truly, I say to you that I am the gate of the sheep.

8 All who came before Me are thieves and robbers, but the sheep did not hear them.

9 I am the gate. If anyone enters through Me, he will have life, and will go in, and will go out, and will find pasture.

10 The thief does not come except that he may steal, and kill, and destroy. I came that they may have life and may have it abundantly.

11 I am the Good Shepherd! The Good Shepherd lays down His life on behalf of the sheep[3].

12 But the hireling, not even being a shepherd, who does not own the sheep, sees the wolf coming and forsakes the sheep and flees. And the wolf seizes them, and scatters the sheep.

13 But the hireling flees because he is a hireling, and there is not a care to him concerning the sheep.

14 I am the Good Shepherd, and I know those that are Mine, and I am known by the ones that are Mine[4].

15 Even as the Father knows Me, I also know the Father; and I lay down My life for the sheep.

16 And I also have other sheep, those who were not from this sheepfold[5]. And also them, It is necessary for me to bring them and they will hear my voice and all the flocks will become one. And there will be One Shepherd[6].

17 For this reason My Father loves Me, because I lay down My life, that I may take it up again.

18 No man takes it from Me but I lay it down by My own will. For I have authority to lay it down and I have authority to take it up again, for this commandment I have received from my Father.

19 Then a division occurred again among the Jews, because of these words.

20 And many of them said, He has a demon and is insane. Why do you hear Him?

21 Others said, These are not words of one having been possessed by a demon. A demon is not able to open the eyes of blind ones.

---

1 The sheep did not need to see the shepherd to be comforted but merely to hear his voice.

2 This is a very telling statement as those who will not follow the leadership ordained by Yahshua Messiah and follow false doctrine cannot be of the sheepfold of Yahshua.

3 Sheep cannot survive on their own and are completely scared to the point of panic if they realize they are not with the shepherd, they will freeze and literally starve to death unless the shepherd finds them.

4 A true follower of Yahshua will never follow anyone but Yahshua and His ordained ministry.

5 He is speaking of the other tribes of Israel that He has commissioned His disciples to find (Math 10:6).

6 This is a clear reference to the Messiah in Ezekiel 37: 15-28 collecting the two houses of Israel upon His return and making them into one fold.

22 And the Feast of Dedication[1] took
place in Jerusalem, and it was winter.
23 And Yahshua was walking in the
sanctuary, in Solomon's Porch.
24 Then the Jews encircled Him,
and said to Him, Until when do You
lift up our soul? If You are the
Messiah, tell us openly.
25 Yahshua answered them, I told
you, and you did not believe. The
works which I do in the name of My
Father, these bear witness about Me.
26 But you do not believe for you are
not of My sheep, as I said to you.
27 My sheep hear My voice, and I
know them, and they follow Me.
28 And I give eternal life to them,
and they shall not perish forever! And
not anyone shall snatch them out of
My hand.
29 My Father who has given them to
Me is greater than all, and no one is
able to snatch out of My Father's hand.
30 I and the Father are One [2]*!*
31 Then again the Jews took up
stones, that they might stone Him.
32 Yahshua answered them, Many
pleasing works from the presence of
My Father I have shown you. For
which of them do you stone Me?
33 The Jews answered Him, saying,
We do not stone You concerning a
good work, but concerning blasphemy;
and because You, being a son of man,
make Yourself Elohim[3].
34 Yahshua answered them, Has it
not been written in your Law, "I have
told you, you are Elohim[4]?" *(Psa.
82:6)*
35 If those people He called Elohim
because the Word of Elohim was with
them and scripture is not able to be
broken.
36 To Him whom the Father
sanctified and sent into the world you
say, You blaspheme! concerning that I
had told you that I am the Son of
Elohim.
37 If I do not do the works of My
Father, do not believe Me.
38 But if I do, even if you do not
believe Me, believe the works, that you
may perceive and may believe that the
Father is in Me, and I in Him.
39 Then again they sought to seize
Him. And He went forth from their
hand.
40 And He went away across the
Jordan to the place where John was at
first baptizing and remained there.
41 And many came to Him and said,
John indeed did no miraculous sign,
but all things that John said
concerning this One were true.
42 And many believed into Him
there.

Chapter 11

1 And there was a certain sick one,
Lazarus from Bethany, of the village of
Mariam and her sister Martha.
2 And it was Mariam who anointed
our Master with ointment and wiped
His feet with her hair, whose brother
Lazarus was sick.

---

1 This feast is Hanukkah, which means re-dedication.

2 The word here means they are united, but the neuter form of the word rules out the meaning that they can be one person or being. They are two beings but one in spirit and each has totally surrendered their wills to each other in love, goal and purpose. Although they both existed for eternity the Father is greater in judicial order and authority (Joh 14:28). The proof of this is right now in heaven there are 2 thrones one that the Father is sitting on and one to the right of the Father that the Son is sitting on. (Ps 110:1, 1 Pe 3:22, Ro 8:34, Acts 2:33, 7:55-56, Heb 1:3, 8:1, 10:10-13)

3 Yahshua clearly proclaimed that He was Elohim and preexisted (Joh 8:56)

4 This psalm is talking about mankind's great potential to become a literal child in the family of Yahweh (Ro 8:11-17)

3 Then the sisters sent to Him,
saying, Master, behold, the one whom
You love is sick.
4 And hearing, Yahshua said, This is
not sickness to death, but for the glory
of Elohim, that the Son of Elohim be
glorified by it.
5 And Yahshua loved Martha and her
sister and Lazarus.
6 Therefore, when He heard that he
is sick, then, indeed, He remained in
the place where He was two days.
7 Then after this He said to the
disciples, Let us go to Judea again.
8 The disciples said to Him, Rabbi,
just now the Jews were seeking to
stone You, and do You go there again?
9 Yahshua answered, Are there not
twelve hours in the day? If a man
should walk in the day, he does not
stumble because he sees the light of
the world.
10 But if a man walks in the night, he
stumbles because there is no flame in
him.
11 He said these things. And after
this, He said to them, our friend
Lazarus sleeps[1], but I am going that I
may resurrect him.
12 Then His disciples said, our
Master, if he has fallen asleep, he will
get well.
13 But Yahshua had spoken about
his death, but they thought that He
spoke of the sleep of tiredness.
14 Therefore, then Yahshua said to
them plainly, Lazarus has died.
15 And I rejoice that I was not there
because of you that you may believe,
but let us walk to there.
16 Then Thomas, he having been
called Twin, said to the fellow
disciples, Let us go, even we, that we
may die with Him.
17 Then coming, Yahshua found him

[1] In scripture death is equated with sleeping not going to heaven. (Acts 7:60, 1 Thes 4:15, 1 Cor 15:51, Joh 3:13)

already being held in the tomb four
days.
18 And Bethany was near Jerusalem,
about fifteen furlongs off.
19 And many of the Jews had come
to those around Martha and Mariam,
that they might console them
concerning their brother.
20 Then when Martha heard that
Yahshua is coming, she met Him; but
Mariam was sitting in the house.
21 Then Martha said to Yahshua, my
Master, if You were here, my brother
would not have died.
22 But even now I know that
whatever You may ask Elohim, He will
give to You.
23 Yahshua said to her, Your brother
will arise.
24 Martha said to Him, I know that
he will rise again in the resurrection in
the last day[2].
25 Yahshua said to her, **I AM** the
Resurrection and the Life[3].
26 He who believes in Me will never
die! Do you believe this?
27 She said to Him, Yes, Master, I
believe that You are the Messiah, the
Son of Elohim who comes into the
world.
28 And saying these things, she went
away and called her sister Mariam
secretly, saying, The Teacher is here
and calls you.
29 That one, when she heard, rose
up quickly and came to Him.
30 And Yahshua had not yet come

[2] The eternal hope in scripture was always in the resurrection and the millennial Kingdom, not going to Heaven. Mankind was given dominion over the earth in Genesis 1:27, not heaven. Only Satan tried to ascend to the throne of Yahweh and was cast down due to that. Is 14:12-15, Is 66:1

[3] Again Yahshua makes a clear dogmatic statement that He is eternal, and that to be resurrected and enter the Kingdom you must believe in Him.

into the village, but was in the place
where Martha met Him.
31 Then the Jews who were with her
in the house, and consoling her, seeing
that Mariam quickly rose up and went
out, they followed her, saying, She is
going to the tomb so that she may
weep there.
32 Then Mariam, when she came
where Yahshua was, seeing Him, she
fell at His feet, saying to Him, Master,
if You were here, my brother would
not have died.
33 And Yahshua when He saw her
weeping and the Jews, those who had
come with her who were weeping, he
groaned in His Spirit and was moved
in his soul. *(Mk 8:12)*
34 And He said, Where have you put
him? They said to Him, Master, come
and see.
35 Yahshua wept[1].
36 Then the Jews said, See how He
loved him!
37 But some of them said, Was this
One, the One opening the eyes of the
blind, not able to have caused that this
one should not die?
38 Then groaning again within
Himself, Yahshua came to the tomb.
And it was a cave, and a stone was
placed upon its entrance.
39 And Yahshua said, Take this
stone away! Martha, the sister of the
dead man, said to him, My Master, it is
the fourth day. He stinks already!
40 Yahshua said to her, Did I not say
to you that if you would believe you
will see the glory of YAHWEH?
41 Then they took away the stone
where the dead one was laid. And
Yahshua lifted His eyes upward and
said, Father, I thank You that You
heard Me.
42 And I know that You always hear
Me, but because of the crowd that
stands here, I said it, that they might
believe that You sent Me.
43 And saying these things, He cried
out with a loud voice, Lazarus! Come
Forth!
44 And that dead man came out
while his hands and his feet were
bound in bandages, and his face bound
in a head cloth! Yahshua said to them,
Untie him and allow him to go!
45 Then many of the Jews, those
coming to Mariam, and having seen
what Yahshua did, believed into Him.
46 But some of them went away to
the Pharisees and told them what
Yahshua had done.
47 Then the chief priests and the
Pharisees assembled a Sanhedrin, and
said, What are we doing, for this man
does many miracles?
48 If we let Him alone this way, all
will believe into Him, and the Romans
will come and will take away from us
both our land and our nation.
49 But a certain one of them,
Caiaphas being high priest of that
year, said to them, You know nothing,
50 and you do not realize that it is
better that one man should die for us
for the sake of the nation, than all the
nation should perish.
51 But he did not say this from
himself, but being high priest that
year, he prophesied that Yahshua was
about to die on behalf of the nation,
52 And not only for the sake of the
nation but that also the sons of Elohim
who are scattered that he might gather
into one nation[2].
53 Then from that day, they decided
to kill Him.
54 Then Yahshua no longer walked

---

[1] He was not weeping due to the death of Lazarus, as He knew in a moment He would be resurrecting him. He was weeping due to their lack of belief in what He was about to do.

[2] Prophesying about the re-gathering of all 12 tribes of Israel into one (Ezek 37:15-28)

publicly among the Jews, but went away from there into the country near a deserted place, to a city being called Ephraim[1], and stayed there with His disciples.
55 And the Passover of the Jews was near. And many went up to Jerusalem out of the country before the Passover that they might purify themselves.
56 Then they sought Yahshua, and said with one another, standing in the sanctuary, What does it seem to you? That He does not at all come to the Feast?
57 And all the chief priests and the Pharisees had given commands that if anyone knew where He is, he should inform so that they might seize Him.

Chapter 12

1 Then six days before the Passover, Yahshua came to Bethany, where Lazarus was, who had died, whom He raised from the dead.
2 Then they made Him a supper there, and Martha served. But Lazarus was one of those reclining with Him.
3 Then taking a pound of ointment of pure, costly spikenard, Mariam anointed the feet of Yahshua and wiped off His feet with her hairs. And the house was filled with the odor of the ointment. *(Luk 7:38, 44)*
4 Then Simon's son, one of His disciples, Judas Iscariot, who was about to betray Him, said,
5 Why was this ointment not sold for three hundred denarii[2] and given to the poor?
6 But he said this, not that he was caring for the poor, but that he was a thief and held the moneybag and carried away the things being put in.
7 Then Yahshua said, Allow her, for she has kept it for the day of My burial.
8 For you always have the poor with you, but you do not always have Me.
9 Then a great crowd of the Jews learned that He was there. And they did not come because of Yahshua alone, but that they also might see Lazarus whom He raised from the dead.
10 But the chief priests were also thinking that they might kill Lazarus also,
11 because through him many of the Jews were leaving and believing into Yahshua.
12 On the next day, coming to the Feast, hearing that Yahshua is coming to Jerusalem, a great crowd
13 took palm branches and went out to a meeting with Him, and they were crying out, Hosanna[3]! "Being, blessed is the One coming in the name of YAHWEH, the King of Israel!"
14 And finding a donkey, Yahshua sat on it, even as it had been written,
15 "Do not fear, daughter of Zion Behold your King comes to you and is mounted upon a colt, the fold of a female donkey." *(Isa. 40:9; Zech. 9:9)*
16 But His disciples did not know these things at the first, but when Yahshua was glorified, then they recalled that these things had been written on Him, and that they did these things to Him.
17 Then the crowd which was with Him when He called Lazarus out of the tomb and raised him from the dead, witnessed.
18 Because of this also the crowd met Him, because it heard of this miracle He had done.

[1] Ephraim was the main tribe of Northern Israel and it is somewhat prophetic that after it is stated in verse 52 that He would gather all nations into one that He then stays in the city of Ephraim.

[2] Approximately, a year's wage for a rural worker.

[3] Means save us now. (*Psa. 118:26)*

19 Then the Pharisees said to themselves, Observe that you gain nothing. Behold, the world has gone after Him.

20 And there were some Gentiles among those coming up, that they might worship at the Feast.

21 Then these came to Philip, the one from Bethsaida of Galilee, and asked him, saying, Sir, we desire to see Yahshua.

22 Philip came and told Andrew, and again Andrew and Philip told Yahshua.

23 But Yahshua answered them, saying, The hour has come that the Son of Man should be glorified.

24 Truly, truly I say to you that a grain of wheat, except it should fall and die on the ground, remains by itself. But if it dies, it produces much fruit.

25 Whoever loves his soul will destroy it, and whoever hates his soul in this world will keep it to life eternal.

26 If anyone serves Me, let him follow Me; and where I am, there My servant will also be. And if anyone serves Me, the Father will honor him.

27 And My soul is troubled, and what may I say? Father, save Me out of this hour? Rather, because of this I came to this hour.

28 Father, glorify Your name. Then a voice came out of the heaven: I both glorified it, and I will glorify it again.

29 Then standing and hearing, the crowd said that thunder occurred. Others said, a cherub has spoken to Him.

30 Yahshua answered and said, This voice has not occurred because of Me, but because of you.

31 Now is the judgment of this world; now the ruler of this world shall be cast outside.

32 And I, if I be lifted up from the earth, I will draw all to Myself.

33 But He said this, signifying by what kind of death He was about to die.

34 The crowd answered Him, We heard out of the Torah that The Messiah remains forever. And how do You say that the Son of Man must be lifted up? Who is this Son of Man?

35 Then Yahshua said to them, Yet a little while the Light is with you. Walk while you have the Light, that darkness not overtake you. And the one walking in the darkness does not know where he is going.

36 While you have the Light, believe into the Light, that you may become sons of Light. Yahshua spoke these things and departed and hid from them.

37 Though He had done so many miraculous signs before them, they did not believe into Him,

38 so that the Word of Isaiah the prophet might be fulfilled, which he said, "Master, who has believed our report? And the arm of YAHWEH, to whom was it revealed?" *(Isa. 53:1)*

39 Because of this they could not believe, because Isaiah said again,

40 "They have blinded their eyes and have darkened their heart that they might not see with their eyes and understand with their heart and repent and I heal them." *(Isa. 6:10)*

41 Isaiah said these things when he saw His glory, and spoke about Him.[1]

42 Still, however, even out of the leaders, many did believe into Him. But because of the Pharisees, they were not confessing, so that they not be put out of the synagogue.

43 For they loved the praise of men more than the glory of Elohim.

44 But Yahshua cried out and said, The one believing into Me does not believe into Me, but into the One sending Me.

---

[1] Referring to Isaiah Chapter 6

45 And the one seeing Me sees the One who sent Me.

46 I have come as a Light to the world, that everyone who believes into Me may not remain in the darkness.

47 And if anyone hears My Words and does not believe, I do not judge him; for I did not come that I might judge the world, but that I might save the world.

48 The one who rejects Me and does not receive My Words has that judging him: the Word which I spoke, that will judge him in the last Day[1].

49 For I did not speak from Myself, but He who sent Me, the Father, He has given Me command, what I should say, and what I should speak.

50 And I know that His commandments are eternal life[2]. Then what things I speak, as the Father has said to Me, so I speak.

Chapter 13

1 And before[3] the Feast of the Passover, Yahshua knowing that His hour had come that He should move from this world to the Father, loving His own in the world, He loved them to the end.

2 And supper having occurred, the Devil having put already into the heart of Simon's son Judas Iscariot that he should betray Him,

3 Yahshua knowing that the Father has given all things into His hands, and that He came out from Elohim, and goes away to Elohim,

4 He rose up from the supper and laid aside His garments. And taking a towel, He girded Himself.

5 Then He put water into the basin and began to wash the feet of the disciples, and to wipe off with the towel with which He was girded[4].

6 He then came to Simon Peter. And that one said to Him, Master, do You wash my feet?

7 Yahshua answered and said to him, The thing that I do you do not understand now, but afterwards you will know.

8 Peter said to Him, You may never wash my feet for me. Yahshua answered him, If I do not wash you, you have no part with Me.

9 Simon Peter said to Him, Master, not my feet only, but also the hands and the head.

10 Yahshua said to him, The one having been immersed has no need other than to wash the feet, for all of him is clean[5]. And you are clean, but not all.

11 For He knew the one betraying Him. For this reason He said, You are not all clean.

12 Then when He had washed their feet and had taken His garments, reclining again, He said to them, Do you know what I have done to you?

13 You call Me the Teacher, and, the Master. And you say well, for **I AM**.

14 If then I washed your feet, the

---

1 Judgment is given by the Torah, so clearly it could never be done away with. (Rev 20:11-13) also see the next verse 50.

2 Math 19:16-17.

3 This is directly preceding into the Passover

4 An Ancient Middle East custom one would wash the hands before eating, but here Yahshua girds Himself with a towel to wash the feet of the disciples. Wearing sandals would make the feet most dirty from a journey and truly shows the humility that was displayed and set for believers as an example.

5 This is typifying that through baptism or immersion one is cleansed of their sins, but still there are minor imperfections and each year at the Passover the believer does not need to be re-baptized but the foot-washing symbolically shows the believer trying to get the little spots and wrinkles out of their lives.

Master and the Teacher, you also ought to wash the feet of one another.
15 For I gave you an example, that as I did to you, you also should do[1].
16 Truly, truly, I say to you, A slave is not greater than his Master, nor a messenger greater than the one sending him.
17 If you know these things, blessed are you if you do them.
18 I do not speak concerning all of you; I know whom I chose out; but that the Scripture might be fulfilled, "The one eating the bread with Me lifted up his heel against Me." *(Psa. 41:9)*
19 From now on I will say to you a thing before it happens, so that when it happens you will believe that **I Am.**
20 Truly, truly, I say to you, The one who receives whomever I may send receives Me; and the one who receives Me receives the One who sent Me.
21 Saying these things, Yahshua was troubled in spirit and testified and said, Indeed I tell you truly that one of you will betray Me.
22 Then the disciples looked upon one another, doubting of whom He spoke.
23 But there was one of His disciples reclining at the bosom of Yahshua, whom Yahshua loved.
24 Then Simon Peter nods to him to ask whom it might be of whom He spoke.
25 And leaning on the breast of Yahshua, he said to Him, Master, who is it?
26 Yahshua answered, It is he to whom I, having dipped and give the bread to. And dipping the bread, He gave it to Judas Iscariot, son of Simon.
27 And after the bread, then Satan entered into that one. Then Yahshua said to him, What you do, do quickly.
28 But no one of those reclining knew this, for what He spoke to him;
29 for some thought, since Judas held the moneybag, that Yahshua was saying to him, Buy what things we have need of for the feast; or that he should give something to the poor.
30 Then, receiving the bread, he immediately went out. And it was night.
31 Then when he had gone out, Yahshua said, Now the Son of Man was glorified, and YAHWEH was glorified in Him.
32 If YAHWEH was glorified in Him, YAHWEH also will glorify Him in Himself, and immediately will glorify Him.
33 My Sons, yet a little while I am with you. You will seek Me; and, as I said to the Jews, Where I go, you are not able to come; I also say to you now.
34 I give a new commandment to you, that you should love one another; according as I loved you, you should also love one another.
35 By this all shall know that you are My disciples, if you have love among one another.
36 Simon Peter said to Him, Our Master, where do You go? Yahshua answered him, Where I go you are not able to follow Me now, but afterwards you shall follow Me.
37 Peter said to Him, Master, why am I not able to follow You now? I will lay down my life for You!
38 Yahshua answered him, Will you lay down your life for Me? Indeed, I tell you truly, in no way shall a cock crow until you deny Me three times.

Chapter 14

1 Do not let your heart be troubled; believe in YAHWEH, and believe in Me.

---

1 Here Yahshua makes the foot-washing an official part of the Passover ceremony.

2 There are many rooms in my Father's house, and if not I would have told you so. For I go to prepare a place for you.
3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I am coming again[1] and will receive you to Myself, that where I am you may be also.
4 And where I go you know, and the way you know.
5 Thomas said to Him, Our Master, we do not know where You go, and how can we know the way?
6 Yahshua said to him, I am the Way, and the Truth, and the Life. No one comes to the Father except through Me.
7 If you had known Me, you would have known My Father also; and from now on you do know Him, and have seen Him.
8 And Philip said to Him, Master, show us the Father, and it is enough for us.
9 Yahshua said to him, Am I so long a time with you, and you have not known Me, Philip? The one seeing Me has seen the Father[2]! And how do you say, Show us the Father?
10 Do you not believe that I am in the Father and the Father is in Me? The Words which I speak to you I do not speak from Myself, but the Father who dwells in Me, He does the works.
11 Believe Me that I am in the Father, and the Father is in Me; but if not, believe Me because of the works themselves.
12 Indeed, I tell you truly, the one believing into Me, the works which I do, that one shall do also, and greater than these he will do, because I go to My Father.
13 And whatever you may ask in My name, this I will do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son.
14 If you ask anything in My name, I will do it. (Eph 5:20)
15 If you love Me, keep My commandments[3].
16 And I will petition the Father, and He will give you another one which will end the curse[1], that He may remain with you forever,
17 the Spirit of Truth, whom the world cannot receive because it does not see it nor know it. But you know it, for it dwells with you and shall be in you.
18 I will not leave you orphans; I am coming to you.
19 Yet a little while and the world no longer sees Me, but you see Me. Because I live, you also shall live.
20 In that day you shall know that I am in My Father, and you are in Me, and I am in you.
21 He that has My commandments and keeps them, it is that one who loves Me; and the one that loves Me shall be loved by My Father, and I shall love him and will reveal Myself to him.
22 Judas said to Him (not the Iscariot) Master, what has happened that You are about to reveal Yourself to us and not at all to the world?
23 Yahshua answered and said to him, If anyone loves Me, he will keep My Word, and My Father shall love

---

[1] The promise to the believer is not to go to heaven but that Yahshua is coming back to earth for them.

[2] Yahshua is not saying that He is the Father, but that since they have the same spirit and have fully submitted to each other in love, goal and purpose that when you see Him it is the same as seeing the Father, since their actions would be exactly the same.

[3] Love and obedience go hand and hand

[1] The Aramaic word here literally means *one who ends the curse,* which is referring to the curse of Adam at creation for disobeying Elohim, and is lifted through the Holy Spirit.

him. And We will come to him and will make a dwelling place with him.
24 The one who does not love Me does not keep My Words. And the Word which you hear is not Mine but of the Father who sent Me.
25 I have spoken these things to you, abiding with you;
26 But the Redeemer, the Holy Spirit, whom my Father will send in My name will teach you everything. And it will remind you of everything that I said to you.
27 I leave peace to you; My peace I give to you. Not as the world gives I give to you. Let not your heart be troubled, nor let it be timid.
28 You heard that I said to you, I am going away, and I am coming again to you. If you loved Me, you would have rejoiced that I said, I am going to the Father; for My Father is greater than I.
29 And now I have told you before it occurs, that when it shall occur you may believe.
30 I shall no longer speak many things with you, for the ruler of this world is coming, and he has nothing in Me.
31 But that the world may know that I love the Father, even as the Father commanded Me, so I do. Rise up, let us go from here.

Chapter 15

1 I am the True Vine, and My Father is the Vinedresser.
2 Every branch in Me not bearing fruit, He takes it away; and each one bearing fruit, He prunes, so that it may bear more fruit[1].
3 You are already pruned because of the Word which I have spoken to you.
4 Remain in Me, and I in you. As the branch is not able to bear fruit of itself, unless it remain in the vine, so neither can you unless you remain in Me.
5 I am the Vine and you are the branches. Whoever abides in me and I in him, this man will produce plentiful fruit because without me you are not able to do anything.
6 Unless one remains in Me, he is cast out as the branch and is dried up; and they gather and throw them into a fire, and they are burned.
7 If you remain in Me, and My Words remain in you, whatever you desire you will ask, and it shall happen to you[2].
8 In this My Father is glorified, that you should bear much fruit; and you will be disciples to Me.[3]
9 As the Father loved Me, I also loved you; continue in My love.
10 If you keep My commandments you will continue in My love, as I have kept My Father's commandments and continue in His love[4].
11 I have spoken these things to you that My joy may abide in you, and your joy may be full.
12 This is My commandment, that you love one another as I loved you.
13 Greater love than this has no one, that anyone should lay down his life for his friends.
14 You are My friends if you do whatever I command you.
15 I no longer call you slaves, for the slave does not know what his Master does. But I called you friends, because all things which I heard from My Father I made known to you.

---

1 The responsibility of every true disciple is to be bearing fruit for the Kingdom.

2 This comes by 100% surrender and giving up our free will to YHWH.

3 The word disciple is used more than 250 times in the New Testament to describe a believer in Yahshua and to qualify to be a disciple one must bear fruit.

4 Yahshua was a disciple of YHWH and followed His will completely, and we are to be disciples of Yahshua and do the same.

16 You have not chosen Me, but I chose you out and planted you, that you should go and should bear fruit, and your fruit remain, that whatever you should ask the Father in My name, He may give you.
17 These things I command you, that you love one another.
18 If the world hates you, know that it has hated Me before you.
19 If you were of the world, the world would love its own. But because you are not of the world, but I chose you out of the world, because of this the world hates you.
20 Remember the Word which I said to you, A servant is not greater than his Master. If they persecuted Me, they also will persecute you. If they kept My Word, they also will keep yours.
21 But all these things they will do to you on account of My name, because they do not know the One who sent Me.
22 If I had not come and had not spoken to them, they would have had no sin. But now they do not have a sacrifice upon their sin.
23 The one hating Me also hates My Father.
24 If I did not do the works among them which no other did, they had no sin. But now they both have seen and also have hated Me and My Father.
25 But that may be fulfilled the Word that has been written in their Torah, "They hated Me without a reason." *(Psa. 69:4)*
26 And when the Comforter comes, whom I will send to you from the Father, the Spirit of Truth who proceeds from the Father, it will witness concerning Me.
27 You will also testify, for you were with me from the start.

Chapter 16

1 I have spoken these things to you so that you may not stumble.
2 For they will drive you out of their assemblies, but an hour is coming that everyone killing you will think they offer an offering before Elohim.
3 And they will do these things to you because they do not know the Father nor Me.
4 But I have spoken these things to you so that when the hour comes you may recall them, that I told you these things. But I did not say these things to you from the beginning because I was with you.
5 But now I am going to Him who sent Me. And not one of you asks Me, Where are You going?
6 But because I have said these things to you, grief has filled your heart.
7 But I tell you the truth, it is better for you that I should go; for if I do not go away, the redeemer will not come to you. But if I go, I will send it to you.
8 And having come, that One will convict the world concerning sin, and concerning righteousness, and concerning judgment.
9 Concerning sin, because they do not believe into Me;
10 and concerning righteousness, because I am going to the Father, and you no longer see Me;
11 and concerning judgment, because the ruler of this world has been judged.
12 I have yet many things to tell you, but you are not able to bear now.
13 But when that One comes, the Spirit of Truth, it will guide you into all Truth, for it will not speak from itself, but whatever it hears, it will speak; and it will announce the coming things to you.
14 That One will glorify Me, for He

will receive from Mine and will
announce to you.
15 All things which the Father has
are Mine. For this reason I said that
He receives from Mine, and will
announce to you.
16 A little while and you do not see
Me. And again a little while, and you
will see Me, because I go away to the
Father.
17 Then His disciples said to one
another, What is this which He says to
us, A little while, and you do not see
me; and again, A little and you will see
Me? And, Because I go away to the
Father?
18 Then they said, What is this that
He says, A little while? We do not
know what He says.
19 Then Yahshua knew that they
desired to ask Him. And He said to
them, Do you seek answers with one
another concerning this, because I
said, A little while, and you do not see
Me; and again a little and you will see
Me?
20 Truly, truly, I say to you that you
will weep and will lament, but the
world will rejoice. And you will be
grieved, but your grief will become joy.
21 The woman has grief when she
bears, because her hour came, but
when she brings forth the child, she no
longer remembers the distress,
because of the joy that a man was born
into the world.
22 And you, then, truly have grief
now; but I will see you again, and your
heart will rejoice, and no one takes
your joy from you.
23 And in that day you will ask Me
nothing. Truly, truly, I say to you,
Whatever you shall ask the Father in
My name, He will give you.
24 Until now you asked nothing in
My name; ask, and you will receive, so
that your joy may be full.
25 I have spoken these things to you
in parables. An hour comes when I will
no longer speak to you in parables, but
I will reveal the Father to you with
your eyes uncovered.
26 In that day you will ask in My
name, and I do not tell you that I will
petition the Father about you;
27 for the Father Himself loves you,
because you have loved Me, and have
believed that I have proceeded from
the presence of the Father.
28 I proceeded from the presence of
the Father and have come into the
world. And again I leave the world and
I go to the Father.
29 His disciples said to Him, Behold,
now You speak openly and You say no
parable.
30 Now we know that You know all
things and have no need that anyone
question You. By this we believe that
You came forth from Elohim.
31 Yahshua said to them, believe!
32 Behold, an hour is coming, and
now has come, that you are scattered,
each one to his own things, and you
will leave Me alone. Yet I am not
alone, because the Father is with Me.
33 I have spoken these things to you
that in me you may have peace. In the
world there will be affliction to you,
but take courage, I have conquered the
world.

Chapter 17

1 Yahshua spoke these things and
lifted up His eyes to Heaven, and said,
Father, the hour has come. Glorify
Your Son, that Your Son may also
glorify You,
2 as You gave to Him authority over
all flesh, so that to all which You gave
to Him, He may give to them
everlasting life.
3 And this is everlasting life, that
they may know You, the Elohim of

truth, and Yahshua Messiah, whom
You have sent[1].
4 I have glorified You on the earth. I
finished the work that You gave Me to
do.
5 And now Father, glorify Me with
Yourself, with the glory which I had
with You before the existence of the
world[2].
6 I revealed Your name to the men
whom You gave to Me out of the
world. They were Yours, and You gave
them to Me; and they have kept Your
Word.
7 Now they have known that
everything that you have given to me I
have given to them and they received
them.
8 And they know that I have truly
proceeded from your presence, and
they believe that You have sent me[3].
9 I pray concerning them; I do not
pray concerning the world, but
concerning the ones whom You gave to
Me, because they are Yours.
10 And all My things are Yours, and
Yours are Mine; and I have been
glorified in them.
11 And no longer am I in the world,
yet these are in the world; and I come
to You. Holy Father, keep them in
Your name, those whom You gave to
Me, that they may be echad *(united)* as
We are echad *(united)*[4]. *(Eph 3:15)*
12 While I was with them in the
world, I kept them in Your name; I
guarded those whom You gave to Me,
and not one of them was lost, except
the son of perdition, that the Scripture
might be fulfilled.
13 And now I come to You, and I
speak these things in the world, that
they may have My joy being fulfilled in
them.
14 I have given them Your Word,
and the world hated them because
they are not of the world, as I am not
of the world.
15 I do not pray that You take them
out of the world, but that You keep
them from the evil.
16 They are not of the world, even as
I am not of the world.
17 Sanctify them in Your Truth; Your
Word is Truth.
18 As You have sent Me into the
world, I also have sent them into the
world,
19 And I fear for their sakes. I
sanctify myself so that they may also
be sanctified by Truth.
20 And I do not pray concerning
these only, but also concerning those
who will believe in Me through their
word;
21 that all may be echad, as You are
in Me Father and I in You, that they
also may be echad in Us[5], that the
world may believe that You sent Me.
22 And I have given them the glory
which You have given Me, that they
may be echad, as We are echad
(united):
23 I in them, and You in Me, that
they may be perfected in one; and that
the world may know that You sent Me
and loved them, even as You loved Me.
24 Father, those whom You have
given to me, I desire that where I am
they might also be with me that they

[1] John chapter 17 clearly divines the unity between the Father and the Son. They are one (united) in thought, purpose and mind, but clearly two separate beings both with an individual will (Math 26:39) that has been fully submitted to each other in love and harmony such as should be between a husband and wife. It is hard for humans to understand of such a relationship as humans are inherently selfish and can't grasp the reality of such a union.

[2] Both the Father Yah Yahweh and the Son Yahshua Yahweh existed from eternity.

[3] Yahshua preexisted (Joh 3:13)

[4] The congregation was told to be kept in the name of the Father Yahweh. (Eph 3:15) (1 Chron 28:8)

might see my glory that you have given to me because you have loved me from before the foundations of the world.

25 Righteous Father, indeed the world did not know You, but I knew You; and these have known that You sent Me.

26 And I made known Your name to them[1], and will make it known, that the love with which You loved Me may be in them, and I in them.

Chapter 18

1 Having said these things, Yahshua went out with His disciples across the brook Kidron, where there was a garden into which He and His disciples entered.

2 And Judas, the one betraying Him, also knew the place, because Yahshua many times assembled there with His disciples.

3 Therefore Judas took a unit of soldiers and some men from the chief priests and Pharisees. He took guards and came there with torches and lamps and weapons.

4 Then knowing all the things coming upon Him, going forth, Yahshua said to them, Whom do you seek?

[5] The Father Yahweh and the Son Yahshua are one by the Holy Spirit (Ruach H'Kodesh), but the Holy Spirit is a not a separate being apart from Yahweh. Yahweh is spirit. If the Holy Spirit was a separate being it is inconceivable that it would not be mentioned in this whole chapter about the unity of Yahweh and Yahshua. Yahshua only prays to Yahweh His Father in scripture never to the Holy Spirit. Also, in all 14 epistles of the Apostle Paul, he greets the Father and Son in the beginning of each epistle but no where ever does he greet the Holy Spirit as a separate entity apart from Yahweh.

[1] Yahshua, clearly saw the importance of the name of the Father, Yahweh.

5 They answered Him, Yahshua the Nazarene. Yahshua said to them, **I AM!** And Judas, the one betraying Him, also stood with them.

6 Then when He said to them, **I AM**, they went backwards and fell to the ground[2].

7 Then again He asked, Whom do you seek? And they said, Yahshua the Nazarene.

8 Yahshua answered, I told you that **I AM;** then if you seek Me, allow these to depart,

9 (that the Word might be fulfilled which He said, Of those whom You gave to Me, I lost not one of them).

10 Then having a sword, Simon Peter drew it and struck the slave of the high priest and cut off his right ear. And the slave's name was Malek.

11 Then Yahshua said to Peter, Put your sword into the sheath: the cup which the Father has given Me, shall I not at all drink it?

12 Then the cohort, even the captain and the guards of the Jews together, seized Yahshua and bound Him.

13 And they led Him away first to Annas, for he was the father-in-law of Caiaphas, who was high priest of that year.

14 And Caiaphas was the one who had given counsel to the Jews that it was advantageous for one man to perish for the people.

15 And Simon Peter and another disciple followed Yahshua, and that disciple was known to the high priest and entered together with Yahshua into the court of the high priest,

16 but Peter stood at the door outside. The other disciple who was known to the high priest went out and spoke to the doorkeeper, and brought Peter in.

[2] Whenever you see reverence to Yahweh the person is bowing and prostrating forward, but with demons they fall backwards.

17 Then the slave woman, the doorkeeper, said to Peter, Are you not also of the disciples of this man? He said to her, No!

18 Now the slaves and the under-officers were standing and warming themselves, having made a fire of coals, for it was cold; and Peter was with them, standing and warming himself.

19 Then the high priest questioned Yahshua about His disciples and about His teachings.

20 Yahshua answered him, I publicly spoke to the world; I always taught in the synagogue and in the sanctuary where the Jews always come together, and I spoke nothing in secret.

21 Why do you question Me? Question those hearing what I spoke to them: behold, these know what I said!

22 But on His having said these things, one of the guards standing by struck Yahshua upon His cheek, saying, Do You answer the high priest this way?

23 Yahshua answered him, If I spoke evilly, bear witness concerning the evil; but if well, why do you strike Me?

24 Then having bound Him, Annas sent Him forth to Caiaphas the high priest.

25 And Simon Peter was standing and warming himself. Then they said to him, Are you not also of His disciples? He denied and said I am not.

26 One of the slaves of the high priest, being a relative of the one whose ear Peter cut off, said, Did I not see you in the garden with Him?

27 Then again Peter denied, and immediately a cock crowed.

28 Then they led Yahshua from Caiaphas into the praetorium, and it was morning. And they did not enter into the praetorium that they might not be defiled, but that they might eat the Passover.

29 Then Pilate went out to them and said, What accusation do you bring against this man?

30 They answered and said to him, If this One were not an evildoer, then we would not have delivered Him to you.

31 Then Pilate said to them, You take Him and judge Him according to your own Law. Then the Jews said to him, It is not lawful for us to put anyone to death,

32 (that the Word of Yahshua which He said might be fulfilled, signifying by what kind of death He was about to die).

33 Then Pilate again went into the praetorium and called Yahshua, and said to Him, Are You the King of the Jews?

34 Yahshua answered him, Do you say this from your heart, or did others tell you about Me?

35 Pilate answered, am I a Jew? Your nation, even the chief priests, delivered You up to me! What did You do?

36 Yahshua answered, My kingdom is not of this world. If My kingdom were of this world, My servants would have fought that I might not be delivered up to the Jews. But now My kingdom is not from here.

37 Then Pilate said to Him, Are You really a king? Yahshua answered, You say that I am a king. For this purpose I have been born, and for this I have come into the world, that I might witness to the Truth. Everyone being of the Truth hears My voice.

38 Pilate said to Him, What is truth? And saying this, he again went out to the Jews and said to them, I do not find even one crime in Him!

39 But there is a common custom to you that I should release one prisoner

to you at the Passover. Then you decide: should I release the King of the Jews to you?
40 Then all cried out again, saying, Not this One, but Barabbas[1]! But Barabbas was a robber.

Chapter 19

1 Then Pilate took Yahshua and scourged Him.
2 And the soldiers wove a crown of thorns and they placed it on His head and they covered Him with garments of purple.
3 And they were saying, Peace to you, King of the Jews. And they were striking Him on His cheeks.
4 Then Pilate went outside again and said to them, Behold, I bring Him out to you that you may know that I do not find even one crime in Him!
5 Then Yahshua came outside, wearing the crown of thorns and the purple clothing. And he said to them, Behold, the Man!
6 Then when the chief priests and the guards saw Him, they cried out, saying, Crucify! Crucify! Pilate said to them, You take Him and crucify Him, for I do not find one crime in Him!
7 Then the Jews answered him, We have a law, and according to our Law He ought to die because He made Himself Son of Elohim!
8 Then when Pilate heard this word, he was more afraid.
9 And he entered into the praetorium again and said to Yahshua, From where are You? But Yahshua did not give him an answer.

[1] Bar- Abbas means son of the father. He was an earthly messianic figure looking to take the kingdom by force whereas Yahshua was the true Son of the Father looking to bring an everlasting kingdom. Israel clearly chose the wrong figure as Barabbas was set loose and Yahshua put to death.

10 So Pilate said to Him, Do You not speak to me? Do You not know that I have authority to crucify You, and I have authority to release You?
11 Yahshua answered, You would have no authority over me whatsoever, if it had not been given to you from above. Because of this, he who delivered me to you, his sin is greater than yours.
12 And because of this, Pilate was wanting to release Him, but the Jews were crying out, If you release this man you are not a friend of Caesar. For every one who makes himself a king is an adversary of Caesar.
13 Now when Pilate heard this word, he brought Yahshua outside and sat upon the judgment seat in a place that is called the Pavement of Stones but in Hebrew, is called Gabbatha.
14 And it was the Preparation of the Passover, and about the sixth hour. And he said to the Jews, Behold, your King!
15 But they were crying out, Take Him away! Take Him away! Crucify Him! Crucify Him! Pilate said to them, Should I crucify your king? The chief priests said to him, We have no king but Caesar!
16 Therefore, then, he delivered Him up to them, that He might be crucified. And they took Yahshua and led Him away.
17 Carrying His cross beam to a place that was called The Skull, but in Hebrew is called Golgotha
18 where they crucified Him, and two others with Him, on this side and on that side, and Yahshua in the middle.
19 And Pilate also wrote a title and put it on the cross beam. And having been written, it was:[2]

[2] The first letter of each line spells the tetregrammeton or name of YHWH

Y AHSHUA
H'NAZARENE,
W MELEK (and King of)
H YEHUDEIM (the Jews)

20 Therefore many of the Jews read this title, because the place where Yahshua was crucified was near the city. And it had been written in Hebrew, in Greek and in Latin.
21 Then the chief priests of the Jews said to Pilate, Do not write, The King of the Jews, but that One said, I am King of the Jews.
22 Pilate answered, What I have written, I have written.
23 And when the soldiers crucified Yahshua, they took His garments and made four pieces for each of the soldiers, but His robe was without stitch, woven completely from the top.
24 And they said one to another, Let us not tear it but let us cast lots for it to determine whose it will be. And the scripture was fulfilled that said, "They divided My garments among themselves, and for My clothing they cast a lot." The soldiers did these things. *(Psa. 22:18)*
25 And His mother, and His mother's sister Mariam, the wife of Clopas, and Mariam Magdalene stood by the torture stake of Yahshua.
26 Then seeing His mother, and the disciple whom He loved standing by, Yahshua said to His mother, Woman, behold your son!
27 Then He said to the disciple, Behold, your mother! And from that hour, the disciple took her into his own home.
28 After this, knowing that all things have now been finished that the scripture be completed, Yahshua said, I thirst.
29 Then a vessel full of vinegar was set, and having filled a sponge with vinegar, and putting hyssop around, they brought it to His mouth. *(Psa. 69:2)*
30 Then when Yahshua took the vinegar, He said, Behold, it is finished. And bowing His head, He delivered up the spirit. (*Ps 116:13)*
31 Then, since it was Preparation, that the bodies not remain on the tree on the Sabbath, for that Sabbath was a holy day[1], the Jews asked Pilate that their legs might be broken and they be taken away.
32 Then the soldiers came and broke the legs of the first, and of the other crucified with Him.
33 But on coming to Yahshua, when they saw He was dead already, they did not break His legs.
34 But one of the soldiers pierced His side with a spear, and at once blood and water came out.
35 And the one seeing has borne witness and his witness is true; and that one knows that he speaks truly, that you may believe.
36 For these things happened that the Scripture might be fulfilled, "Not a bone of Him shall be broken." *(Ex. 12:46; Psa. 34:20)*
37 And again, a different Scripture says, "They shall look at Him whom they have pierced." *(Zech. 12:10)*
38 And after these things, Joseph from Arimathea, being a disciple of Yahshua, but concealed because of fear of the Jews, asked Pilate that he might take the body of Yahshua. And Pilate gave permission. Then he came and took the body of Yahshua.
39 And Nicodemus also came, the one coming at first to Yahshua by night, bearing a mixture of myrrh and

---
[1] This preparation day was not Friday, but was the preparation day for the Holy day that was coming at sunset. This was Thursday according to the biblical calendar and Friday was the Holy day and Saturday the Sabbath.

aloes, about one hundred Roman pounds.
40 Then they took the body of Yahshua and bound it in linens, with the spices, as is usual with the Jews in burying.
41 And there was a garden in the place where He was crucified, and a new tomb in the garden, in which no one yet ever had been placed.
42 There, then, because of the Jews Preparation day[1], because the tomb was near, they put Yahshua.

Chapter 20

1 But on the first of the Sabbaths [2], Mariam Magdalene came early to the tomb, darkness yet being on it. And she saw the stone had been removed from the tomb.
2 Then she ran and came to Simon Peter, and to the other disciple whom Yahshua loved, and said to them, They took away the Master out of the tomb, and we do not know where they laid Him.
3 Then Peter and the other disciple went out and came to the tomb.
4 And the two ran together, and the other disciple ran in front more quickly than Peter and came first to the tomb.
5 And stooping down, he saw the linens lying; however, he did not go in.
6 Then Simon Peter came following him, and went into the tomb and saw the linens lying.
7 And the grave cloth which was on His head was not lying with the linens, but was wrapped up in one place by itself.
8 Therefore, then the other disciple also entered, he having come first to the tomb, even he saw and believed.
9 For they did not yet know the Scripture, that it was necessary for Him to rise from the dead.
10 Then the disciples went away again to themselves.
11 But Mariam stood outside at the tomb, weeping. Then as she wept, she stooped down into the tomb.
12 And she saw two cherubs clothed in white who were sitting, one at His pillow and one at the foot of the bed, where the body of Yahshua had laid.
13 And they said to her, Woman, why do you weep? She said to them, because they took away my Master, and I do not know where they put Him.
14 And saying these things, she turned backward and saw Yahshua standing, and did not know that it was Yahshua.
15 Yahshua said to her, Woman, why do you weep? Whom do you seek? Thinking that it was the gardener, she said to Him, Sir, if You carried Him away, tell me where You put Him, and I will take Him away.
16Yahshua said to her, Mariam! Turning around, she said to Him, Rabboni! (that is to say, My Great One).
17 Yahshua said to her, Do not touch Me, for I have not yet ascended to My Father. But go to My brothers and say to them, I am ascending to My Father and your Father, and My Elohim, and your Elohim.[3]
18 Mariam Magdalene came bringing word to the disciples that she

---

[1] Refer to note number two next to this.

[2] This was early morning on the first day of the week and the feast of firstfruits and the beginning of the 7 week count to Shavuot

[3] Just as no new grain could be eaten until the wave-sheaf was accepted by Yahweh, Yahshua as the firstfruit wave-sheaf offering needed to go to heaven and be accepted by the Father for other believer's to also become firstfruits. Lev 23:9-14, 1 Cor 15:20, 23, Ro 11:16

had seen the Master, and that He told her these things.
19 Then it being evening on that day, the first of the Sabbaths, and the doors having been locked where the disciples were assembled because of fear of the Jews, Yahshua came and stood in the midst and said to them, Shalom Aleichem.[1]
20 And saying this, He showed them His hands and side. Then seeing the Master, the disciples rejoiced.
21 Then Yahshua said to them again, Shalom Aleichem. As the Father has sent Me, I also send you.
22 And saying this, He breathed on them and said to them, Receive the Holy Spirit.
23 If you forgive a man's sins, they will be forgiven. And if you retain the sins of a man, they will be retained[2].
24 But Thomas, one of the Twelve, the one called Twin, was not with them when Yahshua came.
25 Then the other disciples said to him, We have seen the Master. But he said to them, Unless I see the mark of the nails in His hands, and thrust my finger into the mark of the nails, and thrust my hand into His side, I will not believe!
26 And after eight days, His disciples were inside again, and Thomas was with them. The door having been locked, Yahshua came and stood in the midst, and said, Peace to you.
27 Then He said to Thomas, Bring your finger here and see My hands, and bring your hand and thrust into My side, and be not unbelieving, but believing.
28 And Thomas answered and said to Him, my Master and my Elohim!
29 Yahshua said to him, Because you have seen Me, Thomas, you have believed. Blessed are the ones not seeing me, and believing.
30 Then truly Yahshua did many other miracles in the presence of His disciples, which are not written in this book.
31 But these have been written that you may believe that Yahshua is the Messiah, the Son of YAHWEH, and that believing you may have eternal life in His name.

Chapter 21

1 After these things, Yahshua revealed Himself again to the disciples at the Sea of Tiberius. And He revealed Himself this way:
2 Simon Peter, and Thomas, being called Twin, and Nathaniel from Cana of Galilee, and the sons of Zebedee, and two others of His disciples were together.
3 Simon Peter said to them, I am going out to catch fish. They said to him, we also are coming with you. They went and entered into the boat at once. And in that night, they caught nothing.
4 And it now becoming early morning, Yahshua stood on the shore. However, the disciples did not know that it was Yahshua.
5 Then Yahshua said to them, Children, do you not have anything to eat? They answered Him, No.
6 And He said to them, Cast the net

1 Shalom Aleichem- Peace to you

2 In verse 22, Yahshua breathes on the Apostles to receive the Holy Spirit and is setting the stage for them to lay hands on brethren in the future for the imparting of the Holy Spirit (Acts 8:12-19). Sins are forgiven through repentance and the ceremony of baptism to join the New Covenant. Here, Yahshua is stating that He is giving His ministers authority to discern if someone is truly repentant and whether they should be baptized or not and have hands laid on them to receive the Holy Spirit.

into the right side of the boat and you will find.

7 Then they cast, and they no longer had the strength to drag the net from the multitude of the fish. Then the disciple whom Yahshua loved said to Peter, It is the Master. Then hearing that it is the Master, Simon Peter girded on his coat (for he was naked) and threw himself into the sea.

8 And the other disciples came in the little boat, for they were not far from the land, only about two hundred cubits, dragging the net of the fish.

9 Then when they went up on the land, they saw a coal fire lying, and a fish lying on it, and bread.

10 Yahshua said to them, Bring from the fish which you caught now.

11 Simon Peter went up and dragged the net onto the land, full of big fish, a hundred and fifty three[1]. And though being so many, the net was not torn.

12 Yahshua said to them, Come, dine. And no one of the disciples dared to ask Him, Who are You? Knowing that it is the Master.

13 Then Yahshua came and took the bread, and gave to them, and in the same way the little fish.

14 This now is three times that Yahshua was revealed to His disciples, He being raised from the dead.

15 Then when they dined, Yahshua said to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonah, do you love Me more than these? He said to Him, Yes, Master, You know that I love You. He said to him, Feed My lambs!

16 Again He says to him, secondly, Simon, son of Jonah, do you love Me? He says to Him, Yes, Master, You know that I love You. He said to him, Shepherd My sheep!

17 Thirdly, He said to him, Simon son of Jonah, do you love Me? Peter was grieved that He said to him a third time, Do you love Me? And he said to Him, Master, You perceive all things, You know that I love You! Yahshua said to him, Feed My ewes[2]!

18 Truly, truly, I say to you, When you were younger, you girded yourself, and you walked where you desired. But when you grow old, you will stretch out your hands, and another will gird you, and will carry you where you do not desire.

19 But He said this signifying by what death he would glorify Elohim. And having said this, He told him, Follow Me[3].

20 But turning, Peter saw the disciple whom Yahshua loved[4] following them, who also leaned on His breast at the Supper, and said, Master, who is the one betraying You?

21 Seeing him, Peter said to Yahshua, Master, and what of this one?

22 Yahshua said to him, What is it to

[1] 153 is the numerical value of Hos 1:10 which states that Yahweh will say to the dispersed Israelites that they are now "*Sons of the living Elohim*". A hidden message here that the Apostles would be going to the lost tribes for redemption (Math 10:6).

[2] In the Greek this analogy is mostly missed, but in the Aramaic it is very clear why Yahsha asks Peter 3 times. Once He asks to feed His lambs (little ones), next His sheep (males) and next His ewes (females). As Peter had denied Him 3 times now He had to redeem himself 3 times by these questions.

[3] Congregational history tells us that the authorities were coming for the Apostle Peter and the brethren convinced him to flee the town, but when he was leaving he saw Yahshua who told him that He must be crucified again and Peter realized that He was speaking about Peter's death and Peter went back and he asked to be crucified upside down as he did not feel worthy to be crucified in the same manner that Yahshua was.

[4] This is the Apostle John

you if I desire that this man remain until I return? You come and follow me!
23 Therefore, the word went out to the brothers that that disciple does not die. Yet Yahshua did not say to him that he does not die, but, If I desire him to remain until I come, what is that to you[1]?
24 This is the disciple witnessing concerning these things, and writing these things. And we know that his witness is true.
25 And there are also many things, whatever Yahshua did, which if they were written one by one, I suppose the world itself could not contain the books having been written. Amen.

1 The point is clear that all true disciples through the ages need to follow Yahshua and His requirements for discipleship and although believers are commanded to "*watch*" the times they are living in they should not be caught up in the timing that is left to YHWH.

The Acts of the Apostles 61 AD

Chapter 1

1 Indeed, O Theophilus, I made the first report concerning all things which Yahshua began both to do and to teach,
2 until the day He was taken up, having given directions to the apostles whom He elected, through the Holy Spirit,
3 those who also to whom He revealed Himself while alive after He had suffered. With numerous signs for forty days He was being seen by them, and He spoke concerning the Kingdom of YAHWEH.
4 And while He ate bread with them, He charged them not to leave Jerusalem, but to await the promise of the Father, Which you heard of Me;
5 for John indeed baptized in water, but you will be baptized in the Holy Spirit not many days after.
6 Then, indeed, coming together they questioned Him, saying, Master, do You restore the kingdom to Israel at this time?
7 And He said to them, It is not yours to know times or seasons which the Father placed in His own authority;
8 But when the spirit of Holiness comes upon you, you will receive the power, and you will be witnesses of Me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judea, and Samaria, and to the end of the earth. *(Luk 24:47)*
9 And saying these things, as they looked on, He was taken up in a cloud and He was hidden from their sight.
10 And as they were intently looking into the heaven, He having gone, even behold, two men in white clothing stood by them,
11 who also said, Men, Galileans, why do you stand looking up to the heaven? This Yahshua who was taken up from you to heaven, likewise He will come just as you have seen Him who ascended into heaven.*(Zech 14:4)*
12 Then they returned to Jerusalem from the mount being called Of Olive Grove, which is near Jerusalem, a distance of seven furlongs away[1].
13 And when they went in, they went up to the upper room where they were waiting: Both Peter and Jacob, and John and Andrew, Philip and Thomas, Bartholomew and Matthew, Jacob the son of Alpheus and Simon the Zealot, and Judas the brother of Jacob.
14 These all were continuing steadfastly in prayer and in supplication with one mind, with the women, and with Mariam the mother of Yahshua, and with His brothers.
15 And in these days, standing up in the middle of the disciples, (and the number of names together being about a hundred and twenty), Peter said,
16 Men, brothers, it was necessary for this Scripture to be fulfilled which the Holy Spirit spoke before through David's mouth concerning Judas, the one having become guide to those seizing Yahshua;
17 for he was numbered with us, and obtained a portion of this ministry.
18 This is he who obtained a field for himself from the reward of sin and fell upon his face on the ground and burst from his middle and poured out all his insides.
19 And it became known to all those living in Jerusalem, so as that field to be called in their own dialect, Akeldama[2], that is, Field of Blood.
20 Let his dwelling be desolate, and let not one be a dweller in it, and let another take his office. *(Psa. 69:25; Psa. 109:8)*
21 Therefore, it is right that men being together with us all the time in

---

1 The Greek translates into the verse the phrase "*A Sabbath's day journey*"

2 Aramaic term

which the Master Yahshua came in and went out among us,

22 beginning from the baptism of John until the day when He was taken from us, one of these to become a witness of His resurrection with us.

23 And they set out two: Joseph, he being called Barsabas, who was surnamed Justus, and Matthias.

24 And having prayed, they said, You, Master, knower of all hearts, show which one You chose from these two,

25 that he may receive a portion of the ministry and apostleship, from which Judas departed, that he might go to in his place.

26 And they gave their lots. And the lot fell on Matthias; and he was numbered with the eleven apostles.

Chapter 2

1 And in the fulfilling of the day of Shavuot, they were all with one mind in the same place.

2 And suddenly a sound came out of the heaven, as a groaning spirit along by a violent wind! And it filled the entire house where they were sitting.

3 And tongues as of fire appeared to them, being distributed, and it sat on each one of them.

4 And they were all filled of the Holy Spirit, and began to speak in other languages, as the Spirit gave ability to them to speak.

5 And Jews were living in Jerusalem, devout men from every nation of those under the heaven.

6 And when that sound occurred, all the people gathered and were perplexed because they were hearing each man among them who were speaking in their own language.

7 And all were amazed and marveled, saying to one another, Behold, we can't grasp this, are not all these, those speaking, Galileans?

8 And how do we hear each in our own language in which we were born,

9 Parthians, and Medes, and Elamites, and those living in Mesopotamia, both Judea and Cappadocia, Pontus and Asia,

10 both Phrygia and Pamphylia, Egypt, and the regions of Libya over against Cyrene, and the temporarily residing Romans, both Jews and proselytes, [1]

11 Cretans and Arabians; in our own languages we hear them speaking the great wonders of Elohim?

12 And all were amazed and puzzled, saying to one another, What could this be?

13 But ridiculing, others said, They are full of sweet wine.

14 But standing up with the eleven, Peter lifted up his voice and spoke out to them, Men, Jews, and all those living in Jerusalem, let this be known to you, and listen to my words:

15 For these are not drunk, as you imagine, for it is the third hour of the day.

16 But this is that which has been spoken by the prophet Joel,

17 "And it shall be in the last days, YAHWEH says, I will pour from My Spirit on all flesh, and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy; and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams;

18 And also I will pour out My Spirit on My servants and hand maids in those days, and they shall prophesy.

19 And I will give wonders in the heaven above, and miraculous signs on the earth below, blood and fire and vapor of smoke.

20 The sun will be changed into darkness, and the moon into blood,

---

[1] Many of these people were displaced Israelites (1Pe 1:1)

before the Coming of the great and glorious day of YAHWEH.

21 And it shall be that everyone who shall call on the name of YAHWEH will be saved." *(Joel 2:28-32)*

22 Men, Sons of Israel, hear these words: Yahshua the Nazarene, a Man from Elohim, having been approved among you by works of power and wonders and miraculous signs, which Elohim did through Him in your midst, as you yourselves also know,

23 this man, who was set apart was for this, by the foreknowledge and will of Elohim, you delivered into the hands of the wicked and you crucified and killed.

24 But Elohim loosed the cords of Sheol and raised Him because it was not possible that He be held in Sheol.

25 For David said as to Him, "I always foresaw my Adonai before Me, because He is at My right hand, that I not be moved.

26 For this reason My heart rejoiced, and My tongue was glad; and My flesh also will dwell on hope,

27 because You will not leave My soul in Sheol, nor will You give Your righteous one to see corruption.

28 You have revealed the road of life to me. You will fill me with gladness with your presence. *(Psa. 16:8-11)*

29 Men, brothers, let me speak boldly with you to say to you as to the patriarch David, that he both died and was buried, and his tomb is among us until this day.[1]

30 For he was a prophet, and he had known the oaths that Elohim had sworn to him, that of the fruit of your loins I shall establish a king upon your throne[2]. *(Psa. 132:11, 2Sam 7:12)*

31 Foreseeing, he spoke about the resurrection of the Messiah, "That His soul was not left in sheol, nor did His corpse see corruption.[3]" *(Psa. 16:10)*

32 This Yahshua, Elohim raised up, of which we all are witnesses.

33 Then being exalted to the right of YAHWEH, and receiving the promise of the Holy Spirit from the Father, He poured out this which you now see and hear. (Acts 7:55-56, Ro 8:34, Heb 1:3)

34 For David did not ascend into Heaven[4], but he says, "YAHWEH said to my Adonai, sit at My right hand

35 until I place those who are enemies to You as a footstool for Your feet." *(Psa. 110:1)*

36 Then assuredly, let all the house of Israel acknowledge that YAHWEH made known this same Yahshua whom you crucified, He is both YAHWEH and Messiah.

37 And hearing, they were touched in the heart, and said to Simon Peter and the rest of the apostles, Men, our brothers, What shall we do?

38 And Peter said to them, Repent and be baptized, each of you in the name of Yahshua YAHWEH[5] for the forgiveness of sins, that you may receive the gift of the Spirit of Holiness. *(Acts 22:16, Phil 2:11)*

39 For the promise is to you and to your children, and to all those afar off, as many as the Master our Elohim shall call.

40 And with many other words he earnestly testified and exhorted, saying, Be saved from this perverse generation.

41 And some of them readily

---

1 The tomb of David in Jerusalem today is directly beneath the Upper Room of The Last Supper where they were meeting.

2 There is a wordplay with the words loins and throne that can only be recognized in the original Aramaic language.

3 That is why Yahshua was raise ON the third day as by the fourth day His body would have started to rot. See Joh 11:39

4 The reward of the saved is not heaven but eternal life in the Kingdom of YHWH on the earth. (Rev 5:10)

received his words and believed and
were baptized. And there were added
in that day about three thousand souls.
42 And they were continuing
steadfastly in the doctrine of the
apostles, and in fellowship, and in the
breaking of bread, and in prayers[1].
43 And fear came to every soul, and
signs and many mighty deeds occurred
by the hands of the apostles in
Jerusalem.
44 And all the believers were echad
and had all things common.
45 And they sold possessions and
goods and distributed them to all,
according as anyone had need.
46 And continuing steadfastly with
one mind day by day in the sanctuary[2],
and breaking bread from house to
house, they shared food in gladness
and simplicity of heart,
47 they were praising YAHWEH
while finding favor before all the
people. And everyday our Master
would add to those who lived among
the congregation.

5 Yahweh is a family name consisting of Yah Yahweh the Father and Yahshua Yahweh the son. In Mathew 28:19 the disciples are told to baptize or immerse in the '*name*', it is singular in the original Aramaic. When one is immersed into covenant relationship it is done into the family name of Yahweh by the shed blood of Yahshua, the son of Yahweh. The Peshitta clearly has the correct rendering of Yahshua Yahweh here showing that Yahweh is a family name. You can never come to that proper conclusion when using the Greek translation with pagan titles inserted.

1 Keeping the proper doctrine that was taught by the elders was extremely important in the early congregation. Also, *'breaking bread'* is an ancient phrase and simply means eating a meal together. (Acts 2:46)

2 This can only be done with a full 100% voluntary submission to YHWH and each other, something that is sorely lacking in western culture today.

Chapter 3

1 And Simon Peter and John were
going up on the same day into the
sanctuary at the hour of prayer, the
ninth.
2 And a certain man, being lame
from his mother's womb, was being
carried, whom day by day they put at
the gate of the sanctuary, being called
Beautiful, to ask alms from those
going into the sanctuary;
3 who seeing Peter and John about
to go into the sanctuary asked alms.
4 And with John, looking intently
toward him, Peter said, Stare at us!
5 And he stared at them while he was
expecting to receive something from
them.
6 But Simon said, There is no silver
and gold to me, but what I have, this I
give to you: In the name of Yahshua
Messiah the Nazarene, rise up and
walk!
7 And taking him by the right hand,
he raised him up. And immediately his
feet and ankle-bones were made firm.
8 And he leaped up (and) stood and
walked and entered with them into the
temple while walking and leaping and
praising Elohim.
9 And all the people saw him
walking, and praising Elohim.
10 And they recognized that he was
that vagrant who would sit all day and
ask for alms at the gate that was called
Beautiful. And they were filled with
amazement and wonder concerning
the thing that happened.
11 And while he was holding Simon
and John, all the people ran while
marveling to them on the porch called
Solomon's.
12 And seeing this, Peter answered
to the people, Men, sons of Israel, why
are you in wonder at this man or at us?
Why do you stare at us, as if it is by

our own strength or by our authority
we did this, that this man might walk?
13 The Elohim of Abraham and Isaac
and Jacob, the Elohim of our fathers,
glorified His child Yahshua, whom you
delivered up, and denied Him before
the face of Pilate, that one having
decided to set Him free.
14 But you denied the Holy and Just
One, and asked for a man, a murderer,
to be granted to you.
15 And the Author of Life you killed,
whom Elohim raised up from the
dead, of which we are witnesses.
16 And in the faith of His name, this
man that you see and know, He has
strengthened and healed. And the
faith that is in him has given him this
wholeness before all of you.
17 And now, brothers, I know that
you acted in your ignorance, as also
did your leaders.
18 But what things Elohim before
proclaimed through the mouth of all
His prophets, that the Messiah should
suffer, He fulfilled in this manner.
19 Repent, therefore, and be turned
so that your sins may be blotted out
and times of rest come to you from
before the presence of YAHWEH.
20 And that He may send forth the
One before proclaimed to you,
Yahshua Messiah,
21 whom Heaven truly needs to
receive until the fullness of the times
of all things, of which Elohim spoke
through the mouth of all His holy
prophets from old.
22 For Moses indeed said to the
fathers, "YAHWEH your Elohim will
raise up to you a Prophet from among
your brothers, One like me; you shall
hear Him according to all things,"
whatever He may speak to you[1].
23 And it shall be that of every soul,
whoever should not hear that Prophet
shall perish from among the people.
24 And also all the prophets, from
Samuel and those following after, as
many as spoke, also before announced
these days.
25 You are sons of the prophets and
of the covenant which Elohim
appointed to our fathers, saying to
Abraham, "Even in your Seed all the
families of the earth shall be blessed."
(Gen. 22:18)
26 Having raised up His child
Yahshua, Elohim sent Him first to you,
blessing you if you turn back and
repent from your iniquities.

Chapter 4

1 And as they were speaking to the
people, the priests, and the sanctuary
leaders and the Sadducees stood near
them,
2 while they were being furious at
them, because they taught the people
concerning the resurrection by the
Messiah, that is from the dead.
3 And they laid hands on them, and
put them into custody until the
morrow, for it was already evening.
4 But many of those hearing the
Word believed; and the number of the
men came to be about five thousand.
5 And it happened on the morrow
that the rulers and elders and scribes
assembled into Jerusalem;
6 also Annas the high priest, and
Caiaphas, and John, and Alexander
and as many as were of the high
priestly family line.
7 And standing them in the midst,
they were inquiring, By what sort of
power, or by what sort of name did
you do this?
8 Then being filled of the Holy Spirit,
Peter said to them, Rulers of the
people and elders of Israel listen,
9 if we are being examined today on
the good work of this sick man, by
what this one has been healed,

[1] Deut: 18:15-16, 19

10 let it be known to all of you, and to all the people of Israel, that in the name of Yahshua, Messiah, the Nazarene, whom you crucified, whom Elohim raised from the dead, in this name this one stands before you whole.

11 This One is the Stone rejected by you the builders, the One who has come to be into the Head of the Corner; *(Psa. 118:22)*

12 And there is salvation in no other man, for neither is there any other name under Heaven having been given among men by which we must be saved[1].

13 But beholding the boldness of Simon Peter and John, and having perceived that they knew not the books and uneducated men[2], they marveled. And they recognized them that they were with Yahshua.

14 But seeing the man standing with them, the one having been healed, they had nothing to say against him.

15 But commanding them to go outside the Sanhedrin, they conferred with one another,

16 saying, What may we do to these men? For that a notable miracle indeed has occurred through them is plain to all those living in Jerusalem, and we are not able to deny it.

17 But that it may not be spread abroad further to the people, let us threaten them with a threat that they no longer speak on this name to any sons of men.

18 And calling them, they ordered them not to speak at all, nor to teach in the name of Yahshua.

19 But answering them Simon Peter and John said, Whether it is right before Elohim to listen to you rather than YAHWEH, you judge.

20 For we are not able not to speak what we saw and heard.

21 But having threatened them again, they released them, finding nothing as to how they might punish them, on account of the people, because all glorified YAHWEH on the thing happening.

22 For the man on whom this miracle of healing had occurred was more than forty years of age.

23 And being set free, they came to their own brethren and reported to them what the chief priests and elders said.

24 And hearing they with one passion lifted their voice to Elohim and said, YAHWEH, You are "The Elohim who made the heaven and the earth and the sea, and all things in them," *(Ex. 20:11)*

25 who through the mouth of Your servant David said, "Why do the nations rage, and the peoples plan worthless things?

26 The kings of the earth have risen and rulers have deliberated as one against YAHWEH and against His Messiah." *(Psa. 2:1, 2)*

27 For truly both Herod and Pontius Pilate, with the nations and the peoples of Israel, were assembled against Your Holy Son Yahshua, whom You anointed,

28 to do whatever Your hand and Your counsel before-determined to be done.

29 And even now YAHWEH, look and see their threats and give to Your servants, that they be boldly preaching Your Word,

30 while You extend Your hand for

---

[1] Clearly if there is only one name where people can be saved it is the name "**YAHSHUA**" which means Yahweh's salvation. (Ex 23:21, Phil 2:9, Joh 17:11, Math 1:21, 1Joh 2:12)

[2] The Apostles were not trained in the Rabbinical schools and in the oral traditions of the rabbis.

healings and mighty works and signs
to be in the name of Your Son, the
Holy One, Yahshua.
31 And they having prayed, the place
in which they were gathered was
shaken, and they were all filled with
the Holy Spirit and spoke the Word of
Elohim with boldness.
32 The assembly of those men who
were believing had but one soul and
one mind, and no man among them
concerning the possessions that he
possessed would say that they were
his. Rather, everything that they had
was in common.
33 And with great power the apostles
were testifying of the resurrection of
the Master Yahshua, and great grace
was upon them all.
34 And there was no man among
them who was lacking, for those who
had possessed fields and houses would
sell [them] and brought the price of
whatever was sold
35 and laid them at the feet of the
apostles. And it was distributed to
each according as any had need.
36 And Joseph, the one surnamed
Barnabas by the apostles, which being
translated is, Son of Comfort, a Levite,
a Cypriot by race,
37 a field being his, selling it, he
brought the proceeds and placed them
at the feet of the apostles.

Chapter 5

1 But a certain man named
Khananyah, with his wife Sapphira,
sold a property,
2 and kept back from the price, his
wife also aware of it, and bringing a
certain part, he put it at the feet of the
apostles.
3 But Peter said, Khananyah, why
did Satan fill your heart for you to lie
to the Holy Spirit and to secretly keep
back from the price of the land?
4 Was it not yours before it was sold?
And after it was sold, again you were
in control over its proceeds. Why have
you placed in your heart to do this
spectacle? You have not lied in the
presence of men, but in the presence
of Elohim[1].
5 And hearing these words,
Khananyah fell down and died. And
great fear came on all those who
heard.
6 And rising up the younger ones
wrapped him, and carrying out, they
buried him.
7 And about three hours afterwards,
his wife also entered, not knowing that
happening.
8 And Peter answered her, Tell me if
you gave over the land for so much?
And she said, Yes, for so much.
9 Simon said to her, because you
have deliberated to tempt the Spirit of
YAHWEH, behold the feet of the
grave diggers of your husband are at
the door, and they will take you out.
10 And she immediately fell at his
feet and died. And entering, the
younger ones found her dead, and
carrying her out, they buried her
beside her husband.
11 And great fear came to be on all
the assembly and on all those hearing
these things.
12 And many miraculous signs and
wonders among the people took place
through the hands of the apostles. And
they were all with one passion in
Solomon's Porch.
13 And of the rest, no one dared to
touch them, but the people greatly
magnified them[2].
14 And more were added, those who

[1] The point is that Khananyah did not have to dedicate all the proceeds to Yahweh, but claiming that he did and then lying about it brought his death. Interesting enough the name Khananyah means "*grace of Yahweh*".

believed in YAHWEH, both men and women.

15 So as to carry out the sick in the streets, and to place them on cots and mattresses, that at the coming of Peter, if even his shadow might overshadow some of them.

16 And also the multitude came together from the cities around Jerusalem, bringing sick ones and those being tormented by unclean spirits, who were all healed.

17 The high priest and all those who were with him who were of the doctrine of the Sadducees were filled with envy.

18 And they placed hands on the apostles, and seized and bound them in prison.

19 But a cherub of YAHWEH opened the doors of the prison during the night, and leading them out, he said,

20 Go! And standing in the sanctuary, speak to the people all the words of Life.

21 And hearing, they went into the sanctuary about dawn and taught. But having come near, the high priest and those with him called together the Sanhedrin and all the elderhood of the sons of Israel. And they sent to the jail to have them brought.

22 But having come near, the officers did not find them in the prison. And returning, they reported,

23 saying, Indeed we found the jail having been shut with all security, and the guards outside standing before the doors. But opening it, we found no one inside.

24 And when they heard these words, both the priest and the sanctuary commander and the chief priests were in doubt concerning them, what this might be.

25 But having come, one reported to them, saying, Behold, the men whom you put in the prison are in the sanctuary, standing and teaching the people.

26 Then the commander going with the officers, they brought them, not with force, for they feared the people, that they might not be stoned.

27 And bringing them, they stood in the Sanhedrin. And the high priest asked them

28 saying, Did we not command you by a command that you not teach in this name? And, behold, you have filled Jerusalem with your doctrine and intend to bring on us the blood of this man.

29 But answering Peter and the apostles said, It is proper to be persuaded towards YAHWEH than towards men.

30 The Elohim of our fathers raised up Yahshua, whom you seized, hanging Him on a tree[1]. *(1 Pe 2:24)*

31 This One YAHWEH has established a Prince and a Savior to His right hand, so that He might give of forgiveness to Israel by repentance of sins.

32 And we are His witnesses of these things, and also the Holy Spirit, whom Elohim gave to those obeying and believing Him.

33 And after they heard these words, they were enraged with anger and they were contemplating to kill them.

34 But one standing up in the Sanhedrin, a Pharisee named Gamaliel[2], a teacher of the Torah honored by all the people, commanded

---

2 There is a word play here in the Aramaic between touch "*qarab*" and magnified "*yarab*".

1 Yahshua was crucified on a living tree (Luk 23:31), not a dead piece of wood. This typified the Garden of Eden with the tree of life compared to the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.

the apostles to be put outside a little
while.
35 And he said to them, Men,
Israelites, take heed to yourselves
what you intend to do on these men.
36 For before these days Theudas
rose up, claiming himself to be
somebody, to whom was joined a
number of men, about four hundred,
who was done away, and all, as many
as obeyed him, were dispersed and
came to nothing.
37 After this, Judas the Galilean rose
up in the days of the Registration. And
he drew considerable people after him.
Yet that one perished, and all were
scattered, as many as obeyed him.
38 And now I say to you, keep
yourselves from these men and leave
them alone, for if this thinking is from
men, they will disintegrate and pass
away.
39 But if it is from Elohim, it is not
attainable to halt it with your hands,
lest you find yourselves standing
against Elohim.
40 And they obeyed him. And calling
the apostles, having scourged them,
having commanded not to speak on
the name of Yahshua, even they set
them free.
41 And they departed from before
them rejoicing that they were worthy
because of **The Name**[1] to be despised.
42 And they would not cease all day
to teach in the sanctuary and at home
and to preach about our Master,
Yahshua, the Messiah.

[2] This man was a very famous Rabbi in the first century and he is exalted in the Jewish Talmud. It also states that he had 2 great students and one fell away, which most believe is referring to the Apostle Paul (Shaul) who was a student of Gamaliel (Acts 22:3).

[1] Another clear indication showing the extreme importance of the name of Yahweh and Yahshua.

Chapter 6

1 But in those days, the disciples
having multiplied, a murmuring of the
Hellenists toward the Hebrews
occurred, because their widows were
being overlooked in the daily
distribution.
2 And having called near the
assembly of the disciples, the twelve
said, It is not good that we should
neglect the Word of Elohim and serve
tables.
3 Examine therefore my brothers
and pick seven men among you that
have a good witness and who are full
of the Spirit of YAHWEH and
wisdom, and we will set them over this
issue.
4 But we shall continue steadfast in
prayer and the service of the Word!
5 And the saying was pleasing before
all the multitude. And they chose out
Stephen, a man full of faith and the
Holy Spirit, and Philip, and Prochorus,
and Nicanor, and Timon, and
Parmenas, and Nicolas, a proselyte
from Antioch,
6 each of whom they made stand
before the apostles. And having
prayed, they laid hands upon them[2].
7 And the Word of YAHWEH was
increasing, and the number of the
disciples in Jerusalem was multiplying
exceedingly. Even a great crowd of the
priests were attending to the faith!
8 And Stephen, full of faith and

[2] The laying on of hands was a formal ceremony used with anointing oil to ordain deacons and elders and is consistent in scripture with the transferring of authority as with Moses and Yahoshua in Deut 34:9. It was also performed in elders praying for the sick (Jac 5:14). One would not be considered an elder if he was not ordained (Titus 1:5). Ordination is only for men not women, women leaders are forbidden in scripture (1 Tim 2:11-12)

power, was doing wonders and great
signs among the people.
9 But some of those of the synagogue
called Libertines[1], rose up, also some
Cyrenians and Alexandrians, and
some of those from Cilicia and Asia
Minor, disputing with Stephen.
10 And they had no strength to stand
against the wisdom and the Spirit by
which he spoke.
11 Then they induced some men to
be saying, We have heard him
speaking blasphemous words against
Moses and Elohim!
12 And they stirred up the people
and the elders and the scribes. And
coming on, they together seized him
and led him into the Sanhedrin.
13 And they stood up false witnesses,
who were saying, This man does not
cease speaking blasphemous words
against this holy place and the Torah;
14 for we have heard him saying that
this Yahshua the Nazarene will destroy
this place and will change the customs
which Moses delivered over to us.[2]
15 And having looked intently at
him, all those having sat in the
Sanhedrin, saw his face as if it were
the face of an angel.

Chapter 7

1 And the high priest said, Tell me
then if you thus hold these things?
2 And he said, Men, brothers, and
fathers, listen! The Elohim of glory
appeared to our father Abraham,
being in Beth-Nahrain[3] before he
lived in Haran,
3 and said to him, "Go out from your
land and from your kinsmen, and
come into a land which I will show to
you." *(Gen. 12:1)*
4 Then going out from the land of
the Chaldeans, he lived in Haran. And
after his father died, Elohim moved
him from there into this land in which
you now live.
5 And He did not give him an
inheritance in it, not even a foot step,
yet He promised that He would give it
to him as an heirloom to him and to
his seed while he had no son. *(Gen.
17:8)*
6 And Elohim spoke thus, that his
seed would be an alien in another
land, and they would enslave it and
oppress it four hundred years. *(Gen.
15:13)*
7 And Elohim said, I will judge the
nation to which you will be in
bondage. And after these things they
will come out and will serve Me in this
place. *(Gen. 15:14; Ex. 3:12)*
8 And He gave to him a covenant of
circumcision; and so he fathered Isaac
and circumcised him on the eighth
day. And Isaac fathered Jacob, and
Jacob the twelve patriarchs.
9 And being jealous of Joseph, the
patriarchs sold him into Misrayin. But
YAHWEH was with him,
10 and plucked him out from all his
afflictions, and gave him favor and
wisdom before Pharaoh the king of
Misrayin. And Pharaoh appointed him
to be ruling over Misrayin and all his
household.
11 But a famine came over all the
land of Misrayin and Canaan, and
great affliction. And our fathers did
not find food.
12 But hearing grain was in
Misrayin, Jacob sent our fathers out
first.
13 And at the second time, Joseph
was made known to his brothers, and

1 Libertine means freed men.
2 Verses 11-14- They were purposely misquoting Steven as he was not speaking against the Torah but that the Levitical law was fulfilled. His testimony in Chapter 7 proves this.
3 Beth- Nahrain means the land of the two rivers Tigris and Euphrates.

Joseph's race became known to
Pharaoh.
14 And sending, Joseph called his
father Jacob and all his kindred, And
they were seventy and five souls in
number. *(Gen. 46:27)*
15 And Jacob went down into
Misrayin and died, he and our fathers.
16 And they were moved into
Shechem, and were put in the tomb
which Abraham bought for a price of
silver from the sons of Hamor of
Shechem.
17 And when the time arrived for the
things that Elohim had promised by
oaths to Abraham, the people
increased and grew strong in Misrayin
18 until "Another king rose up who
did not know Joseph." *(Ex. 1:8)*
19 And he plotted against our
kindred and dealt wickedly with our
fathers, and commanded that their
infant males be cast out so that they
might not live.
20 In which time Moses was born
and was beautiful to Elohim; who was
reared three months in his father's
house.
21 And when he was cast out from
his mother, the daughter of Pharaoh
reared him as a son for herself.
22 And Moses was instructed in all
the wisdom of the Egyptians and was
prepared in his words and in his
deeds.
23 And when a period of forty years
was fulfilled to him, it arose in his
heart to look upon his brothers, the
sons of Israel.
24 And he saw one of the sons of his
tribe persecuted, and passed judgment
for him and he avenged him and he
killed the Egyptian, he who had
wronged him.
25 And he hoped his brothers would
understand that Elohim would give
them salvation by his hand. But they
did not understand.
26 And on another day he appeared
to them while fighting. And he urged
them to peace, saying, Men, you are
brothers. Why do you wrong one
another?
27 But the one wronging the
neighbor thrust him away, saying,
"Who appointed you a ruler and a
judge over us?
28 Do you not want to kill me the
way you killed the Egyptian
yesterday?"
29 "And Moses fled at this word.
And he became a sojourner in the land
of Midian," where he fathered two
sons. *(Ex. 2:15-22)*
30 And forty years being fulfilled to
him, the Messenger of YAHWEH
appeared to him in a flame of fire in a
bush in the wilderness of Mount Sinai.
31 And when Moses saw it, he was
amazed at the vision, and as he drew
near to it, YAHWEH said to him in a
voice,
32 "I am the Elohim of your fathers,
the Elohim of Abraham, and the
Elohim of Isaac, and the Elohim of
Jacob." And while he was trembling,
Moses did not dare to stare at the
vision. *(Ex. 3:6, 15)*
33 And YAHWEH said to him,
"Loosen the sandal from your feet, for
the place where you stand is holy
ground.
34 I surely saw the affliction of My
people in Egypt, and I have heard their
groan, and I came down to deliver
them. And now, come, I will send you
to" Egypt.
35 This is Moses, whom they denied,
saying, Who appointed you a ruler and
a judge, this one Elohim has sent as
ruler and redeemer by the hand of the
Messenger who appeared to him in the
Bush.
36 This one led them out, having
worked wonders and miraculous signs

in the land of Egypt and in the Red Sea, and forty years in the wilderness.

37 This is the same Moses who said to the sons of Israel, "YAHWEH your Elohim will raise up a Prophet to you" "From your brothers, One like me." You shall hear Him. *(Deut. 18:15)*

38 This is the one who was in the congregation in the wilderness with the Messenger who spoke to him in Mount Sinai, and with our fathers, who received the living Words to give to us,

39 and our forefathers did not desire to obey him, rather, they left him and in their hearts they returned to Egypt.

40 Saying to Aaron, "Make for us gods which will go before us; for this Moses who led us out of the land of Egypt, we do not know what has happened to him." *(Ex. 32:1)*

41 And they made a calf in those days and led a sacrifice up to the idol, and made merry in the works of their hands.

42 But Elohim turned and gave them over to serve the host of the heaven, as it has been written in the book of the Prophets: "Did you bring slain beasts and sacrifices to Me forty years in the wilderness, O house of Israel?

43 And you took up the tabernacle of Moloch, and the star of your god Remphan, the figures which you made" "In order to worship them. And I will remove you beyond" Babylon. *(Amos 5:25-27)*

44 The tabernacle of the testimony was among our fathers in the wilderness, as He who spoke to Moses commanded to make it according to the pattern which he had seen,

45 which also was brought in, our fathers having received with Yahoshua, in the taking of possession of the nations, whom Elohim drove out from the face of our fathers, until the days of David,

46 who found favor before YAHWEH and asked to find a tabernacle for the Elohim of Jacob;

47 but Solomon built Him a house.

48 But the Most High does not dwell in sanctuaries made by hand, as the prophet says,

49 "Heaven is My throne, and the earth a footstool of My feet; what house will you build Me," "Says YAHWEH," "Or what the place of My rest?"

50 "Did not My hands make all these things?" *(Isa. 66:1, 2)*

51 Oh stiff-necked and uncircumcised in heart and in the ears! You always resist the Holy Spirit. As your fathers did, you do also.

52 Which of the prophets did your fathers not persecute? And your forefathers have killed those who foretold about the coming of the Righteous One, He whom you delivered up and whom you killed!

53 Who received the Torah by the command of cherubs and did not keep it.

54 And when they had heard these (things), they were filled with anger within themselves and they were gnashing their teeth against him.

55 But being full of the Holy Spirit, looking intently into the heaven, he saw the glory of Elohim, and Yahshua standing at the right of Elohim.

56 And he said, Behold, I see the heavens having been opened, and the Son of man standing at the right of Elohim[1]

57 And crying out with a loud voice, they held their ears and all of them rushed upon him.

58 And they seized him and took him outside of the city and they were stoning him, and those who testified against him laid their garments at the

---

1 Heb 1:3, Heb 8:1, Heb 10:10-13, 1Pe 3:22, Acts 2:33, Ro 8:34

feet of a certain young man who was called Shaul.

59 And they were stoning Stephen while he prayed, and he said Our Master Yahshua receive my spirit.

60 And after he kneeled down, he cried in a loud voice and said, Our Master, do not cause this sin to stand against them! And having said this, he fell asleep.

Chapter 8

1 And Saul consented and participated in his murder. And in that day a great persecution took place on the assembly which was in Jerusalem; and all were scattered throughout the villages of Judea and Samaria, except the apostles.

2 And devout brethren buried Stephen and all made a great mourning over him.

3 Now Saul persecuted the congregation of YAHWEH while he entered homes and dragged away men and women. And he delivered them to prison.

4 Then indeed, the ones who being scattered passed through, preaching the Word of Elohim.

5 And going down to a city of Samaria, Philip preached proclaiming Messiah to them.

6 And with one passion the crowds heeded that being said by Philip when they heard and saw the many miraculous signs which he did.

7 For many of the ones having unclean spirits, crying with a loud voice, they came out. And many who had been paralyzed and lame were healed.

8 And great joy was in that city.

9 Now there was a certain man there whose name was Simon Magus[1] who lived in that city a long time and deceived the people of Samaria by his sorcery while magnifying himself and saying, I AM Great[2]!

10 All were bowing toward him, from small to great, saying, This one is the great power of Elohim.

11 And they persuaded him, all of them, because a long time ago he had persuaded them with his sorceries.

12 But when they believed Philip preaching the good news, the things concerning the kingdom of YAHWEH, and in the name of Yahshua Messiah, they were baptized, both men and women.

13 And Simon himself also believed, and being baptized was continuing steadfastly with Philip. And seeing miracles and mighty works happening, he was amazed.

14 And the apostles in Jerusalem hearing that Samaria had received the Word of Elohim, they sent Simon Peter and John to them,

15 who going down prayed concerning them so that they may receive the Holy Spirit.

16 For it was not upon any one of them yet, but they were only being baptized in the name of the Master Yahshua.

17 Then they laid hands on them, and they received the Holy Spirit.[3]

18 But when Simon Magus saw that the Holy Spirit is given through the

---

[1] History tells us this man was an evil deceiver and when he went to Rome he took the title of '*Pater'* meaning '*father*' and through antiquity, false Christianity has confused this Simon the Pater with Simon Peter the Apostle. The reality is that The Apostle Peter spent very little time in Rome, only at the end of his life.

[2] He was taking a title only for Elohim

[3] Acts 6:6, Acts 19:6, Deut 34:9

laying on of the hands of the apostles,
he offered them money,
19 saying, Give to me also this
authority that to whomever I may lay
on the hands he may receive the Holy
Spirit[1].
20 But Peter said to him, May your
silver be with you into destruction,
because you thought to obtain the gift
of Elohim through money.
21 You have no part or portion in
this faith because your heart is not
straight before Elohim.
22 Repent, then, from this
wickedness of yours, and petition
Elohim if perhaps you will be forgiven
the thought of your heart.
23 For I see you being in bitter anger
and the bonds of iniquity.
24 And answering Simon said, You
petition to Elohim for me, so that
nothing of which you have spoken may
come on me.
25 Then indeed having earnestly
testified and having spoken the Word
of Elohim, they returned to Jerusalem,
even having preached the good news
to many villages of the Samaritans.
26 But a cherub of YAHWEH spoke
to Philip, saying, Rise up! Go to the
South on the desert road that goes
down from Jerusalem to Gaza.
27 And he arose and went and met a
certain faithful one who had come
from Cush, an official of Candace, the
queen of the Cushites, and he was an
authority over all her treasures. And
he had come to worship in Jerusalem.[2]
28 And he was returning. And sitting
on his chariot he read the prophet
Isaiah.
29 And the Spirit said to Philip, Go
near and join yourself to this chariot.
30 And running near, Philip heard
him reading the prophet Isaiah, and
said, Indeed, do you know what you
are reading?
31 But he said, How am I able to
comprehend unless someone instructs
me? And he called Philip near, to come
up to sit with him.
32 And the content of the Scripture
which he was reading was this: He was
led as a lamb to the slaughter, and as
an ewe before the shearer is silent,
even so He did not open His mouth.
33 He was led in His humiliation
from His confinement and from
judgment. And His generation, who
will declare it, because His life has
been taken from the earth? *(Isa. 53:7,
8)*
34 And that faithful one said to
Philip, I ask you, about whom does the
prophet say this? About himself, or
about some other one?
35 And Phillip opening his mouth,
began to preach from this scripture
concerning our Master Yahshua.
36 And as they were going along the
highway they came on some water.
And that faithful one said, Behold,
water! What prevents me to be
baptized?
37 And Philip said, If you believe
from all the heart, it is lawful. And
answering he said, I believe Yahshua
Messiah to be the Son of YAHWEH[3].
38 And he commanded the chariot

---

[1] The Holy Spirit is transferred through the laying on of hands of a true ordained elder of Yahweh. Notice that Simon Magus was asking to buy this '*authority'* to be able to transfer the Holy Spirit to someone. People who are immersed in water without the proper laying on of hands of a true ordained elder of Yahweh who was given the authority to do so by Yahweh are simply getting wet. Even being a deceiver and a sorcerer he knew only a true ordained elder with the authority from YHWH could transfer the Holy Spirit (Ruach H'Chodesh) to someone.

[2] Some Greek translations mistranslates the Aramaic word Mhaimna "*faithful or believing* one" for Mehaimna which means '*eunuch*'.

to stand still. And both went down into the water, both Philip and that faithful one and he baptized him.

39 But when they came up out of the water, the Spirit of YAHWEH caught away Philip. And that faithful one did not see him any more; for he went his way rejoicing.

40 And Philip was found at Azotus. And passing through he preached the good news to all the cities until he came to Caesarea.

Chapter 9

1 But still breathing threats and murder toward the disciples of the Master, coming to the high priest,

2 Saul asked from him letters[1] to Damascus, to the synagogues, so that if he found any being of the Way, both men and women, having bound them, he might bring them to Jerusalem.

3 But in the going it happened! He drew near to Damascus, and suddenly a light from the heaven shone around him.

4 And falling on the ground he heard a voice saying to him, Saul, Saul! Why do you persecute Me?

5 And he said, Sir, who are You? And the Master said, I am Yahshua, whom you persecute; it is hard for you to kick the stakes.

6 Both trembling and being astonished he said, Master, what do You desire me to do? And the Master said to him, Rise up and go into the city, and it will be told you what you must do.

7 But the men traveling with him had been standing speechless, indeed hearing the voice, but seeing no one.

8 And Saul was lifted up from the earth, but his eyes being opened he saw no one. And leading him by the hand they brought him to Damascus.

9 And he was three days not seeing, and did not eat or drink.

10 And there was a certain disciple in Damascus named Khanan-Yah[2]. And YAHWEH said to him in a vision, Khanan-Yah! And he said, Behold, Master, I am here.

11 And the Master said to him, Rising up pass along on the street being called Straight and seek a Tarsian, Saul by name, in the house of Judas. For, behold, he is praying.

12 And he has seen in a vision a man named Khanan-Yah, coming in and putting a hand on him, so that he may see again.

13 And Khanan-Yah answered, Master, I have heard from many about this man, how many bad things he did to Your saints in Jerusalem.

14 And here he has authority from the chief priests to bind all the ones calling on Your name.

15 And Master YAHWEH said to him, Go, for this one is a chosen vessel to Me, to bear My name before nations and kings and the sons of Israel.

16 For I will show him how much he must suffer for the sake of My name.

17 And Khanan-Yah went away and entered into the house. And putting hands on him he said, Brother Saul, the Master has sent me, Yahshua, the One who appeared to you in the highway on which you came, that you may see and be filled of the Holy Spirit.

18 And at once something that resembled scales fell off from his eyes. And rising up, he was baptized.

19 And taking food he was

---

3 This verse is omitted from the Peshitta text and also the oldest Greek translated texts.

1 Shaul wanted official documents from the high priest in order to arrest any perpetrators and bring them back to Jerusalem for trial.

2 Means "*Grace of Yah*"

strengthened. And Saul was with the disciples in Damascus some days.

20 And immediately he was in the synagogue of the Yehudeans preaching about Yahshua, that He was the Son of Elohim.

21 And all those hearing were amazed and said, Is this not the one destroying those who have called on this Name in Jerusalem, and he had come here for this, that binding them he might lead them before the chief priests?

22 But Shaul was more filled with power, and he confounded the Jews living in Damascus, proving that this One is the Messiah.

23 And when many days were fulfilled, the Jews plotted together to do away with him.

24 But their plot was known to Shaul. And they carefully watched the gates both by day and by night so as to do away with him.

25 But taking him by night, the disciples let him down from the wall, lowering him in a basket.

26 And Saul arriving in Jerusalem, he tried to be joined to the disciples. And all feared him, not believing that he is a disciple.

27 But taking hold of him, Barnabas led him to the apostles and told them how he saw our Master in the highway, and that He spoke to him, and how in Damascus he spoke boldly in the name of Yahshua.

28 And he was with them, going in and going out in Jerusalem, and speaking boldly in the name of our Master Yahshua.

29 And he spoke and disputed with the Yehudeans who knew Greek[1], and they took him in hand to do away with him.

30 But knowing, the brothers led him down to Caesarea and sent him forth to Tarsus.

31 Then, indeed, the assemblies throughout all Judea, and Galilee, and Samaria, had peace, having been built up and having gone on in the fear of Elohim. And they were increased in the comfort of the Holy Spirit.

32 And it happened, passing through all, Peter also came down to the saints dwelling in Lud.

33 And he found there a certain man named Anis who had been lying on a mattress eight years, who was paralyzed.

34 And Peter said to him, Anis! Yahshua the Messiah heals you! Arise and make your bed!

35 And all those dwelling in Lud and the Sharon Plain saw him, who then turned to Elohim.

36 And in Joppa was a certain disciple named Tabitha[2]. She was full of good works and of alms which she did.

37 And it happened in those days, becoming ill, she died. And they washed her, and put her in an upper room.

38 And Lud being near to Joppa, the disciples hearing that Simon is in it, they sent two men to him, begging him not to delay to come to them.

39 And rising up Simon Peter went with them, and having arrived they led him to the upper room. And all the widows stood by him, weeping and showing coats and garments that Tabitha made while she lived.

40 And putting all out, placing the knees Peter prayed. And turning to the body he said, Tabitha, get up! And she opened her eyes. And seeing Simon she sat up.

41 And giving her a hand he raised her up. And calling the saints and the widows he presented her alive.

---

[1] Paul spoke Greek and different languages (1 Cor 14:18)

[2] Means Gazelle

42 And it became known through all
Joppa. And many believed in our
Master.
43 And it was considerable days that
he remained in Joppa with one Simon,
a tanner.

Chapter 10

1 But a certain man, Cornelius by
name, was in Caesarea, a centurion of
a cohort being called Italian,
2 one righteous and fearing Elohim
with all his house, both doing many
alms to the people and praying
continually to Elohim. *(Acts 2:5)*
3 About the ninth hour of the day, he
saw plainly in a vision a cherub of
Elohim coming to him, and saying to
him, Cornelius!
4 And he was staring at him, and
becoming terrified he said, What is it,
Master? And he said to him, Your
prayers and your alms went up for a
memorial before Elohim.
5 And now send men to Joppa and
call for Simon who is called Peter.
6 This one is lodged with one Simon,
a tanner whose house is by the sea. He
will tell you what you must do.
7 And when the cherub speaking to
Cornelius went away, calling two of
the sons of his household and a devout
servant who feared Elohim and obeyed
him
8 and having explained all things to
them, he sent them to Joppa.
9 And the next day, as they passed
along on the road, and drawing near to
the city, Simon Peter went up on the
roof to pray about the sixth hour.
10 And he hungered and desired to
eat. And while they prepared for him,
a stupor fell over him.
11 And he saw the heaven being
opened and a certain vessel like a great
sheet coming down on him, being
bound by four corners, and let down
onto the earth;
12 in which were all the four-footed
animals of the earth, and the wild
beasts, and the creeping things, and
the birds of the heaven.
13 And a voice came to him, Rise up,
Peter, slay and eat.
14 But Peter said, Elohim forbid my
Master, because I never did eat
anything common or unclean[1].
15 And again a voice came to him a
second time, What things Elohim
made clean, you do not make
common[2].
16 And this happened three times,
and the vessel was taken up into the
heaven again.
17 And as Peter was doubting within
himself what the vision which he saw
might be, even behold, the men who
had been sent from Cornelius stood on
the porch asking about the house of
Simon.
18 And calling out, they inquired if
Simon being surnamed Peter is lodged
here.
19 And as Peter pondered
concerning the vision, the Spirit said

---

[1] In verse 12, there are clean and unclean animals on the sheet. Peter could have eaten a clean animal as all that was said to him was to eat. However, according to the Jewish oral law of the Rabbis, if something clean was on the same sheet or table as something unclean, then it became common and could not be touched or eaten. There is one word for "*unclean*" meaning defiled and another word for "*common*", meaning used by everyone. If a gentile touched something of a Jew, then it became common and could not be used ever again. Jews in the 1st century would not even use olive oil that was crushed by a gentile.

[2] YHWH is using the analogy with food to tell Peter not to call people who were now in the New Covenant common (vs 28,34,36)

to him, Behold, three men are seeking
you.
20 But rising up, go down and go
with them, not discriminating,
because I have sent them.
21 And going down to the men, the
ones sent from Cornelius to him, Peter
said, Behold, I am the one whom you
seek. What is the cause for which you
are here?
22 And they said, Cornelius, a
centurion, a just man and one fearing
Elohim, and being testified to by all
the nation of the Jews, was divinely
warned by a holy cherub to call you to
his house and to hear words from you.
23 Then calling them in, he lodged
them. And on the morrow Peter went
out with them. And some of the
brothers from Joppa accompanied
him.
24 And on the morrow they entered
Caesarea. And Cornelius was awaiting
them, having called together his
relatives and the beloved friends that
he had.
25 And as Peter was coming in,
meeting him, Cornelius fell at his feet
and worshiped.
26 But Peter lifted him up, saying,
Stand up! I myself am also a man.
27 And talking with him, he went in
and found many having come
together.
28 You know that it is not lawful for
a Yehudean man to associate with or
come near to a foreign man who is not
a son of his tribe[1], but Elohim showed
to me concerning a man not to say that
he is common or unclean.
29 Because of this I came promptly
when you sent for me, but I ask you for
what reason did you send for me?
30 And Cornelius said, From the
fourth day until this hour I have been
fasting, and the ninth hour I was
praying in my house. And, behold, a
man stood before me in white
clothing.
31 And he said, Cornelius, your
prayer was heard and your alms were
remembered before YAHWEH.
32 Therefore, send to Joppa and call
for Simon who is surnamed Peter; this
one is lodged in the house of Simon, a
tanner, by the sea. Having come, he
will speak to you.
33 Then at once I sent to you, and
you did well to come. Now then, we
are all present before you to hear all
the things having been commanded to
you by Elohim.
34 And opening his mouth, Peter
said, Truly I see that YAHWEH is not
a respecter of faces,
35 but in every nation the one
fearing Him and working
righteousness is acceptable to Him.
36 The Word which He sent to the
sons of Israel, preaching the good
news of peace through Yahshua
Messiah, He is Master YAHWEH of
all.
37 You know the thing that
happened throughout all Judea,
beginning from Galilee after the
baptism that John proclaimed,
38 Yahshua the One from Nazareth,
how YAHWEH anointed Him with
the Holy Spirit and with power, who
went about doing good, and healing all
those having been oppressed by the
devil, because Elohim was with Him.
39 And we are witnesses of all things
which He did, both in the country of
the Jews, and in Jerusalem. They did
away with Him, hanging Him on a
tree.

---

1 This was unlawful according to the Rabbinical tradition but not according to Torah. Nowhere does it ever condone the eating of unclean food according to Lev the 11th chapter. This whole incident is taking place around 10 years after the resurrection and Peter clearly said in chapter 10:14, that "*he never ate anything unclean*".

40 YAHWEH raised Him on the third day and allowed Him to be seen openly;
41 not to all the people, but to witnesses, the ones having been before hand-picked by Elohim, to us who ate and drank with Him after His resurrection from the dead.
42 And He commanded us to proclaim to the people and to witness solemnly that it is He who has been marked out by YAHWEH to be Judge of the living and the dead.
43 To this One all the Prophets witness, so that through His name everyone believing into Him will receive remission of sins.
44 As Simon was yet speaking these words, the Holy Spirit rested on all those hearing the Word[1].
45 And the brothers, those circumcised, who came with him, were amazed and astonished that the gift of the Spirit was even poured out upon Gentiles.
46 For they heard them speaking in different languages and magnifying YAHWEH. Then Simon answered,
47 Can anyone forbid the water that these not be baptized, who the Holy Spirit received, even as we also?
48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of our Master Yahshua the Messiah. Then they asked him to remain some days[2].

Chapter 11

1 And the apostles and the brothers who were throughout Judea heard that the gentiles also received the Word of Elohim.
2 And when Peter went up to Jerusalem, those of the circumcision with him,
3 saying, You went in unto uncircumcised men and ate with them.
4 But beginning, Peter set out to them in order, saying,
5 While I was praying in Joppa, I saw in a dream a certain garment that was descending which resembled a linen cloth. And it was fastened by four of its corners and it was drawn out. And it came all the way from heaven towards me.
6 Looking intently on this, I observed. And I saw the four-footed animals of the earth, and the wild beasts, and the creeping things, and the birds of the heaven.
7 And I heard a voice saying to me, Peter, rise up, slay and eat.
8 But I said, Elohim forbid my Master, because never has anything common or unclean entered into my mouth.
9 But a voice answered me the second time out of the heaven, What YAHWEH has cleansed, you do not make common.
10 And this took place three times, and all things were pulled up into the heaven again.
11 And, behold, at once three men stood at the house in which I was, having been sent from Caesarea to me.
12 And the Spirit said to me to go with them, not discriminating. And these six brothers also were with me, and we went into the man's house.
13 And he told us how he saw a cherub in his house, standing and saying to him, Send men to Joppa, and send for Simon who is surnamed Peter,
14 who will speak words to you by which you and all your household will be saved.
15 And in my beginning to speak, the

---

[1] The Holy Spirit rested on them, meaning that it was guiding them, but they still needed baptism and the laying on of hands to enter covenant with Yahweh and have His spirit indwelling in them.

[2] This confirms the above study note

Holy Spirit fell on them, as also on us in the beginning.
16 And I recalled the Word of our Master, how He said, John indeed baptized with water, but you will baptize with the Spirit of Holiness.
17 Then if Elohim gave the same gift to them as also to us, believing on the Master Yahshua Messiah, and I, who was I to be able to hinder Elohim?
18 And hearing these things, they kept silent and glorified YAHWEH, saying, perhaps Elohim also has granted to the nations repentance unto life.
19 Then, indeed, they who were scattered by the oppression taking place over Stephen passed through to Phoenicia and Cyprus and Antioch, speaking the Word to no one except only to Jews.
20 But some men from them, Cypriots and Cyrenians, who had come to Antioch, spoke to the Hellenists, announcing the good news of the Master Yahshua.
21 And the hand of Adonai was with them, and a great number believing, they turned to the Almighty.
22 And the Word was heard in the ears of the assembly in Jerusalem concerning them. And they sent out Barnabas to go through as far as Antioch;
23 And when he arrived there and saw the grace of Elohim, he rejoiced and was beseeching them that they should be followers to our Master with all their heart.
24 For he was a good man, and full of the Holy Spirit and of faith. And a considerable crowd was added to the Master.
25 And Barnabas went out to Tarsus to seek Shaul.
26 And finding him, he brought him to Antioch. And it happened that many of them were gathered to them in the assembly a whole year. And they taught a considerable crowd. And the disciples were first called Kristyane[1] at Antioch.
27 And in these days prophets came down from Jerusalem to Antioch.
28 And one of them named Agabus rising up, he signified through the Spirit that a great famine was about to be over all the habitable earth, which also happened on Claudius Caesar's time.
29 And according as any was prospered, the disciples, each of them, determined to send for ministry to those brothers living in Judea,
30 And they sent by way of Barnabas and Shaul to the Elders who were there.

Chapter 12

1 And at that time Herod the king put forth the hands to oppress some of those in the congregation.
2 And with a sword he did away with Jacob the brother of John.
3 And seeing that it was pleasing to the Jews, he added also to seize Simon Peter, (and they were the days of Unleavened Bread)
4 whom also capturing him, he put him into prison, delivering him to four sets of four soldiers to guard him, intending to bring him up to the people after the Passover[2].
5 Then Peter was indeed kept in the prison, but fervent prayer was made

---

1 This term was used by people living in the nations who referred to gentile believers as such, but was not used by believers in Israel. Later we get the universal term used today "*Christian*" when Constantine merged Christianity with his pagan religion.

2 Many translations erroneously insert "*easter*" here but in the original Aramaic as well as even the Greek manuscripts it is the word "*Passover*".

by the congregation to YAHWEH on his behalf.

6 And toward the dawn in that very night he was preparing to deliver him, as Simon was bound by two chains sleeping among two soldiers and others were guarding the gate of the prison.

7 And, behold! A cherub of YAHWEH stood above him, and a light shone in the building. And striking Peter's side, he raised him up, saying, Rise up quickly! And the chains fell off from his hands.

8 And the cherub said to him, Gird yourself, and bind on your sandals. And he did so. And he said to him, Throw around your garment and follow me.

9 And going out, he followed him, and did not know that this happening through the cherub was real, but he thought he saw a vision.

10 And going through a first and a second guard, they came on the iron gate, leading into the city, which opened to them of itself. And going out, they went on one street; and instantly the cherub departed from his presence.

11 And having come, Peter said within himself, Now I know truly that YAHWEH sent out His cherub and plucked me out of Herod's hand, and from the thing which the Jews planned against me.

12 And considering, he came to the house of Mariam the mother of John, the one being surnamed Mark, where many were gathered together, and praying.

13 And Simon was knocking at the door of the porch, and a servant girl named Rhoda came near to listen.

14 And recognizing Simon's voice, from joy she did not open the porch, but running in she reported Simon was standing before the porch.

15 But they said to her, You are very confused. But she insisted, holding it to be so. And they said, perhaps, it is his messenger.

16 But Peter kept on knocking. And opening, they saw him and were amazed.

17 And signaling to them with the hand to be silent, he told them how YAHWEH brought him out of the prison. And he said, Report these things to Jacob and the brothers. And going out, he went to another place.

18 And day having come, there was not a little disturbance among the soldiers, saying, What, then, became of Peter?

19 Now after Herod sought him and could not find him, he judged the guards and commanded them that they should die and he departed from Judea and was in Caesarea.

20 And Herod was in bitter hostility with the Tyrians and Sidonians. But with one passion they came to him. And persuading Blastus, the one over the king's bedroom, they begged him for cultivated land, because their country was fed from the royal bounty.

21 And on a set day, having been clothed in a regal garment, and sitting on the tribunal, Herod made a speech to them.

22 And the people cried out, These sayings are of a god and are not of the sons of men!

23 And instantly a cherub of YAHWEH struck him, because he did not give the glory to Elohim. And having been eaten by worms, he died.

24 But the good news of Elohim grew and increased.

25 And Barnabas and Shaul returned from Jerusalem, having fulfilled their service, and having taken with them John, the one surnamed Mark.

Chapter 13

1 Now there were prophets and teachers in the congregation of Antioch: both Barnabas and Simeon, he being called Niger, and Lucius the Cyrenian, and Manaen the foster brother of Herod the tetrarch, and Shaul.

2 And while they were doing service to Elohim and fasting, the Holy Spirit said, So then separate both Barnabas and Shaul to Me, for the work to which I have called them.

3 Then, having fasted and prayed, and placing hands on them, they let them go.

4 Then these indeed sent out by the Holy Spirit went down to Seleucia, and from there sailed away to Cyprus.

5 And coming unto Salamis, they announced the Word of YAHWEH in the synagogues of the Jews. And they also had John as a helper.

6 And passing through the island as far as Paphos, they found a certain sorcerer, a false prophet, a Jew named Bar-Shuma,

7 who was with the proconsul, Sergius Paulus, an intelligent man. This one having called Barnabas and Shaul to him, he sought to hear the Word of Elohim.

8 Now he was standing against them this sorcerer Bar-Shuma, his name which is interpreted magician because he was desiring to turn the proconsul from the faith.

9 But Shaul, who is also Paul, being filled with the Holy Spirit, and looking intently on him,

10 he said, O son of the Devil, full of deceits and all evils and enemy of all righteousness, you will not cease to pervert the straight paths of YAHWEH.

11 And now, behold, the hand of YAHWEH is on you, and you will be blind, not seeing the sun until a time. And instantly a mist and darkness fell on him, and going about he sought some to lead him by the hand.

12 Then seeing the thing happening, the proconsul marveled and believed in the teaching of YAHWEH.

13 And putting out from Paphos with those around him, Paul came to Perga of Pamphylia. And separating from them, John returned to Jerusalem.

14 But going through from Perga, they came to Antioch-Pisidia, and going into the synagogue on the day of the Sabbath, they sat down.

15 And after the reading of the Torah, and of the Prophets, the synagogue rulers sent to them, saying, Men, brothers, if there is a word of exhortation to the people, speak.

16 And rising up, and signaling with his hand, Paul said, Men, Israelites, and the ones fearing Elohim, listen.

17 The Elohim of this people chose our forefathers and exalted and magnified them while they were sojourners in the land of Misrayin. And with a high arm, He brought them out from it.

18 And He nourished them forty years in the wilderness. *(Deut. 1:31)*

19 And He pulled down seven nations in the land of Canaan, and gave their land to them as an inheritance. *(Deut. 7:1)*

20 And after these things, as four hundred and fifty years passed, He gave judges until Samuel the prophet.

21 And from there they asked for a king. And Elohim gave Saul the son of Kish to them, a man of the tribe of Benjamin, for forty years.

22 And removing him, He raised up to them David for a king, to whom He also said, witnessing, "I found David, the son of Jesse, to be a man according to My own heart, who will do all My will." *(1 Sam. 13:14; Psa. 89:20)*

23 From the seed of this man Elohim raised Yahshua the Savior for Israel as was promised.

24 John going before to proclaim before the face of His entrance a baptism of repentance to all the people of Israel.

25 And as John fulfilled the course, he said, Whom do you suppose me to be? I am not He, but, behold, "He comes after me, of whom I am not worthy to loosen the sandal of His feet." *(John 1:27)*

26 Men, brothers, sons of the race of Abraham, and the ones among you fearing Elohim, the Word of salvation was sent to you.

27 For those dwellers of Jerusalem and their leaders understood him not, nor the books of the prophets which are read every week. Rather they condemned him and fulfilled everything that is written.

28 And finding not one cause of death, they asked Pilate to do away with Him.

29 And when they finished all the things having been written concerning Him, taking Him down from the tree[1], they laid Him in a tomb.

30 But YAHWEH raised Him from the dead;

31 who appeared for many days to those coming up with Him from Galilee to Jerusalem, who are witnesses of Him to the people.

32 And we preach the good news to you, the promise made to the fathers,

33 Behold Elohim has completed it to their children, to us, that He raised Yahshua. It is written in the second Psalm that "You are My Son, today I have begotten You." *(Psa. 2:7)*

34 And thus YAHWEH raised Him from the grave so that He will not return again and see corruption as He said that, I will give the grace of David the faithful to you. *(Isa. 55:3)*

35 So He also said in another, "You will not give Your Holy One to see corruption." *(Psa. 16:10)*

36 For David served the will of Elohim in his generation, and slept and was added to his fathers and saw corruption. *(1 Kg. 2:10)*

37 But He whom Elohim raised up, this One did not see corruption.

38 Then let it be known to you, men, brothers, that through this One remission of sin is announced to you.

39 And everyone believing in this One is justified from all things which you could not be justified by the Torah of Moses[2].

40 Then watch that the thing spoken in the Prophets may not come on you:

41 "See you despisers and be astonished and be destroyed for a work I will work in your days, that which you will not believe even if someone tells it to you." *(Hab. 1:5)*

42 But the Jews having gone out of the synagogue, the gentiles begged that these words be spoken to them on the next Sabbath[3].

43 And the synagogue being broken

---

1 Yahshua was crucified on a tree (Luk 23:31)

2 In the Torah the sins of murder, idolatry, blasphemy and adultery held the death penalty. When Yahshua magnified the Torah (Math 5:17) He showed that anger is murder, lust is adultery and in doing so, He revealed that all humans are under a death penalty according to the first covenant, which had no avenue to remove that death sentence. In the New Covenant, by faith in Yahshua, He pays our death penalty by His death when we are baptized and enter covenant with Him (Col 2:12-14).

3 Another clear proof that the believers were meeting on the Sabbath and not on Sunday, for if the gentiles were meeting on Sunday, then why would they have to wait a whole week to hear Paul preach again, they simply would have continued the discussion the next day.

up, many of the Jews and of the devout proselytes followed Paul and Barnabas, who speaking to them persuaded them to continue in the grace of Elohim.

44 And in the coming Sabbath[1], almost all the city was gathered to hear the Word of Elohim.

45 And the Jews seeing the crowds, they were filled with jealousy, and contradicted the things being spoken by Shaul, contradicting and blaspheming.

46 But speaking boldly, Paul and Barnabas said, It was necessary for the Word of Elohim to be spoken first to you; but since you indeed thrust it away and judge yourselves not worthy of eternal life, behold, we turn to the nations.

47 For so our Master has commanded us, "I have set You for a Light to the nations, that You be for salvation to the end of the earth." *(Isa. 49:6)*

48 And hearing, the gentiles rejoiced and glorified the Word of Elohim. And as many as were appointed to eternal life believed.

49 And the Word of YAHWEH was spoken through all the country.

50 But the Jews incited the rulers and with them the wealthy women of the city, those who were fearing Elohim and raised up a persecution against Paul and Barnabas, and threw them out from their borders.

51 But these shaking off the dust of their feet on them, they came into Iconium.

52 And the disciples were filled with joy and the Holy Spirit.

Chapter 14

1 And it happened in Iconium, they went in together into the synagogue of the Jews, and spoke so as for a huge multitude of both Jews and Greeks to believe.

2 But the unbelieving Jews raised up and embittered the souls of the gentiles against the brothers.

3 And those days many were there and were openly preaching about YAHWEH. And He was witnessing concerning the Word of His Grace with miracles and with wonders that he was accomplishing by their hands.

4 But the multitude of the city was divided; and some were with the Jews, but others with the apostles.

5 Now a threat came upon them from the Gentiles and from the Jews and their rulers that they might torment them and they might stone them with rocks.

6 After they found out, they fled to the cities of Lycaonia, Lystra and Derbe, and the surrounding country.

7 And they were announcing the good news there.

8 And a certain man was sitting in Lystra, who was afflicted lame in the feet from his mother's womb, who had never walked.

9 This one heard Paul speaking, who, looking intently at him, and seeing that he had faith to be healed,

10 he said with a loud voice, Stand upright on your feet! And he leaped up and walked about.

11 And seeing what Paul did, the crowd lifted up their voice in Lycaonian, saying, The gods have come down to us, becoming like men.

12 And they called Barnabas, Zeus, and Paul, Hermes, because he was the leader in speaking.

13 And the priest of Zeus one who was outside of the city, brought bulls

---

1 All early believers kept the 7th day Sabbath (Saturday). Sunday worship did not come about until it was instituted by the Roman Bishop Sixtus in around 116 A.D.

and wreaths to the gate of the courtyard where they stayed, and desired to offer a sacrifice to them.

14 But Paul and Barnabas, the apostles, hearing, tearing their garments, they sprang into the crowd, crying out,

15 and saying, Men, why do you do these things? We are also sons of men, passionate like yourselves who are preaching to you that you should turn from these useless things towards the living Elohim who made the heavens and the earth and the seas and all that there is in them. *(Ex. 20:11)*

16 Who in the generations which have passed allowed all the nations to go in their own ways,

17 while He did not allow Himself without a testimony in that He did much for them. And He caused rain to descend from heaven. And He caused fruit to grow in their seasons. And He filled their hearts with cheer and gladness.

18 And saying these things, they hardly stopped the crowds, that they not sacrifice to them.

19 But Jews came there from Antioch and Iconium, and persuading the crowds, and stoning Paul, they dragged him outside the city, supposing him to have died.

20 But the disciples surrounding him arising, he entered into the city. And on the next day he went away with Barnabas to Derbe.

21 And having announced the good news to that city, and having made many disciples, they returned to Lystra and Iconium and Antioch,

22 After they had strengthened the souls of the disciples and had beseeched from them to remain in the faith, and had said to them that, It is right by much tribulation to enter into the Kingdom of Elohim.

23 And they ordained elders in every congregation for them after they had fasted and prayed with them and they had committed them to our Master, he in whom they believed.*(Acts 6:3-6)*

24 And passing through Pisidia, they came to Pamphylia.

25 And speaking the Word of YAHWEH in Perga, they came down to Attalia,

26 and from there they sailed to Antioch, from where they had been committed to the grace of YAHWEH for the work which they fulfilled.

27 And after they gathered all the congregation, they conveyed everything that Elohim did among them. And that He opened the gate of faith to the Gentiles.

28 And they remained there much time with the disciples.

Chapter 15

1 And going down from Judea, some taught the brothers, saying, unless you are circumcised in the manner of the Torah, you cannot be saved[1].

2 Then dissension and not a little disputation with them having taken place by Paul and Barnabas, they appointed Paul and Barnabas and some others of them to go up into Jerusalem to the apostles and elders concerning this question. *(Acts 16:4)*

3 The congregation conducted and sent them. And they journeyed in all Phoenicia and also Samaria as they related about the reconciliation of the Gentiles. And they caused great joy to all the brethren.

4 And having arrived in Jerusalem, they were welcomed by the

[1] Clearly, the issue being discussed is '*does an adult gentile believer need to be circumcised to enter the New Covenant'*. The issue is not whether the Torah has validity in a believer's life; this was clearly understood to be so.

congregation and the apostles and the elders. And they reported what things Elohim did with them.
5 But some of those rose up from the sect of the Pharisees who had believed, saying, It is necessary to circumcise them in order to keep the Law of Moses[1].
6 And the apostles and the elders were assembled to see about this matter.
7 And much disputation having occurred, rising up Peter said to them: Men, brothers, you recognize that from ancient days, Elohim chose among us that through my mouth the nations should hear the Word of the good news, and to believe.
8 And Elohim who knows what is in the hearts testified concerning them and gave to them the Holy Spirit as He did to us.
9 And He made distinction in nothing between both us and them, having purified their hearts by faith.
10 Now, then, why do you test Elohim by putting a yoke on the neck of the disciples which neither our fathers nor we had strength to carry[2]?
11 But through the grace of the Master Yahshua Messiah, we believe to be saved, according to which manner they also believed.
12 And all the multitude kept silent and were hearing Barnabas and Paul recounting what things Elohim did through them among the nations, even the miraculous signs and wonders.
13 And after they were silent, Jacob responded, saying, Men, brothers, hear me:
14 Simon recounted how even as at first Elohim oversaw to take a people out from among the nations for His name.
15 And with this agree the Words of the prophets, as it has been written,
16 After these things "I will return and will build again the tabernacle of David which has fallen," "And I will build again the things which have been demolished, and I will set it up," *(Amos 9:11, 12)*
17 So that YAHWEH will seek the remainder of mankind and all the nations, those who My name is called over them, said YAHWEH who made all these things.
18 The works of Elohim are known from eternity.

---

1 Again, it is NOT the whole Torah at issue here, except whether an adult male needs to be circumcised to enter the New Covenant. It should also be noted that according to the Jewish tradition of that time, there were other non-biblical oral law requirements of the Rabbis that needed to be observed before circumcision would be allowed.

2 Although, the Torah is Holy, just and good (Ro 7:12), human beings are not and according to the Torah (Deut 27:26) if one entered the first covenant, then they were obligated to observe every law of Torah and there was no way to have certain sins removed such as adultery, idolatry, blasphemy and murder. Yahshua magnified the Torah to show that in spirit every human being has committed such sins. Since Circumcision is the sign of the first covenant in which you could not have the penalty of such sins removed, Peter is clearly stating why would the elders want to put such a burden on new believers. Paul clearly expounds on this in the book of Galatians that if one is circumcised and joins the old covenant that Messiah will profit him nothing as there was no removal of sins but simply a hope of a better covenant to come with a more perfect priesthood in Melchizedek. Since baptism and not circumcision is the sign of the New Covenant, then a male gentile adult would not have to be circumcised to join. This did not change the Torah command for all believers to circumcise their male babies at 8 days to fulfill the law of clean and unclean.

19 For this reason I judge not to trouble those from the nations turning to Elohim,
20 but to write to them to hold back from the pollutions of idols, and from fornication, and from things strangled, and blood[1].
21 For in every city from ancient generations Moses has those proclaiming Him, having been read in the synagogues on every Sabbath.
22 Then it seemed good to the apostles and the elders, with all the congregation, to send chosen men from them to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas, Judas having been surnamed Barsabas, and Silas, leading men among the brothers,
23 writing by their hand these things: The apostles and the elders and the brothers, to those throughout Antioch, and Syria, and Cilicia, brothers from the nations: Greeting.
24 Since we heard that some of us having gone out have confused you with words, agitating your souls, saying, Be circumcised to keep the Torah, to whom we gave no command;[2]
25 Because of this, we deliberated, all of us, to send chosen men to you along with our beloved Barnabas and Paul,
26 men who have given up their souls on behalf of the name of our Master, Yahshua Messiah.
27 Therefore, we have sent Judas and Silas, they by word also announcing the same things.
28 For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit and to us to put not one greater burden on you than these necessary things:
29 To hold back from idol sacrifices, and blood, and that strangled, and from fornication; from which continually keeping yourselves, you will do well. Be true in our Master[3].
30 Then they indeed being let go, they went to Antioch. And gathering the multitude, they delivered the letter.
31 And after they read they were encouraged and they rejoiced.
32 And Judas and Silas, themselves also being prophets, exhorted the brothers through much speech, and confirmed them.
33 And continuing for a time, they were let go with peace from the brothers to the apostles.
34 But it seemed good to Silas to remain[4].
35 And Paul and Barnabas stayed in Antioch, teaching and announcing the Good News and the Word of Elohim, with many others also.
36 And after some days Paul said to

---

[1] It would be ridiculous to think that these are the only 4 requirements that a new gentile believer needed to follow, as it does not mention murder, blasphemy or even belief in Yahshua. Since cultural issues such as not draining the blood correctly in animals was keeping Jewish believers from fellowshipping with gentile ones, the Apostles are simply making basic rules that will allow them to meet together with a clear conscience. These 4 points are not the only doctrine that a new gentile believer will have to learn, but they are a starting point, as the next verse clearly states that the gentiles will "*hear the Torah each Sabbath that they meet*" with the Jewish believers, clearly showing the still binding validity of the Sabbath and Torah, even after this decree.

[2] Gal 5:1-7, Rom 2:28-29

[3] It should also be noted that as well as the sign of the first covenant that circumcision was also a cultural issue in which a Jew would not sit and eat with someone who was not circumcised (Acts 10:28). This was not written in the Torah, but was part of the Jewish oral law and was overridden by the decree of the Apostles.

[4] This verse is missing from the Aramaic Peshitta and also early Greek manuscripts

Barnabas, Indeed, having turned back, let us look after our brothers throughout every city in which we announced the Word of Elohim, how they are holding it.

37 But Barnabas desired to take John with them, the one having been called Mark.

38 But Paul thought it well not to take that one with them, he having withdrawn from them from Pamphylia, and not going with them to the work.

39 Then there was sharp feeling, so as to separate them from each other. And taking Mark, Barnabas sailed away to Cyprus.

40 But having chosen Silas, Paul went out, being entrusted by the brethren to the grace of Elohim.

41 And he went through Syria and Cilicia, making the congregations strong.

Chapter 16

1 And he arrived in Derbe and Lystra. And behold, a certain disciple named Timothy was there, the son of a certain believing Jewish woman, but his father was a Greek.

2 This one was being testified of by the brothers in Lystra and Iconium.

3 Paul desired this one to go forth with him, and taking him he circumcised him, because of the Jews being in those places. For they all knew his father, that he was a Greek.

4 And as they went through the cities, they delivered to them the need to keep the decrees that had been determined by the apostles and the elders in Jerusalem. (*Deut 17:8-13)*

5 Then indeed the congregations were being made stronger in the faith, and increased in number day by day.

6 And passing through the Phrygian and the Galatian country, being forbidden by the Holy Spirit to speak the Word in Asia,

7 coming against Mysia, they attempted to go along Bithynia, and the Spirit of Yahshua did not allow them.[1]

8 And passing by Mysia, they came down into Troas.

9 And a vision appeared to Paul during the night: A certain man of Macedonia was standing, entreating him and saying, Passing over into Macedonia, help us!

10 And when he saw the vision, we immediately sought to go forth into Macedonia, for he understood that our Master called us to evangelize them.

11 Then having set sail from Troas, we ran a straight course into Samothrace, and on the next day into Neapolis,

12 and from there into Philippi, which is the first city of that part of Macedonia, a colony. And we were in this city, staying some days.

13 And we went out on the day of the Sabbath without the gate of the city to the bank of the river, because there was seen a house of prayer; and sitting down we spoke with the women who came together there.

14 And a certain woman named Lydia, a seller of purple of the city of Thyatira, one reverencing Elohim, listened, whose heart the Master opened thoroughly to pay attention to the things being spoken by Paul.

15 And as she and her household were baptized, she entreated Paul, saying, If you have judged me to be believing in the Master, entering into my house, remain. And she strongly urged us.

---

[1] Paul was given the ministry primarily to the gentiles as where the Apostles were to the lost sheep of Israel where displaced Israelites lived north of these areas. See note on 1 Peter 1:1.

16 And it was while we went to the house of prayer, a certain damsel met us in whom was a spirit of divination, and she had produced her overlords much gain by her divination.
17 Following after Paul and us, she cried out, saying, These men are slaves of the Most High Elohim, who are announcing to us a way of salvation!
18 And she did this over many days. But becoming distressed, and turning to the demonic spirit, Paul said, In the name of Yahshua Messiah I command you to come out from her! And it came out in that same hour.
19 And seeing that the hope of their gain went out, having seized Paul and Silas, her masters dragged them to the market.
20 And bringing them near to the soldiers and magistrates, they said, These men are very much troubling our city, being Jews,
21 and preach customs which it is not lawful for us to accept, nor practice, being Romans.
22 And the crowd rose up against them. And tearing off their clothes, the magistrates ordered men to scourge them.
23 And laying on them many stripes, they threw them into prison, charging the jailer to keep them securely,
24 who, receiving such a charge, threw them into the inner prison, and locked their feet in the stocks.
25 And having prayed, toward midnight Paul and Silas praised Elohim in a hymn. And the prisoners listened to them.
26 And suddenly there was a great earthquake, so that the foundations of the jail were shaken. And immediately all the doors were opened and all of the bonds were loosened.
27 And having been awakened, and seeing that the doors of the prison had been opened, having drawn a sword, the jailer was about to do away with himself, supposing the prisoners to have escaped.
28 But Paul called out with a loud voice, saying, Do no harm to yourself! For we are all here.
29 And asking for lights, he rushed in. And becoming trembling, he fell before Paul and Silas.
30 And leading them outside, he said, Sirs, what must I do that I may be saved?
31 And they said, Believe on the Master Yahshua Messiah, and you will be saved, you and your household.
32 And they spoke the Word of the Master to him, and to all those in his house.
33 And taking them in that hour of the night, he washed their stripes. And he and all those belonging to him were baptized at once.
34 And bringing them up to the house, he set a table before them, and he and his whole house rejoiced, believing Elohim.
35 And day having come, the magistrates sent the floggers, saying, let those men go.
36 And the jailer announced these words to Paul, The magistrates have sent that you be let go. Now, then, going out, proceed in peace.
37 But Paul said to them, Having beaten us publicly, being Romans and uncondemned men, they threw us into prison. And now do they throw us out secretly? No, indeed! But coming themselves let them bring us out.
38 And the floggers reported these words to the magistrates. And hearing that they were Romans, they were afraid.
39 And coming, they begged them. And bringing them out, they asked them to go out of the city.
40 And going out from the prison, they went into the house of Lydia. And

seeing the brothers, they exhorted them, and went out.

Chapter 17

1 And traveling through Amphipolis and Apollonia, they came to Thessalonica, where there was a synagogue of the Jews.
2 And according to Paul's custom, he went in to them and reasoned with them from the Scriptures on three Sabbaths[1],
3 opening and setting forth that the Messiah must have suffered and to have risen from the dead, and that this is the Messiah, Yahshua, whom I preach to you.
4 And some of them were persuaded and joined themselves to Paul and Silas, both a great multitude of the worshiping Greeks, and not a few of the leading women.
5 But becoming jealous, and gathered to themselves evil men from the marketplace of the city, and formed a great mob and the disobeying Jews set the city into turmoil. And coming on the house of Jason, they sought to bring them on to the mob.
6 But not finding them, they dragged Jason and some brothers before the city judges, crying, Those turning the habitable world upside down have come here, too;
7 and this Jason welcomed them: And they all resist the commands of Caesar, saying that there is another king, one named Yahshua.
8 And hearing these things, they troubled the crowd and the city judges.
9 And taking security bail from Jason and the rest, they let them go.
10 But the brothers at once sent both Paul and Silas to Berea during the night; who having arrived went into the synagogue of the Jews.
11 And these were more noble than those in Thessalonica, for they received the Word with all readiness, daily examining the Scriptures if these things are so.
12 And many of them believed; and so likewise of the Greeks, many men, and notable women.
13 But when the Jews from Thessalonica knew that the Word of Elohim was also announced in Berea by Paul, they came there also, shaking up the crowd.
14 And immediately, then, the brothers sent away Paul, to go as toward the sea. But both Silas and Timothy remained there.
15 But those conducting Paul brought him as far as Athens. And receiving a command to Silas and to Timothy, that they come to him quickly, they departed.
16 But awaiting them in Athens, Paul's spirit was pained within him, seeing the city full of idolatry.
17 Then, indeed, he addressed the Jews in the synagogue, and those worshiping, also in the market every day, to those happening to be there.
18 And also philosophers of the sect of Epicureans, and others who were called Stoics, disputed with him. And one and another of them said: What doth this babbler mean? Others said: He announces foreign deities; because he preached to them Yahshua and His resurrection.
19 And taking him by force, they led him to the place of judgment called Areopagus, saying, may we know what is this new doctrine being preached by you?
20 For you bring startling things to our ears. We are minded, then, to know what these things wish to be.
21 And all Athenians and the

[1] Paul kept the 7th day Sabbath

strangers living there have leisure for nothing else than to say and to hear newer things.
22 And as Paul stood in the Areopagus, he said: Men, Athenians, I perceive that in all things ye are excessive in the worship of idols.
23 For as I was rambling about and looking up at the objects of your worship, I also found an altar on which had been written, TO THE HIDDEN ELOHIM. Not knowing, then, whom you worship, I make Him known to you.
24 The Elohim who made the world and all things in it, this One being Master of Heaven and of Earth, does not dwell in handmade temples.
25 Nor is served by hands of men, as having need of anything. For He is giving life and breath and all things to all.
26 And He made every nation of men of one blood, to live on all the face of the earth, ordaining fore-appointed seasons and boundaries of their dwelling,
27 that they might inquire and search after Elohim, and, by means of his creation, might find him; because he is not afar off from each one of us:
28 For in Him we live and move and exist, as also some of the poets among you have said, For we are also His offspring.
29 Then man being of the offspring and family of YAHWEH, we ought not to suppose that the Sovereign Deity is like gold or silver or stone, engraved by art and the imagination of man.
30 Truly, then, Elohim overlooking the times of this ignorance, but now strictly commands all men everywhere to repent,
31 because He set a day in which "He is going to judge all the earth with righteousness[1]," by the Man whom He has chosen; and He turned every man to have faith in Him, in that He raised Him from the dead[2].
32 And hearing of a resurrection of the dead, some indeed ridiculed, but said, We will hear you again concerning this.
33 And so Paul went out from their midst.
34 But some men believed, joining themselves to him, among whom also were both Dionysius the Areopagite and a woman named Damaris, and others with them.

Chapter 18

1 And after these things, departing from Athens, Paul came to Corinth.
2 And finding a certain Jew by name Aquila, of Pontus by race, having recently come from Italy with his wife Priscilla, because Claudius had ordered all the Jews to leave Rome, he came to them.
3 And because he was of the same trade, he lived and worked with them; for they were Saddle makers by trade.
4 And he reasoned in the synagogue on every Sabbath persuading both Jews and the pagans.
5 And when both Silas and Timothy came down from Macedonia, Paul felt he was not free to speak, because the Jews oppressed him and blasphemed as he earnestly testified that Yahshua is the Messiah.
6 So he having shaken his garments, he said to them, Your blood be on your head. I am pure from it; from now on I will go to the nations.
7 And moving from there, he went into the house of one, Titus by name, one worshiping Elohim, whose house was next door to the synagogue.
8 And Crispus, the synagogue ruler, believed in our Master along with all

[1] Rev 20:13

[2] 2 Cor 5:10, Rev 20:13, Psa. 9:8

his house. And hearing many of the
Corinthians believed and were
baptized.
9 And the Master said to Paul
through a vision in the night, Do not
fear, but speak, and do not keep
silence;
10 because I am with you, and no
one shall set on you to oppress you;
because there is much people to Me in
this city.
11 And he remained a year and six
months teaching the Word of Elohim
among them.
12 But Gallio being proconsul of
Achaia, the Jews rushed against Paul
with one passion and led him to the
tribunal,
13 saying, This one persuades men to
worship Elohim contrary to the Torah.
14 But Paul being about to open his
mouth, Gallio said to the Jews, If,
indeed, then, it was some wrong or
wicked criminality, O Jews, according
to reason I would listen to you.
15 But if it is a question about a
word, and names, and your Torah, you
will see to it yourselves; for I do not
wish to be a judge of these things.
16 And he drove them from the
tribunal.
17 And all the heathen having seized
Sosthenes the ruler of the synagogue,
they beat him before the tribunal. And
not one of these things mattered to
Gallio.
18 And having remained many days
more, having taken leave of the
brothers, Paul sailed to Syria, having
shaved his head in Cenchrea, for he
had vowed a vow. And Priscilla and
Aquila were with him.
19 And he came to Ephesus, and he
left those there. But he going into the
synagogue, he reasoned with the Jews.
20 And they asking him to remain
over a longer time with them, but he
did not agree,
21 but took leave of them, saying, it
is required that I must by all means
keep the coming feast at Jerusalem[1];
but I will come again to you, Elohim
willing. And he sailed from Ephesus.
22 And landing at Caesarea, having
gone up and greeted the congregation,
he went down to Antioch.
23 And spending some time, he went
out, in order passing through the
Galatian and Phrygian country,
making strong all the disciples.
24 But a certain Jew named Apollos,
an Alexandrian by birth, an eloquent
man, came to Ephesus, being powerful
in the Scriptures.
25 This one having been taught by
mouth in the way of the Master, and
being fervent in spirit, he spoke and
taught accurately the things about
Yahshua, but he only understood the
baptism of John.
26 And this one began to speak
boldly in the synagogue. And hearing
him Priscilla and Aquila took him to
their home and more accurately
expounded the way of Yahshua to him.
27 And when he was disposed to go
to Achaia, the brethren anticipated
him, and wrote to the disciples to
receive him. And, by going, through
grace, he greatly assisted all them that
believed.
28 For he powerfully confuted the
Jews publicly, proving through the
Scriptures Yahshua to be the Messiah.

Chapter 19

1 And it happened, in the time
Apollos was in Corinth, Paul was
passing through the higher parts to

---
1 Clearly, Paul's custom was not only to keep the feast but to keep it in Jerusalem according to scripture (Deut 16:16). Most likely this is referring to Passover as this is the winter of the year 51 or 52 AD.

come to Ephesus. And finding some disciples,
2 he said to them, Believing, did you receive the Holy Spirit? And they said to him, We did not even hear whether the Holy Spirit is.
3 And he said to them, Then to what were you baptized? And they said, To the baptism of John.
4 And Paul said, John indeed baptized with a baptism of repentance, saying to the people that they should believe into the One coming after him, that is, into the Messiah, Yahshua.
5 And hearing, they were baptized into the name of the Master Yahshua.
6 And Paul laying hands on them, the Holy Spirit came on them, and they spoke in different languages and prophesied.
7 And all the men were about twelve.
8 And going into the synagogue, he spoke boldly over three months, having reasoned with them, and persuading concerning the things of the kingdom of Elohim.
9 But when some were hardened, and did not obey, speaking evil of the Way before the multitude, departing from them, he separated the disciples, and spoke to them daily in the school of a certain Tyrannus.
10 And this happened over two years, so as all those living in Asia heard the Word of YAHWEH, both Jews and Arameans.
11 And Elohim did great works of power through the hands of Paul,
12 so as even handkerchiefs or rags from his body to be brought onto those sick, and the diseases to be released from them, and the evil spirits to go out from them.
13 But certain Jews, who went about exorcising evil spirits, undertook to name the name of the Master Yahshua over those having evil spirits, saying, We adjure you by Yahshua whom Paul preaches.
14 And there were seven sons of Sceva, a Jewish chief priest, doing this.
15 But answering the evil spirit said, Yahshua I recognize, and Paul I know, but who are you?
16 And the man in whom was the evil demon leaped upon them, and overpowered them, and threw them down: And they fled out of the house naked and wounded.
17 And this became known to all, both Jews and Arameans, those living in Ephesus. And fear fell on them all, and the name of the Master Yahshua was magnified.
18 And many of those who had believed came confessing their faults, and reporting there what they had done.
19 And many magicians, bringing together the books, burned them before all. And they counted the prices of them, and found it to be fifty thousand pieces of silver.
20 And thus with great power was the faith of Elohim strengthened and increased.
21 And when these things were fulfilled, passing through Macedonia and Achaia, Paul purposed in the Spirit to go to Jerusalem, saying, After I have come there, I must also see Rome.
22 And sending into Macedonia two who ministered to him, Timothy and Erastus, he stayed a time in Asia.
23 And about that time there was no little disturbance about the Way.
24 For a certain silversmith named Demetrius was making silver shrines of Artemis, providing no little trade for the craftsmen.
25 And assembling the workmen about such things, he said, Men, you understand that from this trade is our wealth.

26 And ye also know and see, that not only the citizens of Ephesus, but also the mass of all Asia, this Paul hath persuaded and enticed away, by saying, that those are not Elohim, which are made by the hands of men.

27 And not only is this dangerous to us, lest our part come to be in contempt, but also the sanctuary of the great goddess Artemis will be counted nothing, and her majesty is also about to be destroyed, whom all Asia and the world worships.

28 And having heard, and having become full of anger, they cried out, saying, Great is Artemis of the Ephesians!

29 And all the city was filled with confusion. And they rushed with one passion into the theater, keeping a firm grip on Gaius and Aristarchus, Macedonians, traveling companions of Paul.

30 And Paul intending to go in to the mob, the disciples did not allow him.

31 And also some of the chiefs of Asia-minor, being his friends, sending to him begged him not to give himself into the theater.

32 Then others indeed cried out a different thing, for the assembly was confused, and the majority did not know on what account they came together.

33 But they dragged Alexander forward out of the crowd, the Jews thrusting him in front. And waving his hand, Alexander desired to defend himself to the mob.

34 But they knowing him to be a Jew, all cried out with one voice, about two hours: Great is Diana of the Ephesians.

35 And quieting the crowd, the town clerk said, Men, Ephesians, for what man is there who does not know the city of the Ephesians to be temple keepers of the great goddess Artemis (Diana), of her image that descended from heaven?

36 Then these things being undeniable, it is necessary for you, being calmed, to be so, and to do nothing rash.

37 For you brought these men, being neither temple robbers nor blaspheming your goddess.

38 If then, indeed, Demetrius and those craftsmen with him have a matter against anyone, courts are being held, and there are proconsuls. Let them accuse one another.

39 But if you seek concerning other things, it will be settled in a lawful assembly.

40 For we are now in danger of being accused of insurrection, since we cannot give a reason for the meeting of this day, because we have assembled needlessly, and have made a tumult without a cause.

41 And saying these things, he dismissed the assembly.

Chapter 20

1 And after the ceasing of the tumult, having called the disciples, and having greeted them, Paul went away to go into Macedonia.

2 And passing through those parts, and exhorting them with much speech, he came into Greece.

3 And spending three months there, a plot by the Jews having occurred against him, being about to sail into Syria, he was of a mind to return through Macedonia.

4 And Sopater, a Berean; and Aristarchus and Secundus of the Thessalonians, and Gaius of Derbe, and Timothy, and Tychicus and Trophimus of Asia accompanied him as far as Asia.

5 Going forward, these awaited us in Troas.

6 But we sailed along after the days
of Unleavened Bread[1] from Philippi,
and came to them at Troas in five
days, where we stayed seven days.
7 And on one of the Sabbaths[2], the
disciples having been assembled to
have a fellowship meal together, being
about to depart on the next morning,
Paul reasoned to them. And he
continued his speech until midnight.
8 And many lamps were in the upper
room where they were gathered.
9 And a young man named Eutychus
was sitting in a window and listening.
And while Paul prolonged his
preaching, he sunk into a deep sleep;
and, in his sleep, he fell from the third
loft, and was taken up as dead.
10 And Paul went down, and bent
over him and embraced him, and said:
Be not terrified, for his soul is still in
him.
11 And going up, and breaking
bread[3], and tasting, and he continued
to speak until daybreak, and then he
departed on his journey by land.
12 And they brought the boy alive
and were comforted not a little.
13 But going before onto the ship, we
set sail for Assos, being about to take
Paul in there; for so it had been
arranged, he being about to go on foot.
14 And when he met us in Assos,
taking him up we came to Mitylene.
15 And sailing away from there, on
the next day we arrived off Chios, and
on the next we crossed to Samos. And
remaining at Trogyllium, the next day
we came to Miletus.
16 For Paul had determined with
himself not to pass by Ephesus, lest he
should be delayed there; because he
hasted on, if possible, to keep the day
of Shavuot in Jerusalem.
17 And sending to Ephesus from
Miletus he called for the elders of the
congregation.
18 And when they came to him, he
said to them: You understand, from
the first day on which I set foot in
Asia, how I was with you all the time,
19 serving our Master with all
humility, and many tears and trials
happening to me by the plots of the
Jews;
20 as I kept nothing back of what is
profitable, so as not to tell you, and to
teach you publicly, and from house to
house,
21 earnestly testifying both to Jews
and to Greeks repentance toward
Elohim and faith toward our Master,
Yahshua Messiah.
22 And now, behold, being bound by
the Spirit, I am going to Jerusalem,
not knowing the things going to meet
me in it,
23 but that the Holy Spirit testifies
city by city saying that bonds and
afflictions await me.
24 But I make account of nothing,
nor do I hold my life precious to
myself, so that I might finish my
course with joy, and the ministry
which I received from the Master
Yahshua, fully to testify the good news
of the grace of Elohim.
25 And now, I know that ye will see
my face no more, all of you among
whom I have traveled and preached
the kingdom *of YAHWEH.*
26 Because of this I testify to you on

---

1 The Holy Days in scripture are used as time markers throughout the bible. It would be inconceivable to do so if they were not keeping these days. Clearly the 7th day Sabbath (Saturday) and the Holy Days were kept during the first century by disciples of Yahshua.

2 This was a Sabbath afternoon and since Paul was leaving the next day he preached until midnight. The fact that he was leaving on the first day of the week (Sunday) clearly shows that this day had no religious significance to the believers with him.

3 Breaking bread is an ancient Semitic term that simply means eating together.

this day that I am pure from the blood of all.

27 For I did not keep back from declaring to you all the counsel of Elohim.

28 Then take heed to yourselves and to all the flock, in which the Holy Spirit placed you as overseers, to shepherd the congregation of YAHWEH which He purchased through His own blood.

29 For I know this, that after my departure grievous wolves will come in among you, not sparing the flock;

30 and out of you yourselves will rise up men speaking perverted things, in order to draw away the disciples after themselves.

31 Because of this watch, remembering that I did not cease admonishing each one with tears night and day for three years.

32 And now I commend you to Elohim, and to the word of His grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all the saints.

33 I have desired the silver, or gold, or clothing of no one.

34 But you yourselves know that these hands ministered to my needs, and to those who were with me.

35 I showed you all things, that working in this way we ought to help those being weak, and to remember the Words of the Master Yahshua, that He said, It is more blessed to give than to receive.

36 And saying these things, placing his knees, he prayed with them all.

37 And there was much weeping of all, and falling on the neck of Paul, they ardently kissed him,

38 most of all grieving for the word which he said, that they were going to see his face no more. And they went with him to the ship.

Chapter 21

1 And when it was time to sail, we having been torn away from them, running direct we came to Cos, and on the next day to Rhodes, and from there to Patara.

2 And finding a ship crossing over to Phoenice, going on board, we set sail:

3 And sighting Cyprus, and leaving it on the left, we sailed to Syria, and came down to Tyre; for the ship was unloading the cargo there.

4 And finding disciples, we remained there seven days; who told Paul through the Spirit not to go up to Jerusalem.

5 But when it was time for us to complete the days, going out, we traveled. And they, with all the women and children went with us as far as outside the city. And placing the knees on the shore, we prayed.

6 And giving parting greetings to one another, we went up into the ship, and those went back to their own.

7 And completing the voyage from Tyre, we arrived at Ptolemais. And having greeted the brothers, we remained one day with them.

8 And on the next day, those around him going out, Paul came to Caesarea. And going into the house of Philip the evangelist, he being of the seven, we stayed with him.

9 And there were four virgin daughters to this one, who prophesied.

10 And we remaining more days, a certain prophet from Judea named Agabus came down.

11 And coming to us, and taking Paul's girdle, and binding his hands and feet, he said, The Holy Spirit says these things: In Jerusalem the Jews will bind in this way the man whose girdle this is, and will deliver him up into the hands of the gentiles.

12 And when we heard these things,

both we and those of the place begged
him not to go up to Jerusalem.
13 But Paul answered, What are you
doing, weeping and breaking my
heart? For I not only am ready to be
bound, but also to die at Jerusalem for
the name of our Master Yahshua.
14 And he not being persuaded, we
were silent, saying, The will of our
Master be done.
15 And after these days, having made
ready, we went up to Jerusalem.
16 And also some of the disciples
from Caesarea went with us, bringing
Mason, a certain Cypriot, an ancient
disciple, with whom we might lodge.
17 And we being in Jerusalem, the
brothers joyfully received us.
18 And on the next day, Paul went in
with us to Jacob. And all the elders
came.
19 And having greeted them, he
related one by one what things Elohim
had worked among the nations
through his ministry.
20 And hearing, they glorified the
Master, and said to him, You see,
brother, how many myriads there are
of Jews that have believed, and all are
zealous ones of the Torah.
21 And it hath been told them, of
thee, that thou teach all the Jews that
are among the gentiles to depart from
Moses, by telling them not to
circumcise their children, and not to
observe the customs of the Torah.
22 What then is it? At all events, a
multitude will come together, for they
will hear that you have come here.
23 Then do this, what we say to you:
There are four men who have a vow on
themselves;
24 Take them, and go and purify
thyself with them, and pay the
expenses along with them, as they
shall shave their heads; that every one
may know, that what is said against
thee is false, and that thou fulfill and
observe the Torah. *(Acts 18:18)*
25 As to those of the gentiles who
have believed, we have written, that
they should keep themselves from idol
sacrifices, and from whoredom, and
from what is strangled, and from
blood.
26 Then taking the men on the next
day, having been purified with them,
Paul went into the sanctuary,
declaring the fulfillment of the days of
the purification, until the offering
should be offered for each one of
them.
27 But when the seven days were
about to be completed, having seen
him in the sanctuary, the Jews from
Asia stirred up all the crowd, and they
laid hands on him,
28 crying out, Men, Israelites, help!
This is the man who teaches all
everywhere against the people and the
Torah and this place. And even more,
he also brought Greeks into the
sanctuary and has defiled this holy
place.
29 For they had before seen
Trophimus, the Ephesian in the city
with him, whom they supposed that
Paul brought into the sanctuary.
30 And the whole city was moved,
and there was a running together of
people. And laying hands on Paul, they
brought him outside of the sanctuary,
and at once the doors were shut.
31 But as they were seeking to kill
him, a report came up to the chiliarch
of the cohort, that all Jerusalem is in a
tumult.
32 He at once ran down to them,
taking soldiers and centurions. And
seeing the chiliarch and the soldiers,
they stopped beating Paul.
33 Then going near, the chiliarch
laid hold of him, and commanded him
to be bound with two chains. And he

asked who he might be, and what he is
doing.
34 But others cried something else
in the crowd, and not being able to
know the certainty because of the
uproar, he commanded him brought
into the fortress[1].
35 But when he came on the stairs, it
happened he was carried by the
soldiers because of the violence of the
crowd.
36 For the multitude of the people
followed, crying out, Take him away!
37 But being about to be brought
into the fortress, Paul said to the
chiliarch, Is it lawful for me to say a
thing to you? And he said, Do you
know to speak in Greek?
38 Then are you not the Egyptian
who before these days caused a riot,
and led four thousand men of the
assassins out into the desert?
39 But Paul said, Indeed I am a man,
a Jew of Tarsus, of Cilicia, a citizen of
a well known city. And I beg you allow
me to speak to the people.
40 And he allowing him, standing on
the stairs, Paul signaled with his hand
to the people. And much silence taking
place, he spoke in the Hebrew dialect,
saying,

Chapter 22

1 Brethren, and fathers, hear my
defense now to you.
2 And hearing that he spoke in
Hebrew to them, they showed more
quietness. And he said:
3 I am a man who am a Jew; and I
was born in Tarsus of Cilicia, but was
brought up in this city, at the feet of
Gamaliel, and instructed perfectly in
the Torah of our fathers; and I was
zealous for Elohim, as you all are also.
4 I persecuted this Way as far as
death, binding and delivering up both
men and women to prisons,
5 as also the high priest and all the
elderhood witnesses to me. And
receiving letters from them to the
brothers, I traveled into Damascus
even to lead those to Jerusalem being
bound there, in order that they might
be punished.
6 And it happened to me, traveling
and drawing near to Damascus:
suddenly, about midday, a great light
out of the heaven shone around me.
7 And I fell to the ground, and heard
a voice saying to me, Shaul, Shaul, why
do you persecute Me?
8 And I answered, Who are you, Sir?
And He said to me, I am Yahshua the
Nazarene whom you persecute.
9 But those being with me indeed
saw the light, and were alarmed, but
did not hear His voice speaking to me.
10 And I said, What shall I do,
Master? And the Master said to me,
Rising up, go into Damascus, and
there you will be told about all things
which are appointed to you to do.
11 And as I could see nothing,
because of the glory of that light, those
with me took me by the hand, and I
entered Damascus.
12 And a certain Khanan-Yah, a
righteous man according to the Torah,
having been testified to by all the Jews
living there,
13 and he said to me: My brother
Shaul ! Open your eyes. And instantly
my eyes were opened; and I looked
upon him.
14 And he said, The Elohim of our
fathers appointed you to know His
will, and to see the Just One, and to
hear a voice out of His mouth;
15 for you shall be a witness for Him
to all men of what you have seen and
heard.
16 And now what do you intend?
Rising up, be baptized and wash away

---
[1] This would have been the Roman fort called Antonia.

your sins, calling on the name of
YAHWEH. *(Acts 2:38)*
17 And it happened to me, returning
to Jerusalem and praying in the
sanctuary: I saw a vision,
18 and I saw Him saying to me,
Hurry and go out quickly from
Jerusalem, because they will not
receive your testimony concerning Me.
19 And I said, Master, they
understand that I was imprisoning
and beating the ones believing on You
throughout the synagogues.
20 And when the blood of Your
witness Stephen was poured out, I
myself also was standing by and
consenting to his execution, and
holding the garments of those killing
him.
21 And He said to me, Go, for I will
send you to the nations afar off.
22 And when they had heard Paul as
far as this sentence, they raised their
voice, and cried out: Away with such a
man from the earth ! For he ought not
to live!
23 And they shouting, and tearing
the garments, and throwing dust into
the air,
24 the chiliarch ordered to bring him
into the fortress, saying for him to be
examined with scourges, that he may
know for what crime they cried out so
against him.
25 But as they stretched him with
the thongs, Paul said to the centurion
standing by, Is it lawful for you to
scourge a man, a Roman not found
guilty?
26 And hearing, coming near the
centurion reported to the chiliarch,
saying, Watch what you are about to
do, for this man is a Roman.
27 And coming up, the chiliarch said
to him, Tell me, are you a Roman?
And he said, Yes.
28 The chiliarch replied and said to
him: With much money I acquired
Roman citizenship. Paul said to him:
And I was born in it.
29 Then at once those being about to
examine him stood away from him.
And the chiliarch also feared, fully
knowing that he was a Roman, and
that he had bound him.
30 And on the next day, desiring to
know the certainty as to why he was
accused by the Jews, he freed him
from the bonds. And he commanded
the chief priests and all their
Sanhedrin to come. And having
brought Paul down, he set him among
them.

Chapter 23

1 And looking on the Sanhedrin, Paul
said, Men, brothers, I in all good
conscience have conducted myself
toward Elohim to this day.
2 But Ananias the high priest
ordered those standing by him to
strike his mouth.
3 And Paul said to him: Elohim is
hereafter to smite thee, you Whited
Wall! For, you sit judging me
agreeably to the Torah, while you
transgress the Torah, and you
command to strike me?
4 And those standing by said, Do you
revile the high priest of Elohim?
5 And Paul said, Brothers, I did not
know that he is high priest; for it has
been written, "You shall not speak evil
of a ruler of your people." *(Ex. 22:28)*
6 But knowing that the one part
consisted of Sadducees, and the other
of Pharisees, Paul cried out in the
Sanhedrin, Men, brothers, I am a
Pharisee, a son of Pharisees; I am
being judged concerning hope and
resurrection of the dead!
7 And he having spoken this, there
was a discord between the Pharisees
and the Sadducees; and the multitude
was divided.

8 For the Sadducees indeed say there
is no resurrection, nor angel, nor
spirit. But Pharisees confess both.
9 And there was a great cry. And the
scribes of the part of the Pharisees
rising up, they were contending,
saying, We find nothing evil in this
man. And, if a spirit spoke to him, or
an angel, let us not fight against that.
10 And discord having arisen,
fearing lest Paul should be torn by
them, the chiliarch commanded the
soldiers to go down to snatch him out
of their midst, and to bring him into
the fortress.
11 And coming to him in the
following night, Yahshua said, Be
cheered, Paul, for as you fully testified
the things concerning Me in
Jerusalem, so you must also testify at
Rome.
12 And it becoming day, some of the
Jews making a conspiracy cursed
themselves with oaths, saying neither
to eat nor to drink until they should
kill Paul.
13 And those making this plot were
more than forty;
14 who, having come near to the
chief priests and to the elders, said,
With an oath we have bound ourselves
to taste of nothing until we shall kill
Paul.
15 Now, then, you with the
Sanhedrin inform the chiliarch, so that
tomorrow he may bring him down to
you, as intending more accurately to
find out about him. And before his
drawing near, we are ready to kill him.
16 But the son of Paul's sister
hearing of the ambush, having come
near, and entering into the fortress,
reported to Paul.
17 And calling near one of the
centurions, Paul said, Bring this young
man to the chiliarch, for he has
something to report to him.
18 Then indeed taking him, he
brought him to the chiliarch and said,
Paul the prisoner having called me
near asked me to bring this young man
to you, having a thing to tell you.
19 And laying hold of his hand, and
drawing aside privately, the chiliarch
asked, What is it that you have to
report to me?
20 And he said, The Jews agreed to
ask you that tomorrow you bring down
Paul into the Sanhedrin, as intending
to learn more concerning him.
21 Therefore, you must not be
persuaded by them, for more than
forty men of them lie in wait for him
who put themselves under a curse
neither to eat nor to drink until they
kill him. And now they are ready,
awaiting the promise from you.
22 Then the chiliarch sent away the
young man, charging him, Tell no one
that you reported these things to me.
23 And having called near a certain
two of the centurions, he said, Get two
hundred soldiers ready, so that they
may go to Caesarea, and seventy
horsemen, and two hundred
spearmen, from the third hour of the
night;[1]
24 and animals to stand by, so that
setting Paul on, they may bring him to
Felix the governor.
25 For he was writing a letter, having
this form:
26 Claudius Lysias, to the most
excellent governor, Felix, greeting:
27 This man being seized by the
Jews, and being about to be killed by
them, coming on with the soldiers I

[1] Some claim that fort Antonia only housed 600 soldiers; this scripture proves that false as the Roman centurion would never send close to 80% of all his troops to guard a basically unknown prisoner. Antonia housed more like 10,000 soldiers and at times even more. Josephus states it was the size of a large city.

rescued him, learning that he was a Roman.
28 And being minded to know the charge for which they were accusing him, I brought him down to their Sanhedrin;
29 I found him to be accused concerning questions of their law, and having no charge worthy of death or of bonds.
30 And it being revealed to me that a plot against the man was about to be executed by the Jews, I at once sent him to you, also commanding the accusers to say the things against him before you. Farewell.
31 Then, indeed, taking up Paul according to the thing appointed to them, the soldiers brought him through the night to Antipatris.
32 And on the morrow, allowing the horsemen to go with him, they returned to the fortress.
33 Having entered into Caesarea, and giving the letter to the governor, they also presented Paul to him.
34 And having read it, the governor asked from what province he is. And having learned that he was from Cilicia,
35 he said, I will hear you fully when your accusers arrive. And he commanded him to be kept in the praetorium of Herod.

Chapter 24

1 And after five days Ananias the high priest came down with the elders, and a certain orator, Tertullus, who made a statement to the governor against Paul.
2 And Tertullus being called, he began to accuse, saying,
3 Obtaining much peace through you and excellent accomplishments having come to this nation due to your forethought, in everything and everywhere we accept with all thankfulness, most excellent Felix.
4 But that I not hinder you more, I beseech you to hear us briefly in your fairness.
5 For having found this man pestilent and moving insurrection among all the Jews throughout the world, and a ringleader of the Nazarene sect;
6 who also attempted to profane the sanctuary, whom we also seized and wished to judge according to our law;
7 but Lysias the chiliarch coming up with much force took him away out of our hands,
8 commanding his accusers to come to you, from whom you will be able yourself to know, having examined as to all these things of which we accuse him.
9 And the Jews also joined in, alleging these things to be so.
10 But the governor signaling to him to speak, Paul answered: Understanding you as being a judge to this nation many years, I cheerfully defend myself as to the things concerning myself.
11 You are able to know that not more than twelve days are to me since I went worshiping in Jerusalem;
12 and neither did they find me reasoning with anyone in the sanctuary, or making a gathering of a crowd, neither in the synagogues, nor throughout the city;
13 nor are they able to prove that concerning which they now accuse me.
14 But I confess this to you that according to the Way, which they say is a sect, I do serve the Elohim of my fathers, believing all the things written in the Torah and in the prophets.
15 And I have a hope in Elohim, which they also themselves expect, that there is to be a resurrection of the

dead, both of the righteous and the wicked.
16 And for this reason, I also labor to have always a pure conscience before Elohim, and before men.
17 And after many years I arrived doing alms and offerings to my nation,
18 among which they found me purified in the sanctuary, not with a crowd, nor with tumult, but by some Jews from Asia,
19 who ought, with me, to stand before you, and make accusation of their own behalf.
20 Or let these here present say, whether they found any offense in me, when I stood before their Sanhedrin,
21 than concerning this one voice which I cried out standing among them, that I am being judged today before you concerning the resurrection of the dead.
22 And hearing these things, Felix put them off, knowing more accurately about the Way, saying, When Lysias the chiliarch comes down, I will examine the things as to you.
23 And having ordered the centurion to keep Paul in comfort, and not to forbid anyone of his own to minister to him.
24 And after some days, Felix having arrived with his wife Drusilla, who was a Jewess, he sent for Paul. And he heard him concerning the faith in Messiah.
25 And Paul having reasoned concerning righteousness and self control, and the Judgment that is about to be, becoming afraid, Felix answered, For the present, go; but taking time later, I will call for you;
26 and with it all also hoping that silver would be given to him by Paul, that he might free him. Because of this he also more frequently sent for him and conversed with him.
27 But two years being completed, another governor, whose name was Porcius Festus, came into his place and wishing to show a favor to the Jews, Felix left Paul in prison.

Chapter 25

1 Then entering the province, after three days Festus went up to Jerusalem from Caesarea.
2 And the high priest and the chief of the Jews made a statement before him against Paul, and they begged him,
3 asking a favor against him, so as he might send for him to Jerusalem, making a plot to kill him on the way.
4 Then indeed Festus answered that Paul should be kept at Caesarea, he himself even being about to go shortly.
5 Therefore, let those among you who are able, go down with us, and make presentment of every offence there is in the man.
6 And remaining among them more than ten days, going down to Caesarea, on the next day sitting on the tribunal, he ordered Paul to be brought.
7 And he having arrived, the Jews coming down from Jerusalem stood around, also bringing many weighty charges against Paul, which they were not able to prove.
8 Defending himself, Paul said, Neither against the Torah of the Jews, nor against the sanctuary, nor against Caesar have I sinned in anything[1].
9 But desiring to show a favor to the Jews, answering Paul, Festus said, Do you desire to go up to Jerusalem to be judged before me there about these things?
10 But Paul said, I am standing

1 The Apostle Paul was a former Rabbi and was Torah observant, kept the 7th day Sabbath and obeyed the rule of law. The false account that he was teaching against Torah observance is baseless and not in scripture.

before the tribunal of Caesar where I ought to be judged. I have wronged the Jews in nothing, as also you very well know.
11 For if I indeed do wrong and have done anything worthy of death, I do not refuse to die. But if there is nothing of which they accuse me, no one can give me up to them. I appeal to Caesar.
12 Then Festus conferred with his counselors, and said: You have appealed to Caesar; you shall go before Caesar.
13 And some days having passed, Agrippa the king and Bernice arrived at Caesarea, greeting Festus.
14 And when they stayed there more days, Festus set out to the king the things as to Paul, saying, A certain man has been left a prisoner by Felix,
15 about whom, on my being in Jerusalem, the chief priests and the elders of the Jews made a statement, and desired that I would pass judgment upon him in their favor.
16 to whom I answered, It is not a custom with Romans to give up any man to destruction before the one being accused may have the accusers face to face, and may receive place of defense concerning the charge.
17 Then they coming together here, making no delay, sitting on the tribunal on the next day, I commanded the man to be brought;
18 about whom, standing up, the accusers brought no criminal charge against him, as I had suspected,
19 but they had certain questions about their own demon worship, and about a certain Yahshua dying, whom Paul claimed to live.
20 And because I was not well established in regard to their controversy, I said to Paul: Would you be willing to go to Jerusalem, and there be judged concerning these matters?
21 But Paul having appealed for himself to be kept to the examination of Augustus, I commanded him to be held until I might send him to Caesar.
22 And Agrippa said to Festus, I would like to hear the man myself. And he said, Tomorrow you shall hear him.
23 Then on the morrow, Agrippa and Bernice coming with much pomp and entering into the court house, with both the chiliarchs and the chief men, being of the city, also Festus commanding, Paul was led out.
24 And Festus said, King Agrippa, and all those men present with us, you see this one about whom all the multitude of the Jews pleaded with me, both here and in Jerusalem, crying out that he ought to live no longer.
25 But I having perceived nothing he had done worthy of death, also this one himself having appealed to Augustus, I decided to send him;
26 about whom I have nothing certain to write to my Master. Because of this I brought him before you, and most of all before you, king Agrippa, so as the examination taking place, I may have somewhat to write.
27 For it seems unreasonable to me to send a prisoner, and not also to signify the charges against him.

Chapter 26

1 And Agrippa said to Paul, It is allowed for you yourself to speak. Then Paul made a defense, stretching out the hand:
2 Concerning all of which I am accused by Jews, king Agrippa, I count myself happy being about to make defense before you today,
3 you being most of all an expert,

knowing of all the customs and questions also among the Jews. Because of this, I beg you patiently to hear me.

4 Truly, then, all the Jews know my way of life from youth, which from the beginning had been in my nation in Jerusalem,

5 who before knew me from the first, if they will testify, that according to the most exact sect of our religion, I lived a Pharisee.

6 And now, for the hope of the promise which was made by Elohim to our fathers, I stand and am judged.

7 To this hope, our twelve tribes hope to come, with earnest prayers by day and by night: and for this same hope, king Agrippa, I am accused by the Jews.

8 How can you judge? Is it wrong to believe that Elohim will raise the dead?

9 For at the very beginning, I was determined that I ought to do many things contrary to the name of Yahshua the Nazarene,

10 which I also did in Jerusalem, I also shut up many of the saints in prisons, receiving authority from the chief priests; and they being put to death, I took part with those that condemned them.

11 And in every synagogue I tortured them, while I pressed them to become revilers of the name of Yahshua. And in the great wrath, with which I was filled against them, I also went to other cities to persecute them.

12 In which also traveling to Damascus with authority and decision power from the chief priests,

13 at midday along the highway, O king, I and those with me saw a light from heaven shining around me above the brightness of the sun.

14 And all of us falling to the ground, I heard a voice speaking to me, and saying in the Hebrew dialect, Shaul, Shaul why do you persecute Me? It is hard for you to kick against the stakes.

15 And I said, Who are you, Sir? And He said, I am Yahshua whom you persecute;

16 but rise up and stand on your feet, for it is for this reason I appeared to you, to appoint you a servant and a witness both of what you saw, and in what I shall appear to you,

17 having delivered you from the people and the nations, to whom I now send you,

18 to open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the authority of Satan to YAHWEH, in order that they may receive remission of sins, and an inheritance among those being sanctified by faith in Me.

19 Upon this, king Agrippa, I was not disobedient to the heavenly vision,

20 but to those first in Damascus, and Jerusalem, and to all the country of Judea, and to the nations, I proclaimed the command to repent and to turn to Elohim, doing works worthy of repentance.

21 Because of these things, having seized me in the sanctuary, the Jews tried to kill me.

22 Then obtaining help from Elohim, I stand until this day, witnessing both to small and to great, saying nothing else than what the prophets and Moses also said was going to happen:

23 that Messiah would suffer, and would become the first fruit of the resurrection from the dead; and that he would proclaim light to the people and to the nations[1].

24 And he defending himself with these things, Festus said with a loud voice, Paul, You rave! Your too much study has turned you into madness.

---

[1] 1 Cor 15:23, Is 42:6

25 But he said, Not to madness, most excellent Festus, but I speak words of truth and sanity.
26 And king Agrippa is also well acquainted with these things; and I therefore speak confidently before him, because I suppose not one of these things hath escaped his knowledge; for they were not done in secret.
27 Do you believe the prophets, king Agrippa? I know that you believe.
28 And Agrippa said to Paul, in such a short while do you try to persuade me to become a Christian?
29 And Paul said, I would pray to Elohim, both in a little and in much, not only you, but also all these hearing me today to become as I also am, except for these chains.
30 And he saying these things, the king and the governor and Bernice rose up, and those who sat with them.
31 And having gone aside, they spoke to one another saying, This man does nothing worthy of death or of bonds.
32 And Agrippa said to Festus, This man was able to have been set free, if he had not appealed to Caesar.

Chapter 27

1 And Festus commanded that he should be sent to Italy unto Caesar. They delivered up both Paul and certain other prisoners to a centurion named Julius, of a cohort of Augustus.
2 And when we were to depart, we embarked in a ship which was from the city of Adramyttium, and was going to Asia Minor. And there embarked with us in the ship, Aristarchus, a Macedonian of the city of Thessalonica.
3 And on the next day we landed at Sidon. And treating Paul kindly, Julius allowed him to go to his friends to receive care.
4 And setting sail from there, we sailed close to Cyprus, because of the winds being contrary.
5 And sailing over the sea against Cilicia and Pamphylia, we came to Myra of Lycia.
6 And the centurion finding there an Alexandrian ship sailing to Italy, he put us into it.
7 And as it was hard navigating, we had scarcely arrived, after many days, over against the isle of Cnidos. And, because the wind would not allow us to pursue a straight course, we sailed around by Crete, and came opposite the city of Salmone.
8 And coasting along it with difficulty, we came to a certain place named Fair Havens, near to which was a city, Lasea.
9 And we were there a long time, until after the day of Yom Kippur[1]. And it was hazardous then for any one to go by sea; and Paul warned them,
10 saying, Men, I see that the voyage is about to be with injury and much loss, not only of the cargo and of the ship, but also of our souls.
11 But the centurion was rather persuaded by the helmsman and the ship master, than by the things spoken by Paul.
12 And the port not being fit for wintering, most of them gave counsel to set sail from there, if somehow they may be able to pass the winter, arriving at Phoenix, a port of Crete looking toward the southwest and toward the northwest.
13 And a south wind blowing gently, thinking to have gained the purpose, raising anchor they sailed along close by Crete.

---

[1] Another holy day used as a time marker, which again proves the early believers were keeping this fast day.

14 And not much after, a stormy
wind being called Euroclydon beat
down on it.
15 And the ship was whirled about
by the wind, and could not keep head
to it; and we let it drive.
16 But running under an islet being
called Clauda, we were hardly able to
get mastery of the boat;
17 And when we launched it, we
began under girding and repairing the
ship. And because we were afraid of
grounding, we lowered the sail, so we
drifted.
18 And as the storm raged violently
upon us, the next day we threw goods
into the sea.
19 And on the third day they threw
out the ship's tackle with their hands.
20 And as the storm held on for
many days, and as no sun was visible,
nor moon, nor stars, all hope of our
surviving was given up.
21 Then no man among them had
eaten anything, then standing up in
their midst, Paul said, Truly, O men, if
you had listened to me we would not
have set sail from Crete, and we would
have been spared this injury and loss.
22 Now let me council you not to be
depressed, for not a single life among
you will be lost, but only the ship.
23 For tonight stood by me a cherub
of the Elohim, of whom I belong, and
whom I serve,
24 saying, Do not fear, Paul, You
must stand before Caesar. And,
behold, Elohim has granted to you all
those sailing with you.
25 Therefore, be cheered, men, for I
believe YAHWEH, that it will be so
according to the way it was spoken to
me.
26 However we will be cast upon a
certain island.
27 And when the fourteenth night
came, we being carried about in the
Adriatic Sea, toward the middle of the
night the sailors supposed us to come
near some country.
28 And sounding, they found twenty
fathoms; and moving a little and
sounding again, they found fifteen
fathoms.
29 And as we feared lest we should
be caught in places where were rocks,
they cast four anchors from the stern
of the ship, and prayed for the
morning.
30 And the sailors sought to flee out
of the ship. And from it they lowered
down the boat into the sea, under
pretence that they were going in it to
make fast the ship to the land.
31 Paul said to the centurion, and to
the soldiers, Unless these remain in
the ship, you cannot be saved.
32 Then the soldiers cut away the
ropes of the boat, and let it fall.
33 And while the day was drawing
on, Paul advised them all to take food,
saying, Today is the fourteenth day[1]
you continued waiting without food,
not having taken anything.
34 Because of this I beg you to take
of food, for this is to your deliverance,
for not a hair of your head shall perish.
35 And saying these things, and
taking bread, he gave thanks to
YAHWEH before all; and breaking, he
began to eat.
36 And all having become cheered,
they also took food.
37 And we were, all the souls in the
ship, two hundred seventy six.
38 And being filled with food, they
lightened the ship, throwing the wheat
out into the sea.
39 And when it was day, the sailors
knew not what land it was: But they
saw on the margin of the land an inlet
of the sea; whither, if possible they
intended to drive the ship.

---

1 Verse 27 spoke of the 14th night before the 14th day, showing that a biblical day begins at sunset.

40 And they cut away the anchors from the ship, and left them in the sea. And they loosened the bands of the rudder, and hoisted a small sail to the breeze, and made way towards the land.

41 And coming on a place between two seas, they drove the vessel. And indeed the forward part having stuck firmly, it remained. But the stern was broken by the violence of the waves.

42 And the mind of the soldiers was that they should kill the prisoners, lest any swimming out should escape.

43 But being minded to save Paul, the centurion kept them back from their purpose and commanded those able to swim, first casting themselves overboard, to go out on the land.

44 And the rest went, some indeed on boards, and others on some of the things from the ship. And so it happened that all were saved on the land.

Chapter 28

1 And being saved, then they knew that the island is called Melita.[1]

2 And the barbarians[2] who inhabited it were showing us much kindness, for having kindled a fire because of the rain coming on, and because of the cold, they welcomed us all.

3 And Paul gathering a bunch of sticks, and putting them on the fire, a snake coming out from the heat fastened on his hand.

4 And when the barbarians saw it hanging from his hand, they said to one another, By all means this man is a murderer, whom being saved out of the sea, justice did not permit to live.

5 Then he indeed shaking the viper off into the fire, he suffered no harm.

6 But they expected him to be about to become inflamed, or suddenly to fall down dead. But over much time, they expecting and seeing nothing amiss happening to him, changing their minds, they said him to be a god.

7 And there were lands in that quarter, belonging to a man named Publius, who was the chief man of the island: And he cheerfully received us at his house three days.

8 And it happened the father of Publius was lying down, suffering from fevers and dysentery; to whom Paul, entering and praying, laying on his hands, cured him.

9 Then, this taking place, the ones in the island having infirmities also came up, and they were healed.

10 They also honored us with many honors. And on our setting sail, they lay on us such things as were needed.

11 And after three months we sailed in a ship that had wintered in the island, an Alexandrian ship which bore the sign, Castor and Pollus[3].

12 And landing at Syracuse, we remained three days.

13 And from there we made a circuit, and arrived at the city Rhegium. And, after one day, the south wind blew (favorably) for us, and in two days we came to Puteoli, a city of Italy.

14 And there we found brethren; And they invited us, and we remained with them seven days: And then we proceeded towards Rome.

15 And the brethren there, hearing (of our approach), came out to meet us as far as the village called Appii Forum, and as far as the Three Taverns. And when Paul saw them, he gave thanks to Elohim, and was encouraged.

---

1 Melita is Malta

2 All new Greek speaking people were called Barbarians. They were very civilized Phoenicians but also very Romanized.

3 These were the two sons of Zeus which the pagan zodiac Gemini displays.

16 And when we went into Rome, the centurion delivered the prisoners to the camp commander. But Paul was allowed to remain by himself, with the soldier guarding him.

17 And after three days, Paul sent and called for the principal Jews. And when they were assembled, he said to them: Men, my brethren, although I did nothing against the people or the law of my fathers, I was at Jerusalem delivered over in bonds to the Romans:

18 Who examining me were of a mind to let me go, because no cause of death was in me.

19 But the Jews speaking against it, I was compelled to appeal to Caesar, not as having anything to accuse the people of my nation.

20 On account of this, then, I called for you, to see and to speak to you. For I have this chain around me for the sake of the hope of Israel.

21 And they said to him, We neither received letters concerning you from the Jews, nor having arrived has any one of the brothers reported or spoken anything evil concerning you.

22 But we are desirous to hear from thee what thou think; as for this doctrine, we know, is not received by any one.

23 And having appointed him a day, more came to him in the lodging, to whom he expounded, earnestly testifying the kingdom of YAHWEH and persuading them the things concerning Yahshua, both from the Torah of Moses and the Prophets[1], from morning until evening.

24 And some indeed were persuaded by that being said, others disbelieved.

25 And they went out from him, disagreeing among themselves. And Paul addressed to them this speech: Well did the Holy Spirit speak through the prophet Isaiah to our fathers,

26 saying, "Go to this people and say, You will surely hear, and not at all understand; and you will surely see, and not at all perceive;

27 for the heart of this people was fattened, and they have heard with the ears heavily; and they closed their eyes lest at any time they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and be converted, and I should heal them." *(Isa. 6:9, 10)*

28 Then let it be known to you that the salvation of Elohim was sent to the nations, and they will hear. *(Psa. 67:2)*

29 *And he saying these things, the Jews went away, having much discussion among themselves.*[2]

30 And Paul remained two whole years in his own rented house that he paid for, and he welcomed all those coming in to him,

31 proclaiming the kingdom of Elohim[3], and teaching the things concerning the Master Yahshua Messiah with all freedom and without hindrance.

1 There was no New Testament until the second century and Paul is teaching from the Torah and the prophets.

2 This verse is not in the Aramaic Peshitta or the earliest Greek manuscripts.

3 The message that Yahshua proclaimed and also His disciples after Him was the message of the restoration of the Kingdom of YHWH to this earth, beginning at Jerusalem and going throughout all the world when Yahshua returns.

Book of Jacob 45-50 AD

Chapter 1

1 Jacob, a slave of Elohim and of the Master Yahshua Messiah, to the twelve tribes in the Diaspora among the nations[1], greeting:

2 My brothers count it all joy when you fall into various trials,

3 knowing that the proving of your faith works patience.

4 But let patience have its perfective work, that you may be perfect and complete, lacking nothing.[2]

5 But if any of you lacks wisdom, let him ask from Elohim, who gives to all freely and with grace, and it will be given to him.

6 But let him ask in faith, doubting nothing. For the one who doubts is like a wave of the sea, being driven by wind and being tossed;

7 for do not let that man suppose that he will receive anything from the Almighty;

8 he is a double-souled man, not dependable in all his ways. (Ps 40:4)

9 But let the humble brother rejoice because he is exalted;

10 and the rich one rejoice in his humiliation, because he will pass away like the flower of the grass.

11 For the sun rose with the hot wind and dried up the grass, and its flower fell out, and the beauty of its appearance perished; so also the rich one will fade away in his ways. *(Isa. 40:6, 7)*

12 Blessed is the man who endures temptation, because having been approved he will receive the crown of life which YAHWEH promised to the ones loving Him.

13 Let no one being tempted say, I am tempted from Elohim. For Elohim is not tempted by evil, and He tempts no one.

14 But each one is tempted by his own lusts, he covets and is seduced by them.

15 Then having conceived lust brings forth sin. And sin being fully formed brings forth death[3].*(Ezk 18:4 Ro 6:23)*

16 Do not go astray, my beloved brothers,

17 every act of good giving and every perfect gift is from above, coming down from the Father of Heavenly lights, with whom is no change or shifting shadow.

18 It is He who begot us from His own will, by the Word of truth, that we should be the first-fruits of His creatures.

19 Therefore, my beloved brothers, let every man be swift to hear, slow to speak, slow to wrath.

20 For the wrath of man does not work out the righteousness of Elohim.

21 Wherefore, remove far from you all impurity, and the abundance of wickedness; and, with meekness, receive the word that is implanted in our nature, being able to save your souls.

22 But become doers of the Word, and not hearers only, deceiving yourselves[4].

23 Because if anyone is a hearer of the Word, and not a doer, this one is like a man studying his natural face in a mirror;

24 for he studied himself, and has gone away, and immediately he forgot how he looked.

25 But the one looking into the

---

1 This epistle should be the letter from Jacob the half brother of Yahshua. Later the king of England, James, changed the book to his name when the bible was printed in English. Also this letter is written to the House of Israel in Diaspora showing the tribes were not lost.

2 1 Pe 1:6-7, 1 Pe 4:12-13

3 Sin brings death not eternal life in hell.

4 Obedience is the evidence of one's faith. (Lev 22:31-32)

perfect Law of liberty, and continuing in it, this one not having become a hearer of the word which can be forgotten, but a doer of the work, this one will be blessed in his labor[1].

26 And if any one thinks that he ministers to Elohim, and does not restrain his tongue, he deceives his own heart, and his service is in vain.

27 Pure and holy service before YAHWEH the Father is this: to visit orphans and widows in their afflictions, and to keep oneself unspotted from the world.

Chapter 2

1 My brothers, do not with partiality uphold the glorious faith of our Master Yahshua Messiah.

2 For if a gold-fingered man in splendid clothing comes into your synagogue, and a poor one in shabby clothing also comes in;

3 and you look on the one wearing the splendid clothing, and say to him, You sit here comfortably; and to the poor one you say, You stand there, or, Sit here under my footstool;

4 did you not show partiality among yourselves and become judges with evil thoughts?

5 Hear, my beloved brothers, did not Elohim choose the poor of this world to be rich in faith, and heirs of the kingdom which He promised to the ones loving Him?

6 But you dishonored the poor one. Do not the rich ones oppress you, and they drag you before the judgment seat?

7 Do they not blaspheme the good Name called on you[2]?

8 If you truly fulfill the royal Law according to the Scripture, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself," you do well. *(Lev. 19:18)*

9 But if ye have respect of persons, ye commit sin; and ye are convicted by the Torah, as transgressors of the Torah.

10 For whoever shall keep all the Torah, even though he fail in but one statute, he has become guilty as to all of it. *(Deut. 27:26)*

11 For He who said, You shall not commit adultery, also said, You shall not murder. But if you do not commit adultery, but commit murder, you have become a transgressor of the torah. *(Ex. 20:14, 13; Deut. 5:18, 17; Deut 27:26)*

12 So speak and act as men being about to be judged through a Law of liberty.

13 For judgment will be without mercy to the one not showing mercy. And by mercy you will be raised above judgment.

14 My brothers, what is the gain if anyone says he has faith, but he does not have deeds[3]? Is the faith able to restore life to him?

15 But if a brother or a sister is naked and may be lacking in daily food,

16 and any one of you say to them, Go in peace, be warmed and filled, but does not give them the things the body needs, what gain is it?

17 So also faith, if it does not have deeds, is dead being by itself.

18 But someone will say, You have faith, and I have deeds. Show me your faith apart from your deeds, and I will show you my faith by my deeds.

19 You believe that Elohim is One

---

[1] From Genesis to Revelation there are only blessings for obedience and cursing for disobedience.

[2] The name of Yahweh is on true believers through His name on the congregation.

[3] Deeds are the evidence of your faith as YHWH's spirit is not barren and if there is no deed to back up your faith, then you don't have any faith.

(echad). You do well; even the demons believe and shudder.

20 But are you willing to know, O vain man, that faith apart from deeds is dead?

21 Was not our father Abraham justified by his deeds, offering up his son Isaac on the altar? *(Gen. 22:9)*

22 You see how faith helped with his deeds; and how by his deeds the faith was made perfect.

23 And the Scripture was fulfilled, saying, "And Abraham believed YAHWEH, and it was counted for righteousness to him;" and he was called, Friend of Elohim. *(Gen. 15:6; Isa. 41:8)*

24 You see then, how a man by his deeds becomes righteous, and not by faith only.

25 But in the same way Rahab the inn-keeper was also justified by her deeds, having received the messengers, and sending them out by another way.

26 For as the body is dead apart from the spirit, so also faith without deeds is dead.

Chapter 3

1 My brothers do not be many teachers, but know that we will receive a greater judgment.

2 For we all stumble in many ways. If any one does not stumble in word, this one is a mature man, also able to subdue the whole body[1].

3 Behold, we put bits in the mouths of the horses, for them to obey us; and we turn about their whole body.

4 Behold, the ships also, being so great, and being driven by violent winds, they are directed by a very small rudder, wherever the one steering wishes.

5 So also the tongue is a little member, and boasts great things. Behold, how a little fire sets ablaze large forests!

6 Now the tongue is a fire, and the world of sin is like a forest. And this very tongue, while it is among our members, can defile our entire body; and rolls down like a wheel and set on fire the course of our entire life; and in the end it is consumed by fire.

7 For every species of beasts, both indeed of birds, of creeping things, and of sea animals, is tamed, and has been tamed by the will of man;

8 but no one of men is able to tame the tongue; it is an unrestrainable evil, full of death-dealing poison.

9 By this we bless YAHWEH, even the Father; and by this we curse men having come into being according to the image of Elohim.[2]

10 Out of the same mouth comes forth blessing and cursing. My brothers, it is not fitting for these things to be so.

11 Does the fountain out of the same hole send forth the sweet and the bitter?

12 My brothers, a fig tree is not able to produce olives, or a vine, figs. So neither can a fountain produce both salt and sweet water.

13 Who is wise and knowing among you? Let him prove his works by his good behavior, in meekness of wisdom.

14 But if you have bitter jealousy and contention in your heart, do not boast and lie against the truth.

15 This is not the wisdom coming down from above, but is earthly, sensual, and devilish[3].

16 For where jealousy and

---

[1] One of the most portent descriptions of the wickedness of the tongue. (Ps 39:1, Ps 52:1-4, Pr 10:19, Math 12:34-37)

[2] Gen. 1:26, Jer 9:4-9

contention are, there is confusion and every foul deed.
17 But the wisdom from above is firstly truly perfect, then peaceable, gentle, obedient, full of mercy and of good fruits, not partial and without hypocrisy.
18 And the fruit of righteousness is sown in peace for the ones making peace[1].

Chapter 4

1 From where come conflicts and fightings from among you? Is it not from your lusts warring in your members?
2 You covet and yet you do not have. You murder, and are jealous, and are not able to possess. You fight and you strive, and you have nothing, because you do not ask.
3 You ask, and do not receive, because you do not ask sincerely, you ask in order that you may satisfy your lusts.
4 Adulterers and adulteresses! Do you not know that the friendship of the world is enmity with Elohim? Whoever, then, purposes to be a friend of the world is an enemy to Elohim[2].
5 Or do you think that vainly the Scripture says, The pride dwelling in us lusts with envy?
6 But He gives greater grace. Because of this it says, "YAHWEH sets Himself against proud ones, but He gives grace to humble ones." *(Prov. 3:34)*
7 Then submit to YAHWEH[3]. Resist the Devil, and he will flee from you.
8 Draw near to Elohim, and He will draw near to you. Cleanse your hands, sinners! And purify your hearts, double minded ones!
9 Be distressed, and mourn, and weep. Let your laughter be turned to mourning, and your joy into shame.
10 Be humbled before YAHWEH, and He will exalt you.
11 Do not speak against one another, brothers. He that speaks against a brother, and is judging a brother, he speaks against the Torah, and judges the Torah. But if you judge the Torah, you are not a doer of the Torah but a judge.
12 For there is One Lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy. Who are you who judges your neighbor?
13 Come now, those saying, Today or tomorrow we will go into this city, and we will spend one year there, and we will trade and prosper,
14 who do not know what will happen tomorrow. For what is your life? For it is a vapor, which appears for a little while, and then it disappears.
15 Instead, you should say, If YAHWEH wills, even we shall live, and we will do this or that;
16 but now you boast in your presumptions. All such pride is evil.
17 Therefore, to anyone knowing to do good, and not doing it, it is sin to him.

Chapter 5

1 Come now, rich ones, weep, howl over your miseries that shall come upon you.
2 Your riches have rotted, and your garments have become moth-eaten.
3 Your gold and your silver have

---

3 The spirit of YHWH is one of peace and cooperation, yet the spirit in man is full of envy, jealously and contention, from Satan.

1 Peace doesn't just happen it has to be made. As Ambassadors for Yahshua (2Cor 5:20) peacemaking needs to be upon our highest priorities.

2 1Joh 2:15-17

3 Full 100% surrender to YHWH is a prerequisite for salvation.

rusted; and the rust of them will be a
testimony against you; and it will eat
your flesh. The treasures that you have
heaped together shall be as fire to you
for the latter days.
4 Behold, the wages of the workmen
who have reaped your fields cry out,
being kept back by you. And the cries
of the ones who have reaped have
entered "Into the ears of YAHWEH of
Tzavoath *(Hosts)*." *(Isa. 5:9)*
5 You lived luxuriously on the earth,
and lived for self-pleasure; you
nourished your bodies for the day of
slaughter;
6 you have condemned and
murdered the righteous, and yet he
does not resist you.
7 Therefore, brothers, be patient
until the coming of YAHWEH.
Behold, the farmer waits for the
precious fruit of the earth, being
patient over it until it may receive the
early and the latter rain.
8 You also be patient. Set your hearts
firmly, because the coming of our
Master has drawn near.
9 Do not murmur against one
another, brothers, that you not be
condemned. Behold, the Judge stands
before the door.
10 My brothers, take the prophets
who spoke in the name of YAHWEH[1]
as an example of your suffering, and of
your patience.
11 Behold, we call those blessed who
endure. You have heard of the
patience of Job, and you saw what
YAHWEH did for him at the end, "For
YAHWEH is full of tender mercy and
compassion." *(Psa. 103:8)*
12 But above all these things, my
brothers, do not swear, neither by the
heaven, nor by the earth, nor any other
oath. But let your yes be yes, and the
no, no, that you may not fall under
judgment. (Math 5:33-37)
13 Does anyone suffer ill among you?
Let him pray. Is anyone cheerful? Let
him praise in song.
14 Is any among you sick? Let him
call the elders of the Congregation,
and let them pray over him, anointing
him with oil in the name of our
Master[2].
15 And the prayer of faith will heal
those being sick, and our Master will
raise him up. And if he may have
committed sins, it will be forgiven
him.
16 Confess your faults one to one
another, and pray for one another,
that you may be healed. The effectual
fervent prayer of a righteous man is
powerful[3]. (Ps 119:172)
17 Even Elijah was a weak man like
ourselves, and he prayed earnestly for
it not to rain; and it did not rain on the
earth three years and six months.
18 And he prayed again, and the
heaven gave rain, and the earth caused
its fruit to sprout.
19 Brethren, if anyone among you
goes astray from the truth, and anyone
turns him back,
20 know that the one turning a
sinner from the error of his way will
restore his soul from death, and will
hide a multitude of sins.

---

1 Every true prophet in the bible spoke only in the true name of the Creator Yahweh. Anyone who claims to being coming in the name of Elohim and uses false pagan titles for Yahweh cannot be truly sent by Him (Is 8:20).

2 Yahweh has believers go to the elders for anointing of the sick to show His judicial order. Only an ordained elder should anoint with oil as it is a sacred ceremony for ordination, and for healing the sick.

3 True believers' must pray without ceasing and this shows how important and powerful prayer is in the believers life.

Book of 1 Peter 63 AD

Chapter 1

1 Peter, an apostle of Yahshua Messiah, to the elect sojourners of the Diaspora of Pontus, of Galatia, of Cappadocia, of Asia, and of Bithynia[1],
2 according to the foreknowledge of YAHWEH the Father, in sanctification of the Spirit to obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Yahshua Messiah: Grace and peace be multiplied to you.
3 Blessed be the Elohim and Father of our Master Yahshua Messiah, He according to His great mercy having regenerated us to a living hope through the resurrection of Yahshua Messiah from the dead,
4 to an inheritance incorruptible and undefiled and unfading, having been kept in Heaven for you[2].
5 While you were kept by the power of Elohim, being guarded through faith to a salvation ready to be revealed in the last time;
6 wherein you will rejoice forever, not withstanding, at the present time you are pressed a little, by the various trials that have come upon you;
7 so that the proving of your faith, much more precious than perishing gold, but having been proved through fire, may be made manifest to praise and honor and glory at the revelation of Yahshua Messiah; *(1 Pe 4:12-13)*
8 whom having not seen, yet you love; and in whose faith you rejoice with exceeding joy that cannot be described.
9 And you will receive the reward of your faith, even the salvation of your souls.
10 About which salvation the prophets sought out and searched out, prophesying concerning the grace for you.
11 They searched to find out at what time it would be revealed, and the spirit of Messiah which dwelt in them, testifying beforehand of the sufferings of Messiah, and the glory that would follow.
12 And everything they were searching for was revealed to them because they did not seek for themselves, but they prophesied the things which concern us; which now has been revealed to you by those having preached the good news to you in the Holy Spirit sent from Heaven; which things the cherubs also desire to look into.
13 Because of this, having girded up the loins of your mind, and being wide awake, perfecting hope on the grace being brought to you at the revelation of Yahshua Messiah,
14 as children of obedience, not fashioning yourselves to your former lusts in your ignorance,
15 but according to the Holy One who has called you, you also become holy in all conduct;
16 Because it has been written, "Be holy, because I am holy." *(Lev. 19:2)*
17 And if you call on the Father, the One judging according to the work of each one without respect of faces, conduct the time of your sojourning in fear,

---

1 Historically these are all the areas that the Israelites went into in their Diaspora. Gal 2:8 shows that Peter was sent to the Israelites and Paul to the gentiles. This confirms Yahshua's command to the Apostles in Math 10:6. (Acts 2:8-10)

2 The believer's reward is being kept in heaven but the believer is never promised heaven as their reward. Gal 3:29 states that the believer has the same reward as Abraham, which is the physical land of Israel (Gen 15:18, 17:7-8) Joh 14:1-3 shows that Yahshua is coming back to earth from heaven and His reward will be with Him to give to each true disciple (Is 62:11). Please see lesson 6 of the bible study course on line www.coyhwh.com.

18 knowing that not with corruptible things, like silver or gold, were you redeemed from your worthless way of life handed down from your fathers,

19 but with the precious blood of Messiah, as a lamb without blemish and without spot,

20 indeed having been preordained for this very purpose before the foundation of the world, but revealed in the last times because of you,

21 the ones believing in Elohim through Him, He raising Him from the dead[1], and giving glory to Him so that your faith and hope may be in YAHWEH.

22 Having purified your souls in the obedience of the truth through the Spirit to sincere brotherly love, love one another fervently out of a pure heart,

23 being regenerated, not by corruptible seed, but incorruptible, through the living Word of YAHWEH, which abides forever.

24 Because "All flesh is as grass, and all the glory of men as the flower of grass; the grass was dried, and its flower fell out, *(Is 40:5-8)*

25 but the Word of YAHWEH remains forever." And this is the very Word that was announced to you.

Chapter 2

1 Wherefore lay aside all malice, and all guile, and hypocrisies, and envies, and all evil accusations,

2 as newborn babes desire the word as pure spiritual milk, that you may grow to salvation by it;

3 if you "tasted and found out that our Master is good;" *(Psa. 34:8)*

4 to whom you have come, because He is a living stone, rejected indeed by men, but chosen of YAHWEH and precious.

5 You also as living stones are being built into a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer spiritual sacrifices acceptable to YAHWEH through Yahshua Messiah.

6 "As it is said in the Scripture: Behold, I lay in Zion an elect, precious Stone, a chief Corner-stone; and the one believing in Him shall not be ashamed!" *(Isa. 28:16)*

7 Then, it is to you who believe, that this honor is given. But to disobeying ones, He is the "Stone which those building rejected; this One became the Head of the Corner." *(Psa. 118:22)*

8 He is a stone of stumbling and a rock of offence. And they stumble at it, because they believe not the word: for which they were appointed. *(Isa. 8:14)*

9 But you are an elect race, a royal priesthood; a holy people, and a people for possession[2]; that you should proclaim the praises of him who called you out of darkness to His precious light:

10 you who then were "Not a people, but now are the people of YAHWEH; who had not obtained mercy, but who now have mercies poured out upon you[3]."

11 Beloved, I exhort you as pilgrims

---

[1] Yahweh the Father raised Yahshua Messiah, the Son showing they cannot be the same being. (Math 27:46)

[2] The intention of YHWH when He took Israel out of Egypt was to make a nation of priests (Ex. 19:5, 6). This did not happen due to the continual rebellion of the people, so in the New Covenant clearly the intention, as it originally was, is to make a kingdom of priests according to the order of Melchizedek (Heb 7:11, Heb 3:1)

[3] As shown in 1Pe 1:1, this letter is written to Israelites living abroad and Peter uses a direct quote from Hosea 1:6-10, to show through Messiah these dispersed Israelites are able to be rejoined to the covenant of Yahweh, even in their Diaspora.(Hos. 1:6, 9-10; 2:1, 23, Eph 2: 11-19)

and strangers to abstain from fleshly lusts which war against the soul;

12 and let your conduct be good before all men; so that they who speak evil words against you, may see your good actions, and may glorify Elohim in the day of trial.

13 Then Submit yourselves to all human authority for the sake of the Almighty; whether to a king, because of their supreme power;

14 and to judges, because by them officers are sent for the punishment of offenders, and for the praise of them that do well.

15 Because so is the will of Elohim, so that by doing good you may silence the ignorance of foolish men who know not Elohim;

16 act as free men, and not like men who use their liberty as a cloak for their wickedness, but as the servants of Elohim.

17 Honor all, love the brotherhood, fear YAHWEH, and honor the King.

18 Servants, be obedient to your masters in all fear, not only to those good and forbearing, but also to the perverse ones.

19 For this is favor before Elohim, if because of conscience, anyone bears grief, suffering unjustly.

20 For what glory is it if you patiently endure suffering because of your sinning? But if you are suffering while doing good, and patiently endure, then your glory is greater from Elohim.

21 For you were called to this, for even Messiah suffered on our behalf, leaving behind an example for us, that you should follow His steps;

22 "Who did not sin, nor was guile found in His mouth;" *(Isa. 53:9)*

23 who, having been reviled, did not revile in return; suffering, He did not threaten, but gave Himself up to Him who was judging righteously;

24 who "Himself carried up in His body our sins" onto the tree; that dying to sins, we might live to righteousness, of whom "By His wounds you were healed." *(Acts 5:30)*

25 For you were "As sheep going astray," but now you turned back to the Shepherd and Guardian of your souls. *(Isa. 53:4-6)*

Chapter 3

1 Likewise, wives, be submissive to your own husbands, that even if any disobey the Word, through the behavior of the wives, without a word they will be won, *(Eph 5:22-24)*

2 observing your pure behavior in fear.

3 And adorn not yourselves with the external ornaments of curls of the hair, or the wearing of golden trinkets, or of costly garments.

4 but the hidden man of the heart, in the incorruptible adornment of the meek and quiet spirit, which is of great value before Elohim.

5 For so once indeed the holy women who were hoping on Elohim adorned themselves, submitting themselves to their own husbands,

6 as Sarah obeyed Abraham, calling him Master; whose children you became, doing good, and not being confused by false values. *(Gen. 18:12)*

7 And you husbands, likewise, dwell with your wives according to knowledge, and hold them in honor, as the weaker vessels; because they also will inherit with you the gift of eternal life: And let not your prayers be hindered.

8 And, finally, let all live in harmony, that ye be sympathetic with them who suffer, and affectionate one to another, and be merciful and kind.

9 Not giving back evil for evil, or railing for railing; but, on the contrary,

give blessing; knowing that you were called to this in order that you might inherit blessing.

10 "For the one desiring to love life, and to see good days, let him restrain his tongue from evil, even his lips not to speak guile.

11 Let him turn aside from evil, and let him do good. Let him seek peace, and pursue it;

12 because the eyes of YAHWEH are on the righteous, and His ears are open to their prayer. But the face of YAHWEH is against any doing evil things." *(Psa. 34:12-16)*

13 And who is the one who can harm you if you become zealous followers of that which is good?

14 But if you truly suffer because of righteousness sake, you are blessed. "and be not afraid of those who terrify you, neither be disturbed.

15 But sanctify the Messiah as Sovereign in your hearts, and always be ready to give an answer to everyone asking you a reason concerning the hope of your faith, with meekness and fear,

16 having a good conscience, that while they speak against you as evildoers, they may be shamed, those falsely accusing your good behavior in Messiah.

17 For it is better, if it is the will of Elohim, to suffer for doing good deeds rather than for doing evil.

18 Because even Messiah once suffered concerning sins, the just for the unjust, that He might bring us to Elohim; indeed being put to death in the flesh, but made alive in the Spirit;

19 and he preached to those souls, which were detained in Hades,

20 which were formerly disobedient, in the days of Noah, when the long suffering of Elohim commanded an ark to be made, in hope of their repentance;[1] and eight souls only entered into it, and were saved upon the water.

21 And you also are saved in that same manner by baptism[2], not merely when you wash the filth from the body, but by confessing YAHWEH with a pure conscience, and by the resurrection of Yahshua the Messiah;

22 who going into Heaven is at the right hand of YAHWEH; cherubs, and authorities, and powers being made subject to Him.

Chapter 4

1 Therefore, Messiah having suffered for us in the flesh, also you arm yourselves with the same thought, because he having suffered in the flesh has been made to rest from sin,

2 for him no longer to live in the lusts of men, but to live the remaining time in the flesh in the will of Elohim.

3 For the time of life having passed is sufficient for us to have worked out the will of the pagans, having gone on in wantonness, lusts, drunkenness, parties, indecent singing, and lawless idolatries;

4 in which they are surprised that you do not indulge with them into past excesses and they blaspheme against you;

---

1 He did not literally preach to these souls who are sleeping in the grave. Hades is the grave (dirt), by Yahshua qualifying to be judge of all by His perfect life, and His death and resurrection, He now has authority to judge these wicked people on judgment day. They were already warned by Yahweh's servants while they were alive

2 Baptism (full immersion) is the sign of the New Covenant agreement and when one enters the new covenant through baptism they go from death to life having their sins forgiven by the penalty of their sins being paid for by the blood of Yahshua Messiah.

5 who will give account to Elohim, who is to judge the living and dead.

6 For to this end also the good news was preached to the dead[1], that they might be judged according to men in the flesh, but might live according to Elohim in the Spirit.

7 But the end of all things has drawn near. Be of sound mind then, and be mindful of prayers;

8 and above all things having fervent love to yourselves, "Because love will cover a multitude of sins." *(Prov. 10:12)*

9 Be hospitable to strangers without murmurings,

10 so let each one of you according to the gift he received from Elohim, minister the same to your fellowman as good stewards of the manifold grace of Elohim.

11 If any man preach, let him preach the word of YAHWEH; if anyone ministers, let him do so according to the ability that Elohim has given him that in all things that you may do, YAHWEH may be glorified through Yahshua Messiah; to whom belongs glory and honor forever and ever. Amen.

12 Beloved, do not be astonished at the fiery trial happening among you for your testing, as if a surprise were occurring to you;

13 but rejoice, that you participate in the sufferings of the Messiah, that so you may also rejoice and exult at the revelation of his glory. *(Ja 1:2-4)*

14 If you are reviled in the name of Messiah, you are blessed, because "The glorious Spirit of Elohim rests upon you."

15 For do not let any of you suffer as a murderer, or a thief, or an evildoer, or as a meddler in the affairs of others.

16 But if one suffers as a Christian[2], do not let him be ashamed, but to glorify Elohim in this respect.

17 Because the time has come that judgment must begin with the house of YAHWEH; and if it first begins with us, what will be the end of the ones disobeying the good news of Elohim?

18 And "if the righteous is scarcely saved, where will the wicked and sinner appear?" *(Prov. 11:31)*

19 Wherefore, let them who suffer according to the will of YAHWEH, commit their souls to him in well doing, as to a faithful Creator.

Chapter 5

1 I, a fellow elder, exhort the elders among you, I being also witness of the sufferings of Messiah, and being sharer of the glory about to be revealed:

2 Feed the flock of Elohim which is entrusted to your care, and shepherd them spiritually, not by compulsion, but willingly; not for money sake, but with all your heart;

3 nor as exercising dominion over the ones allotted to you, but becoming examples of the flock.

4 And at the appearing of the Chief Shepherd, you will receive the never fading crown of glory.

5 Likewise, younger ones be subject to older ones; and all being subject to one another. Put on humility, because Elohim sets Himself "Against proud ones, but He gives grace to the humble." *(Prov. 3:34)*

6 Then be humbled under the mighty hand of YAHWEH, that He may exalt you in due time;

[1] It was preached to them while they were alive, and now they are dead and waiting for judgment for rejecting the message.

[2] *'Christian'* was mostly a term used by westerners for believers, as where scripture does use this word 3 times, it refers to believers as disciples more than 250 times.

7 "Casting all your anxiety onto Him," because it matters to Him concerning you. *(Psa. 55:22)*
8 Be sensible, watch, because your adversary the Devil walks about as a roaring lion seeking someone he may devour;
9 therefore resist him[1], being steadfast in the faith: and know that the same sufferings befall your brethren that are in the world.
10 Now the Elohim of all grace, who has called us to His eternal glory by Yahshua the Messiah, whom YAHWEH Has given to us, will strengthen us to endure these little afflictions that we may remain steadfast and established in Him forever.
11 To Him be the glory and the might forever and ever. Amen.
12 I wrote to you these things briefly by way of Silvanus the faithful brother, as I reckon, exhorting and witnessing this to be the true grace of YAHWEH, in which you stand.
13 The chosen congregation in Babylon[2] greets you; also Mark my son.
14 Greet one another with a holy kiss[3]. Peace be to you, all those in Messiah Yahshua. Amen.

---

[1] Jacob 4:7

[2] Where as Paul went to mostly western places from Israel, Peter went to mostly the eastern places where many Jews and Israelites where residing. There were more Jews living in Babylon at this time then even in Israel.

[3] This is an ancient Middle eastern custom of kissing a person on both checks when greeting them, Due to modesty men would only kiss men and women would kiss women.

Book of 2 Peter 66 AD

Chapter 1

1 Simon Peter, a slave and apostle of Yahshua Messiah, to those equally precious with us, having obtained faith in the righteousness of our Elohim and Savior, Yahshua Messiah:

2 Grace to you, and peace be multiplied by a full knowledge of YAHWEH, and of Yahshua our Master,

3 Who has given us all things that pertain to the power of Elohim, for the life and worship of Elohim, through the full knowledge of the One calling us through glory and virtue,

4 by which means He has given to us the very great and precious promises, so that through these you might be partakers of the divine nature, escaping from the corruption which is in the world by lust.

5 But also in this very thing, having brought in all diligence, having fully supplied in your faith virtue, and with virtue knowledge,

6 and with the knowledge self-control, and with the self-control patience, and with the patience holiness,

7 and with the holiness brotherly kindness, and with brotherly kindness, love.

8 For these things being in you, and abounding, they will make you never to be useless or unfruitful in the full knowledge of our Master Yahshua Messiah.

9 For the one in whom these things are not present is blind, being shortsighted, and forgetting that he was cleansed of his sins in time past.

10 Therefore, brothers, rather be diligent to make your calling and election sure; for doing these things, you will not ever fall.

11 For so will be richly furnished to you the entrance into the eternal kingdom of our Master and Savior, Yahshua Messiah.

12 And for this reason I am not wearied in reminding you continually of these things; although ye know them well, and are established in this truth.

13 But I deem it right, so long as I am in this tabernacle, to stir you up by a reminder,

14 knowing that shortly I must depart this life, as indeed our Master Yahshua Messiah made clear to me.

15 And I will also be diligent to cause you always to have memory of these things after my departure.

16 For not following fables which had been cleverly devised, but having become eyewitnesses of the majesty of Yahshua Messiah, we made known to you the power and coming of our Master.

17 For He received from YAHWEH the Father honor and glory when there came such a voice to Him from the excellent and magnificent glory, "This is My Son, the Beloved, in whom I am well pleased[1],"

18 even we heard this voice being borne out of Heaven, being with Him in the holy mountain,

19 and we have the more established Word of prophecy, in which you do well to look to it for guidance, as you look to a lamp shining in a dark place, until day dawns and the sun will shine in your hearts;

20 knowing this first, that not every prophecy of Scripture is made clear in its own book[2];

21 for prophecy did not come by the will of man, but holy men of

---

1 (Psa. 2:7; Gen. 22:2; Isa. 42:1; Matt. 17:5)

2 Is 28:10 states “line on line precept on precept”, showing the bible interprets itself, but you may have to go to other books of the bible transcribed by a different person, but YHWH is the author of all of it.

YAHWEH spoke when they were inspired by the Holy Spirit.

Chapter 2

1 But false prophets were also among the people, as also false teachers will be among you, who will secretly bring in destructive heresies, and denying the Master who has bought them, bringing swift destruction on themselves.

2 And many will follow their destructive ways, by whom the way of truth will be evil spoken of.

3 And by covetousness, with well-turned words, they will use you for gain, for whom judgment from the very beginning has not ceased, and their destruction is always active.[1]

4 For if Elohim did not spare sinning cherubs, but delivered them to chains of darkness, thrust down into Tartarus, having been kept to judgment;

5 and did not spare the ancient world, but preserved Noah the eighth, a herald of righteousness, bringing a flood on a world of wicked ones;

6 and covering the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah with ashes, He condemned them with an overthrow, setting an example to men intending to live unholy lives.

7 And also delivered righteous Lot, who was tormented with the filthy conduct of the lawless;

8 for that righteous one living among them day after day, in seeing and in hearing, his righteous soul was tormented with their lawless deeds.

9 But YAHWEH knows to rescue the righteous out of temptation, and to keep the unjust to be punished at the judgment day,

10 and especially will He punish those who follow after the filthy lusts of the flesh, and have no respect for authority. Self willed and arrogant they are and they do not tremble when they blaspheme;

11 where cherubs being greater in strength and power do not bring against them the condemnation of blaspheming.

12 But these men, like the dumb beasts, which by nature are for slaughter and destruction, speak evil of the things that they do not understand, and will utterly perish in their own corruption;

13 being about to receive the wages of unrighteousness, as they consider it a delightful thing to revel in the daytime. They are spots and blemishes among you, and sport themselves with their own pleasures feasting along with you in idleness,

14 having eyes full of adultery, and never ceasing from sin; seducing unsettled souls; having a heart being filled with covetousness; they are cursed children;

15 who have forsaken the straight path, and have gone astray, following the way of Balaam the son of Beor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness,

16 but who was rebuked for his own transgression, the dumb donkey speaking in a man's voice held back the folly of the prophet.

17 These are springs without water[2], clouds being driven by a storm, for whom the blackness of darkness has been kept forever.

18 For, while they speak astonishing words of vanity, they seduce, with obscene lusts of the flesh, them who have almost abandoned these, that walk in error,

19 while promising to them freedom, though themselves being slaves of

[1] 1 Pe 5:1-2, Math 10:8

[2] They are not bearing any fruit but are only troublemakers.

corruption; for a man is overcome, by whatever it is that enslaves him.
20 For if, when they have escaped the pollutions of the world by the knowledge of our Master and Redeemer, Yahshua the Messiah, they become again entangled in the very same things and are overcome by them, their latter end is worse with them than the beginning[1].
21 For it was better for them not to have known the way of righteousness than having recognized it to turn from the holy commandment delivered to them.
22 But the word of the true proverb has happened to them: "The dog returns to his own vomit; also, the sow that was washed, to wallowing in the mud." *(Prov. 26:11)*

Chapter 3

1 It has been a long time since I have written to you, my Beloved, but now I write to you this second epistle, in which by reminder I stir up your pure mind to remember
2 the words having been spoken before by the holy prophets, and the commandment given by us, the apostles of our Master and Savior;
3 first, knowing this, that during the last days scoffers will come walking according to their own lusts,
4 and saying, Where is the promise of His coming? For from which time the fathers fell asleep, all things remain so from the beginning of creation.
5 For this they willingly forget, that the heavens were of old; and the earth rose up from the waters, and by means of water, by the word of YAHWEH.
6 Through which the world which then was, being flooded by water, perished.
7 But the heavens and the earth now, having been stored up by the same Word, are being kept for fire to a day of judgment and destruction of wicked men.
8 But let not this one thing be hidden from you, beloved, that one day with YAHWEH is as a thousand years, and a thousand years as one day[2].
9 YAHWEH is not negligent concerning His promises, as some count negligence, but is patient toward us, not wishing any to perish, but all to come to repentance.
10 But the day of YAHWEH will come as a thief in the night, in which the heavens will pass away with rushing sound, and the elements shall separate as they burn, and earth and the works in it will be burned up.
11 Now since all these being are about to be dissolved, what sort of person ought you to be in holy behavior and righteousness,
12 looking for and longing for the coming of the Day of YAHWEH[3], through which the heavens having

[1] The blood of Messiah pays the penalty of our sins, and the Holy Spirit gives us a new spirit to reject sin and walk in newness of life. If we reject this spirit from Yahweh and go back to our old way of life, then we are blaspheming the Holy Spirit and rejecting eternal life. (Heb 6:4-6)

[2] Just as YHWH created the world in 6 days and rested on the 7th, YHWH has given mankind 6,000 years to make his own government, education, religion and society, and at the end of the 6,000 yrs Yahshua will return to earth to set up the Kingdom of Yahweh for the 1,000 yr millennial rule completing YHWH's 7,000 year plan. *(* Psa. 90:4) Then the new heaven and earth will be established and His Kingdom forever. (Rev 21:1-4)

[3] The day of YHWH is not a particular day of the week but the time period of His wrath on mankind for his continued sin and rebellion since the Garden of Eden. (Joel 2:1-11)

been set afire will be dissolved; and
burning, the elements will melt?
13 But according to His promise, we
look for "New heavens and a new
earth," in which righteousness dwells.
(Isa. 65:17)
14 Because of this, beloved, looking
for these things, be diligent, spotless,
and without blemish, that you may be
found by Him in peace.
15 And consider the long-suffering of
YAHWEH to be our redemption, as
also our beloved brother Paul wrote to
you, according to the wisdom given to
him;
16 as also in all his epistles, speaking
in them concerning these things, in
which some things are hard to
understand, which those that are
ignorant and unstable pervert their
meaning, as also they do the rest of the
Scriptures[1], to their own destruction.
17 Therefore beloved, since you
know these things beforehand, guard
yourself, lest being led away by the
error of the lawless[2] you fall from your
own steadfastness.
18 But grow in grace and knowledge
of our Master and Savior, Yahshua
Messiah and of YAHWEH the Father.
To Him be the glory, both now and to
the days of eternity. Amen.

---

1 Peter is clearly supporting the Apostle Paul's epistles and teachings and also calling them part of scripture.

2 Peter is accusing false brethren of perverting Paul's letters due to their lawless doctrines and also that they corrupt other scripture.

Book of 1 John 85-90 AD

Chapter 1

1 We announce to you, Who was[1] from the beginning, who we have heard, who we have seen with our eyes, who we beheld, and who our hands touched, we declare to you is the Word of Life.
2 And the Life was revealed, and we have seen, and we bear witness, and we announce to you the everlasting Life which was with the Father, and was revealed to us.
3 We announce to you what we have seen, and what we have heard, that you also may have fellowship with us. And truly our fellowship is with the Father and with His Son, Yahshua Messiah.
4 And we write these things to you, that your joy may be full.
5 And this is the message which we have heard from Him, and we proclaim to you: Elohim is light, and no darkness is in Him, none!
6 If we say that we have fellowship with Him, and we walk in darkness, we lie and are not practicing the truth.
7 But if we walk in the light, as He is in the light, we have fellowship with one another, and the blood of His Son Yahshua Messiah cleanses us from all sin.
8 If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.
9 If we confess our sins, He is faithful and righteous that He may forgive us the sins, and may cleanse us from all unrighteousness.
10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make Him a liar, and His Word is not in us.

1 The verb tense here is clearly showing that Yahshua "***was***" from the beginning. He did not come into being, but simply always existed with the Father.

Chapter 2

1 My little children, I write these things to you so that you do not sin. And if anyone sins, we have an Advocate with the Father, Yahshua Messiah the righteous.
2 And He Himself is the propitiation relating to our sins, and not relating to ours only, but also relating to all the world.
3 And by this we know that we have known Him, if we keep His commandments.
4 The one saying, I have known Him, and not keeping His commandments is a liar, and the truth is not in that one[2].
5 But whoever keeps His Word, truly in this one the love of YAHWEH has been perfected. By this we know that we are in Him.
6 The one claiming to rest in Him, ought to walk, himself, even as He walked[3].
7 Brothers, I do not write a new commandment to you, but an old commandment which you had from the beginning. The old commandment is the Word which you have heard from the beginning.
8 Again I write a new commandment to you which is true in Him and in you, because the darkness is passing away, and the true Light already shines.
9 The one claiming to be in the light, and hating his brother, is in the darkness until now.
10 The one loving his brother rests in the light, and no offense is in him.
11 But the one hating his brother is

2 John's epistle is written somewhere in the mid 90's AD and John is the last living Apostle and much heresy is taking place. This scripture is clear proof that anyone saying that he is a disciple of Yahshua and not being obedient to the Torah and the commandments is nothing but a liar.

in the darkness, and walks in the
darkness, and does not know where he
is going, because the darkness blinded
his eyes.
12 Little children, I write to you
because you have been forgiven your
sins through His name[1].
13 Fathers, I write to you because
you have known Him from the
beginning. I write to you, young men,
because you have overcome the evil
one. I write to you, little children,
because you have known the Father.
14 Fathers, I have written to you
because you have known Him from the
beginning. I have written to you,
young men, because you are strong,
and the Word of Elohim abides in you,
and you have overcome the evil.
15 Do not love the world nor the
things in the world. If anyone loves the
world, the love of the Father is not in
him,
16 because all that which is in the
world: The lust of the flesh, the lust of
the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of
the Father, but is of the world.
17 And the world is passing away,
and its lust. But the one doing the will
of Elohim abides forever.
18 Little children, it is a last hour,
and as you heard that the anti-Messiah
is coming, even now many anti-
Messiahs have risen up, from which
you know that it is a last hour.
19 They went out from us, but they
were not of us. For if they were of us,
they would have remained with us; but
they left so that it might be revealed
that they all are not of us.
20 And you have an anointing from
the Holy One, and you know all things.
21 I did not write to you because you
do not know the truth, but because
you know it, and because every lie is
not of the truth.
22 Who is the liar, except the one
denying that Yahshua is the Messiah?
This is an anti-Messiah, the one
denying the Father and the Son.[2]
23 Everyone denying the Son does
not have the Father. The one
confessing the Son also has the Father.
24 Then what you heard from the
beginning, let it abide in you. If what
you heard from the beginning abides
in you, you will abide both in the Son
and in the Father.
25 And this is the promise which He
promised us: Even everlasting life.
26 I wrote these things to you
concerning the ones leading you
astray.
27 And the anointing which you
received from Him abides in you, and
you have no need that anyone teach
you.[3] But as His anointing teaches you
concerning all things, and is true, and
is not a lie, and as He taught you,
abide in Him.
28 And now, little children, abide in
Him, that when He is revealed we may

---

3 The Aramaic word used here for walk is "*halach*" which literally means "to go" or the way one should go, in which Rabbis get the term "*halacha*", which is the way to go that is required to perform in order to be considered a disciple. Clearly part of that way included the Sabbath day, the Passover and feast days of Leviticus 23 and the whole Torah, excluding the Levitical law that was added (Gal 3:19). The clear message is that any true disciple of Yahshua needs to do the same things that He did, which was being fully Torah observant. Doing away with the Torah and commandments is not an option for a true believer in Messiah and is a litmus test to divide between a true disciple and one in name only. (Math 7:20-23, Is 8:20)

1 Acts 4:12 clearly states there is only one name that one can be saved by and that is "***Yahshua***", meaning Yahweh's salvation. (Math 1:21, Ex 23:21, Phil 2:9, 1Jn 3:23)

2 Some falsely claim Yahshua and Yahweh the Father are the same being. This is called the doctrine of anti-messiah.

have confidence, and not be shamed from Him at His coming.

29 If you know that He is righteous, you also know, that whoever does righteousness, is from Him.

Chapter 3

1 See what manner of love the Father has given us, that we may be called sons of YAHWEH, who made us. For this reason the world does not know us, because it did not know Him.

2 Beloved, now we are the sons of YAHWEH, and it was not yet revealed what we shall be. But we know that if He is revealed, we shall be like Him, because we shall see Him as He is.

3 And everyone having this hope on Him purifies himself even as that One is pure. *(Phil 3:21)*

4 Everyone practicing sin also practices lawlessness, and sin is the breaking of the Torah[1].

5 And you know that He was revealed that He might take away our sins, and sin is not in Him.

6 Everyone remaining in Him does not *(practice)* sin. Everyone practicing sin has not seen Him, nor known Him.

7 Little children, let no one lead you astray; the one practicing righteousness is righteous, even as that One is righteous.

8 The one practicing sin is of the devil, because the devil sins from the beginning. For this the Son of YAHWEH was revealed, that He might destroy the works of the devil.

9 Everyone who has been begotten of Elohim does not practice sin, because His seed abides in him, and he is not able to sin, because he has been begotten of Elohim[2].

10 By this the children of YAHWEH are distinguished from the children of the devil: Whoever does not practice righteousness[3] and does not love his brother, does not belong to Elohim.

11 Because this is the message which you heard from the beginning, that we should love one another,

12 not as Cain who was of the evil one, and killed his brother. And for what did he kill him? Because his works were evil, but those of his brother were righteous.

13 So be not surprised, my brothers, if the world hates you.

14 We know that we have passed from death to life because we love the brethren. The one not loving his brother remains in death.

15 Everyone hating his brother is a murderer[4], and you know that every murderer does not have everlasting life abiding in him.

16 By this we have known His love

[3] John is not stating that there is no need for pastors and teachers as outlined in Eph 4:11-14, and set up and ordained by Yahshua Himself, but the problem was Gnostic teaching that one must have *secret knowledge of hidden things.* This is what John was speaking against.

[1] Sin is clearly defined as the breaking of the Torah. The Christian argument against keeping the Torah is extremely weak and non-biblical as if there is no Torah, then there would be no sin, and then why would someone need a savior? It is utterly evil to preach a lawless message of salvation. (Math 7:21-23, Is 8:20, Pr 28:9, Rev 14:12)

[2] Ro 8:7 tells us that before baptism and the laying on of hands to receive the Holy Spirit that the carnal mind is hatred toward Yahweh's Torah. It is the Holy Spirit that changes our heart to write the Torah on our very hearts (Heb 8:10). Once someone does this he may still as a human being slip up and sin, but he would not practice sin as a lifestyle. Those saying the Torah is done away are proving (according to scripture) they still have the carnal mind of their wicked human nature and not the Holy Spirit (Ruach H'Chodesh) of YHWH.

[3] (Ps 119:172) All the commandments are righteousness.

toward us, because that One laid down
His life for us; and on behalf of the
brethren we ought to lay down our
lives.
17 But whoever has worldly
possessions, and sees his brother in
need, and shuts up his mercy from
him, how is the love of Elohim in
him[1]?
18 My little children, let us not love
in word, or in tongue, but in deed and
in truth.
19 And in this we shall know that we
are of the truth, and shall persuade
our hearts before Him,
20 that if our heart condemns us,
how much more then will Elohim, who
is greater than our heart and knows all
things.
21 Beloved, if our heart does not
accuse us, we have confidence with
Elohim.
22 And whatever we ask, we receive
from Him, because we keep His
commandments, and we do the things
pleasing before Him.
23 And this is His commandment,
that we should believe in the name of
His Son, Yahshua Messiah[2], and love
one another, even as He commanded
to us.
24 And the one keeping His
commandments is guarded by Him,
and He will dwell in him. And by this
we know that He abides in us, by the
Spirit which He gave to us[3].

Chapter 4

1 Beloved, do not believe every spirit,
but test the spirits, whether they are
from Elohim; for many false prophets
have gone forth into the world[4].
2 The Spirit of Elohim is known by
this: Every spirit which confesses that
Yahshua Messiah has come in the flesh
is from YAHWEH.
3 And every spirit which does not
confess that Yahshua Messiah has
come in the flesh is not from Elohim;
and this is the Anti-Messiah which you
heard is coming, and now is already in
the world[5].
4 Little children, you are of Elohim
and have overcome them, because He
that is in you is greater than he that is
in the world.
5 They are of the world; because of
this they speak of the world, and the
world hears them.
6 We are of Elohim; the one knowing
Elohim hears us. Whoever is not of
Elohim does not hear us. From this we
know the spirit of truth and the spirit
of error.
7 Beloved, let us love one another,
because love is of YAHWEH, and
everyone who loves has been
generated from Elohim, and knows
Elohim.
8 The one who does not love has not

4 The commandments are a law of love and they teach us how to love YHWH and how to love our neighbor as ourselves. The fact that verse 15 shows that murder brings death is proof of this as it is one of the commandments (Deut 10:13).

1 It is a basic tenet of the true faith to use the blessings that YHWH has bestowed upon a believer to help those in need.

2 The clear command is to believe in the true name of the Son of Yahweh called Yahshua. Acts 4:12 clearly states there is only one name that brings salvation. “***Yahshua***” means Yahweh's salvation, as where *'Jesus'* has no entomology or meaning.

3 Obedience to the Torah is the evidence of one's faith and proof of the Ruach H'Chodesh (Holy Spirit) being in him.

4 Is 8:20

5 Anti-Messiah means to be in the place of Messiah. Gnostic teaching at this time was teaching that since flesh is primarily evil that Yahshua could have never come in a human body. John is refuting this false belief.

known Elohim, because YAHWEH is love[1].

9 By this was the love of Elohim towards us made known, because YAHWEH sent his only-begotten Son into the world, that we might live by Him.

10 In this is love, not that we loved YAHWEH, but that He loved us, and sent His Son to be the atonement for our sins.

11 Beloved, if YAHWEH so loved us, we also ought to love one another.

12 No one has seen YAHWEH *(The Father)* at any time. If we love one another, Elohim abides in us, and His love is perfected in us.[2]

13 By this we know that we abide in Him, and He in us, because of His Spirit He has given to us.

14 And we have beheld and bear witness that the Father has sent the Son as Savior of the world.

15 Whoever confesses that Yahshua is the Son of YAHWEH, Elohim abides in him, and he in Elohim.

16 And we have known and have believed the love which Elohim has in us. YAHWEH is love, and the one abiding in love abides in Elohim and Elohim in him.

17 By this, love has been perfected with us, that we have confidence in the day of judgment, that as He is, we are also in this world.

18 There is no fear in love, but perfect love casts out fear, because fear has torment[3]; and the one fearing has not been perfected in love.

19 We love Him because He first loved us.

20 If anyone says, I love Elohim, and hates his brother, he is a liar. For the one not loving his brother whom he has seen, how is he able to love YAHWEH whom he has not seen?

21 And we have this commandment from Him, that he who loves Elohim ought to also love his brother.

Chapter 5

1 Everyone believing that Yahshua is the Messiah has been regenerated from YAHWEH. And everyone who loves Him who begets, also loves the one who has been begotten of Him.

2 By this we know that we love the children of Elohim: When we love YAHWEH and keep His commandments.

3 For this is the love of YAHWEH, that we keep His commandments; and His commandments are not a burden to us.

4 Because everything having been regenerated of YAHWEH overcomes the world, and this is the victory which overcomes the world, even our faith.

5 Who is the one overcoming the world except the one who believes that Yahshua is the Son of YAHWEH?

6 This is the One coming through water and blood, Yahshua Messiah; not by the water only, but by the water and the blood.

7 And the Spirit is the One witnessing, because the Spirit is the truth.

8 And there are three who bear

---

1 Yahweh's character is only true love. His Torah and commands are only an extension of His character and love for mankind. One can memorize the bible from cover to cover but if he is not obedient to Yahweh's Torah and does not have genuine Elohim guided love for his neighbor, then it is all vanity and meaningless and self righteous.

2 John 1:18

3 Fear is the opposite of faith and the acronym for fear is "***f****alse* ***e****vidence* ***a****ppearing* ***r****eal*." Fear is from Satan and only brings torment to a person. It should also be noted that statistically most fears of people will never actually come to pass.

witness: The Spirit, and the water, and
the blood; and these three are united[1].
9 If we accept the testimony of men,
how much greater is the testimony of
YAHWEH; because this is the
testimony of YAHWEH which He has
testified about His Son:
10 The one believing in the Son of
YAHWEH has the testimony in
himself. The one not believing
YAHWEH has made Him a liar,
because he has not believed in the
testimony which YAHWEH has
testified concerning His Son[2].
11 And this is the testimony: That
YAHWEH gave us everlasting life,
and this life is in His Son.
12 The one having the Son has life.
The one not having the Son of
YAHWEH does not have life.
13 I wrote these things to you, the
ones believing in the name of the Son
of YAHWEH, that you may know that
you have everlasting life, and that you
may believe in the name of the Son of
YAHWEH[3].
14 And this is the confidence we
have toward Him, that if we ask
anything according to His will, He
hears us.
15 And if we know that He hears us,
whatever we ask, we know that we
have the requests which we have asked
from Him.
16 If anyone sees his brother sinning
a sin not unto death, he shall ask; and
He shall give life to him, to the ones
not sinning unto death. There is a sin
unto death. I do not say that he should
ask about that[4].
17 All unrighteousness is sin, and
there is a sin not unto death.
18 We know that everyone being
regenerated from Elohim does not
practice sin, but the one having been
regenerated from Elohim guards
himself, and the evil one does not
come near him.
19 We know that we are of Elohim,
and the whole world lies in
wickedness.
20 And we know that the Son of
Elohim has come, and He has given to
us an understanding that we may
know Him who is true, and we are in
Him who is true, in His Son Yahshua
Messiah. This is the true Elohim and
eternal life.
21 Little children, guard yourselves
from idols[5]. Amen.

1 The later Latin manuscripts erroneously adds a verse that states there are three that bear witness in heaven, the Father, the word and the Spirit. This verse is not in the Aramaic and is also not in any early Greek manuscript, but clearly a forgery that was added later. The point of the verse is that John is dealing with Gnostics who did not believe Yahshua was born in the flesh and John was showing that at conception it was the water and blood to make the fetus, at His birth Yahshua was born through water and blood and at His death the soldier stabbed Him in the side and water and blood came out.

2 Most testimony comes from men, but to deny the virgin birth and Yahshua as Messiah and Son of YHWH is to deny the testimony of YHWH Himself (Is 7:14), so to deny this is to call Yahweh a liar.

3 Believing in the name of Yahshua is critical for salvation as the name of the Father Yahweh is in Yahshua's name (Ex 23:21) and scripture states there is salvation in no other name (Acts 4:12)

4 The sin unto death is willful sin without repentance. It is blasphemy to pray for such an attitude and YHWH will not hear it. (Num 15:30, Heb 10:26-32, Heb 6:4-6)

5 The last thing John reminds the believers is to stay away from idolatry.

Book of 2 John 85-90 AD

Chapter 1

1 The elder, to the mother congregation and her children[1], whom I love in truth; and not I only, but also all those who have known the truth,
2 because of the truth remaining among us, and will be with us forever.
3 Grace, mercy, peace will be with you from YAHWEH the Father and from the Master Yahshua Messiah, the Son of the Father, in love and truth.
4 I rejoiced greatly because I found your children walking in truth, as we received command from the Father.
5 And I now request you, mother congregation, not as though I wrote a new commandment to you, but one which we had from the beginning, that we should love one another.
6 And this is love, that we should walk according to His commandments[2]. This is the commandment, even as you heard from the beginning, that you should walk in it.
7 Because many deceivers went out into the world, those not confessing Yahshua Messiah to have come in the flesh, such a person is a deceiver and an anti-Messiah[3].
8 Watch yourselves, that we may not lose the things we worked out, but that we may receive a full reward.
9 Everyone transgressing and not abiding in the doctrine of Messiah Elohim is not in him. The one abiding in the doctrine of Messiah, this one has the Father and the Son[4].
10 If anyone comes to you and does not bear this doctrine, do not receive him into the house, and do not speak a greeting to him[5].
11 For the one speaking a greeting shares in his evil works.
12 Having many things to write to you, I do not intend to speak by means of paper and ink, but I am hoping to come to you, and to speak mouth to mouth, that our joy may be full.
13 The children of your elect sister congregation greet you[6]. Amen.

---

1 This letter is either written to the lead congregation or is simply a letter to the congregation as a whole.

2 The two overriding themes in all of the Apostle John's letters are love and obedience, which do not contradict each other but go hand in hand.

3 John is dealing with the same Gnostic false belief that Yahshua did not come to earth born of a virgin as a fleshly human being. See note on 1 Joh 5:8.

4 To say that Yahweh the Father is the same being as Yahshua the son is a false doctrine and heresy according to John and is the spirit of anti-messiah.

5 It was customary for believers to bless each other when they greeted one another. Many early congregations also met in homes (Ro 16:5). John is commanding that if someone brings a doctrine that is in the place of the doctrine of Messiah that such a one should not be greeted with a blessing and also not allowed into the home for fellowship either.

6 John was giving a greeting from a sister congregation of fellow believers. Probably due to the persecution going on at that time to believers he is writing in somewhat of a concealed manner.

Book of 3 John 85-90 AD

Chapter 1

1 The elder, to Gaius the beloved, whom I love in truth[1]. *(Acts 19:29)*
2 Beloved, in regard to all things, I pray for you to prosper and to be in health, as your soul prospers.
3 For I rejoiced greatly when the brethren came, also bearing witness of you in the truth, as you walk in truth.
4 I have no greater joy than these things, that I hear my children are walking in truth.
5 Beloved, you do faithfully whatever you work for the brethren especially those who are strangers,
6 who have borne testimony to your good works before the whole congregation, to whom you have done good to them supplying their needs, as is pleasing to Elohim.
7 For on behalf of His name they went out, taking nothing from the nations.
8 Therefore, we ought to entertain such men, that we may become coworkers in the truth.
9 I wrote to the Congregation, but he loving to be first of them, Diotrephes, does not receive us[2].
10 Because of this, if I come, I will recall his works which he does, ranting against us with evil words. And not being satisfied with these, neither does he receive the brethren; and he forbade those intending to receive them, and cast them out from the Congregation.
11 Beloved, do not imitate the bad, but the good. The one doing good is of Elohim; but the one doing bad has not seen Elohim.
12 Witness has been borne to Demetrius by all, and by the truth itself. And we also bear witness, and you know that our witness is true.
13 I had many things to write, but I do not desire to write by means of pen and ink.
14 But I am hoping to see you shortly, and we will speak mouth to mouth. Peace to you. The friends greet you. Greet the friends by name.

---

1 The epistles of 2nd and 3rd John are not in the original Aramaic Peshitta text but were installed in later editions. Also, the book of Jude, 2 Peter and Revelation are not in the original Peshitta text. The reason for this most likely is that since the Peshitta is the original New Testament manuscript these 5 books being the last 5 New Testament documents written, they simply were written after the original Peshitta text was being circulated. The Greek translations which probably came sometime in the mid second century A.D. Does have these 5 books and also the later Peshitta translation also has them.

2 History tells us that John was the last Apostle alive and by the end of the 1st century A.D. The congregation was getting so splintered that some western bishops were actually treating the Apostle John as a heretic. Not long after John's death the western Roman bishops were openly supporting Sunday worship and changing from keeping the Passover memorial from a yearly occurrence on the 14th of the first month of the Hebrew calendar Aviv, to a weekly celebration and a yearly ritual on Easter in honor of the spring goddess Istar. Polycarp, a disciple of the Apostle John kept a stronghold of the truth in Asia minor, but could not convince the Roman bishops of their errors. The congregation continued to splinter in the 2nd and third centuries, until Constantine the Great (a pagan Emperor) had a vision of a cross and a so called conversion and merged the pagan sun cult with some Messianic beliefs and created what is called today as Christianity, a synchronization of the two beliefs with the majority coming from Paganism and sun worship.

Chapter 1

1 Judah, a slave of Yahshua Messiah,
and brother of Jacob, to the called
people in YAHWEH the Father,
having been set apart, and having been
kept to Yahshua Messiah:
2 Mercy and peace, and love be
multiplied to you.
3 Having made all haste to write to
you about the common salvation,
beloved, I had need to write to you to
exhort you to contend earnestly for the
faith once delivered to the saints.
4 For certain men stole in, those of
old having been written before to this
condemnation, wicked ones perverting
the grace of our Elohim into
lasciviousness[1], and denying the only
Sovereign Elohim, and our Master
Yahshua Messiah.
5 But I intend to remind you, though
you once knew these things, that
Elohim having saved a people out of
the land of Egypt, in the second place
destroyed the ones not believing[2].
6 And those cherubs not having kept
their first place, but having deserted
their dwelling-place, He has kept in
everlasting chains under darkness for
the great judgment day;
7 as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the
cities around them, in like manner to
these, committing fornication, and
going away after strange flesh, laid
down an example before-times,
undergoing vengeance of everlasting
fire[3].
8 Likewise, also these filthy
dreamers defile the flesh, and despise
authority, and speak evil of glories[4].
9 But Michael the archangel, when
contending with the Devil, he argued
about the body of Moses; he dared not
bring a judgment of blasphemy, but
said, "Let YAHWEH rebuke you!"
(Zech. 3:2)
10 But what things they do not
know, they speak evil of these. And
what things they understand naturally,
like the animals without reason, they
are corrupted by these.
11 Woe to them, because they went
the way of Cain[5], and gave themselves
up to the error of Balaam for reward,
and perished in the speaking against
of Korah!
12 These are those who lead a
wasteful feasting life that is blemished,
feeding themselves without fear,
waterless clouds being carried about
by winds, fruitless autumn trees,
having died twice, having been
plucked up by the roots;
13 wild waves of the sea foaming up
their shames, wandering stars for
whom blackness of darkness has been
kept to the age.
14 And the seventh from Adam,
Enoch[6], also prophesied to these men,
saying, Behold, YAHWEH comes with
ten thousands of His saints,
15 to execute judgment upon all; and
to convict all the wicked, because of all
the deeds they have wickedly
committed; and because of all the
harsh words, which the unrighteous
sinners have spoken.
16 These are murmurers,
complainers, going according to their

---

1 Judah prophesies about the lawless gospel that is being preached today.

2 This is quite a sobering scripture considering almost 2.8 million people left Egypt and only 2 (20 and above) entered the Promised Land.

3 These fallen cherubs are in Tarturos waiting judgment day.

4 Judah is prophesying of the end time Laodicean attitude that is fully against Yahweh's judicial order and ordained leadership.

5 They are led by a spirit of envy, jealousy and self-preservation.

6 Gen 5:22-24, Heb 11:5

lusts[1], and their mouth speaks proud
flattering words, lifting up faces for the
sake of gain.
17 But you, beloved, remember the
words spoken before by the apostles of
our Master Yahshua Messiah,[2]
18 because they told you that at the
last time[3] there will be mockers
following wickedness, according to
their lusts.
19 These are they setting themselves
apart, animal-like ones, not having the
Spirit[4].
20 But you, beloved, building
yourselves up by your most holy faith,
praying in the Holy Spirit,
21 keep yourselves in the love of
Elohim, eagerly awaiting the mercy of
our Master Yahshua Messiah to
everlasting life.
22 And pity some, making a
distinction.
23 But save others with fear,
snatching them out of the fire, hating
even the garment being stained from
the flesh.[5]
24 Now to Him being able to keep
you without stumbling, and to set you
before His glory without blemish, with
unspeakable joy;
25 to the only wise Elohim, our
Savior, through Yahshua Messiah our
Master, be glory and majesty and
might and authority, even now and
forever. Amen.

---

1. If YHWH is one's shepherd (Ps 23:1) then he should be happy, satisfied and content under Yahshua's protection, but these people are miserable and unsatisfied.
2. Judah is one of the last epistles in the New Testament to be written and he is warning the brethren in the end times to follow the judicial order set out by Yahshua and the leaders whom He ordained.
3. The book of Judah is a prophecy for the end times.
4. Pr 18:1 states he who separates himself seeks his own desire, but these self-motivated wicked false brethren in the end time will refuse to be part of any congregation and to be under the judicial order ordained by Yahshua (Eph 4:11-14), but will actually fight against it.
5. A believer must discern who can be helped and who can not, but he must be quick in such decisions as not to be effected by such bad attitudes.

Chapter 1

1 In many ways and in various ways of old, Elohim spoke to the fathers in the prophets;[1]
2 in these last days He has spoken to us in the Son, whom He appointed heir of all; and by whom he made the worlds; *(Joh 1:3, Col 1:16)*
3 for He is the brightness of His glory, and the express image of His being, and upholding all things by the power of His Word; having made purification of our sins through Himself, He sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high[2],*(Col 1:15)*
4 and He is altogether superior to the cherubs, just as the name He has inherited is a more excellent name than theirs[3].
5 For to which of the cherubs did He ever say, "You are My Son; today I have begotten You?" And again, "I will be a Father to Him, and He shall be a Son to Me." *(Psa. 2:7)*
6 And again, when He brought the First-born into the world, He said, "And let all the cherubs of Elohim worship Him."*(Deut. 32:43)*
7 And as to the cherubs, He said, "Who makes His cherubs spirits, and His ministers a flame of fire;" *(Psa. 104:4)*
8 But to the Son He said, "Your throne, O Elohim, is forever and ever, a scepter of uprightness is the scepter of Your kingdom;
9 You have loved righteousness and hated lawlessness; because of this, YAHWEH, Your Elohim, has anointed You with the oil of gladness beside Your fellows[4]."*(Psa. 45:6, 7)*
10 "And, from the beginning you have laid the foundations of the earth, and the heavens are works of Your hands[5].
11 They will vanish away, but You will continue; and they will all become old, like a garment,
12 and You shall fold them up like a covering, and they shall be changed. But You are the same, and Your years shall not fail." *(Psa. 102:25-27)*
13 But to which of the cherubs did He ever say, "Sit at My right hand until I place Your enemies as a footstool under Your feet?" *(Psa. 110:1)*
14 Are they not all ministering spirits for service, being sent out because of the ones being about to inherit salvation[6]?

Chapter 2

1 For this reason it is needful for us more abundantly to take heed to the

---

1 Historical records show the Book of Hebrews was written by the Apostle Paul. From the context we can see that the Sanctuary in Jerusalem has not yet been destroyed by the Romans and Paul is giving a clear picture of the changing of the Levitical order in the first covenant to the Melchizedek one in the New Covenant.

2 Yahshua is not Yahweh the Father, but is Yahweh the son and is seated on the right hand of Yahweh in heaven. This clearly shows two thrones and two beings, being one or united in mind, thought and purpose. (Ro 8:34, Acts 2:33, 7:55-56, 1Pe 3:22, Heb 8:1, 10:10-13, 12:2, Ps 110:1)

3 All the Cherubs such as *Gabri-**el**, Micha-**el**, Rapha-**el*** are named after the generic title of El, but ***Yah**-shua* is named after the family name of Yahweh giving Him a better name.

4 This verse is quoted from Ps 45:6-7 and shows that the Messiah is called Elohim and also the Messiah is a different being than Elohim the Father.

5 Yahshua was there at creation (Gen 1:26)

6 Cherubs were not created to become literal children and heirs of Yahweh, but were created to be ministering spirits. Apparently this is part of the reason that pride entered Lucifer and he rebelled and became Satan the adversary (Is 14:12-15, Ezek 28:14-17).

things having been heard so that we should not fall away.
2 For if the word spoken by cherubs was confirmed, and every transgression and disobedience received a just repayment;
3 how shall we escape if we neglect the very things which are our salvation? Which having received a beginning to be spoken through our Master, was confirmed to us by the ones hearing,
4 YAHWEH bearing witness with them by both miraculous signs and wonders, and by various works of power, even by distribution of the Holy Spirit, according to His will.
5 For He did not put the coming world under cherubs, about which we speak,
6 but one fully testified somewhere, saying, "What is man, that You are mindful of him; or the son of man, that You look upon him?
7 You made him a little less than the cherubs; You crowned him with glory and honor; and You set him over the works of Your hands.
8 You subjected all things under his feet." For in order to subject all things under him, He left nothing not subjected to him. But now we do not yet see all things being subject to him; *(Psa. 8:4-6)*
9 but we do see Yahshua, who humbled Himself to become a little lower than the cherubs through His suffering and His death, but now is crowned with glory and honor, so that He tasted death for the sake of everyone except YAHWEH[1].
10 For it was fitting for Him, because of whom are all things, and through whom are all things, having brought many sons to glory, so that from the very beginning of their salvation they are made perfect through sufferings.
11 For both the One sanctifying and the ones being sanctified are all of one nature; for which cause He is not ashamed to call them brethren,
12 saying, "I will announce Your name to My brethren; I will praise You in the midst of the congregation." *(Psa. 22:22)*
13 And again, "I will be trusting on Him." And again, "Behold, I and the children whom Elohim gave to Me[2]."
14 Since, then, the children have partaken of flesh and blood, in like manner He Himself also shared the same things, that through death He might cause to cease the one having the power of death, that is, the devil;
15 and might release them, who, through fear of death, are all their lives subject to bondage[3].
16 For He did not take on the likeness of cherubs, "but He takes on Him the seed of Abraham[4]."
17 Wherefore it was right, that he should in every manner resemble his brethren; that he might be merciful, and a high priest faithful in the things of Elohim, and might make reconciliation for the sins of the people.
18 For since He Himself has suffered, being tempted, He is able to help others who are tempted.

Chapter 3

1 For this reason, holy brothers, called by a call from heaven[5], consider the Apostle and High Priest[6] of our confession, Messiah Yahshua,
2 "being faithful" to Him who

1 The important phrase "*except Yahweh"* is in the original Peshitta but is excluded in the Greek translation and shows the duality of the Yahweh family.

2 Isa. 8:17-18

3 Fear brings bondage of mind and soul. (1 Joh 4:18)

4 Isa. 41:8, 9, Gen. 12:1-2, Gal 3:29

appointed Him, as also "Moses was faithful in all his house[1]." *(Num. 12:7)*

3 For He was counted worthy of more glory than Moses, by so much as the one having built the house has more honor than the house[2].

4 For every house is built by someone; but He who built all things is YAHWEH.

5 And "Moses as a servant was faithful in all his house", for a testimony of the things having been spoken; *(Num. 12:7)*

6 but Messiah as Son over His own house, whose house we are[3], if truly we hold fast the boldness and rejoicing of the hope firm to the end.

7 Because of this, even as the Holy Spirit says, "Today, if you hear His voice,

8 do not harden your hearts to provoke Him, as the murmurers did in the day of temptation in the wilderness,

9 there where your fathers tempted Me, even though they saw My works for forty years.

10 Because of this, I was angry with that generation and said, They always go astray in their heart; and they did not know My ways;

11 so I swore in My wrath, They shall not enter into My rest[4]." *(Psa. 95:7-11)*

12 Beware, therefore, my brethren, lest there be in any of you an evil heart which does not believe, and you will be cutoff from the living Elohim.

13 But search your hearts each day, until the day which is called "the day", that not anyone of you be hardened by the deceitfulness of sin[5].

14 For we have become partakers of Messiah, if truly from the beginning to the very end we hold steadfast to this true covenant;

15 as in the saying, "Today, if you hear even the echoes of His voice, do not harden your hearts to anger Him." *(Psa. 95:7,8, Heb 11:6)*

16 Who were those who heard and provoked Him? Was it not those who came out of Egypt through Moses; although not all of them?

17 But with whom was He angry forty years? Was it not with the ones sinning, whose bones lay in the wilderness?

18 And to whom did "He swear, they would not enter into His rest," except to those not obeying? *(Psa. 95:11)*

19 So we see that they were not able to enter in because of unbelief[6].

Chapter 4

1 Therefore, Let us fear, lest while the promise of entering into his rest remains, lest some among you find they are falling short from entering.

---

5 The Aramaic word is "*qarya*" which comes from the root of "*varyikra*" which is the name of the book of Leviticus. Paul is making a word play on the changing of the Levitical priesthood to Melchizedek.

6 Paul uses the Aramaic word Kumrea, instead of Cohen for priest showing that Yahshua was a High Priest of Melchizedek not Levi. A large portion of this epistle is to show the change of priesthood. (1Pe 2:9)

1 Both Moses and Yahshua were mediators, delivers, intercessors and prophets who got direct revelation from YHWH without an intermediary.

2 Paul is showing the superiority of the Melchizedek order to the Levitical one.

3 Joh 2:18-21

---

4 Num 14:22-23, Jude 5, Ex 16:2-8, 1Cor 10:1-12

5 Practicing sin without repentance will lead to the hardening of the heart and quenching of the Holy Spirit (1Joh 5:16-18).

6 Obedience is the evidence of faith and both are needed to enter Yahweh's kingdom. They go hand in hand and don't contradict each other. (Heb 11:6, Ro 3:31, Ro 4:3, 16-25)

2 For, indeed, we have had the good news preached to us, even as they also; but the Word did not profit those hearing it, not having been mixed with faith in the ones who heard.

3 For we who have believed, will enter into the rest, even as He said, "As I swore in My wrath, they shall not enter into My rest," for behold, the works of Elohim were from the very foundation of the world[1]. *(Ps 95:11)*

4 For He has spoken concerning the Sabbath, "And Elohim rested from all His works on the seventh day." *(Gen. 2:2)*

5 And here again he said, "They shall not enter into My rest."

6 There was a chance for some to enter into it, but they to whom the good news was first preached did not enter in on account of disobedience,

7 He again marks out a certain day, saying in David, Today after so long a time, according as He has said, "Today, if you hear His voice, do not harden your hearts." *(Psa. 95:7, 8)*

8 For if Yahoshua the son of Nun had given them rest, then He would not have afterward spoken about another day[2].

9 It is therefore the duty of the people of Elohim to keep the Sabbath[3].

10 For he who has entered into His rest, has also ceased from his own works, as Elohim did from His[4]. *(Gen. 2:2)*

11 Therefore, let us strive to enter into that rest, that not anyone fall in the same example of disobedience[5].

12 For the Word of YAHWEH is living, and powerfully working, and sharper than every two-edged sword, and piercing as far as the division of both soul and spirit, of both joints and marrow and bones, and able to discern the thoughts and intentions of the heart[6].

13 And there is no creature hidden from His sight; but all things are naked and laid open to His eyes, with whom we are to answer.

14 We have therefore a great High Priest who has passed through the heavens, Yahshua, the Son of Elohim, let us remain firm in His faith.

15 For we have not a high priest, who

---

1 There were 6 days for creation, the 7th day was the rest of the Sabbath, there is 6,000 yrs for mans' self motivated system, then the 7th millennium will be the rest of YHWH and His kingdom to this earth. One must fully believe this and live for that rest (kingdom) each day. The Sabbath is a weekly reminder of that rest and kingdom. (Ps 90:4, 2 Pe 3:8)

2 The Sabbath has always been the 7th day, which is known as Saturday on the Roman calendar. (Acts 13:27,42,44, Acts 15:21, Acts 16:13, Acts 17:2. Acts 18:4, Is 56:1-8)

3 The Sabbath is still clearly a requirement in the New Testament as it is the very sign of identity to being a child of YHWH (Ex 31:12-19). In both the Aramaic and the Greek text the word for Sabbath in this verse is used as a verb that it is something the believer must "***be doing***", not simply believing. The word for Sabbath in Hebrew in Gen 2:1 is Shabbat and literally means to rest and Paul is equating the millennial rest and our rest from sin in Messiah with the Sabbath rest. It shows who the Creator is and gives Him honor for His creation.

4 In Leviticus 23:2 when it states to have *"a holy gathering*" on the Sabbath this word literally means a rehearsal and each Sabbath when we rest from our own works we honor Yahweh as Creator and rehearse for His soon coming Kingdom where He will be sovereign over all and mankind's work of selfishness and envy and greed inspired by Satan will have ceased forever.

5 Again comparing the weekly 7th day Sabbath with the 7th millennium and encouraging the believer to focus each Sabbath to be able to have the faith to enter Yahweh's kingdom.

6 The Torah should convict us to both obedience and faith, as you need one to have the other. (Acts 2:37, Luk 2:35)

cannot share our infirmities; but we have one who was tempted in everything as we are, yet without sin. *(Is 53:4)*

16 Therefore, let us draw near with confidence to the throne of grace, that we may receive mercy, and we may find grace in time of need. *(Heb 2:18)*

Chapter 5

1 For every high priest being taken from men is appointed on behalf of men in the things respecting Elohim, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins;

2 and he can humble himself[1], and have compassion on those who are ignorant and go astray, for he himself is also subject to weaknesses[2].

3 And, therefore, he is obliged just as he offers sacrifices for the people, so likewise that he also present an offering for himself, for his own sins.

4 And no one takes the honor to himself, but he being called by Elohim, even as Aaron was also. *(Ex 28:1)*

5 So also the Messiah has not glorified Himself to become a high priest, but He glorified the one who said to Him, "You are My Son; today I have begotten You[3]." *(Psa. 2:7)*

6 As He also says in another place, "You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek[4]," *(Psa. 110:4)*

7 Even when He was clothed in flesh He offered both petitions and supplications with strong crying and tears, to Him being able to save Him from death, and verily He was heard;

8 and though He was a good Son, because of the fear and suffering which he endured, He learned obedience.

9 And having been perfected, He came to be the Author of eternal salvation to all the ones obeying Him[5],

10 having been called out by YAHWEH as a High Priest according to the order of Melchizedek.*(Ps 110:4)*

11 Concerning whom we have much to say, but it is difficult to explain, since you have become dull in your hearing.

12 By now you should be teachers because you have been a long time in training; but even now you need to be taught again the beginning fundamentals of the words of Elohim, and you are still in need of milk, and not of solid food; *(Is 28:9)*

13 For everyone partaking of milk is without experience in the Word of righteousness, for he is a babe.

14 But strong meat is for those full grown, having exercised the faculties through habit, for discernment of both good and bad[6].

Chapter 6

1 Therefore let us leave the elementary word of the Messiah, and let us proceed on to the completion. Why do you lay again another foundation[7] for the repentance from dead works, and for the faith in Elohim,

2 and for the doctrine of baptism,

---

1 The Greek texts omits this phrase about humility.

2 Can also mean sickness. Is 53:3-4

3 Math 3:16-17, Joh 8:54

4 Melchizedek is an order and a title but not a personal name. Yahshua is eternally the High priest of the order and we are training to be priests under Him (Rev 5:10).

5 1Pe 2:20-25

6 Discernment comes through experience and experience comes through habit. Repetition is the mother of skill, a true believer must be reading the bible daily, praying without ceasing, fasting often, and meditating on the word of YHWH each day.

and for the laying on of hands[1], and for the resurrection from the dead[2], and for the eternal judgment [3]?

3 If indeed YAHWEH permits, this we will do.

4 For it is impossible for those who have once descended to immersion, and having tasted of the heavenly gift, and becoming sharers of the Holy Spirit,

5 and tasting the good Word of Elohim, and the works of power of the world to come,

6 and having fallen away, it is impossible for them again to renew to repentance, for they crucify the Son of YAHWEH a second time, and put Him to open shame[4].

7 For the earth that drinks in the rain which comes often upon it, and produces herbs that are useful to those for whom it is cultivated, receives blessing from Elohim.

8 "But, if it should bear thorns and thistles," it is rejected and near a curse, and in the end will be burned up. *(Gen. 3:17, 18, Mk 4:7, 18-19)*

9 But, in regard to you, my brethren, we are persuaded better things, and things pertaining to life, even though we speak in this manner.

10 For Elohim is not unjust, to forget your work and the labor of love which you showed to His name, ministering to the saints, and now are ministering.

11 But we desire each of you to show the same eagerness, to the full assurance of the hope to the end;

12 that you not become slothful, but imitators of those who through faith and long-suffering are inheriting the promises.

13 For YAHWEH having made a promise to Abraham, since He had no one greater to swear by, "He swore by Himself,"

14 saying, "Surely blessing I will bless you, and multiplying I will multiply you." *(Gen. 22:16, 17-18)*

15 And so, being patient, he obtained the promise.

16 For men indeed swear by one greater than themselves, and in every dispute that occurs among them, the true settlement of it is by an oath..

17 Therefore, YAHWEH, being abundantly willing to show to the heirs of the promise, that his promising was irreversible, He sealed it by an oath;

18 so that, by the promise and the oath which change not, and in which Elohim cannot lie, we find courage to hold fast to the hope that has been promised to us by Him in whom we have taken refuge; *(Tit 1:2)*

19 which we have as an anchor of the soul, both certain and sure, and it enters into that within the veil, *(Lev. 16:12)*

20 where Yahshua entered as forerunner for us, having become a High Priest forever, according to the order of Melchizedek. *(Ps 110:1-4)*

---

7 Paul is not saying to forget these basic doctrines but to build from them and move on to perfection. It is a mystery why many believers do not even believe these basic tenets of the one true faith.

1 Acts 2:37-38, Acts 8:12-19, 10:47-48, 16:22-33, 19:1-6, 1 Pe 3:21, Lk 13:1-5, Num 27:15-23, 1 Sam 16:10-13

2 1Cor 15:51-58, 1Thes 4:14-18, Math 22:23-32

3 Rev 20:10-15, 2 Cor 5:10

4 If you are blinded and don't know the truth, then YHWH can judge your heart and intention on judgment day (Luk 12:48, Ro 2:14-16), but if you have been baptized into the New Covenant and have received His Holy Spirit and your mind knows the truth and you willingly turn back on it and continue to sin, then that person would be so hardened by the sin that he would never repent and therefore go to the Lake of Fire. (Heb 10:26-32, Joh 9:39-41)

Chapter 7

1 For this "Melchizedek[1], king of Salem, priest of the Most High Elohim," the one meeting Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings, "and blessing him;"
2 to whom also Abraham "divided a tenth from all," first being interpreted, king of righteousness; and then also king of Salem, which is, king of peace[2],
3 whose Father and mother are not written in the genealogies , nor the beginning of His days, nor the end of His life, but as the Son of Elohim, His priesthood remains forever[3].
4 Now behold how great this One was, to whom even the patriarch Abraham gave tithes and paid head tax;
5 For they of the sons of Levi who received the priesthood, were authorized by the Torah that they should take tithes from the people; even from their own brethren who also came out of the loins of Abraham[4].
6 But this man, who is not recorded in their genealogies, took tithes from Abraham; and blessed him who had received the promise.
7 But it is beyond controversy, that the inferior is blessed by his superior[5].
8 And here, men who die, receive the tithes; but there He of whom the scripture testifies that he lives receives them[6].
9 And through Abraham, as one may say, even Levi who receives tithes, was himself tithed.
10 For he was yet in his father's loins when Melchizedek met him.
11 If, therefore, perfection had been reached by the Levitical priesthood, by which the Torah was enacted for the people; what further need was there for another priest to rise after the order of Melchizedek? Otherwise the scriptures would have said that He would be after the order of Aaron[7].
12 But as there is a change in the priesthood, of necessity a change in the instruction of Torah also occurs[8].
13 For He of whom these things were

---

1 Melchizedek is a title and an order, but not a personal name.

2 Only Yahshua holds these titles and is clearly Melchizedek (Gen 14:17-20, Jer 23:5-6)

3 We see this eternal priesthood even in the Garden of Eden as when Adam sinned, Yahshua had to sacrifice the first animal showing that sin sheds innocent blood (Gen 3:21). The word "*like*" here means "*the same*", Paul is revealing Yahshua as Melchizedek.

4 Tithing was instituted way before the covenant at Mount Sinai and the Levitical priesthood (Gen 28:22, Gen 14:17-20), but YHWH shared His tithe with Levi during the period of the Temple sacrifices, Num 18:6-14.

5 Showing the far superiority that Yahshua as Melchizedek has to Abraham, a human.

6 Quoting from Ps 110;4, showing that Melchizedek is an eternal title and an eternal being.

7 Clearly as verse 19 will show the Levitical order with the added ceremonial law and sacrifices was simply a bridge to get the nation of Israel from Mount Sinai until the Messiah would come.

8 The issue on hand is tithing. Now that Melchizedek has taken over for Levi who receives the tithe? This verse is showing that there is not an abrogation of the tithing law, simply a change in the instruction on who is to receive the tithe. In the 1st covenant YHWH allowed Levi a share of it, and now in the New Covenant the tithe is still to be for the building of the spiritual sanctuary and would be collected by the elders for the spiritual work of YHWH. The principle is the same. Some have wrongly asserted that this is speaking of the whole Torah; when read in context nothing could be further from the truth, the issue at hand is simply where does the tithe go under the Melchizedek order.

spoken, was born of another tribe, of which no one ever ministered at the altar.

14 For it is evident that our Master has risen out of Judah, as to which tribe Moses spoke nothing concerning priesthood.

15 And it is still more abundantly clear because He said that another priest would arise according to the order of Melchizedek[1],

16 who has not become so according to a law of a fleshly command, but according to the power of life which abides forever.

17 For it is testified, "You are a priest forever according to the order of Melchizedek[2]." *(Psa. 110:4)*

18 And the change which took place in the former law, was made on account of its weaknesses, and because it had fulfilled its usefulness[3].

19 For the *(Levitical)* Law perfected nothing, but a bringing in of a better hope, through which we draw near to Elohim. (*Heb 10:1-4)*

20 And He confirmed it for us by oath;

21 For they became priests without an oath; but this man by an oath. As He said to Him by David: "YAHWEH hath sworn, and will not lie, Thou art a priest for ever, after the order of Melchizedek." *(Psa. 110:4, Heb 6:16-18)*

22 All these things make a better covenant because Yahshua is its surety. *(Heb 8:6)*

23 And these priests were many, but being mortal they are prevented from continuing because of death;

24 but this one, because He is immortal, has the priesthood which remains forever[4].

25 And from this He is able to save forever those who come to Elohim through Him, because He lives forever to intercede on their behalf[5].

26 For this is the kind of High Priest proper for us: holy, harmless, undefiled, and separated from sinners, and having become higher than the heavens;

27 who has no need, as do the high priests, to offer sacrifices day by day, first for His own sins, then for those of the people. For He did this once for all, offering up Himself.

28 For the *(Levitical)* Law makes men high priests who are imperfect, but the word of the oath[6] which came after the *(Levitical)* Law appoints the Son who is perfect forever.

Chapter 8

1 Now the sum of the whole thing is this: We have a High Priest, who is

---

1 The tithe is still a commandment but is now collected by the elders instead of the Levites.

2 This verse again shows that Melchizedek can only be Yahshua as no other being except YHWH is eternal and immortal (1Tim 6:16)

3 Speaking of the changing of the priesthood from Levi to Melchizedek. (Gal 3:19) Under the Levites the tithe went to buy the sacrifices and support a system that never removed the penalty of sin. Now the tithe would go to the building of the spiritual sanctuary, which removes all sin and brings the message of the good news of Yahshua to the world.

4 This can only be Yahshua who bears the title of "***Melchizedek***" meaning "***King of Righteousness"*** as there is only one High ***Priest.***

5 There is no need for a second high priest as the the first one is eternal.

6 Speaking about the oath in Ps 110:4, that Yahshua is an eternal priest bearing the title Melchizedek. Ps 110:5 also calls Melchizedek Yahweh, as Yahweh is a family name. In Ps 110, there are clearly 2 YHWH's, one sitting on the eternal throne and in verse 5 of Ps 110 one seated next to Him.

seated on the right hand of the throne
of the Majesty in heaven[1]: *(Psa. 110:1)*
2 And He is the minister of the
sanctuary, and of the true tabernacle,
which Elohim has pitched, and not
man.
3 For every high priest is set in place
to offer both gifts and sacrifices; from
which it is necessary for this One also
to have something which He may
offer[2].
4 For if He were on earth, He would
not be a priest, there being those
priests offering gifts[3] according to the
Law,
5 who serve the pattern of and
shadow of heavenly things, even as
Moses was divinely warned, being
about to make the tabernacle: For He
says, "See that you make all things
according to the pattern being shown
to you in the mount." *(Ex. 25:40)*
6 But now, Yahshua the Messiah
hath received a ministry which is
greater than that: also by so much
more, He is a Mediator of a better
covenant, and so are the promises
greater than the first covenant[4].
7 For if that first was faultless, there
would have been no need for a second.
8 For finding fault with them[5], He
said to them, "Behold, days are
coming, says YAHWEH, and I will
make a new covenant with the house
of Israel and the house of Judah;
9 not according to the covenant
which I made with their fathers in the
day of My taking hold of their hand to
lead them out of the land of Egypt;
because they did not continue in My
covenant, and I rejected them, says
YAHWEH.
10 Because this is the covenant
which I will covenant with the house of
Israel after those days, says
YAHWEH, I will put My Torah into
their mind, and I will inscribe it on
their hearts[6], and I will be their
Elohim, and they shall be My people."
11 And they shall no more teach each
one their neighbor, and each one his
brother, saying, Know YAHWEH;
because all shall know Me, from the
least of them to their great ones.
12 For I will be merciful to their
unrighteousness, and I will not at all
remember their sins and their lawless
deeds." *(Jer. 31:31-34)*
13 In the saying, New, He has made
the first old. And the thing being made
old and obsolete is near disappearing[7].

---

1 Yahshua is clearly Melchizedek and is not the Father Yahweh but is seated at His right hand of power in Heaven. (Acts 2:33, 7:55-56, Math 26:64, Ps 110:1, 4-5)

2 Heb 5:1

3 This is written in the present tense showing the temple was still standing at this time.

4 It is a better priesthood and we can have the penalty of our sins removed, something that could not happen in the first covenant which was only a shadow. In the first, the sins were simply laid on the altar and covered from year to year. The day of Atonement, which is Yom Kippur in Hebrew means covering, not removing. They were not removed until Yahshua paid the penalty for all sin, when He was crucified. Clearly there are 2 distinct separate covenants and the New Covenant is superior (Heb 7:22)

5 The weakness of the first covenant at Mount Sinai was not the Torah, which is Holy, just and good (Ro 7:12), but the inability for the people to keep it since the Torah can tell you right from wrong (Ps 119:105) but it can't change your heart.

6 The Torah or instruction of YHWH stays the same in any covenant of Israel. So does the people (Israel) and the land of Israel. These 3 aspects never change in any biblical covenant.

7 It is the Old Covenant or contract which had no avenue to forgive sin, which has grown old and is disappearing, not the Torah, which is forever (Psa. 111:7-8)

Chapter 9

1 Truly then, the first covenant also had ordinances of service, and the earthly holy place.
2 For the first tabernacle was prepared, in which was both the menorah and the table, and the setting out of the loaves, which is called holy.
3 But behind the second veil is a tabernacle, being called Holy of Holies,
4 having a golden altar of incense[1], and the ark of the covenant covered around on all sides with gold, in which was the golden pot having the manna, and Aaron's rod that budded, and the tablets of the covenant;
5 and above it the cherubs of glory overshadowing the mercy-seat (about which now is not enough time to speak piece by piece).
6 And these having been prepared thus, the priests go into the first tabernacle through all, completing the services.
7 But into the second the high priest goes alone once in the year[2], not without blood, which he offers for himself and the ignorance's of the people;
8 the Holy Spirit signifying by this that the way of the Holy of Holies has not yet been made manifest, the first tabernacle still having been standing;
9 and it was a symbol, for that time, during which oblation and sacrifices were offered that could not make perfect the conscience of him who offered them:
10 but only in food and drink, and various washings, and fleshly ordinances, until the time of reformation has been imposed[3].
11 But Messiah having appeared as a High Priest of the coming good things, through the greater and more perfect tabernacle not made with hands, that is, not of this creation,
12 nor through the blood of goats and of calves, but through His own blood, He entered once for all into the Holy of Holies, having obtained for us everlasting salvation.
13 For if the blood of bulls and goats, and the sprinkling of ashes of a heifer[4] on those having been defiled, sanctifies them to the purity of the flesh,
14 by how much more the blood of

1 This verse states the altar of incense is behind the veil. There were doors between the holy place and Holy of Holies and possibly the altar of incense could have been behind the veil but before the doors. 1 Kgs 6:22, 31-32.

2 On the day of Atonement or Yom Kippur

3 Clearly showing the ceremonial law of ritual clean and unclean with a ritual washing called a mikvah are superseded in the New Covenant by the ultimate one time Mikvah of baptism. Since the sacrifice of Messiah is in perpetuity (Heb 10:12), there is no need to be re-baptized over and over. The ceremonial law was not part of the original covenant but was added with the Levitical order and thereby fulfilled its purpose and is superseded by the Melchizedek priesthood. This has nothing to do with the physical laws of clean and unclean in Leviticus 11 and 12.

4 Speaking of the ashes of the Red Heifer from Numbers chapter 19, which was placed in water and used for the ceremonial washings. The point being made is if ashes of an animal can ceremonially cleanse a person how much more should the actual blood of Yahshua cleanse our conscience from dead works. The Red Heifer was the only sacrifice that was done at the third altar called the Miphkad altar across the Kidron valley on the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives. The very place where Yahshua was crucified. This was also the only sacrifice that the Levites had to completely burn and had no authority to partake of because it was a Melchizedek sacrifice not a Levitical one (Heb 13:10-12)

Messiah who through the eternal Spirit offered Himself without blemish to YAHWEH, will purify your conscience from dead works, to serve the living Elohim[1]!
15 And for this reason He became the Mediator of the New Covenant, that He might by his death be redemption, to them who had transgressed the first covenant[2]; so that they, who are called to the eternal inheritance, might receive the promise.
16 For where there is a testament[3], it shows the death of him who made it.
17 For a covenant is affirmed over those dead, since it never has force when he who has made it is living.
18 For this reason not even the first covenant was confirmed without blood.
19 For when the whole ordinance had been propounded by Moses to all the people, according to the Torah; Moses took the blood of a heifer, and water, with scarlet wool and hyssop, and sprinkled upon the scrolls and upon all the people;
20 saying, "This is the blood of the covenant which is ordained to you by YAHWEH." *(Ex. 24:8)*
21 With that blood he also sprinkled upon the tabernacle, and upon all the vessels of service:
22 And almost all things are purified by blood according to the Torah; and apart from shedding of blood no remission occurs. *(Lev. 17:11)*
23 Then it was needful for the patterns of the things in the heavens to be cleansed with these; but the heavenly things themselves by better sacrifices than these.
24 For Messiah did not enter into the Holy of Holies made by hands, which is a symbol of the true one, but into Heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of YAHWEH on our behalf,
25 not that He should often offer Himself even as the high priest enters into the Holy of Holies year by year with blood of others;
26 otherwise He would have been obliged to have suffered many times from the foundation of the world. But now once for all, at the completion of the ages, He did offer Himself to abolish sin.
27 And as it is reserved to men once to die, and after this, Judgment[4];
28 so Messiah having been once offered "to bear the sins of many," Messiah shall appear a second time without our sins for the salvation of those who are waiting for Him[5]. *(Isa. 53:12)*

Chapter 10

1 For the *(Levitical)* Law had in it a shadow of the good things to come, but not the substance of those things themselves. Appearing year by year with the same sacrifices, which they offer continually, they never are able to perfect those who offered them.
2 Otherwise, if they had once been perfected they would have ceased to be

[1] It is impossible to be ceremonially unclean when you have been cleansed by the eternal sacrifice of Yashshua.
[2] This word can also mean contract
[3] Literally a will such as a last will and testament
[4] There will be a judgment day when Yahshua will judge the works of everyone. (2Cor 5:10, Rev 20:13, Acts 17:30-31)
[5] Messiah already came to pay the penalty of sin to those who will accept it, but the second coming is about judging the world for their lack of repentance since His first coming and rewarding those who have followed His commands. (Joh 14:1-3, Is 61:1-2)

offered? For from henceforth, their minds would not have driven them into the sins from which they had once been cleansed.
3 But in those sacrifices they remembered their sins year by year,
4 for it is not possible for the blood of bulls and goats to take away *(the penalty of)* sins[1].
5 For this reason, coming into the world, He says, "Sacrifice and offering You did not desire, but You prepared a body for Me[2].
6 You did not delight in burnt offerings and sin offerings."
7 "Then I said, Lo, I come, as it is written about me in the beginning of the Books I delight to do Your will, O Elohim." *(Psa. 40:6 -8)*
8 Above, when He said, "You did not desire nor were pleased with sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and sacrifices concerning sins," which are offered according to the Levitical Law[3],
9 then He said, "Lo, I come to do Your will, O Elohim." He takes away the first in order that He may set up the second[4];
10 by which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Yahshua Messiah once for all.

11 And indeed every priest stands day by day ministering, and often offering the same sacrifices, which can never take away *(the penalty of)* sins.
12 But He, offering but one sacrifice for sins, "sat down" in perpetuity[5] "at the right hand" of YAHWEH,
13 from then on expecting "until His enemies are placed as a footstool" under His feet. *(Psa. 110:1)*
14 For by one offering He has perfected in perpetuity the ones being sanctified.
15 And the Holy Spirit witnesses to us also. For after having said before,
16 "This is the covenant which I will covenant to them after those days, says YAHWEH: Giving My Torah on their hearts, and I will write them on their minds;"
17 also He adds, "I will not at all still remember their sins and their lawless deeds." *(Jer. 31:33, 34)*
18 But where remission of these is, there is no longer offering concerning sins[6].
19 Therefore, brothers, having

---

1 When Yahshua magnified the Torah (Math 5:17-48) He showed that all humans by intent are murderers, adulterers, blasphemers, and idolaters, all which according to Torah bring the death penalty. Deut 19:21 states eye for eye, tooth for tooth and life for life. Killing an animal could not take away the penalty for those sins because an animal's life is not equal with a human life. Only by Yahshua being the eternal Son of Yahweh and creator of everyone can His one eternal sacrifice pay the penalty for all sin.

2 Quoted from Ps 40:6 and a most clear reference to the Messiah coming in an earthly body to die for the sins of the people.

3 Jer 7:21-23 Originally, Yahweh never gave command about the Levitical sacrificial system until after the golden calf incident. Up to then, Levi was to be a shadow of the High Priest and all 12 tribes were to be priests (Ex 19:5-6), after the golden calf, the Levitical order was set up as a mediator for Israel until Messiah would come and restore the Melchizedek order.

4 Clearly, there was a first covenant and there is a New Covenant. They are two separate covenants, although they have similar requirements. In the New covenant the priesthood and the agreements about sin are changed but the Torah, the people (Israel) and the land are the same.

5 Yahshua's sacrifice is continual.

6 Since Yahshua's sacrifice is in perpetuity there is no reason to have any other sacrifice of an animal to those under the New Covenant order.

confidence for the entering of the Holy of Holies by the blood of Yahshua[1],
20 which He consecrated for us, a new and living way through the veil; that is, His flesh;
21 and having a Great Priest over the house of YAHWEH,
22 let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, our hearts having been sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our body having been washed in pure water; *(1Pe 3:20-22)*
23 let us hold fast the confession of the hope unyielding, for He who has promised is faithful.
24 And let us consider one another, to incitement of love and of good works,
25 not forsaking the assembling together of ourselves, as is the custom of some, but exhorting, and by so much more as you see the Day drawing near.
26 For if we are willfully sinning after receiving the full knowledge of the truth, there remains no more sacrifice concerning sins[2],
27 but he is ready for the fearful judgment and "zealous fire being about to consume the adversaries." *(Isa. 26:11)*
28 For if he, who transgressed the law of Moses, died without mercies, at the mouth of two or three witnesses; *(Deut. 17:6)*
29 how much worse punishment do you think will be thought worthy to receive, the one trampling the Son of YAHWEH, and having counted the blood of the covenant as common in which he was sanctified, and having insulted the Spirit of grace[3]?
30 For we know Him who has said, "Vengeance belongs to Me; I will repay," says YAHWEH. And again, "YAHWEH will judge His people." *(Deut. 32:35, 36, Ps 135:14)*
31 It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living Elohim. *(Math 10:28)*
32 Therefore, remember the former days, those in which after you received baptism, you endured much tribulation;
33 indeed being exposed both to trouble and reproach you became an object of ridicule; and you have become companions of those men who have endured these things.
34 For also you had pity on those in prison; and you accepted the seizure of your possessions with joy, knowing yourselves to have a better and abiding possession in Heaven.
35 Then do not throw away your confidence, which has great reward.
36 For you have need of patience, that having done the will of Elohim you may obtain the promise.
37 For, the time is very short and He who is to come, will come, "and will not delay." *(Hab. 2:3, Math 24:42-44)*
38 "But the righteous shall live by faith;" "yet if he draws back," "My soul is not pleased in him." *(Hab. 2:3-4; Zeph. 1:6; Mal. 1:10)*
39 But, we do not belong to those drawing back, which leads to perdition; but to the faith which restores our soul. (*Math 24:45-47)*

Chapter 11

1 Now faith is the substance of things being hoped, and it was the substance of things that have come to pass, and

[1] Math 27:50-51, by Yahshua paying the penalty for our sins, true covenant believers now have direct access to the throne of YHWH when praying by Yahshua's sacrifice. (Rev 8:3-4)

[2] Heb 6:4-6, 1Tim 1:12-13, Acts 17:30

[3] Num 15:30, Math 12:32, 1Joh 5:16-17, Heb 6:4-6

the evidence of things not having been seen[1].

2 For by this the elders obtained witness.

3 By faith we understand the ages to have been framed by the Word of YAHWEH, so that the things seen should not come into being out of things that already appeared[2].

4 By faith Abel offered a greater sacrifice to YAHWEH than Cain, by which he obtained witness to be righteous, Elohim testifying over his gifts; and through it, even though he is dead, yet he speaks.

5 By faith "Enoch was translated so as not to see death, and was not found, because Elohim translated him." For before his translation, he had obtained witness to have been pleasing to Elohim. *(Gen. 5:24 Heb 11:13)*

6 But without faith it is impossible to please YAHWEH. For it is right that the one drawing near to YAHWEH should believe that He is, and that He is a rewarder of those that diligently seek him. *(Num 23:19, Ro 4:21-22)*

7 Being divinely warned by YAHWEH about the things not yet having been seen, moved with fear, by faith Noah prepared an ark for the salvation of his house; through which he condemned the world and became heir of the righteousness according to faith. *(Gen 6:13-22)*

8 Having been called out by faith, Abraham obeyed to go forth to a place which he was going to receive for an inheritance; and he went out not understanding where he went.

9 By faith he resided as a foreigner in a land of promise, living in tents with Isaac and Jacob, the joint-heirs of the same promise[3];

10 for he looked forward to a city having the foundations of which the builder and maker is YAHWEH[4].

11 Also by faith Sarah herself received power for conceiving seed even beyond the time of age, and gave birth; since she deemed the One having promised to be faithful.

12 Therefore, from one man failing through age, numbers were born, like the stars in the heavens, and like the sand on the sea shore, which is innumerable. *(Gen. 22:17)*

13 These all died by way of faith, not having received the promises[5], but seeing them from afar, and being persuaded, and having embraced and confessed that they are strangers and pilgrims on the earth.

14 For those saying such things make clear that they seek a fatherland.

15 And truly if they remembered that from which they came out, they had time to return.

16 But now they stretch forth to a better, that is, a heavenly land. Therefore, YAHWEH is not ashamed of them, for Him to be called their Elohim; for He prepared a city for them.

17 By faith Abraham, in his trial, offered up Isaac; and he laid on the altar his only son, whom he had received by promise.

18 as to whom it was said, "In Isaac your Seed shall be called;" *(Gen. 21:12)*

19 and he reasoned within himself that Elohim was able to raise him, even from the dead; and because of

---

1 Faith is not blind belief, but is substance and evidence. (Rev 1:8, Ro 10:17, Jac 2:14-26).

2 This is proof from creation that time started at conjunction not 1 to 3 days later when the crescent moon would appear.

3 A shadow of Sukkot Lev 23:42-43

4 Gal 4:24-26

5 This would include Enoch who is mentioned in verse 5, who would have died and would not be in heaven as many wrongly assume.

this Isaac was given to him as a parable.
20 By faith concerning things to come Isaac blessed Jacob and Esau.
21 By faith when dying, Jacob blessed each of the sons of Joseph, and "worshiped on the top of his staff."
22 When dying, Joseph by faith made mention of the Exodus of the sons of Israel, and he gave orders concerning his bones.
23 Being born, Moses was by faith hidden by his parents three months, because they saw he was a beautiful child; and they did not fear the king's decree.
24 Having become great, Moses by faith refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter,
25 having chosen rather to suffer affliction with the people of Elohim than for a time to have enjoyment of sin;
26 having counted the reproach of Messiah greater riches than the treasures of Egypt, for he was looking to the reward.
27 By faith he left Egypt, not fearing the anger of the king; and endured as if beholding Elohim, who is Invisible.
28 By faith he made the Passover, and the sprinkling of blood, that the one destroying the first-born might not touch them.
29 By faith they passed through the Red Sea, as through dry land; by which, when the Egyptians made the attempt, they were swallowed up.
30 By faith the walls of Jericho fell down, having been circled during seven days.
31 By faith Rahab the innkeeper[1] did not perish with those disobeying, having received the spies with peace.
32 And what more may I say? For the time will fail me telling about Gideon, Barak, and also Samson and Jephthah, and also David and Samuel, and the rest of the prophets,
33 who through faith overcame kingdoms, worked out righteousness, obtained promises, stopped the mouths of lions,
34 quenched the power of fire, escaped the mouths of the sword, acquired power from weakness, became strong in war; made armies of foreigners to yield.
35 Restored to women their sons, raised people from the dead; but others were beaten to death, not accepting deliverance, that they might obtain a better resurrection.
36 And others received trial of mockings and of scourgings; yea, more, of bonds and of prison:
37 they were stoned; they were tried; they were sawn in two; they died by murder of sword; they went about in sheepskins and in goatskins, being destitute, afflicted, and ill-treated;
38 of whom the world was not worthy, wandering in deserts, and mountains, and caves, and the holes of the earth.
39 And having obtained witness through the faith, these all did not obtain the promise[2],
40 YAHWEH having foreseen something better concerning us, that they should not be perfected without us[3].

Chapter 12

1 So therefore, we also, having so great a cloud of witnesses lying around us, having laid aside every weight and the sin which does so easily beset us,

[1] See note on Joshua 2:1.

[2] The reward of the saved is earth not heaven. (Gen 15:18, Gen 17:7-8), these great men of faith are sleeping in the earth waiting the resurrection. (Acts 7:60, Joh 11:11, 1 Thes 4:15, 1 Cor 15:51, Eccl 9:5)

through patience let us also run the race set before us,
2 looking to the Author and perfecter of our faith, Yahshua, who for the joy set before Him endured the torture stake, despising the shame, and sat down at the right hand of the throne of YAHWEH[1]. *(Psa. 110:1)*
3 Consider, therefore, how much He suffered from those sinners, for they were adversaries to their own soul, so that you do not become weary, fainting in your souls.
4 You did not yet resist unto blood, striving against sin.
5 And you have forgotten the exhortation which He speaks with you, as with sons, "My sons, do not despise the chastening of YAHWEH, nor faint while being corrected by Him.
6 For whom YAHWEH loves, He chastens, and disciplines every son with whom He is pleased." *(Prov. 3:11, 12)*
7 If you endure discipline, YAHWEH is dealing with you as with sons; for who is the son whom a father does not discipline?
8 But if you are without discipline, of which all have become sharers, then you are strangers, and not sons. *(Deut 8:5)*
9 Furthermore, indeed we have had fathers of our flesh as correctors, and we respected them. Shall we not much more be subject to the Father of spirits, and we shall live?
10 For they truly disciplined us for a few days according to the thing seeming good to them; but He for our profit, in order for us to partake of His holiness.
11 And all discipline for the present indeed does not seem to be joyous, but grievous; but afterward it gives back peaceable fruit of righteousness to the ones having been exercised by it.
12 Because of this, "straighten the hands" hanging alongside, "and the enfeebled knees;"
13 "and make straight tracks for your feet," that the member which is lame may not suffer, but rather be healed. (*Isa. 35:3; Prov. 4:2)*
14 Eagerly pursue peace and holiness with all, without which no one will see YAHWEH.
15 Watching diligently that not any lack from the grace of YAHWEH, that "no root of bitterness growing up" may crowd "in on you", and through this many are defiled; *(Deut. 29:18)*
16 That not any fornicator, or profane one, as Esau, who for one meal gave up his birthright;
17 for you know also that afterwards desiring to inherit the blessing, he was rejected, for he found no place of repentance, although seeking it out with tears[2]. *(Gen. 27:36-39)*
18 For you have not drawn near to the mountain being touched, and having been lit with fire, and to gloom, and darkness, and storm,
19 and to a sound of a trumpet, and to a voice of words, which those

---

3 All true believers will receive their reward when Yahshua returns to earth. (Joh 14:1-3, Is 62:11). Since no one has received their reward yet, disciples today must show the same faith that these men of Hebrew 11 showed back then. The fact that it clearly states that none of these men received their reward shows that they are not in heaven but sleeping the earth awaiting the resurrection. Even King David, a man after Yahweh's own heart is said to be sleeping in the earth and not in heaven. (Acts 2:29, 34)

1 Acts 7:55-56, Acts 2:33, Heb 8:1, Heb 1:3

2 Worldly sorrow is simply being sorry for not having what one wants and is bred from selfishness. True Elohim guided repentance is a 180% turn from sin, and showing the fruit of that repentance. Esau did not have this and was simply sorry that he lost his blessing (2 Cor 7:10).

hearing begged that not a word be
added to them;
20 for they could not endure what
was commanded. And even a beast, if
it approached the mountain, was to be
stoned. *(Ex. 19:12, 13)*
21 And so fearful was the thing
appearing, Moses said, "I am terrified
and trembling." *(Deut. 9:19)*
22 But you have drawn near Mount
Zion, even the city of the living
Elohim, to a heavenly Jerusalem, and
to the innumerable multitude of
cherubs,
23 and to the congregation of the
first-born, who are enrolled in heaven
and to YAHWEH the judge of all; and
to the spirits of the just, who are
perfected;
24 and to Yahshua the Mediator of a
new covenant, and to the sprinkling of
His blood, which speaks better things
than Abel did.
25 Watch that you do not refuse the
One speaking; for if these did not
escape, who refused Him who divinely
warned them on earth, how much
more shall we not, if we refuse to hear
him who speaks with us from heaven ?
26 whose voice shook the earth then,
but now He has promised, saying, "Yet
once, I will shake not only the earth,
but also the heavens." *(Hag. 2:6)*
27 Now the words "Yet once" make
clear the removal of the things being
shaken, as having been made, so that
the things not being shaken may
remain.
28 For this reason, receiving an
unshakable kingdom, let us have
grace, by which we may serve
YAHWEH pleasingly, with reverence
and awe;
29 for also, "Our Elohim is a
consuming fire." *(Deut. 4:24)*

Chapter 13

1 Let brotherly love remain in you.
2 Do not forget hospitality, for by
this some unknowingly took in
cherubs as guests.
3 Be mindful of the prisoners, as
having been bound with them; of
those suffering misfortune, as you are
human also.
4 Marriage is honorable in all, and
the bed undefiled; but YAHWEH will
judge fornicators and adulterers.
5 Set your way of life without money-
loving, being satisfied with present
things; for He has said, "Not at all will
I leave you, not at all will I forsake
you," never! *(Deut. 31:6)*
6 So that we may boldly say,
"YAHWEH is my helper, and I will
not be afraid. What shall man do to
me?" *(Psa. 118:6)*
7 Remember your leaders who spoke
the Word of Elohim to you,
considering the completeness of their
works, imitate their faith:
8 Yahshua Messiah, the same
yesterday and today and forever.
9 Do not be carried away by various
and strange doctrines; for it is good
that the heart be confirmed by grace,
not by food, for it did not benefit those
who greatly sought after it.
10 We have an altar of which those
which minister in the tabernacle have
no authority to eat[1].
11 For of the animals whose "blood is

[1] Paul is speaking of the sacrifice of the Red Heifer from Numbers 19. This was the only sacrifice not done on the altar in front of the sanctuary, but was done across the Kidron valley at the Miphkad altar on the eastern slope of the Mount of Olives where Yahshua was sacrificed. This was also the place where the ashes were taken of every sin sacrifice that was ever done at the sanctuary of YHWH and placed right below where Yahshua was crucified.

brought" by the high priest "into the Holy of Holies" concerning sins, of these the bodies "are burned outside the camp." *(Lev. 16:2, 27, Num 19:3)*

12 Indeed, because of this, in order that He might sanctify the people by His own blood, Yahshua suffered outside the gate[1].

13 So let us go forth to Him outside the camp bearing His reproach.

14 For we do not have here a permanent city, but we seek the city coming.

15 Then through Him let us offer up a sacrifice of praise to YAHWEH always, that is, the fruit of the lips, giving thanks to His name.

16 But do not be forgetful of doing good and sharing, for Elohim is well pleased with such sacrifices.

17 Listen to your spiritual leaders, and submit to them, for they watch for your souls, giving an account, that they may do this with joy, and not with grieving; for this would be unprofitable to you[2].

18 Pray for us, for we trust that we have a good conscience, in all things wishing to behave well.

19 Especially do I request you to do this, that I may return to you quickly.

20 May the Elohim of peace, who brought up from the dead the great Shepherd of the flock, by the blood of the everlasting covenant, namely Yahshua the Messiah, our Master,

21 perfect you in every good work, in order to do His will, doing in you that which is pleasing in His sight, through Yahshua Messiah, to whom be the glory forever and ever. Amen.

22 And, brothers, I exhort you, to be patient in the word of comfort, for I indeed wrote to you by only a few words.

23 You know the brother, Timothy, having been freed, with whom if I come sooner, I will see you.

24 Greet all those spiritually leading you, also all the saints. Those from Italy greet you.

25 Grace be with you all. Amen[3].

---

1 Paul is clearly stating that Yahshua was crucified at this third altar called also the place of appointment where the Red Heifer was sacrificed.

2 Paul is teaching the benefit of proper judicial order and following the ordained elders that Yahweh has placed for the benefit of the brethren.

3 Normally, the Apostle Paul signs his letters with his name, but in this case due to the fact that this letter was primarily written to the Jewish brethren in Israel whom some were still suspect of Paul due to his persecution of believers before conversion, Paul probably decided not to put his name on it, or when the letter was copied it was left out for the same reason.

Book of Romans 58 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, a slave[1] of Yahshua Messiah, a called apostle, set apart[2] to the good news of Elohim,
2 which He promised before through His prophets in the Holy Scriptures[3],
3 concerning His Son who came of the seed of David according to flesh,[4]
4 who was made known as the Son of Elohim in power, according to the Spirit of holiness, by the resurrection of the dead, Yahshua Messiah our Master;
5 by whom we received grace and apostleship to obedience of faith among all the nations, for His name's sake,
6 among whom are you also, called-out ones of Yahshua Messiah;
7 to all those who are in Rome, beloved of Elohim, called-out saints: Grace and peace to you from YAHWEH our Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.
8 First, I thank my Elohim through Yahshua Messiah for you all, that your faith is spoken of in all the world.
9 For Elohim is my witness, whom I serve in my spirit in the good news of His Son, how without ceasing I make mention of you
10 always at my prayers, beseeching if by any means now at length I shall be blessed by the will of Elohim to come to you.
11 For I long to see you, that I may impart some spiritual gift to you, for the establishing of you;
12 and this is to be comforted together among you, through the faith in one another, both yours and mine.
13 But I do not wish you to be ignorant, brothers, that often I purposed to come to you, and was kept back until the present, that I might have some fruit among you also, even as among the other nations.
14 Greeks and barbarians, the wise and the unwise: I am a debtor, to preach to every man.
15 And so I am eager to preach to you also who are at Rome.
16 For I am not ashamed of the good news of Messiah, for it is the power of Elohim to salvation to everyone believing, both to Jew first, and to the Aramean;
17 for in it the righteousness of Elohim is revealed from faith to faith; even as it has been written, "But the just shall live by faith." *(Hab. 2:4)*
18 For the wrath of Elohim from heaven is revealed against all the iniquity and wickedness of men, who unjustly suppress the truth.
19 because the thing known of Elohim is clearly known within them, for YAHWEH revealed it to them.
20 For, from the foundations of the world, the invisible things of Elohim are clearly seen and understood, in the things He created, even His eternal power and divinity; so that they might be without excuse;
21 because they knew YAHWEH, and did not glorify Him and give thanks to Him as Elohim, but became vain in their imaginations, and their unwise heart was darkened.
22 Professing to be wise, they became foolish
23 and changed the glory of the incorruptible Elohim into a likeness of an image of a corruptible man, and of

---

1 This word also means servant.
2 Set apart- in Aramaic "*Perysh*". The root of this word is the same as for Pharisee.
3 Some falsely claim that Paul spoke against the Torah and in this epistle alone there are more than 80 quotes from the Old Testament or Tanach.
4 2 Sam 7:11-16

birds, and four-footed animals, and creeping things[1]. *(Ps 106:19-20)*
24 Because of this, Elohim gave them up to filthy lusts of their hearts, and their bodies to be dishonored among themselves,
25 who changed the truth of Elohim into the lie, and worshiped and served the created thing more than the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen.
26 Because of this, Elohim gave them up to dishonorable passions, for even their females changed the natural use of their sex to that contrary to nature.
27 And so also their males forsook the use of females, which is natural, and burned with lust toward one another, male with male[2], they did what is shameful, and received in themselves the just recompense of their error.
28 And as they did not determine within themselves to know Elohim, YAHWEH has given them over to a vain mind; that they might do what they ought not,[3]
29 having been filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, iniquity, covetousness, malice, being full of envy, murder, quarrels, deceit, evil habits, becoming whisperers,
30 slanderers, haters of Elohim, insolent, proud, braggarts, inventors of evil things, weak minded, disobedient to parents,
31 without discernment, covenant breakers, without natural affection, unforgiving, unmerciful, *(1Tim 3:1-3)*
32 who knowing the righteous judgment of YAHWEH, that those practicing such things He condemns to death, not only do they do them, but they also associate with those who practice them. *(1 Cor 15:3, Pr 13:20)*

Chapter 2

1 Therefore, O man, you are without excuse, everyone who judges, for in that in which you judge the other, you condemn yourself; for you, those judging, practice the same things.
2 But we know that the judgment of Elohim is according to truth on those that practice such things.
3 And, O man, the one judging those practicing such things, and doing them, do you think that you will escape the judgment of Elohim?[4]
4 Or do you abuse the riches of His kindness and forbearance, and the opportunity He has given you, not knowing that the kindness of YAHWEH leads you to repentance[5]?
5 But, because of the hardness of your unrepentant heart, you are treasuring up a store of wrath against the day of wrath, and against the revelation of the righteous judgment of Elohim:
6 He "will give to each according to his deeds[6]:" *(Psa. 62:12 Rev 20:12)*
7 everlasting life truly to those who with patience in good work seeking glory and honor and immortality;
8 but to the ones who are stubborn, and do not obey the truth but obey iniquity, He will render anger and wrath, *(Ro 6:23)*
9 trouble and pain on every soul of man that works out evil, both of Jew first, and also of Gentile.
10 But glory and honor and peace

---

1 This describes the false evolutionists precisely.
2 Homosexuality is not natural and is sin. Lev 18:22, Lev 20:13
3 Since mankind has a fallen nature when he abandons the Torah for his own morality it will always end up with perversion.
4 Math 7:1-5
5 Even repentance is a gift from YHWH, but as it states in verse 5 one must open their heart to receive it.
6 Ps 62:12, Rev 20:12, Ja 2:17-26, 2 Cor 5:10

will be to everyone working out good, both to the Jew first, and to the Gentile.
11 For there is no respect of persons with YAHWEH. *(Acts 10:34)*
12 For as many as have sinned without the Torah will also perish without the Torah. And as many as sinned within the Torah will be judged through the Torah.
13 For not the hearers of the Torah are righteous with Elohim, but the doers of the Torah shall be justified[1].
14 For when pagans not having the Torah do by nature the things contained in the Torah, they not having the Torah are a law unto themselves,
15 who show the work of the Torah written in their hearts, their conscience witnessing with them, and their thoughts either accusing or even excusing one another
16 in a day when Elohim judges the hidden actions of men, as my good news teaches, through Yahshua Messiah[2].
17 Behold, you who are called a Jew, and trust in the Torah, and boast in Elohim,
18 and because you know His will, and the things that must be observed, being instructed out of the Torah,
19 and you have confidence in yourself that you are a guide of blind ones, and a light to those in darkness,
20 an instructor of foolish ones, a teacher of children, you are the pattern of knowledge and of the truth as embodied in the Torah.
21 Now you teach others, but you fail to teach yourself? You preach that men should not steal, yet you steal.
22 You preach that men should not commit adultery, and you commit adultery. You despise idols, and yet you rob temples?
23 You are proud of the Torah, yet you dishonor Elohim through the breaking of the Torah.
24 For the name of YAHWEH is blasphemed among the nations through you, even as it has been written[3]: *(Isa. 52:5)*
25 For circumcision is only profitable if you fulfill the Torah, but if you are a transgressor of Torah, your circumcision becomes uncircumcision.
26 If then, the uncircumcision keeps the statutes of the Torah, will not his uncircumcision be counted for circumcision?
27 And the uncircumcision, which from its nature fulfills the Torah naturally, will judge you; who, with the scripture, and with circumcision, transgresses against the Torah.
28 For it is not the one who is outwardly a Jew that is the real Jew, nor is circumcision that which is seen in the flesh;
29 but he is a Jew that is one inwardly, and circumcision is of the heart, in spirit, not literally; of whom

---

[1] The standard of ones judgment is the Torah and it's the basis for righteousness Ps 119:172

[2] This time is the white throne judgment (Rev 20:11-13) where each person will be judged by the accountability of what he knew and understood based on the 10 commandments (Eccl 12:13). There are many gentiles who have never understood the bible yet they have chosen not to steal or lie, or commit adultery and they will be rewarded at this time or punished if they are sinners.

[3] The Third commandment states that you shall not take the name of YHWH "i*n vain*". In vain in Hebrew means to change, falsify or make the name of Yahweh common. By Judaism totally never using the sacred name of YHWH even when reading scripture or praying or singing they have made the name common as most do not even know that the Creator's name is Yahweh and gentiles have replaced the name of Yahweh with pagan titles such as "*god"* which is the name of the Babylonian deity. (Is 65:11, Ex 3:15)

the praise is not from men, but from Elohim[1]. *(Deut 10:12-21)*

Chapter 3

1 What then is the superiority of the Jew? Or what is the profit of circumcision?
2 Much in every way. For first indeed, that they were entrusted with the words of Elohim. *(Deut 4:8)*
3 For what if some did not believe? Will their unbelief nullify the faith of Elohim?
4 Let it not be! But let Elohim be true, and every man false; even as it has been written, "That You should be justified in Your words, and will overcome in Your being judged." *(Psa. 51:4, Ps 116:11)*
5 But if our unrighteousness serves to establish the righteousness of Elohim, what shall we say? Is Elohim unjust when He inflicts His righteous indignation? I speak according to man.
6 Let it not be! Otherwise, how will YAHWEH judge the world?
7 For if in my lie the truth of Elohim abounded to His glory, why am I yet judged as a sinner?
8 And not (as we are wrongly accused, and as some report us to say), Let us do bad things so that good things may come, their condemnation is reserved for eternal justice.
9 What then? Have we the superiority, when we have before decided as to both Jews and Gentiles, that all of them are under sin?
10 According as it has been written, "There is none righteous, not even one!" *(eccl 7:20)*
11 "There is not one understanding; there is not one seeking YAHWEH."
12 All turned away, they became worthless together, not one is doing goodness, not so much as one!"[2]
13 "Their throat is a tomb being opened;" "they used deceit with their tongues; the poison of asps is under their lips; *(Ps 5:9)*
14 whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness.
15 Their feet are swift to shed blood;
16 ruin and misery are in their way;
17 and they did not know a way of peace;
18 there is no fear of Elohim before their eyes[3]." *(Gen 20:11)*
19 But we know that whatever the Torah says, it speaks to those within the Torah, so that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world be under judgment to Elohim.
20 Because by works of the Torah not one of all flesh will be justified before Him, for through the Torah is the full knowledge of sin. *(Psa. 143:2)*
21 But now a righteousness of Elohim has been revealed apart from the Torah, being witnessed by the Torah and the Prophets,
22 even the righteousness of Elohim through the faith of Yahshua Messiah toward everyone and upon all those believing; for there is no difference,
23 for all have sinned and fall short of the glory of YAHWEH,
24 being justified freely by His grace through the redemption in Messiah Yahshua,
25 whom YAHWEH set forth as a sacrifice of atonement[4] through faith in His blood, as a demonstration of His righteousness through the

[1] Circumcision is the sign of the Old Covenant, but baptism (full immersion) is the sign of the New Covenant. (Gal 5:1-7, Acts 15:24) However, male babies should still be circumcised on the 8th day for clean and unclean health laws (Lev 12:2-3).

[2] Jer 5:1

[3] Ps 14:1-3, Ps 5:9, Ps 10:7, Ps 140:3, Ps 36:1, Ps 53:2-3, Is 59:7-8

[4] The Hebrew is Kappereth- The cover of the Ark of the Covenant. See note on Lev 16:2

remission of our sins that are past, in
the forbearance of Elohim, (Lev 16:2)
26 for a demonstration of His
righteousness in the present time, for
His being just and justifying the one
that is of the faith of Yahshua.
27 Then where is the boasting[1]? It
was not there. Through what law? Of
works? No, but through a Law of faith.
28 Then we conclude a man to be
justified by faith without works of the
Law.
29 Or is He the Elohim of Jews only,
and not also of the nations? Yes, of the
nations also,
30 since it is one Elohim who will
justify circumcision by faith, and
uncircumcision through faith.
31 Do we then nullify the Torah by
faith? Far be it. On the contrary, we
establish the Torah[2]!

Chapter 4

1 What then shall we say our father
Abraham to have found according to
flesh?
2 For if Abraham was justified by
works, he had reason to be proud, but
not with Elohim.
3 For what does the Scripture say?
"And Abraham believed YAHWEH,
and it was counted to him for
righteousness." *(Gen. 15:6)*
4 Now to one working, the reward is
not counted according to grace, but
according to debt.
5 But to the one not working, but
believing on Him justifying sinners,
his faith is counted for righteousness.
6 Even as also David says of the
blessedness of the man to whom
Elohim counts righteousness apart
from works:
7 "Blessed are those whose sins are
forgiven, and whose sins are covered;
8 blessed is the man to whom
YAHWEH will in no way charge sin."
(Psa. 32:1)
9 Is this blessedness then on the
circumcision, or also on the uncircum-
cision? For we say that faith "was
counted to Abraham for righteous-
ness."
10 How then was it counted? Being
in circumcision, or in uncircumcision?
Not in circumcision, but in uncircum-
cision!
11 And he received a sign of
circumcision[3] as a seal of the
righteousness of faith while in
uncircumcision, for him to be a father
of those believing through
uncircumcision, for righteousness to
be counted to them also,
12 and a father of circumcision to
those not of circumcision only, but
also to those walking in the steps of
the faith of our father Abraham during
uncircumcision.
13 For the promise was not through
Law[4] to Abraham, or to his seed, for
him to be the heir of the world, but
through a righteousness of faith.
14 For if they who are of the law
were heirs, faith would be made void,
and the promise of no effect.[5]
15 For the Law works out wrath; for

---

[1] Since every human being's deeds have been sinful in nature and punishable by death, no human can claim eternal life by his deeds but only by having faith in Yahshua who has paid the death penalty for the unrighteous deeds of those who accept it and repent.

[2] In all of Paul's epistles the argument is never whether one should obey the Torah. The argument is how do we get justified before YHWH? Is it through the sacrificial system with ceremonial functions or is it strictly through the blood of Yahshua? The Torah sanctifies a believer after he is justified and teaches him right from wrong, Ps 119:105. Obedience is the evidence of one's faith.

[3] Circumcision was not the covenant itself, but was the sign of the covenant. Gen 17:11

where there is no instruction in the
Torah against an action, then there is
no transgression.
16 On account of this, it is of faith,
that it be according to grace, for the
promise to be certain to all the seed,
not to that of the Law only, but also to
that of the faith of Abraham, who is
father of us all,
17 according as it has been written,
"I have appointed you a father of many
nations;" before Elohim, whom He
believed, the One making the dead
live, and calling the things that are not
as if they were. *(Gen. 17:5)*
18 He against hope believed in hope,
for him to become a father of many
nations, according to what has been
said, "So shall your seed be." *(Gen.
15:5, Gal 3:16)*
19 And being about a hundred years
old, he never weakened in faith, even
when he examined his old body, nor
the deadness of Sarah's womb,
20 And he did not hesitate at the
promise of Elohim, as one lacking
faith; but he was strong in faith, and
gave glory to Elohim; *(Heb 11:12-13)*
21 and felt assured, that what
YAHWEH had promised to him, he
was able to fulfill. *(Heb 11:6)*
22 Because of this, "it was also
counted to him for righteousness."
(Gen. 15:6)
23 But it was not written for him
only, that it was counted to him,
24 but also on account of us, to
whom it is about to be counted, to the
ones believing on Him who has raised
our Master Yahshua from the dead,
25 who was delivered because of our
offences, and was raised because of
our justification. *(Ro 5:9, Ro 3:26)*

Chapter 5

1 Therefore being justified by faith,
we have peace with Elohim through
our Master Yahshua Messiah,
2 through whom also we have had
access by faith into this grace in which
we stand, and we glory on the hope of
the glory of Elohim.
3 And not only so, but we glory also
in afflictions, knowing that affliction
works out patience,
4 and patience works out proven
character; and proven character, hope.
5 And the hope does not put us to
shame, because the love of Elohim has
been poured out in our hearts through
the Holy Spirit given to us;
6 for we yet being without strength,
in due time Messiah died for
unrighteous ones.
7 For with difficulty one will die for a
wicked one, and perhaps one even
dares to die for the sake of the good
one,
8 but Elohim commends His love to
us in this that we being yet sinners,
Messiah died for us. *(1 Joh 4:10)*
9 Much more then, being justified
now by His blood, we shall be
delivered from wrath through Him.
10 For if while being enemies we
were reconciled to Elohim through the
death of His Son, much more, being
reconciled, we shall be saved by His
life;
11 and not only so, but also glorying
in YAHWEH through our Master
Yahshua Messiah, through whom we
now received the atonement.
12 Even as sin entered the world
through one man, and death through

---

[4] The point that is being made is that Abraham was not in a kingly line to simply inherit the promise of the covenant made with YHWH, but had to take an action in faith in order for him to receive the promises. Faith is an action and his faith and obedience led to YHWH making the covenant agreement with him because of his total trust in YHWH and Abraham's obedience to Yahweh's Torah (Gen 26:3-5)

[5] Gal 3:1-6, Deut 27:26

sin, so also death passed to all men, in as much as all sinned.[1]

13 For sin was in the world until the Torah, but sin is not charged where there is no instruction;

14 Yet death reigned from Adam until Moses, even over those who had not sinned after the likeness of the transgression of the Torah by Adam, who was a type of Him who was to come. *(1Cor 15:21-22, 45-49)*

15 But the free gift is not also like the offence. For if by the offence of the one the many died how much more the grace and gift of Elohim, because of one Man, Yahshua Messiah, be increased for many.

16 And the effect of the gift of Elohim was greater than the effect of the offence of Adam; For while the judgment of one man's offence resulted in the condemnation of many, but the free gift of Elohim in the forgiveness of sins resulted in justification to many more.

17 For if by the offence of the one death reigned through the one, much more those who are receiving the abundance of grace and the gift of righteousness shall rule in life by the One, Yahshua Messiah.

18 Therefore, as on account of the offence of one, condemnation was to all men; so on account of the righteousness of one, will the victory unto life be to all men.

19 For as on account of the disobedience of one man, many became sinners; so also on account of the obedience of one, many become righteous.

20 And the introduction of the Torah caused sin to increase.[2] And where sin had increased, grace much more abounded,

21 Just as sin had reigned through death, so also grace shall reign through righteousness to everlasting life, through Yahshua Messiah our Master[3].

Chapter 6

1 What then shall we say? Shall we continue in sin[4] that grace may abound? *(Ro 3:31)*

2 Let it not be! We who have died to sin, how shall we still live in it?

3 Or are you ignorant that all who were baptized into Messiah Yahshua were baptized into His death?

4 Therefore, we were buried with Him through baptism[5] into death that as Messiah was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, so also we should walk in newness of life.[6]

5 For if we have been planted together with Him in the likeness of His death, so also shall we be in the resurrection,

6 for we know this, that our old self was crucified with Him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, so that we no longer serve sin.

7 For he who is dead has been freed from sin. *(Ro 8:2, Joh 8:32-34)*

8 But if we died with Messiah, we

[1] Verses 11-12- Since Adam failed to instruct mankind in the Torah all have followed in his footsteps of sin and self -rule.

[2] This was because there was more accountability since the Torah taught them right from wrong.

[3] Paul makes a beautiful comparison how the first man Adam failed and how the literal seed of Adam (Yahshua) succeeded. It is interesting to note that the place where Yahshua was crucified was called the mount of offense and was at the same place that Adam was cast out of Eden when he sinned. This on on the southern slope of the Mount of Olives east of the true Temple Mount across the Kidron valley.

[4] Sin is the breaking of the Torah (1Joh 3:4)

[5] Col 2:11-14

[6] 2 Cor 5:17, Eph 4:22-24

believe that also we shall live with Him,
9 knowing that Messiah being raised from the dead, dies no more; death no longer has dominion over Him.
10 For in that He died, He died to sin once for all; but in that He lives, He lives to Elohim. *(Heb 9:28, Ro 5:10)*
11 So also you count yourselves to be truly dead to sin, but alive to Elohim in Yahshua, Messiah our Master.[1]
12 Then do not let sin reign in your mortal body, to obey it in its lusts.[2]
13 Neither present your members as instruments of unrighteousness to sin, but present yourselves to Elohim as one living from the dead, and your members instruments of righteousness to Elohim.
14 For your sin shall not Master it over you, for you are not under the penalty of Law breaking, but under grace.
15 What then? Shall we sin because we are not under the penalty of the Torah, but under grace? Let it not be![3]
16 Do you not know that to whom you present yourselves as slaves for obedience, you are slaves to whom you obey, whether of sin to death, or obedience to righteousness[4]?
17 But thanks be to Elohim that you were slaves of sin, but you obeyed from the heart the form of doctrine to which you were delivered.
18 And having been set free from sin, you were enslaved to righteousness.
19 I speak as a man on account of the weakness of your flesh. For as you yielded your members as slaves to uncleanness and to iniquity, so now yield your members as slaves to righteousness unto sanctification[5].
20 For when you were slaves of sin, you were free as to righteousness.
21 Therefore what fruit did you have then in the things over which you are now ashamed? For the end of those things is death.
22 But now having been set free from sin[6], and having been enslaved to Elohim, you have your fruit unto sanctification, and the end everlasting life.
23 For the wages of sin is death[7], but the gift of YAHWEH is everlasting life in Yahshua, Messiah our Master.

Chapter 7

1 Do you not know, brethren, (for I speak to them who know the Torah),

---

1 Verses 2-11- 10 times Paul states that the believer is to die to sin, never once did he ever say a believer is to die to Law (Torah).

2 Sin as righteousness is a mindset.

3 Grace (unmerited forgiveness for breaking the Torah) does not give one a license to continue to break the Torah.

4 The Old Covenant had no way to have your sins removed, they were simply covered from year to year on Yom Kippur, which means to cover not remove. Now in the New Covenant YHWH gives a way through the shed blood of Messiah to completely have the penalty of your sins removed (Jer 32:33-34). However, if we willingly continue to obey sin after accepting this great sacrifice of the blood of the Son of Yahweh, then we are mocking the spirit of grace and our sins will not be forgiven. (Heb 10:26-32, Ro 6:23, Luk 13:1-5)

5 The Torah does not justify us (*make us right with YHWH*), as only the shed blood of Yahshua can do this, but it sanctifies us (*sets us apart for a holy purpose*) and that is why we need to follow it as it teaches us the character and will of YHWH.

6 The blood of Yahshua has freed a believer from the death penalty of their past sins, but now obeying the Torah will keep you free and where one slips up he has the blood of Messiah to make up for that. However if one continues to sin it will lead to death (Ro 6:23) and Peter gravely explains this in 2Pe 2:22.

7 Sin still brings death, Ro 6:23, Ezek 18:4

that the Torah has authority over a person for as long as he lives?
2 Just as the married woman is bound by the Torah to the living husband; but if the husband dies, she is set free from the Law of her husband.
3 So then, if the husband is living, she will be called an adulteress if she should be married to another man. But if the husband dies, she is free from the Law, so as for her not to be an adulteress by becoming another man's wife[1].
4 So that, my brothers, you also were made dead to the (*penalty of the*) Law through the body of Messiah, for you to become another's, to the One raised from the dead, so that we may bear fruit to Elohim.
5 For when we were in the flesh, the passions of sin were working in our members through the Law for the bearing of fruit unto death.
6 But now we have been set free from the penalty of the Torah, having died to that in which we were held, so as for us to serve in newness of spirit, and not in oldness of letter.
7 What shall we say then? Is the instruction sin? Let it not be! But I did not know sin except through the Torah; for also I did not know lust except the Torah said, "You shall not lust." *(Ex. 20:17)*
8 But sin taking occasion through the commandment worked every lust in me; for apart from Law, sin is dead.
9 And I was alive apart from the Torah once, but the commandment came, and sin came alive, and I died.
10 And the commandment which was to life, this was found to be death to me;
11 for sin taking occasion through the commandment deceived me, and through it killed me.
12 So indeed the Torah is holy, and the commandment holy and just and good[2].
13 Did that which is good, therefore, become death to me? Far be it. But sin, that it might be seen to be sin, perfected death in me by means of that good Torah; that sin might be more condemned, by means of the commandment.
14 For we know that the Torah is spiritual, but I am fleshly, having been sold under sin. *(Ro 3:10-14)*
15 For I do not know what I do. For I do not do the thing that I want; But I do the thing which I hate, this is what I do.
16 But if I do what I do not wish to, I agree with the Torah, that it is good. *(Ro 8:6-8)*
17 Now then, it is not I who do it, but the sin which dominates in me.
18 For I know that it does not fully dominate me, (that is in my flesh) but as far as good is concerned, the choice is easy for me to make, but to do it is difficult for me. [3]
19 For it is not the good that I desire to do, that I do. But it is the evil that I do not desire, that I do.
20 But if I do what I do not desire, it is no longer I who do it, but the sin which dominates me.
21 I find therefore that the Torah agrees with my conscience, when I

1 It is quite clear that if one leaves their spouse and marries another while their spouse is still alive it is called adultery. 1 Cor 7:39, Mk 10:11-12.

2 The problem was never with the perfect Torah of Yahweh, but the inability of the people to keep it, (Heb 8:8) as it can teach you right from wrong but it doesn't change the heart; only the Holy Spirit can do this.

3 Paul is contrasting his humans nature before conversion compared to the Holy Spirit after conversion. Math 26:41

desire to do good, but evil is always
near, distracting me.[1]
22 For I delight in the Torah of
Elohim according to the inward man;
23 but I see another law in my
members having warred against the
law of my mind, and taking me captive
by the law of sin being in my
members.
24 O wretched man that I am! Who
shall deliver me from this mortal
body?
25 I thank YAHWEH through
Yahshua Messiah our Master! So then
I myself with the mind truly serve the
Torah of Elohim and with the flesh the
law of sin.[2]

Chapter 8

1 There is therefore now no
condemnation to those in Yahshua
Messiah, who do not walk according to
flesh, but according to Spirit.
2 For the Law of the Spirit of life
which is in Yahshua Messiah set me
free from the law of sin and of death.
(Ro 7:23)
3 For the Torah being powerless[3], in
that it was weak through the flesh,
Elohim sending His own Son in the
likeness of sinful flesh, and concerning
sin, condemned sin in the flesh,
4 so that the righteous demand of
the Torah might be fulfilled in us,
those not walking according to flesh,
but according to Spirit[4].
5 For the ones that are according to
flesh mind the things of the flesh. And
the ones according to Spirit mind the
things of the Spirit.
6 To be carnally minded is death[5],
but to be spiritually minded is life and
peace;
7 because the mind of the flesh is
enmity towards Elohim; for it is not
subject to the Torah of Elohim, for it is
not possible to be so[6].
8 And those being in the flesh are
not able to please Elohim.
9 But you are not in flesh, but in
Spirit, since the Spirit of YAHWEH
dwells in you[7]. But if anyone has not
the Spirit of Messiah[8], this one does
not belong to Him.
10 But if Messiah is in you, the body
indeed is dead because of sin, but the
Spirit is life because of righteousness[9].
11 But if the Spirit of the One having
raised Yahshua from the dead dwells
in you, the One having raised the
Messiah from the dead will also make
your mortal bodies live through the
indwelling of His Spirit in you.
12 So then, brothers, we are debtors,
not to the flesh, to live according to
flesh,
13 for if you live according to flesh,
you are going to die. But if by the

---

1 In this life we have to fight against Satan the devil, the world around us, and our own evil human nature.

2 No human effort can ever justify us before Yahweh; only the sacrifice of Yahshua can.

3 The Torah was powerless because it can teach you right from wrong (Ps 119:105) but it can't change the heart, only the Holy Spirit can do that.

4 Now with our sins forgiven and having the spirit of Yahshua living in the true believer, they can keep the righteous demand of the Torah just as Yahshua did.

5 Ro 6:23, Ezek 18:4

6 Whoever rejects the Torah cannot have the spirit of YHWH.

7 The way to receive the Ruach H' Kodesh (Holy Spirit) is by baptism and the laying on of hands by an ordained elder. Acts 8:12-19, Acts18:1-6, Acts 2:38, Joh 14:16-17, 26

8 There is one spirit, so the spirit of YHWH is the same as the spirit of Messiah.

9 Sin is the breaking of the Torah (1Joh 3:4). If the spirit that is in YHWH and Messiah is in the believer, the spirit will convict the believer to act just as Yahshua did when He was on earth. (Ps 119:172)

Spirit you put to death the practices of
the body, you will live[1].
14 For as many as are led by the
Spirit of Elohim, these are sons of
Elohim.
15 For you did not receive a spirit of
slavery again to fear, but you received
a Spirit of sonship by which we cry,
Abba! Father[2]!
16 The Spirit itself witnesses with
our spirit that we are children of
YAHWEH. *(Gal 4:1-7)*
17 And if children, also heirs; truly
heirs of Elohim, and joint heirs of
Messiah, if indeed we suffer together,
that we may also be glorified together[3].
18 For I calculate that the sufferings
of the present time are not worthy to
compare to the coming glory to be
revealed in us[4].
19 For the earnest expectation of the
creation eagerly awaits the revelation
of the sons of Elohim[5].
20 For the creation was not willingly
subjected to vanity, but through Him
subjecting it, on hope;
21 that also the creation will be freed
from the slavery of corruption to the
freedom of the glory of the children of
Elohim.
22 For we know that all the creation
groans together and labors in pain
together until now.
23 And not only so, but also we
ourselves having the first-fruit of the
Spirit, also we ourselves groan within
ourselves, eagerly expecting that
sonship[6], the deliverance from our
body;*(2Cor 1:22,1Cor 15:42-44,50-54)*
24 for we were saved by hope, but
hope being seen is not hope; for what
anyone sees, why does he also hope?
25 But if we hope for what we do not
see, through patience we wait eagerly.
(Pr 13:12)
26 And likewise the Spirit also joins
in to help our weaknesses. For we do
not know what is right and proper for
us to pray for, but the Spirit intercedes
on our behalf with that earnestness
that cannot be described[7].
27 But the One searching the hearts
knows what is the mind of the Spirit,
because He petitions on behalf of the
saints according to Elohim.
28 But we know that to the ones
loving Elohim all things work together
for good, to those being called
according to purpose;
29 And He knew them in advance;
and He sealed them with the likeness
of the image of His Son; that He might
be the first-born of many brothers[8].
30 But whom He marked in

---

1 The wages of sin (I Joh 3:4) which is the breaking of the Torah is death (Ro 6:23).

2 This most amazing verse shows that once the believer enters covenant relationship with Yahweh and is baptized and has the laying on of hands of a true elder of YHWH and is impregnated with His spirit, the new believer is a literal child of Yahweh through being begotten by the Ruach H'Chodesh. That is why the Aramaic term Abba is used which is equivalent to daddy in the English and a term of endearment.

3 Another amazing scripture showing the believer's great potential to be an heir with Yahshua of the universe. This concept is so wonderful it is even hard to fully grasp it. Heb 2:11-17

4 When you look at verse 17 this is an understatement.

5 Mankind has destroyed the beautiful creation of YHWH and even the creation itself is groaning and waiting for the children of Yahweh to overcome and make their garments white so the Kingdom can come.

6 Again, clearly indicating a literal Father/child relationship with Yahweh.

7 At times someone may be asked to pray for someone and don't know what to say. In these circumstances if the true believer yields to the Holy Spirit, the Holy Spirit will inspire the prayer as it is living in the true believer.

advance, these He also called[1]; and
whom He called, these He also
justified; and whom He justified, these
He also glorified. *(Rev 17:14)*
31 What then shall we say to these
things? If YAHWEH be for us, who
can be against us?
32 Truly He who did not spare His
own Son, but gave Him up on behalf of
us all, how will He not freely give all
things to us with Him?
33 Who will bring any charge against
the elect of Elohim? YAHWEH is the
One justifying!
34 Who is he condemning? It is
Messiah who has died, but rather also
is raised, who also is at the right hand[2]
of YAHWEH, who also makes
intercession on our behalf.
35 Who shall separate us from the
love of Messiah? Shall tribulation, or
distress, or persecution, or famine, or
nakedness, or danger, or sword?
36 Even as it has been written, "For
Your sake we are killed all the day; we
are counted as lambs for the
slaughter." *(Psa. 44:22)*
37 But in all these things we are
more than conquerors through Him
loving us.
38 For I am persuaded that neither
death, nor life, nor cherubs, nor rulers,
nor armies, nor things present, nor
things to come,
39 nor height, nor depth, nor any
other thing created will be able to
separate us from the love of
YAHWEH in Messiah, Yahshua, our
Master.

Chapter 9

1 I tell the truth in Messiah, I do not
lie, my conscience bearing witness
with me in the Holy Spirit,
2 that my grief is great, and a never
ceasing pain is in my heart,
3 for I myself was wishing to be a
curse from Messiah for the sake of my
brothers, my kinsmen according to
flesh,
4 who are Israelites[3], to who belongs
the sonship and the glory, and the
covenants, and the giving of the Torah,
and the service, and the promises;
5 whose are the fathers, and from
whom is the Messiah according to
flesh, He being Elohim over all,
blessed forever. Amen.
6 Not, however, that the word of
Elohim hath actually failed; for all
those who belong to Israel are not
Israelites[4].
7 nor because they are Abraham's
seed are all children, but "In Isaac
shall your Seed be called." *(Gen.
21:12)*
8 That is: Not the children of flesh
are children of Elohim, but the
children of the promise are counted
for as descendants[5].
9 For the Word of promise is this, "I
will come at this season, and Sarah
will have a son." *(Gen. 18:10)*

[8] Showing the family relationship that is established with Yahweh and Yahshua. 1 Joh 3:1-3

[1] Called = sanctified

[2] 1Pe 3:22, Col 3:1, Heb 1:3, 8:1, 10:12, 12:2

[3] Chapter 9, 10, and 11 are the clearest parts of any of Paul's letters that he is writing to the Tribes of Israel also called the Northern House of Ephraim.

[4] Paul is making the point that simply being born an Israelite does not make you a covenant child as spoken about in chapter 8, as out of 2.8 million who left Egypt with Moses only 2 people over 20 yrs old actually entered covenant relationship with YHWH and entered the Promised Land.

[5] One must not simply just have the Israelite DNA for salvation but must actively and willingly submit to YHWH in faith in all things as Abraham did and it was accounted to him for righteousness. (Gen 26:4-5, Rom 4:3)

10 And not only so, but also Rebecca conceiving of one, our father Isaac,

11 for the children not yet being born, nor having done any good or evil, that the purpose of Elohim according to election might stand, not of works, but of the One calling,

12 it was said to her, "The Elder shall be servant of the younger;" *(Gen. 25:23)*

13 even as it has been written, "Jacob I loved, and *Esau I have set aside." (Mal. 1:2, 3)*

14 What then shall we say? Is there not unrighteousness with Elohim? Let it not be!

15 For He said to Moses, "I will have mercy on whomever I will have mercy, and I will pity whomever I will pity[1]." *(Ex. 33:19)*

16 So then, it is not within reach of the one willing, nor within reach of him who strives, but it is within reach of the merciful Elohim.

17 For the Scripture says to Pharaoh, "For this very purpose I raised you up, so that I might display My power in you, and so that My name might be publicized in all the earth[2]." *(Ex. 9:16)*

18 So then, He has mercy on whom He pleases. And He hardens whom He pleases.

19 Perhaps You will say, Why does He yet find fault? For who can resist His will?

20 Rather, O man, who are you to question against Elohim? Shall the thing formed say to the One forming it, Why did You make me like this[3]? *(Isa. 29:16)*

21 Or does not the potter have authority over the clay, out of the one lump to make one vessel to honor, and one to dishonor? *(Jer. 18:6)*

22 But if Elohim, desiring to demonstrate His wrath, and to make His power known, endured in much long-suffering vessels of wrath having been fitted out for destruction,

23 but He poured out His mercy on the vessels of favor, which He before prepared for the glory of Elohim,

24 whom He also called, not only us, of Jews, but also out of nations.

25 As also He says in Hosea, "I will call those Not My people, My people! And those not beloved, Beloved[4]!" *(Hos. 2:23)*

26 "And it shall be, in the place where it was said to them, You are not My people, there they will be called, Sons of the Living Elohim."

27 But Isaiah cries on behalf of Israel, "If the number of the sons of Israel be as the sand of the sea, only a remnant will be saved[5]."

28 For He is bringing the matter to an end, and having been cut short "in righteousness, because YAHWEH will do a thing cut short on the earth[6]." *(Isa. 10:22, 23)*

---

1 All have sinned and fallen short of the glory of YHWH (Ro 3:23), in His mercy Yahweh grants repentance to those of a humble heart who surrender to Him, but He doesn't owe anyone anything as they caused their own destiny by freely choosing to sin.

2 YHWH didn't cause Pharaoh to sin, but simply knew the nature of Pharaoh and allowed him in a situation that He knew how Pharaoh would react.

3 Every human being has free will, so no one has anyone to blame for their misfortune as each person simply reaps what he has sown.

4 This quote coming from Hosea 2:23 is about the redemption of the House of Ephraim (Northern tribes of Israel) in the latter days showing again Paul's intent in writing Romans chapters 9, 10, 11.

5 Paul again stresses the point that even though in the latter days Yahweh will awaken the Northern tribes of Israel to their true identity, that one must freely choose to accept this calling and repent of their former way of life and enter covenant, and as verse 27 somberly shows only a small remnant will accept the calling.

29 And as Isaiah has said before, "If YAHWEH of hosts had not shown favor to us with a remnant, we would have become as Sodom, and we would have become as Gomorrah[1]." *(Isa. 1:9)*
30 What then shall we say? That the nations not following after righteousness have taken on righteousness, but a righteousness of faith[2];
31 but Israel who ran after the Torah of righteousness did not find the Torah of righteousness?
32 Why? Because it was not of faith, but as of works of Law[3]. For they stumbled at the Stone-of-stumbling,
33 as it has been written, Behold, I place in Zion a Stone-of-stumbling, and a Rock-of-offense," "and everyone believing on Him will not be shamed[4]." *(Isa. 28:16; Isa. 8:14)*

6 This will not be 2700 years as the House of Ephraim's Diaspora was, but the calling back will be less than a generation (Math 24:34).

1 YHWH's mercy to redeem the House of Israel in the end times is not due to their goodness but because of the faithfulness of YHWH and the promises that He made to Abraham. (Ezek 36:24-36)

2 In the end it is through faith that people will come back to covenant relationship with YHWH and understand their identity as Israelites.

3 The nation of Israel had come to believe as many do even today that the covenant promises of YHWH are irreversible to Israel as a nation no matter what their conduct is. This was never the case as in a covenant, by definition, both parties have something to perform. They looked at their ritualistic law as an end in itself, keeping it in a self-righteous way instead of seeing the Torah as a lamp (Ps 119:105) to lead you to YHWH and Yahshua.

4 As a nation this has not been accomplished yet, but will be at the Messiah's return.

Chapter 10

1 Brethren, truly my heart's desire and prayer to Elohim on behalf of Israel is for it to be saved[5].
2 For I testify to them that they have zeal to Elohim, but not according to knowledge.
3 For being ignorant of the righteousness of Elohim, and seeking to establish their own righteousness, they did not submit to the righteousness of Elohim[6].
4 For Messiah is the goal[7] of the Torah for righteousness to everyone that believes.
5 For Moses writes of the righteousness which is of the Torah: "The man doing these things shall live by them[8]." *(Lev. 18:5, Deut 19:21)*
6 But the righteousness of faith says this: "Do not say in your heart, Who will go up into Heaven?" (that is, to bring down Messiah);
7 or, "Who has descended into the abyss of Sheol and brought up Messiah from the dead."
8 But what does it say? "The Word is near you, in your mouth and in your heart" (that is, the Word of faith which we proclaim) *(Deut. 30:12-14)*

5 Paul once again showing his desire for the House of Israel to come back into covenant relationship.

6 The nation tried to establish righteousness by physical identity and also through the sacrificial system, which cannot clear the conscience, nor change the heart (Heb 9:13-14)

7 Many translations wrongly translate this word as "*end*" bringing the false belief that the Torah is somehow ended. However, both in Aramaic and even Greek the word means "***goal***" or "***end result***", and is showing that to the true believer "*Yahshua is the goal*" in how we should strive to be and He kept the Torah perfectly.

8 The Torah is cause and effect, you reap what you sow.

9 Because if you confess the Master
Yahshua with your mouth, and believe
in your heart that YAHWEH raised
Him from the dead, you will be saved[1].
10 For the heart which believes in
Him shall be declared righteous, and
the mouth that confesses Him[2] shall
live.
11 For the Scripture says, "Everyone
believing in Him will not be ashamed."
(Isa. 28:16)
12 For there is no difference both of
Jew and of non-Jew, for the same
Master YAHWEH of all is rich toward
all the ones calling on Him[3].
13 For everyone, "whoever may call
on the name of YAHWEH will be
saved[4]." *(Joel 2:32)*
14 How then may they call on One
into whom they have not believed?
And how may they believe One of
whom they have not heard? And how
may they hear without a preacher?
15 And how may they preach if they
are not sent? Even as it has been
written, "How beautiful are the feet of
those who preach the good news of
peace, of those preaching good
things[5]." *(Isa. 52:6-7, Nah 1:15)*
16 But not all obeyed the good news,
for Isaiah says, "YAHWEH, who has
believed our report?" *(Isa. 53:1)*
17 Then faith comes by hearing, and
hearing through the Word of Elohim[6].
18 But I say, Have they not heard?
Yes, rather, "into all the earth their
voice went out, and to the ends of the
world their words." *(Psa. 19:4, Matt
28:18-20)*
19 But I say, Did not Israel know?
First, Moses says, "I will provoke you
to jealousy by a non-nation, by an
unwise nation I will anger you." *(Deut.
32:21)*
20 But Isaiah is very bold and says,
"I was found by those not seeking Me;
I became known to those not inquiring
after Me[7]." *(Isa. 65:1)*
21 But to Israel He says, "All the day
I stretched out My hands to a

---

1 This verse is not replacing the biblical mandate of baptism and the laying on of hands to receive the Spirit of YHWH and enter covenant relationship, but is establishing faith as a prerequisite to baptism (Acts 2:37-38).

2 When one is baptized in the name of Yahshua it is a public confession of Him as Messiah and Son of YHWH to all.

3 In the New Covenant although it is still with the House of Israel and the House of Judah (Heb 8:8) a gentile can join this covenant as an equal full member of the YHWH family being grafted in by the blood of Yahshua (Gal 3:29). That is why a gentile does not need to be circumcised, which was the sign of the first covenant, as every covenant is ratified by blood (Heb 9:19-22) and if a gentile was circumcised to join the covenant he would be joining by his own blood and not Messiah's (Col 2:11-14) which he cannot pay the penalty for his own sins. Circumcision is a mute point for Israelites as according to clean and unclean laws (Lev 12:1-3) all Israelite males are circumcised on the 8th day of life.

4 Again showing the importance of the family name of Yahweh, which in the end time will bring salvation (Joel 2:32).

5 Ambasadors are sent thye do not just go out on their own. For this reason Yahshua has ordained a ministry (Eph 4:11-14) to guide and lead His work throughout the ages. In this end time Laodicean period (*Laodicean means ruled by the people*) many in western society do not want to be under any form of leadership and many do not even want to be part of local congregations any longer.

6 To practice one's faith there must be daily study of the the word of YHWH.

7 Today, Yahweh has a spiritual nation of spirit led believers who are ambassadors for His kingdom all over the world and He also has physically restored the nation of Israel after more than 2500 yrs without having full sovereignty over the land. In chapter 11 Paul will compare the physical nation to the spiritual nation.

disobeying and contradicting people." *(Isa. 65:2, Joh 1:11)*

Chapter 11

1 I say then, Did not Elohim thrust away His people? Let it not be! For I also am an Israelite, out of Abraham's seed, of the tribe of Benjamin[1].

2 "Elohim did not thrust away His people" whom He foreknew[2]. *(Psa. 94:14)* Or do you not know what the Scripture said in Elijah, how He pleaded with Elohim against Israel, saying,

3 YAHWEH, "they killed Your prophets, and they dug down Your altars, and only I am left, and they seek my life." *(1 Kg. 19:10)*

4 But what does the Divine answer say to him, "I reserved to Myself seven thousand men who did not bow a knee to Baal." *(1 Kg. 19:18)*

5 Even so, in this present time a remnant is preserved, elected by grace and has come into being[3].

6 But if by grace, no longer is it of works; else grace no longer becomes grace. But if of works, it is no longer grace; else work is no longer work.

7 What then? What Israel seeks, this it did not obtain, but the election obtained it, and the rest were hardened;

8 even as it has been written, "YAHWEH gave to them a spirit of slumber, eyes not seeing and ears not hearing" until this day. *(Isa. 29:10; Deut. 29:4)*

9 And David said, "Let their table become for a snare and a trap, and for a stumbling block," and a repayment to them;

10 "let their eyes be darkened, not to see, and their back always bowing." *(Psa. 69:22, 23)*

11 I say, then, Did not they stumble that they should fall? Let it not be! But by their slipping away came salvation to the nations, to provoke them to jealousy[4].

12 Now if their slipping away is the riches of the world, and their condemnation the riches of the nations, how much more their restoration?

13 For I speak to you, the nations, since I am an apostle of the nations, (I glorify my ministry),

14 if somehow I may provoke to jealousy my flesh, and may save some of them.

15 For if their casting away is the reconciliation of the world, what will their restoration be, except life from the dead[5]?

16 Now if the first-fruit is holy, so also the lump. And if the root is holy, so also the branches.

17 But if some of the branches were

---

1 Paul is an Israelite from the tribe of Benjamin and was not a Jew. He is making the point that even though Yahweh has a spiritual nation through the body of messiah worldwide, that it did not nullify His promises to the physical nation of Israel for restoration. (Ezek 36:24-28, Amos 9:14-15).

2 All those living in this amazing last generation have witnessed the living proof of this scripture by the physical nation of Israel being restored after more than 2,500 years.

3 Speaking of the remnant of Israelites who were scattered in their Diaspora (Ro 9:29). They were not redeemed due to their physical heritage, but due to the grace of YHWH (Ezek 36:17-22)

4 By the physical nation of Israel rejecting the message of salvation, Yahshua sent His disciples to the lost sheep of the House of Israel abroad and opened salvation for all people (Math 10:6).

5 An extremely important prophetic verse showing that when people worldwide who had thought they were gentiles start to understand that they are actually Israelites this is when Messiah will return and the resurrection will take place. (Ezek 37:1-28)

broken off, and you, being a wild olive
tree were grafted in among them, and
became a sharer of the root and the
fatness of the olive tree, *(Is 11:1-2)*
18 do not boast against the branches.
But if you do boast, it is not you that
bears the root, but the root bears you[1].
19 You will say then, The branches
were broken off that I might be grafted
in.
20 Well! For unbelief they were
broken off. And you stand by faith. Do
not be high minded, but fear.
21 For if Elohim did not spare the
natural branches, fear that it may be
He will not spare you either[2].
22 Behold, then, the kindness and
severity of Elohim: On those having
fallen, severity. But on you kindness, if
you continue in the kindness.
Otherwise, you will also be cut off[3].
23 And those also, if they do not
continue in unbelief, will be grafted in.
For Elohim is able to graft them in
again[4].
24 For if you were cut out of the
natural wild olive tree, and against
nature were grafted into a good olive
tree, how much more these being
according to nature will be grafted into
their own olive tree[5]?
25 For I do not want you to be
ignorant of this mystery, brothers, so
that you may not be wise within
yourselves, that hardness in part has
happened to Israel until the fullness of
the nations comes in[6]; *(Gen. 48:8-19)*
26 and so all the tribes of Israel will
be saved[7], even as it has been written,
"The Deliverer will come out of Zion,
and He will turn away iniquity from
Jacob.
27 And this is My covenant with
them, when I take away their sins."
(Isa. 59:20, 21; Jer. 50:3-8)
28 Indeed, according to the good
news, they are enemies toward you,
but according to election, they are
beloved for the sake of the patriarchs[8].
29 For Elohim does not withdraw
His free gift and His calling.
30 For as you then also disobeyed

---

[1] A word of caution to true believers in the end time who find out their Israelite heritage and mentally are antagonistic toward the physical, unconverted nation of Israel, which was restored physically, but not spiritually yet.

[2] A true believer must endure till the end and can fall away and be in the same state as the defiled unconverted if he is not careful.

[3] Jac 4:6, YHWH resists the proud but gives grace to the humble. It has nothing to do with any individual or their action that YHWH is restoring people in the end time to their Israelite heritage, but it has to do with His grace and name and promises to Abraham, so only those who stay humble and give YHWH all glory will continue in the true way and the prideful of heart will fall away.

[4] YHWH has restored the physical nation of Israel in 1948 in their unbelief, but when Yahshua returns their eyes will be open and they will also join the New Covenant. (Zech 12:10, Ezek 36:24-28).

[5] By this analogy it is clear that all those Paul is referring to are Israelites as they are all from the same olive tree, which represents Israel. Some are from the physical nation of Judah and some (The wild olive branches) are from the dispersed House of Israel.

[6] Refer to Gen 48:8-19, clearly the House of Ephraim (Northern tribes of Israel) are the fulness of the nations. Meaning, that in the end time YHWH has set a number of a remnant according to His grace (Rev 7:5-8) and when that number is full, Yahshua will return.

[7] Not every last person of every tribes; as it has already been established that only a small remnant would be saved from this large group of Israelites (Ro:9:27-29), but that every tribe of Israel will be represented.

[8] Speaking of the physical nation in the end that is still in unbelief, but that will change at the coming of Messiah.

Elohim, but now have obtained mercy
by the disobedience of these[1],
31 so also these now have disobeyed,
so that they also may obtain mercy by
your mercy[2].
32 For Elohim has shut up all into
unbelief, that He may show mercy to
all. *(1Tim 1:13-14)*
33 O the depth of the riches and of
the wisdom and the knowledge of
Elohim! How unsearchable are His
judgments and His ways past finding
out[3]!
34 "For who has known the mind of
YAHWEH? Or who became His
counselor?" *(Isa. 40:13)*
35 "Or who first gave to Him, and it
will be repaid to him?" *(Job 41:11)*
36 Because of Him, and through
Him, and to Him are all things. To
Him be the glory forever! Amen.

Chapter 12

1 Therefore, brethren, I call on you
through the compassion of Elohim to
present your bodies a living sacrifice,
holy, pleasing to Elohim, which is your
reasonable service[4].
2 And be not conformed to this age,
but be transformed by the renewing of
your mind, in order to prove by you
what is the good and pleasing and
perfect will of Elohim.
3 For through the grace which is
given to me, I say to everyone being
among you, not to have high thoughts
beyond what is right to think. But set
your mind to be right-minded, even as
Elohim divided a measure of faith to
each.
4 For even as we have many
members in one body, but all
members do not have the same
function[5],
5 so we the many are one body in
Messiah, and each one members of
one another,
6 but having different gifts according
to the grace given to us, whether
prophecy, according to the proportion
of the faith;
7 or the gift of administration in

[1] If the physical nation of Israel never disobeyed it would not have brought opportunity for the worldwide preaching work over the last 2,000 yrs and the many people who have come to salvation among the nations. (Ro 11:11)

[2] It is the job of the true believer in these end times not to condemn the physical nation that Yahweh has restored because of their unbelief, but for the true believer to show love and kindness to the nation of Israel that they may see the Ruach H Chodesh living in the true believer by their love and kindness.

[3] YHWH's ways are so supreme that humans cannot concept His mercy, love and grace. It is not for humans to judge why YHWH will call some now and some later as only He knows what is best for everyone, but simply to bear fruit for the kingdom and be an example by their love and integrity as an ambassador for Messiah for the truth.

[4] Whereas the Levitical priesthood was a shadow and had its focus on the sacrificing of animals, the Melchizedek priesthood is about being a living sacrifice. Once a year on the Passover on the 14th day of the first month of Aviv, the true believer reflects on the dying Messiah and renews his covenant agreement by taking the symbols of the unleavened bread and wine, but the other 364 days of the year he is focusing on the living Messiah who is living in Him and bearing fruit through His spirit.

[5] YHWH through His spirit divides and gives the spiritual gifts throughout the body as it pleases Him. As one body with many diversified gifts it makes each true believer fully dependent on YHWH and co-dependent on each other. Those who will not submit themselves under YHWH's judicial order and set themselves apart from the body simply seek their own desire (Pr 18:1), and have too much pride to function in a community setting.

their ministry; or the one teaching, in their doctrine;
8 or the one consoling, in the encouragement; the one giving, with sincerity; the one that rules with diligence; the one showing mercy, with cheerfulness.
9 Let not your love be deceitful, hate that which is evil, hold fast to that which is good,
10 in brotherly love to one another, loving fervently, having gone before one another in honor;
11 in diligence, not slothful, fervent in spirit, serving the Master;
12 in hope, rejoicing; in affliction, enduring; in prayer, steadfastly continuing;
13 imparting to the needs of the saints, pursuing hospitality.
14 Bless those persecuting you; bless, and do not curse[1].
15 Rejoice with rejoicing ones, and weep with weeping ones;
16 minding the same thing toward one another, mind not vain glory, but associate with those who are humble. Do not become wise within yourselves;
17 returning evil for evil to no one; providing right things before all men.
18 If possible, as far as it depends on you, live in peace with all men;
19 not avenging yourselves, beloved, but giving place to wrath, for it has been written, "Vengeance is Mine, I will repay," says YAHWEH. *(Deut. 32:35)*
20 Then "if your enemy hungers, feed him; if he thirsts, give him drink; for doing this you will heap coals of fire on his head." *(Prov. 25:21, 22)*
21 Do not be overcome by evil, but overcome the evil with good.

[1] You bless them by not giving them back evil for evil, but a believer does not give a blessing upon evil. (Ro 12:20-21)

Chapter 13

1 Let every soul be subject to the higher authorities, for there is no authority except from Elohim, but the existing authorities have been ordained by YAHWEH.
2 So that the one resisting the civil authority has opposed the ordinance of Elohim, and the ones opposing will receive judgment to themselves[2].
3 For the rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the bad. And do you desire not to fear the authority? Do the good, and you will have praise from it; *(1Pe 2:13-14, 2Pe 2:10-19)*
4 for the ruler is a servant of Elohim to you for the good[3]. But if you practice evil, be afraid; for he does not bear the sword in vain; for he is a servant of Elohim, an avenger for wrath to the one practicing bad things.
5 Because of this, it is necessary to be subject, not only on account of wrath, but also on account of conscience.
6 For on this account you also pay tribute, for they are servants of Elohim, always giving attention to this very thing.
7 Then give to all their dues: to the one due tax, the tax; to the one due tribute, the tribute; to the one due

[2] Yahweh set a judicial order from creation and all those who have been put in authority are ultimately there due to Him. To be prideful and self-willed and resist the authority ordained by Yahweh, whether in the congregation or civil government it makes no difference, the person is resisting YHWH, the one who gave the authority to him. It stands to reason that YHWH is the ultimate authority and if someone whether it be in the congregation or civil authority would want a believer to violate one of YHWH's commands, then they would not submit to such an injunction.

[3] All authority set up by YHWH is for the service of the people.

fear, the fear; to the one due honor, the honor.

8 Owe no one, anything, except the continuing debt to love one another. For he who loves his fellow man has fulfilled the Torah.

9 For, "Do not commit adultery," "do not murder," "do not steal," "do not bear false witness," "do not lust," *(Ex. 20:13-15, 17)* and if there is any other commandment, in this word it is summed up, in the words, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself[1]." *(Lev. 19:18)*

10 Love does not work evil to the neighbor. Then love is the fulfillment of Torah.

11 Also, knowing this that now is the time and the hour for you to awake from your sleep, for now our salvation is nearer than when we first believed.

12 The night is far gone, and the day has drawn near; then let us cast off the works of darkness, and let us put on the armor of light.

13 Let us walk becomingly, as in the day, not in all carousing and drunkenness, not in co-habitation[2] and lustful acts, not in fighting and envy.

14 But clothe yourself with the Master Yahshua Messiah, and do not make forethought of the flesh, for its lusts.

[1] Many under the false grace try to purport that this golden rule replaces the Torah when in fact it is written in the Torah (Lev 19:18). Paul's whole point is that every law written in the Torah is to show love, either to YHWH or our fellow man.

[2] It was reported in early 2012 that for the first time in the USA more than 50% of couples are cohabiting instead of getting married, clearly a sign of the times we are living in.

Chapter 14

1 Assist the one who is weak in the faith, not to judgments of your thoughts.

2 One indeed believes to eat all things, but being weak, another one eats vegetables[3].

3 The one eating, do not despise the one not eating. And the one not eating, do not judge the one eating, for Elohim received him.

4 Who are you judging another's servant? To his own master he stands or falls. But he will stand, for his master is able to make him stand.

5 One indeed judges a day above another day; and another one judges every day alike[4]. Let each one be fully assured in his own mind.

6 The one minding the day, he is considerate of His duty to his Master. And the one not minding the day, he is not considerate of his duty to his Master. The one eating, he eats to his Master; for he gives thanks to Elohim. And the one not eating, he does not eat to his Master, and gives thanks to Elohim[5].

7 For no one of us lives to himself and no one dies to himself.

8 For both if we live, we live to Adonai; and if we die, we die to our Adonai. Then both if we live, and if we die, we belong to Adonai.

9 For this Messiah both died and

[3] Since some of the meat that was sold in the meat market could have been sacrificed to an idol, some brethren decided not to eat meat at all and were judging the ones who were eating meat.1Cor 8:7-8, 1Cor 10:25-32

[4] Some have wrongfully tried to use this verse against Sabbath observance, yet the Sabbath is not even mentioned once in the whole chapter and the context is clearly on food. The subject here is about setting a a day apart for fasting as we see in the next verse.

rose and lived again, that He might be
Adonai YAHWEH[1] over both the dead
and the living.
10 But why do you judge your
brother? Or why also do you despise
your brother? For all shall stand
before the judgment seat of Messiah[2].
11 For it has been written, "As I live,
says YAHWEH, that every knee will
bow to Me, and every tongue will
confess to Me." *(Isa. 45:23)*
12 So then each one of us will give
account concerning himself to Elohim.
13 Then let us no longer judge one
another, but rather judge this, not to
put a stumbling-block or an offense
toward a brother.
14 I know and am persuaded by
Yahshua YAHWEH that nothing by
itself is common; except to the one
deeming anything to be common, it is
common[3].
15 But if your brother is grieved
because of your food, you no longer
walk according to love. Do not by your
food destroy that one for whom
Messiah died.
16 Then do not let your good be
spoken evil of.
17 For the kingdom of YAHWEH is
not eating and drinking, but
righteousness and peace and joy in the
Holy Spirit.
18 For the one serving Messiah in
these things is pleasing to Elohim, and
approved by men.
19 So, then, let us pursue the things
of peace, and the things for building
up one another.
20 Do not by your food undo the
work of Elohim. Truly, all things are
pure[4], but it is bad to the man who
eats through a stumbling-block.
21 It is good not to eat flesh, nor to
drink wine, nor anything by which
your brother stumbles, or is offended,
or is weak[5].
22 Do you have faith? Have it to
yourself before YAHWEH. Blessed is
the one not condemning himself in
doing the things he has selected[6].
23 But the one doubting, if he eats,

---

5 The point being discussed is about someone dedicating a personal fast to YHWH. The brethren who were fasting are judging the ones who were not fasting and Paul is making the point that if you fast you dedicate the day to YHWH, but if you eat and bless YHWH for the food you are also dedicating the day to YHWH. There is only one commanded fast and that is on Yom Kippur (Lev 23:26-32)

1 By Yahshua living a perfect life and dying for the sins of humans and then being resurrected by YHWH, He has qualified to take the family name of Yahweh as He truly is the word of Yahweh and the exact representation of the Father in Heaven.

2 We are to discern between right and wrong but all judgment (condemnation) belongs to YHWH and there should be no such judgmental spirit in the Congregation of YHWH. (Math 7:1-2, 2 Cor 5:10)

3 The word used here even in the Greek text is "*common"* NOT "*unclean"*. Unclean foods are mandated in Leviticus the 11th chapter. This is speaking of clean meats that were sacrificed to idols and had become common, meaning used by all, not set apart any longer. Paul is stating that no clean food is common by itself simply because it may have been used in an idol sacrifice. This could not have been speaking about unclean meat, such as pork, as unclean animals were not used even in idol sacrifices and unclean animals such as a pig were not even considered as food to Israelites.

4 Some translations use the word "*clean"* falsely misrepresenting that Paul is speaking of all meat being clean to eat. The word is "***pure***" and has nothing to do with clean or unclean meat.

5 True believers must be mature enough not to put stumbling blocks before new or weaker brethren that are not mandated by scripture, but are only coming from pride and self righteousness.

he has been condemned, because it is not of faith; and whatever is not of faith is sin[1].

Chapter 15

1 But we, the strong ones, ought to bear the weaknesses of those not strong, and not to please ourselves.

2 For let each one of us please his neighbor for good, to building up.

3 For also Messiah did not please Himself, but even as it has been written, "The curses of those cursing You fell on Me." *(Psa. 69:9)*

4 For whatever things were written before were written for our instruction, that through patience and encouragement of the Scriptures we might have hope.

5 And may the Elohim of patience and encouragement give to you to mind the same thing among one another according to Yahshua Messiah,

6 that with one accord and with one mouth you may glorify the Elohim and Father of our Master Yahshua Messiah.

7 Because of this, be friendly, and bear one another's burdens as Messiah also brought us close to the glory of Elohim.

8 And I say, Yahshua Messiah has become a minister of circumcision for the truth of Elohim, to confirm the promises of the fathers,

9 and for the nations to glorify YAHWEH for mercy, even as it has been written, "Because of this I will confess to You in the nations, and I will give praise to Your name." *(Psa. 18:49)*

10 And again He says, "Rejoice, nations, with His people." *(Deut. 32:43)*

11 And again, "Praise the Master YAHWEH, all the nations, and praise Him all the peoples." *(Psa. 117:1)*

12 And again Isaiah says, "The Root of Jesse shall be, and He rising up to rule the nations; on Him nations will hope." *(Isa. 11:10)*

13 And may the Elohim of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, for you to abound in hope, in power of the Holy Spirit.

14 But, my brothers, I myself also am persuaded concerning you, that you yourselves also are full of goodness, being filled with all knowledge, being able to warn one another.

15 But I wrote to you more boldly, brethren, as reminding you in part, because of the grace given to me by Elohim,

16 for me to be a minister of Yahshua Messiah to the nations, sacredly ministering the good news of Elohim, that the offering of the nations might be acceptable, sanctified by the Holy Spirit.

17 Therefore I have boasting in Yahshua Messiah as to the things pertaining to Elohim.

18 For I will not dare to speak of anything which Messiah did not work out through me for the obedience of the nations in word and work,

19 in power of miracles and wonders, in power of the Holy Spirit, so as for me to have fulfilled the preaching of the good news of Messiah from Jerusalem and in a circle as far as Illyricum.

20 And so eagerly striving to preach the good news where Messiah was not

---

6 Faith is between the believer and Yahshua YHWH his Master, but some want to exploit their so-called faith by coercing others to do what they want them to. This is not faith but pride and self righteousness.

1 Although a believer should not judge his brother, he must also act on his convictions not to put a stumbling before himself.

named, so that I should not build on
another's[1] foundation[2],
21 but even as it has been written,
"They shall see, to whom nothing was
announced concerning Him; and the
ones that have not heard shall
understand." *(Isa. 52:15)*
22 Because of this I also was much
hindered from coming to you,
23 but now having no more place in
these regions, and having a longing to
come to you for many years,
24 whenever I may go into Spain, I
will come to you; for I hope in
traveling through to see you and to be
set forward there by you, if first I may
be filled of you in part.
25 But now I am going to Jerusalem,
doing service to the saints.
26 For both Macedonia and Achaia
thought it good to make certain gifts to
the poor of the saints in Jerusalem.
27 For they thought it good, also
being debtors of them; for if the
nations shared in their spiritual
things, they ought also to minister to
them in the fleshly things.
28 Then completing and having
sealed this fruit to them, I will go
through you into Spain.
29 And I know that I will come to
you in the fullness of the blessing of
the good news of Messiah when I
come.
30 But I exhort you, brothers, by our
Master Yahshua Messiah, and by the
love of the Spirit, to strive together
with me in your prayers to Elohim on
my behalf,
31 that I be delivered from the
disobedient ones in Judea, and that
my ministry, which is to Jerusalem,
may be acceptable to the saints,
32 that I may come to you in joy
through the will of Elohim, and that I
may be refreshed with you.
33 And the Elohim of peace be with
all of you. Amen.

Chapter 16

1 But I entrust to your care our sister
Phoebe, being a servant of the
congregation in Cenchrea,
2 that you may receive her in our
Master, as is worthy of the saints, and
may assist her in whatever thing she
may need of you. For she also became
a helper of many, and of myself.
3 Greet Priscilla and Aquila, my
fellow workers in Yahshua Messiah,
4 who laid down their neck for my
soul, to whom not only I give thanks,
but also all the congregations of the
nations.
5 And greet the congregation at their
house[3], and my beloved Epenetus,
who is a first-fruit of Achaia for
Messiah.
6 Greet Mariam, who did much labor
for us.
7 Greet Andronicus and Junias, my
brothers who were prisoners with me,
who are well known among the
apostles[4], and who also were in
Messiah before me.

---

1 "*Another*" -This word can also mean foreign.

2 Paul was primarily sent to the nations as where Peter and the Apostles were sent to the House of Israel (Gal 2:7-8). However, Paul's commission was also to go before Kings and the sons of Israel (Acts 9:15), which he did later in his ministry, even going a s far as Great Britain.

3 Many early congregations met in homes after being expelled from the synagogue. Church buildings did not originate until around the third century and mostly came after paganism crept into the congregation. Today most church buildings with steeples etc are mostly pagan and steeples represent a phallic symbol.

4 These relatives of Paul were not Apostles but were known by the Apostles, also by the verb tense they are males not females.

8 Greet Amplias my beloved in our Master.
9 Greet Urbanus, our helper in Messiah, and my beloved Stachys.
10 Greet Apelles, the approved in Messiah; Greet those of Aristobulus.
11 Greet Herodion, my kinsman. Greet those of Narcissus, those being in our Master.
12 Greet Tryphena and Tryphosa, those laboring in our Master. Greet Persis the beloved, who has labored in many things in our Master.
13 Greet Rufus, the chosen in our Master, and his mother and mine.
14 Greet Asyncritus, Phlegon, Hermas, Patrobas, Hermes, and the brothers with them.
15 Greet Philologus and Julias, Nereus and his sister, and Olympas, and all the saints with them.
16 Greet one another with a holy kiss[1]. The congregations of Messiah greet you.
17 And brothers I exhort you to mark those making divisions and causes of stumbling contrary to the doctrine which you learned, and turn away from them[2].
18 For such ones do not serve our Master Yahshua Messiah, but their own belly, and by smooth speaking and flattering they deceive the hearts of the simple people[3].
19 For your obedience is known by everyone; therefore, I rejoice over you. But I desire you to be truly wise as to good things, but pure toward evil things.
20 And the Elohim of peace shall bruise Satan under your feet shortly. The grace of our Master Yahshua, Messiah be with you. Amen.
21 Timothy, my fellow worker, and Lucius, and Jason, and Sosipater, my kinsmen, greet you.
22 I, Tertius, the one writing the epistle, greet you in our Master.
23 Gaius, the host of all the congregation and me, greets you. Erastus, the steward of the city, and Quartus the brother, greet you.
24 Now to Him who is able to establish you according to my good news, and the proclaiming of Yahshua Messiah, according to the revelation of the mystery having been kept unvoiced during eternal times
25, but now has been made plain, and by prophetic Scriptures, according to the command of the everlasting Elohim, made known for obedience of faith to all the nations;
26 For Elohim is the only wise one and to Him be the glory through Yahshua Messiah forever and ever.
27 the grace of our Master Yahshua Messiah, be with you all. Amen.

---

1 An ancient Middle eastern greeting of kissing someone on each cheek. Men kissed only men and women kissed women.

2 People who brought false doctrine and did not follow the judicial order ordained by Yahshua through His ordained ministry were to be marked and brethren were to have no fellowship with them until evident repentance would be made. It was pivotal for brethren to abide by this for the safety of the congregation from false teachers and also to ostracize the false person in hopes that they would repent.

3 These type of false people simply bear no fruit and are only self serving to themselves.

Book of 1 Corinthians 56 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, a called apostle of Yahshua Messiah, by the will of Elohim, and Sosthenes the brother,

2 to the Congregation of YAHWEH which is in Corinth, those having been sanctified in Messiah Yahshua, called out saints, with all those calling on the name of our Master Yahshua Messiah in every place, both theirs and ours:

3 Grace to you, and peace, from YAHWEH our Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.

4 I give thanks to my Elohim always concerning you for the grace of Elohim given to you in Messiah Yahshua,

5 that in everything you were enriched in Him, in all utterance and all knowledge,

6 even as the testimony of Messiah was confirmed in you,

7 so that you are not lacking in any gift, awaiting the revelation of our Master, Yahshua Messiah,

8 who also will confirm you until the end, blameless in the day of our Master Yahshua Messiah.

9 YAHWEH is faithful, through whom you were called into the fellowship of His Son, Yahshua Messiah our Master.

10 Now I beseech you, brothers, through the name of our Master Yahshua Messiah[1] that you all say the same thing, and there be no divisions among you, but you be united in the same mind and in the same judgment[2]. *(Phil 2:2 Joh 17:22-23)*

11 For concerning you, my brothers, it was shown to me by those of Chloe that there are disputes among you.

12 But I say this, that each of you says, I am of Paul, and I of Apollos, and I of Cephas and I of Messiah.

13 Has Messiah been divided? Was Paul crucified for you? Or were you baptized into the name of Paul?

14 I give thanks to Elohim that I did not baptize any one of you, except Crispus and Gaius,

15 so that no man could say that I baptized in my own name.

16 And I also baptized the house of Stephanas. For the rest, I do not know if I baptized any other.

17 For Messiah did not send me to baptize, but to announce the good news, not in wisdom of words, lest the torture stake of Messiah be made of no effect.

18 For the Word of the torture stake is foolishness to those being lost, but to us being saved, it is the power of Elohim.

19 For it has been written, "I will destroy the wisdom of the wise, and I will set aside the understanding of the prudent ones." *(Isa. 29:14)*

20 Where is the wise? Where is the scribe? Where is the lawyer of this world? Did Elohim not make the wisdom of this world foolish?

21 Because since all the wisdom that Elohim had given was not sufficient for the world to know Elohim, YAHWEH was pleased though, to save the ones believing through the simpleness of the good news.

22 And since Jews ask for a sign, and Arameans[3] seek wisdom,

23 we, on the other hand, preach Messiah crucified, (truly an offense to Jews, and foolishness to Arameans),

24 but to the called out ones, both to

[1] Paul beseeching for unity through the sacred name of Yahshua.

[2] This can only happen when the believers are fully 100% voluntarily submitting their will to YHWH, His judicial order and His set apart ministry that He has ordained to keep order and proper doctrine in the congregation. The judgment would always be rendered from the principles of the Torah.

Jews and to Arameans, Messiah is the power of Elohim and the wisdom of Elohim;
25 because the foolish thing of Elohim is wiser than men, and the weak thing of Elohim is stronger than men.
26 For consider your own calling, brethren, that there are not many wise according to worldly things, nor many mighty, not many of noble birth.
27 But Elohim chose the foolish ones of the world that the wise might be put to shame, and Elohim chose the weak ones of the world so that He might put to shame the strong things.
28 And He hath chosen those of humble families in the world, and the lowly, and them who are insignificant, in order to belittle them who think themselves important[1]:
29 So that no flesh might boast in His presence.
30 But you also belong to Him through Messiah Yahshua, who was made to us wisdom from Elohim, both righteousness and sanctification and redemption,
31 so that even as it has been written, "He that glories, let him glory in YAHWEH." *(Jer. 9:24)*

Chapter 2

1 And, when I came to you, my
Brethren, I did not preach to you the mystery of Elohim in magnificent speech, nor in wisdom.
2 For I decided not to know anything among you except Yahshua Messiah, and Him having been crucified.
3 And I was with you in much reverence for Elohim, and in much trembling.
4 And my word and my preaching was not in enticing words of human wisdom, but with the demonstration of the Spirit, and with power;
5 that your faith might not be in the wisdom of men, but in the power of Elohim.
6 But we speak wisdom among those who have comprehension, but not the wisdom of this age, nor of the rulers of this age, those being brought to nothing.
7 But we speak the wisdom of Elohim in a mystery, having been hidden, which Elohim ordained before the world for our glory,
8 which none of the rulers of this age has known. For if they had known, they would not have crucified the Master of glory;
9 according as it has been written, "Eye has not seen, and ear has not heard," nor has it risen up into the heart of man, the things which Elohim has prepared for those that love Him. *(Isa. 64:4)*
10 But Elohim revealed them to us by His Spirit, for the Spirit searches all things, even the depths of Elohim.
11 For who among men knows the things of a man, except the spirit of a man within him? So also no one has known the things of Elohim except the Spirit of Elohim.
12 But we have not received the spirit of the world, but the Spirit from Elohim, so that we might know the things that are freely given to us by Elohim.

---

[3] Some erroneously translate this word as gentiles but the scope that Paul is referring to is much narrower, as the Arameans where the people and relatives from the area in Mesopotamia where Abraham came from in northern Syria, Eastern Turkey and were Semites, not simply gentiles.

[1] This scripture is not saying that no people of name or wealth would be called, but they would be few due to the fact that many when given a position of authority or great wealth allow it to fill them with pride and only those of a humble contrite spirit can receive the calling of being a first fruit.

13 For the things which we discuss, are not dependent on the knowledge of words and man's wisdom, but on the teaching of the Holy Spirit, thus explaining spiritual things with the spiritual minded.

14 But the material man rejects the things of the Spirit, for they are foolishness to him, and he is not able to know them, because they are spiritually discerned.

15 But the spiritual man discerns everything, and yet no man is able to discern him.

16 For "Who has known the mind of YAHWEH that he will instruct Him?" But we have the mind of Messiah[1]. *(Isa. 40:13)*

Chapter 3

1 And, brothers, I was not able to speak to you as to spiritual ones, but as to worldly ones, even as to babes in Messiah.

2 I gave you milk to drink, and not meat, for you were not then able, and even now you are not ready for it.

3 Because you are still worldly; for as long as there is among you jealousy, and strife, and divisions, are you not worldly and still following the material things?

4 For when one may say, truly I am of Paul, and another, I of Apollos; are you not worldly?

5 Who then is Paul? And who is Apollos, but ministers through whom you believed, and each one is gifted as YAHWEH gave to him?

6 I planted, Apollos watered, but Elohim produced the increase.

7 So then neither he who plants, nor he who waters deserves the credit, but Elohim who gives the increase.

8 Thus the planter and the waterer are equal, and each one will receive his own reward according to his own labor.

9 For we labor together with Elohim, and you are Elohim's work, and you are a building of Elohim.

10 According to the grace of Elohim given to me, as a wise master builder, I laid a foundation, but another builds on it. But let each one be careful how he builds.

11 For no one is able to lay any other foundation beside the One having been laid, who is Yahshua Messiah.

12 And if anyone builds on this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, grass, straw,

13 the work of each will be revealed; for the Day will make it known, because it is revealed in fire; and the fire will prove the work of each, what sort it is[2].

14 If the work of anyone which he built survives, he will receive his reward[3].

15 And the one whose work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss; but he will be delivered, but so as through fire.

16 Do you not know that you are a sanctuary of Elohim, and the Spirit of YAHWEH dwells in you[4]?

17 And whoever defiles the sanctuary of Elohim, Elohim will destroy; for the sanctuary of Elohim is holy, which you are[5].

18 Let no one deceive himself. If anyone thinks to be wise among you in this age, let him become foolish, that he may become wise.

19 For the wisdom of this world is

[1] The mind of Messiah is the same mind of YHWH's spirit (Ro 8:9-10) and if the mind of Messiah is in you, then you should think and act exactly as He would, but you must submit to that spirit and allow it to work in you.

[2] 2 Cor 5:10

[3] Rev 20:13

[4] 1 Cor 16:19

[5] Lev 15:25-31

foolishness with Elohim; for it has been written, "He catches the wise in their own craftiness." *(Job 5:13)*
20 And again, "YAHWEH knows the thoughts of the wise, that they are vain." *(Psa. 94:11)*
21 So let no one glory in men; for all things are yours,
22 whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the world, or life, or death, or things present, or things to come; all are yours,
23 and you are Messiah's, and Messiah is Elohim's.

Chapter 4

1 This is the way that you should consider us; as servants of Messiah and stewards of the mysteries of Elohim.
2 Moreover, it is sought among stewards that one be found faithful.
3 But to me it is a small thing that I should be judged by you, or by anyone else. But neither do I judge myself.
4 For I know nothing of myself, but I have not been justified by this; but He judging me is YAHWEH.
5 Then do not judge anything before the time, until Master YAHWEH comes, who will both shed light on the hidden things of darkness and will reveal the counsels of the hearts. And then praise will be to each one from Elohim.
6 And, brothers, I transferred these things to myself and Apollos because of you, that in our example, you may learn not to think above what has been written, that you not be puffed up one over the other.
7 For who makes you to differ? And what do you have that you did not receive? And if you received it, why do you boast as if you did not receive?
8 You are already satisfied; you already became rich; you have become strong without our council (and oh that you really were kings, so that we also might reign with you!)
9 For I think that Elohim set us out last, the apostles, as appointed to death, because we became a spectacle to the world, even to angels and to men.
10 We are fools for the sake of Messiah, but you are wise in Messiah. We are weak, but you are strong. You are praised, but we are despised.
11 Even until this present hour we both hunger and thirst, and are naked, and are mistreated, and have no permanent home,
12 and labor, working with our own hands. Being cursed, we bless; persecuted, we endure;
13 being defamed, we entreat. We have become as filth of the world, the scum wiped off by all until now.
14 I do not write these things to make you feel ashamed but warning you as my beloved children.
15 For if you should have ten thousand teachers in Messiah, yet you will not have many fathers; for I fathered you in Messiah Yahshua through the good news.
16 Because of this, I urge you, be imitators of me.
17 Because of this I sent Timothy to you, who is my beloved child, and faithful in our Master YAHWEH, who will remind you of my manner of life in Messiah, even as I teach everywhere in every ongregation.
18 As to my not coming to you now, some were puffed up.
19 But if Master YAHWEH wills, I will come to you shortly. And I will not know the word of those who have been puffed up, but the power.
20 For the kingdom of YAHWEH is not in word, but in power.
21 What do you desire? Shall I come

to you with a rod, or in love and a spirit of meekness?

Chapter 5

1 Everywhere it is heard that fornication is among you, and such immorality which is not named among the heathen, so as for one to have his father's wife[1].
2 And you are boasting, and have not rather mourned, that he that did this deed might be removed from among you.
3 For as being absent in body, but being present in spirit, I have already judged the one who has worked out this thing, as if I were present:
4 In the name of our Master Yahshua Messiah, you being gathered together with my spirit also, with the power of our Master Yahshua Messiah,
5 to deliver such a one to Satan for destruction of the flesh that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Master Yahshua.
6 Your boasting is not good. Do you not know that a little leaven leavens all the lump?
7 Then clean out the old leaven so that you may be a new lump, just as you are unleavened[2]. For our Passover is Messiah[3] who was sacrificed for our sake.
8 Therefore, let us celebrate[4] the feast, not with old leaven, nor with leaven of malice and of evil, but with unleavened bread of purity and holiness.
9 I wrote to you in an epistle not to associate with immoral persons;
10 and not altogether with the fornicators of this world, or with the covetous[5], or with extortionists, or with idolaters, since then you must go out of the world.
11 But now I wrote to you not to associate intimately; if anyone is called a brother and is either immoral, or a covetous one, or an idolater, or a reviler, or a drunkard, or a extortionist, with such a one do not even break bread[6] to eat with.
12 For what business is it to me to judge the ones outside the congregation? But you may make judgments[7] on those inside the congregation.
13 But Elohim will judge the ones outside. "And you shall put out from yourselves those wicked persons[8]."

Chapter 6

1 Does anyone of you having a matter against his brother dare to be judged before the unjust, and not before the saints?
2 Do you not know that the saints will judge the world? And if the world

---

1 Deut 22:30

2 The brethren here already had taken the physical leaven out of their houses according to the command for the days of unleavened bread, (Ex 12:15) and Paul is using that analogy to teach them that a little sin as with leaven will go through the whole lump or congregation.

3 Yahshua is the New Testament Passover lamb (Joh 1:29) and His sacrifice replaces the killing of an additional lamb for passover (Ex 12:3).

4 This word literally means to perform with joy and shows that the Holy Days were being kept almost 30 yrs after the death of Yahshua in a primarily gentile area.

5 To have a covetous spirit is put in the same group as fornicators and extortionists.

6 An ancient Middle Eastern term used simply for eating together with.

7 In Hebrew there is one word for judging "*condemning*" and another word for judging "*discerning*". We are to discern matters of sin and unrighteousness but all condemning is left to YHWH for judgment day. (Math 7:1-2)

8 People who are practicing sin are to be put away from the congregation (Deut 17:7).

is judged by you, are you unworthy to judge small affairs?

3 Do you not know that we shall judge cherubs? How much more than should we judge those who belong to this world?

4 You have worldly affairs to be settled and yet you have put men of bad reputation in the congregation on the judgment seat.

5 I say this to you to make you feel ashamed. So, is there not a single wise one among you, who could settle a dispute between brother and brother?

6 But brother goes to court with brother and this before unbelievers!

7 Indeed, then, there is already a failure with you all, that you have lawsuits with yourselves. Why not instead be wronged? Why not instead be defrauded?

8 But you do wrong, and defraud, and these things to brethren!

9 Or do you not know that unjust ones will not inherit the kingdom of Elohim? Do not be led astray, neither fornicators, nor idolaters, nor adulterers, nor the corrupt, nor homosexuals,

10 nor thieves, nor covetous ones, nor drunkards, nor revilers, nor extortionists shall inherit the kingdom of Elohim.

11 And some of you were these things, but you were washed, but you were sanctified, but you were justified in the name of the Master Yahshua, and in the Spirit of our Elohim.

12 All things are lawful to me, but not all things profit. All things are lawful to me, but I will not be ruled by any.

13 Foods for the belly, and the belly for foods, but Elohim will destroy both this and these. But the body is not for fornication, but for our Master, and our Master for the body.

14 And as Elohim has raised up our Master, so He will raise us up through His own power.

15 Do you not know that your bodies are members of Messiah? Then taking the members of Messiah, shall I make them members of a harlot? Let it not be!

16 Or do you not know that he being joined to a harlot is one body? For He says, The two shall be into one flesh[1].

17 But the one being joined to our Master is one spirit.

18 Flee fornication. Every sin which a man may do is outside the body, but he doing fornication sins against his own body.

19 Or do you not know that your body is a sanctuary of the Holy Spirit in you, which you have from Elohim, and you are not of yourselves?

20 You were bought with a price; then glorify Elohim in your body, and in your spirit, which belong to Elohim.

Chapter 7

1 Now concerning the things which you wrote to me, it is proper for a man not to have intimacy with his wife at times;

2 nevertheless because of the danger of immorality, let every man hold to his own wife, and let every woman hold to her own husband.

3 Let the husband give to his wife the love that he owes her, and likewise the wife also to the husband.

4 The wife does not have authority of her own body, but the husband. And likewise also the husband does not have authority over his own body, but the wife.

5 Do not deprive one another, unless by agreement for a time, especially when you devote yourself to fasting and prayer. And then come together

---
[1] Gen 2:24

again, that Satan may not tempt you because of your physical passion.
6 But I say this to weak persons, for it is not part of the Torah.
7 for I desire all men to be as myself in purity. But each has his own gift from Elohim, one this way, and one that way.
8 But I say to the unmarried men, and to the widows, it is good for them if they also remain as I am.
9 But if they do not have self control, let them marry; for it is better to marry than to burn with passion.
10 But I command the ones being married (not I, but our Master), let not the wife be separated from her husband;
11 but if indeed she is separated, remain unmarried, or be reconciled to the husband; and a husband not to dessert his wife[1].
12 But to the rest I say, not our Master, if any brother has an unbelieving wife, and she consents to live with him, let him not leave her.
13 And a woman who has an unbelieving husband, and he consents to live with her, let her not leave him.
14 For the unbelieving husband has been sanctified by the wife, and the unbelieving wife has been sanctified by the husband; else, then, your children are impure, but in such cases they are pure.
15 But if the unbelieving one separates, let them be separated; the brother or the sister is not in bondage[2] in such matters; but Elohim has called us in peace.
16 For what do you know, wife, whether you will save the husband? Or what do you know, husband, whether you will save the wife[3]?
17 Only as YAHWEH has divided to each, each as the Master has called, so let him walk. So I command in the congregations.
18 If a man was circumcised when he was called, let him not adhere to the party of uncircumcision. And if he was uncircumcised, when he was called, let him not be circumcised.
19 Circumcision is nothing, and uncircumcision is nothing, but the keeping of the commandments of YAHWEH is everything[4].
20 Let each one remain in the station of life in which he was called[5].
21 Were you called as a slave? It does

1 In cases were abuse or other vile sins are involved there is a clause for separation but never is it stated that a spouse can divorce and marry another person while the original spouse is still living.

2 The bondage is that Yahshua stated that if a man would leave his spouse he is causing her to commit adultery (Math 5:32) and even if he stayed unmarried he would be accountable for the wife's adultery because he left her. Here, Paul is stating in the case of an unconverted mate, if they leave due to the converted mate's faith, the converted mate would have no accountability to the departed mate's adultery if they remarried. No where does it state the believing mate can remarry while their unconverted mate is still living.

3 Clearly encouraging spouses to stay together regardless if one is a non believer, as Deut 24:1-4 states that if the wife would leave and marry another, they can never come back to the original spouse as they would be defiled due to their adultery.

4 In Jewish oral law when one was circumcised he had to adhere to many other oral rituals. Here Paul is stating that all that matters is Yahweh's commandments and not man-made oral traditions.

5 Since there is no directive for divorced spouses who have re-married this scripture indicates that if one has married a second spouse, then they should not leave that spouse, but if they are divorced and single then they would not be able to re-marry while their spouse is alive (1Cor 7:39)

not matter to you. But if you are able
to be free, rather use it.
22 For the one called while a slave in
our Master is a freed man of our
Master. And likewise, the one called
while a free man is a slave of Messiah.
23 You were redeemed with a price;
do not become slaves of men.
24 My Brethren, let every man in
whatever station of life he was called,
remain therein serving Elohim.
25 But about virgins, I have no
command from Elohim. But I give
judgment, as having received favor by
Elohim to be faithful[1].
26 Then I think this to be good,
because of the present necessity: that
it is good for a man to remain this way.
27 Have you been engaged to a wife?
Do not seek to be released. Have you
been released from a betrothal? Do not
seek a wife.
28 But if you also marry, you do not
sin. And if the virgin marries, she
doesnot sin[2]. But such will have
trouble in the flesh. But I am sparing
you.
29 But I say this, brethren, that the
time has been cut short. Let the ones
who have wives be as though they have
none[3];
30 and those weeping as not
weeping, and those rejoicing as not
rejoicing, and those buying as if they
did not possess anything,
31 and those who make use of this
world as not abusing it; for the mode
of this world is passing away.
32 But I desire you to be without
care. The unmarried one cares for the
things of the Master, how to please his
Master;
33 but the one marrying cares for the
things of the world, how to please the
wife.
34 The wife and the virgin are
different. The unmarried one cares for
the welfare of her Master, that she be
pure in both body and spirit. But the
married one cares for the things of the
world, how to please the husband.
35 And I say this for your benefit,
not that I put a snare or put a yoke on
you, but I exhort you to be perfect
before the Master, and faithful without
distraction.
36 But if any man thinks he is
shamed by the behavior of his virgin
daughter if she is beyond her prime,
and he has not given her in marriage
and that he should give her, let him do
what he desires; he does not sin; let
her marry.
37 But he who stands firm in heart,
not having necessity, but has authority
as to his own will, and has judged this
in his heart, to keep his virgin
daughter single; he does well.
38 So that he that gives his virgin
daughter in marriage does well, and he
that does not give his virgin daughter
in marriage does even better[4].
39 A wife is bound by the Torah for
as long a time as her husband lives;
but if her husband dies, she is free to

---

1 Paul discussed widows, married couples and from here to the end of the chapter he will give advise to virgins, those never married before.

2 Engagement in ancient times dealt with the bridegroom coming and signing a formal contract with the father of the bride. This contract was binding and only unfaithfulness during the betrothal period could break the agreement (Math 1:18-19). Paul is stating it is not sin for someone who had a betrothal canceled to marry another individual.

3 Paul is stressing throughout the chapter that due to the current times, as he thought Yahshua's return was imminent and there was much persecution, that even married couples had to put the work of YHWH first.

4 Paul stated earlier this was his opinion (vs 25-26).

be married to whomever she desires, only in the Master[1].

40 But she is happier if she remains so, according to my judgment. And I think I also have the Spirit of Elohim.

Chapter 8

1 But concerning the sacrifices to idols, we know that we all have knowledge. Knowledge puffs up, but love builds up.

2 But if anyone thinks to know anything, he still has known nothing as he ought to know.

3 But if anyone loves Elohim, he has been known by Him.

4 Then concerning the eating of things sacrificed to idols, we know that an idol is nothing in the world, and that there is no other Elohim except one.

5 For even if some are called gods, either in the heavens or on the earth; (even as there are many gods, and many Masters);

6 but to us there is one El, the Father, of whom are all things, and we for Him, and one Master YAHWEH, Yahshua Messiah, through whom are all things, and we by Him.

7 Howbeit there is not in every man that knowledge; for some with clear conscience eat that which is offered to idols as a sacrifice; and their conscience being weak is defiled.

8 But food will not bring us closer to Elohim. For neither if we eat do we excel, nor if we do not eat are we lacking[2].

9 But be careful lest this liberty of yours becomes a stumbling block to the weak.

10 For if anyone sees you, the one having knowledge, sitting in an idol-temple, will not the weak one's conscience be lifted up so as to eat things sacrificed to idols?

11 So the weak brother will be lost, he for whom Messiah died on your indifference.

12 And if you offend in this way against your brothers, and influence their weak conscience, you sin against Messiah.

13 On account of this, if meat offends my brother, I will not at all eat flesh forever, so that I do not offend my brother.

Chapter 9

1 Am I not an apostle? Am I not free? Have I not seen our Master Yahshua Messiah? Are you not my work in our Master?

2 If I am not an apostle to others, yet I am indeed to you; for you are the seal of my apostleship in the Master.

3 My defense to those examining me is this:

4 Have we not the right to eat and to drink?

5 Have we not the right to travel with a believing wife, as do the rest of the apostles also, and Cephas, and our Master's brothers[3]?

6 Or is it only Barnabas and I who have no right to quit working?

7 Who serves as a soldier at his own wages at any time? Who plants a vineyard and does not eat of its fruit? Or who shepherds a flock and does not eat of the milk of the flock[4]?

8 Do I speak these things according

[1] Paul confirms Yahshua's words that if you leave your spouse and marry another it is adultery. Also, he adds the believers' responsibility to marry in the faith.

[2] The subject of whether one should eat meat that is scarified to an idol is the same subject brought up in Romans 14.

[3] Peter and other Apostles were married.

[4] Paul is speaking of his right as a worker for Yahweh to receive money to pay expenses.

to man, or does not the Torah say these things also[1]?

9 For it has been written in the Torah of Moses, "You shall not muzzle an ox treading out grain." Is Elohim concerned only for the ox[2]?

10 No. It is known that He said it for our sakes? And it is written because of us, so that the one plowing ought to plow in hope, and the one threshing in hope to partake of fruit.

11 If we have sowed spiritual things to you, is it a great thing if we shall reap of your fleshly things[3]?

12 If others have this authority over you, have we not the greater right? But we did not use this authority, but we endured all things, so that we might not give a hindrance to the good news of Messiah[4].

13 Do you not know that those laboring about the holy things are maintained out of the sanctuary? Those ministering on the altar partake with the altar.

14 So also the Master ordained those who preach His good news should live from His good news[5].

15 But I have not used one of these privileges. And I do not write these things that it be so with me. For it is good to me rather to die than that anyone declare my empty pride.

16 For if I proclaim the good news, no glory is to me; for necessity is laid on me, and it is woe to me if I do not proclaim the good news.

17 For if I do this willingly, I have a reward; but if unwillingly, I am entrusted with a stewardship.

18 What then is my reward? That proclaiming the good news I may make the good news of Messiah free, so as not to abuse my authority in the good news[6].

19 For being free of all, I have served all men, that I might gain the more.

20 And I became as a Jew to the Jews, that I might gain Jews; to those following Torah as following Torah, that I might gain those following Torah;

21 to those without the Torah as without instruction (not being without the Torah of Elohim, but under the instruction of Messiah), that I might gain those without the Torah[7].

22 I became to the weak as weak, that I might gain the weak. To all I have become all things, that in any and every way every man might be saved[8].

23 And I do this for the good news, that I might become a fellow partaker of it.

24 Do you not know that those running in a stadium indeed all run,

1 Every answer in life always goes back to the Torah. If it was done away with, as so many wrongly assume, why would Paul consistently use it as his example of authority.

2 Deut. 25:4

3 Again, Paul is speaking about receiving tithes for living expenses.

4 Paul claims this as a right, but also states that he has by-passed this right not to cause an offense to the brethren.

5 Paul now goes further and states that the giving of tithes for ministers to live on is a mandate directly from Yahshua. Many have abused this mandate and instead of taking simply living expenses have taken exuberant salaries with excessive luxuries. This was never mandated by Messiah.

6 Although it is biblical for a true minister of Elohim to be able to receive minimal tithe money for living expenses if needed, the good news of Yahshua should never be sold and is a free gift from YHWH (Math 10:8, Pr 23:23).

7 Paul is asserting here to the newly converted (who never knew the Torah before) that he would very gently instruct them, so as for them to be able to understand.

8 It is a law of building instant rapport to try to relate to each person in the understanding that they have.

but one receives the prize? So run that you may obtain.
25 And every man who battles in the contest frees his mind from everything else. And yet they run to win a crown that is perishable, but we to win one that is everlasting.
26 So I run accordingly, as not uncertainly; so I fight, as not beating air;
27 but I conquer and subdue my body, so that, by no chance, when I have preached to others, I myself will be rejected.[1]

Chapter 10

1 And I do not want you to be ignorant, brothers that our fathers were all under the cloud, and all passed through the Sea.
2 And all were baptized to Moses in the cloud, and in the Sea,
3 and all ate the same spiritual food.
4 And all drank the same spiritual drink; for they drank of the spiritual rock following, and that Rock was Messiah.
5 Yet Elohim was not pleased with most of them, "For they were scattered in the deserted place." *(Num. 14:16)*
6 But these things became examples for us, so that we may not be lusting after evil, even as those indeed lusted.
7 Neither be idolaters, even as some of them, as it has been written, "The people sat down to eat and drink, and rose up to play." *(Ex. 32:6)*
8 Nor should we commit fornication, as some of them fornicated, and twenty three thousand fell in one day.
9 Neither let us tempt the Messiah, as some of them did, and were destroyed by serpents.
10 Neither should you murmur, as also some of them murmured, and perished by the hand of the destroyer[2].
11 And all these things happened to those as examples, and it was written for our warning, on whom the ends of the ages have come.
12 So that he that thinks he can stand, let him be careful that he not fall.
13 No temptation has taken you except what is human; but Elohim is faithful, who will not allow you to be tested above what you are able. But with the trial, He will also make the way out, so that you may be able to bear it.
14 On account of this, keep away from idolatry, my beloved.
15 I speak as to prudent ones; you judge what I say.
16 The cup of blessing[3] that we bless, is it not a partaking of the blood of Messiah? The bread which we break, is it not a partaking of the body of Messiah?
17 For just as the loaf of bread is one, for we are all one body, for we all partake of the one bread.
18 Look at Israel whose observances is according to flesh; are not those eating the sacrifices partakers of the altar?
19 What then do I say, that an idol is anything, or that an idolatrous sacrifice is anything? No.
20 But the things the pagans sacrifice, "They sacrifice to demons, and not to YAHWEH." [4] But I do not

[1] The physical comes before the spiritual and a believer must be able to physically control his body from lust, greed, covetousness and addiction or he will never walk in the spiritual realm.

[2] Ps 106:24-25

[3] In Jewish tradition from the time of Messiah 4 cups were drank at Passover each having a special meaning. The third cup was called "*the cup of blessing or grace*".

[4] Deut. 32:17

want you to have fellowship with demons;
21 you cannot drink the cup of our Master and a cup of demons; you cannot partake of the table of our Master, and a table of demons[1].
22 Or do we provoke our Master to jealousy? Are we stronger than He?
23 All things are lawful to me, but not all things profit. All things are lawful to me, but not all things edify.[2]
24 Let no one seek the things of himself, but each one that of his neighbor.
25 Eat everything being sold in a market place, examining nothing because of conscience,
26 for "The earth belongs to YAHWEH, and the fullness of it." *(Psa. 24:1)*
27 And if any of the unbelievers invite you, and you desire to go, eat everything set before you, examining nothing because of conscience.
28 But if anyone tells you, This is slain in sacrifice to idols, do not eat, because of that one pointing it out, and the conscience;
29 But I say conscience, not that of himself, but that of the other. For why is my freedom judged by another's conscience?
30 But if I partake by grace, why am I evil spoken of because of that for which I give thanks?
31 Then whether you eat or drink, or whatever you do, do all things to the glory of Elohim.
32 Be without offense both to Jews and Arameans, and to the Congregation of YAHWEH.
33 Even as I also please all men in all things, not seeking my own advantage, but the good of the many, that they may be saved.

Chapter 11

1 Be imitators of me, as I am also of Messiah.
2 But I praise you, brothers, that in all things you have remembered me, and even as I delivered them to you, you hold fast the doctrines.
3 But I want you to know that Messiah is the head of every man, and the man is the head of a woman, and YAHWEH is the head of Messiah[3].
4 Every man praying or prophesying, having anything down over his head shames his head.
5 And every woman praying or prophesying with the head uncovered dishonors her head, for it is the same as to her whose head is shaven[4].
6 For if a woman does not fully cover her head, let her also cut off her hair. But if it is shameful for a woman to be shorn, or to be shaven, let her head be covered[5].
7 For truly a man ought not to have the head covered, being the image and glory of Elohim. But woman is the glory of man;
8 for man is not of the woman, but woman of man;
9 for also man was not created for

[1] It is unacceptable to YHWH to enter covenant relationship with Him and to continue with pagan practices such as Christmas and Easter. Christmas is a pagan ceremony coming from the worship of the winter solstice and "*Easter*" is the name of the Babylonian goddess "*Istar"* and is steeped in paganism.

[2] 1 Cor 6:12

[3] Yahweh has judicial order in all things and the family structure is the core of society.

[4] The subject here is "*head*" coverings, not "*hair*" coverings.

[5] The reason why Paul is writing about this subject was that women in this mostly pagan area were wearing a piece of cloth to cover their hair and since the hair was not seen, they were cutting the hair very short against scripture.

the sake of the woman, but woman for
the sake of the man;
10 because of this, the woman ought
to be modest and have her head fully
covered as a sign of respect to the
malakim [1].
11 However, man is not apart from
woman, nor woman apart from man,
in our Master[2].
12 For as the woman is out of the
man, so also the man through the
woman; but all things are from
Elohim.
13 You judge among yourselves: Is it
fitting for a woman to pray to Elohim
with an uncovered head[3]?
14 Or does not nature herself teach
you that if a man indeed wears long
hair, it is a disgrace to him?
15 But if a woman wears her hair
long, it is a glory to her; because the
long hair has been given to her instead
of a veil[4].
16 But if anyone thinks to be
contentious, we do not have such a
custom, nor do the Congregations of
YAHWEH[5].
17 Now I give you these commands,
not to praise you, because you have
not made progress, but have gotten
worse.
18 First, I hear divisions to be among
you when you come together in the
Congregation. And I believe it in some
part.
19 For also heresies need to be
among you, so that the approved ones
may become revealed among you.
20 Then you coming together, you
do not eat and drink as is appropriate
on the day of Our Master[6].
21 For each one takes his own
supper first in the eating; and one is
hungry, and another drunken.
22 For do you not have houses in
which to eat and to drink? Or do you
not respect the Congregation of
YAHWEH, and shame those who
have nothing? What do I say to you?
Shall I praise you for this? I do not
praise.
23 For I received from the Master
what I also delivered to you, that the
Master Yahshua in the night in which
He was betrayed took bread[7];
24 and giving thanks, He broke and

---

1 Malakim most times in scripture is referring to cherubs, but sometimes it can also be referring to a human being sent on an official delegation (2Sam 11:19-23). Whenever you are seeing the term "*The Messenger (Malak) of YHWH*" it is referring to one specific messenger, namely Yahshua. Yahshua is not a cherub (Heb 1:4), but eternal and the commander under YHWH of His heavenly host (Jos 5:13-15).

2 Paul is not referring to judicial order here, but that all believers male or female have the same potential to become a child of Elohim.

3 Paul, being a Jewish Rabbi is using a typical rabbinical way to midrash this subject. He is mentioning their argument, then he will tell both sides of the argument and in the following verses he will explain the answer to the argument.

4 He used their own argument to give them the proper answer. Should a woman have her head (not hair) covered? Yes, she should, they were right, but Yahweh has already taken care of this naturally, as a woman's long hair is given to her instead of a veil. Some falsely purport that it should state "*as an additional covering*". This is not in the translation at all and the phrase used is "*instead of a veil"*. Up to this point the word used by Paul was "*to cover"* never even mentioning the word "*veil*" up until this verse. Clearly, he states the long hair is given instead of a veil.

5 The custom he is speaking about is whether a woman needs to wear a veil, and the answer is simple. The Congregations of Yahweh **DO NOT** have this custom.

6 Referring to Passover on the 14th of Aviv (Luk 22:7-20)

7 This is the 14th of Aviv, the night of Passover

said, take, eat, this is My body which is broken on behalf of you, this do in remembrance of Me.

25 In the same way the cup also, after supping, saying, this cup is the New Covenant in My blood, each time you drink it, do this in remembrance of Me[1].

26 For each time that you may eat this bread, and drink this cup, you solemnly commemorate the death of our Master, until His coming[2].

27 So that whoever should eat this bread, or drink the cup of Master YAHWEH, unworthily, that one will be guilty of the body and of the blood of the Master YAHWEH[3].

28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of the bread, and let him drink of the cup;

29 for he eating and drinking unworthily eats and drinks to his condemnation, not discerning the body of Master YAHWEH.

30 For this reason many among you are sick and weak, and many sleep[4].

31 For if we discerned ourselves, we would not be judged.

32 But being judged, we are corrected by the Master, that we not be condemned with the world.

33 So that, my brothers, coming together to eat, wait for one another.

34 But if anyone is hungry, let him eat at home, that you may not come together for condemnation[5]. And the other things I will set in order whenever I come.

Chapter 12

1 But concerning spiritual gifts, my brethren, I want to remind you.

2 That once you were pagans and without exception, you were led to dumb idols.

3 Because of this I make known to you that no one speaking by the Spirit of Elohim says, Yahshua is a curse. And no one is able to say Yahshua is YAHWEH, except by the Holy Spirit[6].

4 And there are diversity of gifts, but there is only one Spirit;

5 and there are diversity of ministries, yet YAHWEH is first.

6 And there are diversity of powers, but the same Elohim is working all things in all.

7 And to each one is given the manifestation of the Spirit as a help to him.

8 For through the Spirit is given to one a word of wisdom, and to another a word of knowledge, according to the same Spirit;

9 and to another, faith by the same Spirit, and to another, gifts of healing by the same Spirit,

10 and to another, workings of

---

1 Luke 22:19, 20

2 The Passover is only to be taken once a yr in its season (Ex 13:10). All yr long believers proclaim a living Messiah, but on the passover each year the believer reflects on the death and suffering of Yahshua. It is also a renewal each year of the covenant that was made at baptism.

3 Passover is a very solemn time for the true believer to extensively reflect about the sacrifice that Yahshua made for them and also how his life is glorifying that sacrifice. Yahweh is a family name and this is referring to Yahshua Yahweh who died for sin.

4 People were getting sick and even dying because they were not taking the passover ceremony serious enough.

5 The celebration Seder should be done the night after Passover commemorating the joyous time in leaving Egypt (Ex 12:41-42). The passover night should only be for the renewing of the covenant by the symbols of the bread and the fruit of the vine and also the foot-washing (Joh 13:1-17)

6 It is the Ruach H'Chodesh (Holy Spirit) that reveals the nature of Yahshua (Joh 6:44).

powers[1], and to another, prophecy, and to another, discerning of spirits, and to another, different kinds of languages[2], and to another, interpretation of languages.

11 But the one and the same Spirit works all these things, distributing separately to each as He wills.

12 Even as the body is one, and has many members, but all the members of the one body, being many, are one body, so also is Messiah.

13 For also we all were baptized by one Spirit into one body, whether Jews or Arameans, whether slaves or free, even all were given to drink into one Spirit.

14 For also the body is not one member, but many.

15 If the foot says, Because I am not a hand, I am not of the body, on account of this, is it not of the body?

16 And if the ear says, Because I am not an eye, I am not of the body, on account of this, is it not of the body?

17 If all the body were an eye, where would be the hearing? If all hearing, where would the smelling be?

18 But now Elohim set the members, each one of them, in the body, even as it has pleased Him[3].

19 But if all was one member, where would the body be?

1 Workings by force done supernaturally by means that only YHWH could perform not humans. Demons can also falsify a work of power, but with the spirit of YHWH the miracle will always be something within the plan and will of YHWH.

2 This is speaking about real languages and not some babbling in a repetitive mantra.

3 Each member in the body of Messiah has spiritual gifts from the Holy Spirit and each member is placed where it pleased Yahweh. If a member is discontent with their position in the body and gifts given to them and they are coveting the position of gifts of others it is the root of envy, strife and jealously and not motivated by the spirit of YHWH.

20 But now, indeed, many are the members, but it is one body.

21 And the eye is not able to say to the hand, I have no need of you; or again the head to the feet, I have no need of you.

22 But much rather the members of the body seeming to be weaker are necessary.

23 And those of the body we think to be less honorable, to these we put more abundant honor around them. And our dishonored members we dress with greater care.

24 But our valued parts have no need for attention. But Elohim tempered the body together, giving more abundant honor to the member having need,

25 that there not be division in the body, but that the members might have the same care for one another.

26 And if one member is in pain, all the members suffer with it. If one member is honored, all the members rejoice with it.

27 And you are the body of Messiah, and members in your respective places.

28 And Elohim placed some in the Congregation: Firstly, apostles; secondly, prophets; thirdly, teachers; then works of power; then gifts of healing, helps, leaders, and speakers of different languages.

29 Are all apostles? All prophets? All teachers? All workers of power?

30 Do all have gifts of healing? Do all speak in different languages[4]? Do all interpret?

31 But if you are searching after the greater gifts I will show you a more excellent way.

4 Some falsely put the gifts of speaking in another language as a litmus test to whether one has received the Holy Spirit or not, but clearly here we can see that not all members will receive this gift.

Chapter 13

1 If I should speak in every language of men, and with cherubs[1], but I do not have love, I have become as sounding brass or a clanging cymbal.
2 And if I have prophecies, and know all mysteries and all knowledge, and if I have all faith so as to move mountains, but do not have love in my heart, I am nothing.
3 And if I give out all my possessions to the poor, and if I surrender my body so that I may boast, but I do not have love in my heart, I am not profited anything[2].
4 Love has patience, is kind; love is not envious; love does not make a vain display of itself, and does not boast;
5 it does not behave indecently, does not pursue its own things, is not easily provoked, thinks no evil;
6 does not rejoice in unrighteousness, but rejoices in the truth.
7 Love quietly covers all things, believes all things, hopes all things, endures all things.
8 Love never fails. But if there are prophecies, they will be caused to cease; if languages, they shall cease; if knowledge, it will be caused to cease.
9 For we know in part, and we prophesy in part;
10 but when that which is perfect comes, then that which is imperfect will come to an end.
11 When I was an infant, I spoke as an infant, I thought as an infant, I reasoned as an infant. But when I became a man[3], I put away childish things.
12 For now we see through a mirror in dimness, but then face to face. Now I know in part, but then I will fully know even as I also am fully known.
13 And now faith, hope, and love, these three things remain; but the greatest of these is love.

Chapter 14

1 Pursue love, and seek eagerly the spiritual things, but especially that you may prophesy.
2 For the one speaking in an unknown language does not speak to men, but to Elohim, for no one understands, but in spirit he speaks mysteries.
3 But the one prophesying to men speaks for building up, and encouragement, and comfort.
4 The one speaking in a language builds himself up, but he prophesying builds up a Congregation.
5 And I wish all of you to speak in various languages, but I would even rather that you may speak under inspiration. For the one speaking under inspiration is greater than the one speaking in languages, unless he interpret, that the Congregation may receive building up[4].
6 But now, brothers, if I come to you speaking in various languages, what will I profit you, except I speak to you either in revelation, or in knowledge, or in inspiration, or in teaching?
7 Yet lifeless things giving a sound, whether flute or harp, if they do not give a distinction in the sound, how

[1] Paul is not introducing the subject of Angelic languages but is simply making an overstated emphasis on how important love is. See Amos 9:2.

[2] Yahweh's very nature and character is based on true genuine Elohim guided love, which is unconditional, all empowering, and unending.

[3] The Aramaic word here is "g*owra*" which means a protective guardian.

[4] If someone was gifted from the Holy Spirit and could speak in another language but no one knew what he was saying, it would have no value except to him and Elohim.

will it be known what is being piped or
harped?
8 For also if a shofar gives an
uncertain sound, who will get himself
ready for war?
9 So also you, if you do not give a
clear word through the language, how
will the thing being said be known?
For you will be speaking into air.
10 So it may be many kinds of
languages are in the world, and not
one is without distinct meaning.
11 If, then, I do not know the power
of the sound, I will be a foreigner to
the one speaking, and he speaking to
me, a foreigner.
12 So also you, since you are zealots
of spiritual things, seek to build up the
Congregation that you may abound.
13 So then, the one speaking in a
foreign language, let him pray that he
may interpret.
14 For if I pray in a language, my
spirit prays, but my mind is unfruitful.
15 What then is it? I will pray with
the spirit, and I will also pray with the
mind; I will sing with the spirit, and I
will also sing with the mind.
16 Else, if you bless in the spirit, the
one occupying the place of the
unlearned, how will he say the amen at
your giving of thanks, since he does
not know what you say[1]?
17 For you truly give thanks well, but
the other is not built up.
18 I thank my Elohim that I speak
more foreign languages than all of
you[2].
19 But in a Congregation I desire to
speak five words with my mind, that I
may also instruct others, than
thousands of words in a foreign
language[3].
20 Brothers, do not be children in
your minds, but in malice be like
infants, and in your minds be mature.
21 It has been written in the Torah,
"By other languages and by foreign
lips I will speak to this people, and
even so they will not hear Me", says
YAHWEH[4]. *(Isa. 28:11, 12)*
22 So that the gift of languages is not
a sign to those believing, but to those
not believing. But inspired teaching is
not to those not believing, but to those
believing.
23 Then if the whole Congregation
comes together, and all speak in
foreign languages, and uninstructed
ones or unbelievers come in, will they
not say that you are fanatical?
24 But if all are inspired speaking,
and some unbeliever or one not
instructed comes in, he is convicted by
all, he is set right by all.
25 And so the secrets of his heart
become revealed; and so, falling on his
face, he will worship YAHWEH,
declaring that Elohim is truly among
you.
26 Therefore I say to you my
brethren, when you come together,
whoever among you has a psalm to
sing, has a teaching, has a language,
has a revelation, has an interpretation.
Let all things be for building up[5].
27 If one speaks in a foreign

1 This gift of being able to speak another language immediately through the Holy Spirit without formal teaching of the given language has no meaning to it without there being someone able to interpret what is being said.

2 Paul spoke Greek, Hebrew, Aramaic and possibly other languages.

3 It can be a point of vanity if someone starts to rattle on and on in a foreign language they don't know, but it will have no edification. However, even five words of true encouragement will be worth more than a myriad of words that no one knows.

4 It is a punishment of Israel's Diaspora that the good news message will come to Israel by foreign brethren in the end times who do not speak Hebrew. We have seen the fulfillment of this verse worldwide in the times we live in.

language, let it be by two or three at
the most, and in turn, also let one
interpret.
28 And if there is no interpreter, let
him be silent in the Congregation, and
let him speak to himself and to
Elohim[1].
29 And let the prophets speak, two
or three in turn and let the others
discern.
30 But if a revelation is revealed to
another sitting by, let the first be
silent.
31 For you can all give inspired
speaking one by one, that all may
learn, and all may be encouraged.
32 And the spirits of prophets are
subject to prophets[2].
33 For YAHWEH is not an Elohim
of confusion, but of peace, as in all the
congregations of the saints[3].
34 Let your women keep silent in the
congregations, for they have no
permission to teach, but to be in
subjection, as also the Torah says[4].
35 But if they desire to learn
anything, let them question their
husbands at home; for it is a shame for
a woman to talk in a Congregation[5].
36 Or did the Word of Elohim go out
from you? Or did it reach only to you?
37 If anyone thinks to be a prophet,
or a spiritual one, let him recognize
the things I write to you, that they are
a commandment of our Master.
38 But if any be ignorant, let him be
ignorant.
39 So then, brothers, seek eagerly to
prophesy, and do not forbid to speak
in foreign languages.
40 And let all things be done
decently and with proper order.

Chapter 15

1 But, brothers, I reveal to you the
good news which I preached to you,
which you also received, in which you
also stand,
2 by which you also are being kept
safe, if you hold fast the Word which I
preached to you, unless you believed
in vain.
3 For I delivered to you in the first
place what I also received, that
Messiah died for our sins, according to
the Scriptures,
4 and that He was buried, and that
He was raised on the third day,
according to the Scriptures,
5 and that He appeared to Peter, and
then to the Twelve.
6 Then He appeared to over five
hundred brothers at once, of whom
are still standing until now, but some
also fell asleep.

---

5 All spiritual gifts are for the building up of the body of Messiah and not for vanity.

1 Clearly, the false babbling of hundreds of people screaming and chanting as is done in many religious circles today is not scriptural, but is chaotic and demonic.

2 Anyone who is not in control of himself is not being led by the spirit of YHWH. Yahweh's spirit gently guides and leads but the spirit of Satan possesses. With the spirit of YHWH one would never be out of control or not know or remember what he is doing.

3 False tongues in many religious circles today is confusing and not at all peaceful to one's spirit and is not being led by the spirit of YHWH, but demons.

4 Women are not to be ordained leaders or teachers over men in the congregation (1Tim 2:11-15)

5 In the early congregation where they were meeting in Synagogue type setting, men and women were seated across from each other and there would be haranguing sessions on the teachings of that day. It would not be proper judicial order for a women to be openly haranguing with her husband in public but if she disagreed she should question her husband at home..

7 Then He was seen by Jacob, then by all the apostles;
8 and last of all, He was also seen by me; ignorant and imperfectly trained as I was.
9 For I am the least of the apostles, who am not worthy to be called an apostle, because I persecuted the Congregation of YAHWEH.
10 But by the grace of Elohim I am what I am, and His grace which was toward me has not been without fruit, but I labored more abundantly than all of them, yet not I, but the grace of Elohim within me.
11 Then whether they or I, so we preach, and so you believed.
12 But if Messiah is proclaimed, that He was raised from the dead, how do some among you say that there is not a resurrection of the dead?
13 But if there is not a resurrection of the dead, neither has Messiah been raised.
14 But if Messiah has not been raised, then our proclamation is worthless, and your faith is also worthless.
15 And also we are found to be false witnesses of Elohim, because we witnessed as to Elohim that He raised Messiah, whom He did not raise, if the dead ones are not raised.
16 For if the dead are not raised, Messiah has not been raised.
17 But if Messiah has not been raised, your faith is foolish; you are still in your sins.
18 And then those that fell asleep in Messiah have perished.
19 If we only have hope in Messiah in this life, we are of all men most miserable.
20 But now Messiah has been raised from the dead; He became the first-fruit of those having fallen asleep.
21 For since through man came death, also through a Man is a resurrection of the dead;
22 for as in Adam all die, so also in Messiah all will be made alive.
23 But each in his own order: Messiah, the first-fruit; afterward those of Messiah at His coming.
24 Then is the end, when He delivers the kingdom to YAHWEH, even the Father, when He makes to cease all rule and all authority and power.
25 For it is right for Him to reign until He puts all enemies under His feet; *(Psa. 110:1)*
26 the last enemy that shall be destroyed is death.
27 For "He subjected all things under His feet;" but when He says that "all things have been subjected, it is plain that it excepts Him" *(The Father)* who has subjected all things to Him. *(Psa. 8:6)*
28 But when all things are subjected to Him, then the Son Himself also will be subjected to the One *(The Father)* who has subjected all things to Him, that YAHWEH may be all things in all.[1]
29 Otherwise, what will they do, those being baptized for the dead? If the dead are not at all raised, why indeed are they baptized for the dead[2]?
30 And why do we continue to stand in danger every hour?
31 I affirm by your pride, which I have in Messiah Yahshua our Master, I die daily.
32 If, after the manner of men, I was thrown to wild beasts in Ephesus, what is the profit to me if the dead are

1 Verses 24-28- Clearly showing Yahshua the Son and Yahweh the father are 2 separate distinct beings. Acts 7:55-56

2 Speaking about if Yahshua has not been raised from the dead why would we be baptized for a dead person.

not raised? "Let us eat and drink, for tomorrow we die." *(Isa. 22:13)*

33 Do not be led astray; bad companionships ruin good habits[1].

34 Awake your hearts to righteousness, and do not sin; for some have not the knowledge of YAHWEH. I speak to your shame.

35 But someone will say, How are the dead raised? And with what body do they come?

36 Foolish one! What you sow is not made alive unless it dies.

37 And what you sow, you do not sow the body that is going to be, but a bare grain, it may be of wheat or barley, or of some other seed,

38 and Elohim gives it a body according as He willed, and to each of the seeds its own natural body.

39 Not every flesh is the same flesh, but there is one flesh of men, and another flesh of beasts, and another of fish, and another of birds.

40 And there are heavenly bodies, and earthly bodies. But the glory of the heavenly is truly different, and that of the earthly different;

41 one glory of the sun, and another glory of the moon, and another glory of the stars; for star differs from star in glory.

42 So also the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption, it is raised in incorruption.

43 It is sown in dishonor, it is raised in glory. It is sown in weakness, it is raised in power.

44 It is sown a natural body, it is raised a spiritual body; there is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body.

45 So also it has been written, "The first man, Adam, became a living soul." The last Adam a life-giving Spirit[2]. *(Gen. 2:7)*

46 But not the spiritual first, but the natural; afterward the spiritual.

47 The first man was out of earth, earthy. The second Man was the Master YAHWEH[3] out of Heaven. *(Gen. 2:7)*

48 As is the earthy man, such also are the earthy ones. And such as is the heavenly Man, such also are the heavenly ones.

49 And as we bore the image of the earthy man, we shall also bear the likeness[4] of the heavenly one.

50 And I say this, brothers, that flesh and blood is not able to inherit the kingdom of YAHWEH, nor does corruption inherit incorruption.

51 Behold, I speak a mystery to you: We shall not all fall asleep[5], but we shall all be changed.

52 In a moment, in the blinking of an eye, at the last trumpet[6]; for a

---

1 You will be like the people who you associate with. (Pr 13:20)

2 Adam became a living soul but did not give of that life to others, as where the second Adam (Yahshua) came to give life to all.

3 Yahweh the Son, Yahweh being a family name. From the context of 1Cor 15 there is no doubt that two separate beings are being spoken of verse 24, 27-28.

4 Man was supposed to be made in the image, and likeness of YHWH (Gen 1:26). Although he was made in his image, as man has eyes, hands, legs and feet, but one must grow into His likeness, which is His character of love. Only through the Holy Spirit can a human transform from their selfish, earthly human nature to the pure likeness of YHWH.

5 Death in scripture is equated to sleep as the dead person's body is sleeping in the grave until the resurrection. The resurrection is the hope of the true believer and reigning with Yahshua on earth with Him during the millennial kingdom (Rev 5:10 Rev 20:4), not going to heaven,

6 The resurrection happens at the 7th trumpet debunking the false pre-tribulation rapture theory.

trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised incorruptible, and we shall all be changed.
53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.
54 But when this corruptible shall put on incorruption, and this mortal shall put on immortality, then will take place the Word that has been written, "Death was swallowed up in victory." *(Isa. 25:8)*
55 "O death, where is your sting? Hades, where is your victory?" *(Hos. 13:14)*
56 Now the sting of death is sin, and the strength of sin is the Torah[1];
57 but thanks be to Elohim who gives us the victory through our Master Yahshua Messiah!
58 So that, my beloved brothers, you be firm, immovable, abounding in the work of YAHWEH always, knowing that your labor is not without fruit in the Master YAHWEH[2].

Chapter 16

1 And about the collection for the saints, as I have given orders to the congregations of Galatia, so you do also.
2 After the first of the Sabbaths[3], let each of you put aside and keep in his house whatever he can afford, that there not be collections then when I come.
3 And when I arrive, whomever you select I will send through these epistles, to carry your grace to Jerusalem.
4 And if it is suitable for me to go also, they shall go with me.
5 But I will come to you when I go through Macedonia. For I am going through Macedonia.
6 And possibly I will stay with you, or even spend the winter, that you may set me forward wherever I may go.
7 For I am not inclined to see you now in passage, but I am hoping to remain some time with you, if our Master permits.
8 But I will remain in Ephesus until Shavuot.
9 For a door opened to me, with many opportunities, and many are opposing.
10 But if Timothy comes, see that he is with you without fear; for he does the work of our Master YAHWEH, even as I do.
11 Then do not let any despise him, but set him forward in peace, that he may come to me; for I am waiting for him with the brothers.
12 And concerning the brother Apollos, I much urged him that he come to you with the brothers, but it was not altogether his will that he come now. But he will come when he has opportunity.
13 Watch! Stand fast in the faith! Be valiant! Be strong!
14 Let all your things be in love.
15 But I exhort you, brothers. You know the house of Stephanas, they were the first believers of Achaia, and they devoted themselves to the ministry of the saints.
16 See that you also may submit to such ones, and to everyone working and laboring with me.

---

1 Sin is the breaking of the Torah (1Joh 3:4) that is why Paul states this.

2 The reward of the believer is based on the fruit he is bearing now. (Joh 15:1-8)

3 This is the feast of firstfruits. The time element around Paul's letter is Passover (1 Cor 5:6-8). He is stating to start to collect for the poor saints after the feast of firstfruits and their obligation to YHWH, so that a collection would not have to be taken while he was there. There is nothing in this context that would promote a normal, weekly collection all year long.

17 And I rejoice at the coming of
Stephanas, and of Fortunatus and
Achaicus, because these supplied your
lack.
18 For they refreshed my spirit and
yours. So then recognize such ones.
19 The Congregations of Asia greet
you. Aquila and Priscilla greet you
much in our Master, with the
Congregation in their house[1].
20 The brothers all greet you. Greet
one another with a holy kiss.
21 The greeting with my hand, Paul.
22 If anyone does not love the
Master Yahshua Messiah, let him be
accursed. Maran-Atha. The Master
comes!
23 The grace of the Master Yahshua
Messiah be with you.
24 My love be with all of you in
Messiah Yahshua. Amen.

1 Many early congregations met in houses. Church buildings did not come until around the 3rd century or later as the original faith was outlawed by the Roman Empire with much persecution, and had to for the most part be underground.

Book of 2 Corinthians 57 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, an apostle of Yahshua Messiah, through the will of Elohim, and Timothy the brother, to the Congregation of YAHWEH being in Corinth, with all the saints being in all Achaia,

2 grace to you and peace from YAHWEH our Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.

3 Blessed be the Elohim and Father of our Master Yahshua Messiah, the Father of compassions and Elohim of all comfort,

4 the One comforting us on all our affliction, for us to be able to comfort those in every affliction, through the comfort by which we ourselves are comforted by Elohim.

5 Because even as the sufferings of Messiah abound in us, so also our comfort abounds through Messiah.

6 But if we are troubled, it is for your comfort and salvation, being worked out in the endurance of the same sufferings which we also suffer. If we are comforted, it is for your comfort and salvation;

7 and our hope for you is certain, knowing that even as you are sharers of the sufferings, so also are partakers of the comfort.

8 For, brothers, we do want you to know as to our affliction having happened to us in Asia, that we were excessively oppressed beyond our strength, so as for us to even be despaired for our lives.

9 And we decided to die, not trusting on ourselves, but on YAHWEH, the One raising the dead,

10 who rescued us from so great a peril of death, and does rescue; in whom we have hope that He will still deliver us,

11 you also laboring together for us in prayer, that the gracious gift by many persons be the cause of thanksgiving through many for us.

12 For our glorying is this, the testimony of our conscience, that we had our conduct in the world in simplicity and sincerity of Elohim, not in fleshly wisdom, and more abundantly toward you.

13 For we do not write other things to you than what you read or even recognize; and I hope that you will recognize even to the end,

14 even as you also in part recognized us, that we are your glorying, even as also you are ours in the day of our Master Yahshua.

15 And in this confidence, I purposed to come to you before now, that the gift of grace in you may be doubled,

16 and to go through you into Macedonia, and again from Macedonia to come to you and to be set forward by you to Judea.

17 When I therefore was considering this, did I consider it lightly? Or are the things I am considering according to worldliness? Because the answers should have been either yes, yes, or no, no?

18 But Elohim is faithful, that our word to you did not become yes and no.

19 For Yahshua Messiah the Son of Elohim, the One proclaimed among you by us, through me and Silvanus and Timothy, did not become yes and no, but in Him has always been yes.

20 For as many promises as are of Elohim, in Him they are yes, and in Him are Amen, for glory to Elohim through us.

21 But He confirming us and anointing us with you in Messiah is YAHWEH,

22 even He having sealed us, and

having given the earnest[1] of the Spirit in our hearts.
23 And I call Elohim as witness to my soul that to spare you I came no more to Corinth.
24 Not that we rule over your faith, but we are fellow-workers of your joy. For by faith you stand.

Chapter 2

1 But I have decided this, within myself, not to come to you again in grief.
2 For if I grieve you, who yet will be making me glad, if not the one being grieved by me?
3 And I wrote this same thing to you, lest coming I might have grief from those of whom I ought to rejoice, trusting in you all that my joy is the joy of all of you.
4 For out of much trouble and agony of heart I wrote to you, through many tears, not that you be grieved, but that you know the love which I have more abundantly toward you.
5 But if anyone has grieved, he has not grieved me, but from in part, that I not overbear all of you.
6 The rebuke of many persons is sufficient for such a man.
7 So that on the contrary, you should rather forgive and comfort him, that he not be overcome by the excessive grief.
8 So I beseech you to confirm your love to him.
9 For to this end I also wrote that I might know the proof of you, if you are obedient in all things.
10 But to whom you forgive anything, I also forgive. For also if I have forgiven anything, of whom I have forgiven it, it is for you, in Messiah's person,
11 so that Satan does not take advantage of us, for we know his devices.
12 And coming to Troas for the good news of Messiah, and a door having been opened to me by Master YAHWEH,
13 I could not rest in my spirit at my not finding my brother Titus, but saying farewell to them, I went out to Macedonia.
14 But thanks be to Elohim, the One always leading us in triumph in Messiah, and the One revealing through us the odor of the knowledge of Him in every place.
15 For we are a sweet smell to Elohim because of Messiah in those being saved, and in those being lost;
16 to the one, an odor of death unto death, and to the other, an odor of life unto life. And who is worthy for these things?
17 For we are not as the many, peddling the Word of Elohim; but according to the truth, as men of YAHWEH, we speak through Messiah, in the sight of Elohim[2].

Chapter 3

1 Do we begin again to commend ourselves? Or do we, as some, need commendatory letters to you, or commendatory ones from you?
2 You are our letter, having been inscribed in our hearts, being known and being read by all men,
3 it having been made plain that you are Messiah's letter, ministered by us, not having been inscribed by ink, but by the Spirit of the living Elohim, not

1 At baptism a believer receives a down payment of the Holy Spirit and will receive the fullness of it at Yahshua's return.

2 Those who market and sell the good news of Yahshua are not true servants of His but are hirelings (Math 10:8).

in tablets of stone, but in fleshly tablets of the heart.
4 And we have such confidence through Messiah toward Elohim;
5 not that we are sufficient of ourselves to reason out anything as being out of ourselves, but our sufficiency is of Elohim,
6 who also made us able ministers of the New Covenant, not of the letter, but of the Spirit. For the letter of the Torah punishes with death, but the Spirit makes alive[1].
7 Now if the ministration of death[2] as contained in the letter of the Torah and engraved on stones, was so glorious, so as that the sons of Israel could not look into "the face of Moses" because of the glory of his countenance, which glory was not lasting[3], *(Ex. 34:34)*
8 how much more the ministry of the Spirit will be in glory!
9 For if there be glory in the ministration of condemnation, much more the ministration of righteousness[4] shall exceed in glory.
10 Just as that which was not glorious has been made glorious, in comparison, this excels in glory.
11 For if that which was not lasting was glorious, much more glorious will be the thing which remains[5].
12 Then having such hope, we conduct ourselves bravely.
13 And not as "Moses, who put a veil over his face," for the sons of Israel not to look at the fullness of the glory of the thing not lasting. *(Ex. 34:35)*
14 But their minds were blinded; for to this day, when the Old Contract is read, the same veil remains, and it is not known to them that the veil has been removed through Messiah.
15 But even to this day, whenever the books of Moses are read, the veil lies upon their hearts[6].
16 Nevertheless, whenever a man turns to YAHWEH, the veil is taken away.
17 Now YAHWEH is that Spirit; and where the Spirit of YAHWEH is, there is freedom[7].
18 But we all with our face having been unveiled, see as in a mirror, the glory of YAHWEH, and we shall all be transformed into the same likeness,

---

1 The Torah teaches right from wrong but cannot change the heart, but through the New Covenant and the receiving of the Ruach H'Chodesh (Holy Spirit) ones heart is changed from enmity toward the Torah and mind of Yahweh, to being obedient and gives back life (Ro 8:6-11)

2 It was the agreement about the contract or covenant that caused death because of the inability of the people to keep it and there was no avenue to have the penalty of your sins paid for. It was not the Torah that caused death as there are only blessings in scripture for obedience to the Torah.

3 The shine that glowed on Mose's face when he came back with the 10 commandments, which was so bright he had to wear a veil over his face, also ended and Moses also died, but the glory of the New Covenant through the blood of Messiah to forgive sin and the receiving of the Holy Spirit for eternal life will go on forever. It is the difference in the covenant agreements that is being contrast here not the Torah as both covenant agreements contain obedience to the Torah (Heb 8:8-12).

4 Ps 119:172

5 The first covenant has been superseded by the eternal New Covenant (Heb 10:4-18).

6 The veil is there to those who read the Torah and are blinded to the some-odd 300 Messianic prophecies that Yahshua has fulfilled and to repenting of their sins and joining the New Covenant or contract. Christians also have a blinder to the fact that in that new contract sin still brings death (Ro 6:23) and obedience to the Torah still brings life (Math 19:16-17, Math 7:22-23)

7 Only by the Spirit of YHWH can someone come to the understanding of the truth (Joh 6:44).

from one glory to another, just as the Spirit comes from YAHWEH.

Chapter 4

1 For This reason we are not weary of the ministry in which we have engaged, just as we are not weary of the mercies that have been upon us.

2 But we have renounced the hidden things of shame, not walking in craftiness, nor corrupting the Word of Elohim, but by the revelation of the truth commending ourselves to every conscience of men before Elohim.

3 But, if our good news is being hidden, it has been hidden to those who are lost,

4 to those whose eyes have been blinded by the god of this world, because they did not believe, lest the light of the glorious good news of the Messiah, who is the image of YAHWEH, should shine on them.

5 For we do not preach about ourselves, but Messiah Yahshua our Master, and as to ourselves, we are your slaves for the sake of Yahshua.

6 Because it is Elohim who said, "Out of darkness Light shall shine," who shone in our hearts to give the brightness of the knowledge of the glory of YAHWEH in the face of Yahshua Messiah. *(Isa. 42:6, 7, 16)*

7 But we have this treasure in earthen vessels, so that the excellence of the power may be of Elohim, and not from us;

8 in every way being troubled, not being overwhelmed; being harassed on all sides, but not conquered;

9 being persecuted, but not being forsaken; being thrown down, but not having been destroyed;

10 for we always bear in our bodies about the death of the Master Yahshua, that also the life of Yahshua may be made manifest in our body[1].

11 For we who live are always being delivered up to death on account of Yahshua, that also the life of Yahshua may be made manifest in our mortal flesh;

12 so that death indeed is close to us, and life is near to you.

13 But having the same spirit of faith, according to what has been written, "I believed, therefore I spoke," we also believe, therefore we also speak. *(Psa. 116:10)*

14 Knowing that He who raised up the Master Yahshua will also raise us up[2] through Yahshua, and will present us with you.

15 For all things are for your sakes that the abundant grace may through the thanksgiving of many, abound to the glory of Elohim.

16 Because of this, we do not grow weary, but if indeed our outward man is being decayed, yet the inward man is being renewed day by day.

17 For while the troubles of the present time are little and light, a great and limitless glory for ever and ever is prepared for us.

18 We do not rejoice in the things which are seen, but the things which are not seen; for the things being seen are temporal, but the things which are not seen are everlasting.

Chapter 5

1 For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were destroyed, we still have a building made from Elohim, a house not made with hands, eternal in Heaven.

---

1 By our living example we proclaim the glory of the life of Yahshua.

2 The dead are asleep in the earth (Acts 7:59-60, 1Thes 4:13-15) awaiting the resurrection.

2 For also in this we groan, greatly desiring to be clothed with our dwelling place out of Heaven,
3 if indeed in being clothed, we shall not be found naked.
4 For indeed, being in this earthly house, we groan, because of its weight; yet we are unwilling to leave it, but rather wish to add to it, so that the death may be swallowed up by life.
5 Now He who has prepared us for this very thing is Elohim, who also has given to us the down payment[1] of His Spirit.
6 Therefore we know and are convinced that so long as we dwell in the body, we are absent from home[2] from our Master.
7 For we walk by faith, not by sight,
8 this is why we are fully confident, and think it good rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with our Master[3].
9 Because of this, whether present, or absent, we are striving to be pleasing to Him,
10 For we all must appear before the judgment seat of Messiah, so that each one may receive the things done through the body, according to what he did, whether good or bad[4].
11 Then, knowing the fear of the Master, we persuade men, and we have been known to Elohim; and I also trust that we have been understood by you.
12 For we are not boasting about ourselves to you, but are giving you occasion to give glory on our behalf, before those boasting as hypocrites but are not sincere in heart.
13 For if we are wrong, it is to Elohim; or if we are right, it is for you.
14 For the love of Messiah constrains us, having judged this, that if One died for all, then all were dead;
15 and He died for all, that the living ones may live no more to themselves, but to the One having died for them and having been raised.
16 So as we now know no one according to flesh, but even if we have known Messiah according to flesh, yet now we no longer know Him so.
17 So that if anyone is in Messiah, he is a new creation; the old things have passed away; behold, all things have become new!
18 And all things are from Elohim, the One having reconciled us to Himself through Yahshua Messiah, and having given to us the ministry of reconciliation,
19 for YAHWEH was in Messiah who has reconciled the world with His majesty, not charging their sins against them, and has committed to us the Word of reconciliation.
20 Then on behalf of Messiah, we

[1] We receive a down-payment of the Holy Spirit at baptism and will receive the fullness of it at Yahshua's return.

[2] The home and promise to the true believer is to be a priest and king and reign with Yahshua on the earth (Rev 5:10, Rev 20:4).

[3] When Paul died it will be as the blink of an eye and he will be resurrected in the Kingdom of YHWH. There is no consciousness in the grave (Eccl 9:5) and it will seem as a split second from the time he died to when he is resurrected.

[4] Everyone that ever lived will be judged by Yahshua. To those who are the firstfruit, baptized believers now they will be in the first resurrection at His return (Math 24:30-31 Rev 20:4-6). The rest of the people who ever lived will be resurrected after the millennium and will be judged then (Rev 20:11-15 Heb 9:27, Acts 17:30-31, 1Cor 3:13, Eccl 12:14). Yahshua will judge all people by the commandments (Eccl 12:13) but will search the hearts and judgment will depend on how much they knew (Luk 12:46-48). Many people are keeping the commandments without even truly understanding them (Ro 2:11-16), these people will be rewarded at the white throne judgment.

are ambassadors[1], as Elohim is
exhorting through us, we beseech on
behalf of Messiah, be reconciled to
YAHWEH. *(Eph 6:20)*
21 For He who did not know sin, for
your sakes made Himself sin, that we
might through Him become the
righteousness of YAHWEH.

Chapter 6

1 But working together, we call on
you not to receive the grace of Elohim
in vain.
2 For He says, "In an acceptable time
I heard you, and in a day of salvation I
helped you." Behold, now is the
acceptable time! Behold, now is the
day of salvation! *(Isa. 49:8)*
3 Give no occasion for offense to
anyone, in anything, that the ministry
may not be blamed,
4 but in all things let us show
ourselves as servants of Elohim, in
much patience, in afflictions, in
emergencies, in difficulties,
5 in stripes, in imprisonments, in
riots, in labors, in vigils, in fastings;
6 in pureness, in knowledge, in long-
suffering, in kindness, in the Holy
Spirit, in sincere love,
7 by the Word of truth, in the power
of Elohim, through the weapons of
righteousness on the right hand and
on the left,
8 through glory and dishonor,
through evil report and good report; as
deceivers, and yet true;
9 as unknown, and yet well known,
as dying, and yet, look, we live; as
chastened, and yet not put to death;
10 as sorrowful, yet always rejoicing;
as poor, yet enriching many; as having
nothing, yet possessing all things.
11 O Corinthians, we have told you
everything, and our heart is relieved.
12 You are not restrained in us, but
you are urged in your own affections.
13 I speak as to my children, render
me my reward which is with you,
increase your love toward me.
14 Do not unite in marriage with
unbelievers. For what partnership
does righteousness have with
lawlessness? And what fellowship does
light have with darkness[2]?
15 And what agreement does the
Messiah have with Satan? Or what
part does a believer have with an
unbeliever?
16 And what harmony has the
sanctuary of Elohim with idols? For
you are the sanctuary of the living
Elohim, even as it is said, "I will dwell
in them and walk among them, and I
will be their Elohim, and they shall be
My people." *(Lev. 26:12; Ezek. 37:27)*
17 Because of this, "Come out from
among them and be separated, says
YAHWEH, and do not touch the
unclean thing, and I will receive you."
(Isa. 52:11)
18 "And I will be a Father to you, and
you will be sons and daughters to Me,
says YAHWEH Almighty[3]." *(2 Sam.
7:8, 14; Isa. 43:6)*

Chapter 7

1 Then having these promises,
beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from
all defilement of flesh and of spirit,
perfecting holiness in the fear of
Elohim.
2 Be patient my brethren, we have

[1] As ambassadors for YHWH one must uphold this honor in the greatest regard and realize that an ambassador does not bring his own message or come in his own name but is the representative of His given state.

[2] Num 11:4, Num 25:1-3, Ez 9:10-14. Neh 13:23-27

[3] It is spiritual adultery to be joined with people of the world. They will effect your judgment in an adverse way.

wronged no one, we corrupted no one, we have defrauded no one.
3 I do not say this to condemn you, for I have said before that you are in our hearts, for us to die and to live with you.
4 I am familiar enough to speak boldly with you, and I am very proud of you. I have been filled with comfort; I overflow with joy in all our troubles.
5 For, indeed, we coming into Macedonia, in our flesh no one had rest, but being troubled in every way, with fighting's on the outside and fears on the inside.
6 Nevertheless, Elohim who comforts the meek comforted us by the coming of Titus.
7 And not only by his coming, but also by the comfort with which he was comforted over you, relating to us your longing, your mourning, your zeal on my behalf, so as for me to rejoice more.
8 For even if I made you feel sorry in the epistle, I do not regret, even though it caused sorrow, for I see that although the letter grieved you, it was only for an hour.
9 Now I rejoice, not that you were grieved, but that your sorrow led to repentance. For you were grieved over the things of Elohim, so that you lack nothing from us.
10 For sorrow over the things of Elohim works enduring repentance of the soul, that brings one to life. But the sorrow over the things of the world causes death[1].
11 For behold this same thing, that distressed you on account of Elohim, has resulted much more in painstaking effect, but also in apology, but also anger, but also fear, but also love, but also zeal, but also vengeance! In everything you proved yourselves to be clear in the matter.
12 Then even if I wrote to you, it was not for the sake of the one doing wrong, nor for the sake of the one being wronged, but for the sake of revealing your earnest care on our behalf, might be known before Elohim.
13 For this reason we have been comforted over your comfort, and we rather rejoice more abundantly over the joy of Titus, because his spirit has been refreshed by all of you.
14 Because if I have boasted anything to him about you, I was not ashamed. But as we spoke all things in truth to you, so also our boasting as to Titus became truth.
15 And his affections have increased toward you, remembering the obedience of all of you, as you received him with fear and trembling.
16 Therefore, I rejoice, that I have confidence in you in all things.

Chapter 8

1 But, brothers, we make known to you the grace of Elohim which has been given among the Congregations of Macedonia,
2 that in much testing of trouble, the overflowing of their joy and the depth of their poverty abounded to the riches of their generosity.
3 For I testify that according to their ability and beyond their ability, they willingly gave,
4 with much entreating, begging us to receive of us the grace and the fellowship of the ministry to the saints.
5 And not as we hoped, but they first gave themselves to our Master and to us through the will of Elohim,
6 for us to call on Titus, that even as he began before, so also he might complete this grace to you also.
7 But even as you abound in everything, in faith, and in word, and in knowledge, and in all earnestness,

[1] Ex 9:27, Heb 12:17

and in your love in us, that you also should abound in this grace.
8 I do not speak according to command, but through the earnestness of others and testing the sincerity of your love.
9 For you know the grace of our Master Yahshua Messiah, that being rich, He became poor for your sake, so that you might become rich by the poverty of that One.
10 And I give you my advice, that it may help you to go forward and accomplish what you, of your own accord, began to do last year.
11 But now also finish the work which you wished to do, so that even as there was the eagerness in the willing, so also the finishing, giving out of what you have.
12 For if the eagerness is present, it is acceptable according to what one has, not according to what one does not have.
13 This is not intended to relieve others, but add a burden to you;
14 but by equality in the present time, your abundance for their need; but also that their abundance may be for your need, that there may be equality.
15 Even as it has been written, "He gathering much, he had nothing left over, and he gathering little had no less." *(Ex. 16:18)*
16 But thanks be to YAHWEH, who gave the same earnest care for you in the heart of Titus.
17 For truly he accepted our appeal, but being even more desirous, he went out to you of his own accord.
18 And we sent with him our brother whose praise is in the good news throughout all the Congregations,
19 and not only so, but also he having been chosen by the Congregations as a traveling companion to us with this gift being ministered by us to the glory of our Master Himself, and for our own encouragement;
20 But we are careful in this, lest anyone should blame us in connection with this generous help being administered by us.
21 For we are very careful to do the right thing not only before our Master, but also before men. *(Prov. 3:4)*
22 And we sent with them our brother whom we often proved in many things to be earnest, and now much more earnest by the great assurance which I have toward you.
23 If any asks about Titus, he is my partner and a fellow worker for you; or about our brothers, they are messengers of the Congregations, to the glory of Messiah.
24 Then show them a proof of your love and of our boastings on your behalf, even in the sight of the Congregations.

Chapter 9

1 For indeed concerning the ministry to the saints, it is beyond measure for me to write to you.
2 For I know your eagerness, of which I boast to Macedonia on your behalf, that Achaia has made ready from last year, and your zeal has stirred up a great many people.
3 But I sent the brothers that our boasting which is on your behalf should not be in vain in this respect, that as I said, you were ready;
4 lest if Macedonians come with me and find you not ready, that we should be ashamed; because of our pride in you we would not say anything that would put blame on you.
5 Therefore, I thought it necessary to exhort the brothers, that they go forward to you and arrange beforehand your promised blessing,

this to be ready, that you might have it ready as a blessing and not as if it was forced on you.

6 But remember this: the one sowing sparingly will also reap sparingly, and the one sowing generously will also reap generously.

7 Each one as he purposes in his heart, not grudgingly or out of necessity, for YAHWEH loves a cheerful giver[1].

8 And Elohim is able to make all grace to abound toward you, that in everything, always having all self sufficiency, you may abound to every good work;

9 even as it has been written, "He has distributed liberally, He has given to the poor, His righteousness abides forever." *(Psa. 112:9)*

10 Now He that supplies seed to the Sower and bread for eating, may He supply and multiply your seed and increase the fruits of your righteousness,

11 in everything you being enriched to all sincerity, which works out thanksgiving to YAHWEH through us.

12 Because the ministry of this service is not only making up the things lacking of the saints, but also multiplying through many thanksgivings to YAHWEH,

13 through the proof of this charitable service, they glorifying YAHWEH by your freely expressed submission to the good news of Messiah, and through your generosity you have become partakers with them and with all men;

14 and they offer prayer on your behalf with greater love, because of the overflowing grace of Elohim which is on you.

15 But thanks be to Elohim for His unspeakable free gift.

Chapter 10

1 And I, Paul, call on you through the meekness and gentleness of Messiah (I, who indeed to look upon, am lowly among you, but being absent am bold toward you);

2 I beseech you not to be troubled, when I arrive, by the things which I hope to carry out; for it is my purpose to scorn those men who regard us as if we lived after the flesh.

3 For though we do live an earthly life, yet we do not serve worldly things;

4 for the weapons of our warfare are not fleshly, but of the power of Elohim to the demolition of strongholds,

5 casting down imaginations and every false thing lifting up itself against the knowledge of Elohim, and bringing into captivity every thought into the obedience of Messiah,

6 and we are prepared to seek vengeance on those who are disobedient, whenever your obedience is fulfilled.

7 Do you judge according to outward appearance? If anyone thinks of himself to belong to Messiah, let him think this again as to himself, that as he is of Messiah, so we also belong to Messiah.

8 For even if I also somewhat more fully should boast about our authority which our Master has given me, I should not be ashamed, for He has given it to us for your building up and not for your destruction.

9 But I am hesitant, lest I seem as if I were trying to frighten you by my letter.

10 Because, there are men who say that his letters are weighty and powerful, but his bodily presence is weak, and his speech foolish.

11 Let such a one think this, that just as we express ourselves in our epistles

[1] Pr 22:8

when we are away, so are we also in
deed when we are present.
12 For we dare not rank or compare
ourselves with some of those who are
proud of themselves; for it is because
they measure themselves by them-
selves, that they do not understand.
13 But we will not boast beyond
measure, but according to the measure
of the rule which YAHWEH has
distributed to us, a measure to reach
even to you.
14 It is not because we are unable to
climb where you are; nor are we trying
to misrepresent ourselves; for we have
climbed where we are through the
good news of Messiah,
15 not boasting beyond measure in
the labors of others, but having hope
that the growing faith among you will
be made larger according to our rule,
to be overflowing,
16 And we shall become
strengthened so that we may preach
the good news to the regions beyond
you, not to boast in the things already
done by others.
17 "But the one who boasts, let him
glory in YAHWEH[1]."
18 For it is not the one who praises
himself who is approved, but the one
whom YAHWEH commends.

Chapter 11

1 I wish that you would be patient
with me for a while, so that I may
speak somewhat foolishly, and I am
sure you will be.
2 For I am zealous over you with the
zealousness of Elohim. For I have
promised you to one husband, to
present you a pure virgin to Messiah.
3 But I fear lest by any means, as the
serpent deceived Eve in his craftiness,
so your thoughts should be corrupted
from the purity which is in Messiah.
4 For if, indeed one comes to you
proclaiming another Yahshua, whom
we have not proclaimed, or if you
receive another spirit which you have
not received, or another good news
which you never accepted, you might
have listened to him.
5 For I think that I am not in the
least inferior to the highest apostles in
anything.
6 But even if I am an unskilled
speaker, yet I am not unskilled in
knowledge. But in every way I have
been clearly revealed to you in all
things.
7 Or did I commit sin, humbling
myself that you might be exalted,
because I preached the good news of
Elohim to you without charge?
8 I deprived other Congregations,
receiving wages in order to minister to
you.
9 And when I came to you and was in
need, I was not a burden to anyone.
The brothers coming from Macedonia
completely made up for my lack. And
in every way I kept myself without
burden to you, and I will keep myself.
10 The truth of Messiah is in me,
that this boasting shall not be silenced
in me in the regions of Achaia.
11 Why? Because I do not love you?
Elohim knows I do love you.
12 But what I do, I also will do, that I
may cut off the occasion of those
desiring an occasion, so that in that
which they boast, they will not be
equal with us.
13 For such ones are false apostles,
deceitful workers transforming them-
selves into apostles of Messiah.
14 There is no marvel in this; for if
Satan disguises himself into an angel
of light,
15 it is not a great thing then, if his
ministers also pose themselves as
ministers of righteousness, whose end
will be according to their works.

---
[1] Jer 9:24

16 Again I say, let not anyone think me to be foolish. But if not, even if as a fool, receive me that I also may boast a little.
17 What I speak, I speak not according to our Master, but as in foolishness, in this boldness of boasting.
18 Since many boast according to the flesh, I also will boast.
19 For you with pleasure endure fools, being wise.
20 For you endure the one who dominates you, and the one who lives at your expense, and the one who takes away from you, and the one who exalts himself over you, and if anyone beats you in the face.
21 I speak according to dishonor, as if we have been weak. I say it in foolishness, But in whatever other men are bold, I am also bold.
22 Now if they are Hebrews? So am I. Are they Israelites? I am also. Are they Abraham's seed? I am also.
23 Are they ministers of Messiah? (I speak as a fool.) I being beyond them: in labors, more abundantly; in stripes, beyond measure; in prisons, much more; in danger of death, many times.
24 Five times I received forty stripes minus one from the Jews.
25 Three times I was beaten with rods; I was stoned once; I was shipwrecked three times; I have spent a night and a day in the sea in shipwreck.
26 I have been in travels often, in dangers of rivers, in dangers of robbers, in dangers from my own race, in dangers from the Gentiles, in dangers in the city, in dangers in a wilderness, in dangers in the sea, in dangers among false brothers,
27 in hardship and toil, in sleepless nights, in hunger and thirst, through much fasting, in cold and nakedness,
28 besides the things outside conspiring against me day by day, I have also the care of all the Congregations.
29 Who is sick, and I do not feel the pain? Who is caused to stumble, and does not have my heartfelt sympathy?
30 If it is right to boast, I will boast of the things of my suffering.
31 The Elohim and Father of our Master Yahshua Messiah, who is blessed forever and ever, knows that I am not lying.
32 In Damascus the general of the army under King Aretas placed the city under guard, desiring to seize me.
33 And I was let down through a window, through the wall in a basket and escaped their hands.

Chapter 12

1 Really, to boast is not profitable to me, for I will come to visions and revelations of our Master (Yahshua).
2 I know a man in Messiah fourteen years before - whether in the body, I do not know, or out of the body, I do not know, Elohim knows - such a one was caught up to the third Heaven[1].
3 And I know such a man - whether in the body or out of the body, I do not know; Elohim knows -
4 that he was caught up into Paradise and heard unspeakable words which a man is not permitted to speak.
5 On behalf of such a one I will boast. But I will not boast on my behalf, except in my weaknesses.

[1] Paul tells us in verse 1 that this is a 'vision' and not actually happening as we know no man has gone up to the third heaven where Yahweh dwells Joh 3:13. A similar situation also happened to John in the book of revelation as he was also seeing a vision that was in the future and told in the vision to come up to heaven. See Rev 1:10, and Rev 4:1-3.

6 For if I desire to boast, I will not be
foolish, for I speak the truth. But I
spare, lest anyone reckons me to be
beyond what he sees me or hears
anything of me.
7 And by the super abundance of the
revelations, that I not be made
arrogant, a thorn in the flesh was
given to me, a messenger of Satan,
that he might buffet me, that I not be
made haughty.
8 Beyond this I entreated our Master
three times, that it depart from me.
9 And He said to me, My grace is
sufficient for you, for My power is
made perfect in weakness. Therefore, I
will rather gladly boast in my
weaknesses, that the power of Messiah
may rest upon me.
10 Because of this, I am pleased in
weaknesses, in insults, in dire needs,
in persecutions, in distresses, for the
sake of Messiah. For when I am
physically weak, then I am spiritually
strong.
11 Behold, I am foolish to boast, but
you have compelled me. For you ought
to have testified concerning me, for in
no way am I less than those apostles
who are highly honored, even though I
am nothing.
12 Truly the miracles which the
apostle have worked out, I have
worked out among you in all patience,
in miraculous signs, and in wonders,
and by works of power.
13 For what did you lack that the rest
of the Congregations have, except that
I myself did not burden you? Forgive
me this fault.
14 Behold, I am ready to come to you
a third time. And I will not burden
you, for I do not seek your things, but
you. For the children ought not to lay
up treasure for the parents, but the
parents for the children.
15 I will most gladly pay my
expenses and even give myself for the
sake of your souls, though the more I
love you, the less you love me.
16 But let it be so, I did not burden
you; but being crafty, I took you with
bait.
17 Why? Did I extort anything from
you by any of the men whom I sent to
you?
18 I begged Titus and sent the
brother with him. Did Titus extort
anything from you? Did we not walk in
the same spirit? Did we not walk in the
same steps?
19 Again, do you think we are
defending ourselves to you? We speak
before Elohim in Messiah, but in all
things for your building up, beloved.
20 For I fear lest somehow, when I
come to you, I not find you as I wish,
and I be found by you such as you do
not wish; lest somehow there be
strife's, envying, angers, rivalries,
accusations, slandering, boastings,
disturbances;
21 that it not be, in my having come
again my Elohim may humble me with
you, and I shall mourn many of those
having previously sinned and not
having repented over the impurity and
fornication and lustful acts which they
have practiced.

Chapter 13

1 I am coming to you this third time.
"In the mouth of two or three
witnesses every matter shall be
established." *(Deut. 19:15)*
2 I said before, and I tell you in
advance, just as I told you my previous
two visits and now even as I am far
away, I write to those having sinned
before, and all the rest, that if I come
again I will not spare[1],
3 since you seek a proof of Messiah

[1] Paul, although a very humble man was willing to use the authority that Yahweh gave him when needed.

speaking in me, who is not weak
toward you, but is powerful in you,
4 for even if Yahshua was crucified
out of weakness, yet He lives by the
power of Elohim. For even we are
weak with Him, so we are alive with
Him by the power of Elohim, who is
within you.
5 Examine yourselves, whether you
are in the faith; test yourselves. Or do
you not yourselves realize that
Yahshua Messiah is in you? If this is
not true than you are rejected[1].
6 And I hope you will know that we
are not rejected.
7 But I pray to Elohim that our
testing will find nothing wrong with
you; but that you may be found doing
good things, even though we appear as
though we were rejected.
8 For we cannot have any power
against the truth, but on behalf of the
truth.
9 For we rejoice when we are weak
and you are powerful. But we pray for
this also, your perfection.
10 Because of this, I write these
things while absent, that being present
I may not deal harshly with you
according to the authority which the
Master gave me for your edification
and not for your destruction[2].
11 For the rest, brothers, rejoice!
Perfect yourselves; encourage your-
selves, mind the same thing, be at
peace; and the Elohim of love and of
peace will be with you.
12 Greet one another with a holy
kiss.
13 All the saints greet you.
14 The peace of our Master Yahshua
Messiah and the love of Elohim and
the fellowship of the Holy Spirit be
with you all. Amen.

---

1 Rejected- literally a reprobate.

2 The authority of an elder comes from YHWH Himself.

Book of Galatians 49-55 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, an apostle, not from men nor through man, but through Yahshua Messiah and Eloah the Father, the One raising Him from the dead[1],
2 and all the brothers with me, to the assemblies of Galatia[2].
3 Grace to you and peace from YAHWEH the Father and our Master Yahshua Messiah[3],
4 who gave Himself for our sins, so that He might deliver us out of the present evil age, according to the will of our Elohim and Father,
5 to whom be the glory for ever and ever. Amen.
6 I am surprised at how soon you have turned to another good news, away from Messiah who has called you to grace.
7 A good news which does not even exist; howbeit, there are men who have stirred you up and want to pervert the good news of Messiah.
8 But even if we, or an cherub out of Heaven, should preach a good news to you beside the good news we preached to you, let him be accursed.
9 As we have said before, and now I say again: If anyone preaches a good news beside what you received, let him be accursed.
10 For do I now persuade men or Elohim? Or do I seek to please men? For if I yet pleased men, I would not be a slave of Messiah.
11 And, brothers, I make known to you the good news preached by me, that it is not from man.
12 For I did not receive it from man, nor was I taught it, but by a revelation of Yahshua Messiah.
13 For you heard my way of life when I was in Judaism, how I followed and persecuted the Congregation of YAHWEH and greatly devastated it.
14 And how greatly advanced I was in Judaism, superior to most of my countrymen, who were also my kin. And, in particular, how zealous I was with respect to the teaching of my fathers.
15 But when Elohim was pleased, He having separated me from my mother's belly, and having called me through His grace, *(Isa. 49:1)*
16 to reveal His Son in me, that I might preach Him among the nations; immediately I did not tell it to any human being,
17 nor did I go up to Jerusalem to the apostles before me, but I went away into Arabia and returned again to Damascus.
18 Then after three years I went up to Jerusalem to see Peter and remained with him fifteen days.
19 But I saw no other of the apostles except Jacob, the brother of our Master.
20 And what I write to you, behold, before YAHWEH I do not lie.
21 Then I went into the regions of Syria and of Cilicia;
22 but I was not known by face to the congregations of Judea in Messiah.
23 But they had only heard this: That he who previously persecuted them is now preaching the faith he used to try to cast down before.
24 And they turned their praise to Elohim because of me.

Chapter 2

1 Then through fourteen years, I again went up to Jerusalem with Barnabas, also taking Titus with me.
2 I went up because I was in a revelation, and I made known to them

[1] 2 Cor 1;1
[2] The Aramaic word for exiles is '*galut'* and this letter could be written to the dispersed tribes of Israel.
[3] 1 Cor 1:3

the Good news that I preached among the nations. I then explained to those who were considered to be something (great) among themselves, lest I labored in vain, or should labor.

3 But not even Titus, the one with me, a Syrian, was compelled to be circumcised[1].

4 But it was because of those false brothers who were brought in unbeknown to us, who stole in to spy on our freedom which we have in Messiah Yahshua, they desiring to enslave us,

5 to whom not even for an hour did we yield in subjection, that the truth of the good news[2] might continue with you.

6 But from those seeming to be something great (of what kind they were then does not matter to me; Elohim does not accept the face of man), for not even those men were able to contribute to my knowledge;

7 but on the contrary, seeing that I have been entrusted with the good news to the uncircumcision, even as Peter to the circumcision[3],

8 for he who encouraged Peter being sent to those who are circumcised, also encouraged me to be sent out to the Gentiles.

9 And knowing the grace given to me, Jacob and Cephas and John, those seeming to be pillars, gave right hands of fellowship to Barnabas and to me, that we go to the nations, but they to the circumcision;

10 only that we might remember the poor, which same thing I was eager to do.

11 But when Peter came to Antioch, I opposed him to his face, because he was to be blamed.

12 For before some came from Jacob, he ate with the Gentiles. But when they came, he drew back and separated himself, being afraid of those of the circumcision.

13 And all the others who were from Judah submitted with him on this issue, so that even Barnabas was lead into their hypocrisy.

14 But behold! When those who did not follow righteously the truth of the good news, I said to Peter, in front of all their eyes, "If you Judeans, live as Arameans and not as Judeans, why do you urge the Gentiles who have joined themselves to Judah to live as Judeans?

15 For if we have a Jewish nature ourselves, and not sinners of the nations,

16 knowing that a man is not justified by works of *(Levitical)* Law, but that it is through faith in Yahshua Messiah, we also believed into Messiah Yahshua, that we may be justified by faith in Messiah and not by works of *(Levitical)* Law, because all flesh will not be justified by works of Law. *(Psa. 123:2)*

17 But if seeking to be justified in Messiah, we ourselves also were found to be sinners, is Messiah then a minister of sin? Elohim forbid!

18 For what if I build again these things which I destroyed, I prove myself that I have passed by the commandment[4].

---

[1] Circumcision was the sign of the first covenant. If someone was circumcised to join the covenant he would be joining the old covenant where there was no way to have the penalty of your sins removed, only covered from year to year on Yom Kippur (Gal 5:1, Ro 2:25-29)

[2] The Aramaic word here is "*sevartha*" meaning hope, but a hope that is an "*anticipation with surety*".

[3] Paul primarily went to the nations who were physically uncircumcized, and Peter and the other Apostles went to the lost sheep of Israel living in Diaspora. See Acts 16:6-8, also Math 10:5-6, Jac 1:1, 1 Pe1:1

[4] Ro 3:5, 31

19 For by the Torah I am dead, that I might live to Elohim.
20 I have been crucified with Messiah, and I live, yet no longer I, but Messiah lives in me. And the life I now live in the flesh, I live by faith toward the Son of YAHWEH, the One loving me and giving His life on my behalf.
21 I do not set aside the grace of Elohim; for if righteousness came through (the Levitical) Law, then Messiah died without cause[1].

Chapter 3

1 O you lacking exile Galatians, who bewitched you not to obey the truth, to whom before your eyes Yahshua Messiah was portrayed before among you crucified?
2 This only I desire to learn from you: Did you receive the Spirit by works of Law[2] or by hearing of faith?
3 Are you so foolish? Having begun in the Spirit, do you now want to complete yourself in the flesh?
4 All of these vanities you endured. Oh that it might not be for no purpose.
5 Then He supplying the Spirit to you and working works of power in you, is it by works of *(Levitical)* Law or by obedience of faith?
6 Even as Abraham "believed Elohim, and it was counted to him for righteousness." *(Gen. 15:6)*
7 You must therefore know that those who trust in faith are the children of Abraham.
8 Because Elohim knew in advance that the nations would be declared righteous through faith he first preached to Abraham, as it is said in the Holy Scripture, "in you shall all the nations be blessed." *(Gen. 12:3)*
9 So that the believers are blessed by Abraham the faithful one.
10 For those who rely on the works of the law are still under the curse, for as it is written, cursed is everyone who does not practice everything which is written in the book of the Torah. (*Deut. 27:26)*
11 And that no one is justified by the Torah before YAHWEH is evident because, "The righteous shall live by faith[3]." *(Hab. 2:4)*
12 But the Torah is not made by faith, but, "The man doing these things shall live in them." *(Lev. 18:5)*
13 Messiah redeemed us from the curse of the Torah, having become a curse for us; for it has been written, "Cursed is everyone having been hung on a tree;" *(Deut. 21:23)*[4]
14 that the blessing of Abraham might come on the nations through Messiah Yahshua, that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.
15 My brothers, I speak as a man. Even though it be a man's covenant, yet if it is confirmed, no man can reject it or change anything in it.
16 Now the promises which were made to Abraham and to his seed as a covenant. He did not say, "To your descendants," as many but, "To your descendants", as one, that is Messiah. *(Gen. 3:15; 21:12; 22:18; Rom.9:6; Heb. 11:18)*
17 And this I say, that the covenant which was previously confirmed by

---

1 If one could be justified (made right before YHWH) by an animal sacrifice, then there would be no necessity for the Messiah to come.

2 The works of the law as defined in also the Dead Sea scrolls were the animal sacrifices with the Jewish oral and ceremonial laws that went with it.

3 No one can be justified by the Torah because all humans have broken the Torah and are under the penalty of their lawbreaking.

4 The curse is for disobeying the Torah, there are only blessings for obedience.

Elohim in Messiah cannot be rejected and the promise nullified by the *(Levitical)* Law that came four hundred and thirty years later[1].

18 For if the inheritance is through the *(Levitical)* Law then it would not be as the fulfillment of promise; but Elohim gave it to Abraham by promise.

19 Why then the *(Levitical)* Law? It was placed beside (The Torah) for the sake of transgressions, until the Seed should come, to whom it had been promised, being given by promise in a mediator's hand. [2]

20 Now a mediator does not represent one alone, but Elohim is one *(echad)*.

1 This can only be referring to the Levitical law and Not the whole Torah as when the covenant was made with Abraham 430 years before the Sinai covenant, Abraham had and obeyed the Torah and commandments (Gen 26:4-5). Only the Levitical law with the ceremonial rituals and sacrifices were added 430 years later as this scripture states.

2 Paul cannot possibly be talking about the whole Torah here, as he plainly states that whatever law was added, that it was not there 430 years previously when YAHWEH made covenant with Abraham, but Gen 26:4-5 clearly shows that the reason YAHWEH made covenant with Abraham was because Abraham obeyed and preserved His statutes, commandments, and Torah. The only law that was added to the Torah at Mount Sinai was the Levitical priesthood with its sacrifices, which was temporarily set next to the Torah for the Levitical priesthood to be a temporary mediator for Israel until the reality of the Melchizedek priesthood would come through Yahshua. The Levitical sacrifices could not take away the penalty of sin, but merely remind them of it (Heb 10:1-4). This was also the purpose of the ceremonial law, which being part of the Levitical system was also fulfilled and no longer binding Heb 9:9-14).

21 Then is the *(Levitical)* Law against the promises of YAHWEH? Elohim forbid! For if a law had been given which had been able to make alive, indeed righteousness would have been out of Law.

22 But the Scripture locked up all under sin, that the promise by faith of Yahshua Messiah might be given to the ones believing.

23 But before the coming of faith, we were protected under Law, having been locked up to the faith being about to be revealed.

24 So that the *(Levitical)* Law has become a trainer of us until Messiah, that we might be justified by faith[2].

25 But since faith has come, we are no longer under trainers[3];

26 for you are all sons of YAHWEH through faith in Messiah Yahshua.

27 For as many as were baptized into Messiah, you put[4] on Messiah.

28 There cannot be Jew nor Aramean, there is no slave nor freeman, there is no male and female; for you are all one *(echad)*, united in Messiah Yahshua.

29 And if you are of Messiah, then you are seeds of Abraham, even heirs according to the promise[5].

2 The Levitical law was added due to the sin of Israel and the golden calf, but was only a trainer to Israel to remind them daily of their sinful nature until Messiah would appear and replace the temporary Levitical order with the eternal order of Melchizedek.

3 Paul is using a play on words here in the Aramaic for tutor "*taraa*", contrasting that although the Torah is still binding and necessary for the New Covenant believer, that the oral traditions of the Pharisees was not.

4 An Aramaic idiom also used in Eph 6:14. (Is 59:17)

5 The promise to Abraham was the physical land of Israel not heaven (Gen 13:14-18, Gen 17:7-8). All true believers in Messiah have this same promise.

Chapter 4

1 But I say, over a long period of time the heir is a child, and does not differ from a slave, even though he is master of all of them.

2 However, he is under guardians and stewards of the house, until the time which his father has set.

3 So we also, when we were young, we were under the elements of the world, being enslaved.

4 But when the fullness of the time came, Elohim sent forth His Son, having come into being out of a woman, being subject to the Torah[1],

5 that He might redeem the ones under *(the penalty of breaking)* the Torah, that we might receive the adoption of sons[2].

6 And because you are sons, Elohim sent forth the Spirit of His Son into your hearts, crying, Abba! Our Father!

7 So that you no more are a slave, but a son, and if a son, also an heir of YAHWEH through Messiah. *(Ro 8:14)*

8 But then, indeed, not knowing Elohim, you served as slaves to the ones by nature not being Elohim[3].

9 But now, knowing Elohim, but rather being known by Elohim, how do you turn again to the weak and poor principles to which you desire again to come under their bondage[4]?

10 You observe days and months and seasons and years[5].

11 I fear for you, lest somehow I have labored among you in vain.

12 Brothers, I beg of you, be as I am, because I am as you are. You have not offended me in anything.

13 But you know the weakness of my flesh, as I preached the good news to you previously;

14 and you did not despise my trial in my flesh, but you received me like a messenger of Elohim, even as you would Messiah Yahshua.

15 Therefore, where are your blessings? For I testify concerning you, that if you were able, you would have plucked out your eyes and given them to me[6].

16 Have I become an enemy to you because I proclaimed to you the truth?

17 They do not envy you for the good, but instead they would wish to confine you, that you might have envy for them.

18 But it is good to be zealous always in a good thing, and not only when I am present with you.

19 My children, whom I travail for until Messiah should be fully formed in you,

20 even now, I wish[7] I could be with you and change my tone of voice, because I have deep concern regarding you.

21 I say to you, those that desire to let themselves be under *(the penalty of)* the Torah, do you not hear the Torah?

22 For it has been written, Abraham had two sons, one out of the slave woman and one out of the free woman.

23 But, indeed, he of the slave woman has been born according to

---

1 Luk 2:6-7, 21-24,

2 Ro 8:12-17

3 1Thes 4:5,

4 These were people who were before patterning pagan cultic practices and now came to faith in YHWH and are now known by YHWH and were turning back to the former pagan practices.

5 Referring to the false worship of verse 8.

6 Paul did have some type of health issue, but this verse does not prove that it was bad eyesight, (although it could have been) as it is simply an idiomatic phrase. (2Cor 12:7, Ga 6:11)

7 This Aramaic word "*tzeba*" means to have a strong focused will.

flesh, and he out of the free woman through the promise.

24 Therefore, these things were symbolic of two covenants: The one from Mount Sinai, giving birth to bondage[1], which is Hagar. [2]

25 For Hagar is the Mount Sinai, which is in Arabia[3], and it surrenders[4] to this Jerusalem, which is now in bondage with her children[5].

26 But the Jerusalem which is above[6] is free, who is the mother of us all;

27 for it has been written, "Be glad, barren one not bearing; break forth and shout, the one not travailing; for the sons of those who are forsaken, greatly outnumber the favored one[7]." *(Isa. 54:1)*

28 But, brothers, we are children of promise according to Isaac.

29 But then, even as he, born according to flesh, persecuted the one according to Spirit, so it is also now.

30 But what says the Scripture? "Cast out the slave woman and her son, for in no way shall the son of the slave woman inherit with the son of the free woman." *(Gen. 21:10)*

31 Then, brothers, we are not sons of a slave woman but of the free woman[8].

Chapter 5

1 Then stand firm in the liberty with which Messiah made us free and do not be harnessed again with a yoke of slavery[9].

2 Behold, I, Paul, say to you that if you are circumcised, Messiah will profit you nothing[10].

3 And I testify again to every man being circumcised, that he is under obligation to fulfill the whole Torah;

4 those of you who are seeking justification in the Torah, you have been severed from Messiah; you have fallen from grace. [11]

5 For we through the Spirit eagerly

1 Paul discusses this in 2Cor 3, that the reason that the Sinai covenant brought bondage was that it had no avenue in which to have one's sins paid for and removed, only covered from year to year on Yom Kippur. It has nothing to do with the validity of the Torah, which is binding in both covenants (Heb 8:10).

2 Verses 22-25- Gen 21:10-14

3 Mount Sinai is not in the Sinai Peninsula, but is in Saudi Arabia across the Red Sea. In recent yrs this has been proven by finding the chariot wheels of Pharaoh in the Red Sea between Sinai and Saudi Arabia. Paul went there at the beginning of his ministry (Ga 1:17-18).

4 This word '*shalma'* from the root of Shalom is a peaceful surrender from Sinai and the first covenant with the levitical order to Jerusalem, YHWH's eternal capital where He placed His name under the Melchizedek order.

5 The bondage is that the physical nation has not accepted salvation yet. This bondage will end when Messiah returns and redeems Jerusalem (Zech 14)

6 This Jerusalem comes down to earth after the millennium (Rev 21:1-2)

7 This is speaking that the number of Israelites who were thought to be lost in Diaspora was much higher than the number of Jews that were currently living in the land. This shows again that Paul is writing to a primarily Israelite audience who had been living among gentiles for many years.

8 Again, contrasting the two covenants.

9 The slavery would be if they were circumcised and joined the Sinai covenant they would be obligated to keep every law of Torah (Deut 27:26) and there was no way to pay the penalty of breaking them.

10 The blood of Messiah was only '*a hope to come'* in the Sinai covenant but '*a reality*' in the New Covenant. If they joined the Sinai covenant they would not have had the blood of Messiah to pay the penalty for their sins. Circumcision was the sign of that covenant but not the sign of the New Covenant (Ro 2:28-29, Acts 15:24)

wait for the hope of righteousness, which is of faith.
6 For in Messiah Yahshua, circumcision and uncircumcision are nothing, but faith is perfected through love.
7 You were progressing beautifully! Who confused you to not obey the truth?
8 Your persuasiveness is not from Him who called you.
9 A little leaven leavens all the lump.
10 I trust as to you in our Master that you will not consider other beliefs, but that the one troubling you shall bear the judgment, whoever he may be.
11 But I, brothers, if I preached circumcision, why am I still persecuted[1]? Why? Has the torture stake ceased to be a stumbling block?
12 O that the ones causing you to doubt would cut off themselves[2].
13 For, brothers, you were called to liberty. Only do not use this liberty for an opening to the flesh. But through love serve one another.
14 For the whole Torah is fulfilled in one word, in this, "You shall love your neighbor as yourself[3]." *(Lev. 19:18)*
15 But if you bite and devour one another, beware that you are not consumed by one another.
16 But I say, if you walk in the Spirit, the lust of the flesh will not overtake you.
17 For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh; and these are opposed to one another; so you are not able to do as you desire.
18 But if you are led by the Spirit, you are not under (*the penalty of breaking)* the Torah.
19 Now the works of the flesh are clearly revealed, which are: adultery, impurity, uncleanness, lustfulness,
20 idolatry, witchcraft, enmity, fighting, jealousies, anger, rivalries, stubbornness, divisions, heresies,
21 envying, murders, drunkenness, reveling, and things like these; of which I tell you beforehand, as I also said before, that the ones practicing such things will not inherit the kingdom of Elohim.
22 But the fruit of the Spirit is: love, joy, peace, patience, kindness, goodness, faith,
23 meekness, self-control. Against such things there is no instruction.
24 But the ones belonging to Messiah crucified the flesh with its passions and lusts[4].
25 Let us therefore live by the Spirit, and surrender to the Spirit.
26 Let us not be of vain glory, that

---

11 Gal 3:10 quotes Deut 27:26, which states "*Cursed is he that does not do every law of Torah.*" The Torah is perfect but humans are sinful. Paul is not speaking against the Torah here, but merely showing that circumcision is the sign of the Old Covenant in which there is no way to have the penalty of your sins removed, only death; whereas Baptism is the sign of the New Covenant where the blood of Yahshua pays the penalty for the sins we committed. Therefore, if you would be circumcised to join the covenant instead of baptized you would be joining the Old Covenant where Messiah's blood does not forgive your sins. Paul is not condemning circumcision of our male children according to Torah on the eighth day from birth as he affirms in verse 11.

1 Circumcision of all male boys on the eighth day of birth was for clean and unclean and still binding. It is amazing that on the eighth day of a male child's life the vitamin k rises in his body for clotting after the circumcision is performed.

2 Extremely strong idiomatic statement Paul makes and also makes it clear that he is not advocating circumcision in any form to male adults to join the New Covenant.

3 Every instruction of Torah is to teach us how to love and worship Elohim and how to love our neighbor as ourselves.

ridicules one another, and envies one another.

Chapter 6

1 Brothers, if any man among you goes before you in error, you who are in the Spirit restore him by the spirit of gentleness and beware, lest temptation also comes upon you.

2 And you carry the excess load of one another, and thus complete yourself in the instruction of Messiah.

3 For if anyone thinks to be something, he deceives himself, being nothing.

4 But let each one examine his own work, and then let him glory to himself and not among others.

5 For each one will bear his own normal daily load.

6 But let the one being taught in the Word, share with the one teaching, in all good things.

7 Do not be deceived, Elohim is not mocked. For whatever a man may sow, that he also will reap.

8 For the one sowing to his flesh will reap corruption of the flesh. But the one sowing to the Spirit will reap everlasting life from the Spirit.

9 And let us not be weary now that we are working for good, for in the season of reaping we will not faint.

10 So then, as we have opportunity, let us work good toward all men, especially toward the sons of the household of faith.

11 See in what large letters I write to you with my hand.

12 As many as desire to look well in the flesh, these compel you to be circumcised, only that they may not be persecuted for the torture stake of Messiah.

13 For they themselves having been circumcised do not even keep the Torah, but they desire you to be circumcised so that they may boast in your flesh.

14 But may it never be for me to boast, except in the torture stake of our Master Yahshua Messiah, through whom the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world.

15 For in Messiah Yahshua neither circumcision has any strength nor uncircumcision, but a new creation.

16 And as many as shall follow this path, peace and mercy be on them and on the Israel of Elohim[1].

17 From henceforth, let no one trouble me, for I bear in my body the marks of the Master Yahshua[2].

18 The grace of our Master Yahshua Messiah be with your spirit, my brethren. Amen.

---

4 This is the crux of a true believers' calling, which fruit are you bearing. If you are bearing the fruit of the flesh than you will reap what you sow, but if the Holy Spirit is truly in you and you are surrendering to it, then the fruit of the spirit will be evident to all.

1 Both those who are Israelites by birth and now also those who have been grafted into the covenant by baptism and faith in Yahshua Messiah.

2 Paul had the physical marks of torture that he bore in his flesh for the faith and belief that he had in Yahshua and he is contrasting this to the physical mark of circumcision that some were trying to coerce gentile believers to perform.

Book of Ephesians 61 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, an apostle of Yahshua Messiah through the will of YAHWEH, to the saints being in Ephesus and faithful in Messiah Yahshua:
2 Grace to you and peace from YAHWEH our Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.
3 Blessed is the Elohim and Father of our Master Yahshua Messiah, who blessed us with every spiritual blessing in heaven through Messiah,
4 even as He elected us in Him before the foundation of the world, for us to be holy and without blemish before Him in love,
5 And He marked us with His love to be His from the beginning and adopted us to be sons through Yahshua Messiah, according to how it pleased His will,
6 to the praise of the glory of His grace in which He poured upon us by His beloved one,
7 in whom we have redemption through His blood, the remission of sins, according to the riches of His grace
8 which He caused to abound toward us in all wisdom and understanding,
9 making known to us the mystery of His will, according to His good pleasure which He purposed in Himself,
10 as a stewardship of the fullness of the times that all things might be made new, both in the heavens, and the things on the earth, through Messiah,
11 by whom we have been chosen as He marked us from the beginning so He wanted to carry out everything according to the good judgment of His will,
12 that we should become the first to trust in Messiah to His honor and glory;
13 in whom, you also have heard the Word of Truth, which is the good news of your salvation, in Him you have believed, so you were sealed with the Holy Spirit that was promised,
14 which is the pledge of our inheritance, to the redemption of the purchased possession, to the praise of His glory.
15 Because of this, hearing of your faith in our Master Yahshua Messiah and your love toward all the saints,
16 I also do not cease giving thanks on your behalf, making mention of you in my prayers,
17 that the Elohim of our Master Yahshua Messiah, the Father of glory, may give to you a spirit of wisdom and revelation in the full knowledge of Him,
18 the eyes of your mind having been enlightened, for you to know what is the hope of His calling, and what are the riches of the glory of His inheritance in the saints,
19 and what is the surpassing greatness of His power toward us, the ones believing according to the working of His mighty strength
20 which He worked in Messiah in raising Him from the dead; and He seated Him at His own right hand in heaven[1], *(Psa. 110:1)*
21 far above all cherubs[2], and authority, and power, and dominion, and every name having been named[3], not only in this age, but also in the coming age;
22 and "He put all things under His

---

1 Yahshua is not the Father in Heaven but is seated next to the Father in heaven. (Math 26:64, Heb 1:3, Heb 8:1, Heb 10:12 1Pe 3:22, Acts 2:33, Acts 7:55-56)
2 Heb 1:4,
3 Acts 4:12, Phil 2:9

feet" and gave Him to be Head over all things to the Congregation, *(Psa. 8:6)*

23 which is His body: the fullness of the One filling all things and everything;

Chapter 2

1 And He has quickened you also who were dead because of your sins and trespasses,
2 in which you formerly walked according to the course of this world, according to the will of the ruler of the authority of the air, the spirit which is active in the sons of disobedience,
3 in those very deeds in which we also were corrupted from the very beginning through the lusts of our flesh, doing the things willed of the flesh and of the mind, and were by nature the children of wrath, even as the rest.
4 But Elohim, being rich in mercy, because of His great love with which He loved us,
5 even when we were dead in our sins, He made us alive together with Messiah by whose grace we are saved;
6 and raised us up together and seated us together in heaven through Messiah Yahshua,
7 that in the ages to come, He might demonstrate, the exceeding great riches of His grace in kindness toward us in Messiah Yahshua.
8 For by grace you are saved, through faith, and this is not of yourselves; it is the gift of Elohim;
9 not of works, that not anyone should boast;
10 for we are His workmanship, created in Messiah Yahshua unto good works, which Elohim before prepared that we should walk in them.
11 Because of this, remember that you, the nations, were then in the flesh from the beginning and you were called Uncircumcision, differing from those called Circumcision, which is the work of the hands in the flesh[1];
12 that at that time you were without Messiah, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel and strangers of the covenants of promise, having no hope and without Elohim in the world[2].
13 But now, in Messiah Yahshua you who then were afar off, are brought near by the blood of Messiah[3].
14 For He is our peace, who has made both one *(echad),* and has broken down the wall of separation between them[4],
15 in His flesh He has caused to cease the enmity due to the *(man-made)* laws in regulations[5], that He

---

1 These were primarily Israelites whom Paul was writing to and because they were so long outside of the land of Israel and without the covenant promises in their Diaspora according to the oral rabbinical law these Israelites were now being considered gentiles.

2 This is speaking about the time of their Diaspora after they were exiled from Israel in 721-718 B.C.

3 One of the main jobs of the Messiah is to unite the Northern House of Israel, called the house of Ephraim in scripture, back with the southern House of Judah and make them one nation again at His return Ezek 37:15-28. Through accepting the blood of Yahshua, these Israelites from the house of Ephraim are now brought back into the covenant of Israel with the hope of returning back to the land of Israel.

4 This was a literal separation wall at the temple or sanctuary of YHWH, that separated the Jews from the gentiles. Due to The House of Israel being so long in Diaspora they had to stay on the other side of the outer wall in the court of the gentiles.

5 This word is not the word for Torah and even in the Greek it is "*dogma"* which are man-made laws and regulations made up by the Rabbis, separating the exiled Israelites.

might in Himself create the two into
one new man, making peace[1],
16 and He reconciled both in one
body to Elohim and destroyed the
enmity through the crucifixion[2].
17 And coming, He proclaimed
"Peace to you, the ones afar off, and to
the ones near[3]." *(Isa. 57:19)*
18 For through Him we both have
access by one Spirit to the Father.
19 So, then, you are no longer
strangers and family members living
abroad, but you are natives of the
same family of the saints and children
of the family of YAHWEH[4],
20 being built up on the foundation
of the apostles and prophets, Yahshua
Messiah Himself being the
cornerstone of the building,
21 in whom all the building being
fitted together grows into a holy
sanctuary in YAHWEH,
22 in whom you also are being built
together into a dwelling place of
Elohim in the Spirit.

Chapter 3

1 For this cause, I, Paul, am the
prisoner of Messiah Yahshua on behalf
of you, the nations.
2 Have you indeed heard of the
stewardship of the grace of Elohim
given to me for you?
3 He made known to me the mystery
by a revelation, as I wrote to you
before,
4 so when you read it, you are able to
realize my understanding in the
mystery of Messiah,
5 which was not made known to the
sons of men in other generations, as
now it was revealed to His holy
apostles and prophets in the Spirit,
6 for the nations to be joint-heirs,
and a joint-body and joint-sharers of
His promise in Messiah through the
good news,
7 of which I was made a minister
according to the gift of the grace of
Elohim given to me, according to the
working of His power.
8 This grace was given to me, I being
less than the least of all the saints, to
preach the good news of the
unsearchable riches of Messiah among
the nations,
9 and to bring to light all, what is the
fellowship of the mystery having been
hidden from eternity in Elohim, the
One creating all things through
Yahshua Messiah,
10 so that now to the principalities
and to the authorities in heaven might
be made known through the
Congregation the manifold wisdom of
Elohim,
11 according to the eternal purpose
which He accomplished in Messiah
Yahshua our Master,
12 in whom we have boldness and
access in confidence through His faith.
13 Therefore, I ask you not to faint at
my troubles on your behalf, which is
your glory.
14 For this reason I bow my knees to
the Father[5] of our Master Yahshua
Messiah,
15 of whom every family in Heaven
and on earth is named,

1 Through Messiah whether one is a Jew, an Israelite or a gentile they are all one in Him. He will also unite Judah and Ephraim at His return (Ezek 37:15-28). The word for peace in Hebrew is "*shalom*" and one of the titles of the Messiah is "*Sar Shalom*", meaning Prince of Peace (Is 9:6).

2 Is 11:12-13

3 Judah and Ephraim (Math 10:5-6)

4 The word used here can not refer to Jew and cannot refer to a gentile but only to an Israelite who is living in Diaspora and shows that clearly Paul is writing to exiles from the Northern House of Israel.

5 The congregation is named after Yahweh the Father. (Joh 17:11-12, 1 Chron 28:8, 2 Chron 6:33, 2 Chron 7:14)

16 that He may give you, according to the riches of His glory, by His power to become mighty in the inward man through His Spirit,
17 that through faith Messiah may dwell in your hearts, having been rooted and founded in love,
18 that you may be given strength to grasp, with all the saints, what is the breadth and length and depth and height,
19 and to know the surpassing knowledge and love of Messiah, that you may be filled to all the fullness of Elohim.
20 Now to Him being able to do exceedingly above all that we ask or think, according to the power working in us,
21 to Him be the glory in His Congregation in Messiah Yahshua, throughout all generations forever and ever. Amen.

Chapter 4

1 Then I, the prisoner of our Master, exhort you to walk worthily of the calling in which you were called,
2 with all humility and meekness, with long-suffering, bearing with one another in love,
3 being eager to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.
4 There is one body and one Spirit, even as you also were called in one hope of your calling;
5 one YAHWEH *(family)*, one faith, one baptism,
6 one Elohim and Father of all, the One above all and through all and in you all.
7 But to each one of us was given grace according to the measure of the gift of Messiah.
8 Because of this, He says, "Having ascended on high, He led captivity captive," and gave gifts to men.[1]"
9 But that He went up, what is it except that He also first came down into the lower parts of the earth[2]?
10 He that came down is the same who also went up above all the heavens, that He might fill all things.
11 And indeed He has assigned[3] some to be apostles; and some prophets; and some evangelists; and some shepherds and teachers;
12 for the perfecting of the saints for the work of the ministry, for the building up of the body of Messiah,
13 until we all may come to the unity of the faith and of the full knowledge of the Son of Elohim, to a full-grown man, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Messiah,
14 so that we may no longer be children, being blown and carried about by every wind of false doctrine of men, who through their craftiness are very skillful in deceiving the people[4];
15 but speaking the truth in love, we may grow up into Him in all things, who is the Head, the Messiah,
16 it is through Him that the whole body is closely framed together and united at all joints, according to the gift that is imparted by measure to each member, for the guidance and

---

1 Ps 68:18

2 Joh 3:13

3 It is Yahshua Himself who has established the judicial order in the congregation by ordaining elders and leaders to serve the brethren and keep order and proper doctrine in the congregation. Yahweh has given these ordained men authority to render judgments in the congregation according to the Torah (Deur 17:8-13)

4 It is these elders' job to make sure there is proper doctrine in the congregation. It is not the individual members' responsibility to decide doctrine in the assembly, as this only brings confusion and heresy..

control of the body; in order to complete the edifying of the body in love.
17 Therefore, I say this, and testify in the Master, that you no longer walk even as also the rest of the nations walk, in the vanity of their mind,
18 having been darkened by their intellect, being alienated from the life of Elohim because they have no knowledge, which is because of the hardness of their heart,
19 who, having cast off all feeling, surrendered themselves up to lust, and to the practice of all uncleanness with a desire for more and more.
20 But that is not what you have been taught in Messiah,
21 if indeed you heard Him and were taught in Him, as the truth is in Yahshua.
22 Lay aside all your former practices and put off the old man, having been degenerated with deceitful lusts,
23 and be renewed in the spirit of your mind,
24 and to put on the new man, who is created by Elohim in righteousness and true holiness.
25 Therefore, put away from you lying, and speak the truth each with his neighbor; for we are members one of another. *(Zech. 8:16)*
26 "Be angry but do not sin;" do not let the sun go down on your anger, *(Psa. 4:5)*
27 and do not give the Devil a chance.
28 The one stealing, let him steal no more, but rather let him labor, working what is good with the hands, that he may have something to give to the one who has need.
29 Let not any evil word go out from your mouth, but words that are good and useful for edification that it may impart a blessing to those who hear them. *(Math 12:34-37)*
30 And do not grieve the Holy Spirit of Elohim, by whom you were sealed to the day of redemption.
31 Let all bitterness, and anger, and wrath, and tumult, and evil speaking be put away from you, along with all malice.
32 And be kind to one another, tenderhearted, forgiving one another, even as Elohim has forgiven us through Messiah.

Chapter 5

1 Then become imitators of Elohim, as beloved children,
2 and walk in love, even as Messiah also loved us and gave Himself for us, an offering and a sacrifice to YAHWEH for an odor of a sweet smell.
3 But let not fornication, and all uncleanness, or greediness, be named among you, as is fitting for saints;
4 also cursing, and foolish talking, or witty insults (none of which are necessary), but rather the giving of thanks.
5 For you should know this, that any one guilty of fornication, or unclean person, or a covetous one, who is an idolater, has no inheritance in the kingdom of Messiah and of Elohim.
6 Let no one deceive you with empty words, for through these things the wrath of YAHWEH comes on the sons of disobedience.
7 Then do not become partakers with them;
8 for you then were darkness, but are now light in the Master; walk as children of light.
9 For the fruit of the Spirit is in all goodness and righteousness and truth,
10 and you must discern what is acceptable before our Master.

11 And have no fellowship with the unfruitful works of darkness, but rather condemn them.
12 For it is shameful even to speak of the things being done by them in secret.
13 But all things being condemned are exposed by the light and are clearly revealed, for everything having been revealed is light.
14 Because of this, He says, Arise, sleeping ones and rise from the dead ones, and Messiah will give you light[1].
15 Then watch how carefully you walk, not as unwise, but as wise ones,
16 redeeming the time, because the days are evil.
17 For this reason, do not be foolish, but understanding what the will of Elohim is.
18 And "do not be drunk with wine," in which is debauchery, but be filled by the Spirit, *(Prov. 23:31)*
19 speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and praising in your heart to YAHWEH,
20 giving thanks at all times for all things to YAHWEH the Father in the name of our Master Yahshua Messiah[2].
21 Submit yourself one to another in the love of the Messiah[3].
22 Wives, submit yourselves to your own husbands, as to our Master,[4]
23 because a husband is head of the wife, as also Messiah is Head of the Congregation, and He is the Savior of the body.

[1] Is 60:1

[2] The believer is told to pray to the Father Yahweh in the name of Yahshua the Son (Joh 14:13-14, Joh 15:16)

[3] Today in western society there is an extremely self-willed prevalent attitude, yet scripture shows we must submit all one to another in the unity of the faith of Yahshua.

[4] 1 Pe 3:1-2

24 But even as the Congregation is subject to Messiah, so also the wives to their own husbands in everything[5].
25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Messiah also loved the Congregation and gave Himself up on its behalf[6],
26 that He might sanctify it, cleansing it by the washing of water and by the Word,
27 that He might present it to Himself as the glorious Congregation, not having stain or wrinkle, or any such things, but that it be holy and without blemish.
28 So, husbands ought to love their wives as their own bodies, (he loving his wife loves himself),
29 for then no one hated his own flesh[7], but nourishes and cherishes it, even also as our Master does to the Congregation.
30 For we are members of His body, of His flesh, and of His bones.
31 "For this, a man shall leave his father and mother, and shall be joined to his wife, and the two shall be one *(echad)* flesh." *(Gen. 2:24)*
32 This is a great mystery, but I speak as to Messiah and His Congregation[8].

[5] It is the wife's responsibility to be a helpmate, like a hand to a glove with her husband in all things (Gen 3:16)

[6] Husbands in return are to give unconditional love to their wives always looking at what is best for them as their protector as Yahshua is to the congregation.

[7] It is a falsehood that people have low self-esteem. It is the opposite, people love themselves too much. Some may have low self-confidence, but no human has low self-esteem.

[8] The marriage relationship is a foreshadow of Messiah with His bride for eternity and all true believers must give the highest degree of sanctity to the marriage covenant. Please see lesson 18 on line at www.coyhwh.com.

33 Nevertheless, let everyone of you so love his wife as himself, and the wife, that she give reverence to the husband.

Chapter 6

1 Children, obey your parents in YAHWEH, for this is right.
2 "Honor your father and mother," which is the first commandment with a promise, *(Ex. 20:12)*
3 "that it may be well with you, and you may live long on the earth." *(Deut. 5:16)*
4 And fathers, do not provoke your children to anger, but nurture them in the discipline and teaching of our Master.
5 Slaves, obey your masters according to flesh, with reverence and trembling, in singleness of your heart, as to Messiah;
6 not with eye service as hypocrites, but as slaves of Messiah doing the will of our Master from the heart,
7 serving as slaves with good will to our Master, and not as to men,
8 each one knowing that whatever good thing he does, this he shall receive from the Master, whether he is a slave or a freeman.
9 And masters, do the same things toward them, forgiving their faults, knowing that the Master of you and of them is in Heaven, and there is no respecter of persons with Him.
10 For the rest, my brothers, be made powerful in our Master and in the might of His strength.
11 Put on all the armor of YAHWEH, for you to be able to stand against the strategies of the Devil,
12 For our conflict is not with flesh and blood, but with principalities, and with those in authority, and with the possessors of this dark world, and with the evil spirits that are beneath heaven.
13 Because of this, take up all of the whole armor of Elohim that you may be able to resist the evil one, and being prepared you shall prevail.
14 Then stand firm, "having girded your loins about with truth" and having put "on the breastplate of righteousness," (*Isa. 11:5; 59:17*)
15 and defend your feet with the preparation of the good news of peace. *(Isa. 52:7)*
16 Above all, taking up the shield of faith, with which you will be able to quench all the flaming darts of the evil one.
17 Also, put on "the helmet of salvation," and take the sword of the Spirit which is the Word of YAHWEH; *(Isa. 49:2; Hos. 6:5)*
18 through all prayer and petition, praying at all times in the Spirit, and watching to this same thing with all perseverance and petition concerning all the saints.
19 Pray also for me, that to me may be given speech in the opening of my mouth with boldness to make known the mystery of the good news,
20 for which I am an ambassador in a chain, that in it I may speak boldly as it is right for me to speak. *(2 Cor 5:20)*
21 But that you also may know the things about me, what I am doing, Tychicus, the beloved brother and faithful minister in our Master, will make known all things to you,
22 whom I sent to you for this same thing, that you might know the things about us, and he may comfort your hearts.
23 Peace to the brothers, and love with faith, from YAHWEH the Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.
24 Grace be with all those that love our Master Yahshua Messiah without corruption. Amen.

Chapter 1

1 Paul, and Timothy, slaves of Yahshua Messiah, to all the saints in Messiah Yahshua who are in Philippi, with the overseers and deacons:
2 Grace to you and peace from YAHWEH our Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.
3 I thank my Elohim for your steady remembrance of me,
4 always in my every prayer on your behalf making my prayer with joy
5 over your fellowship in the good news, from the very first day until now,
6 being confident of this very thing, that the One having begun a good work in you will finish it until the day of Yahshua Messiah;
7 as it is righteous for me to think this of you all because you have me in your heart, both in my imprisonment and in the defense and confirmation of the good news, you are all sharers of the grace with me.
8 For Elohim is my witness how much I love you through the love of Yahshua Messiah.
9 And this I pray for, that your love may still increase and abound, in knowledge, and in all spiritual understanding,
10 so that you may discern the things that are better; and may be pure and without offense, in the day of the Messiah,
11 being filled with fruits of righteousness through Yahshua Messiah, to the glory and praise of Elohim.
12 But I want you to know, brothers, that the things concerning me have more fully come to the advancement of the good news,
13 and the reasons for my imprisonment has been clearly revealed by Messiah to all Caesar's court and to all men.
14 And that many of the brethren *(believing)* in our Master, have grown confident in my imprisonment, and with exceeding boldness speak the Word of Elohim without fear.
15 While some of them only proclaim Messiah because of envy and strife, others preach Messiah because of good will and love.
16 These, indeed, announce Messiah out of contention, not sincerely, but do it thinking to add hardship to my imprisonment.
17 But these others out of love, knowing that I am set for defense of the good news.
18 and I have rejoiced in this; and I do still rejoice in this, that in every way, whether in pretense or in truth, Messiah is proclaimed,.
19 For I know that through your prayers and the gift of the Spirit of Yahshua Messiah, that all these things will result for my salvation. *(Job 13:16)*
20 According to my earnest expectation and hope, that in nothing I shall be ashamed, but as always in all boldness even now Messiah will be magnified in my body, whether through life or through death.
21 For Messiah is my life, and to die is gain.
22 But if I have fruits of my labors in this life of the flesh, I do not know what to choose.
23 For I am torn together by the two: having a desire to depart and be with Messiah, which is far better[1],

[1] The dead are asleep and there is no Consciousness in the grave, so from the time that one dies to the time of the resurrection it will seem like a second, even though it could actually be thousands of yrs. (1 Cor 15:51-52, 1 Thes 4:13-18, Eccl 9:5, Job 14:13-14)

24 but to remain in the flesh is more
necessary on account of you.
25 And being persuaded of this, I
know that I will remain and will
continue with you all for your
advancement and joy of faith,
26 so that your glorying may abound
in Messiah Yahshua in me through my
presence with you again.
27 Only behave yourself worthily of
the good news of Messiah, so that
whether coming and seeing you or
whether I am far away, I may hear of
your good conduct, that you stand fast
in one spirit and one soul, triumphing
together in the faith of the good news,
28 and not being terrified in
anything by our adversaries, whose
conduct is the sign of their own
destruction, but to your salvation, and
this is from Elohim;
29 because it was granted to you on
behalf of Messiah not only to believe
in Him, but also to suffer on His
behalf,
30 having the same struggle which
you saw in me and now hear that I am
in.

Chapter 2

1 So then, if there is any comfort in
Messiah, if any consolation of love, if
any fellowship of the Spirit, if any
mercies and compassions,
2 complete my joy, by being in one
accord, and one love, and one soul,
and one mind. *(1 Cor 1:10)*
3 Doing nothing according to strife
or self-glory, but in humility, let each
regard his neighbor as better than
himself;
4 let no one be mindful only of his
own things, but let each one also be
mindful of the things of his neighbor.
5 For think this within you, which
mind was also in Messiah Yahshua,
6 who existed in the very form of
Elohim, thought it not robbery to be
the equal with Elohim[1],
7 but emptied Himself[2], taking the
image of a servant, having become in
the image of the sons of men
8 and being found in form like a
man, He humbled Himself, having
become obedient until death, even the
death of a torture stake.
9 For this reason also, Elohim highly
exalted Him and gave Him a name
above every name[3],
10 that at the name of Yahshua
"every knee should bow," of those in
heaven, and those on earth, and those
under the earth,
11 and "every tongue should confess"
that Yahshua Messiah is YAHWEH,
(the Son) to the glory of YAHWEH
His Father[4]. *(Isa. 45:23)*
12 So then, my beloved, even as you
always obeyed, not as in my presence
only, but now much rather in my
absence, work out your salvation with
fear and trembling,
13 for it is Elohim who is working in
you both to will and to work for the
sake of His good pleasure.
14 Do all things without murmuring
and doubtful reasoning[5],
15 that you may be blameless and
harmless, children of YAHWEH,
without fault in the midst of a crooked
generation, even having been

---

1 This scripture shows that Yahshua and Yahweh the Father are two separate beings, who are both Elohim and always existed together in love and harmony. (Zech 13:7)

2 Yahshua temporarily laid aside His divinity and came to earth as a human being.

3 There is only one name given to the Son of Yahweh and it is Yahshua, which means Yahweh's Salvation. (Acts 4:12, Ex 32:21, Math 1:21)

4 Yahweh is a family name consisting of Yah Yahweh the Father and Yahshua Yahweh the Son.

5 Doubt is the opposite of faith and will destroy your faith (1 Joh 4:18)

perverted, among whom you shine as
luminaries in the world,
16 holding up the Word of Life, for a
boast to me in the day of Messiah, that
I ran not in vain, nor labored in vain.
17 But if indeed I am poured out on
the sacrifice and service of your faith, I
rejoice; yea, I rejoice with you all.
18 And you also rejoice in the same
and rejoice with me.
19 But I hope in the Master Yahshua
to send Timothy to you soon, that I
may also be of good cheer, knowing
the things about you.
20 For I have no one here as
interested as I am, who genuinely will
care for the things about you.
21 For all seek their own things, not
the things of Messiah Yahshua.
22 But you know the proof of him,
that as a child to a father, he served
with me for the good news.
23 Then I hope to send this one at
once, whenever I shall see the things
about me.
24 But I trust in Elohim that I myself
also will come soon.
25 But I thought it needful to send to
you Epaphroditus, my brother and
fellow-worker, and my fellow soldier,
and your messenger and minister of
my need,
26 For he longed to see you all, and
was depressed, because he knew ye
had heard, that he was sick.
27 For indeed he was sick, coming
near to death; but Elohim had mercy
on him, and not only on him, but also
me, lest I should have grief on grief.
28 Therefore, I sent him more
eagerly, that seeing him again you may
rejoice, and I may be less grieved.
29 Then receive him in Master
YAHWEH with all joy and hold such
in honor,
30 For, because of the Messiah's
work, he came near to death, and by
his self denial, that he might fulfill
what you lacked in service toward me.

Chapter 3

1 For the rest, my brothers, rejoice in
our Master. To write the same things
to you truly is not tiresome to me, but
it is safe for you.
2 Beware of the dogs, beware of the
evil workers, beware of the
circumcised party.
3 For we are the circumcision, the
ones who worship by the Spirit of
Elohim, and who glory in Messiah
Yahshua, and who do not trust in
flesh.
4 And yet I might place reliance on
the flesh. For, if any one thinks that
his reliance should be on the flesh, I
might do so more than he.
5 For I was circumcised on the
eighth day, being of the race of Israel,
of the tribe of Benjamin, a Hebrew of
the Hebrews; according to the Torah, a
Pharisee;
6 according to zeal, persecuting the
Congregation; according to the
standard of righteousness in the
Torah, being blameless.
7 But these things which were once a
gain to me, I have counted a loss for
the sake of Messiah.
8 But, no, rather I also count all
things to be loss because of the
excellency of the knowledge of
Messiah Yahshua my Master, for
whose sake I have suffered the loss of
all things and count them to be trash,
that I might gain Messiah
9 and be found in Him; not having
my own righteousness of law, but
through the faith of Messiah, having
the righteousness of Elohim on faith,
10 and through this righteousness
that I may know Yahshua and the
power of His resurrection, and be a

partaker of His sufferings, even to a death like His,
11 if somehow I may attain to the resurrection from the dead.
12 Not that I already received or already have been perfected[1], but I press on, if I also may lay hold, inasmuch as I also was laid hold of by Messiah Yahshua.
13 Brothers, I do not count myself to have reached the goal, but one thing I do, forgetting the things behind, and stretching forward to those things before,
14 I press toward the goal to receive the prize of victory of the highest calling of Elohim in Messiah Yahshua.
15 Then as many as are perfect, think about these things; and if you think anything differently, Elohim will also reveal this to you.
16 Yet as to where we have arrived, walk by the same rule, being of the same mind.
17 Be fellow-imitators of me, brothers, and consider those walking this way, even as you have us for a pattern.
18 For many walk as enemies to the torture stake of Messiah, of whom I often told you, and now even weeping I say it,
19 whose end is destruction, whose god is their belly, and who glory in their shame, the ones thinking on earthly things.
20 For our citizenship is in Heaven, from where we also wait for a Savior, the Master Yahshua Messiah[2],
21 who will transform our body of humiliation, to the likeness of His glorious body, according to His mighty power to be able even to subject all things under Himself. *(1Joh 3:2)*

Chapter 4

1 So as, my brethren, dearly beloved and longed for, my joy and crown, in this manner so stand firm in our Master, my beloved.
2 I entreat Euodias, and I entreat Syntyche, to mind the same thing in our Master.
3 And I also ask you, true yoke-fellow, help those women who struggled along with me and with Clement in the good news, and the rest of my fellow-laborers, whose names are in the Book of Life.
4 Rejoice in YAHWEH always. Again I say, Rejoice!
5 Let your humility be known to all men. Our Master is at hand.
6 Do not worry about anything, but in everything by prayer and by petition with thanksgivings, let your requests be made known to Elohim;
7 and the peace of YAHWEH which surpasses all understanding will keep your hearts and your minds through Messiah Yahshua.
8 Finally, my brethren, whatever is true, whatever is honest, whatever is just, whatever pure, whatever lovely, whatever of good report, if there is any virtue, and if there is any praise, think on these things[3].
9 And what things you learned and received and heard and saw in me, practice these things, and the Elohim of peace will be with you.
10 But I rejoiced in Elohim greatly that you have continued to care for

---

1 Paul is stating that he has not received his reward yet but is waiting for the resurrection and the kingdom of YHWH to come.

2 Although as human beings true believers carry passports showing the nationality to which they were physically born, their real citizenship is in heaven and as ambassadors for the Heavenly kingdom (2 Cor 5:20), they do not partake in worldly politics.

3 If believers could focus on this one verse daily, what a difference it would make to the body of Messiah.

me, just as you have always cared, even though you yourselves have not had enough.
11 Not that I speak as to need, for I have learned to be content in whatever state I am.
12 And I know what it is to be poor, And I know what it is to be rich; I have gone through many things and experienced many things, both to be filled and to hunger, both to have plenty, and to be in need.
13 I can do all things through Messiah; the One giving me strength.
14 Yet you did well in sharing my difficulties.
15 And you know, too, Philippians, that in the beginning of the good news, when I went out from Macedonia, not one Congregation shared with me in the matter of giving and receiving, except you only.
16 Because even at Thessalonica you sent more than once to meet my needs.
17 I do not say this because I seek a gift, but I seek the fruits of the good news multiplying to you.
18 But I have all things and more than enough; I have been filled, receiving from Epaphroditus the things from you, and it was welcomed as a fragrant perfume, an acceptable sacrifice, pleasing to Elohim.
19 And my Elohim will fill your every need according to His riches in glory in Messiah Yahshua.
20 Now to YAHWEH our Father be glory and honor forever and ever. Amen.
21 Greet every saint in Messiah Yahshua. The brothers with me greet you.
22 All the saints greet you, most of all those of Caesar's house.
23 The grace of our Master Yahshua Messiah be with all of you. Amen.

Book of Colossians 60-61 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, an apostle of Yahshua Messiah through the will of Elohim, and Timothy the brother,
2 to the saints and faithful brothers in Messiah in Colosse: Grace and peace to you from YAHWEH our Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.
3 We give thanks always to YAHWEH, the Father of our Master, Yahshua Messiah, and we always pray for you,
4 hearing of your faith in Messiah Yahshua and the love toward all the saints,
5 because of the hope which is preserved for you in Heaven, which you heard before in the Word of the truth of the good news,
6 which has been preached to you, as also in all the world, and it is bearing fruit even also among you, from the day in which you heard and knew the grace of Elohim in truth;
7 even as you also learned from Epaphras our beloved fellow-slave, who is a faithful minister of Messiah for you,
8 he also showing to us your love in the Spirit.
9 For this cause also, from the day in which we heard, we do not cease praying on your behalf, and asking that you may be filled with the full knowledge of the will of Elohim in all wisdom and spiritual understanding,
10 That you may live a righteous life pleasing to Elohim and bearing fruit in every good work and growing into the full knowledge of Elohim;
11 being empowered with all power according to the might of His glory, to all patience and long-suffering with joy;
12 So that you may joyfully give thanks to Elohim the Father, who has enlightened and made us a worthy inheritance of the saints,
13 and has delivered us out of the authority of darkness, and brought us into the kingdom of His beloved Son,
14 in whom we have obtained salvation, and the forgiveness of sins;
15 who is the image of the invisible Elohim, the right of the First-born of all creation[1].
16 For all things were created through Him, the things in the heavens, and the things on the earth, the visible and the invisible; whether imperial thrones, or dominions, or angelic orders, or authorities, all things were in His hand and have been created by Him[2].
17 And He is before all things, and by Him all things are sustained.
18 And He is the Head of the body, the Congregation, who is the Beginning, the First-born of the resurrection of the dead, that He be preeminent in all things[3];
19 because it pleased Elohim to complete all things in Him,
20 and through Him making peace by the blood of His crucifixion, to reconcile all things to Himself; through Him, whether the things on the earth, or the things in the heavens.
21 And you then being alienated and hostile in your mind by evil works, but now peace has been given,
22 through the sacrifice of His body, and His death, so that He may raise you before Him holy and without blemish and blameless,

---

1 Yahshua is the first being to literally be born again from the dead and He has the right of the first born for eternity.

2 Yahshua was with the Father at creation and was a part in creating everything that was ever made. (Gen 1:1, 26, Eccl 12:1)

3 Yahshua is the reason that any believer can receive eternal life and He will have this predominance for eternity.

23 if indeed you continue in the faith
grounded and settled and not being
moved away from the hope of the good
news which you have heard and which
has been preached in all the creation
under Heaven, of which I, Paul,
became a minister,
24 and now rejoice in my sufferings
on your behalf and fill up in my flesh
the things lacking of the afflictions of
Messiah on behalf of His body, which
is the Congregation,
25 of which I became a minister,
according to the stewardship of
Elohim given to me for you, to preach
the Word of Elohim everywhere,
26 even the mystery having been
hidden from the ages and from the
generations, but now is revealed to His
saints;
27 to whom Elohim willed to make
known what are the riches of the glory
of this mystery among the nations,
which is Messiah in you, the hope of
glory[1];
28 Him we preach, warning every
man and teaching every man in all
wisdom, that we may cause every man
to become perfect in Messiah Yahshua,
29 and to this end I also labor,
struggling according to the working of
Him who works in me in power.

Chapter 2

1 For I want you to know how great a
struggle I have concerning you, and
those in Laodicea, and as many as
have not seen my face in the flesh,
2 that their hearts may be comforted,
being joined together in love, and to
all riches of the full assurance of the
understanding, to the full knowledge
of the mystery of Elohim, even of the
Father and of Messiah,
3 in whom are hidden all the
treasures of wisdom and of knowledge.
4 And I say this that no one may
beguile you with persuasive words.
5 For though I am indeed absent in
the flesh, yet I am with you in spirit,
rejoicing and seeing your order and
the firmness of your faith in Messiah.
6 Therefore, just as you accepted
Messiah Yahshua our Master, so you
must be led by Him,
7 being rooted and being built up in
Him, and being confirmed in the faith,
even as you were taught, abounding in
it with thanksgiving.
8 Watch that there not be one
misleading you through philosophy
and empty deceit, according to the
tradition of men, according to the
elements of the world, and not
according to Messiah.
9 For in Him dwells all the fullness
of divinity bodily;
10 and it is through Him, that you
have been made complete, for He is
the Head of all angelic orders and
authority,
11 in whom also you were
circumcised with a circumcision not
made by hands[2], in the putting off of
the body of the sins of the flesh, by the
circumcision of Messiah,
12 being buried with Him in
baptism, and by Him you were raised
with Him for you believed in the

[1] This is the great mystery of the good news message that through the Rucah H'Chodesh (Holy Spirit) Yahshua is literally living in the disciple and if the disciple surrenders his will to the will of Yahshua, then the Holy Spirit can literally transform the person into a new creation.

[2] Circumcision was the sign of the first covenant and to enter covenant relationship you need the shedding of blood (Heb 9:18, 22). If someone was circumcised to join the New Covenant he would be joining by his own blood. This scripture is showing that the new believer when he is baptized that he is being circumcised by Messiah by the cutting off of the sins of his flesh by the Messiah's shed blood.

power of YAHWEH, who raised Him
from the dead.
13 And you, who were once dead in
your sins and the uncircumcision of
your flesh, He has granted to live with
Him, having forgiven you all your sins,
14 and, by his mandates, he canceled
the legal contract[1] of our sins, which
existed against us, and took it out of
the way, nailing it to His torture stake.
15 And by putting off His mortal
body, He exposed the powers of evil,
and through His person put them
openly to shame.
16 Therefore do not let anyone[2]
judge[3] among you about eating, or
drinking, or in how you keep the feast
days, or the new moon, or the Sabbath
day[4],
17 which remain shadows of coming
things[5], but the body of Messiah[6].
18 Let no one, by pretense of
sincerity, doom you so that you
worship cherubs; for he is bold about
things which he has not seen, and
foolishly he is vainly inflated in his
intellectual superiority[7].
19 That person does not uphold the
Head, by whom all the body is
constructed and stands with the joints
and members, and grows through the
discipline of Elohim.
20 If, then, you died with Messiah
from the elements of the world, why
are you under its decrees, as living in
the world?
21 Do not handle, do not taste, do
not touch,
22 for these things are customs
which are changeable; and they are the
command and doctrines of men[8]. *(Isa.
29:13)*
23 Which things indeed appear to be
a matter of having wisdom when
presented by the humble person in
reverence for Elohim, provided they
disregard the things of the flesh, not
those things which are honorable, but
only those things which satisfy the
pleasures of the flesh.

Chapter 3

1 If, then, you were raised with

1 This word in both Aramaic and Greek is a legal contract that we owe YHWH for the penalty of our sins. When someone was crucified in ancient times they would literally carry the cross beam to the crucifixion site and it would be nailed above them to the tree that was being used. The penalty of what they were being crucified for was written on the beam for all to see (Joh 19:19-20). This scripture is stating that as we are buried with Him in our baptism, He is also taking the penalty for our sins and applying His sacrifice to our penalty, so when we come up from the water our sins are completely paid for by the shed blood of Yahshua Messiah..

2 Referring to anyone outside the body of Messiah

3 To create a disturbance

4 Paul is stating since Yahshua died for your sins and the Sabbaths and Holy days and new moons are shadows of His death and resurrection and return to earth and His kingdom, do not let anyone who is not a believer judge you for the way you are keeping them. The question here is not whether to keep them or not, but the disciples being judged by pagans for "*how"* they were keeping them. Gnostics believed that anything dealing with the flesh was evil and they were judging the brethren for feasting during the Holy days and having fellow-ship meals etc on the Sabbath and New Moon.

5 The Sabbaths and Holy Days "*remain shadows*" and are not done away with.

6 Let the body of messiah judge a believer not pagan outsiders.

7 Here Paul is speaking about ascetics who were claiming angelic revelations about themselves to bring a false spiritual superiority that was not true.

8 Clearly Paul is speaking of pagan gnostic and ascetic rituals as they are "*the commands of men*" not YHWH.

Messiah, seek the things above, where Messiah is sitting at the right hand of YAHWEH; *(Psa. 110:1)*
2 set your mind on the things above, not on things on the earth.
3 For you died, and your life has been hidden with Messiah in Elohim.
4 Whenever Messiah our life is revealed, then also you will be revealed with Him in glory.
5 Then put to death your members which are on the earth: fornication, uncleanness, passion, evil lust, and covetousness, for these are idolatry;
6 on account of which things the wrath of YAHWEH is coming on the deeds of disobedience,
7 among whom you also walked at one time, when you were living in these.
8 But now, you also, put off all these things: wrath, anger, malice, evil-speaking, filthy conversation out of your mouth.
9 Do not lie to one another, having put off the old man with his practices,
10 and put on the new life which is renewed in knowledge after the pattern in which it was originally created[1],
11 where there is neither Jew or Aramean, circumcision and uncircumcision, foreigner, Scythian, slave or freeman, but Messiah is all and in all men.
12 Therefore, as the elect of YAHWEH, holy and beloved, put on bowels of mercy, kindness, humility, meekness, long-suffering,
13 bearing with one another and forgiving yourselves, if anyone has a complaint against any; even as Messiah forgave you, so also you should forgive.
14 And above all these, have love, which is the bond of perfection.
15 And let the peace of Messiah rule in your hearts, for that goal you are called in one body, and be thankful to Messiah.
16 Let the Word of Messiah dwell in you richly, in all wisdom teaching and exhorting yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to Elohim.
17 And everything, whatever you do in word or in work, do all things in the name of our Master Yahshua, giving thanks to YAHWEH the Father through Him.
18 Wives, be subject to your own husbands, as is fitting in Messiah[2].
19 Husbands, love the wives and do not be bitter against them[3].
20 Children, obey the parents in all things, for this is pleasing to Elohim.[4]
21 Fathers, do not provoke your children,[5] that they may not be discouraged.
22 Servants, obey the Masters according to flesh in all respects[6], not with eye-service as hypocrites, but with a sincere heart, giving reverence to YAHWEH.
23 And whatever you may do, do it from your whole soul as to our Master and not as to men,
24 knowing that from the Master you shall receive the reward of the inheritance. For you serve YAHWEH the Messiah.
25 But the one doing wrong will receive what he did wrong, and there is no respect of persons.

---

[1] In the Garden of Eden there were not all the stereo-types that developed later, but simply a choice to obedience that brought eternal life and disobedience that brought death.

[2] Eph 5:22
[3] Eph 5:25
[4] Eph 6:1
[5] Eph 6:4
[6] Eph 6:5-8

Chapter 4

1 Masters, give what is just and equal to the slaves, knowing that you have a Master in Heaven also. *(Eph 6:9)*
2 Steadfastly continue in prayer, watching in it with thanksgiving,
3 praying together about us also, that Elohim may open to us a door of the Word, to speak the mystery of Messiah, on account of which I also have been bound,
4 that I may make it clear, as I ought to speak.
5 Live wisely in peace with those who are outside the congregation, and avoid offending.
6 Let your word be always with grace, having been seasoned with salt, to know how you ought to answer each one.
7 All the things about me, Tychicus, the beloved brother and faithful minister and fellow-servant in Master YAHWEH, will make known to you,
8 whom I sent to you for this very thing, that he might know the things about you, and that he might comfort your hearts,
9 with Onesimus the faithful and beloved brother, who is of you. They will make known to you all the things here.
10 Aristarchus, my fellow prisoner, greets you, also Mark the cousin of Barnabas, about whom you received orders. If he comes to you, receive him.
11 And Yeshua, the one being called Justus, those being of the circumcision, greet you, and the only fellow workers with me for the kingdom of Elohim, who became a comfort to me.
12 Epaphras, who is one of you, a servant of Messiah, greets you, always striving for you in prayers, that you may stand perfect and complete in every will of Elohim.
13 For I bear witness to him, that he has much zeal on your behalf, and those in Laodicea, and those in Hierapolis.
14 Luke the beloved physician greets you, also Demas.
15 Greet the brothers in Laodicea, and Nymphas and the Congregation that meets at his house[1].
16 And when this epistle is read before you, cause that it be read also in the Laodicean Congregation, and that you likewise read the epistle from Laodicea.
17 And say to Archippus, take heed to the ministry which you received in our Master, that you may fulfill it.
18 This greeting is by my hand, Paul. Remember my imprisonment. Grace be with you. Amen.

[1] Many early congregations met in homes.

Book of 1 Thessalonians 51 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul and Silvanus and Timothy to the Congregation of the Thessalonians in Elohim the Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah: Grace and peace to you from YAHWEH our Father and the Master Yahshua Messiah.
2 We give thanks to Elohim always concerning you all, remembering you always in our prayers,
3 mentioning before Elohim the Father the works of your faith and labor of love, and the patience of your hope in our Master Yahshua Messiah,
4 For we know that you are the elected ones my brethren and beloved of Elohim.
5 For our good news did not come to you in word only, but also in power, and in the Holy Spirit, and in much assurance, even as you know how we lived among you for your sakes.
6 And you became imitators of us and of our Master, welcoming the Word in much affliction with joy of the Holy Spirit.
7 So that you became examples to all those believing in Macedonia and Achaia.
8 For the Word of Elohim sounded out from you not only in Macedonia and Achaia, but also in every place your faith toward Elohim has gone out, so that there is no need for us to have to say anything.
9 For they themselves announce concerning us what kind of entrance we have to you, and how you had turned to Elohim from the idols, to serve the true and living Elohim,
10 and to await His Son from Heaven, even Yahshua, whom He raised from the dead, for it is He who will deliver us from the coming wrath[1].

Chapter 2

1 For brothers, you yourselves know our entrance to you, that it has not been without fruit.
2 But also suffering before and being treated shamefully in Philippi, then with more struggle, we were bold in our Elohim to preach the good news of Messiah.
3 For our comfort did not proceed from deception, nor from impurity, nor enticing speech:
4 but even as we have been approved by Elohim to be entrusted with the good news, so we speak not to please men, but to please Elohim, the One trying our hearts.
5 And we have never used flattering words, even as you know, to conceal greed; Elohim is witness,
6 and we have not sought support from men, neither from you, nor from others, when we could have been burdensome on you for our maintenance, as apostles of Messiah should be.
7 But we were humble in your midst, even as a foster mother should warmly cherish her children.
8 So yearning over you, we were well-pleased to impart to you not only the good news of Elohim, but also our own lives, because you have become beloved to us.
9 For, brothers, you remember our labor and toil, night and day, working in order not to put a burden on any one of you, we proclaimed to you the good news of Elohim.
10 You are witnesses and Elohim also, how holy and righteously and blamelessly we were to you, those believing;
11 even as you know each one of you, how as a father to his children, exhorting and consoling you,
12 testifying for you to walk worthily

[1] Speaking of the judgment of YHWH

of Elohim, the One calling you to His
kingdom and glory.
13 And because of this we give
thanks to YAHWEH without ceasing,
that having received the Word of
hearing from us, you welcomed it as of
Elohim, not as a word of men, but as it
is, truly the Word of Elohim, which
also works in you, the ones believing.
14 For, brothers, you became
imitators of the Congregations of
YAHWEH being in Judea in Messiah
Yahshua, because you also suffered
these things by your own fellow
countrymen, as they did also by the
Jews,
15 who both killed the Master
Yahshua and their own prophets, also
having driven us out, and not pleasing
Elohim, and being contrary to all men,
16 forbidding us from speaking to
the nations in order that they be saved,
adding this to their sins always. But
the wrath of Elohim is come on them
to the fullest.
17 But, brethren, we have been
deprived of your affection for a little
while, yet only in presence, and not in
heart, we were much more eager with
much love to see your faces.
18 Because of this, we desired to
come to you, truly I, Paul, both once
and twice; but Satan hindered us.
19 For what is our hope, or joy, or
crown of glorying? Is it not even you,
in the presence of our Master Yahshua
Messiah at His coming?
20 For you are our glory and joy.

Chapter 3

1 So, because we could no longer
stand these obstacles, we decided to
remain in Athens alone,
2 and sent Timothy, our brother and
minister of Elohim, and our fellow
worker in the good news of Messiah, in
order to establish you and to
encourage you concerning your faith,
3 that no one be drawn aside by
these afflictions. For you yourselves
know that we are appointed to this.
4 For even when we were with you,
we said to you before that we are about
to suffer tribulations, as it also
happened, even as you know.
5 Because of this, no longer
enduring, I also sent to know your
faith, that the tempting one not
somehow tempt you, and our labor
should come to be in vain.
6 But now Timothy coming to us
from you, and announcing good news
to us of your love and faith, and that
you have good remembrance of us
always, longing to see us, even as also
we long to see you.
7 Because of this we were comforted
over you, brothers, on all our affliction
and distress through your faith,
8 because now we can live happily, if
you should stand fast in our Master.
9 For what thanks are we able to
return to Elohim concerning you, over
all the joy with which we rejoice
because of you before our Elohim,
10 night and day praying exceedingly
for me to see your face, and to
complete the things lacking in your
faith?
11 But may our Elohim and Father
Himself, and our Master Yahshua
Messiah, direct our way to you.
12 And may the Master make you to
increase and to abound in love toward
one another and toward all, even as we
do also toward you,
13 in order to establish your hearts
blameless in holiness before our
Elohim and our Father at the coming
of our Master Yahshua Messiah with
all His saints.

Chapter 4

1 For the rest, then brothers, we beg
you and we exhort in our Master
Yahshua, even as you received from us
how you ought to walk and to please
Elohim, that you abound more.
2 For you know what commands we
gave you through the Master Yahshua.
3 For this is the will of Elohim, your
sanctification, for you to abstain from
fornication,
4 each one of you to know to possess
his vessel in sanctification and honor,
5 not in passion of lust, even as also
the nations do, not knowing Elohim;
6 not to go beyond and to overreach
his brother in the matter, because the
avenger concerning all these is
Elohim, even as we told you before,
and solemnly testified.
7 For YAHWEH did not call us to
uncleanness, but to holiness.[1]
8 Therefore, the one that does an
injustice does not wrong man, but
YAHWEH, even He giving His Holy
Spirit to us.
9 Now as to brotherly love, you have
no need for me to write to you, for
your own nature teaches you of
Elohim, to love one another.
10 For you also do it toward the
brothers in all Macedonia. But
brothers, we exhort you to increase
your love more and more.
11 And that ye strive to be quiet, and
to attend to your own affairs; and that
ye labor with your own hands; as we
commanded you;
12 that you may lead a life of good
example toward those outside, and
that you may have need of nothing.
13 But I want you to know, my
brethren, concerning those who sleep[2],
that you should not grieve, as the rest
do who have not hope[3].
14 For if we believe that Yahshua
died and rose again, even so Elohim
through Yahshua, will also bring with
Him all those who have fallen asleep[4].
15 For we say this to you in the Word
of Elohim, that we the living who
remain to the coming of our Master
will not at all go before those who have
fallen asleep.
16 Because the Master Himself shall
come down from Heaven with a
commanding shout of an archangel's
voice, and with the trumpet of
YAHWEH. And the dead in Messiah
will rise again first.
17 Then we who remain alive will be
caught up together with them in the
clouds to meet with our Master in the
air. And so we will always be with our
Master[5].
18 So, then, comfort each other with
these words.

Chapter 5

1 But concerning the times and the
seasons, brethren, you have no need
that I write to you.
2 For you yourselves know
accurately that the day of YAHWEH
comes as a thief in the night.
3 For when they say, Peace and
safety! Then suddenly destruction
comes upon them, like the travail to

1 Yahweh did not call us to continue in the filth of Satan’s society, but to be set apart to the holiness of Yahweh.

2 The dead in scripture are equated with being in an unconscious state of sleep.

3 The hope of the good news of Yahshua is the resurrection from the dead and eternal life in the Kingdom of YHWH.

4 All those who accepted the blood of Yahshua and entered covenant with Yahweh, who have died and are now sleeping in their graves will be resurrected at Yahshua's return and will meet Him in the air. Zech 14:5

5 Rev 20:4-6, 1 Cor 15:50-52, Math 24:29-31

the woman with child, and not at all
shall they escape.
4 But you, brethren,, are not in
darkness, that the Day should overtake
you as a thief.
5 You are all sons of light and sons of
day; we are not of night, nor of
darkness.
6 So then, we should not sleep, as
the rest also do, but we should watch
and be sober.
7 For those sleeping sleep by night,
and those having been drunk are
drunk by night.
8 But let us who are children of the
day be alert, putting on "the
breastplate of faith and love, and as a
helmet put on the hope of salvation;"
(Isa. 59:17)
9 because YAHWEH has not
appointed us to wrath[1], but for
obtaining of salvation through our
Master Yahshua Messiah,
10 He dying on our behalf, so that
whether we are awake or we sleep[2], we
may live together with Him.
11 Therefore, encourage one another,
and build up one another, as you
indeed do.
12 And we beseech you, my brethren,
that you respect those who labor
among you, and who admonish you in
our Master, and instruct you
13 even esteem them very highly in
love and be at peace with them
because of their work's sake.
14 And we beseech you, my
brethren, that you correct those that
offend, and encourage those who lack
courage, and bear the burdens of the
weak, and be patient towards all men.
15 See that not any one returns evil
for evil to anyone, but always pursue
the good, both towards one another
and towards all men.
16 Rejoice always.
17 Pray without ceasing.
18 In everything give thanks, for this
is the will of Elohim in Messiah
Yahshua toward you.
19 Do not quench the Spirit.
20 Do not despise prophecies.
21 Prove all things, hold fast that
which is good[3].
22 Keep back from every form of
evil.
23 And may the Elohim of peace
Himself fully sanctify you, and may
your whole spirit and life and body be
kept blameless at the coming of our
Master Yahshua Messiah.
24 Faithful is the One calling you,
who also will perform it.
25 Brothers, pray concerning us.
26 Greet all the brothers with a holy
kiss.
27 I charge you by our Master that
this epistle be read to all the holy
brethren.
28 The grace of our Master Yahshua
Messiah be with you. Amen.

---

1 Speaking of His wrath and the Lake of Fire
2 The dead are asleep in the grave not in heaven
3 Once something has been proven to be the truth the true believer must cling to these biblical truths. (Jac 1:8)

Book of 2 Thessalonians 51 or 52 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul and Silvanus and Timothy to the Congregation of the Thessalonians in Elohim the Father and our Master Yahshua Messiah:
2 Grace to you and peace from YAHWEH our Father and our Master Yahshua Messiah.
3 Brothers, we are bound to give thanks to Elohim always concerning you, even as it is right, because your faith grows exceedingly, and the love of each one of you multiplies toward one another,
4 so as for us to boast ourselves in you in the Congregations of YAHWEH for your patience and faith in all your persecutions, and the afflictions which you endure,
5 a clear token of the just judgment of Elohim, for you to be counted worthy of His kingdom, for which you indeed suffer;
6 since it is a just thing with YAHWEH to pay back tribulation to those oppressing you,
7 and to give you, those being oppressed, relief with us at the revelation of the Master Yahshua from Heaven with the host of His cherubs,
8 in flaming fire giving full vengeance to those not knowing Elohim, and to those not obeying the good news of our Master Yahshua Messiah, *(Isa. 66:15; Jer. 10:25)*
9 For these at the judgment day will be recompensed with eternal destruction, from the presence of our Master, and from the glory of his power; *(Isa. 2:19, Ecl 3:19-20)*
10 when He comes to be glorified by His saints, and to be admired in all those who believe in that Day, because our testimony to you was believed.[1]
11 For which we also continually pray concerning you, that our Elohim would deem you worthy of the calling, and would fulfill all your desires which are for goodness, and the works of faith with power,
12 so that the name of our Master Yahshua Messiah may be glorified in you, and you in Him, according to the grace of our Elohim and of our Master Yahshua Messiah.

Chapter 2

1 And, brothers, we entreat you, by the coming of our Master Yahshua Messiah, and of our gathering together to Him,
2 that you not let your mind be hastily excited or troubled, neither by word, nor by spirit, nor by prophecy of the spirit, nor by an epistle, supposedly coming from us, stating that the day of our Master is at hand.
3 Do not let anyone deceive you in any way, because that Day will not come unless first there comes a great rebellion[2], and the man of sin is revealed, the son of perdition,
4 the one opposing and exalting himself over everything being called Elohim, or object of reverence, so as for him "To sit in the sanctuary of Elohim" as an El, and sets himself forth, as if he is an Elohim. *(Dan. 11:36; Eze. 28:2)*
5 Do you not remember that I told you these things, when I was with you?
6 And now you know what has prevented him, for being revealed in his time.
7 For the mystery of lawlessness is already working, until He who is now the obstacle, is taken out of the way.
8 And then "the Lawless One" will be exposed, "whom our Master Yahshua

1 The wicked are not judged at their death but in the 2nd resurrection Rev 20:11-15.

2 Literally means a defection from truth

will consume by the spirit of His mouth," and will destroy by the brightness of His presence. *(Isa. 11:4)*
9 His coming is due to the working of Satan in all power and miraculous signs and lying wonders,
10 and in all deceit of unrighteousness in those who will perish, because they did not receive the love of the truth in order for them to be saved.
11 And because of this, Elohim will send to them a working of deception, for them to believe the lie,
12 that those not believing in the truth, but who have delighted in unrighteousness all may be damned.
13 But we ought to thank Elohim always concerning you, brothers, beloved by YAHWEH, because Elohim chose you from the beginning to salvation in sanctification of the Spirit and through a true faith,
14 to which He called you through our preaching, to be the glory of our Master Yahshua Messiah.
15 So, then, brothers, stand firm and strongly hold the commandments you were taught, whether by word or by our epistle.
16 But may our Master Himself, Yahshua Messiah, and our Elohim and Father, the One having loved us and having given everlasting comfort and good hope by grace,
17 encourage your hearts, and may He establish you in every good word and work.

Chapter 3

1 For the rest, brethren, pray concerning us, that the Word of our Master may run and be glorified, even as also it has with you,
2 and that we may be delivered from perverse and evil men. For faith is not in all men.
3 But YAHWEH is faithful who will establish and will guard you from the evil.
4 But we are persuaded in YAHWEH as to you, that whatever things we have commanded you, you both are doing and you will continue to do.
5 And the Master direct your hearts into the love of YAHWEH and into the patience of Messiah.
6 And we command you, brothers, in the name of our Master Yahshua Messiah, to shun every brother which leads an evil life, and not according to the doctrines which you received from us. *(1 Cor 15:33)*[1]
7 For ye know how ye ought to imitate us, for our behavior was not disorderly among you.
8 nor did we eat bread from anyone for nothing, but by labor and toil, working night and day in order not to burden anyone of you.
9 Not that we do not have the authority, but that we gave ourselves as an example to you, for you to act like us.
10 For even when we were with you, we commanded this to you: If anyone is not willing to work, neither let him eat.
11 For we hear some are walking among you and lead an evil life, not working at all, but being busybodies.
12 Now such persons, we command and exhort, by our Master Yahshua the Messiah, that in quietness they work, and eat their own bread.
13 And you, brethren, do not lose heart in well doing.
14 But if anyone does not obey our Word through this epistle, mark that one, and do not associate with him, that he be shamed.

---
1 Believers should shun false brethren bringing false doctrine.

15 But do not count him as an
enemy, but warn him as a brother.
16 And may the Master of peace
Himself continually give peace to you
in every way. Our Master be with all of
you.
17 The salutation in the writing of
my own hand, I Paul have written it;
and it is the seal in all my epistles, this
is the way I write.
18 The grace of our Master Yahshua
Messiah be with you all. Amen.

Book of 1 Timothy 63-64 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul an apostle of Yahshua Messiah according to a commandment of Elohim our Savior, and the Master Yahshua Messiah, our Hope,
2 to Timothy, a true child in the faith: Grace, mercy, peace from YAHWEH our Father and our Master Yahshua Messiah.
3 Even as I called on you to remain in Ephesus, as I was going to Macedonia, that you might charge some not to teach different doctrines[1],
4 nor to give heed to fables and stories of endless genealogies, which cause disputes, rather than build up the faith of Elohim,
5 but the fulfillment of the commandment is love out of a pure heart and a good conscience, and a true faith,
6 from which some have gone astray, and have turned aside to foolish talking,
7 wishing to be teachers of the Torah, neither understanding what they say, nor about that which they confidently affirm.
8 And we know that the Torah is good, if anyone uses it lawfully,
9 knowing this, that the Torah is not laid down for a righteous one, but for lawless and rebellious ones, for unrighteous and sinful ones, for unholy and profane ones, for slayers of fathers and slayers of mothers, for murderers,
10 for fornicators, for homosexuals, for kidnappers of free people, for liars, for perjurers, and if any other thing opposes sound doctrine, *(Lev 18:22)*
11 according to the good news of the glory of the blessed Elohim with which I was entrusted.
12 And I have thanks to Him giving me strength, our Master Yahshua Messiah, because He counted me faithful, putting me into the ministry,
13 the one who before was a blasphemer, and a persecutor, and insolent; but I received mercy, because being ignorant I did it in unbelief.[2]
14 But the grace of our Master abounded exceedingly with faith and love in Messiah Yahshua.
15 It is a trustworthy saying and worthy of all acceptance, that Messiah Yahshua came into the world to save sinners, of whom I am chief.
16 But for this reason I received mercy, that in me first Yahshua Messiah might show forth all patience, for an example to those being about to believe on Him to everlasting life.
17 Now to the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only Elohim, be honor and glory forever and ever. Amen.
18 This charge I commit to you, my child Timothy, according to the prophecies going before concerning you, that you might war the good warfare by them,
19 having faith and a good conscience, those who have rejected this charge have lost their faith,
20 of whom are Hymenaeus and Alexander, whom I delivered to Satan to be disciplined that they no longer blaspheme.

Chapter 2

1 First of all then, I exhort that petitions, prayers, supplications, and thanksgivings be made to Elohim on behalf of all men,

---

[1] The doctrines of the congregation were set down by Yahshua and then extended to the congregation by the Apostles and ordained elders down through the ages.

[2] There is greater accountability to YHWH once He opens one's mind to the truth. Acts 17:30, Luk 12:47-48, Heb 10:26

2 for kings and all the ones being in high position, that we may lead a tranquil and quiet existence in all purity and holiness.
3 For this is good and acceptable before Elohim our Savior,
4 who desires all men to be saved and to come to a full knowledge of truth[1].
5 For YAHWEH is one[2], also there is one Mediator of Elohim and of men, the Man Messiah Yahshua,
6 the One having given Himself a ransom on behalf of all, the testimony to be given in its own time,
7 to which I was appointed a herald and apostle (I speak the truth in Messiah, I do not lie), a teacher of the nations, in faith and truth.
8 Therefore, I desire the men to pray in every place, lifting up holy hands[3] without anger and doubting thoughts.
9 So also the women to adorn themselves in proper clothing, with modesty and sensibleness, not with plaiting, or gold, or pearls, or expensive garments,
10 but what becomes women professing fear of Elohim, through good works.
11 Let a woman learn in silence, in all subjection.
12 And I do not allow a woman to debate publicly nor to usurp the authority of a man, but to be in silence.
13 For Adam was formed first, then Eve.[4]
14 And Adam was not deceived, but the woman being deceived has come to be in transgression; *(Gen 3:1-6)*
15 Yet she shall live by means of her children, if they continue in the faith, and in love, and in holiness, and in chastity[5].

Chapter 3

1 Faithful is the Word: If anyone desires the office of an Elder, he desires a good work[6].
2 He who becomes an Elder must be blameless, the husband of one wife[7], alert mentally, sensible, of good behavior, hospitable, and able to teach;
3 not a drunkard, or one whose hand is quick to strike, but humble, not contentious, not loving money[8];
4 ruling his own house well, having children in subjection with all purity.
5 But if anyone does not know how to rule his own house, how will he care for a Congregation of Elohim?
6 He should not be a new disciple,

---

1 This is the desire of YHWH, but each human being has free will and must decide for themselves and accept the wonderful gift of Salvation that YHWH is offering.

2 The word one is "*echad*" and can mean unified, Gen 2:24.

3 The mandate given here is that only men not women are to pray publicly over the congregation and that the men should be lifting up their hands to heaven when praying to receive the blessing that YHWH has (1 Kgs 8:22).

4 According to Yahweh's judicial order women are not to take the position of authority that is set for a man and are not to be teachers in the assemblies over men. 1 Cor 14:34-35

5 The woman has the blessing of raising up Elohim guided children and then, seeing the fruit of her labor as they grow and have their own families later.

6 The letters of first and second Timothy are often referred to as Paul's pastoral epistles as he lays the foundation for the leadership in the congregation.

7 Someone who is divorced and remarried and has 2 living spouses would not be eligible for ordination.

8 A true elder of YHWH should not be marketing the good news of Yahshua or be money driven.

lest being puffed up he may fall into the condemnation of the devil.
7 But he must also have a good witness from those outside, that he not fall into reproach and into a snare of the devil.
8 Likewise, deacons[1] are to be pure, not double-tongued, not addicted to much wine, not greedy of ill gain,
9 having the mystery of the faith with a pure conscience.
10 And also let these be tested first[2], then let them serve, being without reproach.
11 Likewise, their wives[3] are to be chaste, not slanderers, temperate, faithful in all things.
12 Let deacons be husbands of one wife, ruling their own houses and children well.
13 For those having served well gain a good grade for themselves and much boldness in faith, those in Messiah Yahshua.
14 I write these things to you, hoping to come to you shortly.
15 But if I delay, that you may know how to behave in the house of Elohim[4], which is the Congregation of the living Elohim, the pillar and foundation of the truth.
16 Truly, great is the divine mystery of righteousness: which was revealed in the flesh, was justified in the Spirit, was seen by cherubs, was proclaimed among nations, was believed on in the world, was taken up in glory.

Chapter 4

1 But the Spirit expressly says that in latter times some will depart from the faith, following deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons,
2 who with false appearance mislead and will speak lies in hypocrisy, being seared in their own conscience,
3 forbidding to marry, saying to abstain from foods, which Elohim created for partaking with thanksgiving by the believers and those knowing the truth[5].
4 Because all things created by Elohim are good, and nothing is to be rejected, if it is received with thanksgiving;
5 for it is sanctified through the Word of Elohim[6] and prayer.
6 Having suggested these things to the brethren, you will be a good minister of Yahshua Messiah, having been nourished by the Words of faith, and by the good doctrine which you have followed.
7 But refuse foolish and old-wives tales. And exercise yourself to righteousness.

---

1 Deacons had primarily the same requirements for the office of an elder, but their job was primarily serving, whereas the elders' job was more shepherding. A deacon did not have the authority for the laying on of hands (Acts 8:12-19).

2 The elder and the deacon both had to prove themselves and mature in the faith before ordination would be considered. Ordination was not with the hope that someone would fulfill a particular job, but was a recognition of someone who was already fulfilling the job of an elder or deacon.

3 Although women are not ordained, since the wife is "*one*" with her husband, in order to receive recognition for ordination a man's wife also had to have righteous character for him to be considered. (Pr 31:23)

4 Yahweh gives His ordained elders the authority to administer His judicial order in the congregation.

5 There are churches today who require a celibate priesthood and also other religions who make food such as eating meat a doctrine in their congregation. Paul is warning against these false unbiblical teachings.

6 Paul is speaking about clean kosher foods laid out in Leviticus the 11th chapter. Pork and other unclean meats are **NOT** sanctified by the word of YHWH.

8 For bodily exercise is profitable to a little, but righteousness is profitable to all things, having promise of the present life now, and of that coming.
9 This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance;
10 for to this we also labor and are reproached, because we hope on the living Elohim, who is Savior of all men, especially of believers.
11 these things command and teach.
12 Let no one despise your youth, but become an example of the believers in word, in conduct, in love, in spirit, in faith, in purity.
13 Until I come, be diligent in reading, and in prayer, and in teaching.
14 Do not neglect the gift in you, which was given to you through prophecy, with laying on of the hands of the Elderhood[1].
15 Meditate upon these things; give yourself wholly to them, that it may be plain in all that you are progressing.
16 Give attention to yourself and to your doctrine; and be firm in them, for doing this, you will both deliver yourself and those hearing you[2].

Chapter 5

1 Do not rebuke an elder[3], but treat him as a father; and the younger men as your brothers,
2 and the older women treat as mothers, and the younger as sisters, in all purity.
3 Honor widows, the ones being true widows.
4 But if a widow hath children, or grandchildren, let them first know that aid should be sought from those of their own households, so that the children have opportunity to repay the obligations to their parents; for this is acceptable before Elohim.
5 Now she who is truly a widow, and destitute, her hope is in Elohim; and she perseveres in prayers, and in supplications, by night and by day:
6 But she who lives wholly for pleasure has died while living.
7 Continually charge them with these things that they may be blameless.
8 But if anyone does not provide for his own, and especially his family who are of the faith, he has denied the faith and is worse than an unbeliever.
9 When you select a worthy widow to help, select one who is not less than sixty years old, who has been the wife of only one man[4],
10 and is well spoken of by her good works, if she brought up children, if she hosted strangers, if she washed the feet of the saints, if she comforted the distressed, if she followed after every good work.
11 But refuse younger widows; for whenever they grow lustful against Messiah, they desire to marry,
12 having guilt because they set aside the first faith;
13 and with it all, they also learn to be idle, going around the houses, and not only idle, but also gossips and busybodies, speaking the things not proper.
14 Therefore, I desire the young women to marry, to bear children, to manage their own house, giving no

---

1 One becomes an elder through ordination of another elder with the laying on of hands (Acts 6:1-6 Deut 34:9)

2 Doctrine in the true congregation of Yahshua is extremely important and must be held firm by true elders of YHWH.

3 As in English an elder can be an ordained office or a title for an older person who is not ordained, but given respect for his age.

4 Even a widow asking for relief help must have adhered to the sanctity of the marriage covenant.

occasion to the adversary on account of reproach.

15 For some already have turned aside after Satan.

16 If any believing man or believing woman has widows in their families, let them feed them, and do not let them be a burden on the Congregation, so that the congregation may have enough for those truly being widows.

17 Let the Elders who minister well be counted worthy of double pay, especially those laboring in the Word and doctrine[1].

18 For the Scripture says, "You shall not muzzle an ox treading out grain," and, the laborer is worthy of his pay. *(Deut. 25:4)*

19 Do not receive an accusation against an Elder[2] unless on "The testimony of two or three witnesses." *(Deut. 19:15)*

20 Those who sin rebuke in the presence of all men, that the rest also may fear.

21 I adjure you before Elohim and the Master Yahshua Messiah and the elect cherubs, that you should observe these things without prejudice, doing nothing by way of partiality.

22 Do not lay hands on any one hastily[3], nor share in the sins of others. Keep yourself pure.

23 Do not drink water in excess, but use a little wine on account of your stomach and your frequent illnesses.[4]

24 There are men, whose sins are well known, and go before them to the place of judgment; and there are some, whose sins follow after them.

25 Likewise, also the good works of some are plain beforehand, and those otherwise cannot be hidden.

Chapter 6

1 Let as many as are slaves under a yoke count their own masters worthy of all honor, so that the name of YAHWEH and His doctrines may not be blasphemed.

2 And those having believing masters, let them not despise them, because they are brothers, but rather let them serve them more zealously, because they are believing and beloved ones, those receiving of the good service in return. Teach and exhort these things.

3 If anyone teaches differently, and does not consent to sound words, those of our Master Yahshua Messiah and to the doctrine of the fear of Elohim,

4 he is proud understanding nothing, but harps upon the use of a word concerning doubts and arguments, and this is the cause of envy and controversy, evil-speaking, evil suspicions, *(Tit 1:14-16)*

5 meddling, of men whose mind has been corrupted and deprived of the truth, who think that worshiping of Elohim is for worldly gain. Keep away from such people.

6 But our gain is greater contentment, for it is the worship of Elohim.

7 For we have brought nothing into the world, and it is plain that neither can we carry anything out.

---

1 It is the right of an elder working full time in the work of YHWH to be able to receive tithes for his living substance. Paul waived this right not to put a stumbling block before some of the believers.

2 Speaking of an ordained Elder

3 Ordination should only occur when someone has already been fulfilling the role of an elder or deacon for sometime in the congregation and is recognized as doing such.

4 In ancient times wine was mixed with the water to kill bacteria and helped against stomach problems.

8 But having food and clothing, let us be satisfied with these[1].

9 But those purposing to be rich fall into temptation, and a snare, and many foolish and hurtful lusts, which plunge men into ruin and destruction.

10 For the love of money[2] is a root of all evils, by means of which some having lusted after it were seduced from the faith, and they themselves pierced through by many pains.

11 But you, O man of Elohim, flee these things and pursue righteousness, holiness, faith, love, patience, and meekness.

12 Fight the good fight of faith. Lay hold on eternal life, to which you were also called and confessed the good confession before many witnesses.

13 I charge you before YAHWEH, He making all things alive, and Messiah Yahshua, the One witnessing the good confession to Pontius Pilate,

14 that you keep the commandment spotless, blameless, until the appearing of our Master Yahshua Messiah,

15 who in His own time will reveal the blessed and almighty Elohim, the King of kings and Master of Masters,

16 the only One having immortality[3], living in light that cannot be approached, whom no man has seen, nor can see; to whom be honor and everlasting dominion. Amen.

17 Charge the rich in the present age not to be proud, nor to set hope on the uncertainty of riches, but in the living Elohim, who gives us all things so abundantly for our comfort;

18 that they do good works, and become rich in good deeds, ready to give, and willing to share,

19 treasuring away for themselves a good foundation for the coming age, that they may lay hold on everlasting life.

20 O Timothy, be careful of that which is committed to thee; and shun vain words, and the perversion of false science:

21 for those professing this have missed the mark concerning the faith. Grace be with you. Amen.

---

1 It is noteworthy that shelter is not even included here.

2 It is not money that is the root of all evil, but "*the love of money,*" which ultimately will lead to greed and dishonestly and selfish ambitions.

3 Currently, only Yahshua has immortality. The true first fruit believer who has been baptized in His name has eternal life, but he can lose that eternal life if he turns back from the truth (Heb 10:26-32, Heb 6:4-6). However, when Yahshua returns to the ones overcoming and enduring til the end He will give immortality (1Cor 15:50-54).

Book of 2 Timothy 66 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul an apostle of Yahshua Messiah by the will of Elohim according to the promise of life which is in Messiah Yahshua,
2 to my dear beloved son Timothy: Grace, mercy, peace from YAHWEH the Father and Yahshua Messiah our Master.
3 I thank YAHWEH, whom I serve from my boyhood with a pure conscience, that I continually remember thee in my prayers, by night and by day:
4 longing to see you, being reminded of your tears, that I may be filled with joy,
5 especially when I am reminded of your true faith, which first dwelt in your grandmother Lois and in your mother Eunice, and I am now sure that it is also in you.
6 For this reason I remind you to stir up the gift of Elohim which is in you through the laying on of my hands[1].
7 For YAHWEH did not give a spirit of cowardice to us, but of power and of love and of good discipline.
8 Then do not be ashamed of the testimony of our Master, nor of me, His prisoner. But suffer hardship with the good news, according to the power of Elohim,
9 the One having saved us and having called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to His own purpose and grace given to us in Messiah Yahshua before the world began,
10 but now revealed through the appearance of our Savior, Yahshua Messiah, indeed making death of no effect, bringing life and immortality to light through the good news,
11 for which I was appointed a preacher and apostle and a teacher of nations.
12 For which cause I also suffer these things. But I am not ashamed, for I know whom I have believed, and I am persuaded that He is able to guard my deposit until that Day.
13 Let this example of sound words which you heard from me abide in you, in faith and love in Messiah Yahshua.
14 Guard the good Deposit given through the Holy Spirit indwelling in us.
15 You know this, that all those in Asia turned away from me, of whom are Phygellus and Hermogenes.
16 May the Master give mercy to the house of Onesiphorus, because he often refreshed me, and he was not ashamed of my chain,
17 but having come to Rome, he more diligently sought and found me.
18 May our Master give to him to find mercy from Elohim in that Day. And in what things he served in Ephesus, you know very well.

Chapter 2

1 Then my child, you be empowered by grace in Messiah Yahshua.
2 And what things you heard from me through many witnesses, commit these things to faithful men, such as will be competent also to teach others.
3 Then you suffer hardship as a good soldier of Yahshua Messiah.
4 No one serving as a soldier entangles himself with the affairs of this life, so that he might please the one having enlisted him.
5 And also if anyone competes, he is not crowned unless he competes lawfully.

---
[1] Timothy was ordained by Paul.

6 It is right for the husbandman who labors to partake first of the fruits.[1]

7 Consider what I say, for the Almighty will give you understanding in all things.

8 Remember Yahshua Messiah, having been raised from the dead, of the seed of David, according to my good news,

9 in which I suffer ill as an evildoer, unto bonds; but the Word of Elohim has not been bound.

10 Because of this, I endure all things on account of the elect, that they also may obtain salvation in Messiah Yahshua, with everlasting glory.

11 This is a true saying: for if we died with Him, we also shall live with Him;

12 if we endure, we shall also reign with Him; if we deny Him, that One will deny us;

13 if we believe not in Him, that One remains faithful; He is not able to deny Himself.

14 You should keep these things in remembrance as a testimony before our Master that the faithful should not argue over words in which there is no profit, but which are destruction to those who listen to them.

15 And study to present yourself approved to Elohim, a workman unashamed, rightly dividing the Word of Truth.

16 But shun profane, empty babblings, for they will go on to more unrighteousness,

17 and their word will eat like a canker, of whom are Hymenaeus and Philetus,

18 who missed the mark concerning the truth, saying the resurrection already has come, and overturn the faith of some.

19 However, the foundation of Elohim stands firm, having this seal, YAHWEH knew the ones being His; also, Let everyone who calls on the name of Yahweh depart from unrighteousness. *(Num. 16:5,7)*

20 But in a great house not only are there vessels of gold and silver, but also of wood and of earth, and some to honor and some to dishonor.

21 Then if anyone purifies himself from these, he will be a vessel to honor, having been sanctified and made useful to the Master, having been prepared to every good work.

22 But flee youthful lusts and pursue righteousness, faith, love, peace, with the ones calling on our Master out of a pure heart.

23 Keep away from foolish disputes which do not educate, knowing that they generate quarrels.

24 But a servant of Elohim ought not to quarrel, but to be gentle towards all, apt at teaching, patient,

25 so that he may discipline gently those who argue against him, if perhaps Elohim may give them repentance for them to know the truth,

26 and come to themselves and be saved from the trap of Satan by whom they have been drawn to his will.

Chapter 3

1 But know this, that in the last days disastrous times will be upon us.

2 For men will be lovers of themselves, lovers of money, braggarts, arrogant, blasphemers, disobedient to parents, ungrateful, wicked,

3 without natural feeling, addicted to lust, slanderers, without self-control[2], savage, haters of good,

---

[1] The breadwinner eats first (fathers), then the bread makers (mothers), and then the bread eaters (children).

[2] Without self-control- Literally '*unrestrained*''.

4 traitors, hasty, boasters, lovers of
pleasure rather than lovers of Elohim[1],
5 having a form of righteousness, but
denying the power of it; even turn
away from these[2].
6 For of these are those creeping into
houses and leading silly women
captive, the ones having been heaped
with sins, being led away by various
lusts,
7 always striving to learn, but never
being able to come to a full knowledge
of the truth[3].
8 Now as Jannes and Jambres stood
up against Moses, so do these also
withstand the truth: men of corrupt
minds and far off from the faith.
9 But they will not go further, for
their foolishness will be well known to
every man, even as that of the others
was also.
10 But you have closely followed my
doctrine, the conduct, the purpose, the
faith, the long-suffering, the love, the
patient endurance,
11 the persecutions, the sufferings,
such as happened to me in Antioch, in
Iconium, in Lystra, how I was
persecuted. And my Master delivered
me out of all.
12 Likewise, all those desiring to live
a righteous life in Messiah Yahshua
will be persecuted.
13 But evil men and pretenders will
grow worse and worse, leading astray
and being led astray[4].
14 But you keep on in what you
learned and were assured of, knowing
from whom you learned,
15 and that you have learned from
your childhood, the Holy Scriptures,
which are able to make you wise to
salvation through belief in Messiah
Yahshua.
16 All Scripture is written by
inspiration of the Holy Spirit and is
profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for
correction, for instruction in
righteousness,
17 so that the man of Elohim may be
perfected, and complete for every good
work.

Chapter 4

1 I solemnly charge you before
YAHWEH and the Master Yahshua
Messiah, He being about to judge the
living and the dead at His appearance
and His kingdom:
2 Preach the Word! Stand by it in
season and out of season. Convict,
warn, encourage with all patience and
teaching.
3 For a time will be when they will
not endure sound doctrine, but
according to their own lusts, they will
add to themselves extra teachers
according to their own desires;
4 and they will turn away their ears
from the truth and will be turned aside
to fables[5].
5 But you be clear-minded in all,
suffer hardship, do the work of an
evangelist, and fulfill your ministry.
6 For I am ready to be sacrificed, and
the time of my departure is at hand.
7 I have fought the good fight. I have
finished the course. I have kept the
faith.
8 For the rest, the crown of
righteousness is laid up for me, which
our Master, the righteous Judge, will

[1] There are 18 wicked characteristics showing how evil people will be in the end times.

[2] It is frightening to think that these characteristics are defining people who are supposed to be brethren.

[3] How true is this today in the Internet laden spiritually empty arena of such people.

[4] The key to this is that these false teachers have not been ordained by YHWH and have no authority for the heresies that they purport.

[5] Paul is speaking of the end time Laodicean era that is now present.

give to me in that Day, and not only to
me, but also to all those who love His
appearance.
9 Make every effort to come to me
soon.
10 For Demas deserted me, having
loved this world, and he went to
Thessalonica. Crescens went to
Galatia, Titus to Dalmatia.
11 Only Luke is with me. Take Mark[1],
and bring him with you, for he is
useful to me for ministry.
12 But I sent Tychicus to Ephesus.
13 When you come, bring the book
carrier which I left in Troas with
Carpus, and the books, especially the
parchments[2].
14 Alexander the copper-smith
showed many evil things to me.
Elohim "will give back to him
according to his works." *(Psa. 62:12)*
15 You also be on guard against him,
for he greatly withstood our words.
16 In my first defense no one was
beside me, but all deserted me. May it
not be held against them.
17 But the Almighty stood with me
and gave me power, that through me
the preaching might be fulfilled, and
all the nations might hear. And I was
delivered out of the mouth of the lion.
18 And Elohim will deliver me from
every wicked work and will save me for
His heavenly kingdom; to whom be
the glory forever and ever. Amen.
19 Greet Prisca and Aquila and the
house of Onesiphorus.
20 Erastus remained in Corinth, but
I left Trophimus sick in Miletus.
21 Make every effort to come before
winter. Eubulus greets you, and
Pudens, and Linus, and Claudia, and
all the brothers.
22 The Master Yahshua Messiah be
with your spirit. Grace be with you.
Amen.

---

1 Apparently Paul was reconciled to John Mark, who had deserted him on the first missionary journey. (Acts 15:37-39)

2 These were most likely the New Testament parchments. Since Paul now realized that his time was short until death he apparently saw the need to assemble all the New Testament for distribution first.

Book of Titus 64 or 65 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, a servant of Elohim and an apostle of Yahshua Messiah according to the faith of the elect of Elohim and full knowledge of the truth according to holiness,
2 in the hope of eternal life which the Elohim who does not lie promised before the eternal times,
3 but revealed in its own times in a proclamation of His Word, with which I was entrusted by the command of Elohim our Savior;
4 to Titus, a true son according to our common faith: Grace, mercy, peace from YAHWEH the Father and our Master Yahshua Messiah our Savior.
5 For this cause I left you in Crete, that you might set in order the things lacking and ordain elders in every city, as I ordered you[1]:
6 Appoint only an Elder[2] who is blameless, husband of one wife, having faithful children, not in accusation of loose behavior, or disobedient,
7 for the overseer must be blameless as a steward of Elohim, not self-willed, nor prone to anger, not excessive in the use of wine, not quick to strike with his fist, not greedy of ill gain;
8 but hospitable, a lover of good, discreet, just, holy, temperate,
9 Holding fast the doctrine of faith, that he may be able both to encourage by sound doctrine and to convict those who are proud.
10 For there are indeed many insubordinate men, empty talkers and deceivers of the people, especially those of the circumcision,
11 whose mouth you must stop, who overturn whole houses, teaching things which they ought not for the sake of ill gain.
12 One of them, a prophet of their own, said: Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy gluttons.
13 This testimony is true; for which cause rebuke them severely, that they may be sound in the faith,
14 not listening to Jewish fables and commandments of men, having turned away from the truth.
15 Truly, all things are pure to the pure, but nothing is pure to those being defiled and faithless, but even their mind and conscience has been defiled. *(Ps 18:25-26)*
16 They profess to know Elohim, but by their works they deny Him, and they are abominable and disobedient, condemning every kind of good work.

Chapter 2

1 But you speak things which become sound doctrine:
2 teach the older men to be temperate, sensible, pure, sound in faith, in love, in patience;
3 teach the older women likewise to behave as becomes the worship of Elohim, not false accusers, not being enslaved by much wine, but to become teachers of good things,
4 that they might train the young women to be modest, to love their husbands, and their children,
5 to be discreet, chaste, good homemakers, good, obedient to their own husbands[3], so that the Word of Elohim may not be blasphemed,
6 Likewise exhort the children to be modest;
7 holding forth yourself as a pattern of good works about all things in

[1] To keep judicial order in the congregation Paul had Titus go and ordain elders in each city where there were congregations.
[2] See notes on 1 Tim 3

[3] Biblical women cared for the home and their husbands and children.

doctrine, in purity, sensibleness, incorruption,
8 Choose sound words that are instructive, so that no man can point the finger of scorn at us, that he of opposition may he ashamed, having nothing bad to say about you.
9 Let slaves be subject to their own masters, well-pleasing in all things, not speaking against them,
10 not stealing, but showing all good faith, that they may adorn the doctrine of Elohim our Savior in all things.
11 For the saving grace of Elohim has appeared to all men,
12 instructing us that having denied unrighteousness and worldly lusts, we should live discreetly and righteously and holy in the present age,
13 looking for the blessed hope and appearance of the glory of our great Elohim and Savior Yahshua Messiah[1],
14 who gave Himself on our behalf, "That He might redeem us from all lawlessness[2] and purify a special people for Himself, zealous of good works." *(Psa. 130:8; Eze. 37:23; Deut. 14:2)*
15 These things speak and exhort and rebuke with all authority. Let no one despise you.

Chapter 3

1 Remind them to be obedient and submissive to rulers and authorities, to be ready in every good work,
2 to speak evil of no one, not quarrelsome, but forbearing, having displayed all meekness to all men.
3 For we also once were senseless, disobedient, being led astray, slaving for various lusts and pleasures, living in malice and envy, hated, and hating one another.
4 But when the kindness and love of Elohim our Savior toward man appeared,
5 not by works in righteousness which we had done, but according to His mercy, He saved us through the washing of regeneration and renewing of the Holy Spirit,
6 whom He poured out on us abundantly through Yahshua Messiah, our Savior;
7 that being justified by His grace, we should become heirs according to the hope of eternal life.
8 Faithful is the Word, and concerning these things I desire you strongly to affirm that the ones believing Elohim should take thought to maintain good works. These things are good and profitable to men.
9 But avoid foolish questionings and genealogies and contentions and theological arguments of the scribes, for they are unprofitable and vain.
10 After the first and second warning, avoid a man of heresy
11 knowing that he who has been such is corrupt; he sins and condemns himself.
12 When I shall send Artemas to you or Tychicus, hasten to come to me at Nicopolis. For I have decided to winter there.
13 See that Zenas the scribe and Apollos, are given a good farewell on their journey that they lack nothing.
14 And let our people be taught to do good works in times of emergency, that they may not be unfruitful.
15 All those with me greet you. Greet those who love us in the faith. Grace be with you all. Amen.

---

1 Clearly showing Yahshua's deity as being Elohim.

2 Yahshua redeemed believers from "*lawlessness*", not "*law.*"

Book of Philemon 61 AD

Chapter 1

1 Paul, a prisoner of Messiah Yahshua, and Timothy the brother, to Philemon the beloved and our fellow-worker,
2 and to Apphia the beloved, and to Archippus our fellow-soldier, and to the congregation in your house:
3 Grace to you and peace from YAHWEH our Father and our Master Yahshua Messiah.
4 I thank my Elohim always making mention of you in my prayers,
5 hearing of your love and faith which you have toward our Master Yahshua, and toward all the saints,
6 so that the fellowship of your faith may operate in a full knowledge of every good thing in you for Yahshua Messiah.
7 For we have much joy and encouragement over your love, in that the hearts of the saints have been refreshed through you, brother.
8 Because of this, I have much boldness in Messiah to command you to do what is right,
9 rather for the sake of love I earnestly beseech you, even I, Paul, an old man as you know, and now also a prisoner for the sake of Yahshua Messiah;
10 I beseech you concerning my child Onesimus, whom I fathered in my bonds,
11 the one once worthless to you, but now useful to you and to me; whom I sent back to you.
12 welcome him as my own child;
13 For I was desirous to keep him with me, that he might minister to me in your place, during my imprisonment for the good news.
14 But I would do nothing without consulting you, that your good deeds may not be done by compulsion, but by your own desire[1].
15 Perhaps this is the reason he left you for a while, that you might receive him forever;
16 no longer as a slave, but beyond a slave, a beloved brother, especially to me, and how much more to you, both in the flesh and in our Master.
17 Now therefore if you still count me as a partner, receive him as you would me.
18 And if he caused you any loss, or owes you anything, put it on my account.
19 I, Paul, have written it with my own hand, I will repay: not reminding you that you owe to me even your own life.
20Yes, brother, let me have comfort through you in our Master, refresh my heart in Messiah.
21 Because I have confidence in your obedience, I wrote to you, knowing that you will also do more than I ask.
22 In addition to all this prepare a lodging for me; for I hope that through your prayers I shall be spared to come to you.
23Epaphras, my fellow-prisoner in Messiah Yahshua, greets you,
24 also my fellow-workers Mark, Aristarchus, Demas, and Luke.
25 The grace of our Master Yahshua Messiah be with your spirit. Amen.

[1] What a beautiful example of Yahweh's judicial order, which is always voluntary and reciprocal.

Book of Revelation 90's AD

Chapter 1

1 A Revelation of Yahshua Messiah[1],
which Elohim gave to Him to show to
His slaves things which must shortly
come to pass. And He signified by
sending through His cherub to His
slave, John,
2 who testified of the Word of
Elohim and the witness of Yahshua
Messiah, even as many things as he
saw.
3 Blessed is the one reading, and
those hearing the words of this
prophecy, and keeping the things
having been written; for the time is
near.
4 John to the seven congregations in
Asia: Grace to you, and peace, from
the One who is, and who was, and who
is coming, and from the seven spirits
which are before His throne;
5 even from Yahshua Messiah the
Faithful Witness, the First-born out of
the dead, and the Ruler of the kings of
the earth. To Him loving us and
washing us from our sins by His blood,
6 and made us kings and priests to
YAHWEH, even His Father. To Him
is the glory and the might forever and
ever. Amen. *(Rev 5:10)*
7 "Behold, He comes with the clouds,
and every eye will see Him, and the
ones who pierced" Him, and all the
tribes of the earth "will wail on
account of Him." Yes, Amen. *(Dan.
7:13; Zech. 12:10, Math 24:30)*
8 I am the Aleph and the Tav, the
Beginning and the Ending, says
Adonai YAHWEH, the One who is,
and who was, and who is coming, the
Almighty. *(Rev 21;6, 22:11, Is 44:6)*
9 I, even your brother John, and co-
sharer in the affliction, and in the
kingdom and patience of Yahshua
Messiah, came to be in the island
being called Patmos because of the
Word of Elohim, and because of the
witness of Yahshua Messiah.
10 I came to be in the Spirit on the
day of YAHWEH,[2] and I heard behind
me a great voice, as of a trumpet,
11 saying, What you see, write in a
scroll, and send to the seven
congregations of Asia: to Ephesus, and
to Smyrna, and to Pergamos, and to
Thyatira, and to Sardis, and to
Philadelphia, and to Laodicea.
12 And I turned to see the voice
which spoke with me.
13 And having turned, I saw seven
golden menorahs, and in the midst of
the seven menorahs One like the Son
of Man, wearing a garment down to
the feet, and having His breasts girded
with a golden girdle[3].*(Ex 20:26,)*
14 And the hairs of His head were
white as white wool, as snow, and His
eyes as a flame of fire;
15 and His feet like burnished brass
having been fired in a furnace; and His
voice as a sound of many waters; *(Dan
10:5-6)*
16 and having in His right hand
seven stars; and a sharp, two-edged
sword proceeding out of His mouth,
and His face shining as the sun in all
its power. *(Rev 1:20)*
17 And when I saw Him, I fell at His
feet, as dead. And He put His right
hand on me, saying to me, Do not fear.
I am the First and the Last,
18 and the Living One; and I became
dead; and, behold, I am living forever
and ever. Amen. And I have the keys of
the grave, and of death.[4] (*1Cor 15:51-
57)*

---

[1] Revelation is a book of prophecies for the end time. It is the Revelation of Yahshua, not John. John is simply the messenger who transcribed the book from a cherub.

[2] This is not a particular day of the week, but the time period of the wrath of YHWH on the earth, (Joel 2:1-11).

[3] This shows Yahweh's standard of modesty. Ex 20:26, Gen 37:3

19 Write what things you saw, and what things are, and what things are about to occur after these things.

20 The mystery of the seven stars which you saw on My right, and the seven golden menorahs: the seven stars are the messengers of the seven congregations, and the seven menorahs you saw are the seven congregations.[1]

Chapter 2

1 To the messenger of the congregation of Ephesus, write: These things says He who holds all things, and the seven stars in His right hand, He walking in the midst of the seven golden menorahs:

2 I know your works, and your labor, and your patience, and that you cannot bear evil ones; and you tried those pretending to be apostles and are not, and found them to be liars.

3 And you have patience and have borne burdens on account of My name and have not wearied.

4 Nevertheless, I have something against you, because you left your first love.

5 Then remember from where you have fallen, and repent, and do the first works. And if not, I am coming to you quickly, and will remove your menorah from its place, unless you repent.

6 But you have this, that you hate the works of the Nicolaitans[2], which I also hate.

7 The one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit says to the congregations. To the one overcoming, I will give to him to eat of the Tree of Life which is in the midst of the Paradise of Elohim.

8 And to the messenger of the congregation of Smyrna[3], write: These things says the First and the Last, Who became dead, and is alive:

9 I know your works, and the affliction, and the poverty; but you are rich. And I know the evil speaking of those saying themselves to be Jews, and they are not, but are of the synagogue of Satan.

10 Do not at all fear what you are about to suffer. Behold, the devil is about to throw you into prison, so that you may be tried; and you will have affliction ten days.[4] Be faithful until death, and I will give you the crown of life.

11 The one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit says to the congregations. The one overcoming will not at all be hurt by the second death.

12 And to the messenger of the congregation in Pergamos[5], write: These things says the One having the sharp, two-edged sword:

13 I know your works, and where you dwell, where the throne of Satan is. And you uphold My name, and did not deny My Faith, even in those days when that witness of mine appeared,

---

4 Yahweh the Father, raised Yahweh the Son from the grave, (Ps 16:9-11, Joh 5:21,26).

1 The 7 congregations mentioned in chapter 2 & 3 were 7 literal congregations that made up a mail route in Asia Minor. They are Historical prophecies of what the 7 congregations will be like, as well as 7 literal end time congregations and prevalent spirits present in the last days.

2 '*Nico'* means conqueror and *'Laitan*' means the common people. So the spirit of the Nicolaitans was a controlling, hierarchical structure over the people.

3 Smyrna was the persecuted congregation and comes from the word myrrh. Myrrh had to be beaten and crushed in order to bring out the fragrance and was used as a perfume for preparation of one's burial.

4 This could mean 10 literal days or ten time periods. There were 10 pogroms against believers during the Roman Empire from Nero to Diocletian.

5 Pergamos means fortified

my faithful witness, who was slain
among you, where Satan dwells.
14 But I have a few things against
you, that you have there those holding
the teachings of Balaam, who taught
Balak to throw a stumblingblock
before the sons of Israel, to eat idol
sacrifices, and to commit fornication.
15 So you also have those holding the
teaching of the Nicolaitans, which
thing I hate.
16 Repent! But if not, I will come to
you quickly, and I will make war with
them by the sword of My mouth.[1]
17 The one who has an ear, hear
what the Spirit says to the
congregations. To the one overcoming,
I will give him to eat from the hidden
manna. And I will give to him a white
stone, and on the stone a new name
having been written, which no one
knows except the one receiving it.
18 And to the messenger of the
congregation in Thyatira, write: These
things says the Son of Elohim, the One
having His eyes as a flame of fire, and
His feet like burnished brass: *(Rev
1:14-15)*
19 I know your works, and the love,
and your service, and the faith, and
your patience, and your works; and
the last being more than the first.
20 But I have a few things against
you, that you allow the woman Jezebel
to teach, she saying herself to be a
prophetess, and to cause My servants
to go astray, and to commit
fornication, and to eat idol sacrifices.[2]
21 And I gave time to her that she
might repent of her fornication. And
she did not repent.
22 Behold, I will cast her into a
coffin, and those committing adultery
with her into great affliction, unless
they repent of their works.
23 And I will kill her children with
death; and all the congregations will
know that I am the One searching the
inner parts and hearts. And I will give
to each of you according to your
works.
24 But I say to you and to the rest in
Thyatira, as many as do not have this
teaching, and who did not know the
deep things of Satan, as they say: I am
not casting another burden on you;
25 but what you have, hold until I
shall come.
26 And the one overcoming, and the
one keeping My works until the end, "I
will give to him authority over the
nations," *(Ps 2:8)*
27 and "He will shepherd them with
an iron staff" like the vessels of the
potter they shall be shattered, as I also
have received from My Father.[3]
28 And I will give to him the
Morning Star.[4]
29 The one who has an ear, hear
what the Spirit says to the
congregations.

Chapter 3

1 And to the messenger of the
congregation in Sardis, write: These
things says the One having the seven
spirits of Elohim, and the seven stars:
I know your works, that you have the
name that you live, and are dead.
2 Be watching, and establish the
things which remain, which are about
to die. For I have not found your works
being fulfilled before Elohim .
3 Then remember how you received

---

1 There is an overall message of repentance to 5 of the 7 congregations mentioned and shows the overall problematic nature of believers in the last days.

2 This verse shows that in the end time there will be a rise of false women claiming to be prophetesses, yet in reality they are outside of YHWH's judicial order and rebellious as Jezebel.

3 Verses 26-27- See Ps 2:8-9

4 A reference to Yahshua, (Rev 22:16).

and heard, and keep, and repent. If,
then, you do not watch, I will come
upon you like a thief and you will not
at all know what hour I come upon
you.
4 You also have a few names in
Sardis which did not defile their robes,
and they shall walk with Me in white
because they are worthy.
5 The one overcoming, this one shall
be clothed in white garments, and I
will not at all blot his name out of the
Book of Life; and I will acknowledge
his name before My Father, and before
His cherubs. *(Rev 19:7-8)*
6 The one who has an ear, hear what
the Spirit says to the congregations.
7 And to the messenger of the
congregation in Philadelphia, write:
These things says the Holy One, the
True One, "The One having the key of
David, the One opening, and no one
shuts; and shuts, and no one opens:"
(Isa. 22:22)
8 I know your works. Behold, I have
given a door being opened before you,
and no one is able to shut it, for you
have a little strength and have kept My
Word, and have not denied My name.[1]
9 Behold, I give out of the synagogue
of Satan those saying themselves to be
Jews, and they are not, but they lie.
Behold, I will make them come and
bow down before your feet, and they
shall know that I loved you.
10 Because you kept the Word of My
patience, I also will keep you out of the
hour of trial which is going to come
upon all the world in order to try those
dwelling on the earth.
11 Behold, I am coming quickly.
Hold what you have that no one take
your crown.
12 The one overcoming, I will make
him a pillar in the sanctuary of My
Elohim, and he shall not go out any
more. And I will write the name of My
Elohim on him, and the name of the
city of My Elohim, the New Jerusalem
which comes down out of Heaven from
My Elohim, and My new name. *(Rev
21:1-2, Eze 48:35)*
13 The one who has an ear, hear
what the Spirit says to the
congregations.
14 And to the messenger of the
congregation of Laodicea,[2] write:
These things says the Amen, the
faithful and true Witness, the Head of
the creation of Elohim :
15 I know your works, that you are
neither cold nor hot. I would that you
were cold, or hot.
16 So, because you are lukewarm,
and neither cold nor hot, I am about to
vomit you out of My mouth.[3]
17 Because you say, I am rich, and I
am made rich, and I have need of
nothing, and do not know that you are
miserable and a wanderer and poor
and blind and naked.[4]
18 I advise you to buy from Me gold
having been fired by fire, that you may
be rich; and white garments, that you
may be clothed, and your shame and
nakedness may not be revealed. And
anoint your eyes with eye salve, that
you may see.

---

[1] Philadelphia means brotherly love and is the only congregation that holds no type of rebuke, but has been faithful, even though they have had little strength and have not denied the only true name of the Creator **YAHWEH.**

[2] Laodicea means "*ruled by the people"* and is the common thread of the last days where people in general have turned rebellious against any type of authority and are self-willed and full of pride, 2 Tim 3:1-4. The Laodiceans get the strongest rebuke from Yahshua.

[3] Cold water is useful to quench one's thirst, as where hot water is useful in bathing and warming one with tea etc, however lukewarm water is only good for one thing; inducing vomiting.

19 "I, as many as I love, I rebuke and I chasten." Be zealous, then, and repent.[1] *(Prov. 3:12, Rev 2:5)*

20 Behold, I stand at the door "and knock:" If anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will enter to him, and I will dine with him, and he with Me. *(Song 5:2)*

21 The one overcoming, I will give to him to sit with Me in My throne, as I also overcame and sat with My Father in His throne.

22 The one who has an ear, hear what the Spirit says to the congregations.

Chapter 4

1 After these things I saw. And behold, a door being opened in Heaven! And I heard the first voice as a trumpet speaking with me, saying, Come up here, and I will show you what needs to happen after these things.

2 And immediately I became in the spirit. And, behold, a throne was set in Heaven, and One sitting on the throne.

3 And the One sitting was in appearance like a jasper stone, and a sardonyx; and a rainbow was around the throne, in appearance like an emerald. *(Ps 47:8)*

4 And around the throne I saw twenty four thrones, and on the thrones I saw twenty four elders sitting, having been clothed in white garments. And they had golden crowns on their heads. *(Is 24:23)*

5 And out of the throne come forth lightnings and thunders and voices. And seven lamps of fire are burning before the throne, which are the seven Spirits of Elohim; *(Is 11:2, Rev 1:4)*

6 and a sea of glass was before the throne, like crystal. And in the midst of the throne and around the throne were four living creatures, full of eyes before and behind.

7 And the first living creature was like a lion; and the second living creature like a calf; and the third living creature having a face like a man; and the fourth living creature like an eagle flying. *(Eze 1:5-6, 10)*

8 And the four living creatures each one had six wings around, and within being full of eyes. And they had no rest day and night, saying, "Holy, holy, holy, Master YAHWEH Almighty, who was, and is, and is to come!" *(Isa. 6:3)*

9 And whenever the living creatures shall give glory and honor and thanks to the One sitting on the throne, to the One living forever,

10 the twenty four elders fall down before Him sitting on the throne; and they will worship the One living to the ages of the ages, and will throw their crowns before the throne, saying, *(Deu 33:2-3, Rev 5:8, 7:11-12, 11:16-17)*

11 Master Elohim, You are worthy to receive the glory and the honor and the power, because You created all things, and through Your will they exist and were created. *(Col 1:16-17)*

Chapter 5

1 And I saw on the right of the One

---

[4] The Laodicean, due to his physical life of money and pleasures, is blinded to his spiritual condition of being void of the Holy Spirit and not having any congregational roots but simply wandering from meeting place to meeting place and never being spiritually fulfilled or satisfied. The most dangerous aspect of the Laodicean is that because they think they are so spiritually superior and cannot see their miserable spiritual state, they refuse to take any correction and will not repent. Sadly, this describes much of western society today.

[1] The main characteristic that the halfhearted Laodicean lacks is zeal and fervor for YHWH and His work.

sitting on the throne a scroll having been written within and on the back, having been sealed with seven seals.[1]

2 And I saw a strong cherub proclaiming with a great voice: Who is worthy to open the scroll, and to loosen its seals? *(Rev 10:1)*

3 And no one in Heaven was able to open the scroll nor to see it, neither on the earth, nor underneath the earth.

4 And I wept much, because no one worthy was found to open and to read the scroll, nor to see it.

5 And one of the elders said to me: Do not weep. Behold, the Lion being of the tribe of Judah, the Root of David, conquered so as to open the scroll, and to loose its seven seals. *(Gen 49:9-12, Is 11:1, 10)*

6 And I saw, and behold, in the midst of the throne, and of the four living creatures, and in the midst of the elders, was a Lamb standing, as having been slain, having seven horns and seven eyes, which are the seven Spirits of Elohim, having been sent out into all the earth.*(Rev 1:4, 4:5, Is 11:2)*

7 And He came and took the scroll out of the right hand of Him sitting on the throne.

8 And when He took the scroll, the four living creatures and the twenty four elders fell down before the Lamb, each one having harps, and golden bowls full of incenses, which are the prayers of the sanctified ones.[2]

9 And they sing a new song, saying, Worthy are You to receive the scroll, and to open its seals, because You were slain, and by Your blood purchased them to Elohim out of every tribe and tongue and people and nation, *(Rev 14:1-5)*

10 and made them kings and priests to our Elohim; and they shall reign on the earth.[3] *(Rev 1:6, Rev 20:4)*

11 And I saw, and I heard a sound of many cherubs around the throne, and the living creatures, and the elders, and their number was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands,

12 saying with a great voice, Worthy is the Lamb having been slain to receive the power and riches and wisdom and strength and honor and glory and blessing.

13 And every creature which is in Heaven, and in the earth, and underneath the earth, and the things that are on the sea, and the things in all of them, I heard saying: To Him sitting on the throne, and to the Lamb be the blessing and the honor and the glory and the might forever and ever.

14 And the four living creatures said, Amen. And the twenty four elders fell down and worshiped the One living forever and ever.[4]

Chapter 6

1 And I saw when the Lamb opened one of the seals. And I heard one of the four living creatures, like a sound of thunder, saying, Come and see.

2 And I saw, and behold, a white horse! And the one sitting on it had a bow. And a crown was given to Him,

---

1 Eze 2:9-10- This comes at a time of great rebellion.

2 We should never take for granted the great privilege that a covenant believer has to be able to come before the throne of YHWH in our prayers, Ps 141:2, Luk 1:10, Rev 4:8-11, Rev 8:3-4.

3 The firstfruit believers will reign with Messiah during the 1,000 yr millennium and into eternity on the earth, (Rev 20:4-6, Math 5:5, Dan 7:18, Pr 11:31, Gen 13:14-18, Gal 3:29).

4 Verses 12-14 shows universal sovereignty over all the earth when the Kingdom of YHWH comes.

and He went out overcoming, and that He might overcome.[1] (*Math 24:4-5)*

3 And when He opened the second seal, I heard the second living creature saying, Come and see.

4 And another horse went out, red. And it was given to the one sitting on it to take peace from the earth, and that they should slay one another. And a great sword was given to Him.[2] *(Math 24:6-8, Zech 1:8)*

5 And when He opened the third seal, I heard the third living creature saying, Come and see. And I saw, and behold, a black horse, and the one sitting on it having a balance in his hand.

6 And I heard a voice in the midst of the four living creatures saying, A measure of wheat for a denarius, and three measures of barley for a denarius; and do not harm the oil and the wine.[3]

7 And when He opened the fourth seal, I heard a voice of the fourth living creature saying, Come and see.

8 And I saw, and behold, a pale green horse, and the name of the one sitting on it was Death; and Hades followed after him. And authority was given to them to kill over the fourth of the earth with sword, and with famine, and with death, and by the wild beasts of the earth.[4] *(Zech 6:1-3, Dan 2:39, Jer 15:2-3, Rev 13:10)*

9 And when He opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of those having been slain for the Word of YAHWEH, and for the witness which they had.[5] *(Ex 29:12, Lev 4:7)*

10 And they cried with a great voice, saying, Until when, holy and true Master YAHWEH, do You not judge and take vengeance for our blood, from those dwelling on the earth? *(Gen 4:10,, Ps 116:15, 17-19, Ps 79:10, Is 26:21, Luk 18:7-8)*

11 And there was given to each one a white robe. And it was said to them that they should rest yet a little time, until might be fulfilled also the number of their fellow-servants and their brethren, those being about to be killed, even as they. [6]*(Rev 19:7-9, Rev 7:13-17, Rev 12:10-17, Dan 11:30-39)*

12 And I saw when He opened the sixth seal. And behold, a great earthquake occurred. And the sun became black as sackcloth made of hair; and the moon became as blood; *(Math 24:29)*

13 and the stars of the heaven fell to the earth, as a fig tree being shaken by a great wind casts its unripe figs.

14 And the heaven departed like a

---

1 This is the first horse of what is traditionally called the 4 horsemen of the apocalypse. The white horse represents a false messiah bringing a false peace and false doctrine. The true Messiah also comes on a white horse later, (Rev 19:11-16). This anti-messiah will delude the people with flattering words and deception, (Dan 7:20-21, Dan 8:9-11, 20-25, Dan 9:27). He will also have the spirit of Satan, and will greatly persecute the believers, Dan 11:30-39, Rev 13:7, Dan 7:21.

2 The second red horse signifies world war.

3 The black horse is showing the great famine to come by the consequences of world war. Grain, oil and wine were the three main objects for substance, prosperity and blessing and all three are in scarcity during this time, Neh 10:39, Joel 2:19, 24.

4 The pale green horse signifies death from the famine and disease created by the war.

5 Undoubtedly, this is metaphoric, as Revelation has not even happened yet since John is seeing a future vision and the people have not even been born or died yet at the time of the vision.

6 When the beast power takes it reign for 42 months (Rev 13:5) then the 144,000 are taken to a place of protection (Rev 12:13-16) and then there will be a great persecution of the believers who are left all around the globe (Rev 12:17, Dan 7:21, Rev 13:7, Math 10:16-23).

scroll being rolled up. And mountains and islands were moved out of their places.

15 And the kings of the earth, and the great ones, and the rich ones, and the commanders, and the powerful ones, and every slave, and every freeman hid themselves in the caves and in the rocks of the mountains. *(Is 2:10, 19, 21)*

16 And "they said to the mountains and to the rocks, Fall on us," and hide us from the face of the One sitting on the throne, and from the wrath of the Lamb, *(Hos. 10:8)*

17 because the great day of His wrath has come; and who is able to stand?

Chapter 7

1 And after these things I saw four cherubs standing on the four corners of the earth, holding the four winds of the earth, that wind should not blow on the earth, nor on the sea, nor on every tree.

2 And I saw another cherub coming up from the rising of the sun, having a seal of the living Elohim. And he cried with a great voice to the four cherubs to whom it was given to them to harm the earth and the sea, saying,

3 Do not harm the earth, nor the sea, nor the trees, until we seal the servants of our Elohim on their foreheads. *(Eze 9:4, Deu 6:8, Joh 6:27, Rev 14:1)*

4 And I heard the number of those having been sealed: one hundred forty four thousands, having been sealed out of every tribe of the sons of Israel:

5 Out of the tribe of Judah, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Reuben, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Gad, twelve thousand having been sealed.

6 Out of the tribe of Asher, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Naphtali, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Manasseh, twelve thousand having been sealed.

7 Out of the tribe of Simeon, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Levi, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Issachar, twelve thousand having been sealed.

8 Out of the tribe of Zebulon, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Joseph, twelve thousand having been sealed. Out of the tribe of Benjamin, twelve thousand having been sealed.[1]

9 After these things I saw, and behold, a great crowd which no one was able to number them, out of every nation, even tribes and peoples and tongues, standing in front of the throne, and before the Lamb, having been clothed with white robes, and in their hands palm branches.

10 And they cry with a great voice, saying, Salvation to our Elohim sitting on the throne, and to the Lamb.

11 And all the cherubs and of the elders and of the four living creatures stood around the throne. And they fell before the throne on their faces, and worshiped YAHWEH,

12 saying: Amen! Blessing and glory and wisdom and thanksgiving and honor and power and strength to our Elohim forever and ever. Amen.

13 And one of the elders answered, saying to me, These, the ones having been clothed in the white robes, who are they, and from where did they come?

---

[1] Mysteriously, the tribe of Dan is missing from the list. The theories as to why, range from Dan's idolatry, to the anti-messiah possibly being from the tribe of Dan, but no theory is conclusive. Dan is mentioned in the millennial land allotment in Eze 48:1-2.

14 And I said to him, Sir, you know. And he said to me, These are those coming out of the great affliction; and they washed their robes and whitened them in the blood of the Lamb. *(Rev 19:7-9)*
15 Because of this they are before the throne of Elohim, and serve Him day and night in His sanctuary. And He sitting on the throne will tabernacle over them.
16 And they will not hunger still, nor will they thirst still, nor at all shall fall on them the sun, nor any kind of heat.
17 Because the Lamb in the midst of the throne will shepherd them, and will lead them on springs of living waters; and YAHWEH will wipe off every tear from their eyes. *(Rev 22:1)*

Chapter 8

1 And when He opened the seventh seal, there was silence in Heaven for about a half hour.
2 And I saw the seven cherubs who stood before Elohim, and seven trumpets were given to them.
3 And another cherub came and stood on the altar, having a golden censer. And many types of incense were given to him that he should give them with the prayers of all the saints on the golden altar before the throne.
4 And the smoke of the incense went up with the prayers of the saints out of the hand of the cherub before Elohim. *(Ps 141:2, Rev 5:8, Lk 1:10)*
5 And the cherub took the censer, and filled it from the fire of the altar, and cast it into the earth; and sounds and thunders and lightnings and earthquakes occurred.
6 And the seven cherubs having the seven trumpets prepared themselves, that they might trumpet.
7 And the first cherub trumpeted. And hail and fire mixed with blood occurred. And it was cast onto the earth; and the third part of the trees was burned down; and all green grass was burned down. *(Ex 9:23-24)*
8 And the second cherub trumpeted. And as a great mountain burning with fire was thrown into the sea. And the third part of the sea became blood;
9 and the third part of the creatures having souls died in the sea; and the third part of the ships was destroyed.
10 And the third cherub trumpeted. And a great burning star, like a lamp, fell out of the heaven. And it fell onto the third part of the rivers, and onto the springs of waters.
11 And the name of the star is said to be Wormwood[1]. And the third part of the waters became changed into wormwood. And many men died from the waters, because they were bitter.
12 And the fourth cherub trumpeted. And the third part of the sun, and the third part of the moon, and the third part of the stars, was struck, that the third part of them might be darkened, and the third part of the day might not appear; and in the same way the night.
13 And I saw and heard an eagle, which flew in the midst of heaven, and it had a tail red as blood, while it said, with a loud voice: Woe, woe, to them who dwell on the earth, because of the remaining sounds of the trumpets of the three angels, who are to sound.

Chapter 9

1 And the fifth cherub trumpeted. And I saw a star out of the heaven falling onto the earth. And the key to the pit of the abyss was given to it.
2 And he opened the pit of the abyss. And smoke went up out of the pit, like smoke of a great furnace. And the sun

[1] Chernobyl where the nuclear accident happened means wormwood.

was darkened, and the air, by the smoke of the pit.
3 And out of the smoke locusts came forth to the earth. And authority was given to them, as the scorpions of the earth have authority.
4 And it was said to them that they should not harm the grass of the earth, nor every green thing, nor every tree, except only the men who do not have the seal of YAHWEH on their foreheads.
5 And it was given to them that they should not kill them, but that they be tormented five months. And their torment is as the torment of a scorpion when it stings a man.
6 And in those days men will seek death, and they will not find it. And they will long to die, yet death will flee from them.
7 And the likenesses of the locusts were like horses having been prepared for war; and they had crowns on their heads like gold; and their faces were like the faces of men.*(Joel 2:4)*
8 And their hair was like the hair of women; and their teeth were like those of lions.[1]
9 And they had breastplates like iron breastplates; and the sound of their wings was like the sound of chariots with many horses running to war.
10 And they have tails like scorpions, and their stings were in their tails; and their authority is to harm men five months.
11 And they have a king over them, the messenger of the abyss. In Hebrew his name was Abaddon, and in Aramaic he has the name breaker.
12 The first woe has passed; behold, after these things come two more woes.
13 And the sixth cherub trumpeted. And I heard one voice out of the four horns of the golden altar before Elohim,
14 saying to the sixth cherub who had the trumpet, Release the four cherubs, those having been bound at the great river Euphrates.
15 And the four cherubs were released, those having been prepared for the hour and day and month and year, that they should kill the third part of men.
16 And the number of the armies of the cavalry was two hundred million; and I heard their number.
17 And so I saw in the vision the horses, and those sitting on them, having fire-colored breastplates, even like dusky red and brimstone; and the heads of the horses as heads of lions; and out of their mouths come fire and smoke and brimstone.
18 By these three were killed the third part of men, by the fire, and by the smoke, and by the brimstone coming out of their mouths.[2]
19 For their authority is in their mouth, and in their tails; for their tails are like snakes, having heads, and they do harm with them.
20 And the rest of men, those not killed by these plagues, did not repent of the works of their hands, that they will not worship demons, and "golden idols, and silver, and copper, and stone, and wooden idols, which neither are able to see, nor to hear, nor to walk." *(Dan. 5:23; Psa. 115:4-7; Ps 135:15-17)*
21 And they did not repent of their murders, nor of their witchcraft, nor of their fornications, nor of their thefts.

Chapter 10

1 And I saw another strong cherub coming down out of the heaven,

[1] Long hair on a male is a shame (1 Cor 11:14) and a sign of rebellion.

[2] This could possibly be referring to nuclear war.

having been clothed with a cloud, and a rainbow of the cloud was on his head; and his face was as the sun, and his feet as pillars of fire.*(Rev 1:14, 5:2)*

2 And he had in his hand a little scroll having been opened. And he placed his right foot on the sea, and the left on the land,

3 and cried with a great voice, as a lion roars. And when he cried, the seven thunders spoke their sounds.

4 And when the seven thunders spoke their sounds, I was about to write. And I heard a voice out of Heaven saying to me, Seal what things the seven thunders spoke, and do not write these things.

5 And the cherub whom I saw standing on the sea and on the land lifted his hand to Heaven,

6 and swore by Him who lives forever and ever, who created the heaven and the things in it, and the earth and the things in it, and the sea and the things in it, that there shall be no longer reckoning of time;

7 but in the days of the voice of the seventh cherub, whenever he is about to trumpet, was even ended the mystery of Elohim, as He has proclaimed to His servants, the prophets.

8 And the voice which I heard out of the Heaven was again speaking to me, and saying, Go, take the little scroll having been opened in the hand of the cherub standing on the sea and on the land.

9 And I went away toward the cherub, saying to him, Give the little scroll to me. And he said to me, Take and eat it up, and it will make your belly bitter, but it will be sweet as honey in your mouth.

10 And I took the little scroll out of the cherub's hand, and ate it. And it was sweet like honey in my mouth; and when I ate it, my belly was made bitter.

11 And he said to me, You must again prophesy before peoples and nations and tongues and kings.

Chapter 11

1 And a reed like a staff was given to me, and the cherub stood, saying, Rise and anoint the sanctuary of YAHWEH and the altar, and those worshiping in it.

2 And leave out the court outside of the sanctuary, and do not anoint it. For it has been given to the nations, and they will trample the holy city forty two months.

3 And I will give to My two witnesses, and they will prophesy a thousand, two hundred and sixty days, dressed in sackcloth.

4 These are the two olive trees, and the two candlesticks, standing before the Elohim of all the earth.[1]

5 And if anyone desires to harm them, fire comes out of their mouth and devours their enemies. And if anyone desires to harm them, he must in this manner be killed.

6 These have the authority to shut up the heaven, that no rain may rain in the days of their prophecy. And they have authority over the waters, to turn them into blood, and to strike the

[1] The two witnesses stand before the Elohim of all the earth. Since no man has ascended to heaven (Joh 3:13) these men cannot be human beings. When we look at the clues given that they are the two olive trees and the two candlesticks it shows that these are two cherubs. There were 2 cherubs one to the right and one to the left of the Ark of the Covenant in the sanctuary both made from olive tree, 1Kgs 6:23-28. Also see Luk 1:5-11, 19 for the name of one of the cherubs standing before Yahweh. Zech 4:1-6, 11-14.

earth with every plague, as often as
they desire.
7 And when they complete their
witness, the beast coming up out of the
abyss will make war with them, and
will overcome them, and will kill
them[1].
8 And their bodies will be on the
street of the great city, which
spiritually is called Sodom, and Egypt,
where our Master was crucified[2].
9 And some from the peoples and
tribes and tongues and nations will see
their dead bodies for three and a half
times; and they do not allow their
dead bodies to be put in tombs.
10 And those living on the earth will
rejoice over them, and will make
merry. And they will send one another
gifts, because these two prophets
tormented those living on the earth.
11 And after three and a half times,
the spirit of life from Elohim entered
into them, and they stood on their
feet. And great fear fell on the ones
beholding them.
12 And they heard a great voice out
of Heaven saying to them, Come up
here. And they went up into the
heaven in the cloud. And their
enemies saw them.
13 And in that hour a great
earthquake occurred, and the tenth
part of the city fell. And there were
killed in the earthquake seven
thousand names of men. [3]And the rest
became terrified, and gave glory to the
Elohim of Heaven.
14 The second woe passed. And,
behold, the third woe is coming
quickly.
15 And the seventh cherub
trumpeted. And there were great
rumblings of thunder saying, The
kingdoms of this world have become
our Elohim's, even of His Messiah;
and He shall reign forever and ever.
16 And the twenty four elders sitting
before Elohim on their thrones fell on
their faces and worshiped YAHWEH,
(Rev 4:4)
17 saying, We thank You, YAHWEH
Elohim Almighty, the One who is, and
who was, and who is coming, because
You took Your great power and
reigned.
18 And the nations were full of
wrath; and Your wrath came, and the
time of the judging of the dead, and to
give the reward to Your servants, to
the prophets, and to the saints, and to
the ones giving reverence to Your
name, to the small and to the great,
and to destroy those destroying the
earth.
19 And the sanctuary of YAHWEH
in Heaven was opened, and the ark of
His covenant was seen in His
sanctuary, and lightnings, and voices,
and thunders, and an earthquake, and
a great hailstorm occurred. *(Jer 3:16-17)*

Chapter 12

1 And a great sign was seen in the
heavens, a woman having been clothed
with the sun, and the moon was
underneath her feet; and on her head a
crown of twelve stars;
2 and having a babe in her womb.
She cried, being in labor, and having
birth pains to deliver.
3 And another sign was seen in the
heavens. And, behold, a great red
dragon having seven heads and ten

1 Rev 9:1-2
2 Speaking of Jerusalem.
3 Today there are almost 1 million people living in Jerusalem: at this time only 70,000 would have been left, less than 10%.

horns! And on his heads were seven crowns,[1] *(Rev 13:1, Rev 17:3, 7, 9)*
4 and his tail drew the third part of the stars of the heaven, and he throws them to the earth. And the dragon stood before the woman being about to bear, so that when she bears he might devour her child.
5 And she brought forth a male child, who was to rule all nations with a rod of iron. And her child was caught up to Elohim and to his throne[2].
6 And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she had a place, it having been prepared from Elohim, that there they might nourish her a thousand two hundred and sixty days.
7 And war occurred in Heaven, Michael and his cherubs making war against the dragon. And the dragon and his cherubs made war,
8 but they did not have strength, nor yet was place found for them in Heaven. *(Is 14:12-15)*
9 And the great dragon was cast out, the old serpent being called the devil, and, Satan; he deceiving the whole inhabitable world was cast out onto the earth, and his messengers were cast out with him. *(Rev 12:4)*
10 And I heard a great voice in heaven, which said: Now is come the salvation, and the power and the kingdom of our Elohim, and the dominion of his Messiah: because the Accuser of our brethren is cast out, the one who accuses them day and night before our Elohim.[3]
11 And they overcame him because of the blood of the Lamb, and because of the Word of their testimony. And they did not love their soul even until death.
12 Because of this, be glad, the heavens and those dwelling in them. Woe to the ones dwelling on the earth, and in the sea, because the devil came down to you having great anger, knowing that his time is short!
13 And when the dragon saw that he was cast out onto the earth, he pursued the woman who bore the male child.
14 And two wings of a great eagle were given to the woman, that she might fly into the wilderness, to her place, where she is nourished there for a time, and times, and half a time, away from the serpent's face.*(SoS 3:6)*
15 And the serpent spewed water out of his mouth like a river after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried off by the river.
16 And the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed the river which the dragon threw out of his mouth.
17 And the dragon was enraged over the woman, and went away to make war with the rest of her seed, those keeping the commandments of YAHWEH, and having the testimony of Yahshua Messiah.[4]

Chapter 13

1 And I stood on the sand of the sea. And I saw a beast coming up out of the

[1] This is exactly what was seen at the birth of Yahshua, as the moon was in the mid section of the constellation of Virgo (the virgin) and the moon under the feet. You can read about this amazing event in Ernest Martin's book called "*The star that astonished the world*". Martin shows through the planetary action of what is known as the star of Bethlehem that Yahshua was born on the feast of Trumpets in 3 B.C.

[2] Acts 1:9, Heb 1:3, Heb 8:1, Ps 110:1, Acts 2:33

[3] Satan is displayed as the accuser of the brethren. When brethren attack and falsely accuse each other they are actually working for Satan and doing his job and YHWH hates such action, (Pr 6:16-19, Zech 3:1-2, Job 1:10-11).

sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and on his horns ten crowns, and on its heads names of blasphemy.

2 And the beast which I saw was like a leopard, and its feet were like the feet of a bear, and its mouth was as a lion's mouth. And the dragon gave its power to it, and its throne, and great authority. *(Dan 7:3-7)*

3 And I saw one of its heads, as having been slain to death, and its deadly wound was healed. And all the earth wondered after the beast.[1]

4 And they worshiped the dragon who gave authority to the beast; and they worshiped the beast, saying, Who is like the beast; who is able to make war with it?

5 And a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies was given to it. And authority was given to it to act forty two months.

6 And it opened its mouth in blasphemy toward YAHWEH, to blaspheme His name and His dwelling place, and those dwelling in Heaven.

7 And it was given to it "to war with the saints, and to overcome them." And authority was given to it over every tribe and kindred and tongue and nation. *(Dan. 7:21, Rev 12:17)*

8 And all those dwelling in the earth will worship him, those of whom the names had not been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb having been slain from the foundation of the world.

9 If anyone has an ear, let him hear.

10 If anyone gathers captivity, into captivity he goes. If anyone will kill by a sword, by a sword he must be killed. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints.[2] *(Jer 15:2-3, Rev:22:11-12)*

11 And I saw another beast coming up out of the earth. And it had two horns like a lamb, but spoke like a dragon. *(Math 24:24)*

12 And it executes all the authority of the first beast before it. And it causes that the earth and those dwelling in it should worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.

13 And he performed great signs, even so as to make fire come down from heaven upon the earth, before men. *(Math 16:1-4, Math 24:24)*

14 And he deceives those dwelling on the earth, because of the signs which were given to it to do before the beast, saying to those dwelling on the earth to make an image to the beast who has the wound of the sword, and lived.

15 And was given to it to put life into the image of the beast, so that the image of the beast might even speak, and might cause as many as would not worship the image of the beast to be killed. *(Dan 3:1-12)*

16 And the small and the great, and the rich and the poor, and the freemen and the slaves, it causes that they give to them all a mark on their right hand, or on their foreheads, *(Deut 6:5-8)*

17 even that not any could buy or sell, except the one having the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of its name.

18 Here is wisdom: Let him who has understanding compute the number of the beast, for it is the number of a man and its number is six hundred and sixty six.[3] *(1Kgs 10:14)*

---

[4] The 144,000 faithful servants of YHWH are taken to a place of protection, and the rest of the Laodicean believers will have to go through a purification through fire due to their halfheartedness and lack of zeal for YHWH's end time work in redeeming Israel.

[1] Rev 17:11,16- The deadly wound is probably the fall of Babylon.

[2] The patience and faith of the saints is fully trusting in YHWH and not taking matters into one's own hands, as everyone will reap what they sow.

[3] See note on 1 Kgs 10:14

Chapter 14

1 And I saw, and behold, the Lamb standing on Mount Zion! And with Him were a hundred and forty four thousands, with the name of His Father having been written in their foreheads.[1] *(Ps 2:6, Joh 17:11,)*

2 And I heard a sound out of Heaven, as a sound of many waters, and as a sound of great thunder. Also I heard a sound of harpers harping on their harps. *(Rev 5:9)*

3 And they sing as a new song before the throne, and before the four living creatures and the elders. And no one was able to learn the song except the hundred and forty four thousands, those having been redeemed from the earth.

4 These are the ones who had not become defiled, for they are pure. These are the ones following the Lamb wherever He may go. These were redeemed from among men being the first-fruits to YAHWEH and to the Lamb. *(1Cor 15:20, 2 Cor 11:2)*

5 And no decoy was found in their mouth, for they are unmarked before the throne of YAHWEH. *(Ps 15:1-4)*

6 And I saw another cherub flying in mid-heaven, and with blood having the everlasting good news to proclaim to those dwelling on the earth, even to every nation and tribe and language and people, *(Math 24:14)*

7 saying in a great voice, Fear Elohim, and give glory to Him, because the hour of His judgment has come; also, Worship Him who has "made the heaven, and the earth, and the sea," and the springs of waters. *(Ex. 20:11)*

8 And another cherub followed, saying, The great city, Babylon, has fallen, has fallen because of the wine of the anger of her fornication she made all nations to drink. *(Rev 18:2, 10)*

9 And a third cherub followed them, saying in a great voice, If anyone worships the beast and its image, and receives a mark on his forehead, or in his hand,

10 he also shall drink of the wine of the anger of YAHWEH having been mixed undiluted in the cup of His wrath. And he will be tormented by fire and brimstone before the holy cherubs and before the Lamb.

11 And the smoke of their torment will rise forever and ever. And those worshiping the beast and its image have no rest night and day, even if anyone receives the mark of its name.[2]

12 Here is the patience of the sanctified ones; here are the ones keeping the commandments of YAHWEH, and the faith of Yahshua.[3]

13 And I heard a voice out of Heaven saying to me, Write: Blessed are the dead, the ones departing in the Master from now on. Yes, says the Spirit, they shall rest from their labors, and their works follow with them. *(Rev 22:12)*

14 And I saw; and behold, a white

---

[1] To have something written on the forehead shows that it is forever in their mind (Deut 6:8). Whereas with the mark of the beast in the right hand (right signifies strength and action) and the forehead (where our thoughts originate) is giving allegiance to the anti-messiah, the true believers have the name of YAHWEH inevitably written in their minds and have surrendered their wills to Him and are fully servants of Yahshua.

[2] Verses 9-11- It is frightful to think that in Revelation 13:16 that most of all the people on the earth had taken the mark of the beast and here it quite plainly states that whoever takes the mark will go to the lake of Fire. Very few will be saved in the end days. (Math 7:13-14)

[3] It is quite clear that at this time the true believers in Yahshua are keeping the Torah in faith and obedience to the one who wrote it, (Rev 19:13, Joh 1:1-3, 14).

cloud and on the cloud One sitting like
the Son of Man, having on His head a
golden crown, and in His hand a sharp
sickle.
15 And another cherub went forth
out of the sanctuary, crying in a great
voice to the One sitting on the cloud,
Send Your sickle and reap, because
Your hour to reap came, because the
harvest of the earth was dried. (Joel
3:13, math 13:39)
16 And the One sitting on the cloud
thrust His sickle onto the earth, and
the earth was reaped.
17 And another cherub went forth
out of the sanctuary in Heaven, he also
having a sharp sickle.
18 And another cherub went forth
from the altar having authority over
the fire. And he spoke with a great cry
to the one having the sharp sickle,
saying, Send your sharp sickle and
gather the clusters of the vine of the
earth, because its grapes are ripened.
19 And the cherub thrust his sickle
into the earth and gathered the vine of
the earth, and threw into the wine-
press of the great anger of YAHWEH.
(Rev 19:15)
20 And the winepress was trodden
outside the city, and blood went out of
the winepress as far as the bridles of
the horses, from a thousand six
hundred furlongs.[1] *(Is 63:3, Joel 3:13)*

Chapter 15

1 And I saw another sign in Heaven,
great and marvelous: seven cherubs
having the last seven plagues, because
the anger of YAHWEH was completed
in them.[2]
2 And I saw, as a sea of glass having
been mixed with fire. And the ones
overcoming the beast, and its image,
and its mark, of the number of its
name, were standing on the glassy sea,
having harps of Elohim. *(Rev 4:6)*
3 And they sing the song of Moses
the servant of Elohim, and the song of
the Lamb, saying, Great and
marvelous are Your works, YAHWEH
Elohim Almighty, righteous and true
are Your ways, King of the saints.[3]
4 Who will not fear You, O
YAHWEH, and glorify Your name?
For You only are holy. For all the
nations will come and will worship
before You, because Your
righteousness has been revealed.[4]
(*Deu 32:3, Ps 86:9, Deut8:58, Ezek
38:23, 39:7-8)*
5 And after these things I saw; and
behold, the sanctuary of the tabernacle
of the testimony in Heaven was
opened! *(Rev 11:19, Rev 19:11)*
6 And the seven cherubs having the
seven plagues came forth out of the
sanctuary, having been clothed in
clean and bright linen, and golden
bands having been girded around the
breasts. *(Rev 19:14, Eze 28:13)*
7 And one of the four living creatures
gave to the seven cherubs seven golden
bowls filled with the wrath of
YAHWEH who lives forever and ever.
8 And the sanctuary was filled with

---

[1] Where normally in scripture wine is associated with happiness and blessing, here YHWH uses the illustration of wine and grapes being crushed as blood being poured out from the rebellious, prideful people inhabiting the earth at this time. 1,600 furlongs is equal to 180 miles by 4 ½ feet high.

[2] The anger of YHWH is called in scripture "T*he Day of YHWH*" (Joel 2:1-11, Jer 25:30-33) although the actual length of time is not listed, probably due to the great intensiveness of the punishment that it will have to be shortened (Math 24:22).

[3] Ex 15:1, Jos 22:5, 1 Tim 1:17, Rev 14:1-5

[4] Over and over in Revelation it is stated that the true end time believers are both keeping the Torah and giving glory to the name of YAHWEH. (Rev 14:12, 22:14)

the smoke of the glory of Elohim, and with His power.[1] And no one was able to enter into the sanctuary until the seven plagues of the seven cherubs should be completed.*(Is 6:4, Ex 40:34-35, 1Kgs 8:10-11, 2Chron 5:11-14, Ezek 44:4)*

Chapter 16

1 And I heard a great voice out of the sanctuary saying to the seven cherubs: Go and pour out the bowls of the anger of YAHWEH onto the earth.

2 And the first went away and poured out his bowl onto the earth. And it came to be a wicked and painful sore onto the men, the ones having the mark of the beast, and the ones worshiping its image. *(Ex 9:9-11, Deut 28:35)*

3 And the second cherub poured out his bowl onto the sea. And it became blood, as of a dead one, and every soul of life died in the sea. (*Ex 7:17-21)*

4 And the third cherub poured out his bowl onto the rivers, and onto the springs of the waters; and it became blood.

5 And I heard the cherub of the waters saying, You are righteous, O holy one who is, and who was, and who will be, because You judged these things,

6 since they poured out the blood of the saints and of the prophets; and You gave blood to them to drink, for they were deserving. *(Rev 17:6, 13:7)*

7 And I heard another out of the altar saying, Yes, YAHWEH Elohim Almighty, Your judgments are true and righteous.

8 And the fourth cherub poured out his bowl onto the sun. And it was given to him to burn men with fire.

9 And men were burned with great heat. And they blasphemed the name of YAHWEH, the One having authority over these plagues and they did not repent to give Him glory.

10 And the fifth cherub poured out his bowl onto the throne of the beast. And its kingdom became darkened; and they gnawed their tongues from the pain. *(Ex 10:20-23)*

11 And they blasphemed the name of the Elohim of Heaven, from their pains and from their sores. And they did not repent of their works.[2]

12 And the sixth cherub poured out his bowl onto the great river Euphrates, and its water was dried up so that the way of the kings from the East might be prepared.

13 And I saw three unclean spirits like frogs come out of the mouth of the dragon, and out of the mouth of the beast, and out of the mouth of the false prophet.

14 For they are spirits of demons doing signs, which go forth to the kings of the earth, even of the whole inhabitable world to assemble them to the war of that day, the great day of El Shaddai.[3]

15 Behold, I am coming as a thief. Blessed is the one watching and keeping his garments, that he does not walk naked, and they may see his shame.[4]

16 And He assembled them in the place having been called in Hebrew, Har-Megiddo.[5]

17 And the seventh cherub poured out his bowl into the air, and a great

---

[1] As defiled human beings with a corrupted human nature, one cannot even conceive what it would be like to be in the presence of the Holy, Glorious, Powerful, Eternal, Creator.

[2] This shows the decrepit state of people at this time as there is no fear of Elohim nor His judgments, but the pride and bitterness of the people has hardened their unrepentant hearts to blasphemy.

[3] El Shaddai means El Almighty

voice came from the throne from the sanctuary of Heaven, saying, It has happened!
18 And voices and thunders and lightnings occurred. And a great earthquake occurred, such as did not occur since man came into being on the earth, such a huge earthquake, so great! *(Rev 6:12, 11:13, Math 24:21)*
19 And the great city came to be into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell. And Babylon the great was remembered before YAHWEH, to give to her the cup of the wine of the anger of His wrath. *(Jer 51:7)*
20 And every island fled away, and mountains were not found. *(Rev 6:14)*
21 And a great hail, as the size of a talent, came down out of the heaven upon men. And men blasphemed Elohim from the plague of the hail, because its plague is exceedingly great. *(Ex 9:18, Gen 19:24, Eze 13:13, 38:22)*

Chapter 17

1 And one of the seven cherubs having the seven bowls came and spoke with me, saying to me, Come, I will show you the judgment of the great harlot sitting on the many waters,
2 with whom the kings of the earth committed fornication, and the ones inhabiting the earth became drunk from the wine of her fornication.
3 And he carried me away into a desert, by the Spirit. And I saw a woman sitting on a scarlet beast, filled with names of blasphemy, having seven heads and ten horns. *(Rev 13:1)*
4 And the woman was clothed in purple and scarlet, and being gilded with gold and precious stones and pearls, having a golden cup in her hand, filled with abominations and unclean things of her fornication.[1]
5 And on her forehead was a name having been written: Mystery, Babylon the Great, the Mother of the Harlots and of the Abominations of the Earth.
6 And I saw the woman being drunk from the blood of the saints, and from the blood of the martyrs of Yahshua. And I marveled, seeing her, with a great marveling. *(Rev 16:6)*
7 And the cherub said to me, Why did you marvel? I will tell you the mystery of the woman, and of the beast supporting her, the one having the seven heads and the ten horns.[2]
8 The beast which you saw was, and is not, and is about to come up out of the abyss, and goes to be destroyed. And those dwelling on the earth will marvel, the ones whose names have not been written on the Book of Life from the foundation of the world, seeing the beast, that it was a thing, and is not, yet now is. *(Rev 9:1-2, 11)*
9 Here is the mind having wisdom:

---

4 This is a Hebrew idiom as in the time of the sanctuary in Jerusalem priests on duty during Holy Days would have to stay awake all night while on watch. They would even walk barefoot on the cold stone floor not to fall asleep, but if they did fall asleep, the High priest would enter in the night unexpected and light on fire his priestly robe and the next day the priest who was sleeping would not have his priestly garment on the High Day and all would know his unfaithfulness during his watch. 1 Thes 5:1-9

5 The Greek Armageddon comes from the Hebrew name of "*Har-Megiddo*"or mountain of Meggido. Meggido is located just south of the Jezreel valley in the land of Manasseh.

1 The golden cup represents that Babylon at one time was a servant of YHWH and had worth, but due to their abundance of wealth and pleasure seeking, they became defiled and fully corrupted, (Jer 51:7, Rev 18:16).

2 Babylon is not the beast, but rides (controls) the beast until it destroys her.

the seven heads are seven mountains, where the woman sits on them.[1]

10 And the kings are seven. The five fell, and the one is, and the other has not yet come. And when he does come, he must remain a little.

11 And the beast which was, and is not, even he is the eighth, and is of the seven, and goes into perdition.[2]

12 And the ten horns you saw are ten kings who have not yet received a kingdom, but will receive authority as kings one hour with the beast.

13 These have one mind, and their power and authority they shall give up to the beast.

14 These will make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb will overcome them, because He is Master of Masters and King of kings, and the ones with Him are the called and chosen and faithful ones. *(Dan 2:34, 44)*

15 And he says to me, The waters which you saw, where the harlot sits, are peoples and crowds and nations and tongues.[3]

16 And the ten horns which you saw on the beast, these will hate the harlot, and will make her desolated and naked. And they will eat her flesh, and will burn her down with fire.[4]

17 For Elohim gave into their hearts to do His mind, and to act in one mind, and to give their kingdom to the beast, until the Words of Elohim shall be fulfilled.

18 And the woman whom you saw is the great city, having dominion over the kings of the earth.[5] *(Jer 51:44)*

Chapter 18

1 And after these things I saw another cherub coming down out of Heaven having great authority, and the earth was lighted up from his glory.

2 And he cried in a strong, great voice, saying, Babylon the great has fallen! It has fallen, and it has become a dwelling-place of those possessed by demons, and a home of every foul spirit, and a home of every unclean bird, even the home of every unclean and hateful beast,[6] *(Is 21:1-10)*

3 because of the wine of the anger of her fornication which all the nations have drunk, even the kings of the earth have committed fornication with her; and the merchants of the earth became rich from the power of her trade.[7]

4 And I heard another voice out of Heaven saying, leave the land of her, My people, that you may not share in her sins, and that you may not receive of her plagues;[8]

5 because her sins joined together, even reach up to Heaven, and YAHWEH remembered her unjust deeds. *(Jer 51:7-9)*

---

1 Mountains in scripture represent large land masses and the fact that Babylon sits on 7 mountains is showing she is controlling the world, which is made up of 7 continents. Seven is also the number of completeness, showing Babylon's total control over the world economy and social system. Mic 4:2, Dan 2:35, Zech 4:6-7

2 Although Babylon is a physical country in the end time, there have been 7 world empires of trading that Babylon has represented. Dan 8:19-25, Rev 13:1-5

3 Babylon is a great melting pot of immigrants from many countries, Jer 51:13.

4 Jer 50:2-3, 7-16, 22-32, 35-43

5 End time Babylon controls a global world system in which all the other nations assemble in her (Jer 51:44). Only the USA with the United Nations in New York fits this criteria.

6 Undeniably Babylon is a physical land and not a church or simply a system (Jer 50:3,8, Jer 51:37).

7 Babylon is the world's engine of the economic machine and the biggest importer and exporter nation. Only the USA fits this criteria (Rev 18:7, 9-11).

6 Give back to her as also she gave back to you, and double to her double, according to her works. In the cup which she mixed, mix to her double.

7 By what things she glorified herself, and luxuriated, by so much give back to her torment and mourning. Because she says in her heart, I sit as a queen, and I am not a widow; and I shall not see sorrow. *(Is 47:5-9, Rev 18:3)*

8 Because of this, in one day her plagues shall come: death, and mourning, and famine; and she will be consumed with fire, for YAHWEH Elohim judging her is strong. *(Is 47:9, Rev 17:16, Jer 50:34)*

9 And the kings of the earth will weep for her, and will wail over her, those having fornicated and having luxuriated with her, when they see the smoke of her burning;

10 standing from afar because of the fear of her torment, saying, Woe! Woe to the great city, Babylon, the strong city! For in one hour your judgment came.

11 And the merchants of the earth weep and mourn over her, because no one buys their merchandise any more[1],

12 Never again will there be *trading of* merchandise of gold, and silver, and of precious stone, and of pearls, and of fine linen, and of purple, and of silk, and of scarlet, and all aromatic wood, and every ivory vessel, and every vessel of very precious wood, and of copper, and of iron, and of marble,

13 and cinnamon, and perfumes, and ointment, and frankincense, and wine, and oil, and fine flour, and wheat, and beasts, and sheep, and horses, and chariots, and of bodies and souls of men.

14 And the ripe fruits that your soul lusted after have went away from you, and all things delicious and splendid have perished from you; and you shall obtain them no more at all.

15 The merchants of these things, the ones being enriched from her, will stand from afar because of the fear of her torment, weeping and mourning;

16 and saying, Woe! Woe to the great city having been clothed in linen and purple and scarlet, and having been gilded with gold and precious stone, and pearls!

17 For in one hour such great wealth was desolated. And every ship-pilot and all company on the ships, and sailors, and as many as work the sea, stood from afar,

18 and cried out, seeing the smoke of her burning, saying, What other is like the great city?

19 And they threw dust on their heads, and cried out, weeping and mourning, saying, Woe! Woe to the great city, by which all those having ships in the sea were rich, from her costliness, because in one hour she was ruined.[2]

20 Rejoice over her, Heaven and you

---

[8] There are 7 direct commands to the end time remnant to flee the land of Babylon as the wrath of YHWH is coming on her for her luxurious and immoral lifestyle and for the oppression that world democracy has brought to the rest of the world (Jer 51:6, 8, Jer 50:8, Jer 51:44, Zech 2:7).

[1] Verses 9-11- The merchants of the earth are weeping and wailing because no one is buying their merchandise. The United Staes of America is the only country in the world that if they were destroyed overnight it would completely crash the world economy. The USA imports about 25-30% of the whole worlds' good and is by far the greatest consumer nation on earth. If one is honest with themselves no other nation on earth even remotely fits this scripture but the USA.

[2] Verses 12-19 specifically names 25 items that Babylon trades more than anyone in the world. Only in the USA can you trade all 25 items on the commodities exchange.

cherubs, and the holy apostles, and the prophets, because YAHWEH has judged your cause with her[1].

21 And a cherub took up a stone like a great millstone, and cast it into the sea, saying: So shall Babylon, the great city, be thrown down with violence, and shall no more be found: *(Jer 51:63-64)*

22 And the sound of harpers, and of musicians, and flutists, and of trumpeters will not still be heard in you, never! And every craftsman of every craft will not still be found in you, never! And the sound of a mill will not still be heard in you, never!

23 And the light of a lamp will not still shine in you, never! And the voice of the bridegroom and bride will not be heard in you, never! For your merchants were the great ones of the earth[2], for by your sorceries[3] all the nations were deceived.

24 And in her was found the blood of prophets, and of saints, and of all the ones having been slain on the earth.[4]

Chapter 19

1 And after these things, I heard a great voice of a large multitude in Heaven, saying, HalleluYah! The salvation and the glory and the honor and the power of YAHWEH our Elohim!

2 For true and righteous are His judgments, because He judged the great harlot who defiled the earth with her fornication. And He avenged the blood of His slaves out of her hand.

3 And a second time they said, HalleluYah! Also her smoke goes up forever and ever. *(Mk 9:48, Is 66:24)*

4 And the twenty four elders, and the four living creatures fell down and worshiped YAHWEH sitting on the throne, saying, Amen! HalleluYah! *(Rev 4:4)*

5 And a voice came out from the throne, saying, Praise our Elohim, all His servants, and the ones fearing Him, the small and the great.

6 And I heard as a sound of a numerous crowd, and as a sound of many waters, and as a sound of strong thunders, saying, HalleluYah! Because YAHWEH, Elohim, Almighty reigns.

7 Let us rejoice and let us exult, and we will give glory to Him, because the marriage of the Lamb came, and His wife prepared herself. *(Eph 5:31-32)*

8 And it was given to her that she be clothed in fine linen, pure and bright; for the fine linen is the righteousness of the saints. *(Rev 7:14)*[5]

---

1 Verse 23 states that the voice of the bride and bridegroom will never be heard in Babylon again; this was the punishment of Judah that was transferred to Babylon who caused Israel's woes (Jer 7:34, Je 25:10, Jer 33:10-11*)*

2 Babylon's merchants are the rich men of the earth. There are more millionaires in the USA than virtually every other nation on earth combined.

3 The word used here in Greek is "*Pharmakia*" where we get the word for pharmacy. Babylon has deceived the people through trust in medicine instead of trust in YAHWEH.

4 Although the USA fits the criteria of end time Babylon and has created the global trading system outlined in chapter 17 & 18, Babylon has been a trading system (Rev 17:9) controlled by other nations almost since the fall man in the Garden of Eden (Eze 28:1-4, 13-16) and has been the number one enemy against the Elohim guided spirit of love and outward giving and concern and has caused the death of untold millions throughout history. Due to the global world government set up by end time Babylon (America) many untold millions will be martyred by the beast system instituted by Babylon.

5 Righteousness- *Literally 'straight way'*- Rev 3:5, Rev 16:15, Eccl 9:8, Mat 22:1-14

9 And he said to me, Write: Blessed
are the ones having been called to the
marriage supper of the Lamb. And he
said to me, These Words of YAHWEH
are true. *(Math 25:1-13, Luk 12:31-37)*
10 And I fell before his feet to
worship him, but he said to me,
Behold! Stop! I am a fellow-slave of
yours, and of your brothers, having the
testimony of Yahshua. Worship
Elohim.[1] For the testimony of Yahshua
is the spirit of prophecy.
11 And I saw Heaven being opened.
And, behold! A white horse, and He
sitting on it having been called
Faithful and True. And He judges and
makes war in righteousness.[2]
12 And His eyes were as a flame of
fire, and on His head were many
crowns with many titles written on it,
and one of the titles that had been
written, no man knew but He Himself;
13 and having been clothed in a
garment which had been dipped in
blood. And His name is called The
Word of YAHWEH. *(Isa.63:2,3, Jo
1:1-4, 14)*
14 And the armies in Heaven
followed Him on white horses, being
dressed in fine linen, white and pure.
15 And out of His mouth goes forth a
sharp sword, that with it He might
smite the nations. And He will
shepherd them with an iron rod. And
He treads the winepress of the wine of
the anger and of the wrath of
YAHWEH Almighty. (Rev 14:19)
16 And He has on His garment and
on His thigh a name having been
written: KING OF KINGS AND
MASTER OF MASTERS. *(Rev 17:14)*
17 And I saw one cherub standing in
the sun. And he cried with a great
voice, saying to all the birds flying in
mid-heaven, Come and gather
together to the supper of the great
Elohim,
18 that you may eat the flesh of
kings, and the flesh of captains, and
the flesh of strong ones, and the flesh
of horses, and of the ones sitting on
them, and the flesh of all, both
freemen and slaves, even of the small
and great.[3]
19 And I saw the beast and the kings
of the earth, and their armies being
assembled to make war with the One
sitting on the horse, and with His
army.
20 And the beast was seized, and
with this one the false prophet doing
signs before it, by which he led astray
those having received the mark of the
beast, and those worshiping its image.
The two were thrown alive into the
Lake of Fire burning with brimstone.
21 And the rest were killed with the
sword of the One sitting on the horse,
the sword having gone forth from His
mouth. And all the birds were filled
from their flesh.

Chapter 20

1 And I saw a cherub coming down
out of Heaven, having the key of the
abyss[4], and a great chain in his hand.
2 And he laid hold of the dragon, the
old serpent who is the Devil, and
Satan, and bound him a thousand
years[5], *(Mk 3:27)*
3 and threw him into the abyss, and
shut him up, and put a seal over him,
that he should not still lead astray the
nations, until the thousand years are

---

1 Cherubs are not to be worshiped
2 Whereas the white horse in Rev 6:2 represented the false anti-messiah, here it is Yahshua returning on a glorious white horse.
3 Verses 17-18 see Eze 39:17-19
4 Rev 9:1-2
5 Satan is not just a symbol of evil but is a real spirit being who is also a fallen cherub, Eze 28:11-18.

fulfilled. And after these things, he must be set loose a little time.[1]
4 And I saw thrones, and they sat on them. And judgment was given to them, and the souls of the ones having been beheaded because of the witness of Yahshua, and because of the Word of YAHWEH, and who had not worshiped the beast nor its image, and had not received the mark on their forehead and on their hand. And they lived and reigned with Messiah a thousand years.[2]
5 This is the first resurrection.
6 Blessed and holy is the one having part in the first resurrection. The second death has no authority over these, but they will be priests of YAHWEH and of His Messiah, and will reign with Him a thousand years.[3]
7 And whenever the thousand years are completed, Satan will be set loose out of his prison,
8 and he will go to deceive the nations in the four corners of the earth, Gog and Magog, to assemble them to war, whose number is as the sand of the sea.[4]
9 And they went up over the breadth of the land and encircled the camp of the saints, and the beloved city. And fire from YAHWEH came down out of Heaven and consumed them.
10 And the Devil leading them astray was thrown into the Lake of Fire and Brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet were. And they were tormented day and night for ages to ages.
11 And I saw a Great White Throne, and the One sitting on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled; and a place was not found for them.
12 And I saw the dead, the small and the great, standing before YAHWEH. And books were opened[5]. And another Book was opened, which is the Book of Life. And the dead were judged out of the things written in the books, according to their works.[6]
13 And the sea gave up the dead in it. And death and the grave gave up the dead in them. And they were each judged according to their works.
14 And death and the grave were thrown into the Lake of Fire. This is the second death.[7]
15 And if anyone was not found having been written in the Book of Life, he was thrown into the Lake of Fire.

Chapter 21

1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth, for the first heaven and the first

---

1 YHWH being completely fair and just will allow Satan loose after the millennium to test the people born during that time, so that all humans would have been tried under similar circumstances to have the responsibility to resist evil and choose the way of YHWH, (Ja 4:7).

2 Rev 6:9-11, Rev 12:11, Rev 2:26-28, Rev 3:12, 21, 2 Pe 3:8, Ps 90:4

3 Verses 4-6 is about the first fruit resurrection. These covenant believers of Yahshua now will reign with Him during the 1,000 yr millennium and have a glorified spiritual body (1Cor 15:23, 44, 50-53. Their judgment is now and they have no part in the white throne resurrection of all other humans after the millennium, but reign with Messiah, Yahshua, forever. Rev 5:10

4 Ezek 38:8, 23, Ezek 39:7-8, 21-29

5 These are the books of the bible.

6 Everything that everyone ever did was written in these books and people were judged by their deeds according to the standard of the 10 commandments, (Heb 9:27, 2 Cor 5:10, Ro 2;1-16, Eccl 12:13, Rev 22:12).

7 Those with evil hearts and intent in their life will go to the Lake of fire and burn and cease to exist. The wages of sin are death (Ro 6:23, Eze 18:4, Gen 2:17) not eternal life in an uncomfortable place

earth passed away, and the sea no
longer is.[1]
2 And I, John, saw the holy city, New
Jerusalem, coming down out of
Heaven from Elohim, having been
prepared as a bride, having been
adorned for her Husband.[2]
3 And I heard a great voice out of
Heaven, saying, Behold, the tabernacle
of YAHWEH is with men! And He will
tabernacle with them, and they will be
His people, and YAHWEH Himself
will be with them as their Elohim.[3]
4 And He will wipe away every tear
from their eyes. And death shall be no
longer, nor mourning, nor wailing, nor
will there be pain any more; for the
former things have passed away[4]. *(1
Cor 15:54-57)*
5 And the One sitting on the throne
said, Behold! I make all things new.
And He says to me, Write, because
these Words are faithful and true.
6 And He said to me, It is done! I am
the Aleph and the Tav, the Beginning
and the Ending. To the one thirsting, I
will freely give of the fountain of the
Water of Life. *(Rev 1:8, Is 44:6, 48:12)*
7 The one overcoming will inherit all
things, and I will be Elohim to him,
and he will be the son to Me.[5]
8 But for the cowardly and
unbelieving[6], and those having
become sinful, and to murderers, and
fornicators, and sorcerers, and
idolaters, and to all liars, their part
will be in the Lake burning with fire
and brimstone, which is the second
death.[7]
9 And one of the seven cherubs came
to me, he having the seven bowls being
filled with the seven last plagues, and
spoke with me, saying, Come, I will
show you the bride, the wife of the
Lamb.
10 And he carried me in spirit onto a
great and high mountain, and showed
me the great city, holy Jerusalem,
coming down out of Heaven from
YAHWEH,[8]
11 having the glory of YAHWEH.
And its light was like a very precious
stone, as a jasper stone, being clear as
crystal,
12 and having a great and high wall,
having twelve gates, and twelve
cherubs at the gates and names having
been inscribed, which are of the twelve
tribes of the sons of Israel.

---

1 The source of evil is destroyed Rev 13:1, Rev 18:21, Rev 20:13.

2 The New Jerusalem in the Kingdom is the dowry from YHWH the Father to His son Yahshua and His bride (Is 62:1-12)

3 During the millennium YHWH the Father will still be dwelling in heaven and Yahshua Elohim will be dwelling and reigning for Yahweh the Father on the earth in Jerusalem. Then, after the millennium with every enemy being conquered (Ps 110:1-6), the last enemy being death (1 Cor 15:54-55) YHWH the Father will actually come to earth to dwell with His people with Yahshua sitting at His right hand, (Ps 110:1, 1 Cor 15:24-28).

4 Yahweh will wipe away the tears (and memories) of loved ones who perished in the Lake of Fire in the White throne judgment who did not make His kingdom. Believers will not have to go through eternity, agonizing over lost love ones, but simply will have no memory of them again.

5 As the message to the 7 congregations in chapters 2 & 3, the ones who repent and overcome and truly 100% surrender their lives to YHWH in faith will be His children in His kingdom, forever. The prideful and self-seeking will perish.

6 Heb 3:7-19, 4:1

7 This scripture very clearly shows the responsibility to those receiving salvation that they must cleanse their hearts and minds and produce good fruit (Heb 12:14, Math 5:48, Joh 15:1-8). It is fear, which is the opposite of faith that leads one into following his own deceitful heart that will lead to sin and death.

8 See note for Rev 21:2.

13 From the east, three gates; from the north, three gates; from the south, three gates; and from the west, three gates.

14 And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Son.

15 And he speaking with me had a golden reed, that he may measure the city, and its gates, and its wall.

16 And the city lies four cornered, even its length as much as the width also. And he measured the city with the reed at twelve thousand furlongs; its length and width and height are equal.

17 And he measured its wall, a hundred and forty four cubits, a measure of a man, which is of a cherub.

18 And the structure of its wall was jasper; and the city was pure gold, like pure glass.

19 And the foundation of the wall of the city having been adorned with every precious stone: The first foundation, jasper; the second, sapphire; the third, chalcedony; the fourth, emerald;

20 the fifth, sardonyx; the sixth, sardius; the seventh, chrysolite; the eighth, beryl; the ninth, topaz; the tenth, chrysoprasus; the eleventh, hyacinth; the twelfth, amethyst.

21 And the twelve gates were twelve pearls; respectively each one of the gates was of one pearl. And the street of the city was pure gold, as transparent glass.

22 And I saw no sanctuary in it, for the Master, YAHWEH Almighty is its sanctuary, and the Lamb.[1]

23 And the city had no need of the sun, nor of the moon, that they might shine in it, for the glory of YAHWEH illuminates it, and its lamp is the Lamb.[2]

24 And the nations of the ones saved will walk in its light; and the kings of the earth bring their glory and honor into it.[3]

25 And its gates may not at all be shut by day, for no night will be there.

26 And they will bring the glory and the honor of the nations into it.

27 And there shall not enter it any thing that defiles, or he who practices abominations and lies[4], but only the ones having been written in the Book of Life of the Lamb.

Chapter 22

1 And he showed me a pure river of water of life, bright as crystal, coming forth out of the throne of YAHWEH and of the Lamb.[5] *(Eze 47:1-12)*

2 In the midst of its street and of the city, on this side and that side of the river, was a tree of life producing twelve fruits: according to one month each yielding its fruit. And the leaves of the tree were for healing of the nations.[6]

3 And there will be no blight any more: and the throne of YAHWEH

---

1 In the eternal Kingdom, as it was in the Garden of Eden, there will be no need for a sanctuary to draw near to YAHWEH, because both Yah Yahweh the Father and Yahshua YAHWEH the Son will be present.

2 In Gen 1:3 when YHWH said *"let their be light"*, the light was formed by His and Yahshua's presence as the sun, moon and stars were not created until day 4.

3 Ps 119:105 states that the Torah is a lamp to the feet and a light to one's path. Here all people living in the New Kingdom will be following the Torah as a way of life, not for justification which came by the blood of Yahshua, but simply as a way of life distinguishing between right and wrong, Lev 18:5.

4 These all perished in the Lake of Fire, Rev 20:15.

5 Zech 14:8, Ps 46:4

and the Lamb will be in it; and His
servants will minister to Him.
4 And they will see His face; and His
name will be on their foreheads. *(Rev
14:1)*
5 And night will not be there; and
they have no need of a lamp or a light
of the sun, because YAHWEH Elohim
will give them light. And they shall
reign for ever and ever. *(Dan 7:22)*
6 And he said to me, These Words
are faithful and true. And YAHWEH
Elohim of the holy prophets sent His
cherub to show His slaves what must
happen quickly.
7 Behold, I am coming quickly.
Blessed is the one keeping the Words
of the prophecy of this Book.[1]
8 And I, John, was the one seeing
and hearing these things. And when I
heard and saw, I fell down to worship
before the feet of the cherub showing
me these things.
9 And he said to me, Behold! Stop!;
For I am your fellow-slave, and of your
brothers the prophets, and of the ones
keeping the Words of this Book.
Worship YAHWEH.
10 And he said to me, Do not seal the
Words of the prophecy of this Book,
because the time is at hand.
11 The one acting unjustly, will
continue to act unjustly; and he who is
filthy, will continue to be filthy; and to
the righteous, let him continue to do
righteousness; and he who is holy, let
him continue to be holy.
12 And behold, I am coming soon,
and My reward is with Me, to give to
each according to his work.[2]
13 I am the Aleph and the Tav, the
Beginning and the Ending, the First
and the Last. *(Rev 1:8, 21:6)*
14 Blessed are the ones doing His
commandments, that their authority
will be over the Tree of Life, and that
they may enter by the gates into the
city. *(Rev 14:12, Math 19:17)*
15 But the ones not there are the
dogs and the sorcerers, and the
fornicators, and the murderers, and
the idolaters, and everyone loving a
lie, and doing falsehood. *(Rev 21:8)*
16 I, Yahshua, sent My cherub to
testify these things to you over the
congregations. I am the Root and
Offspring of David, the bright and
Morning Star.*(Rev 1:1 Rev 5:5, Is 11:1)*
17 And the Spirit and the bride say,
Come! And the one hearing let him
say, Come! And the one thirsting, let
him come; and the one desiring, let
him take of the water of life freely.
18 For I testify together with
everyone hearing the Words of the
prophecy of this Book, if anyone adds
to these things, YAHWEH will add
upon him the plagues having been
written in this Book. *(Deut 4:2)*
19 And if anyone takes away from
the Words of the Book of this
prophecy, YAHWEH will take away
his part from the Book of Life, and out
of the holy city, and of the things
having been written in this Book.
20 The One testifying these things
says, Yes, I am coming quickly. Amen.
Yes, come, Yahshua Yahweh !
21 The grace of our Master Yahshua
Messiah be with all of you. Amen.

---

[6] As where most trees only bear fruit once a year this tree bears fruit each month. Also, there is healing power in the leaves. Interestingly enough in recent yrs there has been an amazing interest in using essential oils for healing, which is extracted from leaves.

[1] Whereas other prophesies in scripture were given over centuries or even millennia, Yahshua stated in Math 24:34 that all the things in the end time would happen in one generation.

[2] The believer's reward is based on the fruit that he bears now (Joh 15:1-8, Luk 19:12-26, Luk 14:14, Math 16:27, Ps 62:12).

Topical Concordance

Bearing Fruit
Gen. 1:28
Matt. 28:18-20
John 4:34-38
John 15:1-8, 16
Luke 3:9
James 1:27
Rom. 6:21-22
Rom. 7:4
Luke 19:12-27
Matt. 25:14-30
Matt. 13:8, 23
Mark 4:8, 20, 28-29
Col. 1:4-6, 9-10
1 Cor. 15:58
Matt. 21:33-43

Blasphemy
Ex. 20:7
Lev. 24:10-16
Num. 15:30
Ez. 20:27
Matt. 12:22-25, 30-32
2 Chr. 32:16-19
Luke 23:39-41
1 Tim. 6:1
Tit. 2:3-5
Rev. 16:9-11
1 Pet. 4:3-5
Rom. 2:17-24

Birthright
Ex. 4:22-23
Gen. 49:3
1 Chr. 5:1
Deut. 21:17

Changing of the Priesthood
Heb. 8:1-2
Ps. 110:4
Heb. 5:9-10, 7:24
Gal. 3:17
Ex. 19:5-6
Num. 3:11-13, 8:14-19
Gal. 3:19
Ex. 32:1-9, 19-20, 26-28
Heb. 7:11-22
Gal. 3:18
Heb. 10:1-14
Heb. 8:3-13
Heb. 9:11-28

Congregational Government
1 Cor. 11:3
Eph. 4:5-6
Col. 1:13, 18
Matt. 16:18-19
Eph. 4:11-16
Eph. 2:20-22
1 Cor. 12:27-28
Deut. 17:8-13
Acts 15:1-6
Num. 16:1-5, 11, 21
Acts 13:1-3
Phi. 1:1
Acts 6:1-6
1 Pet. 5:1-5
Tit. 1:4-5
Acts 20:28
Heb. 13:17

Covetous Spirit
Ex. 20:17
Deut. 5:21
Jac. 1:13-14
1 Kings 21:1-7
Col. 3:5-6
1 Cor. 6:9-10
Eph. 5:5
2 Pet. 2:1-3, 14-15
Rom. 1:28-32
1 Cor. 5:9-11

Deacons
1 Tim. 3:8-13
Phi. 1:1
Acts 6:1-6
1 Thess. 3:2

Elders
1 Tim. 3:1-7
1 Pet. 5:1-5
2 John 1:1
3 John 1:1
1 Tim. 5:19
Acts 11:30, 14:23
Acts 20:17
1 Tim. 5:17-18

Everlasting Judgment
Matt. 10:28
Prov. 24:20
Matt. 25:31-33, 41, 46
Rev. 20:11-15
Matt. 13:30, 41-42
Jude 1:7
Luke 13:3
Rev. 2:11
Mal. 4:1, 3
Ps. 37:9-10, 28, 34, 38
Ps. 9:5-6
Ps. 104:35
Rev. 21:8

Faith In Yahshua
John 3:16-17
John 14:6
John 6:40, 47
Rom. 10:4, 9-13
Gal. 3:22, 26
Acts 13:38-39
Phi. 3:8-14
Acts 15:10-11
John 11:25-26
Rom. 4:24-5:2
1 John 5:11-13
John 17:1-3
John 14:1
John 12:46-48

Father And The Son
Prov. 30:4
Ecc. 12:1
Gen. 1:26-27
Heb. 1:1-11
Gen. 19:24
Zech. 3:1-2
Ps. 110:1, 5-7
Zech. 13:7
Ps. 2:2, 7
John 5:19, 30-31
John 8:17-18

Mark 13:32
Matt. 26:39
John 12:28
Acts 2:31-33
1 Cor. 15:24-28

Feasts of Yahweh

Lev. 23:1-4, 37-38
Deut. 16:16
2 Chr. 6:6
Lev. 23:5
Luke 22:13-15
Lev. 23:6-8
1 Cor. 5:6-8
Lev. 23:15-21
1 Cor. 16:8
Lev. 23:23-25
Matt. 24:29-31
Lev. 23:26-32
Acts 27:9
Lev. 23:33-44
Zech. 14:16-19
Lev. 23:36
John 7:37-39
Col. 2:16-17

First fruits

Jer. 2:3
1 Cor. 15:20-23
Acts 26:22-23
Rom. 11:16
Jac. 1:18
Rev. 14:1-4
Rom. 16:5
Rom. 8:16-17, 22-23

Fruits of the Spirit/ Gifts of the Spirit

Gal. 5:22-23
Rom. 6:20-22
Jac. 3:17-18
Matt. 7:15-20
Eph. 5:8-11
Jac. 1:17
Rom. 12:4-8
Eph. 4:7-8
1 Cor. 12:4-14
Rom. 1:11
1 Cor. 14:26
1 Pet. 4:10-11

Garden of Eden

Gen. 2:8-15
Ez. 47:1-12
Joel 3:16-18
Ez. 28:11-16
Heb. 12:22
Rev. 21:10-2:1-5
Rev. 2:7
Luke 23:42-43

Grace

Eph. 2:4-9
Rom. 5:1-2, 15-21
Eph. 1:5-7
Tit. 3:4-7
Gal. 5:4
Acts. 15:10-11
1 Tim. 1:14
John 1:15-17
2 Cor. 12:9
2 Cor. 8:9
Rom. 11:5-6
Gal. 1:15
1 Cor. 15:10
2 Tim. 1:9
Is. 33:2

Holiness

Heb. 12:14
Ps. 77:13
Rom. 7:12
Lev. 11:44-45
Heb. 7:26
Rom. 11:16
Eph. 5:27
1 Pet. 1:14-17
2 Cor. 7:1
1 Thess. 4:1-7
Eph. 4:22-32
1 Cor. 6:15-20
1 Pet. 2:5, 9
Is. 35:8-10

Human Nature

Jer. 17:9
Rom. 8:7-8
Rom. 3:10-18
Mark 7:20-23
Gal. 5:19-21
Ecc. 9:3
Prov. 22:15
Gen. 6:5, 8:21
2 Tim. 3:1-9
Rev. 3:15-17
Rom. 7:13-24
Jac. 4:4-5
Ecc. 7:27-29

Idolatry

Ex. 20:3-5
Lev. 26:1
Gal. 5:19-20
Deut. 4:12, 15-20
Ex. 32:1-10
1 Cor. 10:6-7, 13-14
Is. 44:15-20
Jer. 10:2-5
1 John 5:21
Col. 3:2-5
Ez. 14:2-8
1 Sam. 15:22-23
2 Cor. 6:14-16
1 Cor. 5:9-11
Rev. 21:7-8
Rev. 22:14-15

Jerusalem the Headquarters of Yahweh

Is. 2:2-4
Deut. 12:5-7
Deut. 16:16
2 Chr. 6:5-6
2 Chr. 30:1-5
Ps. 135:21
Ez. 43:1-7
Matt. 5:35
Deut. 17:6-13
2 Chr. 19:5-10
Acts 15:1-2, 4-7
Acts 15:22-23, 30-32
Rev. 3:12
Jer. 51:49-50

Judicial Order

1 Cor. 14:40
Gen. 1:4, 5, 11-13, 16, 19, 22-23, 31
Eph. 5:21
1 Cor. 14:33
1 Sam. 16:1, 7, 12-13
Deut. 34:9
Tit. 1:4-5
Rom. 13:1-2
Eph. 4:11-15
Heb. 13:17
1 Cor. 14:34-35
Gen. 3:16
1 Tim. 2:11-14
Jac 5:14

Justification/ Sanctification

Rom. 8:30
Is. 45:25
Acts 13:39
Gal. 2:16
Rom. 3:20-28
Rom. 5:1
Gal. 3:11
1 Cor. 6:9-11
Lev. 20:7-8
John 17:17
Heb. 2:11
Eph. 5:26-27
2 Tim. 2:19-25
1 Thess. 4:1-3
Rev. 17:14

Kingdom of Yahweh

Is. 2:2-4
Ob. 1:17-21
Is. 9:6-7
Is. 11:1-16
Jer. 23:5-6
Zech. 14:8-11
Is. 66:18-23
Matt. 8:11-12
Matt. 26:29
Luke 22:29-30
Rev. 11:15
Dan. 2:44
Rev. 20:1-6
Rev. 21:1-22:7

Laying on of hands

Heb. 6:1-2
Acts 8:12-18
Acts 19:1-6
John 3:1-6
Rom. 8:9
Acts 9:15-17
1 Tim. 4:14
2 Tim. 1:6
Gen 48:8-16

Marriage Covenant

Gen. 2:18, 21-24
Mark 10:2-9
Matt. 5:31-32
Matt. 19:3-9
Luke 16:18
Mark 10-12
Rom. 7:1-3
1 Cor. 7:39
Deut. 22:13-21
1 Cor. 6:9-10
Mal. 2:14-16
Lev. 21:7, 13-14
Rom. 7:4
Eph. 5:22-32
Rev. 19:7-8

Messianic Scriptures Fulfilled

Gen. 3:15
Mic. 5:2
Gen. 49:10
Is. 7:14
Ps. 16:10
Dan. 9:24
Ps. 2:7
Is. 53:5
Zech. 11:12
Is. 9:6
Is. 11:1
Is. 35:5
Ps. 40:6
Ps. 22:16, 18
Zech. 12:10
Ps. 34:20
Zech. 9:9
Is. 53:9

Mortal Soul

Ezek. 18:4
Gen. 2:7, 6:3
Job 33:4
Matt. 10:28
Rev. 20:11-15
Gen. 2:16-17
Rom. 6:23
Gen. 3:1-5, 19
Gen. 3:22-24
John 10:27-28
John 8:51
John 5:24
Rev. 2:11

Name of Yahweh

Ex. 3:2-6, 13-15
Ex. 6:3
Is. 42:8
Deut. 28:58
Jer. 16:21
Amos 5:8
Hos. 12:5
Ex. 33:19, 34:6
Amos 9:6
Jer. 33:2
Ex. 15:3
Rev. 14:1
Is. 45:5-7
Ez. 39:25
2 Sam. 22:47-50

New Moons

Col. 2:16
Num. 28:11-14
Num. 10:10
1 Chr. 23:31
2 Chr. 2:4, 8:12-13
2 Chr. 31:3
1 Sam. 20:5
2 Kings 4:22-23
Ezra 7:9, 10:16-17
Num. 1:1, 18

Deut. 1:3
Ez. 29:17, 31:1, 32:1
Hag. 1:1
Is. 66:23
Ez. 46:1-3

Obedience to the Torah

Matt. 5:17-19, 7:21-23
John 14:15, 15:10, 14
Gen. 26:4-5
Rom. 3:31, 6:1-2, 7:7, 12
Matt. 22:36-40
Matt. 19:16-17
1 John 2:3-4, 6
Ecc. 12:13
1 John 5:3
Deut. 10:12-13
Ps. 119:89, 151, 172
Heb. 10:26-29
Ps. 19:7-11
Rev. 22:13-15, 18-19
Deut. 30:10-20

Our Reward is Earth

Matt. 5:5
Gen. 13:14-15
Gen. 15:18
Deut. 34:1-4
Gal. 3:29
Ps. 105:7-11
Acts 7:2-5
Matt. 6:10
Rev. 21:1-3, 10, 22-24
Heb. 11:9-10
Rev. 5:8-10
Zech. 14:3-4, 9-11
Acts 1:9-12
Ps. 37:9, 11, 22, 29, 34

Parables of Yahshua

Matt. 13:5-8, 24-30, 31-32, 33, 44, 45-50
Matt. 18:12-14, 23-35
Matt. 20:1-16
Matt. 21:28-32, 33-46
Matt. 22:1-14
Matt. 24:42-44, 45-51
Matt. 25:1-13, 14-30
Mark 2:21-22
Mark 4:26-29
Luke 7:41-43
Luke 10:25-37
Luke 11:5-8
Luke 12:16-21
Luke 13:6-9
Luke 14:16-24
Luke 15:4-7, 8-10, 11-32
Luke 16:1-9, 19-31
Luke 17:7-10
Luke 18:1-8, 10-14
John 10:1-21
John 15:1-6

Praise

Heb. 13:15
Ps. 34:1
Eph. 5:18-19
Luke 2:13-14
2 Chr. 20:18-22
Acts 16:25
2 Chr. 7:6
Ezra 3:10-11
2 Chr. 30:21
Ps. 149:3
2 Chr. 29:29-30
Ps. 148:13
Ps. 135:1-3
Is. 42:8
Ps. 71:6

Prayer

Matt. 7:7-11
Matt. 6:9-13
Phi. 4:6
Jac. 1:5-7
John 14:13-14
Matt. 18:19-20
1 John 3:22
John 15:7
1 John 5:14
Jac. 5:15-16
Matt. 6:5-8
1 Tim. 2:8
1 Tim. 2:1-3
Ps. 122:6-9
Eph. 6:18

Redemption of the Land Covenant of Israel

Jer. 16:14-21
Is. 48:17-21
Ez. 39:21-29
Is. 11:11-16
Ez. 11:14-20
Jer. 30:8-11, 18-22
Zeph. 3:8-20
Jer. 31:1-25
Hos. 11:8-11
Jer. 32:36-44
Zech. 10:3-12
Jer. 23:1-8
Ez. 20:33-44
Ez. 37:15-28
Ez. 34:11-31
Is. 49:1-26

Redemption of the Twelve Tribes of Israel

Gen. 13:14-17
Gen. 15:18
Deut. 34:1-4
Lev. 26:39-45
Is. 62:1-5
Jer. 30:1-3
Ez. 11:14-20
Ez. 28:25-26
Is. 14:1-3
Jer. 31:1-17
Ez. 39:25-29
Jer. 16:14-15
Ez. 34:11-13
Amos 9:13-15
Ez. 37:21-28
Ez. 48:23-29

Repentance from Dead Works

Eph. 4:17-32
Luke 3:2-3, 7-8
Acts 26:20
Matt. 21:28-32

Ps. 51:1-19
Rom. 2:4-5
2 Tim. 2:24-26
2 Cor. 7:8-10
Heb. 12:15-17
Luke 18:10-14
Joel 2:12-13
Luke 13:1-5
Rev. 2:5
Rev. 9:20-12
Acts 5:30-31

Scepter

Gen. 49:10
Num. 24:16-19
Ps. 45:6-7
Heb. 1:5-12

Sin

1 John 3:4
Rom. 3:20
Jac. 4:17
Rom. 5:12
Rom. 3:23
Ecc. 7:20
Rom. 6:23
Ez. 18:20
Rom. 14:23
Jac. 1:13-15
Gen. 4:7
1 Cor. 15:54-56
Heb. 10:26-31
1 John 3:8

Spirit of the Holy One

Gen. 1:2
Jer. 51:15
Luke 1:35
Col. 2:12
1 Cor. 1:17-18
2 Cor. 13:4
Eph. 3:16
Mic. 3:8
2 Pet. 1:3
2 Tim. 1:7-8
Luke 5:17
Heb. 2:4
Rom. 15:19
Rom. 1:4
Rev. 15:8

State of the Dead

John 3:13
Ecc. 3:19-20
Ps. 104:29-30
Job. 34:14-15
Ps. 115:17
Ps. 146:4
Ps. 6:4-5
Is. 38:18-19
Ecc. 9:2, 5, 10
John 8:52-53
Acts 2:29, 34-35
John 11:11-14, 21-24
Acts 13:36
Heb. 11:13, 39-40
Is. 26:14
1 Thes 3:13-18

The Kinsman Redeemer

Job 19:25-27
Is. 49:24-26
Ruth 2:1, 20, 3:9-13, 4:1-10, 14-15
Is. 60:9-18
Is. 59:16-21
Is. 54:1-10
Is. 63:1-16

The Melchizedek Priesthood

Ps. 110:1-7
Heb. 3:1
Gen. 3:21
Gen. 14:18-20
Heb. 7:1-6, 13-17
Heb. 8:1-6
1 Pet. 2:5-10
Ex. 19:22, 24:5
2 Cor. 3:1-6
Rom. 15:16
Is. 61:6
Rev. 5:8-10, 20:6
Heb. 4:14, 5:10

The Millennium

Rev. 20:1-10
Is. 2:2-4
Mic. 4:1-7
Zech 8:1-8, 20-23
Jer. 31:1-14
Is. 60:1-18, 21-22
Jer. 33:14-18
Ps. 72:1-19
Is. 65:18-25
Is. 11:1-10
Ez. 36:33-38
Is. 35:1-10
Is. 61:3-11
Joel 3:16-21
Ez. 47:1-23
Zech. 14:8-11, 16-21
Is. 66:18-23

The Name of Yahshua

Acts 26:14-15
Ex. 23:20-21
Ps. 68:4
Matt. 1:21
Acts 4:12
Acts 2:38
Eph. 1:20-21
Phil. 2:9-10
Luke 24:47
John 20:31
John 3:18
1 John 3:23

The New Covenant

Jer. 31:31-34
Heb. 8:6-13
Matt. 26:27-28
Is. 59:20-21
Is. 55:3
Is. 61:8-11
Hos. 2:16-23
Jer. 32:39-44
Gal. 4:21-31
Heb. 12:18-24
Jer. 50:4-5

The Resurrection

1 Cor. 15:51-54
1 Thess. 4:13-17
John 11:20-26

John 5:28-29
Dan. 12:2
Rev. 20:4-15
John 6:40
Acts 24:15
Is. 26:19
Luke 20:27, 34-38
Acts 23:6-8
Luke 14:13-14
Phi. 3:8-12
1 Cor. 15:22-23
Heb. 9:28
Job 19:25-27

The Sabbath Is The Seventh Day

Gen. 2:2-3
Ex. 16:22-30, 20:8-11
Ex. 23:12
Ex. 31:15, 17
Ex. 34:21, 35:2
Lev. 23:3
Deut. 5:14
Heb. 4:4

The Sabbath Remains

Heb. 4:9
Gen. 2:1-4
Lev. 23:2-3
Deut. 5:12-15
Luke 4:16, 31
Mark 1:21
Luke 13:10
Acts 17:1-2
Acts 13:42-46
Acts 18:4
Col. 2:16-17
Matt. 24:20
Ez. 46:1-3
Ex. 31:12-18
Is. 66:23

Timing Of Passover

Lev. 23:5-6
Num. 28:16-17
Ex. 12:5-8
Num. 9:2-5
1 Cor. 11:26
Ex. 13:10
2 Chr. 35:1, 17-18
Ezra 6:19, 22
Ez. 45:21

Water Baptism

Matt. 28:18-20
Acts 2:37-41
Acts 8:36-38
Acts 16:27-33
Acts 18:8
Acts 16:14-15
Rom. 6:1-11
Col. 2:11-14
1 Pet. 3:20-21
Mark 16:16

Who Is Babylon?

Jer. 50:1, 3, 28
Rev. 18:2, 4
Rev. 17:5
Hab. 1:6-11
Rev. 17:1, 5
Jer. 50:37
Jer. 50:23
Jer. 51:44
Rev. 17:18
Jer. 51:9, 53
Rev. 18:23
Rev. 18:3, 9-19
Is. 47:1-10

Yahshua Is Elohim

John 8:24, 56-58
Mic. 5:2
Col. 1:13-19
John 1:1-3
Ps. 33:6
Is. 52:10
Job. 12:7-10
Heb. 1:1-13
Matt. 1:23
John 20:27-28
Ps. 50:23
Acts 2:36
Luke 2:11
Acts 10:36
1 Cor. 12:3
Phil. 2:11

Yahshua Personified In The Tanach

1 Chr. 16:23
Ps. 9:14, 13:5, 14:7, 18:35, 65:5, 67:2, 68:19, 78:22, 79:9, 85:4, 85:9, 89:26, 95:1, 96:2, 119:166, 119:174
Is. 17:10, 33:2, 6, 35:4, 45:17, 46:13, 49:26, 51:5, 52:7
Lam. 3:26
Mic. 7:7
Zeph. 3:17

Yahshua Our Passover

John 1:29, 36
Gen. 22:8, 11-14
Rev. 5:2-8, 13:8
Ex. 12:14
1 Cor. 11:20-26
Ex. 12:3, 5-6
1 Cor. 5:7
Is. 53:7
John 6:51, 53-56
1 Cor. 11:26-31
Num. 9:13
Deut. 16:5-6
Is. 66:1-4
Heb. 10:16-18
Heb. 7:26-27, 10:12

Yahweh's Calendar

Gen. 1:14
Ps. 104:19
Ps. 81:3
Is. 66:20
Ps. 19:1-6
Ex. 34:22
Ex. 12:2, Deut. 16:1
2 King 13:20
1 Chr. 20:1
Ps. 74:16-17
Deut. 11:11-12
2 Chr. 24:23